

# MEDICAL DIAGNOSIS

AND

## SYMPTOMATOLOGY

*Profusely Illustrated, Many in Color*  
*Sixth Revised Edition*



PHILADELPHIA      
F A DAVIS COMPANY, *Publishers*  
1943

COPYRIGHT, 1929  
COPYRIGHT, 1931  
COPYRIGHT, 1935  
COPYRIGHT, 1937  
COPYRIGHT, 1941  
COPYRIGHT, 1943

BY

F A DAVIS COMPANY

Copyright Great Britain All Rights Reserved

*To My Three Masters in Medicine*

JAMES M. ANDERS, M.D.

LATE PROFESSOR OF MEDICINE, MEDICO-CHIRURGICAL COLLEGE POST GRADUATE  
SCHOOL OF MEDICINE, UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA

SOLOMON SOLIS COHEN, M.D.

EMERITUS PROFESSOR OF CLINICAL MEDICINE, JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE

THOMAS McCRAE, M.D.

LATE MAGEE PROFESSOR OF PRACTICE OF MEDICINE AND CLINICAL MEDICINE  
JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE

WHO BY THEIR TEACHINGS, WRITINGS AND PERSONAL  
FRIENDSHIP HAVE BEEN MY INSPIRATION

# PREFACE TO THE SIXTH EDITION

The fifth edition of this work has been exhausted in less than two years. The rapid sale of that edition indicates approval by a large number of readers. The expression of approval of the critics and the enthusiastic and laudatory comments of many reviewers and of the numerous correspondents lead me to believe that the fifth edition is a good book, but I have nevertheless endeavored to make the sixth edition a still better one.

To justify the place *Medical Diagnosis and Symptomatology* has attained among medical textbooks, I endeavored to make this edition even more comprehensive by careful revision, by adding some new material, by inserting a new chapter on Parasitology which includes many tropical infections to which the members of our far flung forces may be exposed, and by including several new and interesting illustrations.

By careful revision I was enabled to correct a few typographical errors that had escaped notice and to clarify some ambiguous statements.

The new material added comprises scalenus anticus syndrome, allergic itching, artiplicism, lupus erythematosus disseminata, the mediastinal syndromes, essential hypertension, sea gull murmur, toxemic kidney, a differential table of the acute encephalopathies, a tabulation of vitamins, tests for serum amylase, tests for kala azar, congo red test for amyloid disease, and numerous other additions.

The new chapter of Parasitology includes the spirochetes, the protozoa, and the metazoa which embrace trematodes, cestodes, nematodes, and the various insects such as flies, mosquitoes, lice, fleas, ticks, and other arthropods. The parasites and the diseases caused or transmitted by them as well as the diseases caused by fungi and moulds are briefly but adequately described.

Among the new illustrations are Diaphragmatic Herniation of the Stomach, Mediastinal Tumor, the Collar of Stokes, Spinal Nerves Leaving the Spinal Column, and Tapeworms, Round Worms, *Trichinella Spiralis*, Flies, Mosquitoes, and other organisms.

I have consulted the current medical literature and the new editions of modern textbooks as well as those on Tropical Medicine. To their authors I express my thanks. I am also indebted to Dr. N. W. Winkelman for some corrections in the chapter on Anatomy of the Nervous System and to my publishers and to Dr. Frederick C. Smith for helpful suggestions and patience and to my wife for her usual care in reviewing the manuscript.

SAMUEL A. LOEWENBERG



# PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

DESPITE the present trend of medicine towards extreme specialization, the author has ventured to compile a text book of general information upon medical diagnosis from the standpoint of the rapidly disappearing "general practitioner." His reason for bringing forth a book of this type is his belief that no one can become a real specialist until he has practiced general medicine long enough to enable him to view human ills from the standpoint of *"the person affected by an illness rather than the illness affecting a person"*. It is not the author's intention to advocate a retrogression in medicine or a reversion to an older type of "jack of all trades and master of none" but rather to encourage more masters whose judgment has become mature by reason of the experience gained both from general practice and from a chosen specialty. Because of the interrelation of all parts and organs in the human body no one part or organ alone can be treated successfully unless proper consideration is given to the organism as a whole. Therefore the specialist, no matter how expert he may be in his own field must nevertheless have a knowledge of general medicine.

Oliver Wendell Holmes likens the brain to an attic where old furniture, bric-a-brac and other odds and ends are stored away, and, in order to make room for more things some of those previously stored must be discarded. Likewise in order to acquire new knowledge some of the old must be removed or forgotten. If we accept the simile then let us hope that the candidate for specialism has first acquired adequate knowledge of the various phases of medicine and thereby learned to discriminate wisely as to what to discard in order to make way for the fuller knowledge of the particular branch of medicine which holds his special interest. Experience gained in the practice of general medicine will mature his judgment sufficiently to appreciate the value of his discards so that he does not throw away material more valuable than he acquires.

This book aims to cover the field of diagnostics in internal medicine. It gives instructions on the various methods of examining the patient, descriptions of normal findings, enumeration of pathologic conditions with the normal and pathologic physical signs and whenever possible, the reasons for such signs. The signs and interpretations are discussed from the viewpoints of the medical student, the general practitioner and the specialist. The respiratory and cardiac systems are discussed fully and minutely, to the digestive system, the nervous system and urology, adequate space is devoted while to the skin, nose, ears, eyes, bones and joints.

*radiography, the blood the ductless glands etc* less space is given only so much being allotted as is deemed necessary for the purpose of a general examination. The chapter on laboratory interpretations is limited in the main to the interpretation of laboratory analyses reported by the pathologist chemist serologist or clinical laboratory specialist while only the simplest technical methods are described. The chapter on life insurance examination the examination of industrial workers periodic health examinations and the detection of malingering deals chiefly in generalities as the specific methods of examination are amply described in other chapters. The illustrations are of three types (1) actual photographs of methods of examination and of patients suffering with the particular disease described in the text (2) drawings calculated to emphasize the descriptions of certain conditions and (3) photographs of pathologic specimens to aid the memorizing of the respective clinical descriptions.

The author hereby acknowledges his indebtedness to the authors of various text books and of articles in the current medical literature bearing upon the subject matter of this book from which sources he has quoted freely credit being given in the text wherever these quotations and opinions appear. He is especially grateful to Milton K. Meyers M.D. for the preparation of the Chapter on Neurology to Leon Solis Cohen M.D. for the preparation of the Chapter on Roentgenology to Max Trumper Ph.D. for the revision of the work in Hematology, to Solomon Solis Cohen M.D. for his many suggestions while the manuscript was in preparation to the Pathological Department of the Philadelphia General Hospital for the majority of the photographs appearing in this book to Mr H. N. Gosner photographer at the Philadelphia General Hospital to my publishers the F. A. Davis Company and to others who by their work advice and friendship have made this volume possible.

SAMUEL A. LOEWENBERG

1905 Spruce Street

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I PRELIMINARY CONSIDERATIONS	35
Introduction	35
Evaluation of History or Anamnesis	36
History Taking	37
Age and Sex in Reference to Disease	40
Evaluation of Symptoms	41
Evaluation of Physical Signs	42
Evaluation of Laboratory and Special Examinations	42
II TEMPERATURE ALTERATIONS SWEATS AND CHILLS	47
Pyrexia (Fever)	47
Classification of Temperature	47
Relation of the Temperature to the Pulse Rate Respiratory Rate and Basal Metabolic Rate	48
Etiology of Fever	49
Diagnosis of Fever	49
Hyperhidrosis (Sweats)	50
Resume of Febrile Diseases	51
Bacillary Infections	51
Coccal Infections	53
Virus Infections	53
Contagious Diseases of Childhood	54
Rickettsia Infections	55
Spirochetal Infections	56
Protozoal Infections	57
Meningites	57
Diseases of Doubtful Origin	58
Miscellaneous Causes	58
Anidrosis (Deficiency of Sweat)	59
Rigors (Chills)	59
III ALTERATION OF THE SPECIAL SENSES	60
Touch	60
Vision (Sight)	60
Increased Vision	60
Diminished Vision	61
Hearing	64
Smell	65
Taste	65
IV PAIN AND TENDERNESS	66
The Nature of Pain	66
Physical Signs of Pain	67
Type of Pain	67
Location of Pain	68
Regional Pain	68
Headache (Cephalalgia)	68
Headache Due to Intracranial Lesions	69
Migraine	70
Pain in the Eyes	71

CHAPTER	PAGE
IV PAIN AND TENDERNESS	
Regional Pain ( <i>Continued</i> )	
Glossalgia	71
Pain in the Chest	72
Pain in the Abdomen	74
Pain in the Rectum	79
Backache and Spinal Column Pain	79
Pain in the Bones and Joints	81
Pain in the Bones (Ostalgia)	81
Local Bone Pain	81
Generalized Bone Pain	82
Pain in the Joints	83
Pain in the Upper Extremities	83
Pain in the Lower Extremities	84
Miscellaneous Causes of Pain	85
Nerve Pain and Tenderness	85
Pain Due to Arterial Disease	86
Pain in the Genital Organs	86
Itching (Pruritus)	87
V MISCELLANEOUS SYMPTOMS	88
Edema	88
Increase in Weight (Obesity)	88
Loss of Weight (Emaciation)	89
Changes in the Appetite	89
Gastrointestinal Symptoms	90
Heartburn (Pyrosis)	90
Nausea	90
Eructation (Regurgitation Water brash)	90
Vomiting	91
Diarrhea	92
Constipation	92
Respiratory Symptoms	92
Dyspnea (Rapid Difficult or Labored (Orthopneic) Breathing)	92
Hypopnea (Slow Respiration Oligopnea or Bradypnea)	93
Aphonia	93
Hiccough (Singultus)	94
Sneezing (Sternutation)	94
Cough	95
Weakness (Adynamia Asthenia)	96
Cardiac Palpitation	96
Insomnia (Sleeplessness)	96
Vertigo (Dizziness Giddiness)	97
Tremors	98
Muscle Cramps (Muscle Spasm)	99
Convulsions	99
Fainting Attacks (Syncope)	101
Coma (Unconsciousness)	101
VI METHODS OF PHYSICAL EXAMINATION	107
General and Local Examination	113
General Examination	113
Local Examination	121

## Contents

vii

CHAPTER	PAGE
VII EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE SKIN AND MUCOUS MEMBRANES	127
The Skin	127
Color	127
Rashes	131
Primary Lesions	131
Secondary Lesions	145
Scars	150
Temperature	150
Edema	150
Moisture of the Skin	152
The Mucous Membranes	152
Color	152
Moisture	153
Rashes	153
VIII EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE HEAD FACE, EYES EARS NOSE, MOUTH AND NECK	157
The Head	157
Examination of the Head	157
Size and Shape of Head	158
Scars and Signs of Injury	161
Rashes	162
Posture of the Head	162
The Hair	163
The Face	164
Expression	164
Facial Coloring	167
Edema	169
Facial Spasms	169
Facial Paralysis	171
The Eyes	171
The Eyelids	171
The Conjunctiva	174
The Cornea	175
The Sclera	175
The Iris	175
The Pupil	176
The Retina (The Fundus)	178
The Eyeball	180
The Orbit	180
Strabismus (Squint)	181
Eye Signs	182
Refraction	182
The Ears	183
The Nose	186
The Mouth	187
The Lips	187
The Gums	189
The Teeth	190
The Tongue	193
The Palate	197
The Tonsils	197
The Pharynx	198
The Breath	198

## CHAPTER

VIII EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE HEAD (*Continued*)

The Neck	199
The Glands	200
Pulsations of the Neck	204
Methods of Differentiating Arterial from Venous Pulsation	204
Tenderness of the Neck	205
Rashes Upon the Neck	206

## IX TOPOGRAPHIC AND REGIONAL ANATOMY OF THE THORAX

Anatomic Landmarks and Rib Counting	209
The Ribs	209
Clavicles	210
Sternum	211
Mammary Glands	211
Scapulae or Shoulder Blades	212
Spinal Column	212
Arbitrary Lines	213
Regions of the Chest and Their Contents	215
Anterior Aspects	215
Lateral Aspects	219
Posterior Aspect	219
The Lungs	220
The Pleura	223
The Trachea and Bronchi	224
Diaphragm	224

## X PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM BY INSPECTION AND MENSURATION

Rules to Be Observed During Inspection	226
The Normal Chest	228
Characteristics of the Normal Chest	228
Respiration	230
Normal Respiratory Rate	230
Respiratory Movements	231
Accessory Muscles of Respiration	232
Types of Normal Respiration	233
Respiratory Rhythm	233
Mensuration of the Normal Thorax	233
Pathologic Thorax	237
Size	237
Shape	238
Symmetry	242
Respiratory Movements	249

## XI PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM BY PALPATION

Technic	261
Palpating Respiratory Movements	261
Purpose of Palpation	264
Signs Confirming Inspection	264
Signs That Can Be Elicited Only by Palpation	266
Location of Thoracic Tenderness and Their Significance	279

## XII PERCUSSION OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Properties of the Percussion Sound	280
Quality or Timbre	280
Intensity or Loudness	283

CHAPTER	PAGE
<b>XII PERCUSSION OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM</b>	
Properties of the Percussion Sound ( <i>Continued</i> )	
Pitch	284
Duration	284
Sense of Resistance	285
Methods of Percussion	285
<i>Starting Point for Percussion</i>	287
Technic for Mediate Percussion	287
Rules to Observe During Percussion	288
Respiratory Percussion	293
Auscultatory Percussion	293
Palpatory Percussion	294
The Normal Chest	294
Regional Percussion	294
Percussion Mobility	297
Topographic Percussion	298
The Abnormal Chest	299
Pathologic Variations of the Percussion Sound	299
Abnormal Dullness	299
Abnormal Clearness	302
Lung Reflex	311
Lung Boundaries	311
<b>XIII AUSCULTATION OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM</b>	312
Methods	312
Immediate Auscultation	312
Mediate Auscultation	313
Technic	316
Breath Sounds	317
Normal Variations	321
Regional Auscultation	323
Pathologic Breath Sounds	325
Pathologic Variations of the Normal Vesicular Murmur	325
Bronchial Breathing	329
Bronchovesicular Breathing	329
Emphysematous Breathing (Asthmatic Breathing)	330
Cavernous Breathing	330
Amphoric Breath Sounds	330
Metamorphosed Breathing	331
Vocal Resonance	331
Regional Variations of Vocal Resonance	332
Pathologic Variations of Vocal Resonance	333
Phlegmaphonia	337
Adventitious Sounds	337
Rales or Rhonchi	338
Friction Sounds	345
Metallic Tinkling or Falling Drop	346
Hippocratic Succussion Splash	347
Water Whistle Sound	347
The Veiled Puff	347
Posttussive Succussion Splash	347
The Cough	347
Intermediate Unclassified Sounds	348

CHAPTER	PAGE
XIV SYMPTOMS AND PHYSICAL SIGNS OF DISEASES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM AND	
MAMMAE	350
Diseases of the Bronchi	350
Acute Bronchitis	350
Chronic Bronchitis	350
Fibrinous Bronchitis	351
Foreign Bodies in the Bronchi	351
Bronchial Spirochetosis	352
Bronchiectasis	352
Bronchial Asthma	354
Hay Fever	354
Whooping Cough	354
Diseases of the Lungs	355
Pulmonary Congestion	355
Pulmonary Edema (Edema of the Lungs)	356
Pulmonary Abscess	356
Pulmonary Gangrene	357
Chronic Emphysema	358
Compensatory Emphysema	358
Pulmonary Apoplexy (Pulmonary Infarction)	359
Pulmonary Arteriosclerosis	359
Pneumonoconiosis	360
Pulmonary Atelectasis (Massive Collapse)	361
The Pneumonias	362
Lobar Pneumonia	362
Atypical Pneumonia	364
Bronchopneumonia (Atypical Pneumonia)	365
Chronic Interstitial Pneumonia	366
Friedlander's Bacillus Pneumonia	367
Pulmonary Fibrosis	368
Neoplasms of the Lungs	368
Syphilis of the Lung	370
Pulmonary Tuberculosis	370
Acute Milary Tuberculosis	374
Acute Pneumonic Phthisis	376
Diseases of the Pleura	376
Pleurisy	376
Pleural Effusions	377
Diseases of the Diaphragm	379
Paralysis of the Diaphragm	379
Diaphragmatitis	379
Diaphragmatic Abscess (Subphrenic Abscess)	380
Diaphragmatic Pleurisy	380
Hernia of the Diaphragm	380
Evisceration	381
Eventration	381
Displacement of the Diaphragm	382
Spasm of the Diaphragm	382
Diseases of the Breasts (Mammæ)	382
Diseases of the Mediastinum	384
Acute Simple Mediastinitis	384
Acute Suppurative Mediastinitis	384a
Chronic Indurative Mediastinitis	384a
Chronic Suppurative Mediastinitis	384a



XIV	SYMPTOMS AND PHYSICAL SIGNS OF DISEASES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM AND MAMMAE	
	Diseases of the Mediastinum ( <i>Continued</i> )	
	Mediastinal Adenitis	384a
	Tumors and New Growths of the Mediastinum	384b
	The Mediastinal Syndrome	384b
	Superior Mediastinal Syndrome	384b
	Lower Mediastinal Syndrome	384b
	Aneurysm	384b
	Mediastinal Emphysema	384c
	Mediastinal Hemorrhage	384c
XV	ANATOMY AND PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF THE HEART	387
	Anatomy	388
	The Mediastinum	388
	The Precordium	388
	The Pericardium	388
	The Heart	388
	Physical Examination	395
	Inspection	395
	Contour and Appearance of the Precordium	396
	Precordial Pulsations (Other Than the Apex Beat)	396
	The Apex Beat	397
	Palpation	402
	Palpable Vibrations	403
	The Pulse	404
	Object of Study of the Pulse	406
	Pathologic Changes of the Pulse	407
	Blood Pressure	411
	Hypertension and Hypotension	411
	Essential Hypertension	412
	Hypotension	413
	The Sphygmomanometer	413
	Percussion	415
	Cardiac Dullness	417
	Auscultation	422
	The Normal Heart Sounds	424
	Pathologic Heart Sounds	430
	Rhythm	434
	Electrocardiographic Interpretation of Heart Action	435
	Arrhythmia (Disturbance of the Heartbeat)	437
	Functional Tests for Determining Cardiac Capacity and Reserve	442
	Interpretation of the Circulation Time Tests	447
XVI	CARDIAC MURMURS	448
	Organic Murmurs	448
	Acquired Organic Murmurs	449
	Congenital Heart Murmurs	458
	Nonorganic or Functional Murmurs	460
	Musical Murmurs	464
	Extra Cardiac Sounds	464

CHAPTER	PAGE
XVII DISEASES OF THE HEART	466
Symptomatology of Cardiovascular Diseases	466
Acquired Diseases of the Heart	468
Diseases of the Pericardium	468
Diseases of the Myocardium	474
Diseases of the Endocardium	478
Carditis	491
Congenital Heart Disease	500
Anomalies of Position	500
Anomalies of Structure	500
Functional Abnormalities (Disturbances of Rhythm)	510
XVIII EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE VASCULAR AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEMS	523
The Arteries	523
Physical Examination of the Arteries	523
Diseases of the Arteries	525
Arteriosclerosis	525
Aortitis	526
Congenital Anomalies of the Aorta	526
Aneurysm	529
Peripheral Vascular Disease	535
Thromboangitis Obliterans	536
Raynaud's Disease	537
Erythromelalgia	537
Essential Thrombophilia	537
Embolie Occlusions of the Arteries	538
Periarteritis Nodosa	538
Acute Arteritis	539
Examination of the Capillaries	539
Examination of the Veins	539
Diseases of the Veins	540
General Venous Distention	540
Local Venous Distention	540
Venous Pulsation	541
Venous Hum	542
Phlebitis	542
Glomus Tumors	543
Venous Thrombosis	543
Telangiectasis (Angiomatosis)	543
Peripheral Circulation Function Tests	543
The Lymphatic System	545
Diseases of the Thoracic Duct	545
Disease of the Lymphatic Vessels	545
Disease of the Lymph Nodes	546
XIX DISEASES OF THE BLOOD-FORMING ORGANS ASSOCIATED WITH MICROSCOPIC CHANGES IN THE BLOOD	551
Terminology	551
The Blood Dyscrasias	552
The Anemias	553
Macrocytic Hyperchromic Anemia	553

CHAPTER	PAGE
<b>XIX DISEASES OF THE BLOOD-FORMING ORGANS</b>	
The Anemias ( <i>Continued</i> )	
Microcytic Hypochromic Anemia	555
Hemorrhagic Anemias	557
Aplastic Anemia	558
Hemolytic Anemia (Hyperplastic Anemia Hemolytic Icterus)	558
Blood Disease Presenting an Increase in the Number of Red Corpuscles	563
Polycythemia Vera (Erythemia Vaquez Osler Disease)	563
Blood Diseases in Which the Plasma and Platelets Are Chiefly Affected	563
Purpura	563
Hemophilia	564
Hereditary Hemorrhagic Telangiectases	565
Vitamin K Deficiency	565
Scurvy	565
Blood Diseases in Which the White Corpuscles Are Chiefly Affected	566
Leukemia (Leukosis)	566
Atypical Leukemias	567
Leukosarcoma	568
Lymphosarcoma	569
Agranulocytic Angina (Agranulocytosis Granulocytopenia Malignant Neutropenia)	569
Infectious Mononucleosis (Glandular Fever)	569
Hodgkin's Disease	569
<b>XX ANATOMY AND PHYSICAL EXAMINATION OF THE ABDOMEN</b>	573
Anatomic Landmarks	573
Topographic Anatomy of the Abdominal Viscera	575
Displacement of the Abdominal Viscera	580
Inspection of the Abdomen and Its Viscera	581
The Normal Abdomen	582
The Pathologic Abdomen	582
Palpation of the Abdomen and Its Viscera	586
Purpose of Abdominal Palpation	587
Percussion of the Abdomen and Its Viscera	597
Auscultation of the Abdomen and Its Viscera	599
<b>XXI EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE LIVER GALLBLADDER AND SPLEEN</b>	600
The Liver	600
Physical Examination of the Liver	600
Diseases of the Liver	601
Jaundice (Icterus)	601
Diseases of the Liver Characterized by Enlargement	605
Diseases Producing Diminution of the Liver	615
The Gallbladder	617
Physical Examination of the Gallbladder	617
Diseases of the Gallbladder	617
The Spleen	620
Physical Examination of the Spleen	620
Anomalies and Diseases of the Spleen	621
Anatomic Anomalies	621
Mobility of the Spleen	622
Acute Enlargement of the Spleen	622
Chronic Enlargement of the Spleen	623
Diseases of the Reticuloendothelial System	628

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXII THE ESOPHAGUS STOMACH AND PANCREAS	629
The Esophagus	629
Physical Examination of the Esophagus	629
<i>Diseases of the Esophagus</i>	629
Spasm of the Esophagus (Esophagismus)	629
Acute Esophagitis	630
Stricture of the Esophagus (Stenosis of Esophagus)	630
Carcinoma of the Esophagus	630
Rupture of the Esophagus	631
Dilatations and Diverticula	631
Plummer Vinson's Syndrome	631
The Stomach	632
Physical Examination of the Stomach	632
Symptomatology of Stomach Diseases	633
Appetite	634
Disturbance of Motor Function	634
Emesis	635
<i>Diseases of the Stomach</i>	641
Gastralgia (Gastrodynia Neuralgia of the Stomach)	641
Peptic Ulcer (Gastric Ulcer and Duodenal Ulcer)	641
Gastric Carcinoma	643
Acute Gastritis	645
Chronic Gastritis	645
Dilatation of the Stomach (Gastrectasis)	647
Hypertrophic Stenosis of the Pylorus	649
Gastroptosis and Enteroptosis (Glenard's Disease)	649
Neurosis of the Stomach	649
The Pancreas	651
Physical Examination of the Pancreas	651
<i>Diseases of the Pancreas</i>	651
Pancreatitis	651
Tumors of the Pancreas	654
Pancreatic Calculi	655
XXIII THE INTESTINES	656
Physical Examination of the Intestines	656
Physical Examination of the Rectum	656
<i>Diseases of the Intestines</i>	657
Displacement from Normal Position	657
Inflammation of the Intestinal Mucosa	659
Appendicitis	661
Colitis	663
Dilatation	667
Mesenteric Thrombosis or Embolism	668
Tumors of the Bowel	668
Intestinal Obstruction (Ileus)	669
Constipation	671
Symptoms Referable to the Anus and Rectum	671
Diseases of the Rectum and Anus	672
XXIV THE EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE UROGENITAL SYSTEM	679
The Kidneys	679
Physical Examination of the Kidneys	679
Unilateral Diseases of the Kidney	681
Hydronephrosis	681

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXIV THE EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE UROGENITAL SYSTEM	
The Kidneys	
Unilateral Diseases of the Kidneys ( <i>Continued</i> )	
Pyonephrosis	681
Cysts	682
Perinephritic Abscess	682
Hypernephroma	683
Amyloid Kidney	683
Tuberculosis	684
Carcinoma	684
Sarcoma	684
Floating Kidney	684
Bilateral Diseases of the Kidney	686
Acute Nephritis	686
Chronic Nephritis (Chronic Bright's Disease)	687
Uremic Coma	689
Congestive Kidney	690
Pyelonephritis and Other Infections of the Kidneys	690
Nephrosis	691
Toxic Kidney (Toxic Nephrosis)	691
The Bladder	692
Physical Examination of the Bladder	692
Diseases of the Bladder	692
Cystitis	692
Vesical Calculus	693
Tumors of the Bladder	693
Tuberculosis of the Bladder	694
Irritable Bladder	694
Diverticulum of the Bladder	694
The Genitalia	694
Examination of Female Genital Organs	694
Diseases of the Female Genital Organs	695
Diseases of the Vulva	695
Diseases of the Vagina	698
Displacements of the Uterus	699
Disease of the Cervix	699
Diseases of the Uterine Body (Fundus Uteri)	700
Disease of the Fallopian Tubes	703
Disease of the Ovaries	704
Examination of the Male Genital Organs	706
Diseases of the Male Genital Organs	707
Diseases of the Penis	707
Diseases of the Urethra	711
Diseases of the Scrotum	711
Disease of the Testes	713
Diseases of the Spermatie Cord	715
Disease of the Seminal Vesicles	716
Diseases of the Prostate	716
XXV EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE BONES AND JOINTS AND OF THE EXTREMITIES	721
Ossification Centers	721,
The Bones	722
Physical Examination of the Bones	722
Bone Diseases	723

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXV EXAMINATION AND DISEASES OF THE BONES AND JOINTS AND OF THE EXTREMITIES	
(Continued)	
The Joints	735
Physical Examination of the Joints	735
Diseases of the Joints (Arthritis)	736
The Extremities	738
The Upper Extremities	738
The Arms	738
The Hands and Fingers	739
The Lower Extremities	743
Muscles	743
Bones	743
Vessels	745
The Feet	745
Tocs	748
Congenital Deformities of the Spine and Lower Extremities	751
Elephantiasis ( <i>Lymphedema</i> )	752
Panniculitis	752
XXVI THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM	755
The Pituitary Gland	758
Anatomy and Physiology of the Pituitary Gland	758
Pituitary Hormones	760
Physiology of Pituitary Gland	761
Pathology	761
Diseases of Pituitary Origin	762
Hyperpituitarism	762
Hypopituitarism	765
The Thyroid Gland	773
Anatomy and Physiology of the Thyroid Gland	773
Disease of Thyroid Origin	774
Enlargement of the Thyroid Gland	775
Hypothyroidism of Thyroid Insufficiency	780
The Pineal Gland	783
Anatomy and Physiology of the Pineal Gland	783
Diseases of Pineal Origin	783
Macrogenitosomia Precoc	783
The Thymus Gland	784
Anatomy and Physiology of the Thymus Gland	784
Diseases of Thymus Origin	785
Hyperthymism	785
Other Possible Hyperthymic Conditions	787
Hypothymism	788
The Parathyroid Glands	788
Anatomy and Physiology of the Parathyroid Glands	788
Diseases of Parathyroid Origin	789
Hyperparathyroidism	789
Hypoparathyroidism	789
Tetany	790

CHAPTER

PAGE

XXVI THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM (*Cont. ued*)

The Adrenal Glands	792
The Suprarenal Glands	792
The Adrenal Cortex	792
Diseases of the Adrenal Cortex	793
The Adrenal Medulla	793
Diseases of the Adrenal Medulla	796
Other Adrenal Lesions	796
The Pancreas (Islands of Langerhans)	797
Anatomy and Physiology of the Islands of Langerhans	797
Diseases of Islands of Langerhans Origin	797
Hypoglycemia or Glycopenia	797
Hyperglycemia	798
The Gonads (Male and Female)	800
The Male Gonads	800
Endocrine Diseases of Male Gonad Origin	801
The Female Gonads	803
Endocrine Diseases of Ovarian Origin	804

XXVII ANATOMY PHYSIOLOGY AND EXAMINATION OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM 809

Anatomy and Physiology of the Nervous System	809
The Central or Cerebrospinal Nervous System	809
The Neuron	809
The Nerve Fibers	810
Degeneration and Regeneration	810
Nerve Trunks	811
The Plexuses	811
<i>The Cerebrospinal Fluid</i>	811
The Encephalon (The Brain)	811
The Cerebellum	814
The Pons (Pons Varioli)	815
The Medulla Oblongata (Spinal Bulb)	815
The Cranial Nerves	815
The Spinal Cord (Medulla Spinalis)	816
The Spinal Nerves	823
Spinal and Peripheral Localization	823
<i>Vegetative or Involuntary Nervous System</i>	823
Sympathetic and Parasympathetic	823
Neurologic Examination	828
History	828
Physical Examination	828
The General Examination	828
The Local Examination	828
Special Examination	829
Reflexes	831
Examination of Disturbances of the Speech Centers	842
Disturbances of Motility	843
Disturbances of Equilibrium and Orientation	849

XXVIII DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM 852

Organic Diseases of the Nervous System	852
Lesions of the Peripheral Nerves	852
Lesions of the Cranial Nerves	855

## CHAPTER

XXVIII	DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM	
	Organic Diseases of the Nervous System ( <i>Continued</i> )	861
	Lesions of the Spinal Cord	866
	Lesions of the Brain	868
	Cerebral Localization	872
	Vascular Lesions	873
	Other Organic Diseases of the Brain and Meninges	874
	Encephalitis	877
	Menngitis	883
	Diseases of the Vegetative Nervous System	883
	Angioneurosis (Tropho and Vasomotor Neurosis)	885
	'Functional Diseases of the Nervous System	886
	Mental Disease	886
	Nomenclature and Symptomatology	887
	Classification of Mental Diseases	
XXIX	THE VITAMINS AND VITAMIN DEFICIENCY DISEASES (AVITAMINOSIS)	897
	Natural Sources and Physiologic Action of Some of the Vitamins and Diseases Caused by Their Deficiency	897
	Vitamin A	897
	Vitamin B (Vitamin B Complex)	899
	Vitamin C (Cevitamic Acid)	906
	Vitamin D	908
	Vitamin E	911
	Vitamin K	911
	Resume of Better Known Vitamins Their Therapeutic Uses and Available Products	914
XXX	ALLERGY ITS CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS AND DIAGNOSIS	921
	Clinical Manifestations of Allergy	922
	Allergic Manifestations of the Eyes	922
	Allergic Manifestations of the Nose	923
	Allergic Manifestations of the Respiratory System	924
	Allergic Manifestations in the Digestive System	926
	Allergic Manifestations in the Skin	927
	Allergic Manifestations of the Nervous System	928
	Allergic Manifestations in the Cardiovascular System	928
	General Diagnosis of Allergy	928
	Test for Protein Sensitization	929
XXXI	GERIATRICS—SENESCENCE AND DISEASES OF OLD AGE	930
	General and Individual Longevity	930
	Physiologic Manifestations of Ageing	934
	Pathologic Changes of Old Age	935
	Premature Senility	937
	The Place of Geriatrics in Medicine	938
XXXII	SPECIAL EXAMINATIONS—INDUSTRIAL, LIFE INSURANCE MALINGERING AND PERIODIC HEALTH EXAMINATIONS	939
	The Examination of a Person Applying for a Position in Industry	940
	Health Defects as Determining Occupation	941
	The Examination of Persons Already in Industry	944
	Supervision of the Sanitary Conditions and Prevention of Avoidable Hazards	945



CHAPTER	PAGE
XXVII SPECIAL EXAMINATIONS — INDUSTRIAL LIFE INSURANCE MALINGERING AND PERIODIC HEALTH EXAMINATIONS ( <i>Continued</i> )	
Medical Examination for Life Insurance	946
Form of Questionnaire	947
Objective Examination	947
General External Examination	950
History	950
Physical Examination	951
Malingering	955
Simulated Pains and Disabilities	957
Simulated Good Health	961
Periodic Health Examinations	962
XXXIII URINALYSIS	967
<i>The Role of Laboratory Examinations in Diagnosis</i>	967
Method for Collecting and Examining the Urine	967
Characteristics of Normal Urine	968
Approximate Amounts of Protein Casts and Cellular Structures Found in the Urinary Sediments of Normal Men	969
Characteristics of Pathologic Urine	969
Constituents of the Urine and Their Clinical Significance	973
Albumin and Tests for Albuminuria	976
Glycosuria (Sugar in the Urine) and Tests for Glycosuria	981
Acetone and Diacetic Acid	983
Hematuria (Blood in the Urine)	984
Pyuria	985
Bile	986
Urobilin and Urobilinogen	986
Hormones in the Urine	986
Hematoporphyrin	987
Diazo Reaction	987
Microscopic Examination of the Urine	987
Epithelial Cells	988
Red Blood Cells	988
Casts or Urinary Cylinders	988
Miscellaneous Constituents of Urine	989
Crystalline Deposits (After I caught)	990
XXIV BLOOD EXAMINATION	992
Normal Blood Findings	992
Definition of Terms Employed in Hematology	993
Hemanalyses (Blood Examinations)	993
Blood Counts	994
Hemoglobin Findings	994
The Differential Count	995
<i>Significance of Abnormal Blood Counts</i>	995
Hemoglobin	995
Red Cells	996
Sedimentation of Red Cells and the Blood Sedimentation Test	997
The Leukocytes	1000
The Lymphocytes	1002
Arnetz Index	1003
The Schilling Index	1003
The Thrombocytes (Blood Platelets)	1005

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXIV BLOOD EXAMINATION	
Blood Counts ( <i>Continued</i> )	
Blood Grouping and Blood Typing	1005
Technic for Blood Matching	1006
Technic for Blood Grouping (Moss Classification)	1006
Behavior of Cells and Serum of Various Groups	1007
Blood Chemistry	1007
Pathologic Changes in the Blood Chemistry	1008
Acidosis and Ketosis	1013
Alkalosis	1017
Sulfanilamide Sulfapyridine and Sulfathiazole Concentration in the Blood	1017
Serologic Tests (Serology)	1018
Complement Fixation Test for Syphilis (Wassermann)	1021
Complement Fixation Test for Gonorrhea	1022
Complement Fixation Test for Tuberculosis	1022
Flocculation Test or the Precipitation Reaction for Syphilis	1022
XXXV EXUDATES TRANSUDATES AND BODY FLUIDS	1023
The Cerebrospinal Fluid	1023
Characteristics of the Cerebrospinal Fluid	1024
Abnormal Spinal Fluid Findings and Their Significance	1024
Thoracentesis	1027
Pericardial Puncture	1027
Paracentesis Abdominis	1028
Gastric Contents	1028
The Feces	1031
Characteristics of Normal and Abnormal Stools	1031
The Sputum	1033
Macroscopic Appearance of the Sputum	1033
Classification of the Sputum as to Its Physical Characteristics and Con- tents	1034
Chief Characteristics of Sputum in Various Conditions	1036
XXXVI FUNCTIONAL TESTS	1038
Renal Function Tests	1038
The Dye Tests	1038
Nitrogenous End Products Determination	1038
Liver Function Tests	1040
Bile Secreting Function	1041
Hippuric Acid Test	1043
Takata Ara Reaction	1043
Cholesterol Content of the Blood	1043
The Dye Tests	1043
The Glycogenic Function	1044
Widal Hemoclastic Crisis Test	1044
The Indican Reaction	1044
Basal Metabolism	1044
Specific Dynamic Action of Proteins	1045
Electrocardiography	1045
The Electrocardiograph	1045
Definitions of Terms Used in Electrocardiography	1049
Analysis of Records	1049
The Polygraph	1050
The Sphygmograph	1052

CHAPTER	PAGE
\\\\VII OTHER DIAGNOSTIC TESTS	1054
Bacterial Identification	1054
<i>The Neufeld Method for Typing Pneumococci</i>	1054
Pregnancy Tests and Their Clinical Values	1055
Urine Test for Testicle Tumors	1058
Miscellaneous Tests	1058
Test for Amebiasis	1058
Test for Bacillary Dysentery	10 8
Test for Diphtheria	1058
Tests for Glanders	1058
Test for Granuloma Ingu nale	1059
Test for Infectious Mononucleosis (Glandular Fever)	1059 1064
Test for Jaundice Spirochetal (Weil s Disease)	1059
Tests for Hodgkin s Disease	1059
Tests for Hyperthyroidism	1059
Test for Pancreatitis and Hyperthyroidism	1060
Test for Psittacosis	1060
Test for Rabies	1060
Tests for Scarlet Fever	1060
Tests for Trichinosis	1061
Tests for Tuberculosis	1061
Tests for Cerebrospinal Tuberculosis	1062
Tests for Undulant Fever	1062
Agglutination Tests	1062
Tests for Pancreatic Disease Other Than Diabetes	1063
Tests for Kala Azar	1063
The Congo Red Test for Amyloidosis	1064
The Heterophile Antibody Test	1064
XXXVIII PARASITES AND PARASITIC DISEASES	1067
Spirochetes (Spirochaetales)	1067
The Protozoa	1067
The Sarcodina Possessing Pseudopodia	1067
The Sporozoa	1067
Toxoplasmic Encephalitis	1068
Systemic Toxoplasmic Infection of Adults	1068
The Parasitic Infusoria	1068
The Mastigophora or Flagellates	1068
Trypanosomiasis	1068
Chagas Disease (South American Trypanosomiasis)	1069
Kala Azar	1069
Cutaneous Leishmaniasis	1070
American Leishmaniasis	1070
Flagellate Diarrhea	1070
The Metazoa	1071
Hepatic Distomiasis	1071
Pulmonary Distomiasis	1072
Hemic Distomiasis	1072
The Cestodes (Tema or Tapeworm)	1073
Intestinal Teniasis	1074
<i>The Diphyllobothrium Latum</i>	1074
<i>Tenia Saginata</i>	1074
<i>Tenia Solium</i>	1074

CHAPTER	PAGE
XX\VIII PARASITES AND PARASITIC DISEASES ( <i>Continued</i> )	
Hymenolepis Nano	1074
Somatic Teniasis	1075
Diphyllobothrium Mansoni	1075
Cysticercus Cellulosae	1076
Tenia Multiceps	1077
Echinococcus Granulosa	1077
Echinococcus or Hydatid Disease	1077
Nematodes (Round Worms)	1077
Ascaris Lumbricoides	1077
Oxyuris Vermicularis	1077
Ascaris Alata	1078
Strongyloides Stercoralis	1079
Dracunculus Medinensis (Guina or Medina Worm)	1079
Filaria	1080
Wuchereria Bancrofti or Filaria Bancrofti	1080
Filariasis	1080
Onchocerca Volvulus	1080
Onchocerca Caecutiens	1081
Mansonella	1081
Loa Loa	1081
Trichinella Spiralis	1081
Trichinosis	1082
Trichuris Trichiura	1082
Ancylostomidae	1083
Hookworm Disease	1083
Insects and Other Arthropods	1084
Flies	1084
Myiasis	1087
Mosquitoes	1087
The Anophelent Mosquitoes	1089
The Culicini Mosquitoes	1089
Mites or Chiggers and Gnats	1090
Bedbugs	1092
Ticks	1092
(Democentor Andersoni)	1092
Lice	1092
Fleas	1092
The Crustacea	1093
Fungi and Moniliumycotic and Monilia Infections	1093
The Mycoses	1093
Actinomycoses	1093
Mycetoma	1094
Blastomycosis	1094
Streptothricosis	1094
Histoplasmosis of Darling	1095
Coccidioidal Granuloma	1095
Cryptococcosis and Torulosis	1095
Rhinosporidiosis	1095
The Moniliases	1095
Cutaneous Moniliasis	1096
Pulmonary Moniliasis	1096

# ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
Abdomen divided into four regions	573
Abdomen division of into nine regions by four lines	574
Abdomen four regions of and their contents	574
Abdomen nine regions of and their contents	575
Abdominal enlargement due to large liver	592
Achilles reflex, technic for eliciting	837
Achondroplastic dwarf	161
Achondroplastic dwarf head and face of	160
Acne rosacea	138
Acrodermatitis (Raynaud's disease)	743
Acromegalic hands	765
Acromegaly	764
Actinomycosis	202
Adenocarcinoma of spleen	625
Adenolipomatosis	168
Adiposis dolorosa	770
Adrenal cortical tumor	794
Adrenals	793
Allison's differential stethoscope	314
Alopecia congenital	163
Amiotrophic lateral sclerosis with bulbar palsy	170
Anasarca	151
Anatomic position of the lungs in relation to the ribs sternum, and pleura	221
Aneurysmal dilatation of an artery	530
Aneurysm of aortic arch	248
Aneurysm of aortic arch Roentgenogram	531
Aneurysm of left ventricle	478
Aneurysm of neck	203
Aneurysm of sinus of Valsalva	504
Aneurysm of thoracic aorta	249
Aneurysm of thoracic aorta with erosion of seventh and eighth ribs pointing posteriorly	532
Aneurysm of thoracic aorta with erosion of sternum	532
Ankylostoma duodenalis and Necator Americanus (heads of)	1084
Anopheles punctipennis A quadrimaculatus and A crucians (females)	1088
Aorta coarctation of	509
Aorta congenital defects	527
Aorta retrosternal drawing of x ray plate	529
Aorta showing double aortic arch	528
Aortic insufficiency x rays	419
Aortic regurgitation	451
Aortic regurgitation	489
Aortic regurgitation and double mitral lesion	487
Aortic stenosis	451
Aortic stenosis	490
Aortic stenosis	491
Aortic valve auscultation of	424
Apex beat auscultation of	423
Apex beat auscultation of anterior view	423
Apex beat combined method of palpating and auscultating	422
Apex beat normal position of	398
Apical impulse normal location of	402
Arbitrary lines in regions of posterior aspect of chest	219
Arbitrary lines on anterior aspect of chest	214
Arsenical dermatitis	136
Arthritis deformans	736
Ascaris lumbricoides male female egg	1078
Auricular fibrillation Electrocardiogram	522
Auscultation of lungs direct or immediate	312
Auscultatory percussion of abdomen	598
Auscultatory percussion technic	293
Babinski reflex technic for eliciting	834
Basal metabolism rate chart	1045
Bell's palsy	171

	PAGE
Biceps reflex technic for eliciting	838
Binaural stethoscope Bowles chest piece	315
Binaural stethoscope Ford's chest piece	316
Bladder papilloma	693
Blood smear	(color) facing 561
Bone cyst (osteitis fibrosa cystica)	729
Brain the base of the	(color) facing 812
Branchial cyst	202
Breathings 1 Vesicular 2 bronchovesicular 3 bronchial	319
Breath sounds heard over various parts of normal chest	321
Broadbent's sign	397
Broad flat thin chest small anteroposterior diameter	240
Bronchiectasis	353
Bronchopneumonia	366
Brown Sequard's paralysis	862
Bundle branch block left	517
Camman's stethoscope	314
Carcinomata multiple of lung	368
Carcinoma of breast	383
Carcinoma of breast ulcerating	383
Carcinoma of esophagus	630
Carcinoma of esophagus showing stenosis x ray picture	631
Carcinoma of eye	181
Carcinoma of genitalia and rectum	674
Carcinoma of lip	190
Carcinoma of lungs metastatic	370
Carcinoma of penis	710
Carcinoma of pylorus	(color) facing 646
Carcinoma of pylorus annular	(color) facing 644
Carcinoma of pylorus ulcerative	(color) facing 644
Carcinoma of transverse colon	669
Carcinomatosis of liver	607
Cardiac dullness technic for outlining by immediate percussion	417
Cardiac landmarks of the chest wall projection of more important	(color) facing 392
Cavernous and amphoric breathing	331
Cavity in lung yielding tympany	304
Cerebrospinal fluid changes in disease of the central nervous system	1026
Cerebrum showing internal capsule cross section of	(color) facing 826
Cerebrum side view	813
Chancere of lip	188
Chancroid and abscess of penis	708
Charcot's elbow joint	737
Chart of body fluids	1016
Chlorosis blood of	(color) facing 556
Chrysops discalis	1085
Claw hand	738
Clubfoot, various types	747
Coiled position	120
Coin test author's modification	308
Coin test, technic for eliciting	307
Collar of Stokes	384c
Complementary spaces technic for outlining	298
Composition of normal blood table	1009
Compressing a pulsating vessel in neck to note if pulsation is above or below point of compression and if vessel fills from above or below	204
Conductive system left ventricle	426
Condyloma latum of lip	188
Congenital heart disease pulmonary stenosis patent foramen ovale	501
Congenital hernia of spinal membrane	750
Coronary occlusion acute electrocardiogram	497
Coronary occlusion anterior electrocardiogram	498
Coronary occlusion anterior electrocardiogram	499
Crepitant rales	342
Crepitant subcrepitant, small moist chart	342
Cretin	782
Cretinism	159
Crossed hands to check up fremitus perceived by palpating with uncrossed hands	269

	PAGE
Cutler's blood sedimentation test chart	999
Deformity, congenital of extremity	751
Dermal and intradermal tests	(color) facing 922
Dermal tests	(color) facing 922
Dermatitis herpetiformis	141
D'spines sign	335
Determining expansile pulsation	266
Diaphragmatic hernia	381
•Diastole	427
Digitalis intoxication Electrocardiogram	518
Diphylobothrium latum (proglotid)	1075
Dorsal recumbent position	116
Dorsosacral position	116
Duodenal ulcer	642
Ear drum membrana tympani and structures visible	184
Eczema chronic squamous	146
Edebohl's dorsal position	116
Edema of face	169
Electrocardiogram normal	1047
Electrocardiograms normal and abnormal	511
Electrocardiograms normal and abnormal	512
Electrocardiograph Four normal leads	436
Electrocardiographic wave primary	435
Electrocardiography Three derivations	1046
Elephantiasis	545
Elephantiasis bilateral	546
Elephantiasis symptomatic	751
Emphysematous chest diagram	235
Emphysematous chest posteriolateral view	237
Emphysematous chest shoulders high no supra- or infraclavicular depressions	238
Emphysematous chest with right sided pleural effusion	243
Encephalitis lethargica	874
Endocarditis chronic sclerotic	481
Endocarditis subacute bacterial	480
Enterobis vermicularis adult male and female and egg with fully developed larva	1078
Epigastric hernia	591
Epithelioma	149
Epithelioma of lower lip	188
Epithelioma of prepuce and glans penis	709
Erysipelas	137
Erythema multiforme	133
Erythrocytes various forms of	(color) facing 554
Esophagus	629
Eunuchoidism congenital	802
Exanthemata commoner types of infectious	(color) facing 136
Exophthalmic goiter	165
Exophthalmic goiter	779
Favus	145
Femoral hernia	585
Fibrosis of left lung diagram	235
Fissures of lungs	222
Fissures of lungs and quadrilateral space	222
Flagellates (giardia intestinalis trichomonis hominis chilomastix mesnili)	1070
Fowler's position	116
Froehlich's syndrome	769
Fundus normal	(color) facing 172
Funnel breast	242
Gangrene (advanced)	749
Gangrene of toes	749
Gastric analysis chart for plotting	1029
Gastric ulcer	(color) facing 642
Gastric ulcer callous	(color) facing 642
Gastric ulcer scar	(color) facing 642
Gastritis chronic	(color) facing 646
Gastritis hypertrophic polypoid	(color) facing 646
Gastroenterostomy stoma	(color) facing 644
Genu valgum (knock knee)	744

	PAGE
Genu varum (bowlegs in Paget's disease)	744
Glossina morsitans	1085
Glossina palpalis	1085
Glucose tolerance chart	1013
Goiter toxic adenomatous	776
Gordon reflex technic for eliciting	835
Granuloma fungoides	742
Granuloma inguinale	696
Granuloma of penis	709
Grocco's paravertebral triangle of dullness	301
Gumma of forehead	148
Gutter chest	242
Hand Schuller-Christian's disease	730
Hand Schuller-Christian's disease	731
Harelip and cleft palate	188
Hearing testing for	185
Heart and great vessels anterior aspect of normal	393
Heart anterior view of right chambers of with the great vessels	389
Heart aorta and great vessels position of in relation to anterior chest walls and ribs	392
Heart block, complete	515
Heart conduction system of	425
Heart left auricle and ventricle	390
Heart lesions congenital	507
Heart right auricle and ventricle	390
Heart showing buttonhole valvular stenosis	484
Heart valves	391
Heart valves anatomical position	391
Heart valves points indicating clinical position of	392
Hemangioma	741
Hemiplegia	867
Herpes zoster	139
Hirschsprung's disease	668
Hodgkin's disease	201
Hodgkin's disease of liver	614
Hodgkin's disease of spleen	627
Horner's syndrome	173
Hutchinson's teeth	192
Hydatid cysts in deltoid muscle	735
Hydrocele	712
Hydrocephalus	159
Hydrocephalus with hypopituitarism	160
Hydropneumothorax	378
Hypernephroma	682
Hyperthymism well nourished type with extreme hypogonadism	786
Hypogenesis of phalanges	739
Hypothenar palpation for fremitus	270
Hypothenar palpation for fremitus	271
Ichthyosis	147
Immediate heart percussion technic	417
Infantilism	767
Infantilism of Brissaud's type	768
Inguinal hernia technic for palpating	707
Insects in which the adult stage is important	1091
Insects in which the larval stage is important	1091
Inspecting lip through glass slide for capillary pulsation in case of aortic regurgitation	539
Inspection of abdomen for peristaltic movements and local bulgings	582
Inspect on of chest and upper abdomen for slight irregularities and pulsations	228
Inspection of upper portion of chest to note bilateral equality of respiratory expansion	227
Inspect on for symmetrical respiratory chest movements	227
Inspiration expiration	320
Inspiratory expiratory ratio of various types of breathing	322
Intestinal flagellates giardia intestinalis trichomonas hominis (intestinal) chilomastix mesnili	1070
Intraventricular septal opening	508
Irregularities of chest within normal limits	229
Kernig's sign technic for eliciting	837
Kidney cystic	681



	PAGE
Kidneys relation of to spleen spinous processes and ribs	578
Knee chest position	116
Knee jerk with ulnar surface of hand	836
Kronig's isthmus technic for percussing	295
Kyphoscoliosis with lordosis	247
Kyphosis of lower dorsal and lumbar vertebrae	750
Larvae of trichinella spiralis in process of encapsulation in striated skeletal muscle	1082
Left axis deviation	438
Left lung showing greater fissure and upper and lower lobes	223
Leprosy	139
Leprosy	160
Lethargic encephalitis with cataleptic phenomena	166
Leukocytes stages of maturation of	(color) facing 553
Lipodystrophia progressiva	772
Lipoma of neck diffuse	203
Litten's sign	254
Liver and gallbladder anatomic position	577
Liver polycystic	610
Liver technic for palpating	596
Lobar pneumonia gray hepatization	363
Lobar pneumonia red hepatization	365
Lordosis	247
Lung consolidation yielding a dull note	300
Lung new growths of yielding relative dullness	300
Lupus erythematosus	147
Lymphatic leukemia blood of	(color) facing 567
Lymphatic leukemia representative smear from patient with chronic	(color) facing 569
Lymphogranuloma inguinale elephantiasis of vulva	697
Lymphosarcoma	568
Macrocephalus	158
Mediastinal tumor	384a
Mediate percussion of abdomen locating lower edge of stomach	597
Melanoma	734
Melanotic sarcoma diffuse of the thoracic and abdominal viscera	591
Method of noting expansion of bases of lungs	264
Microcephalic idiot	161
Miliary tuberculosis	375
Mitral regurgitation	450
Mitral regurgitation	482
Mitral stenosis	450
Mitral stenosis	483
Mosquitoes anopheles and culex pipiens showing characteristic resting postures	1087
Mosquitoes heads showing characteristics of males and females of cutex qu nquefasciatus anopheles and Aedes Aegypti	1089
Mosquitolike insects belonging to the families chironomidae simuliidae and psychodidae and their larvae	1090
Multiple myeloma	248
Myelogenic leukemia blood of	(color) facing 557
Myeloid leukemia representative blood smear from a patient with chronic	(color) facing 568
Myocardial degeneration	476
Myxedema	164
Myxedema	781
Necator Americanus	1084
Neurofibromatosis (Von Recklinghausen's disease)	144
Normal adult chest diagram	235
Normal chest x ray of	275
Normal female chest	279
Normal heart and lung x ray of	418
Normal lung over which vesicular resonance is elicited	300
Normal male chest	228
Obesity thyrotoxic	115
Occupational deformity of hands	742
Omphalocele (umbilical hernia)	585
Opisthotonos	121
Orthopercussion technic	416
Osteitis deformans (Paget's disease)	728
Osteitis fibrosa cystica	730

	PAGE
Osteitis fibrosa cystica	790
Osteoma of phalanx	731
Osteomyelitis	723
Osteosis multiple congenital	732
Ova of the commoner human parasites	1076
Palpating anterior aspect of chest for chest expansion and tactile fremitus	263
Palpating apices of lungs	263
Palpating apices of lungs	269
Palpating for anteroposterior chest expansion	262
Palpating for hernia during cough	707
Palpating for lateral chest expansion and tactile fremitus	262
Palpating the upper posterior aspect of chest for tactile fremitus	270
Palpating trachea to note its position and proximity to the sternocleidomastoid muscle	199
Palpation of abdomen reinforced	587
Pancreas polycystic	654
Pancreas relation of to gallbladder duodenum left costal angle and spleen	578
Paralysis of associated ocular movements	180
Parkinson's syndrome (postencephalitis lethargica)	165
Parotid sarcoma	168
Parotid tumor	167
Patellar reflex technic for eliciting	836
Patent ductus arteriosus	503
Patent foramen ovale	506
Peliosis rheumatica	136
Pellagra	134
Pellagra	204
Pemphigus	140
Percussion, direct immediate or palmar technic	286
Percussion direct or immediate over a bony prominence	285
Percussion flexor finger upward	292
Percussion of axillary region technic	210
Percussion of posterior aspect of chest technic	290
Percussion of supraclavicular space technic	291
Percussion of thorax	415
Percussion of thorax technic	289
Percussion position of flexor finger in downward stroke	292
Percussion stroke	292
Percussion stroke force required to reach lung lesions	293
Periarteritis nodosa	538
Pericardial effusion	244
Pericardial effusion	420
Pericardial effusion	470
Pericarditis acute	469
Pericarditis adhesive electrocardiogram	471
Pericarditis chronic obliterative	473
Pericardium chronic obliterative tuberculosis of	472
Pernicious anemia blood of	555
Phthisical chest	(color) facing 241
Phthisionoid chest	239
Phthisis acute pneumonic	375
Phthisis chronic ulcerative	372
Pigeon chest diagram	235
Pineal tumor with hydrocephalus	784
Pituitary basophilism (Cushing's syndrome)	766
Pituitary cachexia, Simmond's disease	114
Pituitary gigantism	763
Pituitary gland photomicrograph	759
Pituitary obesity	771
Pituitary tumor	871
Pleural effusion yielding flatness	300
Pneumonia, chronic interstitial	367
Pneumonoconosis	361
Pneumothorax artificial technic for entering pleural cavity	1027
Polydactylism	751
Polydactylism (supernumerary finger)	739
Polygram Time of events in waves of	1052

	PAGE
Polygraph applied	1051
Polyneuritic wrist drop	741
Position of examiner's fingers for detecting expansile pulsation	265
Posture denoting pain in right lower abdomen	118
Pregnancy at term and congenital dislocation of both femurs	750
Progressive neuromuscular atrophy of familial type	865
Pseudohermaphroditism	801
Psoriasis	146
Pubertas precox	804
Pulmonary abscess	357
Pulmonary atelectasis causing left sided unilateral retraction	246
Pulmonary atelectasis causing left sided unilateral retraction posterior view	246
Pulmonary congestion	355
Pulmonary infarct	360
Pulmonary osteoarthropathy (clubbed fingers)	740
Pulmonary regurgitation	453
Pulmonary stenosis	453
Pulmonary stenosis	502
Pulmonary tuberculosis	371
Pulmonary valve auscultation of	423
Pupillary reflex arcs lesions and symptoms of the	(color) facing 176
Purpura	564
Purpura hemorrhagica	135
Pyelographic study Normal pelvis	685
Rachitic chest pigeon breast deformity	240
Rachitic chest showing rachitic rosary	239
Radial pulses comparing both	405
Radial pulse technic for taking	405
Radicular distribution of sensory areas anterior	821
Radicular distribution of sensory areas posterior	821
Rales cavernous and amphoric	339
Rales dry large and small	338
Rales moist large and small	337
Rales stage of respiration in which they are heard	344
Rectum, prolapsed	656
Red blood cells stages in formation of	(color) facing 552
Reduplication of first and second heart sounds	429
Reflex centers	826
Regions and contents of left lateral aspect of chest	218
Regions and contents of right lateral aspect of chest	218
Regions of anterior and lateral surfaces of chest	217
Relative lengths of first sound short pause (intracyclic) second sound and long pause	428
Relaxation thorough (dorsal inertia)	117
Renal calculi multiple in both kidneys	684
Rheumatoid arthritis	741
Rickets	727
Rickety chest diagram	235
Right axis deviation	437
Right bundle branch block	516
Right lung showing greater and lesser fissures and upper middle and lower lobes	223
Sarcoma of knee	734
Sarcoma of parotid	167
Sarcoma of spleen	624
Sarcoma of tibia	733
Scaphoid abdomen	586
Scapulae, relation of to the ribs	212
Scurvy	135
Sensory nerves of skin anterior aspect of trunk and leg	821
Sibilian rales	341
Sickle cell anemia representative smear from patient with	(color) facing 560
Simmonds disease Pituitary cachexia	114
Simple ulcer of tongue	193
Sims position anterior view	116
Sims position posterior view	116
Sound qualities resume	283

	PAGE
Spinal cord cross section	817
Spinal localization	824
Spinal puncture technic	1023
Spinal reflex arc	832
Spindle shaped chest rachitic	241
Spinous processes of vertebrae	213
Spleen, enormous enlargement of	567
Spleen normal position	577
Spleen or kidney palpating for	596
Splenomedullary leukemia blood of	(color) facing 566
Split first and second heart sounds	430
Sputum semeiology of the	(color) facing 1034
Stethoscope monaural	313
Stomach neoplasm roentgenogram	644
Stomach, position of in relation to anterior abdominal walls and ribs	575
Stomach ulcer perforating	642
Strabismus	181
Strongyloides stercoralis male and female	1079
Subcrepitant rales	340
Submaxillary tumor benign	201
Supraclavicular spaces and epigastric angle	216
Syndactylism hands	740
Syphilis pustular secondary	142
Syphilis secondary	148
Syphilis secondary (macular rash)	132
Syphilitic knee joint (Charcot's joint)	726
Syphiloderm papular	143
Systole	427
Tactile fremitus expansile pulsation and thrill position of hand for palpating	403
Tapeworms heads and segments of <i>tenia solium</i> <i>tenia saginata</i> and <i>diphyllobothrium latum</i>	1073
Technic for eliciting fluctuation	590
Technic for measuring the antero posterior diameter of chest	237
Technic for measuring the circumference of chest and chest expansion	234
Technic for measuring transverse diameter of chest	236
Technic for palpating in appendiceal region for muscle rigidity and tenderness	589
Teeth gums and lips technic for inspection of	187
Tetany parathyroid disease	791
Thorax normal anatomical relations of clavicles ribs sternum and nipples	211
Thymus gland of full time fetus	785
Thyroid and parathyroid	788
Thyroid gland vascular supply	774
Thyropituitary obesity	115
Tibia sabre shaped	725
Tinea sycosis	144
Tinea tonsurans	14
Topographic anatomy of abdomen	576
Topographic relations of spinal cord segments of vertebral bodies spinous processes and points of exit of spinal nerve roots	819
Torsion spasm	882
Torsion spasm	883
Trendelenburg position	116
Triceps reflex technic for eliciting	838
Trichocephalus trichiura egg female and male	1083
Trichinella spiralis adult male and female	1081
Tricuspid regurgitation	452
Tricuspid stenosis	452
Tricuspid valve auscultation of	424
Tuberculosis cutis	205
Tuberculosis of penis	710
Tuberculosis of spleen	626
Tuberculous dactylitis	724
Tuberculous ulcerations of tongue	194
Tumor of lungs	369
Tumor of tongue	195
Ulnar palpation to elicit regional tactile fremitus	271
Ulnar percussion to elicit gallbladder tenderness	286
Unilateral enlargement of chest due to pleural effusion	243

	PAGE
Unilateral posture	119
Unilateral retraction of chest due to disease of chest wall	245
Unilateral retraction of chest due to paralysis of chest muscles	244
Unilateral retraction of chest due to rib resection	245
Uterus prolapse of	699
Vaginal cyst	698
Varicose veins	540
Varicose veins	745
Vegetative nervous system scheme of the	(color) facing 827
Veins enlarged superficial abdominal	584
Ventricular extrasystole and myocardial damage Electrocardiogram	519
Vertical lines anterior aspect of the chest	215
Vertical lines lateral aspect of the chest	215
Vincent's angina affecting the gums	190
Vomiting pathogenesis of	635
Walcher position	116
Web fingers	740
Xanthoma tuberosum	732
Yaws	142
Yaws	149

## SECTION 1

# Preliminary Considerations and History Taking

## CHAPTER I

### Preliminary Considerations and History Taking

#### I. Introduction

The practice of medicine is founded upon two essentials, diagnosis and treatment. Of these, diagnosis is the first and most fundamental, for, depending upon it, the particular type of treatment necessary to overcome the disease is instituted. Since diagnosis is the cornerstone of medical science upon which the entire superstructure of its modern practice has been built, to master it is, or should be, the aim of everyone who undertakes the art of healing. It is true that the chief end in view is to overcome disease by treatment, but this must be based upon a recognition of the seat and the nature of the abnormal processes to be remedied. That knowledge can be reached only by *a careful and thorough examination*.

A complete diagnosis has been divided by S. Solis Cohen into four phases, or, as he terms them, partial diagnoses: (1) The symptomatic or clinical diagnosis, based on the characteristic features of a given clinical type of case, (2) the lesion or pathologic diagnosis, which concerns itself with the site of the original lesion, (3) the physiologic or functional diagnosis, which has to do with the manner in which observable disturbances of functions are produced, and (4) the etiologic or causal diagnosis, dealing with the specific cause or causes of the disease in question.

To satisfy completely all these postulates one would have to master every intricacy of the diagnostic art. Therefore, it is not very often that anyone is ready to say, or to feel assured, that he has arrived at a complete diagnosis. The

best that one can do in many instances is to approximate this ideal as closely as possible, and to embrace every opportunity for study, practice and investigation.

The basis of diagnosis is symptomatology and physical examination, but it is also true that there are other means of ascertaining the presence and cause of disease, and that in certain conditions our final decision must be based upon supplementary methods such as the roentgen rays and other laboratory aids. Yet, useful as these are, it is still to symptomatology and physical examination that we are obliged to look for our chief source of information. The availability of chemical and instrumental aids to diagnosis has tended to make physicians undervalue the importance of skill in physical examination, and to mislead students into the belief that time spent in acquiring such skill is today of small importance. The fallacy of such reasoning will soon become apparent to the physician whose work leads him away from the big centers of population or from the well equipped city hospitals. The man who has put his faith in x-ray machines, calorimeters, electrocardiographs, etc., and failed to perfect himself in the art of physical examination, will find that his labor has been largely misdirected. As the great clinician Harvey Cushing wisely stated:

"We have instruments of precision in increasing numbers with which we and our hospital assistants at untold expense make tests and take observations, the vast majority of which are but sup

plementary to and as nothing compared with the careful study of the patient by a keen observer using his eyes and ears and fingers and a few simple aids. The practice of medicine is an art and can never approach being a science even though it may adopt and use for its purposes certain instruments originally designed in the process of scientific research.

Many mistaken diagnoses result from insufficient or faulty history evaluation of symptoms and physical examination. It is incumbent upon the physician to examine the patient's entire body, and not to rest content with investigating only that part of it to which the patient himself has directed notice nor even to confine his attention to a particular area where he may have detected some irregularity that conforms to his or the patient's preconceived idea of the cause of the trouble. Many an otherwise keen observer and excellent diagnostician is possessed of some obsession particularly so if he specializes in one of the branches of medicine so that he approaches every patient with a preconceived diagnosis and attempts to so interpret the patient's symptoms as to make them fit that diagnosis. There are few morbid states that do not present at least one symptom which to a mind filled with a particular clinical picture can indicate the disease which holds his special interest. No matter how thorough the examination the interpretation will be colored by this preconceived idea.

The practitioner who has thoroughly mastered the art of eliciting an adequate history and of conducting a physical examination must then bring to his work not only a skilled hand and a trained eye but a free and open mind. Then

only may he hope to interpret correctly what he feels and sees and sum up the evidences of his senses with unbiased judgment. Only such an attitude can approximate the ideal of a complete diagnosis.

## II Evaluation of History or Anamnesis

Among the requisites for a correct diagnosis is the eliciting of a careful 'history'. The history should include all the information obtainable concerning the development of the patient's illness up to the time the physician first sees him as well as a description of the symptoms which are in evidence at the time of examination also a history of previous illness and of familial predisposition.

Questions are to be framed so that the patient finds it a simple matter to give accurate answers. It is, however, best to refrain from asking leading questions thus avoiding the filling of the patient's mind with any obsession. At the same time the physician should carefully side step any possibility of falling into the same pitfall. To learn the type of questions to be asked and the manner of approach requires time and experience which may be gained through consultation and interviews with patients seen in daily practice.

The physician has to learn to discount many of the statements made to him in regard to past illnesses and has to look with suspicion upon the nomenclature which the average nonmedical person attaches to previous indispositions from which he may have suffered. This is especially true of such terms as rheumatism or nervous disorders. Patients are often also apt either to exaggerate or to underestimate pre-



## Preliminary Considerations

vious ailments or may deny a previous infection or venereal disease. The experienced diagnostician listens patiently to all that is told him and believes as much of it as circumstances warrant and the physical examination corroborate and often has to surmise what is left untold. Thus it will be seen that skillful history taking requires the finesse of a diplomat and the tact of a father-confessor to say nothing of a very good knowledge of men and of medicine. Such things cannot be done by rote and no textbook can teach them.

The patient's history will disclose the type of disease from which he suffers whether acute, subacute or chronic and will indicate the kind of studies required in order to diagnose his ailment. A proper diagnosis can be made only after evaluating the history and the symptoms presented by the patient together with a thorough physical examination and such laboratory and special examinations as may be suggested by the history, the symptomatology and the physical signs.

In order to follow the course of an illness and to note its progress and the value of the treatment and to be able to formulate a prognosis it is often necessary to review daily the progress of the disease and to note the condition of the patient, the development of new symptoms and signs and to obtain from the attendant a history of all that has occurred since the physician's previous visit. In many instances it is necessary to evaluate daily or oftener the physical signs of the affected parts and of the vital organs and to repeat certain of the laboratory examinations and when necessary to have new tests made. It is a good plan for the student of medicine to develop as early as possible

keen powers of observation so that he may become acquainted with the physiognomy of disease. Certain diseases so stamp themselves upon the individual as to endow him with definite characteristics. The importance of seeing what one is looking at cannot be overestimated.

### III History Taking

**Identity** The name, address, occupation, sex, age, nationality and marital condition of the patient are to be recorded.

**Chief Complaint** The patient is interrogated as to his ailment and the chief complaints and his answer is written down in his own words.

**Family History** This includes the medical history of father, mother, brothers, sisters, uncles, aunts, cousins—if living, health of each; if dead, cause of death and age at which it occurred. Inquiry should also be made about any diseases that may run in the family, especially with reference to tuberculosis, diabetes, gout, epilepsy, cancer, hypertension, apoplexy, mental disorders, cardiovascular disease, digestive disturbances and endocrinopathies.

**Personal History** This includes the history of the patient from birth to the present time. Inquiry is made as to the following:

Diseases of childhood and complications, if any.  
Diseases of adolescence and adulthood, especially venereal diseases.

Operations or serious injuries.

Habits—tobacco, alcohol, drugs, tea and coffee.  
Maturbation during youth.

Past occupations.

Place of birth—rural, suburban or urban and size of community.

Countries in which patient has resided.

Social condition and if married, health of spouse, number of children and their health, if any children are dead, cause of death.

Any miscarriages.

Then inquiry is made specifically regarding the patient's past general health with reference to the following systems

**Gastrointestinal System** This is investigated as to the appetite, the extent to which food is chewed, "indigestion" and symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, belching regurgitation, dysphagia, heartburn, abdominal pain and its radiation and relationship to ingestion of food, jaundice, hematemesis, as well as regards the condition of bowels type of stool color of stool and whether bright red or black at any time, and hemorrhoids The weight is investigated as to the best, the average and the present weight of the patient

**Respiratory System:** Here it is important to note susceptibility to colds, sore throat, tonsillitis or quinsy Inquiry is also made as to Hoarseness, cough and expectoration, type and time of cough and whether coughing spell is ever followed by vomiting, hemoptysis, odor and amount of expectoration, night sweats, shortness of breath, pain during respiration

**Cardiovascular System.** Inquiry should be made as to shortness of breath on exertion, the amount of exertion necessary to bring on dyspnea, the occurrence of orthopnea, precordial pain its radiation and the relationship between precordial pain and exertion, edema of ankles, choking sensation in neck, syncope or vertigo and any cardiac palpitation, also whether or not the patient is conscious of missed beats or paroxysmal tachycardia, of throbbing sensation in the neck, and of the occurrence at any time of hemoptysis or hematemesis

**Urinary System:** Attention should be paid to the presence or absence of headaches edema of eyelids blurred

vision frequency of urination—day and night, burning on urination, incontinence, difficulty in starting or stopping stream, distortion of stream, the occurrence of hematuria, the color, quantity and odor of the urine and in women, whether coughing, laughing or sneezing is accompanied by spurts of urine

**Nervous System** Inquiry should be made as to the vision of each eye, the hearing capacity, the presence of otorrhea tinnitus aurium and vertigo palsies or tremors and of areas of anesthesia, hyperesthesia, paresthesia or myesthesia The emotional state is to be investigated, noting the presence of depressions, expansions, indifferences hallucinations, illusions, delusions, fears and phobias and the state of memory The patient's station, gait, and his ability to walk in the dark or with eyes closed are also to be noted If headache is present, the location, intensity and causes are to be investigated Inquiry is also made as to sleep, *i e*, whether soundly, fitfully or restlessly, etc, and as to the occurrence of dreams and their nature

**Gynecological System.** Inquiry should be made as to The menses—when established, regularity, duration pain, changes if any and last appearance, vaginal discharge—amount, duration, color, consistency, pregnancies—number full term, abortions, character of labors, convalescence, subsequent health, menopause—gradual or sudden and any complications, coitus if painful and methods employed to avoid conception

**Genitourinary System.** Inquiry is to be made as to Venereal infection, such as gonorrhea and chancre, time of

infection, nature of treatment received, when cured, presence or absence of complications and sequelae, also the history as to masturbation, sexual life, potency and perversions

**History of Present Illness** Special attention is paid to the history of the present illness as to date of beginning, cause (patient's view), prodromes, specific and general complaints, treatment previous to present examination, etc

A complete history is usually taken at the first visit of the patient. At times, however, with a nervous patient or with one who is too sick or reticent to disclose the past or the family history, this may be obtained at subsequent visits. Patients suffering from chronic ailments or those requiring a complete examination, such as a periodic health examination or for any other reason may be subjected to a detailed history as is indicated in the following form

### DETAILED HISTORY FORM

1 Name	Country of Birth				
2 Address	White			Colored	
3 Age	Single	Married	Widowed	Divorced	
4 What is your present occupation					
5 Have you changed your work frequently	Why				
6 What are the conditions of your work					
Regular	Dangerous	Dark	Smelly	Seated	Hours per day
Satisfactory	Fatiguing	Light	Noisy	Standing	Days per week
Monotonous	Indoors	Out	Dusty	Crowded	Walking
7 Are your earnings sufficient to support yourself and dependents comfortably					
8 What are your home conditions					
In a family	Congenial	Quiet	Room and bed to yourself		
Alone	Depressing	Irritating	Time to yourself		
9 What are your sleeping conditions					
Hours in bed	Windows open	Restful	Disturbed		
10 How often do you eat					
Regularly	Where	Between meals	Time of meals		
11 Are you a moderate or hearty eater taking one or more helpings at a meal of					
Meat (including fish and eggs)	Pie	Cake or Pastry	Salads		
Baked beans	Sweets or Sugar		Bread		
Green vegetables (spinach cabbage etc.)	Fruits		Butter		
Potatoes (rice macaroni or cereal)					
12 How much do you drink daily of					
Milk	Tea	Soft drinks			
Water	Coffee	Alcoholic drinks			
13 How frequently do you use candy	How much tobacco				
14 Do you have a movement of the bowels daily	With the use of drugs				
15 What exercise do you take in addition to your work					
16 What are your social political club or trade associations					
17 What are your pleasures	Recreations			Hobbies	
18 Are you subject to worries	Moods	Periods of alternating gloom and cheerfulness			

- 19 Have you ever been ill with any of the following or any other severe illness and at what ages
- |              |                       |                           |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| Tuberculosis | Syphilis or Gonorrhea | Typhoid Fever             | Convulsive Seizures   |
| Malaria      | Scarlet Fever         | Tonsillitis (Sore Throat) | Nervous Breakdown     |
| Rheumatism   | Diphtheria            | Frequent Colds            | Migraine or Neuralgia |
- 20 Have you been protected against smallpox      typhoid      diphtheria      or other diseases  
by vaccination and when
- 21 Have you had any accidents broken bones or surgical operations
- 22 How often do you consult your dentist      When last
- 23 Are your parents brothers and sisters living  
If not what were the causes of death and at what ages
- 24 Have either of your parents or any brother or sister or any of your play mates or associates had  
consumption      cancer      insanity      epilepsy      gout      diabetes
- 25 Do you consider yourself in good health      If not what is your complaint
- For Women 26 Are your monthly periods regular      Prolonged      Excessive
- 27 Have they interfered with your occupation      In what way
- 28 Have pregnancies and confinements been free from accident

#### IV. Age and Sex in Reference to Disease

Not only is it necessary to differentiate broadly between infancy, early childhood and adolescence but it is important to consider the approximate age of the patient because certain diseases are more prevalent at certain periods of life and also because premature senility or occasionally prolonged immaturity may be an expression of pathologic conditions. It has been said that a man is as old as his arteries and that a woman is as old as she looks but in actual practice the examiner should carefully compare the appearance of the patient with the age given. Rapid aging may cause a man of 35 to appear 60 while a man who is really 60 may because of inherited vigor and proper hygienic living be as powerful physically as a man of 35. Premature senility may be due to privation dissipation physical or mental strain or inherited structural defects. Immaturity may be caused by endocrine disturbance.

The following is a table (alphabetically arranged) of some of the commoner diseases listed under the period

of life in which they are most likely to occur though any of the diseases mentioned in this table and many more not here mentioned may occur at any period of life.

**Diseases of Infancy and Childhood** Acute anterior poliomyelitis Affection of lymph glands (tuberculosis) Chorea Congenital syphilis Convulsions Cretinism Endocarditis Exanthemata (measles scarlet fever, small pox etc.) Foreign bodies in respiratory and deglutitory passages Hydrocephalus Infantile paralysis Infantile palsies (especially birth palsies) Helminthiasis Hypertrophic pyloric stenosis Inflammation of the respiratory system Intussusception Infantile forms of muscular atrophy and muscular dystrophy Laryngeal diphtheria Laryngismus stridulous Lobular pneumonia Meningitis Mumps Otitis media Progressive muscular atrophy Pseudohypertrophic paralysis Pyelitis Virus infections

**Diseases Common to Adolescence** Aene Addison's disease Anemia Acute appendicitis Cataplexy Chlorosis Dementia precox Epidemic encephalitis—acute Epilepsy Gastric ulcer Gout—

in its various forms Graves disease  
 Hysteria—various forms Juvenile forms  
 of muscular atrophy and dystrophy  
 Juvenile paresis Mitral and Aortic dis-  
 ease Multiple sclerosis Paresthesia—  
 various forms Pneumonia Rheumatic  
 fever—acute Sarcoma Tonsillitis—  
 acute (also Quinsy) Tuberculosis Ty-  
 phoid fever and other acute infections

#### Diseases Common to Middle Age

Angina pectoris Aneurysm Apoplexy  
 Arteriosclerosis Asthma Bright's dis-  
 ease, chronic Bulbar paralysis Cancer  
 Emphysema and chronic bronchitis  
 Gallstones and gallbladder disease  
 Goiter Gout Hypertension Hypochor-  
 drasis Involutional melancholia Leu-  
 kemia Melancholia Myocarditis Pa-  
 ralysis agitans Pernicious anemia  
 Pregnancy and the disorders incidental  
 to it Presenile dementia Progressive  
 spinal muscular atrophy Pseudoleuke-  
 mia Scirrhus Syphilis Tuberculosis—  
 chronic Valvular heart disease

#### Diseases Common to Old Age

Aortic disease Apoplexy Bronchitis  
 chronic Bronchopneumonia Cancer  
 Cerebral disease Emphysema Myocar-  
 dial disease Prostatic disease Senile de-  
 mentia

### V. Evaluation of Symptoms

Symptoms as applied to disease are  
 subjective evidences or manifestations of  
 pathologic processes. They are abnormal  
 functional phenomena felt by the patient  
 but may not always be perceived by the  
 examiner. Disease may be diagnosed by  
 one of three methods or by all three  
 methods namely Symptomatology  
 physical signs and laboratory investiga-  
 tion. Primarily, the patient consults the  
 physician because of the occurrence of  
 some abnormal phenomena. The physi-  
 cian gathers all the data concerning these

abnormal sensations by the anamnesis,  
 he then investigates these symptoms by  
 a properly conducted physical examina-  
 tion and if further study is necessary  
 the aid of laboratory methods is sought.

Symptoms may be divided into *general*  
 and *pathognomonic*. General symptoms  
 are those that may occur in many abnor-  
 mal conditions and by themselves are  
 not diagnostic of any particular disease.  
 Pathognomonic symptoms are those that  
 always occur in a disease, their presence  
 indicates a particular or specific disease.  
 Among the commoner symptoms for  
 which patients seek relief are *fever, pain*  
*abnormal sensations digestive disturb-*  
*ances weakness dyspnea cough nerv-*  
*ousness etc*

The history of the present illness as  
 well as the morbid manifestations occur-  
 ring during the course of an ailment are  
 largely a recitation and observation of  
 symptoms. Many symptoms are pa-  
 thognomonic of certain diseases while  
 others have no specific significance and  
 may be found in many diseases. At  
 times the presence of several symptoms  
 in an illness though each symptom  
 when occurring alone is nonspecific may  
 constitute a pathognomonic symptom  
 complex or a syndrome.

A symptom may be defined as a sub-  
 jective sign felt by the patient and not  
 always perceived by others. A sign is  
 an objective manifestation. Often symp-  
 toms and signs are dependent upon each  
 other or are so intimately combined that  
 it is difficult to separate them. The  
 symptoms present in various diseases  
 may either be sufficient to make a diag-  
 nosis or they may indicate the kind of  
 examinations and studies to be carried  
 out so as to arrive at a diagnosis. Sym-  
 toms may be general local or specific

General symptoms are pain, fever, chills, sweats, etc

Local symptoms may be general symptoms localized in specific areas, such as pain in the head, in the joints, etc, or symptoms occurring in disease of certain systems such as the digestive system, the cardiovascular system, etc

Specific or pathognomonic symptoms are those occurring as specific characteristics of a disease as, for example, night blindness in retinitis pigmentosa and slow adaptability to light in vitamin A deficiency

For symptoms in detail, see the following chapters

## **VI. Evaluation of Physical Signs**

A complete physical examination should be made at the first visit unless the patient's condition is such that the strain of undergoing it would be too severe, as is often the case after a hemorrhage or in extreme exhaustion and in extreme nervousness. Under such circumstances, as much of an examination is made as is consistent with the patient's condition and the necessity of establishing a tentative diagnosis.

Every student should familiarize himself with the methods of physical examination, and practice them systematically. It has been well said "More errors arise from want of system than from want of knowledge." One should always adopt a carefully conceived plan of physical examination and adhere to it religiously.

The physical examination begins with general observations as soon as the physician and patient meet. If the patient is in bed the posture should be noted, also the expression of the face as to whether it gives evidence of pain or other emotion. A considerate bedside manner and

a kindly approach reassures the patient and inspires confidence. Especially is this important with a patient who is acutely ill or one who is suffering from a psychoneurotic ailment. Because of the hypersensitivity of such bed patients it is often advisable to obtain the history from an attendant and not in the presence of the patient. The patient may then be asked a few relevant questions before the physical examination is begun. Occasionally he may be voluble and insist upon relating every symptom, real and imaginary. Under such circumstances the physician must listen patiently and at the same time observe the patient's behavior, mannerisms, color, etc. After having obtained a history, the temperature is tested, the pulse is counted and the physical examination is carried out methodically and without seeming haste.

In ambulatory patients also, much of their reticence and self-consciousness may be dispelled by a friendly attitude and tact on the part of the physician. A few cheerful remarks will usually put the patient at ease, and while the history is inquired into the physician has an opportunity to observe the patient's behavior as to restlessness, diffidence or overboldness, the manner of dress, cleanliness, etc. After the history has been obtained the patient should remove as much of his clothing as the physical examination may require. For further details see Chapter VI, pp 107 to 123.

## **VII. Evaluation of Laboratory and Special Examinations**

After a careful history has been taken and a thorough physical examination has been made of the patient, it often becomes necessary, for the sake of arriving at a correct diagnosis, to employ

certain instruments of precision and to have the patient's secretions, excretions and various tissues examined by laboratory means

Urinalysis and blood examinations should be made as a general routine in practically all cases. Other laboratory

examinations, such as bacteriological, serological, radiographic, etc., are employed according to the indications as obtained from the history and physical examination of any given case. For further details, see Laboratory Chapters XXXIII to XXXVII, inc p 967 to end

## SECTION 2

# Symptomatology



typical example of this type of onset is typhoid fever

The abrupt onset comes on without any or with very few prodromal symptoms, it is usually ushered in with a chill or several chills prostration, some cyanosis and, in children, often with convulsions. The temperature reaches its acme in several hours. This type of onset is seen in lobar pneumonia, influenza, scarlet fever, typhus fever and other febrile diseases

3 The Fastigium: This is the acme, or the highest point of the temperature curve, and varies in different diseases

A Continuous Temperature. This is one in which the diurnal variations are rarely more than  $1^{\circ} \text{ F}$  or  $1.5^{\circ} \text{ F}$ . The lower level is usually found in the A.M. and the higher is reached in the P.M. This is found in pneumonia, typhoid fever, scarlet fever, etc

Intermittent Hectic or Septic Temperature. This is one in which the daily oscillations are more than  $2^{\circ} \text{ F}$ , it may reach nearly, but not quite the normal line during its daily intermissions. Such a curve is found in pyogenic infections, pulmonary tuberculosis, Hodgkin's disease, and in absorption of foreign proteins or products of degeneration or inflammation

Remittent or Relapsing Fever. This is one in which the temperature reaches or goes below the normal line where it may remain for several hours or days before it again rises abruptly to its previous febrile level or a higher level. This type of curve is seen in malaria, relapsing fever, in some of the virus diseases during one stage of smallpox, etc

Recurring Fever. A return or recrudescence of fever, after the temperature had remained normal for some time, may be caused by a relapse of the previous

disease, the onset of a new disease or the onset of a late complication of the original disease

The Inverse Type of Temperature. It is so called when the exacerbations take place in the morning and the remissions in the evening

Atypical or Irregular Temperature Curves. These follow no definite pattern

4 The Decline of Fever: It may be gradual (lysis) as in typhoid fever, or it may be abrupt or sudden (crisis) as in lobar pneumonia. Occasionally there may occur a pseudocrisis, that is, the temperature falls suddenly to the near normal, but rises again within several hours. This often precedes the true crisis which is marked not only by the sudden drop of temperature to the normal, but also by the sudden amelioration of all toxic phenomena

Subnormal Temperature. A temperature below  $97^{\circ} \text{ F}$  ( $36.1^{\circ} \text{ C}$ ) is considered subnormal. Subnormal temperatures are found in shock, severe hemorrhage, wasting diseases, severe exhaustion, myxedema, chronic heart and lung disease with cyanosis, on exposure to intense cold immediately preceding or during a chill in certain types of mental disease and in those subjected to freezing. A subnormal temperature associated with a weak, rapid or unusually slow pulse is a danger signal

### 1. Relation of the Temperature to the Pulse Rate, Respiratory Rate and Basal Metabolic Rate

A rise in temperature of  $1^{\circ} \text{ F}$  is accompanied by the following signs

1 The pulse rate increases from eight to ten pulse beats per minute, except in scarlet fever, septicemia, certain types of heart affections and exophthalmic goiter

ter where the rate is proportionately faster and in typhoid fever meningitis intracranial pressure myxedema and certain myocardial changes where the rate is proportionately slower

2 The respiratory rate is increased by about 2 to 2½ respiratory cycles per minute except in pulmonary disease when the rate is proportionately increased

3 The basal metabolic rate is increased about seven per cent except in exophthalmic goiter where it is higher and in myxedema and nephrosis where it is proportionately lower

## **2 Etiology of Fever**

Fever is a symptom of disease and not a disease in itself. Diseases are classified according to their etiology many of them though of widely divergent etiology may nevertheless have several symptoms in common and fever is often one of them. Most of the acute infections and many of the contagious diseases though of varied etiology and symptomatology have the common phenomena of elevated temperature. The type of temperature often varies with the kind of infective agents such as bacilli cocci viruses rickettsia spirochetes protozoa mycosae and agents of unknown morphology which cause general or local infection.

Other causes of elevated temperature are the introduction of foreign protein or impurities into the blood stream the liberation in the body of abnormal proteins such as the absorption of blood after a large hemorrhage or after an extensive surgical operation the absorption of necrotic tissue following coronary thrombosis pulmonary infarcts widespread metastatic malignancy particularly when the liver is invaded and the absorption of pus. Fever also occurs in

excessive dehydration which prevents heat dissipation and in disturbance of the heat regulating centers as in certain lesions or injury to the base of the brain and the spinal cord. Occasionally no definite cause for the abnormal rise in temperature may be discernible the unexplained fevers belong to this category.

## **3 Diagnosis of Fever**

In addition to an abnormal rise in temperature fever is usually accompanied by other signs such as disturbed nutrition loss of weight dryness of tongue anorexia weakness sweats and often by various toxic and nervous manifestations such as headache and tremor. In prolonged or very high temperatures there may be somnolence stupor delirium coma and gastrointestinal disturbances. The urine is usually highly colored and scanty and there may be constipation with abdominal distention. The blood count varies depending upon the type of infection in most of the febrile conditions there is a leukocytosis in some as in typhoid fever malaria undulant fever measles and influenza there is a moderate leukopenia. The presence of leukopenia in a disease where leukocytosis is the rule is an ominous sign. The differential leukocyte count is also characteristic in some infections. Blood cultures sera reactions agglutination tests and examinations such as cultures of the excreta and of the spinal fluid together with the physical signs and in certain cases x-ray studies will help to identify the cause of the disease in which fever is a prominent symptom.

Febrile diseases of less than seven days duration seldom require elaborate differential diagnosis. At times the diagnosis of such diseases is readily made

# Résumé of Febrile Diseases

## 1. Bacillary Infections

DISEASE	ONSET	TEMPERATURE TYPE	DURATION	PULSE	INFLUENT ORIGIN	LEUCOCYTES	Symptoms and Intracranial Signs	Laboratory Tests
Anthrax	Early rapid	Variable—102° to 104° F or no fever	6 to 8 days or longer. May be fatal in 3 days.	Rapid and weak.	Bacillus anthracis.	Moderate	<u>Cutaneous Form</u> Local red furuncle on face neck or arms ruptures within 36 hours leaving a blackish eschar. Enlargement of regional lymph glands. <u>Pulmonary Form</u> Signs of bronchopneumonia. <u>Gastrointestinal Form</u> Signs of severe gastric enteritis with peritonitis. Large spleen.	Bacilli may be found in infected tissue. Inoculation of guinea pigs or mice to be killed in 45 to 72 hours.
Bacillary Dysentery	Acute	Continuous fever with moderate remissions.	Months.	Follows temperature.	Dysentery bacillus (several forms) Shiga toxin and exfoliating toxin.	Leukocytosis may be slight or moderate.	Extensive with much pus and blood in stool. Colic, tenesmus and prostration.	Culture and stool examination, and serum agglutination on tests.
Glanders	Early rapid	Irregular—septic type	In acute form 2 to 4 weeks, usually fatal in chronic form 2 to 3 years, marked by periods of remission.	Rapid.	Bacillus mallei. (Pfeifferella mallei.)	During stage of suppuration, leukocytes 15,000 to 15,000 with 80 per cent neutrophils. In later stages leukopenia.	Inflammat on at site of infection, lymphangitis, Purpura in various parts of body appearing between 6th to 12th day. Abscess in muscles and internal viscera with suppuration of lymphoid tissue. Often darrhea, exhaustion and death.	Presence of mallei bacilli in tissue. Intraepithelial infection of male guinea pig. Characteristic growth on potato. Agglutination on test with ant malleus serum.
Influenza	Sudden.	High for first 2 to 3 days then rapidly subsides, or slow crisis.	3 to 6 days.	Increased but not in proportion to temperature	Hemophilus influenzae often associated with pneumococcus streptococcus hemolitus and viridans staphylococcus meningitidis bacillus Friedlander's bacillus and other organisms.	Normal with relative lymphocytosis—later leukopenia.	Pt. often prostrated, general malaise apathy usually involvement of upper respiratory tract. GI symptoms may predominate. Cyanosis not uncommon. Relapses common.	None specific
Paratyphoid Fever	Early rapid	Continuous with morning remissions of 1° to 2° F. Temperature maintained by rapid lysis.	10 days to 2 weeks.	Slowly, faster than in typhoid fever	Bacillus paratyphosus A, B (and probably G, B as rest of it)	Leukopenia as a rule.	Resembles milder type of typhoid fever. Rose colored large spots often somewhat enlarged. Headache prominent	Agglutination on tests for paratyphoid A & B positive about 10th day. Fever, urticaria and blood culture usually positive for A and B

# 1. Bacillary Infections (Continued)

Disease	Onset	Temperature Type	Duration	Period	Infective Organism	Leucocytes	Symptoms and Physical Signs	Laboratory Tests
<b>Plague</b>	Abrupt with chill	101° to 103° F with morning remissions. Terminates by lysis	1 to 2 weeks or longer. Death may occur within 1 week	Rapid, weak, often irregular	Bacillus pestis. Transmitted from rodents to man by fleas	20,000 to 60,000. In septicemic or pneumonic forms there may be leukopenia.	Headache, epistaxis, d. arches, delirium, bubo in inguinal form. Lung consolidation in pneumonic form. Bacteremia in septic form. Enlarged spleen	Flaque bacilli in material from bubo and in sputum in pneumonic form. Rat or guinea pig inoculation
<b>Tetanus</b>	Gradual	Moderate as a rule. Fatal hyperpyrexia may occur	Days to weeks	Follows traumatic	Clostridium tetani entering the body by way of punctured or perforated wound	10,000 to 15,000	Spasm of muscles at wound. Reflexes irritability, headache, stiff jaw and neck. Trismus, sardonic grin, opisthotonus, convulsions and muscle spasms collapse sweating etc., follow	Attempted bacteriologic diagnosis by culture
<b>Tuberculosis</b>	Gradual	In acute stages continuous with moderate remissions. In subacute stages irregular and septic. In chronic stages irregular	Depends on type. Months to years	In acute slow, in chronic rapid	Tubercle bacillus.	If uncomplicated, no increase	Very with lesions may be pulmonary, glandular mediastinal, visceral, G. U. etc	Tubercle bacilli in infected tissue or excretions. Positive tuberculin tests. Guinea-pig inoculation with suspected material
<b>Tularemia</b>	Usually abrupt	May remain high or have daily remissions. Distinct remissions on severe after 1st and 3rd days	10 to 21 days as a rule. Often much longer due to complications. May last several months.	Follows temperature	Bacterium tularensis. Transmitted by rabbits and other rodents, and by ticks, fleas, fly bites and infected animal ticks.	15,000	Headache, chills, fever, sweats, prostration, cramps, delirium, aching eyeballs, conjunctivitis, ulcer formation at site of infection, swelling of regional glands. The five principal types are: (a) Ulceroglandular (b) Oculoglandular (c) Glandular (d) Typhoidal. (e) Visceral	Agglutination test positive in 2nd week and increased rapidity in titer. Positive in 1:50 or more. Skin test often positive
<b>Typhoid Fever</b>	Gradual	Continuous with morning remissions. Terminates by lysis.	3 to 4 weeks or longer	Slowly often dicrotic	Bacillus typhosus of birth.	Leukopenia during the early stages and in absence of complications.	General apathy. Enlarged spleen. Rose colored spots on lower chest and upper abdomen appear on 7th or 8th day. Diarrhea often	Widal reaction positive in dilutions 1:50 and higher after 8th day. Blood cultures positive early. Stool and urine cultures positive after second week.
<b>Undulant Fever (Brucellosis)</b>	Slow and insidious	May be continuous for a time later irregular, undulating and remittent. Terminates by slow lysis	3 weeks to 18 months	Usually slow	Brucella melitensis or Brucella abortus. Caprine (goat) or bovine (cattle) brucellae	Leukopenia or normal count.	Weakness, sweats, pains in joints and muscles. Irritability, nervousness and headache	Skin tests often positive. Agglutination tests in 1:100 positive. Blood cultures and animal inoculation may be positive

### 1. Contagious Diseases of Childhood

Pathogen	Onset	Temperature Type	Duration	Pyrexia	Infective Organism	Leucocytes	Symptoms and Physical Signs	Laboratory Tests
<i>Paratuberculosis</i>	Subs.	Intermittent - irregular 101° to 102° F	2 to 4 weeks	Slow	Virus-transmitted by parrots or other in- fected birds.	Leucocytosis	Mild, mild G I con- stipation, central pneumonia involvement	If co-inoculation with patient's specimen may cause character- istic lesions in liver and spleen. Agglutination test
<i>Brucella</i>	Gradual	Continuous often 104° to 105° F. Definite death if may rise to 106° to 107° F	Death occurs within 2 or 4 days	Rapid	Virus	15,000 to 20,000 also high erythrocyte count	Hoarse voice, trachea rough to swallow specimen of mucus old phlegmon and respiration hyperaesthesia and convul- sions	Very bodies in large rolls of an usual nervous system of an infected animal. Infected ani- mal dies within a few days. Field's inoculation culture of virus on rabbit's serosa. Complement fixation with fluid from sera and in specific serum. Intradermal rabbit test.
<i>Scalphos</i>	Subs.	1st stage, continuous 104° F. 2nd stage, normal re- turns, 3rd or puter- lar stage, tempera- ture rises to 102° to 103° F., lasting from 3 to 12 days. Ter- minates by crisis or lysis.	1st stage - 3 days, 2nd stage - 3 days 3rd stage - 3 to 12 days.	Proportionate to tempera- ture	Virus	1st stage - 10,000 to 15,000 2nd stage - 8000 to 9000 3rd stage - 20,000 to 30- 40,000 In overwhelming infection there may be leukopenia	Headache, pain in extremities, in lumbar region, pre- cursive rash. Erupt on un- derneath of skin, stages - macular, vesicular and pus- tular. The eruption is confined on face, forehead, wrists arms trunk and feet	Culture of virus on rabbit's serosa. Complement fixation with fluid from sera and in specific serum. Intradermal rabbit test.
<i>Yellow Fever</i>	Subs.	Continuous 102° to 103° F. during the first 3 days followed by a remission of 12 to 24 hours and a secondary fever. In non- fatal cases tempera- ture falls by lysis.	6 to 12 days	Very slow out of proportion to tempera- ture. Pulse rate may be- come slower while tem- perature is still high or is rising (Faget's sign.)	Filtrable virus in the body fluids trans- mitted by Aedes aeg- ypti mosquito.	Leukopenia is the rule in fatal cases there may be leukocytosis.	Flushed face, injected eyes tender epistaxis, black vomits, jaundice appears on 3rd day and is progressive Bleeding from mucous sur- faces Anuria.	Van den Bergh direct reaction Harris index is high. Liver function tests indicate liver necrosis

	Absent	Slight if any	1 to 2 weeks	Fallows temperature	1 mm (f)	Normal or mild leukocytes.	Macitropulovenacular purpura lar rash in all stages on all parts of body and extremities	Non-specific
Thermostop (Acetab)								
Diphtheria	Gradual	Moderate at onset, then fairly continuous.	3 to 6 weeks.	Rapid exit of proportion to temperature.	2 mm (f) diphtheria.	Leukocytes.	Fever headache, malaise, sore throat, membranous exudate on mucous surface (throat, larynx), prostration	Positive cultures

# 4. Contagious Diseases of Childhood (Continued)

Disease	Onset	Temperature Type	Duration	Pyrexia	Infective Organism	Leucocytes	Symptoms and Physical Signs	Laboratory Tests
Measles (Rubella)	Gradual	High at onset with remission after 2 to 3 days and then fall by 10 a. m.	2 to 3 weeks.	Follows temperature	Virus (?)	Leukopenia with lymphocytosis.	Catarrhal symptoms, rough Koplik's spots, confluent maculopapular rash free to trunk and extremities by 3rd or 4th day.	Non-specific.
Scarlet Fever (Scarlatina)	Abrupt	High for first few days, falls by 10 a. m. and rises again by 10 a. m. of week.	2 to 4 weeks.	More rapid than temperature and wavy.	Hemolytic streptococcus	Leucocytosis with great increase of polymorphs. During convalescence there is an increase in the eosinophils.	Chill, sore throat, vomiting, sore throat, maculopapular rash in throat in 24 hours. Feet at first. Circumoral pallor, strawberry tongue. Desquamation 10 to 14 days later (if complicated frequent).	Dick test positive first few days. Nikolsky-Cheriton reaction good if agglutination.

# 5. Rickettsia Infections

Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever	Abrupt with a chill	Continuous 100° to 104° for approximately 2 weeks, falling to 98° by 10 a. m. of 3rd week.	Approximately 21 days.	Bounding at first, then rapid fall, then rise to temperature.	Microorganism of Rickettsia group. Transmitted by infected ticks—Dermacentor andersoni.	Mild—12,000. Increase in mononuclears. Decrease in eosinophils.	Chill, headache, severe muscle and joint pain, toxemia, enlarged lymphatic glands, macular rash usually on 3rd day, abdomen, extremities or sparse extremities to trunk.	Widal's serum reaction with protein lactulose X19 is often positive.
Trench Fever	Abrupt.	Three types: (1) Moderate, 3 to 7 days, followed by remission and short secondary rise. (2) Continuous fever for 6 to 7 weeks. (3) Periods of fever followed by alternation of afebrile and febrile periods for weeks.	Variable.	Follows temperature.	Rickettsia quintana or pediculi. Transmitted by infected lice.	Moderate as a rule normal w.b.c. or leukopenia may occur.	Prostration, headache, muscle pains usually of legs enlarged spleen, transient macular rash for hours to 2 days. Tender shins during the night are characteristic.	Widal's test may be positive. In trench fever as in typhus fever the Wassermann reaction is often positive before the crisis.
Typhus (Japanese River Fever)	Abrupt	Continuous high fever for 2 to 3 weeks declining by rapid lysis.	14 to 21 days.	Follows temperature.	Rickettsia group. Transmitted by bite of infected trombidium mite.	Leukopenia at height of disease.	Headache, malaise, local ulcer with enlargement of regional glands, macular rash at end of 1st week lasting 3 to 4 days, toxemia in severe cases, splenomegaly.	Agglutination reaction negative for B. proteus X19, but generally positive for the strain near end of fever.
Typhus Fever	Abrupt	High fever in level with slight diurnal variations for about 14 days. Terminates by crisis or rapid lysis.	Approximately 14 days.	Follows temperature.	Rickettsia group. Transmitted by infected body lice.	Mild increase, 12,000.	Chill, fever, reaction, anorexia, delirium at times, muscular pains. Enlarged spleen during last week of infection. Rash on 4th to 5th day face, trunk, and extremities. Complications and extreme changes. Mild convalescence.	Widal's test agglutination. Protein lactulose X19 will agglutinate in dilution 1:100 to 1:500 of the patient's serum.

## 6. Spirochetal Infections

Disease	Onset	Transmitting Time	Duration	Feels	Infective Organism	Leucocytes	SYMPTOMS AND PATHOLOGICAL SIGNS	LABORATORY TESTS
<b>Epidemic Typhus</b> (Rocky Mountain)	Absrupt with chills	Incubation 7 to 10 days or longer. Illness may occur	7 to 10 days or longer. Illness may occur	Rapid.	<i>Lepthosp. autschowii</i> or <i>Lepthosp. icterohaemorrhagiae</i>	Moderate leukocytosis	Jaundice, fever, splenomegaly, conjunctival injection, mucous membrane edema, vomiting, weakness and general aching pain	Leptospira in the urine and blood. Guinea pig inoculation
<b>Red Bile Fever</b>	Acute	Incubation 10 to 14 days	Days to weeks	Rapid.	<i>Treponema morans</i> ( <i>Sporillum morans</i> ) and a streptococcus	Moderate leukocytosis	Inflammatory lesion at site of bite. Enlarged regional lymph glands	Spindle may be found in the lesions and in the blood of inoculated mice
<b>Relapsing Fever</b> (Tick Fever)	Acute	Intermittent. Temperature 104° to 105° for days. Relapses occur after several days of normal temperature	Weeks	Follows temperature	<i>Spirochete of genus Borrelia</i> (3. see <i>relapsans</i> ) Transmitted by infected ticks and lice	Moderate leukocytosis	Headache, fever, malaise, abdominal pain, constipation, nausea, vomiting, enlarged liver and spleen—relapse after afebrile period of 1 to 2 weeks	Spirochetes demonstrated in blood during febrile periods. Positive Haeckelberg's or Agnew's tests
<b>Syphilis</b>	Gradual	May be afebrile low continuous fever, intermittent, or remittent.	Years	Proportionate to temperature in heart complications may be very slow or very fast	<i>Treponema pallidum</i>	Not characteristic.	Depend upon stage of disease and site of involvement. Any tissue or organ may be involved	Serologic Test (Wassermann, Kahn, Kline and other tests). Presence of spirochete in tissue juices and in tissues as seen in dark field preparations
<b>Yaws</b>	Gradual	Mild elevation.	Weeks to years.	Follows temperature	Primarily unknown, secondarily fusiform and spirochetes	Moderate leukocytosis.	Ulceration and scars of membrane of gums, mouth, etc	Culture from mouth and gum lesions will show spirochetes.
<b>Yaws</b> (See p. 103) Stages of nasal ulceration and destruction as known as <i>gangraena</i> (see p. 103)	Gradual	Follows stage with amount of involvement accounting for temperature irregular intermittent	Months.	Follows temperature.	<i>Treponema pertenue</i>	No leukocytosis occasionally increase of monocytes	These stages are recognized: (1) Mother yaws—papule containing lesion with granular base. Extragenital—regional abscesses (2) Genital—papular eruption which develops into chancres, ulcers, yellow crusts, fibrosis (3) Tertiary—gummas, nodules, ulcers. May involve skin or bones. Internal viscera not involved.	Wassermann plus 4. Treponema present in lesions

## 7. Protozoal Infections

Disease	Onset	Temperature Type	Duration	Prodrome	Infective Organism	Leucocytes	Symptoms and Physical Signs	Laboratory Tests
Amebiasis	Acute or gradual	Irregular type, subfebrile or low grade	Days to weeks	Follows malarial state	Entamoeba histolytica	Eosinophilia increase with slight increase in white blood count.	Constipation and diarrhea, colic, pain in (R. L. Q.), anorexia, headache, asthenia, mucus and blood in stool	Demonstration of organism in feces.
Kala-azar	Insidious	Remittent fever often a double rise in 24 hours.	Weeks to years.	Follows tropical exposure.	Leishmania donovani (Protozoan parasite)	Leukopenia 2000 to 4000. Relative lymphocytosis and monocytosis.	Irregular fever remission, dysentery, cachexia, greatly enlarged spleen. Marked anemia.	Demonstration of Leishmania donovani in smears of peripheral blood
Malaria	Abrupt	Intermittent, remittent, continued, depending upon the type of protozoa. Occurs in cycles of chill, fever and sweat.	Months, modified by treatment.	Rapid, irregular	Malarial parasite. Transmitted by mosquito.	Leukopenia with increase in large mononuclears	General malaise, headache, chill followed by high temperature. Severe headache, muscle pain, occasional delirium or semi-coma. Sweating follows. Enlargement of spleen. Quinine Q 24 hrs. Chloroquine Q 48 hrs. Quinine Q 24 hrs. Chloroquine Q 48 hrs. Infection with several strains may give daily or bi-daily paroxysms.	Demonstration of Plasmodium malariae in blood. Therapeutic test with quinine

## 8. Meningitis (See: pp. 877-880)

Cerebrospinal Meningitis	Abrupt	Irregular Terminates by lysis.	3 days to weeks.	Follows temperature or may be slow	Meningococcus of several types	20 000 to 30 000	Headache, chill vomiting, delirium, stiff neck, Kernig's sign, occasional rash, cornea, hyperesthesia.	Spinal tap shows 1 Increased pressure 2 Turbid fluid 3 Meningococci 4 Increased cell count (polys) 5 Decreased sugar Blood culture may be positive.
Tuberculous Meningitis	Gradual	Irregular Terminates by lysis	Hours to days.	Follows temperature	Tb. bacillus.	Moderate increase	Headache, rigidity of neck, Kernig's sign, delirium, etc.	Spinal tap shows 1 Increased pressure 2 Fairly—slightly cloudy (meniscus) later—cloudy 3 Lymphocytes. 4 Low cell count below 600 5 Very few bacilli 6 Tubercle bacilli 7 Positive Levenhauk test.

Other types of meningitis are diagnosed by symptoms common to all types of meningitis and by the specific organisms found in the spinal fluid



## 9. Diseases of Doubtful Origin

Disease	Onset	Temperature Type	Duration	Phase	Infective Organism	Leucocytes	Symptoms and Pathological Notes	Laboratory Tests
Acute Infective Arthritis	Always with chills	High with remissions	Weeks. Often fatal.	Follows temperature	Unknown—may follow chemical poison, severe fever or irradiation.	Leukopenia with practically complete loss of polymorphonuclears.	Chills, fever, prostration, severe throat with ulcers necrotically jaundiced	Blood smears will show rapid disappearance of granuloocytes and pronounced leukopenia.
Hadji's Disease	Insidious	Mild — moderate fever remittently before and after	Up to a few yrs.	Follows temperature.	Unknown.	Mild increase	Weakness, weight loss, depression, chills, fever, prostration, enlarged gland is splenomegaly late	Biopsy of gland will show
Infectious Mononucleosis	Acute	102° F., 2 to 3 days followed usually by lysis	2 to 3 weeks	Follows temperature	Unknown.	3000 to 33,000, often 90% monocytes.	Sore throat, headache, malaise, marked leukopenia, at times irregular conjunctivitis.	Biopsy of gland will show
Peritonsillar Abscess	Insidious	Remittent ranging from 100° to 102° F.	Months	Rapid.	Unknown	20,000 to 50,000.	Severe abdominal pain, loss of child, digestive disorders, signs of neuritis, apathy, nodules swelling along arteries and subcutaneous. At times they are not apparent.	Biopsy
Rheumatic Fever (Acute)	Subtle or insidious	102° to 103° F. with remissions and acid peaks.	Weeks to months	Rapid. Out of proportion to temperature	Doubtful. Suspected streptococcus hemolyticus.	Leukocytosis, 10,000 to 25,000.	Valid—upper respiratory infection plus arthritis, migratory polyarthritis, tonsillitis, endocarditis, etc. Cardiac valvulitis. In children, subcutaneous nodules.	None specific. Electrocardiogram. Sedimentation time is rapid

## 10. Miscellaneous Causes

Disease	Onset or Gradual	Temperature Type	Duration	Phase	Infective Organism	Leucocytes	Symptoms and Pathological Notes	Laboratory Tests
Encephalitis Lethargica	Gradual or abrupt	Irregular by lysis	Hours to weeks to years.	Follows temperature	Virus.	Moderate increase.	Headache, diplopia, lethargy, pupils neck rigidity, Kernig's sign.	Spinal tap 1. Lymphocytes 2. Increased sugar 3. Chlorides not reduced.
Scurvy	Insidious	Slight or none with remissions and exacerbations.	Often years.	Follows temperature	Fungus, vitamin deficiency	Slight increase	G.I. ulcer—exquisite distress, flatulence, diarrhea and constipation, red tongue with vascular ulcerations at edges. Characteristic stool with fat, bubbles, white or pearly color. Anemia and depression.	Macrocytosis, increased color index, anisocytosis, poikilocytosis
Trichinosis	Abrupt	Moderate first week, continuous at 104° to 105° F., 2nd to 3rd weeks gradual lysis. Fever may be prolonged and remittent.	4 to 6 weeks.	Follows temperature	Trichinella spiralis.	Leukocytosis plus high eosinophilia.	Onset with G.I. symptoms then profound myositis and then possibly edema, rash, urticaria, delirium, coma, dyspnea.	Trichinella larvae in stool or centrifuged blood. Muscle biopsy may show larvae. Skin test with antigen derived from trichinella larvae.

### III Anidrosis (Deficiency of Sweat)

Excessive dryness of the skin occurs in ichthyosis scleroderma myxedema cretinism diabetes insipidus profuse diarrheas excessive vomiting high fevers scurvy diabetes mellitus chronic interstitial nephritis depressive psychosis liposis dolorosa anorexia nervosa and hepatic cirrhosis. Local anidrosis may occur in local vascular disease in local nerve injuries and in local skin disease as seen in thromboangitis obliterans in arteriosclerosis obliterans in Horner's syndrome (unilateral anidrosis) and in morphea and other trophic skin lesions.

### IV Rigors (Chills)

Chills consist of sudden tremors of varying extent and duration and are usually accompanied by a sensation of cold. They may be followed by fever or by a sensation of warmth and often by sweats. Chills may be caused by exposure to cold by psychic disturbances or they may have a true clinical significance.

Chills of true clinical importance are followed by an abrupt rise in temperature and usually signify infection or trauma. They occur in the following conditions:

- (1) Lobar Pneumonia (Pneumococcus)  
The disease is often initiated with an abrupt chill.
- (2) Atypical Pneumonia (Bronchopneumonia)  
Chilly sensations often precede the onset of the disease.

(3) Malaria. This disease is characterized by periodic attacks of chills fever and sweats.

(4) Pyelitis and Pyelonephritis. Here chills may recur at regular or irregular intervals.

(5) Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis. Chills usually occur with embolic phenomena and are followed by rise in temperature and sweats.

(6) Injections into the blood stream. Foreign protein unmatched blood certain drugs and sera injected into the blood stream cause severe chills followed by an abrupt rise in temperature and sweats.

(7) Puerperal Sepsis, etc. This and septicopyemia and general blood stream infections cause chills fever and sweats.

(8) Acute Peritonitis etc. This is well as acute osteomyelitis erysipelas and other acute infections, as well as pulmonary renal and other suppurations are characterized by chills. Severe chills also occur in empyema phlebitis renal embolism renal calculi the passage of a urethral catheter gallstone colic empyema of the gallbladder hepatic abscess perineal abscess and in certain acute fevers e.g. influenza typhus fever, variola rheumatic fever relapsing fever tularemia cerebrospinal meningitis and in allergic shock.

(9) Recurrent Chilliness. This condition may be found in general sepsis and in liver and bile duct suppuration. Chilly sensations are often complained of during the menopausal stage and in various emotional disturbances as fear fright and psychic disturbances.

## CHAPTER III

### Alteration of the Special Senses

Patients may complain of some alteration in any of the special senses: *i. e.* in touch vision hearing smell and taste. There also may be a disturbance in the perception of some of the general sensations such as heat cold and pain. These sensations may be intensified lost or perverted.

#### I Touch

In certain nervous conditions tactile sense may be absent distorted or hyperactive these abnormal sensations are known as anesthesia paresthesia and hyperesthesia.

**Anesthesia** Local anesthesia of various parts of the body may be caused by injury to a sensory nerve multiple neuritis (except lead) multiple sclerosis spinal cord tumor or trauma transverse myelitis syringomyelia cerebral tumor in the sensory area and may occur in tabes dorsalis leprosy occasionally in herpes zoster and in various affections of the sensory nerves and spinal cord. The affected part may be anesthetic to pain heat cold or to stereognosis (recognizing objects).

**Paresthesia** This denotes perverted sensation. It is found in the various neuroses pernicious anemia arterio-sclerosis Raynaud's disease endarteritis obliterans acroparesthesia interference in the circulation in a limb frost bites and in the various diseases of the sensory nerves spinal cord or sensory portions of the brain that cause local anesthesia. The sensations perceived may be tingling insect crawling itching smarting or burning. *Meroparesthesia* denotes alter-

ation of the tactile sense in the extremities.

**Hyperesthesia** Acute sensitivity of the skin to light stroking pain heat cold light acinic rays or other irritating substances may be found in so-called sensitive skins and in the functional neuroses trigeminal neuralgia neuritis herpes zoster, migraine peripheral neuritis tabes dorsalis subacute combined degeneration of the cord acute myelitis cerebrospinal meningitis and nerve injury. In the *thalamic syndrome* (hemiplegia dolorosa) there may be hyper sensitivity to pain and temperature on one side with anesthesia on the contralateral side. There is loss of osseous sense astereognosis paroxysmal pain and involuntary movements on the affected side.

#### II Vision<sup>1</sup> (Sight)

Alteration of vision is a fairly common complaint, it may occur in one or in both eyes. Sight may become affected because of disease of the various structures of the eye the optic nerve the optic center in the brain and because of conditions which directly affect the eye structures or the brain.

Vision may be altered in three ways (1) Increased vision (2) diminished and absent vision and (3) perverted vision.

##### 1. Increased Vision

**Hyperopia** or farsightedness is usually due to some peculiarity of the eye it may be due to the inability of parallel rays to focus on the retina to insuff-

<sup>1</sup> SEE ALSO *Diseases of the Eyes* (pp. 171-187)

ficient convexity of the refracting surfaces or to shortness of the anteroposterior axis of the eye so that the focus falls beyond the retina

**Presbyopia:** Farsightedness of the aged is due to loss of power of accommodation because of diminished elasticity of the crystalline lens, so that the near point of vision is removed farther from the eye.

## 2. Diminished Vision

**Meropia:** This is partial blindness or diminished vision

**Myopia:** This is a condition of shortsightedness, the parallel rays of light being focused in front of the retina

**Amblyopia** Defective vision or dimness of vision may be of various degrees, it may be unilateral or bilateral and may be due to ocular and to extraocular causes. Ocular causes are Evesstrain (asthenopia), astigmatism, myopia, presbyopia, acute conjunctivitis, interstitial keratitis, corneal opacities, disease of the cornea, the iris or the retina, opacities of the crystalline lens, cataract, sympathetic ophthalmia, tumors of the eye, glaucoma and congenital amblyopia, also diseases of the optic nerve as in optic neuritis, optic atrophy and retrobulbar neuritis, and traumatism to the eyes or to the optic nerve

Extraocular causes are Reflex, from intestinal diseases, poisoning by wood alcohol, arsenic, mercury, bromides, cannabis indica, belladonna, opium, tobacco, and various other toxic agents, tumors of the brain, postdiphtheritic paralysis, hereditary cerebellar ataxia, thrombosis of the central vein, Raynaud's disease, leontiasis ossea, and hysteria

**Amaurosis** Blindness complete or total may be transient or permanent and may be due to diseases of the eyes

or the optic nerve, or to extraocular conditions. Diseases of the eyes responsible for blindness are injuries to the orbit, eyeball or the various structures of the eye, such as may be seen in gonorrheal ophthalmia, panophthalmitis, suppurative iridochoroiditis and iridocyclitis, glaucoma, sympathetic ophthalmia, and cataract. Blindness caused by disease of the optic tract and nerve follows chronic retrobulbar neuritis, tumors of the optic nerve or optic tract and compression of the optic tract or nerve by cerebellar tumor, cerebral hemorrhage and cerebral embolus. Extraocular causes for blindness are amaurotic familial idiocy and toxic causes, such as uremia, diabetes, and poisoning by quinine or quinine derivatives, wood alcohol, cannabis indica, belladonna, bromides and some of the coal tar products. Total blindness, which is usually temporary but occasionally permanent, occurs in severe anemia of the brain, in rapid and copious internal or external hemorrhage during pregnancy, in snow blindness, in exposure to superbrilliant light, in lightning stroke, and in hysteria and malingering

**Nyctalopia:** Night blindness may be a congenital condition, it is noted in retinitis pigmentosa and in Laurence Biedl syndrome. It also occurs as a result of secondary atrophy of the optic nerve. Delayed dark adaptation is noted in vitamin A deficiency and in degenerative changes of the crystalline lens

**Hemeralopia:** In day blindness the sight is poor in sunlight and in good illumination, but good at dusk, twilight and in poor illumination. This is noted in albinism, in retinitis with central scotoma, in toxic amblyopia, in coloboma of the iris and choroid, in opacity of the

crystalline lens or cornea, and in conjunctivitis with photophobia

**Perverted Vision** This classification includes various abnormalities in the appearance of objects or of color. Objects may appear as double, halved, or distorted as to size and shape, or there may be changes in the perception of color. Excessive or nonexistent colors may be perceived or there may be partial blocking out of color or of sight.

**Diplopia** Double vision, when looking with both eyes is known as *binocular diplopia*. This occurs when both eyes are not in focus because of errors of refraction or accommodation. It may be found in disease of the eyeballs, in affections of the cranial nerves, in disease of the cerebellum, cerebrum or other parts of the brain and the meninges, and in conditions apparently unrelated to the eyes. In double vision two objects are seen instead of the existing one, each eye does not simultaneously reflect the same image on corresponding points of the two retinas. The images as seen are not uniformly distinct nor are they always on the same plane. The more distinctly appearing object is the true object and is seen with the normal eye.

**Homonomous Diplopia** In this condition the false image is on the side of the deviating eye, this is associated with convergent squint.

**Crossed Diplopia** In this condition the false image is on the side of the normal eye, this is found in divergent squint.

The false image appears above the true image in *paralysis of an elevator muscle*, and it appears on a lower plane in *paralysis of a depressor muscle*.

True diplopia is caused by paralysis of the ocular muscles. Functional diplopia may be seen in ordinary con-

comitant strabismus or cross eyes. To differentiate the true from the functional diplopia a red lens is placed before one eye and a light is held about 10 feet in front of the eyes and moved in various positions. In paralysis of the ocular muscles two lights will be seen in relative positions, while in strabismus only one light is seen.

**Conditions in Which Diplopia is a Symptom** Diplopia occurs during the early stages of encephalitis lethargica, in cerebrospinal meningitis and tuberculous meningitis because of paralysis of the oculomotor nerve, in myasthenia gravis because of weakness of the external rectus muscle, in acute alcoholism, in asthenopia (muscle imbalance) due to eye strain, and in ophthalmoplegic migraine. In paralysis of the following cranial nerves, diplopia is due to muscle imbalance. Third nerve, because it is the motor of the eye muscles, fourth nerve causing paralysis of the superior oblique muscle and the sixth nerve because it produces paralysis of the external rectus muscle. Various diseases of the brain and spinal cord causing diplopia are: Cerebellar and cerebral tumors involving some of the cranial nerves, cerebral syphilis, general paresis, locomotor ataxia (tabes dorsalis), and multiple sclerosis. Diseases of the orbit which may cause displacement of the eyeball will also cause diplopia as seen in orbital cellulitis, hemorrhage, and orbital tumors. Other causes for double vision are postdiphtheritic paralysis, symblepharon and unilateral exophthalmos or entropion.

Double vision in one eye (*monocular diplopia*) may occur in astigmatism, cerebral tumor, cataract, partial dislocation of the crystalline lens, double pupil and hysterical amblyopia.

**Hemianopsia:** Half vision may occur in one eye when there is a lesion of the retina, disc, or one optic nerve. Hemianopsia occurring in both eyes of which the patient has usually no knowledge until tested, occurs in tumors of the optic tract, optic nerve, optic chiasm, the pituitary or pineal bodies, and tumor, abscess or other lesions of the cerebrum and cerebellum as well as in hysteria and migraine.

*Hemianopsia* is classified according to the parts of the eyes that show blindness, and this also indicates the position of the lesion. If blindness affects one eye or if both eyes are affected, but the blindness is not symmetrical, the lesion is in one or both optic nerves.

**Homonymous Hemianopsia** The blindness is in the corresponding lateral halves of both eyes, that is, on the nasal side of one eye and on the temporal side of the other. The lesion causing this is located above the optic chiasm, and on the opposite side of the blind field.

**Heteronymous or Heterolateral Hemianopsia** The blindness in this condition is on the opposite lateral halves of the visual fields, and is either bitemporal or binasal. The lesion in the bitemporal type is at the central part of the optic chiasm before crossing.

**Wernick's Law** When a thin pencil of light thrown upon either the blind or seeing side of the retina causes contraction of the pupil, it indicates that the lesion is back of the primary optic centers. When the pupil does not contract as the light strikes the blind side, but contracts as it strikes the seeing side, it indicates that the lesion is in front of the primary optic centers.

**Scotomata:** Seeing dark spots before the eyes where they do not exist may be functional or organic.

**Functional Scotomata:** This is described by patients as grayish or dark shadows of various sizes and shapes, usually dots, lines, globules and rings that contract and expand, or dark spots may seem to persist as shapeless areas which move with changes of position of the eyes. Occasionally these appear as fly specks fleeting before the eyes (*muscae volitantes*). Scotomata are generally found in digestive disturbances, refractive errors, eyestrain and when looking intently at bright or dazzling objects as the sun, high voltage flashes or brilliant reflections. It may also occur in migraine, and in some of the neuroses, also in diabetes mellitus, lead poisoning, uremia, and severe anemia.

**Organic scotomata** appear in various diseases of the eye, such as vitreous and corneal opacities, cataract, glaucoma, disease of the retina, the choroid, and the optic nerve. Tumors of the pituitary gland or brain tumors causing optic neuritis or choked disc may cause ring-shaped scotomata that may appear during central or lateral vision.

**Chromatopsia (Colored vision)** Various colors of the rainbow may be perceived when they are nonexistent. Sparks may be seen in head injuries.

**Red color** is perceived when the pupils are dilated, when looking at brilliant lights, in cataracts, in hemorrhage in the retina or into the vitreous. In snow blindness and in tobacco scotomata the color observed may be red or green. The expression of "seeing red" when alluding to extreme anger is a figure of speech and not a fact. **Green color** is perceived in wounds of the cornea, tabes dorsalis and at times in tobacco scotomata. **Yellow vision** occurs in jaundice, and in poisoning by *santonin*, *picric acid*,

cannabis indica, amyl nitrite, digitalis, and quinine. *Blue vision* occurs in alcoholism, and *violet light* is seen during recovery from santonin poisoning. In hysteria the perception of colors or their combinations and brilliancy depends upon the imaginative skill of the sufferer. Rays of various colors, hues and lengths are at times observed by the blind or the partially blind.

**Achromatopsia (Color blindness)** Color blindness may be congenital or acquired. *Congenital color blindness* occurring in otherwise normal individuals is more frequently met with among males than females. There is usually a lack of perception of red, green or blue. (There are various standard tests for color blindness.) *Acquired color blindness* is caused by disease of the eyes such as retinitis, retrobulbar neuritis, optic atrophy, cataract, toxic amblyopia, optic neuritis, and occurs in certain toxic conditions as in poisoning by lead, salicylates, quinine, ergot, and carbon bisulfate, also in diabetes mellitus, uremia, arterio-sclerosis, multiple sclerosis, epilepsy, hysteria and some of the psychoses.

**Photophobia (Intolerance to light)** This occurs as a common symptom in many of the eye diseases, in acute febrile conditions, in nervous diseases, and in toxic states.

*Eye diseases* causing photophobia are Exstern, astigmatism, hypermetropia, conjunctivitis due to any cause, sympathetic ophthalmia, albinism; interstitial keratitis; ulcers of the cornea, iritis, and retinitis.

*Acute febrile diseases* causing photophobia are those associated with conjunctivitis like measles, typhus fever, smallpox, etc., and those in which conjunctivitis is absent such as tuberculous

and meningococcic meningitis, acute encephalitis, pachymeningitis, tetanus, etc.

*Nervous diseases* causing intolerance to light are Encephalitis lethargica, cerebral tumors, the neuroses, migraine, and trigeminal neuralgia (tic douloureux).

*Toxic states* due to quinine, belladonna, and other mydriatics, alcoholism, allergic reactions, and severe headaches frequently cause photophobia.

### III. Hearing

Hearing may become defective, super acute or perverted.

**Defective Hearing:** This may range from mild deficiency to various degrees of deafness. It may occur in one or both ears. *Partial deafness* may be due to impacted cerumen, acute and chronic otitis media, inflammation or obstruction of the eustachian tube, otosclerosis, labyrinthitis, and disease of the various structures of the ears, auditory nerves, and the temporal bones. Among other causes are adenoids, Meniere's disease, some brain tumors, hemorrhage, and various toxic states resulting from the use of quinine and salicylates, as well as nephritis, and arteriosclerosis. It often occurs during certain febrile diseases as in typhoid fever, pneumonia, etc. During health it may occur in those working in boiler factories or among other deafening noises. *Complete deafness* is found in deaf mutes, cretins, and in those who have lost bone conduction, have auditory nerve degeneration, or have frontal lobe tumor causing auditory aphasia.

**Hyperacusia:** Heightened hearing may occur in irritation or stimulation of the auditory apparatus or in hypersensitivity of the nervous system. In most instances, the individual's hearing range for normal sounds is not pathologically

accentuated but ordinary noises seem to be intolerably intensified or there may be a supersensitiveness to particular noises or to certain sounds

**Tinnitus Aurium** Ringing in the ears is a subjective phenomenon found among many neurotics and in those who have irritable conditions of the auditory nerve. It is also found in association with partial deafness due to middle ear disease eustachian tube obstruction otosclerosis obstruction of the ear canal or to nasal obstruction Tinnitus is a common complaint in arteriosclerosis in severe anemia polycythemia in Meniere's disease in mountain sickness in nephritis with hypertension in vertigo just before fainting in the various neuroses and in some of the brain affections Tinnitus may be produced by overdoses of quinine and salicylates

#### IV Smell

The sense of smell may be weakened or lost it may be heightened or it may be perverted (SEE pp 187 and 855)

**Anosmia** Loss of sense of smell occurs in acute and chronic diseases of the nose in disease of the frontal ethmoidal and antral sinuses in acute and atrophic rhinitis in tumors occurring in the frontal or parietal lobes and in other lesions that exert pressure upon the olfactory pathway

**Hyperosmia** Heightened sense of smell is seldom due to disease of the olfactory apparatus Some individuals are normally more acutely sensitive to odors than are others it may exist as an allergic phenomenon towards certain objects gases or scents Hyperosmia

is also found among neurotics in hysteria and in the insane

**Parosmia** Perversion of the sense of smell is of two types One in which there is a perversion of normal odors, and the other in which odors are imaginary (cacosmia) Both conditions occur in certain nervous affections among the insane in epilepsy (aura) and occasionally in disease of the olfactory nerve or its terminal filaments

#### V. Taste

The sense of taste may be impaired perverted or lost This may be due to local conditions of the mouth or nose and to nerve paralysis

**Local Conditions** The taste may be lost or perverted in the various types of stomatitis and glossitis in nasal obstruction in diseases of the gastrointestinal tract and in febrile diseases associated with a heavily coated or exceedingly dry tongue The sense of taste may be impaired from taking certain articles of food or drugs

**Nerve Paralysis** In peripheral facial and in trigeminal nerve palsy the sense of taste may be lost on the anterior two thirds of the tongue on the paralyzed side to sweets bitters salty or sour articles

In some of the neuroses and in digestive disorders due to gastric or hepatic conditions certain tastes may be persistent irrespective of the kind of food taken Some patients may complain of a persistent bitter taste others of a constant sweet taste or there may be a sour salty or metallic taste felt on the tongue the lips or within the mouth generally



## CHAPTER IV

### Pain and Tenderness

#### I. The Nature of Pain

Pain is a protective function part of a defensive mechanism appraising the individual of injury to vital tissue

Painful sensations are transmitted through the sensory nerves of a part to the pain center and redirected, in most cases, to the site of the injury. When the nerve is anesthetized or blocked, or the center is destroyed pain is not perceivable. Pain is one of the commonest symptoms for which the physician is consulted. It is usually the most important of all symptoms to the sufferer. The degree and kind of pain cannot, as a rule, be judged by the examiner, he therefore must rely to a great extent on the patient's description of his sensations and on his physical and mental reaction. The hyperesthetic or pain sensitive individual will react intensely to moderate pain, while the stoic may effectively mask a severe degree of pain. The description of the type of pain often depends upon the individual's descriptive ability. Therefore it is necessary to evaluate the person's sensitivity and to watch closely his mannerisms and his actions when describing the pain he has suffered or is suffering at the time of the examination. The sensitivity of an individual may be roughly gauged, as shown by E. Libman by his responses to pressure over a bony prominence as, for example, over the ulnar prominence at the wrist or over

the petrous portion of the temporal bone.

Pain over the entire body is uncommon, it is nearly always localized either over a limited, or an extensive area. Pain *per se* is not a disease, but a symptom of injured tissue. While it is often of great importance to relieve the pain it is of still greater importance to determine the reason for it so that adequate treatment may be instituted to prevent or correct the defect causing the condition which is responsible for the pain. Pain may be felt at the site of injury or it may be felt at a distance from the injured area (referred pain). Pain may be continuous, intermittent, or remittent. It may be colicky, sharp, stabbing, lancinating, or dull and aching, it may also be throbbing, expanding or compressing. Pain may be constant, or it may be provocative, that is, brought out by moving or by manipulating the affected part, and it may be superficial, deep seated or migrating. Pain of equal intensity cannot, as a rule, be felt in several places at the same time.

Tenderness is a painful condition brought about by pressure, it may be superficial where the mere touching of the skin causes pain or deep seated as in inflammations of deep seated organs or bone. Deep seated tenderness is usually associated with rigidity of the overlying muscles.

## II. Physical Signs of Pain

While pain is only a symptom perceived by the patient, there are nevertheless certain signs by which the examiner may in a general way judge the intensity of the patient's suffering. From the standpoint of physical signs, pain may be subjective or objective.

**Subjective Pain:** This has no apparent physical basis for its existence, it may be found among the highly imaginative neurotics where mild sensations are translated into pain sense, particularly when they are or recently were in contact with a person who had severe pain of a serious nature, as coronary occlusion or perforated ulcer. It also occurs in hysteria. Pain in these individuals is not constant nor is it confined persistently to one location, and their physical reactions, such as moaning, complaining, wincing and assumed postures are entirely out of proportion to the reactions usually seen in nonneurotics who may have an injury causing that type of pain. It must be borne in mind, however, that a neurotic and hysterical person may actually suffer a physical injury or disease which may cause much pain, and because his reactions are more intense than is the general rule, he should not be summarily dismissed as a "neuro"

suffering from subjective pain. Many a so-called "neuro" has come to an untimely grave because it was believed that he "cries wolf too often." The pains of hysteria and hypochondria may have central nervous system origin even though a physical cause be absent. Subjective pain is as real to the neurotic as are dreams to the sleeper. During a dream an individual may experience many and varied sensations which he believes are real and thus may suffer untold agony or great pleasure, so the neurotic, during his painful episodes, suffers as much and as keenly as if his pains had a definite physical basis. However, his pains may diminish in intensity or even disappear when his attention is diverted from them, and they may be aggravated by suggestion. Nervousness, fright, anxiety, expectations, anger, and disappointment intensify painful impressions in neurotic individuals.

**Objective Pain:** This is excited by some external or internal irritant, by inflammation, or by injury to nerves, organs or other tissues which interfere with the function, nutrition or circulation of the affected part. Such pain is usually traceable to a definite pathologic process.

## III. Type of Pain

The type of pain varies with the tissues affected.

**Acute Pain:** Sharp, lancinating, or stabbing pain is usually associated with acute inflammation of a nerve, nerve endings or of the serous membranes covering a viscus as in pleurisy, pericarditis, peritonitis, neuralgia, neuritis, and posterior spinal nerve root pains. Pain of similar character and intensity is often found in acute arthritis, thoracic

aneurysm, tumor of the spinal cord, tabes dorsalis, and herpes zoster.

**Pressing, Aching, Agonizing Pain:** In the chest this may be due to coronary thrombosis, angina pectoris, aortic aneurysm, mediastinitis, and, in a milder form, it may occur in asthma and tracheobronchitis, it may also be due to referred pain from a diseased gallbladder, an intestinal obstruction, a diaphragmatic hernia, pancreatitis and a perforated ulcer.

of the stomach *Aching generalized pains* usually precede or are ushered in with some of the infectious diseases as influenza, dengue, smallpox, rheumatic fever. *Locally aching pains* are also found in myalgia, lumbago and various types of headache.

**Throbbing Pain** This type is often associated with phlegmonous inflammation and suppuration, and is also found in headache and in dental caries.

**Colicky, Gripping Pains or Cramps:** These types of pain are found in various intestinal disorders associated with flatulence and contractions of the intestines such as are found in cholera morbus, Asiatic cholera, and after ingestion of irritating poisons, indigestible food, or strong cathartics, also in biliary colic, renal colic, Dietl's crises, pancreatitis, intestinal obstruction, strangulation, appendicitis, colitis, ruptured tubal pregnancy, torsion of an ovary, dysmenor-

rhea, orchitis, etc. *Muscle cramps* may be due to strychnia poisoning, intermittent claudication, tetanus, tetany, muscle strain, muscle ischemia, and are also seen as the result of certain occupations, such as writer's cramps, piano or violin player's cramps, chauffeur's cramps, telegrapher's cramps, etc.

**Causalgia:** *Burning pains* are found in sunburn or other heat burns, in certain superficial skin lesions, in circumscribed neuralgias, and in herpes zoster.

**Grinding or Gnawing Pain:** This type is quite characteristic of diseases of bone and periosteum. It is also at times encountered in aneurysm of the abdominal aorta and in carcinoma of the viscera and of the breast.

**Dull Pain** It occurs in inflammation of the mucous membranes and the viscera, it also occurs in chronic inflammatory conditions.

inges or brain or it may be referred from some distant diseased organ. Toxemias, fever, disturbed circulation and exhaustion may cause headache as will also local disease of the cranial bones and their coverings. Headache may be constant with periods of remission and exacerbation of the severity of the pain and it may be periodic or transient. The character of the pain, its location and the accompanying symptoms and signs must be considered before a diagnosis of its cause can be reached.

### **Headache Due to Intracranial Lesions<sup>1</sup>**

**Brain Tumor.** Here the headache is constant. Occasionally the pain and some tenderness overlie the location of the growth. Rapidly growing tumors cause more intense pain than slowly growing tumors. The pain is less intense in gliomata than in other cerebral neoplasms. The character of the pain varies; it may be dull and boring or lancinating and agonizing; it is as a rule continuous with periods of exacerbation and is usually most severe at night. The pain may be localized or diffused. Other diagnostic aids are eye examination for signs of choked discs, papilledema and hemianopsia, brain localization phenomena, the degree of intracranial pressure, x-ray examinations and ventriculographic studies. Most intracranial space-taking lesions present localizing symptoms and such general symptoms as headache, vomiting, mental drowsiness, dizziness, alteration of pulse rate, respiratory rate, blood pressure and not infrequently convulsions.

**Cerebral Abscess.** The headache is constant and severe and is usually localized over the affected area. Fever,

vomiting, vertigo, mental dullness, irritability and general weakness usually accompany the localized pain and the general headache.

**Aneurysm.** Aneurysm of one of the intracranial vessels usually causes expansive or throbbing headache which is felt over the entire head or at the occiput. The pain may be continuous or paroxysmal; it is usually aggravated on physical or mental exertion. Accompanying signs may be intracerebral pressure, symptoms of diabetes insipidus and general irritability. Caries of the bones of the skull and affections of the scalp due to aneurysm of an intracranial vessel may present in addition to the more or less boring and lancinating headache areas of local tenderness and pulsation.

**Cerebral Concussion.** This gives rise to severe protracted headache which may be localized or diffused. It may be felt over the site of the injury or on the opposite side of the head. It is usually associated with superficial tenderness and at times with other evidence of injury and with vertigo, lassitude and mental confusion.

**Cerebral Hemorrhage.** When not sufficiently extensive to cause unconsciousness, it will cause severe boring pain over the frontal or occipital regions and may be accompanied by irregular pupils, hemiplegia, bulbar compression signs or other intracranial pressure symptoms depending upon the site and magnitude of the hemorrhage.

**Meningitis.** Headache is present in all types of meningeal irritation. The headache of intracranial lesions is largely due to meningeal involvement since the brain while the perceptor of pain sense elsewhere in the body is itself when traumatized insensible to pain. The pain in meningitis is intense and agonizing.

<sup>1</sup> See *Primary Headache*, p. 773 and *Lesions of the Brain*, p. 866.

It may be localized in local inflammation and is generalized in the various types of meningitis. The associated symptoms are fever, nuchal rigidity, increased intraspinal pressure, changes in cerebral fluid composition, and such signs as Kernig's, Brudzinski's, Babinski's, Hoffman's, etc.

**Infections.** Most of the infectious fevers are ushered in with headache. In some the headache is acute and agonizing and is associated with generalized pain. The headache does not, as a rule, persist throughout the entire course of the disease.

**Sinusitis.** Particularly when frontal and ethmoidal sinusitis causes severe excruciating pain in the frontal region.

**Toxemia (Acute or chronic).** If caused by drugs, endotoxins, exotoxins, or by gastrointestinal disturbances such as constipation, toxemia may cause dull, generalized headache or acute pain in the temporal regions or over the vertex.

**Reflex Headache.** This may be dull and protracted or acute, intense and of short duration or it may be paroxysmal. The headache may affect any portion of the head, it may be of varying intensity or type and may resemble organic disease. Among the conditions causing reflex headache may be mentioned: eye strain, certain eye diseases, tooth affections, diseases of the ear, gonorrhea, disturbances, toxemia, renal disease, uremia, overwork, exhaustion, lack of sleep, emotional states, arteriosclerosis, hypertension, hypotension, hyperemia, cardiac decompensation, anemia, spinal puncture, exophthalmic goiter, rheumatic affections, myalgia of the scalp, neuralgia, cervical adenitis, Meniere's disease, and the various neuroses, such as neuritis, then a psychomotor hysteria and the psychoses.

Headache is also common in sunstroke, heat exhaustion, insulin shock, trigeminal neuralgia, etc. Occasionally, headaches of various types and severity may occur without any obvious cause. Syphilis should not be overlooked as a cause of obscure headache.

### Migraine

Migraine is a paroxysmal, familial, special type of headache. It is characterized by hemiparesis (at times it may be bilateral), associated with visual, gastric, and nervous phenomena suggesting brain cortex involvement.

**Symptoms.** In the great majority of cases there is a history of one or more members of the family who are or have been subject to migraine, showed allergic sensitivity, or suffered from diabetes, epilepsy, or some endocrinopathy. The attacks of pain may be preceded by a prodromal period which may last from 8 to 12 hours. The prodromal symptoms vary in different individuals. There may be depression or hyperactivity, somnolence or insomnia, excessive appetite or complete anorexia with varying digestive disturbances. Immediately before the attack there may be an aura, though that is not constant nor is it always of the same character. The aura may consist of vertigo, photophobia, lacrimation, scotomata, blurred vision, olfactory changes, coldness, sweating, paresthesia of the extremities, and other sensory and motor changes or mental confusion.

The attack usually commences on waking in the morning, though it may come on at any time. The patient develops a feeling of sickness, vertigo, intense pain in some part of the head (usually over one eye or hemiparesis), vomiting, and visual disturbance and often sensory, motor, and psychic distur-

ances The headache is cumulative and expansile in character, it may be unilateral localized in a temple or in an eyeball or upon the forehead It is sharp and boring may spread over the entire head and may involve the neck and arm There may be soreness of the eyeballs and hyperesthesia of the scalp During the attack the patient is pale prostrated incapable of mental or physical effort and usually assumes a definite posture in bed from which he would not be disturbed Light noise solicitude and other disturbances as well as movement aggravate the condition The attack may last from 3 to 24 hours or longer

**Etiology** Migraine usually occurs in adolescents and young adults and generally disappears after the menopausal age Heredity plays a part since the syndrome is familial The actual cause of migraine is not known there are several theories but no facts Allergy duodenal stasis endocrine disturbance reflex causes (eyestrain digestive disturbance etc.) toxic causes from the colon or elsewhere vasomotor disturbance or cortical disturbance are among the supposed etiologic factors

### **B Pain in the Eyes<sup>1</sup>**

Pain in the eyeballs may range from a smarting burning or sand in the eyes sensation to acute excruciating pain Pain in the eyes may be due to eye strain general fatigue conjunctivitis foreign bodies in the eye and traumatism Conjunctivitis may cause either mild or very intense pain depending upon the extent of the inflammation The pain in corneal ulcer depends upon the location of the ulcer its depth and the amount of inflammatory reaction Occasionally a corneal ulcer may be painless

In keratitis the pain is usually severe and is accompanied by photophobia blepharospasm and lachrimation In iritis the pain is often severe and is felt as if originating in the eyeball It is referred around the orbit in the temple and forehead the pain is worse at night Acute glaucoma causes severe excruciating pain in the eyeball associated with severe headache and is often accompanied by nausea vomiting general depression, and a rise in temperature In panophthalmitis and suppurative iridochoroiditis the pain in the affected eye is agonizing and is accompanied by marked conjunctivitis haziness of the cornea and swelling of the lids In acute retrobulbar neuritis the pain is felt in the affected orbit it is aggravated on pressing the eyeball or by movement of the eye and there is severe headache on the affected side In sphenoidal sinusitis there is deep seated pain in the eyes and headache Migraine may in addition to the severe headache also cause pain first in one eye and later in both eyes The pain in the eyes is often described as though the eyes were either being gouged out of their sockets or forcibly pressed inwards In some of the acute fevers pain in the eyeballs is a frequent complaint This is found particularly in influenza typhoid fever typhus fever smallpox measles malaria coryza and other infections

### **C Glossalgia**

Pain in the tongue may be due to lesions upon the tongue to gastrointestinal diseases and to certain anemias

*Lesions upon the tongue causing pain are*

(a) **Ulcerations** They may be due to trauma such as bites mechanical injury sharp projections from a defective tooth or from artificial denture

<sup>1</sup> SEE ALSO pp 171 182

(b) **Fissures** They may be caused by gastrointestinal disease syphilis local or general irritation from smoking hot food or other irritating substances They may also be found in mouth breathers in generalized dryness of the tongue in vitaminosis and occasionally the cause is not discoverable The pain is sharp and is aggravated by spicy food

(c) **Acute Glossitis** This condition occurs in vitamin deficiency anemias and idiopathically chiefly in women of neurotic tendencies The lesions occur as isolated white patches with small erosions having ragged edges the pain is of a burning character

(d) **Chronic Superficial Glossitis** (*Woeller's glossitis*) It occurs as red or erythematous areas upon the dorsum but chiefly at the margin and tip The pain is peppery or burning or the tongue feels as if it were scalded It is aggravated by talking and eating particularly if the food is spicy Soon after eating the pain subsides but returns several hours later This occurs more often in women than in men

(e) **Abscess of the Tongue** It may be primary or secondary to mouth infection the pain is more intense on talking and chewing

(f) **Geographic Tongue** It may cause burning pain when denuded surfaces or fissures develop among the peculiar patterns

(g) **Tuberculosis** (h) **Syphilis** and (i) **Carcinoma** They do not cause pain until ulcerations develop or when the lesions interfere with lingual mobility or when there is glandular swelling

(j) **Eczema of the Tongue** This occurs in patches the pain is a burning sensation aggravated by irritating foods

(k) **Pyorrhea Alveolaris** Stomatitis any type of xerostomia or other

mouth infections may cause pain and burning of the tongue

(l) **Glossodynia** Painful tongue without local lesions is found in the various neuroses trigeminal neuralgia in tabes dorsalis and occasionally in otherwise normal persons

Pain in the tongue occurs in various deficiency diseases such as pellagra scurvy chronic steatorrhea and sprue It also occurs in chronic liver and gall bladder affections in mucous colitis regional ileitis and occasionally in malignancy of the digestive system Glossitis or glossodynia is frequently found in pernicious anemia chlorosis and also in the various secondary anemias particularly of the macrocytic hyperchromic and the microcytic hypochromic types

## D Pain in the Chest

Pain in the chest is felt when the chest wall or its inner lining is irritated or inflamed This includes the skin the costal and intracostal muscles the periosteum the pleurae the pericardium and the spine, also certain affections of the aorta coronary vessels and mediastinum The heart and lungs when diseased cause pain only when their serous covering becomes inflamed or is injured or when there is interference with their blood supply

Pain in the chest may be due to a variety of causes

(a) **Various conditions** that affect the thoracic wall may be inflammatory lesions tumors skin lesions muscle injury neuralgia neuritis and herpes zoster The pain is usually superficial the area affected is tender to touch and the pain may be aggravated on motion

(b) **Intercostal Neuralgia** This is characterized by sharp pain aggravated on breathing and relieved by pressure

The pain may be traced from the spine following the course of the affected intercostals to the sternum. A tender area is usually located at points where the terminal filaments reach the surface or where the affected nerve emerges from the spine.

(c) **Disease or Injury** Trauma affecting the ribs, sternum or spine as in tuberculosis, osteomyelitis, malignancy and in erosions by aneurysm or other disease processes of any of these structures causes sharp pain on motion.

(d) **Arthritis, Arthralgia or Synovitis** When these conditions affect the spinal or sternal rib articulations the pain is usually aggravated on motion or breathing.

(e) **Diaphragmatic Pleurisy and Subdiaphragmatic Abscess** In these conditions the pain may be sharp or dull and is aggravated by deep breathing by abdominal distention and by straining.

(f) **Pleurisy** *Acute pleurisy* causes localized sharp stitchlike pain on breathing. It may be of rheumatic, tuberculous, influenzal, streptococcal or of other bacterial origin. It is often seen at the onset of lobar pneumonia, in endothelioma or it may be traumatic in origin. *Chronic pleuritis* may be associated with neoplasm, tuberculosis, pulmonary suppurations, pericarditis, aneurysm, disease of the ribs and spine and empyema. Here the pain is sharp but not as sharp as in acute pleuritis. The pain is aggravated by deep breathing, coughing, sneezing, yawning, laughing, singing and loud crying or talking. Immobilizing the chest, the absorption of the sticky exudate or the formation of effusion eases or stops the pain.

(g) **Disease of the Lungs** This seldom causes pain unless the pleura is involved. Spontaneous pneumothorax

will cause such acute sharp pain that it immobilizes the chest. Accompanying the pain there is a sense of expansion which at times is expressed by some patients as crushing or compressing. The pain may be referred to the diaphragm or to the neck and the axillary region. The physical signs of pneumothorax will establish the diagnosis.

(h) **Diseases of the Heart and Aorta** Pericarditis if dry whether tuberculous or rheumatic is usually accompanied by pain and a friction rub is as a rule audible over some part of the precordium. Aortitis and aortic regurgitation occasionally cause pain in the chest which is aggravated by physical exertion. Coronary occlusion causes severe excruciating pressing pain in the sternal and occasionally in the epigastric region; it is referred to the ulnar distribution of the left upper extremity occasionally to the shoulder and at times to the right arm. Angina pectoris whether due to coronary sclerosis, aortitis or other causes produces pain similar to that felt in coronary occlusion. The duration is shorter and the pain is of lesser severity and is frequently brought on by exertion. Occasionally such pain develops while the patient is in bed and is relieved on assuming an erect posture.

(i) **Mediastinal Tumors** These when they particularly crowd the aorta and the sensory nerves may cause substernal or intercostal pain.

(j) **Referred Pain** Pain in the chest is occasionally referred from disease originating below the diaphragm. This is seen in subdiaphragmatic abscess, liver abscess, cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, retroperitoneal malignancy, peritonitis particularly affecting the lesser peritoneal cavity, pancreatitis, splenic infarcts, nephrolithiasis, hydronephrosis, suprarenal



tumors disease of the spine gastric or duodenal ulcers intestinal obstruction mesenteric thrombosis appendicitis orchitis tuboovarian disease and inflammatory diseases of the abdominal wall. In the presence of severe or persistent chest pains when thoracic pathology is absent a thorough abdominal examination is necessary.

### **I. Pain in the Abdomen**

Pain in the abdomen may be generalized over the entire abdomen or it may be localized in any part of the abdomen. The pain may be acute, colicky or it may be dull, and there may be associated with it tenderness on pressure general distention and local or general muscle spasm or rigidity. The pain may be due to inflammation or injury of the abdominal wall or to disease of the abdominal viscera. Abdominal pain due to visceral disease occurs as the result of inflammation of the peritoneum inflammation or injury to the serous covering of the various organs interference with their blood supply hypertraction upon the tissues carrying their nerve and blood supply, and inflammation or injury to the sen-

of Addison's disease and of exophthalmic goiter, Asiatic cholera, achylia gastrica abdominal aneurysm, atheroma of the abdominal aorta Hirschsprung's disease rupture of an abdominal viscus, tuberculous peritonitis, torsion of an ovarian cyst, abdominal neoplasm, disease of the dorsal or lumbar spine, and disseminated sclerosis. Occasionally, general abdominal pain occurs at the onset of acute appendicitis, and in regional ileitis, retroperitoneal malignancy, chronic constipation allergic dyspepsia, intestinal worms or chitis, morphinism, purpura hemorrhagica and other blood diseases, periarthritis nodosa and intestinal neurosis. The pain may also be referred to the abdomen from the chest as in pneumonia pleurisy, angina pectoris and coronary sclerosis.

**Epigastric Pain** It may be brought on at times, by taking food, by the lack of food, or it may not be related to food intake (SEE p 639). The commoner causes of epigastric pain are

**Duodenal Ulcer and Hyperacidity** The pain and burning come on when the stomach is empty and two or three hours after taking food, the pain is relieved by taking food or alkalis.

accompanied by boardlike rigidity and tenderness over the upper abdomen

**Pylorospasm** This usually comes on as a cramplike epigastric pain with a sense of distention or expansion in the upper abdomen two or three hours after meals and may last from five minutes to one half hour or longer

**Acute Hemorrhagic Pancreatitis** This is manifested by sudden severe colicky pain in the epigastrium upper abdomen and occasionally over the entire abdomen and is accompanied by copious bile-stained vomiting abdominal distention a sense of resistance in the upper abdomen and by shock or collapse a subnormal temperature and leukocytosis

**Chronic Pancreatitis** This may at times cause epigastric pain nausea vomiting and jaundice the pain is usually referred to the left hypochondrium and downward

**Cholelithiasis and Cholecystitis** They may often cause pain in the epigastrium The pain may be referred to the upper chest the back or to the right shoulder posteriorly Jaundice and clay colored stools will occur when there is obstruction of the common bile duct Hepatic enlargement due to abscess cyst carcinoma acute congestion syphilis and cirrhosis may also cause pain in this region

**Nephrolithiasis** It may occasionally cause epigastric pain which is acute and colicky but is generally referred downward toward the urinary bladder

**Abdominal Angina** Angina pectoris may at times simulate biliary colic acute indigestion pancreatitis or other acute abdominal catastrophes The onset of the pain is sudden and severe and may be referred backward to the spine or upward beneath the sternum It may come on after exertion emotional stress or

after a heavy meal and may last from a few minutes to several hours There is usually a sense of impending death and copious perspiration The pain is vise like and is associated with precordial tenderness Belching or vomiting often terminates the attack

**Tabes Dorsalis (Locomotor ataxia)** The pain is sudden acute and colicky It is encircling or beltlike in distribution The pain is not dependent on the gastric or intestinal contents Vomiting pallor sweating and a small and feeble pulse occur during the attack The presence of signs of cerebrospinal syphilis in the absence of other pathology suggests tabetic crises

**Retroperitoneal Malignancy** This will often resemble acute gastric pancreatic or biliary tract disease The failure to find evidence of disease in these structures by x ray examination and by laboratory tests will exclude disease of these organs The pain in retroperitoneal malignancy is sharp lancinating and may be referred to various parts of the abdomen and is not related to food or to bowel action It is not relieved by alkalies or antispasmodics

**Abdominal Aneurysm** It causes expansile localized abdominal pulsation and at times a *bruit* may be audible The pain is not related to food A positive serologic test for syphilis in the absence of pathologic findings in the gastrointestinal tract or in the spinal column suggests the possibility of aneurysm

**Omental Hernia** It may be inferred from the acute pain shock generalized abdominal distention silent abdomen and other signs of intestinal obstruction

**Diaphragmatic Hernia** When the stomach is forced upwards through the diaphragmatic aperture and becomes

partially strangulated it will cause severe epigastric pain referred to the left chest and will be accompanied by signs of obstruction : e vomiting distention etc

**Periarteritis Nodosa** This often causes severe epigastric pain or severe pain in the upper right or upper left abdomen. It is accompanied by rigidity irregular temperature leukocytosis hypertension and signs of systemic disease

**Pain in the Right Hypochondrium** This may be caused by disease of the structures which are situated in that region or it may be referred from adjacent or remote structures. The commoner causes for pain in the right hypochondrium are

**Cholelithiasis** A gallstone in its attempt to pass through a channel whose lumen is too small to permit its free passage will cause obstruction with consequent dilatation above the point of obstruction. This produces severe colicky pain. A similar type of pain may be caused by *inflammation of the gall ducts* and *pressure upon the gall ducts or gallbladder*. The pain is colicky, usually intermittent and it is felt in the region of the gallbladder and the epigastrium. It is as a rule referred to the back and up to the right shoulder. When obstruction is complete jaundice develops. A stone passing through the pancreatic duct or one lodged in the common or the cystic duct will cause a similar type of pain in the right hypochondrium and epigastrium

**Cholecystitis without Calculi** This condition may cause the same type of pain as calculous cholecystitis particularly when the bile duct becomes occluded because of inflammation and the gallbladder becomes hyperdistended. This type

of pain also occurs in acute cholecystitis and in empyema of the gallbladder

**Subphrenic Abscess** The abscess causes constant pain which is aggravated on breathing and by pressure. The pain may be referred to the clavicular region by the phrenic nerve to the intercostal spaces by the intercostal nerves or towards the lower abdomen and loin because of pressure upon the liver, adrenal or kidney

**Subdiaphragmatic Pleurisy** It causes sharp stitchlike pain during breathing. When the breath is held, the pain ceases. Pressure against the lower costal spaces eases the pain

**Diseases of the Liver** Such diseases as carcinoma cysts abscess biliary cirrhosis gumma and acute passive congestion usually cause pain and tenderness in the liver region. The pain may be constant and draggy and is aggravated by palpation

**Various Other Causes** Pain in the right hypochondrium may also be caused by right sided spontaneous pneumothorax pneumoperitoneum right sided basal pleurisy, pneumonia carcinoma empyema or other diseases of the lung and pleura. Other causes of pain in this region may be herpes zoster (before the appearance of the rash) disease of the spine carcinoma of the hepatic flexure or ascending colon and acute appendicitis when the appendix is pointing upward

**Pain in the Left Hypochondrium** It may be caused by left sided spontaneous pneumothorax where the pain is sudden and severe and is accompanied by immobility of the chest and other signs of pneumothorax. Left sided diaphragmatic pleurisy causes increased pain on breathing and is relieved by pressure. Diaphragmatic hernia will

cause acute pain with shock. Splenic infarcts cause sudden violent pain in the splenic region and are accompanied by splenic enlargement. Splenomegaly associated with abscess, tuberculosis, amyloid disease and acute congestions will cause dull pain and tenderness. Rupture of the spleen will cause acute pain followed by shock and signs of internal hemorrhage. Obstruction of the bowel, fecal impaction, carcinoma of the splenic flexure or of the descending colon, mucous colitis, spastic colon, and diverticulitis will cause colicky pain in proportion to the extent of the abdominal distension. Disease of the pancreas, hyperdistension of the stomach, diaphragmatic hernia and occasionally cholecystitis and cholelithiasis may cause referred pain to the left side of the abdomen. Referred pain in the left hypochondrium may have etiologic factors similar to those that cause pain in the right hypochondrium.

**Pain in the Right Loin.** This type of pains may be caused by nephrolithiasis, the passage of the stone through the right ureter causes pain in the loin which may be referred to the hypochondrium and downward toward the genitalia (penis, testes or vulva) and occasionally to the perineum and the inner side of the thigh. The pain is colicky in character and is often intermittent. Tortion of the ureter caused by a floating kidney or stricture of the ureter will cause the same type of pain. Pain in the right loin may also be caused by hydronephrosis, pyonephrosis, pyelitis, nephritis, large tuberculous kidney, polycystic kidney, various tumors, cysts and abscesses of the kidney and of the adrenals, aneurysm of the renal artery, lumbosacral sprain, disease of the lumbar vertebrae, inflammatory nucleus pulposus, spinal tumors, orchitis, irritation of the 12th dorsal and

1st lumbar nerves, fracture of the 11th or 12th ribs, foot strain and by fibrositis affecting the lower intercostales and the muscles and nerves in that region. In addition to pain in the right loin and occasionally in the hypochondrium, there are other symptoms and physical signs by which many of these conditions can be identified.

**Pain in the Left Loin.** This may be caused by left sided renal calculus, left sided hydronephrosis, pyonephrosis, pyelitis, kinks and other obstructions in the left ureter, tumors, abscesses, cysts, infarcts and inflammatory disease of the left kidney and by tumors, cysts and abscesses of the left adrenal.

**Pain in the Iliac and Inguinal Regions.** *Acute Appendicitis:* The pain is localized in the right iliac region near McBurney's point. When the appendix is retrocecal the pain is felt down in the inguinal region and when the appendix points upward, the pain is referred to the upper right abdomen. The pain is colicky or it may be constant and severe and is aggravated by palpation. In addition to the pain there is rigidity of the lower part of the right rectus muscle. There is usually a moderate leukocytosis and some rise in temperature. Rupture of the appendix causes a temporary lull of pain and of rigidity which is later followed by signs of peritonitis.

*Acute Salpingitis.* This causes right or left sided severe lancinating paroxysmal pain, it is not as strictly circumscribed as appendiceal pain and it radiates to the thighs.

**Ruptured Ectopic Gestation.** The pain is sudden and severe, often accompanied by shock or collapse, particularly so if the accompanying hemorrhage is copious. The pain is bearing down in character and radiates to the umbilicus.

The history of pregnancy and the presence of a fluctuating mass in the *cul de sac* are confirmatory signs. The temperature may be subnormal.

**Ovarian Cyst** (twisted pedicle) Such a cyst will cause sudden severe pain in either inguinal fossa and in the lower abdomen. The presence of a tender mass is of diagnostic importance.

**Inguinal Hernia** if incarcerated or strangulated will cause acute severe pain often followed by shock with signs of acute intestinal obstruction such as abdominal distention, constipation and vomiting which at times is stercoraceous.

**Cryptorchism** When the undescended testicle becomes inflamed while in the canal it will cause acute severe pain on the affected side in that region and may be referred to the lower abdomen. A similar pain may be caused by *inflammatory hydrocele* and by *acute epididymitis*.

**Acute Diverticulitis** The pain comes on suddenly in the left iliac fossa and is similar to that of appendicitis but on the right side. Rectal examination will elicit tenderness in the left iliac fossa.

**Acute Pyelitis** This may cause pain in either iliac fossa. The pain is acute and is accompanied by tenderness in the affected flank, chills, fever, frequent and painful urination, pyuria and often haematuria.

worse at night. There is also pain on movement of the leg. The physical examination will reveal tenderness, fullness and often fluctuation. There is flexion of the thigh with angular deformity of the hip.

**Ulcerative colitis, tuberculosis of the Cecum, Carcinoma of the Colon and Fecal Impaction** These conditions may cause pain in either iliac fossa. X-ray studies will usually reveal the seat of pathology.

**Regional Ileitis** The pain is colicky, it is felt around the umbilicus and in the right lower quadrant of the abdomen. There is associated abdominal distention and diarrhea with watery, occasionally blood stained stool. This may alternate with constipation. A sausage shaped mass may be palpable in the right iliac fossa.

**Lobar Pneumonia** It may cause referred pain to the right iliac fossa and in children is often mistaken for acute appendicitis. In these cases there may be severe hyperesthesia of the skin but deep pressure does not aggravate the pain and muscle rigidity may be absent. A thorough examination of the lungs should therefore be made in all cases of severe right sided abdominal pain.

**Typhoid Fever** Tenderness, guarding, rigidity and at times, abdominal pain are among the symptoms present sometime during the course of typhoid.

disease of the spine, bladder, uterus, prostate, hip joint, rectum and lower bowel. Diseases of the abdominal arteries or veins torsion of the spermatic cord congestion or hyperdistention of the spermatic cord or seminal vesicles, orchitis muscle strain due to running, jumping, horseback riding, straddling, and foot diseases may cause pain in either or both inguinal regions.

**Pain in the Hypogastric Region.** It may be caused by disease of the bladder with urinary retention diseases of the uterus or the prostate, by pelvic cellulitis, by periostitis or other disease of the pelvic bone, by enteroptosis, and may occur during labor and abortion, in chronic constipation, in tumors of the rectum, in transverse myelitis, and in inflammatory diseases of the lower spine.

### F. Pain in the Rectum

It may result from ischiorectal abscess, hemorrhoids fissures, ulcerations, and stenosis of the rectum. It may also occur as the result of carcinoma polyp and other affections of the rectum as well as from foreign bodies and fecal impactions. The various types of diarrhea and other local irritation such as may be caused by irritating foods may cause pain and burning. Local infections of the anus may cause severe pain and itching.

### G. Backache and Spinal Column Pain<sup>1</sup>

Pain along the spine or in any part of it is a common complaint and may be due to many causes, such as disease and deformity of the vertebrae the articular surfaces, the ligaments or the spinal muscles. It may be due to muscle strains skin sensitivity jarring sprains

faulty posture and flat feet. Backache may also occur as a reflex phenomenon resulting from disease of the thoracic and intraabdominal viscera, and it often accompanies systemic disease, acute and chronic infections and functional or organic nervous diseases. The pain may be sharp dull aching or just a tired or draggy feeling, it may be constant or intermittent and may become aggravated on motion or stop when at rest. The pain may affect the entire spinal column and radiate to other structures or it may affect any portion of the spine, it may be unilateral or bilateral or it may be strictly circumscribed. In attempting to discover the cause of backache it is important to elicit a definite history as to the method of onset, location of the pain, points of tenderness and the influence of motion and also information as to previous diseases and accompanying ailments.

**Pain in the Cervical Region.** This is characterized by stiffness of the neck, limitation of head movements from side to side or forwards or backwards. The pain may be referred over the occiput, to the clavicles or down one or both arms. Occasionally there may be difficulty in swallowing. Among the causes of pain in this region are

**Diseases of the Bone.** These include cervical spondylitis due to tuberculosis or osteomyelitis, arthritic changes particularly in the fifth sixth and seventh cervical vertebrae, rheumatic disease, fractures, scoliosis of the cervical spine, Paget's disease, subluxations of the atlas or axis, congenital deformities cervical rib and carcinoma of the cervical vertebrae or of the occiput.

**Sprains.** These are due to violent trauma which may cause rupture of

<sup>1</sup> SEE ALSO pp 861 and 958

strands of muscle or of ligaments sudden twisting of the head straining of the head or neck against resistance

**Strains** These are caused by holding the head in one position over a long period of time such as may be found among needle workers typists proof readers microscopists swimmers and others who have a tendency to tire or strain their cervical muscles

**Reflex Causes** In this group may be included retropharyngeal abscess Bezold's abscess (an abscess below and behind the mastoid) aneurysm of the circle of Willis affection of the second and third motor eye strain certain types of headache and affections that cause nuchal rigidity such as meningitis tetanus tetanus dengue influenza and exposure to 'drafts and colds Torticollis certain neuroses suppurative thyroiditis adenitis adenolipomatosis and other conditions that interfere with head posture and cause strain of the muscles of the neck or of its blood vessels may cause transient intermittent or constant pain

**Pain in the Thoracic Spine** It may be associated with spinal rigidity and deformities The pain may be referred to the arms the chest or the abdomen If the spinal nerves are involved the radiation of the pain is along the distribution of the involved nerves The more common causes for pain in the dorsal region are

**Skeletal Changes** These are osteoarthritis Pott's disease spondylitis Paget's disease Kummell's disease spinal fractures spinal deformities carcinoma or sarcoma of the spine or cord dislocation of the small vertebrae injury or inflammation of the nucleus pulposus

**Muscular and Ligamentous Causes** These are strain due to faulty posture

and hyperactivity of the arms such as is found in weavers cigar makers pressers writers swimmers etc

**Reflex Causes** These may be referred from the diaphragm gallbladder pancreatic disease intestinal obstruction gastric ulcer or carcinoma fractured rib intercostal neuralgia empyema carcinoma of the lungs pulmonary emphysema asthma mediastinal neoplasm and thoracic aneurysm

**Pains in the Lumbosacral Region (lumbago)** Pain in the lower back is much more common than pain in the upper spine chiefly because of the great mobility of the lumbar spine and the anatomic relationship between the fifth lumbar and the upper sacrum The pain may be severe or dull and may cause rigidity of the spine with spasticity of the spinal muscles The pain from the spine may be referred to the abdomen along the entire spine and down the thighs and legs or along the course of the affected spinal nerves The spine as well as the body as a whole is held rigid as motion change of posture or attempts at walking may aggravate the pain

Pain in this region may be due to osteoarthritis sacralization spondylitis prolapsed nucleus pulposus infective arthritis tuberculosis of the spine hypertrophic and atrophic arthritis neoplasms and suppurations It may be caused by sprain of the articular surfaces the ligaments or by rupture of muscle fibers and ligaments which may be due to violence sudden motion lifting of heavy loads or other traumata Pain in the lower back may also be due to strain caused by prolonged effort against resistance such as carrying heavy burdens by prolonged stooping assuming unnatural or uncustomed postures and by flat feet im

proper shoes and unequal length of the lower extremities

Reflex causes for lower back pain are many. Among the commoner causes are kidney affections such as nephritis renal infarcts pyelitis pyelonephritis perinephritic abscess renal tumors and malignancies hydronephrosis torsion of a ureter renal tuberculosis and adrenal tumors, gastrointestinal disease such as gastric or duodenal ulcers gastric carcinoma carcinoma of the colon sprue and ulcerative colitis visceroptosis Glenard's disease chronic intestinal obstruction fecal impaction chronic appendicitis and mesenteric thrombosis biliary tract disease such as cholecystitis and cholelithiasis hepatomegaly pancreatic disease certain of the blood dyscrasias splenomegaly, aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, disease of the ovaries and uterus or disease of the prostate

**Pain in the Sacroiliac and Coccygeal Regions** It may be caused by disease of these bones or their articulations by tumors fractures and various types of arthritis and reflexly from disease of the pelvic organs the bladder the rectum the prostate and the posterior urethra. It may also result from ischiorectal abscess infections granulomata affecting the peroneum pilonidal cyst peroneal fistulae and spina bifida.

**Pain Anywhere Along the Spine or in the Back** It is often found in the various organic nervous diseases such as spinal meningitis myelitis poliomyelitis multiple sclerosis syringomyelia tabes dorsalis tumors of the spinal cord and vertebrae and spinal cord hemorrhage. *Pain along the spine and in the back* is a frequent complaint in neurasthenia hysteria traumatic neurosis (railway spine) flat feet and exhaustion.

## VI. Pain in the Bones and Joints<sup>1</sup>

### A Pain in the Bones (Ostalgia)

Pain in the various bones of the body may be generalized or localized. *Localized pain* may be due to conditions of the bone in which the periosteum or the endosteum or both are involved. These may result from periosteal lesions traumas neoplasms cystic degenerations inflammations and fractures.

*Generalized pain* may be due to osteomalacia new growth and systemic disease. The character of the pain may be sharp and of sudden onset as in toothache and osteomyelitis or it may be dull and aching as in syphilitic lesions. Nocturnal ostalgia occurs in syphilis tuberculosis of the bones confined subperiosteal pus and often in typhoid fever.

### Local Bone Pain

**Periosteal Lesions** Periosteal lesions causing pain are usually associated with inflammation and may be due to traumatism such as a bruise or a partial bone fracture or it may be caused by subperiosteal hemorrhage inflammation or infection. The pain is usually localized, the area affected is raised and in addition to the sharp pain constantly present there is exquisite tenderness on palpation or on pressure. There is also severe pain on motion. In acute inflammation there is usually local redness heat and swelling. In the presence of suppuration a fluctuating area may be palpable. Subperiosteal hemorrhage may cause pain because of subperiosteal pressure.

<sup>1</sup> SEE ALSO p 723



**Fracture** A fracture of a bone will cause pain either during motion when the fragments are disturbed or during excessive callous formation when sensory nerve filaments become entangled. Fracture of a bone may be caused by traumatism or may occur because of decalcification.

**Neoplasms** Bone tumors malignant or benign will cause pain only when the periosteum or a nerve becomes involved. Neoplasms occurring in a bone that is in motion such as a rib spine arm or leg will cause additional pain because of interference with muscular movements or because of pressure against pain sensitive tissue or a nerve.

**Infections** Infection of a bone may be caused by extrinsic trauma or by intrinsic infection. Extrinsic infection will show signs of inflammation. Intrinsic infection may be caused by tuberculosis syphilis streptococcus staphylococcus or other infectious microorganisms. Intrinsic infection of the bones may occur with pneumonia typhoid fever malaria or other diseases.

**Osteomyelitis** Osteomyelitis is an inflammation of the cancellous tissue and bone marrow. It may be of bacterial origin or it may occur in leukemia Hodgkin's disease and occasionally no definite cause is discoverable. The pain occurs suddenly and is most intense. During the early stages there are no external manifestations of inflammation other than an intensification of pain on pressure and fever. Later the inflammatory process affects the cortex of the bone the periosteum and the surrounding soft tissue. Osteosarcoma gumma osteoperiostitis and tuberculosis will cause localized pain over the lesion and often over the entire affected bone.

### Generalized Bone Pain

**Osteomalacia** This is a chronic softening of the bones. It occurs most frequently during pregnancy. The long bones the ribs the pelvis or the spine may become affected. This may cause pain on walking deep breathing bending or squeezing the affected part.

**Osteitis Fibrosa Cystica (Hyperparathyroidism)** This condition may during the early stages cause generalized pains and may therefore be mistaken for rheumatism. Later when bony cysts form and fractures occur the pain may be localized over the affected parts.

**Myeloma, Chloroma and Hand Schuller Christian's Disease** These cause decalcification of bone and are accompanied by pain in the affected areas.

**Osteitis Deformans (Paget's Disease)** This frequently causes pain in the extremities and in the back and is probably due to the abnormal angulations on the pressure bearing parts of the abnormal bones.

**Scurvy** Among the early symptoms of scurvy are tender shins.

**Hydatid Cysts of the Bone** They are usually accompanied by periosteal pain.

**Periarteritis Nodosa** This often causes severe pain in the extremities or over the ribs.

**Pain in the vertebrae** may be caused by Pott's disease, erosion of vertebrae by carcinoma or aneurysm by sacralization or by fractures also by disease of the intervertebral discs by prolapsed nucleus pulposus by spondylitis and by painful conditions of the muscles of the back.

**Generalized aching pains** in the bones are experienced in dengue fever influenza etc.

### B. Pain in the Joints

Joint pains may be divided into two classes (a) Arthralgia or neuralgic pain, in which structural changes may or may not be present (b) Arthritis or organic pain, in which there are structural changes in any of the tissues comprising the joint such as the bones, cartilage, synovial membrane, capsule, muscles tendons and skin. This may be acute or chronic.

**Arthritis.** The pain in arthritis is aggravated by motion, jolting, jarring and by pressure. The affected joint is usually held at partial flexion which is the natural relaxed position during rest or deep sleep. The pain is more severe in acute joint affections than in the chronic forms. Radiation of pain from the affected joint to distant parts is seen in but few instances, as in the following. Hip joint disease will cause referred pain to the knee and inner side of the leg. Shoulder joint disease may cause radiation of pain to the deltoid trapezoid and the supraspinous fossa. Metatarsalgia or flat feet will radiate pain to the ankles and calf muscles. When the nerves are impinged upon or are inflamed because of joint affections the pain may be referred to the final distribution of their sensory fibers. Pain and deformities of joints may also be secondary to nervous affections such as is seen in syringomyelia, amyotrophic orthopathies due to spinal lesions, and joint affections following neuritis.

**Acute arthritis.** This may be rheumatic, gonorrheal, septic, embolic, tuberculous, syphilitic, hemorrhagic, traumatic or gouty.

**Chronic Arthritis.** It may have an acute onset and eventually become chronic, or it may have an insidious

onset and show evidence of chronicity from the start. Among these latter may be mentioned gonorrheal, tuberculous, syphilitic, traumatic and hemorrhagic arthritis, gout, osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, Heberden's nodes, hyperparathyroidism (osteitis fibrosa cystica), sarcoma and carcinoma of a joint, Charcot's joints, chronic atrophic arthritis, chronic hypertrophic arthritis, hydatid cysts, bursitis, calcific deposits in joint spaces, displacement of articular cartilages, hemophilic, scorbutic and rachitic joints, pulmonary osteoarthropathies, Paget's disease, atrophic muscle disease, peripheral neuritis, and many other chronic affections.

### C. Pain in the Upper Extremities

**Pain in the Shoulder and Arm.** Pain in the shoulder may be unilateral or bilateral. The pain may be reflected downward in the arm to the region of the insertion of the biceps, or it may descend to the forearm and occasionally to the fingers. Pain in the shoulder or arm or in both may be due to (1) Local injury to the bone, the shoulder joint, or the muscles of the shoulder and arm, to the blood vessels supplying the shoulder and arm and to injury to the nerve supply. (2) Disease of the bones and joints such as arthritis of the shoulder joint or of the cervical spine, multiple myeloma, osteitis fibrosa cystica, fractures, Charcot's joint, sarcoma of the upper end of the humerus, dislocations, tuberculosis of the bony structures of the shoulder, synovitis, subacromial bursitis and calcific deposits in and around the joint. (3) Infectious causes producing vascular disease, neuritis, neuralgia, thrombosis or embolism of the brachial or other arteries of this region. (4) Reflex causes such as angina pectoris, coronary thrombosis,

pericardial effusion mediastinal tumor (or aneurysm) diseases of the diaphragm diseases of the gallbladder cholelithiasis cancer of the breast pleurisy pulmonary tuberculosis calcified cervical glands and tumor of the apex of the lung (sulcus tumor). A variety of causes such as cervical rib scalenus anticus syndrome and congenital deformities.

**Scalenus Anticus Syndrome and Cervical Rib** The symptoms of scalenus anticus syndrome and cervical rib are similar both are due to neurocirculatory compression. An x-ray examination of the shoulder will reveal the presence of a cervical rib while the diagnosis of the scalenus anticus syndrome is inferred from the clinical manifestations. There is pain in the shoulder and arm which is referred with varying intensity down the arm. The pain is frequently associated with cramps numbness and tingling in the hand or fingers. Often there is also coldness and apparent atrophy of the hand with areas of paresthesia. The pain is aggravated and the pulse becomes weaker by exercise by adduction of the arm by pressing forward of the shoulder by pressing against the scalenus anticus muscle and when the chin is hyperextended and rotated towards the side opposite to the pain. This is due to the impingement of the subclavian artery and some of the cervical plexus nerves by the scalenus anticus near its insertion in the anterior third of the first rib.

Scalenotomy near its insertion will relieve the symptoms and signs.

**Pain in the Elbow** This may be caused by fractures suppurative trauma and other joint affections.

**Pain in the Wrist and Hand** This may be caused by fractures sprains occupational neurosis gout acroparesthesia erythromelalgia Raynaud's disease thrombosis of the arteries various bone diseases tuberculosis dietitis rheumatic fever various other types of ar-

thritis and also tumors such as sarcoma chondroma carcinoma neurofibroma and the various types of neuritis.

## D Pain in the Lower Extremities

**Pain in the Hip Joint** This pain may be due to rheumatic fever the various arthritides trauma dislocations intracapsular fracture or fractures of the structures entering into the formation of the hip joint various bone diseases osteitis fibrosa cystica tumors suppurations tuberculous hip disease iliopectoral bursitis sarcoma carcinoma sciatica disease of the lower spine obturator hernia scurvy appendicitis and some of the neuroses.

**Pain in the Thigh** This may be caused by hip joint disease sciatica fractures tumors abscess of the thigh thrombosis or embolism of the thigh vessels and of the iliacs various bone diseases trauma disease of the lower spine scurvy, psoriasis abscess obturator hernia tumors of the spinal cord anterior crural neuritis or neuralgia fecal impaction nephrolithiasis and trichiniasis.

**Pain in the Knee** This may be caused by trauma dislocations fractures of the bones forming the knee joint fracture or dislocation of the patella the various arthritides (particularly rheumatic tuberculous gonorrheal and osteoarthritic) dislocation of the semilunar cartilage floating cartilage prepatellar and interpatellar bursitis suppurations popliteal aneurysm hip joint disease fracture of the femur disease of the feet (flat feet corns bunions and metatarsalgia and improper shoes) also syphilitic arthritis various bone diseases intermittent hydrarthrosis (housemaid's knees) purpura hemorrhagica hemophilia osteitis fibrosa cystica and scurvy.

**Pain in the Feet and Toes** This may be caused by injury from blisters corns calluses bunions fractures dis-

locations flat feet articular rheumatism osteoarthritis diabetic gangrene or gangrene from other causes endarteritis obliterans thromboangitis obliterans

Raynaud's disease erythromelalgia arteriosclerosis achillodynia the various types of dactylitis and hallux valgus varus equinus or rigidus

## VII. Miscellaneous Causes of Pain

### A Nerve Pain and Tenderness<sup>1</sup>

The two classifications of pain along the nerve trunks or their terminal distribution are neuralgia and neuritis. Behan states that the distinction between neuralgia and neuritis are quantitative rather than qualitative. It is largely a matter of degree. A severe neuralgia may be termed a neuritis, a mild neuritis a neuralgia.

**Neuralgia** This is defined as an affection of the sensory nerves characterized by intermittent severe lancinating or darting pain along the course of the nerve or its various distributions. The overlying skin is sensitive and there are tender points corresponding to the locations where the cutaneous branches of the nerve are given off from the deeper structures. Deep pressure is generally less painful than superficial palpation.

**Etiology** Neuralgia may arise from exposure to cold, infections, toxemias, trauma, pressure, vitamin deficiency diseases, diabetes mellitus, various poisons, rheumatic and gouty diathesis and from infectious diseases. The commonest distributions of neuralgia are (a) trigeminal (*tic douloureux*) and other facial neuralgias, (b) sciatic along the course of the sciatic nerve or one of its external popliteal branches, (c) intercostal; any of the intercostals may become affected if the ganglion is involved, herpes zoster may appear, (d) brachial; the pain may be along the courses of the brachial, subclavicular or cervical trunks and their distributions. Other distributions may be along the circumflex, lumboabdominal, crural, visceral, cardiac or any of the

sensory nerve trunks and ganglia. The affection of the nerve may be accompanied by paresthesia, local anesthesia, sympathetic nerve features, muscular atrophy, spasms and vasomotor changes.

**Neuritis** This may be defined as an inflammation of a nerve. It may affect a single nerve (local neuritis) or a number of nerves (multiple neuritis) and it may be acute or chronic. The inflammation may be interstitial or parenchymatous.

**Etiology** Neuritis may result from traumata, exposure to cold, local and general infections, pressure, arteriosclerosis, toxins, metallic poisons such as lead, arsenic, bismuth, etc., and it may occur in diabetes mellitus, beriberi, deficiency diseases, alcoholism, rheumatism, tabes dorsalis and senility. The most outstanding symptom of neuritis is pain along the course of the nerve and its distribution. The pain is burning or boring in character. It is aggravated on movement of the affected part and during the night. The nerve is extremely tender to pressure. Other findings are anesthesia, paresthesia, wasting and often paralysis and the disappearance of the reflexes of the affected parts. The skin over the affected part becomes atrophied and glossy and occasionally it may become thickened.

**Sciatica** This is a term often applied to pain along the distribution of the sciatic nerve. Sciatica should be classified as primary and secondary.

**Primary or True Sciatica** This is probably a neuralgia of the sciatic nerve caused by inflammation of the ganglia or of the periganglionic tissue. The exact cause is as yet unknown.

<sup>1</sup> See also p. 855

**Symptoms** There is severe burning pain in the lumbosacral region, the hip joint and along the posterior aspect of the thigh, the calf muscles and at times in the outer surface of the foot. There is also tenderness along the sciatica nerve but seldom paresthesia, anesthesia, or muscle atrophy. Walking and extension of the leg are painful. Flexion of the thigh without flexion of the leg is not possible. The tendo Achilles reflex is absent. Primary sciatica is not as common as secondary sciatica.

**Secondary Sciatica:** This may be a sciatic neuritis caused by disease of the spine such as sacroiliac disease, spondylitis, tumor of the spinal vertebrae, fracture, prolapse or extrusion of the nucleus pulposus, spinal caries, etc. It may also be caused by tumors of the spinal cord and nerve roots, pelvic tumors, large prostate, and by inflammatory diseases of the hip, thigh and leg muscles, by flat feet, and by disease or deformities of the osseous structures of the spine, hip, thigh, leg or foot.

## B. Pain Due to Arterial Disease<sup>1</sup>

Diseases of the arteries such as arteritis, thrombosis, embolism and aneurysm usually cause pain in the parts of the body supplied by the affected arteries either because of interference with the circulation or because of injury to the tissue adjacent to them.

**Arteritis.** Painful conditions due to arteritis are intermittent claudication and other types of pain caused by endarteritis obliterans, thromboangitis obliterans (Buerger's disease), diabetic gangrene, syphilitic endarteritis, aortitis, angiospasm, coronary disease, erythromelalgia, Raynaud's disease and periarthritis nodosa.

**Thrombosis or Embolism.** These conditions in any part of the body, except in the central vessels, cause severe pain. It is noted particularly in mes-

enteric thrombosis, splenic infarct, and coronary thrombosis, the pain being due to ischemia or anoxemia.

**Aneurysm:** This causes pain, first, by hyperdistention and injury to the arterial coat, and, second, by pressure against adjacent structures.

**Pain Due to Disease of the Veins:** This is noted in the various types of phlebitis and venous thrombosis. The pain is usually felt at the location of the thrombus and along the course of the inflamed vein. There is also pain in the part supplied by the affected vein because of venous stasis and the resulting gangrene.

**Pain Due to Interference with the Blood Supply of a Part:** This may be caused by an overabundance of blood such as is seen in acute inflammations where the pain is sharp, acute, aching or throbbing, and in passive congestion where the pain is dull and sometimes aching due chiefly to hyperdistention or it may be due to a diminished blood supply causing anoxemia. The pain in Raynaud's disease is felt in the hands or feet and is due to contractions of the arterioles, thus causing anemia. In purpura hemorrhagica the pain is caused by obstruction in the arterioles. Pain in an extremity caused by the application of a tight tourniquet is due partly to venous congestion and partly to lack of arterial blood. The pain in angina pectoris and coronary disease is probably due to ischemia of the heart muscle.

## C. Pain in the Genital Organs<sup>1</sup>

**Pain in the Penis.** It may occur during micturition, or it may be unrelated to urination. The commonest causes for such pain may be (a) *urethral*, caused by acute urethritis (gonorrheal or otherwise), urethral trauma, stricture, calculus, chancre, cellulitis, carcinoma, tuberculosis, cavernitis and

<sup>1</sup> See *Peripheral Vascular Disease* p 535

<sup>1</sup> See *Genital Diseases Female* p 694 and *Male* p 707

insect bites (b) *vesical*, due to acute cystitis trigonitis vesicle calculus tuberculosis cancer ulcerations foreign bodies papilloma of the bladder and acute urinary retention (c) *prostatic* resulting from acute or chronic prostatitis prostatic hypertrophy carcinoma of the prostate prostatic abscess *Referred pain* to the penis may result from nephrolithiasis, orchitis sacroiliac disease inflammation of the perineum rectal carcinoma hemorrhoids rectal fissures and occasionally from acute appendicitis particularly in retrocecal appendicitis

**Pain in the Testes** It may result from injury or disease. It is found in the various types of orchitis epididymitis torsion of the cord varicocele hydrocele malignant tumors and tuberculosis also in disease of the prostate disease of the lower vertebrae inguinal hernia inflammation of the spermatic cord nephrolithiasis excessive venery and mumps

**Pain Itching and Swelling of the Vulva** These symptoms may occur in local inflammations due to injury infections Bartholin's disease carcinoma tuberculosis syphilis and granulomata also in chancre chancroid lupus condylomata and various skin affections. It may also occur in kraurosis vulvae eczema diabetes herpes during the menopause and in the various neuroses

### D Itching (Pruritus)

Itching is a peculiar sensation perceived by the skin and mucous membranes which is satisfied by scratching. It may be due to local irritation systemic disease or allergic reaction

**Local Itching** Local itching may be caused by foreign bodies or other injuries it is also found in hay fever measles nasal obstructions and eczema of the eyelids. Pruritus ani and vulvae may result from parasites worms local inflammatory conditions dermatitis hives irritating discharges atrophic

changes toxic conditions such as diabetes nephritis cholemia and during the menopause

This may also be caused by pediculosis scabies dermatophytosis various local skin diseases frostbites insect bites local irritations due to sunburn x ray burn scalding and other types of burns (during the healing stage) and by local interference with the circulation or innervation of a part

**General Itching** This is seen in most types of jaundice. It is particularly prominent in pancreatic disease gallbladder disease and in other types of obstructive jaundice. It is also found in diabetes mellitus exophthalmic goiter in various general skin diseases such as prurigo lichen eczema seborrhea mycosis and in diseases in which there is sweating and desquamation also in general urticaria poison ivy and other irritations. Various foods and drugs may cause itching of the skin though signs of urticaria be absent. In morphinism it is a prominent sign.

Itching may also occur in the various neuroses. It is at times present after a warm bath after disrobing particularly in the winter (pruritus hiemalis) and at times it occurs reflexly particularly when one sees or thinks of pediculi bed bugs or other vermin. Occasionally the desire to scratch is brought on by seeing some other person scratching.

Itching either local or general is a common allergic manifestation. It is noted in the various types of urticaria (SEE p 927) in prurigo and in atrophic

**Atrophicism** is due to poisoning with atropine littoralis. The young shoots of this plant when eaten will cause tingling swelling and intense itching of the fingers hands forearms and face. The disease is common among the poor of northern China who eat this plant because of food scarcity.

## CHAPTER V

### Miscellaneous Symptoms

#### Edema<sup>1</sup> (Oedema)

Edema consists of an abnormal local or general accumulation of interstitial fluid

Edema of the lower eyelids may be caused by disease of the eyes and by acute coryza such as is seen in acute cold or in hay fever. It may be among the early symptoms of nephritis; in such cases the edema is worse on arising in the morning and may disappear as the day wears on. In severe cases of nephrosis or in tubular nephritis the edema may spread to the entire face and later to the body. Edema of the eyes may also be due to local inflammation as orbital tumors, facial injury, skin diseases and erysipelas. Edema of the face and neck may occur in mediastinal tumors. Edema of the feet or legs may be due to local injury, tight shoes or excessive tiredness and is an early sign in right-sided heart failure. The edema is worse during the day and evening (if the patient is active) and disappears in the morning after a night's rest. Edema is an indication of interference with the venous circulation of a part.

**General Edema.** This may occur in heart failure, glomerular nephritis, nephrosis, anemia, trichinosis, salt retention, starvation and inadequate intake of proteins. The edematous parts usually pit on pressure. *Lymphedema* is caused by decreased lymphatic drainage and the edematous parts do not readily pit

#### Increase in Weight (Obesity)

Increase in weight, if not due to natural growth, may be caused by edema, accumulation of fluids in the serous sacs by pregnancy, tumors, cysts, and by the rapid accumulation of fat as found in the various types of obesity.

An excessive amount of fat generally distributed through the body is due to a disproportion between the amount of food ingested and the amount of energy dissipated. Obesity is generally classified as (1) Exogenous obesity due to (a) the consumption of large quantities of food or drink, (b) to diminished activity, and (c) to a combination of excessive food consumption and low expenditure of energy. (2) endogenous obesity due to some pathologic disturbance of the fat metabolism center or to disturbance of some of the endocrines (SEE p 772).

**Exogenous Obesity.** It occurs in otherwise normal persons. The individual child or adult has a voracious appetite and consumes large quantities of fat-producing food. There is one type who is energetic, plethoric, physically strong and active and is in good health except that he or she may have a tendency to dyspnea on moderate exertion. The food intake is enormous and is in excess of the amount of energy expended. Another type is one who is listless, complaining, who eats moderately large quantities of food but dissipates little energy. This type of individual is usually anemic, may complain of headache, tiredness, indigestion, constipation, backache, dyspnea and cardiac palpitation. A third type is moderately

energetic but consumes more food than is required for his or her maintenance. This type has frequent headaches, tires easily, may have attacks of syncope, has hypotension but normal basal metabolism and is subject to diabetes mellitus.

**Endogenous obesity** is attributable to diminished oxidation. While the individual may or may not take in more food than he can utilize, the abnormality lies in the lack of dissipation of energy rather than in the excessive consumption of food.

Several distinct types of obesity are recognized.

**Pituitary Obesity.** Hyperpituitarism as seen in acromegaly, gigantism, basophilism and in the less pronounced forms of hyperpituitarism usually produces the tall, plethoric type of obesity. Hypopituitarism as seen in Frohlich's syndrome and in the adult types produces girdle obesity; the abdomen is fat and pendulant, the ankles and wrists are rather small, the skin is of fine texture and the hair distribution is heterosexual.

**Hypothyroid Obesity.** There is uniform distribution of rather firm, non-yielding fat with fat pads over the supraclavicular and suprascapular regions. The forearms and legs are large and fat; the skin is often of leathery texture.

**Hypogonad Obesity.** There is a general distribution of fat with large fat pads over the trochanteric regions. The genitalia are poorly developed and the sex functions are poor or nil.

**Adrenal Obesity.** The fat distribution is over the upper part of the body; the lower part of the body is usually thin and there is accompanying virility, hypersexuality and hypertrichosis.

**Pineal Obesity.** This type of obesity may occur in young boys. They develop prematurely; they are plethoric

have increased musculature, increased stature up to a certain age; they are quite stout and have hypersexual development. The condition is known as *macrogenitosomia precox*.

**Cerebral Obesity.** General rapid increase in fat distribution may occur in some tumors of the brain, in certain of the brain diseases as encephalitis lethargica and in other encephalopathies.

**Other Forms.** Obesity also occurs in *lipodystrophy* and in *thymic disease*.

### Loss of Weight (Emaciation)

Loss of weight may result from insufficient food intake, inability properly to utilize ingested food, rapid expulsion of food from the stomach by vomiting or diarrhea and excessive expenditure of energy.

**Rapid Emaciation.** This occurs in all acute febrile diseases, in chronic infections, in carcinoma, tuberculosis, diarrhea, dysentery, progressive vomiting, the various digestive disorders, scurvy, pellagra, marasmus, exophthalmic goiter (in spite of voracious appetite), diabetes mellitus, parasitic infestations, pituitary cachexia, anorexia nervosa, Addison's disease, general loss of appetite or inability to eat, dehydration, starvation, overwork and insufficient sleep.

### Changes in the Appetite<sup>1</sup>

The appetite may be variable. It may be excessive (bulimia, polyphagia), perverted or capricious (pica), unsatiated even after a full meal (acoria) or decreased (anorexia).

**Excessive Appetite.** It is characteristic of diabetes mellitus, hypopituitarism and of certain nervous disorders.

<sup>1</sup> SEE ALSO p. 634



**Loss of Appetite** It occurs in various chronic gastrointestinal diseases in fevers and in most acute and chronic diseases. It also occurs in some of the neuroses in anorexia nervosa etc.

**Aversion to Certain Types of Food** This is found when on a monotonous diet in diseases of the gastric intestinal tract, in some of the neuroses and insanities, during early pregnancy and in other conditions where an achlorhydria exists. An aversion to meat is often an early sign in carcinoma of the stomach.

## Gastrointestinal Symptoms

### Heartburn (Pyrosis)

Heartburn is a burning sensation felt in the epigastrium, precordium and deep in the throat. This is usually associated with hyperacidity. Hyperacidity may be a symptom in acute and chronic gastritis, gastric ulcer, duodenal ulcer, gastrectasis, cholecystitis and in spastic and ulcerative colitis. It may also occur in vagotonia in highly neurotic individuals and during pregnancy. Occasionally heartburn may occur in achlorhydria.

**Time of Occurrence** Heartburn occurring during feeding or soon thereafter, particularly when taking spicy foods or concentrated sweets is a sign of inflammation of the esophagus and stomach. Heartburn two hours after meals that is relieved by taking food or soda is a symptom in duodenal ulcer. Heartburn occurring five or six hours after eating is often found in pyloric obstruction and in liver and gallbladder disease.

### Nausea

Nausea is a peculiar sensation of impending vomiting felt at the infrasternal or suprasternal notch or in the throat

and is often followed by vomiting. It may arise from various causes, such as psychic, reflex, nervous, gastrointestinal, toxic, etc.

**Psychic Causes** Seeing revolting sights (operations, blood, vomiting), smelling nauseating odors, listening to gruesome, revolting or boring tales, and even the thought of certain unpleasant episodes.

**Reflex Causes** Irritation of the soft palate or retropharynx, eyestrain, diseases of the middle ear, Meniere's disease, migraine, seasickness, car sickness, pain, intestinal worms, ovarian disease and pregnancy.

**Nervous Causes** Hysteria, neurasthenia, psychasthenia, morning nausea in nervous and high strung children.

**Gastrointestinal Causes** Cholecystitis, duodenitis, achlorhydria, chronic gastritis, acute gastritis, carcinoma of the stomach (an early symptom), pyloric obstruction, gastrectasis, cirrhosis of the liver, colitis, obstipation, toxic gastritis following an alcoholic debauch or food poisoning.

**Toxic Causes** Eating of fatty, greasy or spoiled food, overeating, uremia, pregnancy, hyperdigitalization, following the taking of drugs or poisons such as ipecac, opium, arsenic, mercury, phosphorus or lead, and allergic reactions.

**Various Diseases** Pellagra, diabetes mellitus during acidosis, acute pancreatitis, acute nephritis, pulmonary tuberculosis, exophthalmic goiter during crisis, Addison's disease, chronic myocarditis with passive congestion, mitral stenosis, and periarteritis nodosa.

### Eructation

#### (Regurgitation, Water brash)

Regurgitation of small quantities of food without retching or vomiting may

be, if alkaline, from the esophagus; and, if acid, from the stomach.

Regurgitation may be a symptom in esophagitis, stricture or obstruction of the esophagus, and esophageal diverticulum. It may also occur in gastric ulcer, in dilatation of the cardiac end of the stomach, in cardiospasm, and in various neuroses

### *Vomiting*

Vomiting may be acute or chronic. The term acute here designates the sudden occurrence of vomiting without a previous history of recurrent attacks. Chronic vomiting is defined as recurrent attacks of vomiting over a long period of time (See p 635)

**Acute Vomiting:** It occurs in seasickness, car sickness, etc., following the taking of a general anesthetic, or of certain foods, and emetic drugs such as apomorphine, ipecac, copper sulfate, zinc sulfate, antimony and other drugs, in psychic shock, fright, undue excitement, anxiety or disgust, and after the smoking of the first cigar or pipe of tobacco. Acute vomiting may also occur in acute appendicitis, acute intestinal obstruction, incarcerated hernia, acute peritonitis, acute gastritis, acute gastroenteritis, migraine, cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis, nephrolithiasis, acute Bright's disease, uremia, acute alcoholism, hyperdigitalization, and after the administration of morphine

Acute vomiting is an important symptom in fracture of the skull, cerebral concussion, cerebral embolism and sinus thrombosis. It also occurs in yellow fever, acute yellow atrophy of the liver and other types of acute hepatic degeneration

**Chronic Vomiting:** This is associated with diseases of the digestive tract, the nervous system, the endocrine system and with intoxications and various reflexes.

**Diseases of the Digestive Tract:**  
*Stomach* Carcinoma, ulcer, achylia gastrica, pyloric stenosis of infancy, gastrectasis, chronic gastritis, pylorospasm, ulcerations of the esophagus, chronic gastrorrhea, hour-glass contraction of the stomach, syphilis and tuberculosis of the stomach.

*Intestines* Chronic intestinal obstruction, carcinoma of the colon or of the small intestines, dysentery, ulcerative colitis, ulceration of the intestine, paralytic ileus, diverticulitis, regional ileitis, intestinal worms, pancreatitis, pancreatic cyst, and adenoma of the islands of Langerhans

*Liver* Cirrhosis of the liver, amyloid liver, Banti's disease, carcinoma of the liver, the bile ducts or the gall-bladder, abscess of the liver and passive congestion of the liver

**Diseases of the Nervous System:** Cerebral tumor, cerebral abscess, hydrocephalus, cerebral hemorrhage, cerebral syphilis, locomotor ataxia, pachymeningitis, pituitary cachexia, etc

The various neuroses, hysteria, psychasthenia, neurasthenia, psychic and emotional disturbances and in some of the insanities, and in Raynaud's disease.

**Diseases of the Endocrine System:** During a crisis in exophthalmic goiter, myxedema or Addison's disease

**Diseases of the Cardiovascular System:** Congestive heart failure, chronic myocarditis, coronary thrombosis, aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, Stokes-Adams syndrome, and mitral stenosis

**Diseases of the Hemopoietic System** Purpura primary and severe secondary anemia sickle cell anemia and leukemia

**Reflex Causes** Eyestrain Meniere's disease tubovarian disease pertussis angioneurotic edema allergic reactions prostaticitis and cyclic vomiting in children

**Toxic Causes** Chronic glomerular nephritis nephrosclerosis chronic nephrosis pregnancy, chronic alcoholism and some of the vitamin deficiencies

### **Diarrhea<sup>1</sup>**

Diarrhea may be acute or chronic and the number of stools and their character vary according to etiology

**Acute Diarrhea** This may result from food and drug poisoning from the use of various laxatives and it may be brought on as an allergic phenomenon or by anxiety nervousness and psychic disturbances. Acute diarrhea is found in enterocolitis ileocolitis ileitis cholera morbus Asiatic cholera bacillary dysentery acute amebic dysentery sprue pellagra typhoid fever influenza mesenteric thrombosis and vitamin B and D deficiencies

Acute infantile diarrhea occurs during the summer months and is the result of food deficiencies and indiscretions in diet, also is a result of various types of gastroenteritis

**Chronic Diarrhea** It occurs in chronic enterocolitis ulcerative colitis mucous colitis tuberculous enteritis sprue celiac disease chronic steatorrhea carcinoma of the rectum carcinoma of the pancreas chronic amebic dysentery nervous diarrhea and in various chronic toxic conditions of the liver the intestines and in parasitic infestations.

<sup>1</sup> See also pp. 619 and 1931

### **Constipation**

Constipation may result from bad stool habits and from improper diet in sufficient liquids and sedentary habits. Constipation as a symptom in various diseases occurs in intestinal obstruction from any cause strangulated hernia neoplasms strictures mucous colitis paralytic ileus fecal impaction also in lead poisoning opium poisoning visceroptosis hemorrhoids fissures and fistulae in the rectum and anus. It may occur constantly or intermittently in various chronic gastrointestinal diseases in gallbladder and liver diseases in various nervous and mental diseases in anemia and in various debilitated states

### **Respiratory Symptoms**

#### **Dyspnea and Orthopnea (Rapid, Difficult or Labored Breathing)**

Dyspnea occurs because of insufficient oxygenation which the rapid respiratory rate attempts to supply. It may result from numerous conditions. (a) In health after exertion and in emotional states where an increased amount of blood is being used more air is required and is thus being supplied, also in high altitudes where the air is rare or in unventilated or stuffy places where the oxygen is insufficient in order to supply greater quantities of air, a more rapid interchange between inspired and expired air takes place. (b) Pathologically dyspnea may be caused by diseases of the lungs which limit their air content such as consolidation of the lungs lung tumors and suppurations compression of the lungs by pleural effusions of air serum or pus or by mediastinal tumors or aneurysm. (c) Chronic emphysema and especially bronchial asthma may cause orthopnea because the exchange of

air is most difficult (d) Tumors, foreign bodies within the upper air passages, or stenosis of the bronchi from any cause may interfere with the entrance of air in the lungs or with its exit from the lungs (c) Cardiac disease may cause an insufficient quantity of blood to be brought to the lungs for oxygenation as seen in acute or chronic myocarditis with cardiac decompensation (f) Anemia or other blood dyscrasias may result in a scarcity of the oxygen-carrying corpuscles hence a more rapid interchange between the alveolar air and the blood within the pulmonary circulation becomes necessary (g) Fevers may require greater than normal amounts of air because of the increased metabolism (h) Disease of the diaphragm, ribs and pleura may hinder proper lung expansion thereby requiring more frequent lung action so as to bring the necessary amount of air in a given time (i) Abdominal distention may crowd the diaphragm upwards and interfere with its motion thereby hindering lung expansion (j) Certain toxic states may cause anoxemia, to overcome it respirations quicken (k) Disease of the nervous system or brain may interfere with respiratory centers (SEE pp 256 466 and Index)

### ***Hypopnea***

#### ***(Slow Respiration, Oligopnea, or Bradypnea)***

Slow respiration is noted in intracranial pressure due to tumor, hemorrhage or cerebral concussion and in basal meningitis. It is also found in diabetic coma uremia opium poisoning chloroform narcosis and acute alcoholism. Large doses of chloral aconite, atropine and the barbiturates may slow the respiratory rate sufficiently to cause cyanosis. Periods of hypopnea or apnea

are seen in conditions that cause Cheyne Stokes breathing Biot's breathing Stokes Adams syndrome and occasionally, it occurs in those approaching death. In hysteria and in certain convulsive states apnea may last for several minutes.

### **Aphonia**

Aphonia may be of four types (1) Aphasia because of brain lesions, (2) disease of the vocal apparatus (3) deaf mutism and (4) it may be a temporary condition due to neurosis.

#### ***(1) Aphasia Due to Brain Lesion***

It may be caused by some organic focal cerebral lesion such as hemorrhage thrombosis embolism tumor, abscess or gumma. The various types of aphasia depend upon the location of the lesion.

(a) When spoken words are not understood and cannot be repeated or written from dictation (cortical auditory aphasia) the lesion is to be found in the psychomotor center at the foot of the third temporal convolution. (b) When the spoken words are not understood cannot be repeated or written from dictation, but internal language (word thinking) reading (inaudible) and writing are not interfered with (subcortical auditory aphasia) the lesion is to be found in the first temporal convolution. (c) When volitional speech is present, but reading or writing from dictation, or copy is impossible (cortical visual aphasia) the lesion is to be found in the gyrus angularis. (d) When language is understood but the power of speech and repeating of words are absent and reading ability is lost (cortical motor aphasia) the lesion is to be found to extend from the temporal lobe to the cuneus. (e) Sensory motor aphasia is a condition in which there

is neither ability to recognize symbols or written words (visual aphasia), nor to speak or pronounce them (alexia, motor aphasia) (SEE p 842)

In right handed persons the speech centers are in the left side of the brain, and in left handed persons these centers are in the right side of the brain

(2) **Aphonia Due to Disease of the Vocal Apparatus.** This is a condition in which there is an inability to speak aloud, the individual may be hoarse or may only be able to whisper

This condition may be caused by the various types of laryngitis such as tuberculous syphilitic, diphtheritic, suppurative or atrophic, and by acute and chronic catarrhal laryngitis caused by irritations, inhalation of irritating substances straining or infections. It may also be due to disease growths or dislocations of the vocal cords, edema of the glottis, foreign bodies in the larynx benign or malignant tumors of the larynx, mediastinal tumors, thyroiditis, aneurysm of the arch of the aorta chronic pharyngitis apical tuberculosis and tumors of the apex of the lung bulbar palsy, and many of the conditions that may cause irritation of the larynx or pressure upon the nerves controlling the larynx or the structures entering into the formation of sound

(3) **Deaf-mutism:** This is congenital. Many of the deaf mutes may be taught how to speak or to utter sounds though their hearing ability remains nil

(4) **Temporary Aphonia and Aphasia.** They may occur in the various neuroses, particularly in hysteria and occasionally in neurasthenia, psychasthenia and the various exhaustive diseases. They have also been noted following an epileptic seizure, during attacks of

migraine and during sudden and severe fright

### **Hiccough (Singultus)**

Hiccough may be described as a peculiar high pitched grunting or clicking sound caused by the rushing of air through the glottis due to spasm of the diaphragm resulting from irritation of the phrenic nerve. Hiccoughing may continue for a brief period, it may be intermittent or it may continue for several days or weeks both when awake or during sleep. It is usually accompanied by visible contractions of the epigastrium or upper abdomen

Hiccoughs may be caused by over eating or imbibing too freely of alcoholic beverages, and by various diseases of the stomach intestines, liver, gall bladder, pancreas and kidneys. When it occurs in uremia and peritonitis it is a grave symptom. Hiccoughs may also occur in disease of the meninges of the brain and in hysteria, exhaustive diseases, diaphragmatic pleurisy, gangrene of the lungs cardiac decompensation and in many toxic states. Occasionally hiccoughs may appear in epidemics either associated with symptoms of influenza or encephalitis, or in the absence of any symptoms and signs of disease. It may last from several minutes to several days

### **Sneezing (Sternutation)**

Sneezing usually results from irritation of the nasal mucosa by dust, gases or other substances, or by tickling. It is found in acute rhinitis, nasal polyps acute coryza and hay fever, in the neuroses, as an allergic reaction, in deflected septum, and when foreign bodies are lodged in the external ear canal pressing against the tympanum. Reflex sneezing may occur when a person looks

at a bright light, particularly at the sun, and occasionally in some persons it occurs every morning after breakfast. There are also individuals who develop a paroxysm of sneezing after coitus and after a large meal, that is when the stomach becomes overfilled with food or drink, or the colon is hyperdistended.

### *Cough (See: p 317)*

Cough is a sudden explosive expulsion of air from the lungs accompanied by a characteristic sound. It is a reflex response to some irritation in the retropharynx, larynx, the larger bronchi, lungs or pleura. It may be caused by irritation, acute inflammation, passive congestion (as in heart disease) or by tracheobronchial pulmonary obstruction. Cough may also be due to nervousness and other extrapulmonary conditions.

**The Character of the Cough** *Dry, Harassing, Nonproductive Cough*. These conditions are found in the early stages of bronchitis, the pneumonias, pulmonary infarcts, and in laryngitis, pharyngitis, tracheitis, elongated uvula, enlarged lingual tonsils, foreign body in the upper air passages, irritating dust or fumes, fractured rib, lulum tuberculosis, goiter, mediastinal tumor, aneurysm (brassy cough), Hodgkin's disease, pericardial effusion, neurosis, nasal polyps, pneumothorax, epiglottic ulcer, diaphragmatic paralysis, pharyngeal abscess, and esophageal diverticulum. A slight, dry, hacking cough occurring singly and frequently repeated is often found in incipient pulmonary tuberculosis.

**Moist, Productive Cough**. It is found in the later stages of acute bronchopulmonary diseases as in lobar and bronchopneumonia, in the later stages of acute bronchitis, and in sub

acute and chronic bronchopulmonary diseases, as in bronchiectasis, chronic bronchitis, whooping cough, foreign bodies in the lungs, lung abscess, gangrene of the lung, bronchogenic and pulmonary carcinoma, pulmonary tuberculosis, pulmonary actinomycosis, psittacosis, pneumoconiosis, bronchial asthma, and the various suppurative diseases of the lungs and bronchi.

**Paroxysmal Cough**: It occurs in whooping cough. Coughing spells at long intervals occur in bronchiectasis and in the presence of a pulmonary cavity resulting from gangrene, abscess, tuberculosis or other causes. When the cavities fill with secretion or when there is change of posture a paroxysm of coughing is initiated. Cough occurring on exertion is found in chronic pulmonary fibrosis, tumor of the lungs, mediastinal tumors or aneurysm, pleural and pericardial effusions, pneumothorax and cardiac decompensation.

Short coughs occurring at frequent intervals and accompanied by watery and often by serous frothy bloodstained expectoration is a sign of pulmonary edema usually caused by acute heart failure or by acute pulmonary irritation.

**Laryngeal Cough**. This may assume various qualities such as croupy, hoarse, ringing, brassy or metallic, and is caused by direct or indirect laryngeal irritation. These types are found in laryngeal spasm caused by the inhalation of foreign bodies, etc., food, irritating gases, etc., in ulceration of the larynx or vocal cords, in irritation of the recurrent laryngeal nerve as in aneurysm, intrathoracic goiter, abscess or tumor in the upper mediastinum, enlarged mediastinal glands, and esophageal malignancy.

**Suppressed Cough**. A voluntary attempt to suppress coughing is usually

due to pain as in pleurodynia, acute pleurisy acute diaphragmatitis broken ribs intercostal neuralgia, during the early stages of acute bronchitis because of substernal soreness, and in peritonitis or other painful conditions of the chest spine or abdomen, and also when the patient is too weak to cough

**Inability to Cough** In the presence of profuse pulmonary secretion inability to cough may be found in paralysis of the diaphragm, in bulbar palsy or other neurologic conditions in extreme distention of the abdomen and in extreme prostration

To diagnose a disease merely by a cough is impossible. A thorough physical examination and other studies of the patient are necessary. It is also important to study the sputum grossly and microscopically (SEE p 1033)

### Weakness (Adynamia, Asthenia)

Weakness or loss of strength, also known as fatigue, lassitude languor, exhaustion tiredness faintness malaise prostration etc is a prominent and often a distressing symptom in many conditions. It occurs temporarily after severe exertion or emotional strain, from insufficient food or drink inadequate rest or sleep, exposures to excessive heat, during various fevers or other diseases, in diarrhea vomiting or other gastrointestinal disturbances during convalescence from acute diseases, and it may follow overindulgences in alcohol, tobacco tea coffee and venery

Diseases in which marked weakness is a prominent symptom are Addison's disease, hypoadrenia myasthenia gravis, hypothyroidism, exophthalmic goiter, hypoglycemic states, diabetes mellitus, diabetes insipidus, pituitary cachexia, hypopituitarism, Cushing's syndrome

late stages of acromegaly; anorexia nervosa, malnutrition vitamin deficiencies, gastrointestinal diseases such as ulcer malignancy, colitis, the various diarrheas the anemias and other blood dyscrasias hemorrhage, chronic cardiac and pulmonary disease, nephritis, neurocirculatory asthenia, the various neuroses, hypertension, and various acute and chronic diseases

### Cardiac Palpitation<sup>1</sup>

Rapid heart action may be due to physiologic reasons, *e g*, running or other physical exertion, to psychic disturbances as anxiety, terror, fear, hilarity, neurosis, or other psychic and nervous disturbances, to fever (for each rise of 1° F of fever there is an increase of ten heartbeats per minute), to certain types of shock copious hemorrhage exophthalmic goiter, neurocirculatory asthenia, cerebral concussion, heat exhaustion and conditions that will either paralyze the vagus or stimulate the sympathetic, to diseases of the heart *e g* paroxysmal tachycardia, auricular flutter, auricular fibrillation acute myocarditis, pericardiac effusion cardiac decompensation and other diseases of the cardiovascular system (SEE p 467), to drugs and poisons, *e g*, the various coal tar derivatives that cause myocardic weakness such as acetanilid, phenacetin amidopyrine, to other drugs as atropine, tobacco caffeine, coffee, tea strychnine, ammonia alcohol, and to allergic reactions, overfeeding and exhaustion

### Insomnia (Sleeplessness)

Insomnia may be of two types. One in which the patient awakens a number of times during sleep and is unaware of the periods in which he has slept and

<sup>1</sup> SEE Tachycardia p 510

therefore believes that he has not slept at all, and the other type in which the patient sleeps very little or not at all. Often the patient may have difficulty in falling asleep, or he may sleep soundly the early part of the night and awaken during the early morning hours.

Insomnia may be caused by pain, frequent urination, diarrhea, impacted colon, cough, dyspnea, itching and other physical irritants. It occurs in various nervous states (the neuroses), also in overwork, brain fag, excitement, joy, grief, and other emotional states. Insomnia may also be caused by various drugs such as caffeine, tea, coffee, strychnine, belladonna, benzedrine and other sympathomimetics. Sleeplessness is common in some of the acute febrile diseases, particularly in lobar pneumonia. It is found in hyperthyroidism, arteriosclerosis, some of the severe anemias, cardiac decompensation, severe hypotension, cerebral syphilis, delirium tremens and other toxic states, in some of the psychoses and in the meningitides.

*Dreams and nightmares* usually occur in neurasthenia, functional neurosis, prolonged worry and excitement, in cardiac disease, asthma, acute indigestion, constipation, partial wakefulness, and when assuming certain positions in bed. Dreams may also be cultivated as a habit, and certain drugs may cause either pleasant dreams or nightmares.

### Vertigo (Dizziness, Giddiness)

(See p. 850)

Vertigo may be functional or reflex and it may be organic. It is a subjective sensation of loss of equilibrium causing the patient a great deal of alarm. The sensation is known as objective vertigo when objects seem to be whirling or swimming around the patient,

and as subjective vertigo when the patient feels as if he is whirling, sinking or rising while the surrounding objects are at rest.

**Functional or Reflex Vertigo:** This may be due to acute or chronic gastrointestinal disease, constipation, copious diarrhea, gallbladder disease, eyestrain, cerebral anemia, sudden release of cerebrospinal pressure after lumbar puncture, shock, severe hemorrhage, impacted cerumen in the auditory canal, arteriosclerosis, essential hypertension, extreme hypotension, seasickness, car sickness, swinging aeroplane sickness, or it may result from riding in any moving vehicle, rapid turning of the body, looking down from great heights, hyperextension of the neck when looking upwards for an extended period of time, sudden change of posture, watching rapid movements of others, drug intoxication such as morphine and other opiates, quinine, salicylates, alcohol, tobacco (early users), belladonna, chronic interstitial nephritis, and it may occur in the neuroses such as hysteria, neurasthenia, psychasthenia, and neurocirculatory asthenia.

**Organic Vertigo.** This occurs as the result of definite lesions in the brain, the vestibular apparatus or the intracranial nerves. Vertigo is a prominent symptom in cerebellar tumor where the vertigo is constant during walking, standing, sitting or lying down. In cerebral tumor the vertigo occurs in attacks and is accompanied by a feeling of uncertainty of equilibrium and confusion. In cerebral syphilis the vertigo becomes manifested on effort, in general paresis vertigo is transient and may precede convulsions, hemiplegia or coma. In multiple sclerosis, vertigo may occur on arising, attempting to walk or on movement of the head. In oculomotor paraly-



sis, the vertigo appears when the gaze is turned towards the paralyzed muscle and it disappears when the paralyzed eye is covered or when the head is tilted so that the unaffected eye alone is in use. In labyrinthitis the vertigo is constant when standing, reclining or when the eyes are shut, it is accompanied by nystagmus, disturbance of equilibrium, nausea and vomiting. In Meniere's disease the vertigo comes on in paroxysms, the patient often falls to the ground because it is almost impossible to maintain the erect posture, the vertigo continues in the recumbent position and the seizure terminates with nausea and vomiting.

It is often difficult to differentiate between reflex vertigo and the organic form. It is therefore important to evaluate the history and all the symptoms and signs associated with the attacks and those occurring between the attacks. Nearly all cases of vertigo are accompanied by a sense of panic, many have nausea and some have vomiting.

### **Tremors (See: p. 816)**

Tremors may be transitory or constant.

**Transitory Tremors.** They may occur because of excitement, fear or other emotional stress, chills preceding fever, exposure to cold, asthenia, excessive use of tea, coffee, tobacco, alcohol, and poisoning by mercury, lead, chloral, cocaine, morphine and other opiates and absinth.

**Constant Tremors.** They may affect the hands, feet or the entire body and are characteristic of

**Paralysis Agitans (Parkinson's disease).** The tremor is constant and while the patient is at rest it affects chiefly the upper extremities. The face is expressionless though the eyes are bril-

liant, the body is 'set' and there is slowness in starting locomotion.

**Senility.** The tremor is first limited to the head and may later involve the whole body. The tremors are fine and are aggravated by voluntary motion and by excitement.

**Encephalitis Lethargica (Parkinson's type).** The tremor is in the arms and legs, it is rather coarse and is continuous during rest.

**Multiple Sclerosis.** The tremor may affect the entire body and is brought out by attempted action (intention tremor); the tremor stops when at rest.

**Progressive Lenticular Degeneration (Wilson's disease).** During the early stages the tremor is fine, it becomes more pronounced on physical or mental effort and may be voluntarily stopped for short periods. There may be progressive interference with swallowing and with speech; the consonants are slurred and the last syllables are dropped.

**General Paresis.** The tremors are first noted about the face, lips and tongue. They occur at rest but are aggravated by motion such as attempted protrusion of the tongue or by attempting to speak.

**Hemiplegia.** The affected and weakened limb may have a Parkinson-like tremor which is aggravated by motion or excitement.

**Intracranial Tumors.** Those affecting the pons, crus, optic chiasm, the frontal lobes or the cerebellum and other brain diseases may cause intention tremors.

**Exophthalmic Goiter.** This is characterized by fine tremors of the outstretched hands; occasionally it is accompanied by coarser tremors over the body.

**Tremors of the Eyelids, Etc**

Tremors are seen in hysteria and other neuroses when the eyelids are closed. Tremor of the protruded tongue is often found in typhoid fever. In the neuroses coarse tremors of the hands, feet or body are brought out voluntarily and during excitement, they disappear during rest or sleep.

**Occupational Tremors** They may develop in any group of muscles that are subjected to chronic strain or constant use.

**Hereditary Tremors** These usually affect the head or arms; the tremors are fine, regular and rapid. They become more pronounced during voluntary motion and are slight during rest.

**Chronic Arthritis and Chronic Muscle Wasting** They may cause intention tremors which cease when at rest.

**War Psychosis (shell shock) and Neurocirculatory Asthenia** They may cause general or local tremor during excitement or physical effort; this ceases during sleep.

**Muscle Cramps (Muscle Spasm)**

Sudden severe tonic or clonic contractions of groups of muscles associated with severe pain and accompanied by temporary partial or complete paralysis may occur from overexertion of a particular group of muscles, interference with their blood supply or irritation of their innervation. They may be toxic phenomena or they may result from certain nervous diseases. Thus muscle cramps occur in swimmers, divers (caisson disease or bends) in occupational neuroses as in telegraphers, violinists, typists, etc. in thromboangiitis obliterans (Buerger's disease causing intermittent claudication) in tetany

spastic paraplegia, strychnia poisoning, heat exhaustion, alcoholic neuritis, hysteria. Asiatic cholera and some of the diseases characterized by convulsive states. Myotonia (Thomsen's disease) is characterized by tonic spasms of the muscles when movement is attempted; it does not cause pain and is usually a hereditary disease. Tonic preservation or tonic immobility is a condition in which there is an inability to relax a group of muscles once they become contracted as when an object is grasped and there is an inability to let go of it. This condition is due to a central lesion, probably in the mid frontal region (Mills).

**Convulsions**

Convulsions may be defined as paroxysms of involuntary and purposeless muscular contractions that may be limited to one or several groups of muscles or to the entire body. They may be of variable duration and intensity. They may be tonic (slow and continuous) or clonic (rapidly alternating between contraction and relaxation) and there may be consciousness or unconsciousness. Convulsions occur in the following conditions:

**Epilepsy** In grand mal the convulsions are tonic and clonic and are preceded by a cry. The patient when not in bed falls to the ground. He is unconscious, may bite his tongue, froth at the mouth and lose sphincteric control. When the convulsion is over the patient falls into a deep sleep. In petit mal or jacksonian epilepsy a single group of muscles or one extremity may develop convulsions and there may be momentary unconsciousness. Epilepsy may be idiopathic or may be caused by brain tumor or syphilis.

**Eclampsia** This occurs during pregnancy or during or after labor. The convulsions come on suddenly and are most often clonic in character. Occasionally they may be tonic. The eyes roll upwards, the pupils dilate and there is twitching and distortion of the facial muscles. The convulsions spread rapidly to the extremities and to the body which becomes rigid. The breathing is stertorous, there is frothing at the mouth and the face becomes congested. There may be several paroxysms separated by periods of coma.

**Uremia** The convulsions are epileptiform and recur rapidly. They may be jacksonian or general. The initial cry is absent. The convulsive seizures may be preceded by headache, apathy, drowsiness and other cerebral symptoms. Following the convulsive seizures there may develop temporary blindness or deafness. The clinical features and laboratory examination of the urine and of the blood show characteristic findings.

**Hypoglycemia** The convulsions are epileptiform and are usually localized to one side of the body. The patient is bathed in perspiration and the skin is clammy, the pulse is rapid and the breathing is rapid and shallow.

**Tetanus** The convulsions are tonic and first affect the muscles of mastication (trismus) and then spread to the muscles of the back, causing opisthotonos, the body and extremities may become rigid (orthotonos) or the body may bend to either side (pleurothotonos) or forwards (emprosthotonos). The eyebrows may be raised and the angles of the mouth drawn out producing the so-called *risus sardonius*. The slightest irritation may bring on convulsive seizures. There is no loss of consciousness during the convulsive seizure,

therefore they are attended by severe pain.

**Hydrophobia (rabies)** The spasms are usually limited to the muscles of deglutition and the larynx, swallowing causes painful spasms in the neck muscles. During the spasm the patient is hyperexcited and may become maniacal.

**Tetany** The convulsive seizures are paroxysmal and may last from a few minutes to several hours. The spasms may affect the flexor muscles of the upper extremities alone or the lower extremities alone or the entire body may become affected. There is carpal spasm causing the obstetric hand or the claw hand. The toes may be hyperflexed and the feet are held in the talipes equinovarus position. The thigh muscles are seldom affected. The head may be turned to one side and laryngismus stridulus may be present. The patient is conscious and the convulsions are painful.

**Infantile Convulsions** They may result from gastrointestinal disease or they may occur at the onset of any acute infectious disease, teething, intestinal worms, thymus disease, rickets and spasmophilia. There is complete unconsciousness, rolling of the eyeballs, working of the jaws and orthotonos.

**Hysterical Convulsions** There is no complete loss of consciousness. The patient assumes various poses, there is fine blinking of the eyelashes, attempts to open the eyes are resisted, the sphincters are not relaxed. The convulsive seizures usually follow some emotional upset or when sympathy is demanded.

**Other Causes** Convulsions are artificially produced in the treatment of various mental diseases by the intravenous injections of insulin or metrazol or induced by a properly controlled

electric current During the convulsions there is total loss of consciousness with severe tonic and clonic spasms of the muscles of the face upper and lower extremities and of the trunk

### Fainting Attacks (Syncope)

In most instances syncope is a vaso motor phenomenon and may range in severity from drowsiness to periods of unconsciousness which may be momentary or may last for several minutes Often the patient may be in a state of complete relaxation where volition is suspended though he may be conscious of his surroundings It differs from coma which is brought about by definite pathologic conditions and causes complete unconsciousness Fainting spells are common among certain types of nervous individuals and are brought on by fright excitement grief hilarity and other emotional states Some individuals will faint at the sight of blood or at the sight of a surgical operation Occasionally it may come on after suddenly arising from sleep particularly when there is an urge for a copious bowel movement or when there is a hyperdistended bladder with an urge to micturate Fainting is due to anemia of the brain in those who have neurovascular instability It is of little importance in young people lowering the head below the level of the body will quickly restore the circulation providing the syncope is not caused by sudden severe hemorrhage Syncope is characterized by pallor of the face and lips cold clammy skin weak pulse and inactive pupils In old people syncope may be due to organic causes and is therefore serious Syncope may occur during the course of various diseases such as arteriosclerosis chronic myocarditis coronary thrombo-

sis Stokes Adams syndrome aortic stenosis severe anemias Addison's disease Raynaud's disease and it may also occur in heat exhaustion hypoglycemia after an injury and during hemorrhage

### Coma (Unconsciousness)

Coma is a state of unconsciousness from which the patient cannot be aroused until the cause of the coma is partially or entirely removed During coma there is loss of consciousness sensibility and motility The reflexes are absent and the swallowing of liquids when forced into the mouth is not possible Coma occurs as a terminal phenomenon in many diseases and also in many conditions that are not necessarily terminal It is therefore important to diagnose the etiologic factors responsible for coma

In examining a patient in coma the following routine should be followed A brief history should be obtained from attendants when possible the head of the patient should be carefully examined for signs of injury and for bleeding from the nose mouth or ears, the odor on the breath should be noted the state of the pupils should be observed the reflexes superficial and deep should be elicited the existence of paralysis spasms or of flaccidity should be noted the general appearance of the patient the color temperature and moisture of the skin the type of breathing and the condition of the pulse should be observed and a urinalysis and blood chemistry should be done as soon as possible.

The commonest causes for coma are (a) Cerebral hemorrhage and other intracranial accidents (b) uremia (c) diabetes (d) hypoglycemia, (e) drug poisoning (f) severe alcoholism (g)

epilepsy, (h) sunstroke, (i) gas asphyxia (j) meningitis, (k) cerebral tumor or abscess, (l) freezing, (m) asphyxia (n) Stokes Adams syndrome (o) hysteria and (p) various endocrine and other disturbances

**Cerebral Hemorrhage** There is a sudden loss of consciousness with complete relaxation. The face may be pale or flushed, respirations are stertorous, the cheeks are inflated and the lips splutter during expiration. The pupils are either dilated or are unequal and inactive except in pontine and ventricular hemorrhages when they are contracted. Hemiplegia is at first flaccid later it becomes spastic, the Babinski sign is present on the affected side at times on both sides. Hypertension may be present during a hemorrhage but falls when bleeding has stopped. The temperature may be normal or somewhat elevated. Hemorrhage into the ventricle when severe causes death within a few hours after the onset of coma, during coma the pupils are contracted or there may be conjugate deviation, the pulse is slow and respirations are labored.

**Hemorrhage into the pons** causes a rapid onset of coma, the pupils are contracted, respirations are slow, the temperature rises rapidly and may reach 103° to 104° F or higher. There may be spastic movements of the limbs during the state of unconsciousness. Small hemorrhages into the pons may cause stupor in which the facial and ocular muscles as well as those of articulation and swallowing are involved. There may be unilateral paralysis to motion and sensation, at times there is crossed paralysis. During the early stages there is conjugate deviation away from the paralyzed side.

**Cerebral Embolism** It may cause sudden loss of consciousness usually in

a young adult, the pulse is rapid and the blood pressure is not changed, the temperature is normal. When consciousness is regained the existing paralysis may gradually disappear. There may be conjugate deviation.

**Cerebral Thrombosis** If coma develops it is of slow onset usually occurs during the night in persons past middle life or in syphilitics. The temperature is normal, the pulse is rapid and weak and there may be conjugate deviation.

**Spasm of the Cerebral Arteries** There may be loss of consciousness. It occurs in the aged, the pulse may be slow, complete recovery may occur in from 12 to 48 hours.

**Ingravescent Apoplexia** This is due to rupture of one of the branches of the external lenticular artery. The hemorrhage is at first in the external capsule. It subsequently breaks through the white matter into the lateral ventricle. The symptoms begin with headache, vertigo, vomiting followed by hemiplegia, hemanesthesia, coma and death in a few days.

**Fracture of the Skull** Coma may come on soon after or within 24 hours after the injury. There may be external evidence of trauma, the blood pressure is high and the pulse is slow. There may be edema of the retina and the escape of cerebrospinal fluid from the nose or the ears, nausea and vomiting may precede the coma. Concussion of the brain may cause coma which in the absence of hemorrhage may last from a few minutes to several hours.

**Cerebral Tumor** Coma is of gradual onset preceded by headache. The presence of choked discs and other focal signs may help in the diagnosis.

**Cerebellar Hemorrhage** If the fourth ventricle is involved this may cause coma with difficulty of respiration and swallowing

**Subarachnoid Hemorrhage** This seldom causes deep coma, there is nearly always nuchal rigidity and positive Kernig's sign, the deep reflexes are absent

**Uremia** The coma is often preceded by headache muscular twitching and occasionally by convulsions or by stupor "Uremic frost" appears on various parts of the skin There is Cheyne Stokes breathing and a foul or uremic odor on the breath Paralysis may or may not be present The eye grounds may show retinal hemorrhages The urine if present, may show albumin and casts and the blood will show a high nitrogenous waste product content, the blood pressure is high

**Diabetic Coma** It comes on slowly it may be preceded by headache apathy and drowsiness, the breathing is deep and sighing the Kussmaul's air hunger type of breathing, the eyeballs are soft and there is a fruity odor on the breath the cheeks are flushed and the lips are cherry red There is marked dehydration and a rise in temperature The urine contains sugar and acetone and the blood may show a high glucose content while the  $CO_2$  content of the alveolar air is low The pulse is rapid and the blood pressure may be low (SEE p 799)

**Insulin Shock** The onset of coma is sudden The skin is cold and clammy and there is profuse perspiration breathing is rapid and shallow Plantar reflexes are elicitable Hypoglycemia may be as low as 50 mg or even lower

**Drug Poisoning** In opium poisoning the patient can usually be aroused, respirations are slow 10 to 12 per

minute, the pulse is slow and feeble, the skin is cold and clammy, and the temperature is low The eyes will show pinpoint pupils both equally contracted There is an absence of localized paralyzes

In barbiturate poisoning the patient may be aroused for short periods during which he will mumble unintelligibly The pupils are usually dilated and there may be nystagmus Abdominal and tendon reflexes are absent

**Alcoholism** The coma is not complete The patient may be aroused during which time he may mumble incoherently The face is flushed or cyanotic, the pupils are equal and may be dilated Respirations are of normal frequency though deep and noisy The breath is alcoholic and is peculiarly sour or rancid The odor on the breath should not be entirely relied upon for a diagnosis of alcoholic coma since one who has been drinking alcohol may also develop a cerebral hemorrhage or alcohol may have been forced on the patient in an attempt at resuscitation

**Epilepsy** The coma usually follows epileptic convulsions and is of short duration There may be a bitten tongue and foam on the lips the face is congested, the breathing stertorous and the limbs relaxed

**Sunstroke** The patient is wholly unconscious, the skin is hot and dry the rectal temperature may exceed  $109^{\circ}F$  The pulse is full and bounding, and the respirations are rapid labored deep and often stertorous There may be convulsions

**Gas Asphyxia** The coma from gas asphyxia is associated with general cyanosis The skin may be pale or have a cherry red color or there may be cherry red blotches on an otherwise

pale skin The respirations may be rapid and shallow or may be intermittent and gasping The pulse is weak and rapid The odor of some of the gases may cling to the patient Among the lethal gases are illuminating gas, automobile exhausts, coal gas, water gas, hydrogen sulfide (sewer gas) phosgene, mustard etc

**Meningitides, Meningoencephalitis and Encephalitis Lethargica** These may cause coma The etiology is determined by the history, febrile course neurologic signs cerebrospinal fluid examination and blood cultures

**Brain Pathology** Brain abscess, tumor, multiple sclerosis, paresis, arterial spasm and acute softening of the brain may cause coma The diagnosis is based upon the history, local signs cerebrospinal fluid findings and various neurologic findings

**Freezing** This may cause total unconsciousness or coma The history of the circumstances under which the patient was found may be sufficiently diagnostic, particularly if there are no external signs of injury or hemorrhage The pulse and respirations are slow and the general appearance of the patient is that of tranquility or as if in a faint The exposed portions of the body are cold stiff and pale

**Asphyxia** When due to foreign bodies in the air passages, drowning strangulation suffocation anterior poliomyelitis and pulmonary thrombosis asphyxia may cause coma which is diagnosed by the history, general lividity, distention of the veins in the neck, weak pulse, loss of phincteric control, and

hemorrhage from the rectum, nose or other mucous surfaces

**Stokes-Adams Syndrome** The coma may be profound The pulse is extremely slow (ventricular), the auricular rate as noted in the vessels in the neck may be rapid, the breathing is stertorous, and there is general cyanosis Epileptiform convulsions may occur during the state of unconsciousness

**Hysterical Coma** This is characterized by the general appearance of the patient, the assumed theatrical attitudes, the flushed face, the normally responding pupils, the resistance of the eyelids to attempted opening and the upturned eyeballs The pulse may be normal or somewhat rapid, respirations may be slow, normal or rapid, but are not stertorous Coma or trance always occurs before an audience and the patient always chooses the spot upon which to fall Organic symptoms are absent The patient may be aroused when made to inhale irritating vapors such as ammonia or glacial acetic acid, or when pressure is made upon the supraorbital nerve or other sensitive spot

**Endocrine and Other Disturbances** Coma may occur in tumor of the islands of Langerhans (hypoglycemia), in hemorrhage and tumor of the adrenals, and in the pituitary tumors, it may also occur in Addison's disease, myxedema, exophthalmic goiter, tetany, hydrocephalus, and other grave toxic states (SEE Chap XXVI p 755 and Index)

**Special Symptoms of Mental Disease** (SEE p 892)

### SECTION 3

## Methods of Physical Examination



## CHAPTER VI

### Methods of Physical Examination

Physical examination may be defined as the act of ascertaining the condition of the patient's body by the aid of the special senses supplemented by the use of such instruments as enhance the acuteness of these senses : e the stethoscope thermometer sphygmomanometer etc

A *physical or objective sign* is one that can be seen heard or felt by the examiner These signs are sought for by five methods

**Inspection** *Inspection is the act of examining a patient by the sense of sight comparing the part under examination with one's mental picture of a similar healthy part and one side of the body with the corresponding part of the opposite side* It is quite natural that inspection should be the first method of procedure in a physical examination because the eye will recognize outward conditions long before the other senses can be brought into activity Certain impressions are created by observing apparent trifles which may prove valuable on further examination Expert clinicians at times are able to make a diagnosis by apparent intuition because they see and observe more closely than do others It is therefore of great importance to practice inspection thoroughly and systematically

**Palpation** Palpation is the act of examining an underlying organ by feeling with any part of the hand the overlying surface and is usually the second step in a physical examination Unfortunately because of their eagerness to auscultate many examiners too fre-

quently neglect palpation and as a result their tactile sense is not as acute as it might be made if they practiced palpation at least as frequently as they do auscultation and percussion As one grows older the sight may become dim the hearing loses a great deal of its acuteness but the tactile sense usually remains unaltered and in many cases it becomes even more precise In order to be of value in a physical examination palpation must be conducted systematically and with a definite object in mind In other words one must know how to palpate and have a definite reason for so doing

**Percussion** Percussion is the act of striking or tapping the surface of the body in order to elicit such sounds as are produced by setting the underlying viscera into vibration By percussion are elicited various sounds and degrees of resistance depending upon the nature of the tissue struck : e a solid substance when struck produces a dull or muffled sound while an air containing one gives rise to a clear or resonant sound The proportion of air and solids in a substance determines its degree of clearness or dullness The sound elicited by percussion enables one to distinguish the healthy from the diseased parts of the body

**Auscultation** Auscultation literally means the act of listening for sounds If a sound is produced outside of the body by striking upon the surface directly or indirectly the procedure is termed percussion However when lis-

TABLE I  
AVERAGE WEIGHTS AND HEIGHTS AT VARIOUS AGES

MALE			FEMALE		
Age Years	Average Height in Inches	Average Weight in Lbs	Age Years	Average Height in Inches	Average Weight in Lbs
6	46	48	6	45	45
7	48	53	7	47	50
8	50	58	8	49 5	57
9	52	64	9	52	64
10	54	71	10	54	72
11	56	78	11	56	80
12	58	88	12	58	90
13	60	98	13	60	102
14	63	113	14	62	114

TABLE II  
SHOWING INCREASES IN WEIGHT AT VARIOUS AGES

## MALE

Age Years	Year 52 Weeks		20 Weeks		Quarter 13 Weeks		Week	
	Lbs	Oz	Lbs	Oz	Lbs	Oz	Lbs	Oz
6	4 0	64	1 5	25	1 0	16	0 77	1 23
7	5 0	80	1 9	31	1 3	20	0 96	1 54
8	5 0	80	1 9	31	1 3	20	0 96	1 54
9	6 0	96	2 3	37	1 5	24	1 15	1 85
10	7 0	112	2 7	43	1 8	28	1 35	2 15
11	7 0	112	2 7	43	1 8	28	1 35	2 15
12	10 0	160	3 8	62	2 5	40	1 92	3 08
13	10 0	160	3 8	62	2 5	40	1 92	3 08
14	15 0	240	8	92	3 8	60	2 88	4 61

## FEMALE

Age Years	Year 52 Weeks		20 Weeks		Quarter 13 Weeks		Week	
	Lbs	Oz	Lbs	Oz	Lbs	Oz	Lbs	Oz
6	4 0	64	1 5	25	1 0	16	0 77	1 23
7	5 0	80	1 9	31	1 3	20	0 96	1 54
8	7 0	112	2 7	43	1 8	28	1 35	2 15
9	7 0	112	2 7	43	1 8	28	1 35	2 15
10	8 0	128	3 1	49	2 0	32	1 54	2 46
11	8 0	128	3 1	49	2 0	32	1 54	2 46
12	10 0	160	3 8	62	2 5	40	1 92	3 08
13	12 0	192	4 6	74	3 0	48	2 31	3 60
14	12 0	192	4 6	74	3 0	48	2 31	3 60

TABLE III  
WEIGHT-HEIGHT AGE TABLE FOR GIRLS FROM BIRTH TO SCHOOL AGE

Height (Inches)	1 mo	3 mos	6 mos	9 mos	12 mos	18 mos	24 mos	30 mos	36 mos	48 mos	60 mos	72 mos
20	8											
21	9	10										
22	10	11										
23	11	12	13									
24	12	13	14	14								
25	13	14	15	15								
26		15	16	17	17							
27		16	17	18	18							
28			19	19	19	19						
29			19	20	20	20						
30			21	21	21	21	21					
31				22	22	23	23	23				
32					23	24	24	24	25			
33						25	25	25	26			
34						26	26	26	27			
35						29	29	29	29	29		
36							30	30	30	30	31	
37							31	31	31	31	32	
38								33	33	33	33	
39								34	34	34	34	34
40									35	36	36	36
41										37	37	37
42										39	39	39
43										40	41	41
44											42	42
45												45
46												47
47												50
48												52

WEIGHT-HEIGHT AGE TABLE FOR BOYS FROM BIRTH TO SCHOOL AGE

Height (Inches)	1 mo	3 mos	6 mos	9 mos	12 mos	18 mos	24 mos	30 mos	36 mos	48 mos	60 mos	72 mos
20	8											
21	9	10										
22	10	11										
23	11	12	13									
24	12	13	14									
25	13	14	15	16								
26		15	17	17	18							
27		16	18	18	19							
28			19	19	20	20						
29			20	21	21	21						
30			22	22	22	22	22					
31				23	23	23	23	24				
32				24	24	24	25	25	26			
33					26	26	26	26	27			
34						27	27	27	27			
35						29	29	29	29	29		
36							30	31	31	31		
37							32	32	32	32	32	
38								33	33	33	34	
39								35	35	35	35	
40									36	36	36	36
41										38	38	38
42										39	39	39
43										41	41	41
44											43	43
45											45	45
46												48
47												50
48												52
49												55

(By courtesy of The Children's Bureau U S Department of Labor)

TABLE IV  
NORMAL WEIGHTS FOR MEN IN POUNDS (*With Light Clothing and Shoes*)

Age Years	5 ft	5 ft 2 in	5 ft 4 in	5 ft 6 in	5 ft 8 in	5 ft 10 in	6 ft	6 ft 2 in
15	107	112	118	126	134	142	152	162
16	109	114	120	128	136	144	154	164
17	111	116	122	130	138	146	156	166
18	113	118	124	132	140	148	158	168
19	115	120	126	134	142	150	160	170
20	117	122	128	136	144	152	161	171
21	118	123	130	138	145	153	162	172
22	119	124	131	139	146	154	163	173
23	120	125	132	140	147	155	164	175
24	121	126	133	141	148	156	165	177
25	122	126	133	141	149	157	167	179
26	123	127	134	142	150	158	168	180
27	124	128	134	142	151	158	169	181
28	125	129	135	143	152	159	170	182
29-30	126	130	136	144	153	160	172	184
31-33	127	131	137	145	154	162	174	186
34-35	128	132	138	146	155	165	176	188
36-37	129	133	139	147	156	166	178	190
38-39	130	134	140	148	157	167	179	192
40-41	131	135	141	149	158	168	180	193
42-43	132	136	142	150	159	169	181	194
44-45	133	137	143	151	160	170	182	195
46-50	134	138	144	152	161	171	183	197
Over 50	135	139	145	153	163	173	184	198

NORMAL WEIGHTS FOR WOMEN IN POUNDS (*With Light Clothing and Shoes*)

Age Years	4 ft 8 in	4 ft 10 in	5 ft	5 ft 2 in	5 ft 4 in	5 ft 6 in	5 ft 8 in	5 ft 10 in	6 ft
15	101	105	107	112	118	126	134	142	152
16	102	106	109	114	120	128	136	143	153
17	103	107	111	116	122	129	137	144	154
18	104	108	112	117	123	130	138	145	155
19	105	109	113	118	124	131	139	146	155
20	106	110	114	119	125	132	140	147	156
21-22	107	111	115	120	126	133	141	148	157
23	108	112	116	121	127	134	142	150	157
24-25	109	113	117	121	128	135	143	151	158
26-27	110	114	118	122	129	136	144	152	159
28-29	111	115	119	123	130	137	145	153	160
30	112	116	120	124	131	138	146	154	161
31-32	113	117	121	125	132	140	148	155	162
33	114	118	122	126	133	141	149	156	162
34-35	115	119	123	127	134	142	150	157	163
36-37	116	120	124	128	136	143	151	158	164
38	117	121	125	130	137	145	153	160	166
39	118	122	126	131	138	146	154	161	167
40	119	123	127	132	138	146	154	161	167
41-42	120	124	128	133	139	147	155	162	168
43	121	125	129	134	140	148	156	163	170
44-45	122	126	130	135	141	149	157	164	171
46-47	123	127	131	136	142	150	158	165	173
48-49	124	128	132	137	143	152	160	167	175
Over 50	125	129	133	138	144	152	162	170	177

TABLE V  
NORMAL SPAN IN RELATION TO HEIGHT

HEIGHT (Inches)	SPAN		HEIGHT (Inches)	SPAN	
	Male (Inches)	Female (Inches)		Male (Inches)	Female (Inches)
36 0	34 7	34 6	55 0	55 6	54 8
37 0	35 7	35 6	56 0	56 7	55 8
38 0	36 7	36 6	57 0	57 9	56 9
39 0	37 7	37 6	58 0	59 1	58 0
40 0	38 8	38 6	59 0	60 2	59 1
41 0	39 8	39 7	60 0	61 3	60 2
42 0	40 8	40 7	61 0	62 5	61 3
43 0	41 9	41 8	62 0	63 6	62 4
44 0	42 9	42 8	63 0	64 7	63 6
45 0	44 0	43 8	64 0	65 8	64 8
46 0	45 1	44 9	65 0	67 0	66 0
47 0	46 2	46 0	66 0	68 1	67 3
48 0	47 3	47 1	67 0	69 2	68 5
49 0	48 6	48 2	68 0	70 4	69 8
50 0	49 8	49 3	69 0	71 5	71 0
51 0	51 0	50 4	70 0	72 7	72 3
52 0	52 2	51 5	71 0	73 9	73 5
53 0	53 4	52 6	72 0	75 0	74 8
54 0	54 5	53 7			

NORMAL UPPER MEASUREMENT IN RELATION TO HEIGHT

HEIGHT (Inches)	Upper Measurement		HEIGHT (Inches)	Upper Measurement	
	Male (Inches)	Female (Inches)		Male (Inches)	Female (Inches)
36 0	20 9	20 6	55 0	27 4	27 5
37 0	21 3	21 0	56 0	27 8	28 0
38 0	21 7	21 4	57 0	28 3	28 4
39 0	22 1	21 8	58 0	28 7	28 9
40 0	22 4	22 1	59 0	29 1	29 4
41 0	22 7	22 4	60 0	29 6	29 9
42 0	23 1	22 8	61 0	30 0	30 4
43 0	23 4	23 1	62 0	30 5	30 9
44 0	23 7	23 5	63 0	31 0	31 5
45 0	24 0	23 8	64 0	31 5	32 1
46 0	24 3	24 1	65 0	32 0	32 6
47 0	24 6	24 4	66 0	32 5	33 1
48 0	24 9	24 8	67 0	33 1	33 6
49 0	25 2	25 1	68 0	33 7	34 1
50 0	25 6	25 5	69 0	34 3	34 6
51 0	25 9	25 8	70 0	34 8	35 1
52 0	26 3	26 2	71 0	35 2	35 6
53 0	26 7	26 7	72 0	35 6	36 1
54 0	27 0	27 1			

stated intervals. At times it is necessary to compare the sitting height to the standing height and the span of the individual.

In the normal adult the trunk and head or upper measurements equal the lower extremities or the lower measurements in length, i. e. the length from the

vertex to the symphysis pubis equals the length from the symphysis pubis to the soles of the feet. Also the reach or span (the distance between the finger tips of one outstretched hand and the finger tips of the other outstretched hand of the extended arms) is nearly that of the height (SEE Tables pp 108-112).

## General and Local Examination

For purposes of description and practice it is customary to divide physical examination into (1) General examination and (2) Local examination.

### General Examination

The following observations are included in a general examination.

**Skin** The skin is examined as to color, texture, temperature and the presence of scars and rashes.

**Color** It is important to note whether the skin is pale, jaundiced, hyperemic, plethoric or pigmented. If rashes (eruptions) are present their characteristics should be observed as to uniformity, color, pain, itching or burning, type of lesion, distribution, etc.

**Texture of the Skin** This is observed as to softness, induration and browniness.

**Temperature** It should be noted whether the skin is hot or cold to the touch and this is compared with the internal temperature taken with the thermometer. It is also to be observed whether any one section of the body is hotter or colder than any other. Dermographia, undue moisture or dryness and other vasomotor phenomena should be noted, as well as the condition of the superficial veins and the presence or absence of tattoo marks, birthmarks and edema.

**Scars** Scars may give valuable evidence concerning past illness or trauma, surgical or otherwise, and thus be helpful in establishing a diagnosis. The scar of an old chancre or other syphilitic lesion has often disproved the most emphatic denials of luetic infection. A scar in the right iliac region may be evidence of an extirpated appendix and one in the right flank may prove a missing kidney. Clues which a foreign or perhaps unconscious patient is unable to supply.

**Rashes** The cause of rashes must be determined whether they be due to any of the exanthemata or the result of local irritation. Certain patients should be examined carefully to detect vegetable fungi such as ringworm or animal parasites—the pediculi or the *acarus scabiei*.

**Mucous Membranes** The degree of moisture present and also such conditions as pallor, cyanosis, hyperemia, pigmentation, hemorrhage and the presence or absence of lesions are to be noted.

**General Build** Observations upon stature should include the general build and the degree of development. Notice whether the patient is tall, short or of the average height. An adult who is shorter than any of his immediate relatives is probably suffering from some endocrine disorder; his growth may have

been arrested by some wasting disease contracted during early childhood or again it may be due to some pathological process such as spinal caries. Also an unusually tall individual should make one think of endocrine imbalance.

nutrition, disease of the digestive apparatus or some mental disturbance reflexly producing digestive disturbance. Lack of exercise from any cause may also be responsible for a general loss of muscular tone. Asymmetric muscular hyper-

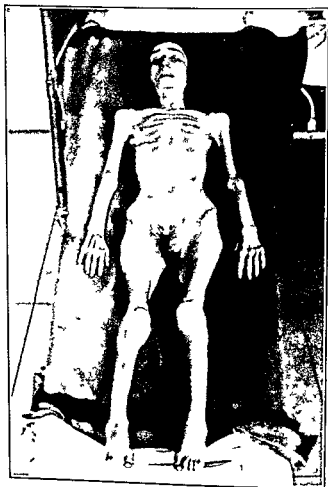


Fig 1—Simmonds disease. Pituitary cachexia (Courtesy Dr L. G Rowntree Philadelphia General Hospital)

**Muscular Development** This is often governed by the amount of physical exertion to which the individual has been subjected. A patient's muscular development may have formerly been good but may have become flabby because of prolonged febrile disease, chronic diseases such as tuberculosis or cancer, mal-

trophy or atrophy should suggest disease of the central nervous system.

**Weight** When an apparently undernourished individual first presents himself for examination the physician should determine whether he has ever been stouter or if his present state of nutrition is apparently normal for him.

Every patient should be weighed and the weight compared with the usually accepted standard for a person of the same sex, height and age. If coming within ten per cent of the standard he may be regarded as normal, providing no appar

chronic diarrhea, or stricture of the esophagus. Pyloric obstruction, or infestation with intestinal parasites will have the same effect. Cabot notes loss of sleep as a frequent cause of emaciation and the increased metabolism of exophthal-



Fig 2--Thyrotoxic obesity. Note the fat upon the shoulders, breasts and thighs (Philadelphia General Hospital)

ent cause can be found for his underweight.

Emaciation This may be the result of malnutrition, wasting diseases or disease of the gastrointestinal canal. Rapid emaciation is a prominent symptom in marasmus, tuberculosis, Simmonds' disease, Addison's disease, cancer, long-standing diabetes, chronic suppuration, hyperthyroidism, long-continued fevers,

mic goiter is often evidenced by rapid loss of weight. It is also noted in people who attempt to reduce their weight by starvation and the use of certain drugs.

Obesity This is often found in apparently normal individuals, particularly in "heartly eaters." On the other hand, obesity is frequently a family or even a racial predisposition and seems to have no relation to the amount of food in

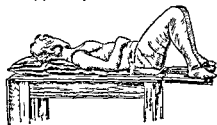




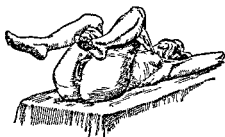
(a) Sims position anterior view



(b) Sims position posterior view



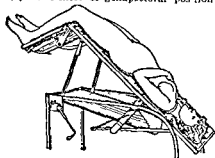
(c) Dorsal recumbent position



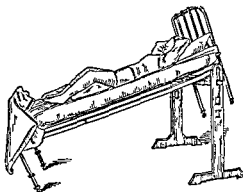
(d) Dorsosacral position with leg holder applied



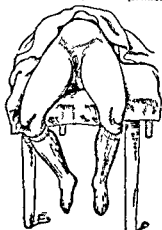
(e) Knee-chest or genupectoral position



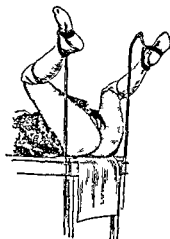
(f) Trendelenburg position (Ashton)



(g) Fowler's position (Macfarlane)



(h) Walcher position (Hirst)



(i) Edebohl's dorsal position

Fig 3—Positions (From Dorland's Dictionary)

gested. It is sometimes noted that very fat people consume less food than thin ones living under the same conditions, nevertheless, the individual consumes more food than he requires. Pathologic obesity may be caused by deficiency of some of the ductless gland secretions, by diminished oxidation, lack of exercise and deprivation of sunshine.

In general, the various parts of the body should be compared to the general

on the opposite page are descriptive of these positions.

In certain diseases the patient will assume a definite posture. This does not include chronic bone affections which give rise to deformities, for in these the victim does not assume the posture, rather he has it thrust upon him. Definite positions are often assumed in order to relieve muscular spasm. Thus, a person who has a spasm in his calf muscles

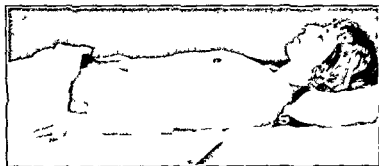


Fig 4—Thorough relaxation (dorsal inertia)

sature, if any one member is undersized or overdeveloped, the cause for this condition should, if possible, be ascertained.

**Posture and Position** In health, persons will assume certain postures because of muscular development, obesity, training habit and convenience. During a physical or gynecological examination patients may be instructed to place themselves in certain definite positions in order to facilitate the examination. The commonest positions utilized for this purpose are as follows:

**Sims' Position** (a) Anterior and (b) posterior view, (c) dorsal recumbent position, (d) same with leg holders, (e) knee-chest position, (f) Fowler's position, (g) Trendelenburg position, (h) Walcher position, (i) Edebohl's dorsal position. The accompanying illustrations

will usually flex his knee. In abdominal muscle spasm both knees are usually flexed so as to relax the abdominal muscles. When the patient lies upon his back he may assume this posture voluntarily and it may indicate nothing more than slight illness, unattended by pain.

**Dorsal Inertia** This is a passive posture, the patient lies upon his back but has a tendency to slip toward the foot of the bed, or perhaps to either side. This is usually noted in conditions of great weakness, most frequently in acute infectious disease, particularly typhoid fever. It is indicative of great muscular weakness and mental apathy. (SEE Fig 4)

**Rigid Dorsal Posture** In this posture both legs are drawn up in order to diminish abdominal tension. This is seen as a rule, in general peritonitis, pelvic peri-

tonitis at times in meningitis and in great distention of the abdomen due to ascites or tympanites. In *acute appendicitis* the right leg is usually drawn up and this is true also in incarcerated right inguinal hernia inflammation of the right spermatic cord right sided pelvic inflammation or peritonitis psoas abscess and at times when a renal calculus is passing down the right ureter (SEE Fig 5) In left sided local peritonitis

they meet the trunk. This is noted in meningeal diseases hepatic renal and intestinal colic (SEE Fig 8) The *knee chest position* may be assumed because of some painful condition of the spine or ribs tumor, or skin lesion of the back.

*Prone Posture* This is often assumed for the sake of rest especially after abdominal pain or colic. Very often this position may be taken because of eroded vertebrae tuberculosis of the spine or at

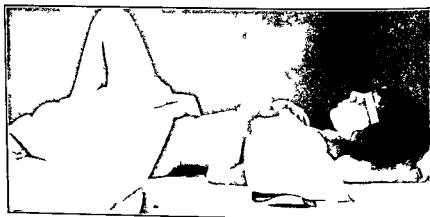


Fig 5—Posture denoting pain in right lower abdomen (acute appendicitis etc.)

or pelvic suppuration left sided incarcerated inguinal hernia acute diverticulitis psoas abscess or passage of a left ureteral calculus the left leg will be drawn up.

*Unilateral Posture* The patient will lie on the right side in cases of acute right sided pleurisy right sided lobar pneumonia or in the presence of a much enlarged liver. This position is assumed in order to support the affected side and limit its movements. He will lie on the left side in cases of left sided pleurisy lobar pneumonia a large pericardial effusion and large left sided pleural effusions (SEE Figs 6 and 7).

*Coiled Posture* The patient lies upon one side with the legs drawn up until

times to relieve the pain of gastric ulcer or other severe abdominal colic.

*Opisthotonos* This is an uncommon dorsal posture in which the body rests upon the head and heels the trunk being arched upward. It is noted in strychnia poisoning tetanus convulsions of rabies hysteria epilepsy and to a mild degree in meningitis where the retraction of the head with rigidity of the neck causes the back of the head to bore into the pillow (SEE Fig 9).

*Emprosthotonos* This posture is the reverse of opisthotonos the patient's upcurved body rests upon the forehead and feet face downward. This position is very rarely seen in tetanus and strychnia poisoning.

**Pleurosthotonos** The body is arched and in a lateral position usually because of some spinal affection or acute pleural involvement

**Orthotonos** The trunk and the neck are rigidly extended in a straight line, this position is at times seen in strychnin poisoning, tetanus meningitis or rabies

deformity, new growths and comparative lengths, the size, shape and symmetry of the joints should also be noted, and they should be examined as to mobility, tenderness, discoloration and pain

Any detailed examination of the *bones* must be carried out by the aid of x rays. By inspection and palpation only such



Fig 6—Unilateral posture (subdiaphragmatic abscess, right leg flexed so as to relieve abdominal tension and thoracic pressure)



Fig 7—Unilateral posture, acute splenitis, left lower extremity drawn up to relieve left sided abdominal tension

**A Semireclining Posture** This may be assumed in conditions where there is interference with respiration, particularly disease of the heart after failure of compensation pleural effusions and asthma. The back is usually supported in order to favor the accessory muscles of respiration. This position is also assumed by convalescent patients who are permitted to sit up gradually before they are allowed to get out of bed.

**Bones and Joints.** The condition of the long bones should be observed as to

abnormalities as of contour, exostoses, beading of ribs, craniotabes, saber shins, or fractures of the long bones may be detected. Physical examination of the *joints* is more satisfactory, as palpation will reveal pain or tenderness in the joint or its immediate vicinity, also irregularity in shape, such as the protrusion of the joint pocket and the filling of its natural depression which is characteristic of effusion. Attachment to the bone, as osteophytes ("hipping") or gouty tophi, which are not attached to the bone, may

be seen or felt. Enlargement or thickening of the capsule, fluctuation (indicative of fluid in the joint), the presence of a palpable boggy infiltration and malpositions or distortions of the joints may be palpated in order to ascertain whether they are due to luxations, exudations, necrosis or pathologic contraction of the muscles.

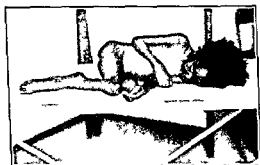


Fig 8—Coiled position (Cerebral pressure with meningeal irritation)

Limitation of motion in a joint may be due to ankylosis, to muscular spasm, to obstruction by the bony growths already mentioned, to adhesion or thickening of the capsular or periarticular structures, or to pain and effusion of fluid into the joint. In eliciting limitation of motion, comparison with the normal joint is of utmost value.

The detection of a sinus at or near a joint is important, as it indicates the presence of bone necrosis or abscess or possibly broken down gouty tophi.

#### *Reflexes* (SEE p 831)

The elicitation of reflexes depends upon the patient's general condition, as in very ill subjects many of them must of necessity be omitted. Those most commonly tested are the patellar (knee jerk), tendo Achillis (foot flexion), biceps and triceps, plantar (contraction of the toes), abdominal and the cremasteric.

In connection with the reflex tests the examiner should also note muscular efficiency, general tactile sensibility, and ability and manner of locomotion, station and gait.

**Gait** The normal gait of different persons varies within wide limits. Watching the feet of thousands of pedestrians, one may observe something peculiar, or at least individual, about each of them. There are, however, certain gaits which have come to be regarded as pathognomonic and are seen in local abnormal conditions of the lower extremities and spine, in certain systemic diseases and in various nervous affections. In studying a pathologic gait, one should observe not only the mode of walking, but also the position of the body, the swing of the arms and the poise of the head.

**Ataxic Gait** The foot is raised high, thrown forward and suddenly brought down, so that the entire sole of the foot comes in contact with the floor at one time. The body is usually bent forward and the eyes fixed upon the ground. This gait is observed in tabes dorsalis (locomotor ataxia).

**Spastic Gait** The movements are stiff, the hips and knee joints slightly flexed, the knees seeming to interfere with each other. This gait is seen in spastic paraplegia; it is significant of sclerosis of the lateral pyramidal columns of the cord. It may be seen in spinal cord tumor and arachnoiditis. In hemiplegia the entire leg seems to be thrown out and describes a semicircle before it comes down to the ground.

**Paralytic Gait** The feet move very slowly and are dragged upon the floor; the patient stumbles easily. This is seen in chronic myelitis.

**Steppage Gait** The patient raises the foot high, turns up the toe and comes

down upon the heel. This is observed in peripheral neuritis, diabetic neuritis, chronic arsenical poisoning, alcoholism.

**Festinating Gait** The whole body is bent forward and is held rigidly, the patient walks upon his toes, having the appearance of being pushed from behind. He starts out slowly, but gradually increases the rapidity of his gait until he is stopped by some object, because he is unable to stop himself. This is noted in paralysis agitans and at times, as a post-encephalitic sequela.

feet wide apart, staggers, sways to and fro, often reeling, and adopting a zig zag course. This may be the result of the presence of a tumor in the cerebellum.

**Flat footed Gait** The patient walks with his toes everted, the foot as a whole being placed spade fashion upon the floor, the legs are often slightly bowed.

For a careful examination, the legs and feet should always be bared because the gait may be altered by the presence of local deformities of the knee, hip or ankle joints. Very often corns or callosities



Fig 9—Opisthotonos patient resting on heels and occiput.

**Waddling Gait** The shoulders are thrown back, the belly forward, the legs are separated and the patient swings from side to side. This gait is seen in pseudohypertrophic muscular paralysis. A similar manner of walking is noted in congenital hip dislocations, and also at times, in short obese women during the latter part of pregnancy.

**Limping Gait** One foot or leg is dragged, this is due to wasting of the muscles of the affected foot and is seen as a result of infantile paralysis, hemiplegia, monoplegia or paraplegia. Limping may also be due to a painful condition of the bones, as in many forms of arthritis.

**Cerebellar Ataxic Gait** This gait resembles that of a person under alcoholic intoxication. The patient walks with his

upon the toes heels or, indeed, any part of the foot, due usually to tight or ill fitting shoes, will cause a limping or abnormal gait. Painful conditions, like erythromelalgia, gangrene, ingrown toenail or any local inflammatory condition, will alter the normal gait. Speaking generally, the gait is slovenly in persons who are apathetic, weak or anemic, and in those suffering from chronic mental or physical defects, it is hurried in high strung, nervous individuals. Disease or deformities of the spinal column often cause limping, waddling or other abnormal gait.

### Local Examination

After the general examination a more detailed *local examination* is begun and the following points should be considered

**Head** The head is examined as to size shape and symmetry, marks of injury the condition color and texture of the hair, the position of the head, and the presence of any involuntary movements

**Face** The general expression of the face is observed for signs of stupidity, intelligence apathy evidence of suffering etc and its size is compared with the rest of the body and especially with the head The condition of the muscles of expression and mastication and the state of the parotid submaxillary and other glands are also noted

**Eyes** The eyes are examined as to acuteness of vision limitation of the visual fields, the presence or absence of discoloration or edema of eyelids, ptosis or tremors It is important to note also the color and degree of moisture of the conjunctivae and the presence or absence of petechiae, the equality of the pupils, and their reaction to light and accommodation, the color and mobility of irides, the presence or absence of arcus senilis, as well as the movements of the eyeballs and whether or not they protrude (exophthalmos) or intrude (enophthalmos)

**Nose** The size shape color and any evidence of injury are noted as well as the condition of the alae nasi and whether there is any interference with respiration or the presence of discharge One should observe whether the septum is deflected or perforated the turbinates enlarged or any exoplasm visible and also whether there is any tenderness over the frontal or maxillary sinuses

discharge from the middle or inner ear has diagnostic importance also any tenderness in front or back of the ear upon pressure, the drum should be examined for inflammation bulging perforation scars, or the presence of any anomaly

**Mouth.** Observe the color, size and degree of moisture of the lips, any asymmetry of the angles of the mouth any rashes or abrasions fissures or crusts areas of discoloration as in Addison's disease, the general hygienic state of the mouth and the odor of the breath

**Teeth** The general condition of the teeth and gums loose or missing teeth caries of the teeth, presence of roots or broken teeth, characteristics of teeth as Hutchinson's teeth, rachitic teeth etc are to be noted

**Tongue** Note its size and the manner in which the patient protrudes it also whether it is clean or coated and if any scars or abrasions are visible upon it Also examine it for tremors color fissures and any rash which may be observable upon it

**Pharynx and Larynx.** These are examined as to color, the condition of the tonsils if hypertrophied or giving evidence of abscess, the color of the anterior pillars, the condition of the uvula larynx, arytenoids and vocal cords the presence or absence of cough and its character phonation and its character

**Neck** Note the general dimensions and any enlargement of the thyroid or other glands also the presence of any pulsations arterial and venous and tracheal tug and tracheal deviation

tactile and friction fremitus, by *percussion* to elicit resonance or its modifications and to outline internal organs, and by *auscultation* to determine the quality of breath sounds, voice sound and the presence of adventitious sounds.

**The Heart** This is examined by *inspection* in order to note the precordium, the location and character of the apex beat and the presence of abnormal areas of pulsation, by *palpation* to determine the site and character of the apex beat and the point of maximum impulse, abnormal pulsations and thrills, by *percussion* for the borders of the heart and for changes of the position of the heart when the patient's position is altered, by *auscultation* for the character of the heart sounds, point of maximum intensity, effect of exertion and of change of posture, rate and rhythm of the heart and murmurs. In connection with the examination of the heart one should take the pulse, noting the rate, rhythm, force, quality and symmetry of the two sides. The blood pressure should also be ascertained with the sphygmomanometer. In some cases an electrocardiographic study becomes necessary.

**Abdomen** The abdomen as a whole is examined by *inspection* for size, shape and symmetry, respiratory and peristaltic movements and pulsations, the character of the skin, distribution of hair and the presence of rashes, scars and pigmentation, by *palpation* for muscular rigidity, tenderness, fluctuation and for the size, shape and mobility of the intra-abdominal organs and for the presence of tumors and pulsations, by *percussion* for tympany, dullness, flatness, size and position of the organs and for shifting dullness, by *auscultation* for bor-

borygma, hydatid cysts, and in the pregnant uterus for fetal heart sounds, by *auscultatory percussion* for the position and size of the intraabdominal organs. The viscera, *i. e.* the liver, gallbladder, spleen and kidneys, are examined by *palpation* and *percussion* in order to determine their size, shape, position and the presence of tenderness and fluctuation. The pancreatic region may be palpated for tenderness. The intestines are examined by *inspection*, *palpation*, *percussion* and *auscultation* for distention, tenderness, rigidity, mobility, and borborygma. The distended bladder may be palpated and should be differentiated from a pelvic tumor or enlarged uterus.

**Nervous System** The nervous system is examined by *conversation* as to mental process, perversion and mental disturbance, by *inspection* as to palsies, twitchings, station, gait, and general behavior, by *palpation* for tremors, muscle development, abnormal sensations (parasthesia and anesthesia) and sensitive points, by *percussion* for hypersensitivity and elicitation of reflexes.

**Genitourinary System** The bladder should be examined for possible distention, and the urethra for discharge. The external genitals should be examined for scars or abrasions. The condition of the prostate should be noted in the male, and a gynecologic examination made in the female. Inguinal glands and hernial orifices should be palpated.

**Back** The spinal column is examined for deformities, as scoliosis, lordosis or kyphosis, for evidence of disease of the individual vertebrae and for limitation of motion anteriorly, posteriorly and laterally. The sacroiliac and lumbosacral areas are to be carefully examined.



## SECTION 4

# Skin and Mucous Membranes

## CHAPTER VII

# Examination and Diseases of the Skin and Mucous Membranes

## The Skin

The skin is examined for

- I Color
- II Rashes
- III Scars
- IV Temperature
- V Edema
- VI Moisture

### I Color

The complexion of the skin among light skinned people depends largely upon the amount of distention or fullness of the capillaries supplying it. The complexion is also altered by exposure to the sun's rays to high winds, and to a combination of sun wind and air.

**A Tanning** Tanned rather hardened skin is common in laborers who are employed outdoors in drivers sailors and in others who continually expose themselves to the elements strong sun light and artificial rays.

**B Pallor** Habitual pallor is noted in persons who lead an indoor life and is seen particularly among prisoners and night workers who sleep during the day.

Pallor is produced by the following conditions 1 A diminution of the volume of circulating blood 2 A decrease in the number of red blood corpuscles 3 Failure of the capillaries to fill completely.

Pallor may come on gradually or suddenly and may be transient or constant. Continuous pallor is noted in all forms of anemia primary and secondary. Evanescent pallor is often seen

in cases of temporary heart weakness as in syncope, chills and rigors shock and certain vasomotor spasms. Sudden but persistent pallor, especially if associated with shock may be a sign of rapid intense hemorrhage. The pallor encountered in nephritis is often out of proportion to the blood picture and may be due to a superficial anemia.

Pallor is also a prominent symptom in acute poisoning and toxic febrile affections and is in evidence immediately before death. Pallor of gradual development which becomes permanent, is either an indication of primary anemia that is disease of the blood making organs or of secondary anemia as in wasting diseases.

The primary anemias are represented by pernicious anemia and chlorosis, and the secondary anemias are seen in Cancer, arsenical poisoning, chronic febrile disease, chronic gastrointestinal disease, chronic suppuration, chronic mercurial poisoning, chronic lead poisoning, after hemorrhages, *e g*, from hemorrhoids epistaxis hemoptysis hematemesis etc leukemia, cachexia, myxedema, nephritis, nephrosis certain parasitic diseases *e g* tapeworm unicinariosis etc syphilis, tuberculosis and chronic malaria.

Changes of climate may gradually produce a more or less permanent pallor as in the case of emigrants from a cooler to a warm climate.

**C Redness** General congestion or hyperemia of the cutaneous capillaries produces this condition, it may be general or local

*General redness* is seen in plethoric individuals and pathologically, in cases of acute fever, especially if continuous, in certain eruptive diseases and in polycythemia. It may also be produced by drugs, *e g* atropine poisoning alcoholism etc

**Local Redness** The skin of the face and of the exposed portions of the body appear more red in those who are exposed to sunlight, open air and mountain climate than in those who are confined indoors and at low altitudes. Local redness may also be noted in chronic alcoholism, particularly if associated with portal obstruction, in certain vasomotor disturbances, pyrexia, and, at times, in tuberculosis ('hectic flush'), also in chlorosis florida or chlorosis rubra. One sided redness of the face may be seen on the affected side in lobar pneumonia. Local redness, associated with pain, is seen in all local inflammatory conditions and in erythromelalgia (Weir Mitchell's disease)

**D Cyanosis** This condition, which varies from a slight bluish tint to a dark purple discoloration, is dependent upon the presence of venous blood in the capillaries. It is best observed in the lips, mucous membranes, finger tips and external ear because of the thinness and translucency of their epithelial covering. Extreme cyanosis is noted over the entire body as a dusky leaden tint.

Cyanosis whether general or local, is always an indication of a deficiency of oxygen and an excess of carbon dioxide in the blood, hence, it is observed in conditions marked by disturbance of respiration and general circulation. De-

ficient oxygenation of the blood occurs when not enough pure air enters the lungs to oxygenate the blood, or when not enough blood is brought in contact with the air in the lungs to promote efficient oxygenation. Again, the venous blood in a given area may be unable to circulate at a sufficiently rapid rate to cause proper interchange.

Cyanosis may be caused by pathologic conditions interfering with the entrance of air into the respiratory tract, such as inflammation of the pharynx and larynx, retropharyngeal abscess, angina Ludovici, edema of the glottis, spasmodic croup, laryngeal diphtheria, tuberculous and syphilitic inflammation of the larynx, diphtheritic inflammation of the larynx, trachea and bronchi, obstruction by foreign bodies (pins food etc), tumors of the larynx and upper air passages, paralysis of the dilators of the larynx, pressure by mediastinal tumors such as goiter, aortic or subclavian aneurysm, enlarged bronchial glands, etc, also because of enlarged thymus, severe diffuse bronchitis, bronchial asthma, whooping cough during a paroxysm, and convulsions. Other causes for cyanosis are affections which hinder lung expansion, such as emphysema, all forms of consolidation of the lungs, paralysis of the muscles of respiration, peritonitis (by causing paralysis of the diaphragm), pleuritis and large pericardial exudation, pneumothorax, hydrothorax, hydropneumothorax and pyopneumothorax, pulmonary edema, tumors of the chest cavity, tumors of the abdomen, pressing upward, epilepsy (during the attack), strychnine poisoning, tetany by causing respiratory spasm; progressive muscular dystrophy, trichinosis, myasthenia gravis, myositis ossificans.

pain which may prevent respiration as in pleurodynia pleurisy and peritonitis, diseases of the circulatory system as affections of the heart and arteries including valvular disease after failure of compensation, congenital stenosis of the pulmonary artery patulous foramen ovale disease of the heart muscle (during failure of compensation) large pericardial exudation hindering the heart's action emphysema and other conditions obstructing the circulation by compressing the capillaries tuberculosis (later stages) and pressure of mediastinal tumors upon the union of the superior and inferior vena cava at their junction with the right auricle.

Cyanosis may also be caused by overdoses of certain drugs *e g* antipyrin acetanilide opium hydrocyanic acid calcium chloride nitrobenzol illuminating gas or any other gas causing asphyxiation

Generalized argyria may be mistaken for cyanosis

*Erythremia* and *polycythemia* are characterized by generalized erythematous cyanosis and as the names imply by an excessive number of red corpuscles in the circulation

*Local venous stasis* is caused by compression or obliteration of one of the large venous trunks the stasis being confined to the region drained by that vessel Thus pressure of a tumor or aneurysm upon the jugular subclavian innominate or inferior vena cava will produce cyanosis of the head neck and upper extremity corresponding to the point of pressure Pressure caused by ascites tumors and effusions in the peritoneal cavity or thrombosis of the iliac veins will produce cyanosis of the lower extremities Vasomotor derangements may cause cyanosis and it may also be

produced by cold or paralysis of certain parts of the body and by sluggishness or partial obstruction of the circulation and by disease of an artery or vein

**C Jaundice** Jaundice (icterus) is a term applied to a yellowish coloration of the skin mucous and serous membranes and the liquid secretions and excretions of the body The degree of coloration of the skin varies from a slight yellow tinge to a deep greenish yellow or even an olive green depending upon the amount of bile pigment present in the circulating blood In long standing severe cases the skin assumes a dark yellowish brown or blackish color as a result of degenerative changes The skin should whenever possible be examined in daylight or under a white light as ordinary artificial illumination will mask even a moderate degree of jaundice When in doubt as to the existence of jaundice it may be made more apparent by stretching the skin of the palm of the hand or by pressing upon the skin or upon the mucous membrane of the everted lip with a glass slide through which the yellowish color may be seen Bile pigments are also present in the urine sweat and sometimes in the milk salivary secretions and tears

Jaundice is a symptom found in several diseased conditions and is not a distinct entity It may be found in any condition that will obstruct the biliary passages or ducts so as to cause retention of bile in the liver also in conditions which cause blood destruction disease of the liver cells and the circulation of certain toxins in the blood

There are three general types of jaundice though they cannot always be isolated Two or all three types may occur in the same individual at the same time

as is often indicated by the van den Bergh test. They are generally classified as follows:

- I Obstructive or Hepatogenous Jaundice
- II Hemolytic Jaundice
- III Suppression Jaundice (Infectious Hepatic, Toxic) (SEE 601)

#### I Other Discolorations

*Yellowish brownish or blackish diffuse patches* particularly on the face are seen in chloasma (so-called liver spots).

*Yellowish brown or fawn colored macules* associated with larger coalesced areas and covered with furfuraceous scales over the covered portions of the body are characteristic of Tinea Versicolor.

*Brown infiltrated areas of skin* which are dry, smooth and glossy are found in scleroderma.

*Dark brown to bluish black discoloration* of the entire skin surface is seen in hemochromatosis. This is associated with liver enlargement and hyperglycemia (bronze diabetes).

*Dirty yellow to deep brown pigmented areas* in the axillae under the breasts in the inguinal regions over the abdomen and in the flexor folds which are associated with papillary thickening of the skin are found in acanthosis nigricans. This may occur in abdominal malignancy.

*Dark brown gray or black pigmentation* of the face, hands, feet and the knuckles and tendons of the hands and feet associated with dark colored urine (al-a, omura) are found in ochronosis.

*Dark pigmented areas or nodules* which have a tendency to coalesce are seen in melanotic malignancy.

*Bronzing of the skin* may be seen in Hodgkin's disease. It is also found in many cases of Addison's disease. The color of the skin ranges from light yellow to deep brown or black slate color. It is more marked in those portions of the body which normally contain pigment such as the face and hands and around the waist line, it is also seen upon the mucous membrane, the fingernails and cornea usually remain clear. Very dark areas of discoloration may be seen early on the palate and near the anus.

*Local bronzing* may be caused by certain dyes or metals, continuous exposure to the sun, and it also occurs in the early stages of pellagra.

*Arseno melanosis* is a form of bronzing which sometimes discolors the skin and mucous membrane of the mouth after the prolonged administration of arsenic, it is often seen on the palms of the hands and usually disappears when the drug is discontinued.

*Gray skin (argyria)* is a grayish discoloration of the skin caused by the long continued internal administration of silver salts. It consists of a deposit of small granular patches of metallic silver or of silver compounds in the skin. The discoloration is bluish gray, more marked upon the hands and face, it is not altered by pressure. The discoloration is also observed in the mucous membrane of the mouth and in the serous membranes and in the internal organs.

*Carotinemia* causes a yellowish discoloration of the skin due to the ingestion of carrots or other yellow pigmented vegetables. The palms and soles are deepest stained. The bilirubin in the blood is normal.

## II Rashes

Rashes or *exanthemata* are eruptive lesions resulting from pathologic processes in the skin and are usually classified into primary and secondary

**Primary Lesions** The primary lesion represents the pathologic process up to the acme of its development. The following skin lesions belong in the primary classification

**Macules** Spots of various sizes, shapes and colors visible on the skin which are neither elevated nor depressed

**Vesicles (Blisters)** Hemp seed to lentil sized rounded acuminate transparent opaque or dark elevations of the epidermis filled with serous seropurulent or bloody fluid

**Bullae or Blebs (Large blisters)** Irregularly shaped elevations of the epidermis varying in size from that of a bean to that of a goose egg and containing serous or seropurulent fluid

**Pustules** Circumscribed rounded flat acuminate or umbilicated elevations of the epidermis containing pus

**Papules (Pimples)** Millet seed to lentil sized circumscribed solid elevated pathologic formations

**Tubercles (Nodules)** Circumscribed firm rounded or acuminate deeply seated or elevated formations in the skin varying from the size of a pea to that of a hazel nut

**Wheals or Pomphs** Round oval or elongated firm elevations of the skin pale or slightly reddish in color, are evanescent and cause itching

**Tumors** Hard elevations of tissue varying in size from a hazel nut upwards

**Secondary Lesions** These are the result of primary lesions and are known as

**Crusts** Masses of dried serous or seropurulent exudations on the free surface

**Excoriations** Areas of loss of epidermis because of trauma or the action of chemical agents

**Fissures** Linear breaks in the continuity of the epidermis

**Pigmentations** Areas of increased pigment or color in the skin in consequence of chronic inflammation, new growth formation or trophic disturbance either temporary or permanent

**Scales** Thin dry plate like flakes compacted and shed from the cutaneous surface

**Scars** Reddish brownish or whitish new formations of connective tissue occupying the place of lost normal tissue

**Ulcers** Irregularly sized and shaped excavations in the skin the result of suppurative processes

Secondary lesions either are the result of healed or healing primary lesions or are destructive remnants of primary lesions. These are (1) crusts (2) scales and (3) ulcers

### Primary Lesions

1 **Macules** The various macules are

(a) **Hyperemia** Bright red areas which disappear upon pressure

(b) **Roseola** Reddened spots varying in size from that of a lentil to that of the fingernail

(c) **Erythema** Diffused redness over a considerable area

(d) **Telangiectasis** Acquired by hyperemic spots which can be seen to include large blood vessels

(e) **Nevi Vasculosi** Hyperemic spots due to hypertrophy of the capillaries containing visible blood vessels

(f) *Areola* A hyperemic area surrounding a skin lesion *e g*, the area surrounding a boil

(g) *Purpura* Small hemorrhagic spots which do not disappear upon pressure

(h) *Petechiae* Hemorrhagic spots the size of a pin point

(i) *Vibices* Long narrow streak like hemorrhagic lesions, due to a linear subcutaneous effusion of blood

(j) *Ecchymosis* Large irregularly shaped hemorrhagic areas The red color usually gives way to blue greenish brown or yellow after a definite time has elapsed

(k) *Achromia* Hereditary circumscribed areas which are deficient in pigment

(l) *Albinism* Large generalized areas deficient in pigment

(m) *Vitiligo* Acquired areas of deficiency in pigmentation

(n) *Chloasma* Yellowish brown spots frequently seen on the faces of women who have borne children or who suffer from uterine diseases

(o) *Lentigines* (freckles) Groups of yellowish brown pigmented spots

(p) *Nevi Pigmentosi and Nevi Spili etc* Congenital pigmented spots in the skin varying in color from light brown to almost black, *nexus spilus* is characterized by a smooth surface

(q) *Discoloration* A change in the color of a large part of the body This condition is met with in icterus chlorosis leprosy malignant disease and staining from the internal administration of nitrate of silver

**A Generalized Red Macular Eruption** This is observed in the following conditions

*Syphilis* Secondary syphilis may manifest itself as an eruption of small

red macules They are usually abundant and frequently cover the entire body, subjective symptoms are lacking but they are usually associated with a history of or with evidences of syphilis, such as the scar of a chancre, pain in the bones, alopecia swollen glands and sore throat



Fig 1—Secondary syphilis (macular rash)

*Erythema Multiforme* This may be manifested as a macular eruption though the macules are usually associated with dark red papules or tubercles The multiplicity of the lesions their preference for the extremities their appearance in successive crops the short duration of each lesion the absence of subjective phenomena such as itching and burning and the presence of rheumatic

pains are the diagnostic features. The lesions may appear as separate rings (*erythema annulare*), as concentric rings (*erythema iris*), in disc shaped patches with elevated edges (*erythema marginatum*), or in a variously figured arrangement (*erythema figuratum*), or variously distributed red elevations (*erythema nodosum*).

**Pellagra** Pellagra is an endemic recurrent deficiency disease due to imbalanced protein poor diet lacking in vitamins B<sub>3</sub> and B<sub>6</sub>. These substances are found in large quantities in brewer's yeast in liver and other foods. Pellagra is found more often in institutions and among alcoholics and is more prevalent in the spring and autumn than at other seasons.

Pellagra is characterized by gastrointestinal symptoms, nervous disturbances and characteristic skin lesions. The lesions are found upon the back of the hands, face, neck and dorsal surface of the feet (the parts exposed to the sun). The lesions are at first erythematous and gradually become darker, the skin often desquamates or vesicles and bullae evacuate leaving a dry, deeply stained and fissured surface of a mahogany red color (SEE Fig 3 p 134).

**Pityriasis Rosea** This eruption is found on the trunk appearing obliquely to the ribs. The lesions are of rose red color and slightly scaly having a central clearing. The scales are dry. The primitive patch or sentinel spot is a characteristic finding. Subjective phenomena are usually absent.

**Pediculosis Corporis** The bites of lice may produce a minute red or purple eruption. The small size of the lesions, their confinement to the covered parts, the intense itching with evidence of scratch marks and the discovery of

pediculi or nits on the clothes are the diagnostic features.

**Measles (Morbilli Rubella)** Preceding the rash there is fever, lacrimation and coryza. The rash appears first upon the face as small red spots and later spreads over the entire body as dusky red macules arranged in crescentic patches.

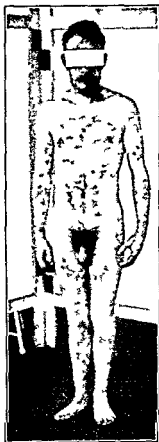


Fig 2—Erythema multiforme

**Rubella Rotheln** (German measles) This affection produces a macular or maculopapular rash which disappears by slight desquamation in two or three days. The moderate fever, sore throat, swollen cervical glands and history of contagion will assist in the diagnosis.

**Accidental Rashes** Local inflammation like tonsillitis and acute gastritis



and certain drugs and foods occasionally produce a macular rash

**Purpuric Spots or Hemorrhagic Macules** (petechiae): These result from minute extravasation of blood into the skin. A purpuric eruption is observed in the following conditions:

**Purpura Hemorrhagica** (*Morbus Maculosis Werlhofii*): This affection occurs especially in children; it is associated with fever, bleeding from the mucous

sera. It is usually associated with pains in the limbs and joints, resembling rheumatism.

**Peliosis or Purpura Rheumatica** (Schönlein's disease): This is an acute affection characterized by purpuric spots, urticaria, sore throat, moderate fever and an inflammation of the joints resembling rheumatism. By some, the disease is regarded as a manifestation of rheumatism.



Fig. 3—Pellagra.

membranes and severe constitutional symptoms; and generally runs a course of one or two weeks. It is also called *land scurvy*.

**Scurvy:** This disease results from a deprivation of vitamin C found in fresh vegetables and citrous fruits, and is associated with spongy, bleeding gums, great weakness, brawny induration of the muscles, subcutaneous ecchymosis and bloody exudations.

**Serum Sickness:** Occasionally an eruption of purpuric spots appears after the administration of streptococcic or other

**Allergic Reactions:** These are at times manifested by large or small erythematous areas. Generally they are raised and cause intense itching (urticaria).

**Extreme Anemia and Other Diseases:** A petechial rash is not uncommon in severe anemia, leukemia, cancer, and advanced Bright's disease. The history and the associated symptoms of the original disease will indicate the diagnosis.

**Infectious Diseases:** Certain infectious diseases are characterized by the appearance of a hemorrhagic eruption as follows: In *typhus fever*, a purpuric erup-

tion appears on the fourth or fifth day. In *cerebrospinal meningitis* the eruption is frequently petechial. In *malignant measles* and *malignant smallpox* the rash is often hemorrhagic. In *acute yellow atrophy* of the liver a petechial eruption is frequently observed. In *typhoid fever* a maculopetechial rash lenticular in

*Poisoning* Poisoning by phosphorus, the virus of venomous snakes, mercury, antipyrin and other coal tar derivatives may be associated with an eruption of erythema or purpura.

*Pediculosis and Kindred Affections* Body lice, bedbugs and fleas produce petechial lesions which are surrounded

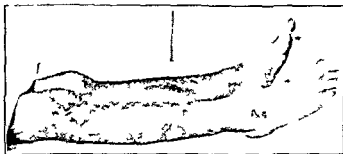


Fig 4—Purpura hemorrhagica.

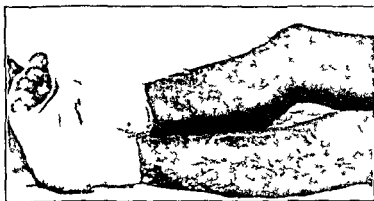


Fig 5—Scurvy.

shape appears upon the lower trunk and upper abdomen on the eighth day of the disease. In *septicemia* a macular rash of embolic origin often appears upon the extremities. In *bacterial endocarditis* minute hemorrhagic spots of embolic origin are found in the conjunctiva, skin and other tissues.

**A Macular Rash** This is also found in the early stages of *herpes zoster*, *impetigo contagiosa*, *tinea circinata*, *tularia*, *ratbite fever* and *trench fever*.

by slight areolae. The itching, scratch marks and the discovery of the parasite are the diagnostic features.

**Diffuse Erythema or Inflammation of the Skin** This may result from the following:

*Dermatitis medicamentosa* is caused by certain drugs such as belladonna, quinine, chloral, cubebs, salicylic acid, arsenic and bromides.

**Scarlet Fever** The history of contagion, high fever, sore throat, swollen

glands rapid pulse and the punctiform character of the rash will indicate the diagnosis

*Variola* (Smallpox) The initial rash is at first macular The spots are bright red and appear first upon the forehead

back of the wrists and hands and in the mouth, it then spreads to the face trunk and extremities, palms and soles Later these macules turn to papules

*Local Irritation* Local irritation from traumatism excessive heat or cold ex



Fig 6—Pemphigus rheumatica.

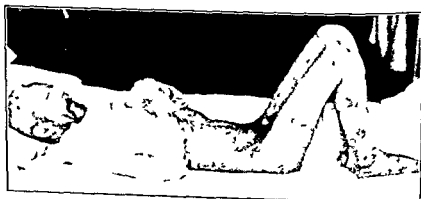


Fig 7—Arsenical dermatitis.

## THE COMMONER TYPES OF INFECTIOUS EXANTHEMATA

- 1 Chickenpox (*varicella*), the type of the vesicular exanthemata.
- 2 Smallpox (*variola*), the type of the pustular exanthemata, illustrating clearly the essential eruptive lesion (the pustule)
- 3 Scarlet fever (*scarlatina*), the type of the scarlatinoid exanthemata afford-  
ing a good illustration of the maximal degree of eruption at the natural skin folds
- 4 Rubella (*German measles*), a rare seasonal, epidemic, contagious disorder  
characterized by a general glandular enlargement, itching, and a rash' (Sabouraud)
- 5 Measles (*rubeola*), the type of the 'morbilliform' rashes
- 6 Florid measles, almost purpuric in appearance, constituting, from the erup-  
tive standpoint alone, a manifest transitional form between the morbilliform rash  
(hyperemic) and the purpuric eruption (hemorrhagic)



I



II



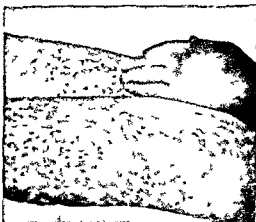
III



IV



V



VI

posure to the sun and other light rays poisonous plants or drugs may produce erythema

*Erythema Intertrigo* (chafing) This occurs where two cutaneous surfaces come in contact. The parts are red, moist and sometimes macerated. The condition excites a burning pain.



Fig. 8—Erysipelas (Doane's case)

*Erysipelas* In this disease there is an intense local redness of the skin. It often affects the face and neck. The eruption which begins on the first or second day of the disease consists of dark red, spreading patches of erythema having a sharp line of demarcation. Edema and infiltration of the underlying tissues cause intense itching and

burning. There is high fever and other constitutional symptoms.

*Acne Rosacea* This is a chronic disease. The redness appears on the face, particularly the nose and cheeks. It is associated with inflammatory lesions of the sebaceous glands and dilated capillaries. The facial hyperemia, acneiform lesions, telangiectasis and the hypertrophy of the skin of the nose (rhinophyma) may remain permanent (See Fig. 9 p. 138).

*Brown Macules* These are observed in

*Lentigo or Freckles* The spots are small and found especially on exposed parts—face, neck, shoulders and hands.

*Chloasma* Dark brown spots may result from irritation of the skin by the action of chemicals, heat, scratches or blisters. They are sometimes noted in general diseases like Addison's disease and syphilis. They also occur in primary affections of the skin as vitiligo, morphea, scleroderma and leprosy.

*Tinea Versicolor* This is caused by the *Microsporon furfur*. The lesions are fawn-colored macules covered with furfuraceous scales. They appear upon the chest, shoulders, back, neck and upper arm. The lesions are at first discrete but soon coalesce.

*Moles or Nevus Pigmentosa* These consist of congenital deposits of pigment upon various parts of the body.

*White or Pale Yellow Macules* These are observed in

*Vitiligo* Apart from the absence of pigment the skin is normal in appearance and function. An excess of pigment is generally noted at the periphery of the white patches.

*Leprosy* In this condition there are structural changes in the skin and anæsthesia in addition to the white appear-

ance The tubercular form of leprosy presents erythema, pigmentation, tubercles and ulcerations The lesions are found upon the face, extremities and genitals

*Morphea* In the late stage of this affection, the circumscribed patches are

cles are observed in the following conditions:

*Sudamina* This consists of an eruption of minute vesicles which result from the imprisonment of sweat in the layers of the skin It is usually associated with free perspiration, the vesicles are trans-



Fig 9—Acne rosacea.

white or yellow The structure of the skin is altered and the periphery of the patches is distinctly hyperemic

*Facial Hemiatrophy* The onset of this disease may be marked by the appearance of a yellow or white spot on one side of the face

**2 Vesicles** A vesicle or "blister" is a small elevation of the skin, containing serous fluid, and varying from the size of a pinhead to that of a split pea. Ves-

icles, lacking inflammatory characteristics, and show no tendency to rupture

*Herpes Zoster* The vesicles appear in groups or clusters, they are mounted on an inflammatory base, show no tendency to rupture, and are frequently associated with burning or neuralgic pains The eruption is distributed along the line of the nerve trunks

*Herpes faciales* occurs in many febrile diseases, such as lobar pneumonia, cere-

brospinal meningitis typhoid fever, and in the 'common cold'

*Dermatitis Venenata* A vesicular eruption may result from contact with poisonous plants such as the poison ivy or oak. The eruption generally appears on the exposed parts—face or hands

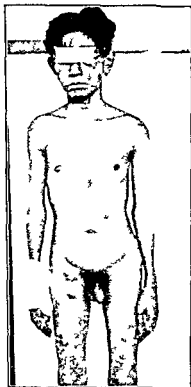


Fig 10—Leprosy

the affected part is red and swollen and there is intense itching

*Dermatitis Herpetiformis* or *Multi formis* (Duhring's disease) The vesicles are irregular in shape and appear in clusters, are tense show no tendency to rupture and are frequently associated with other lesions—papules pustules and bullae. They excite intense itching and burning and appear in successive crops over a period of weeks or months

*Impetigo Contagiosa* The eruption consists of small vesicles which subse-

quently enlarge and may reach the size of blebs. They appear in crops and are commonly discrete. They are usually flat and umbilicated and are filled with a straw-colored fluid, they show no tendency to break but dry up so as to form thin yellow crusts which excite but little itching. The disease is contagious and autoinoculable. It occurs especially in children.

*Vesicular Eczema* The vesicles are quite small and aggregated in patches; the intervening skin is red and thickened, the vesicles tend to break and pour forth a serous fluid which keeps the part moist. The eruption is associated with intense itching.



Fig 11—Herpes zoster

*Miliaria* or *Heat Rash* or *Prickly Heat* This is an acute inflammation of the sweat glands. They may appear as an eruption of minute vesicles always discrete and surrounded by red areolae. Their site of preference is the trunk and they are generally associated with pin



head papules which show no tendency to rupture. This rash causes a little burning and itching. The disease is due to excessive sweating and occurs in hot weather.

*Scabies* In this affection the vesicles are small and usually associated with

margins of a generally circular lesion having a clear center.

*Varicella* (chickenpox) The papular lesions vesiculate and remain firm.

*Variola* (smallpox) Umbilicated vesicles appear on the fifth or sixth day of the disease.

*Syringomyelia* A vesicular rash may occur in certain nerve areas and in analgesic zones. The vesicles may last several days, are painless and nonirritating.

*Miscellaneous Conditions* Vesicles may also occur in anthrax, foot and mouth disease, erythema multiforme, dermatitis repens, dermatitis medicamentosa, etc.

**3. Blebs or Bullae** A bleb or bulla is a circumscribed elevation of the skin containing serous fluid and varying in size from that of a pea to an egg. Blebs are observed in the following conditions:

*Dermatitis Herpetiformis* The bullae are frequently associated with papules, vesicles and pustules; they are surrounded by inflamed skin and appear in clusters, show no tendency to break, but dry up and leave yellowish brown crusts. They excite considerable itching.

*Pemphigus* The bullae appear in crops, they itch but little, lack inflammatory reaction and as a rule dry up leaving behind a thin pellicle. The disease is generally chronic and usually fatal.

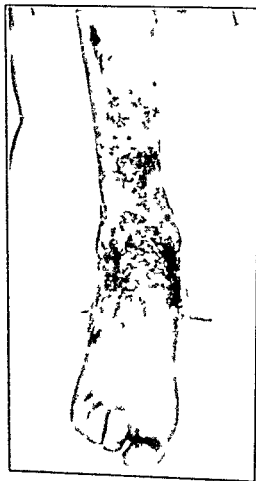


Fig. 12-1—Scabies

**4 Pustules:** A pustule is a small circumscribed elevation of the skin containing pus. Pustules are observed in the following diseases:

*Eczema Pustulosum* The pustules are small and are aggregated in patches. They are generally associated with minute vesicles, the intervening skin being red and thickened, there is marked burning and itching.

*Acne Vulgaris* The pustules are usually confined to the face, back and shoulders. They have their origin in the sebaceous follicles, are generally associated with papules and comedones ('blackheads') and excite no itching.

*Sycosis Vulgaris* The pustules follow the reddish papules. They are pierced by a hair, seldom rupture but form crusts. Pustules also occur in glanders, anthrax, sporotrichosis and local skin infections.

*Dermatitis Herpetiformis* SEE pp 139 and 140

*Impetigo Simplex* This affection is usually observed in children, the pustules are round and range in size from a pea to a cherry. There is only a slight red areola and this finally disappears. The pustules remain discrete and show little tendency to rupture but dry up and form yellowish brown crusts. They are most frequently observed on the extremities and excite no itching. The disease lasts from a few days to a week or longer.

*Varicella or Chickenpox* The pustules are secondary to vesicles, they appear especially on the trunk and hairy scalp and are small and not umbilicated. They are seen in association with vesicles and scabs and excite but little itching. Some fever accompanies the eruption.

*Ecthyma* This disease is observed especially in poorly nourished adults.

The pustules vary in size from a pea to a cherry, are few in number, mounted on an inflammatory base, surrounded by a distinct inflammatory areola and excite but little itching. They seldom break, but dry up and form brownish crusts.



Fig 13—Dermatitis herpetiformis

*Smallpox* In this disease shot like papules and umbilicated vesicles precede the pustules. The latter are small, surrounded by a red areola and usually excite some itching. They occur in greatest numbers upon the face and back of the hands. The high fever and history of contagion will assist in making the diagnosis.

*Syphilis* The pustules are frequently associated with other lesions, they are often mounted on a copper-colored inflammatory base. They excite no itching and can usually be recognized by the history and other evidences of syphilis.

**Furunculosis:** The deep indurated area becomes localized and forms a red, tender, hot mass which fluctuates and later ruptures.

**Drug Eruptions:** Drug eruptions as from bromides, iodides, arsenic, copaiba

often accompanied by prostration and rheumatic pains.

**After the Use of Certain Drugs:** Bromides, iodides, copaiba, cubebs, and coal-tar products may produce a papular eruption. The history will aid in the diagnosis.

**Eczema Papulosum:** The papules are very small, closely aggregated, and often associated with vesicles and pustules; the skin is thickened and there is intense itching.

**Syphilis:** The papules are dark in color, and widely distributed, being especially marked on the trunk and flexor surfaces of the extremities; they are



Fig 14—Pustular secondary syphilis

and other drugs either taken internally or applied topically may cause various kinds and sizes of pustules.

**5. Papules:** A papule is a circumscribed solid elevation of the skin varying in size from a pinhead to a pea. Papules are observed in the following conditions:

**Erythema Multiforme:** The papules are often associated with macules and tubercles; they are flat and are of a bright red or purple color. They appear especially on the extremities and show no tendency to suppurate, but gradually disappear in the course of two or three weeks. They excite no itching, but are



Fig 15—Yaws  
(Philadelphia General Hospital.)

usually associated with pustules and excite no itching. The history and the accompanying evidences of syphilis will aid materially in establishing the diagnosis.

*Yaws* (Gonorrhea Pian Parangi Bubo Coco) This is a contagious in oculable tropical disease occurring in dark skin natives of South America parts of Africa and some of the Pacific islands. It is caused by the *Treponema pertenue* and is of nonvenereal origin. The lesions pass through three stages. The primary stage manifests itself after an incubation period of from two to four weeks as an extragenital papule which becomes crusted and has a granulating base. The second stage is characterized by a generalized eruption of papules which become crusty and have granulating bases. These lesions heal slowly and leave pigmented areas. The lymph nodes are enlarged but do not suppurate. The tertiary stage shows ulcerative nodular lesions that may involve the skin or the bones, often the nose, pharynx and palate. The Wassermann reaction is positive.

*Prurigo* The papules are small, pale and deep seated and are accompanied by intense itching. The disease begins in early childhood and lasts throughout life.

*Lichen Planus* The papules are small, angular and of purplish color. They are often arranged in rows upon the extensor surfaces of the legs, the flexor surfaces of the arms and occasionally on the trunk, buccal mucous membrane and male genitalia. They cause intense itching.

*Smallpox* The papules are hard and have a shot like feel; they soon terminate in umbilicated vesicles. They excite some itching and are associated with high fever, pain in the back and usually with a history of contagion.

*Measles* The papules are small and run together to form crescent shaped patches; they are associated with mod-

erate fever, swollen cervical glands, coryza, conjunctivitis and bronchitis. There is often a history of contagion.

**6 Tubercles** Tubercles are large circumscribed solid elevations of the skin, varying in size from a large pea to a hazel nut. They are observed in the following conditions:



Fig. 16—Papular syphiloderm.

*Erythema Nodosum* The tubercles are large and usually appear on the extremities. They are reddish purple in color and never suppurate and are often associated with malarial fever and rheumatic pains.

*Erythema Multiforme* The tubercles generally appear in conjunction with macules and papules. They are flat and of a bright red or purple color, appear

dry, brittle and loose. The microscope will reveal the presence of the *Trichophyton tonsurans*.

**Leprosy** One form of leprosy manifests itself with tubercle formation of a pale red or yellow color which under

appear on any part of the body. They excite intense itching.

**Allergy** The urticarial lesions or wheals appear as a result of the ingestion of certain kinds of food or because of the introduction of a foreign protein into the body.

**Angioneurotic Edema** This is characterized by the appearance of evanescent wheals. The deeper structures of the skin are often invaded causing hard raised areas that may be painful.

### Secondary Lesions

**1 Crusts** Crusts consist of dried exudations and may be red, yellow, brown or green in color. They are marked in the following diseases:

**Eczema** The crusts are generally associated with pustules and vesicles.



Fig 19—Favus

goes slow absorption or ulceration. There is usually more or less anesthesia in the parts affected.

**7 Wheals or Pomphi** Wheals are evanescent elevations of the skin generally more or less round and often white in the center and pale red at the periphery. They excite considerable itching. They are observed in the following conditions:

**Insect Bites** The bites of certain insects such as mosquitoes, bees, beach flies, etc., may cause wheals surrounded by areas of erythema and cause itching.

**Urticaria** The wheals appear in crops, are of short duration and may



Fig 20—Tinea tonsurans

the surrounding skin is red and thickened and there is considerable itching.

**Seborrhea** The crusts of seborrhea are generally observed on the scalp. Itching is absent or only slight and there are no evidences of inflammation.

*Syphilis* The crusts are thick, of a dark brown or green color and are often associated with ulcers which discharge freely. The history and other evidences of syphilis will aid in the diagnosis.

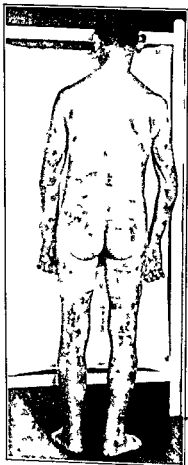


Fig 21—Chronic squamous eczema

*Impetigo* The crusts are thick and yellow, appear stuck on, and are associated with blebs which appear in crops.

*Favus* The crusts generally appear on the scalp, they are yellow, brittle, and cup shaped. They are usually perforated by a hair and have a characteristic musty odor.

*Tinea Tonsurans* (ringworm of the scalp) In neglected cases the lesions may be associated with crusting. It is

usually observed in children. The grayish scales, the dry, brittle, and broken hairs projecting through the crust, the alopecia, and the detection of *Trichophyton*, the causal agent, are the diagnostic features.

**2 Scales** Scales are dry exfoliations from the upper layers of the skin. They are observed in the following diseases:

*Squamous Eczema* The scales are usually associated with papules, the underlying skin is red and thickened, and there is often marked itching.

*Seborrhea Sicca* (dandruff) The scales are fine, flaky, and greasy, and the underlying skin shows no evidence of inflammation. The sebaceous follicles are often dilated.

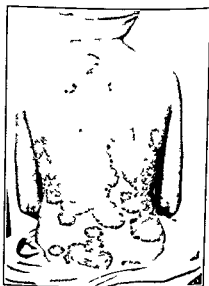


Fig 22—Psoriasis

*Psoriasis* The scales are dry, and are of a pearly-white color, they are associated with circumscribed sharply-defined, elevated inflammatory patches, the extensor surfaces of the elbows and knees, are especially involved. There is little or no itching.

*Ichthyosis* This affection is either congenital or begins in early life. The scales are dry and are especially marked on the extensor surfaces face, trunk and abdomen. Itching is absent and there is no evidence of inflammation.



Fig. 23—Ichthyosis

*Syphilis* The scales are dry and are of a grayish color. They are usually associated with papules and are especially marked on the palms and soles. The history and other evidences of syphilis will assist in the diagnosis.

*Lupus Erythematosus* There are two types, the discoid and the disseminated. The lesions are reddish and covered by grayish or brownish scales. Upon the face they have a butterfly distribution. There is no itching. (See p. 153)

*Pityriasis Rosea* The scales are found especially on the trunk and are associated with small rose red macules. There is no itching. The disease runs an acute course of a few weeks' duration.

*Tinea Tonsurans* (ringworm) The scales are dry and are few in number associated with circumscribed red patches which tend to disappear in the

center. There is often marked itching. Microscopic examination reveals the *Trichophyton*. The *tinea tonsurans* may invade the skin of various parts of the body, the lesions produced vary somewhat with the affected location.

**3. Ulcers** Many diseases are characterized by the formation of ulcers, either single or multiple, small or large, which may affect any part of the body.

*Tuberculous ulcers* These may occur primarily in the skin or they may break through the skin because of tuberculous bone affection or tuberculous glands.



Fig. 24—Lupus erythematosus disseminatus

*Diabetic ulcers* These occur generally upon the toes or feet and may be a forerunner of gangrene of these parts.

*Chancroids* Chancroids usually cause ulceration of the genitals.

*Granulosa Inguinalis*: This condition causes large ulcerations in the inguinal regions

*Anthrax* (malignant pustule): This starts as an inflammatory papule which soon becomes edematous, ruptures and



Fig 25—Secondary syphilis

forms a deep discharging ulcer. The regional lymph glands become swollen. It is accompanied by high fever and severe systemic manifestations

*Glanders* (farcy, equinia, malleus): This is an infectious disease caused by the bacillus mallei. The skin lesion starts as an inflammatory papule or vesicle at the site of infection; it rapidly becomes nodular, pustular and ulcerates. Numerous cutaneous areas may undergo sloughing and ulceration and cause a purulent discharge

*Syphilis*: The ulcers are deep and have a punched-out appearance; they secrete an abundant offensive material. They often involve the bone and extend rapidly. They are not painful and the imperfect cicatrix which they produce

is soft. The history and other evidences of syphilis will aid in the diagnosis.

*Epithelioma*: This appears late in life, seldom before 45. There is usually a single center of ulceration, the ulcer being irregular in shape with thickened and infiltrated edges. The secretion is scanty and bloody. The progress is somewhat slow, and in advanced cases there is often pain, and involvement of neighboring lymph glands.

*Lupus Vulgaris*: This generally appears in early life; there are often several centers of ulceration. The ulcers are usually superficial; the edges are not



Fig 26—Gumma of forehead (Philadelphia General Hospital.)

thickened and the progress is extremely slow. The bones are never involved and there is very little secretion. Soft papules often develop in the cicatrix, which is firm and contracted.



**Tularemia** This is caused by infection with bacterium *tularensis* transmitted by infected rabbits or other rodents. In the ulcerative type punched out ulcers form at the site of inoculation, i. e. the face, fingers or hands. The regional lymph glands become swollen and inflamed and may suppurate. It



Fig 27—Epthelioma

is accompanied by fever which may last for weeks or months. A positive agglutination test in dilutions of 1 to 20 up to 1 to 620 is diagnostic.

**Yaws** In the tertiary stage painless granulomatous ulcers covered by a yellowish crust may occur on the extremities. The bony structures may become involved. The skin and bone lesions of yaws often resemble those of tertiary syphilis (*Gangosa*).

**Tropical Ulcers** (*Tropical Phagedena*) These occur most often upon the lower extremities. The ulcers are flat rounded and may be covered by thick dirty crusts or by white pseudomembranes. They are common among the barefooted nations of tropical cli-

mates and occur during the damp season of the year.

**Oriental Sore** (*Delhi Sore*) This is caused by the *Leishmania tropica* and is fairly common in Syria. It occurs first as a papule which may later ulcerate and cause a scar (SEE p 1070).

**Leishmaniasis Americana** (*Forest Yaws*) The lesions which at first are papular soon ulcerate. They occur on the exposed parts of the body and at times on the mucous membranes of the nose and pharynx. The ulcers have slightly raised and indurated borders and are slightly tender. The surrounding tissue is somewhat inflamed. The regional lymph glands may be somewhat enlarged and tender. Occasionally they may suppurate (SEE p 1070).



Fig 28—Yaws  
(Philadelphia General Hospital)

**Fungous Infections** Ulcerations also occur in various *fungous infections* such as *actinomycosis*, *mycetoma* or *madura foot* (SEE p 1093).

**Simple Ulcers** These may result from trauma, the application of caustics or the

action of intense heat or cold Ulcers are frequently observed on the legs of the aged in association with local nutritional defects and varicose veins Simple ulcers may be recognized by the history, their location, the appearance of the lesions, and the absence of other symptoms

*Perforating Ulcer of the Foot* This term is applied to a deep seated ulcer appearing on the sole of the foot, it is most frequently observed in locomotor ataxia It usually begins as a corn in the neighborhood of the great toe, and is generally associated with anesthesia of the sole of the foot Ulcers may also occur in the ankles above the external malleolus

*Decubitus Ulcers* This term is applied to bedsores which occur in patients who are obliged to remain in one position for a prolonged period particularly so in patients who are asthenic or are suffering from grave cerebral or spinal lesions Bedsores are generally observed on parts which are subject to pressure, as the sacrum buttocks calves and heels and are preceded by erythema and vesication

### III. Scars

Scars on the skin are usually the result of trauma, either recent or old Scars upon the head and face may be there as the result of a surgical operation or of an accidental injury Scars on the lips may appear as the result of a chancre, an injury, or following surgical intervention Scars on the face other than those caused by a surgical operation or trauma, may be the result of acne, smallpox, lupus syphilis or ulcers Scars upon the arms and legs may be a result of trauma, or a surgical operation, pin point scars over the arms, legs and thighs

may follow the use of a hypodermic needle, an important evidence of drug addiction

### IV. Temperature\*

The temperature of the skin is usually in keeping with the internal temperature of the body, or with the temperature of an object kept close to it, thus a hot-water bag applied to the skin will cause a *local increase in temperature* over the part in contact with it, while an ice bag will reduce the temperature of the part with which it comes in contact

*General coldness* of the skin is usually caused by poor capillary circulation as a result of chills and often immediately before death It may also occur in some febrile diseases when there is weakness or failure of the heart

*Local coldness* of the surface may be caused by vasomotor spasms, obstruction of the circulation in localized areas, by venous or arterial thrombosis and also by exposure to cold

*General abnormal heat* of the surface is in evidence in almost all febrile diseases There are however, some febrile diseases in which the surface of the body is cold and clammy

### V. Edema<sup>1</sup>

By edema is meant an accumulation of serum in the cellular tissue

Edema of the skin is recognized by *inspection* and *palpation* On inspection the edematous part is swollen, the skin covering it, having lost its natural color, appears pale tense and shining *Palpation* will elicit loss of elasticity of the affected part, and reveal pitting on pressure

\* For fuller discussion See *Peter* pp 47 to 59  
<sup>1</sup> See p 88 and Index.

**Technic** Firm pressure is made over a portion of the edematous part with the index finger when the finger is removed the impression still remains

**Edema** is caused by a disturbance of the balance between the amount of fluid exuding from the capillaries and the amount taken up by the lymphatics

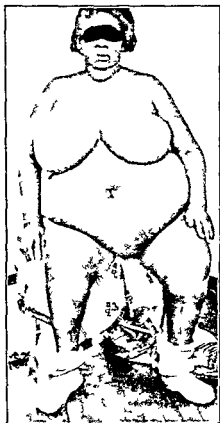


Fig 29—Anasarca.

**Varieties** Edema may be *general* or *local*. *General edema* or *anasarca* is caused by venous stasis altered conditions of the blood as in anemia or hydremia inflammation stasis or obstruction circulatory and cardiac and renal decompensation. It may also be due to starvation particularly to sodium chloride and protein deficiency (hypoproteinemia)

**Local Edema** This is usually most marked over those portions of the body where the skin is loosely attached. It usually results from obstruction of the return circulation of a part thereby causing venous stasis with the resulting transudate. The commonest causes are heart failure and nephrosis. If edema is of cardiac origin the first evidence of it will be noted in the ankles usually the patient will state that on arising in the morning the ankles are not swollen but in the evening or even late in the afternoon the ankles and often the legs become edematous. The amount of edema is usually directly proportionate to the weakness of the right ventricle. Edema due to renal diseases is first manifested as swelling of the lower eyelids most noted in the morning on arising and often disappearing towards the end of the day. As the kidneys become more incompetent the edema will be generalized. Edema due to hepatic origin is usually first perceptible in the abdomen and that due to anemia is noted on the dependent parts of the body. Advanced cases of edema no matter from what etiologic factor present the same physical signs namely swelling and pitting on pressure. Edema due to lymphatic obstruction is usually firmer and does not pit on pressure as readily as that caused by venous obstruction.

**Edema Due to Lymphatic Obstruction** Elephantiasis Hodgkin's disease myxedema and edema of nervous and anaphylactic origin the angioneurotic edema are due to lymphatic obstruction and do not pit on pressure.

**Emphysema of the Skin** This condition is caused by the entrance of gas or air into the cellular tissue. The skin usually appears pale is distended and

yields to pressure though it does not pit. *Palpation* will elicit a creptitation or crackling sound and *percussion* over that part will yield a somewhat tympanic note. Subcutaneous emphysema may be caused by the invasion of air producing microorganisms or it may occur as a result of rupture of the lung larynx or trachea. It may also be caused by rupture of the esophagus stomach and intestines or by a stab wound penetrating the lungs. Subcutaneous emphysema has often been caused by faulty technic when inducing artificial pneumothorax or pneumoperitoneum.

## VI Moisture of the Skin<sup>1</sup>

The skin under normal conditions has a certain degree of moisture which is not readily recognized by the unaided eye. This lends it a definite lustre and softness.

A skin that is abnormally dry, soon becomes hard brittle and scaling as is noted in ichthyosis.

**Hyperhidrosis or Hyperidrosis** (excessive sweating). Pathologically perspiration is increased in Rheumatic fever, malarial fever relapsing fever, septic fevers pneumonia (at crisis) pulmonary tuberculosis ("night

sweats"), Graves' disease, migraine, neuralgia (unilateral sweating), also by certain drugs (opium pilocarpine alcohol), and by hot drinks. Local sweating of hands and feet is seen in hysteria neurasthenia vagotonia fright or other emotions in nervous irritability and in exophthalmic goiter (SEE p 779).

**Anidrosis or Anhidrosis**. A deficiency of sweat may be found in cases where an excess of fluid has been withdrawn from the body, as in profuse diarrhea polyuria continuous vomiting severe hemorrhage diabetes insipidus myxedema general anasarca continued high temperature and in ichthyosis (SEE p 59 and Fig 23 p 147).

Perspiration may also be altered in color and odor.

**Bromidrosis**. This is characterized by fetid sweat.

**Chromidrosis**. Colored sweat blue brown yellow or at times red is seen in hysteria and in those working in aniline dyes. Yellow sweat is usually due to bile pigment and is seen in jaundice.

**Uridrosis**. This is perspiration which has a urinous odor. evaporation will reveal white scales or crystals (uremic frost) of urinary solids. This is often found in uremia.

## The Mucous Membranes

The mucous membranes particularly of the mouth nose and eyes because of their easy accessibility are readily studied.

### Color

**Pallor**. This is seen in all forms of anemia.

**Temporary Blanching**. This occurs in shock vasomotor spasm and during severe hemorrhages.

**Alternate Blanching and Flush** ing. This often accompaniesortic regurgitation and aneurysm.

**Cyanosis**. This is usually caused by asphyxiation gas poisoning strangulation and poor circulation due to a rule to venous stasis or deficient oxygenation.

**Hyperemia** (excessive redness)

- 1 *Of the Eyes may be caused by*
  - (a) Local irritation of the conjunctiva
  - (b) foreign body in the eye, (c) ulcer,

<sup>1</sup> SEE p 30

(d) any other inflammatory condition of the eyeball and its structure, and (e) polycthemia

**2 Of the Buccal Mucous Membrane by:** (a) Decayed teeth, (b) stomatitis, (c) traumatism of any kind, (d) scurvy, acute leukemia, etc (SEE p 190)

**3 Of the Nasal Mucosa by:** (a) Ulceration of the nose, (b) rhinitis, (c) any inflammatory condition of the nasal mucosa

**Jaundice** This is seen in conditions that likewise affect the skin. Often, however, in syphilis lobar pneumonia and other febrile diseases jaundice of the conjunctivae will be noted while the skin remains clear, *per contra* certain toxic conditions may cause jaundice of the skin while the conjunctivae escape

### Moisture

**Excessive Moisture of the Conjunctiva** This occurs as a result of local irritation or occlusion of the lachrymal ducts

**Excessive Moisture of the Mouth** This occurs in stomatitis, following the ingestion of irritating foods or drugs like pilocarpine, in irritation of the pneumogastric nerve, in certain nervous diseases, in children during teething, and reflexly, on seeing appetizing food or smelling pleasant odors or during sexual intercourse

**Excessive Moisture of the Nasal Mucous Membranes** This is seen in corvza nasal irritation ozema nasal diphtheria, vasomotor ataxia and nasal obstruction hay fever and other allergic states

**Dryness of the Mucous Membrane** This is seen in fevers severe diarrhea chronic gastritis and some diseases of the liver. It is often also noted

during excitement, shock and severe prostration or in excessive thirst and fatigue

### Rashes

**Mouth Rashes** These are caused by stomatitis in any form i. e., acute catarrhal aphthosis, ulcerative, parasitic, mycotic (thrush) gangrenous, and by secondary and tertiary syphilis, mercurial and corrosive poisons, by foot and mouth disease diphtheria, Vincent's angina, herpes zoster, pellagra, influenza acute leukemia, smallpox, chickenpox, tuberculosis, measles, scarlet fever, and drugs

**Herpes** These are seen on the lips in typhoid fever meningitis pneumonia, Koplik's spots are seen in the prodromal stage of measles. Mucous patches appear on the lips and in the mouth in secondary syphilis other lesions that may affect the lips are tuberculous ulcers, cheilitis chancre, cancer and epithelioma and accidental injuries

**Petechiae** Petechiae upon the mucous membranes of the mouth are found in scurvy purpura hemorrhagica, acute leukemia hemophilia pernicious anemia, splenic anemia, bacterial endocarditis, trauma and hereditary telangiectasis

**Pigmented Spots** Pigmented spots in the mouth are found in Addison's disease, argyria and other heavy metal poisonings

**Apigmented or White Areas** In the mouth these may be caused by leukoplakia, lichen planus electrogalvanic lesions caused by artificial dental plates mucous patches and corrosive poisons

**Lupus Erythematosus Disseminata** This is a constitutional disease of unknown origin in which lesions resembling the discoid type of lupus erythematosus may appear upon the face and body

It is commoner among young females than males and is uncommon in the negro

**Symptoms Physical Signs and Laboratory Data** (a) Fever The temperature is irregular long continued and is marked by remissions (b) Arthralgia Pain in various joints which at times is associated with swelling and fluctuation (polyarthritis) is common (c) Polyserositis Pleural pericardial and at times peritoneal effusions occur in advanced cases (d) Rash The skin lesions usually are most prominent upon the exposed portions of the body + e the face (bridge of the nose cheeks chin upper lip and forehead) the exposed portion of the chest the hands particularly the ends of the fingers and the thenar and hypothenar eminences It may also occur upon other parts of the body At times the rash may be absent or nondescript The lesions consist of erythematous slightly raised patches of varying size and shape covered with brownish or grayish fine scales occasionally there are telangiectatic areas intermingled with these lesions Upon the face the lesions assume a butterfly shape The mucous membrane of the mouth may also become invaded by reddish macules which later form small ulcers (e) Leukopenia The white cell count may range from 3000 to 6000 there is also a secondary anemia and a low platelet count (f) Hematuria Red blood cells are nearly always present in the urine albuminuria is moderate The complications vary there may be purpura various vascular changes as well as peripheral nerve changes

**Erythema Induratum (Bazin's Disease)** This occurs as a red or violet gradually turning brown discoloration of the skin in which develop small nodules that may ulcerate and leave de-

pressed lesions covered with a serous exudate These lesions are bilateral and develop chiefly upon calves of legs though face trunk and arms may be involved It is caused by tubercle bacilli

**Erythema Arthriticum Epidemicum (Haverhill Fever)** This is a febrile arthralgic disease characterized by an abrupt onset with chills fever malaise vomiting headache polyarthritis and the appearance chiefly upon the ankles and wrists of a rubelliform or morbilliform rash which tends to become hemorrhagic The temperature curve is marked by a sudden rise which may last from two to five days followed by a remission in which there is comparative freedom from symptoms after a few days fever and other symptoms recur This disease is caused by the *Haverhillia multiformis* which may be recovered from the blood and affected joints of the patient The disease usually occurs in epidemics Those in Chester Pa and Haverhill Mass were traced to infected raw milk Sporadic cases though rare were traced to rat bites

**Boeck's Sarcoid (Cutaneous)** This is characterized by the formation upon the face and upper part of the body of symmetrically arranged lesions which are deep reddish brown firm nodules varying in size from a pinhead to a walnut The small nodules occur in groups in the patches of hardened skin especially about the lower lids and chin they do not suppurate

**Darier Roussy Sarcoid** This differs from Boeck's sarcoid in that the lesions are located beneath the skin the skin is thicker and the nodules are larger and have a predilection for the trunk and buttocks However the lesions may occur about the ears nose and cheeks They are of a purplish red color Both varieties occur in the middle aged

## SECTION 5

# The Head

**Infraclavicular Region****RIGHT**

Very loud, or increased vocal resonance because of the larger caliber of the right bronchus more numerous bronchioles and closer proximity of the trachea to the right lung

**LEFT**

Quite loud near the sternal end, of moderate intensity over the remaining region. The left bronchus is deep seated

**Mammary Region****RIGHT**

Weak because of the pectoral muscles and mammary gland.

**LEFT**

Weak because of the pectoral muscles and mammary gland

**Inframammary Region****RIGHT**

Absent except in its uppermost portion or immediately above the liver

**LEFT**

Absent except in its upper portion above the stomach

**Suprasternal Region**

Very distinct because of the underlying trachea and the resilience of the sternum

**Infrasternal Region**

No resonance because of absence of lung tissue

**Supraspinous Region****RIGHT**

Very loud

**LEFT**

Not quite so loud as on the right side

**Spinous Region****RIGHT**

Weak because of the scapula

**LEFT**

Weak because of the scapula.

**Interspinous Region****RIGHT**

Very distinct particularly in the vicinity of the fifth dorsal spine

**LEFT**

Very distinct particularly between the fourth and sixth dorsal spines

**Infraspinous Region****RIGHT**

Weak.

**LEFT**

Weak

The supraaxillary regions of both sides present distinct vocal resonance

In the infraaxillary regions vocal resonance is weaker than in the upper regions

**Spine.** Vocal resonance is very loud over the seventh cervical vertebra, the intensity of the resonance becomes weaker as the spine is descended, no

resonance is perceived below the fifth dorsal spine except in pathological conditions (SEE D Espine's sign, p 335)

### **Pathologic Variations of Vocal Resonance**

Because of certain pathological conditions the vocal resonance may become (I) Increased, (II) diminished, (III) absent, (IV) altered



**I Increased vocal resonance** may be due to

(a) Any condition that will set more air in vibration

(b) Any condition that will transmit the vibrating air with greater intensity

(c) A combination of (a) and (b)

Increased vocal resonance is therefore found in

1 Consolidation of the lung (the larger the consolidation the more intense the resonance)

2 Infiltration of the lung

3 A superficial lung cavity containing air and in direct communication with a bronchus

4 Compensatory emphysema

5 Pleural adhesions

6 A tumor or gland lying between a large bronchus and the chest wall

7 Partially compressed lung

8 Bronchiectasis

9 Adhesive bands stretching from a bronchus to the chest wall though the chest be filled with an effusion. The adhesions act on the same principle as a telephone wire

**II Diminished vocal resonance** may be caused by (a) Conditions that fail to transmit the entire vibratory resonance, (b) conditions that fail to produce normal vibrations and (c) a combination of (a) and (b)

Diminished vocal resonance is found in the following pathological conditions

1 Thickened pleura and thickened chest wall

2 Small pleural effusions

3 Chronic emphysema.

4 Laryngeal stenosis (partial)

5 Edema of the glottis (partial)

6 Tumor lying between the lung and the chest wall

7 Edema of the lungs (moderate degree) and of the chest wall

**III Absence of vocal resonance** may be caused by conditions which fail entirely to transmit resonance, or which so compress the lung and bronchi as to hinder the production of resonance and also in conditions where it is physically impossible to create resonance. Absence of vocal resonance is found in

1 Large pleural effusions (serum, pus, blood or air)

2 Massive pneumonia

3 Edema of the lungs

4 Deaf mutes

5 Paralysis of the vocal cords

6 Absence of lung structure (evulsion, diaphragmatic hernia, eventration)

**IV Altered vocal resonance** is caused by pathological conditions in the lung which influence the vocal resonance as follows

**Bronchophony** ('chest voice') This is the sound of the voice as heard by the listening ear when applied over a normal bronchus during phonation. It is a very loud indistinct humming sound which seems to form under the examiner's ear, the intensity often being so great as to annoy the eardrum. Bronchophony is normally heard over the trachea and the large bronchi during speech. During an examination it may be elicited by having the patient repeat *one two three one one one, ninety nine ninety nine, ninety nine* or any number of words while the examiner listens with the stethoscope. To avoid error the patient should always turn his face away from the ear of the examiner.

Pathologically bronchophony is found over

1 Consolidation of the lungs (second stage of lobar pneumonia), large firm patches of bronchopneumonia, tubercular consolidations, retracted and com-

pressed lung above a pleural effusion aneurysm or some other rapidly forming tumor which causes lung compression

2 A cavity adjacent to or surrounded by, solid tissue or lung consolidation



Fig 12—Starting point for auscultating *D Espine's sign*

3 Bronchiectasis (dilated bronchus) when superficially situated and empty  
4 Senile emphysema (rare)

**Whispered Voice** Normally *whispered voice* is transmitted only over the large bronchi the trachea over the spine of the seventh cervical vertebra with lesser intensity over the second right interspace near the sternum and in both interscapular regions opposite the spine of the scapula the latter being points of vantage for reaching a bronchus. The whispered voice is not transmitted over uncomplicated vesicular lung structure. Transmission of the whispered voice over vesicular structure indicates infiltration partial consolidation or distention of the lung and is heard over small tuberculous or bronchopneu-

monic consolidations, it is also a sign of compensatory emphysema.

*D Espine's sign* is the transmission of whispered voice over the spines of the spinal vertebrae. In the normal adult when auscultating over the spinous processes it is found that the normal voice is not transmitted below the bifurcation of the trachea fourth or fifth dorsal spines and in young children below the seventh dorsal vertebra.

To elicit *D Espine's sign* the patient is instructed to whisper *one two three* continuously while the examiner auscultates over the spines of the vertebrae. Auscultation is begun over the spine of the seventh cervical vertebra and is continued downward over the spine of each succeeding dorsal vertebra until the whispered voice ceases to be audible.

Pathologically the whispered voice may be heard as low as the seventh or eighth dorsal spines and in rare cases as low as the ninth dorsal spine. The presence of a positive *D Espine's sign* is often an indication of peribronchial tuberculosis thickening of the hilar central pneumonia tumor or some other solid substance lying between a bronchus and the spinal column. In pulmonary tuberculosis the whispered voice is transmitted to a lower spinal level than in health.

**Pectoriloquy** (chest speech) This is the transmission of articulate speech. It differs from bronchophony in that the latter signifies only exaggerated sound while pectoriloquy stands for the transmission of words and syllables. It often gives the listener the impression that the words are being whispered directly into his ear. *Pectoriloquy may be spoken or whispered*. *Whispered pectoriloquy* is of greater diagnostic value and more

readily distinguishable, for spoken pectoriloquy may often be confused with bronchophony.

Whispered pectoriloquy is brought out by having the patient whisper *one-two-three*, etc., at which time his mouth should be turned away from the examiner's ear. If a binaural stethoscope is used, care should be taken not to allow the rubber tubing to rest upon any portion of the patient's chest. The various parts under examination should be carefully compared.

Normally pectoriloquy is heard only over the trachea; pathologically it is heard over a superficial cavity communicating with a bronchus, less frequently, over dense consolidations surrounding a large bronchus and an open circumscribed pneumothorax freely communicating with a bronchus, and, at times also, over a compressed lung above a pleural effusion, or over the upper portion of a bronchus when the lower portion is compressed by a tumor.

**Egophony:** This is a peculiar nasal sound, frequently compared to the bleating of a goat. It may be heard over consolidated or partially compressed

lung when the subject speaks in a natural voice. This sign may be elicited over the upper layer of a pleuritic effusion, immediately below the line of percussion dullness, and over the fluid level of a cavity half filled with secretion, at times also, where a pleural effusion overlies a pulmonary consolidation. The absence of this sign does not exclude pleural effusion, nor does its presence necessarily indicate this condition.

**Amphoric Voice Sound:** This consists of a metallic, ringing, articulate voice sound, resembling the echo produced by speaking into a jar. It is heard over a large communicating cavity with tense walls, also over an open pneumothorax.

**Baccelli's Sign** (amphoric pectoriloquy). This sign is not trustworthy, and therefore, is of no especial value. Baccelli claims that the whispered voice cannot be transmitted through a purulent effusion, but that it may be heard over a serous effusion. It is quite true that the whispered voice cannot be heard through a purulent effusion, but neither may it always be heard through an uncomplicated serous effusion.

### Resume:

Normal vocal resonance,	heard	Over uncomplicated lung
Increased vocal resonance	"	Over infiltration of the lungs, small consolidations, adhesive bands stretching from a bronchus to the chest wall.
Diminished vocal resonance,	"	Over thickened pleura, small effusions, chronic emphysema.
Absent vocal resonance	"	Over pleural effusions, collapse of the lung, massive pneumonia.
Bronchophony	"	Over consolidation of the lung, bronchiectasis.
Pectoriloquy (whispered)	"	Over a cavity, consolidation overlying a cavity of bronchus, bronchiectasis.
Egophony	"	Over compressed lung at upper level of pleural effusion, and above the fluid in a cavity.
Amphoric voice sound,	"	Over a cavity with tense walls.

### Phlegmaphonia

Artificial vocal resonance is a procedure advocated by Scherwald, and is advantageously employed in dealing with deaf mutes, or with those who are suffering from aphonia. It will also prove useful for those who have just suffered a severe pulmonary hemorrhage or have vocal cord involvement, so that it is undesirable for them to speak, and in unconscious patients.

- I Rales or rhonchi
- II Friction sounds
- III Metallic tinkling or falling drop sounds
- IV Hippocratic succussion splash
- V Water-whistle, or lung fistula sound
- VI Veiled puff
- VII Posttussive suction
- VIII Cough
- IX Intermediate unclassified sounds

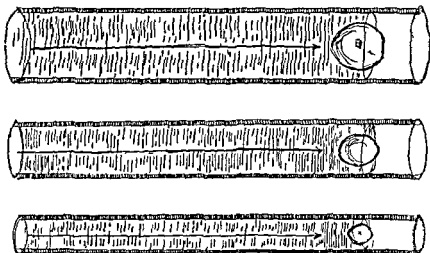


Fig 13—Moist rales large and small

**Technic.** The patient keeps his mouth shut while an assistant gently taps upon the thyroid cartilage the examiner meanwhile listening to the lungs. With sufficient practice this method will yield fairly accurate results, particularly in those deaf mutes in whom the thyroid cartilage can be repeatedly and forcibly percussed.

### Adventitious Sounds

These sounds should not be heard over the normal chest. The presence of any of these is an indication of some pathologic condition of the lungs, bronchi or pleurae. They include

Before the character of an adventitious sound can be determined it is necessary to exclude those extraneous noises which may be produced upon the surface of the body by muscular contractions, involuntary twichings, hair crackling or bone crepitation.

Four important points to be borne in mind by the examiner are

- 1 To have the stethoscope properly adjusted so as to exclude external sounds
- 2 Either to soften or to moisten the coarse hair upon the chest so as to prevent it from crackling

3 To have the chest muscles thoroughly relaxed so as to prevent muscular sounds from being audible

4 To instruct the patient to keep his shoulder joints immobile, so as to prevent bone crepitation

### 1. Râles or Rhonchi

Rales are adventitious sounds heard during respiration, they are produced as the result of some morbid state of the

into the respiratory tract, it will hinder the free entrance and exit of air, so that the respiratory air is forced through the accumulated secretion thus creating bubble these bubbles are named *moist rales*

Another condition may exist in which the bronchial mucous membrane becomes engorged, the caliber of the bronchi is reduced and becomes irregular, either because of the swelling of the mucous membrane or on account of adherent

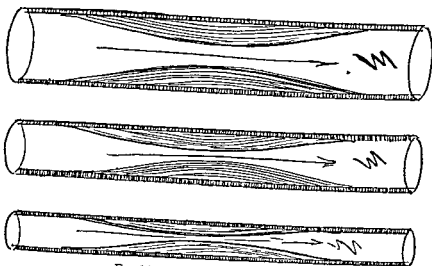


Fig 14—Dry rales large and small

respiratory apparatus, they may be numerous or scant, large and small, moist or dry, bubbling, crackling, whistling, or squeaking sounds and may be heard during inspiration and expiration

Normally, in the respiratory system, there is secreted just enough fluid of a definite consistency to permit proper lubrication. The various bronchi are of a definite caliber, and the vesicular structures possess a definite elasticity, these conditions are responsible for the production of definite sounds during respiration i.e., the 'normal respiratory murmur'

If, as a result of certain morbid conditions too much secretion is thrown

viscid secretion. The respiratory air being forced through a narrowed or distorted vessel produces abnormal whistling or grunting sounds these sounds because of their dry quality are termed *dry rales*

Rales are classified as *large and small* and *moist and dry*. They may be inspiratory, expiratory or both. Their origin may be laryngeal, bronchial, vesicular or cavernous.

**Large and Small Rales** A rale is spoken of as being large or small depending upon the caliber of the structure from which it takes its origin. If it originates in the trachea, the larynx, a large bronchus or a cavity, it is a *large*

*râle*. If it originates in the small bronchi or the vesicular structures, it is a small *râle*. It is quite evident that large bubbles can be produced only in a large tube, while small bubbles occur in smaller tubes, therefore, the size of the *râle* depends upon the size of the tube.

**Moist and Dry Râles:** Râles are also classified as *moist* or *dry* according to the impression they convey to the ear.

*Moist râles* usually resemble the sound produced by agitating soapsuds or by Vichy water, or the bursting of bubbles which rise to the surface of water just beginning to boil. Moist râles are spoken of as gurgling, bubbling (large or small) and subcrepitant, these are caused by a superabundance of secretion respectively in a communicating cavity, the bronchi, bronchioles and vesicles.

**1 Gurgling Râles, Gurgles or "Death Rattle":** These are the largest and lowest pitched râles ever audible, and are often heard several yards away from the patient by the unaided, and even by the untrained ear. As the name indicates, they are large gurgles, caused by the accumulation of mucous secretion in the trachea. The air, being forcibly driven through it both during inspiration and expiration, produces this succession of rattles. They usually occur in edema of the lungs and in terminal conditions.

**2 Cavernous and Amphoric Râles:** These are gurgling sounds having a hollow metallic quality, they are heard over large pulmonary cavities communicating with a bronchus. To produce these râles, the following conditions must be present: (a) The cavity must be large, (b) it must be about half filled with liquid secretion, the remaining part containing air; (c) the bronchus lead-

ing to the cavity must be unobstructed and reach below the level of the fluid.

These râles are heard both during inspiration and expiration, and are readily excited by coughing.

**3 Bronchiectatic Râles:** These râles closely resemble the cavernous variety, but somewhat lack their metal-

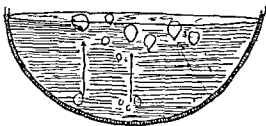


Fig 15—Cavernous and amphoric râles

lic quality and also create an impression of distance. They disappear after a severe paroxysm of coughing if a large quantity of fluid is coincidentally expectorated. These râles are heard over bronchiectatic cavities containing a large amount of accumulated secretion.

**4 Large Mucous Râles:** These are loud, low-pitched, and of a bubbling character, they are heard over the course of large bronchi and indicate free fluid in these tubes, and are heard most frequently in chronic bronchitis.

**5 Medium-sized Bubbling or Submucous Râles:** These râles are of a higher pitch and are more numerous than the large mucous râles, they are also heard over a large area, thus indicating involvement of a greater number of tubes of smaller caliber. These râles may be heard in the interscapular and supramammary regions, and may indicate the following conditions.

(a) A deep-seated bronchitis with mucoserous or purulent secretion.

(b) Pulmonary edema, the fluid having reached the level of the bronchi.

(c) Pulmonary hemorrhage extending into the bronchi

(d) Inspiration of fluid into the lung from immersion in water during anesthesia in operations upon the throat or other accidents they are usually heard during inspiration

**6 Subcrepitant or Fine Moist Rales** These are the smallest of the

have been previously glued together by a viscid substance. Mucous click is brought out more distinctly by coughing and is frequently an early sign of incipient tuberculosis

Subcrepitant rales are heard in (a) Incipient pulmonary tuberculosis apex. (b) Bronchopneumonia found in many areas (c) Lobar pneumonia first and

### Rales

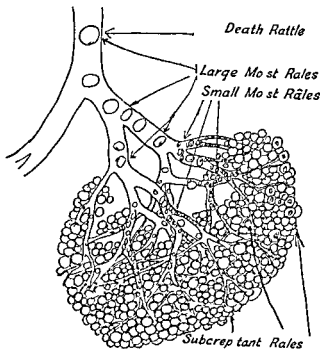


Fig 16—Subcrepitant rales

moist rales and are produced in the finest bronchioles and the vesicles they have a peculiar quality resembling the bursting of tiny bubbles or the sound produced by soapy water after agitation. These rales are usually heard over inflamed vesicular lung structure at the end of inspiration. Mucous click is a variety of subcrepitant rale; it occurs singly resembling the sound produced by the separation of two fingers which

third stages also adjacent to the consolidated area in the second stage (rale redux). (d) Pulmonary and hydrostatic congestion in the interscapular region and at the base. (e) After hemorrhage at the seat of bleeding

The *rale redux* or *crepit redux* of the older writers is practically a subcrepitant rale. It is as above indicated found in the third stage of lobar pneumonia and over healthy lung tissue bordering

the consolidated area during the second stage, and is probably caused by the overflow of fibrinous exudate into these portions

*Dry rales* occur as the result of contraction of the lumen of a bronchus which may be due to inflammatory thickening of its linings to adherent accumu-

smallest dry rales (*crepitant*) and are caused by separation of the vesicles after having been glued together by a thin layer of viscid secretion. The presence of fine rales indicates acute inflammation.

1 *Sonorous Râles*. These are large rales of a dry quality and low pitch, i. e., the pitch is low in comparison to the

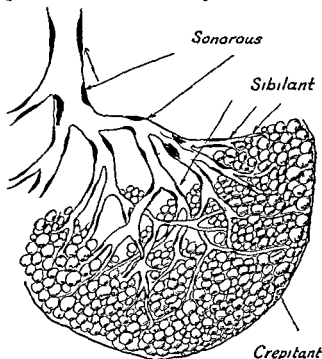


Fig 17—Sibilant rales.

lated dried secretions or to partial compression of the bronchi from without by a tumor, adhesions etc. In each instance however, there is sufficient moisture to give the adventitious sound its inherent quality.

Some dry rales resemble a snoring sound, while others appear as a hissing or a whistling (*sibilant*) noise. The dry rales originating in the large tubes are low pitched and snoring in character (*sonorous rales*). Those originating in the smaller bronchi are high pitched, hissing or whistling (*sibilant rales*). And those originating in the vesicles are the

smaller dry rale (*sibilant*), but is nevertheless much higher than that of any of the moist rales. The *sonorous rale* has a peculiar snoring or groaning quality. It is caused by conditions which produce inflammatory thickening of the mucous lining of a large bronchus, or a diminution of its caliber by constriction of the lumen from without, or by dry secretion adhering to its mucosa. Outside compression may be due to the pressure of a tumor, aneurysm, or an enlarged gland which encroaches upon a bronchus. These rales may be detected over the upper anterior portion of the chest and between



the scapulae. As a rule they are heard over a much larger area than their point of origin at times they are loud enough to be heard at some distance away from the patient. When caused by external constriction they are best heard immediately above and below the site of constriction.

**2 Sibilant Rales** These are multiple high pitched whistling piping or squeaking sounds heard practically over

*Intravesicular rales* are caused by separation of the agglutinated vesicular walls. *Extravesicular rales* may result from the slow peeling off of the scantily fibrinated visceral pleura from each individual inflated vesicle. These rales are numerous at the end of inspiration and are heard in pulmonary atelectasis in incipient phthisis in infarctions and in edema of the lungs. They also accompany subcrepitant rales in pneumonia.



Fig 18—Crepitant rales

the entire chest they have a peculiar musical quality. The sibilant rales originate in the smaller bronchi and are caused either by partial obstruction of the lumen of these tubes by a viscid secretion as occurs in bronchopneumonia, chronic bronchitis and emphysema, or by a spasmodic constriction of the lumen as in asthma. These rales may be heard both during inspiration and expiration.

**3 Crepitant Rales** These are crackling sounds having a peculiar dry quality which may be simulated by rubbing a lock of hair between the fingers or throwing salt upon a heated plate. Crepitant rales are the smallest rales usually encountered. As a rule they originate within the air cells. Some clinicians believe them to be of extravascular origin

during the stage of resolution and may be heard in bronchopneumonia. Normally a few crepitant rales may be heard either at the apices or bases of the lungs at the end of a full inspiration in individuals who are not in the habit of breathing deeply. After several deep breaths have been taken however these rales will cease to be audible. It is often difficult to differentiate between crepitant and subcrepitant rales and also between the subcrepitant and the smaller moist rales for there is no fixed point where one may say that one variety stops and the other begins.

The various fine rales may be schematically designated by the following signs:

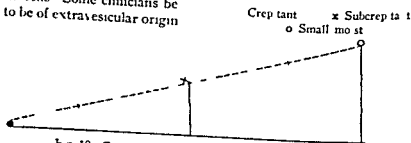


Fig 19—Crepitant, subcrepitant, small moist chart.

Each subdivision is a little coarser than the one preceding, one variety gradually merging into the one which succeeds it, as illustrated in the diagram

It may be the practice of one examiner to call all the râles from  $\cdot$  to  $x$  *crepitant*, and all râles from  $x$  to  $o$  *subcrepitant*, while those beyond that point he may term *small moist râles*. A second examiner may consider as *crepitant* only those râles which occur up to the first or second division in the first classification, while from that point to another point beyond the  $x$  he may term *subcrepitant*, etc

It is obvious, therefore, that the point where one variety of small râle begins and the other ends, is both an arbitrary and a sliding one. Usually each experienced clinician has in mind a definite point which serves him as a dividing line for the classification of small râles. In most instances, the recognition of small râles is sufficient for a diagnosis, only in special cases need they be definitely classified

**Quality of Râles** Râles may be either *abundant* or *scanty*, their number depending upon

(a) The quantity of fluid in the bronchi, air cells or cavity

(b) The proximity of the affected part to the surface (facilitating transmission)

(c) The force of the respiratory current agitating the secretions

Numerous râles, therefore, indicate free communication between the diseased part of the lung or bronchi, if this be interrupted by the temporary impaction of mucus, the râles are either abolished or become very scanty, even though the parts be 'loaded' with fluid secretion. Numerous and persistent large gurgling

râles (bursting bubbles) are most frequently found in large pulmonary cavities containing much fluid, occasionally also, in smaller bronchi, when these are filled with secretion. The less the amount of fluid in the respiratory tract, the scantier will the râles become, and the stronger will the inspiratory effort have to be in order to produce them

Occasionally, in the presence of congestion, the secretion may be so scanty that only a few râles are heard at each inspiration, during several consecutive respirations none at all may be audible, their reappearance being facilitated only by coughing after expiration. At times also several inspirations may cause them to disappear completely. As before mentioned, in health a few scanty râles may be heard at the apices, the bases and the axilla, they are audible only during the first deep inspiration which causes separation of the alveoli and smallest size of bronchioles, and may disappear after the first distention. The latter condition is usually found in subjects who are not in the habit of breathing deeply, also in those past middle life, in whom the edges of the lungs are somewhat atelectatic

The *intensity* or *loudness* of a râle depends upon (a) The abundance of the secretions, (b) the force of the respiratory act, (c) the size of the lumen of the bronchi containing the fluid, and (d) the nearness of the affected part to the chest wall

It should be remembered, however, that when large râles are heard at a given spot on the surface of the chest they do not necessarily arise from the underlying lung. This is particularly true of the so-called *dry râles*. Therefore, when examining a chest, the area of greatest

intensity of a certain kind of râle should be noted. Because of the uncertainty of the origin of large râles, moist or dry, they are termed by some clinicians *indeterminate râles*. Small râles are not transmitted far beyond their point of origin.

**Stage of Respiration in Which Râles Occur** Râles may be heard during inspiration alone, during expiration alone, during both inspiration and ex-

If the râles originate in the smaller bronchi they are heard during the height of inspiration and at the beginning of expiration. But if there is sufficient secretion to clog not only the finer bronchi, but the larger air tubes as well, and respiration is carried on with sufficient force, the râles will be heard almost continuously during both inspiration and expiration, as in diffuse bronchitis. Expectoration of the accumulated mucus

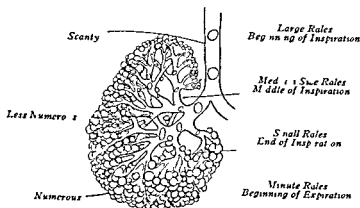


Fig 20—Stage of respiration in which râles are heard

piration, and during the respiratory pause.

Large râles occur at the beginning of inspiration and are few in number. The reason for this is obvious. The inspired air first passes through the large tubes which are fewer in number. The smaller râles are heard later in the inspiratory act, because the air reaches the smaller tubes later, they are more numerous because of the greater abundance of the smaller bronchi. The smallest râles, crepitant and subcrepitant, have their origin in the alveoli, or the smallest of the bronchioles, therefore, their presence can be detected only at the very end of inspiration and the beginning of expiration.

after violent coughing causes a cessation of the continuous râles until the secretion reaccumulates.

*Postexpiratory râles* occur during the respiratory pause, and may be heard over large cavities and bronchiectases half filled with semimucoid secretion. The inspiratory and expiratory column of air agitates the fluid contained in the cavity to such an extent as to cause the bubbles to burst after the main column of air has left it. A like phenomenon may be seen at the ocean front, where the foam produced by the breakers continues to effervesce long after the wave has receded.

Râles are also classified according to their origin.

(a) Laryngeal	{ Moist }	Gurgling
(b) Tracheal	{ Moist }	Gurgling
	{ Dry }	Sonorous
(c) Bronchial	{ Dry }	Sonorous
		Sibilant
	{ Moist }	Large bubbling
		Small bubbling
(d) Vesicular	{ Dry }	Crepitant
		Subcrepitant
	{ Moist }	Mucous click
		(fine soft crackle same as subcrepitant)
(e) Cavernous	{ Moist }	Gurgling
		large liquid

**Indeterminate Rales** Under this classification the Army Medical School has included all large rales that is large and small moist rales and sibilant and sonorous. The teaching regarding the nomenclature and signs for rales at Fort Oglethorpe and the United States General Hospital No. 16 at New Haven

Connecticut (the Army school for pulmonary tuberculosis during the first World War), was as follows

- Crepitant rales fine dry rales  
 x Subcrepitant rales finest of moist rales  
 Indeterminate rales  
   o Small mucous  
   O Large mucous  
   s Sibilant.  
   S Sonorous

The reason for classifying all the larger rales under the head of indeterminate is as previously mentioned because their point of origin is usually not accurately determined

**Significance of Râles** It is important to bear in mind that the existence of rales in the respiratory tract is indicative of an inflammatory process. Small rales crepitant or subcrepitant if persistent are always an indication of *acute inflammation* while large rales moist or dry, are the result of *chronic inflammation*

#### Differential Points Between Crepitant and Subcrepitant Rales

##### Crepitant Rales

- 1 Dry crackling quality
- 2 Numerous an almost continuous crackling sound resembling the muffled explosion of a bunch of firecrackers or the sound produced by treading on crisp snow
- 3 Uniform in size
- 4 Cough after expiration brings them out more plainly
- 5 Heard as a rule at the end of inspiration during cough and at times during the beginning of expiration
- 6 Vesicular and extravascular in origin.

##### Subcrepitant Râles

- 1 Fine bubbling quality
- 2 May occur singly or in smaller numbers with sufficient pause between each rale to permit each one to be recognized as a distinct entity
- 3 Variable in size
- 4 Brought out more plainly on coughing
- 5 Occur toward the end of inspiration and at the beginning of expiration
6. Bronchiole and vesicular in origin

## II Friction Sounds

Normally the pleurae are bathed by a serous fluid which acts as a lubricant allowing free play between the visceral and the parietal surfaces. Certain in

flammatory conditions may produce a deposit which causes the two surfaces to stick together lightly therefore when a full breath is taken the pleurae are

forcibly separated or torn apart, this is evidenced by a sharp pain, "stitch in the side," and on auscultation, a distinct rubbing or grating sound may be heard over the area. Any condition causing the surfaces of the pleurae to be roughened so that one uneven surface glides over the other, will produce a peculiar rubbing or creaking sound.

**Pleuritic Friction Sounds** These are rubbing, creaking, grating noises heard during both inspiration and expiration (loudest during the inspiratory act) over a limited area. The friction rub is best heard in dry pleurisy before the exudate is poured out, it disappears during the stage of exudation, and reappears toward the end of absorption. It is also heard in cases of pulmonary tuberculosis, malignant disease, and syphilis affecting the pleurae, because of the production of uneven surfaces. It is often

quite difficult to differentiate between a friction rub and multiple râles, often the two phenomena may occur simultaneously on the same side.

#### **Pleuropericardial Friction Sound**

This is a typical friction sound differing only in time from the pleural friction sound. It is caused by contact of the roughened portions of the visceral pleura and pericardium as they lie in opposition to each other. This rub is heard during inspiration because at that time the lung border encroaches farthest upon the heart, it is also best heard during the cardiac systole because the heart is then moved upon the lung surface.

The systolic rub is constant and rhythmic, and cannot be influenced at will while the inspiratory rub may voluntarily be made irregular by breathing faster or slower, or may cease entirely when the breath is held.

#### **Differentiating Friction Rub from Râles**

##### *Pleural Friction Rub*

- 1 Sounds very superficial to the ear
- 2 Strictly localized and cannot be heard two inches away from point of origin
- 3 Occurs only as a to and fro rubbing sound depending upon the frequency of respiration
- 4 The rub may disappear after numerous inspirations
- 5 Not influenced by coughing
- 6 Light pressure intensifies the sound, very hard pressure may stop it
- 7 Unilateral accompanied by other signs of pleurisy
- 8 Often accompanied by a sharp pain and friction fremitus
- 9 Usually associated with distant breath sounds

##### *Râles*

- 1 Sounds more distant
- 2 Not localized but may be heard over a large area
- 3 Sounds are multiplied due to variety of râles
- 4 Not so affected by respiration.
- 5 May become either more numerous or may cease after coughing
- 6 Not influenced by pressure.
- 7 Bilateral associated with signs of bronchial affection
- 8 No sharp pain no friction fremitus
- 9 Usually associated with exaggerated breath sounds

### **III. Metallic Tinkling or "Falling Drop"**

This is a fine resonant metallic tinkle, like the single stroke of a bell, it is of marked echoing quality, resembling the

sound produced by the dropping of water into a partially filled cistern. This phenomenon is observed in hydro-pneumo-

thorax, and also over large cavities containing air and fluid. It may accompany the succussion splash and can often be provoked by breathing, loud speaking, laughing, coughing, or by a change of position. The metallic tinkling may be due either to the dripping of fluid from the edge of the lung, or to the occasional bursting of a bubble upon the surface of the effusion. Both factors may be causative, because in several instances the differences in the qualities of the bursting bubbles and the falling drop have been detected in the same chest. This sound, also, may be heard over the normal stomach and bowel when inflated.

#### *IV. Hippocratic Succussion Splash*

This is a splashing sound heard over the chest (either with the stethoscope upon the patient's chest or at some distance from the chest with the unaided ear) when the body of the patient is sharply shaken. The condition can occur only when there is an accumulation of air and liquid in the pleura (hydropneumothorax and pyopneumothorax), it may also be heard over large cavities containing air and fluid. Normally a similar sound may be heard over the stomach and large bowel when these viscera contain a considerable amount of fluid and gas.

#### *V. Water Whistle Sound*

This is described as a fine metallic bubbling or splashing sound heard when listening over a pulmonary fistula such as that caused by puncturing a hydro-pneumothorax below the fluid level.

#### *VI. The Veiled Puff*

This consists of a short hollow whistling or puffing sound heard at the end of inspiration, it is indicative of a sacculated bronchiectatic cavity.

#### *VII. Posttussive Succussion Splash*

This is a "sucking in," semisonorous sound, heard during inspiration after a paroxysm of violent coughing. It is often observable in cases of cavity with collapsible walls, communicating with a bronchus.

#### *VIII. The Cough*

(See p 95)

Much can be learned by auscultating the various regions of the chest while the patient coughs, because, by this procedure, the secretion in the air passages is more agitated than it is by respiration. In order to obtain the greatest amount of information through coughing, this act must be performed in a specified manner.

**Technic** The patient is instructed to take a shallow inspiration followed by a deep expiration, at the end of which he is to give a short light cough. *This cough should come from the diaphragm and not be a mere clearing of the throat.* When they first cough in this manner patients are often made dizzy, but frequent rest periods will obviate this unpleasantness and in time they will carry on the "inspiration expiration and cough" with ease for an extended period. In the presence of moisture in the lung vesicles this form of coughing will bring out the crepitant and subcrepitant râles most prominently.

By auscultation of the cough, six points may be brought out which are valuable in diagnosis, and cannot be learned in any other way.

1 After repeated coughing inspiration becomes deeper and the respiratory murmur louder.

2 Temporary obstruction of a bronchus or bronchi by numerous plugs is removed by coughing, particularly if the cough is followed by expectoration.

thus reestablishing communication between the bronchi and the vesicular lung structure. The respiratory murmur previously suppressed or indistinct, becomes clearer and its character is brought out more distinctly. Over consolidations and cavities bronchial, bronchovesicular and cavernous breathing (depending upon the nature of the lesion) are often best heard after coughing.

3 Coughing frequently forces the secretion into the more confined spaces (the apices), thus increasing the number and intensity of the rales. Rales are heard with the greatest intensity during inspiration following the cough occasionally also during the cough. Often after coughing a number of times the rales will become weaker, or disappear from one area to be heard in another. This is no doubt caused by the shifting of the secretion in the air passages a phenomenon frequently encountered in diffuse bronchitis. Fine rales which are confined to one area especially at an apex, and persist after coughing are considered a pathognomonic sign of active pulmonary tuberculosis.

4 Silbant, sonorous and bubbling rales in other words rales of chronic inflammation are brought out more clearly by *coughing after inspiration* while crepitant and subcrepitant rales the rales of acute inflammation are best brought out by *coughing after expiration*. This latter method should be employed when examining for pulmonary tuberculosis and pneumonia.

5 When auscultating over a consolidation the cough is exceedingly loud, almost ear splitting in its intensity while over a large superficial cavity it will have a metallic ring.

6 Cough when persistent dry and not accompanied by rales may be due to reflex irritation from larynx or sinuses, or may be of nervous origin.

### IX Intermediate Unclassified Sounds

There is a variety of rale and other sounds which has thus far eluded classification and these are therefore termed *intermediate rales*. They are crepitant crackling moist or dry sounds, which may be heard all over the chest during either part of the respiratory cycle or throughout. They occur whenever there is moisture in the lungs the bronchi and the pleurae. These sounds are not pathognomonic of any particular condition though they are most often heard in bronchitis and asthma. Muscle sounds bone crepitation the "retrosternal crunching" described by Meyer Solis Cohen and other sounds that cannot be distinctly classified may be grouped under this heading.

**Muscle Sounds** Some individuals are able to contract their muscles so as to produce a succession of sounds not unlike small rales. Often the fibrillary muscle twitching produced by coughing or by a chill will serve to produce them. These sounds will cease as soon as the muscles are made to relax by a change of posture or by warmth. Muscle sounds heard at an apex are particularly confusing.

## General Résumé of Physical Examination of the Chest

Physical Condition	Inspection	Palpation	Percuss on	Auscultation
Lung tissue normal or nearly so	Normal signs	Normal vocal fremitus	Clear note	Vesicular murmur or its modifications normal vocal resonance
Lung tissue relaxed loss of normal tension moderate atelectasis edema deep congestion	Negative	Vocal fremitus increased	Vesiculotympanic	Bronchovesicular respiration small mucous râles vocal resonance increased
Consolidation of lung	Diminished respiratory expansion on affected side or locally	Vocal fremitus increased	Dull	Bronchial respiration increased vocal resonance
Pleural effusion or tumor	Diminished movement on affected side	Vocal fremitus diminished or absent	Flat	Absent respiration sometimes distant bronchial breathing absent voice egophony rarely
Increase of air in the vesicles local or general emphysema or cavities at particular points	Respiratory movement restricted generally or locally	Vocal fremitus diminished	Hyperresonance	Respiration feeble or cavernous vocal resonance feeble or cavernous or exaggerated Mixed râles
Large cavity with elastic walls communicating with a bronchus	Diminished expansion over lesion	Vocal fremitus diminished If air containing vocal fremitus is increased	Amphoric metallic cracked pot sound	Respiration amphoric or metallic cavernous amphoric or metallic voice whispering pectoriloquy
Air in pleural sac open pneumothorax closed pneumothorax Air under great tension	Greatly diminished movement	Absent vocal fremitus	Tympanitic metallic amphoric coin test	Absent breath sounds absent vocal resonance



## CHAPTER XIV

# Symptoms and Physical Signs of Diseases of the Respiratory System and Mammæ

### Diseases of the Bronchi

#### Acute Bronchitis

Acute bronchitis is an acute disease of the bronchi, characterized by a congestion of their mucous membrane, caused by the chemical and biological extension of irritation from the upper air passages, often following a rhinitis or a laryngotracheitis, inclement weather often pre-disposes to this affection. The larger bronchi are first affected. Affection of the smaller bronchi may be secondary to affection of the larger tubes. Further spread of the infection may cause bronchopneumonia. The condition is also found in association with influenza, measles, scarlet fever, and some of the other exanthemata and acute febrile diseases.

**Symptoms** These are retrosternal pain, hoarseness, cough, and often infra costal soreness, there may be a slight rise of temperature, though the temperature often remains normal.

**Physical Signs** Inspection of the chest is negative, the trachea and pharynx may be injected. Nothing abnormal is elicited by palpation and percussion, but on auscultation the respiratory murmur may be harsher than normal, and numerous large moist or dry rales are found along the large bronchi, which often disappear after cough and expectoration.

#### Chronic Bronchitis

This is a chronic inflammatory condition of the medium sized and small bronchi associated with destructive changes in their epithelial lining, and sometimes

with destruction of their mucous membrane. As a rule, it is a secondary disease. It is characterized by dyspnea, cough and various types of expectoration. Some patients cough through the entire year, others cough most during the change of seasons. Some cough during the night and others during exertion. Acute exacerbation of a chronic bronchitis occurs frequently. Chronic bronchitis is often classified according to the type of expectoration.

1 A *superficial* type commonly seen in men past middle life who are of a gouty diathesis or are suffering from general arteriosclerosis or renal disease, or have been emphysematous for an extended period. Cough is generally brought on by exertion. The expectoration may be thin or tenacious.

2 *Dry catarrh* seen in elderly emphysematous individuals, the cough coming in paroxysms, with very tenacious and scanty expectoration.

3 *Chronic bronchitis* of young nervous individuals, more common in females, who have a chronic cough but do not present any other physical signs.

4 *Bronchorrhea* which in addition to the leading symptoms of chronic bronchitis presents a profuse watery and at times mucopurulent expectoration.

5 *Suppurative or fetid bronchitis* in which the sputum is very fetid and resembles that obtained from bronchiectasis or gangrene of the lung.

Most cases of chronic bronchitis occur in those past middle life. In the young it may be caused by some irritating con-

dition within the upper air passages, the trachea or the bronchi, and also by the presence of enlarged tonsils, sinus infections, focal infections, enlarged pendulous uvula, adenoids, congenital malformation of the trachea, or enlarged bronchial glands. A foreign body in the bronchi or lungs may at times be the cause of chronic bronchitis. Whooping cough, influenza and the exanthemata may leave their sequelae upon the respiratory organs so as to be the perpetuating cause of a chronic bronchitis. *In the old* the continuous inhalation of irritating vapors, frequent exposure to wet and cold, and repeated attacks of acute bronchitis, pneumonia, cardiac decompensation, allergic conditions, focal infection and sinusitis may induce this chronic condition.

**Symptoms:** These are cough which occurs in paroxysms, copious expectoration, absence of fever, and a history of long-standing cough.

**Physical Signs** A person suffering from chronic bronchitis is usually emphysematous. *Inspection*, therefore, will reveal an emphysematous chest. *Palpation* will give evidence of diminished tactile fremitus throughout the chest. *Percussion* will elicit a hyperresonant note, except when associated congestion of the bases is present, in which case, impaired resonance or relative dullness is obtained over these areas. *On auscultation* the examiner will hear low pitched, prolonged inspiration, accompanied by low pitched, prolonged wheezy expiration. The râles heard will be large and small, moist and dry. A profusion of all kinds of râles is usually audible in this class of cases, though the râles may disappear temporarily after the secretion has been coughed up.

### **Fibrinous Bronchitis**

Fibronous bronchitis (rare) is a chronic inflammatory condition of the bronchial tree, though at times it may be acute, it is characterized by the production of fibrinous casts of the bronchi.

**Symptoms:** These are similar to those of the ordinary form of bronchitis, except that the cough and dyspnea are exaggerated. Expectoration is scanty until the cast is brought up. The cough may occur in paroxysms, and is often accompanied by bloodstained expectoration.

**Physical Signs** *On inspection* the patient appears to be very much distressed, and seems to have a mild degree of inspiratory dyspnea. *Upon palpation*, if the lumen of a bronchus supplying a large area of lung be plugged with fibrinous exudate, that area will be the seat of absence of tactile fremitus and diminished expansion. However, such an area is seldom large enough to give rise to these definite signs. *Percussion* elicits nothing abnormal, unless a temporary atelectasis occurs, when impaired resonance will be elicited. *Auscultation* reveals a somewhat harsh inspiratory sound, with sibilant and sonorous râles.

### **Foreign Bodies in the Bronchi**

The presence of foreign bodies in the bronchi produces the signs and symptoms of chronic bronchitis. Inspiration of foreign bodies—especially by children—is not uncommon. In the absence of a history, a positive diagnosis of this condition is possible only with the aid of the x rays.

When the foreign body is actually in passage from the larynx downward to a point beyond the first bifurcation of the primary bronchi, the symptoms are those of strangulation, i. e., dyspnea, cyanosis,

protrusion of the eyeballs and retching. After the foreign body has found lodgment in one of the smaller bronchi the symptoms and signs are those of acute or chronic bronchitis or they may simulate pneumonia.

**Physical Signs** These depend on the location of the foreign body and the degree of obstruction it causes. Foreign bodies in the alveolar structures may cause no abnormal physical signs. Complete obstruction of a large bronchus results in atelectasis and will cause the following signs on the affected side: Absence of expansion, lowering of the shoulder, flattening of the intercostal spaces, displacement of the heart towards that side and dullness on percussion with absence of breath sounds. Partial obstruction or obstruction of a small bronchus may cause harshness of breath sounds, an expiratory wheeze and small bubbling rales over the affected portion of the lung.

A foreign body acting as a ball valve, allowing the free entrance of air but interfering with its exit, will produce signs of localized emphysema, e. g. localized increased expansion, hyperresonance and exaggerated vesicular breathing, often associated with crepitant or sibilant rales. If pulmonary suppuration or an abscess has formed, the signs are those of suppuration plus localized absence of fremitus and of breath sounds. Foreign body in the trachea will be manifested by Jackson's three signs: (1) An audible slap as the foreign body is coughed up against the subglottic narrowing; (2) a thrill palpable over the cricoid cartilage or trachea; and (3) an asthmatic wheeze heard while listening at the patient's open mouth.

X-ray and fluoroscopic examination will readily detect an opaque body. The

presence of a nonopaque body may be inferred from the usual signs of either partial or complete bronchial obstruction.

Bronchoscopic examination is often necessary for a definite diagnosis.

### ***Bronchial Spirochetosis***

This is a type of bronchitis caused by the spirocheta bronchialis. It may be acute or chronic. There is usually persistent cough with scanty, bloody and often fetid expectoration. The infection may spread to the lung causing gangrene or abscess.

### ***Bronchiectasis***

This is a saccular or cylindrical dilatation of the bronchi; it may be congenital or acquired and occurs in one or both sides of the chest. Chronic bronchitis, tuberculosis, chronic sinusitis, whooping cough and pulmonary infections are prominent etiological factors.

**Symptoms** These are cough and expectoration; in severe cases there may be dyspnea, general bronchitis and hemoptysis. The cough occurs in paroxysms and is often induced by change of position or by physical strain. A sign frequently found in this condition is the expectoration of large quantities of foul smelling secretion which takes place when the patient assumes a certain posture or on arising in the morning. The bronchiectatic cavity or cavities may thus be emptied several times a day and in the intervals the patient will be fairly comfortable and free from cough.

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* usually reveals diminished general expansion due to associated chronic bronchitis. *Palpation* shows that the tactile fremitus is increased when the bronchiectatic cavity is superficial and empty. The lung tissue immediately surrounding the enlarged bronchi may also impart a slightly

increased tactile fremitus *Percussion* over the bronchiectasis when empty elicits a muffled tympanic note The author's modified "coin percussion test" often gives positive results

**Coin Percussion Test:** Technic for performing the modified coin percussion

cultated, the area where the coin sounds are most distinctly heard is the location of the bronchiectasis

**Other Signs:** Small multiple bronchiectatic cavities will give rise to cracked-pot sound When the bronchiectatic cavity is empty, cavernous breathing, whis-

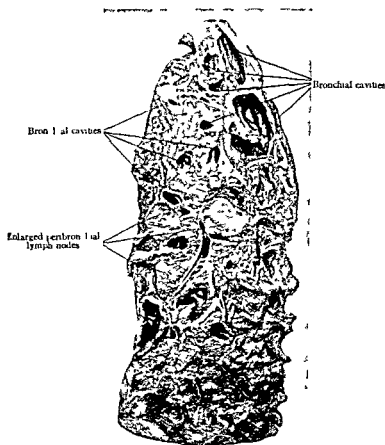


Fig 1—Bronchiectasis (Da Costa W B Saunders Co)  
(Jefferson Hospital Laboratories)

test A coin placed over the suspected area and tapped upon with another coin, will elicit an increased metallic sound which can be heard by the examiner when listening at the open mouth of the patient, or, if the coin is placed upon the trachea and is percussed with an other coin while the chest is being aus-

pered pectoriloquy and bronchophony can be elicited by auscultation When the bronchiectatic cavity is filled with secretion, absence of breath and voice sounds will be found When bronchitis is associated with bronchiectasis, the physical signs are those of the complicating bronchitis An x ray study may reveal the

fibrosis and enlarged bronchi. These findings may be enhanced by lipiodol insufflation.

### **Bronchial Asthma**

This is an acute paroxysmal dyspnea, generally expiratory in type which may occur at frequent intervals, and is often associated with chronic bronchitis and emphysema.

An asthmatic attack may be brought about by a variety of factors and may vary in different individuals. Among such factors are the pollens from certain plants, house dust, certain proteins, disease of the Schneiderian membrane, nasal polyps, sinusitis, animal emanations, intestinal parasites, and other substances to which a particular individual may be allergic. Asthma also may be found in those suffering from pulmonary tuberculosis, heart disease, kidney and stomach disorders. Whatever the underlying factor may be the condition is brought about by a spasmodic contraction of the bronchioles, which interferes with the exit and entrance of air to and from the lungs.

**Symptoms.** During an attack the patient either sits erect or stands leaning against some object, grasping it firmly so as to bring into play the accessory muscles of respiration, and presents a characteristic appearance, *i. e.*, the face is cyanosed, the eyes protrude, the superficial veins are prominent and perspiration is copious. The respiratory movements are forced and of the up-and-down type, the patient has the general appearance of being strangled.

**Physical Signs.** Between the attacks in early cases, there may be nothing definite, but after repeated attacks of asthma the patient may eventually develop chronic emphysema with its definite

physical signs. For further details, see p. 924.

### **Hay Fever**

This is a catarrhal condition of the upper air passages often extending throughout the entire bronchial tree, caused by some sensitizing substance, *i. e.*, plant pollens. In many cases it is associated with asthma.

**Physical Signs.** These are like those of chronic bronchitis, superimposed by an acute coryza. The diagnosis is based upon the recurrence of the affection at a certain time of the year and its recurrence each year at precisely the same time. Skin sensitization tests will often reveal the specific cause.

Our conceptions regarding the etiology and treatment of asthma, hay fever, the various allergic phenomena and certain skin manifestations—notably eczema and angioneurotic edema—have changed. The extensive investigations of the phenomena of anaphylaxis, allergy and protein sensitization by such workers as Vaughan and Rosenow and the application of the findings of these investigators to the treatment of respiratory diseases by I. Chandler Walker and other clinicians have wholly altered the general attitude of the medical profession, so that at present, asthma, hay fever, etc., are no longer classed as disease entities but rather as symptoms of a constitutional affection.

For further details see p. 925.

### **Whooping Cough**

This is an acute infectious catarrhal disease characterized by an inflammatory condition of the trachea and upper air passages. It is probably caused by the *Bacillus pertussis* of Bordet Gengou. The disease occurs most frequently in young children.

Physical examination elicits nothing characteristic besides the signs of acute bronchitis. The disease is characterized by its paroxysms of coughing, each paroxysm consisting of a number of short expiratory coughs followed by a long-drawn-in strangled "crowing" inspiration, the characteristic "whoop." During

fever, or the inhalation of irritating substances, particularly irritant gases, such as phosgene, diphosgene, mustard or other gases, also to air of extreme temperatures. *Passive congestion* usually occurs as a result of some condition which interferes with the return circulation, dilatation of the right ventricle, mitral

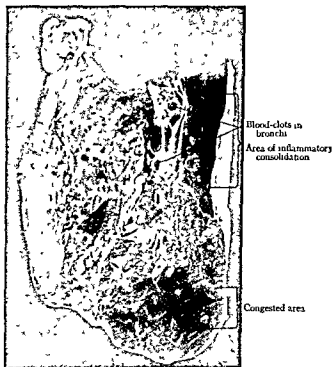


Fig 2—Pulmonary congestion (*Da Costa*, W. B Saunders Company.)  
(Jefferson Hospital Laboratories)

the paroxysm, the patient often becomes cyanosed. Severe and at times almost uncontrollable vomiting and hemorrhages may follow a violent paroxysm. There is marked leukocytosis with a great increase of lymphocytes

### Diseases of the Lungs

#### Pulmonary Congestion

This may be either active or passive. *Active congestion* may be due to some active inflammatory condition, infection,

stenosis, or other conditions which cause heart failure. The principal seats of congestion are the bases or dependent parts of the lungs.

**Symptoms:** These are dyspnea, some cyanosis, irritating cough, and scanty, frothy expectoration.

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* reveals moderate dyspnea with short, rapid, respiratory movements, cyanosis of the lips and finger tips, diminished expansion being observable throughout both lungs

On *palpation* over the congested areas, if the congestion is localized, slightly increased tactile fremitus may be elicited. Over the congested areas the *percussion* note is of higher pitch and resonance is impaired, while the areas adjacent to the hyperemic parts usually yield a hyperresonant note. *Auscultation* over the congested areas reveals bronchovesicular breath sounds. Vocal resonance is somewhat increased, numerous subcrepitant and other fine râles are heard, particularly after coughing. Over the areas adjacent to the congested parts, exaggerated breath sounds (puerile respiration) and a hyperresonant note are elicited.

### **Pulmonary Edema** (Edema of the Lungs)

There are two varieties of pulmonary edema — *general* and *local* or *collateral*. Edema of the lungs usually follows congestion of the viscera, either active or passive. In congestion of the lungs there is an increased amount of blood in the vessels supplying and traversing the lungs. The increased pressure within these vessels produces congestion. When the congestion proceeds a step farther, serum transudes or exudes from these vessels and oozes into the interstitial structures and the alveoli of the lungs, causing edema. In *general edema*, both lungs are usually the seat of the affection. The principal etiological factors are heart failure and general irritation caused by some mechanical, chemical or biological agent.

*Local or collateral edema* takes place adjacent to an inflammatory area or a new growth in the lung, such as the area adjacent to a pneumothorax, an abscess, a tuberculous or a syphilitic lesion, a malignant tumor or an aneurysm.

**Symptoms.** Edema of the lungs may come on suddenly or gradually. The leading *symptoms* are dyspnea (each respiratory effort bringing up a quantity of frothy mucus), cyanosis, and often convulsions. If generalized edema is not rapidly relieved, death will soon result.

**Physical Signs.** *Inspection* shows cyanosis of the lips and finger tips, and shallow respiratory movements, which are also feeble and rapid. *Palpation* confirms inspection as to the respiratory excursions, tactile fremitus is usually diminished and the pulse is weak, feeble and thready. *Percussion* reveals impaired resonance. On *auscultation* the breath sounds are indistinct because of the presence of numerous large and small (moist) bubbling rales. The rales can be heard over the entire edematous area and often overshadow any other auscultatory findings which might otherwise be in evidence.

### **Pulmonary Abscess**

This is an acute localized accumulation of pus within the lung substance due to bacterial infection such as the streptococcus, diplococcus, pneumococcus, Bacillus of Friedländer, staphylococcus, spirocheta pallida, bacillus coli, and often also to the amebae and certain other parasites. An abscess of the lung may occur as the result of some localized inflammation arising from a penetrating wound of the lung, the aspiration of foreign bodies through the nose or mouth and at times, after surgical operation in the buccal cavity, i. e., tonsillectomy, or from an infection carried to the lung as a metastatic abscess. Pulmonary tuberculosis, unresolved pneumonia and foreign bodies frequently set up a localized abscess in the lung.

**Symptoms.** These are pain referred to the site of the lesion, cough, and

expectoration, chills, fever and sweats. The temperature is irregular running from  $99^{\circ}$  to  $103^{\circ}$  and  $104^{\circ}$  F.

**Physical Signs** These depend largely upon the size of the abscess and its location. If it is large, superficial and has persisted for any length of time, the following will be noted:

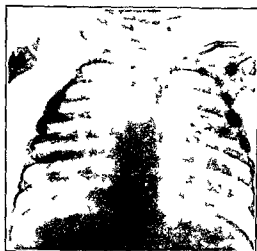


Fig. 3—Lung abscess following pneumonia in a child of two years. (Courtesy Dr. Leon Solis Cohen.)

**Inspection** shows the patient to be emaciated and anemic; the lips and fingernails are cyanotic; respiration is rapid and expansion over the affected side is limited. **Palpation** reveals absence of tactile fremitus over the affected part. If the abscess is in the lower part of the right lung, the "apex beat" will be pushed toward the left; if it be in the lower part of the left lung, the apex beat will be displaced to the right of the sternum. **Percussion** elicits dullness over the abscess; hyperresonance over the adjacent lung. On **auscultation**, before the abscess ruptures into a bronchus and empties itself, there is absence of breath sounds or at best very distant breath sounds over a limited area. After the abscess is evacuated, bronchial breathing

can be heard over that area. An X-ray examination will usually confirm the tentative diagnosis of abscess, and in the case of a superficial abscess, the exploratory needle will make it positive. A bronchoscopic examination will at times help in the diagnosis of a pulmonary abscess when other methods fail. When pus is expectorated it presents a characteristic fetid odor.

**X-ray Findings** The lesions are usually single, but multiple abscesses may sometimes occur. The usual situation of the shadow is near one of the hilum or toward the bases. They vary in size and though they may be well circumscribed are usually irregular, the area of greatest density being in the center and fading out toward the periphery. Cavitation generally occurs, and the cavity may contain air or fluid, or both. The point of surgical attack is best obtained at the fluoroscope, by rotating the patient so as to determine the point of nearest approach to the lateral chest wall. Simple multiple abscesses may be mistaken for metastatic malignancy and must be carefully differentiated.

### **Pulmonary Gangrene**

This is caused by decomposition of devitalized lung tissue as a result of bacterial putrefaction. It may be localized or diffuse. It is caused by hemorrhagic infarcts, foreign bodies, tumors pressing upon the lung, pulmonary spirochetosis, focal infection or inflammatory processes of the lung such as lobar and broncho pneumonia, or tuberculosis. It may also occur as a complication in certain infectious diseases and in diabetes mellitus.

**Symptoms** These depend largely upon the size of the area involved; if small, the most important symptoms are cough, fetid expectoration and extreme



fetor on the breath, very much resembling fetid bronchitis. Extensive pulmonary gangrene will cause loss of weight, weakness and occasionally rise of temperature, often of a septic character. Small areas, particularly if centrally located, may escape detection by *physical signs*, the only clues being the cough and the extreme fetor of the expectoration and breath. Large gangrenous areas will give signs similar to those of pulmonary abscess. An x ray examination may identify the lesion.

### Chronic Emphysema

There are three recognized varieties of emphysema: *Pseudohypertrophic*, *hypertrophic* and *interstitial*. Emphysema (chronic) is due to atrophy of the alveolar walls with permanent distention of the air vesicles. An increase of intra-alveolar air pressure, with possibly a congenitally defective development of the pulmonary elastic tissue, is necessary for the development of the pathological changes (Musser).

**Pseudohypertrophic emphysema**, called by Musser *acute vesicular emphysema*, is a rapidly developing condition of overdistention of the air vesicles which sometimes takes place in asphyxia, asthma, whooping cough, or angina pectoris. It is not a true emphysema, as recovery or death ensues before atrophy of the elastic tissue can take place.

**Hypertrophic emphysema** is a condition where the retractility and elasticity of the lungs have diminished as the result of overdistention of the air cells, permanently enlarging the lungs. The condition is commonly a secondary one and develops during the course of other lung diseases, it may then be due to the strain upon the alveolar walls imposed by constant coughing.

**Interstitial emphysema** is caused by wounds of the lungs, or rupture of the air vesicles by continued violent coughing, so that air is present in the interlobular and subpleural tissues. It occurs most commonly in the upper lobes and anterior surface of the lungs.

**Symptoms** The most prominent symptoms of emphysema are dyspnea (because of the inelasticity of the vesicular walls), cough and expectoration.

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* will show a barrel shaped chest, the anteroposterior diameter being greater than the transverse diameter, the shoulders are elevated, the neck is apparently short, the epigastric angle obtuse, and the scapulae lie flat upon the posterior aspect of the chest. Respiratory movements are limited on both sides, and the chest movements are of the up and down type. *Palpation* The tactile fremitus is decreased and the cardiac apical impulse is weak, at times wholly impalpable. *Percussion* yields hyperresonance throughout. *Auscultation* reveals emphysematous breathing (prolonged, low pitched, wheezy inspiratory sound, the expiratory sound being as long, or longer, than the inspiratory). Vocal resonance is diminished, and the râles are large and small, moist and dry, and can usually be heard over the entire chest because of the associated chronic bronchitis.

### Compensatory Emphysema

This is an acute condition due to an overfilling of the air vesicles causing the vesicular walls to distend, and thereby increasing their elasticity. This condition arises when one part of the lung is obliged to compensate for another portion which is temporarily incapacitated.

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* shows increased expansion, *palpation*, increased

tactile fremitus, *percussion* yields hyper resonance, while *auscultation* reveals exaggerated vesicular breath sounds both inspiratory and expiratory, which are a little harsher but not quite so harsh as the bronchovesicular sounds. The ratio between inspiration and expiration is maintained as in normal breathing though both are increased in length. Thus

	INSPIRATION	EXPIRATION
Normal respiratory ratio	3	1
Compensatory emphysema ratio	6	2

### Differential Diagnosis

	CHRONIC EMPHYSEMA	COMPENSATORY EMPHYSEMA
<i>Inspection</i>	Diminished expansion barrel shaped chest weak apical impulse	Localized increased expansion
<i>Palpation</i>	Diminished tactile fremitus	Increased tactile fremitus
<i>Percussion</i>	Hyperresonance (low pitched)	Hyperresonance (slightly higher pitched)
<i>Auscultation</i>	Emphysematous breathing prolonged expiratory sound which is equal to the inspiratory sound (both being of a low pitched and breezy quality) often numerous moist and dry rales Diminished vocal resonance	Breath sounds resembling the puerile or exaggerated vesicular inspiration and expiration twice as long as the normal the ratio between inspiration and expiration being as six to two Increased vocal resonance
<i>Pathology</i>	Overstretching with loss of elasticity of the alveoli	Stretching of the alveoli without any loss of elasticity the elasticity of the alveoli is often much greater than the normal

### Pulmonary Apoplexy (Pulmonary Infarction)

Pulmonary infarction causes collapse of a portion of lung which becomes infiltrated with blood. This is due to occlusion of a pulmonary vessel by a thrombus or an embolus. It may be caused by sub acute bacterial endocarditis auricular fibrillation phlebitis acute infections and occasionally by surgical operation or trauma. Large infarction may cause sudden death.

**Symptoms** If the infarct is large there will be pleural pain cough dyspnea cyanosis rapid heart action and fever.

**Physical Signs** On *inspection* dyspnea with limited expansion on the affected side will be noted. *Palpation* will yield increased tactile fremitus over the infarct, there will be dullness on *percussion* and *auscultation* will reveal

bronchial breathing bronchophony and many moist rales. These signs will be demonstrable if the infarct is large and is situated between a large bronchus and the surface of the lung. A small central infarct may be passed unnoticed during physical examination.

A moderate sized infarct away from a bronchus will present the following physical signs. *Inspection* diminished expansion *palpation*, decreased tactile fremitus *percussion* relative dullness and *auscultation* distant breath sounds and moist rales over the infarct and exaggerated breath sounds over the healthy lung immediately adjacent to the infarct.

### Pulmonary Arteriosclerosis

This condition is characterized by widespread sclerosis of the pulmonary artery or the smaller vessels. It may

be primary in which the lesser circulation is affected, or secondary to syphilis, tuberculosis, bronchiectasis, and to prolonged hyperemia caused by pulmonary affections, cardiovascular disease, mitral stenosis and by marked chest deformities, *i. e.* kyphoscoliosis.

**Symptoms.** These are cyanosis, dyspnea and orthopnea on slight exertion. Cough may be either dry and hacking or be moist. The general symptomatology is that of chronic bronchitis.

**Ayerza's Disease.** This is a type of pulmonary arteriosclerosis with fibro-

*Asbestosis* is caused by the inhalation of magnesium silicate.

*Anthraco-sis* is caused by a deposit of coal dust (coal miners' asthma).

*Chalicosis* and *silicosis* are due to the inhalation of particles of stone, and are usually found among potters, stone masons, sand blasters, etc.

*Siderosis* is due to iron dust and is seen in steel grinders, mirror makers, goldbeaters, glass cutters, etc.

*Organic dust* causes a form of pneumoconiosis found in grain handlers, threshers,ackers, etc.



Fig 4—Pulmonary infarct (Jefferson Hospital Laboratories)

*sis.* It is characterized by marked cyanosis, dyspnea, cough with expectoration, often hemoptysis, frequent headaches and chest pains. The blood count shows a definite polycythemia.

### *Pneumoconiosis*

This is a disease of the lung due to the inhalation and deposit of dust, mineral or vegetable, in the small bronchi, bronchioles and air vesicles. It is an occupational disease and is variously classified according to the kind of dust causing it.

**Symptoms.** The symptoms of all forms of pneumoconiosis are similar to those of a foreign body encroaching upon the lungs.

**Physical Signs.** The physical signs depend upon the amount of dust deposited and also upon its distribution. When a sufficient amount of dust finds its way into the lungs to produce symptoms which require medical attention, the physical signs are of a more or less distinct character. *Inspection* shows diminished expansion, particularly over the apices and often over other localized

areas of the lungs more often at one apex or base than at the other. *Palpation* confirms the inspected sign of diminished expansion; tactile fremitus is as a rule diminished. However, increased tactile fremitus may occur when the deposits are close to a large bronchus. *Percussion* reveals relative dull



Fig 5—Pneumoconiosis  
(Courtesy Dr. Leon Solis Cohen)

ness. If the deposits are small, bronchovesicular breathing will be heard on auscultation. If the deposits within the lung substance are large and the bronchi are dilated, bronchial breathing will be audible, and if this condition is associated with bronchiectasis, cavernous breathing may be heard. Rales, subcrepitant, small bubbling, and sibilant often occur at the same site. Pneumoconiosis, particularly if caused by dust particles, is often associated with emphysema. The physical signs are those of emphysema plus small areas of relative dullness at the apices. For x-rays, see Fig 5 above.

### *Pulmonary Atelectasis (Massive Collapse)*

Pulmonary atelectasis (pulmonary collapse) is due to an absence of air from the lung. An entire lung or an entire lobe or the greatest portion of a lobe may be involved; this condition may be caused by complete obstruction or compression of a bronchus, paralysis of a lateral half of the diaphragm, injury to the chest, foreign body in the chest, and some unknown conditions. Massive collapse is at times seen after general and rarely after spinal anesthesia, and occasionally in the newborn before respiration is thoroughly established.

**Physical Signs.** The patient is usually dyspneic and cyanotic.

**Inspection.** The affected side is immobile; the intercostal spaces are narrowed and often retracted; the trachea and the heart are displaced to the affected side. The opposite side usually shows signs of compensatory emphysema.

**Palpation.** There is absent or diminished expansion; tactile fremitus is absent when the entire lung is collapsed but may be increased when a collapsed portion of a lobe lies adjacent to a large bronchus.

**Percussion.** When total collapse is present, a dull note is elicited; but when partial collapse is present or when associated with a partial pneumothorax, then a tympanic note is elicited. The diaphragmatic excursions are practically nil. The diaphragm on the affected side is drawn upwards.

**Auscultation.** When the atelectatic lung is in proximity to the mediastinum, bronchial breathing and increased vocal resonance are elicited; but when the col-

lapsed lung is close to the chest wall and away from the mediastinum, then breath sounds are absent or distant and voice transmission is poor. Moist rales are heard over the atelectatic areas.

Small atelectatic areas may occur as the result of blockage of a small bronchus or bronchi. This may be found in bronchopneumonia, aspiration pneumonia, pulmonary tuberculosis, and other inflammatory conditions of the lungs and bronchi. Abnormal physical signs are often not demonstrable in this condition. Pulmonary atelectasis following anesthesia may cause physical signs resembling pneumonia. There is fever and many large and small moist rales.

### *The Pneumonias*

The term pneumonia is generally understood to mean inflammation of the lung. In order to specify the type of inflammation certain adjectives are prefixed, such as bronchopneumonia, lobar pneumonia, interstitial pneumonia, etc. These terms denote in a general way the amount and kind of lung tissue involved by the inflammatory process, but in no way do these terms denote the etiologic factors responsible for the pneumonic processes. Physical signs may reveal the amount of consolidation present in the lungs, whether small or large or single or multiple, the stage of consolidation, that is whether totally or partially consolidated and the presence or absence of accompanying involvement of the bronchi or pleurae. The data obtained by physical examination may indicate consolidation of the lung but they are not sufficiently specific for the diagnosis of the type of pneumonia.

Clinically the pneumonias may be grouped in two general classes. (1) The

pneumonias caused by the pneumococci, and (2) the pneumonias caused by other organisms and by physical agents. The clinical classifications of the pneumonias proposed by Rufus Cole and adopted by H. A. Reimann are the simplest and best suited for study.

#### *(a) Clinical Lobar Pneumonia*

The pneumonias caused by any one or more of the 60 or more types of pneumococci. This type usually involves the greater part of a lobe, an entire lobe or more than one lobe. Occasionally only a small portion of a lung may be the seat of consolidation.

#### *(b) Clinical Atypical Pneumonia*

The pneumonias caused by various cocci, bacilli (including Friedlander's bacilli), viruses, fungi, rickettsia, protozoa, metazoa, and those caused by physical agents such as the aspiration of foreign matter into the lungs. These types of pneumonia usually involve small portions of the lungs or several lobules. Occasionally a number of affected lobules may coalesce and involve the greater portion of a lobe or an entire lobe, or several large areas may show signs of total or partial consolidation.

### *Lobar Pneumonia*

*(Pneumococcic Pneumonia, Group-  
ous Pneumonia, Pneumonitis, Lung  
Fever)*

Lobar pneumonia is a primary disease of the lungs generally caused by the pneumococci. Etiologically pneumococcic pneumonia may be classified into 60 different types since there are 60 distinct strains of these microorganisms that may cause the disease. The number of strains is now generally given as 60 or more. Type XXXI is probably the same as type VI, and type XXX is probably

the same as type V. The most prevalent types in adults are I, II, III, V, VII, and VIII. In children the more common types are XIV and VI, and in the aged, types III and VIII. The prevailing types of pneumococci often vary in different

or rapid lysis. There is rapid breathing, the rate often depends upon the amount of lung involved, the severity of the toxemia and the amount of abdominal distention. The respiratory rate is high and out of proportion to the temperature



Fig 6—Lobar pneumonia, stage of gray hepatization (Da Costa W B Saunders Co)  
Jefferson Hospital Laboratories)

seasons and in different localities. The symptoms and physical signs of most of the types are similar.

**Symptoms** The onset is sudden, often marked by a chill and pleuritic pain. The temperature rises rapidly, is of the continuous type and terminates by crisis

and pulse rate. Cough may occur early but generally is a later manifestation of the disease. The expectoration when present is tenacious, bloodstained or "rusty."

**Physical Signs** These depend largely upon the stage of the disease. Over the affected area the following will be found

	FIRST STAGE	SECOND STAGE	THIRD STAGE
<i>Inspection</i>	Diminished expansion over the affected area	Immobility of the affected part	The immobile chest wall gradually assumes motion, as the disease is resolving
<i>Palpation</i>	Increased tactile fremitus Occasionally tactile fremitus is absent.	Greatly increased tactile fremitus	Fremitus becomes less marked as the disease gradually resolves until the normal is reached
<i>Percussion</i>	Tympany is often elicited during this stage because of the relaxation of the lung as disease progresses relative dullness gradually merges into absolute dullness, displacing the tympanic note	Dullness	The dullness of the second stage gives way first to relative dullness then to impaired resonance, and finally to the normal note.
<i>Auscultation</i>	Bronchovesicular breathing increased voice transmission crepitant and subcrepitant rales particularly after cough Occasionally there may be normal breath sounds or even an absence of breath sounds	Bronchial breathing, bronchophony and whispered pectoriloquy, as a rule no rales Occasionally there may be egophony	Consolidation signs gradually undergo modification from bronchial breathing to bronchovesicular then to normal breath sounds Voice sound changes from bronchophony to mere increased vocal resonance and finally to the normal resonance Subcrepitant and mucous rales

*Adventitious Sounds* Over the consolidated areas no rales are audible during the second stage of lobar pneumonia but as resolution begins it is manifested by the return of subcrepitant rales and later by mucous rales when resolution is complete the rales disappear

**Stages** The three stages of lobar pneumonia are often named in the order of their pathological sequence (1) Stage of congestion, (2) stage of red hepatization and (3) stage of gray hepatization

**X ray Findings** Lobar consolidation casts a shadow of increased density, as a rule sharply defined but gradually merging off into the noninvolved surrounding areas Small areas of involvement may occur in the base toward the pleura. There is no displacement of the heart. The process often spreads until the entire lobe is involved As resolution occurs the area of involvement breaks up into small areas of density with clearer

radiability between Often enlargement of the hilum shadow and parenchymal markings of the involved lung area persist for some time following the infection Unresolved pneumonia casts a similar shadow, and a knowledge of the previous history is necessary to obviate confusion with intralobar empyema particularly in a right sided lesion

### *Atypical Pneumonia*

Atypical pneumonia may be primary or secondary *Primary atypical pneumonia* is described as a disease of the lungs in which the invading organism primarily attacks the respiratory system and the predominating signs are those of

atypical pneumonia *Secondary atypical pneumonia* develops during the course of systemic infection in which the respiratory infection is incidental or a complicating feature. Atypical pneumonia is more frequently secondary than primary

bronchitis) is an acute inflammatory condition of small portions or of several lobules of the lungs. The lesions may remain isolated or may become confluent.

**Etiology** It may be secondary to upper respiratory infection or to mea-



Fig 7—Lobar pneumonia stage of red hepatization (Da Costa W B Saunders Co)

and the lesions in the lungs are generally of lobular distribution. The chief physical signs are here described under the caption of bronchopneumonia.

### ***Bronchopneumonia (Atypical Pneumonia)***

Bronchopneumonia (lobular pneumonia catarrhal pneumonia capillary

sles whooping cough pyogenic infections and other systemic infections. It may also result from the inspiration of foreign substances from snot and occurs as a terminal manifestation in chronic diseases. As a primary infection it may be due to the invasion by the higher types of pneumococci streptococci staphylococci Friedlander's bacilli influenza



viruses, and by a host of other micro organisms of a single strain or of a combination of various organisms and strains

**Symptoms** These are increased temperature, rapid breathing, cough and expectoration

**Physical Signs** On *inspection* the respirations will be observed to be rapid

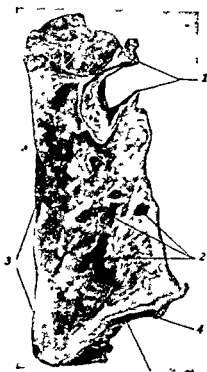


Fig 8—Bronchopneumonia. 1 Site of aorta 2, exudate in bronchi, 3, pneumonic infiltration, 4 thickened pleura (Da Costa, W B Saunders Co)

and shallow and the chest expansion to be diminished *Palpation* will elicit increased tactile fremitus, both over the consolidation and the portion of lung immediately adjacent to it, and *percussion* will yield impaired resonance when the areas of consolidation are small, relative dullness over large consolidations and dullness when a number of consolidated areas have become confluent and occupy the greater portion of a lobe.

*Auscultation* will reveal bronchovesicular breathing and increased vocal resonance over small or moderate sized consolidations Over large areas of consolidation, bronchophony and bronchial breathing will be heard The pathognomonic signs of bronchopneumonia are subcrepitant, crepitant and often other types of moist rales over several areas, usually at the bases of the lungs, though any other portion of the lung may be affected by the disease. The rales occur early in the disease and remain throughout its course, until the lung has resumed its normal function In the early stages before any other signs are manifested crepitant and subcrepitant rales can be brought out by cough, particularly when the cough follows expiration

**X ray Findings** In bronchopneumonia there are multiple areas of shadows of uniform density scattered throughout the lobes involved They are generally situated near the course of the larger bronchi and are rather hazy in outline, often giving the appearance of a powder puff They must be differentiated from multiple abscesses

### *Chronic Interstitial Pneumonia (Cirrhosis of the Lungs, Fibroid Induration of the Lung)*

Fibroid induration of the lung is a primary or secondary chronic disease of the lung characterized by a deposit of fibrous tissue in the lung substance, and may be associated with chronic pleurisy

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* over the affected part shows the chest wall to be retracted, the interspaces are sunken, the shoulder droops and the spine is curved with its convexity toward the healthy side The heart is drawn toward the diseased side *Palpation* confirms inspection as to limited motion and the position of

the apex beat. Tactile fremitus may be slightly diminished, although often the fremitus is increased, because of adhesive bands stretching from a bronchus to the pleura. *Percussion* usually elicits dullness or relative dullness over the affected portions, depending upon the size of consolidation, hyperresonance or tympany may be elicited near the angle of the scapulae, and close to Louis angle. On

of the pleura, and the condition of the bronchi.

**Friedlander's Bacillus**  
(*Bacillus Mucosis Capsulatus*)  
**Pneumonia**

This may be of lobar or lobular type. It is a comparatively rare but severe type of pneumonia affecting chiefly elderly persons.

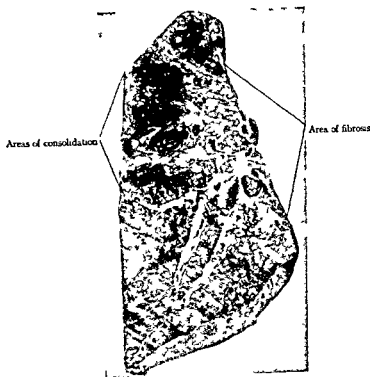


Fig 9—Chronic interstitial pneumonia (Da Costa W B Saunders Company)

*auscultation*, the breath sounds are usually diminished in volume and are distant. When the bronchus supplying a portion of lung is clogged, no breath sounds are audible over that part. However, if an associated bronchiectasis exists, then bronchial breathing is heard over that area. Vocal resonance may be diminished or increased, depending upon the amount of adhesions, the thickness

**Symptoms** These are similar to the severe types of pneumococcal pneumonia. Prostration comes on early. The sputum is thick and stringy containing blood mucus and pus.

**The physical signs** are variable depending upon the amount of lung tissue involved. Often there may be signs of consolidation in one part of the lung and signs of congestion or of suppuration in

another part Pulmonary abscess is a common sequel

### **Pulmonary Fibrosis**

Pulmonary fibrosis is a chronic condition of the lungs characterized by connective tissue hyperplasia which partially obliterates its air spaces lymphatics and



Fig. 10—Multiple carcinomata of the lung (Philadelphia General Hospital)

blood channels This may result from a variety of factors such as (a) Chronic inflammatory disease of the lungs, pleura, and bronchi as seen in pulmonary suppuration, chronic pulmonary tuberculosis (chronic fibroid phthisis), pneumoconiosis, chronic adhesive pleurisy and other chronic affections of the lungs, pleura and bronchi, (b) long standing passive congestion, as seen in emphysema, asthma and congestive heart disease, (c) massive atelectasis and bronchial occlusions and (d) inhalations of irritating dusts vapors gases or other substances that may cause repeated reparatory infections. Pulmonary fibrosis may affect the entire reparatory system or it may be confined to one lung

or to one portion of a lobe, depending upon its etiologic factor The symptoms in massive fibrosis are dyspnea cough expectoration, a tendency to cyanosis and to cardiac weakness The physical signs depend upon the degree and extent of involvement

*Inspection* will reveal some dyspnea with limited chest expansion and often retraction of the chest wall *Palpation* may elicit diminished fremitus when associated with thickened pleura or with emphysema, and increased fremitus when the lung is solidified *Percussion* will yield various degrees of dullness, and on *auscultation* there is usually found various types of rales and often bronchovesicular breathing Clubbing of the fingers and polycythemia are frequently found in chronic massive pulmonary fibrosis

### **Neoplasms of the Lungs**

Tumors of the lung may be malignant or benign, single or multiple Carcinoma and sarcoma are the malignant neoplasms most often encountered The tumors may be primary or metastatic They may originate in a bronchus, the lung the mediastinum, or in some distant part of the body

**Symptoms** The symptoms are pain dyspnea, cough and bloody expectoration, pleural effusion which is often bloody, and associated pressure signs

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* and *palpation* show limited expansion over the affected part, and there will be diminution or absence of tactile fremitus, if the tumor lies in close contact with a bronchus Cyanosis and distended superficial veins are often noted upon the upper part of the chest wall *Percussion* elicits dullness not movable unless associated

with effusion *Auscultation* will reveal the absence of breath sounds if the tumor lies between the lung and pleura because of the slight compression. If the tumor is adjacent to a bronchus and compresses the lung, bronchial breathing is heard. Pleural effusion usually appears early in the disease and is bloodstained.

Where the pleura is irritated a varying amount of fluid is generally present.

*Metastatic Malignancy* Metastatic carcinoma in the lung occurs generally in women from a primary focus of the breast, or it may be secondary to carcinoma situated anywhere in the body. Again the hilum shows early involve-



Fig 11—Tumor of the lungs (Philadelphia General Hospital)

**X ray Findings** *Primary Malignancy* Primary malignancy of the lung is unilateral carcinomatous in nature and of the nodular or infiltrating type. The situation of the former is usually at the hilum and consists of small sharply defined nodules of medium density possibly with striae radiating into the adjacent parenchyma. In the infiltrating type the tumor may arise from the bronchus infiltrating along its branches

and in progressing it may be accompanied by a pleural effusion. Dense infiltration may occur from and along the distribution of the bronchial tree. There is a consequent increase in the bronchial markings and spotting of tumor masses through the lung or the process may appear simply as areas of light density or rounded thin plaques scattered throughout all the lung tissues. (See Fig 12)

The detail simulates that of miliary tuberculosis. The areas of involvement, however, are more even and dense than those of the latter.

### *Syphilis of the Lung*

This disease is not readily diagnosed by physical examination alone. A gumma



Fig. 12—Metastatic carcinoma of the lungs  
(Courtesy of Dr. Leon Solis-Cohen)

of the lung may give rise to physical signs similar to those elicited over pulmonary tumors except that the most common location is along the hilum. Syphilis may be suspected if Ditt's sign is present in conjunction with a positive Wassermann reaction and a previous history of syphilis. These manifestations, together with a tumor along the hilum, make the diagnosis of pulmonary syphilis highly possible. Fibrous interstitial pneumonia is more common than gummata. The greatest infiltration is usually found in the pleura and in the connective tissue framework, especially

in the interlobar tissue near the root of the lung.

**Physical Signs.** *Inspection* shows diminished expansion, and *palpation* elicits increased tactile fremitus, but if the pleura is involved, diminished tactile fremitus will be elicited. There usually is impaired resonance, and, at times, dullness, over the affected area on *percussion*, while *auscultation* reveals bronchovesicular or bronchial breathing, and in some instances, when an associated effusion or the plugging of a bronchus occurs, there is an absence of breath sounds.

**X ray Findings.** There is generally a fan shaped radiation, extending from the hilum toward the periphery but not reaching it. This is a general infiltration process and is not confined to the bases alone though it involves the lower portions of the lungs to a greater extent than the upper. The apices are clear. In *gummata* there are generally discrete shadows of masses in the region of the hilum.

### *Pulmonary Tuberculosis*

Pulmonary tuberculosis usually occurs as a chronic, infectious disease of insidious onset and often following a protracted course. The acute types of tuberculosis, the miliary type, may be found in young children and in those who have failed to develop an early immunity.

**Symptoms.** The general symptoms are those of any chronic wasting disease associated with cough, expectoration, loss of weight and strength, increased temperature, rapid pulse, night sweats, digestive disturbance and hemoptysis. The tubercle bacillus is the etiologic factor.

**Physical Signs.** The physical signs of pulmonary tuberculosis depend upon

the stage of the disease, the amount of the involvement, and the rapidity of its progress. The physical signs of the three principal stages of chronic tuberculosis are here considered. *First stage*, or incipient manifest tuberculosis, *second stage*, or moderately advanced tuberculosis and *third stage*, or advanced tuberculosis.



Fig 13—Pulmonary tuberculosis  
(Courtesy Dr. Leon Solis Cohen)

**First Stage, Incipient Manifest Tuberculosis: Symptoms.** Cough, a slight rise in the evening temperature, exhaustion after slight physical or mental effort, digestive disturbances and neuromuscular pains, dyspnea, particularly on slight exertion and rapid pulse.

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* may reveal slightly delayed expansion at one or the other apex, *palpation* may elicit slightly increased tactile fremitus, though in some instances where the pleura is thickened diminished tactile fremitus is obtained. Slight rigidity of the muscles is often demonstrable over the affected part. In the very early stages no changes

in the *percussion* note are appreciable. When sufficient infiltration has occurred, the percussion note is usually impaired and the pitch somewhat elevated. *Auscultation* may reveal a somewhat lengthened expiratory note, while the inspiratory sound is a trifle harsher than normal. When activity is present, fine moist râles are demonstrable after cough. In open cases tubercle bacilli will be found in the sputum.

**Second Stage, Moderately Advanced Symptoms:** Cough, with or without expectoration and at times hemoptysis, rapid loss of weight and strength, evening rise of temperature, night sweats, digestive disturbances, nervous irritability and exhaustion.

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* shows delayed and often diminished expansion, *palpation* confirms inspection and elicits increased tactile fremitus, *percussion* yields relative dullness, and *auscultation* reveals bronchovesicular breathing, increased vocal resonance, subcrepitant and small bubbling râles, particularly after cough. Tubercle bacilli in the sputum and x-ray evidence of the disease is common at this stage.

**Third Stage, Advanced Tuberculosis Symptoms:** Emaciation, cough, expectoration, elevated temperature, asthenia and night sweats.

**Physical Signs:** Retraction of the affected parts is shown by *inspection*, together with delayed and diminished expansion, *palpation* confirms inspection, and elicits increased tactile fremitus. *Percussion* over consolidated areas yields dullness, over a cavity, tympany. *Auscultation* over consolidated areas reveals bronchial breathing, bronchophony, and small moist râles, over a cavity, cavernous or amphoric breathing, whis-

pered pectoriloquy and moist rales. Associated pleural effusion or pneumothorax will materially alter the physical signs.

**X-ray Findings** *Pulmonary Tuberculosis* Advanced tuberculosis is not difficult of detection. It is the early case which calls for the greater care. A careful comparison of the clinical report and

noticed is thickening of the bronchial tissues, extending toward the apex, which is commonly the first area involved. If healing occurs these thickened areas decrease in size, but increase in density, and become sharper in outline. There may also be beginning calcification around them. Should the invasion and infection continue, other areas of the lung fields

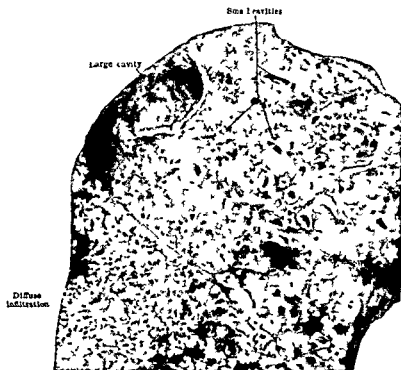


Fig 14—Chronic ulcerative phthisis. (John C. Da Costa, Jr. *Physical Diagnosis*, W. B. Saunders Company.)

the case history with the x-ray findings is necessary. (See Fig 13.)

Any increase and thickening of the bronchial markings must be viewed with suspicion. Line mottling along the bronchi is generally due to early tuberculosis. This is accompanied by exaggeration of the root shadows. In the acute stage the area involved is not as distinct as the adjacent areas and it is hazy and ill-defined as a rule because of the anastomosis of exudate in the cells. Along the path of invasion the next change

become involved and grayish spots (tubercles) appear throughout the parenchymal tissues. Fine mottling of the lung tissue is next seen and is always diagnostic of tuberculosis. These areas may then fuse and coalesce, and cavitation with or without cavitation follows. There is more or less interstitial and fibrous thickening at this time, particularly in the region of the base. Where the apex and one side is involved we often also find involvement along the vertebral border of the opposite lung. It must be remem-

bered that tuberculosis in the adult is usually first observed in the upper portions of the lung. Fluoroscopically the apices are examined for clearness or density. The patient should be made to cough in order to see if the apices clear up during the act.

**Miliary Tuberculosis** The picture here is different. There is fine hazy mottling extending throughout all the lobes. The lung on the x-ray plate gives the appearance of having passed through a snow storm. The apices are always involved, the studding is marked, and the outline of distinctness varies according

to the stage of involvement. *Malignancy* and *pneumonoconiosis* may often cast similar shadows, but in malignancy there are not so many areas of greater density and sharper detail, while in pneumonoconiosis the condition is widespread, but does not involve the apices, the diseased areas being smaller and distinct in outline without involvement of the surrounding tissue (Fig 15).

The following classifications of pulmonary tuberculosis as to the stage of the disease and the state of repair are adopted at the Sanatorium for Consumptives, Eagleville, Pa.

### Classification of Pulmonary Tuberculosis

#### LESION

##### I *Minimal Lesion*

Slight lesion or lesions limited in total volume to that above the second chondrosternal junction and fifth thoracic vertebra of one side. No serious tuberculous complications.

##### II *Moderately Advanced Lesion*

A lesion of one or both lungs, more widely distributed than under *minimal*, the extent of which may vary, according to the severity of the disease, from the equivalent of one-third the volume of one lung (consolidation or marked infiltration) to the equivalent of the volume of an entire lung (infiltration) with or without evidence of cavity formation, cavities not to exceed in total diameters 2 cm. No serious tuberculous complications.

#### POSSIBLE SYMPTOMS

##### A *Slight or None*

Slight or no constitutional symptoms including (particularly) gastric or intestinal disturbance or rapid loss of weight, slight or no elevation of temperature (not over 99.5° F after rest) or acceleration of pulse (not over 90 for men and 96 per minute for women after rest) at any time during the 24 hours. Expectoration usually small in amount or absent. Tubercle bacilli may be present or absent.

##### B *Moderate*

No marked impairment of function, either local or constitutional.

##### C *Severe*

Marked impairment of function, local or constitutional.

##### A *Symptoms Slight or None*

(Same as A above)

##### B *Symptoms Moderate*

(Same as B above)

##### C *Symptoms Severe*

(Same as C above)



Classification of Pulmonary Tuberculosis (*Continued*)

LESION	POSSIBLE SYMPTOMS
III <i>Far Advanced Lesion</i>	
A lesion more extensive than under moderately advanced Or definite evidence or marked cavity formation. Or serious tuberculous complications	A Symptoms Slight or None (Same as A above)
	B Symptoms Moderate (Same as B above)
	C Symptoms Severe (Same as C above)

*Under this scheme the following classifications are possible*

Minimal	A	Moderately Advanced	A	Far Advanced	A
"	B	"	"	B	"
"	C	"	"	C	"

*Apparently Cured*

All constitutional symptoms and expectoration with bacilli absent for a period of two years under ordinary conditions of life.

*Arrested*

All constitutional symptoms and expectoration with bacilli absent for a period of six months, the physical signs to be those of a healed lesion, roentgen findings to be compatible with the physical signs

*Apparently Arrested*

All constitutional symptoms and expectoration with bacilli absent for a period of three months, the physical signs to be those of a healed lesion, roentgen findings to be compatible with physical signs

*Quiescent*

Absence of all constitutional symptoms, expectoration and bacilli may or may not be present, physical signs and roentgen findings to be those of a stationary or retrogressive lesion, the foregoing conditions to have existed for at least two months

*Improved*

Constitutional symptoms lessened or entirely absent, cough and expectoration with bacilli usually present, physical signs and roentgen findings to be those of a stationary or retrogressive lesion

*Unimproved*

Essential symptoms unabated or increased, physical signs and roentgen findings to be those of an active or progressive lesion

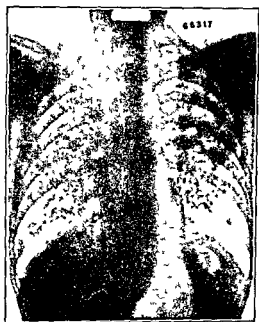


Fig. 15—Miliary tuberculosis (Courtesy, Dr Leon Solis-Cohen )

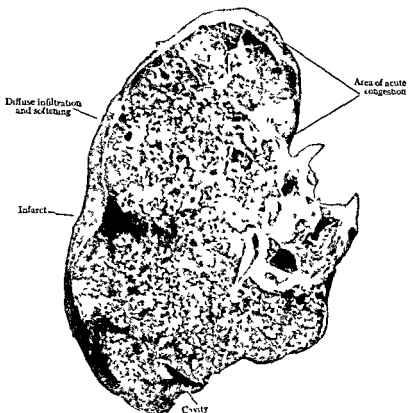


Fig 16—Acute pneumonic phthisis (Da Costa, W B Saunders Company )

tubercle bacilli in the sputum, an x ray examination will usually reveal the true nature of the disease

### *Acute Pneumonic Phthisis*

This is an acute infiltration of the lungs, pneumonia like in character, the specific organisms of which are chiefly the tubercle bacilli

**Symptoms.** The symptoms are acute onset, high fever, frequent sweats with attacks of chilliness, high temperature, either of the pneumonic or septic type. The temperature curve depends upon the kind of bacteria growing in symbiosis with the tubercle bacilli

**Physical Signs.** The physical signs are those of lobar and at times of lobular pneumonia. When a deep seated involvement has taken place, the physical signs are indistinct. The temperature curve, the rapid respiration and the presence of tubercle bacilli in the sputum are diagnostic of this disease. Positive physical findings are confirmatory. It should also be borne in mind that a person who is suffering from tuberculosis may develop pneumococcal or other types of lobar pneumonia or atypical pneumonia which are independent of the previously existing pulmonary tuberculosis. Therefore, the finding of tubercle bacilli in the sputum of a tuberculous individual who is suffering from an acute lung condition does not necessarily indicate acute pneumonic phthisis

also found in connection with such diseases of the lungs as lobar pneumonia, pulmonary tuberculosis, etc. Chronic pleurisy is found in chronic lung diseases such as tuberculosis, fibroid induration of the lung, syphilis and malignant diseases

**Symptoms:** The most prominent symptom of dry pleurisy is a "stitch like" pain in the side on respiration

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* shows that the patient has a tendency to lean toward and favor the affected side, thereby voluntarily inhibiting the respiratory expansion of that side. Friction fremitus may be *palpated* over the affected area, *percussion* is usually negative before the formation of an exudate. On *auscultation* a friction rub is heard at the site of the inflammation before the appearance of an exudate and also after its partial absorption

**Chronic Plastic Pleurisy** This form may be diagnosed by the history and the following *physical signs*. Diminished expansion over the affected side is shown by *inspection*. *Palpation* elicits decreased tactile fremitus, except when fibrous bands stretching from a bronchus to the pleura are formed, in which case, increased tactile fremitus is elicited. *Percussion* yields impaired resonance or relative dullness, the difference being caused by the thickness of the pleura that is, the thicker the pleura, the duller

monia and acute articular rheumatism are the next most common causes

**Symptoms** These are shortness of breath, elevation of temperature and mild toxic symptoms

**Physical Signs** Over small effusions inspection shows diminished expansion over large effusions there will be absence of expansion *Palpation* elicits weak tactile fremitus over small effusions, none over large effusions There will be relative dullness on *percussion* over small effusions, over large effusions, flatness and positive Grocco's sign *Auscultation* over small effusions reveals distant breath sounds, over large effusions absence of breath sounds is the rule If the effusion is not bound down by adhesions a change of posture will bring about a gradual alteration in the upper line of dullness

### **Pleural Effusions**

Effusions in the pleura may be of several types as follows (a) Hydrothorax (serum), (b) pyothorax or empyema (pus), (c) hemothorax (blood) (d) chylothorax (lymph) (e) pneumothorax (air) (f) hydropneumothorax (serum and air) and (g) pyopneumothorax (pus and air)

**Hydrothorax Physical Signs** The signs of hydrothorax are similar to those of pleural effusions the difference being that in hydrothorax there is no elevation of temperature an exploratory puncture will reveal fluid of a noninflammatory character (transudate) Hydrothorax usually occurs as a result of heart failure and general dropsy due to either a pathologic kidney condition or severe anemia and also to neoplasm of the lung or pleura

**Pyothorax** If the pus is not bound down by adhesions the physical signs are similar to those of pleural effusions

**Symptoms** They are of a septic infection chills fever sweating and irregular temperature

**Physical Signs** A localized collection of pus in the pleura (empyema) may be discovered by its strict localization *palpation* will elicit absence of tactile fremitus There will be localized dullness on *percussion* and absence of breath sounds on *auscultation* over the affected area Exploratory puncture will reveal pus

**Hemothorax** This signifies blood in the pleural cavity It may be of two types The first in which the effusion is free blood is usually the result of a ruptured blood vessel of an aneurysm or of trauma The second in which blood is so mixed with fluid that the effusion is only bloodstained may be found in neoplasm of the lung and at times in pulmonary tuberculosis The symptoms and physical signs are similar to afebrile pleurisy with effusion Thoracentesis is of diagnostic importance

**Chylothorax** *Symptoms and physical signs* are those of pleurisy with effusion the diagnosis being made by exploratory puncture

**Pneumothorax** This signifies a collection of air in the pleural sac Intrinsic causes are a rupture of a portion of the lung during the course of pulmonary tuberculosis malignancy or gangrene of the lung extrinsic causes may be traumatism by some sharp instrument which perforates the lung or other accident Artificial pneumothorax is often induced as a remedial measure in tuberculosis and in gangrene and abscess of the lung Occasionally pneumothorax of unknown origin may develop

**Physical Signs:** On *inspection* the patient will be somewhat cyanosed and dyspneic, bulging of the affected side will be in evidence. *Palpation* will reveal the absence of tactile fremitus, and *percussion* will yield tympany. There will be absence of breath sounds on *auscultation* except when a large communica-



Fig 17—Hydropneumothorax  
(Courtesy Dr. Leon Solis Cohen)

tion with a bronchus exists in which case there will be bronchial breathing. The coin test and metallic tinkling will be positive over massive pneumothorax.

#### Hydro- and pyopneumothorax

These are due to the presence of serum or pus in the lung, in addition to air or gas.

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* will show dyspnea, cough and cyanosis and *palpation* the absence of tactile fremitus. *Percussion* will yield dullness over the fluid and tympany over the air; the upper level of dullness changing with the change of the patient's posture. *Auscultation* will reveal absence of breath

sounds, positive succussion splash, positive coin test and metallic tinkling. Pyopneumothorax will, in addition to these signs, also give rise to signs of sepsis: i. e. fever, sweats and chills.

**X-ray Interpretation of Pleural Effusion, Pneumothorax and Encysted Fluid:** *Pleural Cavity Pleural effusion* is early recognized at the fluoroscope. In the massive effusion extending from the base to the apex there is almost absolute opacity on the affected side, the diaphragm is not visible, the heart is often displaced to the opposite side. In a small effusion the diaphragm may be depressed and seen with difficulty. The normal pulmonary transparency of the opposite side is striking. In moderate effusion, the upper limit is often visualized as a line or meniscus, and by shaking the patient the splashing of the fluid can be observed. It is often possible to determine the best point for puncture of the thorax by careful screening of the patient.

**Pneumothorax:** The presence of an area of extreme transparency (indicative of air), replacing the normal lung shadows, is absolutely diagnostic of pneumothorax and is more or less easily determined at the fluoroscope. The air may be limited by intrapleural adhesions and by the lung border. A partial or complete collapse of the lung may occur, according to the extent of the pneumothorax. Fluid is sometimes present as hydro- or pyopneumothorax and this will be indicated by the density of the fluid shadow beneath the transparent air.

**Encysted Fluid:** This will show a cavity with a fluid level and a smooth, circumscribed wall. It appears to be of uniform density and air may overlie the fluid. It is quite often difficult to differentiate between an encysted empyema

and a collection of pus in the intralobar areas, as both are found in contact with the pleura.

### **Diseases of the Diaphragm**

The diaphragm is normally one of the most active muscles in the body, as it constantly contracts and relaxes in its effort to carry on respiration. There are certain pathological conditions which affect the diaphragm, thereby interfering with its proper function.

#### **Paralysis of the Diaphragm**

**Local or Unilateral Paralysis of the Diaphragm:** This may be caused by injury to the phrenic nerve or to the spinal cord. Such paralysis is at times also the result of progressive muscular atrophy, or of the toxic action of diphtheria or of lead poisoning.

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* reveals dyspnea on the least exertion, reversed respiratory movements on the affected side, and diminished expansion, the observations as to diminished expansion on the affected side are confirmed by *palpation*. The complementary sinus on the affected side shows no lowering of *percussion* resonance during inspiration and no raising during expiration. On *auscultation* breath sounds are not heard below the ninth dorsal spine, even during the deepest inspiratory effort. There is usually an associated unilateral congestion of the lung.

**General or Bilateral Paralysis of the Diaphragm:** This is a rare and extremely serious condition, which is likely to cause death if continued for any length of time. It may result from a brain lesion, a fracture of cervical vertebrae, from tumors or hemorrhage which brings about compression of the cord, or from myelitis. Not infrequently

it is seen in acute poliomyelitis. It may also follow diphtheria, lead poisoning, or inflammation of the serous membrane covering the diaphragm.

**Symptoms:** These are an inability to carry on respiration, in incomplete paralysis there are faint or incomplete respiratory movements, hiccoughing, very feeble sneezing, alteration in the voice, and the appearance of the following physical signs.

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* shows cyanosis, rapid shallow breathing, reversal of the respiratory movements (the epigastrium receding during inspiration instead of bulging), and absence of the downward movement of the abdominal viscera during inspiration. *Palpation* reveals decreased movement of the lower ribs, on *percussion*, the complementary spaces on both sides will be found very much diminished, while lung expansion at the bases is practically nil. *Auscultation* reveals feeble breath and voice sounds, numerous rales are usually heard at the bases of the lungs. A more accurate diagnosis of this condition can be made by radiography and fluoroscopy. X-rays will show the diaphragm arched, and little or no descent will be noted during inspiration.

#### **Diaphragmatitis**

This is an inflammatory condition of the diaphragm which may be primary or secondary. *Primary diaphragmatitis* is a rare condition, it may result from trichinosis, and, at times, is seen in the terminal stages of scurvy. *Secondary diaphragmatitis* is frequently encountered and may result from disease of the lungs, the pleura, or the adjacent abdominal viscera.

**Symptoms:** The chief symptoms are immobility of the diaphragm, a sense of

constriction encircling the lower portion of the chest dyspnea and soreness

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* shows absence of Litten's sign (phrenic wave) and diminished expansion of the lower chest. *Palpation* confirms inspection as to the limited motion of the lower chest and *percussion* will reveal very limited complementary spaces. *Auscultation* elicits very feeble breath sounds at the bases and exaggerated breathing over the upper part of the chest.

### **Diaphragmatic Abscess (Subphrenic Abscess)**

*Simple diaphragmatic abscess and gas containing abscess* are the two varieties usually found.

**Simple Diaphragmatic Abscess**  
This may occur as a result of a ruptured displaced appendix, abscess of the liver or gallbladder, retroperitoneal abscess, abscess of the suprarenal bodies or pyelonephrosis, it also occurs in empyema and advanced pulmonary tuberculosis with basal cavity.

**Symptoms** These are chills, fever and sweating with pain in the region of the lower chest.

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* will show diminished expansion on the affected side while *palpation* confirms inspection and reveals absence of tactile fremitus over the affected portions. *Percussion* will reveal dullness or flatness over a circumscribed area uninfluenced by respiration or position. *Auscultation*

gas containing abscess is more frequently found on the left than on the right side.

**Physical Signs** On *inspection* there will be diminished expansion over the lower chest and upper abdomen, *palpation* confirms inspection as to the limited motion and reveals an absence of tactile fremitus over the affected part. The apex beat may be displaced to the right in a left sided abscess. *Percussion* reveals localized tympany, and *auscultation* the absence of breath sounds, absence of transmitted voice sound and negative costal test.

### **Diaphragmatic Pleurisy**

This may be caused by a stab wound or it may be secondary to inflammation of the pleura as a result of tuberculosis pneumonia or empyema, it may also result from an inflammatory condition of any viscera lying in close proximity to the diaphragm.

**Symptoms** These are slight dyspnea on exertion pain during respiration usually referable to the epigastrium often simulating the pain of gastric ulcer.

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* shows limited diaphragmatic descent which is confirmed by *palpation*. *Percussion* will elicit limited diaphragmatic respiratory excursions and *auscultation* will reveal diminished breath sounds at the base most of the auscultatory signs however usually being masked by congestion at the bases of the lungs.

or a sudden strain brought to bear upon the abdominal viscera which forces them upward and causes them to break through a weakened portion of the diaphragm

**Symptoms.** Congenital hernia seldom gives rise to any symptoms

Acquired hernia gives rise to a sensation of sudden loss of support in the dia-



Fig 18—X ray plate showing diaphragmatic herniation of the stomach. Note greater part of stomach is above diaphragm

phragmatic region accompanied by acute pain and often by temporary collapse

**Physical Signs.** The physical signs may be limited motion of the affected side on inspection, confirmed by palpation which also reveals absence of tactile fremitus. There will be tympany on percussion, and on auscultation absence of breath sounds, while often after taking food or drink, in the presence of a left-sided diaphragmatic hernia, splashing and gurgling sounds may be audible, these are intensified by shaking the patient (succussion)

### **Evisceration**

This is a condition similar to diaphragmatic hernia, the two conditions often being confused. It usually occurs on the left side and may be the result of an injury, such as a gunshot wound, stab wound or the result of a crushing accident or severe strain. A strain, blow or crushing accident may simply tear the muscle, leaving the serous covering intact, this condition is not easily diagnosed by symptoms or physical signs, as there is no visible wound and the symptoms are often misleading.

**Symptoms.** Those sometimes encountered in this condition are dyspnea, irritating cough, vomiting and digestive disturbances.

**Physical Signs.** They are those of diaphragmatic hernia.

### **Eventration**

Eventration (congenital) is rare. Some years ago, Bayne-Jones<sup>1</sup> collected from the literature reports of 45 cases. The condition is characterized by a general expansion of one half of the diaphragm, allowing the abdominal viscera to be displaced upward into the thoracic cavity. It is generally believed to be of congenital origin, and as it seldom produces symptoms is usually discovered by accident, either by roentgenography, or at the autopsy table. A case which the author saw at the United States General Hospital, No 16, at New Haven, Connecticut, presented practically no symptoms.

**Physical Signs:** Inspection showed absence of expansion of the lower left chest, the apex beat being displaced to the right. Palpation confirmed inspection as to the limited motion, and revealed

<sup>1</sup> Bayne Jones Arch Int Med, Feb, 1916.



the absence of tactile fremitus *Percussion* yielded tympany, when the patient was in a sitting or upright posture, the tympany extended to the fourth rib and the eighth dorsal spine (from below upward), in the prone position, after a full meal, there was dullness from the base up to the eighth rib posteriorly, tympany from the base to the fourth rib anteriorly. When the patient was fully prone, dullness could be elicited anteriorly and tympany posteriorly. The diaphragmatic movements on the left side were limited. *Auscultation* revealed that breath sounds were absent. After the patient had drunk two or three glasses of water or eaten a full meal, succussion splashes were easily elicited. The diagnosis of eventration was confirmed by Dr. Honji, who made very careful roentgenologic and fluoroscopic studies.

#### *Displacement of the Diaphragm*

The diaphragm may be displaced downward by effusion in the pleura, or upward by tumors of the abdominal viscera, enlarged glands, or dilatation of the stomach and colon.

**Symptoms and Physical Signs**  
They are of the underlying condition. Causes of downward displacement of the diaphragm should be differentiated from abdominal conditions which bring about upward displacement of the diaphragm. Conditions which displace the diaphragm downward usually give signs and symptoms in the lungs while those which bring about upward displacement will cause symptoms that are referable to the abdominal cavity.

or, reflexly, by some disturbance of the stomach, heart, or pleurae. It may occur in hysteria and in cases of irritation of the central nervous system (apoplexy or epilepsy).

**Symptoms:** The most prominent symptoms of spasm of the diaphragm are hiccoughing, paroxysmal sneezing, laughing, weeping and coughing. Tonic spasms of the diaphragm sometimes occur in tetanus, strychnia poisoning and hydrophobia. The symptoms of tonic spasm are a sense of constriction in the chest, pain along the insertion of the diaphragm, and dyspnea. Physical signs are not conclusive.

#### *Diseases of the Breasts (Mammæ)*

The mammae are two glandular structures situated upon the anterior chest wall between the third and sixth ribs when not pendulous. The male breast is rudimentary and in the majority of men the nipple is the only conspicuous portion of that gland. Abnormally large breasts in men, gynecomastia, may be found in the obese and in those suffering from endocrine disturbances particularly of the gonad-pituitary type.

The female breasts are fully developed glandular structures capable of lactation immediately after childbirth. The size of the adult breast depends upon the corpulency of the individual, the state of lactation and personal peculiarity.

The nipple (mamilla) occupies the center of the nonpendulous breast. It contains erectile tissue and in women is perforated by lactiferous ducts.

**Polymazia** (supernumerary breasts)

There are reports on record of men and women who have had three, four five and one woman had six breasts. Those in women were lactating



Fig 19—Carcinoma of breast

**Polythelin** (supernumerary nipples)

Two or more nipples may occur upon one breast, or a rudimentary nipple may occur upon the chest wall independent of a breast. The nipples may be malformed or rudimentary, preventing lactation. They may become fissured, eczematous or be infiltrated by new growths.

**Neuralgia of the Breast** Tender areas not accompanied by any enlargement or tissue changes may occur. The breast is usually sensitive to cold and the skin is hyperesthetic. This condition occurs most frequently near the approach of the menstrual period.

**Mastitis** Inflammation of the breasts may occur at any age, but is most common during lactation because of infection through the nipple or because of

trauma. Women who have not borne children recently and those approaching the menopause may develop mastitis because of faulty involution. The breast becomes enlarged and develops local areas of redness which are hard and tender and may suppurate, causing a breast abscess.

Tumors of the breast may be benign or malignant.

**Benign Tumors** *Fibroma*, *lipoma*, *myxoma*, *adenoma* when located in the breast seldom give rise to pain and do not ulcerate. They are not connected



Fig 20—Carcinoma of breast.  
(Philadelphia General Hospital)

with the skin, so that the skin is easily moved over the tumor mass. Benign tumors usually occur in young adults and do not give rise to metastasis.

**Malignant Tumors** These are sarcoma and carcinoma.

**Sarcoma** The type of sarcoma depends upon its embryonic cell formation, i. e., round cell, spindle cell, myeloid, lymphoid, etc. These tumors often attain a large size, they have a tendency to ulceration and give rise to metastasis.

**Carcinoma** This is the commonest and the most fatal of the breast tumors. It usually affects women near the menopause, though it may occur at any age. The tumor mass is, as a rule, located near the nipple, causing retraction. It is adherent to the skin, causing puckering, the skin is not movable over the mass and is tender to touch. The lymphatic gland becomes enlarged and metastasis occurs early. Massive destruction of tissue occurs in advanced cases.

**Cysts:** Cysts of the breasts may occur at any age, they may be single or multiple and may contain various substances

as small hardened masses, and may be associated with bleeding from the nipple. This is often found in women at the menopause or in those suffering from ovarian disease, who have an overproduction of anterior pituitary sex hormone with a deficiency of ovarian hormone.

**Cystic Hyperplasia** This is characterized by the formation of round freely movable masses in the center of the breast. These originate in the duct system and may be single or multiple. This condition is said to be due to the uninterupted production of large amounts of estrin by persistent ovarian follicle cysts.

**Paget's Disease of the Nipple** This is a crusting ulceration or erosion with retraction of the nipple. Dislodging of the crusts exposes a raw surface which may bleed. Occasionally there is a serosanguineous discharge from the

The clinical manifestations are vague so that the diagnosis is often overlooked. There may be a sense of heaviness or crowding in the anterior chest or some tenderness on pressure over the sternum. Occasionally there may be heard fine crepitations over the sternum during deep respiration or synchronously with the heart beat. There may also be a short hacking nonproductive cough brought out by deep breathing or by talking and there is usually a slight rise in temperature. In the absence of complications recovery usually takes place within one week.

**Acute Suppurative Mediastinitis or Abscess** This may follow the acute simple type or start as an acute infective suppurative process secondary to infection of the chest wall, the spine or the mediastinal contents. It may also result from blood stream infections, erysipelas, actinomycosis, infections about the face, mouth or neck and from empyema and pyopericardium. Occasionally it may be a complication in influenza, typhoid fever, pneumonia, pneumothorax, tuberculosis, syphilis, lymphogranuloma and other severe infections.

**Clinical Manifestations** If the suppurative process in the mediastinum develops during the febrile stage of an acute infection it may remain undiagnosed. Its presence may however be suspected by the occurrence of chills, an increase in temperature that may show a definite septic curve, sweats and severe retrosternal pain with a sense of suffocation. When the abscess is circumscribed and large it may cause signs of tumor, that is, partial bronchial stenosis, difficulty in swallowing, venous distention and other signs of the mediastinal syndrome.

Fluoroscopic examination in the anteroposterior and lateral positions may

reveal the abscess and x ray plates taken in these postures may show the encroaching shadow. Abscess of the mediastinum is fatal in most instances. Recovery may occur if the abscess points at the surface and is aspirated or when it ruptures into a bronchus and does not cause suffocation.

#### **Chronic Indurative Mediastinitis**

This may be a sequel to the acute types. It is usually evidenced by mediastinal fibrosis, pericardial adhesions, often with adhesive bands compressing the great vessels and is occasionally associated with caseation of the mediastinal lymph glands.

**Mediastinopericarditis** is characterized by great cardiac hypertrophy with dilatation causing cyanosis, dyspnea, cough, portal and renal congestion and occasionally perisplenitis, perihepatitis and ascites known as pericarditic pseudocirrhosis or Pick's disease.

**Clinical Manifestations** These are referable mainly to the associated lesions of the heart and pericardium with tenderness over the sternum. The findings are those of the inferior mediastinal syndrome.

**Chronic Suppurative Mediastinitis (Chronic Abscess)** This is generally due to caseation of tuberculous peribronchial or mediastinal glands or to tuberculosis of a spinal vertebra. It may also be caused by a foreign body such as a needle or bullet lodged in the tissues of the mediastinum. The clinical manifestations depend upon the size of the abscess and the absorbability of the pus. A large abscess will cause pressure symptoms. Slow absorption of the pus will cause mild toxic symptoms characteristic of a cold abscess.

**Mediastinal Adenitis** Normally the mediastinal lymph nodes are situated in the anterior and posterior mediastinum.

syndrome according to the area of maximum compression

**The Superior Mediastinal Syndrome** This is manifested by the following symptoms and physical signs



Fig 22—Same as Fig 21 showing collar of Stokes

brought about by pressure upon the venae cavae the vagus the sympathetics the recurrent laryngeal nerves the esophagus and the trachea

**Symptoms** These are (1) Pain in the sternal region and base of the neck may be sharp dull or oppressive it is aggravated by deep breathing talking or walking (2) Hoarseness is of a peculiar harshness (3) Cough is often persistent has a brassy quality and may be dry or there may be various amounts of sputum

the kind and quality depending upon the accompanying bronchial and pulmonary inflammation (4) Dyspnea associated with a wheeze, is due to tracheal or bronchial compression (5) Dysphagia is due to pressure upon the esophagus (6) Paralysis of one side of the diaphragm is caused by compression of the phrenic nerve

**Physical Signs Inspection** (1) Posture The patient usually prefers to lean forward and when he sits erect the head is held in hyperextension (2) Cyanosis of the head neck and upper chest The cyanosis terminates abruptly revealing a sharp line or demarcation (collar of Stokes) (3) Marked venous distention of the head neck upper thorax and upper extremities This may be accompanied by edema **Palpation** This will elicit tenderness over the upper sternum clavicles and ribs **Percussion** Dullness is elicited over the upper sternum and at times in the upper part of the intrascapular region **Auscultation** Various crunching sounds sibilant and sonorous rales may be audible when there is partial pulmonary compression In complete compression of a bronchus breath sounds are absent

**Lower Mediastinal Syndrome** This is caused by pressure upon the esophagus inferior vena cava hepatic veins and the heart The symptoms and signs are dysphagia enlargement of the liver ascites distended veins over the abdomen and lower extremities edema of the legs and a higher blood pressure reading in the lower extremities than in the upper extremities

**Aneurysm** Aneurysm of the aortic arch may cause the kind of pressure symptoms found in solid tumors or large mediastinal glands particularly so when thrill bruit and tracheal tug are not de

monstrable. This is particularly true of dissecting aneurysm. Fluoroscopic examination may show pulsation and the x-ray will usually reveal a comparatively



Fig. 23—X-ray plate of Fig. 21. Showing mediastinal tumor due to Hodgkin's disease.

small heart in aneurysm and a much larger heart in most of the other mediastinal tumors. The history and other find-

ings may also help in the differentiation between aneurysm and solid tumor (See pp. 531 and 535).

**Mediastinal Emphysema:** Mediastinal emphysema may be caused by artificially induced pneumothorax or by spontaneous pneumothorax, by a penetrating wound, by erosion of the esophagus, the trachea or a main stem bronchus, and by inflammatory lesions in the neck. *The clinical manifestations* are sudden retrosternal pressure and dyspnea followed by subcutaneous emphysema in the neck and chest and tympany replacing sternal and heart dullness. Breath sounds and heart sounds may be inaudible over the anterior chest wall.

**Mediastinal Hemorrhage:** This may result from a fractured sternum, penetrating wound, ruptured aneurysm, or other blood vessel in that region. Small hemorrhages may pass undetected. Large hemorrhage if spontaneous will cause sudden oppression in the anterior chest, small rapid pulse, dyspnea, and signs of internal hemorrhage associated with the mediastinal syndrome.

## SECTION 7

# The Cardiovascular System

be done by a thorough physical examination. It must also be borne in mind that various laboratory tests are often

required as an aid in determining the etiology and the prognosis of the cardiovascular patient.

## Anatomy

### The Mediastinum

The mediastinum is a space formed in the midline of the thoracic cavity by the approximation of the two deflected pleurae; it divides the chest into two pulmonary cavities. The two pleurae are not, however, in contact with each other at the midline, but have a space between them, which contains all the chest viscera, except the lungs. The mediastinum is divided into anterior, superior and middle regions.

1. The anterior mediastinum which lies in front of the heart, and in contact with the sternum, between the second and sixth ribs inclusive, has an upper part which is narrow and shallow (above the fourth rib) and a lower part corresponding to the quadrilateral free space. Its contents are unimportant.

2. The superior mediastinum is the section above the heart containing the trachea, the esophagus, the thoracic duct, the transverse portion of the aortic arch, the innominate artery, the left carotid, subclavian and innominate veins, the upper part of the superior vena cava, the two pneumogastrics, the left recurrent laryngeal, the phrenic and cardiac nerves, the thymus gland or its remains, and some bronchial and lymphatic glands.

and vessels, the termination of the azygos vein, the bifurcation of the trachea, and some bronchial lymphatic glands.

### The Precordium

The precordium is a rectangular, arbitrarily-defined space overlying the heart, its great vessels and the pericardium. It is bounded above by the second rib; below by the sixth rib; its right boundary is the right parasternal line, and its left boundary the left midclavicular line.

### The Pericardium

The pericardium is a cone-shaped, fibrous sac which occupies the middle mediastinum, and contains the heart and the roots of the great blood vessels. It is attached by its broad base to the diaphragm, while its apex extends upward by diverticulae upon the walls of the great vessels as far as their first subdivision. It is also attached in front to the sternum; laterally, to the mediastinal pleura, and posteriorly, to the esophagus, trachea and the main bronchi. The phrenic nerve passes over its lateral surface.



ately to their age and physical development. The heart measures from 11 to 13 cm ( $4\frac{1}{2}$  to  $5\frac{1}{2}$  inches) in length from  $7\frac{1}{2}$  to  $9\frac{1}{2}$  cm (3 to  $3\frac{3}{4}$  inches) in breadth and  $5\frac{1}{2}$  to  $6\frac{1}{2}$  cm ( $2\frac{1}{8}$  to  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches) in thickness. Its size may roughly be compared to that of its owner's fist. It is freely movable within the pericardial sac, its only attachment being the great vessels which originate from its base. It rests upon the central tendon of the diaphragm.

edge) and the apex of the heart are anteriorly situated. Anteriorly the heart is almost entirely covered by the lungs and only a small quadrilateral portion of the right ventricle is exposed to the anterior chest wall. This exposure is caused by the recession of the anterior border of the left lung at the fourth rib and interspace.

**The Heart Chambers** The heart contains four chambers or cavities, two chambers to each side of the heart, an

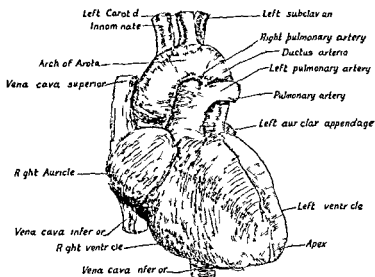


Fig 1—Anterior view of the right chambers of the heart with the great vessels

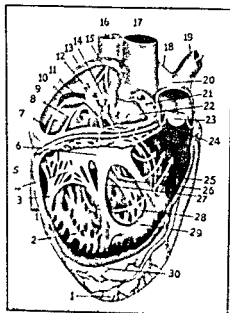
The base of the heart is directed upward, backward and toward the right, and is on a level with the second intercostal space.

The apex of the heart points downward, forward and to the left on a level with the fifth intercostal space beyond the parasternal line or about 8 to 9 cm ( $3\frac{1}{4}$  to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches) to the left of the midsternal line. The long axis of the heart is inclined at an angle of  $60^\circ$  to the body.

The right auricle and ventricle, a small portion of the left ventricle (the left

upper ~~auricle~~ <sup>atrium</sup> or atrium) and a lower (ventricle). These are designated respectively as right <sup>atrium</sup> auricle and right ventricle and left <sup>atrium</sup> auricle and left ventricle. The two <sup>auricles</sup> ~~auricles~~ lie uppermost and constitute the base of the heart, these chambers are smaller and their muscular walls are thinner than their respective ventricles. The left ventricle is larger and its wall thicker than the right ventricle. There is no intercommunication in the normal heart (after birth) between the <sup>auricles</sup> ~~auricles~~ and none between the ventricles. Each <sup>auricle</sup> ~~auricle~~ communicates

with its respective ventricle through an orifice which is guarded by a valve, known as the auriculoventricular valve. The *mitral* or *bicuspid valve* separates the left auricle from the left ventricle



blood from the superior and inferior venae cavae for transference to their respective ventricles through the auriculoventricular orifices. The ventricles in turn propel the blood thus received, through orifices which are guarded by valves (the semilunar valves), into the aorta by the left ventricle and into the pulmonary artery by the right ventricle.

The *aortic valve* guards the orifice between the left ventricle and the aorta

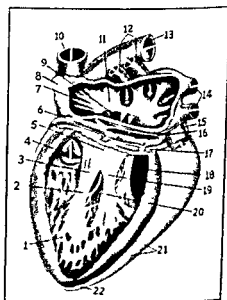


Fig. 3—The left auricle and ventricle. The arrows indicate the course of the blood. 1 Columnae carnea 2 papillary muscles 3 chordae tendinae 4 orifice of aorta 5 anterior flap of mitral valve 6 anterior cardiac vein 7 pectinate muscles 8 auricular appendix 9 auriculoventricular orifice 10 aorta 11 cavity of the left auricle 12, right pulmonary veins 13 pulmonary artery 14 left pulmonary veins 15 vena cava inferior 16 coronary sinus 17 transverse branch of the right coronary artery 18 papillary muscles of the posterior flap 19 chordae tendinae 20 papillary mus

four heart valves is situated in a space bounded by the third and fifth ribs and the sternum. Thus differs greatly from their clinical position.

The *pulmonary valve* guarding the pulmonic opening lies uppermost; it is

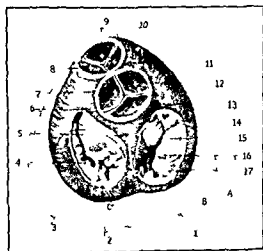


Fig 4—The valves of the heart. View from above showing their relative size and position during systole. The dotted lines indicate the respective sizes during the rest period (Spalteholz). 1 Ventricle dexter 2 annulus fibrosus sinister 3 ventricle sinister 4 cuspid posterior valvulae 5 cuspidalis (mitralis) 6 cuspid anterior valvulae 7 cuspidalis (mitralis) 8 trigona fibrosa 9 valvula semilunaris sinistra aortae 10 valvula semilunaris sinistra pulmonalis 11 valvula semilunaris dextra aortae 12 valvula semilunaris dextra pulmonalis 13 valvula semilunaris posterior aortae 14 cuspid anterior 15 cuspid medialis 16 cuspid posterior (14 15 and 16 make up the valvulae tricuspidalis) 17 annulus fibrosus dexter

the fourth rib and interspace behind the sternum a little to the left of the median line.

The *tricuspid valve* (between the right auricle and ventricle) is in the median line behind the sternum. It is on a level with the fourth interspace and the fifth rib.

### Clinical Positions of the Valves

That is the points at which the sounds are best heard are

*Pulmonary* Second interspace to the left of the sternum

*Aortic* Second interspace to the right of the sternum

*Mitral* At the apex beat (fifth interspace 2.5 cm or one inch to the right of the left midclavicular line)

*Tricuspid* At the right border or center of the lower end of the sternum

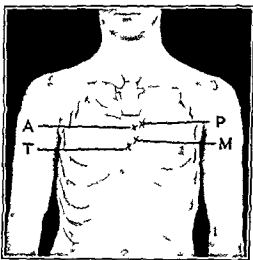


Fig 5—Anatomical position of heart valves

situated directly beyond the upper part of the left third costosternal articulation.

The *aortic valve* guarding the aortic opening is more centrally located than the pulmonary valve. It is on a level with the third intercostal space behind the sternum somewhat to the left of the midsternal line.

The *mitral valve* (between the left auricle and ventricle) lies on a level with

The above mentioned areas are clinically chosen because the sounds produced by the various valves in closing can be heard with the greatest intensity at those points.

### Topographic Outline of the Heart

The exact position of the heart varies

in different individuals, and often, in the same individual at different times. This is particularly true of its lower border. The heart is held in position chiefly because of its suspension from the great vessels, thus being the only fixed point. It rests upon the central tendon of the

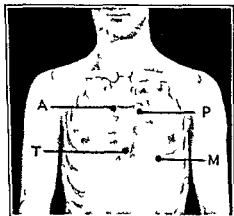


Fig 6—Points indicating clinical position of the heart valves

diaphragm, which acts only as a support having no attachment to the heart. Therefore, when the diaphragm is pushed downward as in forcible inspiration the heart descends lower, and *per contra*, during deep expiration the diaphragm raises it considerably. The type of chest should be borne in mind when the position of the heart is considered, because differences in the length and width of the chest will alter the position of the heart in its relation to the chest wall.

Change in the position of the body alters the position of the lower portion of the heart, as it will gravitate toward the dependent portion of the body. The upper boundary of the heart is more nearly constant. In children the heart hangs higher than in adults probably because of the greater arching of the diaphragm and the proportionately shorter vessels. In the aged the heart extends

about one interspace lower than in the young adult, no doubt because of the laxity of the diaphragm and the stretching of its upper attachment.

The average position of the heart may be described as follows:

The *upper border* corresponds to a line drawn through the upper edge of the third costal cartilage, extending 1.25 cm or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch to the right of the right sternochondral articulation and 2.5 cm or one inch to the left of the left sternochondral articulation. This line forms the *clinical base of the heart*, passing through the tops of the auricles, it acts as the dividing line between the auricle

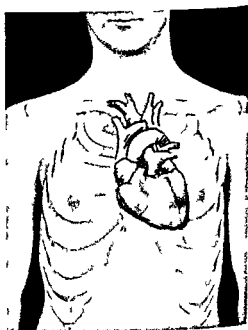
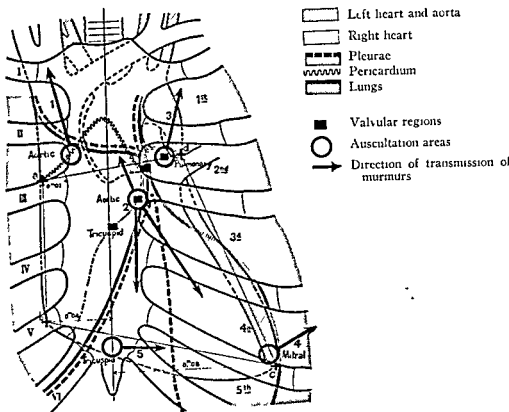


Fig 7—Position of the heart, aorta and the great vessels in relation to the anterior chest walls and ribs.

and the great vessels. The highest point of the heart is the left auricle, reaching the second intercostal space near its sternal articulation.

The *lower border* corresponds to a slightly curved line drawn obliquely



PROJECTION OF THE MORE IMPORTANT CARDIAC LANDMARKS OF THE CHEST WALL

The accompanying Figure is intended to show the relationship existing between the outer wall of the thorax and the thoracic viscera, i.e., the relations of surface to depth in this part of the body

The osseous sternocostal and cartilaginous framework is shown in white on a colored background, and comprises I, II, III, IV, V and VI referring respectively to the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th ribs, and 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th and 5th, referring respectively to the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th costal interspaces

The pleural *culs-de sac* are outlined by the broken red lines

The attenuated anterior borders of the lungs are outlined by the solid red lines. In a general way, the red color refers to the lungs in a state of deep inspiration

The heart and great vessels are shaded gray

Recollection of these anatomical facts is indispensable for accurate interpretation of the results of many methods of cardiopulmonary examination particularly percussion, auscultation, and fluoroscopy. They enable the examiner to understand without further investigation, the mode of production of many extracardiac murmurs and their subordination to the respiratory movements, the changes in the fluoroscopic shadows and heart dullness in left sided cardiac hypertrophy (of the ox heart type in interstitial nephritis) and in dilatation of the right auricle in the presence of marked cardiac weakness, the location and radiation of many precordial pains, etc

The projections on the chest wall of the valvular regions, of the points for auscultation of the mitral, aortic, tricuspid, and pulmonary valves, and of the mean direction of transmission of the various murmurs should be carefully noted

across the chest with its convexity downward from the apex (fifth interspace inside the midclavicular line) across the base of the ensiform cartilage to a point 2.5 cm or one inch to the right of the right sternal line in the fifth interspace. This border is formed by the right ventricle and apex of the left ventricle (anatomical base, not clinical)

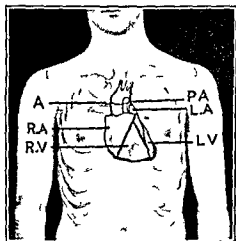


Fig 8—The anterior aspect of the normal heart and great vessels, showing their relation to the anatomical landmarks (ribs) sternum (clavicles) of the front of the thorax.

The *right border* is indicated by a slightly curved line (to the right) uniting the upper right with the lower right points (third rib 1.25 cm or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch to the right of the sternal articulation to a point 2.5 cm or one inch to the right of the right sternal line in the fifth interspace). This border is formed by the right auricle, *IVC & SVC*.

The *left border* coincides with a slightly convex line (to the left) joining the cardiac apex with the upper border 2.5 cm or one inch to the left of the third sternochondral articulation. This border is formed by the left ventricle.

The *auriculoventricular septum* corresponds to a line drawn across the ster-

num from the third left to the seventh right sternochondral articulation.

The *interventricular septum* is indicated by a line drawn from the third left sternal articulation to a point inside the apical area.

**The Blood Supply of the Heart.** Though the entire quantity of the body's blood passes through the heart several times an hour, it does not utilize the blood for its own nutrition unless it is brought to it by the cardiac blood vessels among which, the *coronary arteries* are the most important.

The left side of the heart is supplied largely by the left coronary artery which arises from the left aortic sinus, dividing into a circumflex branch which supplies the left ventricle and auricle, and a left descending branch which runs along the anterior longitudinal sinus towards the apex of the heart, supplying the interventricular septum, the left ventricle and to a slight extent the right ventricle.

The right side of the heart is supplied largely by the right coronary artery which arises from the right aortic sinus. It lies between the right auricle and conus arteriosus along the posterior longitudinal sulcus, and as the posterior descending ramus it almost reaches the cardiac apex. Branches of the right coronary artery supply the right auricle, the right ventricle, and to some extent also the left ventricle. The coronary arteries anastomose freely by means of minute branches, thereby establishing a collateral circulation if one of the branches should become occluded. The veins and thesbian vessels may also assist in the cardiac nutrition (Bellet).

The *veins* of the heart accompany the arteries and empty directly into the right auricle.

The *lymph* vessels of the heart are numerous. They originate from the lymph spaces in the clefts between the muscle fibers, run parallel to the blood vessels and terminate in the thoracic and right lymphatic ducts.

**Nerve Supply of the Heart** The heart possesses an extrinsic and intrinsic innervation. The extrinsic innervation

namely the *superior cervical*, the *inferior cervical* which is the largest cardiac branch of vagus origin and the *thoracic cardiac branch* which arises from the vagus trunk within the thorax. The function of the vagus cardiac nerves is *cardiac retardation*.

(c) The *cardiac plexus* is situated at the base of the heart and consists of a

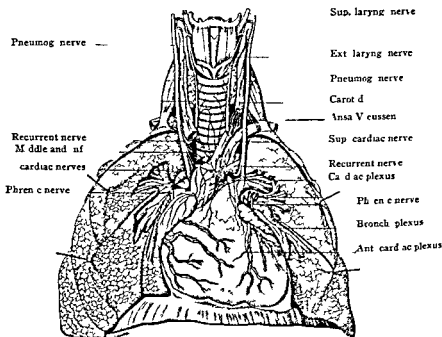


Fig 9—The nerves of the heart.

consists of (a) the sympathetic cardiac nerves (b) the cardiac branches of the vagi and (c) the cardiac plexus.

(a) The *sympathetic cardiac nerves* consist of the *superior middle and inferior cardiac nerves* arising from the superior middle and inferior cervical ganglia respectively and several branches which arise from the *sympathetic trunk* below the inferior cervical ganglion. The function of the sympathetic cardiac nerves is *cardiac acceleration*.

(b) The *cardiac branches of the vagi* consist of three branches on either side

superficial and a deep part. It is composed largely of the various cardiac nerves of vagus origin with but a meager sympathetic supply. Its various ramifications are found at the base of the heart, the pericardium, the aortic arch, the coronary vessels and the larger veins. The cardiac plexus is supposed to assist in the *regulatory control* of heart rhythm.

The *intrinsic innervation* of the heart is through a widely distributed chain of ganglia containing neurons largely of parasympathetic origin (Kuntz). The functions of the intrinsic cardiac nervous

system are not fully known. It seems to have a regulatory control which is exercised through the visceral components of the cerebrospinal nerves involved in the innervation of the heart, as cardiac rhythm is not entirely dependent on the central nervous system. (For origin of the cardiac impulse, SEE p. 424.)

**The supracardiac vascular area** comprises a rectangular space extending from the cardiac base to the clavicles, and bound on either side approximately by the parasternal lines. Within this area are found the aortic arch, the superior vena cava, the innominate artery and veins.

### *The Great Vessels of the Heart*

**The Aorta:** The aorta arises from the base of the left ventricle, ascends a short distance, then arches backward and to the left to descend on the left side of the vertebral column. The ascending aorta lies behind the sternum. It originates near the third left chondrosternal articulation and ends at the second right costal cartilage. The aortic arch commences at the second right costal cartilage running obliquely upwards and backwards towards the fourth thoracic vertebra, where it becomes the descending thoracic aorta. The highest point of

the aortic arch is at the center of the sternum, usually about one inch (2.5 cm.) below the suprasternal notch.

**The innominate artery** arises from the right upper part of the aortic arch and runs obliquely upward to the right sternoclavicular junction where it divides into the right subclavian and common carotid arteries.

**The left subclavian and common carotid arteries** arise from the aortic arch between its middle and posterior extremities (left), the subclavian runs almost vertically upwards into the neck and the common carotid runs obliquely upwards into the neck.

**The Innominate Veins** The right lies under the inner extremity of the right clavicle, and the left lies beneath the upper portion of the manubrium.

**The Superior Vena Cava** This begins at the junction of the innominate veins at the right sternoclavicular articulation and runs parallel to the sternum, lying beneath and somewhat external to its right border, and ends at the third chondrosternal articulation (its entrance into the right auricle).

**The Pulmonary Artery** This runs along the left sternal border beneath the second intercostal space and the second costal cartilage.

## **Physical Examination**

### **Inspection**

Having by general examination previously ascertained the posture of the patient, his color, the presence or absence of cyanosis, edema, dyspnea, distended veins, abnormally pulsating vessels, etc., the examiner may now confine his attention to local inspection of the heart area.

**Technic.** The anterior surface of the chest is bared of all clothing and the pa-

tient is placed in a position where a good light will fall upon the part to be examined. During the examination the patient may be standing, sitting or lying flat upon his back, depending upon the severity of his condition. Often all three positions are utilized in the examination of the same patient. The examiner should always handle the patient gently so as to gain his confidence and avoid any ex-



citement Inspection of the heart is practically confined to the precordial area, and to visible pulsation in the superficial vessels

**Purpose** The *object* of cardiac inspection is to observe (A) The general contour and appearance of the precordium, and particularly the presence of abnormal bulgings or depressions, (B) abnormal pulsation in the precordial area and in the neck and extremities, and (C) the location, force and extent of the apex beat

### **A. Contour and Appearance of the Precordium**

1 *Abnormal precordial prominence* or bulging may be caused by the following conditions

(a) Swelling of the cellular tissue or by fatty tumor

(b) Undue prominence of the ribs caused either by rickets or by a badly united fracture

(c) Deformity of the chest due to spinal curvature

(d) Hypertrophy of the heart from any cause particularly in very young subjects

(e) Pericardial effusion and huge left-sided pleural effusion in thin chested individuals

(f) Aneurysm

(g) Mediastinal tumors (usually seen above the fourth rib)

(h) Tumor of the ribs sternum or chondral cartilages

2 *Abnormal precordial depressions* may be caused by

(a) Scoliosis and rachitic or occupational deformities

(b) Unilateral chronic pleural adhesions, adhesions between the pleurae are usually very strong and their contraction is gradual Such contraction, particularly

if associated with partial pulmonary collapse, will draw the ribs inward, thus producing the deformity, pulmonary cavity in the proximity of the precordium will have a like effect

(c) Adherent pericardium, in this instance the chest wall is prevented from expanding because of adhesions between the pericardium and the parietal pleura, disuse of the intercostal muscles may result in slight atrophy, thus causing the general contour of the chest to be lost, and will produce a depression

### **B. Precordial Pulsations (Other Than the Apex Beat)**

1 *Pulsations at the base of the heart* may be caused by

(a) Hypertrophy of one or both auricles

(b) Retraction of the lung or pulmonary cavity in that part of the lung which covers the auricles

(c) Aneurysm of the arch of the aorta.

(d) Mediastinal tumor in close proximity to the aorta

(e) Diffuse pulsation over the entire heart area often seen in individuals with very thin and emaciated chest walls

2 *Epigastric pulsation* may be caused by

(a) Rapid heart action from any cause

(b) Dilated right ventricle resting upon the diaphragm The exaggerated impulse of the heart is transmitted to the diaphragm because of its close proximity The diaphragm in turn transmits this impulse to a portion of the anterior abdominal wall the epigastrium

(c) Pulsating liver (i.e., tricuspid regurgitation)

(d) Pulsating aorta, often seen in neurotic individuals with a thin belly wall

(e) Aneurysm of the abdominal aorta.

(f) Pulsating empyema

(g) Tumors on the left lobe of the liver, transmitted pulsations from the aorta through the pyloric end of the stomach, the pancreas or enlarged lymph glands resting upon the aorta

(h) A greatly displaced heart



Fig 10 Broadbent's sign. Adherent pericarditis showing systolic retraction

3 *Pulsations in the right axillary region* may be caused by

(a) Transposition of the heart to the right side

(b) Pulsating empyema

(c) Aneurysm of the arch of the aorta

(d) Pulsating perihepatic abscess

4 *Pulsations in the left axillary region* may be caused by

(a) Enlargement of the heart displacing the apex beat

(b) Pulsating empyema

(c) Aneurysm of the aortic arch

(d) Chronic disease of the left lung and pleura associated with retraction, thus exposing the heart's action more directly to the chest wall

5 *Pulsation of the suprasternal notch* may be caused by

(a) A dilated aortic arch (chronic aortitis) or subclavian arteries

(b) An aneurysm of the aorta or subclavian

(c) A tumor or enlarged gland (thyroid and thymus) resting upon the transverse arch of the aorta which extends upwards into the neck

6 *Systolic Retraction* In thin individuals the systole of the heart usually causes a heaving impulse over the third, fourth and fifth interspaces on the left side in line with the apex beat. A rhythmical retraction or sinking in of that region is significant of adhesive pericarditis

7 *Broadbent's Sign* A systolic retraction of the tenth and eleventh interspaces below the inferior angle of the scapula, is in thin individuals occasionally symptomatic of pericardial adhesions. The retraction is the result of a drawing upon the diaphragm by an hypertrophied and vigorously acting heart. This phenomenon may also at times be seen in cases of marked cardiac hypertrophy not associated with pericardial adhesions

### C. The Apex Beat

It is of the greatest importance to study the apical impulse carefully. This impulse—generally spoken of as the *apex beat*—is the anatomical starting point for the further clinical study of the heart.

The apex beat, visible upon the chest wall of a healthy individual does not represent the true anatomical apex or tip of the left ventricle. As a rule, the impulse is caused by the tip of the right ventricle, which lies in contact with the anterior chest wall and may be considered the *clinical apex*. The apex of the

left ventricle or *anatomical apex* extends further downward and toward the left, and is separated from the chest wall by a tongue-like projection of the lower lobe of the left lung. Only in great cardiac hypertrophy can the left ventricle produce a visible impulse.

The apex beat or impulse is usually seen as a regular, rhythmical systolic

little over 3 inches (7 cm) to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (9 cm) to the left of the midsternal line.

**Normal Variations** The apex beat may be displaced to a certain extent and still be considered normal. In children up to the age of 10 years it is generally found behind the fifth rib or in the fourth intercostal space in the mammillary line or just outside of it. In old age on the contrary, the apex beat is sometimes found in the sixth interspace and nearer the median line. Persons having long narrow chests often have a visible cardiac apical impulse in the sixth interspace while those possessing short broad chests may have their apical impulse in the fourth intercostal space. The difference in the location of the apical impulse in these two extremes is not so much because of the actual position of the heart, as on account of the slope of the rib.

**Postural Change** When a person lies upon his left side the apex of the heart may shift an inch or more toward the left axillary line; a similar displacement to the right is observed but to a less extent when a person lies upon his right side. These alterations in the position of the heart on change of posture are caused by gravity, the heart's apex being lowered on the side upon which the patient rests.

**Respiratory Change** The position of the apical impulse is little changed during quiet breathing but during forcible inspiration as the diaphragm sinks and the lower ribs are elevated the apical impulse is carried downward and toward the median line. During forced expiration it is carried upward and toward the left. In some instances a change amounting to the extent of an interspace may be noted. A hyperdistended stomach will displace the apex beat upward

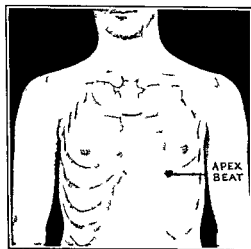


Fig 11—Normal position of the apex beat fifth intercostal space just beyond left parasternal line

thrust visible over an area of about one square inch. It occurs synchronously with the carotid and radial pulse and is visible in the fifth interspace about one inch (2.5 cm) to the right of the left midclavicular line or about 3 or  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (7 to 9 cm) to the left of the midsternal line.

The apex beat is studied by inspection, as to its (I) position, (II) extent (III) strength and (IV) rhythm.

**I Position of the Apex Beat** In young, normal adults either in the recumbent or erect position the apex beat is in the fifth interspace, just beyond the left parasternal line, or as already mentioned one inch (2.5 cm.) to the right of the left midclavicular line, or a

**Pathologic Displacement or Dislocation of the Apex Beat** The pathologic causes for displacement of the apical impulse may be summed up as follows

I *Cardiac Conditions* Enlargement and dislocation of the heart

II *Extracardiac Conditions* Deformity of the thorax, pleural effusions (serous, purulent, sanguineous or gaseous) emphysematous lungs, pleural adhesions, shrinkage of the lungs, elevation of the diaphragm, mediastinal tumors, pericardial effusions

The apex beat may be displaced (1) Upward, and to the left, or (2) to the right, (3) downward, and to the left, or (4) to the right, (5) to the left, and (6) to the right

1 *Displacement upward and to the left* may be caused by

(a) Pericardial effusion The heart, being an airtight hollow, muscular organ, will naturally float upon the surface of fluid. An effusion in the pericardial sac will, therefore, raise the heart upward, and at the same time rotate the apex toward the left. The apical impulse may be seen (when the patient leans forward) in the third or fourth interspace close to the left anterior axillary line. In the presence of pericardial adhesions the apex beat may be displaced downwards by a pericardial effusion.

(b) Ascites, meteorism large abdominal tumors, pleurodiaphragmatic adhesions and pregnancy will cause upward displacement of the heart to about the fourth interspace, and only slightly to the left of its normal position. The upward displacement in these cases is caused by the elevation of the diaphragm, it is easily differentiated from a pericardial effusion because in this condition the apical impulse is quite strong and is

not influenced by posture, while in pericardial effusion the prone position almost entirely obliterates the apical impulse, because of the fluid gravitating toward the anterior chest wall, thus pushing the heart away from it.

(c) Upward traction upon the heart by retracted fibroid lung

(d) Scoliotic or kyphotic deformity of the chest

2 *Displacement upward and to the right* may be caused by

(a) Conditions in the left chest which push the heart upwards and to the right, i.e., a left-sided effusion, liquid or air aneurysm of the lower part of the thoracic aorta occupying the left lower chest or a large tumor occupying the left lower chest, also by abdominal conditions which so encroach upon the lower left chest as to push its viscera upward and to the right, i.e., a greatly dilated cardiac end of the stomach or a diaphragmatic hernia, evisceration and eventration.

(b) Conditions which pull the heart upward and to the right, i.e., fibroid phthisis of the right lung exerting an upward pull, or right-sided pleuropericardial adhesions pulling in an upward direction. The amount of displacement depends upon the quantity of displacing material in the left chest or the force of the pull on the right side, the greater the push or pull the more pronounced will be the displacement.

3 *Displacement downward and to the left* is noted in

(a) Hypertrophy and dilatation of both ventricles. Hypertrophy of the left ventricle causes the greatest displacement downward and to the left, while hypertrophy of the right ventricle causes a greater displacement laterally. Simple downward displacement may be caused

by thoracic deformity, marked emphysema, aneurysm of the aortic arch, and by mediastinal growths pushing the heart downward, also by an enlarged liver pulling upon the central tendon of the diaphragm, and, to a lesser extent, by a moderate sized, right sided pleural effusion, or a pyopneumothorax

4 *Displacement downward and to the right* may be caused by

(a) Pleural effusion *pushing* a hypertrophied heart to the right, a mediastinal tumor or aneurysm exerting downward and inward *pressure* upon the left auricle, pericardial adhesions to the central tendon or right half of the diaphragm, and right sided pleuropericardial adhesions *pulling* the heart downward and to the right

5 *Displacement to the left* is noted in

(a) Hypertrophy and dilatation of the heart (downward and outward)

(b) Pericardial effusion (upward and to the left)

(c) Right sided pleural effusions, or pneumothorax, pushing the heart to the left.

(d) Pleuropericardial adhesions on the left side, pulling the heart toward the point of adhesion

(e) Contraction of the left lung (apparent displacement)

(f) Hypertrophy and dilatation of the left ventricle.

6 *Displacement to the right* is noted in

(a) Left sided pleural effusion Diaphragmatic hernia, eventration and evisceration, if left sided, may push the apex beat behind the sternum, and in some instances, even as far as the right parasternal or midclavicular lines. The degree of displacement usually depends upon the amount of effusion and the mobility of the cardiac apex.

(b) Right-sided adhesive pleurisy with contraction—pulling the heart over

(c) Transposition of the viscera (congenital), the heart is found in the right half of the chest instead of in the left, the position of the apex beat on the right side corresponds to its normal position on the left, *i. e.*, the fifth interspace beyond the parasternal line

(d) Chest deformities because of disturbed anatomic relations may displace the beat in any direction

Resume of the principal causes of displaced apex beat

1 *Hypertrophy and dilatation of the heart*, down and to the left

2 *Pericardial effusion*, up and to the left

3 *Chronic pleural and phthisical affections*, right or left

4 *Emphysema* down and, sometimes, to the right

5 *Pressure of subdiaphragmatic conditions*, up and, sometimes, to the left.

6 *Pressure of aneurysm or mediastinal growth* up and, sometimes, to the left.

7 *Chest deformities*, displacement in any direction

II *Extent of the Apical Impulse*  
The extent of the normal apical impulse in an adult, not too fat, is about 25 sq cm (one square inch). However, the normal apical impulse may vary in extent but an impulse greater than that usually is due to some pathological cause

*Normal Variation:* The impulse may be *increased* in persons having thin chest walls, also after exertion and excitement, mental or physical and after the ingestion of certain drugs, such as strychnine, alcohol and digitalis, it may be *diminished* or absent in normal persons who are very stout or possessed of an ex

tremely thick chest wall, likewise in those having very large lungs. If the apex chances to be behind a rib the apical impulse may not be visible.

**Pathologic Causes of Increase in the Apical Impulse** Any condition that increases the force of the heart, and as often happens, its rate as well will increase the area of apical impulse. For example

1 Hypertrophy of the heart caused either by overwork or an endocardial lesion

2 Dilatation with a certain degree of hypertrophy

3 Nervous palpitation and excitement

4 Exophthalmic goiter

5 Drug poisoning (digitalis, alcohol, tobacco, tea, coffee and strychnine)

6 Retraction of the left lung (relative increase)

**Pathologic Causes of Diminution or Absence of the Visible Apex Beat** are

1 Myocardial weakness from any cause as seen in chronic wasting diseases, prolonged acute febrile diseases, in shock, and after severe hemorrhage. If, throughout the course of a prolonged illness the patient has had a fairly strong apical impulse, its disappearance may be regarded as indicative of grave danger.

2 Myocardial degeneration (fatty or fibroid)

3 Dilatation of left and right ventricles, with failure of compensation

4 Overlapping of an emphysematous lung

5 Pericardial adhesions

6 Pericardial and pleural effusion

7 Edema of the chest wall

8 Inflammatory conditions of the cellular tissue of the left chest

**III The Strength of the Apical Impulse** The strength of the apical impulse cannot be determined exclusively by inspection, but requires the aid of palpation. A strong impulse at the apex is caused by hypertrophy of the left ventricle, hypertrophy of both ventricles, cardiac excitement, drugs or psychic influences or a thin chest wall. As a rule the strength of the apical impulse bears a direct relation to its extent, but it is often difficult to separate the apex beat from the heartbeat in general. There are, however, some cases in which there is an increase of force but not of extent.

By a "heaving impulse" is meant an apex beat which is so strong as to cause a distinct thrust upward of that portion of the chest wall overlying the apex.

A diminished or weakened cardiac impulse is due to dilatation of the ventricles, myocardial degeneration, pericarditis, adhesions and a thick chest wall.

**IV Cardiac Rhythm** Normally, the apex beat occurs at fixed intervals with a given strength and rapidity, one beat being as strong as another and each occurring after a pause of definite length. This regularity is termed *normal rhythm*. Pathologically, normal rhythm may be disturbed in the following ways:

1 Rapid heart action (tachycardia)

2 Slow heart action (bradycardia)

3 Irregular heart action (arrhythmia)

In (1) and (2) the heartbeats occur more or less frequently than the normal rate, but still they retain a certain amount of rhythm, because one beat is as strong or as weak as the other, and the intervals between the beats are of uniform length.

In *true cardiac arrhythmia* one impulse may be stronger than another, or the impulses may take place at irregular

intervals Two or more beats may occur in quick succession, followed by a long pause often a beat will be lost entirely, or the beats may occur at such irregular intervals that they cannot be classified by inspection alone (SEE pp 434 and 510)

### Palpation

Palpation is the second step in the physical examination of the heart Its object is (a) to amplify, confirm and correct or disprove, certain inferences gathered from inspection and (b) to elicit signs that are not seen but may be palpated

When pulsation is visible in any part of the precordium instinctively a hand is placed upon it to determine whether the pulsation is strong heaving or weak, whether it is expansile or merely throbbing Any elevation or depression in the precordial region is in a like manner determined as to its consistency and probable cause The exact position and extent of the apex beat can be more accurately determined by palpation than by inspection, sometimes the apex beat may not be visible but it may be palpable

Other signs that can be elicited by palpation alone are *thrills* and *friction fremitus*

**Technic** In general the patient should remain in the same position occupied during inspection though occasionally the position should be changed for some special examination If for instance, the apex beat is not visible or palpable in the ordinary position the patient should be asked to lean forward and the precordial region is to be palpated while he is in this position If the absence of the apical impulse is due to myocardial weakness inflated lung or thick chest wall, this forward position because of gravi-

ty, may cause the heart to approach the anterior chest wall more closely so that the apex beat is more easily palpable

The examiner, whenever possible should occupy a position facing the patient and to his right a position in which the right hand is the more convenient to use though either hand may be employed

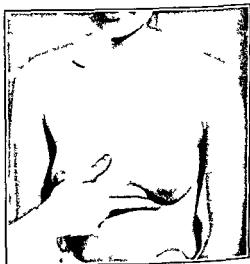


Fig 12—Location of normal apical impulse

for palpating the precordial region, as long as it causes no strain upon the muscles of the examiner's arm or trunk

Pulsations about the precordium should be palpated by applying the inner surfaces of the distal phalanges of the index and middle fingers Should expansile pulsation be suspected the tips of the five fingers are made to enclose the pulsating area, a sense of separation of the fingers indicates expansile pulsation Another method of detecting expansile pulsation is to place the two index fingers on the pulsating area and watch the separation of the fingers with each pulsation When the apex beat is not readily visible the palm of the hand is applied to the chest so that its center covers the normal position of the apex beat an impulse felt anywhere by the palm

should be verified by applying the tip of the index finger over that area. The palm can be similarly used to determine a thrill or friction fremitus, the hand must be placed so as to conform to the shape of the chest, avoiding all undue pressure, the fingers lying parallel to the ribs.

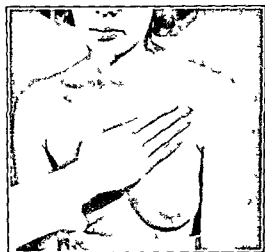


Fig. 13—Position of hand for palpating tactile fremitus, expansive pulsation and thrills

By palpation of the apical impulse, one learns of its strength, extent and regularity. The apical impulse may be compared with the arterial pulsation, to determine its true power of transmission and regularity.

### Palpable Vibrations

**Thrill** This is a vibratory tremor transmitted to the palpating hand. It may be *systolic*, *presystolic* or *diastolic* and may occur at any of the heart valves. A *systolic thrill at the apex* is found in about half the cases of mitral regurgitation, and it may also be transmitted to the apex in cases of aortic stenosis. A *presystolic thrill*, coarse and limited in extent, a little above the apex and exaggerated during expiration, is found in

*mitral stenosis*. Such a thrill is brought out more distinctly when the patient rests on his left side, leaning forward. A *presystolic thrill* in the same area may in rare instances be due to the same mechanism that produces an *Austin Flint murmur*. A *systolic thrill at the lower portion of the sternum* soft and purring in character may be felt as a result of *tricuspid regurgitation* (rare).

At the *base of the heart* (second interspace to the right of the sternum), a *coarse systolic thrill* may occur as a result of *aortic stenosis*. A similar thrill may at times be felt in conditions where an atheromatous plate is formed in the intima of the aorta, close to the valve (*aortitis*). A *diastolic thrill* may at times be felt in the same region, and is due to *aortic regurgitation* (second interspace to right of sternum). A *systolic thrill* at the second interspace to the left of the sternum may at times be found in cases of *exophthalmic goiter* and in *pulmonary stenosis* or in *congenital narrowing of the pulmonary orifice*. A *diastolic thrill* in the same area may indicate *pulmonary regurgitation*, or *patulous ductus arteriosus* (*congenital*).

Thrills occurring anywhere between the suprasternal notch and the fourth rib, in the precordial area, may be caused by an *aneurysm of the aortic arch*.

**Friction Fremitus** This is a peculiar rough, grating sensation transmitted to the palpating hand, it has the same physical quality as *pleural friction fremitus*. The two forms of friction fremitus encountered in studying the heart are *pericardial friction* and *pleuropericardial friction*.

*Pericardial friction fremitus* is caused by some inflammatory condition in the pericardial sac. The rubbing sensation can be felt over the body of the heart in



the third or the fourth interspace, and does not always accompany each contraction of the heart. A pericardial friction rub may often be perceived as a to-and-fro friction sensation corresponding to the systole and diastole, for one or two minutes, then disappearing for a few minutes, only to reappear later. This fremitus may be brought out more plainly by moderate pressure with the hand over the cardiac area while the patient leans forward.

*Pleuropericardial friction fremitus* is perceived when the inflammatory condition occurs between the pericardium and the pulmonary pleura, its most common sites being the lingula of the lung, and at either side of the sternum where the pleural sac overlaps the pericardium. Pleuropericardial friction fremitus is recognized as a to-and-fro grating sensation, occurring during both the heart's action and respiration; "holding one's breath" will eliminate one source of the fremitus. Often it is difficult to differentiate between a thrill and a friction rub. The following table may be of assistance in making this differentiation

#### THRILL

Harsh and vibratory in quality.

Conveys a sensation as if it came from the interior of the heart.

Is not influenced by pressure, or respiration.

Occurs over a valve.

Systolic, diastolic or presystolic in time, depending upon its cause

**Valve Shock:** This may be felt as a result of an accentuated closure of one or more valves. It may often be palpated in thin persons who have hypertrophied or rapidly acting hearts, or in persons who present some resistance to

the blood current. If a valve shock is felt over the pulmonary orifice it indicates increased resistance to the pulmonary circulation; if it is felt over the aortic orifice, it indicates systemic engorgement. Valve shock is analogous to accentuation of a certain valve sound; it should not be mistaken for a thrill, a mistake not infrequently made by the beginner.

#### The Pulse

By the pulse is meant the wavy impulse of an artery as a result of its expansion and contraction; it is transmitted to the finger tips while palpating a superficial artery. The expansion is due to the momentary increase of blood pressure in the arterial tree produced by ventricular systole. The pulse wave causes a change in the shape of the artery, i. e., from an oval to a circle.

**Technic for Taking the Pulse:** Any superficial artery that is easily accessible to the finger tips may be selected, the only requisite being that the vessel so selected may be compressed between the examining finger and a firm point, such as a bony prominence. The radial artery is

#### FRICTION FREMITUS

Grating, roughened, rubbing sensation. Superficial quality.

May be influenced by pressure, posture and respiration.

Occurs over the body of the heart, or near the sternal edges.

To-and fro in time.

usually preferred because it is readily accessible, and is not easily influenced by disease of the structures it supplies. Under some circumstances, when it is most convenient, as during anesthesia, or where the radial artery is not palpable,

the temporal, facial or carotid arteries are selected

The patient should be put entirely at ease before the examiner attempts to feel and count the pulse. The forearm should rest semipronated, either on the bed (if the patient is in bed) on the desk (in an office patient), or the forearm may



Fig 14—Technic for taking the radial pulse

be supported by the physician's free hand. The tips of the examiner's first three fingers are placed upon the radial artery in such a manner that the index finger rests farthest from the patient's heart, the examiner's thumb supporting the patient's wrist. The three palpating fingers should ride gently over the artery in order to determine its texture. The pulse is then counted for one minute by the watch (all three fingers resting upon the artery). It is always better to "take" the pulse for a full minute than for a fraction of that period, as the information thus obtained is more reliable. In this way the rate, regularity and volume of the pulse wave can be accurately determined.

The next step is to note the degree of compressibility of the artery and the

blood tension. The examiner's ring finger and middle finger are pressed at first gently, then firmly, against the pulsating artery, and the effect upon the compressibility of the pulse is noted with the index finger. This procedure helps to determine whether the pulse is easily compressible, moderately so, or wholly incompressible. It should be borne in mind that incompressibility of the pulse may be due either to hardening of the vessel wall, or to increased tension within the vessel. If caused by rigidity of the vessel wall (arteriosclerosis), the artery can be felt beyond the point of compression as a rigid cord, but when the non-compressibility is caused by high tension,



Fig 15—Comparing both radial pulses

no artery is felt beyond the point of compression, nor can the artery be felt at all during the diastole.

The last step, but by no means the least, is to palpate both radial arteries simultaneously, in order to determine their equality, frequency (rate), volume and rhythm.

### Object of Study of the Pulse

Before the invention of instruments of precision (sphygmomanometer cardio graph, sphygmograph etc.), the pulse was the sole indicator of the state of the cardiovascular system. At present there seems to be a tendency to belittle the importance of the study of the pulse, but this tendency is to be deplored, because rapid and sufficiently accurate information can be gleaned from its study when the attempt to obtain the same amount of information in some other way would consume a far greater amount of time. The new instruments of precision should be employed to make the pulse study by palpation more accurate and to confirm its findings, but they should not displace it altogether.

When studying the pulse, eight distinct points are to be observed in order to obtain a fairly reliable estimate of the condition of the heart, the peripheral circulation and the elasticity of the vessels. These points are (I) Rate or frequency,  $\pm c$ , the number of beats per minute, (II) force (III) size of the pulse wave (volume) (IV) rhythm both as to time and as to volume, (V) duration (VI) condition of the artery (VII) degree of tension (VIII) equality of both radials.

**I Rate (frequency)** In health the pulse rate is less frequent in the child than in the adult and greater in the adult male than in the adult female. It is least frequent in the recumbent position, more rapid when the subject is sitting up and of greatest rapidity in the standing position. The pulse rate may vary from five to ten beats in normal individuals, and often in the same individual at different periods of the day. Digestion, excitement and mental or physical exertion usually accelerate it.

### THE PULSE AT VARIOUS AGES

At birth the average rate is	140 to 144
One year	120 to 130
Two years	about 100
Three years	97
Four years	90
From seven to fourteen	80
At fifteen	78
From sixteen to twenty one	70 to 76
From twenty one to fifty	72 to 80
Fifty to sixty five	80 to 85
Sixty five to eighty	85 to 90
(In some cases	50 to 60)

A definite ratio between respiration and pulse is usually maintained, namely one to four: *i. e.* one respiratory excursion to four pulse beats.

**II Force** The strength of each distending impulse should be the same. The strength of the pulse wave depends upon the force of the heart and the volume of blood it propels. The pulsating artery is fairly compressible.

**III Size or Volume** The size of the pulse depends upon the state of the artery, that is its size and elasticity, the volume of blood propelled and the condition of the aortic valve. There is a normal variation in the size of the pulse of different individuals, experience alone enables one to detect the normal, but if the width of the artery varies from time to time during ventricular systole it is an indication of some pathologic condition. The artery may feel broad (ribbon shaped), round wiry, or thready. Normally, the artery should feel round and full during the systole and flattened during the intervals (diastole).

**IV Rhythm** The pulse beats should follow one another at regular intervals, each beat having as much force as those preceding and succeeding it.

**V Duration** The pulse wave does not reach its greatest height immediately

a definite time elapses before the force is at its acme, it then gradually recedes

#### **VI Condition of the Artery Wall**

The vessel palpated should have the consistency of a strand of soft elastic tissue, and not that of a whipcord, it should be easily rolled under the finger. As the individual advances in age, the arteries become harder, certain diseases have a similar effect on the arteries hence the saying, "a man is as old as his arteries." A man of seventy with comparatively soft arteries has a chance to outlive a man of thirty whose arteries have already become hardened.

**VII Degree of Tension** By this term is meant the pressure exerted by the blood on the inner surface of the vessels. It is recognized by the amount of force required of the examiner's ring finger and middle finger to compress the artery so that pulsations cannot be felt by the index finger during the systole and by the degree of collapse of the artery between beats, the diastole. In order to determine the exact amount of tension in the artery (blood pressure) the sphygmomanometer should be employed. Normally, the pulse is compressible by a moderate amount of pressure of the examiner's finger.

**VIII Equality of Corresponding Arteries on Both Sides** The corresponding arteries on both sides should be equal in tone, volume, amount of compressibility, etc. Any discrepancy indicates either an anomalous position of one of the vessels, or disease of the aorta or other part of the vascular system.

#### **Pathologic Changes of the Pulse**

**I Rate or Frequency, Increased Frequency (tachycardia)** Muscular exertion or mental and emotional excite-

ment, will cause a rapid pulse, even in a very strong and healthy subject. The rate often depends upon

1 The temperament of the individual, the pulse rate is faster in neurotics than in the phlegmatic.

2 The degree of reserve muscle force in the heart, a heart muscle that possesses a good reserve force does not attain the same rapidity of rate after exertion, as does a heart of lesser degree of reserve force.

3 Fever, a rise of one degree above normal causes a corresponding increase of eight to ten pulse beats. The exceptions are typhoid fever, in which the pulse is slower, and scarlet fever and septicemia in which it is disproportionately faster.

4 Diseases of the nervous system affecting the pneumogastric and sympathetic nerves and the cardiac ganglia cause a rapid pulse.

5 Exophthalmic goiter is especially characterized by the presence of tachycardia.

6 Rheumatoid arthritis (before the joints are markedly deformed) frequently shows a pulse rate of 110 to 120.

7 Pulmonary tuberculosis, even in the early stages, causes an accelerated pulse rate, as the infection progresses, the pulse rate is increased.

8 Valvular defects accelerate the pulse, particularly after failure of compensation.

9 In respiratory diseases the normal ratio of the pulse to respiration, four to one, is not maintained, the pulse though increased in frequency, is not proportionate to the respiratory rate. Thus, in lobar pneumonia, the pulse-respiration ratio may be three to one or even two to one.

10 The various arrhythmias—auricular flutter, auricular fibrillation—and all forms of tachycardia, whether idiopathic or otherwise, show a very rapid pulse rate. The pulse is also increased in

11 Anemia, all forms

12 Debility and Addison's disease

13 Excessive use of tobacco or alcohol, sexual excess, lack of sleep

14 After hemorrhage, after aspiration of a pleural exudate, in the presence of ascites, and during convalescence from acute diseases

15 Aneurysm, pleural effusion and empyema

16 Distention of the abdomen, peritonitis or tympanites, and enlargement of certain abdominal organs, i. e. spleen, liver and kidneys

17 The use of drugs—atropine, strychnine, alcohol, caffeine, suprarenal extract, coal tar derivatives

#### *Diminished Frequency (bradycardia)*

In some individuals the pulse rate is normally slow, often being no faster than 40 to 60 per minute. In the aged the pulse may be only 60 or less per minute.

*Physiologically*, its rate is lessened during sleep, absolute rest, the puerperium, or convalescence from certain fevers (typhoid, pneumonia etc.)

*Pathologically* the pulse may be slow in

1 Myocarditis

2 Myxedema in the early stages

3 Meningitis, typhoid fever, vagus irritation, arteriosclerosis

4 Intracranial pressure by tumor, hemorrhage, edema, effusion etc.

5 In certain forms of mania.

6 Melancholia and hysteria

7 After poisoning by drugs such as cyanide or digitalis

8 In toxemia due to absorption of bile and urea

9 In epilepsy, a pulse which becomes slow after having been rapid for a long time, should be regarded as a danger signal

10 A slow or infrequent pulse occurring in cardiac diseases indicates fatty degeneration of the heart muscle, and probably, disease of the coronary arteries. A slow pulse may at times occur in the presence of a rapidly acting heart because all the impulses are not transmitted to the radial artery (pulse deficit). This is often seen in certain types of arrhythmia (auricular fibrillation)

11 Stokes Adams' syndrome, that is bradycardia with epileptoid or syncopal attacks, may occur when the pulse rate drops to from 15 to 25 per minute

12 The various forms of heart block

**II Force or Quality and Size of the Pulse** By the quality of the pulse is meant the size of the pulse wave and its degree of tension. There are so many variations in the quality of the normal pulse that it requires a great deal of experience and diligent practice to recognize pathologic changes

The size of the pulse depends upon the amount of blood thrown into the circulation by each cardiac systole and upon the size and position of the artery palpated. Thus, persons who have naturally large arteries will show a larger pulse than those who have small superficial arteries, or again, the radial artery may run an anomalous course thereby making proper deductions difficult

*Pulsus plenus* (full pulse) or *pulsus magnus* (large pulse) is found in conditions of plethora and in hypertrophy of the left ventricle, providing such hypertrophy is not caused by a serious valvular defect. A large broad pulse

wave is sometimes found in cases of severe asthenia, where the arteries have lost their muscle tone, so that each ventricular systole causes a hyperdistension of the artery. Such a pulse is easily compressible.

*Corrigan's* or *water hammer pulse* or *rip hammer pulse* is an abnormally full and not easily compressible pulse, which collapses suddenly when its height is reached. This is found in aortic regurgitation.

*Pulsus vacuus* (empty pulse) or *pulsus parvus* (small pulse). A small pulse, if not caused by abnormally small arteries, is also an *empty* pulse, and is due to diminished work of the heart, particularly of the left ventricle, as is seen in mitral stenosis and in the combined lesions of aortic stenosis and mitral regurgitation. Partial obstruction of an artery will, for obvious reasons, cause a small pulse, as will also severe anemia, profuse hemorrhage and myocarditis.

*Thready* or *filiform pulse* is a very small and empty pulse, while *pulsus tremulus* (trembling pulse) is a very small, but nevertheless full, pulse. These two conditions are found when the heart is extremely weak (myocarditis). *Wiry pulse* is a small noncompressible pulse usually very fast, seen in scarlet fever. *Dicrotic pulse* is a soft pulse having a double impulse, the second or smaller impulse is caused by the rebound of the pulse wave. This type of pulse is found in exhausting febrile conditions, typhoid, etc. In order to demonstrate this pulse the patient's elbow must rest upon some object (bed), the forearm being at right angles with the arm, and the fingers pointing upward.

III Rhythm or Regularity. The rhythm of the pulse may be disturbed in two ways. (1) Arrhythmia as to time

(pulse throbs do not follow one another at regular intervals), (2) arrhythmia as to volume (regular as to time, but variable as to volume). Often there exists a combination of (1) and (2), as the irregular pulse may be unequal in volume.

1 *Arrhythmia as to Time*: A slight degree of irregularity as to time may be encountered in persons who show no other evidence of disease. A regular intermission occurs at a given number of beats and corresponds to a similar phenomenon in the heart. If the pulse is normal in all other respects, this phenomenon may be considered as an individual peculiarity, the cause of which is attributed to *ventricular extrasystole*. An irregular pulse may occur temporarily in emotional excitement, fatigue, neurasthenia, because of overindulgence in tobacco, tea and coffee, and in constipation and various digestive disorders, it is also seen at times in the very young and in the aged as a result of *sinus arrhythmia* (SEE pp 439 and 518).

*Persistent arrhythmia*, associated with the signs of circulatory disturbance, is a grave condition, and may be due to disease of the heart muscle, disease of the nervous mechanism of the heart, or to reflex causes. Absence of rhythm usually occurs after failure of compensation, though in mitral stenosis arrhythmia may occur long before other signs of ruptured compensation are detected. It usually indicates *auricular fibrillation*.

The abuse (the use of too large doses or too long continued administration) of digitalis in cardiac diseases, may cause arrhythmia (coupling or slowing of beats) until the drug is withdrawn.

✓ *Pulsus bigeminus* is a pulse in which the beats run in pairs, each pair is separated by a prolonged pause.

✓ *Pulsus trigeminus* is one in which every third beat is followed by a pause

2. *Arrhythmia as to Volume: Pulsus alternans* is characterized by the regular alteration of a small feeble pulsation with one that is larger and stronger; that is, the pulse is regular in rhythm but irregular in volume. This condition is found in advanced myocarditis and is a grave prognostic omen.

*Pulsus myurous* (rare) is a peculiar condition described by older writers. A full and forcible pulse wave is followed by a series of several beats gradually decreasing in volume, this succession of changes being maintained with a certain degree of regularity (also called decurrate or mouse-tail pulse, seen during Cheyne-Stokes respiration).

*Other Irregularities: Pulsus intercidens* is characterized by the occurrence of a small or rudimentary extra beat after several perfectly normal pulse beats (seen in extra systoles).

✓ *Pulsus Paradoxus*: The "paradoxical pulse" of Kussmaul is characterized by the disappearance of the pulse wave with each deep inspiration. It is said to be due to adhesive pericarditis, pericardial effusions, mediastinal inflammation, or to tumors or adhesive bands compressing the aorta during deep inspiration.

*Intermittent pulse* is characterized by the dropping of two or more impulses after several regular pulse waves have occurred. This is caused either by the periodic interruption of the heart's action, or by insufficient power of the heart muscle to cause a radial impulse.

*Pulsus deficient* occurs when the dropped pulse waves are caused by periodic rudimentary heartbeats which are not of sufficient strength to be registered at the radial artery.

*Irregular intermittent pulse* is a pulse which is irregular in its irregularity, no two beats or cycles being alike. It is irregular as to *time, volume, rhythm, and force*; in fact, it lacks practically all the attributes of a normal pulse. This variety of pulse is often met with in severe cases of auricular fibrillation

Pulse rhythm may also be studied by the sphygmograph.

IV. Condition of the Arterial Wall: An artery that feels round and is not easily compressible may indicate increased blood tension within the artery, or sclerosis of the artery wall. If the artery cannot be felt beyond the point of compression, the increased tension is caused by increased blood pressure. Often the two conditions, increased arterial tension and sclerotic arteries, coexist. An artery that has undergone marked sclerotic changes is usually recognized by the following points:

The artery is longer than normal, therefore, it becomes tortuous. It feels hard and round, and is easily rolled under the finger. Beyond the point of compression, the artery can be felt like a whipcord and is often beady. The diastole, or period between pulse waves, produces very little change in the size and shape of the vessel.

V. Tension: Arterial tension depends upon five distinct conditions:

1. *The amount of blood in the circulation.* The more blood the higher the tension. Also the viscosity of the blood has a direct bearing on the tension.

2. *The size and vigor of the left ventricle.* A strong hypertrophied left ventricle will produce a high tension pulse; a degenerated left ventricle will produce a low tension pulse

3 *The condition of the arterioles* Increased resistance in the arterioles will cause a high tension pulse

4 *The condition of those organs which receive a supply of arterial blood* If the organs are congested or fibrotic, the tension will be high

5 *The condition of the glands of internal secretion* Some of the endocrine glands and the sympathetic nervous system seem to have a definite influence upon arterial tension

### Blood Pressure

The finger is a poor indicator of the degree of tension in the artery. In most cases palpation of the artery will reveal either an increased or decreased tension, seldom, however, can even the most experienced observer tell the actual amount of pressure with any degree of accuracy. To gauge accurately the tension, the sphygmomanometer, an instrument devised for accurately determining the blood pressure during systole and diastole, is employed.

**Systolic Pressure** By systolic pressure is meant the amount of pressure exerted upon the caliber of the arteries during the systole of the heart, it is measured by the number of millimeters of mercury required to compress the radial artery.

**Diastolic Pressure** By diastolic pressure is meant the amount of blood pressure constantly present in the vessels during the diastole of the heart.

The pulse pressure is obtained by subtracting the diastolic from the systolic pressure, this represents the force exerted by each systole. Thus, if systolic pressure equals 120 and diastolic pressure equals 80, pulse pressure will equal 40 ( $120 - 80 = 40$ ).

The mean pressure is obtained by adding the systolic pressure to the diastolic and then dividing by 2. Thus, if systolic pressure equals 120 and diastolic pressure equals 80, the mean pressure will equal 100 ( $120 + 80 = 200 - 2 = 100$ ).

Since the introduction of the sphygmomanometer the estimation of "blood pressure" has practically become an accurate science, and a physician can no more afford to be without a blood pressure instrument than without a clinical thermometer.

### Hypertension and Hypotension

Alteration in arterial tension should not be regarded as a distinct pathological entity, but only as a symptom of dysfunction. This is true, irrespective of whether the etiologic factors are or are not apparent. Exceptions may be made in the case of certain clans or families whose members uniformly present a somewhat higher or lower blood pressure.

**Etiology** The precise mechanism operative in the deviation of blood pressure, either above or below the arbitrary normal, is as yet not entirely explainable. It is, however, known that certain pathologic states have a definite effect upon arterial tension, also that hypertension or hypotension may occur in individuals who in other respects seem to be perfectly normal. It is quite feasible that arterial tension may be controlled by a not as yet identified "center" in the brain, in the adrenals, in the medulla or in the kidneys.

**Hypertension** This may be defined as an increase of the systolic and diastolic arterial blood pressure with or without an increase of the pulse pressure. Blood pressure above 150 systolic and 90 diastolic in persons below 50



years of age and 160 systolic and 90 diastolic in persons past 50 years of age may be considered above normal. Pressure of 260 to 300 systolic and 120 to 140 diastolic may be found in individuals presenting no other abnormality (*essential hypertension*), though with the lapse of time such persons will show definite evidence of disease in the blood vessels of the brain, heart or kidneys, because no one is so constituted as to bear such a terrific strain without giving way at some point.

In the following conditions high blood pressure is a prominent symptom:

Nephritis of the glomerular type with nitro-gen retention, urinary obstruction.

Arteriosclerosis with hypertension and cardiac hypertrophy (SEE p 525)

Chronic intestinal toxemia toxemia of pregnancy

Chronic focal infections.

Aortic insufficiency (high systolic and low diastolic)

Sclerosis of the cerebral vessels

Cerebral hemorrhage.

Increased intracranial tension.

Obesity polycythemia pituitary basophilism

High tension living constant excitement and anxiety

Endocrine disturbance as seen in women at the menopause and in hyperadrenalism hyperpituitarism and hyperthyroidism.

Sympathetomy.

*Hypertrophy of the prostate gland* is often associated with hypertension which is frequently attributed to age and arteriosclerosis. However, the removal of a pathologic prostate may permanently relieve the hypertension.

**Essential Hypertension (Hypertension, Primary Arterial Hypertonia).** Essential hypertension during the early stage acts as a functional disturbance of the vaso-motor system showing no abnormalities other than an increase of the systolic and diastolic pressure above the accepted normal. As the disease pro-

gresses there develop cardiac hypertrophy, increased arterial tonicity, spasticity of the retinal arteries with tortuosity of the retinal veins. During the late stages, there may develop severe symptoms referable to the cardiovascular system, the brain or the kidneys. The disease may affect equally the entire arterial system, or one group of vessels may bear the greatest brunt. The symptoms depend upon the stage of the disease and the amount of pathology in the organs chiefly involved.

**General Symptoms and Clinical Findings.** During the early or benign stage, aside from a moderately elevated systolic and diastolic pressure, there may be no symptoms. When subjective symptoms do appear, those most frequently found are headache, vertigo, ringing in the ears, irritability and heart consciousness. Excitement aggravates these complaints and raises the tension. During the later stages there may develop pathologic manifestation in the cardiovascular system, the brain or the kidneys.

**The Cardiovascular Manifestations.** The walls of the arteries and arterioles become thickened and their lumina narrowed. This leads to cardiac hypertrophy. When the hypertrophy becomes massive there develops coronary insufficiency with reduction of blood flow, and this leads to cardiac ischemia and anoxemia, thus resulting in myocardial failure. Hypertensive heart failure is a frequent cause of death in persons above the age of 55 years (SEE p 493).

**Cerebral Manifestations.** Cerebral vascular spasm is fairly common. This causes transient cerebral symptoms such as paresthesias, motor or sensory aphasia, monoplegia, hemiplegia, epileptiform seizures, local twitchings, severe headache, vertigo and, at times, temporary

blindness. Eventually there may develop hypertensive encephalopathy, thrombosis or hemorrhage. The latter two conditions are among the frequent causes of death in essential hypertension. Cerebral hemorrhage occurs more frequently in the region of the basal ganglia.

**Renal Manifestations** In this disease nephritis is not the cause of the hypertension. It is the hypertension associated with arteriolar hypertrophy and fibrosis which limits the blood supply to the kidneys and causes the primary contracted red granular kidney, so common in this disease when the kidneys are involved.

**Malignant nephrosclerosis or malignant hypertension** is a severe stage of hypertension in which the kidneys bear the greatest brunt of the disease. It usually occurs in comparatively young persons. The blood pressure is exceedingly high, 250 to 300 systolic and 120 to 160 diastolic, and kidney function is poor. Retinal sclerosis is nearly always present while retinal hemorrhage and choked discs are not frequent findings. Essential hypertension usually runs a protracted course, but when the stage of malignant hypertension is reached death may occur in a comparatively short time from uremia or vascular crisis.

**Etiology** The cause of essential hypertension is as yet not definitely proven. It is believed by Goldblatt to be due to a pressure substance secreted by an ischemic kidney. There are also other theories but none are proven. The disease has a familial tendency.

**Diagnosis** Before a diagnosis of essential hypertension is made one must exclude the known conditions that cause high blood pressure (SEE pp 412 and 525). A systolic pressure persistently above 160 and a diastolic pressure above 90 associated with spasticity of the retinal

vessels, even in the absence of any other abnormal manifestations, may be considered as essential hypertension in a benign or early stage.

**Hypotension** This may be defined as a decrease of the systolic and diastolic arterial blood pressure. Values below 90 systolic and 50 diastolic may be considered pathologic. Constant low blood pressure is often a familial characteristic and is consistent with longevity. Low pressured individuals may fatigue easily but often after a brief rest continue with their tasks and in the end outdistance the "high pressured" individual. Pathologically low blood pressure may be caused by

- Severe asthenia
- Pulmonary tuberculosis
- Addison's disease
- Cardiovascular degeneration, mitral and aortic stenosis
- Hypopituitarism, hypothyroidism
- Coronary thrombosis
- Arteriosclerosis associated with cardiac degeneration
- Vasomotor disturbance
- Vagotonia
- Shock
- Severe anemia, severe hemorrhage
- Prolonged febrile conditions
- Lipoid nephrosis

Hypotension following hypertension is often of grave prognostic omen.

Coronary thrombosis in the hypotensive individual is often more serious than in the hypertensive individual.

**Pulse Pressure** The pulse pressure may be high because of an increase of the systolic pressure without any corresponding increase of the diastolic pressure. This is often seen in nervous hypertension or temporary hypertension due to stimulation, excitement or mental and physical exertion. The pulse pressure may also be high because of a drop in the diastolic pressure as seen

in aortic regurgitation, after exertion in cardiovascular weakness, in exophthalmic goiter, in shock, in hemorrhage and, at times in anemia. A high pulse pressure also occurs in general hypertension where both the systolic and diastolic pressures are increased, the systolic usually rising out of proportion to the diastolic.

A low pulse pressure usually occurs in arteriosclerosis with hypotension. The diastolic pressure is proportionately high in cardiac decompensation with cyanosis and edema in coronary thrombosis, and in any condition where venous stasis is present. Whenever the systolic pressure falls below the pulse rate an unfavorable prognosis may be anticipated. The same holds true of any condition in which the diastolic pressure falls below the respiratory rate. The normal pulse pressure is usually between 40 and 50.

**Variation of Blood Pressure with Age and Sex.** At birth the systolic pressure varies from 35 to 50 mm Hg. At the tenth year it is about 80 to 90 mm Hg. At the sixteenth year the systolic pressure varies from 90 to 120 mm Hg. In the adult, Rolleston's formula is 100 plus age. This formula is remarkable for its variations. The systolic pressure in women is usually 5 to 10 mm Hg lower than in men. The diastolic pressure up to the fiftieth year is usually two-thirds of the systolic. In the aged the diastolic pressure may be one half of the systolic pressure.

**Technic for "Taking" Blood Pressure.** *Step One.* The patient should assume a perfectly unconstrained position either lying in bed or sitting upon a chair; all muscles should be relaxed as much as possible. The arm nearest the examiner should be bare or a very thin garment may be worn. The cuff of the sphygmomanometer is usually

wound around the arm and the free end is fastened, so as to prevent loosening. The two pieces of rubber tubing connected with the cuff are disposed of as follows.

The end of one tube (it does not matter which) is attached to an air bulb while the other tube is attached to the sphygmomanometer. The instrument is now ready for use. Either the auscultatory, palpatory or the combined auscultatory and palpatory methods may be used.

*Step Two (palpatory method).* The examiner takes the radial pulse of the patient's constricted arm with which ever hand is most convenient. With the other hand he grasps the air bulb and slowly inflates the cuff until the radial pulse is entirely obliterated. It is best to go several degrees beyond that point and then gradually deflate the cuff until the pulse on its return becomes barely perceptible to the palpating fingers. This point is then marked as the *systolic pressure*.

*Step Three.* The diastolic pressure is most accurately obtained by the *auscultatory method*. When the *palpatory method* is used we depend chiefly upon observing the greatest oscillation of the column of mercury or the needle (in *spring instruments*). The cuff is gradually deflated and when a point is reached at which the mercury or the needle shows the greatest oscillation this point is marked as the *diastolic pressure*. By the *auscultatory method* (which is the most accurate and therefore the method of choice) the systolic pressure is marked at the point of compression when the pulse sound is first heard after having been obliterated by the pressure of the inflated cuff. The diastolic pressure is marked at the point

where the loud booming sound changes suddenly to a weak thud

**Technic for the Auscultatory Method** The sphygmomanometer is adjusted as previously described. The chest piece of a binaural stethoscope is applied (without pressure) a little below the bend of the elbow, over the ulnar artery, the other end of the stethoscope being held in the examiner's ears. The cuff is inflated beyond the point where the pulse sound is obliterated. The cuff is then slowly deflated until a distinct short beat is heard. This is marked as the *systolic pressure*.

The cuff is further deflated, the sound marked as the systolic point undergoing a number of modifications, at first feeble, it soon changes to a broad murmur, this, in turn, gives place as the pressure is released, to a strong clear cut, short sound which is heard until it reaches a point where it suddenly becomes soft and indistinct. This point is marked as the *diastolic pressure*.

The five phases through which the auscultatory pulse sound passes are described as follows:

**First phase** represents the sound as first heard after complete compression, it indicates the systolic pressure and much resembles the apical heartbeat. It is caused by the return of the pulse wave in the artery at a definite stage of compression.

**Second Phase** The sound simulating the systolic heartbeat of the first phase becomes a *hissing murmur*, caused probably by the uneven constriction.

**Third Phase** The sound is now clear cut, short and snappy, it becomes louder as the pressure is released, until a point is reached where it suddenly becomes weak, which point is recognized as the fourth phase.

**Fourth Phase** The sudden transition from the third phase to the fourth gives one the impression of a boulder which, rolling along a level surface, suddenly drops over a precipice. This point marks the *diastolic pressure*.

**Fifth phase** is represented by the continuance of the weak sound until its final cessation. It is evident that the sound in an artery depends upon the amount of constriction of that artery. When the artery is entirely obliterated, there is no sound, as is also the case when the artery is not at all constricted. The five phases just mentioned occur as a result of the degree of constriction of the brachial artery.

### Percussion

It is of great importance for the student to practice cardiac percussion



Fig 16—Percussion of thorax in the extremely modest

with as much care and concentration as possible. Unless one has a sharp ear, proper technic and a uniform method of procedure cardiac percussion will

yield no satisfactory results. The outline of the heart as obtained by percussion is somewhat smaller than actual size as has been proven by radioscapy. The difference is no doubt due to lung resonance encroaching upon cardiac dullness.

The object of percussion is to determine (1) The size of the heart actual relative and exposed, (2) the position

**Mediate Percussion** The finger is the only medium used as the employment of instruments for outlining the heart is impractical. The pleximeter finger is placed, if possible in an interspace only the distal phalanx being laid upon the chest wall while the other parts of the finger are raised so as not to interfere with chest vibrations. The



Fig. 17—Technic for orthopercussion.

of the heart and (3) the presence of enlargement of any one of its chambers.

**Technic** The technic employed in the general percussion applies also to cardiac percussion.

The heart is an airless organ and therefore, gives rise to a dull sound. It is surrounded on three sides (upper, right and left) by air-containing or resonant tissue. The transition from resonance to dullness marks the location of the borders of the heart. Percussion should always be started on the resonant tissue and the supposed outline of the heart approached in parallel lines along its various borders. The percussion stroke should be rather forcible.

Percussion of the heart like that of the lungs may be either *mediate* or *immediate*.

pleximeter finger is then struck sharply at the rate of two per second with the soft part of the middle finger nearest the nail. The border of the heart is approached in each interspace from the resonant area.

**Orthopercussion** This is practically a form of mediate percussion. The pleximeter finger is bent at the second joint and held at a right angle to the hand, the tip of the finger resting upon the chest wall. The plexor finger strikes the pleximeter finger lightly upon the second phalanx. It is claimed by many physicians that the heart border is more easily outlined by this method.

**Immediate Percussion** Of late this has become greatly in vogue and is favored by many competent clinicians. The precardial skin is drawn taut with one

hand while the examiner taps the chest wall with the index or middle finger of the other hand. Tapping is also started in the resonant part of the chest the heart being gradually approached. Thus, the intercostal spaces and not the ribs, are percussed. Cardiac dullness is best elicited by mapping out three points



Fig 18—Technic for immediate (direct) heart percussion

1 *Upper Point* Percussion is started from the left clavicle and carried downward and inward until dullness is reached

2 *Right Lower Point* Percussion is started in the fourth intercostal space and midclavicular line and carried inward until dullness is reached

3 *Left Lower Point* Percussion is started in the left eighth interspace and anterior axillary line and carried upward and inward until dullness is reached. A line connecting the three points represents cardiac dullness

### Cardiac Dullness

We speak of two forms of cardiac dullness, *superficial* and *deep*, as follows

1 *Superficial* (exposed actual or ab-

solute) cardiac dullness corresponds to that portion of the heart not covered by lung. The anterior portion of the right ventricle lying in the quadrilateral space, is in close contact with the chest wall. It, therefore, requires only a superficial percussion stroke to bring out actual dullness. This space is bounded *Superiorly*, by the upper edge of the left fourth costal cartilage, in the parasternal line, the *right border* extends along the right edge of the sternum from its upper boundary to about the sixth rib where it blends with liver dullness, the *left border* corresponds to a curved line with its convexity outward, running just inside the parasternal line and joining the upper area of cardiac dullness to that elicited at the sixth interspace.



Fig 19—Technic for outlining cardiac dullness by immediate percussion

The *lower border* of the heart cannot be outlined by ordinary percussion because it blends with liver dullness, but it may often be determined by auscultatory percussion, or by the use of the tuning fork by which methods it is often



fourth rib The total area of cardiac dullness is represented by a combination of the covered and exposed areas of cardiac dullness

**Area of Vascular Dullness** Percussion over the sternum elicits a peculiar bony resonance masking both cardiac dullness and lung resonance The aorta

other Normally the size and location of the percussion areas are influenced by the

(a) *Age of the Individual* In children the lungs are relatively small and the dull areas of the heart and liver correspondingly greater Early in life because of the greater elasticity of the



Fig 21—Case of aortic insufficiency—extreme enlargement of left ventricle due to hypertrophy and dilatation note the stocking shaped shadow

and superior vena cava are situated behind the sternum above the second rib and on deep or forcible percussion an impaired osseous resonance may be elicited over that area

**Conditions Modifying the Normal Areas of Cardiac Dullness** Both areas may be proportionately increased or diminished or the dimensions of one may be altered at the expense of the

lungs the area of relative dullness is relatively increased during full inspiration while that of actual dullness is diminished a reversal of these conditions is obtained during shallow breathing and forcible expiration It should be remembered that the area of absolute dullness is greater in children than in adults and that its upper limit is about one interspace higher also that it extends a little



farther over to the left, and does not descend to so low a level as in adults. In old age, even in persons who are otherwise in good health, the borders of the lungs are usually emphysematous, hence, the area of superficial dullness is smaller. Relative dullness is also much lower, because the heart hangs lower in the thoracic cavity of the aged than in the

area of actual dullness is diminished when the patient lies on his right side and is increased when lying on left side.

(c) *Condition of the Lungs* The area of actual cardiac dullness is diminished during deep inspiration, and increased during full expiration.

(d) *Position of the Diaphragm* When the diaphragm is raised the heart



Fig. 22—Case of pericardial effusion of moderate degree. Note the pear-shaped shadow.

(a) *Hypertrophy and Dilatation of the Heart* If the dullness extends to the right, it indicates right ventricular enlargement, and, at times, enlarged vena cava, or moderate pericardial effusion, the latter condition often obliterates Ebstein's angle. If dullness can be detected to the left and downward, it means left ventricular enlargement, if to the right, and over the third and fourth interspaces, right auricular enlargement, if to the second left interspace, left auricular enlargement. Circumscribed dullness in the second interspace, close to the sternum, is often found in aortic stenosis, due, no doubt, to left auricular hypertrophy.

(b) *Pericardial effusion* gives rise to an enormous area of absolute cardiac dullness, it can be differentiated from hypertrophy of the heart by the following points

#### PERICARDIAL EFFUSION

Large area of dullness and flatness, base downward and apex up

Change of outline of dullness on change of posture without change in the position of the apical impulse

Relative dullness not obtained, the note changes from lung resonance to flatness because the pericardial sac is filled with fluid, which pushes the lungs away from the heart

Apex beat displaced upward and to the left (as a rule)

Cardiohepatic angle (Ebstein's angle) is obliterated.

Roitch's sign (dullness 1 to 2 inches to the right of the sternum) is positive

tiating by percussion between a consolidated lung and the heart

(c) Tumors or enlarged glands encroaching upon the heart, causing extension of cardiac dullness

(d) Aneurysm of the ascending portion of the aortic arch, the dullness extending above the normal cardiac area, and to the right of the sternum. Extension of dullness over the manubrium may indicate aneurysm of the transverse portion of the same vessel. Dullness to the left of the sternum, in the first or second interspaces, may indicate aneurysm of the descending portion at its beginning. Aneurysmal dullness does not displace the normal area of cardiac dullness, but is superimposed upon it. Dullness over the upper part of the sternum may also be caused by a persistent thymus, sub-sternal goiter or mediastinal neoplasm.

#### HYPERTROPHIED HEART

Dullness, base upward, apex downward.

No greatly appreciable change

Relative dullness gradually merging into actual dullness

Apex beat displaced downward and to the left, and changes in change of posture

Cardiohepatic angle (Ebstein's angle) present

Roitch's sign absent

*Extrinsic causes* or apparent increase in the area of heart dullness may be due to

(a) Shrinkage of the lungs, thus exposing a greater portion of the heart

(b) Consolidated lung near the heart simulating an increased area of heart dullness, there being no way of differen-

**II Diminished or Absent Cardiac Dullness** This may be caused by atrophy of the heart, although this is a rare condition. As a rule, diminished or absent cardiac dullness is due to some extrinsic cause, such as emphysema of the lungs. The distended hyperresonant lung covering a greater part of the heart

than under normal conditions will encroach upon heart dullness, and, in extreme cases, it may entirely overlap the heart. A greatly distended stomach, particularly at its cardiac end, may cause a diminution of cardiac dullness because the gastric tympany will mask the dull sound normally elicited over the heart.

**Pneumopericardium** Air in the pericardial sac is a rare condition, but when present will cause hyperresonance or tympany instead of dullness over the precordia.

**Pneumothorax** Either spontaneous or artificially induced pneumothorax may cause diminished or absent cardiac dullness, depending upon its size and location.

**Gastric Carcinoma** This condition reduces, and at times obliterates, absolute cardiac dullness in the recumbent posture (W. Gordon).

**Displaced Cardiac Dullness** A displaced heart cannot be accurately outlined by percussion alone, because the cause of the displacement may often give rise to similar dullness, i. e., pleural effusion, neoplasm, or aneurysm. By observing the apex beat, the outlines may at times be inferred by percussion. In cases of *dextrocardia* (*situs inversus viscerum*) the size of the heart may be outlined on the right half of the chest.

### Auscultation

Auscultation of the heart is the last step in cardiac physical examination, but it is by no means the least in importance. The information obtained by inspection, palpation and percussion is differentiated, extended and more definitely authenticated by auscultation.

The object of auscultation is to determine the character of the heart sounds as heard at the various valves, the car-

diac rhythm, and the presence or absence of adventitious sounds.

**Technic:** As in auscultation of the lungs, two methods are practiced, *viz.*, *mediate* and *immediate*.

**Immediate Auscultation.** The immediate method is seldom used, the only excuse one has for employing the unaided ear in auscultating the heart is the



Fig. 23.—Combined method of palpating and auscultating the apex beat.

unavoidable lack of a stethoscope, or to verify a faint aortic diastolic murmur. It would seem an almost impossible task properly to auscultate the apex beat of a very fat female adult.

**Mediate Auscultation:** The stethoscope should generally be employed for the examination of the heart, as with its aid the various valve areas can be definitely located, and the area of transmission is more easily followed.

**Combined method of palpating and auscultating the apex beat.** The systole of the heart is felt by the hand, the stethoscope conducts the apical sound through the hand.

The patient should remain in the same posture he assumed during percussion though it may sometimes become necessary to have him lean forward, or lie



Fig 24—Auscultating the apex beat

upon his back or upon his left side or he may have to raise his hands above his head several times in succession in order to bring out stronger heart sounds or



Fig 25—Auscultating the apex beat.

to note the effect of exercise and posture upon the cardiac sounds. A murmur may become more audible after such a procedure particularly if the heart sounds

are weak, because of degeneration of the heart muscle.

In ambulatory patients it is often necessary to have them walk across the floor or run up and down a flight of stairs or hop on one foot a number of times the heart being auscultated both before and after the exertion. With the patient in proper position the following areas are examined:

1 *Mitral Area* The stethoscope is placed over the apical area (fifth inter



Fig 26—Auscultating the pulmonary valve

space near the nipple) so that the character of the heart sounds may be noted. If the sounds seem normal the second area is then auscultated but if an adventitious sound is heard over the mitral area the exact character and time should be noted and the sound followed toward the left axilla to the angle of the left scapula.

2 *Pulmonic Area* The second area of auscultation is in the second intercostal space at a point close to the left sternal line. The character of the sound, the presence or absence of adventitious sounds, and the presence or absence of

an accentuation of the normal sound should be noted. Should an adventitious sound be heard here its time and character should be investigated, and the stethoscope placed over the veins of the neck to determine the transmission of the adventitious sound.



Fig. 27—Auscultating the aortic valve

**3 Aortic Area** The third area to be investigated is the second intercostal space to the right of the sternum. The strength of the sound there heard should be carefully studied, noting especially whether it equals in strength the one heard at the left second intercostal space or whether it is weaker or stronger. Any adventitious sound heard at this orifice should be studied as to quality and time and then followed either over the carotid arteries (when the murmur is systolic in time) or down along the sternum gradually approaching the apex (when the murmur is diastolic in time).

**4 Tricuspid Area** The fourth area to be auscultated is the lower part of the sternum near its junction with the ensiform cartilage. If an adventitious sound

is heard at this orifice it should be followed toward the liver. As pointed out previously, the clinical areas for listening to the valve sounds do not correspond to the anatomic positions of the heart valves because the sounds produced at the various points are carried along the course of the blood stream and are best heard at the different areas above indicated, their audibility being due to the acute change in the course of the blood stream which occurs at these points.



Fig. 28—Auscultating the tricuspid valve

### The Normal Heart Sounds

#### Origin of the Cardiac Impulse

The normal impulse which originates the orderly contractions of the heart arises in a specialized or sensitized bundle of muscle fibers situated at the junction of the superior vena cava and right auricle beneath the epicardium. This node or bundle of muscle fibers contains nerve fibers and ganglion cells, which are connected with the vagus and sympathetic nerves and is known as the *sinoauricular* or *sinoatrial node*. It is the pacemaker for the heart's contractions which under normal conditions determines the rate and rhythm of the heart.

From the sinoauricular node (S A node) the impulse spreads wavelike over the walls of the auricles (causing them to contract simultaneously) to another specialized node or bundle of fibers located near the orifice of the coronary sinus in the annular fibers of the septal wall of the right auricle. This node is known as the

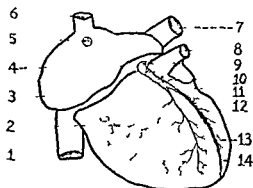


Fig. 29—The conduction system of the heart. Showing the approximate relation of the more recently discovered structures to familiar anatomical divisions of the heart. 1 inferior vena cava 2 right ventricle 3 right auricle 4 atrioventricular junctional tissue 5 sinoauricular node (Pacemaker) 6 superior vena cava 7 aorta 8 pulmonary artery 9 node of Tawara 10 bundle of His 11 left branch of bundle 12 right branch of bundle 13 fibers of Purkinje 14 left ventricle

node of Tawara or the auriculoventricular node or atrioventricular node (A V node). From the node of Tawara the impulse traverses another bundle of specialized tissue the *auriculoventricular bundle* known as the *bundle of His* which is the bridge that conducts the impulse from the auricles to the ventricles causing ventricular contraction. The bundle of His begins at the A V node it passes forward in the interauricular septum then turns downward and at the upper margin of the interventricular septum divides into two branches a *left branch* that passes into the left ventricle and a *right branch* that passes into

the right ventricle. Each of these branches subdivides into a network (arborisation) of fine fibers the *Purkinje fibers* which are distributed over the walls and papillary muscles of their respective ventricles.

While the cardiac impulse normally arises in the sinoauricular node under certain conditions usually pathological impulses may arise in any part of the heart muscle. When that occurs the normal rhythm of the heart is disturbed and various cardiac irregularities or arrhythmias occur.

The vagus nerve retards the heart rate and the sympathetics accelerate it but neither the vagus nor the sympathetics seem to have the power to initiate or to conduct the contraction wave. The heart with its nerve connections severed may continue to beat.

When the chest is auscultated at a point corresponding to the body of the heart two sounds are generally heard one closely following the other simulating a *lubb tup* sound. After an intermission of a fraction of a second the two sounds are repeated. That heard immediately after the longer pause is the first sound in the cycle and is known as the *first sound of the heart* or *systole*, it corresponds to the contraction of the ventricles the carotid impulse the radial pulse and the apex beat. The sound following the first is termed the *second sound of the heart* or *diastole* it corresponds to the contraction of the auricles or dilatation of the ventricles. These two sounds are produced by different parts of the heart and differ from each other in *quality intensity pitch* and *duration*. They are also heard with varying intensity at different valves the first sound being loudest at the apical area and the second loudest at the base. The first

an accentuation of the normal sound should be noted. Should an adventitious sound be heard here, its time and character should be investigated and the stethoscope placed over the veins of the neck to determine the transmission of the adventitious sound.



Fig. 27—Auscultating the aortic valve

**3 Aortic Area.** The third area to be investigated is the second intercostal space to the right of the sternum. The strength of the sound there heard should be carefully studied, noting especially whether it equals in strength the one heard at the left second intercostal space or whether it is weaker or stronger. Any adventitious sound heard at this orifice should be studied as to quality and time and then followed either over the carotid arteries (when the murmur is systolic in time) or down along the sternum gradually approaching the apex (when the murmur is diastolic in time).

**4 Tricuspid Area.** The fourth area to be auscultated is the lower part of the sternum near its junction with the costal cartilage. If an adventitious sound

is heard at this orifice it should be followed toward the liver. As pointed out previously, the clinical areas for listening to the valve sounds do not correspond to the anatomic positions of the heart valves because the sounds produced at the various points are carried along the course of the blood stream and are best heard at the different areas above indicated, their audibility being due to the acute change in the course of the blood stream which occurs at these points.



Fig. 28—Auscultating the tricuspid valve

### The Normal Heart Sounds

#### Origin of the Cardiac Impulse

The normal impulse which originates the orderly contractions of the heart arises in a specialized or sensitized bundle of muscle fibers situated at the junction of the superior vena cava and right auricle beneath the epicardium. This node or bundle of muscle fibers contains nerve fibers and ganglion cells which are connected with the vagus and sympathetic nerves and is known as the *sinoatrial* or *sinoatrial node*. It is the pace maker for the heart's contractions which under normal conditions determine the rate and rhythm of the heart.

From the sinoauricular node (S A node) the impulse spreads wavelike over the walls of the auricles (causing them to contract simultaneously) to another specialized node or bundle of fibers located near the orifice of the coronary sinus in the annular fibers of the septal wall of the right auricle. This node is known as the

the right ventricle. Each of these branches subdivides into a network (arborisation) of fine fibers, the *Purkinje fibers*, which are distributed over the walls and papillary muscles of their respective ventricles.

While the cardiac impulse normally arises in the sinoauricular node, under certain conditions, usually pathological, impulses may arise in any part of the heart muscle. When that occurs, the normal rhythm of the heart is disturbed and various cardiac irregularities or arrhythmias occur.

The vagus nerve retards the heart rate and the sympathetics accelerate it, but neither the vagus nor the sympathetics seem to have the power to initiate or to conduct the contraction wave. The heart with its nerve connections severed may continue to beat.

When the chest is auscultated at a point corresponding to the body of the heart, two sounds are generally heard, one closely following the other, simulating a 'lubb tup' sound. After an intermission of a fraction of a second, the two sounds are repeated. That heard immediately after the longer pause is the first sound in the cycle and is known as the *first sound of the heart* or *systole*; it corresponds to the contraction of the ventricles, the carotid impulse, the radial pulse and the apex beat. The sound following the first is termed the *second sound of the heart* or *diastole*, it corresponds to the contraction of the auricles or dilatation of the ventricles. These two sounds are produced by different parts of the heart and differ from each other in *quality, intensity, pitch and duration*. They are also heard with varying intensity at different valves, the first sound being loudest at the apical area and the second loudest at the base. The first

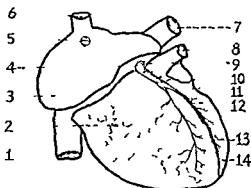


Fig. 29—The conduction system of the heart. Showing the approximate relation of the more recently discovered structures to familiar anatomical divisions of the heart. 1 inferior vena cava, 2, right ventricle 3 right auricle 4 atrioventricular junctional tissue 5 sinoauricular node ('Pacemaker') 6 superior vena cava 7 aorta 8 pulmonary artery 9 node of Tawara 10 bundle of His 11 left branch of bundle 12 right branch of bundle 13 fibers of Purkinje 14 left ventricle.

node of Tawara or the auriculoventricular node or atrioventricular node (A V node). From the node of Tawara the impulse traverses another bundle of specialized tissue, the *auriculoventricular bundle* known as the *bundle of His* which is the bridge that conducts the impulse from the auricles to the ventricles, causing ventricular contraction. The bundle of His begins at the A V node, it passes forward in the interauricular septum then turns downward and at the upper margin of the interventricular septum divides into two branches: a *left branch* that passes into the left ventricle and a *right branch* that passes into



sound of the heart or the *apical sound* can also be heard at the base but it is not as intense as at the apex. A *third heart sound* is occasionally heard in mid diastole in thin chested young adults and children. It is short and very faint

with the apical impulse (because of the heart's impact against the chest wall at that point) (b) it represents the systole of the heart as it occurs during the first part of the heart cycle due to ventricular contraction and auriculoventricular valve

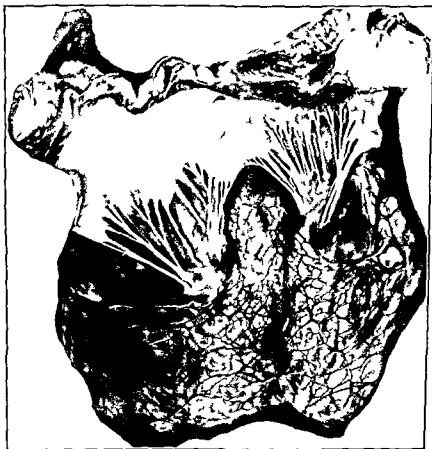


Fig 30—Conductive system left ventricle (Courtesy Dr Eiman Philadelphia General Hospital.)

**First Sound (Systole)** This is produced by three factors (1) The contraction of the right and left ventricles (muscular sound) (2) the closure and sudden stretching of the mitral and tricuspid valves and (3) to a lesser extent the impact of the heart against the chest wall

The characteristics of the first sound are (a) It is best heard over and occurs

closure and (c) the following attributes are not ceable

Quality	Loud
Pitch	Low
Intensity	Booming
Duration	Long

The first sound may be represented by the syllable *lubb*

**Second Sound (Diastole)** This is caused by the simultaneous closure and

sudden tension of both semilunar valves (aortic and pulmonic), it occurs at the very beginning of ventricular diastole, therefore following the first sound after a short pause. The only factor, therefore,

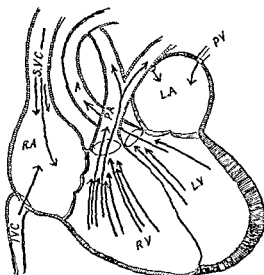


Fig 31—Systole

If the "pulmonic sound" is to be investigated, the pulmonic area (second interspace to the left of sternum) should be listened to, that part of the second sound which is produced by the closure of the pulmonic semilunar valve will be heard over that area.

It should be thoroughly understood that in the heart's cycle there is but one first sound (that caused by the closure of the mitral and tricuspid valves plus muscle sound and the impact of the heart against the chest wall) and only one second sound, that caused by the closure of the pulmonic and aortic valves. When reference is made to the aortic second sound or to the pulmonic second sound, it is not meant to infer that there is a first pulmonic or a first aortic sound.

concerned in the production of this sound is "valvular," and is recognized by its

Quality	Snappy
Intensity	Not very loud
Pitch	High
Duration	Short

The second sound may be represented by the syllable "tup." The closure of both the aortic and pulmonic valves produces only one sound and is heard at the apex following the first sound, this is known as the second heart sound, but each factor of the second sound may be auscultated individually when it is desired to determine the condition of either valve (aortic or pulmonic).

By listening to the aortic area (second interspace to the right of the sternum) that portion of the second sound which is produced by the closure of the aortic semilunar valves can be heard, this is known as the *aortic second sound*.

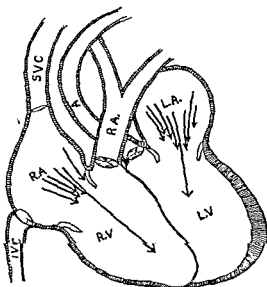


Fig 32—Diastole. Blood flows simultaneously from both auricles into their respective ventricles.

Such reference can be thus explained. By *pulmonic second sound* is meant that part of the second sound of the heart which is caused by the closure of the pulmonic valve. *Aortic second sound* refers to that part of the second sound

which is caused by the closure of the aortic valve. It is just a splitting up of the second heart sound into its component parts.

At various periods of life, even in perfect health, the aortic second sound differs somewhat in its intensity from the pulmonic sound. During childhood and up to the age of 15 or 16 years, the pulmonic sound is somewhat louder than the aortic, because of the greater elasticity of the lung, and consequent greater intra-

the cycle will appear reversed, instead of hearing *lubb-tup — lubb tup — lubb tup, tup lubb — tup-lubb — tup-lubb* will be heard.

**Third Sound** When a very young child is turned toward the left side, a third heart sound may at times be heard in the third or fourth intercostal space, immediately following the second sound. Because this sound occurs very early in diastole, it has sometimes been termed *protodiastolic*. It is probably caused by

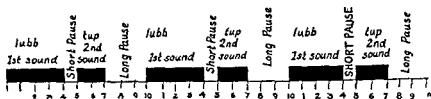


Fig. 33—Relative lengths of first sound, short pause (intracyclic), second sound and long pause.

pulmonary pressure. From 16 to 35, both sounds are of equal intensity, while after 35 or 40 the aortic sound is somewhat louder and increases in its intensity as age advances, because of greater and constantly increasing systemic circulatory pressure.

The difference between the first and second sounds of the heart may be summed up as follows:

#### FIRST SOUND

- Low, booming low pitch and longer duration.
- Occurs synchronously with the apical and carotid impulse during the systole.
- Occurs after the longer pause.
- Is muscular and valvular in origin.
- Is represented by the syllable "lubb."

When listening to the heart, the beginner must be careful to determine which is the first and which the second sound, for should the second sound be mistaken for the first because of its higher pitch,

a rebound of a high tension valve. Norris states that in "90 per cent of all children under 10 years of age the pulmonic sound is the louder (the artery is more superficial) and in about 10 per cent of the cases, a splitting of the second sound can be recognized."

Elsewhere Norris states, concerning the "third sound," that it can "occasionally be heard, especially in children, in

#### SECOND SOUND

- Short, high pitched snappy sound.
- Occurs after the apical and carotid impulses or precedes them during diastole.
- Occurs after the shorter pause.
- Is only valvular in origin.
- Is represented by the syllable "tup."

the left lateral decubitus and (if the heart action is slow) as a faint echo of the second sound. It occurs early in diastole, about 0.1 second after the second sound, and when sufficiently marked, causes the

protodiastolic gallop rhythm. It is synchronous with the normal early diastolic elevation of the apex in a cardiogram, and with the descending limb of the 'v' wave of the jugular pulse." He also quotes Thayer as believing that the third sound is due to the sudden tension of the mitral valve, which occurs with the first rush of blood at the beginning of diastole.

**Pauses:** During health and under usual conditions, the interval or pause between the first and the second heart sounds, and that between the second sound and the next succeeding first, are of a definite length. The pause preceding the first sound (the interval between the second sound of one cycle and the first sound of the succeeding cycle) is about three times longer than is the pause separating the first sound from the second sound in the same cycle. The short pause is meso- and telesystolic in time. The long pause is diastolic in time.

In infants both intervals are of equal length.

**Nonpathologic Variations of the Heart Sounds** Within certain limits, the heart sounds may be somewhat modified. For example, in the recumbent position they are not so loud as in the erect or forward leaning position. In very corpulent people, or in those having thick chest walls, the heart sounds heard will be weak and distant, while, on the other hand, thin people with very thin chest walls will present louder heart sounds. The sounds may become temporarily louder because of excitement, nervousness or other stimulation, and temporarily fainter in hysteria or suddenly lowered blood pressure, such as occurs in hemorrhage and fainting. Athletes usually present somewhat louder

heart sounds because of hypertrophy of the heart.

Children have louder heart sounds than adults, the rate is more rapid and the muscular quality of the first sound is less pronounced. In infants and young children, the first sound closely approximates the second, and they follow each other in rapid succession, resembling very much the ticking of a watch, this is termed *embryocardia*.

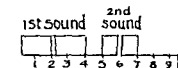


Fig. 34—Reduplication of first and second heart sounds

**Reduplication** A reduplication of the first sound is often heard at the apex, immediately before the second sound, a reduplication of the second sound may be heard either at the base or the apex, it is of rather uncommon occurrence. Norris believes reduplication of the first sound to be due mainly to delayed contraction of the papillary muscles, or, less frequently, to a late production of the vascular element (expulsion tone), especially if the presphygmic period is prolonged. Reduplication of the second sound is attributed by him to abnormal pressure relations and markedly asynchronous closure of the aortic and pulmonary valves, or to conditions hastening or preventing a sudden increase in tension of the semilunar leaflets—stiff valves.

Some observers consider such reduplications as nonpathologic, a belief not entirely concurred in. While a patient may not, at the time of examination, present any other evidences of cardiac disturbance, sooner or later such a heart is certain to present distinct evidences of disease.

**Split Heart Sounds** The first or second heart sound may be split. Splitting of the first sound is more frequent and is consistent with perfect health. When present, a split first sound is best heard at the height of inspiration and the beginning of expiration; the heart sound being somewhat prolonged and the first part of it roughened. This is followed by a momentary loss of quality and a sudden recovery; the sounds resemble the syllables *lur eb tup lur eb tup*.

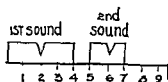


Fig 35—Split first and second heart sounds

A split second sound is rarely encountered; when present it is best heard at the end of expiration and the beginning of inspiration. The split second sound is often heard at the apex in mitral stenosis; it is attributed by some clinicians to vibrations produced by a rigidly constricted mitral valve as the blood passes over it on entering the left ventricle.

A prolongation of the first sound is often noted in young people who present a slow heartbeat; the climax or end of that sound is sometimes considered as a third heartbeat but in reality it represents the final effort of the strong and slowly contracting left ventricle to rid itself of the remaining blood in its chambers. This spurt is often visible and palpable as a distant impulse which is intensified during expiration.

### Pathologic Heart Sounds

Pathologically the heart sounds, one or both, may be altered in (I) Quality (II) intensity or loudness (III) pitch (IV) duration and (V) rhythm.

**I Quality** As has been mentioned, the quality of the first sound is distinctly booming while that of the second sound is snappy.

An increased booming quality to the first sound indicates greater strength of the muscular element and is found in all cases of ventricular hypertrophy because the muscle being bigger and stronger causes a predominance of its characteristic sound.

A high pitched snappy sound at the apex displacing the booming quality means that the first sound is approaching the quality of the second. The second sound is possessed of its peculiar quality because it is a purely valvular sound; therefore, if the first sound assumes that quality it indicates that only the valvular element of the first sound is being heard, the muscular quality being either in abeyance or entirely wanting. A high pitched snappy first sound which resembles the second when heard in a rapidly beating heart is termed *embryo cordia*.

A high pitched snappy sound when heard at the apex is indicative of myocardial degeneration (fatty or fibroid), dilatation of the ventricles and may also be heard during the course of exhaustive fevers. The reason for a high pitched snappy sound in these conditions is that the heart muscle is too weak or too much thinned out to contribute its proper element to the first sound.

The second sound instead of being snappy and high pitched may have a *flopping* quality and be rather low pitched. Since it is known that the snappiness of the second sound is caused by a certain state of tension of the semilunar valves, the fact that this snap is wanting means that the tension of the valves has diminished. A *flopping* sec-

and sound is found in conditions which produce a loss of elasticity of the semilunar valves, as is met with in degeneration of the aortic and pulmonary orifices, or in overstretching of the aortic and pulmonary orifices, thereby preventing the valve leaflets from meeting and resisting the blood current. This is often found in aortic stenosis and regurgitation, or in pulmonic stenosis and regurgitation. Aortic stenosis will cause a very much subdued second sound at the aortic orifice, and pulmonary stenosis will have the same effect upon the pulmonic area, because of diminished tension.

*Metallic quality* of the second sound is heard in cases which produce accentuation of that sound, such as chronic aortitis, and also when a pulmonary cavity (under tension) is situated near the heart, or pneumopericardium, in the presence of a left-sided pneumothorax, and at times an inflated lung will help to transmit the second sound more clearly and thus add to its metallic quality.

**II Intensity—III Pitch:** One or both sounds may be increased or diminished in intensity.

**Increased Intensity of Both Sounds:** Both sounds will be louder in

(a) *Cardiac hypertrophy*, because the heart muscle is stronger and the cavities of the heart are larger, they accommodate a greater amount of blood at each heart's cycle, the increased strength of the heart muscle causes a greater muscular sound, and the increased quantity of blood in the chambers produces more tension upon the valves, with a consequent accentuation of the valvular element of the heart sounds. Having an intensified muscular and valvular sound

therefore, a very loud first and second sound are heard.

(b) *Exophthalmic goiter* because of increased thyrotoxin in the blood, before the occurrence of myocarditis, cardiac action is stronger.

(c) *Certain anemias* in which because of the poor quality of the blood a greater quantity is required to satisfy the needs of the body, therefore, the heart has to work harder to meet the deficiency.

(d) *Excitement* (nervous stimulation) because of stimulation of the sympathetic nervous system.

(e) *Fevers*—because of toxins and stimulation of the heat-producing center, the heart often works faster and with greater force.

(f) *Stimulation by certain drugs*, e. g., alcohol, tea, coffee, etc.

(g) *Toxemias*, though no hypertrophy be present, the louder heart sounds are caused by the rapid rate.

(h) *Consolidation of the lungs*, because the heart has to work against increased resistance, and also because of the presence of toxins in the blood.

(i) *When the lung adjacent to the heart is retracted*, an apparent increase in the loudness of the heart will be noted, the buffer being removed, the heart sounds are transmitted more readily, therefore, they sound louder than normal.

**Diminished Intensity of Both Sounds:** Aside from extraneous causes, such as thickened chest wall, pericardial effusion and emphysematous lung covering the heart, the weakening of the heart sounds takes place in all weak heart conditions. Diminished intensity may, therefore, be found—

(a) In *poisoning* from various drugs.

(b) In *gas asphyxiation*.

(c) After *overexertion*.

- (d) After hemorrhage
- (e) In acute dilatation of the heart
- (f) Before death—in a previously good heart
- (g) In some febrile diseases
- (h) When degeneration of the heart muscle exists
- (i) In coronary thrombosis
- (j) In certain nervous diseases

**Increased Intensity of the First Sound:** Conditions that produce increased intensity of both sounds are largely responsible for accentuation of the first heart sound. There are two varieties of accentuation of the first sound.

1 When the systolic sound is very loud and booming in character, of long duration and low pitched, it indicates that the muscular quality is predominating over the valvular (found in all cases of cardiac hypertrophy)

2 The second variety presents a short snappy, sharp sound of a higher pitch. This usually occurs in a heart that has previously been hypertrophied, but is undergoing dilatation, the valvular sound predominating over the muscular quality.

High pitched short, snappy heart sounds are frequently seen in students, soldiers, and others who after a short period of strenuous physical exertion have settled down to a quiet and generally inactive life. Various cardiac neuroses, such as neurocirculatory asthenia, present the same quality and pitch, as does also the so-called 'tobacco heart'. If the accentuation is heard only over the tricuspid area, the mitral area being unaffected, it indicates right ventricular hypertrophy. Hypertrophy of this chamber very rarely presents the dull booming sound heard in left ventricular hypertrophy, chiefly because the right ventricle has a weaker muscle wall so

that the accentuation is usually of a 'flopping' character, and, as a rule, lasts but a short time before the weakening of the muscle of the right ventricle is followed by dilatation with the consequent murmur. It is found in all cases of mitral stenosis and other conditions that increase the intrapulmonary pressure (i.e., emphysema, etc.)

**Diminished Intensity of the First Sound.** This occurs as a result of myocardial weakness. The ventricular walls, not being strong enough to contract properly and with sufficient force, produce a sound that is weak, feeble and lacking in individuality. An enfeebled first sound is heard in cases of myocarditis, fatty degeneration of the heart, dilatation atrophy and during the course of wasting fevers.

A strong booming first sound that has suddenly become 'floppy' in character, is the first sign of oncoming ventricular dilatation or degeneration.

**Apparent weakness** of the first sound is found in cases of emphysema, pleural effusion, pericardial effusion and generalized thick chest wall. In these conditions the heart muscle is unaffected but the sound is prevented from being properly heard by the interposition of fluid or thickened tissue.

**Accentuation of the Diastolic Sound** (second sound). The diastolic or second heart sound is heard at its best at the base of the heart. If the second sound is louder at the apex than the first sound, it indicates ventricular weakness and auricular hypertrophy, although at times—even without existing auricular hypertrophy—the second sound may be stronger than the first. This is particularly true when the ventricles are so weak that the normal auricular sound seems strong in comparison. In

creased intensity of the second sound is due either to hypertrophy of one or both auricles, or to increased intraauricular tension

**Accentuation of the Second Pulmonic Sound.** Accentuation of the second pulmonic sound can be recognized by its peculiar quality, which is characteristically loud, high pitched and abrupt. This is heard in cases of mitral regurgitation and stenosis and in conditions which result in congestion of the lungs, such as hypertrophy of the right ventricle and pulmonary tuberculosis, pulmonary emphysema, pleural effusion, bronchopneumonia or lobar pneumonia.

Any condition that will produce increased intrapulmonary tension will cause an accentuated second pulmonic sound, because the blood in the lungs, being under greater pressure than is normally the case, the pulmonic valves snap and shut quickly with greater force and under greater tension in order to prevent a reflux, and this results in accentuation of the second sound. Mitral regurgitation and stenosis produce accentuation of the second pulmonic sound because the defect in the mitral valve gives rise to greater intrapulmonary tension, with consequent right ventricular hypertrophy.

**Accentuation of the Second Aortic Sound.** This condition is found in cases of increased systemic pressure and appears in disease of the peripheral circulation, hypertrophy of the left ventricle, disease of the kidneys or liver, arteriosclerosis, an atheromatous condition of, or near the aortic valve, or aneurysm of the aorta. Disease of the peripheral circulation will bring about accentuation of the second aortic sound, because the blood in the aorta, being under greater

pressure, causes increased resistance to the closure of the aortic valves. In order to prevent reflux of blood, the aortic valves close with a snap as do the pulmonic valves under similar conditions. The sudden quick closure, added to the greater tension of the valve leaflets, produces this accentuation.

At times, when listening over the base of the heart, but one sound can be heard. The examiner should be painstakingly accurate in locating this sound, as often, an accentuated second sound with a weak first sound when heard at the base, will give an auditory impression of only one sound occurring at long intervals, and unless the examiner is careful, this second sound may be mistaken for the first.

**Weakening of the Second Sound.** If increased intraauricular pressure produces accentuation of the second sound it follows that decreased intraauricular tension must produce weakening of the same sound. Weakening of the second sound at the base is a rather rare condition, as the intrapulmonary pressure is seldom below normal so that any disease of the lung has a tendency to raise, rather than to lower, the pressure within the lesser circulation.

**Weakening of the Pulmonic Second Sound:** After a previous accentuation, this is a danger signal indicating weakness and dilatation of the right auricle. Pulmonary stenosis and regurgitation, and at times tricuspid regurgitation, when associated with right ventricular weakness, will cause a feeble pulmonic second sound. A weakening of the second pulmonic sound during lobar pneumonia offers a grave prognosis, calling for active cardiac stimulation.

**Weakened Second Aortic Sound.** This results from decreased pressure in the systemic circulation, it may occur in



general vasomotor relaxation and after severe hemorrhage or serious diarrhea.

In aortic stenosis, and often, in aortic regurgitation, resistance to the systemic circulation is, to a great extent, wanting, because of the crippled condition of the valves. The result of diminished valvular resistance is a feeble second sound, or an entire absence of that sound. In mitral regurgitation and stenosis the aortic second sound is sometimes weakened, on account of insufficient tension in the aorta. *Pulmonary regurgitation and stenosis* may also be productive of an enfeebled second aortic sound.

**IV Duration.** In a heart acting normally the two sounds and the long pause follow each other in three-quarter or triple time,  $\pm \epsilon$ ,

First sound (one)	Second sound (two)
	Long pause (three)
First sound (one)	Second sound (two)
	Long pause (three)

However rapidly a normal heart may act, this rhythm is preserved, in disease there may be an alteration in the relative length of the heart sounds or the pause. The following variations are noted.

**Embryocardia.** This is so called because it resembles the fetal heart sounds. The first and second pauses are of equal length, the sound resembling the regular rapid tick of a short pendulum (*tick tick*). A second variety is an undue prolongation of the first sound, followed by an alarmingly long pause. This may occur either as a result of digitals poisoning (long diastole), or as the effort of an overworked heart, too weak to continue its labor, seen in severe myocarditis, or heart block.

**Reduplication.** Practically speaking the first and second sounds of the heart are made up of two firsts and two seconds (two semilunar and two auriculo-

ventricular), but they are blended by the synchronous closure of the left and right hearts. If, for any reason, the valves are prevented from closing simultaneously, we may hear three or even four sounds instead of but two sounds. Such a condition may be due to faulty innervation, or degeneration of that part of the heart which transmits the impulse, this is quite common in myocardial degeneration and in chronic interstitial nephritis, as well as in mitral stenosis after failure of compensation.

### Rhythm

The normal cardiac rhythm is initiated at the sinoauricular node whence it passes along the sinus, sweeps over the ventricular walls to the A-V node, then traverses the bundle of His, that is, the A-V bundle, and follows its two main divisions into the right and left ventricles. This procedure occurs at regular intervals and at a definite rate per minute.

Auscultation of the heart at the apex beat reveals a systolic sound followed by a short pause, which is followed by the diastolic sound, this constitutes a single heart cycle. Then follows a longer pause after which the heart cycle is again heard. In the normal, such cycles occur uninterruptedly at a definite rate per minute, with certain slight variations under various circumstances. The heart rate in adult males, in the sitting position, is between 70 and 76—usually about 72—per minute, it is faster when standing and after physical and mental exertion and often after a full meal. The heart rate is slower in the recumbent position, when thoroughly at rest, during sleep and in the aged. In women, the heart rate is somewhat faster than in men, and it is still faster in children. Each systolic heart sound is accompanied by an apical thrust and a pulse wave

detectable at the wrist, carotid artery or any superficial artery

### Electrocardiographic Interpretation of Heart Action

The study of cardiac diseases, particularly those affecting the heart muscle, has received great impetus from the aid

On the electrocardiogram the first sound of the heart or the systolic sound corresponds to the combined deflections of the R and T or the Q R-S-T complex. The thrust accompanying the second heart sound or the diastolic sound is not felt in any of the arteries but may be felt in the jugular veins. At the

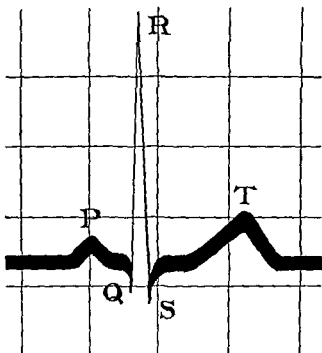


Fig. 36—The primary electrocardiographic wave (schematic drawing). Normally the first evidence of heart activity arises in the auricle, and it causes a small rounded elevation in the record which is known as the auricular wave, designated by the letter P. Shortly afterward the ventricles become active and as the impulse spreads through the ventricular muscle there arise a series of waves known as the ventricular group designated by the letters Q R S T. After a period of heart rest, during which the record is simply a flat base line the auricular wave P again arises and the cardiac cycle is repeated. This simple succession of events rhythmically recurs in the actual heart record.

of the electrocardiograph. This instrument has been the means of simplifying and explaining many pathologic conditions of the heart muscle, either hitherto wholly unknown or not fully understood. The arrhythmias, in particular, have been extensively investigated and properly classified according to their origin and mode of production. For technic of electrocardiography SEE p 1046.

wrist and over the carotids it is marked as a negative period. The diastolic sound corresponds to the P wave on the electrocardiogram. The long pause between each cycle is lengthened when the heart is slow and is shortened when the heart rate is fast. In the electrocardiogram this long pause is represented by the waveless space between the T wave and the P wave of the next

cycle The short pause or the inter cyclic pause is represented by the short space between the P wave and the left limb of the R wave In the electrocardiogram the impulses as well as their rate of conduction are indicated by distinct waves which occupy a definite time in their passage from one part of the heart to the other

The P wave represents the spread of the wave over the auricles The summit of the P wave occurs when the impulse has reached the A V node The interval between the beginning of the P wave to the base of the right limb (Q) of the R wave (P R interval) represents the time consumed by the impulse in traveling from the auricles to the ventricles Normally this interval occupies no more than two tenths of a second The R and T waves represent the ventricular contraction

The R wave (ventricular wave) appears as a tall spikelike prominent curve in the electrocardiogram and should be directed upward in the first three leads and downwards in the fourth lead Its greatest amplitude is usually attained in lead II being from 10 to 20 millimeters The R wave is extremely short measuring from 0.03 of a second to 0.1 of a second The foot of the R wave beginning at Q and ending at S is what is known as the Q R S interval

The distance from the base of the right R line (Q) to the base of the left R line (S) is about one tenth of a second and from the Q line to the end of the T wave the ventricular impulse is about 43 hundredths of a second The duration of the T wave in the young is about 27 hundredths of a second in the old the T wave may be flattened out In disease of the heart various changes

occur both in the appearance of the waves and their rate of conduction

**Pathologic Variations of the Waves** *The P Wave* The P wave is prominent in mitral stenosis and auricular hypertrophy It is often bifurcated in mitral stenosis because of the disproportionate size of the two auricles

Lead I



Lead II



Lead III



Lead IV

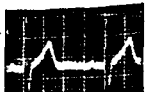


Fig. 37—The four leads. Generally in Lead III the R wave is directed upwards. In this Lead III the R wave is directed downward. The T wave is triphasic (not altogether normal)

It is prolonged when the excitation wave is interfered with in its passage by a hypertrophied or damaged muscle The P wave is absent and is replaced by a number of fine oscillations in auricular fibrillation it is distended or deflected downwards when the impulses arise in an abnormal focus and travels an abnormal course Lengthening of the P R interval indicates delayed conductivity

through the bundle of His (A-V bundle) Shortening of the P R interval may be due to the impulse's arising in the A V node instead of the S A node

**The R Wave:** The R wave points upwards in lead I and downward in lead III, in left axis deviation (left ven-

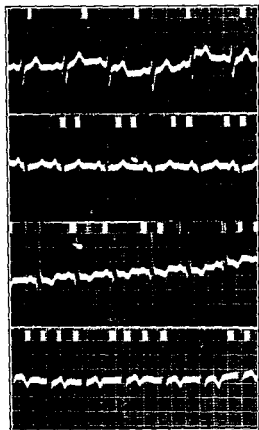


Fig 38—Right Axis Deviation (Right ventricular preponderance) (Courtesy Dr H K Mohler)

tricular preponderance) It points downwards in lead I and upwards in lead III, in right axis deviation (right ventricular preponderance) In myocardial damage the R wave may be shortened or lengthened splintered or notched, M'd or W'd

**The Q-R S Complex** Widening of the base of the R wave (Q R S complex) indicates heart block either of the

right or left bundle branches In complete heart block all waves are delayed Notching of the R wave is found in myocardial damage and in coronary disease.

**The T Wave** This is inverted or flattened in severe myocarditis, in digitalis poisoning, anorexia and other toxic states The T wave is more prominent in the young and vigorous, particularly during or soon after muscular exertion It is flattened in the old, and often in arteriosclerotics An inverted T wave in lead III may be consistent with good health Its significance in an otherwise normal person is not known

### Arrhythmia\*

#### (Disturbance of the Heartbeat)

Disturbance in the rhythm of the heart is manifested by heart rates that are either slower or faster than normal, or by alteration of the sequence of "systolic sound, short pause, diastolic sound and long pause" The heart sounds thus fail to follow a normal cycle and assume various abnormal patterns or irregularities Many of these irregularities can be diagnosed by physical signs and nearly all of them show their peculiarities on the electrocardiogram

Disturbance in the rhythm of the heart or arrhythmia may be caused by various organic diseases and functional disorders which either damage the heart muscle so that it cannot conduct or respond to the normal impulses, or the impulses which initiate the heart's contractions fail to arise at their normal location or fail to traverse their normal route Disturbance in the rate and often in the rhythm of the heart may also be caused by vagus and sympathetic influence

\* For more complete discussion of arrhythmias see page 510

The arrhythmias for convenience are here divided into three groups

I Those associated with rapid heart action (Tachycardia)

II Those associated with slow heart action (Bradycardia)

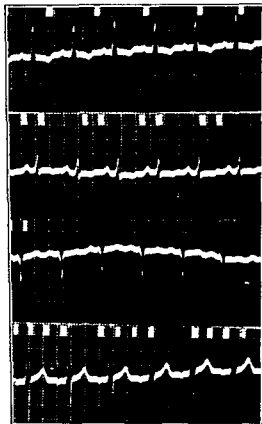


Fig. 39—Left Axis Deviation (Left ventricular preponderance) (Courtesy Dr H. K. Mohler)

III Those in which there is an irregularity of rate, rhythm and volume.

I **Tachycardia** (rapid heart action) Rapid though regular heart action is of three varieties (1) Sinus tachycardia, (2) paroxysmal tachycardia, and (3) auricular flutter

1 **Sinus Tachycardia** This consists of rapid though regular heart action, ranging from 80 to 140 or more per min

ute The rate is increased by psychic disturbance or physical exertion, and may be reduced by physical and mental rest This condition is as a rule due to the effect on the sinoauricular node by either vagus depression or sympathetic stimulation This type of tachycardia is seen in (a) Physiologic reaction to excitement, anxiety, exertion, pain, hemorrhage, shock and fevers (b) Reaction to food and drugs as alcohol tea, coffee, tobacco, epinephrine, strychnine, atropine, thyroid and other drugs that either stimulate the sympathetic or paralyze the vagus (c) Thyrotoxicosis, where the pulse rate becomes easily accelerated, but does not return to normal on rest or during sleep (d) Neurocirculatory asthenia in which condition acceleration of the heart rate is more instantaneous and requires less provocation than in normal individuals though the provocative agents are the same in both (e) Reaction to toxins in certain of the infectious diseases and fevers, myocarditis and certain types of heart failure

2 **Paroxysmal Tachycardia** This is characterized by the sudden onset of paroxysms of rapid heart action of regular rhythm The rate may vary from 120 to 320 per minute and the paroxysm may last from a few minutes to several hours rarely several days

**Etiology** It may be due to abnormal irritability of the heart and is brought about by various exciting factors such as fatigue, tobacco, alcohol, digitalis poisoning, sudden exertion, indigestion and anxiety There are three types of paroxysmal tachycardia

(a) **Auricular** This is the commonest and the least important, it occurs in otherwise normal hearts

(b) **Ventricular** This type is usually serious, it occurs infrequently and is

associated with heart damage and may cause pulsus alternans

(c) *Auriculoventricular Nodal* This type is very rare and comparatively benign

The various types of paroxysmal tachycardia may be recognized by electrocardiographic study. The heart rate is not influenced by rest or by exertion.

3 *Auricular Flutter* This consists of a rapid regular rhythm or a regularly occurring irregularity. The auricular rate may be only as fast as the ventricular rate but is usually 2 or 3 times as fast. This causes a 1 1 1 2 or 1 3 block. This condition is usually associated with heart damage. The rapid impulses in their circus movement along the auricular walls are not transmitted at the same rate to the ventricles. An accurate diagnosis is made by electrocardiographic study. The heart rate may vary from 100 to 200 per minute and is not influenced by rest or by exertion.

II *Bradycardia* (Slow though regular heart rate). This is of three types (1) Sinoauricular (2) auriculoventricular nodal rhythm and (3) auriculoventricular block.

1 *Sinoauricular Bradycardia* This is due to vagus influence on the sinoauricular node. The rate varies from 30 to 60 per minute. The rhythm is usually regular though sinus arrhythmia is occasionally associated with it. This condition is not serious. It occurs as follows: (a) Normally in some individuals and in the aged. (b) during sleep or rest. (c) it may be induced by carotid or eyeball pressure. (d) by fright. (e) extreme cold. (f) as the result of intracranial pressure. (g) accompanying certain diseases as jaundice, myxedema, mumps, typhoid fever and at times during convalescence from influenza and

during the puerperium, and (h) as a reaction to certain drugs such as opium, digitalis and physostigmine.

2 *Auriculoventricular Nodal Rhythm* This is rather rare. The A V node controls both the auricles and the ventricles. When no stimuli pass from the sinus node to the auricle (sinus block) the heart rate is generally slow about 40 per minute. This may be induced by carotid or eyeball pressure. If the A V node is irritated so that its impulses are propagated faster than those of the sinus node the heart rate is fast. This may be temporarily induced by large doses of atropine.

3 *Auriculoventricular Block* In complete block the auricular impulses do not traverse the bundle of His; therefore the ventricles originate their own rhythm. The pulse rate may vary from 20 to 40 per minute. In partial heart block the pulse rate varies. The block may occur in the A V bundle or in bundle branches. Heart block is usually an indication of a diseased myocardium (SEE p 515).

III *The Irregularities as to Rate, Rhythm and Volume* These irregularities may occur with a rapid or a slow heart action. They include: (1) Sinus arrhythmia. (2) extrasystoles (premature beat). (3) auricular fibrillation, (4) auricular flutter. (5) auriculoventricular block and (6) pulsus alternans.

1 *Sinus Arrhythmia* This is a functional condition found in the young and is of little pathologic significance though occasionally it may be associated with heart damage. The rate is rapid during inspiration and slows during expiration.

2 *Extrasystoles (premature beat, premature contraction)* The stimulus arises outside the sinoauricular node. The irregularities may occur at regular intervals; they may be many or few.

These irregularities are more pronounced when the heart rate is slow. Extrasystoles may be (a) auricular (b) ventricular or (c) auriculoventricular in origin.

(a) *Auricular Extrasystole* This is not very common. The premature contraction of the auricle results from an abnormal stimulus arising in the wall of the auricle before the normal stimulus arises from the sinus. The premature contraction of the auricle is usually followed by a premature contraction of the ventricle. The compensatory pause is not noticeable because following the premature beat a normal impulse arises in the node which causes the normal auricular-ventricular contractions at normal intervals. The electrocardiogram will show a normal P-R-T sequence but of short duration; the T and P waves being quite close to each other. Occasionally auricular extrasystole may cause auriculoventricular block.

(b) *Ventricular Extrasystole* This is the commonest arrhythmia. Here the abnormal focus or stimulus arises in a ventricle; therefore the ventricles contract before the normal impulse from the auricles can reach them and that impulse is wasted. The ventricles do contract when the next normal auricular impulse reaches them. The interval then between the premature contraction and the next normal contraction is decidedly lengthened, causing a comparatively long pause (the compensatory pause). The premature contraction is not as strong as a normal contraction; therefore the beat following it is forcible.

(c) *Auriculoventricular Nodal Extrasystole* This occurs when the stimulus arises in the auriculoventricular functional tissue and passes to both the auricle and ventricle so that they may

contract simultaneously or one may precede the other. There is usually no compensatory pause unless the premature beat is an escape of the ventricle.

3 *Auricular Fibrillation* This type of arrhythmia is decidedly irregular in time, volume and rate. The cardiac rate is usually fast though it may be slowed by digitalis or quinidine. The volume is variable and the force changeable. The faster the heart rate the more pronounced is the irregularity. There is usually a pulse deficit; i.e. the heart rate is faster than the pulse rate. (For further detail and electrocardiogram See Fig 28 No 12 pp 512 and 520)

4 *Auricular Flutter* This may follow or precede auricular fibrillation. The rate is fast and the beats may occur in regular sequence or they may be irregular. In both fibrillation and flutter the impulse circulates continuously in the auricle more rapidly in fibrillation than in flutter. Many of the impulses fail to reach the ventricles; others are rudimentary.

5 *Auriculoventricular Block* In complete block the auricles and ventricles have an independent excitation area; therefore they beat independent of each other. The pulse rate may be very slow (20 to 40 per minute) but is usually regular. The auricular impulse fails to reach the ventricles; therefore they are obliged to initiate their own contractions. In partial block or in branch bundle block the rhythm is often irregular.

6 *Pulsus Alternans* This is a condition in which a full pulse or a strong heartbeat alternates with a weak pulse or a weak heartbeat. The rate may be rapid or slow and the alternations are regular. This condition is found in severe myocardial weakness.

# CONDENSED CHART OF HEART IRREGULARITIES

Irregularity	Order of Frequency	Clinical Recognition	Significance	Treatment
Sinus Arrhythmia	Childhood Excessive tobacco Functional nervous disturbances.	Rate increases on inspiration and decreases on expiration No alternation in rate when breath is held	Not pathologic Physiologic in childhood	None during childhood Sedation for nervous disturbances.
Premature Contractions	Advancing years Acute infections Digitalis coupling Toxemias	Occur usually when patient is at rest Heart attacks in advance of the anticipated interval, then follow a compensatory pause Prolonged diastole Irregularity greatly lessens or disappears when heart rate is accelerated by emotion or exercise	Occasional premature contractions compatible with health Progressively increasing premature contractions indicate myocardial involvement Multiple premature contractions indicate myocardial damage	Cardiac drugs not indicated Seek for and if possible remove systemic cause or focal infection. Rest Subsequent studies to determine whether progressive in nature
True Paroxysmal Tachycardia	Hyperthyroidism Neurocirculatory asthenia Neuralgia	Rapid rate absolutely abrupt in onset and absolutely abrupt in termination often without demonstrable immediate cause	Rarely die during attack Live through successive attacks for years.	Rest to conserve demands on heart muscle already ready inefficient as a circulatory supply, due to ventricle contracting on insufficient content of blood Seek for possible neuropathic cause Pressure on right vagus nerve in carotid sheath is effective in aborting attack perhaps in 30 per cent of cases. Mecholyl is more effective
Auricular Flutter	Myocardial fatigue Myocardial exhaustion Myocardial change	May be suspected when a rapid pulse of 180 or more is suddenly halved in rate Definite clinical recognition impossible, electrocardiographic study necessary	Acutely induced disturbance of auricular musculature	Absolute rest Digitalis changes auricular flutter to auricular fibrillation after which normal rhythm ensues.
Auricular Fibrillation	Acute rheumatic fever Acute infections Cardiosclerosis. Chronic infections Exopthalmic goiter	Fibril- lation Tand 1 Absolutely irregular pulse 2 Irregular in rate in rhythm and in volume 3 Pulse deficit 4 Irregularly increases on exercise 5 Embolism, circulatory failure 6 Central failure, husky voice 7 cerebral congestion	When acutely induced may be fleeting and never return When corrected by drugs marked likelihood of chronic form recurring upon slight provocation	Absolute rest imperative until pulse deficit is reduced Digitalis brilliantly effective when given in sufficient dose Strophantodus. Dangerous if given immediately following course of digitalis. Venesection for emergency of circulatory collapse
Heart Block	Digitalis loose administration of Syphilis Diphtheria Acute infections	Strongly suggestive signs and symptoms are 1 Pulse rate of 50 or less 2 Sudden drop in pulse rate during course of illness or during convalescence from acute infection 3 Four or five waves in jugulars to one in the carotids 4 Auricular contractions which do not result in ventricular contractions in some instances be heard when ear is laid directly on upper left chest 5 Gallop rhythm and reduplication of heart sounds (bundle branch block) 6 Stokes Adams syndrome 7 Rate slows but trifling increase following vigorous exercise	A Lower grades such as anatomical block or dropped beats usually not serious but may be precursors of higher grade block B Toxic block May be fleeting and never return occurring during convalescence from exhausting or overexerting illness likely to prove promptly fatal C High grade blocks Grave heart involvement in which heart muscle has shared domestic with conduction system Usual life expectancy three years.	A Low grade no treatment other than curtailment of physical activities. Perilous to employ digitalis B Toxic block Epinephrine intravenously C High grade Atropine Lessen demands on heart muscle
Pulsus Alternans	Myocardial exhaustion Cardiosclerosis Protracted illness.	Every other pulse wave is of less volume than the preceding Look for a period of alternation following a premature contraction Slight pressure on brachial artery will obliterate weaker beats and thus cause sudden halving of rate at radial artery	Myocardial exhaustion Usually premonitory of the end of life	Supportive cardiac drugs in guarded dose

Modified from "Heart Affections Their Recognition and Treatment," by S Calvin Smith F. A Davis Co., Publishers, Philadelphia, Pa



### Functional Tests for Determining Cardiac Capacity and Reserve

Much stress is laid on examination for the diagnosis of a normal heart and the various deviations from the normal, so that one may recognize cardiac enlargement, various irregularities, murmurs and other diseases of the heart. Important as these examinations are, they often fail to reveal the cardiac reserve power, that is, the amount of reserve stored up in the heart muscle which permits it to respond to prolonged or unusual strain. It is important to gauge the functional capacity of the heart in those about to assume laborious occupations to which they are not accustomed, or in athletes to be chosen for specially strenuous or competitive tasks. Cardiac capacity tests are most important for patients convalescing from acute ailments, from acute myocardial disease, from coronary infarctions and from other conditions that cause cardiac embarrassments. In these the usual listening to the heartbeat, the mapping out of the size of the heart, the checking of the blood pressure, and even the securing of an electrocardiogram are inadequate for determining the functional or reserve capacity of the heart.

There are several groups into which tests of cardiac function may be divided. The following classification has been modified from Barton to show how the various tests are to be placed in these four categories:

*I Reaction to Muscular Exertion, Active or Passive, as a Basis for Estimating Cardiac Function* (a) The staircase test, (b) Graupner's test, (c) Mendelsohn's test, (d) Katzenstein's test, (e) Hertz's self-checking test, (f) Gymnastic resistance test, (g) The hold-

ing the breath test; (h) The venous pressure test, (i) the vital capacity of the lungs.

II Application of cardiac reflex estimation in determining heart function. Merklen's test.

III Estimation of sodium chloride elimination as a test of cardiac sufficiency. Vaquez-Digne test.

IV Modern clinical and instrumental methods of investigating cardiovascular conditions, their applicability to estimating cardiac function.

1 The sphygmomanometer as an index of cardiac function (work velocity ratio, sphygmobolometry, sphygmobolography, energometry, etc.)

2 Roentgenoscopy and roentgenography as indices of cardiac function.

3 Sphygmocardiography and electrocardiography, their relation to cardiac functional capacity.

### I Reaction to Muscular Exertion

In this type of test one must consider chiefly the rate of the pulse, the blood pressure (systolic and diastolic) and the area of cardiac dullness or the size of the heart (percussion, roentgenography). All these methods have the common defect in that individual differences will produce quite different results by the same tests, and that such factors as the state of the nervous system, the mode of life in regard to the amount of regular physical exertion undergone, the size and general muscular state and strength, may markedly influence the results obtainable. However, if proper allowance is made for such individual factors, all the tests are of value.

(a) *Selig's "Staircase Test"*: The pulse and the systolic pressure are taken and the patient is to ascend a flight of steps rapidly. The pulse and the systolic pressure are taken again after the

stair climbing. Normally there will be an increase of 20 beats per minute in the pulse, and the blood pressure will rise from 8 to 10 mm Hg. Insufficiency of the myocardium will increase the pulse rate to from 20 to 30 beats per minute, but the blood pressure rise will be slower, averaging about 6 mm Hg or less. This rise may be quickly followed by a fall below normal, or, on the other hand, there may be no preliminary rise at all. The length of time required for the pulse rate and systolic pressure to return to the normal may be taken as a measure of the amount of cardiac insufficiency present.

A modification of this test is the "hopping test," in which the patient is required to hop 20 to 50 paces on one foot, comparisons of pulse rate and blood pressure being made as in the staircase test. This test is not as satisfactory as the first, because in the hopping test the amount of work done can not be gauged with the same accuracy with which the amount of energy expended in climbing a flight of stairs, the exact height of which is known, can be measured. The amount of work done in foot pounds is equal to the weight of the individual in pounds divided by the number of feet ascended.

Patients obviously too ill to climb stairs or to hop may be given milder forms of exercise, such as walking across a room a certain number of times. Those in bed should have their exercise restricted to raising their arms several times, or turning in bed, or sitting up in bed or sitting on a chair placed near the bed. The amount of exertion is to be increased according to the obvious condition of the patient.

(b) *Graupner's Test*. It was observed by Graupner that when the pulse

rate has risen after exertion and again fallen to normal, the systolic pressure gradually rises to a maximum, usually reaching it in about six minutes, with a subsequent decline to normal which occupies about 18 to 20 minutes. If the heart is seriously weakened, this rise of blood pressure following the pulse rise, may be altogether absent, the pressure declining from the start, and thereafter gradually rising once more to normal. In healthy individuals the pulse will reach its maximum in from five to ten minutes. To perform this test, the patient is instructed to turn a wheel which is supplied with a brake and an adjustment for measuring the amount of energy expended. This specially designed apparatus is known as the Zuntz ergometer. The tests are repeated for several successive days, always at the same time of day, noting the pulse rate, blood pressure and size of the heart both before and after each test. The patient must not be excited in any way while undergoing the test, and should not be urged to exert himself to the point of exhaustion. The apparatus mentioned requires thigh muscles work, but other machines have been devised which make use only of the arm muscles. Graupner's investigations led him to conclude that if the blood pressure remains constant after the exercise, the heart muscle is sufficient. If the blood pressure falls after using the machine, there is some cardiac insufficiency present. If the blood pressure rises but soon returns to normal, there is compensatory sufficiency, but if the blood pressure rises, and then falls without any tendency to a subsequent rise, it demonstrates fatigue of the heart muscle. It was his belief that if the pulse is accelerated and the patient becomes "short of breath"

after he has done work amounting to the equivalent of from 45 to 300 kilograms, the heart is evidently insufficient. The ordinary bicycle, made stationary, will serve as a machine for testing cardiac capacity.

(c) *Mendelsohn's Test.* This test as performed by its originator, requires the use of the Gaertner ergostat, though any exercise such as stair climbing or hopping may be substituted. The pulse is carefully counted in the standing, sitting and recumbent postures, and the figures noted. This may be repeated several times so that an average may be estimated. After the performance of his given task, the patient immediately resumes the recumbent posture, and the examiner notes the time required for the pulse to return to the normal for that posture. Mendelsohn contended that unless there is a well marked difference between the pulse rate in the recumbent and erect position, the heart is incompetent. When resting after strain, the competent heart returns to normal at once. A disturbance of rate with failure to return immediately to normal following the expenditure of from 25 to 50 kilograms of work indicates cardiac insufficiency.

When a normal individual rises from the reclining to the standing position, the increase in the heart rate ought not to exceed 20 beats. Should it rise above 20 it may be assumed that the myocardium is insufficient. This is a simple test, and has considerable value, but sometimes it may be nullified by existing psychic influences and it has also been noted that a false increase often occurs in those preventing enteroptosis.

(d) *The Katzenstein Method.* In cases of cardiac insufficiency, Katzenstein found a lowering of the blood pres-

sure and a simultaneous increase in the pulse rate, both of which deviations from the normal appeared to maintain a proportionate relation to the incompetency of the heart muscle. The test consists of putting the patient in a reclining posture and taking the pulse rate and blood pressure. An assistant then applies pressure with his fingers for a period of from two and a half to five minutes in the groins over both femoral arteries or—if no assistant is to be had—an Esmarch bandage may be used, after which the pulse rate and blood pressure are again recorded. If the myocardium is sufficient the pulse rate will be found to be diminished, and the blood pressure will rise from 5 to 15 mm Hg. If the heart is enlarged, but still efficient, the pulse rate will diminish or remain unchanged, and the blood pressure will increase from 15 to 40 mm. Hg. If a moderate latent cardiac insufficiency exists blood pressure and pulse will remain unchanged or possibly the pulse rate will increase slightly. In greater cardiac insufficiency the pulse rate increases while the blood pressure sinks. Norris does not regard this test as of great value when used alone, but deems it useful as a corroboratory evidence. In severe cardiac weakness the performance of this test may occasionally be dangerous.

(e) *Hertz's Self-checking Test.* The patient is placed in a sitting posture and remains so until the pulse rate has become constant. He is then directed to contract the muscles of the hand and forearm with all his force, performing the motions slowly, paying strict attention to the performance and endeavoring to antagonize his movements as forcefully as possible. In healthy persons, the pulse rate is unaffected but

if the heart is weak the rate will be increased 5 to 20 beats a minute

(f) *Gymnastic Resistance Test:* This consists of noting how much exercise against resistance and for how long a time it may be performed by the patient before he shows definite signs of tiring. The rapidity of the respiration and pulse and also the blood pressure are noted

(g) *Holding the Breath Test:* The length of time the patient is able to hold his breath during rest and during certain exercises is noted. In the absence of pulmonary disease this test is of some value. The more severe the cardiac damage the shorter is the time the patient can hold his breath

(h) *The Venous Pressure Test:* This depends upon the occurrence of cyanosis and the degree of venous distention occurring during exertion. The weaker the myocardium the greater the cyanosis and venous distention (SEE p 447)

(i) *Vital Capacity of the Lungs:* Another fairly good test for cardiac reserve is the determination of the vital capacity of the lungs. A reduction of the vital capacity is an early sign of myocardial inadequacy

The test is carried out as follows. The subject stands erect holding the mouthpiece of the spirometer in the mouth (care to be taken to avoid leakage). He is urged to take the deepest possible inspiration and then with the valve properly adjusted and the nose compressed he is to exhale through the mouth all the air he possibly can. Five or six such deep inspirations are followed by that many deepest possible expirations. The highest reading on the scale is taken as his vital capacity. This figure is compared to standard tables for age and sex. This test is of value only

in the absence of any pulmonary or bronchial disease and in the absence of fever. To be of value this test is to be repeated daily for several days and the mean vital capacity taken

Holding one's breath while performing certain exercises, such as swimming, walking upstairs, walking across the room, or performing certain calisthenics is an adequate test for vital lung and heart capacity. Decreased exercise tolerance when the breath is held or otherwise indicates diminished cardiac capacity

II *The Cardiac Reflex Estimation as an Index to Cardiac Capacity. The Merklen Test:* This is the best known, it makes use of Abrams reflex which consists of diminution of the area of cardiac dullness following the vigorous rubbing of the precordium, and of the Livierato reflex which is supposed to increase the area of cardiac dullness following percussion over the epigastric region. If after rubbing the precordium with a roughened cloth the area of cardiac dullness does not diminish or after percussing or stroking the epigastrium the area of cardiac dullness does not increase, there is indication of myocardial damage since the reflexes do not respond in a normal way. (To attempt to judge cardiac capacity by these reflexes is of no value.)

III *Estimation of Sodium Chloride Test. Vaquez-Digne Test:* This test was based on an old premise that in myocardial insufficiency there is a lowered sodium chloride estimation. The test consists of giving a certain quantity of sodium chloride by mouth or intravenously and noting its rate and quantity of elimination. In severe myocarditis, edema may result from excessive salt intake. (This is a cumbersome test of no special value.)

**IV Instrumentation Tests.** *The Sphygmomanometer:* This is an instrument devised for determining the systolic and diastolic blood pressure. The data obtained from its use is valuable (SEE p 413). A high systolic pressure (above 160) is a warning signal and calls for decreased exertion.

*Sphygmobolometry:* This was advocated by Sahli; it consists of determining the amount of oscillation of the mercury column or the needle when the blood pressure cuff is inflated to a point just above the region indicated by the diastolic pressure. It practically means the oscillometric reading. The instrument devised by Sahli and the methods of determining the exact pressure in the blood vessels are too complicated for clinical use.

**X-ray Study:** This will determine the size and shape of the heart, the comparative size of the heart to the chest wall and the sizes of the aorta, auricles and ventricles.

**Electrocardiograph.** This is capable of recording the heart rate and rhythm and, to some extent, the integrity of the myocardium. For electrocardiograph polygraph, etc., SEE p 1045.

**V Circulation Time (Circulation Rate)** In order to determine the velocity of the blood flow, certain substances are injected intravenously at one site and the time it takes for their detection at another site is noted. The time required for the detection of the injection substance is known as the circulation time.

The distances measured are the (1) arm to tongue time, (2) arm to lung time, (3) arm to arm time, and (4) arm to heart and pulmonary circulation time.

(1) **Arm to tongue time.** The patient is to assume the recumbent posture, the

right or left arm is held on a level with the right auricle and one of the various solutions is injected into a vein in the antecubital fossa, and the time is noted (by stop watch) from the moment the last of the injection has entered the vein until it is detected in the back of the throat and by the tongue. The solutions commonly employed are (a) Decholin<sup>1</sup> (4 cc of 20 per cent solution), the normal time is 14 to 19 seconds. (b) Calcium gluconate<sup>2, 3</sup> (4 cc. of 20 per cent solution), the time from the instant the injection is begun until the sensation of heat is felt in the throat is 8 to 16.5 seconds. Saccharine<sup>4</sup> (5 cc of a 1 per cent solution), the time from the beginning of the injection until a sweetish taste is perceived by the tip of the tongue is 9 to 17 seconds. Several other substances are employed for this test, each of the substances has its own circulation time. Therefore, if the test is to be of any value, the examiner should familiarize himself with the circulation time of one type of these solutions and use this one type of solution consistently.

(2) **Arm to lung time.** Here various volatile solutions are employed. Those in common use are ether and paraldehyde. Ether<sup>2</sup> 5 m of ether is diluted with an equal part of normal saline solution and injected into the vein of an arm, as previously described. The time is calculated from the moment the injection is begun to the instant the ether is perceived in the upper respiratory passage and the individual coughs or perceives the ether. The normal time is 3 to 9 seconds. Paraldehyde<sup>3</sup> 1.4 cc. of paraldehyde is injected in the usual way. The time the substance reaches the lungs is indicated by cough, it averages about 6 seconds.

(3) **Arm to arm time** According to Koch<sup>4</sup> this is obtained by injecting fluorescein into the vein of one arm and collecting at frequent intervals from a vein in the opposite arm blood samples which are examined for fluorescein. The time the first positive specimen is obtained after the injection is considered as the circulation time. Normally this fluctuates between 12 and 26 seconds the average being 21 seconds.

(4) **Arm to heart and pulmonary circulation time** According to Blumgart and Weiss<sup>3</sup> this consists of injecting radium emanation into a vein and detecting its presence by a suitable apparatus at various points in the body. The time elapsed in the detection of the substance from one point to another is the circulation time for that distance.

### Interpretation of the Circulation Time Tests

The circulation time is *prolonged* in heart failure, heart block, polycythemia, hypothyroidism (myxedema) and any condition that slows the circulation. The circulation time is *shortened* in paroxysmal tachycardia, auricular flutter, hyperthyroidism and exophthalmic goiter. In bronchial asthma, emphysema and mediastinal conditions not associated with heart failure the circulation time may be *normal*.

**The Venous Pressure Tests** Venous pressure may be determined by physical means and by instrumentation.

(1) By physical means the venous pressure cannot actually be measured but sufficient information may be gathered to judge the approximate amount of stasis in the venous system. The veins usually chosen for this are the external jugular veins. A normal person lying flat on his back will show distention of

these veins to a level just above the clavicles. When the head is raised venous distention disappears and when lowered below the level of the manubrium the veins fill to a higher level. In right-sided heart failure the external jugulars are filled to a very much higher level than in the normal, both when the head is lowered or raised. The height of the column may indicate the degree of right-sided heart failure.

By the instrumental or direct method venous pressure can be measured in centimeters and is therefore a fairly accurate gauge for determining the amount of right-sided heart failure.

The apparatus consists of a glass manometer graduated in centimeters or millimeters to which a large-bored intra-venous needle is attached by a rubber tube. With the patient in the recumbent posture and the arm on the level with the right auricle the site of a large vein in the cubital fossa is sterilized and the needle is inserted into the vein. The height to which the blood rises in the manometer indicates the venous pressure. To prevent clotting the apparatus may be immersed in a 2 per cent sodium citrate solution just before it is used. Several types of monometers are on the market; the principle upon which they work is the same.

The normal venous pressure varies between 6 and 10 mm, though it may be somewhat higher or lower. After exertion the pressure rises. Excluding local venous obstruction the general rule is that the severer the degree of right-sided heart failure the higher is the venous pressure.

<sup>1</sup> Kramer D. Jour Physiol Proc. 85, 1935.

<sup>2</sup> Baer S. Ann Int Med. 13, 2246, 1940.

<sup>3</sup> Blumgart H. L. and Weiss S. J. Clin. Invest. 6, 103, 1928, 29.

<sup>4</sup> Koch E. Deut Arch f. Klin Med. 140, 39, 1922.

## CHAPTER XVI

### Cardiac Murmurs

The various heart sounds so far considered have been modifications of the normal heart sounds due in most cases to disease of the myocardium or to the cardiac innervations, in each instance only the first and second sounds being heard, though with altered relations to each other. We shall now consider a variety of sounds occurring either before, with, or after the first or second sound or else entirely displacing them.

These *adventitious sounds*, if caused by some intracardiac condition, are termed *endocardial murmurs* or simply *murmurs*. If the adventitious sound is extracardiac in origin, as for example pericardial or pleuropericardial, it is called a *friction sound*. If it is of venous or arterial origin, it is designated a *bruit* or *hum*.

Normally, the blood passes through the valve orifices without any audible sound other than those recognized as the first and second sounds of the heart, *i e., lubb tup*. But if the normal relation of the heart valves, the composition of the blood, or the rapidity of the blood stream is altered, "eddies" will arise which form the so-called *fluid vortices*, the sounds of which may be heard on the surface of the chest as murmurs.

Murmurs are divided into (a) Organic or valvular, (b) nonorganic or functional (sometimes termed hemic, anemic, dynamic and accidental).

#### Organic Murmurs

An organic murmur is an abnormal sound heard over the precordium because of the existence of some abnormal con-

dition within the heart produced by an irreparable valve defect. It is the result of some *abnormal* condition of a valve which interferes with the normal circulation of the blood, either by *obstruction*, not allowing the blood to enter a chamber freely (an obstructive or stenotic murmur), or by its *inability to approximate properly*, at a time when it should be closed, and thus allowing a portion of blood to regurgitate to the cavity whence it came (*regurgitant or insufficiency murmur*).

It is obvious, if a stenotic or regurgitant murmur is caused by a lesion in a valve, that it is possible to have as many lesions as there are heart valve orifices multiplied by two. Therefore, two lesions at each valve, namely

#### Mitral Orifice

Mitral regurgitation and mitral stenosis

#### Aortic Orifice

Aortic regurgitation and aortic stenosis

#### Tricuspid Orifice

Tricuspid regurgitation and tricuspid stenosis

#### Pulmonic Orifice

Pulmonary regurgitation and pulmonary stenosis

There may also be a double murmur in the same valve (regurgitation and stenosis), or a combination of one or two murmurs at two or three valve orifices.

#### Classification of Organic Murmurs

Organic murmurs are classified both according to the kind of lesion producing them and according to the stage of the heart's cycle during which they occur.

Organic murmurs may be *acquired* or *congenital*.

**Acquired Organic Murmurs**

1 *Regurgitant murmurs* are due to the regurgitation of blood back to the chamber whence it came, because of insufficient closure of the valve leaflets

2. *Stenotic murmurs* are due to a partial obstruction to the flow of blood at the entrance to its orifice, as a result of a stenosis of the valve orifice caused either by an inflammatory process or by vegetations upon the valve leaflets, thus preventing them from opening at the physiological moment.

(a) A *systolic murmur* occurs during the time of ventricular systole, that is, the time during which the ventricles contract, therefore, it is coincident with the first sound of the heart and the radial and carotid pulse.

Such a murmur may either entirely displace the first sound, or it may occur with it and continue a short time after the heart sound ceases to be heard. The following murmurs occur during systole: Stenosis of the aortic or pulmonary valves, and regurgitation of the mitral or tricuspid valves.

(b) A *diastolic murmur* occurs at the time the auricles contract and the ventricles dilate (during the diastole), it is heard instead of or with the second sound of the heart over the valve so affected. Diastolic murmurs occur as a result of a regurgitant lesion in either of the semilunar valves and also in stenosis of the mitral or tricuspid valves.

(c) A *presystolic murmur* occurs during the last part of the diastole, when the final spasm of the auricles forces out their last remaining blood. This murmur is heard just before the first sound and ends with the systolic shock, it is caused by stenosis of the mitral valve and rarely, of the tricuspid valve, at times these murmurs may be diastolic.

**Systolic Murmurs****At the Apex**

- 1 Mitral regurgitation
- 2 Due to mitral insufficiency (organic or functional).
- 3 Occasionally transmitted from aortic stenosis

**At Aortic Orifice**

- 1 Aortic stenosis
- 2 Aortitis, atheroma of aorta, arteriosclerosis
- 3 Aneurysm of aorta

**At Pulmonic Orifice**

- 1 Pulmonary stenosis
- 2 Patent ductus arteriosus
- 3 Interventricular septal opening
- 4 Patent foramen ovale (rare)
- 5 Functional murmurs.
- 6 Often in children and young thin adults due to sudden filling and distention of the pulmonary artery

**At the Tricuspid Area**

- 1 Tricuspid regurgitation.

**Diastolic Murmurs****At the Apex**

- 1 Mitral stenosis (presystolic and diastolic)
- 2 Austin Flint murmur in association with aortic regurgitation.
- 3 Transmitted from aortic regurgitation

**At Aortic Orifice**

- 1 Aortic regurgitation
- 2 Aneurysm of aorta (continuous hum)
- 3 Thyrotoxicosis (rare)
- 4 Arterial hypertension (rare)

**Pulmonic Area**

- 1 Pulmonary regurgitation.
- 2 Graham Steele murmur
- 3 Transmitted from aortic area.
- 4 Aortic aneurysm (to and fro murmur)

**Tricuspid Area**

- Tricuspid stenosis

**Characteristics of Organic Murmurs.** Since an organic murmur occurs as a result of some crippled condition of a given valve, it is important to recognize and isolate the valve or valves so affected. This is best done by taking into consideration the following charac



teristics (I) Point of maximum intensity, (II) time of occurrence, (III) area of transmission, (IV) quality, (V) degree of cardiac hypertrophy

### I Point of Maximum Intensity

A murmur occurring as a result of a defective valve is heard loudest over the

one of these valves. By auscultating the valve orifices, it may be learned which of the valves is affected, but it is impossible to recognize the type of lesion. In order to determine the type of lesion, *i. e.*, stenotic or regurgitant, the second point must be considered, namely

### II Time of Occurrence of the Murmur and Its Mechanism

As has been mentioned above, by timing is meant ascertaining whether the murmur is systolic, diastolic or presystolic. By combining the area of maximum intensity with the time of the murmur, it may be judged which valve is affected and the kind of lesion affecting it.

**Mitral Regurgitation** If a murmur is best heard at the apex and it corre-

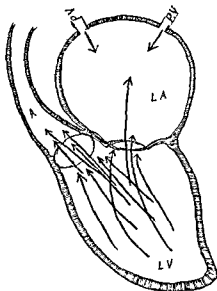


Fig 1—Mitral regurgitation

clinical location of that valve orifice, *i. e.* mitral murmur over the apical impulse, tricuspid murmur over the lower portion of the sternum, aortic murmur in the second interspace to the right of the sternum or at midsternum, at times also in the left third intercostal space near the sternum, pulmonic murmur in the second left interspace close to the sternum.

When listening to the heart for murmurs, the clinical valve orifices should be systematically auscultated. If a murmur is heard with greatest intensity over the mitral area, it is evident that the mitral valve is at fault, and if the intensity of the murmur is greatest at the tricuspid, aortic or pulmonic areas, it indicates that the defect is located at

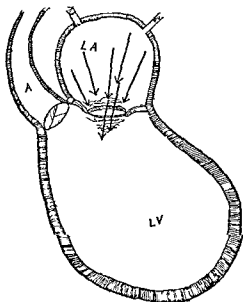


Fig 2—Mitral stenosis

sponds to the first sound of the heart, the systole, the following inferences may be drawn.

**First** The murmur is heard at the apex, therefore, the mitral valve must be diseased (mitral murmur).

*Second* It occurs during the *systole* at the time the left ventricle is supposed to force its blood into the aorta and the mitral valve should be closed, since the murmur is mitral it means that the mitral valve is affected, and instead of being closed it must be open otherwise

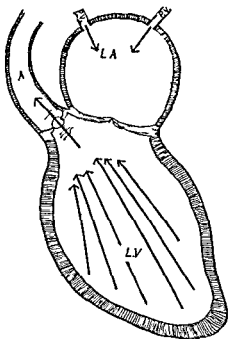


Fig 3—Aortic stenosis.

there would be no murmur. An open valve at this time would cause a regurgitation of blood into the chamber whence it has just come therefore evidently the murmur is a *mitral regurgitant murmur* (SEE Fig 1)

*Mitral Area Mitral Murmur Presystolic in Time* During that period of the diastole which is designated as pre systole the auricle with a spasmodic effort attempts to force its remaining blood with greater rapidity through the mitral orifice. If a murmur occurs at this time it must mean that the effort of the auricle is meeting with some obstruction and does not allow free en-

trance of blood to the ventricles, consequently, the lesion must be that of *mitral stenosis* (SEE Fig 2)

*Aortic Stenosis* If a murmur is best heard over the aortic orifice (second interspace to the right of the sternum) that murmur is of necessity an aortic murmur. If this murmur occurs during the systole it must be because of some difficulty attending the entrance of blood into the aorta since during the systole of the left ventricle the blood enters the aorta. As the murmur occurs at this time it must be only because of some interference or obstruction to the normal flow at the aortic valve therefore this murmur is attributed to aortic stenosis. The aortic second sound is weak because of loss of elasticity in the aortic valve (SEE Fig 3)

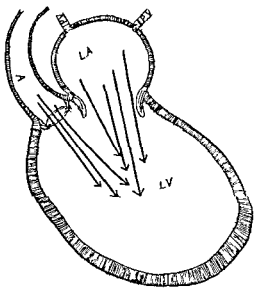


Fig 4—Aortic regurgitation

*Aortic Regurgitation* On the other hand a murmur that is heard at the aortic orifice or to the left of it which is diastolic in time must be due to a different type of lesion than that caus-

ing the preceding one. That the aortic valve is also at fault here is beyond dispute, because the murmur is heard at the aortic orifice, it occurs during the diastole or dilatation of the left ventricle, at a time when the aortic valve should be closed while blood is

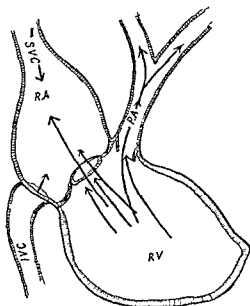


Fig 5—Tricuspid regurgitation.

flowing into the ventricles from the auricles. If a murmur is heard at this time over the aortic orifice, it indicates that there is something wrong with the aortic valve. When the aortic valve is closed during the diastole no murmur is audible at the aortic orifice, therefore the inference is that it must be open in order to produce this sound. An open aortic valve, when the ventricle is in diastole, must necessarily cause the blood to regurgitate from the aorta into the left ventricle, hence, the murmur at the aortic orifice during the diastole is due to aortic regurgitation (See Fig 4).

**Tricuspid and Pulmonic Murmurs**  
Murmurs heard at the *tricuspid* and *pulmonic* orifices are likewise isolated and

the same reasoning holds true. It should be remembered that both auricles and both ventricles work synchronously, therefore, a stenotic or regurgitant lesion at the tricuspid orifice will have the same time as a mitral lesion, they can be differentiated because they are heard at different portions of the chest, *viz*, the mitral murmurs over the mitral area, and the tricuspid murmurs over the tricuspid area.

With pulmonic murmurs the same holds true.

A *systolic murmur* heard at the second interspace to the left of the sternum is usually due to *pulmonary stenosis* and a *diastolic murmur* over the same area to *pulmonary regurgitation*. A pre

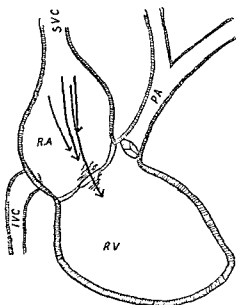


Fig 6—Tricuspid stenosis

systolic murmur at the tricuspid area is caused by *tricuspid stenosis*, and a systolic murmur over the same area by *tricuspid regurgitation*.

Signs other than those obtained by auscultation, such as venous or arterial

engorgement, hypertrophy of the heart, the pulse, etc., must be taken into consideration when murmurs are to be differentiated (SEE Figs 5, 6, 7, and 8)

**III Area of Transmission.** In order to facilitate the recognition of murmurs and to isolate them, if several

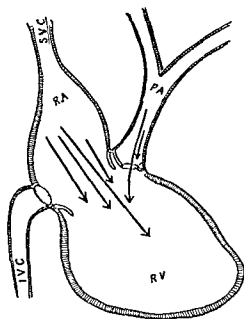


Fig 7—Pulmonary regurgitation

are audible in the same individual, the sound must be traced from the point of greatest intensity to the point where it is entirely lost. From its point of origin the sound produced by a lesion is carried with diminishing intensity along the course of the blood stream.

**Mitral Stenosis** This murmur is heard a little above the apical impulse fourth interspace and a little outside of the parasternal line (near the anatomic location of the mitral valve). It is transmitted a short distance around its area, probably because the jar there produced by the stenosis is not communicated beyond the heart cavity.

**Mitral regurgitant murmurs** are best heard at the apex, whence they are

transmitted to the left axilla and often as far back as the angle of the left scapula. This is probably because the noise is created in the left side of the heart (auricle and ventricle) and because the left side of the heart is nearest the left axilla and the left posterior aspect of the chest, at those locations the murmur may be heard, though faintly.

**Aortic stenosis** is best heard at the aortic orifice as a systolic murmur, and is transmitted to both carotids, it is heard louder on the right side of the neck than on the left, probably because the innominate and carotid arteries are given off from the aortic arch at an angle, so that it is easiest for the sound to travel in that direction.

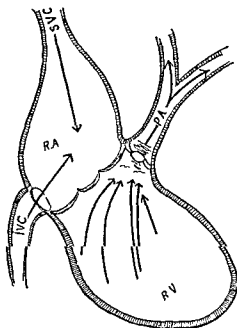


Fig 8—Pulmonary stenosis

**Aortic Regurgitation** The diastolic murmur heard at the aortic orifice is transmitted downward along the sternum toward the apex, because in this lesion the blood regurgitates from the aorta

into the left ventricle and the sound goes with it, from the aortic orifice towards the apex of the heart.

*Tricuspid Stenosis:* A presystolic murmur is heard over the tricuspid area, but not transmitted (analogous to mitral).

*Tricuspid Regurgitation:* A systolic murmur is heard at the tricuspid orifice, transmitted to the right, and often audible over the liver.

*Pulmonic Stenosis.* A systolic murmur can be heard at the pulmonic orifice, transmitted to the veins of the neck.

*Pulmonic Regurgitation.* A diastolic murmur is heard at the pulmonic orifice, transmitted downward toward the right ventricle.

**IV. The Quality:** All stenotic murmurs are harsh and churning in quality, because such a murmur occurs as the result of an obstruction; force exerted against resistance will cause a greater amount of vibration. All regurgitant murmurs are softer and are blowing in character, for they are due to leakage and not to increased resistance as is the case with stenotic murmurs.

**V Degree of Cardiac Hypertrophy:** The occurrence of a murmur is significant of some valvular defect, which of necessity must interfere with the normal quantity of blood thrown into the circulation. In order to compensate for this shortage, the heart chamber affected by the disorder increases in size and its walls hypertrophy so as to be able to accomplish more work than in its normal state.

*Mitral Regurgitation.* The leakage in the mitral valve at first causes a diminished quantity of blood to be forced into the aorta, but at the next diastole a greater volume of blood is forced into the left ventricle, this blood being a

portion of that which has been previously regurgitated added to the normal amount; the left ventricle, therefore, has a larger quantity of blood to deal with, and working as it does under disadvantages, it must of necessity hypertrophy in order to maintain the circulation (SEE: Fig. 1, p. 450).

*Mitral Stenosis:* In this lesion an insufficient amount of blood enters the ventricle. The left auricle has to work against resistance, in order to overcome the obstruction; consequently hypertrophy of the left auricle and right ventricle is produced. The left ventricle is not changed in size; though at times it may show signs of atrophy. The presence of a hypertrophied ventricle in mitral stenosis may be due to a preëxisting mitral regurgitation or to rheumatic myocarditis (SEE: Fig. 2, p. 450).

*Aortic Stenosis:* This lesion causes the left ventricle to work against a resistance even greater than that of mitral regurgitation; therefore the left ventricular hypertrophy is greater in aortic stenosis than in mitral regurgitation (SEE: Fig. 3, p. 451).

*Aortic Regurgitation:* This lesion produces the greatest amount of left ventricular hypertrophy, because at each systole the left ventricle has to cope with a double quantity of blood, i. e. the normal amount brought to it through the mitral valve during the diastole and the quantity that regurgitates at the same time through the incompetent aortic valve. The hypertrophy is often so great that the heart in this condition is called *cor bovinum* or *ox heart* (SEE: Fig. 4, p. 451).

*Pulmonic murmurs and tricuspid regurgitation* will cause right ventricular hypertrophy, because the strain of the circulation falls upon that chamber in

the presence of those valvular defects. But the hypertrophy of the right ventricle never reaches to the same proportion as does the left ventricle, because the right ventricle is thinner and has less compensatory power. After the hypertrophy has reached its maximum, overstrain will cause that chamber to dilate, which produces heart failure, or "ruptured compensation."

**Combined Murmurs.** By combined murmurs is understood the occurrence of two or more murmurs in the heart, they are recognized by noting (I) Area of greatest intensity of each murmur, (II) the time of occurrence, (III) the respective areas of transmission, (IV) their respective qualities.

### Résumé of Organic Murmurs, Single and Combined

#### MITRAL REGURGITATION (See Fig 1)

Area of greatest intensity At apical impulse.

Time Systolic.

Transmitted To left axilla and beyond.

Quality Blowing

Accentuation of pulmonic second sound

Left ventricular hypertrophy

At times a systolic thrill

#### MITRAL STENOSIS (See Fig 2)

Area of greatest intensity A little above the apex.

Time Presystolic.

Transmission About one inch around its own area

Quality Harsh and churning

Left auricular and right ventricular hypertrophy

Presystolic thrill Murmur and thrill are often accentuated when patient lies on his left side. Occasionally the murmur may be diastolic. Auricular fibrillation is often associated

#### AORTIC STENOSIS (See Fig 3)

Area of greatest intensity Second interspace to right of sternum.

Time Systolic.

Transmission Into the carotids

Quality Harsh

Systolic thrill at base

Left ventricular hypertrophy

Weak aortic second sound or no sound other than the murmur. Nearly always associated with some other valve defect.

#### AORTIC REGURGITATION (See Fig 4)

Area of greatest intensity Second interspace to the right of sternum

Time Diastolic.

Transmission Down the sternum towards the apex

Quality Soft and blowing

Greatly hypertrophied left ventricle.

Water hammer pulse

Visible pulsations in superficial arteries

Quincke's capillary pulse

The blood pressure is higher in the lower extremities than in the upper extremities

#### TRICUSPID REGURGITATION (See Fig 5)

Area of greatest intensity Tricuspid area.

Time Systolic

Transmission Downward toward the liver

Quality Soft

Right ventricular hypertrophy

Pulsating liver

Distended veins

Often edema.

#### TRICUSPID STENOSIS (See Fig 6)

Area of greatest intensity Tricuspid area

Time Presystolic.

Transmission Not transmitted

Quality Harsh

Right auricular hypertrophy

#### PULMONARY REGURGITATION

(Congenital—Rare) (See Fig 7)

Area of greatest intensity Second interspace to the left of sternum.

Time Diastolic.

Transmission Left side of sternum

Quality Soft

Right ventricular hypertrophy

Distended veins and cyanosis

#### PULMONARY STENOSIS

(Congenital—Rare) (See Fig 8)

Area of greatest intensity Second interspace to the left of sternum

Time Systolic.

Transmission Veins of neck and scapular region

Quality Harsh

Right ventricular hypertrophy

Distended veins and cyanosis

#### DOUBLE MITRAL

Area of greatest intensity A double murmur at apex

Time Systolic at apex Presystolic above apex

Quality At apex soft Above apex harsh.

Transmission The apical murmur toward the left axilla The one above the apex not transmitted

Thrill—the one above the apex—presystolic thrill

#### DOUBLE AORTIC

See saw sound over aortic orifice Both at aortic orifice

Area of greatest intensity Aortic orifice

Time One systolic, the other diastolic

Transmission The systolic into the carotid The diastolic down along the sternum

Quality The diastolic soft The systolic harsh

#### MITRAL REGURGITATION AND AORTIC STENOSIS

Areas of greatest intensity One at apex the other at aortic area

Time Both systolic.

Transmission The apical murmur to the left axilla The basal murmur to the carotid arteries

Quality The apical murmur soft the basal harsh

Systolic thrill at base

Systolic thrill in 50 per cent of the cases at apex.

Great left ventricular hypertrophy

#### MITRAL REGURGITATION AND AORTIC REGURGITATION

Two murmurs One at apex The other at aortic area

Areas of greatest intensity One at apex the other at aortic area.

Time The apical is systolic. The basal is diastolic.

Area of transmission Apical to the left axilla Basal down the sternum

#### MITRAL STENOSIS AND AORTIC STENOSIS

Two murmurs One above the apex The other in the second intercostal space to right of sternum

Areas of greatest intensity One above apex the other at aortic area

Time One is presystolic in time, the other systolic in time

Transmission The mitral not transmitted The aortic murmur to the vessel of the neck.

Quality Both harsh the apical somewhat harsher

Thrill Presystolic at apex, systolic at base

#### MITRAL STENOSIS AND AORTIC REGURGITATION

Two murmurs One being a continuation of the other

Areas of greatest intensity One above apex, the other at aortic area

Time One above the apex presystolic in time (Austin Flint murmur) The other at the aortic orifice diastolic in time

Transmission The aortic murmur along the sternum toward the apex The mitral is not transmitted very far

#### MITRAL REGURGITATION AND TRICUSPID REGURGITATION

One murmur heard Prolonged soft blowing Time Systolic

Areas of greatest transmission The mitral is loudest at apical impulse and can be followed to left axilla and beyond it, and is of harsher quality The tricuspid is softer heard loudest at lower part of midsternum, and is transmitted over the liver

General venous distention and enlarged pulsating liver are found with the tricuspid murmur

#### MITRAL STENOSIS AND TRICUSPID REGURGITATION

Produces heart failure cyanosis and edema

Two murmurs are heard

Areas of greatest intensity One over apical area the other over lower part of sternum.

Time The mitral above the apex presystolic in time The tricuspid at lower part of sternum systolic in time

Transmission Mitral not transmitted Tricuspid over liver

Quality Mitral harsh Tricuspid soft

### MITRAL REGURGITATION AND AORTIC STENOSIS AND REGURGITATION

#### Three murmurs

Areas of greatest intensity and time Mitral, at apex systolic in time and transmitted to the left axilla Aortic, double murmur at aortic orifice systolic and diastolic in time.

Transmission The systolic is transmitted to the carotids and the diastolic downward along the sternum

There may be many combinations of murmurs each one of which can be isolated in the manner described above.

#### Conditions Influencing Organic Murmurs:

The stronger the heart muscle during valvular disease, the louder is the murmur, as soon as the heart becomes weak, the murmur is less loud and may disappear in extreme myocardial weakness. As the heart muscle becomes stronger, the murmur returns.

After exercise a murmur may become louder because of the increased work upon the heart. An organic murmur, particularly mitral or aortic, is heard loudest during expiration, because the heart is more exposed at that time. The loudness of the murmur is no indication of the degree of valvular damage.

**Compensation** As long as the heart muscle, in spite of a valvular defect, is able to carry on a proper circulation and meet all the demands made upon it by the body, we say that compensation is good. The chamber affected by the valvular defect has become larger and its walls stronger, thus being able to overcome a certain degree of inefficiency produced by the diseased valve. But when the heart muscle can no longer cope with the defect and becomes exhausted so that the circulation is interfered with, the condition is spoken of as loss or failure of compensation. When the tone of the heart muscle is restored and all signs of failure of com-

pensation disappear, it indicates that compensation has been restored. As long as compensation is good, no ill effects are manifested from the presence of a cardiac murmur.

**Decompensation:** Failure of compensation may result from back pressure in addition to a diseased myocardium. In all cases of failure of compensation the heart muscle must be diseased, otherwise the existing valvular defect would not cause the hypertrophied heart muscle to give out, excepting when an unusually severe strain is suddenly put upon it causing acute cardiac dilatation.

Severe back pressure is brought about in the following ways:

**Mitral Regurgitation** During compensation the left ventricle enlarges, as does also the left auricle, because of the extra amount of blood it receives. When the auricles weaken, the lungs become congested. In order to overcome this congestion the right ventricle also hypertrophies. If this chamber becomes weak, it will cause dilatation of the right ventricle and consequently tricuspid regurgitation, with all the signs of heart failure.

**Mitral Stenosis** During compensation the left auricle becomes enlarged because of obstruction to the outflow of blood. When this chamber weakens, blood accumulates in the lungs, to overcome this intrapulmonary pressure the right ventricle hypertrophies. The constant strain upon the right ventricle ultimately causes it to dilate and this produces tricuspid regurgitation with signs of heart failure.

**Aortic Stenosis** During compensation the left ventricle hypertrophies in order to overcome aortic resistance. Compensation begins to fail as a result



of the left ventricular dilatation and this causes mitral regurgitation because the valve orifice, being overstretched, prevents the valve leaflets from approximating. This, in turn, throws more work upon the left auricle, so that it may dilate and cause pulmonary congestion, which again, may result in tricuspid regurgitation, with all the signs of failure of compensation or heart failure.

**Aortic Regurgitation** During compensation the left ventricle becomes greatly hypertrophied because it has to contract upon an enormous quantity of blood. When this ventricle begins to weaken, the mitral valve orifice dilates, preventing proper approximation of the valve leaflet because of relative insufficiency, thus causing mitral regurgitation. This, in turn, will produce pulmonary regurgitation with congestion of the lungs. Greater intrapulmonary pressure is then productive of tricuspid enlargement, with consequent dilatation or tricuspid regurgitation, with all signs of heart failure.

It is understood therefore, that though a person suffering from a mitral or an aortic lesion may be quite comfortable, yet when the tricuspid and pulmonary valves are affected, heart failure is always imminent because the right ventricle is sooner or later bound to dilate.

**Heart Failure.** This can be defined as a condition in which the heart is no longer able to maintain the circulatory equilibrium. It may occur as a result of myocardial disease, i. e., rheumatic, syphilitic, arteriosclerotic myocarditis, fatty degeneration, coronary infarction, etc., or as a result of dilatation of some of its chambers because of distention or valvular defect, endocarditis, pericarditis, etc. It may be partial—when the heart fails to respond to an added

effort, or complete—when the circulation is greatly embarrassed, even when the patient is at rest.

**Symptoms:** Because the heart is weak, it cannot force the proper quantity of blood at the proper time through the various paths with sufficient force, and the following must result:

I *Cyanosis*, because of insufficient oxygenation of the blood.

II *Edema* of the skin and subcutaneous tissue and often also serous effusions in the pleura, pericardium and peritoneum (Right sided heart failure).

III *Dyspnea*, not enough blood is allowed to enter the lungs for aeration, stasis of unoxygenated blood in the lung produces rapid respiration, because the lung attempts to draw in as much air as possible for oxygenating purposes (Left sided heart failure) (SEE p 474).

IV *Rapid and weak heart action*. If an organic murmur was previously present, it will disappear as the heart muscle becomes weaker, because there is not enough vigor in a dilated heart to drive the blood onward with sufficient force to produce the sound, as the heart grows stronger, the murmur reappears.

### *Congenital Heart Murmurs*

(SEE Congenital Heart Disease p 500)

Congenital heart murmurs occur in congenital malformation of the heart valves or the great vessels that are directly concerned with the blood circulation through the heart. Since the majority of congenital heart lesions compatible with life are in the vicinity of the pulmonary orifice, murmurs produced by such lesions are audible to the left of the sternum near the base of the heart. In young children, who have no previous history of rheumatic fever or of any

acute infection and who do not present signs of left ventricular hypertrophy, when a loud murmur is heard in the pulmonic region it may as a rule be classified as a congenital murmur. Adults who have a very loud murmur at the pulmonic orifice not associated with signs of heart failure or with any murmur at any of the other orifices and who present very little left ventricular hypertrophy and who, in addition, give a history of having had this murmur since very early childhood, most likely have a congenital cardiac defect.

**Pulmonary Stenosis** This is often a congenital lesion and is in the majority of cases associated with other defects, such as interauricular or intraventricular septal opening alone or the group of cardiac defects known as the Tetralogy of Fallot. This quartet is comprised of (1) pulmonary stenosis, (2) defect of the ventricular septum at the base, (3) dextraposition of the aorta, and (4) right ventricular enlargement. This combination of lesions usually causes cyanosis. The murmur is heard over the second and third left intercostal spaces, it is systolic in time and is often accompanied by a systolic thrill. The second pulmonic sound is weak or may be inaudible (SEE Fig 8, p 453).

**Patent Ductus Arteriosus** The ductus arteriosus which in fetal life conducts the blood directly from the pulmonary artery to the aorta without passing through the lungs, closes soon after birth so that the blood stream is diverted to the lungs. When the ductus arteriosus remains partly open after birth the blood does not continue to traverse the fetal course but is diverted to the lungs in the normal way. The circulation of blood through the patent ductus arteriosus reverses itself. Because the pressure in

the aorta is higher than the pulmonary pressure the blood flows from the aorta into the pulmonary artery, hence there is no cyanosis. The murmur thus produced is heard over the second left intercostal space as a long, loud continuous hum with increasing intensity during the systole (machinery murmur). Occasionally the murmur may be heard only during the systole. It is accompanied by an accentuation of the second sound and a palpable thrill. The murmur may be transmitted to the midportion of the left scapular region.

**Interventricular Septal Opening** (Roger's disease) When the blood is forced by the left ventricle through the septal opening into the right ventricle (left ventricular shunt), there is no cyanosis, if because of greater hypertrophy the blood is shunted from the right ventricle to the left (right ventricular shunt) cyanosis occurs. The murmur is systolic in time and may often be accompanied by a thrill. The murmur is usually heard over the third intercostal space near the sternum or at a point midway between the upper area of right auricular dullness and the apical impulse. Occasionally an interventricular septal defect is associated with pulmonary stenosis or with the combined lesions known as the Tetralogy of Fallot.

**Intraauricular Septal Opening or Patent Foramen Ovale** This is the most common of the congenital cardiac defects, it occurs because the foramen ovale fails to close after birth. Usually it is symptomless, occasionally it may cause paradoxical emboli. An embolus forming in a vein which is carried into the right auricle may pass through the patent interauricular septum into the left auricle and from there it may be carried through the systemic circulation and

lodge in the brain kidney or any other organ or artery. When a murmur is produced by this lesion it is usually very soft, occurs during the diastole and is located near the sternal edge of the third left chondrosternal articulation. The defect may occur singly or in conjunction with other cardiac defects or with other congenital anomalies.

### Nonorganic or Functional Murmurs

These murmurs are also known as *hemic anemic dynamic* or *accidental murmurs*. Relative insufficiency and Austin Flint murmurs may also be classified as *nonorganic*.

A functional murmur like an organic murmur is of endocardial origin but unlike the organic it occurs as a result of some condition other than a defective valve. Normally the blood is of definite specific gravity, the circulation moves at a given rate per minute and the heart valves and the papillary muscles possess a definite degree of elasticity. Alteration in any one of these conditions may cause a slight change in the normal heart sounds.

**Etiology.** The actual cause of functional murmurs is still a matter of dispute. No one cause is capable of producing the various kinds of murmurs encountered. There are always at least three factors operative in the production of functional murmurs. These are:

I. Insufficiency of the valve leaflets caused by dilatation of the valve orifice.

II. Uneven tension of the papillary muscles due either to faulty innervation or degeneration of the papillary muscles of their tendons, or to both conditions.

III. Inelasticity of the valve leaflets themselves.

**I. Insufficiency of the Valve Leaflets Caused by Dilatation of the Valve Orifice.** This condition usually occurs in a heart whose myocardium more particularly that part of it which forms the valve orifice is in a pathological condition.

When a severe strain be it sudden or gradual is brought to bear upon a defective muscle that muscle will lose its contractility. The amount of strain required to paralyze the muscle depends entirely upon its condition. If therefore a weak myocardium and malnourished fibrous tissue are called upon to bear an unusual amount of pressure they are bound to yield. As the muscle and fibrous tissue controlling the valve orifices give way the orifice dilates thus causing the valve leaflets to separate and producing an insufficiency which will persist until the heart and its fibrous tissue have regained their normal tone. But no matter how dilated a heart may be so long as that part of the myocardium which helps to form the valve orifice retains its normal tonicity no murmur will be produced.

On the other hand though a heart may show no evidence of dilatation if its orifice is dilated a murmur will be audible. This form of murmur closely resembles the organic variety it is soft and blowing in quality though of shorter duration than is the organic and is often transmitted a short distance along the blood stream.

**Mitral Valve.** A functional murmur at this valve is systolic in time. The *mitral murmur of nonorganic valvular insufficiency* may be heard either at the apex or in the vicinity of the third intercostal space immediately to the left of the sternum. It does not cause cardiac hypertrophy though we should remember that a previously hypertrophied heart

may develop a nonorganic murmur. This murmur does not cause accentuation of the pulmonic second sound but this fact is not often a trustworthy sign in persons suffering from lung diseases, because, as a rule in such cases, there is an accentuation of the second pulmonic sound.

**Tricuspid Valve:** A functional murmur at this orifice is also systolic in time. It is much softer and of shorter duration than the mitral murmur. It is heard at the lower portion of the sternum, and is often transmitted a short distance toward the right, though not as far as the liver. The patient will be slightly cyanotic, and exertion will cause violent pulsations in the veins of the neck.

**Aortic Valve:** At this valve the murmur is very soft, and diastolic in time, it does not cause a Corrigan's or water hammer pulse, nor capillary pulsations, neither does the diastolic blood pressure fall to as low a level as in organic aortic insufficiency. The systolic blood pressure in the lower extremity is the same or only slightly higher than in the upper extremity. When this form of functional murmur occurs in any valve the systolic blood pressure always drops from 10 to 15 or more mm after exercise. This murmur comes on as a result of a strain upon a previously weakened myocardium, it may occur in one valve as the result of a nonorganic lesion in another valve. In severe dilatation several valves may be affected at the same time, and the condition may be severe enough to cause failure of compensation, giving rise to the well defined train of symptoms known as heart failure. As soon as muscle tone is reestablished, the hemic murmur or murmurs will disappear. No murmur is heard in very severe cases of decompensation because the valve orifices are greatly dilated, causing the leaf-

lets to remain too far apart to be of any protection to the blood stream going or coming, and also because the myocardium lacks motive power.

**II Uneven Tension of the Papillary Muscles:** This may be due either to faulty innervation or degeneration of the muscles themselves, their tendinae or to both.

The papillary muscles, through the chordae tendinae, hold the mitral and tricuspid valves in a state of constant equilibrium. If for any reason either a papillary muscle or one or more of its tendinae refuse to bear their share of the burden of holding the valve leaflets at the proper tension, a very soft murmur will result. This may occur as the result of

(a) Degeneration of the papillary muscle, no matter how little of the muscle is degenerated, that part cannot control one or more of the tendinae, a weakened portion in an otherwise taut valve leaflet will permit a slight regurgitation.

(b) Faulty innervation of the papillary muscle or of several of its tendinae, which may cause spasms or unequal contractions manifested by an uneven closure of the valve leaflets. Having, therefore, an uneven surface to guard against, the blood stream will necessarily allow a slight regurgitation of blood, which is heard as a murmur. The quantity of regurgitating blood is so small that it produces no other symptoms except this very soft murmur.

This class of murmurs occurs as a rule in persons who are of a high strung or neurotic temperament and in *neurocirculatory asthenia*. The heart in such subjects is not under perfect mechanical control when enduring mental or physical strain.

Exercise will often bring out such a murmur because the extra amount of work thrown upon these muscles and tendons may excite uneven tension, the added exertion permitting a slight leak. On the other hand exercise may cause such a murmur to disappear because under a steady strain the mechanism readjusts itself the difference is merely a question of degree. This murmur is characterized by its extreme shortness or evanescence. It is high pitched and of a metallic whistling quality, resembling the sound produced by forcibly swishing a reed or stick through the air. This sound comes at the end of a fairly normal, though rapid first sound, it is systolic in time, and occurs most frequently at the apex, in the fourth interspace to the left of the sternum, the lower part of the midsternum or in the third intercostal space in the order named.

Functional murmurs may either be heard more plainly when certain postures are assumed, or they may disappear altogether, depending upon the strain produced by the exertion upon the individual heart chamber and its coordinating papillary muscles.

**Post mortem** The supposedly affected valve will sometimes show no signs of loss of elasticity but it must be remembered that after death all valves are equally inelastic. Microscopic examination may occasionally show a slight degeneration in the valve leaflets the papillary muscles some of its tendinae or the valve orifice.

**III Inelasticity of the Valve Leaflets Themselves** In this class of non organic murmurs the papillary muscles and tendons are of normal tone and the valve orifice is not weakened or dilated the murmur occurs as a result of inelas-

ticity of the valve leaflets themselves. Normally, the closure of the semilunar valves causes a distinct, high pitched sound which we recognize as the second cardiac sound. Also in cases of myocarditis the valvular elements of the first sound can often be picked out from the muscular element by their high pitched character. This high pitched sound is caused by the closure or snap of the valve leaflets. But if the elasticity of the valve leaflets is wanting the high pitched snappy sound gives way to an adventitious sound, which can be recognized as a distinct murmur. It is not transmitted. This variety of murmur is usually heard at the base of the heart most often over the pulmonic orifice and because there is no muscular element entering into the production of the second heart sound it cannot mask the valve leaflet sound as is often the case in apical murmurs of this character.

Any condition that will cause loss of elasticity either permanent or temporary will produce an alteration of the normal sound. All forms of anemia and malnutrition because of deficient nutrition may cause the valves to become more or less inelastic. When the valve leaflets lose their elasticity, they lack the vigor which the normal valve leaflets possess and close rather sluggishly, they cannot withstand the intracardial blood pressure, consequently, a small portion of blood leaks through the valve orifice thus causing a faint murmur. The quantity of blood must necessarily be small otherwise it would produce ruptured compensation or, at least more definite symptoms of an embarrassed circulation. This murmur is not transmitted because the counter eddies set up are not strong enough to carry the sound along the blood stream. These

murmurs are systolic in time because it is the great force exerted upon the weakened inelastic valve leaflets by the systole of the heart that causes them to yield

In some instances all the three factors mentioned as causes of nonorganic murmurs may be operative in a single case. Thus, in one patient a valve orifice may be dilated, the valve leaflets may have lost their tone and the papillary muscles may be degenerated, all from a common cause.

#### Austin-Flint Murmur (functional)

This is a presystolic murmur heard at the apex and often occurs with aortic regurgitation. It is said to be due to displacement during the diastole of the anterior cusp of the mitral valve. This acts as a partial obstruction to the flow of blood from the left auricle through the mitral valve into the left ventricle. Also the peculiar position of the mitral cusp causes it to project into a double blood stream (the normal blood from the ventricle into the aorta, and the opposite or return flow from the leaky valve), thus causing vibration.

This murmur differs from true mitral stenosis by the lack of a systolic shock and its weakened intensity, as well as by its constant association with aortic re-

gurgitation and by its time, which is early diastolic.

**Graham-Steele Murmur.** This is a diastolic murmur heard over the pulmonic orifice. It often accompanies mitral stenosis.

**Characteristics of Functional Murmurs.** 1 Systolic in time in a vast majority of the cases

2 Most commonly heard at the pulmonic orifice or over the midsternal line and third rib. Next in frequency over the tricuspid and mitral areas, rarely over the aortic.

3 Rarely transmitted beyond a short distance.

4 Usually soft and blowing in character.

5 Not accompanied by cardiac hypertrophy.

6 Loudest, as a rule, at the end of inspiration because at that time the lungs are under great tension which must be met by a greater effort on the part of the pulmonic valve.

7 Evanescent in character, they may disappear and reappear at various times.

8 Usually associated with some form of anemia and myocarditis.

9 When the patient improves the murmur disappears.

Table Differentiating Organic from Functional Murmurs

TIME	
<i>Organic</i>	<i>Functional</i>
May be systolic, presystolic and diastolic	Usually systolic
MAXIMUM INTENSITY	
May be heard at any one of the valve orifices	Most common at the pulmonic and mitral orifices
AREA OF TRANSMISSION	
Each murmur heard at a certain valve has its definite area of transmission	As a rule not transmitted and very seldom beyond the precordial area
QUALITY	
Either rough and churning or loud and blowing	Soft, blowing

## Medical Diagnosis

<i>Organic</i>	<i>DURATION</i>	<i>Functional</i>
Occupies nearly the whole of the systole, diastole or presystole.	Very short	
<b>HYPERTROPHY</b>		
Cardiac hypertrophy	No hypertrophy, unless preëxisting	
<b>RESPIRATORY INFLUENCE</b>		
Heard loudest during expiration	Heard loudest during inspiration	
Definite history of preëxisting disease no improvement of murmur	Anæmia, murmur disappears after improvement	
Signs of circulatory stasis	No circulatory stasis	

### Musical Murmurs

Under the term of *musical murmurs* are included all organic and functional murmurs, which have a metallic, whistling or sonorous quality. Most musical murmurs occur at the aortic orifice and at times also at the mitral and tricuspid valves. They are, in the majority of instances, of organic origin.

**Etiology** The causes of musical murmurs are many. A sclerotic valve, hardening of a projecting valve cusp, fibrous bands stretched across heart chambers near the valve orifice, a moderator band, or any other condition that will possibly produce an added vibration to the blood column during its course through the heart.

### Extra Cardiac Sounds

**Cardiopulmonary or Cardiorespiratory Murmurs** In some instances a soft, exceedingly short, blowing sound which consists of a number of short whiffs not unlike an interrupted breath sound, is heard at the apex, or below the left scapular angle. This sound is not transmitted, it becomes louder during inspiration and during ventricular systole, it often disappears under strong pressure with the stethoscope, it also has a peculiar superficial quality.

This murmur may be caused by the rhythmical impact of the heart against

a portion of the lung covering the heart (the *lingula pulmonis*), and may be found in conditions where that portion of the lung becomes emphysematous or when it is bound down by adhesions.

**Pericardial Friction Sounds** Normally the heart is so perfectly lubricated as to function noiselessly in the pericardial sac. In diseased conditions of the pericardium, inflammatory exudates may cause dryness or roughening of the surfaces, thus producing a rough, grating or grazing sound, not unlike the pleural friction rub.

**Characteristics.** A pericardial sound is usually heard over the body of the heart or near the great vessels, seldom at the apex, and as a rule, in the third and fourth interspaces anteriorly. It is circumscribed in character, having no definite area of transmission. Ordinarily heard as a to and fro friction sound, it may occur at any time of the heart's cycle, its rhythm, however, is not constant. It may be heard a few seconds with the systole, then with the diastole and again a little later during both, therefore, the time may vary in accordance with change of posture or the quantity of fluid present.

The sound is of a rubbing quality, appearing to be superficial and becoming louder during pressure with the stethoscope or when the patient bends forward. It is found in rheumatic tuber

culous, uremic and other types of plastic pericarditis, also in certain types of myocarditis such as occur in coronary thrombosis

bronchial breathing are elicited in the left scapular region near the inferior angle when the patient lies on his left side or sits upright. These disappear

#### Differential Table Between Endocardial Murmurs and Pericardial Friction Sounds

##### ENDOCARDIAL MURMURS

Occur constantly at a certain time of the heart's cycle

Systolic, diastolic or presystolic

Heard over a valve orifice.

As a rule transmitted.

Of blowing or churning qualities

Accompanied by other evidence of murmur  
Sound is deep seated not influenced by pressure or posture

##### PERICARDIAL FRICTION SOUNDS

May occur at different times in the course of a few minutes

Usually to and fro but may occur at any time

Heard over the body of the heart at third or fourth interspaces

Never transmitted no venous hum

Rubbing or grating quality

Accompanied by severe retrosternal pain

Sound very superficial influenced by pressure of the stethoscope and by posture

**Pericardial Splashing Sound** This, when present, is heard as a distinct splashing sound synchronous with the heart action. It may be caused by a hydro or pyopneumopericardium and by the presence of a large pulmonary cavity half filled with fluid adjacent to the heart. At times it may be heard as a result of a greatly inflated stomach but in this condition the sounds are of a distinctly amphoric or metallic quality. Pleuropericardial friction sounds have been discussed in the previous chapter and can readily be distinguished from endocardial murmurs.

**Subphrenic Friction** This is a rubbing grating sound which can be heard at the lower part of the sternum in the infrachondral space, it is synchronous with the heart's action.

**Bamberger's and Ewart's Sign in Pericardial Effusion** Dullness and

when the patient assumes the prone posture. This sign is prominent in large pericardial effusions particularly of the rheumatic type. A greatly enlarged heart especially when associated with pulmonary compression may also present this sign.

**The Seagull Murmur** This is a high pitched systolic murmur having a peculiar quality resembling the cry of a sea gull during flight while feeding. This murmur may be heard over the mitral valve or over the body of the heart. It may be congenital or acquired and is usually due to a moderator band stretched across the cavity of the left ventricle. The dislodgement of one of the tendinae so that its free end becomes adherent to the wall opposite its attachment may cause this type of murmur. It may also be produced by calcareous infiltration of the free edge of a valve leaflet.



## CHAPTER XVII

### Diseases of the Heart

The pathologic states encountered in the cardiovascular system may be the result of general systemic affection or of local disease of any of the organs comprising the circulatory system. Many diseases have a predilection for or leave their imprint upon the heart or the blood vessels or upon both so that disease of the circulatory organs results from disease elsewhere. There are also conditions in which the heart or the blood vessels are the primary diseased structures and because of their malfunction the individual as a whole is affected, and may present one or several of a group of symptoms associated with cardiac affections.

#### Symptomatology of Cardiovascular Diseases

The nine important symptoms associated with disease of the circulatory system are (1) Dyspnea, (2) cyanosis, (3) edema, (4) pain, (5) digestive disturbances, (6) cough, (7) palpitation, (8) fatigability, and (9) cerebral manifestations. The severity of any of these symptoms and their manner of occurrence depend upon the structures affected and the severity of the affection.

(1) **Dyspnea:** Acceleration of the respiratory rate after exertion, during certain emotional states, and because of deficient oxygen in the respired air is a normal reaction of normal individuals. This type of dyspnea disappears after a short period of rest, when the emotional disturbance is over and when the oxygen content of the air has been replenished. Shortness of breath is also a common

symptom in fevers, in diseases of the lungs, in anemia and in other pathologic states. In heart disease dyspnea on exertion, when it is out of proportion to the amount of exertion, is the earliest symptom of impaired cardiac capacity. In more advanced cases, the dyspnea is more marked and may be apparent even when at rest. Orthopnea is a term applied to severe dyspnea occurring while the individual is at rest even in the upright position. Dyspnea is an early symptom in left-sided heart failure. "Cardiac asthma" and paroxysmal dyspnea are associated with advanced myocardial failure. The patient is usually awakened with severe dyspnea during the early hours of the morning or at any other time so that he is obliged to sit up. The dyspnea may occur both during exertion and while at rest. It is accompanied by a wheezing in the chest, by a short, hacking cough, by expectoration of frothy bloodstained fluid, and by pulmonary edema. These episodes may occur nightly or several times a week or at longer intervals. The frequent recurrence of these attacks is a bad prognostic omen. Cheyne-Stokes breathing, if of cardiac origin, is associated with arteriosclerotic and hypertensive myocardial failure. The administration of morphine, chloral or other hypnotics in such cases aggravates or produces this type of breathing.

(2) **Cyanosis:** Cyanosis of cardiac origin affecting the lips, fingernails and, in more severe cases, the rest of the body is found in certain types of congenital heart disease. If this symptom

develops in other types of heart disease, it is an indication of right ventricular heart failure. Cyanosis may be the forerunner of edema and may later be associated with dyspnea and other signs of heart failure

(3) **Edema** This is among the first symptoms of right sided heart failure. At first the edema occurs over the feet and ankles and is seen at night, it usually disappears by morning after a night's rest. As the heart failure progresses, the edema becomes more marked and gradually ascends so that it may involve the whole body and is not remedied sufficiently by rest in bed. Associated with the edema there may develop ascites, pleural effusion, pericardial effusion, enlargement of the liver and passive congestion in other organs

(4) **Pain** Many serious types of cardiovascular disease are not accompanied by pain. The occurrence of pain in the precordium or along the arterial or venous route, if of cardiac or vascular origin, is an indication of great interference with the circulation of blood to the affected part. Precordial sensitivity, fullness or distress may occur reflexly from gastrointestinal, hepatic or pancreatic disease, or from mediastinal crowding. In aortic disease mitral stenosis, pericarditis and aortic aneurysm the pain may be paroxysmal. In the so-called cardiac neurosis, in effort syndrome, in neurocirculatory asthenia and in overindulgence in tobacco, precordial distress is brought on by exertion or excitement. In angina pectoris the severe pain is usually brought on by exertion, occasionally it occurs without apparent exertion. Coronary sclerosis and aortalgia may cause precordial pain on physical and mental excitement, or, when at rest

coronary infarction causes sudden severe and prolonged pain. In vascular disease, pain may occur at various sites as a result of embolism, thrombosis, or obliteration. This may lead to hyperemia, anemia or to gangrene of the affected part.

(5) **Digestive disturbances** of cardiovascular disease are generally due to passive congestion of the digestive organs and the liver

(6) **Cough** generally results from passive congestion of the lungs, it is seen in pulmonary edema, and also when the lungs or mediastinum are crowded by a large auricle, dilated ventricles, cardiac aneurysm or aortic aneurysm. Cough also occurs with dyspnea or orthopnea of cardiac origin and is often associated with mitral stenosis, congenital heart disease, and occasionally a short hacking cough accompanies or follows the pauses in ventricular extrasystoles

(7) **Palpitation** Palpitation may occur because of disease of the myocardium, endocardium, pericardium and also because of vascular disease and disease of the blood. The rapid heart rate in these instances is due to circulatory insufficiency. Cardiac palpitation is also brought on by physical and psychic excitement, by certain drugs, and it may be caused by shock fevers, etc. Occasionally the patient may complain of cardiac palpitation when none exists, the forceful heartbeats are mistaken for a rapid rate (SEE *Tachycardia* p 510)

(8) **Fatigability** Lack of endurance and a feeling of exhaustion whether at rest or with mild exertion is a frequent complaint in those having low blood pressure, in neurocirculatory asthenia, and in vasovagal disturbance. At times this is accompanied by dizziness, weakness, precordial discomfort and oc

asionally by syncope. Fatigability is also an early sign in all types of heart disease.

(9) **Cerebral Manifestations** such as headache, faintness, confusion and forgetfulness occur in arteriosclerosis of the cerebral vessels and in hypertension. Oc-

clusion of cerebral vessels by thrombi or by emboli may lead to hemiplegia or other types of paralysis. Syncope and at times convulsions may occur in heart block (Stokes Adams syndrome). Psychosis is not of infrequent occurrence in cardiac decompensation.

### Acquired Diseases of the Heart

The heart is composed of three layers of structures, the pericardium, the myocardium and the endocardium. Inflammation of the pericardium is known as pericarditis, inflammation of the myocardium as myocarditis, and inflammation of the endocardium as endocarditis. When the valvular portion of the endocardium is affected it is often spoken of as valvulitis. When all structures are affected it is designated by the term pancarditis or carditis. Because of the intimacy of the three layers, disease in one will eventually affect its adjacent structure or all three may simultaneously become diseased. Thus when the pericardium becomes affected myocarditis follows, or when the myocardium is primarily affected the pericardium, the endocardium or both may become diseased and when the endocardium becomes pathologic first, myocarditis or pancarditis may follow.

Diseases of the heart may be congenital or acquired. Congenital diseases are comparatively rare. Acquired heart disease may be functional or organic.

Functional heart affections are generally caused by disease elsewhere and as soon as the underlying cause is remedied the heart's action returns to normal because structurally the heart was unaffected.

Organic heart disease denotes permanent injury to the heart from which it

cannot fully recover. Among the diseases responsible for organic heart disease rheumatism heads the list. Other infections such as syphilis, bacterial infections, acute contagious diseases, various systemic affections (such as arteriosclerosis), diabetes, obesity, thyrotoxicosis, nephritis and also strain, malnutrition, poisons and toxic substances all contribute their share in causing heart affections.

#### Diseases of the Pericardium

Normally between the visceral and parietal layers of the pericardium there is a small quantity of fluid which acts as a lubricant thus permitting free action of the heart. Because of disease or infection this exudate may undergo various changes. The exudate may become plastic or fibrinous causing adhesions between the two pericardial surfaces or between the pericardium and adjacent structures, or the pericardium may become thickened and calcified. In other instances effusions of various types and degrees may develop. The effusions may consist of serum (serous pericarditis) of pus (pyopericarditis) of blood (hemopericarditis) or of air (pneumopericarditis).

The etiology of pericarditis is varied; the commonest causes are (1) Rheumatic fever, (2) tuberculosis, (3) pneumonia, (4) chronic nephritis, (5) coronary occlusion, (6) bacterial infections.

such as streptococci staphylococci gonococci and other infections by way of the circulation or by extension from adjacent diseased tissue and (7) trauma either external injuries or internal injuries by a fractured rib, the tearing away of pleuropericardial adhesions or

Pneumopericarditis (air in the pericardial sac)

**Dry, Plastic or Fibrinous Pericarditis** In this form of pericarditis the acute stage is manifested by congestion with overfilling of the blood vessels after which the layers of the



Fig 1—Acute pericarditis

the breaking through of a mediastinal abscess or lung abscess or a malignant growth

Four forms of pericarditis can be recognized by physical signs

Dry plastic or fibrinous pericarditis

Effusions in the pericardium (pericarditis with effusions)

Pericardial adhesions (adhesive pericarditis)

pericardium become dry and sticky. As the disease progresses the surfaces are covered with a thick tenacious exudate or are roughened by fibrous adhesions giving it the so called bread and butter appearance. The pain may be referred to the left shoulder and down the arm thus resembling angina pectoris.

**Physical Signs** Inspection is usually negative so far as the precordial area

is concerned *Palpation* may reveal a to and fro friction rub synchronous with the apex beat but this friction rub is not constant and may be felt at various places particularly at the apex of the heart or at the base. The affected areas usually circumscribed and small. *Per*

may be serous serofibrinous purulent or hemorrhagic

*Symptoms* often depend upon the underlying cause. A simple serous effusion if not very large will give rise to no symptoms. A large effusion will cause dyspnea precordial fullness and definite

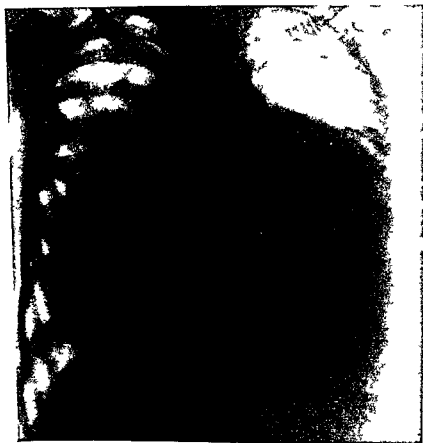


Fig 2—Large pericardial effusion note globular shadow

*Effusion* shows no change in the area of cardiac dullness. *Auscultation* yields a superficial to and fro friction sound which is brought out more clearly by pressure with the stethoscope or the ear. It can be heard either at the apex or in the third intercostal space and at times a little above it.

**Effusions in the Pericardium (Pericardial Effusions)** Effusions

physical signs. A pyopericardium will give symptoms of sepsis in addition to physical signs.

*Physical Signs* of pericarditis with effusion depend largely upon the amount of effusion and its character.

*Inspection* If the effusion is large, the patient will be dyspneic and have to assume an erect or sitting posture. The apex beat will be visible in the third

or fourth left intercostal space, near the anterior axillary line, or beyond it. If pleuropericardial adhesions precede the effusion, the apex may not be displaced by the fluid, and the left lung may be compressed. When the effusion is large there will be cyanosis and distention of the vessels of the neck and of the upper chest.

**Palpation** This confirms inspection as to the extent of the apex beat. Before the effusion becomes large, a friction rub may at times be felt over the base of the heart. As the amount of effusion increases the friction rub disappears, often reappearing when the effusion is nearly absorbed. In large effusions the pulse is of low pressure and may be obliterated during deep inspiration.

**Percussion** This shows the area of cardiac dullness to be inverted, i. e., the base of dullness is downward and the apex is upward. Dullness is elicited in the fifth interspace, to the right of the sternum (Roth's sign), shifting dullness may be elicited by placing the patient in the knee chest position. In this position, because of gravity a large area of dullness is elicited over the upper sternum and extends for a considerable distance to the right and left of it depending upon the quantity of fluid present. Ebstein's angle (cardiohepatic angle of clearness) is obliterated, and the area of relative dullness is diminished, the left and, to some extent, the right lung being retracted. Liver dullness may be displaced downward.

**Auscultation** In large effusions the heart sounds are distant, rapid and often feeble. Respiratory sounds to the right of the sternum may be obliterated, as are also those close to the sternum on the left side. Bronchial breathing and

egophony may be heard below the right nipple and behind the angle of the left scapula. If the effusion is very large, and the patient leans forward or assumes the knee elbow position, the dullness and bronchial breathing previously heard at the angle of the left scapula will disappear, reappearing when the erect posture is once more assumed.

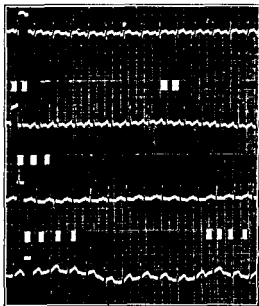


Fig. 3 — Electrocardiogram showing changes in adhesive pericarditis. Note in version of T wave in leads II and III and low amplitudes.

**X-ray examination** will show a smooth, globular, often symmetrical enlargement of both the right and left lower borders of the heart, while the upper part of heart is narrowed.

**Purulent Pericarditis** This may appear as pyopericarditis or, what is commoner, as a localized collection of pus at the base of the heart, in the second or third interspace to the left of the sternum. The pus travels along the course of the great vessels. Another area favorable to local pericardial abscess is in the vicinity of the apex beat.

**Symptoms and Physical Signs** Symptoms are those of a septic infection and, in addition, physical signs such as local bulging, rapid heart action, and increased dullness over the site of the abscess may be elicited.

**Adherent Pericarditis (Chronic Adhesive Pericarditis)** Adherent peri-

type of pericarditis is usually caused by rheumatic fever, tuberculosis or pneumonia. Pericarditis caused by cardiac infarction is usually localized.

**Physical Signs.** *Inspection* will usually reveal displacement of the apex beat towards the left, due to cardiac hypertrophy. Broadbent's sign, which consists



Fig. 4—Chronic obliterative tuberculosis of the pericardium.  
(Philadelphia General Hospital.)

In some instances when the heart is fixed by adhesions, the apex beat may be found in an abnormal position, i. e. in the fourth interspace, higher lower, to the left or to the right of its normal position.

**Palpation** This confirms inspection as to the position of the apex beat and the retraction of the lower portion of the chest. The pulse may become very small during the height of inspiration (Kussmaul's pulse—pulsus paradoxus) and a diastolic shock is often felt at the apex.

**Percussion** No definite percussion changes are demonstrable except such as may be caused by cardiac hypertrophy or dilatation.

**Auscultation** There are no definite auscultatory signs characteristic of adherent pericarditis though there may be a systolic murmur over the mitral and tricuspid areas due to relative insufficiency.

**Pick's Disease** (pericarditis perihepatitis cirrhosis and ascitis) This is described as a condition in which the pericardium the mediastinum the pleura spleen liver and omentum are covered with a thick white layer of inflammatory product. The organs so affected look as if coated with an icing (Zuckerguss). This condition is usually but not always tuberculous in origin.

**Symptoms and Physical Signs** are those of atrophic cirrhosis ascites enlarged superficial veins and pericardial and pleural effusions are often present. The heart is not enlarged there are no murmurs and the blood pressure is low there is pulsus paradoxus and occasionally cyanosis. Because of the peculiar exudate upon the pericardium this symptom complex is often classified as *adherent or constrictive pericarditis*.

**Pneumopericarditis** Gas in the pericardial sac may be due to perforation of the pericardium caused by trauma such as puncture with sharp instruments by ulceration of the lung or the bronchi or by an infection with gas producing microorganisms.

**Symptoms** These are dyspnea, precordial distress and pain radiating to the



Fig 5—Chronic obliterated pericarditis with possible carcinoma of the pericardium secondary to carcinoma of the right lung (Courtesy Dr H K Mohler)

arms and downwards along the diaphragm.

**Physical Signs** On inspection and palpation the precordial area is bulging (in young individuals) the apex beat is weak or altogether absent. On palpation emphysematous crepitation may be felt.

**Percussion** elicits tympany over the entire precordium when the patient assumes the knee chest position a small area of cardiac dullness may be elicited near the normal apical impulse. If fluid



and air are present (hydropneumopericarditis) a horizontal line of dullness can be elicited which changes in alteration of the patient's posture.

*Auscultation* sounds depend upon the contents of the pericardial sac. If only air is present in the pericardium, the heart sounds assume a loud ringing metallic quality. If air and fluid be present, a distinct splashing sound synchronous with the heart's action will be audible.

### Diseases of the Myocardium

From the standpoint of cardiac function the myocardium is the most important structure, it carries the load of the circulation. A heart having no other defect except a weak myocardium will cause an inadequate circulation which will lead to heart failure.

The myocardium may become hypertrophied, dilated, or, rarely, atrophied.

**Heart Failure** (cardiac decompensation) This may result from injury to the myocardium caused by interference with its blood supply by various direct infections, by secondary invasion from the pericardium or endocardium and by constant strain upon the heart muscle causing cardiac dilatation. *The General Symptoms* Weakness, diminished exercise tolerance, dyspnea, pulmonary passive congestion (basal rales, edema, cough), cyanosis, venous distention, enlarged liver and edema. *The Local Signs* are dilated heart, and alteration in the position of the apex beat and in the quality, force and rhythm of the heart sounds. In *left ventricular failure* the early signs are pulmonary congestion (basal rales, edema, pleural effusion). In *right ventricular failure*, edema of the legs, cyanosis and enlargement of the liver are early signs.

**Acute Myocarditis** In the acute form four varieties are recognized.

#### 1 *Primary Acute Myocarditis*

This is an acute interstitial inflammation of the myocardium which develops without any known definite cause. Focal infection may play a part in its etiology.

#### 2 *Secondary Acute Myocarditis*

This is an acute inflammation of the heart muscle which may occur during the course of some infectious disease, and may also be secondary to acute inflammation of the pericardium or endocardium.

#### 3 *Acute Septic Myocarditis*

This is a localized suppurative inflammation of the heart muscle. It may result from infection in some distant portion of the body, carried to the heart by the coronary arteries, or it may extend by contiguity from a suppurating pericardium or endocardium. It may be caused by diphtheria, coronary occlusion and by acute infectious diseases.

#### 4 *Rheumatic Myocarditis*

This may be classified as a distinct entity. It is characterized by the presence of 'Aschoff's bodies', general myocardial hypertrophy and often by mitral disease.

#### *Symptoms of Acute Myocarditis*

These are usually masked by the primary disease. Great weakness, cardiac palpitation with irregularity, a small feeble pulse and dyspnea out of proportion to the underlying condition point towards affection of the myocardium.

#### *Physical Signs*

*Inspection* shows the apex beat to be extremely weak, or not at all visible. A visible apex beat when palpated may be weak and slow or rapid, the pulse is weak and may be irregular, and areas of tenderness are palpable over various portions of the precordium.

**Percussion** in these cases is not of great diagnostic importance. The area of cardiac dullness may be increased because of previous hypertrophy because of dilatation or it may be decreased because of pulmonary emphysema.

**Auscultation** may reveal that the first sound of the heart resembles the second heart sound, is wanting in muscular quality and is often high pitched snappy and rapid (embryocardia). There may be a murmur or a friction rub or evidence of heart block or other irregularity. The *electrocardiogram* may show alteration of the T waves and of the Q R S complexes.

**Chronic Myocarditis** This chronic inflammation of the heart muscle is anatomically characterized by round cell infiltration of the interstitial connective tissue followed by parenchymatous changes of the muscle fibers. The myocardium as a whole may show such changes or only circumscribed portions of it may be affected.

Chronic myocarditis may be caused by (a) Nephritis, (b) syphilis (c) grave anemias (d) diabetes (e) rheumatic fever, (f) malaria (g) certain wasting diseases (h) toxic substances such as lead mercury and arsenic (i) excessive use of drugs such as alcohol and tobacco, (j) disease of the coronary arteries (k) joint affections (l) direct extension from the endocardium and pericardium and (m) by arterio-sclerosis.

**Symptoms** The most prominent symptom of chronic myocarditis is cardiac insufficiency. The heart muscle is unable to withstand ordinary strain and manifests a loss of its reserve power. During slight exertion the heart action becomes extremely rapid the rapidity

of the heart being entirely out of proportion to the exercise. When a patient who is suffering from myocarditis rests immediately after an exercise test the heart does not regain its previous rate for several minutes, the time required for a degenerated heart muscle to quiet down after exertion is usually two or three times as long as that needed by a normal heart. Often in cases of myocarditis the heart rate rises quickly when exertion is first begun and when this exertion is continued beyond a certain period the heart rate becomes slower than it was at the outset. The same holds true with the blood pressure. When blood pressure falls 10 to 20 mm of mercury during exertion it is an indication of grave myocardial degeneration. Cardiospasm pylorospasm colic and angina pectoris are often prominent symptoms in this condition.

**Physical Signs** On inspection the patient appears cyanosed particularly about his finger tips lips and ears. The apex beat may not necessarily be displaced its position depending upon the previous condition of the heart. If the heart was previously hypertrophied the apex beat will be displaced to the left and downward if dilatation accompanies myocarditis the apex beat will be displaced downward.

**Palpation** confirms inspection as to the location and extent of the apex beat. The pulse is weak and arrhythmic may either be constant or induced by slight exertion. Blood pressure may be very low or high.

Chronic myocarditis need not necessarily change the normal *percussion* outline of the heart but if hypertrophy or dilatation be present the percussion changes will be characteristic of these conditions.

*Auscultation* reveals a first sound that is short, feeble, and lacking in muscular quality. Usually also there is a reduplication of that sound. The second sound, particularly the aortic, is accentuated. When dilatation coexists, a systolic mur-

ers are said to be displaced or very much encroached upon by fatty tissue, and this infringement necessarily weakens the myocardium, so that its normal contractile power is partially lost. The signs and symptoms of this condition are



Fig. 6—Myocardial degeneration with cardiac dilatation

mur will be heard at the apex and is transmitted over a small area.

**Fatty Heart.** Under this heading may be included the two conditions so prominently stressed by older writers, namely *fatty infiltration* and *fatty degeneration*. In both conditions the heart fib-

ers are said to be displaced or very much encroached upon by fatty tissue, and this infringement necessarily weakens the myocardium, so that its normal contractile power is partially lost. The signs and symptoms of this condition are similar to those of chronic myocarditis. Only a pathological examination can accurately differentiate fatty heart from other forms of myocardial changes.

**Hypertrophy of the Heart.** Hypertrophy of the heart is a physiological condition. Being nature's method of en-

hancing the heart's capacity to meet the demands of the body

The heart muscle may hypertrophy as a result of

(a) Exercise.

(b) The effort to overcome some deficiency in one of its valves e.g. mitral regurgitation (compensatory) Aortic stenosis aortic regurgitation or a combination of these murmurs will cause left ventricular hypertrophy

(c) The effort to overcome resistance in the peripheral circulation (disease of the kidney or the liver)

(d) Tricuspid regurgitation or other venous engorgement which may cause right ventricular hypertrophy

(e) Mitral stenosis which will produce left auricular hypertrophy and right ventricular and in some instances also left ventricular hypertrophy (particularly when associated with rheumatic myocarditis) Tricuspid stenosis may cause right auricular hypertrophy

(f) Increased rapidity of the circulation e.g. exophthalmic goiter

(g) Chronic adhesive pericarditis in which the heart may or may not be enlarged

(h) Rheumatic fever even in the absence of an endocardial lesion

**Physical Signs** The physical signs of cardiac hypertrophy depend entirely upon the amount of enlargement present and the chambers involved

In left ventricular hypertrophy *inspection* will reveal an apex beat displaced downward and toward the left *palpation* will confirm the location of the apex beat and ascertain its increased force. The pulse is usually full and not very easily compressible *Percussion* will elicit an increased area of cardiac dullness. If only left ventricular hypertrophy is present dullness will be in-

creased to the left of the sternum if both left and right ventricular hypertrophy are present the area of cardiac dullness will be increased to the right and left of the sternum *Auscultation* reveals the heart sounds to be very loud and distinct the first sound is booming in quality while the second sound may be accentuated depending upon the underlying cause of the hypertrophy. If the cardiac hypertrophy is caused by some intrapulmonary condition the second pulmonic sound will be accentuated but if caused by increased systemic pressure the second aortic sound will be accentuated

**Dilatation of the Heart** By dilatation of the heart is meant an increase in the size of the chambers of the heart due to the overstretching or degeneration of its walls. The dilatation may affect one or more chambers of the heart and may be acute or chronic

**Acute Dilatation** This is usually primary the symptoms are those of heart failure dyspnea cyanosis edema of the lungs etc.

**Chronic Dilatation** This is secondary either to some valvular defect or to a gradual strain brought to bear upon a previously weakened myocardium. Hypertrophy may eventually give way to dilatation particularly in valvular disease as the heart muscle in these cases gradually and persistently enlarges in order to overcome the deficiency of an ever increasing leak. To compensate for this leak the heart muscle continues to hypertrophy until it reaches its maximum beyond that point it will dilate

*Symptoms* of chronic dilatation are very similar to those of acute dilatation except that the onset is more insidious

*Physical signs* revealed by *inspection* are cyanosis pulsation in the jugulars

epigastric pulsation and dyspnea, by *palpation*, edema or anasarca, downward displacement of the apical impulse, which is feeble and diffuse and a weak rapid and wavy pulse will be found

*Percussion* shows the area of cardiac dullness to be increased in the direction of the dilated chamber. Since the right ventricle is the one most frequently so affected increased dullness is found to be downward and toward the right of the sternum

*Auscultation* reveals the heart sounds to be weak, rapid and often arrhythmic with frequent reduplications of the first and second sounds and often functional or organic murmurs

**Atrophy of the Heart** Atrophy of the heart means diminution of the heart in weight and size. Either one of its chambers or the entire heart may be so affected. It is an exceedingly rare condition and may be congenital only recognizable on x-ray examination. Atrophy of the left ventricle may occur in very rare instances during the course of mitral stenosis. Pulmonary tuberculosis and chronic adhesive pericarditis (Pick's disease) are associated with a small heart

**Physical Signs** are those of cardiac inadequacy such as a feeble pulse, weak and irregular, often arrhythmic heart sounds and a diminished area of cardiac dullness. The E K G will show low amplitudes in all leads

**Aneurysm of the Heart** Aneurysm of the heart is a rare condition. It occurs as a sequel of ulcerative and syphilitic endocarditis and it may be due to localized myocardial degeneration or infarction as caused by coronary disease. In its chronic form it may take place in a myocardium which has undergone fibrotic changes

**Physical Signs** (when the aneurysm is sufficiently large) On *inspection* a pulsating area other than the apex beat is visible in the precordium, if a rib has been eroded a pulsating tumor can be seen and felt. *Percussion* may reveal an increased area of dullness corresponding to the site of the aneu-



Fig 7—Aneurysm of left ventricle.

rysm. On *auscultation* a loud indistinct murmur may be heard throughout the heart's cycle over the entire precordium. An accurate positive diagnosis of cardiac aneurysm cannot be readily made by physical examination but may be revealed by the x-ray and the fluoroscope. Often a positive diagnosis is only made post mortem

### Diseases of the Endocardium

#### Valvular Heart Disease

Any portion of the endocardium may be the seat of inflammation but unless the valves are affected diagnosis of endocarditis is extremely difficult. There are three forms of endocarditis recognized: Acute, subacute and chronic

**Acute Endocarditis** Acute endocarditis is arbitrarily divided into two

classifications (1) Simple or benign, (2) ulcerative, infective or malignant (bacterial)

**Simple endocarditis** is so called because as a rule this form gradually merges into the chronic form resulting in a chronic valvulitis

**Physical Signs** These depend largely upon auscultation. If the endocardium affects a valve, murmurs will be heard at that valve. Acute simple endocarditis is, in the majority of cases, due to infection, rheumatism, tonsillitis, chorea, syphilis or to the etiologic factors producing these conditions, though in many instances no definite cause is apparent.

**Bacterial or acute ulcerative endocarditis** is an exceedingly grave condition, the majority of cases terminating in death. Those patients who may recover usually remain chronic sufferers from a badly damaged heart.

**Etiology** This form of endocarditis is usually secondary to some infectious process in the body. It may occur as a result of chronic suppuration, diphtheria, scarlet fever, influenza, typhoid fever, streptococcal infection of the blood stream, gonorrhea, some suppurative processes in the bone and rarely because of pulmonary tuberculosis.

**Symptoms** These are irregular fever, chills, sweat, rapid loss of strength, anemia and embolic phenomena such as large spleen, large liver, joint affections, intracranial phenomena, tender sternum, and altered heart action.

**Physical Signs** Inspection as a rule shows the apex beat displaced because of the rapidly increasing hypertrophy. At first heaving but as the disease progresses, the apical impulse becomes irregular and weak. **Palpation** confirms inspection in regard to the position and extent of the apex beat. The pulse is

rapid, often irregular, and depends largely upon the heart valves affected. Thus, in mitral stenosis the pulse is small, while, *per contra*, in aortic regurgitation the pulse is large and collapses suddenly (water hammer pulse).

In the presence of hypertrophy an increased area of cardiac dullness can be elicited by *percussion*.

**Auscultation** will reveal a harsh murmur, usually at the mitral or at the aortic valve, often a combination of murmurs may be present.

**Blood culture** may reveal the infective organism.

**Subacute and Chronic Endocarditis**

**Subacute Bacterial (Infectious) Endocarditis**. This condition may develop in the absence of any previously known pathology, it may follow some local or general infection, and it may affect a previously normal valve, though more often the infection settles upon a defective valve, rheumatic or congenital. The mitral valve is more often invaded, though the aortic, pulmonic, and tricuspid valves or the mural endocardium may develop vegetations or ulcerations.

**Etiology** The streptococcus viridans is the etiologic factor in from 90 to 95 per cent of the cases. The influenza bacillus and the gonococcus and other organisms when attenuated may affect the heart valves and run a rapid subacute course. The disease may occur at all ages but is most common between the ages of 20 and 35 years, and is somewhat more prevalent among males than among females. The organisms after entering the blood stream find lodgment in a previously damaged valve and cause the formation of vegetations, these break off and spread emboli to various parts of the body. **Chronic bacterial (infectious) en**

*docarditis* is practically subacute infectious endocarditis running a longer course than usual

**Prognosis** The disease may run from three months to a year or more, depending upon the severity of the infection and the embolic spread. It is a fatal disease, though occasionally there may occur a spontaneous remission or a cure.

extremities (they are small superficial hemorrhagic spots). *Osler's nodes* and *Janeway's spots* are often found on the finger tips or palmar surfaces of the hands. The apex beat is usually forcible.

**Palpation** The position of the apical impulse depends upon the amount of hypertrophy and the degree of cardiac displacement. A thrill is usually felt

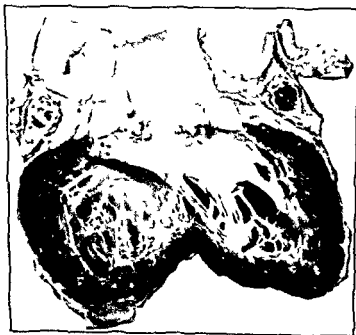


Fig 8—Subacute bacterial endocarditis (Philadelphia General Hospital)

**Auscultation** The murmur elicited at the mitral area is at first presystolic later it may become double. If at the aortic area it is usually systolic seldom diastolic. The tricuspid and pulmonary valves are infrequently affected.

**Diagnosis** This is usually based upon (a) Endocardial rough lesion (b) irregular fever, (c) anemia (d) embolic phenomena (e) petechiae (f)

**Etiology** In the young it usually follows acute articular rheumatism, chorea, tonsillitis and less frequently, any one of the acute infectious diseases. In the aged the commonest cause is arterio-sclerosis.

**Pathology** Mitral insufficiency is the result of insufficient closure of the mitral valve during ventricular systole thereby permitting a regurgitation. The



Fig. 9—Chronic sclerotic endocarditis

large spleen (g) sense of well being (h) positive blood culture

**Chronic Valvulitis** By this term is recognized any condition that gives rise to an organic heart murmur. The symptoms and signs of chronic valvulitis depend chiefly upon the valve affected (mitral, aortic or any other valve); the condition of the heart muscle, the amount of strain upon the heart and the presence or absence of intercurrent diseases.

**Mitral Regurgitation** The lesion causing mitral regurgitation is the most common of all organic valvular defects.

Insufficient closure of the valve may be caused by contraction of the so-called valve leaflets, permanent overstretching of the valve orifice or by constriction of the papillary muscle and chordae tendinae, thus preventing complete approximation of the valve.

**Symptoms** During compensation there are no symptoms except that the patient may notice that he tires on exertion sooner than do some of his friends or than he previously did. When compensation begins to fail the severity of the symptoms depends entirely upon the degree of failure of compensation. Ang



ing from dyspnea on exertion to anasarca, orthopnea and cyanosis

*Physical Signs Inspection During compensation*, general inspection is negative, the apex beat is displaced downwards and to the left, the amount of displacement depending upon the degree of cardiac hypertrophy

*After compensation begins to fail*, in the early stages when the left ventricle is still able to maintain some control

*After compensation begins to fail* the apex beat is more rapid, a thrill is seldom felt, there is considerable pretibial edema, most marked at night after the patient has been on his feet all day. The pulse is rapid, and somewhat irregular as to volume. Exertion aggravates these signs

*After failure of compensation*, the apex beat is weak and rapid, anasarca is well marked. The pulse may be irregular

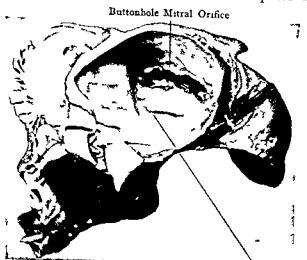


Fig 10—Mitral regurgitation (Jefferson Hospital Laboratory)

of the circulation with the assistance of the right ventricle, the following are noted. Moderate dyspnea, rapid weak and displaced apex beat, epigastric pulsation, pulsation at the root of the neck, slight cyanosis of the lips and finger tips, and pretibial edema at night. All these become aggravated on exertion.

*After failure of compensation* edema and anasarca, dyspnea, feeble apical impulse displaced downward and to the left, and violent venous pulsation are noted when the patient is at rest.

*Palpation During compensation* the apex beat is palpable, a little to left of the normal position and may be strong, a systolic thrill is felt in many cases

because of auricular fibrillation. Systolic blood pressure falls after slight exertion.

*Percussion During compensation* moderate cardiac hypertrophy of the left ventricle is elicited, as *compensation begins to fail* the percussion dullness increases on both sides of the sternum.

*After failure of compensation* percussion reveals marked dilatation of both ventricles and the left auricle. Pleural effusion, ascites and enlarged liver may at times be demonstrated.

*Auscultation* A systolic murmur, blowing in character, is heard at the apex. This may occur with the first sound of the heart, or the first sound may end with the blowing murmur.

and in severe cases the murmur may entirely displace the first heart sound. The loudness of the murmur is no indication as to the amount of leakage. The stronger the heart muscle everything

The pulmonic second sound is accentuated because of increased pulmonary pressure, and at times a reduplication of the second sound may be heard at the base. When the pulmonic second sound

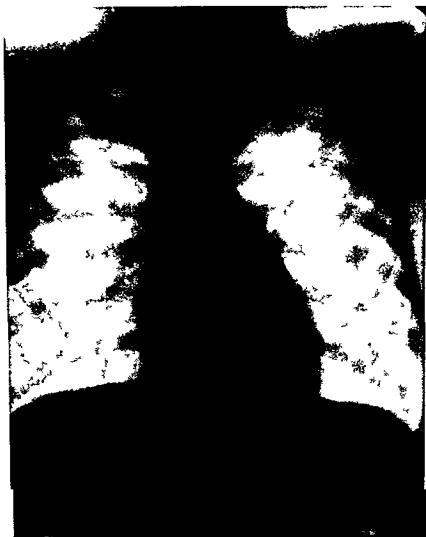


Fig 11—Mitral stenosis

else being equal the louder is the murmur. When the heart begins to weaken the murmur becomes fainter. Exercise always brings it out more clearly as does also cardiac stimulation. The murmur is transmitted to the left axilla and often as far as the scapular angle

begins to weaken it is an indication of left auricular weakness. Dyspnea and signs of pulmonary congestion are present.

**Mitral Stenosis** This condition is second in frequency to mitral regurgitation. It is found more frequently in children and young adults as one ad

vances in years other cardiac lesions accompany or displace it. Women are said to be more frequently affected than men. In the early stages when compensation is maintained the presence of a mitral stenotic murmur is often overlooked. This has been demonstrated on a large scale in the examination of drafted men when they first entered training camps and also when they were examined to be mustered out after

cases of mitral stenosis may be overlooked.

**Etiology** The most prominent factor in causing this form of endocarditis is rheumatism and its associated diseases *viz* tonsillitis and chorea or conditions predisposing to them and also bacterial infections. Mitral stenosis usually develops slowly. Acute endocarditis causing mitral stenosis is not very frequently found in adults past middle age. Mitral



Fig. 12—Heart showing buttonhole valve in mitral stenosis.  
(Jefferson Hospital Laboratory, Da Costa, W. H. Saunders Co.)

having served in the army from 6 to 18 months or longer.

In the routine heart examination of our soldiers frequently when the stethoscope was first placed over the mitral area no murmur was audible only a very strongly accentuated first sound being heard over the apex. But when such a soldier was placed in the recumbent posture or on his left side for one or two minutes a distinct presystolic thrill and murmur were often easily demonstrated at the apex. The very fact that the military camp examiners found more mitral stenotic than mitral regurgitant murmurs among the troops proves how easily these early

stenosis may be brought about by the same conditions that cause generalized arteriosclerosis and may also be associated with chronic nephritis, gout and rarely with syphilis. In acute vegetative endocarditis vegetations form on the free margins of the leaflets thus causing obstruction and in time shrinking.

**Pathology** The valvular orifice may be either buttonhole shaped or funnel shaped. The buttonhole orifice is caused by shrinking and puckering of the valve cusps because of fibrosis and is as a rule a chronic process. The funnel shaped orifice is usually a result of acute endocarditis; it may be brought about by adhesion of the adjacent valve

cusps In mitral stenosis there is an obstruction to the flow of blood as it leaves the left auricle for the left ventricle, in order to overcome the obstruction, the left auricle hypertrophies. Dilatation, however, occurs early in the disease because of the thin musculature of this chamber. This soon produces an overfilling of the pulmonary vein, with its resultant increased intrapulmonary pressure. The increased intrapulmonary pressure in its turn throws an added burden upon the right ventricle. As long as the right ventricle keeps its vigor, compensation is maintained, but as soon as the right ventricle begins to dilate, failure of compensation takes place. Mitral stenosis is often accompanied by mitral regurgitation.

*Symptoms* The subjective symptoms of mitral stenosis depend upon the stage of the disease. When compensation is maintained, no symptoms are complained of by the patient, except those of early dyspnea and cardiac palpitation on exertion, frequently accompanied by cyanosis. When compensation begins to fail pulmonary hemorrhage due to pulmonary congestion is fairly common, and auricular fibrillation comes on comparatively early. Congestion and enlargement of the liver and ascites are commoner than dropsy of the extremities, and embolism occurs more frequently in mitral stenosis than in any other lesion. Hoarseness due to impingement of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve by the left auricle may be found in this disease. After failure of compensation all the signs of heart failure are manifested, *i e.*, dyspnea, cyanosis, edema, anasarca, etc.

*Physical Signs* On inspection during compensation nothing abnormal is noted though in thin-chested children an im-

pulse may be visible in the third intercostal space or higher, close to the sternum. The apex beat is as a rule not displaced, unless the mitral stenotic lesion occurred after the left ventricle became hypertrophied or when mitral stenosis and regurgitation are present at the same time. A purely mitral stenotic lesion (if such be possible) does not produce left ventricular hypertrophy because the left ventricle does not get an increased quantity of blood to contract upon, as is the case with other lesions. In mitral stenosis associated with rheumatic myocarditis cardiac hypertrophy is well marked.

*On palpation during compensation* a presystolic thrill is felt a little above and to the right of the apex. This thrill is often present before the murmur manifests itself, and can be brought out more distinctly by placing the patient upon his left side. The apex beat is felt as a short systolic impulse or shock occasionally a sharp impulse is also palpable in the pulmonic area. *After failure of compensation* the thrill may disappear, and an extremely irregular apex beat takes its place (auricular fibrillation).

The *pulse* is usually small and of low tension, in advanced cases, auricular fibrillation or flutter may be manifested.

*Percussion* shows dullness slightly increased at the base, it extends higher and further to the left than the normal because of left auricular hypertrophy and dilatation of the conus arteriosus. Dullness also extends further to the right of the sternum due to right ventricular hypertrophy. When left ventricular hypertrophy is present, the dullness extends to the left of the sternum.

The pathognomonic *auscultatory* sign attributed to mitral stenosis is a pre-

systolic murmur which is rough and churning in character, it is best heard at a point a little above and to right of apical impulse and is not transmitted. This murmur is *crescendo* in character, and terminates with the systolic shock, resembling the sound "ler up tup." Accentuation of the pulmonic second sound is nearly always present. In old cases the murmur may be purely diastolic.

At times a diastolic murmur *minuendo* in character may be heard above the area of the apex beat often followed by the characteristic presystolic murmur of a *crescendo* character. After failure of compensation the presystolic murmur may disappear particularly so when auricular fibrillation supervenes but the snappy first sound and accentuated second usually give a clue as to the nature of the affection. A double second sound may be heard at the base, due to uneven tension in the semilunar valves.

**Differential Diagnosis.** Mitral stenosis may often simulate the following conditions: (a) Austin Flint murmur, (b) Graham Steele murmur, (c) aneurysmal murmur, (d) pulmonary tuberculosis (because of hemoptysis), (e) congenital patent ductus arteriosus.

#### MITRAL STENOSIS

Time Presystolic or diastolic.  
Point of maximum intensity—above apex  
*Crescendo* in character  
Systolic shock  
Accentuation second pulmonic  
Not associated as a rule with aortic regurgitation and arterial phenomenon  
Very little left ventricular hypertrophy

#### MITRAL STENOSIS

Usually a presystolic murmur heard a little above apex

Mitral stenosis may be mistaken for aneurysm when there is a coexisting paralysis of the left recurrent laryngeal nerve because of the hoarseness, brassy cough and pulsating auricle. Attention to the apical sounds will differentiate the two conditions. It may also be mistaken for pulmonary tuberculosis because of hemoptysis and pulmonary congestion and both conditions may occur in the same individual, but when a careful heart examination is made, they can easily be differentiated and confirmatory evidence may be obtained by a consideration of the history, and such clinical manifestations as the presence or absence of fever, sputum examination and roentgenologic study. In congenital patent ductus arteriosus the thrills and murmurs are systolic in time and are felt over the left base of the heart.

**Aortic Regurgitation.** The murmur of aortic regurgitation is caused by the incomplete closure of the aortic semilunar valves during ventricular diastole thereby permitting the regurgitation of a portion of blood from the aorta back into the left ventricle during its diastole.

#### AUSTIN FLINT MURMUR

Time Presystolic or early diastolic.  
Point of maximum intensity—above apex.  
No *crescendo* character  
No systolic shock  
No accentuation of second pulmonic.  
Associated with aortic regurgitation and its arterial phenomena.  
Great left ventricular hypertrophy heaving apical impulse

#### GRAHAM STEELE MURMUR

Diastolic murmur heard along the left border of the sternum due to incompetency of the pulmonary valves at times heard in conjunction with a mitral stenotic murmur

**Etiology** This murmur is found most frequently in young males and in early middle age. A number of conditions may be responsible for the development of aortic regurgitation, syphilis being the most frequent factor, as the spirocheta pallida have, in many cases, been isolated from the first portion of the aorta. Rheumatic fever is next in frequency,

**Pathology** The edges of the valve segments are sclerosed, contracted or curled, thus preventing close proximity, in rare instances one of the segments may become perforated. Relative insufficiency occurs as a result of overstretching of the valve orifice. In this condition, though the valve segments are normal, because of the overstretched ring they

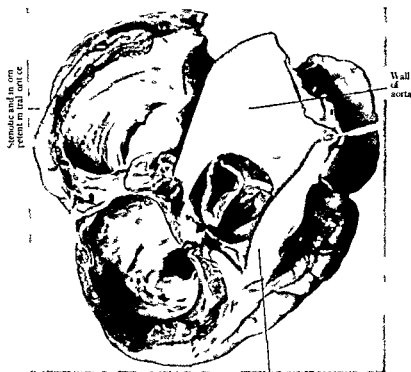


Fig 13—Aortic regurgitation and double mitral lesion (Jefferson Hospital Laboratory)

and alcoholism, gout pneumoma, generalized sclerotic changes, or a sudden severe strain upon a weakened endocardium likewise contribute to the production of this murmur. In children it may occur as a sequel of rheumatic fever, or of the exanthemata but only rarely is it found as a congenital condition. Some cases have been reported in which the spirocheta have been found in the aorta (near its semilunar valve) of very young children.

cannot approximate, but as soon as the valve orifice strengthens and assumes its normal size, the valve leaflets approximate and the murmur disappears.

**Symptoms** Aortic insufficiency may exist for a long time before it is discovered, as when compensation is maintained, and the left ventricle is not greatly hypertrophied, there are practically no symptoms perceived by the patient. In this form of endocarditis

three symptoms however stand out prominently even in the very early stage

1 Susceptibility of the heart to nerve stimulation Any excitement, physical or mental, will greatly increase the heart rate and cause arterial pulsation in the vessels of the neck

2 Anemia, often causing a peculiar, grayish, earthen appearance, associated with cerebral anemia as evidenced by throbbing headache, dizziness, flashes before eyes, flushes of heat and sweats

3 Precordial pain and oppression

When compensation begins to fail dyspnea, precordial pain, aortalgia and true or pseudo angina pectoris may occur on least exertion and excitement In somnia and dreams become very distressing at this time After failure of compensation signs and symptoms of heart failure will rapidly manifest themselves

*Physical Signs* Inspection reveals the following

The *apex beat* is displaced downward and to the left the degree of displacement depending upon the amount of left ventricular hypertrophy In the very early stage of aortic regurgitation very little displacement of the apex beat is noticeable, but as the condition is aggravated, the left ventricle gradually dilates and hypertrophies In well marked cases the apex beat is often seen as a forcibly heaving impulse in the sixth interspace and left anterior axillary line and in extreme cases even beyond that point

*Arterial Pulsation* Carotid pulsation is among the first visible signs of aortic regurgitation even in its earliest stage, as the disease progresses, pulsations are seen in all the superficial arteries in the suprasternal notch and in the epigastrium In advanced cases when the

heart is greatly hypertrophied, pulsations are transmitted to the liver

*Capillary Pulse* (Quincke's pulse)

When compensation is fairly well maintained—cardiac hypertrophy being well developed—a successive flushing and paling is noted in the fingernails, the mucous membranes, and over vascular portions of the skin overlying a bony structure, *e g*, the forehead, scalp, malar area, etc This phenomenon can be brought out more clearly by applying slight pressure over the parts for when the hyperemia thus produced begins to disappear, a successive waxing and waning of a pinkish tint synchronous with the heartbeat can be noted When mitral regurgitation develops as a complication, the capillary pulse often disappears, for the leakage in the mitral valve acts as a safety valve thus to some extent reducing the arterial tension

*Venous Pulse* Pulsations in the veins of the neck and other superficial veins are often noted in well marked cases of aortic regurgitation

*Palpation* This confirms inspection as to the force, position and extent of the apex beat and of the generalized arterial pulsations

The *pulse* is characteristic and is known as Corrigan's or water hammer or trip hammer pulse The impulse felt at the wrist is forcible and full but immediately recedes, leaving an empty artery, this quality can be enhanced by raising the arm above the patient's head The *blood pressure* reveals the systolic pressure to be as a rule high 140 to 200, and the diastolic pressure very low usually under 60 The blood pressure in the lower extremity is nearly twice as high as in the upper extremity

*Percussion* This reveals an enormous hypertrophy of the left ventricle

and often also of the right and when both chambers are thus hypertrophied the heart dullness resembles that of a pericardial effusion. However the presence of the cardiohepatic angle of resonance (Ebstein's angle) the displacement of the forcible apex beat downward and to the left and the throbbing



Fig 14—Aortic regurgitation. Note size and shape of left ventricle

of the arteries easily differentiate cardiac hypertrophy from pericardial effusion.

**Auscultation.** A diastolic murmur is heard in the aortic area at the second right intercostal space close to the sternum and is transmitted downward toward the apex. Very often the diastolic murmur can be heard in the third left intercostal space close to the sternum or over the left edge of the sternum and at times also in the fourth left intercostal space. When the murmur is faint it can best be brought out by having the patient forcibly expire and

hold his breath while the examiner listens to the chest with the unaided ear.

The second aortic sound is usually weak because the murmur displaces that sound. However in early cases when the murmur does not occupy the entire diastolic period an accentuated short second aortic sound may be heard which ends in a blowing murmur.

A loud systolic sound may be heard over most of the large arteries particularly over one or both femorals at times a double to and fro murmur is present (Duroziez's sign).

An associated presystolic murmur (Austin Flint murmur) is occasionally heard at the apex.

There are four conditions that may cause a diastolic murmur heard at the base of the heart which should not be confounded with aortic regurgitation.

- 1 The soft diastolic murmur of pulmonary regurgitation is heard to the left of the sternum and is associated with severe venous congestion and cyanosis (rare).

- 2 Graham Steele murmur a diastolic murmur heard in left third or fourth intercostal space close to the sternum and often also over the sternum is caused by overstretching of the conus arteriosus this condition may be associated with chronic mitral disease.

- 3 A diastolic murmur may at times be heard at the base of the heart in exophthalmic goiter.

- 4 A diastolic functional murmur due to aortic relative insufficiency is audible over the aortic area. Here the cardiac hypertrophy the characteristic radial pulse and the capillary pulse are absent. The diastolic blood pressure is high and the systolic pressure in the lower extremity is equal to that of the upper extremity (Author's sign).



**Aortic Stenosis:** This murmur is caused by a stenosis or blocking of the aortic orifice due to sclerotic changes or vegetations occurring upon the aortic valve. This murmur alone, uncomplicated by other valvular defects, is extremely rare. There are other conditions at the aortic valve that simulate aortic stenosis and are often mistaken for it. Aortic stenosis is found more often in

ventricle into the aorta. Working thus against resistance, the left ventricle becomes hypertrophied.

**Symptoms** When compensation is maintained, no subjective symptoms are complained of by the patient, but when compensation begins to fail, there will be vertigo, headache, precordial pain, palpitation, dyspnea on the least exertion, and digestive disturbances. After failure of

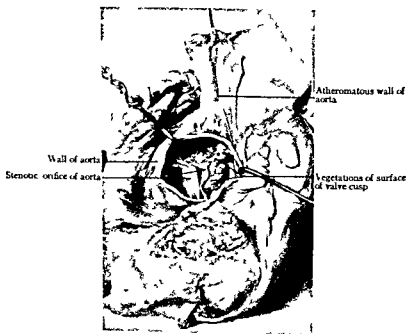


Fig 15—Aortic stenosis (Jefferson Hospital Laboratory)

men than in women and usually in those past middle age.

**Etiology** General arteriosclerosis, bacterial infection, vegetative growths and rheumatism are among the commonest etiologic factors. Syphilis is not a common factor.

**Pathology** The valve leaflets may become rigid and fused because of sclerotic changes, or vegetations may form upon the free margin, thus preventing the valve leaflets from opening at the time the blood is being forced from the left

ventricle into the aorta. Working thus against resistance, the left ventricle becomes hypertrophied.

**Physical Signs Inspection** The apex beat is displaced downward and to the left, the degree of displacement depending in uncomplicated organic murmurs upon the amount of left ventricular hypertrophy. Aortic stenosis produces the second largest hypertrophy of the left ventricle, the largest hypertrophy being caused by aortic insufficiency.

**Palpation** A slow heaving impulse is felt in the apical region. A *systolic*

*thrill* in the aortic area at the right second intercostal space, close to the sternum, is noted

The *pulse* is slow (50 to 60 per minute), but rising and well sustained

*Percussion* Increased cardiac dullness toward the left can be elicited in those subjects who are not emphysematous

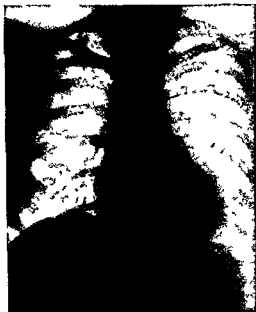


Fig 16—Case of aortic stenosis the left ventricular border is rotund the aorta somewhat widened

*Auscultation* A systolic murmur, rough and churning in character, is heard in the second right intercostal space, and is transmitted to both carotids, the aortic second sound is extremely *weak* or *inaudible* In certain forms of *aortitis* where an atheromatous plate is present in the intima of the aorta close to its valve, a systolic murmur is heard over the aortic area and is transmitted into the carotids, as in aortic stenosis but unlike in aortic stenosis the second aortic sound is *accentuated* The important diagnostic points of aortic stenosis are (a) A weak or

inaudible second aortic sound (b) A systolic murmur, rough in quality, heard in the second right intercostal space which is transmitted to the carotids (c) A slow sustaining pulse (d) A systolic thrill at the base of the heart. (e) If aortic stenosis is caused by bacterial invasion of the valves, irregular fever and embolic phenomena will be present

### Carditis

The various symptoms and physical signs found in heart disease, as previously described, are indications of lesions in the pericardium, the myocardium and the endocardium irrespective of their etiology There are, however, certain heart affections that show definite characteristics of their underlying cause Therefore from the standpoint of etiology, heart disease is classified as rheumatic, syphilitic, arteriosclerotic, hypertensive, thyroid congenital, functional, and heart disease caused by angina pectoris and coronary occlusion

**Rheumatic Heart Disease** Rheumatic fever, chorea and the allied infections are responsible for the majority of heart affections originating in the young The etiology of rheumatic fever has not been definitely determined It is at present believed to be due to a type of streptococcus Like all diseases of infectious origin, rheumatic fever may manifest various degrees of severity, ranging from an exceedingly mild reaction to a most severe course, and the infection may have a predilection for various structures Affections such as follicular tonsillitis, pharyngitis sinusitis, unexplainable frequent attacks of epistaxis myalgias, fleeting articular pains (growing pains), prolonged mild febrile reactions in children, without any discoverable cause and particularly if they

fail to gain weight, have a rapid sedimentation rate and mild leukocytosis, are classed as mild manifestations of rheumatic fever since these are often the forerunners of acute articular rheumatism, chorea and of heart disease. Therefore, when the type of heart disease classified as rheumatic is found in an individual who gives no definite history of having had rheumatic fever, acute articular rheumatism or chorea, rheumatic infection cannot be excluded because he may have had one of the milder manifestations of that heterogeneous group.

The onset of rheumatic heart disease is usually slow and unless attention is paid to the heart during or soon after one of the rheumatic diseases its affection may be overlooked until serious and unmistakable damage has been done. Among the earliest signs is a faint systolic murmur at the apex. Such a murmur in a child or young person who has rheumatic manifestations should be appraised with caution and not dismissed as a functional murmur of little importance. Often these very faint murmurs are early signs of cardiac damage.

Rheumatic heart disease is a true carditis affecting the three layers of the heart but not always with the same degree of severity.

frequency to the mitral to be affected by rheumatic disease is the aortic valve. The lesion is more often an aortic stenosis and is accompanied by mitral regurgitation. Occasionally rheumatic disease may cause aortic regurgitation or a combination of aortic regurgitation and mitral regurgitation, or aortic stenosis with aortic regurgitation and mitral regurgitation, or stenosis of both the aortic and mitral valves. Heart failure occurs earlier and more frequently with aortic disease than with mitral disease alone. Tricuspid disease is usually secondary to mitral and aortic affection and is rare as a primary rheumatic affection.

**The Myocardium** As a primary rheumatic affection the myocardium is less frequently affected than the endocardium but it seldom escapes secondary invasion from the endocardium and pericardium. The efficiency of the heart's action depends largely upon the integrity of the heart muscle. In rheumatic myocarditis the heart muscle becomes invaded with Aschoff's bodies which may cause degeneration of the muscle fibers in small or large areas. These in time produce either local or general cardiac dilatation eventually leading to heart failure. The myocardium may be the primary and, rarely, the only part of the heart affected, or it may precede valvulitis. Most often the myocardial affection is secondary to the valvular infection.

amounts of pericardial effusion. Chronic adhesive pericarditis is often a late manifestation of rheumatic pericarditis (SEE p 472)

**Syphilitic Heart Disease** The *Treponema pallidum* has a predilection for the root of the aorta and the aortic valve, but the ascending aorta, the arch and occasionally portions of the descending aorta may also show evidence of syphilis. When the aortic valve is affected it causes aortic insufficiency and seldom aortic stenosis because the commissure is widened by the lesion. Aortic regurgitation originating in the adult is in the majority of cases, due to syphilis. When aortic stenosis accompanies aortic regurgitation the etiology is usually not syphilis. The coronary arteries may be affected only at their orifices by the encroachment of intimal proliferation of the aorta, this, however, may lead to occlusion of these arteries. The syphilitic lesion in the aorta is characterized by a wrinkled and puckered appearance of the inner surface of the aorta; the lesions in the intima occur as isolated or confluent white or gray patches. These lesions are responsible for the diminished elasticity of the aorta and may cause localized or diffuse aortic dilatation or aortic aneurysm. In syphilitic aortic valvulitis the commissures between the valve cusps are widened and the cusps are retracted towards the sinus of Valsalva, thus widening the orifice and causing an insufficiency but not a stenosis. The myocardium may show evidence of diffuse myocarditis and cause various cardiac irregularities and early heart failure. Gumma of the myocardium may affect any portion of it. When it affects the auriculoventricular bundle (bundle of His) it will produce complete

heart block and may cause Stokes-Adams syndrome.

#### Arteriosclerotic Heart Disease

The most prevailing type of cardiac insufficiency in the aged is due to arteriosclerosis. This type may also occur in the middle aged whose arteries are hardened, and when there is hypertension. At times it may occur when the arterial tension is not very high or even when it is much lower than normal. The arteriosclerotic who has hypotension is in a more serious state than the one whose tension is moderately high. Arteriosclerosis may be just an expression of old age or it may be caused by nephritis, toxic poisons or by other conditions.

The heart is usually hypertrophied; the apex beat is displaced downwards and to the left (before dilatation sets in). There is usually a loud systolic murmur at the aortic orifice accompanied by a loud ringing accentuation of the aortic second sound. There may also be a loud systolic murmur at the cardiac apex, or a harsh murmur may be heard over the entire heart. Cardiac irregularities such as bradycardia, extra systoles or auricular fibrillation may be heard in paroxysms or any of these may be constant. The superficial arteries may be hard, pipestemlike or they may resemble a tendon. Occasionally there is beading and tortuosity. The vessels of the neck, either on the right side or both sides, may pulsate vigorously. Cyanosis and dyspnea are common and attacks of angina pectoris are fairly frequent. Death may occur during an attack of angina pectoris or it may result from ventricular fibrillation, from cerebral hemorrhage, pulmonary edema or congestive heart failure.

**Hypertensive Heart Disease** Essential hypertensive heart disease differs

in many respects from arteriosclerotic heart disease, though both have many symptoms in common.

Hypertensive heart disease is brought about by the heart's effort to overcome with each systole the increased resistance in the systemic or pulmonary circulation. Whatever the cause of essential hypertension may be, whether arteriosclerosis or the result of a hormone in the kidneys or in the adrenals, it throws an excessive load upon the heart. Therefore, as the condition progresses, the heart hypertrophies, the cerebral vessels, the coronaries and the vessels of the kidneys and of other organs are under constant strain. This often causes headache, dizziness, occasional heart consciousness, dyspnea, ringing in the ears, digestive disturbances, neurocirculatory disturbances and other signs of impaired function. Fear and apprehension are common psychic phenomena in this condition, as is angina pectoris. Occasionally signs of coronary sclerosis or coronary thrombosis may develop. Cerebral thrombosis may also occur and at times, cerebral hemorrhage. Essential hypertension may eventually lead to one of four catastrophes: (1) Coronary occlusion, (2) cerebral hemorrhage, or cerebral thrombosis, (3) malignant hypertension, or (4) severe nephritis. Death may be caused by any one of these, by adrenal hemorrhage or by congestive heart failure.

ing from 200 to 300 systolic and 100 to 160 diastolic. The superficial arteries are not easily compressible but are not pipe-stemlike or beaded. The arteries of the eye grounds (the retinal vessels) always show sclerosis. Essential hypertension may develop arteriosclerosis. The electrocardiographic findings will show only left axis deviation with occasional inverted T unless arrhythmias and severe myocarditis occur as a complication. Dyspnea on moderate exertion and at times while at rest is an early symptom in this condition.

*Pulmonary hypertension* is due to left ventricular failure; it may be caused by mitral stenosis, asthma, emphysema, pulmonary neoplasm, Ayerza's disease, congenital heart disease or various acute or chronic pulmonary affections. These may throw a great strain on the right heart causing dilatation of the right auricle and the ventricle. This may be manifested by cyanosis, dyspnea, throbbing of the veins of the neck, an enlarged and pulsating liver, general cardiac dilatation, edema of the lungs, anasarca and, finally death by congestive heart failure.

**Thyroid Heart Disease. *Hyperthyroidism:*** Tachycardia is an early symptom of thyrotoxicosis. The heart rate becomes accelerated above its usual fast rate caused by any kind of exertion or excitement, and does not readily return to its previous rate. Tachycardia persists when at rest or during sleep. The first and second heart sounds are high pitched. Auricular fibrillation is a common complication. A systolic murmur at the apex due to relative insufficiency may develop quite early. Dyspnea, moderate evanescence, general weakness, sweats and tremors with either a thyroid adenoma or general enlargement of the thyroid gland usually

accompany the heart symptoms. The pulse is rapid and wiry, the systolic pressure is elevated and the diastolic pressure is lowered so that the pulse pressure is fairly high. In the absence of arrhythmias, the electrocardiogram usually shows a prominent P wave. When thyrotoxicosis is not controlled, heart failure will occur during a thyroid crisis. After thyroidectomy or during a remission, the heart action may return to normal unless severe myocardial damage had developed prior to successful treatment.

**Hypothyroidism** A slow, sluggish heart action often accompanied by hypertension is found in myxedema. There is definite evidence of myocardial weakness. The heart is pear-shaped due to dilatation and myxedematous infiltration of the musculature of both ventricles. An apical systolic murmur may occur as the result of dilatation of the mitral orifice. The electrocardiogram usually shows low amplitudes of all waves. The T wave is either absent or inverted in all leads. The administration of sufficient thyroid to overcome the myxedema causes a return of the T wave to its normal position on the electrocardiogram.

**Angina Pectoris (Breast Pain)** This term is applied to a symptom complex characterized by a sensation of pain and constriction in the chest. There are two types of angina pectoris.

I Angina pectoris associated with organic cardiovascular disease (True Angina)

II Angina pectoris independent of organic cardiovascular disease (Functional Angina)

**True Angina Pectoris** Angina pectoris associated with organic cardiovascular disease is commoner than functional angina.

**Etiology:** The actual reason for such pain is attributed to cardiac ischemia. This may be brought about by any condition that interferes with supplying an adequate amount of oxygenated blood to the myocardium for proper function. This may be due to coronary inadequacy resulting from coronary sclerosis, partial blocking of the mouths of the coronaries, coronary spasm, coronary emboli, and coronary occlusion. Aortic disease, such as syphilitic aortitis, aneurysm of the aorta, aortic regurgitation, arteriosclerosis, syphilis, endarteritis obliterans, hypertensive arteriosclerosis, certain congenital heart lesions, pericarditis, severe anemia, and gastrointestinal disease, cholecystitis and pancreatitis may, at times, cause an attack of angina pectoris or may simulate it. In the presence of any of these conditions acceleration of the heart's action causes pain. Pain of angina pectoris is brought on by (a) Physical exertion, climbing, walking stairs, walking uphill against the wind, in the cold, after a full meal, or just walking, or any other physical effort, (b) emotional excitement, such as anger, hilarity, anxiety, worry or brooding, (c) exposure to cold, taking a cold bath or washing the face with cold water, (d) digestive disturbance such as overeating, gastric and intestinal hyperdistention, and constipation, particularly when straining at stool, (e) overindulgence in tobacco and venery. Attacks of angina pectoris may develop during local infections or may follow various infectious diseases such as bacterial endocarditis, influenza, pneumonia, typhoid fever and also chronic rheumatism and gout. Occasionally no definite cause is discoverable.

**Symptoms** The characteristic symptoms of an attack are (1) Sudden on-

set, (2) pain, (3) sense of constriction in the chest, (4) pallor, (5) sweating, (6) anxiety, (7) changes in pulse and arterial tension, (8) electrocardiographic changes, and (9) post paroxysmal changes

(1) *Onset of the Attack* The paroxysm comes on suddenly, usually during physical or mental exertion or after a full meal. Occasionally it comes on during sleep.

(2) *Pain* The pain is variable in its intensity. It may be only a sense of uneasiness or discomfort in the sternal region, or there may be a sense of retrosternal or epigastric fullness suggesting indigestion. This may be accompanied by a sense of heaviness in the left biceps. Typical paroxysms are ushered in with acute agonizing pain in the upper sternal region associated with a sense of vise-like constriction. Occasionally the pain may be in the lower sternal region, the epigastrium or the umbilical region over the site of the aorta (abdominal angina). The severe pain may be referred to the left shoulder, arm and hand or upwards to the neck as far as the angle of the jaw, or it may be referred to the right upper extremity, or to both shoulders or posteriorly to the interscapular region. Occasionally the pain may be transmitted to the lower extremities. At times the pain first begins in the left shoulder and arm and then travels to the precordium. The attack of pain may last for several moments or several minutes. When the attacks come on during exertion or excitement, rest, relaxation and nitrites will stop the pain. When the pain occurs during sleep, sitting up or standing up out of bed will often relieve the pain, as the change of posture relieves the encroachment of the tortuous aorta upon the mouths of the coronaries.

Occasionally an attack of angina is ushered in without pain (angina sine dolor). The symptoms are great anxiety of impending death, clammy sweat, dyspnea, nausea, and rapid pulse.

(3) *A Sense of Constriction in the Chest* This usually accompanies the pain and is referred to the arm. This constriction causes anxiety and fear, so that the patient is afraid to move or even to breathe. During the first few moments of a severe paroxysm of vise-like pain the patient may be afraid he is going to die and if the pain persists in its severity for several minutes longer he is afraid that he may not die. In other instances the sense of constriction is mild or more like distention than constriction.

(4 and 5) *Pallor and Sweats* During a severe attack the patient's face assumes an ashen gray pallor and he may sweat profusely. The skin is cold and clammy.

(6) *Anxiety* The anxiety is proportionate to the pain, to the length of time it lasts, and the nervous make up of the individual. While the patient is always uneasy and worried during the mildest attacks, he becomes apprehensive, panicky and terror stricken during severe attacks. In the intervals between attacks there is always anxiety and fear of the possibility of an oncoming attack.

(7) *Changes in Pulse and Arterial Tension* In most instances of angina pectoris the pulse is full, it may be somewhat rapid or slow, but, as a rule, it is not altered in rate or rhythm. The blood pressure is generally elevated from 20 to 30 mm. during an attack and comes down to normal soon after the attack is over.

(8) *Electrocardiogram* This may be normal. When the coronaries are affected there may be inversion of the T wave in leads I and II or evidence of auriculo-

ventricular or intraventricular block. The changes may be brought out several minutes after exercise.

(9) *Postparoxysmal Periods* These may not show any evidence of change, other than the condition present before the attacks were initiated.

**Prognosis:** Because sudden death may occur during an attack of angina pectoris, and because angina pectoris may be due to coronary occlusion, the prognosis is doubtful and depends upon its etiology. Patients with angina pectoris may live for many years and the attacks may often be controlled by rest and appropriate treatment. Angina pectoris does not occur in the presence of auricular fibrillation or other signs of myocardial failure.

**Functional Angina Pectoris** This term may be applied to chest pain of the angina pectoris type occurring in persons who have no evidence of cardiovascular disease. The term functional is obviously arbitrary, because organic disease may at times be masked and therefore be considered as functional. Functional angina pectoris is found among neurotic individuals particularly if they come in contact with a case of angina pectoris, it is also found in neurocirculatory asthenia in those leading sedentary lives who expose themselves to sudden and severe strain and in those having digestive disturbances.

**Coronary Occlusion** Occlusion of one or more branches of the coronary arteries will cause sudden severe pain in the precordium. The retrosternal pain may come on suddenly and reach its height in a few minutes or it may continue as a moderate sense of oppression with increasing severity over a period of several hours or days when it finally reaches its severe stage. The pain is more

often felt over the lower portion of the sternum and in the epigastrium. The pain may come on while at rest, after a meal, during severe emotional or physical strain, or it may awaken the patient from sleep. The pain is severe and agonizing and may be referred to both arms, to the interscapular regions or to the

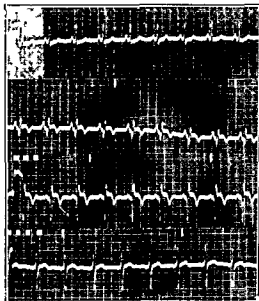


Fig 17—Acute coronary occlusion posterior type. (Courtesy Dr H. K. Mohler)

neck. In its severity it resembles that of angina pectoris or it may be either more or less severe than in angina pectoris. The pain is always accompanied by severe shock. When a large branch is affected death may occur instantaneously. During the attack the pulse rate is moderately rapid about 100 per minute. The heart sounds are of poor muscle quality, there may be a gallop rhythm or a faint systolic apical murmur. Within several hours after the onset of pain the blood pressure usually falls to a very low level. If the patient survives 24 hours a friction rub due to the myocardial infarct develops over the body of the heart. The temperature rises to from 99 to 101,



a mild leukocytosis increased sedimentation rate and occasionally mild cerebral symptoms develop

**Electrocardiographic Changes Following Coronary Occlusion** Electrocardiographic changes often do not occur until 12 to 48 hours or later after the first appearance of coronary symptoms. When a large portion of the myocardium is badly damaged electrocardiographic changes occur early and remain for a long time after clinical recovery has taken place. Occasionally definite electrocardiographic changes may be absent though all the clinical manifestations of coronary occlusion are unmistakably present.

Myocardial infarctions generally assume characteristic patterns dependent upon where the infarct occurs.

**Anterior Occlusion** Lead I High S T take off flattening or inversion of T wave

Lead II The T wave may occasionally be flattened or inverted or there may not be any change. The descending limb of the R wave may show splintering.

Lead III Depression of S T interval

Lead IV The R wave is absent the S T take off is elevated. The T wave is inverted. Q1 or Q4 may be present.

**Posterior Occlusion** Lead I Depression of S T interval

Lead II Flattening or inversion of the T wave. Prominent Q wave

Lead III High take-off of S T and inversion of T wave. Q2 and Q3 often present.

Lead IV No change generally. In severe infarctions T4 may be inverted.

**Resume Anterior Occlusion** The S T take off is high in lead I and lead IV and low in lead III. The T wave may be flattened or inverted in lead I and lead II and is inverted in lead IV.

**Posterior Occlusion** The S T take-off is depressed in lead I and high in lead III. The T wave is flattened or inverted in lead II and lead III, the Q wave is

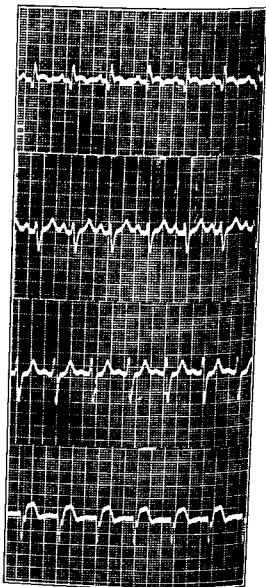


Fig 18—Anterior occlusion  
(Courtesy Dr H K. Mohler)

usually prominent in leads II and III in lead IV the T wave shows little change from normal or may be higher. Inverted T4 is seen in severe occlusion.

It is to be borne in mind that the characteristics attributed to coronary thrombosis are caused by the injured myocardium resulting from the occlusion and not from intrinsic disease of the vessels. Therefore tracings similar to that obtained in anterior or posterior

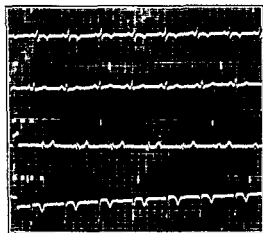


Fig 18A—Anterior occlusion. Same patient as in Fig 18 six months later (Courtesy Dr H K Mohler)

coronary occlusion may be obtained in other conditions that cause injury of that part of the heart muscle which is affected by coronary thrombosis. On the other hand, if a coronary branch

supplying any of the silent areas of the myocardium becomes thrombosed, characteristic signs will be absent. Therefore, if a patient has most of the clinical signs of coronary occlusion and fails to show any characteristic electrocardiographic tracings, he should nonetheless be treated for coronary occlusion. Typical signs of coronary occlusion do not generally develop before myocardial damage has been established, that is, 24 to 48 hours or longer after the occlusion has occurred. When cardiographic tracings are characteristic of recent occlusion, traces of occlusion remain for months or years after apparent recovery.

**Prognosis:** The patient may die during the first attack, or he may live for several days and die of ventricular flutter, from embolism or myocardial failure. If he survives the first two weeks he may recover, but must remain in bed for six weeks or longer. Subsequent fatal attacks may occur.

Coronary occlusion may have to be differentiated from acute pancreatitis, perforating peptic ulcer, gallstone or kidney colic, and acute peritonitis of the lesser omentum.

#### Differential Table of Coronary Occlusion and Angina Pectoris

CORONARY OCCLUSION	During Attack	ANGINA PECTORIS
Pain sudden felt in lower sternum or epigastrium		Pain sudden felt more often in upper sternal region
Pain often when at rest.		Pain more often during effort.
Shock.		Excitement and fear no signs of shock.
Pulse feeble, rapid		Pulse full
Blood pressure falls rapidly		Blood pressure is sustained
Pain requires large doses of an opiate, not stopped by nitrites		Pain often stopped by nitrites (nitroglycerin under tongue or inhalation of amyl nitrite)
Duration of pain usually prolonged may last hours or days		Duration comparatively short, may last several minutes to half an hour
Heart sounds feeble may have gallop rhythm or murmur		Heart sounds not altered, may be strong
Dyspnea and cyanosis		No dyspnea or cyanosis

## CORONARY OCCLUSION

*After Paroxysm of Pain Has Stopped*

## ANGINA PECTORIS

Shock  
 Low blood pressure  
 Poor heart sounds  
 Pericardial friction rub  
 Leukocytosis  
 Subfebrile temperature  
 Increased sedimentation rate  
 Definite electrocardiographic changes

No shock as a rule  
 Blood pressure may be high or unaltered from the usual  
 Heart sounds may be full and strong  
 No pericardial friction  
 No leukocytosis  
 Normal temperature  
 Normal sedimentation rate  
 Electrocardiographic findings may be normal

**Other Conditions Simulating Heart Pain.** Substernal or epigastric pain may develop after a heavy or indigestible meal, from insulin hypoglycemia, from injection of large doses of epinephrine, and in the presence of pericardial adhesions, large pericardial effusions

mediastinal tumors, plastic pleurisy, pneumothorax, emphysema, pulmonary fibrosis, mediastinitis, mediastinal urticaria, intercostal neuralgia, aortitis, aortic aneurysm, and various heart lesions associated with heart failure, pancreatitis, cholelithiasis and peptic ulcer

**Congenital Heart Disease**

Congenital heart disease is relatively rare but is nonetheless of great importance. When diagnosed early, proper guidance of the individual may prolong life. In many instances when the patient is an adolescent or an adult, and the previous history is not reliable, some of the congenital heart murmurs are not readily differentiated from some of the acquired murmurs.

with fusion of the chest wall and of the abdomen, the heart may lie in the neck outside of the chest wall or in the abdominal cavity.

**Anomalies of Position**

**Dextrocardia**, transposition of the heart to the right side of the sternum so that the apical impulse is in the fifth interspace, 7 to 9 cm to the right of the sternum may occur alone or in conjunction with situs inversus of the abdominal viscera. Dextrocardia should be differentiated from lesions in the left side of the chest which push the heart to the right or from lesions in the right chest which pull the heart to the right.

**Ectopia Cordis:** Other anomalies of position are ectopia cordis associated

**Anomalies of Structure**

The commoner structural defects in the heart, compatible with life, are defects in the interauricular or interventricular septa, defects in the pulmonic valve, retention of the ductus arteriosus, coarctation of the aorta, and congenital heart block.

Congenital heart defects interfere with the normal circulation of the blood through the heart, the great vessels or both, thereby deflecting the arterial blood into the venous channels or the venous blood into the arterial channels. When an opening occurs in the interventricular septum some leakage through that opening from one chamber into the other is to be expected. The direction of the flow will depend upon the preponderance of pressure in one chamber over the

other Dr. Maud Abbott called attention to the following When the pressure is greatest in the left ventricle, the blood will flow from the left ventricle, into the right ventricle ("arterial venous shunt"), causing no cyanosis If, however, the pressure is greatest in the right ventricle, the blood will flow from the right ven-

2 By direct admixture within the chamber which may occur because of complete absence of the cardiac or arterial septum

3 In dextroposition of the aorta, when the mouth of the aorta overrides the right ventricle, venous blood passing directly from the right ventricle into the



Fig 19—Congenital heart disease—pulmonary stenosis—patent foramen ovale.  
(Philadelphia General Hospital)

tricle into the left ventricle ("venous arterial shunt") and cause cyanosis

Congenital heart affections may therefore be divided into I Cyanotic group (venous arterial shunt) II Noncyanotic group (arterial venous shunt)

**Cyanotic Group** (venous arterial shunt) Such a disturbance of the circulation may occur in several ways

1 By direct right-to left shunt through a ventricular septal defect, when the pressure is high in the right ventricle, as is the case in an associated pulmonary stenosis

systemic aorta Under such circumstances, the conditions are present for the development of a true congenital cyanosis

**Pulmonary Stenosis:** This is probably the commonest of all cardiac defects It is usually associated with a defect of the ventricular septum

Longer life is compatible with pulmonary stenosis than with any other congenital heart lesion The chief symptoms are a palpable systolic thrill and a systolic murmur heard in the pulmonic area, accompanied by a weakened or absent second sound, often the first sound is

indistinct. If the stenosis is marked and is accompanied by a defect of the septum the blood will flow from the right to the left ventricle, and then into the aorta (venous arterial shunt) so that the murmur will be transmitted to the aorta and to the carotids. When the ductus arteriosus has remained open the coexistence of pulmonary stenosis may

**Prognosis** Such patients usually die in childhood, but many reach early adult life and die not of cardiac lesion but of pulmonary tuberculosis. Another not infrequent termination is from bacterial endocarditis developing at the seat of the defect.

**Noncyanotic Group** (arterial venous shunt) This group consists of the following main defects: (1) Patent ductus arteriosus, (2) patent foramen ovale, (3) defect of the ventricular septum, (4) aortic stenosis, (5) coarctation of the aorta.

The first three defects are closely related anatomically in that they represent circumscribed openings between the right and left sides of the heart (considering the aorta and pulmonary artery as continuations of the left and right ventricles). Under such circumstances the passage of blood is from the left side to the right: i. e. arterial into venous blood, thereby exerting strain upon the right heart but giving no cause for cyanosis, the arterial blood oxygenation being normal. However an important feature of this condition is that a change of pressure in the lungs may convert the arterial venous shunt into a venous arterial one with the production of transient or terminal cyanosis.

The presence of striking physical signs and the absence of symptoms are the characteristic features of this group.

**Physical Signs** There is a peculiar harsh murmur of unusual rhythm and intensity, often accompanied by a thrill situated to the left of the sternum in the first or second interspace or over the middle of the precordium and in many instances associated with evidences of dilatation of the pulmonary artery.

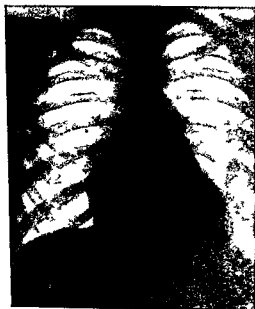


Fig. 20—Typical case of pulmonary stenosis.

result in accentuation of the second pulmonic sound while the purring murmur transmitted to the carotids which is characteristic of the patent ductus will also be audible.

Smith states that 69 per cent of the lesions which may occur on the right side of the heart are due to pulmonary stenosis resulting from endocarditis during intrauterine life. The harsh basal systolic murmur transmitted to the clavicle, the increase of the cardiac dullness to the right, the pronounced congenital cyanosis, clubbing of the fingers, polycythemia and splenic megaly make the diagnosis fairly easy.

Dilatation of the pulmonary artery is to be considered as a functional consequence of the increased pressure produced by the connection between it and the aorta or between the right and left chambers of the heart. Such dilatation may be determined by physical signs and x-ray examination. *Percussion* will yield a ribbon shaped area of dullness in the

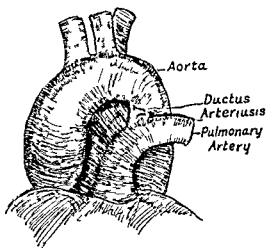


Fig 21—Patent ductus arteriosus

first and second interspaces to the left of the sternum, Gerhardt's area of dullness. *Auscultation* will reveal an accentuation of the pulmonary second sound, and the fluoroscopic and x ray findings will show a marked bulging of the pulmonary arc. The electrocardiogram is not apt to be helpful in the diagnosis of these defects unless unusual strain on the right side of the heart has caused a preponderating hypertrophy of that side. Lewis has stated that in uncomplicated patency of the ductus arteriosus the curves should be normal. Elsewhere he has mentioned exaggerated amplitude in several leads of the electrocardiogram as an important sign in congenital heart disease.

**The diagnosis of a congenital defect of the heart with arterial venous shunt**

may be based upon the following points (a) A young patient with (b) no history of rheumatic fever or other illness commonly causing endocarditis, (c) absent or slight heart symptoms, (d) marked and peculiar murmurs and perhaps a thrill in the upper left precordium, and (e) good cardiac functional capacity.

**1 Patent Ductus Arteriosus (Bottali)** In the fetus a connection exists between the pulmonary artery and the aorta which carries practically all the blood entering the pulmonary artery into the general circulation (Fig 21). Under normal circumstances this tube becomes closed off in the transition from fetal to extrauterine existence and undergoes atrophy. If it persists as a communication, it constitutes a real danger, both from the standpoint of strain upon the heart and because of the liability of the edges and the walls of the patent duct to bacterial invasion.

**Symptoms** Patent ductus arteriosus like the other defects of the noncyanotic group, is usually symptomless, particularly in early life, and is recognized by its distinctive physical signs. Frequently it is associated with other defects, and then, of course the physical signs are modified. While the clinical picture is definite in adults, it is not so in infants, and there is often difficulty in distinguishing patent ductus arteriosus from other defects of the group. Aneurysm of the first portion of the aorta at the sinus of Valsalva, rupturing into the pulmonary artery, may simulate patent ductus.

Adults with patent ductus arteriosus are usually anemic. As a rule, cyanosis is entirely absent, as is clubbing of the fingers and toes. If present, cyanosis is either very slight or transitory, appearing only on exertion, or like the

form previously mentioned may be terminal (cyanosis tardive)

*Characteristic Physical Signs* A peculiar rough murmur systolic in time or continuous (machinery murmur) with maximum intensity in the pulmonary area or just beneath the left clavicle is the most important physical sign. This murmur is transmitted upward to

the pulmonary artery is the rule and this gives the signs already enumerated—Gerhardt's dullness and under the fluoroscope a prominent actively pulsating pulmonary arc. Increased vascular hilum shadows also speak for pulmonary dilatation. Laboratory aids other than the x rays are of little value in the diagnosis of this defect.

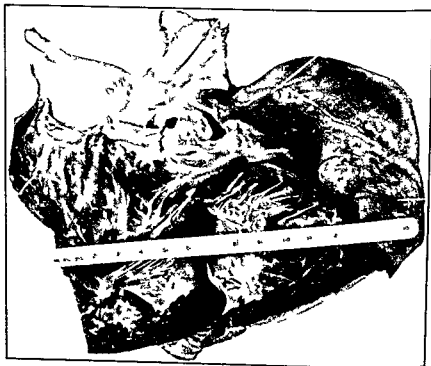


Fig. 22—Aneurysm of the sinus of Valsalva.

ward the left clavicle, and depending upon its loudness may be heard over the whole precordium and in the back. Accompanying the murmur may be a thrill of the same time, i. e., either systolic or continuous. The pulmonary second sound is usually accentuated and this is considered an important point in differentiating patent ductus arteriosus from pulmonary stenosis in which the pulmonary second sound is often weak or inaudible. Dilatation of

Occasionally there is paralysis of the left vocal cord due to pressure on the left recurrent laryngeal nerve. This is also observed in association with mitral stenosis in which it has been ascribed to the direct pressure of the dilated pulmonary artery.

Patent ductus arteriosus is frequently the site of a bacterial endocarditis. The vegetations occur on the pulmonary side of the communication and may extend down the pulmonary artery and involve

the pulmonary cusps. The occurrence of such a lesion is a dangerous complication, for the vegetations are easily broken off, to be carried into the lung there to produce a suppurative broncho pneumonia.

Susceptibility to infection constitutes the great danger of this lesion and is an important reason for early recognition and prophylactic care.

Maud Abbott has shown that out of 67 cases of patent ductus arteriosus 15 or 22 per cent, showed a bacterial lesion. While bacterial endocarditis is usually responsible for the fatal termination increased strain upon the heart may lead to failing compensation or to a sudden paroxysm, such as a suffocative attack, which may be responsible for death.

**2 Patent Foramen Ovale** This defect, which is the commonest of this group, is perhaps the least often recognized during life, due both to the fact that it is often latent and likewise because physical signs, when they do exist are not generally correctly interpreted.

**Symptoms** Individuals who have a patent foramen ovale are usually of slight build, often of infantile development. Although frail and delicate, they are usually harmoniously proportioned but they may have an associated spinal curvature. A very important point, possibly better mentioned with the x-ray findings, is hypoplasia of the aorta. This was noted many years ago by Maud Abbott and has been separately described by French and German observers. It is a definite part of the clinical picture of patent foramen ovale. The murmur of patent foramen ovale has been described as inconstant and variable. It may come and go and vary as to time although it is usually systolic. A thrill is not often associated. Frequently the

pulmonary artery is dilated, giving the signs already mentioned. In addition, the roentgen rays may show the narrow aorta and a general enlargement of the heart, especially of the right ventricle.

The first symptoms of patent foramen ovale may develop after some condition which raises the pressure in the pulmonary circuit and converts an arterial venous into a venous arterial shunt, with an attending cyanosis. This may be transient and disappear when the cause of the heightened tension is removed or may occur as a suddenly developed deep cyanosis in the course of cardiac failure or marked pulmonary disease such as pneumonia, when it constitutes an important evidence of the presence of this defect. In the latter event it is apt to persist as a terminal cyanosis. Patent foramen ovale, unlike patent ductus arteriosus, is not subject to bacterial invasion, and from the standpoint of infection can be disregarded. A very curious and dangerous phenomenon has been described with patent foramen ovale, that is, a *paradoxical embolus*, perhaps arising at some distant point, passes through the foramen and enters the general circulation.

A number of cases have been mentioned in the literature in which defects of the auricular septum have been associated with *idiocy*. Morse in a study of 100 cases of congenital heart disease from his private practice noted mental deficiency in more than 10 per cent of his cases.

**3 Ventricular Septal Defects** (*Maladie d Roger*) Ventricular septal defects are frequently associated with other anomalies, and rarely do they occur alone. They are located, most commonly, directly beneath the aortic cusps and just anterior to the unde-



fended space. The communication permits a shunt of blood from the left ventricle to the right which has been

of defect in many instances might be disregarded as it interferes in no way with perfect cardiac function and is con

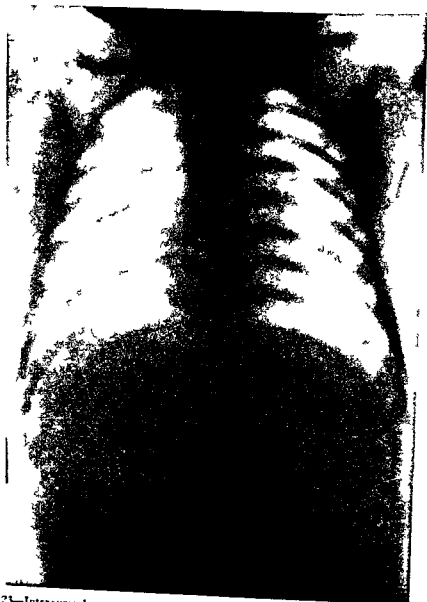


Fig. 23—Intraauricular septal opening (patent foramen ovale). Note widening of pulmonary conus and artery obliteration of cardiac angle. Heart enlarged to the right. Aortic knob not visualized.

evidenced by a patch of fibrosis or a collection of vegetations on the opposite wall of the right ventricle. However from the standpoint of strain this type

sistent with a long and healthy life. The importance of defects of the ventricular septum is not the strain upon the heart as it is in anomalies of the auricular

septum, but the possibility of the development of vegetative endocarditis about the edges of the defect

*Symptoms* These defects, probably more than any other in the noncyanotic group, are symptomless, indeed, the French (Laubry and Pezzi) have applied to them the term "functional silence

thus being of little functional importance, may give rise to the loudest murmurs. The pulmonary second sound is present, but not accentuated as a rule. Occasionally an interventricular septal defect is associated with three other defects. The quartet is known as *Tetralogy of Fallot*. The lesions are *Pul*



Fig 24—Congenital heart lesions (Patent foramen ovale)

They are recognized by their distinctive physical signs. A harsh, even murmur filling the entire systole, accompanied by thrill in about half the cases situated over the middle of the sternum or in the third or fourth interspace to the left of the sternal border, is the most frequent and quite often the only evidence of this defect. A valuable lesson to be learned is that defects causing little or no strain upon the heart and

monary stenosis, interventricular septal defect, right ventricular enlargement, and dextroposition of the aorta. These lesions cause cyanosis.

*Prognosis* In the arterial venous or noncyanotic group, those cases with distinctive physical signs but excellent functional capacity, as already stated, the chances are good for a long and healthy life. Two dangers exist: infection and strain. Death may occur from bacterial

endocarditis from a fatal embolus or from the toxemia and exhaustion produced by the infection

#### 4 *Aortic Stenosis* (congenital)

This in general is not compatible with long life but where stenosis of the isthmus exists the constriction being

sis there is no diminution of the pulmonary second sound

The *prognosis* varies with the degree of cardiac impairment and intercurrent disease

5 *Coarctation of the Aorta (Stenosis of the Aortic Isthmus)* Two types



part lying between the origin of the subclavian artery and the ductus arteriosus is narrowed. It is often associated with patent ductus arteriosus. Because of the constriction in the aorta the blood is

The *physical examination* may reveal the following pathognomic signs (1) The blood pressure is increased in the upper extremities and greatly diminished in the lower extremities. This condition

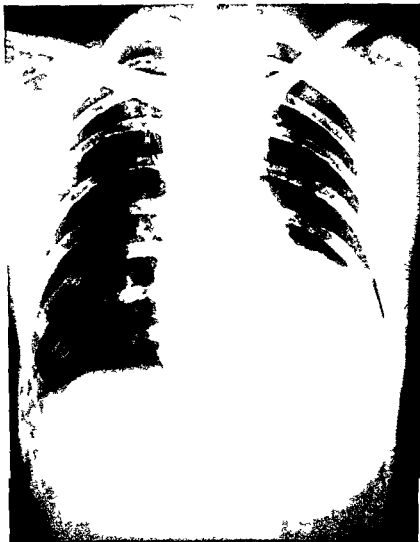


Fig 26—Coarctation of the aorta

carried to the lower extremities by a collateral circulation formed by the mammary, scapular, intercostal and deep epigastric arteries. This condition is generally asymptomatic unless associated with other cardiac defects.

is the reverse of aortic regurgitation where the blood pressure in the lower extremities is very much higher than in the upper extremities. (To test the blood pressure in the lower extremities the cuff is adjusted around the thigh and the

stethoscope is applied to the popliteal space ) (2) There are dilated and pulsating intercostal vessels often associated with erosion of the lower borders of the ribs also dilatation and pulsation of the internal mammary scapular and epigastric arteries (3) A systolic murmur may be heard over the precordium the interscapular region and over most of the dilated arteries that form the col-

lateral circulation (4) Cardiac hypertrophy occurs early (5) The x rays will reveal a decrease in the size of the aortic knob, or an absence of the knob dilatation of the ascending aorta enlargement of the left ventricle and notching or irregularities of the lower borders of the ribs

For other anomalies of the aorta  
SLI p 526

### Functional Abnormalities (Disturbances of Rhythm)

The disturbances of rhythm may be loosely classified under three subdivisions

- I Rapid rate with regular rhythm
- II Slow rate with regular rhythm
- III Irregular rhythm (with rapid or with slow rates)

**I Rapid Rate with Regular Rhythm (Tachycardia)** The vagus and sympathetics while not concerned with initiating the cardiac impulse have nevertheless a decided influence upon the heart rate. The vagus slows it and the sympathetics accelerate it. When the vagus is stimulated or irritated by pressure over the carotids or over the eyeballs or at any other point or is acted upon by physostigma (eserin) or by acetyl cholin (mcholyi) the heart rate becomes slower. Also when the sympathetics become paralyzed the vagus remains unopposed and the heart rate slows down. On the other hand when the vagus is paralyzed by atropine by intracranial or by intrathoracic pressure the heart rate is accelerated because the sympathetics are unopposed so also when the sympathetics are stimulated by drugs toxins or in any other manner the heart rate becomes rapid. In both vagus retardation or stimulation and in sympathetic stimulation or retardation

while the heart rate may become accelerated (tachycardia) or retarded (bradycardia) so long as the cardiac impulse originates in the sinoauricular node a regular rhythm is maintained that is the spacing between beats are of equal length all being shorter than normal in tachycardia and longer than normal in bradycardia. The electrocardiographic tracings will show the normal sequences of the P R T waves

**Simple Tachycardia or Sinus Tachycardia** This may occur in cardiovascular affections in functional disturbances in the various neuroses reflexly from other organs and in fevers

An increase in the cardiac rate may be nature's method of supplying an adequate amount of blood per unit of time. In such cases either the heart is incapable of delivering the required quantity of blood in a given time or the blood vessels are incapable of carrying the volume of blood delivered by the normal heart beating at a normal rhythm. In either case smaller quantities of blood are delivered at a faster rate. While the heart beats faster the circulation in general may not be disturbed.

Tachycardia may also occur because of disease of the myocardium resulting from rheumatic affections syphilis thy-

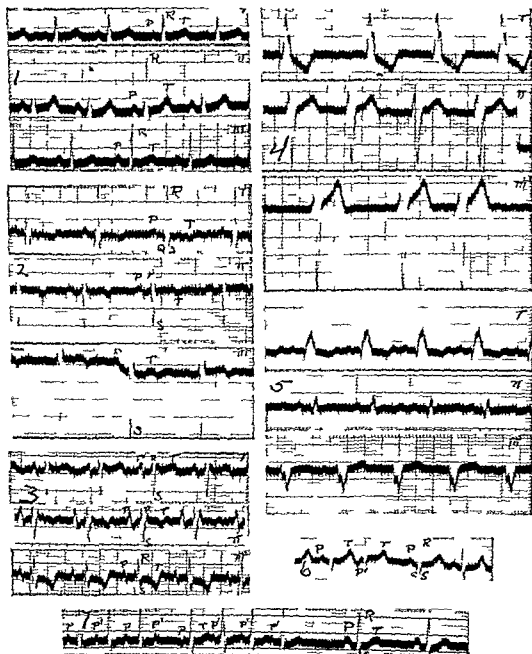


Fig. 27—Normal and abnormal electrocardiograms.

(T. M. McMillan, M.D. Philadelphia Hospital.)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Normal heart rhythm                                | 4 Complete left branch bundle block and auricular fibrillation. |
| 2 Left auricular preponderance and inverted T waves. | 5 Partial left branch bundle block.                             |
| 3 Right ventricular preponderance                    | 6 Auricular extrasystole  |
| 7 Auricular paroxysmal tachycardia                   |   |

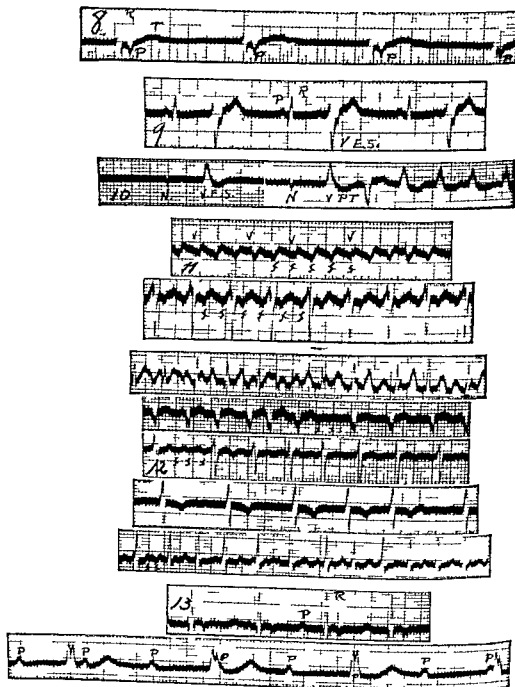


Fig 28—Normal and abnormal electrocardiograms  
(T M McMillan M D Philadelphia Hospital)

- 8 A V rhythm.
- 9 Ventricular extrasystole.
- 10 An isolated V E-S and beginning of paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia.
- 11 Two examples of auricular flutter.
- 12 Five examples of auricular fibrillation on first strip probably better classified as impure flutter.
- 13 Two examples of A V heart block first strip showing prolonged P-R interval second complete A V block.

rotoxicosis, etc., where the rapid rate is an expression of weakness and in competence. When tachycardia results from cardiac incompetency, it is usually associated with signs of heart failure. Tachycardia may be considered as a functional disturbance of the cardiac impulse when it occurs for short periods at intervals, and when it is not associated with heart damage, vascular disease, kidney affections or any other definite pathologic condition, and when there is no alteration in the blood pressure. This condition is often found in fatigue, after overindulgence in tobacco, alcohol or other drugs, in anxiety during strenuous exercise, and in emotionalism. Then too, in gastrointestinal disturbances, hemorrhage, shock, toxemia, pulmonary disease, and abdominal distention, the heart rate, even in the presence of an otherwise normal cardiovascular system, may be reflexly increased.

Tachycardia of sinus origin presents a regular rhythm with a rapid rate. The rate can be increased by exertion or stimulation and may be slowed down by digitalis or by other appropriate treatment. In the treatment of tachycardia it is important to determine the etiology. A rapid, empty pulse, as found in shock or after hemorrhage, should not be treated with digitalis or with other drugs that may have a tendency to slow the heart. In these conditions the rapid rate is a compensatory measure as an attempt to equalize the circulation. To slow the heart by drugs, if such were possible, would court disaster.

In fevers, the rapid heart rate is due to several factors, such as increased metabolic activity, the absorption of toxins, or a direct irritation of the cardiac mechanism, and to myocarditis. A preëxisting myocarditis, or an acute myo-

carditis developing during fever, will increase the heart rate beyond the usual acceleration.

In hemorrhage, the normal rate may be restored by replacing the blood loss, that is, by venoclysis, hypodermoclysis, or by blood transfusion.

In shock, as well as in myocardial failure, where the blood pressure is greatly reduced and where the superficial vessels are nearly empty because of the blood having been driven into the vascular beds, an attempt to reduce the heart rate is dangerous. In such cases, the heart is to be stimulated by caffeine sodium benzoate, whiskey and strychnia. Digitalis or strophanthin should not be used. The patient should be placed in a comfortable position, surrounded by hot water bottles and covered by blankets. If the patient is unable to drink, hot coffee may be given by rectum. Aromatic spirits of ammonia may be used as a temporary measure.

Tachycardia resulting from cardiac failure associated with venous distention requires free bleeding and the use of digitalis. If associated with edema and cyanosis, large doses of digitalis and such measures as will lessen the edema and restore the failing heart are indicated.

The treatment of tachycardia resulting from functional disturbances, the various neuroses, as well as the tachycardia of reflex origin and of fevers should be directed entirely to the underlying causes. When these are removed, the heart rate will return to normal. Since the tachycardia is only a symptom of an underlying condition, specific cardiac remedies are entirely ineffective.

Cardiac palpitation is also a subjective symptom in various types of neuroses and psychoses. Occasionally the patient



complaints of palpitation while the heart rate is slow, but the force of the beat is increased, and at times palpitation is associated with precordial pain and pressure. In neurocirculatory asthenia, the heart rate may be rapid or it may become rapid as the result of emotional upset or moderate physical effort.

On the electrocardiogram, tachycardia is noted as rapid, regularly spaced, regularly recurring P R T waves in all leads.

**Paroxysmal Tachycardia** This may occur in persons who are presumably in perfect health, and also in those who have definite myocardial damage. Paroxysmal tachycardia of auricular origin is usually benign while paroxysmal tachycardia of ventricular origin is more often an indication of serious heart damage. The attacks come on suddenly, at times without any apparent provocation. Excitement, toxemia and overindulgence in tobacco may be contributing factors. The attacks may last from several minutes to an hour or longer, and stop just as suddenly as they begin. These paroxysms may come on once a month, once a week, more often or less frequently. During the attack, there may be some headache, dizziness and a sense of precordial oppression, the patient is conscious of the palpitation and is usually nervous and fearful. The heart rate may vary from 160 to 200 per minute and is generally regular. In most instances the auricular rate is as fast as the ventricular. Exercise does not increase the rate and rest does not slow it. Though paroxysmal tachycardia of auricular origin is usually benign, there are three cardiac conditions in which the accelerated cardiac rate may be serious. These are (1) Mitral stenosis, (2) left ventricular dilatation, and (3) coronary insufficiency. In these

conditions the unusually rapid heart action may cause pulmonary edema, cardiac asthma and heart failure.

A definite diagnosis as to the type of irregularity is best made by an electrocardiographic study. SEE Fig 27, No 7, p 511.

As to the treatment of this type of arrhythmia, a paroxysm may occasionally be aborted by pressure exerted over the eyeballs or over the carotid sinus or by the hypodermic administration of 20 to 50 mg of mechoyl, or two to four drachms of syrup of ipecac by mouth.

**Auricular Flutter:** The impulse arises from a single focus and continuously circulates at a fast rate over the same path in the auricle in the vicinity of the openings of the superior and inferior venae cavae.

In this irregularity the auricle may beat at a rate of 250 to 300 per minute, and the beats are rhythmic and uniform, while the ventricle may in comparison be rather slow and less responsive to auricular stimulation. The ventricular beats, however, are feeble and much more rapid than normal. The auricular impulses are partially blocked in their passage to the ventricles. The block may be two to one or three to one, the ventricular rate would therefore depend upon the degree of block. A two to one block would cause a faster cardiac rate than a three to one block. This condition may be recognized by the occurrence of distention and extremely rapid impulse in the jugulars, the apical impulse being feeble, at times irregular, and comparatively slow. The pulse is soft and compressible. It may be manifested in paroxysms lasting but a short time, or it may occur for quite a long period or just before death.

Auricular flutter is usually due to myocardial degeneration or rheumatic affections and, rarely, to disease of the nervous system. The administration of large doses of digitalis and strophanthin may change the flutter to fibrillation and then to normal rhythm. Quinidine sulfate also slows the flutter. Exercise does not increase its rate nor does rest slow it. When the cardiac rate is irregular in flutter, mild exercise will often restore it to regular but rapid rhythm. On the electrocardiogram auricular flutter is characterized by a rapid heart rate and an increase in the number of P waves in relation to the R-T complexes. When there are three P waves to one R-T complex, it indicates a three to one block, if two P waves occur to each R-T complex then the block is two to one (SEE Fig 28, No 11, p 512).

**II Slow Rate with Regular Rhythm: Sinus Bradycardia:** A constant slow heart rate between 50 and 60 per minute is occasionally found as an individual or family peculiarity. In the aged, after fatigue, during exposure to intense cold, during convalescence from fever, in jaundice and in myxedema, the heart rate is slow. Bradycardia is also a symptom of intracranial pressure due to hemorrhage or tumor. In meningitis, typhoid fever, severe myocarditis, in certain types of arteriosclerosis, in asphyxia and anoxemia, the heart rate is definitely slowed down. Bradycardia may also be produced by certain drugs, such as digitalis, opium, aconite and acetanilid or other coal tar derivatives and by various poisons. Stimulation or irritation of the vagus or blocking of the sympathetics are other causes of reduced bradycardia. In these conditions the electrocardiogram shows normal P-R-T sequences with a lengthening of the diastolic phase. Brady-

cardia developing in one whose cardiac rate has previously been normal, accelerated or irregular should suggest the possibility of heart block.

**Heart Block:** This results from interference with the normal conduction of the impulse which may be blocked any-

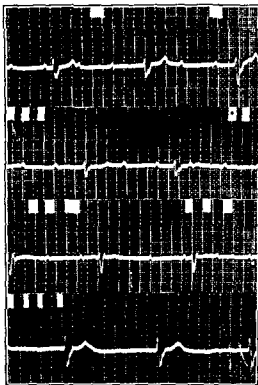


Fig 29—Complete heart block  
(Courtesy Dr H. K. Mohler)

where along its pathway and causes delayed, partial, or complete heart block.

**Etiology:** Heart block is generally acquired, rarely congenital. Acquired heart block may be caused by injury of the auricular musculature, in the A-V node or in the bundle of His in the pathway between the sinoauricular node and the auricle, in the bundle branches, in the ventricular myocardium, or in the arborization of the Purkinje fibers. Heart block may be brought about by syphilis, arteriosclerosis, rheumatic fever, and

other febrile diseases, by coronary disease, emboli, toxic agents, and other conditions that may cause severe myocardial damage, also by digitalis, strophanthus, aconite, physostigmine, morphine, nicotine, and potassium salts

*Types of Heart Block* 1 Complete Heart Block (auriculoventricular block)

The auricles and ventricles each have their own rhythm. The ventricular impulse arises within the ventricle and is independent of the auricle. The heart rate is slow, from 30 to 40 per minute, and, occasionally, the ventricular rate may be as slow as 8 to 10 per minute and is accompanied by attacks of Stokes Adams' syndrome (giddiness, faintness, unconsciousness, muscular twitchings, or convulsions). The auricular rate is fast

Graphically, complete heart block is recognized by the extremely slow ventricular rate, 30 to 40 per minute, while the auricular wave is rapid. The Q R S complex is often distorted, presenting notching of the limbs or apex and at times distinct arrhythmia. The P waves (auricular) are rapid, regular and have no relation to the Q R S complex though at times they are notched. Deformity of the waves may at times occur as the result of the P wave superimposing upon the R and Q waves. Partial heart block presents more rapid ventricular beats than complete heart block though dissociation of P and Q R S waves is noted

2 *Partial Block* When the block is incomplete, the heart rate is faster than in the complete block, indicating that some of the auricular beats come through to the ventricle.

3 *Sinoauricular block* causes a drop in the rate of both the auricle and ventricle. The heart rate is slow and the pause is lengthened. This may be brought on by large doses of digitalis and vagal

pressure. It may be abolished by increasing the heart rate by atropine, deep breathing, exercise, or swallowing

4 *Dissociation by interference* is due to myocardial degeneration and occurs when a new impulse arises before the heart has sufficient time to recover from

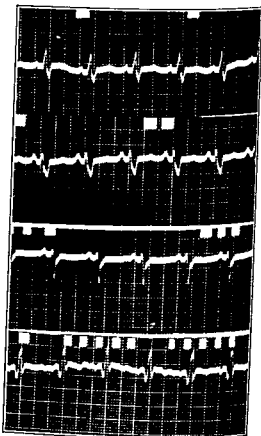


Fig. 30—Right bundle branch block  
(Courtesy Dr. H. K. Mohler)

the previous impulse. This is seen in auricular fibrillation, auricular flutter and ventricular extrasystole. In this condition the A V node is affected

5 *Intraventricular block* is of three types

(a) *Bundle Branch Block* Either the right branch of the bundle of His or the left branch of the bundle of His may block the impulse from entering the

right ventricle or the left ventricle. These abnormalities are discernible on the electrocardiogram.

**Right Bundle Branch Block** (block of right main branch of the auriculoventricular bundle). The distortions occur in the ventricular complexes. Each ventricular complex is preceded by a normal P wave in all leads. The ventricular complexes show a widening of the QRS complex exceeding 0.1 of a second in all leads. The S wave in lead I descends quite low and the R wave in lead III extends upward quite high. The T waves point upward in lead I and downward in lead III. That is in opposite directions to the S and R waves in the first and third leads. The T wave in lead II may point in any direction. (This was formerly considered as left bundle branch block.)

**Left Bundle Branch Block** (block of left main branch of the auriculoventricular bundle). Each ventricular complex is preceded by a normal P wave. The QRS complex is widened, exceeding 0.1 of a second in all leads. The R wave in lead I ascends high; the T wave points downward in this lead. In lead III the S wave descends quite low and the T wave points upward, that is in the opposite directions of main initial deflections in leads I and III. (This was formerly considered as right bundle branch block.)

To differentiate between left and right ventricular preponderance (SEE Figs 40 and 41 pp. 437-8) and left and right bundle branch block, it should be noted that in bundle branch block the R wave is wider than normal and is usually notched or splintered and the T points in the opposite direction to the S and R, while in ventricular preponder-

ance the QRS complexes are not widened and the T points in the same direction as the main initial deflections in leads I and III.

(b) *Arborization block* occurs when there is an interference with the conduc-

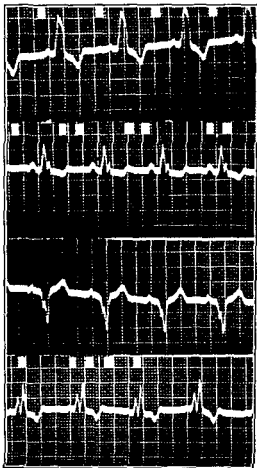


Fig. 31—Left bundle branch block.  
(Courtesy Dr. H. K. Mohler.)

tion through the terminal division of the Purkinje fibers (subendocardial fibers).

(c) *Advanced intraventricular block* (diffuse type) may give rise to gallop rhythm in which there may occur doubling of the first or second heart sounds.

The various types of heart block may best be diagnosed by the electrocardiogram.

### III Irregularities of Rhythm 1

**Sinus Arrhythmia** (respiratory arrhythmia) In this condition the frequency of the heart rate varies with the respiratory acts. The rate is accelerated during inspiration and is slowed during expiration. During deep inspirations there may be 2, 4, or 6 rapid heartbeats in succession and with the beginning of expirations the heart rate slows. This condition usually occurs in children, in vagotonic adults during convalescence from pneumonia or other severe infections. Occasionally this type of arrhythmia may occur in bradycardia due to meningitis in rheumatic myocarditis and after hyperdigitalization. It is also noted in Cheyne-Stokes respiration during the periods of hyperpnea the heart rate is fast and during the periods of apnea the heart rate becomes exceedingly slow. In young adults who have low blood pressure and a generally slow pulse an attack of sinus arrhythmia may cause syncope. Sinus arrhythmia is caused by the influence of the vagus upon the sinoauricular node; it is as a rule of little pathological significance. The administration of atropine or increasing the heart rate by exercise or by any other means abolishes this irregularity. The P-R-T waves are in normal relation to one another though the diastolic pauses between these complexes vary; they are shorter when the heart is rapid and are lengthened when the rate is slow.

**2 Extrasystole** This usually occurs in neurotic individuals, the cardiac impulse being ectopic in origin. It may be due to gastric disturbances, abuses of tobacco, digitalis, alcohol, psychic disturbance, or excessive sexual indulgence. When accompanying heart failure it is a serious sign.

This form of irregularity is characterized by either a premature auricular or ventricular systole or by both; it may start prematurely and be independent of the normal rhythm. Occasionally it occurs in an otherwise normal heart. The heart impulse either arises outside the sinoauricular node or is not properly conducted or received.

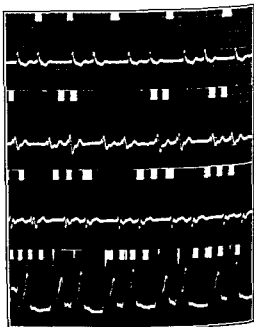


Fig. 32—Digitalis intoxication. Note coupling of the beats (*pulsus bigeminus*) (Courtesy Dr. H. K. Mohler)

A long pause between pulse beats may be produced by ventricular contraction the impulse being too weak to reach the wrist. This causes the intermittent pulse.

Extrasystole occurring every second beat (a long pause after every second beat) causes the *pulsus bigeminus*.

*Multiple extrasystole* designates a condition in which a few abnormal beats follow one another in rapid succession.

A very slow pulse may often be due to the inability of the heart to transmit

all the impulses to the radial artery although it may transmit them to the jugular vein

The premature contraction responsible for the extrasystole may be recognized by auscultation as two small sharp sounds followed by a long pause. The sound following the pause is louder and more forcible than the other normal systolic sounds. Thus compensatory loudness is felt by patients as a distinct precordial "thump" which engenders considerable anxiety and causes them to swallow, cough or take a deep inspiration. Sometimes the extrasystole is so weak that but a single feeble sound can be detected. This occurs when the aortic valve does not open during the systole. When the aortic valve opens by the premature contraction two sharp sounds are audible. In some cases of extrasystole, on palpation over the apical impulse, the premature contraction of the heart may be felt. The characteristic feature of this form of arrhythmia is as follows. The lengths of the heart cycles are not disturbed, the difference is found only in the spacing of the beats. Exercise or stimulation of the heart by atropine or strychnia will cause a return to the normal. Extrasystole brought on by exercise or by stimulation is of graver importance than when it occurs during rest.

Graphically, a premature contraction is identified by the occurrence of a premature P wave in advance of its regularly recurring position. The R wave of the premature beat follows closely on the premature auricular impulse and is as a rule not altered in shape or direction. However the premature P wave may be either exaggerated flat, inverted or overshadowed by the T wave of the previous cycle.

*Varieties of Extrasystole* If any portion of the heart becomes more sensitive than the sinoauricular node that part will be the starting point for the heart's contraction, should this part be in a constant state of excitability continuous abnormal rhythm will result. If the excitability of the abnormal point occurs only at infrequent intervals simple pre-

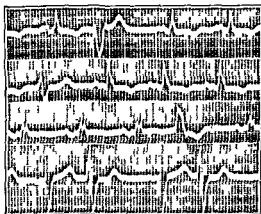


Fig 33—Ventricular extrasystole and myocardial damage

mature contraction will result. The rate of abnormal contractions depends upon the frequency of the abnormal impulse and its origin may at times be recognized as being either auricular, ventricular, or in the auriculoventricular bundle or node.

The ventricular is the simplest form of extrasystole, a premature beat is first heard followed by a long pause. This pause is caused by prolonged ventricular diastole and the heart remains in this state until the next auricular beat stimulates it to its next contraction.

Ventricular premature contraction is known graphically by the occurrence of a premature beat which distorts the QRS complex. This is followed by a compensatory period shown by the increased length of the diastole. Because

of the prematurity of this beat, the P wave of that contraction is invisible, or it may immediately precede the premature ventricular contraction. Ventricular premature contractions of right ventricular origin are identified in lead II, by the upward directed distorted R wave, while that of left ventricular origin, shows a downward distorted R wave, which assumes an upward direction in lead II.

*The Interpolated Extrasystole* In some instances after the ventricular extrasystole, there is a normal response to the normal auricular systole, causing a ventricular beat which can be appreciated in the radial artery without a corresponding auricular beat being discernible in the jugular.

*Auricular Extrasystole* The heart sounds and radial pulse are identical with the ventricular extrasystole. Only by pulse tracing and electrocardiogram (jugular and radial) can this condition be recognized.

*Extrasystole Arising in the Auriculo-ventricular Node* (nodal extrasystole, Mackenzie) In this class there is a simultaneous premature contraction of the auricles and ventricles. The condition may be ascertained only by arterial and venous pulse tracings and by the electrocardiogram. All forms of arrhythmia may be distinctly classified by the electrocardiographic tracings.

*Simultaneous Occurrence of the Normal Auricular Systole and of the Ventricular Extrasystole* In these cases the heart's action is rather slow. The auricles and ventricles contract simultaneously, so that the auricle is prevented from emptying its contents into the ventricle, thus sending a large wave into the jugular, and at the same time causing an absence of the radial pulse.

**3 Auricular Fibrillation** This type of irregularity is the one most frequently encountered. It is characterized by a complete disorganization of rate, regularity and force. The irregularity is at its maximum when the heart rate exceeds 120 per minute, when the rate is slowed to about 80 per minute the irregularity is less prominent. When listening to the cardiac apex, the heart sounds are heard as a medley of sounds varying in intensity, rate, rhythm and quality. No two sounds are alike, there are a number of tumultuous sounds in rapid succession, then there may be several loud isolated sounds interspersed with comparatively long pauses, this may be followed by one or by several either normal heart sounds or rudimentary sounds. The irregular irregularity of the heart's actions are the distinguishing features of auricular fibrillation. The pulse rate here does not keep pace with the heart rate, many of the rudimentary cardiac impulses do not reach the wrist, therefore there is a pulse deficit. A heart rate of 120 may present a pulse rate of only 100 or less. Thomas Lewis describes the pulse of auricular fibrillation as follows: "The pulse is a medley of beats of many sizes, an intimate mingling of changing pauses, now the beats are almost uniform in strength and spacing, now feeble pulsations chase along rapidly, now the pulse is lost, now it returns with increased vigor." The sphygmomanometric reading is quite characteristic. A few isolated systolic heart sounds may be heard over the cubital fossa when the cuff is compressed at 160 mm, several more at 150 mm, at 130 mm many more beats are transmitted. These are of varied strengths. Near the beginning of the diastolic phase most of the beats strong and

weak, regular and irregular, are heard with ease. The point where most beats are first heard may be designated as the *systolic pressure of the individual*.

When the heart rate is slow it is often difficult to diagnose auricular fibrillation, many of the rudimentary beats do not occur, the wild delirium of the heart is not as evident as when the rate is fast, nor is the pulse deficit as marked. The irregular spacing and the occasional disturbance in force and rhythm of the beats discloses the type of irregularity. Occasionally slow auricular fibrillation may resemble extrasystole. To differentiate these conditions the heart rate is sped up by exercise, strychnia or atropine. If, when the heart rate becomes faster, the irregularity becomes more pronounced, the condition is most likely auricular fibrillation. On the other hand, when the heart is slowed by rest or digitalis and the irregularity becomes more evident, then the condition is usually extrasystole.

Auricular fibrillation occurs in severe myocardial degeneration of either the ventricles or the auricles. The irregularity may be transient or permanent. In acute infections, in thyrotoxicosis and in other infections in the young it may be a temporary derangement. In arteriosclerosis, in severe myocarditis, in coronary infarction in severe heart damage following rheumatic disease and in the myocardial degeneration of the aged, the irregularity is permanent and is accompanied by other signs of cardiac decompensation.

**Prognosis** Auricular fibrillation resulting from mitral stenosis is, with moderate care, compatible with long life. Two such patients under my care have been fibrillating steadily for 30 years, though during that period both have had

several attacks of heart failure from which they recovered. In thyrotoxicosis the irregularity usually disappears after thyroidectomy or when the thyrotoxic manifestations are otherwise controlled. The irregularity occurring during infectious diseases often disappears after complete convalescence. In the aged, in arteriosclerosis, in severe myocarditis and following coronary infarction, particularly when there are other signs of gross cardiac decompensation, the prognosis is poor and the span of life is materially shortened, severe cases seldom survive two years. Auricular fibrillation is rare in syphilitic myocarditis. When this irregularity accompanies aortic regurgitation, embolic phenomena are of frequent occurrence. The presystolic murmur of mitral stenosis in cases of auricular fibrillation may become inaudible or may appear as a systolic murmur or its timing may become extremely difficult during periods of cardiac decompensation. An early sign of return of cardiac compensation is the return of the murmur.

**Mechanism of Auricular Fibrillation** Auricular fibrillation is the result of an abnormal impulse traveling an abnormal course. According to Lewis the cardiac impulse or "the wave circulates continuously over the auricle at the rate of about 450 per minute. The movement is irregular in that the same path is not followed precisely from cycle to cycle." This rapid movement instead of causing full contraction of the auricles produces contractions of only individual muscle fibers. These impulses are transmitted to the ventricles at irregular times with varying force and are partially blocked in their passage through the auriculo-ventricular bundle or its branches. The



electrocardiographic findings show an absence of the normal P wave which is displaced by a number of fine fibrillar deflections and an irregular spacing of the R T complexes

Digitalis and quinidine judiciously administered will in many cases partially control this type of irregularity

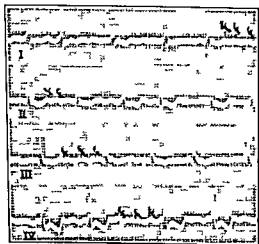


Fig 34—Auricular fibrillation Note irregularity of spacings between the R waves the absence of P waves and the presence of so called F waves and all leads

**4 Ventricular Fibrillation** This is of short duration and is an extremely grave condition, it may occur with auricular fibrillation or in severe myocardial degeneration due to any cause. This condition is often the cause of sudden death because when the ventricles fibrillate the circulation remains at a standstill

**5 Auricular Flutter** SEE p 514

**6 Pulsus Alternans** In this condition the cardiac rhythm is normal but the pulse beats vary in strength or volume. A strong and a weak pulse al-

ternate, probably because of a weak myocardium which causes insufficient contraction of the ventricle during one systole with a consequent expulsion of a larger quantity of blood at the next systole. This is usually a grave condition and often precedes death. Pulsus alternans may be suspected on palpation of the radial pulse, and can be accurately demonstrated with the aid of the sphygmomanometer, when the inflation of the cuff is just sufficient to compress the brachial artery partially an irregular oscillation of the column of mercury or the needle (in a spring instrument) will be noted. The irregularity is of volume only the sequence of the cardiac rhythm being regular. The electrocardiograph and the sphygmograph or polygraph will give accurate tracings of the condition.

**7 Gallop Rhythm** This term is applied to a condition in which three heart sounds are heard occurring in rapid succession and at regular intervals. The sounds when rapid, resemble those produced by a horse at gallop and when slower as at canter. The third sound may be protodiastolic if right after the second sound, presystolic if just before the first sound, mesodiastolic if midway between the two sounds, and systolic when the first sound is doubled. It is often extremely difficult to time the third sound by auscultation alone. Gallop rhythm occurs in myocardial weakness and cardiac dilatation it may occur in neurocirculatory asthenia partial heart block in rapid ventricular extrasystoles and occasionally it precedes or displaces the murmur of mitral stenosis.

## CHAPTER XVIII

# Examination and Diseases of the Vascular and Lymphatic Systems

The arteries capillaries and veins constitute the vascular system which is an intercommunicating system of tubes through which the blood propelled by the heart eventually reaches all the organs and most of the tissues of the body

### The Arteries

The function of the arteries is to supply the various organs and tissues of the body with an uninterrupted and adequate supply of blood to meet their requirements under varying conditions. Though the heart sends an intermittent supply of blood into the aorta the pressure through the capillary system is continuous. This is accomplished by the elasticity of the large arteries. The arterial system is composed of four types of vessels

1 The large or elastic arteries. These are the aorta the innominate the subclavian the common carotid and the common iliac arteries

2 The medium sized or muscular arteries. These are the carotids the axillaries the brachials the radials the ilacs the femorals the popliteals and the tibials

3 The small arteries and the arterioles. These are also muscular and are in intimate contact with the tissues they supply such as the internal organs the skeletal muscles and the skin. The arterioles of the skin and the splanchnic area help to maintain the systemic blood pressure the peripheral resistance of the circulation and help to control the body temperature

4 The capillaries. These are the terminal ramifications or the minutest vessels of the arterial tree and form the vascular beds of the various tissues. The blood flow in the capillaries is to a large extent controlled by the arterioles. When a muscle or an organ is at work an increased amount of blood is sent by the arterioles into the capillaries supplying that part. When the body or a part of it is exposed to excessive heat the arterioles send an increased amount of blood to the superficial capillaries so that body heat may be dissipated. On the other hand when exposed to cold the arterioles contract thus less blood is sent to the capillaries so as to diminish the loss of heat by radiation. When the blood supply is scant at the surface it is full in the splanchnic area and when the splanchnic area contracts blood is sent to the surface or to any organ that may require an extra supply of blood. The regulating mechanism of the circulation is controlled by the nervous system, the endocrines and other chemical agents

### Physical Examination of the Arteries

Physical examination of the arteries is confined chiefly to the superficial or visibly pulsating arteries and to the examination of the parts or organs supplied by the arteries. Disease of any portion of the vascular system may affect the entire circulatory apparatus and the tissues and organs dependent upon it which means the entire body

The arteries are studied as to their tension, the amount of visible pulsation, and the condition of the pulse. The radial artery is the most frequently studied in order to estimate the force of the cardiovascular system. Other arteries should also be studied by inspection, palpation, and at times by auscultation.

**Inspection** For a thorough inspection of the entire superficial arterial tree, the patient should sit or lie, with his arms elevated, so that his hands rest upon his head, when in this position, the axillary, brachial, radial and other arteries, when pulsating, can readily be detected. Visible pulsation in all the superficial arteries is usually an indication of aortic regurgitation, it may also be noted after exertion, in the presence of arteriosclerosis, in exophthalmic goiter and in certain anemias. Local arterial pulsation may be caused by partial compression of the main artery supplying that part. Visible pulsation in the neck and the arms alone may be due to aneurysm of the arch of the aorta, arteriosclerosis, or tricuspid regurgitation.

**Palpation** Besides studying the pulse and determining its character, palpation is employed to differentiate a pulsating artery from a pulsating vein, particularly if the pulsation is in the neck.

To differentiate arterial from venous pulsation, the index finger should be placed midway between the clavicle and the angle of the jaw, directly upon the pulsating vessel. If the pulsation is stopped at the point of compression so that pulsation is noticed below the point of compression and none above it, it is an indication of arterial pulsation. But, if the pulsation is intercepted from above downward and the vessel is seen to be

filling from above downward, it is an indication of venous pulsation.

**Percussion** Percussion in the examination of an artery is employed only for the sake of determining the possible area of dullness caused by aneurysm.

**Auscultation** Normally, no sound is elicited over a pulsating artery unless that artery is partially compressed. A 'pistol shot sound' is heard in the femoral arteries in cases of aortic insufficiency, and at times also in hypertension. *Duroziez's sign* is a peculiar murmurous to and fro sound heard over the femoral, carotid and subclavian arteries in cases of aortic regurgitation, when the arteries are slightly compressed. A very loud systolic murmur may at times be heard at the aortic orifice, and when it is accompanied by an accentuation of the second aortic sound it is indicative of aortitis.

A soft systolic murmur, because of fatty degeneration, hypoplasia, or any other chronic disease of the arteries is often heard over the innominate and carotid arteries when the vessels are markedly relaxed. A functional systolic murmur is sometimes heard in these vessels in cases of anemia. A systolic murmur may at times be heard over the intercostals in coarctation of the aorta.

A loud, systolic, 'whiffing' sound is heard over the subclavian artery (below the clavicle) at the height of inspiration. This murmur is attributed to pleural adhesions or to some other intrathoracic condition which apparently compresses the artery during inspiration. It is frequently met with in apical pulmonary tuberculosis. Aneurysms of the subclavian artery is characterized by expansile pulsation, thrill and bruit, difficulty in deglutition, and, at times hoarseness.

## Disease of the Arteries

### Arteriosclerosis

Arteriosclerosis (Gull Sutton's disease) is a chronic disease of the arterial system characterized by degeneration of the arterial walls accompanied by infiltration with fibrous tissue and lime salts causing thickening and loss of elasticity of the vessels with narrowing of their lumen. The disease may be diffuse or circumscribed.

The diffuse type of sclerosis may affect (1) The entire arterial tree (*arteriosclerosis*) (2) the capillaries (*arteriolar fibrosis*) (3) the veins (*phleboscrosis*), (4) the entire vascular system (*angiosclerosis*).

Circumscribed arteriosclerosis may affect part of one or more arteries (*atheroma*).

*Atherosclerosis* is a type of arteriosclerosis in which there is atheromatous degeneration of the connective tissue of the arterial walls.

*Monckeberg's sclerosis* is a primary degeneration of the media in the large and medium sized muscular arteries of the periphery. The lumina of the affected arteries become wider than normal.

**Etiology** Arteriosclerosis is a physiologic process in old age. After the fiftieth year the arteries usually harden, lengthen, become more tortuous and their caliber diminishes. Hereditary influence may cause hypertension in young individuals, the cause of which is otherwise unexplainable. Pathologically arteriosclerosis may be brought about by syphilis, alcoholism, worry, stress and strain, overwork, overeating, intoxications by lead and arsenic, intestinal toxemia, focal infection and sympathetic nervous disturbances. Disease of the kidney may

cause arteriosclerosis or may be caused by it.

**General Symptoms** 1 Hypertension is usually associated with most forms of arteriosclerosis, though in the senile who present hard pipestem arteries the pressure is often abnormally low. Hypertension is found in three groups:

(a) Simple hypertension without apparent renal or cardiac disease (hypertension). This may be the result of angioneurosis or an early stage of arteriosclerosis before external signs are manifested. Essential hypertension is a distinct entity; its cause is as yet unknown (SEE p 412).

(b) Hypertension due to manifest arteriosclerosis.

(c) Hypertension associated with renal or cardiovascular renal disease.

2 The superficial arteries are hard to the touch and tortuous.

3 Pallor, digestive disturbances, fatigue on moderate exertion, rapid aging, polyuria and in men enlarged prostate.

**Local Symptoms** **Heart** Myocarditis with cardiac hypertrophy and accentuation of the second aortic sound and occasionally angina pectoris occur. Cardiac hypertrophy may be followed by dilatation and decompensation.

**Lungs** There may be chronic bronchitis and emphysema.

**Eyes** The retinal vessels are tortuous and sclerotic.

**Brain** There may be dizziness and signs of cerebral anemia, hemorrhage or thrombosis.

**Kidney** Arteriosclerotic kidney is characterized by polyuria of low specific gravity containing little albumin, few casts and may or may not be associated with nitrogen retention in the blood.

**Vasomotor Symptoms** Sensation of fullness or lightness in the head, coldness

and blanching of the extremities, numbness and tingling sensation in the hands and feet often accompanied by congestion or cyanosis

**The Lower Extremities:** The symptoms engendered by arteriosclerosis of the lower extremities are similar in many respects to those caused by other forms of peripheral vascular disease (See p 535)

### *Aortitis*

When the aorta is affected by sclerotic changes, an atheromatous plaque may

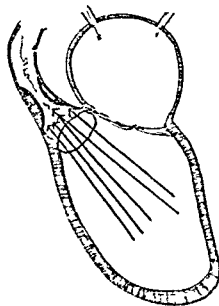


Fig 1—Aortitis

**Symptoms:** The symptoms are pain in the upper sternal region, or a sense of fullness on exertion, the pain frequently radiating to the arms. The pain often comes on when the patient is in bed and is relieved on getting out of bed and assuming an upright posture, or leaning somewhat forward supported by the hands. Dyspnea and a sense of precordial oppression resembling angina pectoris are often experienced. Occasionally there are no chest symptoms.

**Physical Signs: Inspection:** Pulsations in the vessels of the neck and suprasternal notch.

**Percussion:** Increased area of sternal vascular dullness to the right and left of sternum above third rib.

**Auscultation:** Accentuated aortic second sound, at times also a harsh systolic murmur over the second right intercostal space (aortic area) transmitted into the right carotid. This is to be differentiated from aortic stenosis chiefly by the presence of an accentuated second aortic sound. In aortic stenosis the second sound is very weak or absent.

### *Congenital Anomalies of the Aorta*

The aorta may show anomalies in position, size, structure and origin of its arteries.

may be narrow throughout its length or constricted at a certain level as in coarctation

**Anomalies in Structure** The aorta may structurally resemble that found

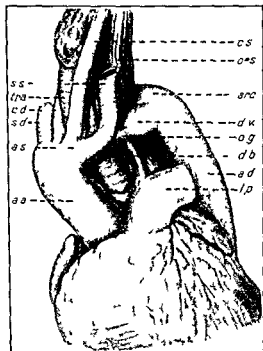


Fig 2—Drawing of congenital defect of aorta. The right sided aorta passes over the right bronchus then behind the trachea and esophagus. The ring around the trachea and esophagus formed by the right sided aorta and the left aortic arch (left subclavian artery occluded short vessel and diverticulum) is distinctly visible.

ss left subclavian  
trn trachea  
cd right carotid  
sd left innominate  
as ascending aorta

cs left carotid  
oes esophagus  
arc arch of aorta  
div diverticulum  
og occluded vessel  
db ductus Botalli  
ad descending aorta  
lp left pulmonary artery

(Courtesy Dr Aaron Arkin *American Heart Journal*)

normally in some quadrupeds reptiles or birds. In the *quadruped* type the aorta divides into an ascending and a descending trunk. The ascending trunk

is directed vertically upwards and subdivides into three branches to supply the head and upper extremities. In the *reptilian* type the aorta divides near its origin into two branches which, after a short run reunite. The esophagus and trachea pass between the two branches. In the *avian* type of aorta the arch passes over the right main bronchus and continues on the right side or it may be behind the esophagus and trachea.

There may also be *absence of the aortic arch*. The arch of the aorta may be entirely absent or only the isthmus (portion lying between the origin of the subclavian artery and the insertion of the ductus Botalli) may be closed or entirely absent. This shuts off the communication between the ascending and descending aorta. The ascending aorta then supplies the vessels of the head and the right subclavian and the open ductus Botalli goes over into the descending aorta on the left side.

Aaron Arkin\* reported and described six cases of *Double aortic arch with total persistence of the right and isthmus stenosis of the left arch*. This type of lesion represents an intermediate type between persistence of both aortic arches and persistence of the right aortic arch. In his cases there were persistence of both aortic arches. Because Arkin was able to demonstrate roentgenologically the presence of right sided pharyngeal aorta and the left dorsal aortic root which looks like a diverticulum and lies behind the esophagus he named this anomaly 'Right sided esophageal aorta or total persistence of the right and pharyngeal stenosis of the left aortic arch'.

\*Arkin Aaron *Am Heart J* 11:444 (Apr 1) 1936

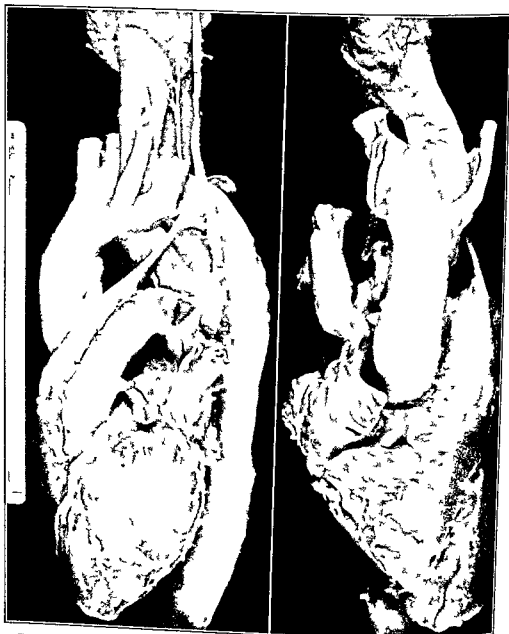


Fig 3—Photograph of specimen of congenital malformation of the aorta, showing the double aortic arch. The right arch lies behind the trachea and esophagus and the left arch (left innominate and subclavian artery isthmus stenosis and left dorsal root) in front. The ductus arteriosus communicates with the left dorsal root (Courtesy Dr Aaron Arkin).

Fig 4—Same as Fig 3 viewed from the right side showing the aortic arch behind the trachea and esophagus with the left arch in front (Courtesy Dr Aaron Arkin).

The following are seven of the clinical signs upon which Arkin based his diagnosis

"1 Dullness on percussion along the right sternal border upward to the head of the right clavicle

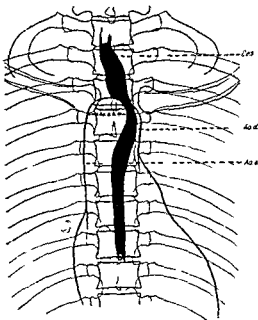


Fig 5—Drawing of x ray plate of right sided retroesophageal aorta (persistence of the right aortic arch) The ascending aorta is to the right of the esophagus which is displaced to the left. There is no aortic knob on the left side. The pulmonary artery appears prominent.

Ao a.b., width of ascending aorta

Ao d., descending aorta

Ao a., ascending aorta

Es, esophagus

(Courtesy, Dr Aaron Arkin)

"2 Visible systolic pulsation in the second or third right intercostal space near the sternum, or in the right supraclavicular fossa

"3 Palpable strong pulsation in right supraclavicular fossa

"4 Maximum intensity of the aortic heart sounds to the right and above the usual location (Often in the right supraclavicular fossa.)

"5 Displacement of the trachea slightly to the left

"6 Tracheal tug

"7 Delay in the passage of a rigid stomach tube at the level of the third dorsal vertebra with pulsation transmitted along the tube"

The x ray findings described by him were as follows

"(1) A shadow to the right of the sternum, running upward to the head of the right clavicle, with a distinct systolic pulsation, (2) slight displacement of the trachea, and definite displacement of the esophagus to the left, (3) absence of the normal aortic knob on the left side, or only a small shadow of the descending arch on the left side, in some cases two aortic knobs, one on each side, (4) in the right oblique position the aortic knob lies behind the trachea and esophagus, both of which are displaced forward and to the left (most characteristic of all is the circular forward displacement of the esophagus by the arch of the aorta), (5) shadow of the diverticulum either in the retroesophageal knob or in the shadow of the descending arch on the left side, (6) in the left oblique position a wide shadow of the ascending aorta to the right of the trachea and evidence that the aortic arch runs behind the esophagus to reach the left side"

For *Coarctation of the Aorta* and *Congenital Aortic Stenosis*, SEE p 508

### *Aneurysm*

An aneurysm is a localized expansion or dilatation of the lumen of an artery. It is usually circumscribed in shape.

Aneurysms are classified as I False II True

I **False Aneurysm** This term is applied to a circumscribed collection of blood outside the vessel due to rupture



of the artery, in other words, the sac of the aneurysm is partly or entirely formed by surrounding tissue or by a newly formed fibrous covering

**II True Aneurysm:** This is a more or less localized dilatation of an artery. The aneurysmal sac is composed of the layers of the arterial wall. The dilatation may be fusiform, saccular or cylindrical. A *dissecting aneurysm*, which belongs to the "true aneurysm" type, is one in which the intima has ruptured and the blood forced itself between the layers of the arterial wall.



Fig 6—Aneurysmal dilatation of an artery

**Physical Signs:** The cardinal physical signs are applicable only to superficial aneurysm. *Inspection* shows bulging, or a pulsating tumor, if the aneurysm is not covered by bone (ribs or sternum). *Palpation* will disclose an expansile pulsation and a thrill. *Percussion* elicits circumscribed dullness. *Auscultation* discloses a *bruit*.

**Etiology:** The commonest cause for aneurysm is a weak point in the walls of an artery, usually due to syphilis. Aneurysm may also occur in nonsyphilitics, as the result of sudden strain or an injury.

**Symptoms.** The symptoms of aneurysm depend entirely upon the location, the size, and the amount of pressure it exerts upon its adjacent structures. Pain, however, is the most constant symptom of aneurysm, particularly in the very early stages, when the intima is being stretched or ruptured. After an aneurysm has attained a considerable size, pain may be produced by pressing upon

some nerve. The signs common to all aneurysms which are not organized and are superficial, are expansile pulsation and *bruit*.

**Aneurysm of the Aorta.** This condition most frequently occurs in the ascending portion of the arch and gives rise to many phenomena. The next commonest site is the transverse portion, third, the descending portion of the arch of the aorta. The male sex, middle life, laborious work, syphilis, rheumatism, gout and alcoholism are predisposing factors. In other words, any factor that

leads to arterial degeneration on the one hand and to abnormally great vascular tension on the other may produce aneurysm.

**Aneurysm of Ascending Portion of the Aortic Arch. Symptoms.** When the aneurysm is large and presses against the recurrent laryngeal nerve, aphonia, dyspnea and brassy cough are prominent symptoms.

**Physical Signs:** *Inspection* shows a tumor to the right, rarely to the left, of the sternum over the second and third interspaces. The veins of the neck, head and upper extremities may be distended when the aneurysm is large enough to cause pressure upon the superior vena cava. When the pressure is exerted upon the subclavian artery, edema of the right arm is noted. When the aneurysm is sufficiently large to cause pressure on the inferior vena cava, swelling of the lower extremities will be noted. The apex beat is usually not placed to any extent towards the left.

**Palpation** If the enlargement is superficial and not too thoroughly organized, expansile pulsation and a thrill may be palpated in the second and third interspaces to the right or to the left of the sternum

**Percussion** will reveal an increased area of dullness over the manubrium

pressure on the trachea, dysphagia when pressure is exerted on the esophagus, bronchitis when pressure is exerted over a bronchus, brassy cough and aphonia from pressure of the left recurrent laryngeal, pupillary changes from pressure on the upper dorsal and the lower cervical ganglia rapid emaciation, when

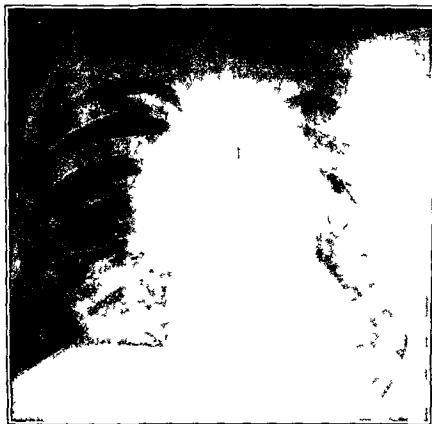


Fig 7—Aneurysm of the aortic arch

**Auscultation** may at times reveal a *bruit* occurring during both the systole and diastole in the second interspace, either to the right of the sternum or near its left border. A *bruit* is not heard if the aneurysmal clot is large and the expansion not well marked

**Aneurysm of Transverse Portion of the Aortic Arch** **Symptoms** are Dyspnea, dry brassy cough caused by

the aneurysm presses on the thoracic duct

**Physical Signs** When the aneurysm is large enough *inspection* will show a tumor in the middle line or to the right of the sternum

Tracheal tugging may be elicited by *palpation* particularly when the aneurysm is in close proximity to the trachea or the larynx. Inequality of both pulses

occurs when the innominate, the left carotid and the subclavian arteries are involved. If the sternum has been eroded, an expansile pulsating mass may be palpated over the upper part of the sternum and a little to the right of it. *Percussion*

*Physical Signs.* *Inspection* is of no value before the appearance of a tumor mass posteriorly. When the tumor mass does appear, a pulsation may be seen over the mass. *Expansile pulsation* may be felt over the tumor and fluctuation may be elicited if the aneurysm is not thoroughly organized. *Percussion* elicits dullness over the affected part. *Auscultation* reveals pulsation or a *bruit* heard posteriorly in the vicinity of the fifth or sixth dorsal spine.

**Aneurysm of the Descending Thoracic Aorta.** *Symptoms* are pain and, because of partial compression of the lung, dyspnea. A mass may appear upon the lower thorax to the left or right of the spinal column.



Fig. 8—Aneurysm of thoracic aorta, with erosion of the sternum.



Fig. 9—Aneurysm of thoracic aorta, with erosion of the seventh and eighth ribs posteriorly.

may reveal expansile pulsation *Percussion* elicits dullness *Auscultation* reveals a *bruit*, heard directly over the tumor mass The most accurate diagnosis of aneurysm in this region is made by means of the fluoroscope and roentgenogram

**Aneurysm of the Innominate Artery** The innominate artery may be involved independently or in association with aneurysm of the aorta

**Symptoms** The principal symptoms of aneurysm of the innominate artery are throbbing and pain at the root of the neck, dysphagia dyspnea and at times stertorous breathing

**Physical Signs** *Inspection* reveals pulsations in the right supraclavicular region with bulging or dislocation of the right sternoclavicular joint On *palpation* it is found that the right radial pulse is retarded and more compressible than the left, the right external jugular vein is usually distended and is accompanied by right sided edema of the face

and neck Tracheal tugging is often elicited as is also expansile pulsation and a diastolic shock over the site of the tumor *Percussion* elicits dullness over the right sternoclavicular region, and upon *auscultation* a *bruit* may be heard in the right supraclavicular region and often also in the first interspace close to the sternum

**Aneurysm of One of the Auricles or Ventricles** When this occurs the diagnosis is usually made by the x rays

**Arteriovenous Aneurysm** This is caused by an abnormal communication between an artery and a vein When the communication is direct it is known as aneurysmal varix, where the sac intervenes between the artery and the vein it is termed 'varicose aneurysm' Arteriovenous aneurysm is often met with in the peripheral vessels and is usually the result of some form of traumatism or of syphilis It may be seen in the popliteal space in the groin in the axilla in the subclavian and in the bend of the elbow

#### Differential Table of Aortic Aneurysm

##### *Inspection*

ASCENDING PORTION	TRANSVERSE	DESCENDING	ABDOMINAL AORTA
Bulging of the thorax and pulsating tumor are present to the right of the sternum in the second and third intercostal spaces except when the aneurysm projects upward and inward from the lesser curvatures	Bulging and pulsation in the episternal notch	Bulging and pulsation to the left of the sternum usually in the second and third left interspaces near the sternum or very rarely in the left scapular regions	Pulsating tumor in the abdomen frequently causing expansile pulsation over a limited area
Apex of heart is usually displaced downward and outward	Apex generally in the normal position	Apex beat is displaced to the right and two areas of pulsation are seen	Apex beat not displaced

If pulsation is synchronous with the systole of the heart and erosion of the chest wall has occurred there will be a more or less prominent pulsating tumor over which the skin is livid or necrotic and it may be the seat of hemorrhagic oozing

*Dilatation of the superficial veins* and congestion of the face may be due to pressure upon the venous trunks

*Edema* may also be present, due to pressure on vein, as well as *cyanosis* and *dyspnea*

*Unequal pulsation* and unilateral sweating or Horner's syndrome may be present depending upon the amount and extent of pressure.

*Palpation* confirms inspection as to the position of the mass and the apex beat

### Palpation

ASCENDING PORTION	TRANSVERSE	DESCENDING	ABDOMINAL AORTA
Apex beat is displaced downward and to the left.	Tracheal tugging is marked.	Apex beat is displaced to the right	Position of apex beat not altered

A pulsating thoracic aneurysm is best detected by bimanual palpation, the examiner placing one hand over the spine and the other over the sternum, at the same time exerting pressure with the hand upon the sternum. Palpation also determines the extent and character of the pulsation if it is expansile in character, the sac enlarges in every direction often causing the pulsation to be forcible and heaving

*Systolic thrill* is the result of the vibration of the wall of the sac, caused by the whirl of blood within the sac. This is transmitted as a palpable impulse over the aneurysm, and is associated with a marked diastolic shock due to the recoil of the blood upon the aortic valve. This phenomenon is absent when the aneurysmal sac is filled with clotted blood. The pulse in the radials may be delayed and diminished in volume, when the sac is very large the pulse in the arterial trunks beyond it may be scarcely perceptible. The pulse is delayed and small in the femorals

*Percussion* yields reliable evidence, but if the aneurysm is deep-seated and small, percussion is negative. The heart is not markedly hypertrophied

Dullness, and often flatness can be obtained over a superficial aneurysm, the area of dullness depending of course, on the situation of the sac. A sense of increased resistance is perceived by the plexor and pleximeter fingers

*Auscultation* will at times furnish the most distinctive signs, while at other times it is totally negative. The murmur or *bruit* over the aneurysm and the first and second sounds of the heart are heard with abnormal clearness, and are, at times the only signs detected. An accentuated second sound is a common and significant sign. The murmur is crescendo systolic in rhythm booming or churning in quality, it is often continuous with a rhythmic crescendo in systole and diminuendo in diastole, and is transmitted in the direction of the blood stream. It is best heard over the body of the tumor. A diastolic murmur is audible, independent of the aneurysmal murmur when incompetency of the aortic valve is present and displaces the diastolic shock and sound.

### Auscultation

ASCENDING PORTION	TRANSVERSE	DESCENDING	ABDOMINAL AORTA
Pressure on right or left bronchus, causes rales, tubular breathing, and a feeble vesicular murmur over the corresponding side of chest	Pressure on trachea causes stridor Pressure on left bronchus causes rales tubular breathing and feeble vesicular murmur over the corresponding side of the chest.	Pressure on left bronchus and lung may give evidence of pulmonary congestion, consolidation atelectasis, etc.	Systolic murmur

### Differential Diagnosis

It is at times difficult to distinguish between a thoracic aneurysm, mediastinal tumor and a pulmonary embolus. The following table sets forth the important differential points in the three conditions

## Differential Table of Aortic Aneurysm Mediastinal Tumor and Pulsating Empyema

AORTIC ANEURYSM	MEDIASTINAL TUMOR	PULSATING EMPYEMA NECESSITATIS
History of arteriosclerosis syphilis etc.	History of dyspnea cough etc.	History of pleurisy, pneumonia etc
Accentuation of second aortic sounds	No accentuation of second aortic sounds	No accentuation of aortic second sounds
Inequality of radial pulses	No differences in radial pulse.	No differences in radial pulse
Tracheal tugging may be present	No tracheal tugging	No tracheal tugging
No cachexia and no enlargement of lymphatic glands	If tumor is malignant there will be associated cachexia enlargement of lymphatic glands and pleural effusion (bloody)	Moderate cachexia but no enlargement of lymphatic glands
Dullness is usually to one side.	Dullness is more intense and widespread and is usually in the median line	Presence of irregular fever and sweats
Presence of expansile pulsation.	Pulsation is not expansile but of the up and down type	Dullness is diffuse
Bruit is present.	Bruit is absent	Pulsating but not expansile.
	If tumor is gummatous a history of syphilis glandular involvement and positive Wassermann are present	Bruit is absent
Various signs indicative of aneurysm may be present	If tumor is tuberculous there will be evidences of tuberculosis elsewhere	No evidence of tuberculosis
	Abscess of mediastinum will show signs of inflammation such as temperature fluctuation	Same as mediastinal tumor
Cardiac hypertrophy or displacement not marked.	Cardiac hypertrophy and displacement common	Cardiac displacement away from the empyema

**Diagnostic Signs of Aneurysm**

*Drammond's sign* is a rhythmic systolic whiff sometimes heard at the open mouth or over the trachea of a subject suffering from aortic aneurysm

*Sansom's sign* is a rhythmic systolic whiff audible when a stethoscope is applied to the patient's lips

*Glasgow's sign* is a systolic sound heard over the brachial artery in latent aneurysm of the aorta

*Oliver's Sign* Systolic pulsations in the larynx and trachea may be heard when an esophageal tube with a large

aperture at the end is introduced into the esophagus and connected with a stethoscope (A dangerous procedure)

A *fluoroscopic* examination and an *x ray plate* may greatly assist in the diagnosis of aneurysm

**Peripheral Vascular Disease**

This includes all diseases in which the peripheral circulation is either grossly interfered with or interrupted causing nutritional defects in the affected parts. Disturbance in the peripheral vessels is found in thromboangitis obliterans

arteriosclerosis obliterans, Raynaud's disease, erythromelalgia, essential thrombophilia and periarteritis nodosa

*Symptoms* common to peripheral vascular disease, irrespective of cause, are pain, numbness and altered circulation

Pain is the most outstanding complaint, it varies in intensity, character and distribution depending upon the site affected and the severity of the disease. In the early stages of lower extremity affection, when the occlusion is limited to the digital or plantar vessels there may, after walking only a short distance, be either a burning sensation or a sharp pain in the foot which may radiate to the calf muscles. Numbness in one or more toes or in the foot may accompany the pain or it may occur independent of pain, numbness may occur during exercise or when at rest. Numbness of the finger tips is an early manifestation of occlusion or spasticity of the peripheral vessels of the upper extremities. Intermittent claudication occurs in late stages of vascular occlusion. The pain in the calf of the legs is brought out by walking and is described as a severe cramp. It usually stops when resting. Pain in the buttock, after walking, which radiates downwards may be caused by spasm or partial occlusion of the inferior gluteal artery. As the occlusive disease pro-

gresses the pain becomes aggravated and may be continuous, even when at rest. Coldness, numbness and cessation of perspiration in the affected parts may precede pain or may accompany it. Blanching of the affected part may accompany numbness and precede pain. Hyperemia of a part and often deep cyanosis may occur with pain.

### ***Thromboangitis Obliterans (Buerger's Disease)***

This is a disease of the blood vessels occurring in young or early middle aged men, causing occlusion thrombosis in the arteries and phlebitis in the veins. In this disease the veins as well as the arteries are affected, thus differing from arteriosclerosis obliterans, in which the arteries alone are affected. This disease is characterized by excruciating pain in the foot, leg or arm, usually worse during the night. The extremity affected is cyanotic, cold and clammy. When the affected part is lowered it rapidly becomes congested but blanches just as rapidly when elevated. Pulsation in the dorsalis pedis, posterior tibial or the arteries of any affected part is either decreased or obliterated. Heat and cold sense is diminished, pain is a prominent symptom, and gangrene may occur in the toes, foot or in any other parts affected by thromboangitis obliterans.

### **Differential Table**

#### ***Thromboangitis Obliterans versus Arteriosclerosis Obliterans***

##### **THROMBOANGITIS OBLITERANS**

Affects the arteries and veins  
Migrating phlebitis common  
Possibly of inflammatory nature, most prevalent among males

May be a familial predisposition.  
Occurs principally in young and early middle-aged men or between the ages of 15 and 45

##### **ARTERIOSCLEROSIS OBLITERANS**

Affects the arteries exclusively  
No migrating phlebitis  
Metabolic in nature structural changes in the intima, noninflammatory, occurs in both sexes

Not usually a familial predisposition  
Most prevalent past middle age.

Tingling and numbness of the affected part when held in certain postures Pain when in motion, or intermittent claudication in advanced cases

Plantar ischemia usually associated with obliterated dorsalis pedis pulsation

The disease is slowly progressive and has a tendency to develop a collateral circulation.

Swelling redness and pain in affected foot when in the dependent position. One leg may be affected at first

Coldness and cyanosis

Before gangrene sets in the toenails may not be affected

X ray examination will not show calcareous vessels

Gangrene may be caused by thromboangitis obliterans, by arteriosclerosis, diabetes, Raynaud's disease and embolic diseases

### **Raynaud's Disease**

The etiology of Raynaud's disease is unknown. It appears to be a peripheral vasospastic disease affecting all the four extremities the tip of the nose and occasionally other acral parts. This disease is more prevalent among women than men. In the milder forms exposure to cold reaction to excitement or to pain will cause blanching of the fingers and toes accompanied by numbness and a tingling sensation. This blanching is followed by redness or cyanosis with a sensation of heat. These attacks may last several minutes to an hour, they may be relieved by friction of the parts or immersion in warm water. In severe cases there may be localized small trophic ulcerations of the skin scleroderma or trophic changes in the fingernails and toenails. Arterial pulsations remain normal.

### **Erythromelalgia**

This is caused by excessive localized vasodilation of both feet though one foot

Tingling numbness and pain in various parts of the foot and leg

Plantar ischemia may occur in the presence of palpably pulsating dorsalis pedis and other arteries

No tendency to form a collateral circulation

Generally no swelling the skin feels dry, scaly and may be fissured, generally a bilateral affection from the start.

Coldness and pallor

Dry brittle and discolored toenails

X ray examination of the extremities may show generalized calcareous infiltration of the arteries

alone and occasionally an upper extremity may be affected. The etiology is unknown, it may occur in either sex. The outstanding symptoms are redness and intense burning pain in the affected part when kept in the pendent position. These attacks come on at irregular intervals and may be relieved when the affected part is elevated or immersed in cold water. During the attack the part is red and hot and the superficial vessels are distended and pulsate (SEE p 885)

### **Essential Thrombophilia**

This is a type of thrombosis usually occurring in the medium sized arteries without any demonstrable arteriosclerosis or inflammatory changes in the arterial walls. The symptoms depend upon the site of the lesion. There may be pain and occlusive symptoms in the parts supplied by the cerebral, retinal and visceral arteries as well as by the arteries supplying the extremities. The coagulation time of the blood is usually diminished. The etiology is unknown, such cases were observed after electric shock burns and after trauma.



### **Embolie Occlusions of the Arteries**

These may result from vegetative endocarditis from the breaking off of portions of a thrombus and forming emboli as seen in mural thrombosis of coronary origin in auricular fibrillation and in myocarditis. These may cause localizing signs such as aphasia hemiplegia or sensory disturbances when the cerebral vessels are affected. When a peripheral vessel becomes occluded there will be sudden pain, blanching and cessation of arterial pulsation below the point of obstruction. If occlusion occurs in any of the viscera there may be pain and interference with the function of that part.

### **Periarteritis Nodosa**

Periarteritis nodosa is characterized by inflammatory lesions in the smaller and medium sized arteries. All the coats of the arteries are affected showing hyaline degeneration and inflammation. The



Fig 10—Periarteritis nodosa. Photomicrograph of small vessel showing inflammation of the vascular wall aneurysmal dilatation and thrombosis of the lumen.

lumen of some of the vessels may be thrombotic others may show aneurysmal dilatations. Small nodules yellowish white in color ranging in size from that of a pinhead to a pea are found on

many of the arteries, their number vary from a dozen to several hundred. Occasionally there may be found small nodules on the skin or in the subcutaneous tissue. These nodules are tender or painful to touch.

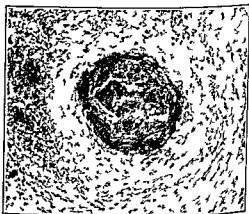


Fig 11—Periarteritis nodosa. Photomicrograph (high magnification) showing the composition of a nodule: the infiltration of the vessel walls and the clotted lumen.

The etiology is unknown it occurs more frequently among young males than in females.

**Symptoms** The disease may follow a cold or any infection it runs a septic course with fever weakness pain in the muscles joints and epigastrium. There is usually digestive disturbances such as vomiting diarrhea melena and abdominal cramps, occasionally there may be symptoms of mesenteric thrombosis or perforation of the bowel. There may also be cough and hemoptysis, anemia asthenia and emaciation. The kidneys are affected in over 80 per cent of the cases. Hypertension is nearly always present. Leukocytosis and occasionally eosinophilia may be present. Painful lesions along the arteries and in the skin when present are important diagnostic data.

**Prognosis:** The disease may run from a few weeks to a few months. Recovery is rare.

### Acute Arteritis

The arteries are resistant to infectious processes, though occasionally acute endarteritis may develop during the course of typhoid fever, septicemia and pneumonia. Localized inflammation of an artery may result from local suppuration, syphilis, tuberculosis, rheumatic fever, or from some infection of the lymphatics or the vasovasorum. Severe infection may cause necrosis and rupture of the vessel with hemorrhage.

### Examination of the Capillaries

Despite the fact that they are the smallest of the blood vessels, the capillaries, because of their distribution throughout the skin and the other superficial parts of the body, are of great importance in the circulatory system. What is usually termed "the complexion" of an individual depends largely upon the degree of fullness or emptiness of the capillaries in the skin. Thus, a flushed skin means full capillaries, and *per contra*, pallor means comparatively empty capillaries.

**Capillary pulsation** is a prominent symptom in aortic regurgitation (Quircke's capillary pulse). This pulsation consists of a periodical waxing and waning of the skin color, synchronous with the apex beat and the carotid impulse. It is observed upon the fingernails, lips, and upon the forehead, when the skin is briskly rubbed. In order to bring out this pulsation more prominently in the fingernails the patient's hand is supported, and a finger held lightly between the examiner's thumb and forefinger below the first metacarpal joint. Very gentle pressure is then brought to bear on

the lateral surfaces of the finger. If capillary pulsation be present, it will thus be noted readily at the roots of the nails. Gentle pressure upon the fingernail will often accentuate the capillary pulsation in the nail. A flashlight held underneath the fleshy part of a distal phalanx will reveal a pulsation beneath the fingernail. This pulsation, when



Fig. 12—Inspecting lip through glass slide for capillary pulsation in case of aortic regurgitation.

present on the lips can be brought out more clearly by pressing a glass slide upon the mucous membrane of the lower lip. Capillary pulsation while always a prominent sign in aortic regurgitation, is at times also observed in exophthalmic goiter and in certain anemias, particularly when associated with disease of the peripheral arteries. Cases have also been reported where capillary pulsations occurred in otherwise healthy persons after fatigue.

### Examination of the Veins

Only superficial veins lend themselves to physical examination. They are examined chiefly by *inspection* and *palpation*.

The veins are inspected for fullness engorgement and pulsation. Unusual enlargement of the veins is caused by some condition that intercepts the flow of blood to the heart. This obstruction may be general or local.

### Diseases of the Veins

#### General Venous Distention

General venous distention may be caused by

##### I Failure of the Right Ventricle

The right ventricle being overfilled and its walls having lost their elasticity can not propel a sufficient quantity of blood to the lungs for aeration. This produces a certain amount of back pressure thus causing a general stasis in the venous system. Not only are the superficial veins increased in size but the larger veins particularly those of the neck are pulsating and the surface of the body is cyanosed.

II Stasis in the lungs from any cause such as emphysema, fibroid phthisis and pertussis. In such cases the lungs are unable to receive all the blood the right ventricle should normally force into them; therefore a certain quantity remains within the right ventricle. This is often the beginning of excessive right intraventricular pressure. When this condition persists it usually becomes progressive and results in right ventricular dilatation with the symptoms described above.

III Compression of the vena cava by tumors, aneurysm, adhesive pericarditis or other adhesive bands. These obstructions are purely mechanical; the lumen is constricted and the flow thus intercepted causing a stasis above the point of compression.

IV General convulsion causes temporary stasis because the muscular contractions during convulsions are liable to compress the veins in certain parts of the body.

#### Local Venous Distention

Local venous distention may be caused either by a tumor or by adhesive bands pressing upon a vein which drains a



Fig. 13—Varicose veins

definite part. Venous thrombosis may have the same effect as does a tumor pressing upon a vein. Disease of the vessel wall may lead to distention.

I Distention of the veins of the scalp may be due to (a) Tumors of the neck (b) thrombosis of the lateral sinuses (c) meningitis (d) chronic hydrocephalus.

II Distention of the jugular veins may be due to (a) Intrathoracic pres

sure (mediastinal tumor), (b) aneurysm of the aorta, (c) tricuspid regurgitation, (d) severe paroxysms of cough (temporary)

**III Distention of veins in the arm** may be due to thrombosis or pressure by a tumor, enlarged glands, etc., upon the axillary veins

**IV Distention of the veins of either leg** may be due to thrombosis or pressure upon the femoral vein

**V Distention of veins of both legs** (varicose veins) may be due to (a) Pressure on the inferior vena cava by abdominal or pelvic tumors, (b) ascites, (c) thrombosis or pressure upon both femoral veins, (d) fecal impaction, (e) intrapelvic pressure, (f) pregnancy

**VI Distention of superficial abdominal veins** may be caused by (a) Compression of the inferior vena cava, (b) portal obstruction, (c) tumors of the liver, (d) atrophic cirrhosis, (e) ascites, (f) greatly enlarged spleen, (g) greatly dilated stomach

### *Venous Pulsation*

Normally, venous pulsation is not visible in well nourished individuals. However, in persons who are otherwise normal but are moderately emaciated and have little subcutaneous fat, pulsation in the neck may be readily noted, particularly during respiration. The veins can be seen to fill during expiration and collapse during inspiration, because of negative intrathoracic pressure which at that time draws the blood toward the heart. Swelling of the jugulars during expiration is due to the positive pressure exerted upon the veins which causes a retrograde wave of blood to close the valve above the jugular bulb.

*Pathologically*, this pulsation is very much increased in asthma and chronic

emphysema, it is also increased by cough. Adhesive pericarditis usually reverses the filling and emptying of the veins, i. e., the jugular veins fill during inspiration and empty during expiration because during inspiration the superior vena cava is constricted by adhesions, which hinder the venous flow toward the heart.

*Normally*, the venous pulse is presystolic in time, or negative because the veins fill during expiration and empty themselves during inspiration. Pathologically, the venous pulse may become systolic in time, or positive, because it may fill during inspiration. It is important, therefore, not to confuse the systolic venous pulse with the carotid pulse. A jugular vein may appear pulsating because of the transmission from an underlying carotid artery. This can be differentiated by

milk the vein upward, if the blood does not follow as a venous wave from below, the pulsation is due to carotid transmission. A positive venous pulse due to tricuspid regurgitation usually follows the fingers upward. The normal negative venous pulse can be differentiated from carotid pulsation by compressing the vein near its middle with the finger. Pulsation will cease on the proximal side of the compressed vein showing that the blood does not regurgitate from the heart. There is also a decided diminution of the undulation on the distal side which shows that the pulsation is not transmitted from an underlying artery. The presystolic wave of the normal jugular pulse rises slowly and is followed by a sudden systolic collapse, which in turn is followed by a short interval before the next wave appears. This phenomenon is due to systole of the right auricle because the right auricle contracts during venous disten-

tion, the back current is stopped at the jugular valve which transmits the shock above. The jugular pulse also differs from the carotid impulse by its force, thus, in the jugular vein the pulsation is mere undulation, while in the carotid artery it is an active circumscribed impact. The venous pulse of tricuspid regurgitation is positive and occurs synchronously with the apex beat and carotid impulse. It is best seen at the right jugular bulb in the supramastoid fossa where the valve of the vein closes above the bulb. When the valve becomes incompetent, a positive systolic venous pulsation can often be felt upward in the neck.

The regurgitation of blood which is urged upward through the incompetent orifice into the auricle with each right ventricular systole, takes place into the superior vena cava, right innominate and internal jugular veins. This jugular pulse may disappear while the patient assumes an upright posture because gravity favors its disappearance. In some cases of tricuspid regurgitation the venous pulse can also be noted on the left side. A venous pulsation may disappear when the myocardium becomes very weak or when the heart rate is extremely rapid. Functional tricuspid insufficiency, particularly when associated with pronounced anemia, may temporarily cause a positive jugular pulsation which occurs synchronously with a soft systolic murmur heard over the mitral area.

### *Venous Hum*

This is a continuous humming or buzzing sound which occurs during the filling of a vein and disappears while the vein empties. Three conditions may produce it.

I *Anemia*, due to the change in the viscosity of the blood and the increased rapidity of the circulation.

II *Compression of the jugular veins* due to posture (turning the patient's head), pressure of an enlarged gland, or any other condition that may constrict its lumen.

### III *Tricuspid insufficiency*

### *Phlebitis*

Inflammation of the veins is usually accompanied by pain, inflammatory swellings corresponding to the affected vessel and edema of the affected extremity. It is usually the result of an infection or traumatism.

Phlebitis may be divided into three groups: (1) Plastic or noninflammatory phlebitis, (2) thrombophlebitis migrans, (3) suppurative phlebitis.

(1) *Plastic Phlebitis*. This may occur after an injury, after surgical operation, in fevers such as typhoid, pneumonia, influenza, during puerperium (phlegmasia alba dolens), in local infections, in gout, in thromboangitis obliterans, in stasis, and in syphilis. Irrespective of its etiology, the symptoms depend upon the size and extent of the vessel affected and the degree of collateral circulation established. When the return circulation is grossly affected, swelling, coldness and pain in the extremity may develop and may lead to gangrene.

(2) *Thrombophlebitis Migrans*. This is a condition characterized by the occurrence of local areas of thrombophlebitis in various veins at various intervals. It may affect the superficial veins of the arms and legs or the larger visceral veins. When it affects the pulmonary vessels it may cause signs of infarction and hemorrhage. In the superficial veins it causes localized redness and

pain, and there may be fever. The etiology is obscure, it may occur with gout or syphilis, or it may be an early expression of Buerger's disease.

(3) **Suppurative Phlebitis** This results from infections of the walls of the veins by adjoining infected areas. This causes pain and throbbing over the affected vein, edema of the surrounding tissue, fever, chills and other toxic manifestations. Septic emboli may be carried by this infection to distant parts of the body.

### ***Venous Thrombosis***

Venous thrombosis may be caused by phlebitis or it may occur as a primary condition, often they occur together. When it is noninfectious and the affected vessel is not large the symptoms are mild. When a large vessel is affected the signs are those of venous obstruction. If the thrombus is suppurative signs of local and general infection are prominent. Thrombosis may occur in the lateral longitudinal and cavernous sinuses. These are usually due to some suppurative lesion in the skull and cause toxic symptoms and local signs. Thrombosis of the central lateral vein is occasionally seen in senile arteriosclerosis and may cause sudden blindness or glaucoma.

### ***Glomus Tumors***

Glomus tumors are small bluish red or purplish areas measuring a few mm in size. They are found, as a rule, upon the palmar surface of the hand and the plantar surface of the feet, more particularly at the finger tips under the nail beds, on the inner surface of the fingers and on the thenar and hypothenar regions. They are formed by convoluted blood vessels made up of peripheral arteriovenous anastomoses surrounded by muscle and epithelial cells. They may occur singly or in numbers and are ex-

ceedingly painful. The pain is of a burning character and is aggravated by exposure to heat.

### ***Telangiectasia (Angiomatosis)***

Telangiectasia is a localized enlargement of the smaller superficial vessels. These enlarged vessels may be found in the mucous membranes of the nose, mouth or elsewhere, they may also occur upon the face or other parts of the body. This may be hereditary familial (as described by Goldstein) or secondary caused by local injury or disease and congenital nonfamilial (Navoid). These lesions have a tendency to cause spontaneous hemorrhages.

### ***Peripheral Circulation Function Tests***

In determining the adequacy of the peripheral circulation various tests may be performed, these often indicate the functional capacity of the capillaries and arterioles. The commoner tests are (1) The histamine test, (2) surface temperature test, (3) the intradermal saline test, (4) capillary resistance test, (5) plantar ischemic test and (6) oscilometric readings.

(1) **The Histamine Test** 0.1 cc. of 1:1000 histamine is injected intradermally or by the scratch method (care must be taken not to draw blood by the scratch) in several sites upon the part to be tested. Normally a wheal begins to appear over the site of injection at the end of two and one half minutes and is completed at the end of ten minutes. The wheal is generally surrounded by an erythematous area flare.

A delayed reaction usually indicates impaired circulation. In severe cases of endoarteritis and in Buerger's disease a wheal may not form at the site of injection.

tion In vasospastic disease the histamine reaction may develop slowly The return of a histamine reaction where it was previously absent denotes recovery

(2) **Surface Temperature Test** The surface temperature of a part may be tested in various ways Ordinary palpation may reveal gross changes in the temperature of various parts the less obvious changes of temperature may be detected by the aid of various instruments of the dermocouple type such as the dermaterm the potentiometer etc By the aid of these instruments the surface temperature of various parts of the body may be determined when at rest following exertion following the application of heat or cold to two similar parts (as parts of both upper or lower extremities), and then the temperature of each is measured and the rapidity with which the temperature of each of the tested parts returns to normal is noted

The determination of temperature of a part after block anesthesia is an adequate differential point In total occlusion of the vessels of a part the temperature does not rise after nerve block spinal or general anesthesia but will rise to a considerable degree in the presence of vasospasm Also according to Gibson and Landis<sup>1</sup> in the normal individual when the upper extremities are immersed in warm water for one hour, the temperature will rise in the lower extremities (or when the lower extremities are immersed the temperature will rise in the upper extremities) In the presence of total occlusion such change does not occur but in vasospasm a normal reaction usually occurs

(3) **The Intradermal Saline Test** This consists of injecting 0.2 cc of nor

<sup>1</sup> Gibson, J. H. and Landis, E. M. Jour. Clin. Invest. 11:3 (Sept.) 1932.

mal saline solution intradermally at various levels of the part to be tested and noting the length of time required for the absorption of the wheal In the normal, the wheal may not be totally absorbed within one hour The disappearing time is considerably reduced in vascular disease and the time increases when the vessels improve

(4) **Capillary Resistance Test** This consists of creating a localized erythema and noting the number of capillary hemorrhages in that part To induce the hyperemia a tourniquet is applied tightly around the arm, a vacuum cup may be applied, or the skin over the bony prominence may be flapped An increased number of capillary hemorrhages denotes diminished capillary resistance. This is found in purpura, scurvy, vitamin C deficiency, various fevers, toxemia, nutritional defects and some of the blood dyscrasias

(5) **Plantar Ischemia Test (Buerger)** This is performed by having the reclining patient keep his feet elevated at an angle of 90 degrees and extend and flex his feet and toes at the rate of 40 to 60 times a minute for one minute In the presence of occlusive vascular disease, marked pallor appears upon the sole and toes of the affected foot Normally no color change is noted

(6) **Oscillometric Reading** The oscillometer or an ordinary sphygmomanometer may be employed to test for arterial pulsation in an extremity The cuff is applied around the calf of the leg and inflated to a point corresponding a little above the individual's diastolic pulse pressure The vigor and extent of the oscillations of the mercury column in a mercury instrument or the needle in an aneroid instrument will indicate the patency of the arteries in the leg Oscil

lations are absent in occlusive vascular diseases

**X ray of the Arteries** This may reveal the presence of calcareous infiltration. Arteriography has at present a limited field of usefulness. When harmless opaque solutions for intravascular use are found, arteriography and intravenous and intracardiac studies by x rays should be of greater use.

### **The Lymphatic System**

The lymphatic system consists of the thoracic duct, the right lymphatic duct, smaller lymphatic vessels (lymphatics), tissue spaces, lymph nodes or glands, and a large number of lymphoid cells in various sized groups distributed among all the organs and most of the tissues of the body. The function of the lymphatic system is not entirely known. The various lymphatic nodes appear to act as filters of the blood plasma, both abstracting from and adding substances to the tissue fluids. The lymphoid glands among their other functions are the source of the lymphocytes. The lymph is collected from the various spaces, tissues, and organs by the lymphatics which run parallel to the veins. The lymphatics like the veins en route to the heart continue to join larger vessels until the largest lymphatic vessels are formed. These are the thoracic duct and the right lymphatic duct, empty into the left and right large venous trunks which pour their contents into the right auricle and thence into the blood stream.

### **Diseases of the Thoracic Duct**

Obstruction of the thoracic duct by inflammation, tumors, or tuberculosis may cause chylous effusion in the pericardium, pleura, or peritoneum. The diag-

nosis of disease of the thoracic duct is not easily made.

### **Disease of the Lymphatic Vessels**

**Lymphangitis** Acute lymphangitis occurs as the result of acute local infections. It is characterized by the oc-



Fig. 14—Elephant as s  
(Courtesy of Dr. D. Budin)

currence of red streaks leading from the infected area towards the regional lymph nodes. The reddened streaks are tender to touch, and the lymph nodes are swollen and tender to touch.

**Lymphangiectasis** Dilatation of lymphatic vessels usually results from



obstruction of the larger lymph vessels by scar tissue carcinoma or other tumors or by infiltration of the vessel walls by inflammation tuberculosis or syphilis. Obstruction of the deeper vessels causes dilatation of a group of smaller lymphatics.



Fig 15—Bilateral elephantiasis (Courtesy of Dr E Robertson)

**Elephantiasis** This is a chronic diffuse swelling of one or both legs. The extremities are swollen, cool to the touch and do not pit on pressure or only slightly so. It is due to obstruction of the lymph channels draining the affected part. Elephantiasis may be acquired or congenital. The acquired form results from injury, inflammation, malignancy to the lymphatics or from invasion of the lymphatics by *Filaria sanguinis hominis* (See pp 752, 1076, 1080).

**Milroy's disease** or **Meigs's disease** This is a familial hereditary type of elephantiasis.

**Unilateral elephantiasis** This usually affects one lower extremity and often also the genitalia occasionally it develops idiopathically at or about puberty. It is more common in females than in males.

### Disease of the Lymph Nodes

**Lymphadenitis** This may be acute or chronic, generalized or localized.

**Acute lymphadenitis** This occurs as a result of local infection associated with lymphangitis. It is also associated with some of the acute infections such as rubella, measles, scarlet fever, diphtheria, mononucleosis (glandular fever), etc.

**Chronic lymphadenitis** This may occur in pyogenic infections, tuberculosis, syphilis, lymphadenomata, carcinoma, sarcoma, Hodgkin's disease, lymphatic leukemia, status thymicolymphaticus and in Mikulicz's disease.

**Mikulicz's disease** is a slowly developing bilateral painless enlargement of the lacrimal and the salivary glands, i.e., parotid, submaxillary and sublingual glands. The enlargement is due to hyperplasia of the lymphoid tissue, not to the secretory elements of the salivary gland. It is of unknown etiology and occurs only during adulthood.

**Lymphosarcoma** These may affect any of the lymphatic glands and metastasize by way of the lymphatics to distant organs. The most common primary lesion is in the cervical glands; other sites for primary lesions are the mediastinum, the tonsils, the nasopharynx, the retroperitoneal lymph glands and the lymphoid tissue of the intestine.

**Diagnosis** Since cervical adenitis may also be caused by tuberculosis, syphilis, lymphocytic leukemia, Hodg-

kin's disease, etc., a definite diagnosis can be made only after a biopsy

**Status Lymphaticus:** This is a condition in which there is hyperplasia of all the lymph glands of the body in-

cluding the thymus gland (For details see p 785)

**Hodgkin's Disease:** This at times is alluded to as lymphadenoma. (For details see p 569).

## SECTION 8

# Diseases of the Blood-Forming Organs Associated with Microscopic Changes in the Blood

## CHAPTER XIX

### Diseases of the Blood-Forming Organs Associated With Microscopic Changes in the Blood

The blood is the vital fluid of the body which holds in suspension the corpuscles and platelets that are formed by the blood making organs, and holds in solution the various nutritive elements prepared by the digestive tract. In the blood plasma are also dissolved various gases, glandular products, clot forming substances, organic and inorganic salts, end products of digestion and of metabolism as well as other substances.

Nearly all of the diseases that may affect an individual have a secondary effect upon the physiology, the chemistry, or the composition of the blood. In some diseases microorganisms or their products may circulate freely in the blood stream. Diseases of the blood-making organs are characterized by a change in the corpuscular elements of the circulating blood and may be classified as (a) Diseases in which the red corpuscles are affected, (b) diseases in which the white corpuscles are affected, and (c) diseases in which the platelets are affected. There are also diseases in which two or all three of these elements as well as some of the plasma constituents may be simultaneously affected (SEE Blood Examination Chapter, p 992)

#### Terminology

*Anemia* is a symptom manifested by a morbid state of the blood resulting from disease somewhere in the body. It is characterized by a deficiency in quantity (blood volume) or quality

(erythrocytes and hemoglobin), with or without change in the number and variety of leukocytes.

*Oligemia* is a reduction in the total quantity of blood.

*Oligocythemia* is a reduction in the number of red corpuscles.

*Oligochromemia* is a reduction in the amount of hemoglobin.

The erythrocytes or red blood corpuscles may undergo various changes in color, size, shape and in their ability to take stain.

The normal erythrocyte is spherical and biconcave, measuring from 7.2 to 7.8 microns in diameter, it presents a pale area in the center and stains a pale pink with eosin.

*Hypochromasia* or *anochromasia* denotes a deficiency in hemoglobin. It is characterized by the presence in the erythrocyte of a large, pale, central area which may be eccentric in position and somewhat distorted in shape. This is found in chlorosis, microcytic anemia and secondary anemia.

*Polychromatophilia*, or purple colored erythrocytes, when stained with eosin (because it readily takes the methylene-blue stains as well as the eosin), are found in all forms of severe anemia. This is an evidence of cellular immaturity.

*Basophilic degeneration* or *granular degeneration* or *stippling* of the red cells is characterized by the presence of many fine and coarse dots in the erythrocytes when stained with eosin methylene blue.

(Wright's stain) The granules may appear either uniformly or irregularly distributed throughout the cell, they may appear in several groups in the cell or form a ring around the cell circumference. This is found in severe primary and secondary anemia, especially that of lead poisoning, also in malaria and leukemia, but not in aplastic anemia.

**Embryonic Cells**—*Microcytes* are erythrocytes smaller than normal, they are found in hypochromic, hemolytic and other forms of anemia associated with oligochromemia.

*Macrocytes* are erythrocytes larger than normal, they are found in certain forms of anemia, *vis*, the hyperchromic anemias.

*Normoblasts* are nucleated red cells of normal size and normal staining power. They each have a small deeply staining nucleus which may be round, lobed or clover leaf shaped. Occasionally they may be broken up into two or three nuclei. These are seen in severe forms of anemia.

*Megaloblasts* are nucleated red cells larger than normal, each containing a large nucleus and polychromatophilic cytoplasm, they are found in some types of severe anemia, especially in pernicious anemia.

*Microblasts* are nucleated red cells smaller than normal, they are found in some forms of severe anemia.

*Poikilocytes* are deformed or irregularly shaped red cells, they may be oval, pear shaped, elliptical, club shaped or any other form, they are found in the blood of severe types of anemia. *Poikilocytosis* occurs in conjunction with anisocytosis (variation in size).

*Reticulocytes* are very young or immature red corpuscles containing a coarse network of granular fibrils or

filaments. Their presence in the blood stream is an indication of blood regeneration. Normally in adults they are found to be less than 1 per cent, and in young infants from 2 to 4 per cent. In some of the blood diseases, *i.e.*, pernicious anemia, hemolytic jaundice, etc., when blood regeneration is active, a high percentage of reticulated red blood corpuscles appear in the blood stream. Reticulocytes, when present in the blood are discovered only by the "vital staining" method and are not found by the ordinary dry slide staining method.

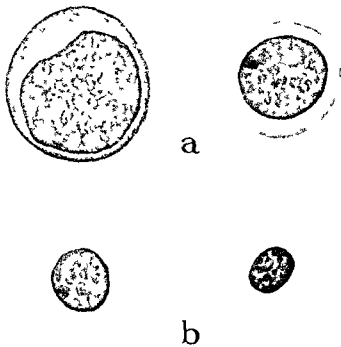
Embryonic red cells are found in all types of severe anemia where the destruction of blood cells is faster than their manufacture. The blood making organs, in order to meet the demand for more cells than they can supply, throw into the circulation a number of unfinished (embryonic) erythrocytes.

### The Blood Dyscrasias

The diagnosis of the various blood diseases associated with changes in the number and type of the red and white cells, the hemoglobin percentage and the number of platelets is usually made by laboratory studies of the freshly drawn blood. Many of these diseases, in addition to characteristic hemograms, also show definite physical signs and clinical symptoms.

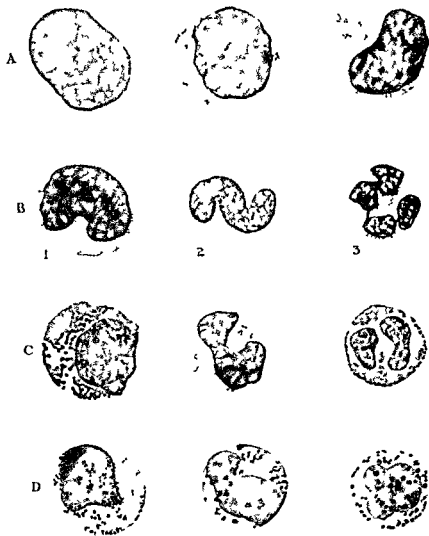
Symptoms such as weakness, tingling of the extremities, headache, digestive disturbances, glossitis, certain nervous manifestations and cardiac palpitation are usually found in most of the blood dyscrasias.

Physical signs such as pallor, either of a lemon yellow tint, an ashen gray or a bloodless hue, are found in various forms of anemia. Subcutaneous and submucous membrane hemorrhages are



STAGES IN FORMATION OF RED BLOOD CELLS

a Megaloblasts b Older megaloblasts with condensation of nuclei c Normal erythrocytes (Hull Wright & Eyles Medical Nursing F. A. Davis Co. Philadelphia Pa.)



#### STAGES OF MATURATION OF LEUKOCYTES

A Lymphocytes B Polymorphonuclear leukocytes Metamyelocyte 1  
 Juvenile 2 Stab cell 3 Segmented cell C Eosinophil leukocyte D Basophil leukocyte  
 (Hull Wright & Eyles Medical Nursing F A Davis Co Philadelphia Pa)

found in severe anemias, leukemia and purpura. Enlarged lymph glands, a large spleen and liver are found in the leukemias, in a few of the anemias and in Hodgkin's disease. A functional heart murmur may result from impoverished blood, and occasionally the presence of an organic murmur may give a clue to the cause of anemia.

### The Anemias

Some of the anemias are primary or idiopathic, others are secondary.

A *primary anemia* is one in which no etiologic factors are discoverable. Pernicious anemia is considered a primary hyperchromic macrocytic anemia, and chlorosis is considered as a primary hypochromic microcytic anemia.

*Secondary anemias* are so called when a definite etiology is discoverable and the anemia is a development as a consequence of, or in the course of a definite pathologic entity, such as carcinoma, bacterial or parasitic invasion and defective nutrition. Secondary anemia is usually accompanied by a considerable weight loss. In the primary anemias, the loss of weight is not marked.

The anemias may be classified as Macrocytic hyperchromic anemia, microcytic hypochromic anemia, hemorrhagic anemia, aplastic anemia, hemolytic anemia, etc.

### Macrocytic Hyperchromic Anemia

Macrocytic hyperchromic anemia is characterized by a low total red cell count in which are found many megalocytes and macrocytes containing a high hemoglobin content. In severe cases there may be various types of red cells that indicate aplasia or hemolysis often both. The color index is usually above one. The gastrointestinal findings gen-

erally associated with this type of anemia are achylia gastrica or a very low hydrochloric acid content, various signs of indigestion, such as epigastric distress, belching, flatulency, diarrhea or constipation in most cases, and, in a fairly large number of cases, glossitis or burning of the tongue. In some cases there may be associated definite pathologic lesions in the stomach, bowel, liver or pancreas, while in others there may be a total absence of any organic lesions in the digestive tract.

The explanation of the occurrence of macrocytic hyperchromic anemia is based on the theory of incomplete maturation of the erythrocytes. In health the formation of an adequate number of red corpuscles is attributed to the presence of a hematinic maturing principle in the blood stream. This principle, according to Castle and his associates, is stored in the liver. It is formed by a combination of the 'intrinsic factor' found in normal gastric juice which is secreted by the gastric mucosa or by the pyloric and Brunner's glands, and an 'extrinsic principle' which is taken into the gastrointestinal tract with food. A deficiency of the hematinic maturing principle in the blood stream for the use of the bone marrow, will prevent the red corpuscles from maturing beyond the megaloblastic stage thereby causing this type of anemia. The red bone marrow is increased in quantity and is loaded with megaloblasts which contain large amounts of hemoglobin. A comparatively small number of these megaloblasts progress beyond this stage and develop into macrocytes (large hyperchromic erythrocytes). The deficiency of the hematinic principle may be brought about in six or more ways.



1 Defective secretion of intrinsic factor due to disease or atrophy of the glands that secrete this principle

2 Absence or defective intake of the extrinsic factor

3 Defective absorption from the intestinal tract of the intrinsic or the extrinsic factors, though both may exist in sufficient quantities

4 Defective storage of the hematinic principle in the liver and other organs

5 Failure of the formation of a hematinic principle because of faulty interaction between the intrinsic and extrinsic principles

6 Failure of the bone marrow or other factors concerned with the production and maturation of the red corpuscles to utilize the hematinic principle

**Primary Pernicious Anemia** (Addison Biermer Anemia) This is a hyperchromic macrocytic type of anemia of unknown etiology, and is characterized by a definite symptomatology and characteristic blood findings

Addison, in 1855, described this disease as follows

It makes its approach in so slow and insidious a manner that the patient can hardly fix a date to the earliest feeling of that languor which is shortly to become so extreme. The countenance gets pale, the whites of the eyes become pearly, the general frame flabby rather than wasted, the pulse perhaps large but remarkably soft and compressible and occasionally with a slight jerk, especially under the slightest excitement. There is an increasing indisposition to exertion with an uncomfortable feeling of faintness or breathlessness in attempting it, the heart is readily made to palpitate, the whole surface of the body presents a blanched, smooth and waxy appearance, the lips, gums and tongue seem bloodless, the flabbiness of the solids increases, the appetite fails, extreme languor and faintness supervene, breathlessness and palpitations are produced by the most trifling exertion or emotion, some slight edema is probably perceived about the ankles, the debility becomes

extreme—the patient can no longer rise from bed, the mind occasionally wanders, he falls into a prostrate and half torpid state, and at length expires, nevertheless, to the very last, and after a sickness of several months' duration, the bulkiness of the general frame and the amount of obesity often present a most striking contrast to the failure and exhaustion observable in every other respect.

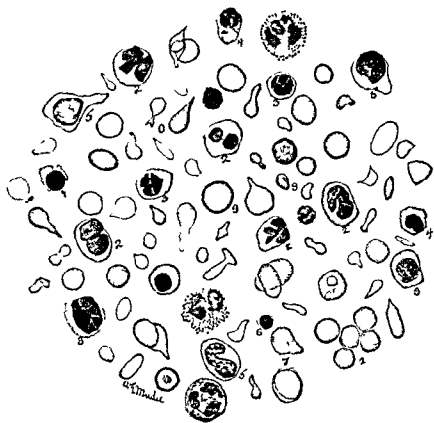
Among the symptoms in this disease, aside from progressive anemia and retention of subcutaneous fat, are achylia gastrica, glossitis, or pain in the tongue, general weakness, dyspnea, headache and spinal cord symptoms.

**Physical Signs. Inspection.** The patient is usually well nourished, has a waxy lemon yellow appearance, the mucous membranes are pale, the conjunctivae pale, bluish and icteroid, the face puffy, the ankles somewhat swollen, the tongue pale and smooth, resembling the tongue of a fowl.

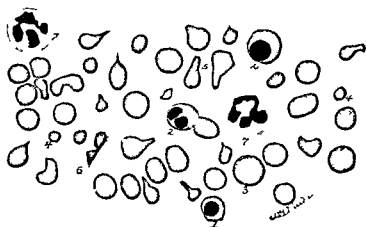
**On palpation,** the skin has a soft nonelastic feel, the apex beat is barely palpable, the spleen, usually enlarged. **Percussion** shows no definite signs. **Auscultation** may reveal a hemic murmur over the body of the heart.

**Other Signs.** In the early stages, the patellar reflex may be exaggerated and as the disease progresses this reflex disappears. The gastric secretion presents an absence of free hydrochloric acid, the urine is of low specific gravity, dark in color and contains urobilin.

**Blood examination** will reveal a great reduction in the number of red corpuscles, usually less than two million, a large number of which are macrocytes, in severe cases there are poikilocytes, normoblasts and megaloblasts. The color index is comparatively high, always above one. The blood platelet count is seldom over 100,000. Leukopenia is the rule. The polymorphonuclear cells are



VARIOUS FORMS OF ERYTHROCYTES  
(Anders and Boston, W B Saunders Co)



BLOOD OF PERNICIOUS ANEMIA  
(Anders and Boston W B Saunders Co)

reduced. The lymphocytes are increased in number as are also the myelocytes. The plasma is reduced in quantity. An indirect Van den Bergh reaction is above 0.75. The reticulocytes are usually absent. When treated with adequate doses of liver or vitamin B<sub>12</sub> or during a remission the reticulocytes appear in large numbers in the blood stream.

While remissions in the severity of the blood picture will occur when treated with liver, the achylia gastrica and the neurologic changes are not markedly improved by treatment. I like to think of pernicious anemia as a disease of unknown etiology which equally affects the three important systems of the body, namely, the blood making organs, the digestive system and the nervous system. In some patients the digestive system is the first to be affected. Achlorhydria may develop months or years before the other systems show evidence of disease. In others, the first system to be affected is the nervous system, and neurologic manifestations may precede the defects shown by the other systems by months or years, while in still others, the anemia is the first sign to be noticed. Occasionally all three systems are simultaneously affected.

**Tropical Megalocytic Anemia.** This is probably a deficiency anemia. It occurs in the tropics, often among the natives of India. It is characterized by weakness, pallor, digestive disturbance, edema of the ankles, puffiness of the face, low blood pressure, hemic murmurs and occasionally by glossitis. The blood picture reveals a great reduction in red cells and a comparative increase in the hemoglobin percentage. Macrocytosis and anisocytosis are marked. There may be a slight leukocytosis or a normal count. The platelets are reduced, the

indirect Van den Bergh reaction is normal (below 0.75), hypochlorhydria or a normal acidity may be present, seldom an achylia. This condition should be differentiated from pernicious anemia which it closely resembles. The absence of poikilocytosis, polychromasia and the normal indirect Van den Bergh (below 0.75), the presence of gastric acidity and the absence of urobilinogen are in favor of tropical megalocytic anemia.

**Secondary Hyperchromic Macrocytic Anemia:** This may occur in tropical sprue, idiopathic steatorrhea, and infestations with *diphyllobothrium*, in vitamin B deficiency and exposures to large doses of x rays or radium. It may also be found at times in malignancy of the stomach or colon, in regional ileitis, or it may follow gastrectomy or other operations upon the gastrointestinal tract. Occasionally it may be found in myxedema, malarial cachexia, after prolonged hemorrhage, during pregnancy and in early childhood. In these cases, in addition to the secondary anemia of the hyperchromic macrocytic type showing a high color index, there are found either an achlorhydria or a hypochlorhydria, and various gastrointestinal disorders, and nervous manifestations in association with the signs and symptoms of the primary lesions.

The macrocytic hyperchromic anemia often responds to liver therapy, particularly so when the etiologic factor is removable.

### *Microcytic Hypochromic Anemia*

Microcytic hypochromic anemia is characterized by a reduction of the hemoglobin content within the red corpuscles. The red corpuscles are usually reduced in number and often in size. The number of red corpuscles in this type of anemia

seldom if ever falls to the very low level reached by cases of macrocytic anemia. The red cell development is arrested at the level of the erythroblastic stage and the cells are released into the blood stream as erythrocytes only when sufficient iron and possibly other substances are available for the formation of an adequate amount of hemoglobin to fill them.

This type of anemia may be considered as an iron deficiency anemia and may be produced (1) By a lack of iron in the food, (2) by the inability of the digestive tract to separate the iron from iron containing food (3) by the inability of the digestive tract to transmit its ingested iron to the blood stream and (4) by the inability of the blood making organs to utilize iron. The diseases associated only with hypochromic anemia are

**Chlorosis (Green Sickness)** This is a primary microcytic hypochromic type of anemia of unknown etiology found in young women. It is characterized by oligochromemia.

**Symptoms and Diagnosis** The patient is usually fat. The skin has a pale greenish tinge. The mucous membrane is pale. In some instances the cheeks may have a reddish flush particularly so on exertion or during emotion (*Chlorosis rubra*). Dyspnea and palpitation are well marked and there is a tendency toward syncope and general weakness, the face and ankles are puffed and a hemic murmur may be heard at the apex or base.

**Blood Examination** The red corpuscles are not greatly reduced in number, the greatest reduction however is found in the percentage of hemoglobin. A red cell count of four million with only 40 per cent of hemoglobin is not

uncommon. In severe cases nucleated as well as irregular shaped red corpuscles may be found in the blood. The leukocytes may be slightly increased in number. The lymphocytes are normal and the blood plates are usually increased. The reticulocytes are within normal limits. Gastric disturbance such as indigestion, constipation and hypochlorhydria are accompanying signs.

**Idiopathic Hypochromic Microcytic Anemia** (simple achlorhydric anemia) This is a chronic type of anemia found chiefly in women of the menopausal age.

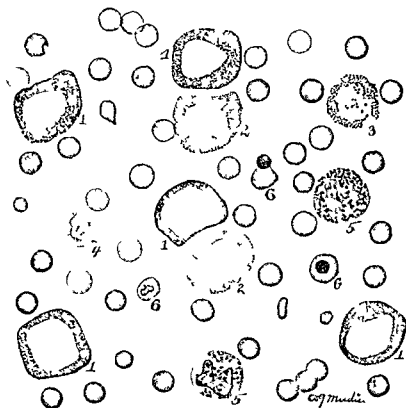
**Symptoms and Physical Signs** There is easy fatigability, weakness, nervousness, dyspnea, cardiac palpitation and digestive disturbances. Soreness of the tongue is a frequent complaint and is often associated with a geographic tongue. The patients are usually thin and have a muddy yellowish or grayish complexion. The sclerae are bluish white, the hair is thin, lusterless and there is early graying. The fingernails are brittle, break easily and are often concave. The spleen is nearly always enlarged. Edema of the feet and often of other parts of the body occurs in severe cases.

**Blood Examination** The erythrocytes may range in number from 4 000 000 to 2 000 000 or lower; there is often marked microcytosis with hypochromia. The color index may range from 0.7 to 0.4. Anisocytosis and poikilocytosis occur in severe cases. Free hydrochloric acid is absent in most cases. Treatment with adequate doses of iron and feeding meat and green vegetables usually causes marked improvement of the anemia.

**Plummer Vinson Syndrome** This condition is associated in the majority of cases with hypochromic microcytic



BLOOD OF CHLOROSIS  
(Anders and Boston, W B Saunders Co)



BLOOD OF MYELOGENIC LEUKEMIA  
(Anders and Boston W B Saunders Co)

of blood lost. The anemia is generally of the hypochromic type so that the hemoglobin percentage is low, the number of red cells may vary from 4 000 000 in mild cases to 2 000 000 or less in severe cases, and a large number of these are microcytes.

### *Aplastic Anemia*

Aplastic anemia is a severe progressive anemia of unknown origin characterized by a degeneration of the bone marrow (which often appears yellow and fatty) and a failure of blood formation. It may be primary or secondary, acute or chronic.

**Acute Aplastic Anemia.** This is a primary, rapidly fatal disease and is characterized by rapid progressive anemia, marked tendency to hemorrhages into the skin and mucous membranes, and paroxysms of fever.

**Symptoms and Diagnosis.** The skin is yellowish; the spleen is not enlarged; there is a marked tendency to hemorrhages into the skin and mucous membranes. The blood shows extreme oligocythemia but shows no embryonic cells. The erythrocyte count may be as low as 1 000 000 or lower. Nucleated red cells are practically absent as are also microcytes, poikilocytes, and reticulated erythrocytes. The platelets are reduced in number and leukopenia is marked, often as low as 2000. The polymorphonuclear cells are greatly decreased in number while the lymphocytes are relatively or actually increased (from 80 to 90 per cent). This disease is caused by a failure of the blood-making organs to manufacture red corpuscles.

**Chronic Aplastic Anemia.** This may be primary or may develop during the course of severe infections, systemic diseases, and in pernicious anemia, when

the constant demand upon the blood-making organs has so exhausted them as to produce an aplasia. The clinical picture of this form is slowly progressive but eventually resembles the acute type.

**Secondary Aplastic Anemia.** Either Acute or Chronic. This may occasionally be associated with chronic sepsis, severe forms of nephritis, and may also be caused by poisoning with arsphenamine, benzol, arseniobenzol, dinitrophenol, mercury, silver, and gold, and by overexposure to x-rays and particularly to radium.

The *symptomatology* of the secondary form is similar to the primary form.

The *blood* shows severe anemia, absence of embryonic cells, marked leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia. The bleeding time is prolonged. Coagulation time is normal. Clot retraction is poor. Hemorrhages may occur from the mucous and serous membranes, subcutaneously, and from the internal organs. Aplastic anemia is to be differentiated from pernicious anemia, acute leukemia, purpura, and agranulocytic angina.

### *Hemolytic Anemia (Hyperplastic Anemia, Hemolytic Icterus)*

This type of anemia is characterized by rapid destruction of the red corpuscles and in order to keep the corpuscular elements in the blood as nearly normal as possible, the bone marrow hypertrophies and sends out embryonic cells (immature red cells) so that normoblasts, microcytes, macrocytes, megalocytes, poikilocytes, and a large number of reticulocytes are found in the circulating blood. The hemoglobin percentage is low in most cases, though a high hemoglobin content may occur in some types. These blood findings may occur in per-



nicious anemia and are also encountered in persons suffering from prolonged hemorrhages such as epistaxis bleeding hemorrhoids and bleeding gastric ulcers that continue to ooze blood over an extended period of time

Hemolytic anemia may also result from the ingestion of certain gases or organic or inorganic poisons various drugs and from bacterial invasions Hemolytic anemia often occurs idiopathically The excessive red cell destruction or hemolysis is characterized by the presence of hemolysins in the blood a positive indirect Van den Bergh reaction and by the presence of urobilin and urobilinogen in the urine and feces Jaundice may occur in varying degrees of severity The conjunctivae are stained less deeply than is the skin and the feces are dark brown which contrasts with the clay colored stools of obstructive jaundice

Hemolytic anemia may be congenital or acquired Hemolytic anemia differs from aplastic anemia in that in hemolytic anemia there is an abnormally rapid destruction of blood cells so that embryonic cells enter the blood stream in large numbers and in all stages of development and the bone marrow hypertrophies because of excessive function In aplastic anemia there is primarily an inability of the bone marrow to form cells therefore there are no embryonic cells in the blood stream to replace destroyed cells All the red cells in the blood are of the mature type

**Acute Hemolytic Anemia** (acute hemolytic anemia of Lederer) The onset is sudden with high fever headache sore throat hematuria diarrhea vomiting and abdominal pain and occasional epistaxis It may occur in adolescents and young adults The individual is pale and may show various degrees of jaun-

dice (SEE p 603) In severe cases there may be hemorrhages from the mucous membranes and in the skin The liver and spleen are moderately enlarged

The blood shows a red cell count between 1 000 000 to 1 500 000 in which are found numerous microcytes macrocytes myeloblasts myelocytes and nucleated red cells The reticulocyte count is high and may reach 50 per cent or higher The hemoglobin percentage may vary from 0.5 to 1.5 per cent or it may be 1 The Van den Bergh reaction is positive indirect (above 0.75 units)

**Subacute and Chronic Hemolytic Anemia** This may occur in conjunction with severe debilitating diseases in children or adults The blood may show macrocytes megaloblasts and a high color index Urobilin in the urine is increased and the Van den Bergh indirect is above 0.75

**Various Other Types of Hemolytic Anemia** **Acholic Jaundice** (hemolytic icterus familial hemolytic jaundice with splenomegaly hemolytic icteroid anemia) This is a chronic congenital or acquired familial blood dyscrasia manifesting increased blood destruction

*Physical examination* reveals a generalized jaundice of the skin and mucous membranes The spleen is usually greatly enlarged The characteristic *blood findings* are as follows Red corpuscles from 1 500 000 to 3 500 000 exhibiting increased fragility and variation in the size of the cells (anisocytosis) polychromasia nucleated red cells with a preponderance of microcytes pronounced reticulocytosis may be discovered by the vital staining method the hemoglobin varies from 0.6 to 0.9 per cent the leukocyte count may be normal or slightly increased The feces are very dark and the urine is bile stained

Splenectomy is often a satisfactory form of treatment

**Conditions Causing Hemolytic Anemia** Hemolytic anemia may also occur in the following conditions

**Acute and Chronic Malaria** The anemia is usually of the hypochromic type. The red cells show anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, polychromasia and an increase in the reticulocytes. Moderate leukocytosis or leukopenia may be present with an increase in the monocytes. The icterus index may range from 15 to 30.

**Oroya Fever** (*Bartonella bacilliformis* infection, Peruvian wart). This is an acute fever indigenous to South American mountainous regions. The organisms invade the red corpuscles and the endothelial cells of the lymph nodes. The anemia is severe and is megalocytic in type. The red cell count may be as low as 1 000 000. The leukocytes may vary from 15 000 to 20 000; the majority are immature polymorphonuclears. The Van den Bergh is indirect positive. The icterus index may be quite high.

***Clostridium Aerogenes* Capsulatus** (Welch's gas bacillus) Infection. The anemia is ushered in rapidly, often within a few hours. All types of immature cells and cells in various stages of destruction are found in the peripheral blood. Leukocytosis may be as high as 50 000. In addition to the anemia there are various degrees of jaundice.

**Other severe infections** such as typhoid, typhus, syphilis, etc., and also suppurations may occasionally be complicated by this type of anemia.

**Chemical poisons** such as lead, arsenic and its compounds, arsenic acid, hydrogen cyanide, hydrazine, pyridine, sulfamide, sulfapyridine, amidopyrine, cinchophen, potassium chlorate, the nitrates, methylchloride and others of that group

may produce various stages and degrees of hemolytic anemia. In these cases, in addition to the anemia and abnormal red cells, there are also various degrees of hemoglobinuria, jaundice and a positive indirect Van den Bergh reaction.

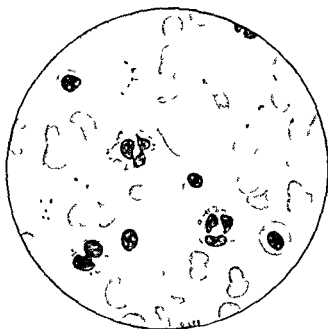
**Sickle Cell Anemia** Sickle cell anemia is classified as a hemolytic anemia of unknown origin having a familial tendency. It occurs chiefly in full-blooded negroes, mulattoes or in those of milder dilutions of negro blood. Several cases were also reported in Caucasians. Two stages are recognized:

1. The *latent stage* in which there are few if any constitutional symptoms and where a blood examination alone will reveal the characteristic picture.

2. The *active stage* which is characterized by extreme weakness, dyspnea, abdominal pain with nausea and vomiting, pain in the muscles and joints and ulcers on the legs.

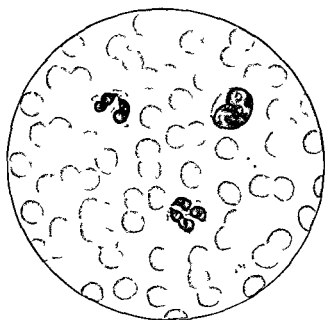
**Physical Signs** The physical examination will reveal a poorly nourished and poorly developed anemic negro with a greenish yellow discoloration of the sclerae, enlarged lymph glands, large liver, small or impalpable spleen. Though at times it may be enlarged and ulcerations of the legs often accompanied by edema of the ankles. The heart, lungs, kidneys and digestive tract show the usual signs of grave anemia.

**The Blood Picture** reveals a great decrease in the red corpuscles and hemoglobin and the presence of poikilocytosis, polychromasia, anisocytosis and the characteristic crescent-shaped red corpuscles, the sickle cells. The reticulocytes are increased in number during the regenerative periods. Leukocytosis from 15 000 to 25 000 is common and myelocytes are present. The blood serum is often of a decided yellow color.



REPRESENTATIVE SMEAR FROM PATIENT WITH SICKLE CELL ANEMIA

Note sickling of red blood cells and presence of nucleated erythrocytes (Hull, Wright & Elys 'Medical Nursing' I A Davis Co Philadelphia Pa)



NORMAL SMEAR SHOWING TWO POLYMORPHONUCLEAR LEUKOCYTES ONE LYMPHOCYTE  
BLOOD PLATELETS AND ERYTHROCYTES  
(Hull Wright & Gys Medical Nursing F A Davis Co Philadelphia Pa)

**Paroxysmal Hemoglobinuria** This condition is ushered in with a chill and rise in temperature often following exposure to cold. There may be diarrhea, vomiting, and pain in the back and in the extremities. The skin becomes somewhat jaundiced. The urine is dark and contains hemoglobin and methemoglobin. The blood shows marked anemia of the hypochromic type with immature cells and increased reticulocytes. Many of these patients show positive Wassermann and Kahn reaction.

**Banti's Disease** (*Banti's syndrome*, hepatolienal fibrosis, hepatosplenic cirrhosis) This is a disease of unknown etiology occurring in young adults in whom there is enlargement of the spleen and the liver, distention of the venous system, hematemesis, melena and in late stages ascites.

**The Blood Picture** is that of a severe hypochromic anemia. The red cell count may vary from 3,500,000 to 2,500,000 and the hemoglobin may be about 50 per cent. Reticulocytes may be absent except soon after a hemorrhage when a moderate reticulocytosis may be found. Leukopenia with a low polymorphonuclear count is the rule, occasionally, particularly after hemorrhage there may be a leukocytosis. The platelets are somewhat reduced in number. The Van den Bergh reaction may show an increased indirect in the early stages and a positive direct in late stages (See pp 612 and 623).

**Cooley's Anemia** (*Erythroblastic anemia*, *Thalassaemia Mediterranea*, *fœtal*) This is a disease that becomes manifested during infancy. It is characterized by a yellowish pallor, mongoloid facies, thickening of the cranial and malar bones and great enlargement of

the spleen with some enlargement of the lymph nodes and of the liver.

**The Blood Picture** shows a severe anemia of the leukoerythroblastic type. The red cell count may be below 2,000,000 per cmm and there are large numbers of nucleated red cells (erythroblasts), many macrocytes and microcytes and anisocytosis. The hemoglobin may vary from 30 to 10 per cent.

**Leukoerythroblastic Anemia** (*myelopathic anemia*, *osteosclerotic anemia*) In this type there are found primary erythroblasts, megaloblasts, normoblasts and hemocytoblasts. There are also present in the blood stream immature white cells of the myeloid type.

This type of anemia is found in carcinomatosis affecting bone, myelosis, marble bone disease and Cooley's erythroblastic anemia. In these diseases the presence of the various immature red cells and the scarcity of hemoglobin indicate aplasia of the blood forming organs. In addition to the aplastic blood picture, there are various abnormalities of the osseous structures.

**Erythroblastosis Fetalis** This is a congenital erythroblastic anemia occurring in infancy and is associated chiefly with (a) *Icterus gravis neonatorum*, (b) *congenital anemia of the newborn* and (c) *congenital hydrops fetalis*. The factors common to these is a severe anemia having a red cell count of 1,000,000 or less with a large number of nucleated red cells and widespread extramedullary erythropoiesis.

**Icterus Gravis Neonatorum** This is a congenital severe anemia of the hyperchromic type showing a large number of immature red cells and a pronounced reticulocytosis, there is marked

jaundice fragility of the long bones and a tendency to hemorrhage (SEE p 604)

**Congenital Anemia of the New-born** This presents a severe anemia and a large liver and spleen, jaundice may or may not be present. The anemia is of the hyperchromic type, reticulocytosis is present in the early stages and disappears later.

**Congenital Hydrops Fetalis** This shows an anemia of a severe hypochromic type in which there is present immature red and white cells, the nucleated red cells occur in large numbers. In addition to the anemia there is a generalized anasarca with effusions in the serous sacs and a large liver and heart.

**Syphilis Hemorrhagica Neonatorum** This occurs in congenital syphilis. Several days after birth extensive subcutaneous bleeding from the mucous membranes and from the navel are apparent. It is accompanied by deep jaundice.

**Morbus Maculosus Neonatorum** Fatal bleeding may occur from the various viscera and mucous surfaces. It is accompanied by a rise in temperature and hematogenous jaundice. Septic infections, trauma during birth and eclampsia in the mother are among the conditions that may cause fatal hemorrhages in the newborn.

without any apparent cause. A tight tourniquet applied around an extremity will in 10 or 15 minutes produce subcutaneous punctate hemorrhages. The application of dry heat to the skin or the tapping of a bony surface with a percussion hammer may produce ecchymotic areas.

**Blood Picture** The characteristic blood findings are a great reduction in the blood platelets associated with a variation in their size. The bleeding time is increased. Splenic enlargement is often present.

**Von Jaksch's Anemia** (anemia pseudoleukemia infantum) This designates a type of blood impoverishment classifiable as secondary anemia. It occurs chiefly in young infants of rachitic tendencies.

**Physical Examination** This reveals a pale, somewhat flabby, restless child having a large abdomen and palpable lymph glands. The liver is enlarged, smooth and not very firm to touch. Its edge is well rounded. The spleen of course becomes enormously enlarged. As a rule the spleen has twice the enlargement of the liver.

## Blood Disease Presenting an Increase in the Number of Red Corpuscles

### *Polycythemia Vera*

#### *(Erythremia, Vaquez Osler Disease)*

Polycythemia vera is a chronic blood disease characterized by an increase in the number of red corpuscles a reddish purplish discoloration of the skin and splenic enlargement

**Symptoms and Diagnosis** Vertigo headache buzzing in the ears fatigue blurring of vision paresthesia mental apprehension and gastrointestinal disturbances are symptoms of this disease

**Physical Signs** The skin particularly of the face neck upper chest and hands presents a reddish cyanosis the conjunctivae are injected and the retinal vessels are distended often causing hemorrhage Venous enlargement is observed upon the cheeks nose and other parts of the body Hemorrhages in the lungs brain kidney and epistaxis are common The spleen is enlarged and firm to the touch

**The Blood Picture** The volume is increased Erythrocytes may be 7 million to 15 million hemoglobin 110 per cent or higher though the color index is comparatively low Leukocytes are usually of normal count Bleeding and clotting time are about normal

Erythremia may occur in conditions other than polycythemia vera as a result of blood concentration It is found in congenital heart disease of the right ventricular shunt variety (pulmonary stenosis patulous foramen ovale) in Ayerza's disease and in dehydration due to diarrhea excessive sweating and vomiting It also occurs in chronic emphysema in people living at high altitude and in chronic cyanosis The absence of a large spleen and large retinal vessels and the

presence of such signs as will identify the underlying cause of the cyanosis and polycythemia are differential features to be considered in the diagnosis

## Blood Diseases in Which the Plasma and Platelets are Chiefly Affected

### *Purpura*

Purpura is a condition characterized by hemorrhages into the skin and mucous membrane and is probably caused by some alteration in the clot forming substances in the blood It may be primary or secondary

**Primary Purpura** *Simple purpura* is recognized by the occurrence of purpuric spots chiefly in the lower extremities

***Peliosis Rheumatica*** (arthritic purpura Schoenlein's disease) Purpuric spots are distributed over the extremities or trunk and are associated with tenderness swelling and pain of several joints accompanied by fever

***Henoch's Purpura*** (visceral purpura) In this form of purpura skin lesions such as erythema multiforme purpuric spots urticaria and angioneurotic edema occur in association with extreme intestinal disturbances such as colicky pain vomiting diarrhea and melena Enlargement of the spleen is usually present and acute nephritis is a frequent complication

***Idiopathic Thrombocytopenic Purpura*** (*purpura hemorrhagica* [morbus maculosus of Werlhof]) This form is characterized by bleeding from the mucous membranes of the nose mouth stomach bowels kidney bladder and uterus Cutaneous hemorrhages either large or small and hemorrhages in the brain occur frequently Bruising of the skin or breaking it with a needle or any

sharp instrument is likely to produce large ecchymotic areas. The coagulation time is as a rule somewhat prolonged. The bleeding time is greatly prolonged. Blood platelets are markedly reduced, often being below 10,000. Secondary anemia usually manifests itself chiefly because of the hemorrhages. The spleen

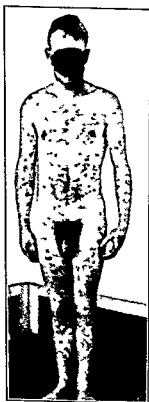


Fig 1—Purpura

is palpable. This disease is often fatal because of severe loss of blood or cerebral hemorrhage, particularly so in children.

**Chronic Purpura.** This is a condition in which a patient has frequent outbreaks of purpura over a period of many years.

**Secondary Purpura.** Secondary or symptomatic purpura may occur as a result of

1 Infectious diseases, such as typhus fever, cerebrospinal fever, smallpox, measles, scarlet fever, staphylococcus and streptococcus infections.

2 Cachectic states, such as scurvy, pernicious anemia, leukemia and chronic nephritis.

3 Intoxicants, poisoning by iodides, salicylate, arsenic, copaiba, benzol and the various coal tar products, such as antipyrine, acetanilid, etc.

4 Disease of the liver, phosphorus poisoning, acute yellow atrophy and acidosis.

5 Senility, in the aged purpuric spots often occur around the ankles and the dorsum of the hand and wrist.

6 Nervous disorders (myelopathic purpura) is often seen in locomotor ataxia, transverse myelitis and occasionally in severe neuralgia.

7 Mechanical interference caused by venous stasis due to ligatures or produced by any condition that will cause bruising. Paroxysms of whooping cough, epilepsy and at times convulsions because of severe muscle strain may cause ecchymosis.

### *Symptomatology and Diagnosis*

The diagnosis of purpura is based upon the appearance of subcutaneous hemorrhages which have a tendency to occur in successive crops and are unaltered by pressure. The blood findings resemble those of secondary anemia and are not of diagnostic importance. The blood platelets are reduced as are also the clot forming elements in the plasma.

### *Hemophilia*

Hemophilia (bleeder's disease) is a hereditary blood disease transmitted by the females who are themselves not affected. It occurs nearly always in the male. The grandfather if a sufferer from



hemophilia will transmit the disease by or through his daughter to his grandson. The male members of the family are only the hosts of the disease, while the females are the transmitters. It is characterized by excessive and interminable bleeding as a result of an insignificant wound. At times it is accompanied by swelling and inflammation of the joints which are chiefly caused by extravasation of blood into the synovial membranes. This disease is said to be caused by (1) An insufficiency of thrombokinase (2) a hypothetical substance which inhibits coagulation (3) an alteration in the properties of the circulating prothrombin and (4) a deficiency in the amount of prothrombin in the blood. The platelets are not decreased. Bleeding time is normal but the coagulation time is greatly prolonged. The blood picture is that of the hypochromic type of anemia seen after acute hemorrhage.

#### **Hereditary Pseudohemophilia**

This may occur in both sexes. Hemorrhages may occur during infancy and childhood; this tendency may cease with advancing age. The bleeding is usually from mucous membranes or it may follow an injury to any part. The bleeding time is said to be prolonged while the clotting time is normal, a condition the reverse of hemophilia.

#### **Hereditary Hemorrhagic Telangiectases**

Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectases is a congenital condition in which dilated vessels about the face, neck, chest and in the nose, gums and gastrointestinal tract may rupture spontaneously and cause prolonged bleeding. The anemia in this condition is caused by hemorrhage; it is usually of the hypochromic type, its severity depending upon the amount of blood lost.

#### **Vitamin K Deficiency**

Hemorrhagic diathesis in liver disease and in the newborn is generally due to prothrombin deficiency. The administration of vitamin K in these cases controls or prevents hemorrhage by increasing the serum prothrombin (SEE p 911).

#### **Scurvy**

Scurvy is a deficiency disease due chiefly to a lack of vitamin C. The normal vitamin C content of the blood plasma ranges from 2.0 to 0.70 mg per cent. A vitamin C content below 0.20 mg per cent will cause signs of scurvy. The disease is brought about by a diet poor in green vegetables and fresh fruits (particularly citrus fruits). When it occurs in infants it is known as *Barlow's disease*.

**Symptoms and Physical Signs.** In adults there is weakness and fleeting pains in the extremities, particularly in the legs. The complexion is sallow and muddy; there is extreme tenderness over the long bones, particularly the femurs which are swollen but are neither red nor hot. The joints are seldom affected. The gums are spongy, swollen and bleed easily, and there are petechiae and ecchymotic spots over the lower extremities, particularly at the site of the hair follicles. The prominence of the signs and symptoms depends upon the degree of vitamin C deficiency due either to insufficient intake or to poor absorptive power (SEE p 906).

**The Blood Picture.** The blood shows great reductions of red corpuscles and of hemoglobin, anisocytosis and occasionally poikilocytosis are found in the blood smear. The capillary resistance is definitely lowered and there is a low ascorbic acid content in the blood and a lack of it in the urine.

## Blood Diseases in Which the White Corpuscles Are Chiefly Affected

*Leukopenia* and *leukocytosis* are described in the Chapter on Blood Examinations p 1000

### *Leukemia (Leukosis)*

Leukemia is a disease characterized by an increase in the number of white corpuscles in the blood and is associated with hyperplasia of the bone marrow or the lymphatic tissue or both (leukoblastic tissue). The two main types recognized are (a) Myelocytic or myeloid (splenomedullary) and (b) lymphoid (lymphatic) leukemia.

**Myelocytic or Myeloid Leukemia (Splenomedullary)** *Symptoms and Diagnosis* This may be acute or chronic. In the chronic form the onset is insidious. The skin is somewhat pale and becomes paler as the disease progresses. Epistaxis, gastrointestinal symptoms, sometimes hematemesis with increasing loss of strength are common symptoms. The most prominent feature of this type is the enormous enlargement of the spleen accompanied by a definite blood picture. The leukocytes may increase to 100 000 or to 1 000 000 per cmm, the average ratio between the white and red cells may be from 1 to 10, 1 to 5 or 1 to 1 instead of the normal 1 to 350 or 1 to 600. The polymorphonuclears usually show a reduction from 30 to 50 per cent. Small and large leukocytes, eosinophils and mast cells are increased. The myelocytes are increased to 30 per cent or to 50 per cent. As the disease progresses the red corpuscles and hemoglobin become markedly reduced.

### **Acute Myeloblastic Leukemia**

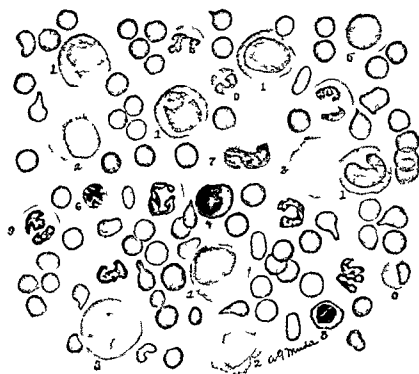
This is characterized by its acute onset, ulcerations and hemorrhages in the mouth, the spleen and lymph glands are

enlarged but not quite as large as that found in myelocytic leukemia. The disease may be primary or it may be a terminal stage of myelocytic leukemia. The blood picture is that of a rapidly progressive anemia showing normoblasts and macrocytes with hyperchromia or there may be microcytes with hypochromia. The white cell count may at first be low, but increases rapidly in a few days to 200 000 or 300 000. The predominating cells are myeloblasts, though many promyelocytes and some myelocytes are present. The blood platelet count is low.

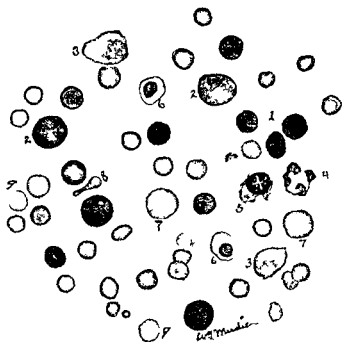
**Lymphocytic or Lymphatic Leukemia** This is characterized by hyperplasia of all the lymph glands. The spleen is but moderately enlarged. The liver is usually slightly enlarged. The blood shows a marked increase in the number of leukocytes, particularly of the lymphocytes, which number from 90 to 95 per cent of the entire white cell count.

**Acute Lymphatic Leukemia** This occurs in children and young adults as a rapidly progressive fatal disease. It is characterized by swelling of all the lymph glands in the neck, axillae and other parts of the body. Hemorrhages from the mucous membranes into the serous sacs are common. The spleen is but slightly enlarged. The blood count shows an enormous increase in the number of leukocytes of which about 90 per cent are lymphocytes and lymphoblasts. The disease is rapidly fatal.

**Leukemia Cutis** This is characterized by nodular masses in the skin which disintegrate, hemorrhages and coloration of the skin and fever. The spleen and lymph glands are but little enlarged. The blood shows anemia with a great increase in the leukocyte count (one



BLOOD OF SPLENO MYELOID LEUKEMIA  
(Anders and Boston W B Saunders Co)



BLOOD OF LYMPHATIC LEUKEMIA  
(Anders and Boston W B Saunders Co)

million to two million per cmm), the greatest variety of which are lymphocytes

### *Chronic Lymphatic Leukemia*

This is characterized by enlarged lymph glands in the neck, axillæ and groins moderately enlarged spleen and marked

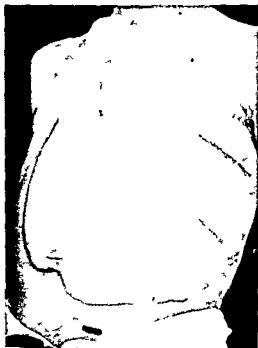


Fig 2—Enormous enlargement of spleen

anemia with an increase in the leukocyte count often numbering above 200,000, the greatest percentage of which are lymphocytes

### *Atypical Leukemias*

There are several varieties of atypical leukemia which may be described as follows

**Aleukemic Leukemia.** This condition may be a stage of remission in leukemia or an atypical form of leukemia. The spleen is enlarged or there may be enlarged lymph glands, the patient appears anemic, the leukocytes may not be increased in number but

either lymphocytes or myelocytes are present in fairly large numbers

**Mixed Leukemia** This is in part myeloid and in part lymphoid. In nearly all cases of the ordinary splenomedullary leukemia a certain percentage of lymphocytes is present, and toward the end may be materially increased

**Chloroma** This is an atypical lymphoid leukemia presenting a leukemic blood picture and lymphatic tumors which are sarcomatous and possess a greenish color. It is commoner in children. Exophthalmos is frequent owing to tumor formation in the orbit. The tumor growths occur in the skull, the orbit, the cord, the long bones, and throughout the viscera. The lymph glands are affected and changes occur in the spleen and the bone marrow. The typical picture of this disturbance may be present without the green tint of chloroma. The nature of the pigment is unknown

**Leukanemia** This is a term invented by Leube to describe a condition showing features both of leukemia and severe anemia. The cases are now regarded as a myeloid leukemia with severe anemia. Glandular enlargement is usually present. The onset may be like the acute types of leukemia and the blood picture is either of the lymphoid or of the myeloid type

Cases with atypical blood changes, such as a very high percentage of eosinophils, or a condition with a very high proportion of plasma cells have also been reported

In a few rare instances, a leukemic blood picture has been found without changes in the blood making organs

**Plasma Cell Leukemia** This type resembles lymphatic leukemia and runs a similar course though it differs in that quite a number of the abnormal cells

in the blood and tissues are plasma cells. In *multiple myeloma* the blood picture is at times that of plasma cell leukemia.

**Monocytic Leukemia** This closely resembles myeloblastic leukemia, the predominating cells are monocytes and may be identified as such by the use of the supravital stain of Sabin.

**Basophilic Leukemia** This usually runs an acute course the basophils may number from 50 to 60 per cent of the white cells present in the blood.

**Eosinophilic Leukemia** This usually runs a more or less chronic course, the blood may show from 40 to 50 per cent of the adult type of eosinophils.

**Erythroleukemia** This is a rare type of leukemia which has the characteristics of both polycythemia and myelogenous leukemia. The red cell count may be as high as seven or eight million and the white cell count may be from 200 000 to 500 000.

**Leukemoid Reaction** This term is applied to a blood picture resembling chronic leukemia. The myelogenous type in which the percentage of myelocytes is below 20 is found in malignancy affecting the bone marrow in osteosclerosis and in certain infections. Leukemoid reactions of the lymphatic type are found at times in whooping cough in infectious mononucleosis in agranulocytosis and in other infections.

**Subacute Leukemia** This occupies a position midway between the acute and the chronic forms. The onset is comparatively slow and may last several months. It is characterized by necrotic processes in the mouth or throat, moderate fever and progressive anemia. The leukocytes are greatly increased and may be of the lymphatic or myeloid type.

**Pseudoleukemia** This is a blood disease resembling leukemia to which

Cohnheim has applied the name pseudoleukemia. It is doubtful whether this condition is a distinct entity as most cases of pseudoleukemia after more careful study have proven to be either Hodgkin's disease, generalized tuberculous lymphadenitis, leukemia during its early stages or during the state of remission or a

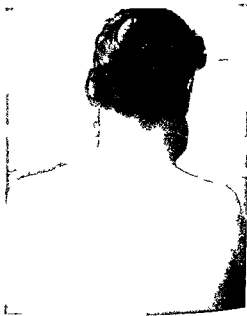
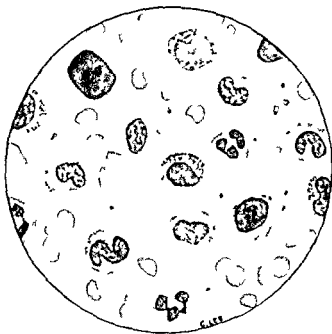


Fig 3—Lymphosarcoma (Jefferson Hospital)

lymphosarcoma with metastasis only to the lymph glands. The general features of so called pseudoleukemia are enlargement of the lymph glands, materially enlarged spleen and an absence of the typical leukemic blood picture. It is at times referred to as aleukemic leukemia.

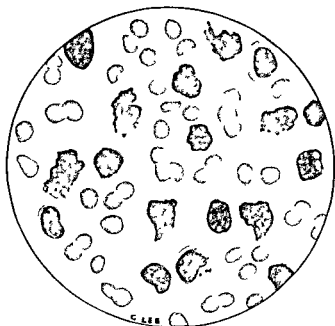
### **Leukosarcoma**

Leukosarcoma is a disease of the hematopoietic system characterized by the occurrence of tumor masses the cells of which are either lymphoid, myeloid or both. It gives rise to widespread metastasis. The blood picture presents leukemic characteristics and the tumor masses are sarcomatous in structure.



REPRESENTATIVE BLOOD SMEAR FROM A PATIENT WITH CHRONIC MYELOID LEUKEMIA

Note large number of mature and immature myeloid cells of all types (Hull Wright & Elys Medical Nursing Co. Philadelphia Pa.)



REPRESENTATIVE SMEAR FROM PATIENT WITH CHRONIC LYMPHATIC LEUKEMIA

Note large number of mature and degenerated lymphocytes (Hull Wright & Eys  
 Medical Nursing F A Davis Co Philadelphia Pa)



### ***Lymphosarcoma***

This is characterized by the formation of malignant tumors in the lymph nodes which are spread by the lymphatics to the adjacent tissues, the spleen and bone marrow are seldom affected. It usually occurs in the lymph glands of the neck, mediastinum, intestines, liver, tonsils, pleura, lungs, pericardium, brain and the bones. In the early stages the blood presents only a secondary anemia with a moderate increase in the polymorphonuclear cells but late in the disease the lymphocytes are enormously increased. This condition should be differentiated from adenitis, lymphoid leukemia, Hodgkin's disease and leukosarcoma.

### ***Agranulocytic Angina (Agranulocytosis, Granulocytopenia, Malignant Neutropenia)***

This is a peculiar form of blood destruction occurring in the presence of severe infection. Agranulocytic angina is characterized by a severe ulcerative and gangrenous infection (often Vincent's) of the mouth, pharynx, larynx or elsewhere. It is associated with high fever, prostration and a characteristic blood picture with moderate reduction of red corpuscles, extreme leukopenia, often as low as 1000, marked reduction or even total absence of polymorphonuclear neutrophils. Lymphocytes and monocytes are abundant, often as high as 95 per cent. Eosinophils and platelets are usually unaffected. Granulocytopenia may be primary or secondary to local or general infection, to chemical poisons such as arsphenamine, bismuth, benzol, amidopyrine, sulfapyridine, sulfanilamide and the barbiturates, also to exposures to x-rays and radium. It may occur in aplastic anemia, leukemia

and other blood diseases. This condition is exceedingly grave and recoveries are rare.

### ***Infectious Mononucleosis (Glandular Fever)***

The blood picture is characterized by a normal red cell count and a leukocytosis of from 12,000 to 25,000, of which 50 to 85 per cent are lymphocytes, lymphoblasts and monocytes. The polymorphonuclear leukocytes may be reduced to from 50 to 85 per cent. Other features of this disease are acute cervical adenitis, pharyngitis, abdominal cramps, sweating and moderate rise in temperature. It usually occurs in children and young adults and as a rule terminates after two or three weeks in recovery. The heterophilic antibody or agglutination test is usually positive in high dilutions. (See pp. 203, 1059, 1064.)

### ***Hodgkin's Disease***

#### ***(Lymphadenoma, Malignant Lymphoma, Lymphoblastoma)***

Hodgkin's disease is a chronic granulomatous disease characterized by enlargement of the lymphoid tissue, progressive secondary anemia with enlargement of the spleen and liver.

**Symptoms and Diagnosis.** This disease is usually ushered in by painless enlargement of the lymph nodes usually of the neck, axillary and inguinal regions. They are bilateral, not tender to pressure and do not suppurate. The glands are freely movable beneath the skin and rarely become adherent. The heart usually becomes weak and pressure symptoms may occur in various parts of the body. Pressure against the cervical lymphatics will cause unilateral swelling of the face. Pressure upon the abdominal vessels will cause ascites, etc.

**The Blood Picture** is that of secondary anemia and may at times show a moderate leukocytosis with an increase in the polymorphonuclear leukocytes and eosinophils and at times also in the lymphocytes. When in doubt a biopsy should be done for diagnostic purposes. The excised gland will present a characteristic microscopic appearance: i. e. proliferation of the endothelial and reticular cells with the formation of uniform lymphoid cells, giant cells and lymphadenoma cells containing several nuclei. Eosinophils are always present and fibrosis of the gland is a common feature. In the later stages, the gland is usually hard and contains a greater abundance of fibroid tissues.

Osler and McCrea describe seven forms of Hodgkin's disease.

1 *Acute form*, in which the disease is ushered in with angina simulating lymphatic leukemia death occurring within a month or two.

2 *Localized form*, the enlargement may be localized to certain groups—those in the neck the groin the retroperitoneum or the thorax. The disease may be localized to one region for a year or more before it extends to other regions. The localized mediastinal group often presents a remarkable picture. Pressure signs such as pain, orthopnea, dysphagia hoarseness and unless there are other groups involved or enlargement of the spleen the diagnosis of this group is often difficult.

3 *With relapsing pyrexia*, the relapsing pyrexia may occur in cases with involvement of the internal glands alone or more frequently with a general involvement of all the groups. The paroxysms of fever and remission may occupy several days and extend over a

period of many months. During the fever the glands are enlarged tender and hot. A case in the author's service at the Philadelphia General Hospital presented unusual features which led to a diagnosis first of typhoid fever, which was subsequently altered to miliary tuberculosis. But on autopsy it was found that the retroperitoneal glands as well as the glands in the hilum of the lungs were enlarged and showed characteristics of Hodgkin's disease.

4 *Latent type*, the retroperitoneal glands or those of the hilum of the lungs or of the hilum of the liver may become enlarged. Anemia fever and weakness and pressure symptoms usually occur.

5 *Splenomegalic form*, in which the spleen becomes very large the lymph glands are not enlarged or but slightly so and secondary anemia manifests itself. This condition should be differentiated from Banti's disease.

6 *Lymphogranulomatosis*, the skin lesions may be in the rare form of a true lymphogranulomatosis or may show a variety of changes such as pruritus, urticaria, edema, petechiae and marked pigmentation.

7 *Lymphadenia ossium*, in this condition there are multiple bone tumors of the bone marrow and of the periosteum associated with enlargement of the lymph glands and spleen.

**Prognosis** The course of the disease is usually chronic and is characterized by periods of remission. During exacerbation there may be irregular fever with signs of sepsis. The enlarged lymph glands and the tumor masses may for a time respond to x-ray exposures. They decrease in size rapidly. This treatment is effective for a time only. Eventually x-ray treatment as any other form of therapy becomes useless.

## SECTION 9

# The Abdomen

## CHAPTER XX

### Anatomy and Physical Examination of the Abdomen

The abdomen and its viscera are studied by inspection, palpation and percussion. Auscultation is of limited value in abdominal diagnosis. Auscultatory percussion is employed to map out the outlines of various organs.

In order to study the abdomen and its viscera by physical exploration, familiarity with the anatomy of this portion of the body is necessary, as well as a thorough knowledge of the regional and relational anatomy of the organs it contains.

#### Anatomic Landmarks

To facilitate the study of the abdomen and its viscera the abdomen like the chest, is mapped out by anatomic landmarks and defining lines into four regions or into nine regions.

By the four region division two lines are utilized by dividing the anterior abdominal wall. One line passes vertically through the umbilicus and separates the abdomen into two lateral halves. The other line passes horizontally through the umbilicus dividing the abdomen into

an upper and lower half, thus forming four quadrants, as follows

- 1 An upper right quadrant
- 2 An upper left quadrant

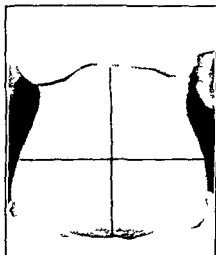


Fig 1—Abdomen divided into four regions

- 3 A lower right quadrant
- 4 A lower left quadrant

The contents of these quadrants, in addition to the peritoneum and omentum are as follows

#### Upper Right Quadrant

- 1 Right lobe of the liver
- 2 Gallbladder
- 3 Hepatic flexure and part of the transverse colon
- 4 Portion of the pancreas
- 5 Pylorus
- 6 Right adrenal
- 7 Right kidney
- 8 Duodenum

#### Lower Right Quadrant

- 1 Ascending colon
- 2 Cecum
- 3 Appendix
- 4 Right tube (in the female)
- 5 Right ovary (in the female)
- 6 Uterus when enlarged (in the female)
- 7 Bladder (when distended)
- 8 Small intestine
- 9 Right ureter
- 10 Right spermatic cord (in the male)

#### Upper Left Quadrant

- 1 Left lobe of liver
- 2 Stomach
- 3 Transverse colon
- 4 Splenic flexure
- 5 Pancreas
- 6 Left adrenal
- 7 Left kidney
- 8 Spleen

#### Lower Left Quadrant

- 1 Left tube (in the female)
- 2 Left ovary (in the female)
- 3 Uterus (in the female)
- 4 Bladder (when distended)
- 5 Descending colon
- 6 Sigmoid flexure
- 7 Left ureter
- 8 Small intestine
- 9 Left spermatic cord (in the male)

num the pancreas a section of the liver the aorta the solar plexus and the celiac axis

The *left hypochondriac region* contains the large end of the stomach the spleen the narrow extremity of the pancreas the splenic flexure of the colon

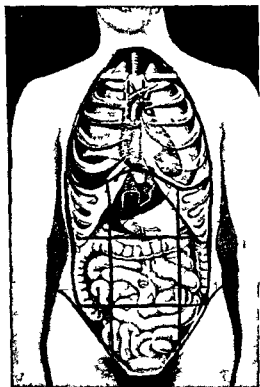


Fig 4—The nine regions of the abdomen and their contents

the upper part of the left kidney and its suprarenal capsule and sometimes part of the left lobe of the liver

The *right lumbar region* contains the ascending colon lower half of the right kidney together with part of the duodenum and jejunum

The *umbilical region* contains part of the omentum and mesentery the transverse colon the lower half of the duodenum sections of the jejunum and ileum and the abdominal aorta

The *left lumbar region* contains the descending colon the lower half of the left kidney and a part of the jejunum and ileum

The *right iliac or inguinal region* contains the cecum the appendix McBurney's point the lower end of the ileum the right ureter and the right spermatic cord in the male and the right ovary in the female

The *hypogastric region* contains most of the ileum the bladder (especially if distended) and the gravid uterus

The *left iliac or inguinal region* contains the sigmoid flexure of the colon the left ureter the left spermatic cord in the male and the left ovary in the female

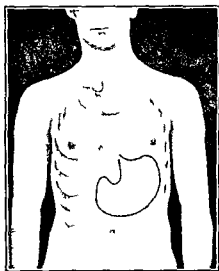


Fig 5—Position of stomach in relation to anterior abdominal wall and ribs

### Topographic Anatomy of the Abdominal Viscera

**The Stomach** This organ is situated in the upper portion of the abdomen its fundus fitting into the dome of the left side of the diaphragm at the level of the fifth rib in the nipple line or below the heart apex It is adjacent to the spleen the lower border of the left lung

the heart, the left lobe of the liver, the left adrenal and kidney, and the aorta.

The *cardiac orifice* of the stomach lies to the left of the seventh sternochondral articulation, about four or five inches from the anterior surface of the body. The *pyloric orifice* is found to the right

downward and forward, connecting the pylorus with the fundus. It forms the lower border of the stomach and, when the stomach is not distended, reaches to about the level of the infracostal line (tenth rib). Below, it is in close relation to the transverse colon.

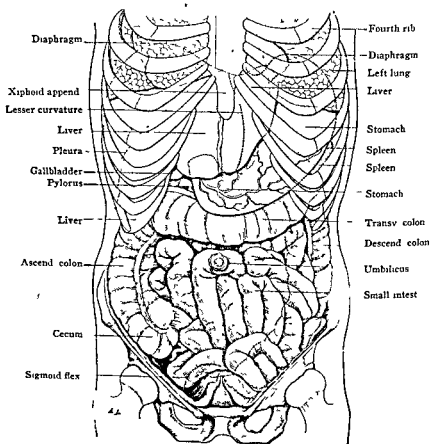


Fig 6—General topographic anatomy of the abdomen

of the midsternal line about two or three fingerbreadths below the ensiform cartilage, and directly behind the liver. It is more superficial and has greater mobility than the cardiac end.

The *lesser curvature* is slightly concave to the right and is situated to the left of the median line; it is in relation with the pancreas above and behind. The *greater curvature* convexes gently

Only a small portion of the stomach is adjacent to the anterior abdominal wall in the epigastric region; another superficial portion of the stomach is found in Traube's semilunar space, where gastric tympany can be elicited; this space is bounded above by the lung and to the left by the spleen; the right boundary is formed by the left lobe of the liver.

**The Liver (Hepar)** The liver is the largest gland in the body. It occupies nearly all of the right hypochondriac region and usually extends to the left hypochondriac region. The *upper surface* of the right lobe is convex and fits

inches) Right lateral surface = convex line B to D 15 to 17.5 cm (6 to 6¾ inches) Lower edge of right lobe D to C Lower edge of left lobe, C to E and upwards to A Anteroposterior diameter, at thickest portion it is 10 to 12.5 cm (4¾ inches) and at its thinnest portion 7.5 cm (3 inches)

**Weight** In the male the liver weighs 1.4 to 1.6 kg in the female 1.2 to 1.4 kg

The *anatomic outline of the upper boundary of the liver* should not be confused with the clinical boundaries or with the limits of absolute liver dullness. Clinically the upper boundary of absolute liver dullness corresponds to the lower border of the right lung *viz*

Anteriorly Sixth rib  
Laterally Eighth rib  
Posteriorly Tenth rib

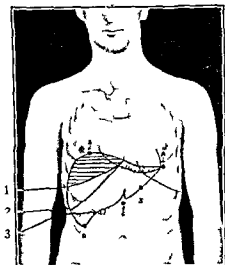


Fig 7—Anatomic position of the liver and gallbladder

The horizontal shading indicates where lung covers the liver vertical shading where heart overlaps the liver

- (1) Lower border of lung
- (2) Lower lateral border of liver
- (3) Gallbladder

into the dome of the diaphragm extending upward as high as the fourth interspace from which point the upper surface gradually declines so that in the epigastric region it is on a level with the base of the ensiform cartilage. The *lower boundaries* of the liver are

Near the spine At the eleventh rib  
Right midaxillary line At the tenth rib  
Right midclavicular line At the lower margins of the ribs  
In the median line Midway between the ensiform and umbilicus

**Measurement** Upper surface of liver from A to B 20 to 22 cm (8 to 8¾



Fig 8—Normal position of the spleen

**The Gallbladder** The gallbladder is a serous sac which in addition to other functions acts as a reservoir for the storage of bile. It is situated at the undersurface of the right lobe of the

liver its fundus extending downward. The fundus is ordinarily located at the outer border of the right rectus muscle on a level with the inner edge of the ninth costal cartilage.

**The Spleen (Lien)** The spleen is a soft vascular oval shaped organ meas-

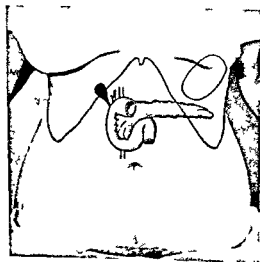


Fig 9—Relation of pancreas to gallbladder, duodenum, left costal angle and spleen.

uring about 12 cm ( $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches) in length and 7 cm (3 inches) in width and 3 to 4 cm ( $1\frac{1}{4}$  to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches) in thickness and weighs about 200 Gm ( $6\frac{1}{2}$  ounces). The spleen is situated in the left hypochondriac region between the ninth and eleventh ribs, its long axis being parallel with these ribs. Its outer surface is convex and is in relation to the diaphragm, while the inner surface is concave. Posteriorly it is in relation to the suprarenal capsule and upper part of the left kidney. Anteriorly it is in relation to the outer portion of the cardiac end of the stomach and the splenic flexure. The lower two thirds of the spleen are in contact with the ribs; the upper one-third is separated from them by the diaphragm and lung. The hilum of the

spleen can be felt only when this organ is greatly enlarged.

**The Pancreas** The pancreas is a long flattened gland measuring from 12 to 15 cm (5 to 6 inches) in length, about 5 cm (2 inches) in breadth and 2 to 3 cm (1 inch) in thickness. It weighs between 60 and 110 Gm. It is deeply situated in the epigastrium, extending from the right to the left hypochondrium and

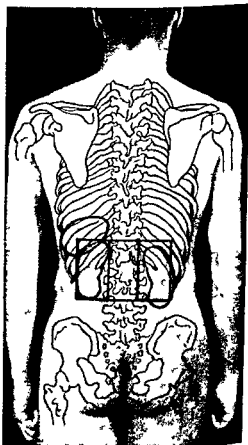


Fig 10—Relation of kidneys to spleen, spine, and ribs.

lying behind the stomach at a level with the first lumbar vertebra. The head of the pancreas (right extremity) extends to the right of the median line a little above the subcostal line and is embraced by the curvature of the duodenum. Its



tail (left extremity) is situated some what higher than the head and is in contact with the spleen

**The Adrenal Glands** They are two in number, situated retroperitoneally each imbedded in the perirenal fat above its respective kidney. The right adrenal measures  $4 \times 13 \times 6$  cm ( $1\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}$  inch), and weighs 2 to 2.5 Gm (30 to 40 gr). The left adrenal measures  $4.5 \times 2 \times 6$  cm ( $1\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{3}{4} \times \frac{1}{4}$  inch) and weighs 2.5 to 3 Gm (40 to 45 gr) (SEE Fig 22 p 793)

**The Kidneys** These two bean shaped urinary excretors are situated on either side of the spinal column each is about 10 cm (4 inches) long 6.5 cm ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches) broad, and 2.5 cm (1 inch) thick. The kidneys are extraperitoneal organs supported by a mass of fat and resting upon the quadratus lumborum and psoas muscles as well as upon the lumbar portions of the diaphragm. They lie on a level with the eleventh ribs and on a line continuous with the midclavicular line.

The relative positions of both kidneys vary to some extent

#### RIGHT KIDNEY

- 1 Is situated one half inch lower than left
- 2 Upper border is in contact with the liver and reaches to the level of the eleventh dorsal spine the duodenum and colon are anterior to it
- 3 Lower border posteriorly is  $1\frac{1}{4}$  cm (one half inch) below the third lumbar spine or 2.5 cm (1 inch) above the iliac crest.
- 4 Anteriorly the lower border extends to about 2.5 cm (1 inch) above the horizontal umbilical line
- 5 Shorter and thicker than left

**The Intestines** The *small intestine* occupies nearly the entire central portion of the abdomen excepting the duodenum, it is freely movable and the

various divisions are continuous so that it is practically impossible to determine by palpation where the ileum ends and the jejunum begins. The jejunum is usually found in the upper part of the abdomen and toward the left i.e. left lumbar left iliac and left half of the umbilical region while the coils of the ileum occupy a lower position on the corresponding right side.

The *large intestine* is more fixed than is the small intestine. The cecum is located in the right iliac region resting on the right psoas muscle and corresponding to the center of a line drawn from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the symphysis pubis. The ileocecal valve is on a level with the iliac line about three inches internal to the anterior superior spine.

The *verruiform appendix* arises from the inner and posterior aspect of the cecum near the ileocecal valve its base corresponds to a point which is the center of a line drawn from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the umbilicus and corresponds at that point to the

#### LEFT KIDNEY

- 1 Is situated one half inch higher than right
- 2 Upper border is in contact with the spleen and reaches to the eleventh rib the colon lies anteriorly to it
- 3 Lower border posteriorly is on level with the third lumbar spine or 3.75 cm ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches) above the iliac crest
- 4 Anteriorly the lower border extends to about 3.75 cm ( $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches) above the umbilical line
- 5 Longer and thinner than the right kidney

right edge of the rectus muscle, it is about two inches from the right anterior superior spine of the ilium (McBurney's point)

**The Bladder** Under normal conditions the bladder does not extend above the pubic arch but when greatly distended, it may rise to the level of the superior spines of the ilia

**The Abdominal Aorta** The abdominal aorta begins at the twelfth dorsal vertebra thence it passes down the left side of the spinal column to the fourth lumbar vertebra at which point it bifurcates into the right and left iliac arteries

### Displacement of the Abdominal Viscera

When the abdomen is examined for any pathological condition it is customary to assume that the viscera occupy their normal positions. It is however quite possible that one or several of them may be displaced to a greater or lesser degree and the success of abdominal diagnosis may often rest upon a thorough appreciation of this possibility

**Congenital Displacements** The commonest variety is *situs inversus viscerum*. This is detected with comparative ease if the thoracic viscera are similarly displaced but if the displacement exists only in the abdomen it is much more likely to be overlooked though palpation and percussion may reveal the rare cases where the positions of liver and spleen are reversed. Under such circumstances the stomach will be upon the right side and the appendix in the left iliac fossa the findings of physical examination can readily be confirmed by x rays

*Displacements of the intestine* alone are much more common, the following varieties have been distinguished by de Quervain<sup>1</sup>

'1 The large intestine lies in its whole extent, *behind the small intestine* because of the failure of the umbilical loop to rotate (retroposition). The mesentery may either be free or may contract adhesions with the posterior abdominal wall

'2 The entire large intestine lies on the *left side of the abdomen* because although the umbilical loop has rotated in the right direction it has failed to do so completely, i.e. to the extent of permitting decussation of the small and large intestine (*sinistro position*). The mesentery may either be free or may have contracted secondary adhesions. In the first case both small and large intestine are connected with a free common mesentery the so-called *mesenterium commune*

3 The entire large intestine is in the *right half of the abdomen* because the umbilical loop has incompletely rotated in the wrong direction (*dextro position*). The condition of the mesentery is the same as in 2

'4 There has been complete decussation of the small and large intestine but in a *reversed position* because though the umbilical loop has revolved completely, the direction has been wrong (*situs inversus abdominalis partialis inferior*)

These are the extreme varieties but a much more frequent abnormality is one which may be regarded as an intermediate form between the normal position and the left sided position of the large intestine with free mesentery. Here the cecum and the ascending colon possess a free mesentery, which merges with that of the lowest coil of the small intestine. At the same time the ascending colon is frequently shortened so that the cecum is abnormally high. If there

<sup>1</sup>de Quervain, *Clinical Surgical Diagnosis*, translated by J. Snowman, J. Bale, Sons and Desobry, London, 1921

is no ascending colon at all and the cecum lies directly against the edge of the liver, then it is within the border line of a left sided position. This may be recognized when the cecum is so far displaced to the left that the large and small intestines no longer decussate.

The *appendix* will be displaced in any of the congenital conditions mentioned above. In enteroptosis it may lie in the true pelvis. When the cecum is abnormally high or when the ascending colon is abnormally short the appendix may be found high up in front of the right kidney at the edge of the liver, or even under the liver close to the gallbladder. When the large intestine is displaced to the left the appendix usually lies in the umbilical region or even to the left of it while in complete transposition the appendix will be on the left side of the pelvic cavity.

**Acquired Displacements** These are grouped together under the term of enteroptosis even if the displacement concerns only one viscus. *Glenard's disease* (splanchnoptosis enteroptosis) may be congenital or acquired. The mesenteric and peritoneal attachments of the stomach, intestines, transverse colon, liver, spleen and kidneys are stretched so that these structures occupy an abnormally low position in the abdomen. The acquired type is generally due to a lowering of the intraabdominal pressure caused by weakening of the abdominal pelvic and to some extent the spinal muscles.

*Floating kidney* due to lack of support occurs more frequently on the right, movable liver and spleen occur rarely. a movable liver is due to general relaxation of the suspensory ligaments while a movable spleen is caused by

some pathologic enlargement of that organ or a lengthening of its pedicle. A movable spleen is easily recognized by its sharp anterior border, the notch and by the fact that splenic dullness is absent from its normal situation.

Palpation is of great value in a diagnosis of acquired ptosis but an x ray examination will be of greater service and should be called to the aid of physical examination whenever possible.

### Inspection of the Abdomen and Its Viscera

Inspection of the abdomen is usually performed with the patient in the recumbent posture though at times for special reasons (to note a pendulous condition, hernia, engorged veins or the shifting of tumors or other masses) the erect and sitting postures are employed.

**Technic** The patient lies flat upon his back allowing the dependent parts of the body to rest naturally upon the bed or the examining table. The entire abdomen must be exposed to the examiner's view, this is best accomplished in sensitive females by covering the body with a sheet or blanket, under this cover the nightdress is gently drawn up as far as the lower part of the sternum, then the upper covering (sheet or blanket) is folded downward to the pubis exposing as little as possible of the mons veneris. The examiner takes a position at that side of the patient which allows a good light to fall directly upon the part under examination and at the same time permits him to view the abdomen from various angles. It is at times necessary to bring the eyes down to the level of the patient's abdomen so as to inspect for movements and pulsations.

The object of inspection is to note (I) The skin of the abdomen, its color the presence of rashes or scars, and the general state of nutrition, (II) the enlargement of superficial veins (III) pulsations and enlarged arteries, (IV) the condition of the umbilicus (V) peristalsis (VI) respiratory movements, (VII) size shape and symmetry of the abdomen



Fig 11—Inspection of abdomen for peristaltic movements and local bulgings

### *The Normal Abdomen*

The *skin* is usually of the same color as that of the rest of the body though the lower portion is somewhat darker than the upper and is usually covered with coarse hair. In brunettes the *linea nigra* (a dark line at the junction of both recti muscles and running parallel with them from the umbilicus to the symphysis pubis) is fairly prominent. Rashes are absent and scars occur only as a result of a previous surgical operation or an accidental wound. The general nutrition is in keeping with the rest of the body.

*Superficial veins* are not visible though at times one or two slightly distended veins can be seen running a short

distance up the abdomen from either or both inguinal regions

*Pulsations* are not evident except during excitement or after exercise when epigastric pulsations may be noticed.

The *umbilicus* is depressed and the skin around it is folded inward

*Peristalsis* is usually not apparent unless the examination is made shortly after a full meal following the taking of a cathartic or when the skin of the abdomen is irritated by manipulation or other cause

*Respiratory movements* are visible in men and young children but as a rule are not very noticeable in women

The *size and shape* of the abdomen are in keeping with the rest of the body. Large in the obese gently convex and oval in the well nourished flattened in thin or undernourished even though healthy adults. In children the abdomen is globular. It is usually symmetrical on both sides somewhat fuller above the umbilicus than below it. In males during early adult life there is generally a depression in the epigastric region. The dimensions of the abdomen vary within wide limits depending upon the amount of subcutaneous tissue and omental fat. In women the lower portion of the abdomen or the pelvic region is broader than in men

### *The Pathologic Abdomen*

**The Skin Color** Discoloration and pigmentation of the skin over the abdomen may be general in keeping with discoloration and pigmentation of the rest of the body or it may occur as a local condition

*Generalized discoloration and pigmentation* is observed in

(a) Jaundice deep yellow orange tinge or lemon yellow

(b) Addison's disease, generalized dirty brown color, with a darker area around the waistline

(c) Syphilitic discoloration copper colored

(d) Albinism, white areas irregularly situated

(e) Linea albicans, white lines due to previous overstretching of the skin as after pregnancy, ascites and loss of fat

(f) Linea nigra a dark line stretching from the umbilicus to symphysis pubis seen in pregnancy and chronic abdominal enlargement

(g) Bluish or purplish striae upon the abdomen and upper thighs are found in Cushing's syndrome

(h) Pernicious anemia pale lemon yellow or straw color

(i) Hemochromatosis dark brown to leaden or bluish black color

**Rashes** (a) In patients suffering from typhoid fever rose colored spots or small lenticular macules occur in small groups on the eighth day of the disease and disappear after a few days then recur in successive crops. They are usually found over the lower chest and upper abdomen disappearing on pressure and reappearing when the pressure is removed

(b) Copper colored scaly somewhat circular spots are often seen in secondary syphilis

(c) Raised white areas surrounded by reddened areas which are evanescent and itchy are indicative of urticaria

(d) Lesions covered with white mother-of-pearl scales are indicative of psoriasis

(e) Groups of vesicles arising from an erythematous base that itch or burn are indicative of herpes zoster

(f) Scratch marks may be found in jaundice pediculosis scabies and other conditions that cause intense itching

(g) A macular or maculopapular rash in which the lesions are oval scaly bright rose and later present a yellow center with rosy edges are usually due to pityriasis rosae

(h) Brown spots of varying sizes somewhat raised and covered with fine furfuraceous scales are due to tinea vesicolor

(i) Various skin lesions found over other parts of the body also occur on the abdomen

**Abdominal scars** are a result of healed lesions traumatism to the abdominal wall or the healing of surgical incisions. A longitudinal scar in midabdomen above the umbilicus may indicate a previous operation upon the stomach pancreas or intestines in the right upper quadrant a liver or gallbladder operation and below and to the right of the umbilicus an appendiceal operation. A longitudinal scar in midabdomen below the umbilicus may be the result of an exploratory incision an omental or bowel operation. In old men it may be a result of prostatectomy while in women such a scar may indicate the occurrence of a previous pelvic operation or a cesarean section. A long scar in either or both inguinal regions may be the result of a hernia operation and a scar in the kidney region may indicate that there has been some renal operation

**General Nutrition** A large abdomen in a fat person is found in general obesity of the pituitary type or it may not denote an abnormal condition but a large abdomen with taut and glistening skin indicates ascites peritonitis or chronic bowel distention. In women in addition to the conditions mentioned such a appear

ance of the abdomen may be due to pregnancy ovarian cyst or other tumors

An enlarged abdomen not due to fat the skin of which is not glistening may be caused by edema of the abdominal wall by an enlarged liver or spleen or by enlargement of both organs and by distention of the bowels by large ab

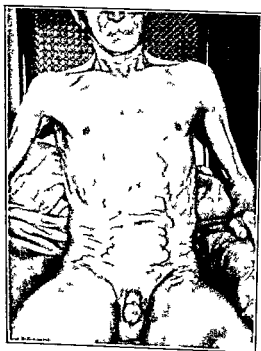


Fig 12—Enlarged superficial abdominal veins (Phila General Hospital)

dominal tumors cysts distended bladder or by peritonitis and ascites

Children and young adults if idiots cretins or sufferers from uncinariasis usually present large abdomens

**Enlarged Superficial Veins** Enlarged superficial veins usually indicate obstruction to the return circulation

*Caput medusa* consists of a number of enlarged veins radiating from the umbilicus this is due to dilatation of the cutaneous veins and is indicative of portal obstruction It may rarely be found

in the newborn and is seen also in atrophic cirrhosis of the liver and in abdominal tumors

General enlargement of the abdominal veins may indicate obstruction to the return circulation caused by an enlarged liver by tumor or abscess of the liver by syphilis of the liver or omentum (gumma) by chronic distention of the stomach or other viscera and by tumors of the mediastinum (SEE p 384c)

When a distended vein is emptied by pressure its mode of refilling should be noted If the vein fills from above downward it is generally due to compression of the superior vena cava for the blood from this vessel forms a collateral circulation by way of the azygos veins communicating with its many tributaries If the vein fills from below upward it is indicative of obstruction of the portal vein and inferior vena cava Veins distended only in the pubic region are usually due to some obstruction below the liver

**Pulsations and Enlarged Superficial Abdominal Arteries** Epigastric pulsation may be caused by a dilated right heart a dynamic aorta an aneurysm of the celiac axis or of the abdominal aorta A tumor of the stomach of the pancreas or of a portion of the omentum overlying the abdominal aorta may cause transmitted pulsation as will also a pulsating liver

Pulsations in the upper abdomen may indicate a tumor overlying the aorta aortic aneurysm or unusual thinness of the abdominal wall which is in close contact with the aorta Abdominal pulsations are often seen in neurasthenic individuals

Pulsations in the lower abdomen may be caused by an enlarged pulsating liver (tricuspid regurgitation) or by a pul

sating empyema, in the iliac regions by a lesion of the heart (aortic regurgitation), in the inguinal regions, by inflammatory lesions and by partial obstruction of the abdominal aorta

Partial obstruction of the abdominal aorta or iliac arteries (rare) may cause



Fig 13—Omphalocele (Umbilical hernia)

enlarged and visible arteries in the epigastrium

**Condition of the Umbilicus** In fat subjects the umbilicus is deeply retracted it protrudes in umbilical hernia (omphalocele) massive ascites and portal obstruction and is flattened in the presence of moderate abdominal effusions tumors and pregnancy The umbilicus may likewise be inflamed eczematous and in rare cases exude a foul smelling discharge

**Peristalsis** Visible peristaltic movements are an indication of hyperactivity of the bowel or stomach this may be seen in colitis in partial intestinal obstruction and in complete obstruction above the obstructing point Reversed peristalsis is often noted in intestinal and pyloric obstruction

**Respiratory Movements** Respiratory abdominal movements are very much in evidence in normal men and young children but much less so in women

*Pathologically increased abdominal respiratory movements* are caused by some diseases of the chest which do not permit chest expansion : *e* inflammatory condition of the lung and pleura consolidation of the lung large pleural effusions (fluid or air) and broken ribs which may be the cause of pleuritis and muscular rigidity also by chronic emphysema asthma and pulmonary edema

*Diminished or absent* respiratory movements may be caused by large tumors in the abdomen upward pressure



Fig 14—Femoral hernia

of the diaphragm by enlarged abdominal viscera painful condition of the abdominal muscles inflammatory condition of the peritoneum or by ascites

**Size Shape and Symmetry** *General enlargement* of the abdomen if not

due to fat or pregnancy, may be caused by ascites, peritonitis, large abdominal or pelvic tumors gaseous distention of the bowel, general enlargement of the liver, of the spleen or of both organs

*Upper abdominal enlargement* may be the result of a distended stomach or an enlarged liver, spleen or kidney

*Enlargement of the abdomen below the umbilicus* may be caused by ascites local peritonitis, Glenard's disease, or by ovarian uterine or other pelvic tumors

struction in acute intestinal obstruction is usually retracted

*Asymmetry* of the abdomen may be due to any condition producing distortion of its general shape, such as a local enlargement or retraction

### Palpation of the Abdomen and Its Viscera

Palpation is the most important method employed in the physical examination of the abdomen Inspection



Fig 15—The scaphoid abdomen. (Da Costa W B Saunders Co)

*Enlargement of both inguinal regions* particularly if it occurs after coughing or straining may be due to hernia

*Retraction of the Abdomen* Generally the abdomen as a whole may be depressed in wasting diseases, in inanition due to esophageal or pyloric stenosis, in violent vomiting or purging and it is nearly always retracted in cholera and yellow atrophy of the liver

A *scaphoid* (boat-shaped) abdomen is often a symptom of meningitis tumor of the brain and lead colic and it is frequently associated with rigidity of the recti muscles

*Local retraction* may be caused by an injury to the underlying muscles or displacement of such an organ as the liver Moderate retraction in both hypochondriac regions and the areas immediately below them is found in general visceropostosis The area beyond the point of ob-

usually serves but to point toward a condition to be further investigated and possibly diagnosed by palpation

**Technic** The patient lies supine resting easily, and avoiding all possible strain In order to relax more readily the abdominal muscles, the knees should be slightly raised and the shoulders somewhat elevated and supported by a pillow The patient must be put entirely at ease so as to avoid self-consciousness which is likely to produce muscular rigidity The examiner's hands should be warm and tickling the surface is to be avoided The movement of the palpating hand should be gentle with no sudden or rough poking with the finger tips By passing the hand over the abdomen in all directions a general idea of the condition of the abdominal wall and its degree of resistance is noted The amount of pressure



should then be gradually increased in order to determine whether any part is sensitive which will be evidenced by pain and local muscular contraction. One or both hands may be used for palpation. When the abdominal wall is somewhat rigid, either because of nervousness or as a result of irritation within the abdominal cavity, the palpating



Fig. 16—Reënforced palpation.

hand can be reenforced by the other hand for example the finger tips of the free hand may be brought to bear down upon the palpating hand in order to exert sufficient force to reach more deeply.

Palpation of the abdomen is also carried out with the patient in the lateral or in the knee chest position. The lateral position is employed in order to determine the nature of the organs under examination while the knee chest position may be more useful for determining movable organs or ascites. When the abdominal organs are in the normal position and not increased in size the palpating hand when applied to the surface, meets with no unusual resistance. A uniform degree of softness is elicited over all parts of the normal abdomen except over the recti muscles and in the epigastrium where a slight degree of resistance will be encountered because of the underlying liver. Deep palpation of an abdomen that is not too

fat will permit one to feel the abdominal aorta, the vertebral column, coils of intestines, the lower edge of the right lobe of the liver and, at times, also the lower border of the right kidney.

### *Purpose of Abdominal Palpation*

Abdominal palpation is carried out (I) In order to determine muscular rigidity, (II) tenderness, (III) fluctuation, (IV) the presence of tumors, (V) to locate certain abdominal organs, and (VI) to outline their size and consistency.

**I Muscular Rigidity** If not voluntarily produced by self consciousness this is usually caused by an underlying inflammatory condition of the peritoneum the omentum, a tumor a solid organ lying close to the surface or a distended bowel or stomach. Muscular rigidity is nature's method of splinting an underlying inflammatory viscus so as to prevent disturbance and thus in a measure to overcome dangerous mobility.

In order to determine muscular rigidity, palpation should be carried out very lightly a mere touch of the skin usually sufficing to bring it out. When examining for rigidity the apparently healthy portion of the abdomen is palpated first with the fleshy parts of the finger tips then the affected area is palpated so as to compare the healthy part with the affected area. Palpation in this instance should be carried out very rapidly, touching the various parts of the abdomen in quick succession and comparing the rigidity of these parts.

*Muscular rigidity in the right lower quadrant* may be caused by appendicitis by an inflamed ovary, a psoas abscess or an incarcerated or strangulated hernia or testicle.

*Rigidity in the right upper quadrant* may be due to cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, abscess, gumma, or general enlargement or inflammation of the liver; abscess of the right kidney, or some other inflammatory condition of the kidney; structure, hypernephroma, diaphragmatic inflammations, abscess or cyst, retroperitoneal sarcoma, and inflammatory conditions of the adrenal body.

*Rigidity in the left lower quadrant* may result from an inflammatory condition of the left ovary or tube, or a pathologic condition of the sigmoid or cecum; carcinoma, local peritonitis, or from diverticulitis or strangulated or incarcerated hernia or undescended testicle.

*Rigidity in the left upper quadrant* usually indicates disease of the spleen, left kidney, retroperitoneal sarcoma, hypernephroma, subdiaphragmatic abscess, inflammatory conditions of the adrenals, diaphragmatic pleurisy, herpes zoster, and occasionally occurs reflexly from inflammation of the tail of the pancreas or of the bile ducts, and at times in basal pneumonia.

*Rigidity of the upper midabdomen* may be caused by gastric carcinoma or ulcer, by disease of the pancreas, aortic aneurysm, periarteritis nodosa, retroperitoneal malignancy, or by disease of a vertebra.

*Rigidity of the entire abdomen* may be caused by general peritonitis, intussusception, or acute obstruction of the bowel from any cause. Asiatic cholera, meningitis, lead colic, or any other condition causing spasm of the abdominal muscles, i.e., abdominal adhesions, distention of the bowels, spinal injury, etc. Apparent superficial rigidity is sometimes found in cases of pneumonia, particularly in children, and in spinal nerve injury.

**II Tenderness** Abdominal tenderness is usually an indication of some inflammatory condition of the peritoneum as a whole, or of a portion of the peritoneum overlying an inflamed viscus, or of inflammation or injury of the abdominal wall or its innervation.

### *Technic for Eliciting Tenderness*

With the patient in a supine position and being careful to eliminate all avoidable muscular rigidity, the examiner gently touches the various portions of the abdomen with his warm hand. In order to elicit tenderness more precisely, he should use the palmar surface of the first four fingers.

Palpation should at first be very light, gradually increased in force as the case permits. If the pressure of the hand causes severe pain, it is best to outline the painful area by light palpation, starting at a point far away from the seat of acute pain and gradually coming towards it. The point at which pain is first felt by the patient is marked as the outer limit of the painful area. In this way, as a rule, the diseased portion can be approached from all angles, whenever pain or tenderness is felt by the patient; rigidity—either marked or slight, as the case may be—can be perceived by the examiner.

*General tenderness* over the entire abdomen can be recognized both by rigidity of the abdominal muscles and by the pain elicited by touching the various portions of the abdominal surface.

Occasionally there may be superficial or skin tenderness elicited by light touch and not felt by deep palpation. This is usually due to affection of the nerves supplying the skin or to local skin irritation.

*Tenderness over the entire abdomen* may denote the presence of acute peri-

tonitis tuberculous peritonitis (chronic) Acute intestinal obstruction chronic lead poisoning mesenteric thrombosis Hirschprung's disease rupture of an abdominal aneurysm rupture of the intestine or stomach ileus acute and chronic enterocolitis the various types of colitis amebic or bacillary dysentery food poisoning periarthritis nodosa ab-



Fig. 17—Technic for palpating in appendiceal region for muscle rigidity and tenderness

dominal neuralgia tabes dorsalis arsenic and mercury poisoning retroperitoneal malignancy Asiatic cholera the early stages of meningitis or possibly a reflex from some chest spine or cord condition

*Local tenderness* if elicited over the right lower quadrant may be a sign of appendicitis carcinoma of the colon regional ileitis acute diverticulitis fecal impaction spastic colon psoas abscess incarcerated hernia or obstruction of the ureter by the passage of a stone It may also be a reflex from a tuberculous process of the ileum or some inflammatory condition of the spermatic cord In women it may be caused by an inflammatory condition of the Fallopian tube or of the ovary Certain chest diseases and inflammatory conditions of the diaphragm may cause reflex tenderness in this area

Tenderness in the right upper quadrant is produced by an inflamed gall

bladder or an inflammatory condition of the liver such as an abscess hydatid cyst gumma malignant disease acute cholangitis diaphragmatic abscess or pleurisy right sided pleurisy or malignant disease of the chest De Mussy's point is a tender point corresponding to a small area intersected by the midclavicular line and a horizontal line continuous with the tenth rib The presence of the tender area indicates diaphragmatic inflammation or gallbladder disease

*Epigastric tenderness* usually indicates an acute inflammatory condition it is found in ulcer and cancer of the stomach gastralgia ulcer or cancer of the duodenum in acute pancreatitis subphrenic abscess and also in myocarditis coronary sclerosis mediastinitis tumors aneurysm of the aorta aortitis or erosion of a vertebra

*Tenderness in the left upper quadrant* may be caused by an inflammatory condition of the kidney spleen suprarenal capsule or the cardiac end of the stomach likewise by a local inflammation of the splenic flexure and omentum Left sided pleurisy diaphragmatic hernia diaphragmatitis aneurysm of the thoracic aorta and malignant disease of the lung may reflexly produce left sided upper abdominal tenderness

*Tenderness in the left lower quadrant* may be due to obstruction to the left ureter incarcerated left hernia malignant disease of the sigmoid spastic colon or orchitis In women disease of the left ovary and Fallopian tube should be borne in mind as possible causative factors

Tenderness above the symphysis pubis may be the result of an inflammatory condition of the urinary bladder or disease of the symphysis pubis in the

male of an inflamed prostate and in the female of an inflammatory condition of the uterus

Tenderness around the umbilicus suggests inflammation of the omentum small intestine aorta obstruction of the bowel intestinal volvulus aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, colic due to distention of the bowel by gas, and at times it is a phenomenon in hysteria

lightly taps upon the opposite side. In the presence of free fluid a wavy impulse will be felt by the palpating hand

**Caution** It is always best to have either the patient or an assistant place the ulnar surface of his hand firmly upon the abdomen at a point midway between the examiner's palpating and striking hands thus intercepting any waves that may travel over the abdominal wall



Fig 18—Technic for eliciting fluctuation

If tenderness is more severe when pressure is directly brought to bear upon the overlying part it denotes an acute inflammatory process but if the underlying viscus is more acutely tender at the moment pressure is relieved a deep-seated subacute condition probably exists

**III Fluctuation** By fluctuation is meant a wavy sensation transmitted to the palpating hand. This wavy impulse is produced by setting into vibration a body of fluid not under great pressure

**Technic** The patient is placed in a supine or sitting posture the examiner lays one hand over the lateral wall of the abdomen and with the other hand

This is particularly necessary in fat subjects

**Causes of Fluctuation** Fluctuation always denotes the existence of fluid if elicited over the lower abdomen it usually means ascites. It may also be caused by hemorrhage in the peritoneal cavity from a ruptured tube or ectopic pregnancy. Fluctuation felt only over limited portions of the abdomen is often an indication of tuberculous peritonitis and when elicited over the central portion of the abdomen immediately above the symphysis pubis it may denote bladder distention. Fluctuation in women when transmitted over a portion of the

lower abdomen may be caused by an ovarian cyst or pregnancy

Fluctuation in the right hypochondriac region may be caused by a hydatid cyst, distended gallbladder abscess of the liver, perinephritic abscess or hydronephrosis, in the central part of the



Fig 19—Diffuse melanotic sarcoma of the thoracic and abdominal viscera

abdomen above the umbilicus by a dilated stomach partially filled with fluid or by a dilated colon partially filled with gas and fluid. Over the left hypochondriac region it may be due to a left-sided perinephritic abscess, hydronephrosis, cyst, pyonephritis (abscess in the pelvis of the kidney), splenic abscess or to various forms of cysts which may occupy that region.

#### IV Tumors of the Abdomen

These may be *superficial* e.g. tumors arising from the abdominal wall or *deep seated* if they originate in the abdominal viscera. Those of the abdominal wall are readily differentiated by palpation from

those originating in the internal viscera. Superficial tumors usually move with the skin but if deep seated the skin will move over them.

*Superficial tumors* may be lipomata, fibromata, fibroneuromata, myomata, cysts, abscesses or moles. An epigastric hernia particularly when irreducible may resemble a solid tumor or a cyst, but may be differentiated from them by the peculiar resistant elastic texture and by the presence of tympany on percussion. A superficial tumor is first palpated by running the fingers over the surface in order to determine its contour. The tumor mass is then grasped between the tips of the fingers of one or both hands. In this way its consistency, size and shape are more accurately determined. *Deep seated tumors* are recognized by deep palpation with both hands so that the tumor mass can be grasped in order to determine its size, shape, consistency and mobility. *Movable intraabdominal tumors* may represent displaced organs or neoplasms.



Fig 20—Epigastric hernia

An abdominal tumor palpated in the epigastrium may be a carcinoma of the stomach, liver, pancreas, omentum or duodenum. Such a tumor is as a rule immovable and is not influenced by respiration. The same holds true of aneurysm of the abdominal aorta. A tumor mass in the right upper quadrant prob-

ably indicates a distended gallbladder, hydatid cyst, abscess, gumma or malignant tumor of the liver, a cystic or otherwise enlarged kidney or hypernephroma.

Small nodular or bosselated masses on the liver surface are found in atrophic cirrhosis of the liver, malignancy, syphilis, Hodgkin's disease and hepatic tuberculosis. If a tumor mass is connected with the liver, spleen or kidney, when these structures are in contact with the diaphragm, a downward displacement will be felt during inspiration. Tumor masses that are soft and yielding may be caused by dilatation of the intestines or stomach. Tumors in the lower portion of the abdomen may result from ovarian cyst, uterine fibroid, ectopic pregnancy, tuberculous peritonitis, Hodgkin's disease and fecal masses or concretions.

**Diagnosis.** In the diagnosis of abdominal tumors Butler<sup>1</sup> offers the following suggestions:

**'Points to be Observed.** If one is satisfied of the presence of a tumor, the following points remain for determination:

'Is it intraabdominal or extraabdominal? Is it freely movable and does it move with respiration? What is its size, shape, consistence, the nature of its surface? Does it fluctuate? In what region of the abdomen does it lie? From what organ, if any, does it spring?

'1. If situated in the abdominal wall it is usually possible to gather up either in one hand or between both that portion of the abdominal wall overlying the tumor when the latter can be distinctly felt to lie in the grasp of the hand. An intraabdominal growth, on the contrary, cannot thus be elevated and seized, the abdominal wall slipping easily over

it unless it has contracted firm parietal adhesions.

'2. The mobility of the tumor should be tested by moving it in various directions, observing the extent of movement and the line in which it is most readily pushed, *e g* floating kidney, which is most easily carried upward and backward.



Fig. 21.—Enlargement of abdomen due to large liver.

'If, when the hand is laid upon the tumor, the latter is found to move up and down with each respiration it may be inferred that it springs from organs in close relation with the diaphragm, *e g* liver, spleen and to a less extent the kidney. This is a sign which possesses considerable diagnostic value, but it must be remembered that the tumor may have contracted adhesions in such a manner as to produce the same effect. On the other hand tumors which would ordinarily move with respiration may be hindered from so doing by interference with the contraction of the diaphragm consequent upon pleurisy, emphysema or a greatly enlarged liver or spleen.

The tumors which are readily movable by palpation and which descend when the patient is in the erect position

are floating liver, spleen and kidney, tumor of the stomach (especially pyloric) or intestine, fecal masses or concretions, and gallstones. *Slightly movable* are tumors of the gallbladder and omentum above, of the uterus and ovaries below. *Immovable* are tumors of the pancreas, aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, abscess or inflammation due to disease of the appendix, tumor of bone or abscess resulting from caries, and enlarged retroperitoneal glands or abscess. Tumors of the stomach or intestine may change position with the peristaltic movements.

3. Note also its size, approximately or by measurement, its shape, round or ovoid, or irregular, its surface, whether smooth or nodular, and its consistency—soft, doughy, and indentible (fecal mass), moderately hard or stony. Can fluctuation be obtained, i.e., is it of a cystic nature with fluid or semifluid contents (hydronephrosis or pyonephrosis, ovarian cystoma, distended bladder, hydatid cyst, pregnant uterus, ectopic gestation or encysted abscess)? If fluctuation is present test for the 'hydatid thrill,' by placing three fingers over the fluctuating mass and percussing strongly upon the middle one of the three, letting the plexor or striking finger rest at the end of each stroke, when, if the thrill is elicited, it will be perceived by the two lateral fingers.

"4. Observe carefully in what part or region of the abdomen the swelling or tumor lies.

"5. Determine as accurately as possible whether it is entirely of abdominal origin or whether it springs from the pelvis. Careful deep palpation just above the brim of the pelvis, together with a rectal or vaginal examination will usually determine this point but cases occur in which errors are quite possible. e.g.

an abscess of the ovary rising out of the pelvis, sufficiently high to be diagnosed as an appendiceal abscess.

"A decision as to the particular organ or structure from which a tumor springs, or a diagnosis of the nature and seat of the disease causing local swelling or bulging in various parts of the abdomen depends not only upon the location and character of the tumor or swelling, but also, and often to a large extent, upon the history of the case and the results of chemical and microscopical examinations of the sputum, gastric contents, blood, urine, or feces and the x ray findings.

#### *"Indications Derived from the Situation of Abdominal Swelling or Tumors*

For the sake of clinical convenience in describing the significance of swellings or tumors according to the part of the abdomen in which they are found, one may recognize seven areas or regions each named, with two exceptions (pelvic and umbilical) after the most important organ or part underlying it. These areas—the boundaries of which necessarily overlap to some extent—are in the median line, gastric, umbilical and pelvic, to the right, the hepatic and appendiceal, to the left the splenic and sigmoid. Furthermore, as certain bulgings or tumors may occupy almost any point in the abdominal cavity, it is practicable to form according to their distribution but with some necessary repetition, eight groups of palpable abdominal lesions. It is helpful from a diagnostic viewpoint to have in mind the possible findings when palpating and percussing special regions or areas of the abdomen. It is to be remembered that a tumor or an enlarged organ in one of these areas may grow to such dimensions that it underlies several of these areas or indeed, may occupy nearly the entire abdominal cavity—e.g.

liver spleen ovarian tumor—but careful palpation aided perhaps by the history, enables it to be traced to its origin in a particular region'

A localized abscess in the abdomen may be a result of disease of an abdom-

inal or thoracic viscus also of disease or caries of the spinal vertebrae the lower ribs, or other pelvic bones The accumulated pus may follow the sheath of a muscle and thus form an extraperitoneal tumor

### **The Significance of Palpable Masses in the Abdomen**

#### **WITHOUT DEFINITE LOCATION**

Fecal masses (in course of colon)  
Large gallstones or fecal concretions (in intestines)  
Floating kidney (usually remains on its own side but may be found anywhere between ribs and pelvis)  
Tumor of intussusception  
Pyloric tumor usually cancer (very movable)  
Phantom tumor Omental cysts  
Masses of tuberculous or carcinomatous peritonitis  
Enlarged glands (tuberculosis cancer Hodgkin's disease)

#### **RIGHT UPPER QUADRANT**

Enlarged liver (passive congestion hypertrophic cirrhosis atrophic cirrhosis (early stage) hydatid cyst gumma amyloid disease abscess)  
Movable and prolapsed liver  
Gallbladder (pear shaped mass) distended with bile pus stones or enlarged by cancer  
Movable or enlarged kidney (hydronephrosis or pyonephrosis cancer)  
Hypernephroma  
Perinephritic abscess  
Subphrenic abscess (rarely palpable)  
Abscess due to caries of vertebrae  
Cancer or fecal mass at or below hepatic flexure of colon  
Enlarged retroperitoneal glands  
Mesenteric cyst

#### **RIGHT LOWER QUADRANT**

Acute appendicitis (when swollen or suppurative)  
Chronic appendicitis (sausage shaped tumor palpable)  
Fecal impaction in cecum  
Fecal abscess perforating ulcer of colon  
Tumor of intussusception  
Foreign bodies (gallstones fecal impaction enteroliths)  
Cancer of cecum or ascending colon  
Retroperitoneal sarcoma  
Floating or enlarged kidney

#### **LEFT UPPER QUADRANT**

Enlarged or movable and prolapsed spleen  
Enlarged or movable and prolapsed kidney  
Perinephritic abscess  
Dilated stomach (enteroliths)  
Fecal accumulation  
Effusion in lesser peritoneal cavity  
Subphrenic abscess  
Abscess due to spinal caries  
Hypernephroma  
Retroperitoneal sarcoma  
Omental cyst

#### **LEFT LOWER QUADRANT**

Cancer of sigmoid flexure or descending colon  
Fecal accumulation (enteroliths gallstones)  
Psoas abscess  
Fecal abscess  
Enlarged glands  
Tuberculous peritonitis  
Cancerous peritonitis  
Intussusception  
Hernia  
Movable spleen  
Movable kidney  
Ovarian tumor Ovarian abscess



RIGHT LOWER QUADRANT (*Continued*)

Ovarian cyst or abscess  
Cyst of broad ligament.  
Pyosalpinx  
Hematoma or hematocele (ruptured ectopic gestation)  
Psoas abscess  
Inguinal hernia fibroid tumors  
Tuberculosis of omentum

LEFT LOWER QUADRANT (*Continued*)

Cyst of broad ligament  
Hematoma or hematocele  
Fibroid tumors

UPPER ABDOMEN

Fatty tumor or abscess of abdominal wall  
Distended stomach (gas fluid food)  
Dilated stomach (rarely)  
Tumor of pylorus or anterior wall of stomach (usually cancer)  
Induration of chronic gastric ulcer (rarely)  
Cyst cancer or sclerosis of pancreas or acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis  
Tumor cancer hydatid cyst or enlargement (part of general increase) of left lobe of liver  
Distended or cancerous gallbladder (bile pus concretions) (right side of area)  
Cancer of transverse colon  
Tumor of intussusception  
Tuberculous or cancerous omentum (transverse cordlike tumor)  
Enlarged posterior mediastinal mesenteric or retroperitoneal glands (tuberculous cancerous Hodgkin's disease)  
Tuberculous abscess  
Subphrenic abscess (rarely palpable)  
Aneurysm of abdominal aorta (middle line)  
Effusion into lesser peritoneal cavity (to left)

MIDABDOMEN

Umbilical hernia  
Dilated and distended (gas fluid) stomach  
Large cancer of stomach  
Movable and prolapsed or enlarged kidney spleen or liver  
Enteroptosis (bulging)  
Cancer of intestine or omentum (tumor)  
Prolapsed colon (transverse cord in lower portion of area)  
Enlarged mesenteric glands (tubercle cancer etc)  
Tuberculous or cancerous peritonitis  
Projecting vertebrae (simulating a tumor)

PELVIC (PUBIC) AREA

In median line Distended bladder uterus (pregnant) or fibroid tumor  
Laterally Ovarian tumor abscess of ovary masses due to pyosalpinx ruptured ectopic gestation (hematoma) tuberculous peritonitis or an unusually long inflamed appendix lying in the pelvis

**V Location of the Abdominal Organs** Only such abdominal organs are palpable as are of a different consistency from the surrounding viscera

Among the organs which can be easily distinguished are the liver, the gallbladder (when distended), the spleen (when enlarged) and the kidneys (when an

placed or in very thin individuals) All other abdominal organs cannot, as a rule, be outlined by palpation alone

**Technic for Palpating Abdominal Organs Liver** The patient lies supine, avoiding all muscular rigidity. In order to have the abdominal muscles more flaccid the thighs should be somewhat drawn up, the shoulders raised and supported by a pillow, the patient should be instructed to breathe regularly, preferably through the mouth. The examiner places one hand over the patient's right

mobility. When displaced, it is not as a rule, influenced by respiration.

**Spleen** Normally the spleen cannot be located by touch, but when enlarged, its palpability depends upon its size. A moderately enlarged spleen such as is found in typhoid fever, can be felt in the left hypochondriac region immediately below the left costal margin. The examiner placing his hand below the costal margin, the patient is instructed to take a deep breath while the examiner moves his palpating hand upward. At the height



FIG. 22.—Technic for palpating liver.

percussion is usually required as an aid. Even when enlarged only the exposed portions of the liver, spleen and kidney can be outlined by palpation while that part of the liver, kidneys and spleen situated within the thorax must be demonstrated by percussion. The stomach may be approximately outlined by palpa-



Fig 24—Mediate percussion of abdomen locating lower edge of stomach

tion only when it is greatly distended and not very accurately at that the pancreas and other deeply situated abdominal organs (except the uterus) can never be palpated with any degree of accuracy. In order to outline the size of an enlarged liver the technic employed is similar to that used for locating the other abdominal organs in addition to which the hand may be made to conform gently to its outlines so that its consistency, size and the shape of its edge can thus be determined. The spleen is palpated in the same manner as is the liver. Its size, consistency and shape may be determined with the finger tips always being careful so as to cause as much mobility as possible. A kidney when displaced and movable can be grasped between the hands and moved a considerable distance from its original location or it may be pushed up to its nor-

mal position. A very large kidney should be palpated for its consistency, in order to determine if it be cystic, hydronephrotic or the seat of an abscess. In the case of abscess the kidney is felt as a soft boggy, often fluctuating mass. If the enlargement is due to amyloid disease or any other condition affecting the interstitial structure of the kidney, it can be felt as a hard, roughly bean-shaped organ.

### Percussion of the Abdomen and Its Viscera

Though percussion of the abdomen is secondary in importance to palpation it is useful in confirming inspected and palpated signs and in demonstrating the size of organs that are so situated as to make palpation impossible.

**Technic.** The patient assumes a dorsal position with all the muscles relaxed. The examiner employs the same technic for percussing the abdomen as is used in percussion of the thorax though the stroke is usually lighter and the diagnostic accuracy necessarily less acute. The note obtained over the normal abdomen is tympanitic because the greater part of it is occupied by the stomach and intestines; these organs usually contain a sufficient quantity of air or gas to give the abdomen a tympanitic note. The pitch and intensity, as well as the clearness of this note, vary in different regions depending entirely upon the viscus percussed, its degree of fullness and the admixture of solid material with liquid and air.

Over the small intestines in the umbilical area the tympany is of high pitch, not quite so loud and clear as it is over the colon. The tympany over an empty stomach is much clearer than that elic-

ited immediately after the ingestion of food

The degree of tension always affects the tympanitic note, the greater the tension in a viscus, the higher will be the pitch elicited. This should be borne in mind when one attempts to outline the stomach or the large and small intestine, particularly near their borders, because a portion of the small intestine greatly distended near an empty stomach will cause an erroneous conclusion to be drawn. It is, therefore, rather unwise to rely upon percussion alone as a means of outlining the stomach, colon and small intestines. An x ray study following the administration of barium is more dependable.

*Exaggerated tympany over the abdomen* may be caused by overdistention of a bowel with gas, this note is also obtained in peritonitis, atrophy of the bowel and stomach, typhoid fever, intestinal obstruction (over the bowel this side of the point of obstruction), dilatation of the stomach, rupture of the stomach or bowel into the peritoneal cavity from an ulcer, tuberculosis or other ulcerous lesions, and in artificial pneumoperitoneum.

*Dullness* is elicited over the liver, spleen, kidneys, enlarged uterus, cyst, solid tumors, free fluid, or any other pathological condition that will give rise to a dull note.

In order to determine the outline of the liver and spleen, percussion should always be started from the clear portion of the abdomen and carried upward toward the dull area. It should be remembered, however, that the actual size of the spleen and liver cannot always be mapped out by percussion because of the adjacent resonance producing tissue.

The pancreas cannot be outlined by percussion because of its peculiar anatomical position.

The kidneys can often be outlined by percussing posteriorly, starting at or about the ninth rib close to the spine, kidney dullness can usually be elicited in the tenth interspace, or at the eleventh



Fig. 25—Auscultatory percussion.

venth rib. The absence of a kidney is easily demonstrated by the presence of tympany in that location.

*Pathologically*, dullness is obtained in the different abdominal regions in ascites, psoas abscess, when not overshadowed by much tympany, hydro- and pyonephrosis, fecal impactions, enlarged mesenteric glands, tuberculosis of the peritoneum, and aortic and mesenteric aneurysm, cysts, tumors connected with various glands of the omentum, tuberculous peritonitis, generalized carcinomatosis and collapse of the bowels.

**Auscultatory Percussion.** This is a method lauded by many clinicians and condemned as worthless by others. It is sometimes of use when palpation and percussion do not yield satisfactory results. The value of this procedure de-

depends upon the expertness of the clinician who undertakes to elicit signs by this method. To the experienced, it is a fairly accurate method for outlining the upper border of the liver in cases of right sided pleural effusion. In this condition the stethoscope should be placed below the costal margin over an exposed portion of the liver. When the percussing finger strikes the upper border of the liver, the quality of the sound heard is different from that elicited over the free fluid. However, one cannot be certain that the line of demarcation is very accurate. The vibrating tuning fork may at times be employed with success for the same purpose.

### Auscultation of the Abdomen and Its Viscera

Auscultation of the abdomen is of limited value, though there are various sounds constantly occurring in the gastrointestinal tract, with which the student should become familiar. Auscultation is employed for the detection of aortic pulsation either direct when the aorta is in contact with the abdominal wall, or transmitted pulsation from the aorta through some viscus and for the recognition of aneurysm of the abdominal aorta, fetal heart sounds, borborygmus, peristalsis and hydatid fremitus.

*Borborygmus* is the splashing gurgling sound constantly heard over the large intestine. Its absence denotes complete obstruction of the bowels, i.e., torsion, volvulus, paralytic ileus or strangulated hernia. A high pitched metallic tinkle and often amphoric bubbling sounds are heard in the left hypochondriac region, this is caused by the agitation of fluid and air within the stomach. These sounds should not be mistaken for those that may occur in the chest. Aneurysmal bruit and peritoneal friction sounds are indicative of important conditions and can be elicited only by auscultation. Fetal heart sounds are of great importance as an aid in differentiating pregnancy from other conditions that may simulate it and also in determining whether or not the fetus is living.

*Transmitted aortic pulsation* may be heard over the entire abdomen in the presence of tuberculous peritonitis particularly when the omentum is thickened and lies adjacent to the aorta. A greatly distended stomach or transverse colon when in close proximity to the aorta or abdominal adhesions surrounding the aorta may be the cause of transmitted pulsation. In aortic regurgitation pulsation may be heard in the epigastrium, over the site of the aorta anteriorly and posteriorly and in the inguinal regions.

## CHAPTER XXI

# Examination and Diseases of the Liver, Gallbladder and Spleen

### The Liver

#### Physical Examination of the Liver

The liver is studied chiefly by palpation. Inspection may reveal enlargement in the hepatic region and the condition of the skin, whether it is jaundiced or not, percussion is an aid in confirming and often in elucidating certain signs obtained by palpation, particularly as to

(IV) size, consistency, conditions of the surface and edge. Associated constitutional symptoms and various laboratory tests are always to be considered when the liver is studied.

I **Alterations in Contour** The liver may lose its normal contour because of the presence of some neoplasm

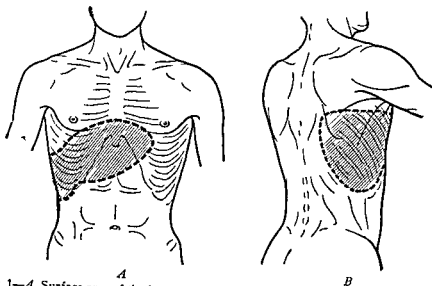


Fig 1—A, Surface area of the liver anteriorly B Surface area of the liver posteriorly (After Lejars)

size and position, auscultation is of value only in cases where pulsations of the liver are both visible and palpable, auscultatory percussion may occasionally aid in outlining the upper, lower and left borders of the liver when palpation and percussion yield unreliable information.

The liver is studied as to its (I) contour, (II) position (III) mobility, (600)

upon its surface, such as a cyst sarcoma, carcinoma, gumma, abscess or other tumor. Injury to the liver may change its outline by reason of scar formation. Pressure of any kind upon a certain portion of the liver will cause distortion.

II **Position** The normal position of the liver may be influenced by (a) Conditions in the chest pushing the liver

downward (b) conditions in the abdomen pushing the liver upward and (c) conditions in the abdomen pulling the liver downward

(a) Conditions in the chest which may push the liver downward are large pleural effusions pneumothorax tumor of

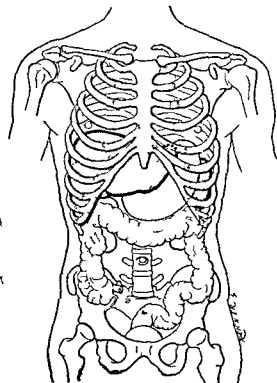


Fig 2—Diagram of the liver spleen, large intestine and stomach viewed anteriorly (After Letulle)

the lung a diaphragmatic abscess and aneurysm

(b) Conditions in the abdomen pushing the liver upward are large ascites chronic distention of the hepatic flexure and the colon acute or chronic peritonitis and tumors of the kidney in women pregnancy and ovarian cyst when very large

(c) Conditions in the abdomen causing the liver to descend are relaxation of the ligament which holds the liver in position and general visceroptosis

**III Mobility** A limited amount of motion: a descent during inspiration and ascent during expiration is normal to this organ. In visceroptosis and long continued ascites a moderate amount of mobility will be found. A true floating liver is extremely rare; it may result from a violent injury or a sudden strain such as is induced by vomiting or choking, heavy lifting or violent coughing. Rapid emaciation and tight lacing may also produce a floating liver. Because of the rarity of this condition it is assumed that a floating liver can occur only when there is congestion tending toward relaxation.

**IV Size** Pathologically the liver may be increased or diminished in size because of disease, though there are a number of diseases to which this organ is subject in which no appreciable change in its size can be noted.

## Diseases of the Liver

### Jaundice (Icterus)

Jaundice is classified in three general groups: namely (I) Obstructive (II) hemolytic (III) hepatocellular (toxic infectious hepatic suppression jaundice and several subgroups). The degree of jaundice depends upon the amount of bilirubin in the blood. The type of jaundice depends upon the method by which bilirubin has entered the circulation.

**Icterus Index** The amount of bilirubin in the blood may be judged by the 'icterus index' or the quantitative Van den Bergh test. The normal icterus index is between 0.1 and 0.5 mg per cent or about one part of bilirubin in 200,000 parts of blood serum. When the icterus index reaches 1 mg per cent a subicteroid tint may be noted in the conjunctivae or skin. Values above 1

structive jaundice may be caused by pressure exerted upon the gallbladder or the liver by fecal accumulation in the hepatic flexure, uterine tumors, and greatly distended pregnant uterus (c) Obstruction may be caused by disease of the walls of the ducts as in cholangitis choledochitis, injury to the gall ducts catarrhal jaundice due to swelling of the mouth of the common bile duct, allergic swelling of the bile ducts infective or suppurative cholangitis and duodenal catarrh causing obstruction in the region of the papilla of Vater

**Symptoms** Because of the obstruction to the entrance of bile into the intestines the bile pigment is reabsorbed from the liver into the blood stream The skin and mucous membranes become yellow, the sweat and tears are also yellow but the saliva cerebrospinal fluid and mucus of the alimentary canal are not bile stained The urine is very dark because of its bile content When the bile obstruction is complete urobilin is absent from the urine and the stool is clay colored The qualitative Van den Bergh reaction is prompt direct The quantitative Van den Bergh reaction and the color index are high There is usually itching of the skin occasionally purpuric spots may appear on the skin and mucous membranes Blood coagulation is delayed and the pulse is slow The kidney threshold for bilirubin is comparatively low Bile appears in the urine when the bilirubin concentration in the blood reaches 1 to 50 000

**II Hemolytic Jaundice** In this type of jaundice the large amount of bilirubin which stains the tissues is caused by excessive destruction of the red blood corpuscles The hemoglobin thus set free is converted into bilirubin by the reticulo endothelial system such as the spleen

the endothelial cells of Kupffer, etc, and not by the glandular cells of the liver Because this type of bilirubin is not a liver product, the qualitative Van den Bergh reaction is indirect The kidney threshold for this type of jaundice is higher than in the obstructive type Bile may not be detected in the urine until the bile concentration in the blood is very high The urine is, therefore not very dark and the stool is very, very dark because of the large amount of bile pigment that finds its way into the intestinal canal by way of the liver, though the liver does not participate in the formation of this type of bilirubin When large amounts of bile pigment occur in the stool and none in the urine it is known as acholuric jaundice (SEE p 559)

The blood destruction occurs chiefly in the spleen liver lymph nodes and bone marrow but with respect to some of the conditions belonging under the head of hemolytic jaundice we have little knowledge of the place of blood destruction

Two types of hemolytic jaundice are recognized (1) The acquired type (Havem Widal) (2) the congenital or familial (cholemie familiale Chauffard Minkowski) In both far greater amounts than the threshold value of four units of bile pigment may be present in the blood without bile appearing in the urine hence the synonym acholuric jaundice In most cases the bile is excreted in the urine in increased amounts as urobilin and in the feces as stercobilin

The two groups congenital or familial and acquired, are not often separated since there are many border line cases as for example congenital cases with negative family history Such cases are



perhaps better classified with the acquired type

Gallstones are quite common in familial or congenital hemolytic jaundice but seem to bear no etiologic relation to the jaundice

One may place under the head of acquired hemolytic jaundice the icterus found in pernicious anemia and allied conditions in which the Van den Bergh test shows increased value of the icterus index but in which there is no choloria

The cause of hemolytic jaundice is either some defect in the blood or some disease of the spleen

**Icterus Neonatorum** This is a type of hemolytic jaundice due to rapid blood destruction. It may be benign or malignant. The benign form appears in a considerable number of newborn babies during the first few days of life. The grave form of icterus neonatorum is due to sepsis usually of umbilical origin to syphilis of the liver or to congenital absence of the bile ducts. The blood gives a positive indirect but negative direct Van den Bergh reaction

A rare example is the familial type of jaundice of the newborn, a grave disease occurring less often in the children of the first and second pregnancies than in those of later birth. Those that recover often show permanent cerebral or cerebellar defects

**III Hepatocellular Jaundice** (non obstructive Hepatic Jaundice) Two clinical groups are recognized in this type of jaundice

**1 Catarrhal Jaundice** (infectious) This is a type of jaundice occurring chiefly in children and young adults. It may occur in epidemics or singly. It may be due to duodenitis, cholangitis or to acholasia of the bile ducts or of the splncter of Odi. There may be various

degrees of jaundice, enlargement of the liver, and moderate rise in temperature. Severe pain is absent

**2 Toxic Hepatic Jaundice** (infectious hepatic suppression) This type is caused by certain toxins in the body which destroy the red blood cells and liver cells, and is found in conditions of poisoning by snake venom, chloroform, ether, chloral, potassium chlorate, cinchophen, arsenic and arsphenamine, phosphorus, mercury, arsenobenzol derivatives, trinitrotoluene, tetrachlorethane vapors, sulfanilamide, sulfapyridine, etc. It may be caused by overdoses of x-ray or radium

It is also seen in newborn children, pyemia, yellow fever, pneumonia (some times), Weil's disease (spirochetosis, icterohemorrhagica or leptospirosis), acute yellow atrophy of liver, epidemic influenza, typhoid fever, typhus fever, scarlet fever, relapsing fever and after abdominal operations (rare)

Toxic jaundice may be slight or severe. It is never prolonged because the patient either recovers or dies in a short time. In this disease the feces is not clay colored. In fact it may be darker than normal and the urine does not necessarily contain an excessive amount of bile pigment

Toxic jaundice was formerly classified as hematogenous icterus while the obstructive variety was known as hepatogenous. This type of jaundice (the hepatocellular) is the commonest variety. It gives a biphasic Van den Bergh reaction because there occurs both blood and liver destruction

**Dissociated Icterus** French writers and Hoover and Blondheim in this country have called attention to dissociated icterus that is one in which the bile salts and bile pigment are separate and do not occur together in the blood

or urine They recognize (a) A hepatic dissociated icterus in which bile salt and bile pigments are separately present in the plasma as the result of separate hepatic excretions into the blood (b) a renal dissociated icterus in which the bile pigment alone is present in the plasma due to renal excretion of the bile salts The subject is one requiring further investigation

### *Diseases of the Liver Characterized by Enlargement*

Normally the liver may be displaced by hydrothorax or pneumothorax and may be mistaken for enlargement Therefore it is always important to examine the chest when the lower edge of the liver extends beyond the 10th rib anteriorly When the liver is elongated though otherwise normal it may extend below the right costal margin

*Riedel's lobe of the liver* This is a tongue-like downward projection of the right lobe of the liver which may be mistaken for a displaced or diseased kidney or a tumor It however moves with respiration, is not readily displaced by manipulation, is not tender and is not associated with enlargement of other parts of the liver

Enlargement of the liver is observed in (a) Hypertrophic or biliary cirrhosis (Hanot's) (b) early stages of atrophic cirrhosis (portal cirrhosis) (c) passive congestion (myocardial failure) (d) sarcoma (e) carcinoma (f) abscess (g) amyloid degeneration (h) fatty infiltration (i) leukemia (j) echinococcus (k) simple cyst (l) syphilis of the liver (m) actinomycosis (n) tuberculosis of the liver (o) diabetes (rare) (p) Weil's disease (q) angiosarcoma (r) Banji's disease (s) perihepatitis early stages (t) hemochromatosis

(bronzed diabetes) (u) von Gierke's disease (v) Hodgkin's disease, (w) acute suppurative cholangitis (x) acute hepatitis (nonsuppurative), (y) obstructive jaundice (z) Gaucher's disease (aa) rickets and (ab) temporarily it may occur in association with febrile and other diseases

(a) *Hypertrophic Biliary or Hanot's Cirrhosis* *Inspection* will reveal generalized jaundice of the skin mucous membranes and sclera fullness in the hypochondriac region and dark bile stained urine and clay colored stool On *palpation* the edge of the liver will be found hard and rounded and lying one to three inches below the right costal margin Its surface will be smooth and resisting and the left lobe will be palpable as far as the left midclavicular line and often two to three inches below the lower sternal edge *Percussion* will often elicit the upper line of dullness as high as the fifth rib in some instances extending as high as the third intercostal space or fourth rib Liver dullness at the lower border usually coincides with the palpated lower border of the organ There usually is associated enlargement of the spleen No *auscultatory signs* indicative of this form of liver disease are obtainable

*Symptoms* This disease is insidious in its onset and manifests itself by progressive loss of strength jaundice fever at irregular intervals and symptoms of indigestion ascites is rarely if ever present unless biliary and portal cirrhosis coexist When it occurs in childhood it is associated with stunted growth enlargement of the spleen and intense itching

*Pathology* The enlargement of the liver is due to increased connective tissue formation around each single lobule,

hence the name "unilobular cirrhosis". The pathological changes are the result of contraction of the bile ducts (for which reason it is often termed 'biliary cirrhosis'), and the accompanying jaundice. This may follow chronic obstruction of the bile ducts or chronic infection. It is commoner in males than in females. It is a rare disease.

(b) **Atrophic cirrhosis of the liver** (portal cirrhosis, Laennec's cirrhosis) is caused by a deposit of connective tissue around the blood vessels, the consequent contraction producing obstruction to the portal circulation. During the early stages of atrophic cirrhosis, when the connective tissue is being deposited the liver necessarily enlarges, but as soon as the connective tissue begins to shrink the liver is only moderately enlarged, and does not produce any usual symptoms. Pulsations may sometimes be noted. When the stage of actual diminution in the size of the liver has taken place, the liver becomes small often bosselated ('hobnailed liver') and presents the following well known signs: *e.* ascites, distended veins, caput medusae, hypertension, hemorrhoids and little if any jaundice (SEE p 615).

(c) **Chronic Congestion or Passive Congestion.** This is due to venous obstruction.

**Symptoms.** The liver is tender and there is a sensation of fullness and weight in the hepatic region. In the early stages there is often expansile pulsation synchronous with the heartbeat. There are signs of venous obstruction, ascites often develops and a mild degree of jaundice and gastrointestinal disturbances are quite common.

**Etiology.** The commonest cause of venous or passive congestion is back pressure due to heart failure following

regurgitation and failure of the right ventricle. It does not matter which heart valve is the etiological factor in causing decompensation. The heart lesion, most frequently responsible for back pressure sufficient to produce tricuspid insufficiency, is mitral disease. A tumor pressing upon the inferior vena cava above the diaphragm may also bring about passive congestion of the liver.

**Diagnosis.** On inspection the patient is cyanosed, usually dyspneic and may be slightly jaundiced, the abdomen is enlarged particularly late in the disease, and the abdominal veins are distended. In the early stages the liver is palpable a short distance below the right costal border, and is often pulsating. In the later stages it is very much enlarged, smooth and presents a rounded edge. The liver is tender to pressure, and the lower edge may extend as low as the umbilicus or even lower, depending upon the severity of the condition and the length of time it has existed. In the presence of ascites fluctuation will be demonstrable. It is often difficult to outline the liver by percussion because passive congestion of long standing is usually associated with a right sided hydrothorax which masks the upper limit of liver dullness, and the lower border is often encroached upon by an accompanying ascites. Auscultation is of little value, though auscultatory percussion will often give a clue as to the approximate upper and lower borders of the liver.

(d) **Sarcoma of the Liver.** This is usually secondary to sarcoma of a bone or other tissue of the body. Primary sarcoma of the liver is extremely rare. A sarcoma may occur either as a large nodular mass displacing an area of liver tissue or as diffused infiltrating growth. In the latter type the enlargement is not

as great as it is in the first variety mentioned

**Diagnosis:** On *inspection*, the patient, usually a young adult or a child, appears very much emaciated, and often

nodules appear on the undersurface of the liver, they are not palpable through the belly wall. *Fluctuation* is often demonstrable, and the fluid is blood tinged. *Percussion* will aid in



Fig. 3—Carcinomatosis of liver

jaundiced and cachectic, in most cases the primary seat of the lesion can be demonstrated. *Palpation* will reveal either a large nodular mass, or numerous small nodules in various parts of the liver which are somewhat tender, but not very painful to touch, when

demonstrating the size of the liver. *Auscultation* is entirely negative.

(e) **Carcinoma of the Liver.** This is usually secondary to carcinoma of other organs, *e g*, the stomach or the gallbladder, pancreas, adrenal, prostate, rectum, uterus, breast, mediastinum.

lungs, kidney, eye, etc. Primary carcinoma of the liver is rare.

**Symptoms:** In rare cases cancer of the liver may be latent, the patient complaining only of vague pains around the hepatic region, symptoms of indigestion and progressive loss of strength. Usually, however, there is pain or tenderness over the liver, the pain—either dull or sharp—being often referable to the right shoulder.

**Diagnosis:** On inspection, the patient appears thin, emaciated and generally cachectic. There is usually a light yellow tinge to the skin and conjunctivae, and when the bile ducts are affected or there is associated carcinoma of the gall bladder, deep jaundice is the rule. The superficial veins are usually enlarged, puffiness of the lower eyelids and the ankles will be in evidence, this is caused by associated cardiac weakness and anemia. *Palpation* will reveal either slight or moderate enlargement, depending entirely upon the position of the carcinoma and the stage of the disease. The surface of the liver may be nodular, the nodes being umbilicated, in cases where there are no nodules the organ will be hard and unyielding to the touch. Ascites is not a common complication but a small amount of bloody fluid is frequently found. There usually is associated enlargement of the spleen. *Percussion* confirms palpation as to the size of the liver and the presence or absence of ascites. *Ultr* percussion will elicit sharp pain over the liver region. *Auscultation* is entirely negative.

(f) **Abscess of the Liver or "Suppurative Hepatitis"** By abscess of the liver is meant an accumulation of pus in the liver tissue. In the majority of cases the condition is the result of some infectious process carried to the

liver by the portal circulation. Its etiological factor may be an infectious embolism or thrombus from the lung suppurative endocarditis, infection by the colon bacilli, or the endamoebae histolytica, and other intestinal parasites. The abscess may be single, multiple, or may occur as a diffuse suppuration.

**Symptoms:** There is sudden sharp pain radiating towards the shoulder, and often along the diaphragm; this is intensified by pressure, while a change of posture often relieves it. The site of the pain usually depends upon the position of the abscess. Chills, fever and sweats are constant symptoms usually with progressive weakness, emaciation and all the evidences of chronic sepsis. In the presence of amebic abscess diarrhea is a common symptom.

**Diagnosis:** *Inspection* shows the patient to be anemic and emaciated, jaundice usually develops, particularly when the abscess involves the bile ducts. When the abscess is superficial, bulging over the region where it is located may be noted, if the abscess is subdiaphragmatic, limited right-sided chest expansion will be observed.

On *palpation* the liver is enlarged and the abdominal muscles over the liver are somewhat rigid, if the abscess is superficial, a soft, somewhat fluctuating mass may be elicited, while if it involves the peritoneal surface, friction fremitus and tenderness may be present, if subdiaphragmatic a tender point may be located in the right upper abdomen.

*Percussion* confirms the palpation signs of enlargement of the liver. In subdiaphragmatic abscess the descent of the diaphragm as elicited by percussion is much less than on the opposite side.

(g) **Amyloid Disease.** Amyloid disease of the liver is usually secondary to

chronic suppuration and is, at times, found in bone tuberculosis and syphilis. It is also found in rickets, carcinoma and is often associated with lymphatic leukemia. In fact, any suppuration, if long continued, may produce amyloid disease of the liver, spleen and kidneys.

On *inspection*, the skin is usually pale and the upper abdomen bulges. *Palpation* shows the liver moderately or enormously enlarged, smooth and firm, with its edge usually rounded and blunt, though in some cases a sharp, well-defined margin can be palpated. The liver is not tender to pressure, nor does change of posture cause pain. The spleen is proportionately enlarged. *Percussion* emphasizes the size of the liver and spleen. Ascites, jaundice and enlarged veins are usually absent.

(h) **Fatty Liver.** *Fatty infiltration* consists of an infiltration of fat in the parenchyma of the liver. *Fatty degeneration*, as its name implies, consists of fatty degeneration of the liver structures and usually affects the parenchyma by displacing liver tissue by fat.

**Symptoms.** These, as a rule, are few and not pathognomonic. The condition is usually found in those inclined to obesity, though it may occur in sufferers from chronic diseases which interfere with oxidation, e.g., tuberculosis, certain forms of anemia, malaria, carcinoma, syphilis and phosphorous poisoning.

**Diagnosis.** *Inspection* usually shows obesity but no alteration in the normal appearance of the skin, no venous enlargements and no edema. There may be bulging in the liver region due to enlargement. On *palpation* the liver may be felt as either moderately or enormously enlarged. The surface is smooth and soft and palpation does not elicit pain or tenderness. The edge is decidedly

thickened and smooth. *Percussion* confirms palpation as to the size of the liver. Ascites is absent. Fatty infiltration is often diagnosed by the presence of a large liver and the absence of other symptoms.

(i) **Leukemia:** In myeloid leukemia the liver as well as the spleen is enlarged.

**Symptoms:** Progressive weakness, pallor, dyspnea, ringing in the ears and dizziness, often nausea and vomiting, hemoptysis and epistaxis are the most frequent complaints. As the disease progresses, dimness of vision, severe anemia, cutaneous hemorrhage, and—in some cases—itching are marked.

**Diagnosis.** On *inspection*, the skin presents a muddy pallor, accompanied by edema of the face, hands and feet, the abdomen is distended, the greatest distention being noticeable in the splenic region. *Palpation* shows the skin to be rather dry, giving a sense of resistance, and is often edematous. The liver may be moderately or enormously enlarged, the usual enlargement, however, being between one and three inches below the costal margin. It is smooth, moderately firm and not painful or tender to the touch. *Percussion* confirms the palpatory signs of enlarged liver.

*Auscultation* is negative, though hemic heart murmurs are frequently heard. The spleen is greatly hypertrophied and glandular enlargements in the axillae and groins are common. The blood picture is characteristic of the disease (SEE p 566).

(j) **Hydatid Cysts.** These result from the lodgment of the *tenia echinococcus larvae*.

**Symptoms.** General weakness and gastric disturbances are as a rule the only complaints.

**Diagnosis** A mass may be visible in the hepatic region, and on *palpation* the liver will be found somewhat enlarged. When the cyst is superficial a soft fluctuating mass can be palpated and in some cases, several such masses may be found. Aspiration often reveals hooklets in the fluid which make the diagnosis positive. A diagnosis of hydatid cyst by physical examination alone is impossible but a history of having

Europe where dogs live in close contact with humans and where sanitary conditions are bad. The patient's previous history, therefore, becomes very important in establishing a diagnosis.

(1) **Simple Cyst** The symptoms and physical signs of simple cyst are similar to those of hydatid cyst except that the fluid withdrawn by aspiration does not reveal hooklets or anything that would suggest *echinococcus*.



Fig. 4—Polycystic liver

been associated with dogs or coming from a locality where the disease is endemic, together with the finding of a soft fluctuating mass upon the liver, and the absence of constitutional symptoms makes the diagnosis of *echinococcus* cyst probable. Very few cases of hydatid disease originating in the United States are on record, most of the patients treated here have acquired the infection in the eastern hemisphere. The *tenuis echinococcus* is an intestinal parasite of dogs; it is communicated to cattle and—less frequently—to humans from the dog's excrement and is most often acquired by humans from eating infected meat or at times direct from the dog. The disease is common in Iceland, Australia and certain sections of central

(1) **Syphilis of the Liver** Syphilis of the liver may occur in those suffering either from the congenital or from the acquired form in the late stages. Syphilis of the liver may be of three varieties: (1) Interstitial hepatitis (a diffused inflammatory condition of the liver substance) (2) gumma (3) perihepatitis.

In *interstitial hepatitis* the symptoms are those produced either by pressure or inflammation of the organ. On inspection the skin is generally jaundiced and distended veins over the abdomen are quite common. Ascites is not a very frequent complication unless there is interference with the return circulation. The liver is usually enlarged but not to a very great extent.

In the *gummatous* variety, single and, rarely, multiple tumor masses can be palpated upon the surface, the most common site being the left lobe and the undersurface of the left extremity of the right lobe, though any portion of the liver may be the seat of a gumma. In the diffuse variety there is usually some tenderness upon pressure. The liver is always enlarged, the left lobe being often disproportionately enlarged and somewhat irregular in outline, and is firm and tender to touch, signs of general cirrhosis are often found and an associated splenic enlargement is quite common. The diagnosis of syphilis of the liver cannot, however, be definitely established unless a positive Wassermann reaction and other confirmatory luetic evidence can be obtained.

*Perihepatitis* is an inflammation of the peritoneal covering of the liver, usually occurring in circumscribed areas. It often occurs as an inflammatory extension from a diseased liver and when not due to syphilis it may result from conditions such as abscess and hydatid cyst of the liver from general peritonitis, or as an extension from pleurisy, or from a perforated ulcer of the stomach, duodenum or gallbladder. Perihepatitis may also be caused by violence, a blow, or any other local injury.

**Symptoms** There is usually pain and tenderness over the portions affected. Jaundice may occur when the bile ducts are involved and distended veins and ascites are evident when there is interference with the return circulation.

**Diagnosis** On inspection there may be jaundice, ascites and distended veins though their absence does not exclude perihepatitis. Diminished respiratory mobility will be noted over the right

lower chest and upper abdomen. *Palpation* often reveals a friction rub at the junction of the seventh rib and mid axillary line, also, in the midaxillary line at the ninth rib, and occasionally in the epigastrium. The lower edge of the liver is usually palpable and when pressure is brought to bear upon it, referred pain to the chest will be produced.

If suppuration occurs, pus may collect below the diaphragm. On *percussion* chest dullness will be found at a higher level than normal and diaphragmatic descent will be found to be limited.

Before the occurrence of suppuration a friction rub may be auscultated over the regions where the "rub" is palpated. After suppuration, particularly if it be subdiaphragmatic, all the signs of subdiaphragmatic abscess such as absence of breath sounds, pain, diminished tactile fremitus, diminished expansion etc., manifest themselves. An x ray examination and, at times, an artificial pneumoperitoneum, may assist in arriving at the proper diagnosis.

(m) **Actinomycosis** This disease is caused by a ray fungus *actinomyces* (a streptothrix). When these fungi invade the liver they usually cause multiple abscesses, so that the symptoms and signs of liver abscess are usually found with an associated enlargement of the organ and infection of other parts of the body. A positive diagnosis can be made only when the ray fungi are isolated from the aspirated pus.

(n) **Tuberculosis of the Liver** This is usually secondary to tuberculosis of the lung, bowel, peritoneum, or other structure or the liver may be one of the organs affected in a generalized milary tuberculosis or by a tuberculoma.

**Symptoms** There are no symptoms referable to the liver alone. In rare cases



when a number of tubercles form near the bile duct and encroach upon its lumen jaundice may be evident

**Diagnosis** On *inspection* the patient appears emaciated and has the appearance of one suffering from tuberculosis. The abdomen is usually enlarged and there may be slight jaundice and at times also distended superficial veins. *Palpation* reveals that the liver is enlarged, the edge rounded and usually smooth, the surface rather firm and in rare cases very small nodular masses are present. It is neither painful nor tender to the touch. *Percussion* confirms palpation as to the size of the liver. If ascites be present dullness can be elicited in the flanks. *Auscultation* is negative.

(c) **Diabetic Liver** There are cases of diabetes mellitus that do not present an enlarged liver, and an enlarged liver may occur without diabetes. However in many cases of diabetes mellitus the liver is found to be hypertrophied so that it may extend to from one to two inches below the right costal margin, the liver is firm and smooth, the edge is proportionate to its general size, there is no pain or tenderness on pressure and nothing characteristic of the underlying disease may be found in the enlarged liver.

(r) **Weil's Disease or Epidemic Catarrhal Jaundice** This condition is an acute infectious disease characterized by jaundice, high temperature and enlargement of the liver, spleen and kidney.

**Diagnosis** *Inspection* usually shows the patient to be febrile and a moderate degree of jaundice develops on the third or fourth day of the disease. The abdomen is somewhat distended, particularly in its upper half, respiration is shallow. On *palpation* the liver is found to be en-

larged, reaching about two inches or more below the right costal border. It is tender to the touch and at times several tender areas can be definitely outlined. The liver is uniformly hard, and the edge is rounded, smooth and irregular. There is as a rule an associated enlargement of the spleen. *Percussion* confirms palpation and may reveal upward extension of liver dullness. *Auscultation* is negative though *auscultatory percussion* may reveal the size of the liver. The *Leptospira ictero-hemorrhagiae* may be found in the blood and in the urine. Guinea pig inoculation with the blood may reveal the organism and the characteristic lesions in its viscera.

(q) **Angioma of the Liver** An angioma of the liver is a rare condition, and the diagnosis cannot be made by physical examination alone, though it may be suspected by exclusion. The liver is usually enlarged and in some instances the surface is nodular if the tumor is very large and gives pressure symptoms and every other known condition is absent, angioma may be considered.

(r) **Banti's Syndrome** (primary splenomegaly with hepatic cirrhosis, splenic anemia). In this condition the spleen is enormously enlarged, the liver becoming secondarily involved and presenting a cirrhotic condition. It usually affects young people.

**Diagnosis** In late cases on *inspection* the patient presents the appearance of a grave anemia, the skin is usually jaundiced, ascites is present and the abdomen is distended. On *palpation* the liver can be felt three or four inches below the right costal margin and often in such close opposition to the spleen that the inner margins of the two organs can hardly

## Differential Diagnosis, Disease of the Liver and Its Appendages

Symptoms	Hepatitis	Perihepatitis	Gallbladder (without stones)
Pain type	Dull aching constant Referred areas may be present	More sharp than in hepatitis Increased on breathing on movement and on sitting down with the knees drawn up	Colic generally of paroxysmal type suddenly reaching an acme and then suddenly disappearing leaving only a feeling of soreness in its place In some cases instead of being paroxysmal the pain may be constant Long intervals of freedom from pain may be present
Relationship to the ingestion of food	Worse at the time of intestinal digestion when the blood content of the liver is greatest	Same as in hepatitis /	No special relationship to the ingestion of food
Tenderness	Present over liver region	Present over liver region	Present over margin of gall bladder Murphy's sign present
Jaundice	May be present	Absent	Absent
Nausea and vomiting	Not specially marked	Not specially marked	Generally present May be constant and severe Bile present
Temperature	Slight rise	Slight rise	Septic in cases of inflammation In cases of colic no rise
Pulse	Slight increase	Slight increase	Considerable increase in cases of inflammation very slight if any increase in cases of colic
Urine	Bile may be present	No bile	No bile
Position of election	Pain worse when lying on left side	On back breathes very easy	Generally on back knees drawn up abdomen relaxed as much as possible
Effect of movement	Increases pain	Increases pain	Increases pain except in colic
Application of cold or heat	Cold eases pain	Cold eases	Inflammation cold eases heat increases Colic cold increases heat eases

be differentiated Fluctuation due to ascites is often present *Percussion* confirms the palpatory signs *Auscultation* is negative In the later stages of the disease there are hemorrhages from the gastrointestinal tract and ascites (SEE p 623)

(s) Early Stages of Perihepatitis (hepatitis externa) Perihepatitis has already been mentioned under syphilis

of the liver Acute syphilitic perihepatitis is however, a rare condition Chronic hepatic inflammation with great thickening of Glisson's capsule, is more commonly encountered Osler and McCrae<sup>1</sup> divide the condition into two groups One occurring in adults presents re

<sup>1</sup> Osler and McCrae Principles and Practice of Medicine D Appleton and Co

current ascites and symptoms of interstitial nephritis without jaundice, and cannot be differentiated from atrophic cirrhosis of the liver, the other is a manifestation of a widespread fibroid process (multiple serositis) which affects not the liver alone but may take

liver and spleen are enlarged and hard. Ascites and enlarged superficial veins are late manifestations.

(ii) **Von Gierke's Disease** (Hepatomegalia, Glycogenosis) This is a rare disease of childhood characterized by enormous hepatomegaly (due to storage

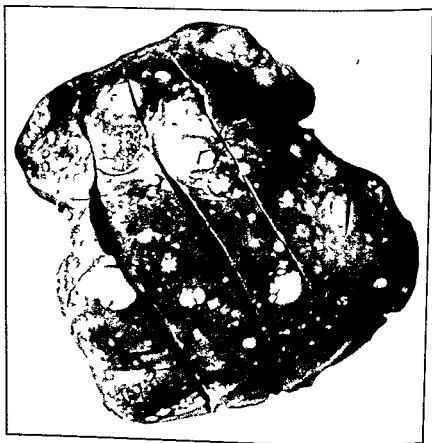


Fig 5—Hodgkin's disease of the liver

the forms of proliferative peritonitis, adherent pericardium or indurative mediastinitis. Ascites is persistent, and the liver is often smooth and round, resembling the spleen.

(i) **Hemochromatosis** (bronzed diabetes). This is a rare disease presenting symptoms of diabetes and hepatic cirrhosis due to the deposit of hemosiderin in the liver and other tissues. There is a bronzing of the skin. The

of glycogen), fasting hypoglycemia in infantilism, failure of adrenalin to mobilize glycogen and no splenomegaly.

(z) **Hodgkin's Disease** This may at times show enlargement of the liver and spleen or both organs may become infiltrated with tumor masses.

(w) **Acute Suppurative Cholangitis**. This usually results from obstruction by gallstones, malignancy or parasites, it may also occur in acute infections. It runs

a short course and generally terminates fatally unless interrupted by timely surgical intervention

**Symptoms and Diagnosis** There are jaundice pain in the hepatic region signs of sepsis and clay colored stools The liver progressively enlarges and is extremely tender The spleen also enlarges An unfavorable sign described by Rogers consists of the lessening of jaundice and the reappearance of bile in the stool associated with an increase of fever chills and signs of aggravated infection

(x) **Acute Nonsuppurative Hepatitis** This may be found in catarrhal jaundice and in hepatitis due to arsenic cinchophen and other drugs and poisons that have a toxic effect upon the liver There is usually jaundice very little or no fever the liver is enlarged smooth and not especially tender

(y) **Obstructive Jaundice** Whether due to gallstones to malignancy of the liver gallbladder or pancreas or to other noninflammatory conditions that cause obstruction to the entrance of bile into the duodenum obstructive jaundice will cause enlargement of the liver very little tenderness hardly any fever but marked jaundice The liver is large smooth and its lower edge is rounded

(z) **Gaucher's Disease** The liver is enlarged but the spleen is very much larger in proportion There is anemia a brownish discoloration of the spleen and a characteristically peculiar yellowish wedge shaped thickening of the conjunctivae on both sides of the cornea The liver is hard smooth and not tender to touch

(aa) **Rickets** While normally during childhood the liver is proportionately larger than in adults and can always be palpated below the right costal angle in rickets the liver is very large and may

occupy the upper right half of the abdomen It is usually smooth and not tender

(ab) **Temporary Enlargement of the Liver** The liver may become temporarily enlarged in some of the acute infectious diseases such as pneumonia malaria typhoid fever scarlet fever yellow fever etc The liver usually assumes its normal size when the underlying condition is cured

### *Diseases Producing Diminution of the Liver*

The liver is diminished in size in (a) Atrophic cirrhosis (later stages) (b) acute yellow atrophy (acute hepatic necrosis) (c) phosphorus poisoning (d) capsular cirrhosis (Glisson's cirrhosis) and (e) congenital and chronic acquired syphilis

(a) **Atrophic Cirrhosis or Hobnailed Liver** In the very early stages the atrophic cirrhotic liver is moderately enlarged but after the disease has reached an advanced stage the liver begins to shrink and assumes the characteristic form of this disease

**Symptoms** The initial symptoms are usually vague but after the disease has progressed for some time the patient will complain of loss of flesh and strength morning nausea and vomiting constipation and hemorrhoids Often there is epistaxis as well as hemorrhages from the stomach and the bowel Mental symptoms clouding of the intellectual faculties and inability to concentrate are in evidence and blood pressure is high

**Diagnosis** On inspection the veins are usually enlarged particularly those of the abdomen and a cluster of enlarged veins around the umbilicus is at times noted (caput medusae) The abdomen is much enlarged and its skin is tense and glistening The liver cannot be pal

ated at the right costal margin and ascites is very prominent and easily demonstrable by the presence of fluctuation. *Percussion* usually shows the upper boundary of the liver to be lower than the normal, the lower boundary often being above the last palpable rib.

(b) **Acute Yellow Atrophy** (hepatic necrosis). This is characterized by a diffuse necrosis of the liver as well as by marked diminution in its size. Jaundice and cerebral manifestations are among the characteristic signs.

**Symptoms.** Symptoms such as fever, gastric disturbances, jaundice, hemorrhages into the skin and mucous membrane, myocardial and endocardial symptoms and urinary disturbance such as increased ammonia, diminished urea and the presence of leucin and tyrosin in large quantities are usually encountered.

**Diagnosis.** *Inspection* shows the patient to be febrile, jaundice is very deep, petechial hemorrhages are present, the lips are dry, and there is tremor of the hands and tongue. On *palpation* the liver is found to be small and not readily palpable. Pressure over the liver region produces tenderness and often severe pain. *Percussion* demonstrates a diminu-

tion in the upper and lower level of liver dullness.

(c) **Phosphorus Poisoning.** This may occur in the employees of match factories or others who come in close contact with phosphorus and inadvertently cause its introduction into the system.

**Symptoms.** These are epigastric pain, vomiting (the vomitus is black), and nervous disturbances (headache, insomnia and nausea), delirium sometimes occurs in the terminal stages.

**Diagnosis.** *Inspection* shows jaundiced skin and mucous membranes. *Palpation* in acute phosphorous poisoning reveals the liver to be enlarged, while in chronic phosphorus poisoning the liver is small, and can be palpated only during deep inspiration, it is tender to the touch, but handling it does not cause severe pain. *Percussion* confirms the palpatory signs as to the size of the liver. Care should be taken to differentiate between chronic phosphorus poisoning and acute yellow atrophy of the liver.

**Differential Diagnosis.** The following table taken from Anders and Boston will help to differentiate between the two conditions.

#### ACUTE PHOSPHORUS POISONING

- 1 History of accidental poisoning (match heads rat poison) or of occupation with exposure to phosphorus
- 2 Sudden onset with violent nausea, vomiting and pain over liver region
- 3 Jaundice appearing on second or third day
- 4 Nervous symptoms late in the disease, always preceded by jaundice
- 5 Phosphorescent vomiting and stools, black vomiting precedes death
- 6 Temporary arrest of symptoms between the occurrence of jaundice and black vomiting
- 7 Sarcocollactic acid present in urine, leucin and tyrosin but rarely present

#### ACUTE YELLOW ATROPHY OF THE LIVER

- 1 Indefinite history
- 2 Slow onset with malaise, nausea and vomiting
- 3 Jaundice an initial symptom
- 4 Nervous symptoms may appear early even before jaundice occurs
- 5 Black vomiting occurs early, persistent throughout and never phosphorescent
- 6 Progressive increase of symptoms with no remission
- 7 Leucin and tyrosin commonly found in urine

(d) **Capsular Cirrhosis** This term is applied to a form of perihepatitis in which the capsule is very hard thick and almost semicartilagenous in appearance the capsular hardening causing a shrinkage and irregular distortion of the liver The liver if at all palpable is smaller than normal and the edge is irregular hard and serrated

**Symptoms** Symptoms and physical signs of capsular or Glisson's cirrhosis are very much like those of atrophic cirrhosis of the liver

**Diagnosis** This is based on a positive

Wassermann reaction a small irregular liver and pain in the right upper quadrant Jaundice and ascites may coexist early in this condition, often however it is diagnosed only on the post mortem table

(e) **Congenital Syphilis and Chronic Acquired Syphilis** These usually cause a small liver as the result of shrinking of the deposits of connective tissue within the liver substance The symptoms and the physical signs are similar to those of atrophic cirrhosis of the liver

## **The Gallbladder**

### **Physical Examination of the Gallbladder**

The normal gallbladder because of its structure and anatomical position does not lend itself to physical examination

By cholecystography the gallbladder may be outlined and a general idea obtained as to its function and often the presence of calculi may be discovered The bile may be obtained by duodenal drainage and examined by chemical and microscopic means

The pathologic gallbladder when inflamed or enlarged may be detected by physical examination An inflamed gallbladder may be suspected by the elicitation of tenderness in the gallbladder region both by palpation and by ulnar percussion An enlarged gallbladder may be palpated as a rounded often tender and at times fluctuating mass beneath the lower edge of the liver on a line corresponding to an extension of the right midclavicular line The mass usually moves downwards with inspiration and upwards during expiration As a general rule the upper portion of the right rectus

abdominis muscle is rigid For proper gallbladder palpation the patient is to assume the recumbent posture shoulders raised and knees somewhat flexed The examiner should palpate lightly with his finger tips so as to elicit resistance then more deeply in an attempt to outline the shape of the gallbladder, its consistency and the presence of tenderness The pathologic gallbladder should also be studied by x rays (cholecystography) and an attempt should be made to study the bile (SEE p 986)

### **Diseases of the Gallbladder**

**Cholecystitis** Inflammation of the gallbladder may be due to the presence of gallstones bacteria parasites or organic and inorganic material The infection may be blood borne and in that event first affects the walls of the gallbladder causing an interstitial cholecystitis Inflammation of the gallbladder may also be caused by extension of inflammation or growths from adjacent organs i.e. from the duodenum pancreas gall ducts stomach liver etc The bile is usually concentrated and some

## Differential Diagnosis, Gallbladder Colic and Gall Duct Colic

Symptoms	Gallbladder Colic	Gall Duct Colic
Pain	More severe than in gall duct colic Not so frequently associated with digestion as is the pain of gall duct colic Referred to right shoulder or to the back between and below scapulae	Less severe Frequently associated with the ingestion of food Referred to the left side of the chest about the line of the third or fourth costal cartilage
Jaundice	Generally absent This is especially true should the cause of the gallbladder colic be an obstruction in the cystic duct	Generally present always so if the obstruction is in the common or the hepatic ducts
Local tenderness	Higher in the epigastrium and more toward the costal arch than is the tenderness associated with gall duct colic	At Mayo Robson's point
Vomiting	Common and continued after the first paroxysm Generally no bile	Generally present at first No bile
Tumor	Always present is movable if adhesions are not present	No tumor present

Gallbladder and gall duct colic are often so intimately associated that it is at times difficult to distinguish between the two. The gallbladder colic is almost an invariable accompaniment and sequel of gall duct colic.

times the gallbladder may become distended and give rise to pain and to tenderness on palpation. When obstruction occurs jaundice is a common symptom.

**Acute Cholecystitis** This is characterized by pain, tenderness and rigidity in the gallbladder region. Pain is often referred towards the right shoulder, to the spine or to the right inter-scapular region. Nausea, vomiting, irregular fever and occasionally jaundice are present. In a thin subject a mass may be palpable in the gallbladder region.

**Cholelithiasis** Gallstones may remain dormant in the gallbladder for some time and give rise to very few symptoms such as slight digestive disturbances and a sense of heaviness in the right hypochondrium or gallstones may cause a great deal of distress by bringing about inflammation and distention of the gallbladder which will give

rise to tenderness on pressure, pain and severe gastric disturbances with or without jaundice. When stones attempt to pass through the bile duct or cause obstruction they give rise to attacks of colic which are characterized by severe agonizing pain in the right hypochondrium or epigastrium radiating to the back and right shoulder. Biliary colic usually comes on several hours after meals as a rule when the stomach is empty, which accounts for the fact that most of the attacks of biliary colic occur during the night. When obstruction to the outflow of bile has taken place jaundice manifests itself. Pain and tenderness in the gallbladder region are associated with vomiting, sweating and acidity. The gallbladder, because of its distention may be palpable.

**Cholangitis** Inflammation of the gall ducts may be catarrhal or obstructive.

# Differential Diagnosis, Biliary Colic, Cholecystitis and Acute Generalized Peritonitis

Symptoms	Biliary Colic	Cholecystitis	Acute Generalized Peritonitis
Pain	Sudden paroxysmal has a tendency to radiate to right shoulder and scapula See under Biliary Colic	Slow and gradual in onset duct and gall bladder areas involved Tenderness marked over the gallbladder	Sudden pain generally following a perforation The pain at first is as a rule in the center of the abdomen in the umbilical region then becomes diffused as the peritonitis spreads
Jaundice	Generally present	Generally absent	Absent
Pulse	Variable but generally slow	Gradually increasing in rapidity	Gradually increasing in rapidity, it finally becomes thready
Tumor	Absent at times may be present due to a distended gall bladder	Present over area of gallbladder Is very tender on pressure	Absent
Vomiting	Generally present No bile	Generally present Bile	Generally present and persistent Bile is frequently present
Fever	Absent	Generally present with occasional chills	Generally present
Distention	Absent	Absent	Generally present and is very marked over entire abdomen
Free fluid in peritoneal cavity	Absent	Absent	Present but difficult to define
Shock	Absent	Absent	Absent
Diarrhea	Constipation no bile salts in stool	Stools may be normal	Constipation
Hiccough	Absent	May be present	May be present, generally absent
Belching	Absent	Generally absent	May be present
High enema	No effect	No effect	No effect
Urine	Bile present in colic of common duct	Not much change	Indican may be present

**Catarrhal cholangitis** is, strictly speaking, obstructive, as the inflamed linings of the gall ducts become swollen and prevent the circulation of bile through them, and thus results in jaundice and gastric disturbances usually associated with fever and rarely accompanied by pain

**Obstructive Cholangitis.** The obstruction may be due to stone from the gall bladder, parasites or infiltrating growths Obstructive cholangitis will give rise to jaundice, digestive symptoms and colic the latter often resembling cholelithiasis

**Intercostal Neuralgia.** This will often cause pain in the gallbladder re-



gion resembling gallbladder disease. Supersensitive skin and absence of deep seated pain differentiates this condition from intraabdominal inflammatory diseases.

### Carcinoma of the Gallbladder

This may be primary and it may occur as a result of cholelithiasis, or it may be secondary to carcinoma of the pancreas, liver, intestines and the respiratory tract.

**Symptoms** Digestive disturbances secondary anemia, cachexia jaundice and a palpable mass in the gallbladder region are among the outstanding features.

**Syphilis** A gumma of the gallbladder may give rise to symptoms of obstruction such as jaundice, indigestion distended superficial veins and at times ascites. A positive Wassermann and other sign of syphilis will aid in this diagnosis.

## The Spleen

### Physical Examination of the Spleen

This organ is examined chiefly by *palpation* in order to determine its size and shape, the presence of tenderness and mobility, by *percussion* for the position of its upper border and when displaced, to differentiate it from other neighboring organs.

**Palpation** To palpate for splenic enlargement the examiner applies the palmar surface of the hand below the left costal margin, the patient rests supine and should be thoroughly relaxed, during deep inspiration the palpating hand may detect a rounded mass descending from beneath the ribs.

Palpation of the spleen may be facilitated by the bimanual method. One hand is slipped under the patient's back so as to support his left lumbar region; the other hand is applied to the left upper quadrant of the abdomen a little below the costal angle and to the left of the midclavicular line. During the patient's inspiration the supporting hand attempts to raise the loin while the palpating hand is moved upward. When the spleen is enlarged a rounded edge will be perceived by the palpating hand as it moves diagonally downward and during expiration this mass can be felt

moving diagonally upwards. Palpation of the spleen may at times be facilitated when the patient lies on his left side. A large spleen may be missed when the examiner applies his hand over the body of the spleen and attempts to palpate for an edge, therefore, when palpation is begun the lower edge of the spleen should first be located.

Another method for detecting splenic enlargement may be carried out as follows. The patient's flank is grasped and gently compressed by the examiner's hand while the thumb feels for the spleen.

**Tenderness and pain** in the splenic region may be caused by perisplenitis, splenic infarct or splenic abscess and by most of the conditions other than splenic causing enlargement in that region. These conditions may result from left sided pyelitis, perinephritic abscess, tuberculous kidney, adrenal tumor, hyaline perinephroma, left sided diaphragmatitis, left sided pleurisy or pneumonia or an aneurysm occupying the left lower half of the chest cavity and reflexly from gastric, intestinal or cardiac conditions. Rupture of the spleen will cause rigidity and severe pain in the left hypochondrium and shock.

**Percussion** The patient stands or sits erect with the left arm raised, or he lies on his right side with the left arm thrown across the thorax or in any other position that exposes the left infraaxillary region. Percussion is started well outside the splenic area which is gradually approached from all sides. Splenic dullness is usually obtained in the infraaxillary region between the left posterior and midaxillary lines and over the ninth intercostal space, the tenth rib and intercostal space and the eleventh rib. Because of the peculiarities of the organs in relation with it, percussion cannot be entirely relied upon to outline the exact size of the spleen. Above and to the left, the spleen is encroached upon by the left lung and below and to the right, by the stomach. It is also adjacent to the liver, the pancreas and the left kidney. Splenic dullness may be absent in the presence of a pneumothorax, a large lung cavity at the base of the left lung, emphysema, or greatly distended stomach or colon and left sided diaphragmatic hernia or evisceration. Splenic dullness may be increased in the presence of enlargement of the spleen from any cause. Consolidation of the base of the left lung, hydro- or pyothorax, thickened pleura, subphrenic abscess, greatly enlarged left lobe of the liver, pericardial effusion, greatly hypertrophied heart, renal tumor, tumors of the cardiac end of the stomach, tumors of the esophagus, cardiospasm (when the dilated esophagus is filled with food or fluid), and descending thoraco-aortic aneurysm will cause a dull percussion note in the splenic region so that it is impossible to distinguish splenic dullness from that caused by the condition mentioned.

An enlarged spleen must often be differentiated from a large kidney or other tumor in that location. The shape of the organ, the presence of the notch, its distinct mobility during respiration, and its position in front of the bowel, are the diagnostic features.

**Auscultation** for the normal spleen is of little value. A friction rub may be heard in the presence of perisplenitis or pleurisy, and a systolic murmur may be heard in the presence of torsion stenosis of the splenic artery as the result of ptosis of an enlarged spleen—at times in aortic regurgitation a loud murmur is heard over the spleen.

## Anomalies and Diseases of the Spleen

### Anatomic Anomalies

Occasionally there are one or more accessory spleens lying within the folds of the gastrosplenic omentum or one or two may be attached to the under surface of the spleen. A case in Dr Thomas McCrae's service at the Jefferson Hospital seen by the author, presented a thumb shaped accessory spleen on the undersurface of an enlarged spleen which resembled a gallbladder. These accessory spleens are usually small and rudimentary, the size varying from that of a bean to nearly that of a normal spleen. Some cases of complete absence of spleen have been reported in connection with other abdominal abnormalities. As has already been mentioned, transposition of the spleen may occur as readily as transposition of the liver or of any other organs as in cases of *situs inversus*. The spleen may also be displaced upward as a result of congenital diaphragmatic hernia or downward because of some abdominal deformity or umbilical hernia.

## Differential Diagnosis, Splenic Disorders, Pleurisy and Pneumonia

Symptoms	Splenic Disorders	Pleurisy	Pneumonia
Pain	Felt in left side or is referred to the abdomen Worse on respiration	Localized to diseased area not such a great tendency to be referred	Localized over area when pleura is involved Referred pain over the chest wall is also present
Tenderness	Splenic points of tenderness are present Pressure on the lower border of the spleen (bimanual) is painful	No splenic points of tenderness Tenderness may be present in the intercostal spaces over the affected area	No splenic points of tenderness Tenderness as a rule is present over the affected area
Râles	May be present due to pressure atecasis of the adjacent lung	May be present due to the associated involvement of the subpleural pneumonic tissue	Present
Enlargement of the spleen	Present and spleen is tender on pressure	No enlargement	Enlargement Septic origin may occur late in the disease
Friction rub	May be present generally absent	Present disappears when effusion occurs	Frequently present
Cough	Generally not present	Present	Present
Sputum	None	Frothy or dry	Rusty
Fever	Generally that of the causative lesion	Generally none or very slight	Generally present and very high

Splenic disorders have been confused with acute rheumatism especially so when the splenic pain is referred to the left shoulder but in rheumatism some of the joints are almost invariably affected while in splenic disorders there is no joint involvement

*Mobility of the Spleen*

The spleen may be pushed downward by some conditions within the chest cavity, such as hydro, pyo or pneumo thorax neoplasm, left sided aneurysm emphysema and because of a sudden and severe strain It may be displaced and caused to be easily movable by continuous tight lacing and in general visceroptosis a downward displaced spleen should not be mistaken for an enlarged spleen

A movable spleen may at times be mistaken for one that is enlarged Its great mobility and the absence of splenic dullness in the normal position help in the differential diagnosis

*Acute Enlargement of the Spleen*

Because of disease, the spleen may become very much enlarged and distorted these enlargements are either acute or chronic

Acute enlargement of the spleen is found in such acute febrile diseases as typhoid and malaria, frequently also in typhus relapsing fever, pneumonia smallpox and many septic conditions such as bacterial endocarditis A moderate enlargement of the spleen may be found in the following conditions (a) Secondary syphilis, (b) cerebrospinal fever, (c) diphtheria, (d) scarlet fever (e) erysipelas, (f) septicemia (g)

paratyphoid, (h) septicopyemia, and (i) acute miliary tuberculosis

### **Chronic Enlargement of the Spleen**

Chronic enlargement is found in (a) Hypertrophy of the spleen, (b) Banti's disease, (c) splenic tumor with polycythemia, (d) abscess of the spleen, (e) carcinoma and sarcoma, (f) splenic anemia, (g) Gaucher's disease, (h) amyloid disease, (i) pernicious anemia, (j) cysts, (k) syphilis, (l) myelogenous and lymphatic leukemia, (m) splenic tuberculosis, (n) Niemann Pick's disease, (o) splenomegaly with eosinophilia, (p) kala-azar, (q) bronzed diabetes, (r) enlargement of the spleen without any apparent cause, (s) irregular enlargement of the spleen, (t) gradual enlargement of the spleen, (u) enlargement of both liver and spleen, (v) rickets, (w) von Jaksch's anemia, (x) Hodgkin's disease, (y) congenital family cholemia, (z) status thymicolymphaticus, (aa) reticuloendotheliosis

(a) **Hypertrophy** (congestion of the spleen) Chronic splenic enlargement may sometimes result from an acute condition and is found in leukemia, cirrhosis of the liver, certain cardiac affections and chronic malaria ("ague cake")

*Inspection* shows the left side of the abdomen to be distended, and *palpation* will detect a tumor in the left hypochondriac region which moves downward with inspiration and recedes during expiration. The degree of abdominal enlargement in such instances depends entirely upon the size of the spleen, its position may vary from one half an inch below the costal border to the brim of the pelvis. *Percussion* confirms the palpatory signs

(b) **Banti's Disease** In Banti's disease, the spleen is extraordinarily large

and anemia of a secondary type is well marked, and hemorrhages into the skin and mucous membranes as well as into the stomach and lungs, are often encountered. Jaundice and ascites are also prominent symptoms. The spleen may sometimes occupy the entire left half or even more of the abdominal cavity. The liver becomes secondarily enlarged, and the kidneys undergo a distinct degeneration. Ascites occurs as a terminal condition (SEE p 561 and 612)

(c) **Splenic Tumor with Polycythemia and Cyanosis**: In this condition the spleen is moderately enlarged, painless on palpation, smooth and firm. The enlargement may reach from one half inch to two inches below the left costal border. The disease is characterized by general cyanosis and polycythemia, the red blood corpuscle count may be from seven to twelve million per cubic millimeter

(d) **Abscess**: This may result from direct infection through the circulation, or it may be secondary to some infection elsewhere, in rare instances an abscess of the spleen may result from trauma. The spleen is felt to be enlarged, irregular in outline and tender on pressure, there usually is associated local peritonitis, and general symptoms of sepsis

(e) **Carcinoma or Sarcoma** Either is usually secondary to carcinoma or sarcoma elsewhere in the body. The spleen is found to be enlarged, often tender to the touch and when not adherent, it may be movable. When the tumor masses are large and superficial and the spleen is superficially situated they may be palpated through a thin and relaxed abdominal wall. The malignant growths are usually multiple and may be sarcomatous, carcinomatous, adenocarcinomatous and in rare instances there may

be a combination of structures leading to a diagnosis of sarcomatocarcinoma

(f) **Splenic Anemia** (not of the Banti's type) By this term is meant a disease of the spleen resulting in a general anemia. It is doubtful if such a disease entity really occurs. There are numerous blood diseases and anemias

signs except an enlarged spleen, all other findings being negative. Such cases for the want of a better name are styled splenic anemia.

(g) **Gaucher's Disease** This is usually a familial disease that manifests itself chiefly in the female at the time of puberty or earlier. The spleen be-

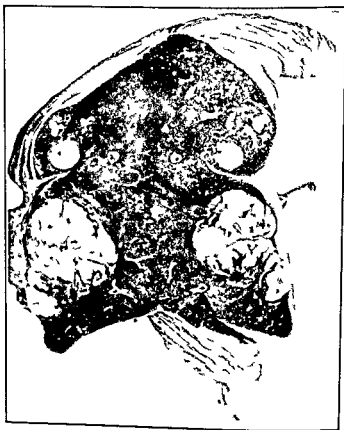


Fig. 6—Sarcoma of spleen

that are associated with an enlarged spleen as for instance, myelocytic leukemia, Banti's disease, pernicious anemia, malignancy, Hodgkin's disease, etc., in which the splenic enlargement is only one of the symptoms. However, there are cases of severe secondary anemia that present no other definite blood findings than those found in grave secondary anemia and no other physical

comes enormously hypertrophied. Histologically it is characterized by the presence of Gaucher cells in the reticuloendothelial system of the spleen and often in other tissues. In the more severe variety of this disease the bone marrow and often the skeleton may be infiltrated with Gaucher cells. The liver is also enlarged and contains Kupffer cells. Anemia is manifested fairly late in the dis-

ease though leukopenia is the rule. The skin is somewhat jaundiced or brownish most noticeable in the exposed surfaces but the mucous membranes are not affected. Usually a brownish pinguecula is noted on the nasal sides of the conjunctivae. Gaucher's disease is often accompanied by congenital malformations such as multiple cysts of the spleen and ovaries, horseshoe kidney and patulous

(1) **Pernicious Anemia** In this blood disease the splenic enlargement is part of the symptom complex. The spleen is usually enlarged to about one or two inches below the left costal margin. It is smooth and painless to the touch. During the remissions of the anemia the spleen diminishes in size only to re-enlarge during an exacerbation.

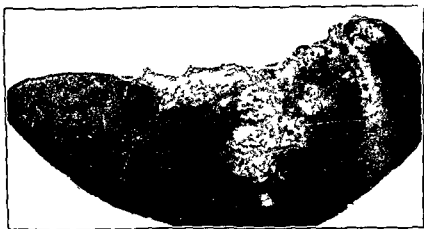


Fig 7—Adenocarcinoma of spleen

foramen ovale. The ante mortem diagnosis of this condition is based upon the enlargement of the spleen and liver, mild discoloration of the skin, absence of anemia, presence of leukopenia, pains in the muscles of the legs, and by the results of splenic puncture.

(h) **Amyloid Disease** This causes enlargement of the spleen, liver, and kidneys. It is usually associated with long-standing suppuration, malignancy, or tuberculosis. The spleen becomes very large, is smooth, and uniformly resistant. The enlargement of the spleen is only an incident in the disease and alone bears no diagnostic feature, but size and smoothness, which are conditions prevalent in other types of splenomegaly.

(j) **Cysts** This is a rare condition. It may be single or multiple. The commoner cysts of the spleen are echinococcus (hydatid), dermoids, or cystic degeneration. The spleen becomes enlarged, often in proportion to the size of the cyst. When the cyst is superficial and the abdomen is not unduly distended and the abdominal wall is not rigid or fat, the cyst may be palpated as an elevated mass upon the surface of the spleen, and when the cyst is very large and not too tense, fluctuation may be elicited.

(k) **Syphilis** This may involve the spleen alone, but usually the spleen and liver are simultaneously affected. The spleen becomes large. Ascites, jaundice

frequent hemorrhages in the skin hemoptysis hematemesis and melena may occur and secondary anemia is the rule Syphilis of the spleen may be suspected when the aforementioned symptoms occur in the presence of a positive Wassermann and other manifestations of syphilis It should be borne in mind that a patient may have a splenomegaly and a positive Wassermann reaction both being due to different etiologic factors

progressively enlarged is tender to palpation and often becomes irregular in outline It is associated with a septic temperature cyanosis polycythemia and a positive von Pirquet

(n) **Niemann Pick's Disease** This is a condition closely resembling Gaucher's disease The spleen and liver become enormously enlarged the skin usually presents a brownish discoloration, the tongue is geographically coated and

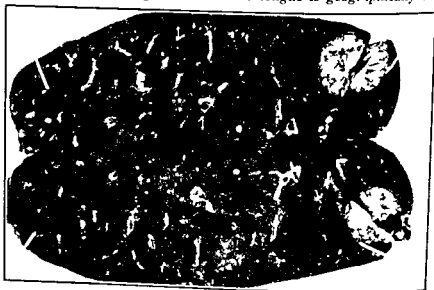


Fig 8—Tuberculosis of spleen

(l) **Leukemia** The myelogenous or splenomedullary type of leukemia has as one of its characteristic physical findings an enormously enlarged spleen which is hard and of uniform density The blood findings are usually sufficiently pathognomonic to decide the diagnosis In lymphatic leukemia also the spleen is at times enlarged to some extent though it never becomes large enough to constitute a major sign A combination of myelogenous and lymphatic leukemia has been described in which the spleen attains quite a large size

(m) **Tuberculosis** This usually occurs in association with tuberculosis peritonitis glandular tuberculosis acute miliary tuberculosis and seldom as a primary infection The spleen becomes

the person so affected usually a child develops Mongolian features The blood count shows no anemia but as a rule a leukocytosis the lymphocytes often preponderating and the blood platelets being greatly diminished in number frequently as low as 20,000 per cubic millimeter The blood contains an excess of lipoids The large spleen on section presents small white areas which contain special reticulated cells (foam cells) that possess phagocytic action This disease is also known as *lipoid histiocytosis*

(o) **Splenomegaly with Eosinophilia** This condition is rare the spleen is markedly enlarged and the blood presents a leukocytosis of 31,000 with 70 to 80 per cent of eosinophils and embryonic red corpuscles

(*p*) **Kala azar** This is a tropical disease and is characterized by secondary anemia and marked enlargement of the spleen which harbors the Leishman Donovan bodies (SEE p 1069)

(*q*) **Bronze Diabetes** (hematochromatosis) This is often associated with Banti's disease It is a condition in which

(*u*) **Enlargement of Both Liver and Spleen** This may occur as a result of passive congestion cirrhosis hydatid infection leukemia and amyloid disease pseudoleukemia (Hodgkin's disease), malarial cachexia Gruchers and Niemans splenomegaly The associated symptoms and the laboratory findings

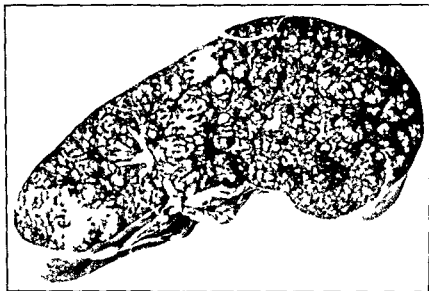


Fig 9—Hodgkin's disease of the spleen

hemosiderin is deposited in the tissues causing a brownish discoloration of the skin The spleen is large and hard to the touch the liver and pancreas are cirrhotic and the urine and blood contain an excess of glucose

(*r*) **Enlargement Without Any Apparent Cause** This is often noted Such cases may be due to chronic infection or to illness of long duration the spleen having failed to resume its normal size after the underlying disease has been cured

(*s*) **Irregular Enlargement** This may occur as a result of carcinoma or hydatid cyst

(*t*) **Gradual Hypertrophy** Of varying degrees this occurs in amyloid disease pernicious anemia congestion due to portal obstruction rickets splenic capsulitis and splenic infarcts

will help in the differentiation of these conditions The cause of splenic enlargement cannot as a rule be determined by the physical examination of that gland alone It usually requires a complete physical examination of the patient supplemented by certain laboratory examinations

(*v*) **Rickets** This may be diagnosed by its characteristic deformities The spleen is hard and may be palpable for two fingers breadth below the costal margin

(*u*) **von Jaksch's Anemia** (pseudoleukemia infantum) The spleen is hard and may reach the umbilicus

(*x*) **Hodgkin's Disease** The spleen may be palpable one or two fingers breadth below the costal margin

(*y*) **Congenital Family Cholemia** (acholuric family jaundice) The spleen



## CHAPTER XXII

# Examination and Diseases of the Esophagus, Stomach and Pancreas

### The Esophagus

#### Physical Examination of the Esophagus

The esophagus does not lend itself to examination unless special technic has been acquired by the examiner. A stricture of the esophagus may be explored by the esophageal sound, a dangerous instrument in the hands of the untrained. Esophagoscopy may reveal the appearance of the mucosa and detect ulcerations, varicosities and growths; a radiogram may show constriction and dilatations. Fluoroscopically a stricture of the esophagus may be recognized by watching the course of an opaque substance during the act of swallowing.

#### Diseases of the Esophagus

##### 1 Spasm of the Esophagus (*Esophagismus*)

This is a functional constriction of the esophagus causing difficulty in swallowing. It is occasionally associated with severe retrosternal pain; referred pain in the pectoral muscles is more common.

Cardiospasm associated with spasm of the lower end of the esophagus may cause a large saccular or fusiform dilatation of the lower end of that tube.

**Diagnosis.** The patient is usually a neurotic who may present spastic symptoms in other organs. A definite diagnosis may be made when the patient is asked to swallow a capsule containing an opaque material and the passage of the capsule into the stomach is observed

under the fluoroscope. An esophageal bougie or a large stomach tube may be passed down the esophagus for diagnostic purposes. If the encountered stricture

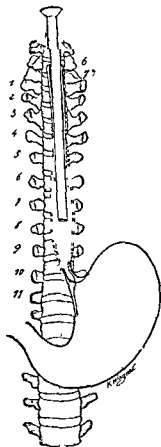


Fig. 1.—In the living subject the lower three-fourths of the esophagus constitute not simply a canal but an actual expanded cavity.

ture disappears after taking large doses of belladonna or any other antispasmodic; a diagnosis of esophagismus may be made.

## 2 Acute Esophagitis

This is an acute inflammation of the esophageal mucosa or of its entire structure

**Etiology and Symptoms** (a) Swallowing of irritating substances (lye acids mercury arsenic hard foreign bodies *i. e.* glass nails stomach tube and hot foods)

(b) Extension of inflammation from pharynx larynx bronchi and mediastinal tissue

(c) Acute and septic fevers (typhoid typhus smallpox diphtheria)

(d) Local disease—carcinoma of esophagus or adjacent tissue vertebral or glandular abscess and laryngeal perichondritis

(e) Spontaneously in sucklings

The symptoms are pain on swallowing particularly of hot drinks or diluted alcohol tenderness over sternum and at times vomiting of blood pus or both

## 3 Stricture of the Esophagus (Stenosis of Esophagus)

**Etiology** (a) Acute esophagitis

(b) cicatrix of a healed ulcer (after lye bichloride of mercury or other corrosives)

(c) gumma or its resultant cicatrix

(d) congenital stenosis

(e) constriction from within the lumen—carcinoma of the esophageal wall abscess or papilloma foreign bodies partially obstructing the lumen

(f) compression from without by tumor abscess aneurysm enlarged lymph glands enlarged thyroid angioneurotic edema (transient) huge pericardial effusions

**Symptoms** The symptoms are gradually increasing dysphagia regurgitation of food either immediately after eating when the stricture is high or some time after swallowing when the stricture is low accompanied by esophageal dilata-

tion above the site of stricture Rapid loss of weight may occur as a result of the inability of food to reach the stomach

**Diagnosis** The diagnosis as to the site of the lesion can be made only by esophagoscopy and x ray examination



Fig 2—Carcinoma of esophagus

## 4 Carcinoma of the Esophagus

This disease may affect any portion of the tube and is a frequent cause of esophageal obstruction in old people. It often causes ulcerations and metastases to the trachea larynx lungs and other structures

**Symptomatology** Swallowing becomes increasingly difficult and is often associated with pain and a choking sensation there is regurgitation of food and drink progressive emaciation takes place as the stenosis becomes more marked and is associated with general cachexia and anemia at times notwithstanding the anemia the blood cell count may be high because of dehydration

**Diagnosis** The diagnosis is based upon the age of the patient dysphagia emaciation and esophagoscopy and x ray findings

### 5 Rupture of the Esophagus

**Etiology** Esophagomalacia (softening of the esophageal wall) weakening of the wall near an ulcer or a cicatrix

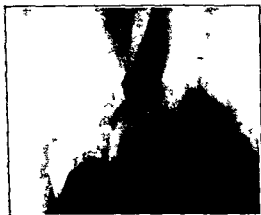


Fig 3—X ray picture of carcinoma of the esophagus showing stenosis (Courtesy of Leon Solis Cohen)

also when a great strain is brought to bear upon the weakened wall by violent and persistent vomiting after a large meal during acute alcoholism or in an opium addict because of the sudden withdrawal of opium

#### *Symptomatology and Diagnosis*

The characteristic symptoms are nausea severe vomiting of the stomach contents and blood sudden sharp retrosternal pain pneumothorax and collapse which may at times simulate angina pectoris or gastric ulcer Subcutaneous emphysema of the neck and chest may occur in rupture of the esophagus and is ab-

sent in angina pectoris and gastric ulcer

### 6 Dilatations and Diverticula

These may occur singly or multiply as circumscribed pouchy dilatations of the esophageal wall and may be situated in the upper portion of the tube or near its entrance into the stomach the latter as a result of cardiospasm

**Etiology** These may be congenital or acquired When *acquired* they may be caused by (a) pressure from within and are found on the posterior wall and (b) by traction from without by constricting adhesions these as a rule are found on the anterior wall

**Symptomatology** The symptoms usually consist of a sense of fullness in the sternal region the sensation of a lump in the throat after meals regurgitation of small quantities of food after strenuous muscular work particularly on heavy lifting or bending over and a fetid odor on the breath When the diverticulum is large vomiting of large quantities of undigested food that was taken possibly several days previous is noted Pressure symptoms and changing physical signs from dullness when the diverticulum is filled with food or fluids to resonance when it is empty is a valuable sign Soon after vomiting tympany may be elicited over a large diverticulum A correct diagnosis of this condition may be made only by x rays and fluoroscopic studies

### 7 Plummer Vinson's Syndrome

This is a type of secondary anemia associated with dysphagia particularly for solid food and glossitis (SEE p 556)

## The Stomach

### Physical Examination of the Stomach

Diseases of the stomach are investigated by physical signs, laboratory examination of its contents and by the x rays. The principal object of the physical examination of the stomach is to determine its size, position, the presence or absence of a tumor, mass, tenderness and pain upon pressure.

**Inspection.** The size and the position of the stomach can only be determined when it is greatly distended with gas. A stomach so greatly distended with gas that it is recognizable by inspection of the abdominal wall is usually in an abnormal position and in a state of great tension. Inspection is only of minor value in determining the degree or absence of peristalsis, a large mass in the epigastrium, however, calls for a thorough investigation by other physical means. A distinct bulging in any part of the abdomen except in the epigastric region may be due to a dilated stomach, such bulging being most frequently noted in the hypogastric or umbilical regions, the epigastrium exhibits a hollow or a transverse depression. A marked depression between the costal arches in the lumbar region, accompanied by a vertical median sulcus wider above than below, and the abdomen being flattened in the central portion and bulging in the lateral region is significant of gastropnoia.

**Palpation.** This is employed to elicit tenderness, resistance, tumors and succussion splash.

The presence of *tenderness* in the epigastric region may denote gastric ulcer, gastric carcinoma or acute or chronic inflammation of the stomach. The ten-

derness produced by a gastric ulcer is localized at a definite point and is persistent. A tender point near the left tenth or eleventh dorsal spine is often significant of gastric ulcer.

**Resistance** over the stomach may be caused either by rigidity of the rectus muscles, or the existence of some underlying solid mass. Resistance in the epigastrium may be caused by the enlarged left lobe of the liver, local peritonitis due to perforated ulcer, inflammation or tumors of the omentum, and carcinoma of the stomach, at times also a growth on the pancreas may be mistaken for a gastric condition. Resistance in the umbilical region may be due to a dilated and distended stomach, peritonitis, tuberculosis or cancer of the omentum, or to a displaced organ such as the spleen, liver, or a greatly enlarged movable kidney.

Pelvic tumors, such as a pregnant uterus and ovarian cyst, may reach the liver and overlie the stomach thereby making stomach palpation impossible. The normal stomach can be palpated only when greatly distended with gas or air. The old, rather dangerous method of inflating the stomach with a sedlitz powder will bring out its contour so that it can be easily palpated.

**Tumors.** Benign tumors of the stomach are extremely rare. A tumor palpated in the epigastrium in an elderly person usually means carcinoma, in young persons a tumor in the epigastrium or a little below, may be caused by hypertrophy of the pylorus or by adhesions due to some inflammatory condition. A soft nonresisting tumor mass may result from dilatation of the stomach or of a portion of the bowel, an omphalo-

hernia or an acute obstruction. If the mass is pulsating, it may be due to aneurysm of the aorta, or of the celiac axis. A deep seated tumor in this region may be a growth on the pancreas. (For swelling or tumors of the abdomen regionally described see p 591.)

**Percussion** This is employed in order to ascertain the shape and the position of the stomach. Care must be taken to note the degree of distention of the bowel and stomach because very often percussion of a distended transverse colon and an empty stomach may give erroneous results. Again a stomach that is half filled with food, or one that is entirely filled, will give erroneous estimates as to its size.

**Auscultatory percussion** will in the hands of experienced observers give more accurate data as to the size of the stomach than will ordinary percussion.

When the stomach is auscultated various crackling, rumbling or gurgling sounds and succussion splashes can be heard, but their significance as to disease of the stomach is of doubtful value. (For the significance of the stomach contents, see p 1028.)

### Symptomatology of Stomach Diseases (See p 90)

In a discussion of diseases of the stomach even in so brief a chapter as this, it is necessary to call attention to the many "gastric symptoms" that may be of extragastric origin. Thus we find that diseases of the liver, gallbladder, appendix, bowel, pancreas, heart, lungs (tuberculosis), brain sinuses, eyes, nose and throat, thyroid, kidneys, the blood and also various constitutional and nervous diseases such as anemia, fevers, septicemia, helminthiasis, chronic intoxication, diabetes, tabes dorsalis, sclerosis of

the abdominal vessels, neurasthenia, hysteria and often pregnancy will cause patients to complain chiefly of "indigestion." It must be remembered, however, that a nervous patient, or one who is suffering from one or more of the conditions mentioned, may also be suffering from an organic disease of the stomach such as ulcer or cancer, and the nervousness, anemia or other conditions may be the result of ulcer or cancer. Therefore, when a patient complains of "gastric symptoms" which may appear to be of extragastric origin, he should nevertheless receive a very careful and thorough gastric study.

When eliciting a history of a patient indicating digestive disturbances, it is well to bear in mind the series of questions tabulated by J. M. Anders.<sup>1</sup>

**Pain** When pain is present, it may be located at the pit of the stomach (*cardialgia*), or in the gastric region (*gastralgia*). The pain may be severe, slight or merely a discomfort and uneasiness. All important is it to know when and how (sudden or gradual) the pain appears and what conditions excite or relieve such distress. Does the pain develop before mealtime and when the stomach is empty, and is it appeased by the taking of food, or is it excited by taking food, and does it appear immediately after food, or one to four hours later? Is the pain constant and is it local or diffused? Does it radiate to the back or scapular regions?

**Appetite** The loss of appetite (*anorexia*) or a desire for unusual foods (*parorexia*) are frequently noted. When the appetite is increased or the patient becomes hungry a short time after a meal it is referred to as '*bulimia*.' One

<sup>1</sup> Anders, James M. Practice of Medicine, 14th Edit. W. B. Saunders Co.

spasm of the pylorus and cardia) is often seen in air swallows

**Belching** may be caused by gastric fermentation swallowing of gas containing food or drinks imbibing simultaneously of acid and alkaline food or drink and air swallowing The gas brought up by air swallows is odorless and tasteless

(b) **Gastric Carcinoma** Vomiting may occur at varying intervals after taking food, it is believed that the closer the lesion is to the cardia the sooner will vomiting occur after feeding When the lesion is at the pylorus vomiting may be delayed several hours In carcinoma attended with gastrectasis, vomiting may occur six to twelve hours after tak-

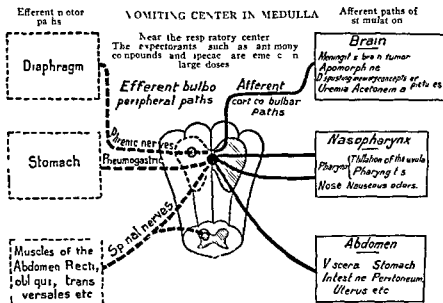


Fig 4—Pathogenesis of vomiting

### Emesis

(SEE p 91)

Vomiting may be of (I) Gastric (II) systemic (III) nervous and (IV) reflex origin (V) it may also be caused by direct irritation of the vomiting center

**I Gastric Origin** (organic lesion in the stomach) (a) **Gastric Ulcer** Pain and vomiting occur soon after the taking of food when the ulcer is at the fundus one or two hours after the taking of food when the ulcer is at the pylorus The pain stops after vomiting The vomitus is sour smelling and often contains blood

ing food At times vomiting will occur when the stomach is empty In some forms of carcinoma (carcinoma of fundus or lesser curvature) vomiting may be absent The vomitus is usually sour and has a characteristic odor Coffee ground vomit occurs when the carcinomatous tissue ulcerates and causes bleeding

(c) **Acute Gastritis** Vomiting of gastric contents mucus and bile is followed by a sense of relief

(d) **Chronic Gastritis** Vomiting occurs at various intervals after the taking of food The contents are partially digested food large quantities of mucus and often bile

(e) *Gastrectasis* Large quantities of fluid and particles of food are vomited at considerable intervals

(f) *Gastric Hyperesthesia* Vomiting occurs as soon as food or drink is swallowed

(g) *Hyperacidity and Hypersecretion* These may cause hyperesthesia with instant vomiting after taking food

(h) *Asiatic Cholera* Asiatic cholera causes gastric irritation frequent vomiting of a rice-colored material, it is unattended by nausea and is not followed by relief

(i) *External pressure upon the stomach*, such as pressure by a large liver or gallbladder pericardial effusion or ascites may cause vomiting when the stomach is full

II *Systemic Origin* (a) *Pulmonary Tuberculosis* Vomiting is caused by toxemia and occurs often after a paroxysm of cough

(b) *Whooping cough* and other forms of cough attended by strain may be followed by vomiting

(c) *Peritonitis* causes vomiting of the gastric contents bile and fecal matter

(d) *Disease or irritation of the bowel* i. e. enterocolitis appendicitis colic drastic purgation, etc., may cause vomiting

(e) *Acute obstruction* of the bowels as in intussusception volvulus, torsion ileus and strangulated hernia causes vomiting which gives no relief and the vomitus may become stercoraceous

(f) *Biliary and renal colic*, acute hepatitis cystitis and pancreatic disease may cause spontaneous vomiting

(g) *Addison's disease*, and acute yellow atrophy of the liver cause characteristic vomiting

(h) *Toxins*, poisons uremia and eclampsia always cause vomiting

III *Nervous Origin* Vomiting of central origin is usually not attended by nausea, it is of the projectile type, is not followed by relief and occurs independent of taking food

(a) Tumor and abscess of the brain, meningitis, anemia and hyperemia of the brain, contusion and concussion of the brain, fracture of the skull (b) seasickness Meniere's disease and migraine (c) acute myelitis disseminated sclerosis and paresis may be considered in this classification

IV *Reflex Vomiting* This may be caused by (a) Irritating and tickling of the pharynx and fauces, (b) persistent coughing, (c) attempt at dislodging viscid secretion from nasopharynx (d) eyestrain, (e) revolting sights (f) unpleasant odors, (g) sudden shock nervousness, anticipation anxiety or hysteria, (h) early pregnancy (morning sickness), (i) gastric crisis of tabes (j) allergic manifestation (k) heart disease (during the stage of decompensation) myocardial degeneration pericarditis and angina pectoris Hiccough is a frequent complication in vomiting of reflex cardiac origin

*Persistent vomiting of Lydan* is a form of reflex vomiting in which the attacks are recurrent without obvious cause often associated with slight indigestion constipation fatigue worry or disappointment The vomiting is copious and continuous Examination will reveal no gastric tenderness retracted abdomen hypersensitiveness and intolerance to light sound and odors

V *Irritation of the Vomiting Center* (a) By drugs i. e. apomorphine morphia digitalis (b) By irritations—nephritis uremia certain

tumors and (c) by *chloroform* or *ether* *arcosis* may cause vomiting

### Characteristics of the Vomitus

When examining the vomitus it is important to note its general appearance consistency color contents quantity odor and reaction

The *general appearance* depends upon The kind of food or other material swallowed the lapse of time between food taken and its being vomited and the presence in the stomach of mucus blood coloring matter saliva acids and foreign bodies

When vomiting occurs soon after eating the food will show very little change after the lapse of an hour or two the food will show partial digestion five or six hours later no food should be found in the vomitus In retention vomiting *etc* gastrectasis or hypomotility—food taken many hours before or on the previous day may be seen in the vomitus

The *consistency* depends largely upon its contents

(a) *Fluid Thin watery vomitus* may occur after an alcoholic debauch in chronic gastritis and after having consumed large quantities of water which an irritable stomach may expel If the vomitus is of *alkaline* reaction it indicates the presence of a large amount of saliva and is often found when prolonged nausea has preceded the act of vomiting *Acid vomitus* occurs in gastric hypersecretion and in acid fermentation and may be found in peptic ulcer gastric crises of tabes hysteria Graves disease and migraine *Rice water vomitus* is found in cholera

(b) *Semsolid Vomitus* This consists of undigested or recently ingested food it occurs in gastric irritation over feeding swallowing of nauseating food

seasickness (after a full meal) vertigo etc

(c) *Thick Tenacious Mucous Vomitus* This is a symptom in acute or chronic gastritis

*Color* Green or yellowish vomitus is usually caused by bile in the stomach It may be found after violent vomiting with retching and in patulous pylorus Vomiting of grass green bile in small amounts and unattended by retching is of frequent occurrence in peritonitis with intestinal obstruction Yellow blue black red (not blood) and other colored vomitus may be caused by the ingestion of coloring matter contained in food candy drinks or other substances

*Red Vomitus—Hematemesis* (vomiting of blood) The quantity of blood in the vomitus may vary from a few streaks or pin points to a quantity so large that the entire vomitus may consist of pure blood Bright red blood indicates that the blood is fresh Dark red brown black and coffee ground color indicates that the blood has remained in the stomach for some time and undergone digestion Hematemesis may be of *extra gastric* or of *gastric* origin

*Hematemesis of extragastric origin* may be due to 1 The swallowing of blood from a wound in or about the mouth *etc* the larynx pharynx tonsils rhinopharynx after or during epistaxis also from varicosities in the esophagus and injury of the esophagus by the swallowing of hard or sharp substances

2 *Blood Dyscrasias* Purpura hemophilia scurvy severe primary and secondary anemia leukemia hemolytic jaundice cholemia and at times Hodgkin's disease acute fevers such as severe malaria typhus epidemic influenza relapsing fever yellow fever (black vomit) smallpox dengue chronic nephritis



any cause in general peritonitis and in the presence of a gastrointestinal fistula

**Pus in the Vomitus** This may result from swallowing the contents of a retro pharyngeal abscess a peritonsillar abscess or an esophageal abscess The pus from empyema pyopericardium hepatic abscess splenic or perirenal abscess may find its way into the stomach and be subsequently vomited Phlegmonous gastritis and diphtheritic inflammation of the stomach wall may be primary causes of purulent vomiting

### Quantity, Odor and Reaction

These depend largely upon the quantity of food in the stomach the kind of food and the stage of digestion

matter or the hearing of a revolting tale may cause nausea It may occur also in diseases of the central nervous system, in neurasthenia and in hysteria

**Pain** *Cardialgia* is severe epigastric pain occurring in paroxysms *Gastrodynia* is severe cramplike pain in the epigastric region *Gastralgia* denotes pain in the stomach *Pseudoangina pectoris* is severe pain in the epigastrium and lower sternal region often referred to the shoulders This may be caused by duodenal ulcer and adhesions in the right upper abdominal quadrant

Epigastric pain sharp or dull constant or paroxysmal in relation to taking food or independent of it is an al

## Differential Diagnosis Pulmonary and Gastric Hemorrhage

### HEMOPTYSIS

- 1 Evidence of preexisting pulmonary disease
- 2 Preceded by thoracic oppressions and a saline taste
- 3 Blood ejected by coughing or by cleaning the throat when hemorrhage is small
- 4 In profuse hemorrhage and when ejected immediately blood is arterial in color
- 5 Alkaline reaction
- 6 Blood mixed with particles of mucus
- 7 A pronounced beaded froth
- 8 Microscopically tubercle bacilli or other organism and possibly fibers of elastic tissue

### HEMATEMESIS

- 1 Referable to the throat stomach liver heart or develops in females near the time of puberty
- 2 Preceded by giddiness faintness or nausea
- 3 Blood ejected by vomiting or gagging
- 4 Blood of gastric origin is dark as a rule blood of pharyngeal origin bright red
- 5 Gastric blood acid pharyngeal blood alkaline in reaction
- 6 May contain undigested food
- 7 Froth less marked
- 8 Microscopically sarcinae ventriculi starch granules particles of food and in the case of carcinoma large non motile bacilli (Oppler Boas) and rarely carcinomatous tissue

The blood from hemoptysis may be swallowed and later vomited

**Symptoms Preceding Emesis** It is important to note whether vomiting is preceded by nausea or pain

**Nausea** Nausea usually precedes vomiting of gastric origin though it may occur in eyestrain (astigmatism) seasickness early pregnancy and in some the sight or odor of obnoxious

most constant symptom in most of the gastric disorders At times the pain may be referred to distant parts of the body (SEE p 74)

There are also conditions other than gastric disease that may cause epigastric pain and should be differentiated from it

## Differential Diagnosis, Inflammation, Neuralgia and Colicky Pain in Abdominal Region

Pain	Inflammation	Neuralgia	Colic
Type and radiation	Dull aching and if the inflammation is acute and engorgement of the vessels is excessive the pain also tends to radiate from the inflamed area outward toward the periphery	Sharp acute generally radiates along the course of a nerve as in neuralgia of the tenth dorsal nerve in which the pain radiates around from the tenth interspace to the area of distribution on the abdominal wall	Sharp acute an lagonizing the pain of a colic radiates in different directions depending upon the location of the colic for instance in gallstone colic the pain radiates around to the back underneath the scapula of the same side
Pressure	Increases the pain	Is excessively tender The slightest pressure produces an excruciating pain Pain can also be produced by pressure upon the nerve trunks and this pain radiates along the terminal branches	Eased by pressure as in cases of gallstone colic the patient seeks ease by doubling up and making pressure against the abdominal wall
Duration	Constant	Intermits but intermission is not sudden and acute	Stops suddenly but the soreness persists for a short time
History	Generally has not had a previous attack	May not have had previous attack	Generally a history of previous attack

Epigastric pain referred to the left of the spinal column accompanied by epigastric tenderness and aggravated soon after taking food which is relieved by vomiting is suspicious of *gastric ulcer*

Epigastric pain which occurs two or three hours after taking food but is relieved immediately after taking food or alkalies is significant of *duodenal ulcer*

Epigastric pain which is nearly constant and is not relieved by alkalies and is accompanied by tenderness and the presence of a mass in the epigastrium is suspicious of *carcinoma*. During the early stages of carcinoma a tumor may not be palpable

Epigastric pain accompanied by a burning sensation (heartburn) which occurs after taking rich spicy foods acids alcoholic beverages or after the

excessive use of tobacco is indicative of *acute gastritis*

Epigastric pain accompanied by over distention of the stomach with a sense of fullness in the epigastrium often with the sensation of a 'lump in the throat' is indicative of *gastric fermentation*

Epigastric pain and tenderness occurring in paroxysms and referred to the right shoulder is significant of *gallbladder disease*

Epigastric pain, occurring in paroxysms which are acute and sharp often accompanied by collapse and tenderness above the umbilicus and associated with a slow pulse is significant of *pancreatic disease*

Epigastric pain may be a symptom in Dietl's crisis gastric crisis, acute intestinal obstruction necrosis of a vertebra intercostal neuralgia myalgia of

abdominal muscles epigastric hernia hydronephrosis carcinoma of the transverse colon adhesive pericarditis pericardial effusion large pleural effusion cardiac dilatation aneurysm of the thoracic aorta angina pectoris aortitis and lead poisoning Epigastric pain is often present in sudden emotions mount climbing and severe exhaustion

**Cardiac Palpitation of Gastric Origin** This may occur as a result of overeating gastric flatulence the ingestion of improper food overindulgence in alcohol and tobacco and in neurotic individuals when eating while under stress fear or excitement

### **Diseases of the Stomach**

Many of the diseases of the stomach cannot be accurately diagnosed by the evaluation of the history symptomatology and the physical signs For accurate diagnosis it often becomes necessary to examine the stomach contents to have an x ray study and at times a gastroscopic study

#### ***Gastralgia (Gastrodynia, Neuralgia of the Stomach)***

Gastralgia is a condition of the stomach characterized by severe paroxysmal epigastric pain unassociated with any definite gastric lesion It may be caused by overwork and anemia or by such dietetic errors as may produce acute gastritis This condition is usually found in people of a sensitive and nervous temperament Gastralgic pain is often associated with gastric cancer and ulcer it is also found in locomotor ataxia and nervous dyspepsia with hyperacidity

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis** Paroxysms of severe pain in the epigastrium usually radiating to the back occur when the stomach is empty Relief

may be had by pressure upon the painful area and the ingestion of warm stimulating drinks and food

**Differential Diagnosis** Simple gastralgia should be differentiated from the following conditions

**Gastric Ulcer** Pressure in the epigastrium causes pain hyperchlorhydria is always present vomiting of blood often occurs and the ingestion of food may increase pain

**Carcinoma** Anemia often emaciation almost continuous pain which increases after taking food loss of appetite vomiting at times with coffee ground material and an absence of hydrochloric acid with the presence of fatty acids and an epigastric mass are strong diagnostic features

**Angina Pectoris** Pain usually comes on after exertion as a rule it is over the lower part of the sternum or precordium and radiates to one or both shoulders and down the left arm During the attack the patient is oppressed by a sense of impending death

**Gastric Crisis of Locomotor Ataxia** This sometimes simulates gastralgia but the history of syphilis and other tabetic signs would lead one to suspect this condition

**Caries of a Vertebra Aneurysm of the Thoracic Aorta Pericarditis Diets's Crisis Renal Colic Cholelithiasis Acute Pancreatitis** These are conditions that should be borne in mind when one attempts to diagnose gastralgia The history of the patient the physical signs and x ray study will often help in arriving at a correct diagnosis

#### ***Peptic Ulcer (Gastric Ulcer and Duodenal Ulcer)***

**Definition** A peptic ulcer is a round perforating ulcer occurring in the stom-

*GASTROSCOPIC VIEWS*  
(Schiller)

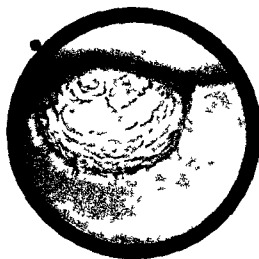
**GASTRIC ULCER**

A definite ulcer involving the lesser curvature the edges of which are undermined. The ulcer shows yellowish coloration. The dark area to the right is the pyloric antrum. Just underneath a small pigment fleck (dark brown) is noted. Above small arteries containing blebs of mucus and submucous hemorrhagic areas are seen.



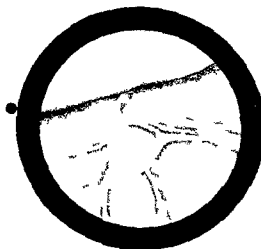
**CALLOUS GASTRIC ULCER**

A large callous ulcer involving the lesser curvature is seen. It is of the deep penetrating type leading to the pancreas.



**GASTRIC ULCER SCAR**

A scar resulting from a gastric ulcer is seen on the anterior wall of the stomach.



Differential Table Between Gastric Ulcer and Gastralgia

GASTRIC ULCER

History unimportant

Most frequent from 15 to 35 years of age

The paroxysms of pain usually come on at a definite period after eating

Eating relieves pain for a short period

Position of patient may relieve pain

Tenderness on pressure over a certain limited area in the epigastrium

Pressure usually aggravates and only occasionally relieves patient during paroxysms of pain—not during the intervals between seizures

In the intervals gastric disturbances more or less severe are present

Hematemesis present in nearly one half of the cases

General health often much impaired particularly late in the affection

Physical signs of a mass may be present

Dilatation may coexist in the late stage

Hyperacidity of gastric juice usually present.

Improvement follows rest and regulation of diet

GASTRALGIA

History of neurasthenia neuralgia and hysteria the rule

Most frequent before or near the menopause (in the female)

Paroxysms more frequent when stomach is empty and show less periodicity

Eating usually brings relief

No decided relief

Tender spot absent General hyperesthesia of the skin of epigastrium often present

Pressure almost always relieves the pain

In the intervals between attacks no gastric disturbances present as a rule

Hematemesis absent

General health less affected than in ulcer

Signs of tumor always absent

Dilatation not present

Hyperacidity present only in certain forms

Regulation of diet has no effect

seeks a physician's advice Fullness after meals eructation and pyrosis are often complained of for many years before a diagnosis of ulcer is made

(d) *Vomiting* Nausea and vomiting may occur at infrequent intervals The vomitus may contain large quantities of acid material and food in various stages of digestion depending upon the time elapsed between the ingestion of food and its expulsion through the mouth

(e) *Hematemesis* This occurs in a large proportion of cases Sometimes a frank hemorrhage, at other times only a small quantity of blood mixed with food and occasionally only occult blood may be found In duodenal ulcer there may be hematemesis with melena or occult blood in the vomitus and feces

Hematemesis may be the first sign of a peptic ulcer no other symptoms may be complained of by the patient preceding the bleeding

(f) *Anemia* This may occur because of malnutrition hematemesis and because the food is not being properly assimilated or is vomited Persistent bleeding no matter how small the quantity of blood lost each day may cause grave anemia

Gastric Carcinoma

This usually occurs in persons past 40 years Among the predisposing causes are age mechanical irritation—such as ulcer or hot fluids or irritating substances—and probably heredity A carcinoma may affect the cardiac end of the stomach the greater or lesser

curvatures or the pylorus. In some instances the entire stomach may be infiltrated giving it a leather bottle appearance.

### Symptomatology and Diagnosis

(a) *Pain* Gastric pain is usually constant at times it may come on soon after taking food or not until one two or more hours later. The closer the lesion is to the cardia the earlier in the digestive period does the pain occur. The pain may be burning, dragging or boring

associated with a sense of suffocation after meals. The appetite is poor though some patients retain their appetite until late in the disease.

(d) *Loss of Weight* Progressive loss of weight is a constant feature. At first weight is lost slowly and as the disease progresses emaciation occurs rapidly.

(e) *Anemia and Cachexia* These occur as the disease progresses. The blood picture is that of secondary anemia.

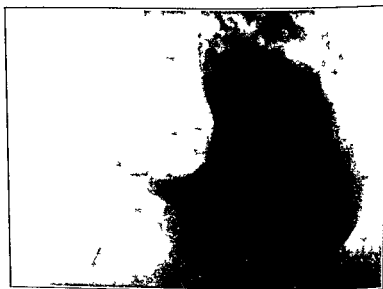


Fig 7—The arrow points to a neoplasm which involves the pyloric port of the stomach.

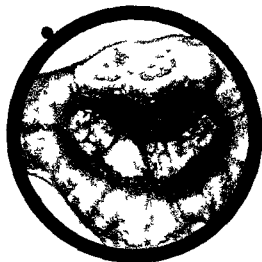
in character and continuous or paroxysmal. In some instances pain does not occur until after the carcinoma has become moderately far advanced.

(b) *Vomiting* This is an early symptom and is usually preceded by nausea. The vomitus is often blood stained having a coffee ground appearance particularly so if the food and blood have remained in the stomach for some time.

(c) *Dyspepsia* Indigestion, epigastric distress, the sensation of fullness and of a lump behind the sternum often

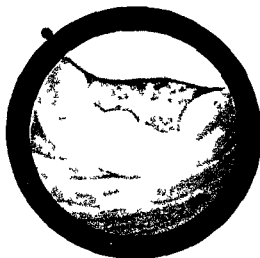
*Gastric Analysis* This will reveal an absence of free hydrochloric acid even after the histamine test and the presence of fatty acids. (For further detail see p 1028.)

*Physical Examination* This reveals usually a pale, pasty looking individual who gives evidence of having lost weight. A mass may be palpated in the epigastrium which as a rule is not very tender to touch. The size of the palpable mass depends upon the stage of the disease. Metastasis to the lymph glands and to other organs may occur.



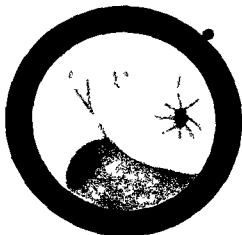
# ANNULAR CARCINOMA OF THE PYLORUS

A large ulcerative extensive carcinoma is seen involving the pylorus in circular fashion



# ULCERATIVE CANCER OF THE PYLORUS

Above is seen the large ulcerative carcinoma infiltrating the posterior wall. Below to the right is seen a small carcinomatous ulcer surrounded by healthy mucosa.



# GASTRO ENTEROSTOMY STOMA

At the right the gastroenterostomy stoma is seen, the edges well defined by folds of the mucosa. At the left the normal appearing pylorus is seen.

**Acute Gastritis****(Simple Gastritis, Acute Dyspepsia, Acute Gastric Catarrh)**

Acute gastritis is an acute disturbance of the stomach occurring as a result of indiscretion in diet either quantitative or qualitative. The ingestion of alcohol, spiced foods, pastries and other indigestible articles, overeating or eating when one is exhausted or in a great hurry or under some emotional strain are among the predisposing features.

**Symptoms** These are epigastric distress, fullness, sensation of being bloated after meals, nausea and occasional vomiting, headache at times, diarrhea alternating with constipation and abdominal colic. Vomiting usually gives relief.

**Physical examination** is practically negative.

Acute gastritis may be caused by some definite inflammatory condition of the gastric mucosa.

Thomas McCrae describes *suppurative gastritis*, *toxic gastritis*, *diphtheritic* or *membranous gastritis* and *mycotic* and *parasitic gastritis* as follows:

**Suppurative Gastritis** This is characterized by epigastric pain, high fever, vomiting, dry tongue and other symptoms of acute infection. Jaundice is sometimes present.

**Toxic Gastritis** This is characterized by intense pain in the mouth, throat and stomach, difficulty in swallowing, salivation and more or less constant vomiting. Sometimes the mucous membranes of the stomach and blood may be found in the vomitus. The abdomen is usually distended and tender to touch. This condition is caused by the ingestion of poisons such as carbolic acid, bichloride of mercury, arsenic, phosphorus, oxalic acid, etc.

**Diphtheritic or Membranous Gastritis** This sometimes occurs in diphtheria, however, membranous gastritis may be found in severe toxic fevers such as typhus or typhoid fever, smallpox, pneumonia, pyemia and the membranous gastritis of childhood. This condition is diagnosed by the occurrence of membranes in the vomitus, pain, fever and symptoms of the associated underlying diseases.

**Mycotic and Parasitic Gastritis** Various fungi and bacilli may often reside in the gastric mucosa and set up an acute or chronic inflammation, the specific diagnosis of which can be made only when the organisms are recovered in the vomitus.

**Chronic Gastritis****(Chronic Catarrh of the Stomach, Chronic Dyspepsia)**

By chronic gastritis is meant a chronic catarrhal inflammation of the gastric mucous membrane associated with qualitative and quantitative changes in the gastric juice, the formation of large quantities of mucus with alterations in the size of the stomach and the tonus of its walls. This may be caused by improper indigestible food or by food that is too hot or too highly seasoned, the abuse of alcohol, tobacco and ice water, by focal infection such as chronic appendicitis, infected teeth, tonsils or infected sinuses, chronic diseases such as diabetes, nephritis, anemia, tuberculosis, etc., also by organic inflammatory diseases of the stomach such as carcinoma or ulcer.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis** This condition is gradual in its onset, which is characterized by occasional attacks of indigestion and the inability to digest certain foods, nausea and occasional vomiting after a full meal. As the



**Differential Diagnosis, Chronic Gastritis, Gastric Ulcer and Gastric Carcinoma****CHRONIC GASTRITIS**

Not confined to any age  
More common in middle aged or elderly people

Pain in the epigastrium somewhat aggravated by food  
Soreness is also present  
Both are constant although comparatively slight

Symptoms of indigestion marked

Sometimes vomiting

No hemorrhage or but trifling hemorrhage at most  
Blood streaks in vomited matter

Bowels constipated

No fever

Acid taken with meals does not increase pain

Not much emaciation no cachectic appearance

Disease may be relieved or cured is often of very long duration

No tumor

Contents of stomach almost always contains free hydrochloric acid

No lactic or fatty acids after the rigid Boas test meal

Slight motor disturbance

No dropsy

**GASTRIC ULCER**

May occur in middle aged persons but is most frequent in young adults

Pain in the epigastrium much aggravated by food  
Subsides when this is digested, paroxysms of pain not lancinating, strictly localized  
Soreness to touch in epigastrium sometimes a painful spot over lower dorsal vertebrae  
Intermissions in the pain are frequent

Symptoms of indigestion sometimes slight  
Heartburn and pain frequent

Vomiting may be present or absent

Abundant hemorrhage from the stomach common  
Stools may contain blood (tarry)

Bowels usually constipated  
Intermittent occult blood in stools

No fever

Acids taken increase pain

Frequently extreme pallor and debility, especially if preceded by anemia.

Duration uncertain, may get well may run on rapidly to perforation, or may last for years

Rarely a tumor

Hydrochloric acid in excess in contents of stomach

No lactic or fatty acids after the rigid Boas test meal

Motor function fair

No dropsy

**GASTRIC CARCINOMA**

Most common in elderly people rarely occurs in persons under 40 years of age.

Pain frequently of a radiating kind, often paroxysmal, not infrequently severe and lancinating but not of necessity associated with soreness  
Little or not at all affected by food  
Pain rarely remits never intermits for any considerable time

Symptoms of indigestion marked  
Anorexia extreme  
Acidity of stomach

Vomiting a very frequent symptom

Hemorrhage not very abundant but frequently occasioning coffee ground vomit

Bowels obstinately constipated  
Occult blood in feces continuously

Attacks of slight fever occur  
Temperature often subnormal

Acid taken does not increase pain

Progressive loss of flesh and cachexia  
Enlarged lymphatic glands

Average duration one year may be shorter but seldom longer

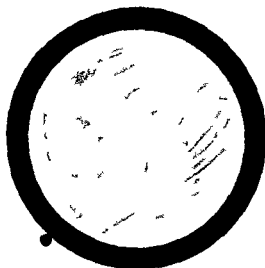
Generally a tumor

No hydrochloric acid in contents of stomach

Lactic acid present after Boas test meal

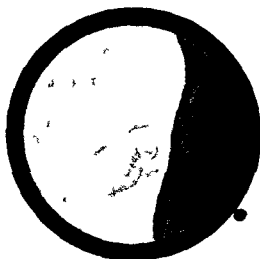
Early marked disturbance

Edema of ankles common



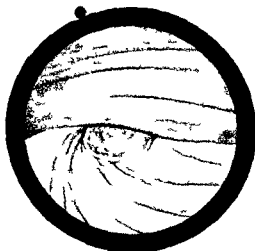
### CHRONIC GASTRITIS

The mucosa of the fundus portion of the stomach evidences a chronic catarrh. Red spots are seen near the small vascular endings (probably hemorrhagic). This is probably a case of beginning gastric atrophy.



### HYPERTROPHIC POLYPOID GASTRITIS

The posterior wall of the stomach evidences a hypertrophic gastritis with polypi which are rather prominent due to the associated swelling of the mucosa.



### CARCINOMA OF THE PYLORUS

A large carcinoma involving the pylorus is seen just below the lesser curvature level.

disease progresses it is found that the quantity and quality of food usually taken during health now causes great distress. In long standing cases the stomach becomes enlarged and food may remain in the stomach for several days. Vomiting may occur at irregular intervals. The vomitus contains a diminished amount of hydrochloric acid, often some fatty acids, mucus and partially digested food. Gastric motility is delayed. Constipation may alternate with diarrhea.

Ewald describes three forms of chronic gastritis:

1 *Simple gastritis* in which the fasting stomach contains only a small quantity of slimy fluid; the test breakfast reveals a diminution of hydrochloric acid; lactic and fatty acids are usually present; pepsin and rennin are always present.

2 *Mucous gastritis* in which the stomach contents contain a slight amount of acid and large quantities of mucus.

3 *Atrophic gastritis* in which the fasting stomach is usually empty. After the test breakfast hydrochloric acid, pepsin and rennin are absent.

A differential diagnosis of carcinoma of the stomach, chronic gastritis and gastric ulcer is often difficult, particularly so in the absence of a palpable mass. (See table on preceding page.)

### *Dilatation of the Stomach (Gastrectasis)*

This condition may be *acute* or *chronic*. It may be caused by obstruction of the pylorus which prevents the expulsion of food; in its effort to overcome resistance the stomach will at first become hypertrophied and then dilated.

**Etiology.** *Atony of the stomach* may occur as a result of wasting diseases or anemia, overeating or overdrinking in

these conditions will, because of the inelasticity of the stomach wall, cause dilatation of the stomach. Also congenital weakness of the muscular coat and impaired innervation, imperfect peristalsis, omental hernia, perigastric and periduodenal adhesions and gastropnoia are among the conditions that may cause chronic gastric dilatation.

*Acute dilatation* may occur during the course of some specific fever or immediately after a laparotomy and often as the result of drinking large quantities of effervescent liquids and because of shock and trauma.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis.** *Chronic dilatation* is characterized by the vomiting of unusually large quantities of fluid or digested food which contains remnants of material ingested several days previously. It has a sour odor, contains bacteria, fatty acids and often much mucus.

*Acute dilatation* is characterized by sudden severe pain accompanied by colic. The pulse is small and rapid; the apex beat may be displaced upward or it may not be palpable; the temperature is subnormal; the patient is cyanotic and complains of severe upper abdominal pain resembling angina pectoris. The abdomen is distended and tympanic and tender to the touch. Vomiting of large quantities of fluid and eructation of gas will often aid in the diagnosis.

**Physical Signs.** *Inspection.* When the stomach is distended, fullness may be noted in the upper abdomen extending below the umbilicus; direct or reverse peristalsis is often present.

**Palpation.** An indefinite rounded mass will be palpable in the abdomen, particularly so in thin individuals.

**Percussion.** The percussion note will depend upon the amount of gas and the

## Differential Diagnosis Gall Duct Disease Gastric Ulcer and Pyloric Spasm

Symptoms	Gall Duct Disease	Gastric Ulcer	Pyloric Spasm
Pain type	Generally some constant soreness in cholangitis then as the duct becomes blocked the pain is paroxysmal with a gradual disappearance only a soreness remaining. The pain may be referred to the area of the fourth costal cartilage on the left side. Long intervals from pain may be present.	Sudden sharp referred to one special point on the abdomen. Relieved by vomiting is rather constant always follows the ingestion of food.	Sudden onset occurs a few hours after the ingestion of food, when it is passing through the pylorus. The spasm is relieved by vomiting. Attacks generally occur at short intervals.
Relationship to the ingestion of food	None except in cases of inflammation of the duct (common), when it seems that intestinal peristalsis may set up an associated peristalsis in the duct.	Follows immediately upon or a short time after the ingestion of food depending upon whether the ulcer is at the cardia or the pylorus. Eased by local analgesics.	Follows two or four hours after the ingestion of food.
Tenderness	Slight tenderness in epigastrium then over the gall bladder and liver area as the duct becomes occluded and the gallbladder and liver distended.	Present in a circumscribed area. Area is constant and is generally located in the epigastrium immediately below the ensiform cartilage.	In epigastrium.
Jaundice	Present (usually).	Absent.	Absent.
Nausea and vomiting	Generally present constant. Bile is present when the duct is blocked. May ease the pain.	Generally occurs. Some blood in it at times the pain is generally eased by it. Bile present.	Frequent eases the pain no bile.
Temperature	May have a Charcot's intermittent fever but generally no rise in gallstone colic and only a slight rise in cholangitis.	No rise.	No rise.
Pulse	Generally slight increase.	Slight increase.	Slight increase.
Urine	Bile present.	No bile.	No bile.
Position of election	Gallstone colic patient is doubled up with knees flexed on abdomen body bent forward and pillow or hands often placed against abdomen. Patient often lies on his face.	Back.	Any position.
Effect of movement	Patient is very restless constant movement.	Restless.	Very restless hands pressed tightly against the abdomen.
Application of cold or heat	Same as in gallbladder.	Cold eases.	Cold increases, heat eases.

quantity of fluid present in the stomach. If the stomach is distended with gas it may easily be outlined. If it is partially filled with fluid or solid material its exact boundary is not easily mapped out. By *auscultatory percussion* or a vibrating tuning fork the boundaries of the stomach may at times be outlined. The most reliable method for determining the size of the stomach is an x ray examination.

### ***Hypertrophic Stenosis of the Pylorus***

Nonmalignant thickening due to hypertrophy of the muscular and mucous coats of the pylorus may be congenital or acquired.

**Congenital Stenosis.** This is a condition seen in very young infants. It is usually associated with pylorospasm and is recognized by frequent vomiting, rapid emaciation and visible peristalsis. Peristalsis may be enhanced by irritating or tickling the skin.

**Acquired Stenosis.** This usually occurs in the adult and may be benign or malignant. The symptoms of nonmalignant and malignant pyloric stenosis are similar, i. e. vomiting, rapid emaciation, etc.

### ***Gastroposis and Enteroposis (Glenard's Disease)***

Glenard's disease is a downward displacement of the stomach and intestines. This is found most frequently among women and may be caused by tight lacing or repeated pregnancies. It is also seen among persons who undergo muscular strain, rapid emaciation and malnutrition. As a general rule, when there is ptosis of the stomach, displacement downward of the spleen, kidneys, liver and colon accompany it.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis.** Examination usually reveals a nervous

rather emaciated person who presents symptoms of nervous dyspepsia, flatulence, constipation, colicky pains and neurasthenic manifestations. The lower abdomen appears pendulous and unusually distended; the concave lines of the upper abdomen are greatly exaggerated. The general posture of the patient resembles a question mark. Tympany may be elicited in the lower abdomen. An x ray study would indicate the true character of the conditions.

### ***Neurosis of the Stomach (Nervous Dyspepsia)***

Under this heading may be considered certain functional disorders of the stomach which are characterized by recurrent attacks of gastric disturbance followed by intervals of complete freedom from symptoms. These conditions usually occur in emotional and highly neurotic individuals and may be ushered in by mental stress, grief, intensive joy, startling news, depression or great anxiety. It may also occur reflexly because of disease of the gallbladder, bile ducts, appendix, pancreas, colon and exophthalmic goiter. A diagnosis of gastric neurosis should be withheld until exhaustive studies have failed to discover an organic lesion or any other definite cause for the digestive disturbances.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis.** Among the prominent symptoms are anorexia alternating with excessive appetite, eructation of gas, epigastric distress, heartburn and occasional regurgitation of food, with or without occasional vomiting. The gastric content is usually normal and the x ray examination reveals nothing abnormal.

**Physical Examination.** This will reveal a nervous individual who may either be emaciated or the picture of

health all other findings are negative except that hyperperistalsis may be present

Neurosis of the stomach may be of three varieties (I) Motor neurosis (II) secretory neurosis and (III) sensory neurosis. These may occur individually or collectively and are found in nervous hypersensitive individuals whose symptoms may often simulate organic disease

**I Motor Neurosis** This is characterized by

(a) *Hypermotility* is manifested by an increase in the normal motor activity of the stomach and pyloric spasm

(b) *Peristaltic unrest* exhibits peristaltic movements of the stomach and bowel soon after eating accompanied by gurgling and borborygmi

(c) *Eructation* causes continuous or paroxysmal belching either of gas engendered in the stomach or of swallowed air. Air swallowing is a fairly common phenomenon among nervous individuals

(d) *Nervous vomiting* may occur at any time and even without provocation it is not associated with nausea or pain. Nervous vomiting when persistent may result in acidosis or alkalosis

(e) *Rumination (mercismus)* regurgitation of food which is chewed again and swallowed occurs frequently

(f) *Cardiospasm* is characterized by pain on swallowing food and is caused by spasmodic contraction of the cardiac orifice. It also produces a sound as the food goes down. This condition is found in air swallowers, hysterical and neurasthenic individuals and also in tetanus

(g) *Pyloric spasm* is usually secondary to hyperacidity, hyperperistalsis and ingestion of irritating foods

(h) *Atony of the stomach* itself may be found in neurotic individuals who

abuse their stomachs by improper food or feeding or it may result from organic disease of the stomach

(i) *In insufficiency or incontinence of the pylorus*, the pylorus is gaping and permits the stomach content to pass into the duodenum without any hindrance. It also allows regurgitation from the duodenum into the stomach

(j) *Insufficiency of the cardia* causes a gaping of the cardiac orifice which permits eructation of food. This is most noticeable on change of posture or when pressure is made against the stomach. This is also often observed in healthy infants when promiscuously handled after feeding

**II Secretory Neurosis** This causes the following conditions

(a) *Hyperacidity and hyperchlorhydria* is characterized by an increase in the amount of gastric juice and hydrochloric acid. It occurs in many gastric disorders of nervous origin also in ulcer and acute gastritis

(b) *In hypersecretion* the gastric juice is increased in quantity. This may occur continuously or in paroxysms often depending upon the kind of stimulus and the state of excitability of the individual

(c) *Hypoacidity or anacidity-achylia gastrica nervosa* is characterized by a diminished amount of gastric juice which contains the normal gastric enzymes and does not interfere with the emptying time of the stomach. This may occur in nervous conditions and in such cases a test meal containing meat or the hypodermic injection of a minute quantity of histamine will increase the quantity of HCl in the gastric juice. The persistent absence of HCl and enzymes in the juice after a meat meal or after the adminis-

tration of histamine may be found in cases of advanced atrophy of the gastric mucosa, in pernicious anemia and occasionally in other anemias, locomotor ataxia, carcinoma of the stomach, and at times in otherwise apparently normal individuals

**III Sensory Neurosis** This is characterized by the following symptoms

(a) *Hyperesthesia* is a supersensitiveness of the gastric mucosa in which

the patient complains of fullness, burning gastric distress, often before the meal is completed and at times when the stomach is empty

(b) *Gastralgia* may occur as a manifestation of gastric neurosis or as the result of organic disease

(c) *Anomalous sense of hunger* may occur, i. e. the patient may be constantly hungry, may have no appetite at all, or may have a craving for unusual foods or other articles (SEE p 89)

## The Pancreas

### Physical Examination of the Pancreas

Physical examination of the pancreas is not satisfactory because of its anatomic position. The presence of a tumor, carcinoma, suppurative pancreatitis, acute hemorrhagic pancreatitis, or a cyst of the pancreas can only be surmised by the sense of resistance and pain elicited by deep palpation over the abdomen mid way between the umbilicus and the xiphoid cartilage. The close proximity of the head of the pancreas to the portal veins, the inferior vena cava and the ductus communis choledochus are of clinical importance.

The pancreas is a gland possessing an internal and external secretion. The islands of Langerhans are the glands of internal secretion, which secrete insulin. Disease of these glands is responsible for disturbed carbohydrate metabolism and results in either hyperinsulinism (hypoglycemia) or in hypoinsulinism (hyperglycemia) as in diabetes mellitus (SEE p 798).

The external secretion of the pancreas is represented by the enzymes. Disease of the pancreas proper may alter the quality and quantity of the pancreatic

enzymes and interfere with digestion primarily of fat, protein material and possibly nuclear material.

### Diseases of the Pancreas

#### Pancreatitis

**Acute Pancreatitis** This is an acute inflammatory disease of the pancreas characterized by necrosis, gangrene or suppuration of portions of the gland and usually is associated with hemorrhage.

#### Symptomatology and Diagnosis

An attack of acute pancreatitis is ushered in by sudden intense pain in the epigastrium followed by severe vomiting and belching of gas and is frequently accompanied by hiccoughs and symptoms of profound collapse. The pain is usually continuous with periodic exacerbations and radiates to the back and to the left hypochondrium. At times it may be referred to the lower abdomen. The abdomen is usually distended. There is an area of rigidity and tenderness above the umbilicus. Vomiting at frequent intervals of stomach contents and of bile may accompany the distention. Flatus may be passed though the abdomen is silent. Constipation is marked. The pulse is

slow and jaundice may be present. The stool, when passed, contains large quantities of fat and the urine may give a positive Cammidge reaction and an increased diastase index above 100 or 200.

**Fitz's Rule** Acute pancreatitis is to be suspected when a previously healthy person or one suffering from occasional attacks of indigestion is suddenly seized with violent epigastric pain followed by vomiting and collapse and in the course of 24 hours by a circumscribed epigastric swelling which is tympanitic or resistant, a slight rise of temperature and the presence of fat necrosis.

**Suppurative Pancreatitis** This may be described as a diffuse suppuration of the pancreas, often associated with numerous small abscesses or one large abscess. It may be 1 Acute 2 subacute, or 3 chronic.

### *Symptomatology and Diagnosis*

1 **Acute Suppurative Pancreatitis** This starts abruptly with severe pain, vomiting, chills and hiccoughs associated with a septic temperature. Pain is often referred to the left abdomen, slight jaundice and glycosuria may be present, constipation may be followed by fatty diarrhea. The serum and urine amylase is high. The condition is usually fatal.

2 **Subacute Suppurative Pancreatitis** This is characterized by epigastric pain radiating toward the left, progressive emaciation, general weakness, copious fatty diarrhea, and septic temperature. This condition may last from three to four weeks, terminating in death.

3 **Chronic Suppurative Pancreatitis** The symptoms are less severe but become progressively worse. It is characterized at first by mild epigastric pain, slight septic temperature, anorexia, anemia with gradual loss of strength and

at the terminal stage anasarca may supervene.

**Hemorrhagic Pancreatitis Symptoms** These are characterized by an acute onset of excruciating deep-seated epigastric pain occurring in paroxysms, nausea, retching and severe vomiting, constipation and severe collapse. The vomitus may contain slimy mucus and dark blood. A slight rise of temperature, dyspnea, rapid and feeble pulse, delirium, jaundice, tympanitis, hiccoughs and cyanosis are usually present. Rigidity and tenderness above the umbilicus may be elicited.

**Subacute Pancreatitis** This generally begins with slight epigastric pain coming on several hours after meal. The pain steadily becomes worse until it resembles biliary colic. These paroxysms of pain may come on at frequent intervals, but gradually the intervals are lengthened and the severity of the pain lessens. When the disease becomes aggravated the intervals diminish and the paroxysms increase in length and severity. Pain is often referred to the lumbar region, at times to the lower abdomen and legs, resembling acute appendicitis or renal colic.

### *Symptomatology and Diagnosis*

The paroxysms cause collapse. The patient has a grayish pallor and an anxious expression, the tongue is dry, retching and vomiting with blood and in severe cases with fecal matter occur, the temperature is but little elevated, the pulse is slow and small. A mass may be palpable in the upper abdomen midway between the umbilicus and xiphoid. Peritonitis may occur as a result of this condition. It is usually associated with gall bladder disease, peptic ulcer or duodenitis.



**Differential Diagnosis, Disease of the Pancreas Renal Colic, Appendicitis**

Symptoms	Pancreatitis	Renal Colic	Appendicitis
Pain type	Principally in the epigastrium Very severe and continuous radiating to the left hypochondrium and left abdomen	Generally sudden onset Radiates down the groin in the direction of the ureter sometimes as far as the testicle Attacks are spasmodic and there may be a long period of freedom between individual attacks	May in case of colic be of sudden onset Finally is localized to the right inguinal fossa At first because of the localization of the appendix pain in the epigastrium it may be confused with cholecystitis In some cases gall stone colic may be confused with appendiceal colic
Relationship to the ingestion of food	No special relation in the acute variety but in chronic is made worse several hours after the ingestion of food	No relationship	May follow four to eight hours after taking food Rather common during the night
Tenderness	Epigastric (low)	Over the kidney region in the loin	Over McBurney's point
Jaundice.	Slight amount may be present	Absent	Absent
Nausea and vomiting	Present and as a rule persistent Bile generally present	Not so common	Nearly always present
Temperature	Rise or if the shock be too great a fall	No rise	Rise if the severity of the disease increases the temperature continues to rise and may assume a septic type if abscess formation results
Pulse	Very rapid or very slow	Generally rapid	Increased in rapidity
Urine	Occasional glycosuria no bile urine and serum amylase and lipase high	No bile but blood and pus	Generally no bile
Position of election	On back	On back with the knee of the affected side flexed on the abdomen	Dorsal limbs drawn up and thighs flexed on the abdomen
Effect of movement	Increases pain	Not much effect Patient himself is very restless	Very quiet When peritoneum is involved respiration is restricted
Application of heat or cold	Cold eases and heat increases	Heat eases	Cold eases Heat increases at times
Referred areas	To left hypochondrium and left abdomen	From affected kidney to epigastrium and along ureter to bladder	Lower than in gallbladder or duct disease

**Chronic Pancreatitis** Either acute or subacute pancreatitis may become chronic. The pain may be mild or severe, the paroxysms short or prolonged, often resembling biliary colic, and differentiated from it by the seat of pain which is generally epigastric with a tendency to radiate toward the left side, also jaundice, weakness, emaciation, frequent diarrhea—the stool containing large quantities of fat—with the presence of a tender, resisting mass in the upper midabdomen,

titles of fat, often blood and undigested meat fibers. If the carcinoma affects the main bile duct, jaundice will manifest itself. Pressure upon the portal vein by the tumor will cause ascites. Deep-seated tenderness with the sensation of an indeterminate mass to the palpating hand and the presence of the above enumerated symptoms plus constipation are highly suggestive of carcinoma of the pancreas. *Painless progressive jaundice*, not preceded by colic and associated with



Fig. 8—Polycystic pancreas

indicate pancreatic disease. *Löwy's sign* is usually positive (Two drops of 1 to 1000 epinephrine solution instilled in the eye causes dilatation of the pupil over an extended period.)

### **Tumors of the Pancreas**

**Carcinoma** This usually occurs in people past 40 years of age (the carcinomatous age). The diastase index is above 100.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis:** The diagnosis of carcinoma of the pancreas alone is not easily made, but when associated with carcinoma of the stomach and gallbladder it may be suspected by the presence of stubborn dyspepsia, progressive loss of weight, anemia and colicky epigastric pain. The pain occurs most frequently during the night and is accompanied by collapse, vomiting and diarrhea. The stool contains large quan-

enlargement of the liver and distention of the gallbladder is a frequent symptom of carcinoma of the head of the pancreas.

Usually when the head of the pancreas is the seat of malignancy there is painless jaundice, when the body of the pancreas is affected there is a great deal of digestive disturbance and when the tail of the pancreas is invaded there are signs of diabetes mellitus. An adenoma invading the islands of Langerhans may cause severe hypoglycemia.

**Tumors Other Than Carcinoma** These may cause pancreatic disturbances the presence of which may be inferred by chronic indigestion, slight jaundice, colicky pain and a resistant tender mass in the midabdomen about the umbilicus accompanied by glycosuria.

**Cysts** These may be single or multiple, large or small.

Differential Diagnosis of Pancreatitis and Intestinal Obstruction

Symptoms	Pancreatitis	Intestinal Obstruction
Pain	Sudden severe paroxysmal Begins and continues in the epigastrium with more or less of a tendency to the left of than in the median line Pain is also felt between the shoulders	Sudden continuous of gradually increasing intensity with a possible extension over the entire abdomen due to the development of a general peritonitis
Jaundice	Present (often)	Absent
Pulse	Slow except when shock is associated then it is rapid and thready	Gradually increasing in rapidity
Tumor	A gradual development of one in the epigastrium	Present tympanitic over the region of the obstruction Rare in the epigastrium Not tender on pressure
Vomiting	Present generally persistent Bile generally present gradually becomes less frequent	Vomiting at first of stomach contents then of bile and then of bowel contents
Fever	Present with chills	Absent at first
Distention	Largely colonic generally the tympany is marked especially in epigastrium	May occur in any part of the bowel always above the area of obstruction
Free fluid in peritoneal cavity	Rapid development of	Little if any free fluid
Shock	Present	Absent
Diarrhea	May or may not be present excess of fat in stools	Obstipation
Hiccough	Present	Generally absent
Belching	Present	May be present
High enemata	Generally result in the passage of gas and fecal matter and the reduction of the distention	Result in the passage of some fecal matter and the cleansing of the large bowel but with no lessening of the distention
Urine	Glycosuria intermittently present	No bile no sugar

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis**

The symptoms most frequently encountered in this condition are slight colicky paroxysmal pains referred either to the epigastrium or along the hypochondrium vomiting constipation or fatty diarrhea jaundice and ascites (in the presence of large cyst), the diagnosis of this condition may be inferred when a large mass is found in the midabdomen above the umbilicus in association with the above enumerated symptoms

**Pancreatic Calculi**

Pancreatic calculi may be diagnosed when the stone attempts to pass through the duct thereby causing colicky pain Pancreatic colic is somewhat similar to gallstone colic except that the pain radiates to the left epigastrium and the left shoulder Jaundice occurs infrequently, during the height of the pain, hiccoughs vomiting cold sweats and collapse are of frequent occurrence free fat in the stool and glycosuria when present are an aid to the diagnosis of pancreatic calculi

## CHAPTER XXIII

# Examination and Diseases of the Intestines

### Physical Examination of the Intestines

By *inspection* may be determined the degree of distention or collapse of the various portions of the intestines, by *palpation* is ascertained the presence or absence of tumor masses the amount of resistance and the presence or absence of tenderness overlying the various portions of the gut. Tenderness elicited over the abdomen when investigating the intestines is due in most instances to associated peritonitis which in turn causes rigidity of the abdominal muscles. The sensation of a doughy mass is significant of accumulation of fecal matter in the intestines. Spastic colitis may be suspected when a sausalike colon is palpated. An accumulation of gas is noted by the sense of elasticity it imparts to the palpating hand also by the gurgling which it causes (SEE *Palpation of Abdomen* p 586).

*Percussion* may determine the state of the bowel whether it is empty or filled with gas or solids. Intestines filled with solid material or when empty will give rise to a dull note while over a bowel distended with gas a loud closed tympanic note will be elicited.

By *auscultation* is determined the presence of peristaltic movements the absence of peristaltic movements may denote paralysis of the bowel or obstruction due to any cause.

### Physical Examination of the Rectum

The rectum is examined in three successive steps (I) Inspection of the anal ring and perineum (II) digital examination, (III) instrumental examination (6 6)

**I Inspection of the Anal Ring**  
By this method one can determine the presence of external hemorrhoids fissures malignant tumors condylomata, ulcerations pemphigus vegetans pruriginous eruptions prolapses fistula in ano and ischio-rectal abscess.



Fig 1—Prolapsed rectum.

Inspection is best accomplished by having the patient in the knee-chest position or lying on one side the upper thigh being flexed. The part under examination should face a good light.

**II Digital Examination** The patient should be in the knee-chest position or lying on one side the upper leg and thigh flexed so as to expose as much as possible of the part under examination (the dorsal decubitus with thighs flexed is preferred by some examiners). The gloved lubricated index finger is slowly passed upward through the anus into the rectum. First the tip of the finger slowly sweeps the inner margin of the anus so as to palpate for internal hemorrhoids.

or other pathology in that region. Then the finger is inserted just as high as it will reach and the patient is asked to bear down. This procedure permits the exploration of a portion of the rectum otherwise not palpable. The rectum is thus explored in order to obtain an idea as to the presence of pathologic changes in the lower bowel and of its contents, e. g. impacted feces malignant and benign growth and foreign bodies. The amount of distention, the condition of the sphincter and of the adjacent structures, i. e. the bladder, prostate and seminal vesicles in the male and the uterus and other pelvic organs in the female can thus also be learned. In a virgin a careful rectal examination will usually obviate the necessity of a vaginal examination.

**III Instrumental Examination**  
This is done with a rectal speculum, an anoscope or proctoscope for low examination and the sigmoidoscope for examinations as high as the rectosigmoid junction. A speculum is inserted, whereby the condition of the rectal mucous membrane and the contents of the lower gut can be inspected. Internal hemorrhoids, ulcers, the condition of the crypts of Morgagni and all other visible conditions can be inspected and if deemed advisable treated.

### Diseases of the Intestines

The intestine may become affected because of displacement from its normal position, inflammation of its mucosa, dilatation, tumors, and obstruction.

#### Displacement From Normal Position

The intestinal tract as a whole or any of its parts may become displaced.

(a) **The Displacement of the Intestines as a Whole (Enteroptosis)**

The descent of the intestines is usually associated with gastroptosis and generally visceroptosis (See *Glenard's disease*, p. 649 and *Gastroectasis*, p. 647).

(b) **Cecum** The cecum may be displaced downward (ptosis) or it may be displaced upward, in rare instances, as high as the splenic flexure.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis**  
Such symptoms as constipation, colicky pains simulating appendicitis, vague digestive disturbances with an indefinite palpable mass in the right lower abdomen and the absence of definite tenderness over the appendix, normal blood count and gastric secretion speak for disturbance in the cecum, however, an x-ray study should be made to confirm the diagnosis.

(c) **Redundant Colon** This is a condition in which the colon becomes displaced, its lumen usually enlarges and is often the seat of stasis causing putrefaction.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis**  
When the ascending colon is affected, cramps, constipation, indigestion and a sense of fullness in the right abdomen which at times may simulate chronic appendicitis or nephrolithiasis are symptomatic of this condition.

(d) **The Hepatic Flexure** Because of adhesions from the gallbladder, duodenum, pancreas, or because of displacement by a large liver or kidney, this may become displaced and the seat of retention.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis**  
Indigestion, pain referable to the right upper abdomen, constipation and a sense of either fullness or uneasiness in the upper abdomen with palpable rigidity of the upper rectus abdominis are characteristic features. This condition may be mistaken for cholecystitis, duodenal

ulcer, hydronephrosis or some inflammatory condition of the liver, but may be differentiated from them by the absence of colicky pains and the increased peristalsis of the transverse and descending colon and the absence of other phenomena associated with acute disease. With the aid of an x-ray examination, a diagnosis of distortion of the hepatic flexure may be made.

(e) **The Transverse Colon:** This is often displaced downward and in extreme cases may descend to the level of the pelvis. It usually causes stasis of the intestines, putrefaction and constipation, which often accounts for indigestion and nervous phenomena. The diagnosis of this condition in a patient who has vague digestive disturbances may be made by an x-ray study of the colon.

(f) **Splenic Flexure:** Displacement of the splenic flexure may be accompanied by dilatation or constriction and may be caused by the pressure of a large spleen or a large kidney upon this portion of the bowel, or by adhesions in other parts of the large bowel pulling and distorting the splenic flexure.

#### **Symptomatology and Diagnosis.**

The symptoms usually encountered are digestive disturbances, eructation of gas, a sense of fullness in the left upper abdomen, referred to the diaphragm and often to the precordium, associated with constipation.

*Palpation* may reveal slight rigidity of the left rectus abdominis, and distinct tenderness on pressure.

*Percussion* will yield circumscribed tympany adjacent to the stomach, this depends largely upon the amount of dilatation and degree of displacement. It should be differentiated from hypernephroma, hourglass stomach, evisceration or ventral hernia. A correct diag-

nosis can only be made by an x-ray examination of the colon.

(g) **Sigmoid:** The sigmoid may be come dilated because of chronic constipation or intestinal stasis, it may be displaced by tumors or adhesions, or it may become sausage-shaped.

#### **Symptomatology and Diagnosis**

The commonest symptoms are constipation, fecal impaction, vague pains in the left lower abdomen, often associated with tenesmus. When the colon is filled a soft sausage-like mass may be palpable and a rectal examination will reveal impacted feces. Dilatation of the sigmoid is usually free from pain or tenderness. X-ray examination of the colon may reveal this condition. It is well to bear in mind that the condition of the large intestine may only be determined by physical examination when the abdominal muscles are thin and the abdomen is not distended.

(h) **Duodenum.** The duodenum may be displaced by adhesions, large gall bladder, large kidney, hypernephroma, cyst and large liver, or any inflammatory condition in the right upper quadrant.

Diagnosis by physical examination is not possible. The symptoms may be referable either to the gallbladder or the stomach, and are sometimes associated with jaundice. The diagnosis of this condition may be made by an x-ray study of the gastrointestinal tract.

(i) **Displacement of the Jejunum and Ileum.** This cannot be diagnosed by a physical examination, there are many conditions that may cause displacement of the small intestines, e.g., matting of the intestines caused by disease of the omentum, tuberculosis, peritonitis, general carcinomatosis, or tumors. The symptoms of displacement of

the small intestines are not definite because the symptoms of the underlying conditions are the predominating features

### **Inflammation of the Intestinal Mucosa**

**Acute Catarrhal Enteritis** This may be caused by indiscretion in diet such as decomposed food and irritating poisons. Hot weather (particularly for children) and exhaustion are predisposing factors. It may also occur secondary to infectious diseases, portal engorgement (as a result of diseases of the heart and liver) and by extension from abnormal condition in the abdomen. Bacterial invasion and food allergy are also frequent causes of this condition.

#### **Symptomatology and Diagnosis**

Diarrhea is the commonest symptom and it may be associated with cramps, a mild gaseous distention of the abdomen, borborygmi and vomiting. In some instances only a portion of the gastrointestinal mucosa may be affected.

**Duodenum (duodenitis)** When this alone is affected, the most prominent symptoms are pain and tenderness with some discomfort localized over the upper right abdomen and associated with constipation. As a general rule, this condition is also associated with gastritis, producing the following symptoms: Anorexia, nausea, bilious vomiting, vague gastric pain and jaundice.

**Jejunum and Ileum** The existence of inflammation of the small intestine alone may be inferred by the absence of diarrhea and the presence of colicky pains, borborygmi, moderate distention of the abdomen and tenderness over the mid abdomen, which is relieved by pressure and accentuated at the moment pressure is removed. The stools are not formed

are semisolid or flocculent and contain undigested food, small quantities of mucus and unchanged bile.

**Colon** Inflammation of the large intestine is characterized by pain, profuse diarrhea with tenderness along the colon. The stool is thin, watery, containing small masses of fecal matter and large quantities of mucus (See *Colitis* p. 663).

**Rectum (proctitis)** Inflammation of the rectum may be inferred by the presence of tenesmus, large quantities of mucus, pus and sometimes blood, either in the feces or independent of it.

**Chronic Catarrhal Enteritis** This may result from repeated attacks of acute enteritis, passive congestion of the bowel due to cardiac decompensation, portal congestion and bacterial invasions.

**Symptoms** These consist of chronic diarrhea which may alternate with constipation, colicky pains and abdominal tenderness. The stool may contain undigested food, mucus and shreds of the intestinal mucosa. The quantity may be exceedingly small or very large and may be associated with tenesmus. Prolonged cases may develop emaciation, anemia and nervous symptoms.

**Infantile Diarrhea** This usually occurs in the hot months of the year in children between one and two years of age, especially in those who are artificially fed.

#### **1 Acute Fermentative Diarrhea**

This is characterized by fever, offensive diarrhea, the stool is greenish and contains undigested milk and other food with small quantities of mucus. The number of stools may vary from 3 to 20 or more daily. This condition usually occurs after taking spoiled milk or other indigestible foods, unripe or overripe fruits or because of other dietary indis-

cretion such as eating too much or too often

**2 Cholera Infantum** (summer complaint) This usually occurs in children between the ages of  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 2 years during the hot weather (second summer) It is ushered in abruptly with persistent vomiting and severe copious diarrhea of from 8 to 30 or more stools daily The stool is at first offensive and dark in color it later becomes watery odorless and alkaline and is propelled with force

Extreme weakness rapid emaciation and high fever with prostration are among the characteristic symptoms

**Acute Enterocolitis** This is characterized by a follicular ulceration of the ileum the colon and often of the entire intestinal tract This condition usually occurs during the summer and may follow infectious diseases or other forms of diarrhea It is ushered in with a rising temperature and diarrhea 15 to 30 stools per day passed without pain seldom offensive usually blood streaked and containing much mucus bacillus dysenteriae streptococci and other bacilli

**Symptomatology** This consists of abdominal distention and pain with slight rigidity and tenderness along the colon

**Celiac Disease (Gee)** This is usually found in children between the ages of one to five It is characterized by large light colored gruellike frothy fermenting and offensive stools (diarrhea alba or diarrhea chylosa) It is not associated with fever but anorexia and wasting usually result The abdomen has a peculiar doughy and inelastic feel, resembling tubercular peritonitis It is possibly due to vitamin D deficiency

**Sprue or Psilosis** This is a tropical disease due to vitamin B deficiency and to the invasion by a variety of molds (monilia) It is characterized by diar-

rhea consisting of large light-colored, acid stools containing large quantities of fat and is not associated with pain or tenesmus The tongue may be inflamed, eroded and cracked Anemia resembling the pernicious type is usually present

**Diphtheroid or Croupous Enteritis** A croupous or diphtheritic inflammation of the mucosa of the entire intestinal tract may occur as the result of ingestion of poisons such as mercury arsenic or lead or it may be secondary to infectious diseases such as pneumonia septicemia or typhoid fever and it may occur as a terminal process in chronic affections of the kidney liver and in cancer It is characterized by diarrhea abdominal pain bloodstained mucous stool which may contain shreds of mucous membrane defecation is occasionally associated with tenesmus

**Phlegmonous Enteritis** This is a suppurative inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestine associated with intestinal obstruction strangulated hernia and intussusception It is a rare condition affecting the duodenum more frequently than other parts of the intestinal tract The diagnosis may be suspected when diarrhea pus shreds of the mucosa occur in conjunction with intestinal obstruction

**Ulceration of the Intestines** This may be due to tuberculosis syphilis typhoid fever parasites and foreign bodies in the intestines Ulcerations may also occur idiopathically or they may be due to some deficiency factor or to food allergy

**Symptomatology** The diagnostic features are those of ulceration of the intestines irrespective of its etiology It is characterized by diarrhea pus and blood in the stool sometimes actual hemorrhage may occur if the ulcer has



perforated a blood vessel. Pain and tenderness are found over the area most affected. Deep ulcerations may lead to perforation of the bowel which is diagnosed by collapse, rapid pulse, pain and sudden abdominal distention.

#### **Regional Ileitis (Crohn's disease)**

This is a disease of a segment of the ileum in which the mucous membrane becomes inflamed and ulcerates. The affected portion of the bowel becomes thick, edematous and rigid and the lumen becomes progressively narrowed. The adjacent mesentery becomes thickened and the lymph glands enlarge. This condition is found most often in the terminal ileum but may spread to the cecum and other portions of the bowel or it may cause adhesions to and may ulcerate into the adjacent bowel.

**Symptoms** These are of chronic progressive obstruction such as frequent colicky pain of increasing severity and of greater frequency. The pain is usually centered around the umbilicus and the right lower quadrant of the abdomen associated with general distention. Diarrhea alternates with constipation and there is occasional vomiting. The stool contains occult blood and when loose it contains mucous shreds.

**Physical Examination** In moderately advanced cases this reveals the patient to be pale and to have evidence of loss of weight. The abdomen is distended and there is tenderness and a sausage-like rigidity or mass in the right iliac fossa. The temperature is somewhat elevated. A blood examination will reveal in most cases a hyperchromic macrocytic anemia with a slight polymorphonuclear leukocytosis. The x-ray examination is a valuable diagnostic aid when carefully done. This condition is to be differentiated from subacute ap-

pendicitis, ileocecal tuberculosis and carcinoma of the ileum.

### **Appendicitis**

Appendicitis is an acute inflammation of the vermiform appendix. This condition may be caused by the lodging of a foreign body in its lumen by bacterial invasion and inflammation of its mucosa from any cause. Parasites and carcinoma may also be among the causative features.

Three stages of appendicitis are recognized:

- 1 Acute catarrhal appendicitis
- 2 Chronic catarrhal appendicitis
- 3 Acute purulent appendicitis

#### **Symptomatology and Diagnosis**

1 *Acute catarrhal appendicitis* presents a slight rise in temperature, pain over the right lower abdomen at McBurney's point. It should be borne in mind that the appendix may be displaced upward toward the gallbladder, it may be retrocecal or it may be pulled over toward the left or it may be found in the left iliac region (situs inversus). These abnormal positions should be borne in mind when the site of abdominal pain is considered in the diagnosis of appendicitis. Tenderness and rigidity of the lower part of the right rectus abdominis is, however, a most frequent occurrence. Vomiting does not usually occur at this stage.

2 *Chronic catarrhal appendicitis* is characterized by vague abdominal pain, digestive disturbances and some tenderness on deep pressure over the site of the appendix.

3 *Acute purulent appendicitis* is ushered in abruptly with fever, vomiting, severe agonizing pain over the appendiceal region associated with tenderness

## Differential Diagnosis of Extrauterine Pregnancy, Salpingitis and Appendicitis

Symptoms	Extrauterine Pregnancy	Salpingitis	Appendicitis
Pain	Comes on generally after exertion and is sudden in onset. The pain is most intense and is localized in the lower abdomen. In some cases a pain is also felt in the shoulder of the same side.	Pain may be gradual in onset though in some cases it is very acute. Begins in the lower part of abdomen. In acute cases the pain is sudden in onset and is localized in the tubal areas. In generalized peritonitis pain is absent.	Generally sudden in onset. At first is in the midline. Later it passes over to the right iliac fossa.
Vomiting	Frequent and synchronous with the pain.	Vomiting is a late symptom.	Vomiting is an early symptom.
Pulse	At first because of shock may not be greatly increased in rapidity. After the primary shock the rapidity is not very great until the amount of blood lost becomes excessive.	Generally rapid in acute lesions. In chronic lesions generally no change.	Generally very rapid in acute cases.
Tumor	Very sensitive and tender and lies to one side of the uterus. Is constantly increasing in size. After rupture when a hematocele has formed the tumor mass of the uterus rapidly increases in size, and is soft and boggy.	Painful swelling to one side of the uterus. Generally the uterus is fixed and is not freely movable. Tumor is often bilateral.	Tumor in acute appendicitis can rarely be defined because of the excessive tenderness and rigidity of the abdominal muscle. Percussion sometimes elicits tenderness when palpation fails to do so. If an abscess has formed it can be felt by vaginal examination.
History	Of pregnancy with enlargement of the uterus which is not in proportion to the stage of the pregnancy.	History of recent childbirth or of a vaginal infection. Often no accountable cause is present.	History of previous attack may be present.
Temperature	No elevation. Generally normal.	Rise of temperature.	Generally sudden progressive rise.
Uterus	Enlarged.	Not enlarged.	Not enlarged.
Blood	Hemoglobin low and decreasing. Red and white cells both reduced.	Hemoglobin high. Whites increased. Reds normal.	Leukocytosis always present. Hemoglobin and red cells normal.
Abdomen	Fluid if the hemorrhage has been very great may be elicited on palpation and percussion. Puncture of the posterior vaginal vault with an aspirating needle frequently will reveal condition. A mass is present in pelvis. Rigidity of abdominal muscles may be present. No change in intestinal peristalsis.	No fluid but a mass connected with the uterus may be felt in the pelvis. Rigidity of the lowest segment of the rectum. No change in intestinal peristalsis.	No fluid present. Abscess in right iliac fossa may be felt when an abscess has formed. Change in peristalsis. Localized rigidity over lower segment of rectum.

### Differential Diagnosis of Perirenal Abscess, Osteomyelitis and Suppurative Appendicitis

Symptoms	Perirenal Abscess	Osteomyelitis (vertebra)	Appendicitis (abscess formation)
Pain	Rather severe Tenderness is most marked on pressure made in the subcostal angle Tenderness also is felt on pressure made through the anterior abdominal wall The pain is eased by flexion of the vertebra The pain radiates down in the direction of the ureter	Not very severe ~ Tenderness is most marked on pressure made over the affected vertebra Very little tenderness is felt on pressure through the anterior abdominal wall Pain may radiate down to the hip when the abscess reaches the psoas muscle it runs along this muscle to the hip	History of a very severe pain Generally at the time the patient comes under observation the pain may be so severe and resembles perirenal abscess Pain may be produced by the taking of food For further pain see Appendicitis page 661
Vertebrae	Fixity of vertebrae absent	Fixity of vertebrae In tuberculous disease of the vertebra kyphosis is present as a late symptom	No rigidity of the vertebra
Time of development	May be fairly rapid	Slow	May be slow or rapid Follows an acute attack of appendicitis
Urine	Pus blood generally found if examinations are persistently and carefully made	Pus and blood in urine are absent	No pus nor blood etc present
Nausea and vomiting	Common	Unusual	Common
Tumor	Present below the ribs on the side affected and causes a bulging outward on that side The tumor can be felt sometimes through the anterior abdominal wall	No tumor unless an abscess has formed to one side of the vertebra in which case it is present The appearance may closely resemble the tumor mass of a perinephritic abscess	Tumor mass is lower down than in perinephritis is best felt from in front Is rather sharply circumscribed

to pressure and rigidity over the right lower abdomen Leukocytosis is always present

Appendicitis should be differentiated in women from extrauterine pregnancy and salpingitis also from perirenal abscess and osteomyelitis vertebrae

### Colitis

Colitis is an inflammation of the colon which may be regional or diffuse, specific or nonspecific Disease of the colon occurs most often because of a primary

injury to its wall. The injured portion, because of lack of resistance, may fall prey to a secondary invader such as one of several organisms found in the feces or in the circulating blood Primary injury to the colon may be brought about by a number of conditions 1 Vascular, i.e. emboli thrombi or other conditions interfering with proper nutrition of a large or a small portion of the colon, 2 Lymphatic i.e. disturbance in the lymphatic circulation of the bowel which may greatly interfere with the surface

tension of the colonic mucosa and its function 3 Nervous *i.e.*, interference with the autonomic balance by causing greater spasticity as in vagotonia or greater dilatation as in sympathetico-tonia and thus also interfering with its vascular tone and possibly with its protective secretion, 4 Irritating substances in the stool either mechanical or chemical 5 Neoplasm benign or malignant, 6 Syphilis 7 Primary bacterial or parasitic infections *i.e.* the endamoeba, tuberculosis 8 Vitamin deficiency, *i.e.* sprue, pellagra etc

**Symptomatology** Regardless of the cause colonic irritation is manifested clinically by a change in the number and consistency of the daily evacuations and in the production of an excessive secretion and the expulsion of mucus of mucoid substances and occasionally of blood Abdominal pain of various types, degrees and in various locations may or may not be present Pathologically the changes vary with the severity of the irritation, the various portions of the colon may be spastic or relaxed, contracted or dilated and its mucosa may be inflamed, ulcerated or may appear normal

While these general symptoms are found in all types of colitis there are also specific local and constitutional manifestations that are characteristic of the various types or stages of the disease Because of the varied etiology, the divergent pathology and the multiplicity of the clinical manifestations, colitis may be classified as acute and chronic, and as the specific, *i.e.*, of known etiology, and the nonspecific *i.e.* of unknown or doubtful etiology

Among the specific types of colitis may be mentioned those that have a definite etiology irrespective of the type of

lesion, *i.e.* carcinomatous, tuberculous, syphilitic, bacillary, amebic and other tropical types, as well as those resulting from corrosive poisoning and mechanical injury caused by foreign bodies

The nonspecific or so-called idiopathic colitis may be divided into four groups 1 Spastic or functional colitis or irritable colon, 2 Colosis or mucous colitis 3 Idiopathic, ulcerative or inflammatory colitis and 4 Allergic colitis Whether these are four distinct entities or progressive stages of the same disease is still open to question

**Spastic or Functional Colitis or Irritable Colon** This condition gives rise to a train of local and systemic manifestations and to reflex phenomena which may be referred to distant organs or to the individual as a whole These symptoms may be vague or definite, specific or contradictory The physical signs are also inconstant and proctoscopic examination usually reveals nothing pathologic X-ray examinations however, are of great diagnostic value

**Symptomatology** The patient is, as a rule, extremely sensitive, irritable, easily annoyed and fatigued The chief complaints are those of indigestion, passing of gas at both ends, pyrosis, borborygmus and constipation or constipation alternating with diarrhea. Mild purgation may set up a severe diarrhea at one time while at another time a drastic purgative will cause only a scant bowel movement The reaction to an enema is also variable, some patients are capable of tolerating only a small quantity of fluid, while others may hold three or four quarts with comfort A certain number of them are distressed or become faint when an enema is passed

Pain is variable, it may be generalized over the entire abdomen as a series

of fullness or discomfort or it may be acute in the right or left upper or right or left lower quadrants of the abdomen. Because of the distribution of the pain the signs of indigestion and the general nervousness of the patient this condition is frequently mistaken for cholecystitis, pancreatitis, renal calculi and appendicitis. Other manifestations such as insomnia, headache, tiredness and particularly cardiac palpitation, heart sensitiveness and other neurogenic expressions are common in this condition.

**Physical Examination.** A physical examination reveals general or shifting areas of abdominal tenderness, the area of tenderness often depending upon the degree of distention of a circumscribed portion of the bowel. There is usually no muscle rigidity nor are there areas of skin hypersensitivity. The bowel content may be loose and of offensive odor or it may be of various degrees of hardness, sometimes even stony hard and black. It may be passed in scybalous masses or it may be cylindrical, varying in the size of its circumference and contour.

**Proctoscopic examination** is usually negative.

**X-ray examination** with an opaque enema or an opaque enema followed by an air enema may reveal numerous colonic defects in contour but not in the mucosa. The entire colon may show spasticity with marked contractions of its haustrae or the haustrae may be entirely absent so that the sigmoid presents the so-called plumber's pipe appearance. The colon may be redundant or hugely dilated throughout its course or it may be dilated in some parts and contracted in others. There may also be displacement of the transverse colon and sig-

moid. The point worth noting here is that repeated roentgenographic examinations of the colon may show a divergent picture at each examination.

**Etiology.** There are probably several factors operative in the production of functional or irritable colon. The more obvious ones are (a) A familial tendency or heredity, (b) psychic disturbances, (c) autonomic imbalance, (d) constitutional anomalies and (e) chronic cardiac and renal disease.

**Colosis or Mucous Colitis.** The term colosis I believe is more applicable because of the absence of any definite evidence of inflammation of the mucosa, musculature or any other structure of the colon. The change of the ending *itis* to *osis* is here preferred because it indicates cloudy swelling rather than inflammation and is similar to the nomenclature adopted in the differentiation between nephritis and nephrosis or carditis and cardosis.

Colosis occurs more frequently in women than in men, usually between the ages of 18 and 30 years. It is generally associated with other constitutional derangements, often of an endocrine basis. Sufferers from this type of colon dysfunction frequently show evidence of hypopituitarism which in the female manifests itself by dysmenorrhea or periods of amenorrhea or other functional ovarian disturbance. The basal metabolic rate is as a rule subnormal indicating also some hypothyroidism. The cholesterol content of the blood is increased and not infrequently one finds an increased serum globulin. Functional neurosis is definitely associated with this condition. Whether the neurosis is the primary condition responsible for the bowel dysfunction or the colon disturb-

ance causes the individual to become neurosensitive is an undecided question.

**Symptoms** The symptoms are of two types, one is constitutional, and the other directly referable to the gastrointestinal tract. The *constitutional symptoms* are nervousness, excitability, restlessness, fatigue, ready exhaustibility, occasionally associated with insomnia, disturbing dreams, paresthesia of the extremities with occasional involuntary movements. There may also be palpitation or other cardiac arrhythmias and headaches. The individual is as a rule not thin. Occasionally there are complaints of having lost a considerable amount of weight. The patient appears pale, but the blood picture only rarely discloses any anemia. The *gastrointestinal symptoms* are anorexia, alternating occasionally with excessive appetite. There is generally a sense of epigastric or abdominal fullness with mild colicky pains or some discomfort in the lower abdomen. The pain may at times be quite severe and localized so that a diagnosis of appendicitis, gallstones and in women pelvic inflammatory disease is made. The patient may be entirely constipated. Occasionally large quantities of mucus are passed without any feces but at other times there may be just a thin serous discharge which causes burning of the rectum. Flatulence as well as tenesmus are frequent symptoms. Blood in the bowel movement is rare and found only on occasion when large shreds of mucus have been forcibly torn away because of drastic purgation.

**Physical Examination** The abdomen may be either greatly distended or definitely scaphoid. In the constipated cases where the colon is overfilled with gas and fecal matter the abdomen is distended while those suffering from

diarrhea may or may not have a scaphoid abdomen. However, in all cases of colitis, whether they are constipated or have diarrhea the abdomen is enlarged. By enlargement I do not mean distention. The enlargement may be noted by measuring the distance between the anterior superior spine of the ilia and the lower costal angles on each side where a definite increase in measurements above the normal will be readily detected. This is caused not so much by the abdominal distention as by the relaxation of the spinal muscles which are responsible for abdominal contour. *Palpation* of the abdomen may elicit tender areas along the ascending and descending colon and occasionally sausage-like masses may be detected over these areas. The transverse colon is seldom palpable. Reflex contraction of the anus often adds greatly to the individual's suffering not only because of tenesmus but because of interference with the passage of the bowel content. On sigmoidoscopic examination the mucous membrane appears edematous, pale and distended, the surface presenting a pitted appearance where the shreds of mucus were dislodged, but no actual ulcerations or bleeding points are visible.

**Diagnosis** The diagnosis of colitis is based upon the history of gastric disturbance with manifestations of lower abdominal disturbance, the passage of large quantities of mucus by bowel, the presence of diarrhea or of constipation, the absence of blood and specific organisms in the fecal matter, the presence of tender areas along the colon and the characteristic proctoscopic findings. Constitutional symptoms such as fever, anemia and prostration are usually absent. This condition should be differentiated from chronic appendicitis.

verticulosis spastic colon ulcerative colitis enterocolitis and the various types of specific colitis

**Idiopathic Ulcerative Colitis—Colitis Gravis—Hemorrhagic Colitis or Idiopathic Organic Colitis** Ulcerative colitis may be defined as a chronic suppurative disease of the colon characterized clinically by tenesmus unformed stools containing mucus pus and blood. Sigmoidoscopically it is evidenced by the presence of superficial and deep ulcers in the colonic mucosa which are partially covered with mucus and pus and surrounded by inflammatory areas.

**Pathology** The lowermost portion of the colon is usually affected presenting sigmoidoscopically a variety of lesions. Inflammatory changes areas of edema minute abscesses and ulcerations may be seen at various times and at various points. The size of the lesions are as variable as are their number.

**Symptomatology** The symptoms and physical signs depend somewhat upon the severity of the disease. In all cases there is some abdominal pain either severe or mild the bowel movements are thin containing mucus pus and blood the number of stools are variable ranging from two or three to 20 or more per day. There is usually a rise in temperature secondary anemia develops quite early and is often marked. There is a gradual or rapid loss of weight and profound nervous irritability. The abdomen is tender to touch and imparts a sense of resistance but there are seldom if ever any areas of painful rigidity. Exacerbations and remissions may occur spontaneously.

**Diagnosis and Differential Diagnosis** The diagnosis is based upon the rather gradual onset and the progression of symptoms the proctoscopic

findings the x-ray findings and the bacteriologic examination. Before a diagnosis of ulcerative colitis is made it is necessary to exclude the many conditions simulating it. Among the most important to be borne in mind are the various types of bacillary dysentery amebic dysentery carcinoma of the colon tuberculous enterocolitis diverticulitis thyroid crisis and allergic colitis.

**Allergic Colitis** It is often noted that allergic reactions manifest themselves in the colon as well as in other parts of the body. Occasionally the entire gastrointestinal tract plus the colon may be equally affected. Persons who are subject to urticaria to migraine and to other allergic phenomena frequently develop profuse diarrhea which is occasionally mixed with bloody discharge. Proctoscopic examination during that time will reveal circumscribed areas of congestion in the colon. These can be made to disappear temporarily by the hypodermic injection of adrenalin chloride solution or by the local application of epinephrine or ephedrine solutions. When such patients are tested for their allergic sensitivities the cause of the diarrhea may or may not be found.

### *Dilatation*

**Dilatation of the colon (megacolon)** may be acute or chronic. Acute dilatation of the colon may result from acute intestinal obstruction acute gastroenteritis and paralysis of the bowel it may occasionally occur in conjunction with distention of the entire intestinal tract as seen in typhoid fever and pneumonia. Chronic intestinal dilatation may be congenital as in Hirschsprung's disease or it may be acquired because of chronic constipation slowly growing colonic tu-

mor or other conditions causing partial obstruction with paralysis of the gut

**Hirschsprung's Disease** This is an idiopathic dilation of the colon appearing during early childhood and may be carried over into adulthood it is commoner among boys The usual site is the



Fig 2—Hirschsprung's disease

sigmoid flexure which may be enormously distended occasionally the entire colon may be affected There is usually an associated achylasia of the rectum with hypertrophy of the muscular coat of the pelvic colon and rectum This condition may be brought about by some disturbance in the autonomic innervation of the sigmoid or by inflammation of Auerbach's plexus (Munro Cameron)

**Symptomatology** The abdomen is greatly distended, there is obstinate constipation the intervals between bowel movements may be several days a week or longer Often diarrhea alternates with constipation and there may be signs of colitis

**Diverticulitis** Diverticula may be congenital or acquired They are pouch-like dilations of the colon and may be single or multiple *Meckel's diverticulum* is usually found some distance above the ileocecal valve and may be attached to the umbilicus This may cause en-

tangling of the bowel and lead to intestinal obstruction Occasionally when inflamed it may resemble acute appendicitis, the pain and rigidity is more marked in the umbilical region than over the right rectus *Multiple diverticula* may be found in the colon and at times in the duodenum the most common seat is the sigmoid Occasionally they may become inflamed and produce symptoms of partial obstruction i.e. pain diarrhea or constipation On palpation either a sense of resistance or a sausage shaped mass may be felt in the left lower quadrant of the abdomen The diagnosis of this condition may be made by an x-ray study of the colon

### *Mesenteric Thrombosis or Embolism*

**Mesenteric Thrombosis or Embolism** is characterized by acute abdominal pain distention of the abdomen and often by shock hematemesis and melena It may resemble perforation of the bowel acute pancreatitis perforation of a gastric ulcer acute intestinal obstruction or lead colic

### *Tumors of the Bowel (Benign and Malignant)*

(a) **Benign Tumors** These manifest themselves by causing partial obstruction of the bowel either because of their presence within the lumen of the gut or by compression from without

**Diagnosis** Benign tumor is seldom diagnosed by a physical examination unless the tumor is so large that it may be palpable Benign tumors such as hydronephrosis hepatic tumors cysts and abscesses distended gallbladder enlarged abdominal lymph glands enlarged omental glands aneurysm of the abdominal aorta psoas abscess tuberculous



abscess of the vertebra ovarian cyst intestinal tumors and teratomata also splenic enlargement enlarged kidney cyst of the kidney and large liver may cause partial obstruction of that part of the bowel with which it comes in contact

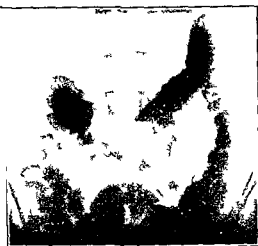


Fig 3—Carcinoma of transverse colon

(b) **Malignant Tumors** *Carcinoma* of the colon is a fairly frequent disease and gives rise to symptoms of partial compression plus excretion. Occasionally severe colicky pain may precede the other symptoms for some time. Malignancy of the intestine occurs most frequently at the transverse colon descending colon the sigmoid and rectum. Characteristic signs are abdominal cramps diarrhea bloody stool associated with or without tenesmus and shreds in the stool. In some instances constipation is marked. An x-ray examination will as a rule reveal obstruction.

*Sarcoma* usually affects the small intestine and originates from beneath the mucosa. The mesenteric and the retroperitoneal glands may be the seat of such infection. It is more frequently found in children and young adults (Fig 19 p 591).

*Obstetric cancer* is a primary retroperitoneal lymphosarcoma. It usually lies deep in the abdomen in a transverse position and is fixed. There is usually severe persistent and deep seated pain often referred to the back. It generally affects children.

*Malignancy of the retroperitoneal glands* may be primary or secondary. It may cause intestinal obstruction or ascites. When the spinal nerves are affected there is severe abdominal pain resembling acute appendicitis cholecystitis perforated peptic ulcer acute peritonitis renal colic Dietl's crisis mesenteric embolism or thrombosis or lead colic. The retroperitoneal glands may also be the seat of tuberculosis and of Hodgkin's disease. Hypernephroma adrenal tumors ovarian malignancy testicular malignancy and other malignancies may also invade these glands.

### **Intestinal Obstruction (Ileus) (Acute and Chronic)**

**Acute Obstruction** This may be caused by 1 Strangulation 2 Intussusception 3 Volvulus or torsion.

1 *Strangulation* occurs as a result of a loop of intestine being caught between abdominal adhesions adherent appendix mesenteric or omental slits and pedunculated tumors or the bowel may be forced through a hernial ring.

2 *Intussusception* is an invagination of adjacent parts of the bowel where one portion of the gut is telescoped into another with subsequent constriction due to tumefaction resulting in obstructions. Invagination of the bowel usually occurs at the ileocecal valve though it may occur in the ileum or colon alone or it may be confined to the large intestine and may be colocolic in which instance the colon and rectum are in

volved In children intussusception of the appendix may occur, though this is not frequent

3 *Volvulus or torsion* is a twisting of the intestine and is most frequently met with at the sigmoid flexure of the colon. A long and relaxed mesentery may predispose to this condition. As a rule a loop of the intestine is twisted upon its long axis and the portions at the end of the loop cross each other, thus causing strangulation, or one portion of the bowel may be twisted about another.

#### *Symptomatology and Diagnosis.*

Acute obstruction is ushered in with severe abdominal pain abdominal dis-

tention absence of bowel movement though feces in the rectum may be washed out with an enema, bloody, serous fluid, containing intestinal mucus and mucus may constitute a stool. Vomiting, first the stomach contents, then bile, and finally the contents of the bowel (fecal or stercoraceous), and collapse may follow. Peristalsis cannot be heard beyond the seat of the obstruction.

On *percussion* tympany may be elicited because of distention of the bowel above the obstruction, beyond the obstructive point dullness may be found due to empty bowel. Acute intestinal obstruction should be differentiated from acute generalized peritonitis.

**Differential Table of Acute Generalized Peritonitis and Acute Intestinal Obstruction**

Symptoms	Acute Generalized Peritonitis	Acute Intestinal Obstruction
History	There is a history of causal conditions or diseases (ulcer appendicitis pelvic infection)	There is a history of previous chronic obstruction or hernia or there may be postoperative adhesions
Temperature	An early and considerable rise of temperature later variable or may be absent	No early rise (except in volvulus) but later with advent of peritonitis a subnormal temperature develops
Pain	Pain continuous and diffuse and increased by movements	Pain in short paroxysms and localized often colicky in nature
Vomiting	Vomiting but not stercoraceous	Vomiting becomes characteristic stercoraceous early
Collapse	Collapse occurs late	Earlier onset of collapse
Leukocytosis	In septic cases leukocytosis with increase in polynuclear cells	There may be increase in number of leukocytes
Abdominal distention	Distention of the abdomen is usually general and marked	Less marked unless the obstruction be situated in the lower segment
Visible peristalsis	Visible peristaltic waves absent	Present and pronounced when the seat of obstruction is low and course of wave may be reversed
Tenderness	Tenderness decided and general	Tenderness localized and usually slight
Effusion	Signs of effusion appear	Less common due to secondary peritonitis
Auscultatory signs	Auscultation negative	Loud gurgling and splashing sounds audible over the abdomen (rocks) above the obstruction. No gurgling beyond obstruction

**Chronic Obstruction:** This may be caused by a slowly growing tumor, large prostate, fecal impaction because of the gradual collection of feces in the cecum or sigmoid. Stricture due to adhesions, congenital strictures and paralysis of the bowel may cause a slowing up of peristalsis with the gradual decrease in size of the lumen of the intestine, and subsequent obstruction.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis:** Prior to the final obstruction the important signs are distended abdomen with tympany, weak peristalsis, toxic symptoms such as indigestion, headache and various pains and aches throughout the body. The stool may be ribbon-shaped or it may occur in scybalous masses and may contain mucus, blood and pus. The symptoms will often depend upon the underlying cause of the chronic obstruction. When complete obstruction finally occurs the signs are similar to those of acute obstruction of the bowel.

### *Constipation*

Constipation may occur as the result of improper food, because of insufficient residue, lack of fluids, bad habits such as restraining from stool, atony of the bowel, general weakness, fecal impaction, megalocolon, Hirschsprung's disease, diverticulosis, tumor of the bowel, rectal disease, intestinal obstruction, paralytic ileus and hysteria. Constipation is only a symptom, its cause depends upon the underlying factors (SEE p 92).

### *Symptoms Referable to the Anus and Rectum*

**Itching (pruritus ani)** Itching of the anus is a most distressing symptom, it may be due to a variety of causes, and occasionally no cause is discoverable. The commoner causes are

(a) Irritation around the anus due to low grade local infection as seen in the presence of irritating vaginal or rectal discharge, uncleanness of the part, (b) skin rashes such as eczema, ringworm, herpes, neurodermatitis, nodular prurigo erythema, (c) parasitic infection, *i.e.*, scabies, pediculosis, dermatophytosis, pinworms, roundworms, (d) constitutional diseases such as diabetes, jaundice, nephritis, constipation, digestive disorders, allergic manifestation, diarrhea, certain nervous affections, (e) local disease of the part such as proctitis, ulcer of rectum, anal fissure, hemorrhoids, fistula, papillitis and cryptitis, foreign body lodged in a crypt, (f) menopause and postmenopausal age—the anal itching at that age is often an extension from the vulvar or pubic itch due to endocrine disturbance, atrophy of the parts or to the degenerative process of old age, (g) local injury or healing of wounds either surgical or accidental which are often accompanied by intense itching.

**Pain.** Pain in the rectum may be constant or it may occur only during defecation or soon thereafter. Constant pain in the rectum and perineum, which is usually aggravated by defecation, may be caused by ischiorectal abscess, anal abscess, strangulated or inflamed hemorrhoids, carcinoma of the rectum, proctitis, prostatic abscess, seminal vesiculitis, fecal impaction, acute salpingitis, tabes dorsalis causing rectal crisis, irritation of the rectum and anus by diarrhea, irritating foods, foreign bodies, fissures and rectal polyps or adenoma.

Pain during defecation is caused by fissure in ano, rectal ulcer, inflamed hemorrhoids, anal abscess, fistula in ano, stenosis or stricture of the rectum, dysentery, fecal impaction, foreign body

lodged at the anal ring, and any inflammatory condition of the rectum or its immediate vicinity

**Tenesmus** This may be defined as a painful sensation of expulsive contraction of a sphincter (bearing down). Rectal tenesmus may be caused by ulcer of the rectum, hemorrhoids carcinoma of rectum rectal polyps or adenoma, periproctitis colitis diarrhea and foreign bodies in the rectum

**Bleeding from Rectum** Bleeding from the rectum may vary in color, quantity and in its relation to the bowel content. Bright red blood usually comes from the vicinity of the rectum dark blood usually comes from higher up in the bowel, very dark or tarry blood may come from the stomach or duodenum. Small quantities of blood may come from hemorrhoids cancer, anal fissure or ulcer. Larger quantities may come from ulcerative colitis ulceration of the bowel carcinoma of the colon and dysentery. Large quantities of blood may come from a peptic ulcer, intestinal or gastric varices hemophilia purpura, aplastic anemia nephritis Banti's syndrome and cirrhosis of the liver. In children Meckel's diverticulum is an occasional cause for melena.

**Rectal Discharges Other Than Blood** This may be due to some inflammatory condition of the anus rectum or colon or to carcinoma abscess syphilis relaxed rectum or incompetent sphincter associated with colitis or other bowel supuration of spinal cord disease.

### *Diseases of the Rectum and Anus*

**Proctitis** This is an inflammation of the rectum associated with inflammation of the lower colon. It may be of two types: (1) Hypertrophic in which there is thickening of the anal folds with

hypertrophy and occasionally with local edema of the anal ring, and (2) atrophic which presents atrophy of the perianal tissue with multiple superficial fissures. Both types may be due to intestinal toxemia, constipation or diarrhea. There is usually intense itching a sensation of heat or of fullness and tenesmus. The bowel movements are frequent, containing small masses covered with mucus pus or blood.

**Hemorrhoids (piles)** These may be external or internal and occasionally there is a combination of the two.

**External Hemorrhoids** These are rounded or oblong varicosities of the veins surrounding the anus. They may occur singly or in number and when distended are of a bluish cyanotic color. When inflamed and strangulated by the anal sphincter they cause intense pain which becomes aggravated by defecation. Healing takes place after rupture or surgical opening of the mass which permits the extravasation of fresh and clotted blood or by thrombosis either induced by injection of sclerosing substances or spontaneous clotting which causes organization of the hemorrhoid resulting in the formation of scars or tabs.

**Internal Hemorrhoids** These are dilated varicosities or new ones originating around the internal orifice of the anus. They may cause bleeding itching and when inflamed will cause pain on defecation. When they become very large they may protrude through the sphincter ani and may become strangulated. Internal hemorrhoids are not always palpable though usually they may be felt with the examining finger just inside the anus and may occasionally be brought out through the anus with the finger. Proctoscopic examination will reveal the

wollen bluish red folds and the bleeding points in case of hemorrhage. In any case of bleeding from the rectum regardless of the patient's age a thorough rectal and sigmoidoscopic examination should be done so as to exclude carcinoma. The combined internal and external hemorrhoids often have the features of both.

**Fissure in Ano** This is usually single though they may be multiple. Each occurs as a small crack at the anterior or posterior commissure in a fold of the anus. Occasionally it appears as a small ulcerated area in the mucosa of the canal. It causes intense burning and lancinating pain aggravated by defecation. Following defecation there is throbbing and spasm. Care must be taken during examination as the pain is too intense for instrumental or even for finger examination. Such examination should be delayed until after the acute pain has subsided.

**Ulcers of the Rectum** may be simple, tuberculous, syphilitic, malignant, typhoid or dysenteric. Irrespective of its etiology a rectal ulcer usually causes tenesmus, spasm of the sphincter muscle with diarrhea and much pain. The diarrhea is most pronounced on arising and may contain mucus, pus or blood. Pain, whether on defecation or on motion, depends upon the site of the ulcer and its cause. The closer the ulcer is to the anus the more severe is the pain. Digital examination, proctoscopy, biopsy, stool and blood examination may aid in the diagnosis of the underlying cause of an obscure rectal ulcer.

**Fistula in Ano** This may result from a previous suppuration or from local disease. At times it is associated with pulmonary tuberculosis. The opening may be internal or external or it

may have several openings. It usually causes itching and irritation and some moisture around the anus. Periodically it may cause pain during defecation. This occurs only when the fistula has closed and has become distended with pus. The discharge of the accumulated pus affords relief from pain. Proctoscopic examination may reveal the site of the internal opening and probing may reveal its direction.

**Rectal Polypi or Adenomata** These are usually pedunculated growths, soft and dark in color. The symptoms are those of a mass in the lower bowel, such as constant desire to defecate, marked fullness or a sense of weight in the lower abdomen, pain in the perineum, lower back and down the thighs and frequent bowel movements of small, watery stool accompanied by loud flatulency and frequent micturition. When the polypi begin to degenerate, large, dark, offensive material is involuntarily discharged from the rectum at varying intervals. Finger palpation and proctoscopic examination will usually reveal the mass.

**Carcinoma of the Rectum** Carcinoma of the rectum is not confined to old people alone. Occasionally it may occur in persons in the late teens or in early adulthood. Rectal bleeding often without pain when no local cause is discoverable should be thoroughly investigated. The rectum should be examined by finger, proctoscope or sigmoidoscope. If no cause for bleeding can be found by these methods the colon or the entire gastrointestinal tract should be studied by x-rays. Other studies such as the various blood tests may in obscure cases aid in the diagnosis of melena. Carcinoma of the rectum is of two types, one an *ulcerative type* that

develops early into large sloughing or fungating lesions. This type causes early bleeding from the bowel, diarrhea, and often pus or mucus mixed with blood and feces. Digital examination will reveal an irregular friable mass. Proctoscopy will identify the mass and a biopsy will reveal its structure. The other type is the *sclerotic or scirrhus type* which



Fig 4—Carcinoma of the genitalia and rectum

causes narrowing or deformity of the rectum or lower bowel. This is usually accompanied by increasing constipation or constipation alternating with diarrhea. Pain is a late symptom, it is almost always preceded by bleeding. A feeling of fullness or discomfort in the anal region, altered bowel habits and occasional bleeding should arouse suspicion of carcinoma and should be thoroughly investigated. In late cases there may be enlargement of the regional lymph nodes with metastasis to the liver and other organs.

**Epithelioma of the Anus** This may simulate fissure or ulcer. Digital examination may detect deep seated hard indurations, when in doubt a biopsy should be done.

**Sarcoma of the Rectum** This is rare. It may cause bloody diarrhea and tenesmus and grave constitutional symptoms such as rapid loss of weight, anemia and weakness. Examination of the rectum may reveal a solitary tumor affecting a lymph node or a polypoid mass.

**Syphilis of the Rectum** This may present primary, secondary or tertiary lesions. The primary lesion is a chancre; it may be found at the anal ring, is somewhat indurated and has a reddish base. Bilateral inguinal buboes occur early. Secondary lesions appear either as mucous patches or as condylomata in the perianal skin. The condylomata are soft papules of whitish color and are elevated, they ulcerate and have a tendency to spread. Tertiary lesions manifest themselves as gummata, they may be large or small, single or multiple. They may disappear with treatment or they may break down and ulcerate. These lesions are rather rare and may resemble ulcerative carcinoma. When syphilis is suspected, a Wassermann or other serologic test should be made. In primary lesions the ulcer scrapings should be examined for spirilla.

**Tuberculosis** Tuberculous ulcers of the rectum may result from disintegration of tuberculous nodules or they may be secondary to and in association with a tuberculous fistula. These lesions may occur in the perianal skin. The ulcer shows a ragged margin and a grayish base discharging a thin seropus. It is usually situated about the external opening of a tuberculous fistula. The condition is often extremely painful and has a tendency to spread. Tuberculous rectal ulcers are found chiefly among those suffering from active pulmonary, intestinal or pelvic tuberculosis.

**Strictures of the Rectum** These may be traumatic or inflammatory. Traumatic strictures may occur following rectal operations, rectal injury from any external cause or from healing ulcers, abscesses and wounds. Inflammatory strictures follow infections in and about the rectum and anus or in the colon. Diseases such as lymphogranuloma inguinale, amebic and bacillary dysentery, ulcerative colitis, sprue, the application of irritating or corrosive substances and various types of ulcerations with fibrous infiltration may cause varying degrees of constriction. A sense of constriction in the rectum is sometimes complained of by highly neurotic individuals suffering from a spastic colon, enlarged prostate or peroneal irritation in the absence of any constriction.

**Prolapse of the Rectum** This may be partial or complete; it may be congenital or acquired. Straining at stool

may cause the lower bowel to protrude through the sphincter.

**Dilated Sphincter** This may be due to destruction of the sphincter by operation, injury, ulceration or neoplasia. Incompetency of the sphincter is also noted in severe diarrheas in grave diseases associated with mental depression and with coma. It is found in convulsions, uremia, typhoid states and in cerebral injury. Loss of sphincter control is found in certain diseases and tumors of the spinal cord, in fright and other emotional states. Atony of the sphincter is often found in tabes dorsalis and other types of cerebrospinal syphilis, also in certain types of spinal cord tumors or other destructive or compressive lesions. Lack of sphincter control is found in infants, idiots, cretins and in some of the insane.

**Intestinal Parasites** See pp. 1068 to 1084.

## SECTION 10

# The Urogenital System



## CHAPTER XXIV

# Examination and Diseases of the Urogenital System

### The Kidneys

#### Physical Examination of the Kidneys

**The Normal Kidney** Inspection of the surface of the body as an aid in the diagnosis of kidney conditions is not very valuable, because a kidney is seldom so large that its bulging can be noted by inspecting the kidney regions, however in cases of sarcoma in young children or hydro and pyonephrosis or hypernephroma in a thin adult, a swelling may be seen in the region of the affected kidney both anteriorly and posteriorly.

To palpate the kidney properly, the patient should lie supine shoulders and knees slightly elevated the examiner slipping one hand under the back so that the index finger rests upon the lower rib and the adjoining two fingers support the soft tissue, the other hand being laid flat upon the abdomen resting below the costal margin. The patient should be instructed to breathe deeply while the examiner attempts to approximate both of his palpating hands. If the kidney is in a low position a soft rounded mass may be palpated. The normal kidney is seldom palpable except during forced inspiration in patients who have extremely thin and flaccid belly walls. When the kidney is being pressed upon the patient usually complains of tenderness pain or of a 'sickening feeling' or of a desire to micturate.

Outlining a normal kidney by percussion is not always satisfactory. If any degree of accuracy is to be obtained percussion should be done in the flanks beginning at the tenth rib posteriorly,

and should be carried downward below the rib margin. The absence of a kidney in that region will reveal a *muffled tympanic sound*. Auscultation of the kidney is valueless except for the detection of an aneurysm of the renal or adrenal arteries.

*Pyelography* See p 685

**The Enlarged Kidney** Enlargement of the kidneys may be caused by malignant tumors (sarcoma and carcinoma), perinephritic abscess, large multiple cyst, pyonephrosis hydronephrosis renal echinococcus cyst hypernephroma and renal tuberculosis.

A mass in the right or left upper abdomen often requires a differential diagnosis between a large kidney and other conditions that may simulate it, i.e. cyst, hepatic tumor, impacted colon large spleen ovarian cyst, suprarenal tumor, neoplasm of large intestine omentum mesentery or pancreas.

**Inspection** A fullness of the affected side may be noted in thin individuals particularly in the loin. A varicocele on the affected side is often present.

**Palpation** The rounded poles and the bean shaped outlines of the kidney is usually palpable in thin individuals, it does not descend to any great extent during inspiration its excursion being chiefly downwards or inwards and it may readily be pushed back into the loin.

**Percussion** *Anteriorly* The large intestine usually lies in front of the kidney therefore a tympanic note is elicited on superficial percussion over the mass. *Posteriorly* Because of the

proximity of the kidney to the spinal column, dullness is elicited from the lateral aspect of the mass to the spinal vertebrae, presenting no area of resonance between the spine and the mass as is found in splenic enlargement. When a physical examination of a suspected mass fails to diagnose it definitely as an

instance there may be involvement of both kidneys.

### *Hydronephrosis*

A hydronephrosis may be diagnosed by feeling a large soft fluctuating mass in the kidney region. This mass may suddenly disappear only to recur the following day, or possibly several days

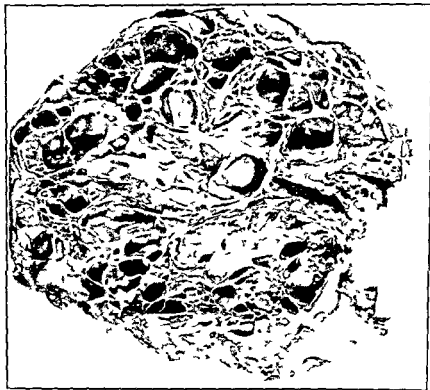


Fig 1—Cystic kidney

enlarged kidney, a pyelographic study should be made. Pain in the lumbar region is a prominent symptom in many of the kidney diseases and it should be differentiated from intercostal neuralgia and lumbago (myalgia). The preceding table after Behan sets forth the important differential points.

### **Unilateral Diseases of the Kidney**

The following diseases usually affect only one kidney, though in some rare

later. The disappearance of the mass when associated with polyuria indicates that the retained urine has passed through the ureter into the bladder. A more accurate diagnosis may be made by ureteral catheterization and pyelography.

### *Pyonephrosis*

A large, soft, tender, moderately fluctuating mass, having the outline of a kidney, may be palpable in the kidney region and is associated with symptoms

of sepsis (chills, fever, sweats, and irregular temperature) Tenderness and rigidity of the muscles of the back aid in the diagnosis of this condition The diagnosis may be confirmed by cystoscopy and ureteral catheterization, pyelography and urinalysis (the urine contains pus)

may be the seat of numerous cysts varying both in size and number The affected kidney is usually enlarged and may be felt as a large, rounded, somewhat fluctuating, movable mass Deep pressure over the mass may elicit characteristic kidney sensitiveness which is transmitted along the ureter Polycystic



Fig 2—Hypernephroma

### Cysts

These may be single or multiple and one or both kidneys may be affected If sufficient uninvolved kidney structure remains to carry on their function no pathologic urinary symptoms will be manifested

A single cyst in the kidney may be small or large often attaining to an enormous size so that it occupies nearly half of the abdominal cavity

*Multiple Cysts of the Kidney* (polycystic kidney) One or both kidneys

disease of the kidneys is often congenital and may not be discovered until the third or fourth decade When most of the kidney structure is destroyed and displaced by cysts, symptoms of renal insufficiency occur, *i e*, hematuria, hypertension, and progressive anemia.

### Perinephritic Abscess

This is often differentiated from a large kidney because in the former condition an induration or "bagginess" is palpable in the iliac region, while an

## Differential Diagnosis of Tumors of the Kidney

Symptoms	Polycystic kidney	Sarcoma	Hypernephroma
Pain	Dull aching generally in the lumbar region	Dull aching or may be entirely painless	Generally dull aching in the back. Spasmodic colicky pains may also occur. They are due to the passage either of blood clots or of tumor tissue through the ureter.
Urine	May show no changes until late in the disease. Blood may be present.	Turbid. Blood may be present.	Blood is nearly always present. This is most marked when the growth has invaded the renal pelvis.
Renal colic	Not as common as it is in other varieties of kidney tumor formation.	Generally absent.	Present. Time of onset varies.
Tumor	Large irregular mass in kidney region. On palpation a certain amount of resiliency is present. Is often bilateral.	Large regular outline to growth.	Present generally very large. Often the kidney can be felt on the lower pole of the mass.
Age	Generally young or middle aged adults.	Generally young people.	Average between 30 and 55 years.
Cachexia	None during the early stage marked in the late stages.	Present.	Very common.
Fever	Generally absent. When present it indicates the beginning of suppuration.	No fever.	May be present.

enlarged kidney can be felt anteriorly. X ray examination with pyclography, urinalysis and cystoscopy usually aid in diagnosing and differentiating these renal conditions.

### Hypernephroma

This usually occurs singly though it may produce metastasis to the other kidney, the lungs, spleen or any other viscus. The diagnosis rests upon the finding of a large mass intimately connected with the kidney, the presence of metastasis to other organs, hematuria, cachexia, and the results of x ray studies. Hypernephroma may originate in the kidney or the suprarenal capsule.

### Amyloid Kidney

The kidney is enlarged, firm and smooth. Amyloid kidney is usually associated with amyloid disease of the liver and spleen. When the intestines are involved diarrhea is quite common. Amyloid disease of the kidney may be found in patients who are suffering from long standing bone suppuration, e g, tuberculosis of the spine, hip, etc., or from syphilis.

**Physical Examination Inspection.** The patient is pale almost waxy in color.

**Palpation.** The skin is edematous, the kidney, liver and spleen are enlarged and not tender to pressure.

**Urine** This contains albumin hyaline and waxy casts and lardacein will be found in the various tissues

### **Tuberculosis**

The physical examination in chronic cases will reveal the following

**Physical Examination Inspection** The patient is emaciated and may or may not present a tuberculous focus in the lungs

**Palpation** The kidney region is tender to the touch. A moderate degree

of tenderness is noted over the affected area and there is an increase in the growth of hair in both the pubic and axillary regions

**Palpation** A mass rather soft and tender which moves with respiration is felt in the kidney region. *Hematuria* is a constant symptom and *cachexia* comes on early

### **Sarcoma**

This usually occurs in the young

**Physical Examination Inspection** A mass may be noted in the renal

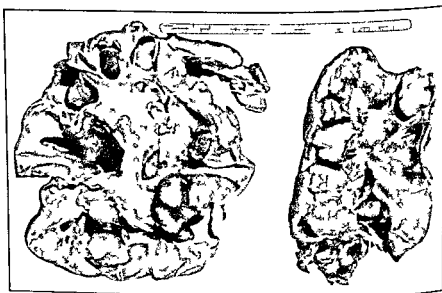


Fig 3—Multiple renal calculi in both kidneys. The right lower parathyroid was definitely hyperplastic.

of rigidity is felt in the lumbar muscles. The urine contains albumin, pus and occasionally blood. A pyelographic study may confirm the diagnosis as will the finding of tubercle bacilli in the urine

### **Carcinoma**

This usually occurs in elderly people. It may be primary or secondary.

**Physical Examination Inspection** The patient is anemic, pigmented

region and an overgrowth of hair in the pubis and axilla.

**Palpation** A large, smooth, firm, rapidly growing mass can be felt posterior to the colon. Very little anorexia is present but *hematuria* is a nearly constant symptom.

### **Floating Kidney**

This is usually found in emaciated subjects or in those who have undergone

a severe strain. It is more common in women.

**Physical Examination Palpation:** The palpating hand can recognize the kidney by its shape, its notch and by the fact that it can be readily moved upward to its normal position. Coughing or straining in the standing posture will again dislodge the kidney.

**Percussion:** On percussing over the kidney region posteriorly a muffled tympanic note will be elicited when the kidney has left its normal position.

The kidney may be slightly displaced downward by some intrathoracic condition, i. e. pleural effusions or other conditions that will forcibly displace the diaphragm downward. When the fat in which a kidney is imbedded is absorbed, thus diminishing its proper support, it may become displaced and movable or floating. The right kidney is more apt to become floating than the left kidney, because of the heavy organ (the liver), overlying it.

**Renal Calculus** (stone in the kidney). Renal calculi may be unilateral or bilateral. The stones may be single or multiple. They may be located in the pelvis of the kidneys, in the calices or in other parts of the kidney. Calculus is not readily diagnosed by physical signs. Renal colic, the pain radiating downwards towards the urethra or to the inner surface of the thigh, and hematuria are characteristic symptoms, & x-ray examination and pyelography are the best diagnostic means.

**Pyelography** A pyelographic study is indicated in cases where in addition to nephrolithiasis other pathologic conditions are suspected. Thus, the exact situation of a hard or a suspected soft stone in the ureter, pelvis or calices may be revealed. Conditions of hydronephro-

sis, pyonephrosis, papillomata or other growths involving the pelvis and calices, congenital and acquired abnormalities of the pelvis and ureters may all disclose themselves as the result of this study.

Pyelography may be performed by two methods: (a) *Intravenous pyelography* where an opaque solution is injected in



Fig 3a—Pyelographic study. Normal pelvis

travenously (any vein in the cubital fossa) and an x-ray picture is made of the kidney regions at various intervals, and (b) *retrograde pyelography* where an opaque solution is injected directly into one kidney through a catheter passed up the urethra and ureter as high as the pelvis of the kidney.

(For urinalysis, see p 967, blood chemistry, p 1007, and kidney function tests, p 1038. For discussion of the Adrenal Glands, see Endocrines, p 792.)

## Differential Diagnosis of Intestinal Renal, Gallstone and Uterine Colic

Symptoms	Intestinal Colic	Renal Colic	Gallstone Colic	Uterine Colic
Pain	Generally paroxysmal relieved at the time peristalsis produces an onward movement of gas etc. At the time this occurs there is pronounced gurgling	Pain paroxysmal is found in back and is brought on by moving walking etc	Pain is paroxysmal generally follows an indiscretion of diet and is present in the upper abdomen	Pain in the lower abdomen is paroxysmal and is generally associated with a vaginal discharge of blood, frequent at time of menstrual period.
Radiation	To upper or lower abdomen seldom in back	To lower abdomen and often to the testicle or to the end of the penis on the affected side	To the back and under the right shoulder on the right side and up to the clavicle	To thighs, external aspect and often to the back
Urine	No change except that indican is frequently found	Often a suppression for some little time and then blood is present	Frequently bile salts and acids are present	No change
Vomiting	Generally present Vomitus consists of food often undigested and fermenting Bile may be present	Generally present consists of the food most recently ingested Bile may be present	Generally present Vomitus is remarkably free from bile	Sometimes present though not as frequent as in the other colics
Tenderness	Direct and indirect as described under intestinal colic	Generally over the kidney lesion and frequently the enlarged kidney can be palpated	Generally over the gallbladder which often on palpation is found to be enlarged	Not much present.
Referred pain area	That of intestines	That of kidney and ureter	That of the gallbladder and ducts	That of the uterus.
X-ray study	Spastic bowel	Pyelogram may disclose stone	Stones may be seen in the gallbladder	No x-ray finding

## Bilateral Diseases of the Kidneys

Nephritis is an inflammatory condition in which both kidneys are similarly and simultaneously affected. The nephritides are classified (1) According to their course as acute and chronic (2) according to their morbid changes as diffuse interstitial or glomerular and parenchymatous or tubular (3) according to their clinical manifestations as nephritis without edema and with nitrogen retention and nephritis with edema and with salt retention. Arteriosclerotic kidney nephrosis and congested kidney

may be considered under separate headings

Disease of the kidneys is more readily recognized by chemical tests of the blood and urinalysis than by physical examination alone. For Urinalysis see page 967 and Blood Chemistry see page 1007

## Acute Nephritis

Acute nephritis is defined as an acute inflammation of the kidneys. It may be (a) *diffuse*, affecting the entire kidney structure, (b) *glomerular* in which the glomeruli are chiefly affected and (c)

*tubular*, in which the tubules bear the greatest brunt of the affection

**Etiology:** The causative factors are bacteria or their toxins, *i e*, scarlet fever, diphtheria, septicemia and other acute infections, and toxic substances, *e g*, mercury, arsenic, alcohol and other irritating toxins. Exposure to cold and wet and malnutrition cause lower bodily resistance, thus increasing the liability to kidney infection

**Symptomatology** The symptoms depend largely upon the severity of the infection and the kind and amount of kidney structure involved

(a) **Acute Diffuse Nephritis** (hemorrhagic Bright's disease) This is characterized by an acute onset, moderately high temperature, marked edema, and anasarca, rapid pulse, hypertension, delirium and vomiting. The urine is scanty and high colored, contains large amounts of albumin and blood, hyaline, granular and bloody casts. Blood chemistry shows marked retention of urea, nitrogen, nonprotein nitrogen and creatinin and also some salt retention etc

(b) **Acute Glomerular Nephritis** (focal glomerulonephritis) The onset is moderately acute, edema only moderate, pulse rapid, hypertension marked, urine moderate in quantity, containing albumin, blood and bloody hyaline and granular casts. Blood chemistry shows marked retention of urea, nitrogen, nonprotein nitrogen and creatinin and also some salt retention etc

(c) **Acute Tubular Nephritis** This is characterized by an acute onset with marked anasarca, scanty urine, large quantity of albumin, many hyaline and granular casts. Blood chemistry shows moderate retention of nitrogenous products in the blood and great salt retention

### Chronic Nephritis (Chronic Bright's Disease)

The nomenclature of nephritis has undergone many changes since disease of the kidneys was first described by Richard Bright in 1827. Thus we had

(1) The large pale kidney, the contracted pale kidney, and the contracted dark kidney

(2) Glomerular nephritis, tubular nephritis and nephrosclerosis

(3) Parenchymatous, interstitial and vascular nephritis

(4) Nephritis with edema, albuminuria, and low tension, and nephritis without edema but with nitrogen retention and hypertension

(5) Hemorrhagic, degenerative and arteriosclerotic Bright's disease. It matters little which of the classifications is adopted, it is, however, important that the chosen classification should represent a definite type of kidney disease

Chronic nephritis like the acute variety may affect alike the entire kidney structure, or the glomerular or the tubular elements may be the principal seat of affection. The symptoms and course of the disease depend largely upon the kind and amount of tissue involved. It should be borne in mind that a sharp line of demarcation between the tubular and glomerular structures is not always observed by the pathological process, therefore, in acute and chronic nephritis one variety may eventually merge into the other, thus causing a diffuse nephritis. It is important to diagnose the variety of nephritis, chiefly because of prognosis and treatment

**Chronic Parenchymatous Nephritis** (nephroses—chronic tubular or desquamative nephritis—large white kidney, chronic nephritis with edema and



**Chronic Interstitial Nephritis** hemorrhagic nephritis chronic glomerular nephritis contracted kidney chronic nephritis without edema and with hypertension and nitrogen retention in the blood) In this subvariety of chronic nephritis the glomerular elements of the kidney structure are principally involved

**Etiology** It may be superimposed upon or it may follow chronic parenchymatous (tubular) nephritis Alcohol lead syphilis irritating toxins and bacterial invasion are among the etiologic factors

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis** The common symptoms are digestive disturbances headache weakness disturbance of eyesight with retinal hemorrhages The skin is usually dry and only slight edema of the ankles may be present Tingling in the fingers with blanching and other vasomotor disturbances are often found Hypertension is marked The urine may contain blood it is of low fixed specific gravity and the night output may equal that of the day output Albumin is usually scant (reported as a trace) Tube casts are few of the narrow hyaline type sometimes granular and bloody casts are found The blood shows great retention of urea uric acid nonprotein nitrogen and creatinin Uremia is a frequent complication Kidney function tests show poor concentration The urea clearance is low

**Arteriosclerotic and Senile Kidney** (nephrosclerosis vascular nephritis) Essentially the arteriosclerotic kidney the senile kidney and chronic interstitial nephritis of other writers present similar manifestations excepting that the arteriosclerotic and senile kidney conditions are usually found in persons who have primarily developed

arteriosclerosis or become senile The kidneys like most of the organs in the body have participated in the sclerotic change therefore hypertension polyuria etc are found while primary chronic glomerular or interstitial nephritis is the initial disease which produces sclerotic changes even in the young

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis** Usually this condition attacks persons over 50 years of age it is characterized by progressive weakness and inability to withstand physical or mental strain The skin is dry often covered by scales or eczematous eruptions Tinnitus vertigo polyuria nocturia hypertension sclerotic corneal vessels liability to cerebral hemorrhage dyspnea and myocardial changes occur frequently The urine is large in quantity of low specific gravity, contains little albumin and few small narrow hyaline casts

**Blood** The blood presents a picture of secondary anemia and the blood chemistry reveals nitrogen retention *e g* increased amounts of urea non protein nitrogen and creatinin

### **Uremic Coma**

This condition occurs as a result of disturbed kidney metabolism and is found in the presence of nephritis as a result of insufficient elimination from the blood of certain toxic substances normally excreted by the kidneys

**Inspection** The patient is stuporous and respiration stertorous No change in pupillary reaction is noticeable Convulsions twitchings and coma are common

**Palpation** The skin is dry the pulse hard and rapid and the blood pressure is elevated There is generally a urinous odor on the breath this however should not be confused with the urin

### Differential Diagnosis of Coma in Uremia Cerebral Hemorrhage and Alcoholic Narcosis

UREMIA	CEREBRAL HEMORRHAGE	ALCOHOLIC NARCOSIS
Pupils generally dilated, albuminuric retinitis	Pupils unequal or dilated	Pupils contracted or dilated eyes injected
Sharp hissing stertor	Stertorous puffy breathing and flapping cheek,	No stertorous breathing
Urinous odor	No odor	Odor of alcohol
No paralysis	Paralysis hemiplegia	No paralysis usually
May or may not be aroused	Unconsciousness absolute	May be aroused
Pulse at first strong later weak and rapid tension hard arteriosclerosis	Pulse slow and strong or irregular arteries often atheromatous	Pulse frequent and feeble
Coma gradual or sudden	Coma sudden and deep	Coma gradual
Preceded by general convulsions headache etc.	Convulsions late may be unilateral	No convulsions
Urine albuminous	Urine generally negative	Urine generally negative
Edema and pallor heart hypertrophied	Heart may show hypertrophy	Red face and nose, heart often weak myocarditis

ous odor about a patient suffering from incontinence. The urine is scanty and contains albumin and many casts, at times there is complete retention of urine the blood shows retention of nitrogen urea and creatinin.

**Chronic Uremia** This is characterized by headache, dizziness, anorexia, vomiting, feeble heart action, visual disturbance, scanty urine and retention of nitrogenous products in the blood.

#### *Congestive Kidney*

Passive congestion of the kidneys occurs as the result of myocarditis during the stage of decompensation.

#### *Symptomatology and Diagnosis*

The patient is cyanotic, dyspnea is marked, the heart is dilated and shows other evidence of decompensation. The lungs are edematous, anasarca is well marked with the greatest amount of edema in the dependent parts of the body. The urine is scanty, dark and of high specific gravity, containing much albumin and only a few hyaline casts. The blood chemistry shows hypopro-

teinemia and very little retention of nitrogenous products. This condition is relieved when cardiac compensation is restored.

#### *Pyelonephritis and Other Infections of the Kidneys*

**Pyelonephritis** This results from the invasion of the kidney by pathogenic organisms through various routes. These infections may occur retrograde from the lower urinary tract or genitalia, by direct extension from other organs, by way of the blood stream and through the lymphatics. The infection may be acute or chronic, bilateral or unilateral.

The symptoms depend upon the type of infection and the extent of renal damage. These are usually chills, irregular type of septic temperature, headache and malaise. The urine may contain albumin and pus in varying amounts and bacteria may be found on culture. The urine is acid in colon bacillus infection and alkaline in *Proteus Vulgaris* infection. In the chronic type the symptoms of infection are milder than in the acute type.

but there is evidence of a greater degree of kidney destruction. This may give signs of severe glomerular parenchymatous or diffuse nephritis plus pyuria and bacilluria and it may terminate in uremia.

**Pyelitis** This is an infection of the pelvis of the kidney. It may occur as an ascending infection or be caused by obstruction to the outflow of urine from the kidney. This is seen fairly often in baby girls and in pregnant women; it may result from a twisted ureter or from obstruction by stone, tumor or other conditions that interfere with free drainage. The symptoms are fever, chills, burning and frequency of urination, pyuria and tenderness on palpation over the affected flank. Urethral catheterization and pyelography will determine the site of infection and urine culture the type of infection.

### ***Toxic Kidney (Toxic Nephrosis)***

Degenerative rather than inflammatory lesions in the kidney may be caused by certain endogenous and exogenous substances which affect chiefly the convoluted tubules causing various degrees of parenchymatous degeneration.

The endogenous causes of the so-called febrile albuminuria are acute specific fevers such as pneumonia, typhoid fever, smallpox, diphtheria, etc. Tonsillitis, scarlet fever, toxemia of pregnancy, jaundice, diabetes mellitus and other toxic substances in the blood may cause toxic nephrosis but are likely eventually to cause a true nephritis.

The exogenous causes are various metallic poisons such as mercury, bismuth, arsenic, phosphorus, etc. and non-metallic substances such as cantharides and other renal irritants. The urinary findings are albuminuria, tube casts, leu-

kocytes and rarely a few erythrocytes. The blood shows no evidence of nitrogen retention.

**Symptoms** There may be various degrees of edema, some headache, occasionally dimness of vision. The eye grounds may occasionally show some edema of the discs or partial detachment of the retina; the vessels appear normal; hemorrhages are rare.

### ***Lipoid Nephrosis***

This is a degenerative process as pointed out by Epstein affecting the epithelium of the convoluted tubules. It is questionable if nephrosis is a true renal inflammatory disease. The manifestations are those of disturbed endocrine and cholesterol metabolism affecting the renal tubules.

**Symptomatology and Diagnosis** The most characteristic symptoms of this condition are well-marked edema or anasarca, low blood pressure, moderate and progressive anemia and low basal metabolism. The urine contains a large amount of albumin, many casts but no erythrocytes.

**Blood Chemistry** will show great salt retention, normal urea, nonprotein nitrogen and creatinin decrease in the total blood protein with an increase of globulin and a great increase in the cholesterol. The retinal vessels are normal. Nephrosis may at times merge into nephritis.

Whether Lipoid or Epstein's nephrosis is a renal disease entity or only a local manifestation of a general systemic disturbance is a mooted question. It would appear that the edema has little relation to the kidneys but that it depends on an altered state of capillary permeability the cause of which is unknown. It may be toxic or nutritional. Kaufmann and Ma-

son believe that nephrosis as applied to the kidneys is an early manifestation of a general systemic cellular degenerative process of unknown origin. The lowered basal metabolism must be classified as a secondary hypothyroidism. The thyroids of these patients can manufacture thyroxin at a normal rate, but, due to the lack of tissue call, the thyroxin content of the tissues falls below normal. This results in altered cellular nutrition. The true nephrotic kidney progresses

into the secondary contracted type as a result of an organizing process of the degenerated cells, and not as a primary inflammatory entity. The pathological findings, in the different types vary according to the stage in the disease at which death occurs.

Nephrosis if it persists will gradually develop into nephritis, the so-called nephritic stage of nephrosis. Occasionally nephritis may develop signs of nephrosis, the so-called nephrotic stage of nephritis.

## The Bladder

### Physical Examination of the Bladder

The urinary bladder is situated in the lowermost portion of the pelvis and lies below the symphysis pubis. The empty bladder cannot be detected by physical examination, but when greatly distended it can be felt as a fluctuating globular mass in the lower midabdomen. When paralysis of the bladder or great retention of urine occurs, the bladder may become enormously distended, reaching halfway up to the umbilicus. Vesical calculus, carcinoma, papilloma, tuberculosis and foreign bodies, may cause hematuria. The diagnosis of these conditions is best made by the use of the cystoscope and x rays.

### Diseases of the Bladder

The urinary bladder unlike most of the other organs of the body has no function other than that of a receptacle. It receives the urine secreted by the kidneys, which is brought to it by the ureters and is expelled from the body through the urethra.

Disease of the bladder therefore gives rise to no systemic manifestations, unless the disease is a systemic one, i.e., carcinoma, tuberculosis, etc. On the other hand there are quite a number of conditions that may so irritate the bladder

as to cause local inflammation of the mucosa, known as cystitis.

### Cystitis

By this term is meant an inflammation of the inner lining of the bladder. This condition may be caused by a variety of factors, i.e., *traumatic, mechanical, chemical and biological*.

**Traumatic Causes** Cystitis due to trauma of the bladder wall may result from violence such as fracture of the pelvis, causing rupture of the bladder, stab wounds or gunshot wounds perforating the bladder, injury to the bladder during childbirth, and the clumsiness in insertion of a catheter in the male urethra through a false passage. These cause bladder irritation because of injury to the bladder wall.

**Mechanical Causes** Here may be mentioned the presence of foreign bodies in the bladder such as pins, hairpins, wood splinters, catheters (either allowed to remain too long in the bladder as a retention catheter, or when one has accidentally slipped back), stone, tumors, instrumental injury by catheter or cystoscope and various parasites such as roundworms or pinworms.

These cause cystitis because of direct injury to the mucosa of the bladder.

**Chemical Causes** These are of two kinds First in which a strong chemical substance such as a strong potassium permanganate solution a strong silver solution or any other irritating chemical substance has been introduced into the bladder by the urethral route and second in which a highly irritating substance is brought to the bladder by way of the kidneys as in poisoning by bichloride of mercury phenol oxalic acid etc or by the prolonged administration of large doses of sandalwood oil turpentine copaiba cantharides and alcohol

**Biological Causes** This group embraces the commonest causes of inflammation of the bladder The infection may be brought to the bladder by way of the urethra the ureters the kidneys the adjacent structures and by the circulation The offending organism may be the colon bacilli tubercle bacilli streptococci and staphylococci or any other microorganism that may attack a previously inflamed or injured bladder or a perfectly normal bladder

**Symptomatology** Cystitis no matter of what origin presents the following symptoms Frequent urination often painful and associated with tenesmus or a sense of heaviness and discomfort in the bladder region In some cases retention of urine is a troublesome feature The urine is usually cloudy of alkaline reaction and has an ammoniacal odor Microscopically the urine contains bladder cells often pus and blood

**Physical Examination** A distended bladder may be palpated above the symphysis pubis but when the bladder is empty it cannot be palpated Bladder tenderness may often be elicited by palpating the bladder per rectum or vaginally A cystoscopic examination

and urinalysis are the best means at our command for the detection of cystitis

### Vesical Calculus

A stone in the bladder may be of kidney origin that is a renal calculus may be passed down into the bladder, it may remain there for some time without increasing in size or it may gradually become larger because of the addition to its bulk of uric acid or other



Fig 4—Papilloma of the bladder

substances The presence of a stone in the bladder from any source because of irritation may produce congestion and at times infection and inflammation thereby causing cystitis A characteristic symptom of vesical calculus is the sudden stopping of the stream during urination in the erect posture Tenesmus frequency of urination and at times also dribbling may occur The urine is usually that of a cystitis with or without hematuria The urethral sound the cystoscope and the x rays are the best means for diagnosing this condition

### Tumors of the Bladder

These may be sarcoma carcinoma papilloma or any of the benign forms

**Symptomatology.** A small tumor in the bladder which does not bleed, may entirely escape detection. When the tumor becomes large, it may cause vesical tenesmus, a sense of weight in the bladder, frequent urination and other signs of cystitis. Malignant tumors, particularly papillomata, bleed early in their course. Therefore the presence of blood in the urine should always be investigated by a cystoscopic examination.

### *Tuberculosis of the Bladder*

Tuberculosis of the bladder may be secondary to a tuberculous kidney, generalized tuberculosis or, in rare instances, it may occur as a primary disease of the bladder.

**Symptomatology.** The distribution of the ulcers, their number and probably their size determine the urgency of the symptoms. When an ulcer occurs over the vesical sphincter it will give rise to great frequency of urination with distress. The general symptoms of tuberculosis of the bladder are those of severe cystitis with frequent bleeding. The presence of cystitis in a tuberculous individual should arouse suspicion of vesical tuberculosis. A cystoscopic examination, and a careful microscopic examination of the urine may reveal the cause of the infection. When in doubt

a guinea pig may be inoculated with a few cubic centimeters of a centrifuged fresh specimen of urine.

### *Irritable Bladder*

In addition to the conditions that may cause bladder irritation and cystitis already described it is well to mention *enlarged prostate* in the male and *retrodisplaced uterus, pelvic tumors* and *prolapsed uterus* in the female. These conditions, because of pressure upon the bladder or its outlet, may cause urinary retention with subsequent infection resulting in cystitis and at times in hematuria.

Irritable bladder manifested by frequent urination may at times be a *neuronic manifestation*. This is often seen during periods of stress and excitement. In these cases the frequency is due to

### *Diverticulum of the Bladder*

This is a local ballooning out of a portion of the bladder, it may be single or multiple. It is usually due to loss of elasticity of a portion of the bladder wall. There often is a considerable retention of urine in the diverticulum which may cause cystitis. When there is much retention it may be palpable as a tumor mass above the symphysis pubis. The diagnosis of diverticulum is made by cystoscopy and cystography.

mation discharges, polyps, carcinoma and caruncle

The perineum and vaginal vault are examined for signs of inflammation, tears rectocele and cystocele The vagina is inspected through a speculum, the condition of the walls and the presence of secretions are noted The uterine cervix is likewise inspected through a speculum and the following should be noted

The condition of the cervix, whether large or small intact or lacerated, the presence of discharge, its consistency, quantity and odor (a specimen may be taken on a platinum loop for microscopic examination), ulcerations of the cervix, denuded mucous membranes and cysts if present should be thoroughly inspected Prolapses of the uterus and degree of prolapse, as well as the presence of hernias are to be noted

**Palpation** The gloved hand is lubricated and the index and middle fingers are gently inserted into the vagina the patient assuming a dorsal flexed position The strength of the perineum is tested The cervix is palpated as to hardness degree of mobility and tenderness The fundus uteri is palpated manually, one hand is placed over the lower abdomen and with the fingers of the other hand in the vagina the fundus is located, its size is thus noted also its degree of mobility and its position Douglas pouch is then palpated for the presence of a mass fluctuation or inflammatory exudate

The ovaries when normal are not easily palpable but when inflamed or enlarged they may be detected by palpation The fallopian tubes are usually unpalpable when normal, an inflamed tube or a pyosalpinx (pus in the tube), may be detected by its size and doughy

feel Differentiation is at times necessary between a distended bladder, ascites, ovarian cyst dermoid cyst, pregnancy, uterine fibroid, myoma or other uterine tumors

## Diseases of the Female Genital Organs

### *Diseases of the Vulva*

In considering the diseases of the vulva affections of the following structures are to be included The lower portion of the mons veneris, the labia majora, the labia minora, the clitoris, the hymen, the urinary meatus and Bartholin's glands

**Inflammations of the Vulva** The skin covering the vulva may be the seat of various *skin lesions* such as dermatitis eczema herpes erysipelas dermatophytosis, or other types of skin irritation which may cause itching, burning or pain

**Gonorrhea** This may affect the vulvae of children but seldom of adults, because of the protection afforded by the many layered mucosa of the adult vulva The vulvar gonorrheal infections of adults is limited to the vulvovaginal glands the urethra and Skene's ducts Gonorrheal urethritis and infection of Skene's ducts are recognized by inflammation and tenderness of the part and by a purulent discharge which contains the gonococci

**Bartholinitis** This is an infection of the vulvovaginal glands and is, in the majority of cases due to gonococcal infection The acute stage is characterized by swelling, edema, engorgement and pain of the gland and its adjacent structure and the affected gland usually contains pus or becomes abscessed Chronic bartholinitis is characterized by enlargement and induration of the gland

### Ulcerative Lesions of the Vulva

Simple ulcers single or multiple, may affect the vulva or lower portion of the vagina they may be due to nonspecific irritation or to the *Bacillus crassus*, which is often a normal inhabitant of the vagina



Fig 5—Granuloma inguinale

**Chancroid** This forms a ragged irregular ulcer it is not indurated though it appears excavated and has a granulating and often purulent surface. It may cause edema of the adjacent structures. The causative agent is the bacillus of Ducrey, which may be found in the exudate.

**Granuloma Inguinale** This is a specific venereal disease nearly always found in the negro characterized by the formation of superficial ulceration covered with granulation tissue usually affecting the labia minora the mons veneris and may spread over the entire vulva the pubic and the inguinal regions. The specific cause is said to be the Donovan bodies (See Fig 5)

**Lymphogranuloma Inguinale** (Lymphoparthritis Venereum) This begins as a small lesion upon the genitals and is followed within 10 or 20 days by a slowly developing unilateral inguinal adenitis. As the disease progresses there may develop extensive ulceration with productive inflammation which may result in large tumorlike elephantiasis masses (See Fig 6) or in extensive ulceration involving the labia the perineum the anus and lower rectum. The inguinal adenitis is progressive and may attain a large size being painful and suppurative. The ulcerative lesions are known as esthiomene.

This disease is of venereal origin is seen chiefly in the negro race but occurs also among white males and females. The specific cause is attributed to filtrable virus. The Frei test usually becomes positive within 10 to 20 days after exposure and remains positive throughout life.

**Syphilitic Lesions of the Vulva** These may be primary secondary or tertiary lesions.

**Chancre** This is the primary lesion of syphilis of the vulva. It is a firm nodular lesion with slight superficial ulceration and a moderate amount of induration (less induration than in the male) or it may occur as a punched-out ulcer having a hard base which is indurated clean and painless and may be single or multiple affecting usually the labia majora and minora and often near by structures.

**Condylomata Lata** These are the secondary lesions of syphilis of the vulva. They are flattened moist papules (wart-like structures) raised only slightly above the surrounding tissue having a grayish necrotic appearance with a somewhat depressed center. These



sions may affect the vulva, the perineum, the perianal region and the inner surface of the thighs. Occasionally these warts may coalesce and form large ulcerative masses having a foul discharge.

**Tertiary Lesions of Syphilis** These are either gummata or ulcers

which later ulcerates and appears as an irregular punched out ulcer with undermined edges grayish in appearance, having a purulent or caseating exudate. The diagnosis may be made by the finding of the tubercle bacilli in the pus by biopsy showing the characteristic tubercle formation or by the result of guinea pig inoculation.

**Kraurosis of the Vulva** This is characterized by atrophic changes in all the structures of the vulva. The tissues are atrophic, thin and appear brittle or glistening. It occurs frequently in old women or during the menopause. Pruritus is a troublesome symptom in this condition.

**Leukoplakia of the Vulva** This is characterized by the occurrence of white patches either isolated or generalized over the labia and perineum. It is associated with atrophic and sclerotic changes and in most cases causes severe itching, vaginismus and often inflammatory changes.

**Tumors of the Vulva** These may be benign or malignant.

**The Benign Tumors** These may be cysts (of the Bartholin glands or Wolffian duct) and solid tumors such as papilloma, lipoma, hydradenoma of the sweat glands (*syringocystadenoma*), condyloma acuminatum, fibroma, fibromyoma, urethral caruncle, angionoma and the various granulomata.

**Malignant Tumors** These may be primary or metastatic; they are carcinoma, sarcoma, melanoma and teratoma.

**Carcinoma** is the commonest of the malignant tumors. It may arise from the labia majora or minora, the clitoris, the vestibule from Bartholin's gland and from the urethra or it may be secondary to carcinoma elsewhere. The initial lesion may be a small nodule which has

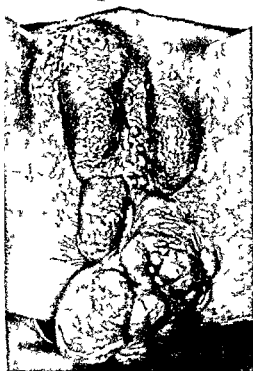


Fig. 6—*Lymphogranuloma inguinale* elephantiasis of vulva.

which may destroy the vulva and adjacent structures.

**Diagnosis** The diagnosis of the primary lesion may be confirmed by the finding of the spirochete *pallida*. The secondary and tertiary lesions also contain the spirochete and the patient's blood yields a positive Wassermann, Kahn, Kline or other serologic test for syphilis.

**Tuberculosis of the Vulva** This is an uncommon lesion. It begins as a no-

Metastasis may occur in distant organs such as the ribs, pleura, lungs, etc

**Chorionepithelioma** (hydatidiform mole) This appears as a bluish vascular mass which bleeds easily when palpated It is usually secondary to chorionepithelioma of the uterus

**Teratoma** Teratoma of the vagina is rare, the diagnosis may be made by finding various embryonic structures in the mass

**Melanoma and Hypernephroma** These are secondary tumors, the finding of the primary focus or other secondary invaded areas may suggest the nature of these tumors

### Displacements of the Uterus

The uterus as a whole may be anteflexed, retroverted, laterally displaced to either side or it may be partially or nearly wholly prolapsed through the vagina Anterior, posterior or lateral displacements of the uterus may be due to adhesions resulting from inflammations, to relaxations of the uterine ligaments, to salpingitis, to pelvic cellulitis or to tumors Prolapse of the uterus is due to relaxation of the uterine ligaments and the perineum and to severe lacerations of the perineum (SEE Fig 8)

### Disease of the Cervix

The cervix is examined manually and also inspected through a speculum Disease of the cervix may be benign or malignant

**Benign Lesions** These are inflammations, lacerations, erosions, polyps and cysts

**Inflammation of the Cervix** This may be due to old tears, cicatrices and invasion by various microorganisms The most frequent cause for cervicitis of bacterial origin is gonorrhea Acute

cervicitis is characterized by inflammation of the cervical endometrium which may extend to all of the cervical tissue and by a purulent cervical discharge A "smear" of the pus will identify the organisms

**Chronic Cervicitis** This may be caused by erosions, injury to the cervix, hypertrophy and elongation of the cervix The most prominent manifestation



Fig 8—Prolapse of uterus

is leukorrheal discharge Cervical erosions are usually caused by some irritation which may be mechanical bacterial or endogenous The erosion may affect either a portion of the cervix, generally at its mouth, or the entire cervix The eroded portion is denuded of epithelium has a granular appearance and bleeds when handled

**Cervical Polyp** These may be single or multiple They usually extend beyond the os, as a rule they are bright red in color, vascular and very fragile The majority of polypi are benign but occasionally one encounters a malignant polyp A benign polyp may undergo malignant change or it may be a primary malignant neoplasm The most common symptom is bleeding, generally only a few drops may be noticed, oc

cial or it may extend to the myometrium and it may cause suppuration. In acute infection there is fever, tenderness over the uterus and its adnexa, and a foul smelling discharge. Specific endometritis is of gonorrheal origin.

**Chronic Endometritis** This condition is quite common, it may follow acute endometritis or it may be due to chronic infection or to chronic disease of the cervix, tubes or ovaries or to uterine displacements. The symptoms are frequent bleeding, considerable uterine discharge and often menstrual disturbances such as menorrhagia, metrorrhagia or dysmenorrhea.

**Senile Endometritis** This is a form of chronic endometritis which may cause postmenstrual bleeding. This condition is to be differentiated from adenocarcinoma.

**Tuberculosis of the Endometrium** This is generally secondary to tuberculosis of the tubes, the ovaries or the lower genital tract; occasionally no primary focus is found elsewhere.

**Diagnosis** The diagnosis of the various types of endometritis can only be made by histologic examination of the endometrium after curettage and by bacteriologic examination of the uterine discharge.

**Myometritis** Disease of the uterine muscle may be acute or chronic. Acute myometritis is usually associated with acute endometritis and is found in various septic conditions. Chronic myometritis may be associated with chronic endometritis resulting from gonorrhea or other infection that has either gone through an acute stage or started as a mild chronic invasion. In both the acute and chronic types of myometritis the uterus may be enlarged, it is however

more tender in the acute stage and is harder in the chronic stage.

**Endometrial Polyps** Polyps of the endometrium may be divided into three types: (1) Those made up of functional endometrium, (2) those of immature endometrium and (3) those composed of endometrial elements and voluntary muscle tissue. Uterine polyps, irrespective of their structure, may cause uterine bleeding. Microscopic examination of the polyp will usually reveal its histologic structure.

**Cysts of the Uterine Cavity** These are rare. They may be congenital or they may follow puerperal or other infections or they may be caused by cystic degeneration or necrosis of a myoma.

**Benign Tumors of the Uterus** The commoner tumors of the uterus are myoma and adenomyoma.

**Myoma** Myoma of the uterus, often spoken of as fibroids, is exceedingly common. It may occur in the young or old and is generally noted in the third decade. The growth may be subserous and pedunculated or it may be intramural (interstitial). These tumors may be single or multiple and may vary in size from that of a walnut to that of a watermelon. The submucous variety usually impinge upon the blood vessels of the endometrium and cause free bleeding. As the tumors continue to grow they invade the uterine cavity and cause distortion and enlargement of the cavity of the uterus. The interstitial myoma, when small, may cause no change in the contour of the uterus, and when they attain larger sizes they cause enlargement with some irregularity in the contour of the uterus. They cause bleeding less frequently than do the submucous variety. These tumors may arise from the fundus or from the cervix. The diag-

nosis of a uterine growth is easily made by palpation. Its exact type however, is more definitely diagnosed after operation and microscopic examination of the removed tissue. Myoma may undergo various changes such as hyaline or cystic degeneration, calcification, necrosis, infection, fatty changes and malignant changes.

### **Adenomyosis or Adenomyoma**

This does not cause a definite circumscribed growth but a rather generalized infiltration of the uterine muscle. It is seldom very large. The posterior wall of the uterus is usually larger and thicker than is the anterior, though occasionally the entire uterine muscle is thickened. The uterus is fixed and is not tender to palpation. Adenomyosis is often found as a result of chronic pelvic inflammatory disease and only occasionally may it be associated with distinct myoma of the uterus.

### **Malignant Tumors of the Uterus**

These are carcinoma, chorionepithelioma, sarcoma, hydatiform mole, placental rests and polyps.

**Carcinoma** of the uterus is the commonest malignant tumor of the uterine fundus, it usually occurs in women past the age of fifty, though it may occur at an earlier age. The type of carcinoma is usually adenocarcinoma, malignant adenoma and squamous cell carcinoma.

**Adenocarcinoma** The tumor may affect the entire uterine cavity and may descend into the cervix. The two prominent symptoms are some enlargement of the uterus and metrorrhagia. The bleeding may be moderate or profuse and may occur at irregular intervals. When the mass undergoes necrotic change there is a foul vaginal discharge.

**Malignant Adenoma** This usually occurs as a papillary luxuriant endo-

metrial growth, it infiltrates the uterine wall, causing an asymmetrical soft enlargement. This type of tumor also causes bleeding. The diagnosis is made from the examination of the uterine scrapings.

**Squamous Cell Carcinoma** This is rather rare. It may occur either as a distinct entity or in association with other malignant types. The uterus usually enlarges and as in other types of carcinoma early bleeding or profuse discharge is a prominent symptom.

**Sarcoma of the Uterus** Any portion of the uterus may be invaded by this type of tumor though the body is more frequently involved than is the cervix. The uterus may become somewhat enlarged, other symptoms are bleeding and discharge though both may be absent. Metastasis occurs early by direct continuity by the blood stream or by the lymphatic stream. From the clinical point of view it is not possible to differentiate between carcinoma and sarcoma unless there be hematogenous metastasis.

**Chorionepithelioma** This is a tumor of the embryonic chorion. It may develop after an abortion or during pregnancy. The growth springs from the chorionic villi and invades the uterine wall, the blood channels and the uterine musculature with trophoblastic cells causing destruction of uterine tissue and hemorrhage. Occasionally this tumor may develop beneath the surface within the uterine wall. The clinical findings are enlargement of the uterus, uncontrollable uterine hemorrhage and a positive pregnancy test though the fetus be dead or absent. The diagnosis is definitely made by microscopic examination of the tissue obtained by uterine curettage. This tumor is of rapid growth and me-

ause early hematogenous metastasis in the vagina lungs brain liver kidneys and other structures

**Malignant Hydatiform Mole** This is a rounded mass containing clusters of grape-like vesicles. It may be small having few vesicles or large and containing many. This tumor also develops from the chorionic villi; it is usually found in association with some product of pregnancy. The uterus usually enlarges out of proportion to the length of pregnancy. There is uterine bleeding during the early months of pregnancy. Pregnancy tests are generally positive. Hydatiform moles are considered by some authorities as being akin to chorion epitheliomas.

**Placental Rests and Polyps** These may remain dormant in the uterus for a considerable time and undergo malignant change during pregnancy or because of acute or chronic inflammation of the uterus. The chief symptoms are profuse and persistent bleeding during pregnancy and bleeding with subinvolution of the uterus after completion of pregnancy. Curettage and examination of the scrapings usually disclose the diagnosis.

### **Disease of the Fallopian Tubes**

Diseases of the Fallopian tubes include salpingitis tuberculosis tubal pregnancies and tumors.

**Salpingitis** This term denotes inflammation of the tubes; one or both tubes may be affected. The inflammation may extend to the ovaries or uterus and may be acute or chronic. Acute salpingitis may be caused by gonococci staphylococci streptococci colon bacilli or tubercle bacilli.

**Gonorrheal Salpingitis** This is the most frequent type encountered; it is secondary to vaginal or cervical gonorrhea.

The infection usually causes an endosalpingitis which spreads to the other layers of the tube causing either partial or complete tubal occlusion with suppuration and enlargement. The chief symptoms are pain tenderness and septic temperature. On examination the tube may be felt as a large round tender mass and there may be an associated cellulitis or a pelvic abscess in the tubo-ovarian region. The disease may be unilateral or bilateral.

**Pyogenic Salpingitis** This may follow abortion surgical operation on the cervix uterine curettage or it may be caused by other types of infection. The symptoms are severe pain in the pelvis septic type of temperature tenderness in the region of the broad ligament with cellulitis phlebitis lymphangitis and at times abscess of the broad ligament.

**Chronic Salpingitis** This may be manifested as pyosalpinx hydrosalpinx or chronic interstitial salpingitis.

**Pyosalpinx (pus tubes)** This is usually the result of gonorrheal salpingitis though it may also occur in tuberculosis or pyogenic infection. There is usually a blockage of the lumen of the tube at the fimbriated end which may cause occlusion of the entire tube. Examination will reveal an enlarged tube; some chronic pelvic inflammatory manifestations and a purulent discharge.

**Chronic Interstitial Salpingitis** This is characterized by enlargement of the tube and thickening of its wall. The enlargement may be moderate or pronounced depending on the volume of the tube content and the thickness of its wall. The symptoms are pain or fullness in the pelvic region often accompanied by a nonpurulent cervical discharge. Pelvic examination will reveal

tenderness and enlargement of one or both tubes

**Hydrosalpinx** This may result from pyosalpinx or from other inflammations causing tubal occlusion. It is usually an exceedingly chronic condition and may tend to form a tuboovarian cyst. On *examination* a cystlike mass, either cylindrical or rounded, of varying size, may be found in the affected tuboovarian region.

**Tuberculous Salpingitis** This is fairly common, and according to Novak,<sup>1</sup> comprises about 5 per cent of all cases of salpingitis. The tubercle bacillus may reach the tubes by the hematogenous route or the infection may spread to the tubes in the genital tract. When it occurs as a primary disease of the tubes it may spread to the cervix and to the vulva. The *symptoms* are irregular fever of low degree, pain and tenderness in the tubal region, leukorrheal discharge and, when the vulva is infected, characteristic ulcerations are noted. Tubercle bacilli may be found in the infected tissue or in the discharge.

**Tubal Pregnancy** (ectopic pregnancy) The cause of tubal pregnancy is not entirely known. Often tubal pregnancy remains unrecognized until the tube ruptures and severe hemorrhage results. The history of a missed period with sudden pain in the iliac region and the occurrence of slight or moderate vaginal bleeding often causing shock and the finding of a mass in the tubal region should call attention to the possibility of a ruptured tubal pregnancy.

**Tumors of the Fallopian Tubes** These may be malignant or benign.

**Malignant Tumors Carcinoma** This may be primary or it may be secondary or metastatic from the uterus or other pelvic structures. Carcinoma is generally found during the middle period of life. The *diagnosis* may be suspected by finding a hard mass in the tubal region that may cause a moderate amount of pain, bleeding and some discharge.

**Other Types of Malignant Tumors** These are chorionepithelioma, adenoma and sarcoma.

**Benign Tumors** These are fibroma, fibromyoma and cysts. They have no definite distinctive clinical characteristics. On *examination* a mass may be discovered in the tubal region which may be fixed and somewhat tender. Vascular tumors may also occur in the round ligaments, in the broad ligaments and in the intrasacral ligament.

### Disease of the Ovaries

The ovaries have a double function due to their internal and external secretions. Disease of the ovaries may therefore, cause definite endocrinopathies such as disturbance in menstruation, sterility, disturbance in somatic and sexual development and it may also cause other nonendocrine defects because of inflammation, tumors and other pathological change of their structure.

**Endocrine Disturbances of the Ovary**

SEE p 804

**Tumors of the Ovaries** Tumors may be benign or malignant.

**Benign Tumors** These are cysts, solid tumors such as papilloma, fibroma, lymphangioma, chondroma and adenoma. In this classification may also be included Brenner tumors and a fibro-

<sup>1</sup>Novak, Emil, Gynecology and Obstetrics, Pathology, p. 223, W. P. Saunders Co., Philadelphia, 1940.

tumors of the ovary and luteoma (masculinoblastoma)

*Cysts of the Ovaries* These may be small or exceedingly large and may spring from various structures of the ovary causing either endocrine disturbances or pressure symptoms because of the space they occupy in the abdomen.

*Diagnosis* If the cyst is very small it may escape detection; if large it is easily palpated by bimanual examination; when very large it causes distention of the abdomen and crowding of the abdominal viscera. Fluctuation may or may not be elicited.

*Dermoid Cysts* These may be unilateral or bilateral and when large may be palpated externally and bimanually. X-ray examination may reveal the presence of teeth, hair, bone or other embryonic tissue.

*Solid Tumors* These may be large or small, single or multiple. They do not cause metastasis but if large may cause considerable discomfort and interfere with ovarian and uterine function. They may be diagnosed by bimanual palpation. The structure of the tumor can only be diagnosed by microscopy.

*Brenner Tumors* These are believed to be benign and are said to arise in the ovary from cell nests of Walthard. They are of two kinds, solid and cystadenomatous. When they occur during the menstrual life, no characteristic effect upon menstruation is noted; in older women it has been suggested that they may cause postmenopausal bleeding. It is generally agreed that these tumors have no hormonal activity. When the tumor is large it may be diagnosed as a neoplasm; its morphology may be determined by microscopic examination.

*Adrenoblastic Tumors* (masculinoblastoma) This type of tumor is

made up of adrenal tissue and develops within the ovary. It may spring from adrenocortical rests. It is unlike the Graafian tumor or hypernephroma. At times pituitary, ovarian and adrenal tumors may coexist as individual entities. These are often responsible for virilism or for Cushing's syndrome (See pp. 765 and 805).

*Malignant Tumors* These are carcinoma, adenocarcinoma and various other types of carcinomatous tumors which may affect the various structures of the ovary such as the granulosa, the theca, the luteal cells, etc. They may also be arrhenoblastoma and dysgermoma. These tumors are classified as embryonic or dysontogenetic. Other malignant tumors are chorionepithelioma, hypernephroma, teratoma, sarcoma of various types, melanoma and the Krukenberg tumor.

*Carcinoma* According to Curtis<sup>1</sup> approximately 20 per cent of ovarian tumors are malignant. The commonest form is cystic carcinoma, generally known as papillary serous cystadenocarcinoma. The solid type of ovarian carcinoma is less common than the cystic form; the tumors may be medullary, scirrhous or adenomatous and are often bilateral. Carcinoma of the ovary may affect its endocrine structures or other parts; it may be primary or secondary. The tumors may be of various sizes and may cause metastasis.

*Hypernephroma* A hypernephroma usually develops from adrenal rests. This type of tumor usually invades the kidney but may also affect other organs, particularly the ovary. It may be primary in the ovary or it may metastasize to the ovary from hypernephroma of the kidney; it usually grows to a large size and

<sup>1</sup> Curtis, A. H. Textbook of Gynecology, p. 305. Saunders, Philadelphia, 1938.

because of its structure, it has been classified by some authors as an adenocarcinoma

**Sarcoma** Sarcoma of the ovary is rare. It is often bilateral, frequently of the spindle cell variety. Endothelioma and perithelioma of the ovary are often classified as ovarian sarcoma.

**Krukenberg Tumor** This is a special type of carcinoma of the ovary, generally bilateral, causing diffuse infiltration though preserving the normal contour of the ovaries. It is a secondary invader from the stomach or other parts of the gastrointestinal tract. The microscopic picture of the tumor simulates that found in carcinoma of the stomach, *i e*, large, swollen, signet ringlike cells buried in a connective tissue matrix and areas of mucoid degeneration.

**Dysgerminoma** These tumors originate from the undifferentiated embryonic gonadal cells and are responsible for the development of pseudohermaphrodites.

**Granulosa Cell Tumors** These originate from the granulosa cells of the graafian follicle. They are responsible for precocious puberty as evidenced by early development of pubic hairs and premature menstruation.

**Theca Cell Tumors** These originate from the theca cells of the graafian follicle and usually occur in women beyond the menopause, causing the return of periodic bleeding, enlargement of the uterus and hyperplasia of the endometrium with an increase in the production of estrogen.

**Arrhenoblastoma** These originate from male directed cell rests in the ovary. These tumors cause masculinization or virilism in previously normal women (SEE p 805).

Malignant tumors of the ovary may cause various endocrine changes de-

pending upon which of the ovarian structures are invaded. These changes as mentioned above, may be precocious matronism, virilism, masculinization or pseudohermaphroditism. They may also cause menstrual disturbances and sterility.

### Examination of the Male Genital Organs

The male generative organs are examined by *inspection* and *palpation*.

**The Penis** This is examined as to the condition of the prepuce, the presence of rashes such as chancre, chancreoid, condylomata, nonvenereal rashes, carcinoma, tuberculosis and also for the presence of scars as they may denote healed lesions.

**The Urinary Meatus** This is examined for discharges and the position of the meatus should be noted *i e* whether it is in the normal position on the undersurface (hypospadias), or on the dorsum of the penis (epispadias).

**The Scrotum** This is examined as to size and the condition of the blood vessels. Enlargement of the scrotum may be due to hernia, hydrocele, varicocele and orchitis. A very small or rudimentary scrotum is found in eunuchoidism, pseudohermaphroditism and in cryptorchism (SEE p 801).

**The Testicles** These are examined as to size, number, consistency and position, they should be palpated for the presence of hard masses and for tenderness. Tuberculosis, carcinoma, mumps, various types of orchitis and syphilis may affect these glands.

**The Spermatic Cords** The condition of the spermatic cords should be investigated as to size and tenderness.

**Malformation of the genitalia** as well as the **secondary sex characteristics** of the individual should be noted.



**The Inguinal Regions** These should be inspected and palpated for hernia and enlarged glands, the femoral ring should be palpated in order to determine its size. During palpation of the ring the patient is asked to cough the strength of the impulse should be noted and also

through the rectum. Its size and consistency may thus be noted. The commonest disease of the prostate is hypertrophy and prostatism. It may also be the seat of neoplasms, calculi, tuberculosis, syphilis, inflammatory conditions, etc.



Fig 9—Technic for palpating for inguinal hernia

if there is any protrusion of viscera. In the presence of a hernia one should determine whether it is direct or indirect also if it is partially reducible, totally reducible or irreducible. Finally, a most important procedure which is often overlooked is the examination of the prostate gland.

**The Prostate Gland** No physical examination of middle aged men is complete unless the prostate is investigated. The prostate is a firm, partly glandular and partly muscular body. It is situated in the pelvic cavity below the lower part of the symphysis pubis, in front of the rectum and immediately below the internal urethral orifice and around the commencement of the urethra. The prostate is examined by the palpating finger

### **Diseases of the Male Genital Organs**

Diseases of the male gonads may cause local manifestations or endocrine disturbances. (For Endocrine Diseases of the Gonads—SEE p 801.)

### **Diseases of the Penis**

**Congenital Deformities** *Congenital Absence of the Penis* In this anomaly the urethra may open anywhere on the perineum or on the anterior rectal wall. The male secondary characteristics are not disturbed.



Fig 10—Palpating for hernia during cough

**Double Penis** Two distinct and well formed organs may appear in the place of one. In some instances this is associated with double bladder so that there is a penis for each bladder, in other in-

stances there is but one bladder and urine may be passed by both organs

**Epispadias:** This is a rare condition in which the urethral opening is situated somewhere along the dorsum of the penis; it may be associated with partial incontinence. *Epispadias totalis* is accompanied by extrophy of the bladder, wide separation of the pubic bones, cryptorchism and other deformities

**Hypospadias:** This is a common anomaly, the urethral opening is usually situated medially anywhere along the undersurface of the penis.

**Phimosis:** This is a congenital contraction of the preputial orifice. It is generally associated with elongation and hypertrophy of the prepuce and an inability to retract it over the glans during erection. Phimosis may be congenital, or acquired because of injury, inflammatory disease or edema.

**Paraphimosis:** This denotes strangulation of the penis after the prepuce had been retracted over it so that the foreskin cannot be brought forward.

#### Venereal Diseases of the Penis:

**Chancre (Hard Chancre):** This is the initial lesion of syphilis appearing three to six weeks after exposure. It is manifested first as a papule and later as a punched-out ulcer having a hard base. It is indurated, clean and painless, and is usually single, though multiple chancres are not rare. It may appear anywhere upon the penis; the site of the lesion often modifies its appearance. In the coronal margin it appears as a superficial erosion; in the coronal sulcus it usually develops into a large ulceration; at the preputial margin and on the frenum, it appears as indurated fissures; on the glans it is a superficial indurated craterlike punched-out lesion with clean-cut edges having a red base covered

with a grayish exudate. The cause of chancre is *treponema pallidum* which may be recovered from the scrapings of the ulcer. The sero-diagnostic tests for syphilis do not become positive until several weeks after the chancre has appeared. Bilateral enlargement of the inguinal glands develops a short time after the appearance of the chancre.



Fig. 11—Chancroid and abscess of penis

**Mucous Patches (condyloma lata):** These are slightly raised, moist granular white patches; they are one of the manifestations of secondary syphilis and may appear upon the penis or elsewhere in association with other secondary lesions.

**Gumma:** Gumma of the penis is rare. It is a tertiary manifestation of syphilis. It may appear as a large circular ulcer with steep sides having a punched-out appearance.

**Chancroid (soft chancre):** This caused by the Ducrey-Unna bacillus. The lesion is an ulcer appearing on the genitals within several days after exposure

The ulcers are usually multiple, they are at first round or oval, and later become irregular, ragged and superficial having a gray base covered with a copious purulent discharge, they are soft and not indurated. These lesions may cause considerable destruction of tissue, lymphadenitis and enlargement or suppuration of the inguinal lymph nodes (SEE Fig 11)



Fig 12—Granuloma of penis

**Lymphogranulomatosis Inguinale** (Lymphopathia Venerum) This is a chronic disease of venereal origin said to be due to a filtrable virus. It occurs more frequently among women. The initial lesion usually consists of several herpes on the glans around the corona or other parts of the penis. Several weeks later there develops inguinal adenitis, these glands suppurate and form abscesses and fistulae often causing tissue destruction and rectal strictures. The Frei test is usually positive (SEE pp 697 and 1055)

**Granuloma Inguinale** (Granuloma Venereum Serpiginous Ulceration of the Groin) This is a disease found chiefly in the negro occurring more often among women and in the tropics (SEE p 696). It is said to be due to the Donovan Bodies. It is characterized

by the formation of serpiginous granulatous ulcers of the skin and subcutaneous tissue of the penis and inguinal regions. The ulceration frequently appears first in the groin and then spreads to the penis, scrotum and perineum. It is a chronic disease causing little discomfort aside from some itching and a foul discharge (SEE Fig 12)

**Balanoposthitis** (Erosive and Gangrenous Balanitis) This is sometimes spoken of as the 'fourth venereal disease'. It is a specific infection which



Fig 13—Epithelioma of prepuce and glans penis (Courtesy Dr Costello Philadelphia General Hospital)

according to Herman<sup>1</sup> is due to a spirochete growing in symbiosis with a vibrio. The normal habitat of the organism is in the mouth being transferred to the penis by the saliva. The disease is comparatively rare. The lesions first manifest

<sup>1</sup>Herman, Leon. 'The Practice of Urology' p 581 W B Saunders Co Philadelphia 1938

themselves as white superficial patches surrounded by an inflammatory zone which suppurates and discharges a yellowish white seropurulent pus having a foul odor. The ulcers may be superficial and circumscribed or they may cause gangrene and destruction of the prepuce, glans and shaft of the penis.



Fig 14—Carcinoma of penis

#### Malignant Lesions of the Penis

**Carcinoma** The lesion is usually an epithelioma of the papillary, vegetative or cauliflower, or the ulcerative type. Rarely there may be a melanotic or a medullary type of carcinoma. The lesions may start as a papilloma or as an ulcer with slightly raised edges, which causes ulceration and inflammation and, eventually, destruction of the penis. The lesions may be primary or secondary, usually causing metastasis. (SEE Figs 13 and 14)

**Sarcoma** Sarcoma of the penis is rare, it may occur on any part of the penis and cause obliteration of the cavernous space which may give rise to priapism.

**Tuberculosis of the Penis** In the adult it may be due to direct infection during sexual intercourse from a tuberculous vulva, or it may be secondary to tuberculosis along the genitourinary tract. The lesion may start as a single focus which ulcerates slowly, it is irregular in contour and depth and may be covered with granulation tissue and slough. The lesion may heal spontaneously or it may cause severe ulceration of the penis. (SEE Fig 15)

**Benign Lesions of the Penis** These may be venereal warts, dermoids, cysts, angiomas, fibromas, lipomas and various skin lesions such as herpes simplex or herpes zoster, lichen planus, scabies, abrasions, etc.

**Priapism** This is a condition of continuous penile erection not due to sexual emotion. The erection may last from several days to several months or longer. It is often attended with pain but without

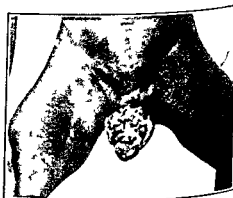


Fig 15—Tuberculosis of the penis  
(Philadelphia General Hospital.)

libido, sexual intercourse aggravates the condition. Priapism may be caused by thrombosis of the cavernous bodies (or thrombosis may cause it), sexual excess, injury, neoplasm, myelitis, fracture of the spine, tumor of the cord, syphilis of the cord, urethral stricture.

prolonged irritation of the penis or prostate. Priapism occurs fairly frequently in association with leukemia.

### Diseases of the Urethra

#### Venereal Diseases of the Urethra

**Gonorrhea** Gonorrheal urethritis is the commonest infection of the urethra. It is caused by infection with the gonococcus. Acute gonorrhea is characterized by inflammation of the external urinary meatus and chiefly by the discharge of pus which contains the gonococci. In mild cases infection is limited to the anterior urethra. In severe cases infection may spread to the posterior urethra.

**Chronic Urethritis** This is usually the result of acute gonorrheal urethritis and is manifested as an organic stricture. The symptoms are chronic mucopurulent discharge, stings in the first or second specimens of urine or in both and occasional prostatic complications. Occasionally it may be of nonspecific origin.

**Syphilitic Urethritis** This is caused by an intraurethral chancre. It is characterized by its prolonged incubation period, scanty seropurulent discharge and bilateral inguinal adenopathy. Occasionally both syphilitic and gonorrheal urethritis may occur at the same time since both are procurable in the same shop.

**Nonspecific (nonvenereal) Urethritis** This may be caused by a variety of organisms, i.e., the staphylococci, the trichomonas vaginalis or other organism which may enter the urethra during sexual intercourse or from filthy habits. Nonspecific urethritis may also result from injury to the urethra by trauma, catheterization or from foreign bodies in the urethra. The symptoms are tenderness, burning on urination and occasionally a serous discharge.

**Diphtheritic Urethritis** This is characterized by intense inflammation of the urethra, a serosanguinous discharge and the formation of a membrane which may be visible in the meatus. A culture taken from the urethra may disclose the diphtheria bacilli.

**Spermatorrhea** This is characterized by the discharge of a clear, glycerine-like discharge usually during erection. It may be due to overfilling of the seminal vesicles or the prostate. It is not a urethritis but may be mistaken as such unless the secretion is examined microscopically.

**Other Types of Urethritis** These may be due to foreign bodies, neoplasms, various other infections and parasites in the urethra.

**The symptoms** of nearly all types of urethritis are burning on urination, often frequency of urination, some pain and tenderness over the penis and urethra and a urethral discharge varying in consistency and content depending upon the cause of the urethritis.

### Diseases of the Scrotum

**Congenital Malformation of the Scrotum** The scrotum may fail to develop as seen in bilateral cryptorchism and in some of the anomalies of the penis, testes and urethra.

**Bifid Scrotum** This is a distinct division of the scrotum into two lateral halves. It may be mistaken for a vulva particularly when associated with hypospadias or with a poorly developed penis.

**Acquired Lesions of the Scrotum** The scrotum may be affected by various skin lesions, parasites, tumors, edema, hydrocele, varicocele and hernia.

**Skin Lesions of the Scrotum** There may be dermatitis such as eczema, intertrigo, erythema, etc., they affect the

folds of the skin causing itching and burning and occur chiefly during the summer. Erythema may be caused by chafing as the result of irritation or infection by various fungi: *e.* ringworm, dermatophytosis, or by the streptococcus pyogenes.

**Tinea Cruris** (dhotie itch, jockey strap itch, red flap). This occurs upon the upper and inner parts of the thigh and extends to the scrotum, perineum and anus. It is caused by the *Epidermophyton inguinale*, a fungus closely related to the trichophyton. It is characterized by the formation of an erythematous and scaling or vesicular and crusted patch which spreads peripherally and clears in the center, having a well-defined border particularly at its lower edge. Other yeast fungi may affect the same region.

**Pediculosis Corporis** (crabs). This may affect the mons, scrotum, thigh or any hairy surface. They cause intense itching.

**Pruritis**. Itching of the scrotum may occur in the various skin affections and parasitic infections, or it may be caused by boils and an urethral discharge, or by worms. It is also found in diabetes, tuberculosis, renal disease, and in the bedridden who have incontinence of urine and have profuse sweating; occasionally it may occur idiopathically.

**Tumors of the Scrotum**. These may be vascular such as nevi or hemangioma, or solid tumors such as fibroma, lipoma, sarcoma, chondroma, osteoma and teratoma.

**Inflammation of the Scrotum**. This may result from wounds and other trauma, or it may extend from orchitis.

**Gangrene of the Scrotum**. This may result from infection from syphilis and from irritation caused by the drib-

bling of urine over the scrotum for an extended period.

**Edema of the Scrotum**. This may be found in general anasarca caused by heart failure, in nephritis or in other conditions that cause edema. The scrotum and penis may become enormously enlarged and have a doughy feel to



Fig. 16—Hydrocele (Pl. Adelphi & General Hospital)

skin is thick and pale, it is not tender and does not itch.

**Angioneurotic edema** is rare but may occur occasionally. Part of the scrotum becomes swollen, red and hot, the swelling is accompanied by severe itching and burning.

**Elephantiasis of the Scrotum**. Elephantiasis of the scrotum may be due to lymphatic obstruction to lymphatic venereum and to the invasion of the lymph nodes by the filaria sanguinis hominis.

**Hydrocele:** This may be congenital or acquired, it is characterized by the accumulation of fluid in the tunica vaginalis testes, or in the processus vaginalis. The scrotum may become enormously distended and may be mistaken for hernia. It yields a dull note on percussion, it may fluctuate, is not tender, is irreducible, and transmits light. The skin of the scrotum is stretched but is otherwise normal (SEE Fig 16)

**Lymphocele:** This is an accumulation of lymph in the scrotum. It may be due to rupture of dilated lymph vessels or to filariasis.

**Hematocele:** This is an accumulation of blood in the scrotum. It may be caused by trauma such as a blow or a wound, or by puncture of a blood vessel following the tapping of a hydrocele. It may also be due to spontaneous rupture of a blood vessel, or to hemophilia or purpura.

### Disease of the Testes

**Endocrine Disturbances of the Testes** (SEE p 801)

**Congenital Defects of the Testes:** The testes may be entirely absent (*anorchism*); one or both may be intra-abdominal, in the inguinal canal, on the perineum, or underneath the mons (*cryptorchism*), or they may be supernumerary (*polyorchism*).

**Atrophy of the Testicles:** This may be congenital or acquired because of trauma or disease.

**Acquired Diseases of the Testes**  
**Orchitis** (Inflammation of the Testicle) This may be caused by trauma, by gonococci or other infections, by mumps, by tuberculosis, and by syphilis, and it may occur as a complication in infectious diseases.

Orchitis caused by trauma, infection or by mumps is characterized by ex-

tremely painful swelling and enlargement of the affected testicle. It is associated with fever, and the inflammation usually extends to the epididymis.

**Epididymitis:** Inflammation of the epididymis may be gonorrheal or non-specific, acute or chronic.

**Gonorrheal Epididymitis:** This may follow acute anterior gonorrheal urethritis when the infection extends to the posterior urethra, or it may be caused by chronic posterior urethral or prostatic infection. One or both epididymis may become affected, the inflammation may extend to the scrotum, the orchis and the spermatic cord. The symptoms are severe pain in the testes, swelling and tenderness in the affected epididymis usually at the *globus minor*, and pain in the groin. The scrotum is thickened, inflamed and tender and there may be a hydrocele. The patient, when walking is bent forward with legs spread wide apart and attempts to support the heavy and inflamed scrotum. The local inflammation is accompanied by a systematic reaction of fever and leukocytosis, and there may be an active gonorrheal discharge from the urethra.

**Nonspecific Epididymitis:** This may be acute or chronic. It may be a result of direct trauma or it may occur as a complication in typhoid fever, meningitis, pyemia, and other febrile diseases. It may also be caused by posterior urethral inflammation incident to catheterization, or the introduction of a sound or other instrument. Surgical operation upon the prostate or the lower genitals may cause epididymitis. Milder cases may be caused by prolonged sexual excitement without gratification. The symptoms are pain in the scrotum, perineum and groin. Generally the inflam-

mation and swelling is not as severe as in gonorrheal epididymitis

**Tuberculous Orchitis and Epididymitis** This is usually a chronic disease. A painless nodular swelling is first noted in the globus minor or major. Several lesions may gradually form and coalesce into a nodular mass. The scrotum becomes attached to the testicle, hardened, swollen and puckered. The lesions eventually break down, forming sinuses which discharge serocaseous material. Tuberculous orchitis and epididymitis are usually associated with tuberculous infection of the seminal vesicles and prostate or with tuberculous infection elsewhere. The pain is not as intense as in acute orchitis or epididymitis.

**Syphilitic Orchitis and Epididymitis** This usually occurs as a tertiary manifestation of syphilis. The entire testicular structure presents chronic interstitial changes. Four clinical types are considered: (1) Orchitis fibrosa syphilitica, in which one or both testes are atrophied, indurated, somewhat irregular in contour and painless. There may be an associated slight hydrocele. It is said to be the result of gumma improperly treated. (2) Active gummatous orchitis, which is characterized by the formation of a gummatous lesion that may cause destruction of the outer covering of the testicle and scrotum, exposing the testes. (3) Generalized sclerogummatous orchitis (billiard ball testicle), in which the testicles become enlarged, smooth, rounded, hard and heavy and are devoid of sensation. (4) Syphilitic epididymo-orchitis, in which small nodular gummatous masses occupy chiefly the globus major of the epididymis. It is associated with some changes in the testes. This type resembles tuberculous orchitis. Syphilitic orchitis and epididymitis sel-

dom cause pain or discomfort. Serologic tests for syphilis are usually positive.

**Tumors of the Testes** Intrascrotal neoplasms may be benign or malignant.

**Benign Neoplasms** These are cysts and solid tumors. They may arise from the seminal vesicles, the epididymis or the tunica vaginalis.

**Cysts** These may be spermatocoeles, simple cysts and dermoid cysts.

**Spermatocoeles** These are retention cysts developed from seminiferous ducts or from remains of the Wolffian structures. They may be small or large, single or multiple. Small cysts cause no symptoms. Large cysts may cause a dragging sensation in the scrotum. A single moderately large cyst may be mistaken for an additional testicle.

**Simple Cysts** These are usually situated above a testicle. They may result from trauma or from torsion of the spermatic cord or they may be congenital. The congenital cysts originate in the remains of Muller's ducts; they comprise the sessile and stalked hydatids. Cysts usually cause no pain and very little discomfort unless they are large. They are yielding to palpation and transmit light. Torsion of the sessile hydatid may cause subacute orchitis.

**Benign Dermoid Cysts** These are unilateral; they may be large or small and contain sebaceous material in which may be imbedded hair. They are usually symptomless unless they become infected.

**Solid Benign Tumors** These are adenoma, fibroma, lipoma, leiomyoma, hemangioma and lymphangioma. These tumors when small cause no symptoms; when large they cause discomfort and heaviness because of their size. The tumors are fairly hard; some are of the



consistency of the testicle others are harder than the testicle They are usually painless unless some of the nerve filaments are invaded Then they may cause neuralgic pain in the scrotum

**Malignant Neoplasms** These are malignant teratoma seminoma (embryonal carcinoma spermatocystoma) adenocarcinoma and sarcoma

**Teratoma** This is a fairly common highly malignant tumor it may vary in size from a hazel nut to a tangerine, it is usually hard but may have soft areas The tumor contains various glandular structures It causes metastasis to distant organs The urine and blood contain large amounts of Prolan (Anterior pituitarylike hormone)

**Seminoma** (embryonal carcinoma spermatocystoma) This is a highly malignant tumor of epithelial origin and is said to comprise about 65 per cent of the malignant tumors of the testicle It is a soft rapidly growing tumor it is usually unilateral and is at first painless As the tumor grows it develops some pain and tenderness often only a dragging sensation It causes metastasis though seldom to the inguinal glands The scrotum may develop large tortuous veins The urine will yield large amounts of Prolan.

**Adenocarcinoma** This springs more frequently from the epididymis than from the orchis It may grow to a fairly large size When the tumor originates from and is confined to the epididymis it may cause atrophy of the testicle and no appreciable increase of Prolan in the urine The tumor is of comparatively slow growth and metastasizes slowly

**Sarcoma** Sarcoma of the testicle occurs more frequently in the very young than in adults A benign tumor may undergo sarcomatous change or the tumor

may be a primary sarcoma It is usually soft has distended blood vessels is of rapid growth and causes a hemotogenous metastasis The Prolan content of the urine is greatly increased The differential diagnosis between a carcinoma and sarcoma is often difficult without microscopic aid

**Neuralgia of the Testicles** Severe stabbing or aching pain may occur in the testicles without any discoverable lesion Occasionally it may result from a blow or a kick or other trauma or the pain may be referred from the ureter prostate seminal vesicles bladder or perineum

### *Diseases of the Spermatic Cord*

**Inflammation of the Spermatic Cord** (Funiculitis and Vasitis) This may result from disease of the testicle or epididymis as in gonorrhea or other types of orchitis and epididymitis from intraabdominal inflammations as in acute appendicitis localized peritonitis or from disease of the prostate Inflammation of the spermatic cord is spoken of as funiculitis and inflammation of the vas deferens is known as vasitis

**Occlusion of the Spermatic Cord** This may result from inflammation gonorrhea and neoplasm

**Neoplasms of the Spermatic Cord** This may be benign or malignant The benign growths are cysts lipomas or other benign growths The malignant growths are chiefly sarcoma carcinoma is rare Sarcoma is found oftener in middle aged men than in young it usually affects the intrascrotal portion of the tube grows rapidly and is highly malignant

**Varicocele** This is a dilatation and varicosity of the veins of the spermatic cord The veins are elongated and are

palpable in the scrotum as heavy strands of knotted rope. It occurs chiefly in young people most frequently on the left side. A varicocele developing in older men may be due to an obstructive lesion of the spermatic vein, this may occur in renal neoplasm pyonephrosis and venous thrombosis. In these cases the varicocele is more often on the right side and occurs spontaneously.

### *Disease of the Seminal Vesicles*

The seminal vesicles are situated intraabdominally above and on either side of the prostate gland. They secrete a mucoid fluid in which float the spermatozoa, they also serve as reservoirs for the sperms.

**Seminal Vesiculitis** Inflammation of the seminal vesicles may occur as a complication of gonorrheal urethritis epididymitis and prostatitis. They may become tuberculous or be invaded by malignant neoplasms. Inflammation of the vesicles will cause discomfort in the perineum and difficulty in urination.

**Tumors of the vesicles** will cause perineal and bladder pressure symptoms and occasionally bloody spermatorrhea.

### *Calculi in the Seminal Vesicles*

These may be large or small hard or soft. They usually cause pressure symptoms and may interfere with urination and defecation. Other symptoms are pain in the groin, testicle and rectum and occasional hematospermia. The calculi may be palpable per rectum or discoverable by x rays.

### *Diseases of the Prostate*

**Benign Hypertrophy of the Prostate** The commonest disease of the prostate is hypertrophy and prostatism. This occurs in varying degrees in most men past the age of 60 years though it

may occur earlier. The entire prostate may become enlarged or only a part of it, the so-called 'median bar'. Enlargement of the prostate interferes with micturition, either slowing the stream or entirely preventing micturition by compressing the posterior urethral orifice. The amount of interference depends upon the degree of hyperplasia. Occasionally it may prolong the starting time or cause dribbling of urine at the end of micturition. The cause of prostatic hypertrophy is not known. Theoretically it is believed to be due to altered interaction between the testicular and pituitary sex hormones.

The term *median bar* denotes prostatism unassociated with generalized prostatic hypertrophy. There are two types the true and false bars.

**True median bar** occurs when the posterior arc of the bladder orifice is elevated by a fibrous structure stretching across the posterior lip of the vesicle orifice the prostate otherwise being normal.

The **false median bar**, the less common of the two has a tendency to grow upwards and encroach upon the vesicle trigone which causes an unfolding or creasing of the vesicle trigone transversely. There is also a glandular median bar (or commissural hypertrophy) which is composed of hyperplastic glandular tissue originating from the mucosal glands.

**Symptoms of Prostatism** These are

(1) **Bladder Symptoms** Prostatism whether caused by hyperplasia of the entire prostate or only by a median bar may cause dilatation of the bladder or cystitis the latter being due to decomposition and infection of the residual urine (See p 981).

(2) *Urinary Symptoms* Retention of urine difficulty in starting and stopping the stream or slowing the stream may be due to compression of the intrabdominal portion of the urethra or the neck of the bladder

(3) *Hematuria* This may be due to rupture of a varicose vein or to ulceration of the mucosa of an intravesicle prostatic lobe

(4) *Rectal Symptoms* These are a sense of fullness in the perineum and interference with defecation if the prostate is large

(5) *Sexual Symptoms* Early prostatic hypertrophy may cause increased sexual excitement moderate prostatism may cause painful ejaculation menospermia or pseudopriapism Advanced prostatism may cause sexual incompetence

(6) *Cystitis and vesicle calculus* may complicate prostatism

**Malignancy of the Prostate** *Carcinoma* This is a fairly common tumor of the prostate it may occur in a previously hypertrophied gland or in a non hypertrophied one The prostate is irregular in shape the mass being stony hard The symptoms may be those of prostatic hyperplasia Carcinoma of the prostate is occasionally diagnosed roentgenologically before the appearance of symptoms by the finding of rarefaction of the pelvic and other bones of the body

*Sarcoma* Sarcoma of the prostate is rare and may go undiagnosed The symptoms are those of prostatic hyper

trophy All malignant tumors of the prostate cause metastasis and per contra malignancy elsewhere in the body may metastasize to the prostate

**Benign Tumors of the Prostate** Benign prostatic tumors are very rare and may not easily be differentiated from benign hypertrophy

**Prostatic Cysts** These may be small or large they are asymptomatic except when they are large and cause obstructive symptoms A cyst may be palpable as a soft circumscribed fluctuating mass

**Prostatic Calculus** Calculi may develop in the acini of the gland, they are fairly common and may be single or multiple Because of their hardness they may simulate carcinoma When large they may cause obstructive symptoms An x ray examination may disclose the presence of calculi or they may be felt through the rectum by the palpating finger

**Prostatic Syphilis** This is a rare condition The prostatic gland may be indurated and irregularly nodular A gelatinous prostatic fluid exudate having a foul odor may be caused by a gumma of the prostate

**Prostatic Tuberculosis** This may be secondary to tuberculosis of the kidney bladder urethra epididymis rectum or to generalized miliary tuberculosis Caseating lesions may cause a caseous exudate The diagnosis may be suspected when tuberculous lesions are found elsewhere in the urogenital tract or in the vicinity of the prostate gland

## SECTION 11

# Bones and Joints

## CHAPTER XXV

### Examination and Diseases of the Bones and Joints and of the Extremities

The examination of the extremities including their bones and joints is a part of every general physical examination.

Much may be learned by a careful examination of these members of the body as it may reveal developmental errors, birth injuries, childhood bone and nerve disease, and such adult injuries and diseases as have a predilection for the bony structures, joints or the soft parts of the extremities.

At present most examinations of the bony framework of the body are considered incomplete unless checked by the roentgen ray. To interpret a roentgenogram correctly one must have a thorough knowledge of the normal structure and the various changes that may occur in a given area as a result of disease. Therefore a thorough physical examination is essential for a correct diagnosis which can be amplified and confirmed by the x ray findings.

#### Ossification Centers

In the normal ossification centers and epiphyseal union of various bones should occur at definite ages. Marked deviation from the normal indicates a pathologic process. Bone development at various ages and the appearance of ossification centers and epiphyseal union show the following:

**At Birth** Both fontanels are open. Ossification centers are noted in the lower end of the femur, the head of the tibia and some of the bones of the foot (astragalus, calcaneus and cuboids).

**At Two Months** The posterior fontanel closes. The first ossification center is noted in the head of the humerus.

**At Six Months** The two lower central incisors of the deciduous set appear between the sixth and eighth month. Centers of ossification are noted in the lower end of the radius, the lower end of the tibia, the os magnum and the unciform bones of the wrists.

**At One Year** The four upper incisors are erupted. Ossification centers are now found at the head of the femur and the third tarsal cuneiform bone.

**At Two Years** The four canine teeth are erupted and the anterior fontanels are closed. The usual closing time is at or about 1½ years. Ossification has already occurred in the upper scapula, the lower end of the humerus, the pyramidal bone of the wrist and the second center for the head of the humerus.

**At Three Years** The four posterior molars are erupted. Ossification is noted at the extremities of the metacarpal, metatarsal and phalangeal bones.

**At Four Years** There is ossification of the semilunar bone (wrist), the head of the fibula, the scaphoid and the first and second cuneiform bones of the foot.

**At Five Years** There is ossification of the head of the radius, the scaphoid, the semilunar bones of the wrist, the patella and the greater tuberosity of the femur.

**At Six Years** The first molars of the permanent teeth usually erupt and epiphyseal junction occurs at the head of the humerus.

**At Seven Years** The incisors begin to erupt at the seventh year and are fully erupted by the eighth year ossification at the lower end of the fibula is completed by the end of the seventh year

**At Nine Years** Ossification is noted in the olecranon process the lesser tuberosity of the femur and the head of the os calcis

**At Ten Years** The eight bicuspids should be erupted and the external condyle and the pisiform bones should be ossified

**At 11 Years** The canine teeth begin to erupt at 11 years and should be fully erupted by the fourteenth year Ossification is noted of the internal condyle the trochlea and the head of the tibia (second center)

**At 12 Years** The second molars begin to erupt at 12 years and should be completely erupted at 15 years

**At 13 Years** Signs of puberty should be well marked Ossification is completed at the head of the acromion process the tip of the scapula and the outer end of the clavicle Epiphyseal junction is noted at the head of the calcaneum

**Epiphyseal Junctions** Epiphyseal junctions of the various bones occur at different ages The head of the humerus, first ossification center at two months, second at six years the head of the calcaneum at 13 years, the olecranon at 14 years the trochlea and the head of the radius at 15 years the tuberosity of the femur at 16 years the internal condyle at 17 years the acromion process the outer end of the clavicle the heads of the metacarpal metatarsal and phalangeal bones the head of the femur and the lower ends of the tibia and fibula at 18 years the lower end of the femur and the heads of the tibia and fibula at 19 years, the second center for the head of the humerus the tip of the scapula the external condyle and the lower end of the radius at 20 years and the lower end of the fibula at 21 years By the end of the twenty first year ossification and epiphyseal union should be completed

Premature ossification occurs in hypergonadism Delayed ossification is seen in hypopituitarism hypogonadism hypothyroidism and in gigantism The bones are thinner than normal in hyperthyroidism

## The Bones

### Physical Examination of the Bones

The parts to be examined as well as the corresponding parts of the body not under examination must be bare of clothing so that the two parts may be carefully compared This is done by *inspection palpation manipulation measurement and auscultation* and often by *x ray examination*

By *inspection* the patient's posture may be studied and this should be done while he is lying standing walking and stooping every aspect being minutely

observed The posture of the body as a whole and the extremities may be studied and any atrophy of the muscle tumefactions or distortions of the joints angles of bones or curvature of the spine should be noted and estimated The *color* of the parts and the existence of dilated veins should also be observed.

By *palpation* the muscles are investigated as to their rigidity or flabbiness the joints are felt in order to note if they are rigid relaxed hard soft bony enlarged glands are thus detected.

covered bony prominences outlined and displacements ascertained

By *manipulation* the condition of the joints may be determined and whether the joints are limited in range of motion rigid or in a healthy condition

*Mensuration* is a most valuable means of determining the definite degree of any existing deformity, and by keeping records and comparing them from time to time it can be determined whether the condition is improving is stationary or is growing progressively worse

By *auscultation* now little practiced the early orthopedists recognized five sounds (1) Simple dry friction sound (2) dry grating sound (3) coarse grating sound (4) moist crepitant sound (5) coarse crepitant sound (McCurdy)

X ray or roentgenographic examination will reveal deformities fractures bone densities and calcific deposits

### Bone Diseases<sup>1</sup>

The bones in general are studied with a view to determining their size and shape. The bones of the body may be deformed because of disease or such deformity may be caused by (I) Injury (II) infectious diseases (III) general disease not limited to one bone (IV) tumors and (V) cysts

**I Injury** An injury may cause localized swelling by producing subperiosteal hemorrhage by the formation of callus at the site of a fracture or by a deformity due to a poorly united fracture

These may be recognized by inspection and palpation and by an x ray examination. A subperiosteal hemorrhage usually presents an elevation which is tender to touch somewhat yielding to deep pressure and when not under great

tension may give rise to fluctuation. This may be elicited by gently tapping simultaneously with the flexor sides of the distal phalanges of both index fingers at the divergent limits of the swelling. The presence of callus at the site of a



Fig 1—Osteomyelitis  
(Courtesy of Dr Leon Solis Colen)

fracture is recognized by the presence of an abnormal elevation along an otherwise smooth surface of a bone. The elevation is hard and nonyielding to touch and is usually painless. Bone deformity due to a badly united fracture may be diagnosed by a change in the general contour of the bone at a certain point which may result in angulation or other

<sup>1</sup> For Symptoms SEE p 81

deformity, often interfering with normal function

**II Infectious Diseases** Infectious diseases may give rise to inflammatory changes in the bone, if the initial inflammation is in the periosteum *periostitis* will take place, but if the bone structure is affected *osteomyelitis* may result. Acute infection may occur in a bone because of direct injury or indirectly by

the bones of the head and face the scapula the humerus the radius and ulna the fingers and the scapula. The patella is rarely affected

**Symptoms** During the early stages there may be fever malaise and some pain over the affected part. When necrosis and suppuration develop there may be fluctuation signs of bone destruction and the formation of discharging sinuses. Often the pus may burrow its way along the sheaths of muscles or large vessels and form a cold abscess at a distance from its seat of origin.

Tuberculous dactylitis occurs principally in the young. When the shaft of the bone is affected causing periosteal swelling it is called *spina ventosa*.

**Osteomyelitis** This is an inflammation of the bone marrow cavity affecting the soft tissues and the cells in the Haversian canals in the cancellous space or in the medullary cavity. It may be simple or infective either type may be acute or chronic localized or diffuse.

Simple osteomyelitis is not due to bacterial infection. The localized form is caused by traumatism i.e. contusion or fracture. The diffuse variety is often seen in conjunction with rickets or osteitis deformans. It usually causes softening of the bone and permits bending. The chronic type causes sclerosis of the bone.

Infective or pyogenic osteomyelitis is caused by bacterial infection i.e. the staphylococci streptococci pneumococci typhoid and paratyphoid bacilli tubercle bacilli gonococci and various pyogenic organisms. The infection may be carried by the blood stream by the lymphatics or it may gain entrance through a wound.

The clinical manifestations are fever chills and sweats, this may be

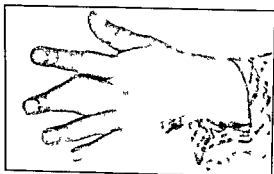


Fig 2—Tuberculous dactylitis (*Spina ventosa*)

the infection being carried to it by the circulation from a remote portion of the body.

The presence of periostitis and osteomyelitis is recognized by the occurrence of pain over the affected part and by fever sweats and leukocytosis. Pressure over the affected part causes pain, the overlying muscles are usually rigid and the skin may become inflamed. When suppuration occurs, fluctuation may be elicited.

**Bone Tuberculosis (Tuberculous Osteomyelitis)** This usually starts in the cancellous ends of long bones and has a tendency to spread to the epiphysis often invading the joint. Occasionally the shaft may become involved. This disease is not confined to the long bones. The common sites of infection are the vertebrae the lower end of the femur the pelvis the hips the tibia and fibula the foot



ompanied by prostration Pain is acute boring gnawing or aching over the affected area and there may be marked tenderness on palpation and on manipulation Swelling distended veins and edema develop later During the early stages the x ray may not reveal the affected area When necrosis develops the x ray examination may indicate it

**Periostitis** This may be acute and chronic The inflammation is seldom confined to the periosteum alone but gen

Chronic periostitis is often syphilitic and may be manifested by the formation of nodular swellings. These are usually soft and not very tender to touch Occasionally they may degenerate and involve the bone causing caries or necrosis

**Syphilis** This may be acquired or congenital *Acquired syphilis* is characterized by periosteal thickening and in the tertiary stage by gummata In *congenital syphilis* bone swellings are quite common and periosteal thickening of the



Fig 3—Sabre shaped tibia

erally occurs in conjunction with inflammation of the bone (osteitis) thus causing an osteoperiostitis

Acute periostitis is often associated with some degree of osteomyelitis It may be caused by trauma extension of inflammation from other structures blood stream infection certain febrile diseases exposure to cold constitutional diseases by poisoning with phosphorus or mercury It is often found among pearl polishers This condition may affect any bone it may be localized or diffused

**Symptoms** There is a sharp rise in temperature severe pain worse at night and exquisite tenderness to touch over the affected area which is red and hot to the touch

The disease may terminate in resolution or it may cause bone necrosis

skull bones is frequently noted (Parrot's node)

According to Goldthwait the bone lesions of syphilis occur most commonly in the hereditary form and in the tertiary stage of the acquired disease being rare in the secondary stage though acutely sensitive small areas of periostitis often multiple are occasionally found in the secondary stage

Hereditary lesions are divided into *early* and *late* forms The *early form* occurs soon after birth and resembles rickets Gelatinous masses are formed beneath the periosteum and at the epiphyseal line with sometimes true fracture of the shaft or separation of the epiphyses There is said to be thickening of the periosteum and bone cortex The so-called juxta epiphyseal type of late hereditary syphilis displays areas of

mon complaint is pain in the lower limbs, the tibiae seem to be the bones most often affected. The deformities consist of thickening and bowing of the bones. The bowed appearance is usually due to the fact that the cortex thickens much more upon one side than upon the other. The medullary canal is sometimes completely hidden by trabeculae of bone, the bone being greatly diminished in density and weight. In some cases the cranium shows the earliest changes. Goldthwait speaks of "acutely sensitive, swollen areas, exquisitely tender with the skin over them somewhat reddened," which never open spontaneously, but



Fig 6—Rickets

when incised do not exude pus, showing only chronic inflammatory tissue. The bowing of the legs often becomes so marked that the patient is forced to adopt a "scissors leg" gait, the motion at the hip joint being greatly impeded

While it is difficult to diagnose Paget's disease in its early stages except by x-ray examination, it is readily recognizable in the advanced stage. The face seems small and triangular in shape.

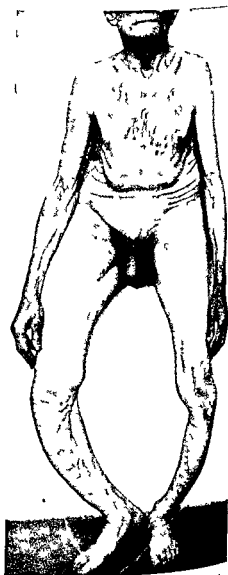


Fig 7—Osteitis deformans (Paget's disease)  
(Jefferson Hospital)

with its base upward. The head is large and dome shaped, the upper dorsal vertebrae curve outward so that the head is pushed forward, the upper extremities

as seem to reach very low, resembling those of a chimpanzee. The legs and spine may become extremely bowed, so that the person becomes shorter in stature and develops an awkward gait.

Paget's disease may at times affect only a few bones, either the head alone or one of both tibiae, fibulae or the femurs. In

**Leontiasis Ossium** A rare condition in which a general overgrowth of cranial and facial bones exists, causing a lionlike facial expression accompanied by enlargement of soft parts of face and neck.

**Osteitis Fibrosa Cystica or Hyperparathyroidism** This is an inflammatory disease of the bones causing a



Fig 8—Bone cyst (osteitis fibrosa cystica)  
(Dr Thomas Shallow's case, Jefferson Hospital)

any case when there is reason to suspect its existence, recourse should be had to a ray examination which may show longitudinal striae of increased porosity and density in the same bones. The skull bones are uniformly enlarged and show an irregular knobby appearance.

rarefying osteitis with fibrous degeneration and the formation of cysts. The large, long bones are usually affected first, the femur, humerus and tibia. This condition is due to hyperparathyroidism which causes hypercalcemia and hypophosphitemia (SEE p 789).



Fig 9—Osteitis fibrosa cystica Note fractures of thigh and leg



Fig 10—Hand Schüller Christian's disease. Photograph of boy age 10½ years (After Thompson Keegan and Dunn)

**Fragilitas Ossium.** This is a disease of the bones associated with abnormal brittleness resulting in pathologic fractures. This condition may occur in either prenatal or postnatal life. It is usually

associated with a peculiarly shaped head and blue sclerotics.

**Senile Osteoporosis.** This is the type of bone rarefaction seen in the aged. Pathologic fractures may result from



Fig 11—Hand Schuller Christian's disease (After Thompson Keegan and Dunn.)



Fig 12—Osteoma of phalanx

minor injuries or fractures may occur spontaneously without any injury. Rarefaction of the pelvic bones and of the upper femur occurs early in prostatic malignancy.

#### *Hand Schuller Christian's Disease*

This is a disease of lipid metabolism and is characterized by exophthalmus, stunted growth, softening and decalcification of the bones of the skull and other

membranous bones and signs of diabetes insipidus (SEE p 771)

**Marble Bone Disease** (osteopetrosis) This is a condition in which the bones have undergone complete mineralization. The affected bones are whitish gray, are extremely brittle and show an



Fig 13—Multiple congenital osteosclerosis

entire absence of marrow space and of cortical demarcation.

**IV Tumors of the Bone** The various bone tumors are classified as (a) Benign and (b) malignant.

(a) **Benign Tumors** *Osteomata or Exostosis* This usually occurs in the vicinity of the epiphyseal line of the long bones, the tumor being often covered by cartilage and capped by a bursa. The two bones that are most frequently affected are the lower end of the femur and the ungual phalanx of the great toe.

An osteoma or exostosis is a bone tumor similar in structure to the bone from which it is an outgrowth and occupies only a limited portion of its circumference, thus differing from hypertrophy which involves the entire circumference of the affected bone. These tumors may be pedunculated or have a broad base. Their growth may be rapid or slow, usually painless and cause discomfort only because their presence may hinder motion or give rise to pressure symptoms.

*Ivory Exostosis* This is an osteoma in which the bony growth is of great density and is found on the flat bones of the skull, in the orbit, in the auditory meatus, etc.



Fig 14—Xanthoma tuberosum (Phila Gen Hosp)

*Xanthoma Tuberosum* This is characterized by the formation of nodules upon the extensor or flexor surfaces of the extremities. It is a connective tissue growth, usually multiple and found over

ie joint and at other pressure points  
e the knuckles knees elbows palms  
les and buttocks. In these locations  
ey often assume a bonelike hardness  
nd may be mistaken for osteomata  
anthomata occurring in other parts of  
e body, the neck chest, mucous mem-  
rane of the mouth and the eyelids are



Fig 15—Sarcoma of tibia  
(Phila Gen Hosp)

of softer consistency and occur in small  
nodular or flattened masses

**Chondromata** These are cartilaginous  
formations that may occur upon the  
phalanges and the metacarpal bones  
where they are usually multiple. Chon-  
dromata may develop upon any portion  
of the body which contains cartilage  
therefore they are the most common of  
the benign tumors. The mass when  
superficial may be palpated as a hard  
though somewhat flexible tumor. It does  
not cause pain but interferes with mo-  
tion or causes friction because of its  
presence. A chondroma may undergo  
cystic degeneration and may at times  
grow in conjunction with a sarcoma or  
a fibroma.

**Fibromata** These growths are likely  
to originate in the periosteum and most  
commonly affect the upper and lower  
jaws though they may at times be found  
at the occiput the vertebrae the pelvis  
the ribs the sternum and the long bones.  
These fibrous tumors of bone are of slow  
growth irregular in shape and of firm  
consistency. They do not cause pain  
but may cause discomfort because of  
their location by pressure and by cystic  
degeneration.

**Epulis** This is a fibrous tumor orig-  
inating from the periosteum of the lower  
jaw and is sarcomatous in character.

**Lipomata** (very rare) may grow from  
the outer layer of the periosteum.

(b) **Malignant Tumors Periosteal Sarcomata** These are of various types  
and of differing degrees of malignancy.  
As a general rule the softer they are in  
consistency and the more closely they  
resemble the embryonic type of tissue the  
more malignant they are. Small  
round cell and spindle cell sarcomata are  
more malignant than giant-cell sarco-  
mata. Sarcoma may originate in a bone  
or may occur secondarily as a metastasis  
from another viscus. A periosteal sar-  
coma is usually found at the end of a  
long bone—and as a rule grows rapidly  
it causes little if any pain and always  
occurs in young individuals and is ac-  
companied by rapid loss of weight and  
strength.

This type of sarcoma often follows an  
injury. It is as a rule not very painful  
and is associated with dilated veins over  
the tumor and enlargement of the neigh-  
boring lymphatic glands. Metastasis oc-  
curs through the blood stream and most  
commonly affects the lungs though the  
liver and other organs may be invaded.  
When metastasis takes place it is evi-  
denced by anemia general weakness and

cachexia and such local symptoms as may be produced by the affected organ

#### *Endosteal or Myeloid Sarcomata*

These are of very slow growth, they usually affect the ends of the long bones, *i. e.*, the lower end of the femur and

*Carcinoma* This is always secondary to carcinoma elsewhere in the body. Thus carcinoma of the jaw may follow carcinoma of the lip or mouth. An epithelioma of the leg may cause a squamous celled carcinoma of the tibia.



Fig 16—Melanoma

upper end of the tibia, the upper end of the humerus and lower end of the radius, the sternal end of the clavicle, and the upper jaw. This form of sarcoma is the

is usually the spheroidal celled carcinoma which metastasizes to the bone, particularly from the breast or the thyroid gland. Carcinoma of a bone is usually



Fig 17—Sarcoma of knee

least malignant and seldom gives rise to metastasis or lymphatic enlargement. Pain over the mass occurs at an early stage of its development. The tumor is hard during the early stages and becomes softer as the outer shell of bone is broken through, yielding crepitation on pressure.

ally not very painful but causes spontaneous fracture of the affected bone.

*Multiple Myeloma* These are primary malignant neoplasms originating in the cancellous tissue of bone composed of bone marrow plasma cells. They occur in the ribs, sternum, vertebrae, skull, clavicle and ends of long bones.



all show areas of decalcification having moth eaten appearance. Bence Jones huminuria is usually present.

**V Cysts** Bone cysts may be classified into four types (SEE Fig 8 p 729)

### 1 Cystic Degeneration of Bony structures

(a) *Osteitis Fibrosa Cystica* This is characterized by cyst formation of the ends of long bones i.e. the femur humerus and tibia. They are usually painless and of long duration often resulting in either breakdown of the cyst or fracture of the affected bone. This condition may follow traumatism but is usually due to hyperparathyroidism (SEE p 789)

(b) *Dentigerous cysts* (follicular odontoma) These usually occur soon after the second dentition and are due to an excessive number of dental follicles. They appear as bony shells in the gums beneath the tooth margins are crepitating to pressure and often contain one or more teeth.

(c) *Osteomalacia* (*Mollities ossium*) and *Osteoporosis* These are characterized by softening of the bones resulting in deformities of the limbs spine thorax and pelvis. They are associated with muscle pain great weakness anemia and other signs of a deficiency disease. There is a lack of calcium phosphorus and other osteoid tissue. It is associated with steatorrhea and is often seen in pregnancy.

**2 Degeneration of a Bone Tumor** In this type the cyst is the result of cystic

degeneration of a previously existing tumor i.e. giant cell sarcoma myxoma chondroma or a fibroma. These may be diagnosed because of the occurrence of softening over a previously hard mass.

**3 Cysts Not of Bony Origin** These are hydatid and dermoid cysts. They are rare and when present may be recognized by their size fluctuation absence of pain and their benign tendencies. Aspiration and examination of the cyst contents usually reveal their character.



Fig 18—Hydatid cysts in the deltoid muscle

**4 Syphilis congenital or acquired** may at times cause cystic degeneration of bony structures. The diagnosis may be suspected from the history and positive blood or spinal fluid findings.

## The Joints

### Physical Examination of the Joints

The joints are examined for size mobility and signs of inflammation.

**Size** When only one joint is involved its size should be compared by actual measurement to the correspond-

ing joint on the other side. If similar joints on both sides are affected then the relative size can only be judged by comparing them to the other joints of the body and to one's mental picture of a normal joint.

**Heberden's nodes** These are circumscribed swellings situated on the terminal phalanges of the fingers frequently noted in rheumatoid arthritis and found in elderly subjects apparently in perfect health

**Henoch's Purpura** This is often associated with acute swellings of the joints it is as a rule found in children

**Gout** This is characterized by swelling of the joints particularly those of the large toe and thumb The swelling is

the body may be the seat of this disease The disease is slow in its progress and causes suppuration with sinus formation associated with wasting of the muscles around the joint or affected part

**Syphilitic Arthritis** This has already been discussed under syphilis of the bones it may be due either to acquired or congenital syphilis The joint is usually enlarged not very painful or tender to touch and the diagnosis often depends upon other signs of syphilis



Fig 20—Charcot's elbow joint.

usually due to so called chalk deposits or sodium biurate crystals

**Scurvy** This is a deficiency disease due to lack of vitamin C Hemorrhages may occur subperiosteally and into the joints causing the joints to become tense and swollen

**Hemophilia** purpura and other blood dyscrasias may cause extravasation of blood in various joints and simulate arthritis

**II Chronic Joint Affections Osteoarthritis** This is primarily a disease of the cartilages and bones causing a destruction of the cartilage with the formation of a bony joint which gives rise to the formation of bony outgrowths or excrescences (*hypertrophic arthritis*)

**Tuberculosis** This is more frequently found in children than in adults usually one joint especially the hip is affected although any joint or bone in

**Charcot's Disease** This is associated with multiple cerebrospinal sclerosis and often with locomotor ataxia it is characterized by great swelling of one or more joints which are sometimes associated with effusions The knee hip and elbow joints are most frequently affected Charcot's joint disease is usually recognized as occurring in the course of diseases of the spinal cord as in tabes or syringomyelia and leading to chronic synovitis affecting one or more joints to brittleness of the bone wasting of the articular extremities and dislocation

**Syringomyelia** This is probably due to a congenital neural defect which later in life develops spinal gliosis or cavitation in the region of the central canal In addition to the typical neurologic manifestations there develop kyphosis and atrophy with deformities of the hands (SEE p 864)

**Hypertrophic Pulmonary Osteoarthropathy** This is characterized by enlargement or clubbing and curving of the nails of the fingers and toes. Usually there is an associated enlargement of the wrist and interphalangeal joints. The lower end of the tibia and fibula may also

be affected and occasionally there may be enlargement of the lower jaw.

This condition is frequently found in tuberculosis of the lungs, chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, chronic cardiac affections and in congenital heart disease.

## The Extremities

### The Upper Extremities

The upper extremities are examined for nutrition, development, the presence or absence of pulsating vessels, the mobility of the joints, the condition of the fingers and fingernails, and the presence or absence of tremors.

### The Arms

The arms are examined for musculature, color, general nutrition and possible existence of tumors and painful areas.

**Color** The arms are usually of the same color as the rest of the body, ex-

cept in persons who expose their arms to the sun like farmers, longshoremen, sailors, hodcarriers, and foundrymen or open air bathers (sun or water).  
**Redness** may be caused by local conditions constricting the venous circulation of the member, arteriovenous aneurysms near the elbow joint may cause a like discoloration.

**Redness** is caused by acute inflammation and local irritation. Other colorations may be due to staining by certain dyes or to constitutional diseases, e.g., jaundice, argyria, polycythemia, Addison's disease, etc.

**Rashes** Various skin diseases display their characteristic lesions upon the arms as well as upon other parts of the body.



Fig. 21—Claw hand

cept in persons who expose their arms to the sun like farmers, longshoremen, sailors, hodcarriers, and foundrymen or open air bathers (sun or water).

**Cyanosis** of the arms is often seen in cases of heart failure. Cyanosis of one

arm may be caused by local conditions constricting the venous circulation of the member, arteriovenous aneurysms near the elbow joint may cause a like discoloration.  
**Redness** is caused by acute inflammation and local irritation. Other colorations may be due to staining by certain dyes or to constitutional diseases, e.g., jaundice, argyria, polycythemia, Addison's disease, etc.  
**Rashes** Various skin diseases display their characteristic lesions upon the arms as well as upon other parts of the body.  
**Psoriasis** is most frequently noted on the extensor surfaces, particularly the elbows. Yellowish spots are often seen upon the arms of those who are subject to freckles elsewhere and eczema, pemphigus, granuloma fungoides, pellagra,

d many other skin diseases are frequently found on the arms

**Scars** Most scars are a result of trauma. Among these may be included vaccination scars and those caused by careless hypodermic injections. Scars may assume various shapes and sizes depending upon the nature of the original cause. Certain skin diseases form ulcers which in turn cicatrize *e g* phthis leprosy etc



Fig 22—Hypoplasia of phalanges (Case of Dr Krusen.)

**Tumors** These may be either of the soft parts as myomata lipomata fibromata neuromata cysts or of the hard structures such as chondromata sarcoma or carcinoma

**Painful Areas** These may be due to neuritis neuromata osteomyelitis tuberculosis and paractasis (excessive stretching or distention)

**Anesthetic Areas** These may be due to spinal cord lesions and to leprosy

**Tenderness of the Joints** This may be caused by any form of arthritis local infections fractures dislocations Raynaud's disease occupational neurosis injuries of the soft parts and interference with the circulation or innervation

## *The Hands and Fingers*

Abnormalities of the hands and fingers may be congenital or acquired. The most common of these abnormalities are as follows

**Spadelike Hand** The hand is large, coarse and broad, the fingers thick and square with broad nails, such as is often seen in myxedema. If bone as well as soft parts take part in the enlargement, deformity may be caused by acromegaly.

**Claw Hand** This deformity usually occurs as a result of paralysis and atro-



Fig 23—Polydactyly (supernumerary finger)

phy of the interosseous muscles and is seen in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis syringomyelia and often in chronic anterior poliomyelitis and postencephalitis. The fingers and hand are contracted, resembling a bird's claw.

**Hypogenesis of Phalanges** Several fingers are abnormally short in relation to one or two normal fingers or one finger may be abnormally long, possessing an extra phalanx (congenital).

**Supernumerary Fingers** These may occur as a congenital malformation

Supernumerary fingers and toes are at times found in those presenting Laurence Biedl's syndrome and often in their close relatives who are otherwise well

**Clubbed Fingers** Decided clubbing is noted at the distal phalanges accompanied with roughening of the nails (osteoarthritis) This is often ob-



Fig 24—Pulmonary osteoarthritis (clubbed fingers)

**Distorted Fingers** These are noted as a result of employment in certain occupations or of badly united fractures or from the effects of arthritis deformans and at times as a result of chronic rheu-

served in chronic diseases of the lung and heart, at times it is a congenital condition and is sometimes termed toxicogenic osteoperiostitis ossificans or Bar-berger Marie disease



Fig 25—Web fingers



Fig 26—Syndactylism hands

matism *Dupuytren's contraction* is a permanent flexion of one or more fingers arising from contraction of the palmar fascia and its digital prolongations

**Web Finger** As the name implies, the fingers are held together by a web of skin not unlike the wing of a bat or the foot of a duck or goose

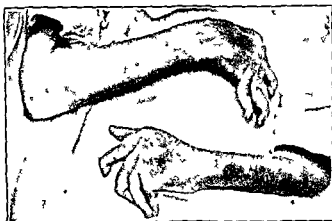
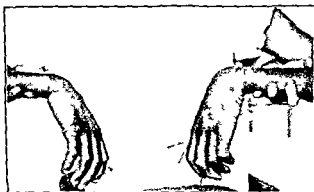


Fig 27—Rheumatoid arthritis



Fig 28—Hemangioma



\* Fig 29—Polyneuritic wrist drop

**Syndactylism:** This is characterized by the joining of two or more fingers or toes.

**Acromegaly:** The hands are broad, the fingers thick, rounded and sausage-



Fig 30—Occupational deformity.

like, and the fingernails are small. The bones are usually enlarged in proportion to the hypertrophy of the soft parts.

both as a result of abnormal deposits of bony tissue in the joints and of partial dislocation of the affected parts.

**Elephantiasis:** This may affect one or more extremities or a greater part of the body as a nonpitting edema.

**Hemangioma:** This is a rare condition. If an extremity is affected it may attain an unusually large size.

**Wrist Drop:** This may result from lead, alcohol, or arsenic intoxication, disease of the spinal cord, and disease or pressure of the brachial nerve; also from musculospiral paralysis, polyneuritis, beriberi, diabetic neuritis and local injuries. In the author's ward at the Philadelphia General Hospital a man of 19 years of age developed wrist drop and ankle drop following acute gonorrhea.

**Occupational Deformities:** Various deformities occur as the result of occupation and should be differentiated from

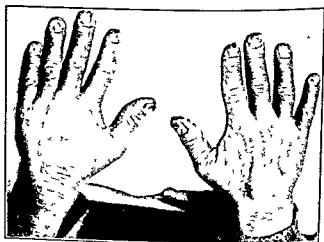


Fig 31—Granuloma fungoides.

**Heberden's Nodes:** These are knobby enlargements of the proximal ends of the terminal phalanges; this enlargement may be due to arthritis deformans and gout, but often its etiology is obscure.

**Rheumatoid Arthritis:** This produces the most grotesque deformities,

true arthritis. For example, the fingers of old washwomen, seamstresses and baseball players may resemble early cases of arthritis deformans. To differentiate these conditions it is necessary to consider the history and to investigate other joints of the body.

**Abnormalities of the Nails** *Cyanosis* of the fingernails usually indicates poor circulation anemia and venous stasis

*Hard brittle and longitudinally rooved nails* are found in gouty individuals

*Dry malformed nails* may be caused by trophic changes resulting from injury to the finger or nerve and are also noted



Fig. 32—Acrodermatitis (Raynaud's disease)

in neuritis Raynaud's disease pulmonary osteoarthropathy syphilis onychia scleroderma acrodermatitis and granuloma fungoides affecting the fingers

*Ulcers and ecchymosis* at the base of the nails if not due to trauma are often noted in chloral addicts or in syphilis and scrofula. A small indolent ulcer near the nail especially if indurated and associated with enlarged lymph glands above the inner condyle should arouse suspicion of a chancre. A small indolent ulcer near the nail accompanied by an enlarged axillary gland and fever should arouse suspicion of tularemia.

*Megalonychia* (Keyes) is an enlargement of the nail in its lateral dimensions not accompanied by defective structure this may be a congenital condition

*Quincke's* capillary pulsation is a rhythmic flushing and blanching of the fingernails. This is seen most frequently in aortic regurgitation but often also in anemia.

### The Lower Extremities

The lower extremities are examined for color condition of the skin and condition of the musculature bones joints and vessels. Any deformities and painful areas should be noted and an attempt made to elicit both the normal and abnormal reflexes.

For the examination of the color and skin see p. 127 and for reflexes see p. 831.

### Muscles

*Atrophy of the muscles* may be caused by disuse either because of enforced rest or on account of disease of the brain the spinal cord or of the nerve supply of the legs fracture of one or more of the bones or disease of the bones and joints. Atrophy of the anterior and outer muscles below the knee is seen in the peroneal type of progressive muscular atrophy.

*Enlargement of the muscles* of the legs particularly of the calves is noted in children suffering from hypertrophic muscular paralysis.

### Bones

The bones of the lower extremities may become affected similarly to the bones elsewhere. The following deformities are often encountered.

**Curvature of the Bones of the Leg.** This may be due to rickets osteitis deformans mollities ossium (osteomalacia) and cretinism.

**Coxa Vara and Coxa Valga.** When the angle normally formed by the long axis of the shaft of the femur with the



long axis of its neck is considerably diminished, a condition known as *coxa vara* or "bent hip" results. If, on the contrary, this angle is abnormally increased *coxa valga* (also called *collum valgum*), which is the more common condition, producing a marked external rotation, increased abduction and de-

hip joint disease. Its cardinal signs are abduction of the leg with external rotation and limitation of adduction.



Fig 33—Genu varum  
(bowlegs in Paget's disease)

creased adduction results. *Coxa vara* may be either unilateral or bilateral. It is seen in growing bones and most often in adolescents, because they are prone to undergo greater strains than young children. For the same reason males are more often affected than females. When the affection is unilateral the left leg is more often affected than the right, possibly because more weight is thrown on this side in the 'stand-at-ease' position. *Coxa valga* is really a widening of the angle made by the head and neck of the femur with the shaft, and is commonly mistaken for an early evidence of



Fig 34—Genu valgum (knock knee)

**Genu Varum ('bowlegs')** This is a condition of the legs in which a line drawn from the head of the femur to the middle of the ankle falls inside the center of the knee joint (MacEwen). The knees are apart when the ankles touch, and the feet are often in a position of compensatory valgus.

**Genu Valgum ('knock knee')** This is the exact opposite of genu varum. It is an inward curvature of the knee or knees so that, when the legs are fully extended on the thighs an angle salient internally, exists at the knee joints (Tubby).

**Chronic, Painful, Hard Swelling of the Tibia** This may be due to syphilis or sarcoma.

### Vessels<sup>1</sup>

**Circulatory Disturbances:** Visible arterial pulsations are caused by aortic regurgitation, or, if localized, by aneurysm

**Enlarged Veins of the Feet, Legs and Thighs:** These are known as *varicose veins*. They are usually due to some interference with the return circulation of the lower extremities

**Increased Heat:** This may be local or general. Local increased heat may be caused by being in contact with a hot object, or as a result of local inflam-



Fig. 35—Varicose veins.

mation, and in erythromelalgia. General increased heat of the extremities is found in fever or when exposed to a heating object.

**Coldness:** Local coldness may be due to interrupted arterial circulation and venous stasis. Coldness of one or both legs is found in Buerger's disease, arteriosclerosis, Raynaud's disease, and in

pregangrenous states. General coldness may be due to diminished circulation and to exposure to cold.

**Edema:** This may be caused by heart disease, kidney disease, and certain anemias

### The Feet

**Examination of the Feet:** The examination of the feet is a matter of so great importance that it warrants a detailed description

Nutt<sup>2</sup> recommends the following routine in examining the feet:

**Inspection:** This should begin with the patient's entrance into the examining room. Is there a limp? Is the foot held in abduction? Is the clothing over the internal malleolus worn? Are the inner ankles prominent? When the patient stands are the feet parallel or divergent? Are the soles flat on the ground, or do the toes turn upward? Are any of the joints, especially the first metatarsalphalangeal, prominent through the shoe? Both feet and legs, above the knees, should always be bared for examination in every instance. First inspect the shoes; locate the most worn parts on the soles and heels. Is the upper stretched so as to overlap the sole or heel on either side? Is the inner side of the sole and heel on a straight line? Compare the height of the heel with that of the sole: Is the center of the heel under the weight-bearing part of the hindfoot? Then examine the stockings. Are they damp, are they pointed? Before their removal it had better be determined whether they constrict the toes. Note the color of the skin for signs of faulty blood supply. With the patient standing, notice the position of the toes: Are they

<sup>1</sup> See peripheral vascular disease, page 535

<sup>2</sup> Nutt Diseases and Deformities of the Foot, E. B. Treat & Co

flat on the ground flexed, hyperextended parallel? Is there a hallux valgus? Does the forefoot appear to be flattened out—extra wide? Is there a concavity or a bulging beneath the tuberosity of the scaphoid? Are the malleoli well defined? Does the outer one seem to be in its normal relation to the inner one or is it apparently advanced? When examined from behind do the tendinae Achillis run down vertically to the calcaneum or do they incline to one side? Are the normal depressions on either side the heel cord present? Does the heel spread out on all sides like an inverted mushroom? Ask the patient to rise on his toes. Is it easily done? Does the dome heighten? Are the ankles thrown upward and outward? Can the patient invert the feet and stand on the lower borders?

**Palpation** Take one foot the well foot first if only one is complained of on your knee in such a way that the entire leg is comfortable and relaxed. The examiner's chair should be a few inches lower than the one upon which the patient is seated. Note by feeling whether the local temperature is normal. Search for evidences of uneven pressure or of friction such as calluses or corns. If there are calluses under the forefoot are they beneath each one of the five metatarsals or beneath only the middle three? Is there callous formation along the outer border of the foot or around the margin of the heel? Is there a union over the first metatarsal phalangeal joint? Are there ingrowing toenails? Determine the condition of the circulation of the foot. If deformities of the toes are present ascertain if they can be easily straightened by passive movements.

Hold the calcaneum firmly in one hand, with the tuberosity resting in the palm grasp the bone with the thumb and fingers so as to prevent its moving and with the other hand test the motion at the mediotarsal joint. Then hold the leg above the ankle with one hand and grasping the foot about the mediotarsal joint with the other, test inversion and eversion. Test the ankle joint last. In so doing do not let flexion and extension at the mediotarsal joint deceive you into attributing it to the ankle joint. So grasp the foot that the os calcis moves synchronously with the metatarsals. Care must also be taken that the foot is moved in the vertical plane of the leg. Otherwise abduction in dorsal flexion will exaggerate the true angle of flexion. The range of active movements of all the joints with the foot in resting position should be determined.

**Pain** is often of great significance in making a differential diagnosis and the painful spots should always be definitely located. Pain caused by pressure over a diseased or injured bone is usually more circumscribed and elicited more easily and definitely than the pain from pressure on a strained or ruptured muscle or ligament. Stretching of a strained or ruptured muscle or ligament produces pain in a ligament only by separating the ends but in a muscle a contraction will produce it.

Definite pain upon pressure over the body of the os calcis or of the first metatarsal is generally due to disease or injury to those bones. Pronounced pressure over the peroneal tubercle on the external surface of the os calcis according to Golthwait to a tearing of the synovial sheath of the peroneal tendon dragging it away from its attachment.

nents to this tubercle. Pain about the external malleolus in cases of everted foot is due to a crowding of the tissues against the external malleolus from malposition of the tarsus according to Golding Bird. The pain about the inner side of the mediotarsal joint may be due to an inflammatory condition of this joint or to strain.

**Deformities of the Feet.** Various deformities occur in the feet and toes

(ion) and plantar flexion (extension), adduction with inversion (supination) and adduction with eversion (pronation). *talipes* is associated either with overaction or loss of action of one or more groups of muscles affecting these movements. The following deformities may exist:

1 *Pes Equinus*. The heel is drawn up by contraction of the tendo Achillis so that the patient walks upon his toes.

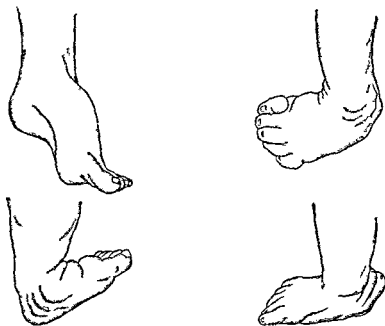


Fig. 36—Various types of clubfoot.

the commonest being *talipes* or clubfoot.

**Clubfoot.** The term *clubfoot* is defined by Tubby<sup>1</sup> as comprising those deformities in which the anatomical relations of the foot to the leg or of one part of the foot to the other are abnormal.

Inasmuch as the foot is capable of movements such as dorsiflexion (flex-

ion) or in some cases upon the dorsum of the foot.

2 *Pes Calcanens*. This is usually associated with *pes valgus*. The foot is drawn up to the leg so that the patient walks upon the inner side of the heel. This condition often follows infantile paralysis of the muscles of the tendo Achillis.

3 *Pes Varus*. Inversion of the foot causes the patient to walk upon its outer border, the sole being turned inward.

<sup>1</sup> Tubby. Deformities Including Diseases of the Bones and Joints. 2nd Edition. Macmillan & Co. London.

4 *Pes Valgus* The foot is everted so that the bones on the inner side of the knee and ankle are abnormally prominent, the arch of the foot is lost. The patient walks on the inner border of the foot, the sole being turned outward.

5 *Pes Cavus* This form is subdivided by Tubby into *arcuatus* and *plantaris*, according to whether the front part of the foot is on the level with or below that of the heel, there being in each case a distinct increase in the convexity of the arch.

6 *Pes Planus* "Flatfoot" is undue flatness of the sole and arch of the foot, the arch being decreased or altogether wanting.

Frequently the deformity is compound in its character, talipes equinus and varus are often combined, likewise talipes calcaneus and valgus.

*Heredity* It has been observed that clubfoot runs in families. W. Little<sup>1</sup> mentions a case of hereditary transmission through the males of four generations, and Adams<sup>2</sup> one where the deformity persisted for three generations. Not only does clubfoot appear to be hereditary but the particular form reproduces itself in the offspring. With congenital clubfoot other deformities such as polydactylism, clubhand, hare lip and spina bifida are frequently found.

*Diagnosis* In dealing with talipes it is necessary to determine the type of deformity, and then to ascertain the cause. The following method of examination should be followed:

- 1 The history
- 2 The gait on entering the room
- 3 The position of the foot and limb on standing and sitting

4 An outline or impression of the sole of the foot

5 General examination of the affected limb or limbs as to shape, size, muscular development, diminished or excessive mobility of joints, temperature of the limb, condition of the skin as to color, integrity and the presence of corns or thickened skin over the heels and beneath the balls of the toes.

6 The passive movements which may be effected by the surgeon, and the directions from which resistance is felt.

7 Localization of the resistant ligaments and fasciae, and of—

8 Contracted and paralyzed muscles. This is effected by touch, by movement on the part of the patient and by—

9 The electrical reactions of the muscles.

10 Signs of abnormal and arrested development, especially of bones. In congenital clubfoot the presence of excessive inward rotation of the bones of the limb is a point of importance. Absence of the fibula or tibia, or parts of the bones, and a rudimentary patella are occasional accompaniments. In paralytic equinovarus excessive prominence of the cuboid is an evidence of the duration of the affection.

### Toes

The toes, as well as the lower portion of the foot, may become abnormally red because of frostbites or in the early stage of endarteritis obliterans (Buerger's disease), Raynaud's disease and erythromelalgia.

*Black discoloration* of the foot and toe indicates a gangrenous process.

*Gangrene*—Gangrene of the toes, feet or of any other portion of the body is primarily due to interference with the

<sup>1</sup> Holmes' System of Surgery vol. ii p. 232

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* p. 218

nutrition of the affected part which may secondarily become infected with putrefactive microorganisms resulting in either *dry* or *moist* gangrene. The nutrition of a part may be interfered with by (a) *Interference with the circulation* as in endarteritis obliterans thrombosis embolism occlusion of a vessel by ligature new growth splints or tight bandage (b) *Traumatism* by bruising crushing or exposure to intense heat cold or chemical action (c) *Disturbance*



Fig 37—Gangrene of the toes

of *innervation* as in Raynaud's disease erythromelalgia peripheral neuritis myelitis syringomyelia and other lesions of the spinal cord (d) *Constitutional disturbances* such as diabetes mellitus leprosy marasmus cerebrospinal diseases and ergotism

*Moist gangrene* usually occurs after a crushing injury or when dry gangrene becomes infected with putrefactive bacteria. It usually occurs at the distal part of an extremity. The affected part becomes extremely painful and is at first hot and red later it becomes cold and bluish and commences to slough. This is accompanied by a fetid odor of decay

ing animal matter. In favorable cases a line of demarcation is formed which divides the diseased from the healthy portion of the extremity.

*Dry gangrene* results in mummification the affected part becomes black withers and often drops off. The part is cold and has no very offensive odor. Pain is often intense particularly during the early stages. The line of demarcation between the gangrenous portion and the healthy part is usually an inflammatory zone.

**Clavi (corns and callosities)** These are painful hard elevations of the skin usually occurring over the first metatarsal joints of the toes most frequently on the small toes often also upon the great toe or upon any of the other toes and upon the sole of the foot. They are usually caused by pressure.

**Bunions** These are enlargements of the tarsal bones the tissues covering them because of pressure become inflamed and painful. Often a corn may develop upon its most prominent part.

**Gout** This is characterized by the formation of chalk deposits in the metatarsophalangeal articulation of the great toe which becomes red swollen and extremely painful.



Fig 38—Gangrene (advanced)

**Toenails** These may become hardened thick and malformed often interfering with the wearing of shoes.

**Rashes of the Feet and Toes** The rashes most frequently encountered are vesicles which cause intense itching and fissures between the toes which also cause itching and often pain. Other rashes affecting the body generally may also affect the feet. A punched out ulcer of the sole of the foot is often seen in tabes.

**Dermaphytosis of the feet (athlete's foot)** This is a fairly common condition. It is usually contracted in public baths or elsewhere where the infection can be spread from one indi-

basis of an artery supplying the part, local stasis and exposure to cold.

**Excessive Heat** This is caused by inflammatory processes or by exposure to heat.



Fig 39—Kyphosis of lower dorsal and lumbar vertebrae

vidual to another. It is caused by a fungus and produces various lesions such as fissures, papules and ulcerations.

**Bromidrosis** The perspiration of the toes is usually possessed of a strong odor. In some instances, particularly when not frequently bathed, the odor becomes very offensive.

**Coldness of the Feet** This may be caused by poor general circulation, venous stasis and exposure to cold. Unilateral coldness may be caused by throm-



Fig 40—Congenital hernia of the spinal membrane.



Fig 41—Pregnancy at term and congenital dislocation of both femurs.

### ***Congenital Deformities of the Spine and Lower Extremities***

**Spine** Various curvatures of the spine such as kyphosis lordosis scoliosis or a combination of these may occur as a congenital deformity (SEE pp 79 and 247) *Spina bifida* or hernia of the spine usually manifests itself in the lumbosacral region

**Hip** Congenital dislocation of one or both hips may occur either because of an absence of the acetabular cavity or of the head of the femur The absence of both has also been noted This condi-



Fig 42—Deformity

tion occurs nearly always in the female Congenital dislocation of both hips may be suspected from the waddling gait the presence of lordosis and the throwing backwards of the shoulders during walking Examination of the external pelvis may reveal the backward dislocation of the heads of the femurs the wide pelvis and depressions of Scarpa's triangles The diagnosis of hip joint dislocation should always be confirmed by x ray examination

**Knee** Knock knee and bowlegs are described in this chapter (SEE p 744)

**Ankles** The various forms of club foot have been described (SEE p 747)



Fig 43—Polydactyly

**Feet** Various deformities as to shape and size of the feet have been noted The feet may be absent a rudimentary knob surmounting the ankle or two flipperlike appendages displacing one or



Fig 44—Symptomatic elephantiasis

both feet These deformities are usually due to an absence of one or more of the bones of the feet

**Toes** One or more toes may be absent One or more toes may be rudimentary



mentary Web toes occur as frequently as web fingers, often in the same individual

**Supernumerary Toes** (polydactylism) Supernumerary toes are a fairly frequent occurrence This condition usually runs in families Several members of the same family may present this anomaly This condition is frequently found in Laurence Biedl's syndrome (SEE p 77)

### **Elephantiasis (Lymphedema)**

This is a chronic disease due to obstruction of the lymphatic circulation It is characterized by enlargement of the affected part, which imparts a nonyielding 'dead rubber' sensation to the palpating hand and does not pit on pressure It may affect the extremities and the genitalia (SEE pp 546 752 1076 1080)

**Milroy's Disease** This is a familial type of lymphedema where several members of the family are affected

**Parasitic Elephantiasis** This is usually caused by filarial infection The parasites may obstruct the lymph channels or they may form abscesses along the lymphatic course

**Sporadic or Idiopathic Elephantiasis** This occasionally affects young

girls One lower extremity and at times the genitalia may be affected

### **Panniculitis**

This is a chronic inflammation of the panniculus adiposus It is commoner among women than men The affected areas have a hard brawny feel and are tender to manipulation The lesions occur subcutaneously over the inner surfaces of the arms and thighs and over the abdomen and chest as small masses, usually the size of a pea Larger tender rounded masses may also occur at the lateral aspects of the knee and ankle joints

**Weber-Christian's Disease or Relapsing Febrile Nodular Panniculitis** This is characterized by recurring attacks of fever and the formation of painful nodular inflammatory swelling in the subcutaneous fatty tissue The lesions may undergo necrosis causing atrophy and depressions of the skin

**Diffuse Panniculitis** This form is characterized by the involvement of fairly large areas of the subcutaneous tissue of the deltoid regions the back of the neck large areas of the back or elsewhere The skin and subcutaneous tissue over the affected areas are thickened and tender, as is seen in adiposis dolorosa (SEE p 770)

## SECTION 12

# The Endocrine System

## CHAPTER XXVI

# Anatomy, Physiology and Diseases of the Endocrine System

The endocrine system is composed of the following glands (1) The pituitary, (2) the thyroid, (3) the parathyroids, (4) the adrenals, (5) the gonads (ovaries and testes), (6) the islands of Langerhans, (7) the thymus, and (8) the pineal

The carotid body, the spleen and several other glands, while suspected of possessing internal secretions, are so far not generally included in the endocrine chain. On the other hand, the thymus and pineal glands, though not proven to possess specific hormones, are nonetheless included in the endocrine system. This is done because they, like the other endocrine glands, exert a definite influence upon the development and maturation of the fetus and the infant.

The Greek term "endocrine," or its derivative, endocrinology, was generally adopted after Claude Bernard in 1855 spoke about the presence of an "internal secretion" (*ἐνδον*—within, and *κρῖνεν*—to separate) in the glands which Haller, in the 18th century, called "ductless glands."

**Physiology** The function of the endocrine system as a whole may be summed up as being that of self preservation and the preservation of the species. These primary instincts are attributable to the combined actions of all the glands of the endocrine system which, because of their hormones, influence physical, mental and sexual development and reproduction.

Each of the ductless glands, by virtue of its hormone or hormones, is a specialized gland which plays a definite role,

yet their individual functions are so interrelated that a defect in one gland may affect several other glands. Dysfunction of any one gland will cause a definite type of endocrinopathy. The type of endocrinopathy depends not only upon which of the glands has originally become affected but also upon the severity of the affection, the kind of dysfunction and the extent to which the other endocrine glands have become involved.

**The Hormones** The internal secretion of an endocrine gland is known as a 'hormone' (from the Greek *ὁρμᾶν*, to excite or arouse). This term was applied to it by Starling in 1905 and has since come into general use. The hormones are chemical substances possessing definite formulae. Several of the hormones are now being reproduced synthetically in the laboratory.

Each hormone, as it is absorbed by the circulation coursing through the gland in which it is produced, exerts a definite chemical or physiologic action upon the body. An increase or diminution in the amount of secretion as required by the body results in either a hyper- or hypofunction of certain functions of the individual. The quantity of hormone produced by each gland may depend upon the condition of the individual gland, the condition of the pituitary gland which influences that particular gland, the reciprocal action of other endocrine glands and the bodily requirements.

The action of the hormones also depends upon several factors (a) The

## The Endocrines and Their Hormones

## THE HORMONES

Gland	Portion of Gland	Hormone	Date of Discovery	Discovered by
Pineal	No Hormone so far isolated			
Pituitary	Anterior Lobe	Growth	1921	Evans and Long
		Gonadotropic (2) (a) Follicle maturation (b) Luteinization	1926	B Zondek and Aschheim P E Smith Wiesner and Crea
		Thyrotropic	1929	Loeb and Aron Wiesner and Crea
		Adrenaltropic	1933	Collip Anderson and Thompson Houssay
		Lactogenic	1928 29	Stricker and Grueter
			1930	Corner
		Diabetogenic	1931	Houssay Basotti, de Benedetto and Rottu
		Contra-insulin	1933	Lucke Houssay and Unger
		Fat Metabolism	1931	Hoffman and Anselmino
			1933	Bevan and Long
		Parathyrotropic	1934	Anselmino Hoffman and Herold Hertz and Kraus
		Bromine	1935	H Zondek
		Hepatogenic		
		Erythropoietic fraction	1935	Moehling and Bates
		Melanophoric	1922	Jores Hogben and Winton
	Intermediate Lobe	Intermedin Melanophoric Hormone	1932	B Zondek and Krohn
	Anterior and Posterior Lobes	Lipostatin	1933	Rab
	Posterior Lobe	Pituitrin Pitressin Pitocin	1895 1928 1928	Kamm and associates
Thyroid		Thyroxin	1914	Kendall
			1917	'

## THE HORMONES

Gland	Portion of Gland	Hormone	Date of Discovery	Discovered by
Parathyroids		Parathormone	1924	Collip
Pituitary		None so far isolated		
Islands of Langerhans		Insulin or Iletin	1921	MacLeod Banting and Best
Adrenals	Cortex	Interrenalin	1927	Rogoff and Stewart
		Cortin	1927	Hartman and co workers
		Adrenal Cortical Hormone	1929	Pfiffner and Swingle
	Medulla	Epinephrine or Adrenalin	1901	Takamine
Gonads Testicles		Male hormone—Hebin	1927	McGee
		Androtin	1931	Butenandt
		Androsteron	1934	McCullough
		Testosterone	1935	Laquer
Ovaries	Follicle	Estrogenic Hormone occurs in 3 fractions— Estrin Estradiol Estrogen and under various trade names	1923	Allen and Doisy
	Corpus luteum	Corpus luteum hormone or Progesterin	1928	Corner

quantity and quality of the hormone, (b) the condition of the autonomic nervous system, and (c) the ability of the various structures of the body to respond to hormone stimulation. The action of the hormones may also be enhanced by certain vitamins and drugs. Some drugs are synergistic and others are antagonistic to the function of the various hormones.

The hormones do not produce new activities but act upon the existing mechanism of the body both as catalytic agents and as correlating or balancing agents.

**Antihormones.** J. Collip has pro-

pounded a theory that all hormones are accompanied by species—specific substances each of which has a neutralizing or controlling effect upon a specific hormone. When a specific hormone is secreted in excessive quantities or is administered excessively over a prolonged period an antagonist to that hormone (specific antihormone) is produced in the blood in sufficient quantity to neutralize the effects of the excessively produced or administered hormone. (It is advisable to institute definite "rest periods" when hormones are administered for specific purposes.)

## The Pituitary Gland

### Anatomy and Physiology of the Pituitary Gland

The pituitary gland is the most important of the endocrine glands. It bears that distinction because of its many hormones which have reciprocal action with nearly all the other glands in that system.

**Anatomy** The pituitary gland is a small somewhat ellipsoid reddish gray body. In the adult it weighs between 0.6 and 0.8 Gm and is somewhat larger in the female than in the male. It is situated within the sella turcica being suspended from the floor of the third ventricle by the infundibulum which is in close contact with the hypothalamus. A tough membrane formed by a circular fold of the dura mater, the diaphragm sellae covers the sella and its encased pituitary gland leaving only an aperture for the passage of the infundibulum. The size of the normal sella turcica is approximately 13 by 16 mm.

The pituitary gland is composed of four lobes or structures.

(a) *The anterior lobe* or pars anterior is the largest lobe and is made up of various types of epithelial cells.

(b) *The posterior lobe* pars posterior or pars nervosa is smaller than the anterior lobe and is partially surrounded by it. It is made up chiefly of a specialized type of glial tissue.

(c) *The middle lobe* or pars intermedia is a narrow strip lying between the anterior and posterior lobes. It consists of epithelial cells similar in structure but not in function to those found in the anterior lobe.

(d) *The pars lateralis* consists of a narrow strip of epithelial cells which covers the anterior surface of the stalk

and is reflected on to the anterior part of the floor of the third ventricle.

**Histology** *The Anterior Lobe* This is composed of various types of epithelial cells which differ in their staining ability, structure, size and function.

The chromophobes are the most numerous; about 52 per cent of the cells of the anterior pituitary, they contain a nongranular cytoplasm and therefore do not stain readily by the ordinary laboratory methods. Their function is not definitely known but it is believed that they are the mother cells or chief cell held in an undifferentiated state from which the other anterior pituitary cells are evolved according to specific requirements.

The chromophils make up the other 48 per cent of the cells. They contain granular cytoplasm and are readily stainable. The chromophils are of two types. One type the eosinophils, acidophils or alpha cells are stainable with acid stains such as eosin, hematoxylin and acid fuchsin. They constitute about 37 per cent of all anterior lobe cells. These cells elaborate the growth hormone as well as several other glandular energizers. The other type the basophils, basophilic cells or beta cells are the remaining 11 per cent of the cells belonging to the chromophil group, they are stainable only with basic dyes such as methylene blue, etc. These cells secrete the sex hormone as well as other energizing principles.

While the three types of cell just mentioned are the chief cellular constituents of the anterior pituitary body, there are also a few types of cells which make their appearance under certain

circumstances and at certain times. These are (a) Cells of pregnancy, which develop in large numbers during gestation, (b) cells of castration which make their appearance in the anterior pituitary body in castrates, and (c) neutrophilic cells which increase in number with

cin, an oxytocin, and pitressin a vaso pressor. There is some doubt as to the origin of these hormones. Some observers believe that pitocin and pitressin are elaborated in another structure possibly the pars intermedia and are stored in the posterior lobe, others believe that

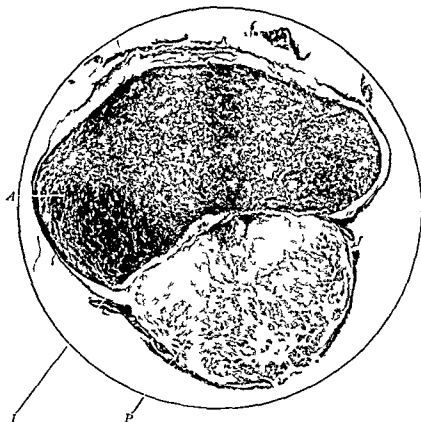


Fig. 1—Photomicrograph showing A the anterior lobe, P the posterior lobe and I a remnant of the intermediate lobe. The pars tuberalis is not shown. (Courtesy Dr. H. E. Riggs, Philadelphia General Hospital)

age. Whether these cells are new creations or are metamorphosed from pre-existing cells is not known.

**The Posterior Lobe** This is made up of neuroglia cells which are identical with those found in other nervous tissue, of pituitocytes which are highly branched cells containing a granular cytoplasm and of nerve cells. The posterior pituitary body contains two hormones: pito-

cin, the posterior lobe actually secretes these hormones.

**The Pars Intermedia** This is composed of two types of cells: (a) Polygonal cells resembling the chromophobes and (b) elongated threadlike cells stainable by the Golgi method. This lobe elaborates a chromatophore stimulant known as intermedin, which also has water balance influence.

**The Pars Tuberalis** This is made up of squamous cells and numerous vesicles, its function is not known. Some authors do not consider the pars tuberalis as being a fourth pituitary structure. They therefore hold that the pituitary gland is composed of only three lobes namely the anterior posterior and intermediate lobes.

The pituitary gland is of ectodermal origin; it receives its blood supply from the circle of Willis, the internal carotid and from the vessels of the stalk; its venous return is through the circle of Willis. The nerve supply is chiefly from the carotid plexus and sympathetic.

### Pituitary Hormones

Seventeen substances have thus far been identified with the three lobes of the pituitary gland. Several of these have proven to be of definite clinical value while others are still in the experimental stage. These substances are generally alluded to as hormones. Each substance either has a definite effect upon the organism as a whole or energizes other endocrine glands to secrete their individual hormone in sufficient quantities.

The anterior lobe secretes 14 hormones; the posterior lobe two hormones; the intermediate lobe one hormone; the pars tuberalis either does not secrete any hormone or if it does the hormone has as yet not been discovered.

**The Anterior Lobe Hormones** (1) **The Growth Hormone** This is derived from the eosinophilic cells. It promotes the growth of bone and soft structures; this hormone is abundant and most active during childhood and before the sex hormone becomes very active.

(2) **The Gonadotropic or Sex Hormone** This is secreted by the baso-

philic cells, it becomes abundant at puberty and continues its activity to the menopause. It is antagonistic to the growth hormone. The pituitary gonadotropic substance either consists of two hormones or one hormone that possesses two distinct principles.

(a) **Prolan A** is a follicle stimulating substance that acts upon the germ cells of both sexes. It stimulates the granulosa of the ovarian follicle to ovulation and to the production of the ovarian follicular hormone.

(b) **Prolan B** acts upon the interstitial cells of the ovaries and testes. It luteinizes the theca cells, stimulates the production of true corpus luteum and the lutein hormone. This hormone is also responsible for the development of the secondary sex characteristics of the male and of the female.

(3) **The Thyrotropic Hormone** This stimulates the thyroid gland. Ablation of the anterior pituitary causes thyroid atrophy and low basal metabolism. This hormone is found in conjunction with other eosinophilic cell hormones.

(4) **The Adrenotropic Hormone** This stimulates the adrenal cortex and is found in conjunction with other basophilic cell hormones.

(5) **The Lactogenic Hormone** (Prolactin and Galactin) This promotes the secretion of milk after the mammary glands are prepared by the ovarian hormones. Experimentally when the lactogenic hormone or hormones (there are probably two) are administered to properly prepared males or nonpregnant females they may be made to lactate.

(6) **The Diabetogenic and Carbohydrate Metabolism Hormones** There are probably two principles. One



causes hyperglycemia and glycosuria by increasing the size and number of the islands of Langerhans, this hormone is called by some the pancreatropic hormone. The other is antagonistic to insulin, when it is administered to animals it causes hypoglycemia.

(7) *The Fat Metabolism Hormones* These are (a) the ketogenic hormone and (b) lipotrin. The ketogenic principle increases the ketone bodies in the blood, and lipotrin when used in small amounts is said to cause an increased amount of fat to be stored in the liver and when used in large amounts it depletes the liver of its fat content.

(8) *The Parathyroid Hormone* This increases parathyroid activity and thereby raises the calcium content of the blood.

(9) *The Nitrogen Metabolism Hormone* This increases the specific dynamic activity during protein digestion.

(10) *The Erythropoietic Hormone* This stimulates the production of red corpuscles.

(11) *A Bromic Hormone* This was suggested by H. Zondek because he found stored in the anterior pituitary body large amounts of bromine which disappear from it during sleep.

(12) *A Hepatogenic Hormone* This is said to influence the size of the liver and many of its functions.

(13) *The Contra-insulin Hormone* This is said to inhibit the action of insulin and to cause hyperglycemia and glycosuria.

(14) *The Melanophoric Hormone* This principally found chiefly in the intermediate lobe and also to some extent in the posterior lobe is present in fairly large amounts in the anterior lobe. Its

action is that of influencing the chromatophores of cold blooded animals and probably has an effect upon pigmentation caused by diseases of the adrenal cortex.

*Posterior Lobe Hormones* (1) *Pitocin* This stimulates uterine contraction.

(2) *Pitressin* This raises blood pressure, contracts unstriated muscle fibers (excepting the uterus), is a respiratory stimulant and has a diuretic and antidiuretic effect.

*The Intermediate Lobe Hormone* It is believed by some that the posterior pituitary lobe hormones are secreted by the intermediate lobe.

*Intermedin* This a hormone directly attributed to the intermediate lobe is composed of three principles (a) A phoximus erythrophore expanding principle (b) a frog melanophore expanding principle and (c) an antidiuretic principle effective in diabetes insipidus.

### Physiology of Pituitary Gland

Because of its many hormones or of a single complex hormone which influences the other glands of the body the pituitary gland assists in governing nearly every function of the body. An increased activity of the pituitary or of any of its energizing substances will result in a condition characterized by hyperactivity. The particular type of hyperactivity depends upon which of the hormones is secreted in excessive quantities. A diminution in any one of its secretions will result in hypoactivity of the particular function or functions affected by that specific secretion.

### Pathology

Lesions affecting the pituitary gland as a whole or any of its lobes or groups

of cells may be of various kinds. Those causing hypofunction are (a) Atrophy of the gland as a whole or of any of its lobes because of vascular changes, pressure, or malnutrition, (b) destructive lesions such as certain types of tumors, cysts, abscess or aneurysm (SEE Fig 4, p 871), (c) constitutional diseases such as syphilis, tuberculosis, or other infections, (d) hereditary influence, and (e) reciprocal influence of other glands of internal secretion.

Lesions causing hyperfunction of the pituitary are (a) Hypertrophy or hyperplasia of the pituitary as a whole, or of any of its lobes or group of cells, (b) increased vascularity of the gland, (c) hereditary influence, (d) reciprocal activity of other endocrine glands, and (e) adenoma.

It is to be borne in mind that an adenoma because of its glandular structure causes hypersecretion and therefore hyperactivity, but when it becomes very large it may so compress the gland or some of its secreting cells as to interfere with function as may also other tumors or space taking lesions which destroy or compress the gland. The most common tumors are adenomata and these may originate from any of the cell groups in the pituitary. Chromophobe adenomas grow to a very large size and compress the eosinophilic as well as the basophilic cells, thereby causing stunted growth and hypogonadism. This type of tumor may outgrow the sella, destroy the clinoids, invade the cranial cavity and compress the optic chiasm producing hemianopsia.

Eosinophilic adenomata are smaller than the chromophobe adenomata; often they stimulate the action of the eosino-

phils and cause gigantism or acromegaly. When a tumor causes destruction of the eosinophils during childhood, stunted growth is the result.

Basophilic adenomata are minute, often they are recognizable only on serial section. They are responsible for Cushing's syndrome. When the basophils are destroyed hypogonadism is produced.

Suprasellar tumors, when they compress the anterior pituitary, may cause in addition to intracranial pressure also pituitary symptoms.

Tumors affecting or compressing the posterior lobe or the stalk may cause diabetes insipidus.

### Diseases of Pituitary Origin

The type of pituitary endocrinopathies depends upon a number of factors: (a) Hyper- or hypoactivity of the gland as a whole, of any one of its lobes or of any particular group of cells within the lobe, (b) the time of life the affection developed and (c) the concomitant affection of other glands. Pituitary endocrinopathies are characterized by disturbances in the development of stature, of bones and of gonads, by changes in the distribution of fat and of hair, by the appearance of the skin and by certain metabolic changes.

### Hyperpituitarism

The gross characteristics of hyperpituitarism are those of hyperdevelopment of either the individual as a whole or of those parts or functions governed by a specific gland which in turn is stimulated by an overacting pituitary hormone. The outstanding characteristics of hyperpituitarism are: Increased stature such as gigantism or acromegaly, increased hirsutism, greater muscular development, increased vigor, hyper-

gonadism, and an increase in the various metabolic processes

Diseases due to hyperpituitarism are (1) Gigantism (2) acromegaly and (3) basophilism. These diseases while primarily of hyperpituitary origin also show evidence of other endocrine gland par-

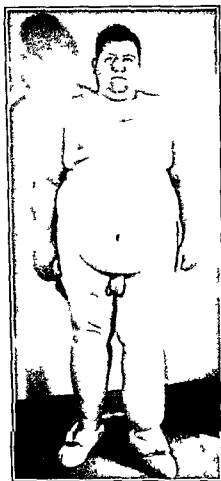


Fig. 2—Pituitary gigantism, seven feet eight inches tall, weighing 414 pounds

ticipation as the result of pituitary influence upon these glands

**1 Gigantism—Excessive Tallness (Preadolescent Hyperpituitarism)** Gigantism is attributed to a hypersecretion of the growth hormone brought about by hyperstimulation of the eosinophilic

cells of the anterior pituitary lobe by an adenoma by excessive vascularity or by irritation resulting from trauma or infection. Gigantism may originate during infancy, early childhood or during the adolescent period before the completion of *epiphyseal ossification*. Ossification in these cases is delayed so that the individual may continue to grow in height well into the third decade.

#### *The General Characteristics*

There is skeletal overgrowth especially of the long bones; therefore all giants are abnormally tall. Because of individual peculiarities gigantism is loosely divided into five types: (a) In uncomplicated macrosomia or simple gigantism the individual is very tall and proportionately symmetrical in stature; extremities and viscera. During the early stages there is increased vigor, hypertrichosis and often hypergonadism. Later these give way to weakness, hypotrichosis and hypogonadism. (b) Pituitary gigantism is characterized during the early stages by general body overgrowth with a tendency to an increase of the upper measurements over the lower; later girdle obesity and hypotrichosis may develop. (c) Polyglandular gigantism starts very early in life; the individual grows rapidly, is generally thin and may develop diabetes mellitus, pulmonary tuberculosis, diabetes insipidus and show evidence of other glandular defects. (d) Eunuchoid gigantism is characterized by the excessive length of the extremities, poorly developed genitalia, female hair distribution in the male, long narrow face, long fingers and toes and by easy fatigability. (e) Acromegalic gigantism generally originates during adolescence when epiphyseal ossification is nearly completed; therefore these individuals in addition to

gigantism, also develop some acromegalic characteristics. They usually show a massive lower jaw, a large nose, disproportionately large hands and feet. They have heterosexual hair distribution, are tall and seldom develop kyphosis.

**Symptoms.** Among the symptoms common to all types of gigantism, par-

gigantism the pathology becomes manifest after epiphyseal ossification has taken place so that skeletal growth is not possible, and only such parts of the body become enlarged which are not influenced by the epiphyseal ossification.

The onset is between the ages of 20 and 40 years and is of slow progression. It occurs in both sexes. There is no



Fig 3—Acromegaly, age 22 years, due to pituitary cystadenoma. (Note acromegalic face and hands.) (Courtesy Dr. N. W. Winkelman.)

ticularly during the later stages are headache, hyperglycemia, cerebral pressure symptoms, asthenia, and sexual hypofunction. The delayed epiphyseal union may be explained by the observation that the growth hormone is antagonistic to the sex hormone and deficient sex hormone retards epiphyseal union.

**2 Acromegaly** (Postadolescent hyperpituitarism). Acromegaly like gigantism is due to a lesion in the anterior pituitary lobe which stimulates the eosinophilic cells to an increased production of the growth hormone. Unlike

gigantism, the pathology becomes manifest after epiphyseal ossification has taken place so that skeletal growth is not possible, and only such parts of the body become enlarged which are not influenced by the epiphyseal ossification. The onset is between the ages of 20 and 40 years and is of slow progression. It occurs in both sexes. There is no

elongation of the skeleton, the enlargement is of the actual or peaked portions of the body and of some of the viscera. In a well developed case the face appears massive, the nose is large, the supraorbital ridges and zygomae are prominent, the lower jaw is pugnacious, and the lower lip is prominent. The teeth are widely spaced and the tongue is large. The neck appears short because of the upper dorsal kyphosis, the massive clavicles and the massive and prominent sternum. The hands are large and spadelike and all or occa-

sionally only a few of the fingers are thick and sausage shaped. The feet and ankles are massive. The skin is often thick and furrowed. During the early stages there is hypertrichosis and hypergenitalism. A ray examination will reveal epiphyseal tufting, irregular thickening of some of the cranial bones,

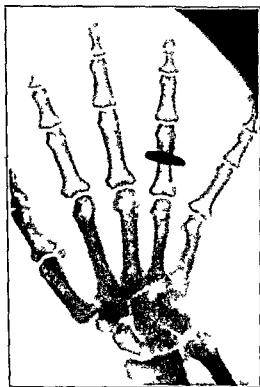


Fig 3a—Acromegalic hands  
(Courtesy Dr. Leon Solis Cohen)

and deepened grooves in most of the bones of the body in which lie tendons, blood vessels and nerves. The sella turcica may become enlarged, or the floor, the anterior or posterior clinoids may become eroded by a large tumor or an aneurysm. In the absence of such lesions the sella turcica will show no changes in size or contour.

**Symptoms** The most frequent complaints are pain in the bones and joints, headache, dizziness and digestive dis-

turbances. Glycosuria, polyuria and nephritic symptoms are fairly common. In the later stages, asthenia, hypogonadism, hypotrichosis and obesity are prevalent. Prognosis as to life is generally favorable.

**3 Pituitary Basophilism (Cushing's Syndrome)** This condition develops in the presence of a basophilic adenoma which is often of microscopic size, or as the result of hyperbasophilism, the latter being characterized by hyalinization of the basophils. Other glands such as the adrenal cortex, the ovaries, the thymus, the thyroid, the parathyroid and the islands of Langerhans also show evidence of pathology.

This condition is more prevalent among young females than males and particularly in those possessing a lymphatic hyperplasia. The general characteristics are plethoric obesity, often painful, affects the face, shoulders, trunk and abdomen (girdle obesity); the upper and particularly the lower extremities are thin. Purplish striae develop over the breasts, lower abdomen and upper thighs. During the early stages there is precocious sex development which later gives way to frigidity and sterility. Heterosexual hair distribution with hypertrichosis in the female and hypotrichosis in the male is quite characteristic. Osteoporosis, glycosuria, hyperglycemia and hypertension are fairly early manifestations. Extreme weakness, backache and headache continue to the last. *Cutis marmorata* (transient mottling of the skin) of the extremities is common.

### **Hypopituitarism**

Endocrinopathies resulting from hypopituitarism vary with the structures affected and the time in the individual's

life that the affection began. When the growth hormone alone is affected during childhood, growth remains arrested, if the structures governing both the growth and the sex hormone become affected during childhood, there results infantilism characterized by stunted

producing cells become affected during adulthood, sex function stops and there develops a tendency towards hetero sexual inversion. Other pituitary hypofunction may be manifested as obesity, cachexia, and various other structural and functional anomalies.

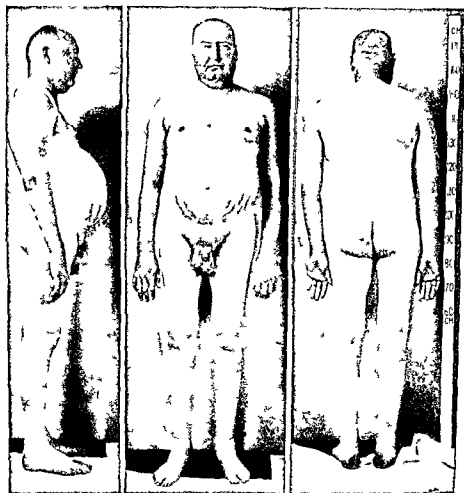


Fig 4—Lateral view Anterior view Posterior view Pituitary basophilism (Cushing's syndrome) ("Pituitary Body Hypothalamus Harvey Cushing Charles C Thomas Springfield Ill.)

growth and failure of sexual development. Should the sex hormone cells alone become affected during childhood, then stature is unaffected as the child grows, but the sexual organs remain infantile, and when the sex hormone

**General Characteristics of Hypopituitarism** With few exceptions hypopituitarism presents the following characteristics. The skin is soft, there is a sparse growth of body hair except upon the head, in those old enough

the hair upon the mons veneris is of heterosexual distribution. The wrists and forearms, the ankles and legs are trim and small in proportion to the general development. In the presence of adiposity, the fat distribution is characteristic, being most pronounced

in varying degrees in most cases. In the nonobese, and often in the obese, the upper measurement is greater than the lower.

Diseases due to hypopituitarism are (1) Infantilism and dwarfism; (2) Frohlich's syndrome, (3) adiposis do-



Fig 5—Infantilism Age 18½ years

over the buttocks, hips and abdomen (girdle type of obesity). The basal metabolic rate is subnormal, specific dynamic action of protein is low, cholesterol is generally above normal and carbohydrate tolerance is high. Sexual hypodevelopment or hypofunction occurs

in varying degrees in most cases. In the nonobese, and often in the obese, the upper measurement is greater than the lower. Diseases due to hypopituitarism are (1) Infantilism and dwarfism; (2) Frohlich's syndrome, (3) adiposis do-

lorosa, (4) Laurence Biedl syndrome, (5) lipodystrophia progressiva, (6) pituitary cachexia, (7) diabetes insipidus, (8) Hand Schüller Christian's disease, (9) obesity, (10) pituitary headache, (11) pituitary somnolence and hibernation, (12) pituitary epilepsy, and (13)

abnormal hair distribution of pituitary origin

**1 Infantilism and Dwarfism** In this condition the individual remains infantile or dwarfed throughout life. The height of these individuals vary, depending upon how early in life the growth had become arrested or slowed. The genitalia are often in proportion to the size of the individual as is also their function. Secondary sex characteristics are, as a rule poorly developed, though occasionally gonadal function and secondary sex characteristics are present in a mild degree. The degree of development depends not only upon the time of life that the affection began but also upon some inherited or congenital defect and upon the concomitant participation of other glands.

**Types of Infantilism and Dwarfism\*** (a) *Pituitary Infantilism* (Lorain Levy type) The individual is of child like appearance with soft skin round chubby face round eyes and pouting mouth. All the features are proportionate except that the trunk is somewhat longer than the lower extremities. The ossification centers are delayed. The mentality is average. The general appearance is that of an adult in miniature. The gonads are in proportion to the size of the individual, showing a general arrested development, both somatic and sexual.

(b) *The Thyroid Pituitary Type* This type should not be mistaken for cretinism which it vaguely resembles. The stature is short, the features are coarse the head is rounded, the skin is somewhat dry and harsh, the abdomen is enlarged, there is often lumbar lordosis, the limbs are large and round the mentality is as a rule poorly developed. Before these individuals reach

their thirtieth year they have wrinkled faces and look like little old men or women. The genitalia and the secondary sex characteristics are generally poorly developed. This type is also known as Brissaud's type of infantilism.



Fig 6—Infantilism of Brissaud's type. Both children are of the same age. (Engelbach's *Endocrine Medicine*. Charles C. Thomas Springfield Ill.)

(c) *The Pituitary Gonadal Type* This type of infantilism is associated with hypogonadism. In the male there may be cryptorchidism and large breasts. In the female the breasts are rudimentary and there is amenorrhea. In both sexes there is heterosexual hair distribution. The stature is generally below normal though not as marked as in



the Lorain Levy and the Brissaud's types. The individuals may be very thin or quite stout. The stout show the pituitary type of fat distribution and trochanteric fat pads. The lower measurements and the span are shorter than the trunk or upper measurement. This type should not be confused with the primary gonad type, which present very long legs and arms and a short trunk.

(d) *The Thymopituitary Type* This resembles the gonad type. Here, too, the lower measurements and the span are greater than the trunk or upper measurements though the genitalia are better developed. Lanugo remains upon the body for quite an extended period. The permanent teeth are bluish white, of poor architecture and disintegrate quite early, the second upper incisors and canines are rudimentary. The head is small and is well covered with hair and the general appearance is delicate. In the obese type there is an associated lymphatic hyperplasia. The thin type presents long fingers and toes and a cylindrical type of body with a juvenile face.

(e) *The Adrenopituitary Type* This type of infantilism is associated with premature puberty. The trunk is longer than the lower extremities, pubic hairs appear quite early. It may often be associated with either macrogenitosomia precox or with pseudohermaphroditism.

*The Lilliputian* While resembling the Lorain Levy type, this type has not been proven to be of pituitary origin. These individuals while of minute stature often have quite normally functioning genitalia. Several such dwarfs who married have been reported to have had children.

*The Australian Pygmies* While dwarfed, these people do not show any

evidence of pituitary hypofunction. Other dwarfs such as cretins, achondroplastics and mongolian idiots are believed not to be of pituitary origin.

2 **Frohlich's Syndrome** (*Dystrophia Adiposagenitalis*, Hypophyseal Dys-

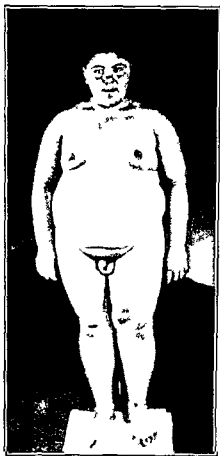


Fig 7—Frohlich's syndrome. Eleven years old. (Courtesy Dr Michael Burns Philadelphia General Hospital.)

trophy). This condition is fairly common, it may occur at any age and in varying degrees of severity. It is characterized chiefly by adiposity and genital hypoplasia. The individual is usually fat, presenting the typical girdle obesity, the fat is distributed over the breasts, upper arms and thighs and over the abdomen, mons and buttocks.

the skin is smooth, the face is round and the features are regular. The ankles and wrists are comparatively small, the hands are rounded and the fingers are tapering. Genitalia are poorly developed as are also the secondary sex characteristics. Older boys and men have a feminine appearance and have either a sparse growth of hair on their face or no hair. Girls and young women have poorly developed breasts and have menstrual difficulty or no menstruation. The basal metabolic rate is low and the carbohydrate tolerance is increased. The mentality may be normal, above normal or below normal. These individuals are usually lazy, good natured and amiable. This condition may be caused by a pituitary tumor, a poorly functioning pituitary or a pituitary tightly enclosed in a nonyielding sella. Individuals suffering from infantile or adolescent Frohlich's syndrome, not the result of a pituitary tumor or of pituitary damage, often become normal after puberty or during early adulthood. In the presence of a pituitary tumor the symptoms become progressive and there develop headache, weakness, epileptiform seizures and various degrees of blindness such as optic atrophy and homonymous or bitemporal hemianopsia.

**3 Adiposis Dolorosa (Dercum's Disease)** This condition usually develops in women after the menopause and is said to be due to hypofunction of the anterior pituitary. It is characterized by painful adiposity; the pain may be continuous or intermittent, spontaneous or provoked by touching or handling the fat deposits. The adiposity is either diffuse, resembling pituitary obesity, or consists of lipomatous masses on the arms, thighs, abdomen or the nape of the neck. It is associated with

marked asthenia and nervousness and often with melancholia or psychosis.

**4 Laurence-Biedl Syndrome** This is a congenital familial condition often affecting several members of the same family. It is characterized by obesity of the pituitary type and retinitis pigmentosa causing partial blindness, feeble

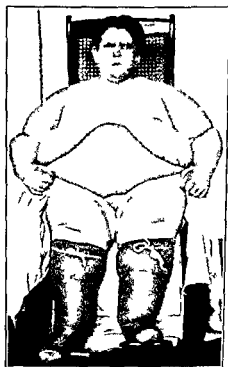


Fig. 8—Adiposis dolorosa

impaired vision, waddling gait and occasionally deafness, polydactylism, atresia ani or other congenital defect.

**5 Lipodystrophia Progressiva (Kangaroo Type of Obesity)** In the adult this condition is characterized by the accumulation of fat in the lower half of the body. The abdomen is obese and hangs down over the pubis as in other types of pituitary obesity, but the lower extremities are massive and shapeless and the face and thorax are comparatively thin.

**6 Pituitary Cachexia (Simmond's Disease)** This condition is attributed to atrophy of the anterior pituitary lobe due either to a tumor compressing the gland or to other factors. The onset is insidious, it usually occurs in young people. The disease is characterized by progressive weakness, severe asthenia, premature senility with graying of the hair or baldness, genital hypoplasia or hypoactivity, low basal metabolism, hypotension and degeneration of the adrenal cortex, thyroid and parathyroids and atrophy of the viscera. Mental lethargy and general stupor develop gradually.

**7 Diabetes Insipidus** This is a chronic disease in which there occurs a disturbance in the water balance, the two outstanding symptoms are polydipsia and polyuria. Etiologically it is divided into (a) primary or idiopathic (b) secondary or symptomatic. The primary or idiopathic group is often congenital, the symptoms appear early in life, the etiology is unknown as no lesion has been discovered at autopsy. The secondary or symptomatic group is associated with a tumor, aneurysm or other degenerative lesion in the pituitary or in the hypothalamic region in close association with the posterior pituitary body. The symptoms are identical in both groups, namely, unsatiable and compelling thirst and the passing of large quantities of urine of low specific gravity (1.000 to 1.002). All other constituents of the urine are usually normal except for their dilution. The skin and mucous membrane are usually dry. The abdomen is scaphoid. The bowels are constipated, the feces passed are dry, hard and dark. Sleep is often disturbed because of thirst and nocturia. There may be headache, visual disturbances and

weakness. Occasionally there are no symptoms other than polyuria and polydipsia.

**8 Hand-Schüller-Christian's Disease (Diabetes Insipidus, Exophthalmus and Defects of Membranous Bones, or Xanthomatosis)** This condition belongs



Fig. 9—Pituitary Obesity (Philadelphia General Hospital). Weight 400 pounds. This patient had regular recurrent menstrual periods and is the mother of six children, thus differing from Frohlich's syndrome where sexual function is retarded.

to the group of lipoid granulomatoses or diseases of the reticuloendothelial system. It is a congenital familial disease of lipoid metabolism and is characterized by defects or decalcification of the flat bones, particularly of the skull, signs of diabetes insipidus, exophthalmus, a

yellowish discoloration of the skin, and xanthomata. This disease appears chiefly during childhood and more often among boys. In many, though not in all cases, there was found a pituitary lesion. The symptoms are thirst, obesity of the pituitary type with stunted growth and exophthalmus. The exophthalmus develops gradually, as the eye sockets become filled with xanthomatous masses and push one or both eyes forward. Foam cells are found in the infiltrating tissue (SEE Figs 10 and 11 pp 730 and 731.)

9 **Obesity** (SEE p 88) This condition irrespective of its etiology, is characterized by abnormal deposits of fat in various parts of the body or in all tissues where fat is depositable. In all types of obesity there exists some disturbance in the metabolic processes and a disproportion between the intake of food and the output of energy. The concentration of fat deposits upon various parts of the body are not uniform in all obese persons. For this reason obesity is at times classified into various types.

*Pituitary Obesity* is characterized by the large accumulation of fat over the breasts and particularly over the buttocks and abdomen so that the abdomen hangs down apronlike. Often in midabdomen there is a longitudinal constriction dividing the abdomen buttock like into two lateral halves. The ankles, wrists and forearms are thin.

*Hypothyroid Obesity* presents a uniform distribution of fat with excessive supraclavicular and suprascapular padding. The breasts are large and the thighs and legs are massive. The skin is dry, inelastic and often leathery.

*Hypogonad Obesity* While the individual may be fat all over the greatest accumulation of fat is over the trochanters.

*Adrenal Obesity* resembles basophilism, the fat is distributed over the shoulders, upper arms and chest. The lower extremities are thin (Buffalo type of obesity).

*Pneal Obesity* is commoner in young boys and is associated with plethoric



Fig 10—*Lipodystrophia progressiva*. Note the size of the lower abdomen and the lower extremities (Philadelphia General Hospital)

coloration, increased muscular development and hypergenitalism (macrogenitosomia precox).

Other types of obesity are of cerebral origin as seen in cerebral tumors, salt and water retention and in other conditions.

**10 Pituitary Headache** (See p 68) Headache is a common symptom in many diseases. The pituitary gland is held responsible for a goodly number of headaches particularly in women. Such headaches are found during menstruation pregnancy the menopause and often after castration: *i. e.* in conditions in which the pituitary enlarges or develops specific types of cells. In acromegaly obesity Frohlich's syndrome and various pituitary tumors headache is a frequent complaint. The diagnosis is often made only by exclusion.

**11 Pituitary Somnolence and Hibernation** Certain types of hypopituitarism such as obesity cachexia and destructive lesions of the pituitary are accompanied either by transient uncontrollable attacks of somnolence or by prolonged comatose sleep from which the patient is aroused with difficulty. This condition is often seen in tumor of the pituitary and occasionally in the very obese who though of the hypopituitary type do not show evidence of tumor.

**12 Pituitary Epilepsy** Attacks of petit mal and occasionally of grand mal may be found in the pituitary type of young girls preceding puberty. These attacks often disappear when menstruation is well established. Tumor of the pituitary and intracranial crowding is a common cause for epileptic attacks. The so called idiopathic epilepsy may occasionally have a pituitary background.

**13 Hair Distribution of Pituitary Origin** Several of the endocrine glands seem to participate in the growth and distribution of hair. The gonads and the suprarenals seem to be the most prominent. However the pituitary gland which governs both the gonads and suprarenals as well as other endocrines seem to have a special trichogenous function. In hypopituitarism there is a heterosexual hair distribution: *i. e.* an increase of body hair in the female and scanty facial and body hair in the male. In acromegaly and in pituitary basophilism hypertrichosis is the rule. On the other hand alopecia congenital and acquired has been found in several instances to be due to pituitary tumor.

## The Thyroid Gland

### Anatomy and Physiology of the Thyroid Gland

The thyroid gland is composed of two lobes and a connecting narrow isthmus. It weighs between 30 and 40 Gm and is located in the anterior portion of the neck below the cricoid cartilage extending laterally beyond the anterior belly of the sternocleidomastoid muscle on each side. It is composed of a number of lobules lined with epithelial cells and contains a colloid material.

The hormone secreted by the thyroid gland is known as thyroxine. The daily

requirement of thyroxine to keep an individual's basal metabolic rate at a normal level is 0.75 mg. The normal basal metabolic rate is considered to be between minus 15 and plus 15. One mg of thyroxine will cause a 25 to 3 per cent increase in the basal metabolic rate. The physiological action of the thyroid is twofold. (1) In children it promotes body growth and bone development the development of the nervous system and genitals sharing these functions with the pituitary the thymus the suprarenal cortex and the gonads. (2) in the adult

it regulates metabolism, that is, the physiochemical processes of all tissues

### Disease of Thyroid Origin

Disease of the thyroid gland may cause hypersecretion, hyposecretion, or perverted secretion of its hormone, which may result in accelerated metab-

is one of the stabilators of endocrine balance

*Hyperthyroidism* causes an exaggeration of all functions plus autonomic imbalance, *i e*, the heart becomes rapid, the mind is alert, often causing psychic disturbances, restlessness, excitement, tremors, hypertension followed by hypo-



Fig 11—Vascular supply of the thyroid gland, anterior view showing arterial supply (semidiagrammatic) (a) Superior thyroid artery, (b) posterior branch, (c) anteromedial branch, (d) anterolateral branch, (e) inferior thyroid artery (f) thyroidea ima artery, (g) left recurrent laryngeal nerve (Eberts Surgical Diseases of the Thyroid Gland)

olism, decreased metabolism or perverted metabolism

The thyroid gland may be the seat of various tumors, diseases, regenerative and degenerative processes, and it may become enlarged or atrophied with or without any secretory changes. It exerts a definite influence on body growth and metabolism, and though controlled by the thyrotropic hormone of the pituitary, it

tension, mononucleosis, increased elimination of solids, diarrhea, hyperhidrosis, loss of weight and increased basal metabolism. Hyperthyroidism is of three types, *i e*, simple hyperthyroidism, toxic adenoma and exophthalmic goiter.

*Hypothyroidism* causes sluggishness of all functions. The patient is usually stout, though not invariably so, the mind is dull and muscular activity is

depressed. The degree of hypothyroidism in the adult governs the severity of the myxedema and in the infant the degree of cretinism.

*Athyroidism* in the very young results in extreme degrees of cretinism, and in the adult in cachexia strumipriva or a severe type of myxedema.

*Dysthyroidism* produces a perverted secretion which according to Janney and Plummer, is responsible for exophthalmic goiter.

### **Enlargement of the Thyroid Gland**

Any enlargement of the thyroid gland is classified as goiter or struma.

Enlargement of the thyroid gland may be divided into three groups.

**I Thyroiditis.** Inflammation of the thyroid may be classified as acute non-specific inflammatory, acute suppurative inflammatory, thyroiditis and subacute and chronic thyroiditis. These may be due to local or systemic infection. Riedel's struma and Chagas disease are special types of thyroiditis. The symptoms: pain, redness and swelling over the thyroid are acute. The pain often radiates to the teeth, occiput and shoulders. The head is held rigid, the veins of the neck are prominent and there is cyanosis of the face and neck. Swallowing and respiration because of pressure become difficult. Suppuration of the thyroid when not fatal may result in myxedema.

**II Tumors of the Thyroid.** These may be of the following types: Carcinoma, sarcoma, malignant or simple adenomata, gumma, tuberculosis, syphilis and actinomycosis. The benign tumors usually give rise to pressure symptoms only; the malignant tumors may cause pressure symptoms with signs of either hyperthyroidism or myxedema.

with cachexia. The internal secretion of the thyroid gland is often disturbed in such cases.

**III Goiter.** This is an enlargement of the thyroid gland with definite changes in its structure. The following are to be considered: (a) Simple or vascular goiter, (b) colloid goiter, (c) parenchymatous goiter, (d) endemic goiter, (e) adenomatous goiter, (f) exophthalmic goiter (hyperthyroidism).

**(a) Simple or Vascular Goiter.** This is usually seen in young people, most often in girls at puberty and in young women during pregnancy and lactation. The thyroid is only moderately enlarged, is soft, free from pain and may cause symptoms of varying degrees of hyperthyroidism: i.e. hyperexcitability, elevated basal metabolic rate, sweating and tachycardia. The enlarged thyroids often seen associated with pulmonary tuberculosis or other conditions of the lungs which cause vascular stasis may be grouped under this heading.

**(b) Colloid Goiter.** This is simple nontoxic enlargement of the thyroid gland. At times it may attain to an enormous size and may give rise to pressure symptoms or it may undergo degenerative changes producing cysts, calcareous infiltration, malignant changes or proliferative changes which may result in hyper- or hypothyroidism or cretinism.

**(c) Parenchymatous Goiter.** This is a true hypertrophy of the gland. In the chronic form the thyroid becomes quite large and fibrotic and there develop within its structure simple and colloid adenomata. Ultimately the secretory function of the thyroid becomes impaired and hypothyroidism results. Pregnant mothers suffering from paren-

chymatous goiters may give birth to goiterous offsprings that may be cretins

(d) **Endemic Goiters:** These occur in large numbers in certain localities in Asia, Central Europe and in this country in regions far removed from the sea

fuse colloid goiter which may cause hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism or may eventually involute

(e) **Adenomatous Goiter:** This is usually seen in two stages (1) Non toxic adenoma, and (2) toxic adenoma



Fig 12—Toxic adenomatous goiter The B M R was plus 36 (Philadelphia General Hospital)

There are two types One type is the diffuse parenchymatous colloid poor goiter of childhood, and the other, the nodular adenoparenchymatous goiter with degenerative changes of the adult The parenchymatous degenerative goiters of both childhood and adulthood are found in endemic cretins and severe myxedema The other type is the dif-

1 **Nontoxic adenoma** may be single or multiple and usually occurs in the second decade of life The mass or masses are generally circumscribed and firm to the touch Histologically they are made up of numerous acini, and occasionally of numerous circumscribed and encapsulated nodules containing many, small alveoli Colloid and cystic formations are



often found in conjunction with adenomatous tissue

**Symptoms** This form presents no definite symptoms or signs unless it becomes so large that it may cause pressure symptoms or when it becomes toxic

**2 Toxic adenoma** may be recognized as a hard circumscribed mass in one or both lobes of the thyroid associated with symptoms of hyperthyroidism. Often a nontoxic goiter may because of overaction cause toxic symptoms. These differ in their manifestations from true exophthalmic goiter in that the former contains an excess of normal thyroid secretion (thyroxin) while in the latter there is an excess of a perverted thyroid secretion causing severe toxic symptoms and requiring an iodine molecule for its readjustment (Plummer)

**Symptoms** The onset may be gradual or abrupt. The gradual onset is manifested by increasing irritability, frequent attacks of tachycardia, weakness, digestive disturbances and functional nervous manifestations. A well developed case will present the following: (a) Enlarged thyroid gland containing one or more hard nodes; (b) tachycardia; (c) coarse tremors of the hands and fingers; (d) nervous instability; (e) loss of weight and strength; (f) myocardial degeneration with occasional arrhythmia; (g) rapid and spontaneous bodily movements. If the onset is abrupt the above mentioned symptoms develop in rapid succession. There is often an absence of distinct exophthalmus and of a thrill or bruit over the thyroid. The typical crisis of exophthalmic goiter is wanting. The basal metabolic rate is always increased. It is apt to occur past middle age.

(f) **Exophthalmic Goiter** (Graves disease, Basedow's Disease, Thyroid

Toxicosis) **Definition** Exophthalmic goiter is a constitutional thyroid toxemia characterized clinically by instability of the nervous system, diffuse enlargement of the thyroid gland, exophthalmus, tremor, tachycardia, hyperhidrosis, gastrointestinal disturbance, dermatographia and increased basal metabolic rate. It is characterized pathologically by parenchymatous hyperplasia of the thyroid, hyperplasia of the lymphatic system and thymus, hypocholesteremia and increased iodine content of the blood.

**Etiology** There is a hypersecretion of thyroid hormone which probably contains a toxic substance. The following may be factors in upsetting the thyroid balance: (a) Heredity, which may either transmit the disease or transmit a predisposition to it, which in the presence of exciting factors such as worry, fright, local or systemic infections or mental and physical strain will bring forth the disease in an active stage; (b) disease of other endocrine glands and particularly when the thyrotropic hormone of the pituitary is affected; (c) psychic trauma, physical strain and overwork, even in the absence of any hereditary predisposition; and (d) it may occur in the absence of any definite or discoverable cause, possibly due to hypersensitivity of the various tissues of the body to the thyroid hormone or a deficiency of thyroid antihormone. Women are more prone to it than are men. Exophthalmic goiter is most prevalent during the second and third decades. It is often characterized by periods of remissions and recrudescence.

**Symptoms and Signs** These depend upon the severity of the disease and whether the patient is in a crisis or in a state of remission. Mild cases naturally show fewer and milder signs. During

## Differential Table Between Toxic Adenoma and Exophthalmic Goiter

## TOXIC ADENOMA

(*Hyperthyroidism Secondary Toxic Goiter, Basedowified Goiter*)

- 1 Patient is usually of middle age
- 2 Goiter present years before onset of symptoms
- 3 Goiter is essentially adenomatous often nodular in shape and usually large, nonpulsating noncompressible, without thrill or bruit
- 4 Exophthalmus and expression of chronic fright rare eye signs not prominent
- 5 Tachycardia not extreme, often materially slowed by sleep or digitalis
- 6 Hypertension and myocardial degeneration common
- 7 Tremor often absent, if present is coarse and atypical
- 8 Mental symptoms relatively mild
- 9 No tendency to gastrointestinal crises
- 10 Dermographia often absent, when present is not intense.
- 11 Loss in weight comparatively slow
- 12 Symptoms may be produced in a normal person by administration of thyroid extract or thyroxin
- 13 Surgical interference with the thyroid eminently successful usually no recurrences or regeneration as mass is encapsulated
- 14 Remissions do not occur

## EXOPTHALMIC GOITER

(*Graves Disease, Basedow's Disease, Parry's Disease, Flajani's Disease, Hyperplastic Goiter, Dysthyroidism, Thyrotoxicosis*)

- 1 Patient is usually a young adult
- 2 Goiter often absent, if present is of recent occurrence.
- 3 Goiter is essentially hyperplastic in nature rarely large usually a symmetrical fullness often pulsating compressible and presents thrill and bruit
- 4 Exophthalmus and expression of chronic fright with characteristic eye signs are usually present.
- 5 Tachycardia more pronounced, not appreciably slowed by sleep or digitalis
- 6 Hypertension not common, myocardial degeneration occurs late in the disease.
- 7 Tremor nearly always present and typical.
- 8 Mental symptoms relatively prominent with occasional major psychoses
- 9 Tendency to gastrointestinal crises
- 10 Dermographia constant and usually intense, other skin lesions common
- 11 Loss in weight comparatively rapid.
- 12 Syndrome not produced by administration of thyroid extract or thyroxin unless predisposition exists
- 13 Surgical interference with the thyroid not always successful recurrence because of regeneration may occur as the mass is unencapsulated
- 14 Remissions and exacerbations common.

a crisis all signs are greatly intensified, and fever diarrhea, hyperhidrosis tachycardia or auricular fibrillation, and other toxic manifestations are greatly aggravated. **A typical case of average severity will present the following**

(1) The *general appearance* is that of fright or great anxiety, the patient is restless, impatient and cannot find a place for himself. The face is flushed or covered with perspiration

(2) The *eyes* are staring or protrude (exophthalmus). This may be unilateral but is most often bilateral. Very rarely typical exophthalmus may be absent. A number of eye signs usually accompany the exophthalmus, of which the most common are (a) *Von Graefe's Sign* Failure of the upper lid to follow the downward movement of the eyeball, (b) *Moebius' Sign* Failure of convergence of the eyeballs when looking downwards,

(c) *Stellwag's Sign* Inhibition or lessening of the wrinkling reflex, (d) *Joffroy's Sign* Absence of wrinkling of the forehead when the eyes are rolled upward as far as possible, (e) *Dalrymple's Sign* Widening of the palpebral fissures, (f) *Riesman's Sign* Audible bruit heard over the eyeball, (g) *Loewy's Sign*

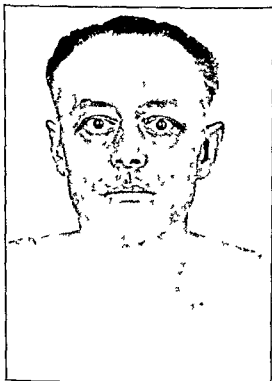


Fig 13—Exophthalmic goiter The B M R was plus 90 The thyroid was palpable and pulsating All other classical signs were present Patient died within 24 hours after thyroidectomy in crisis

Prompt and lasting mydriasis when two drops of 1:1000 epinephrine solution is instilled in either eye

(3) *The Neck* There is usually present a symmetrical fullness, often it is a large yielding pulsating mass, occasionally no definite thyroid enlargement is visible The thyroid may be easily palpated by grasping the lower part of the neck between the thumb on one side

and index and middle fingers on the other side of the anterior bellies of the sternocleidomastoid muscles when the chin is raised, particularly during the act of swallowing The gland may be impalpable in substernal thyroid Occasionally the thyroid gland may not be enlarged, though there may be hyperactive thyroid tissue in aberrant positions In addition to the large thyroid, there are visible pulsations of the vessels of the neck, and a generalized erythema of the skin of the neck and of the adjacent upper portion of the chest A thrill may be felt or a bruit heard over the thyroid

(4) *Cardiovascular System* Tachycardia, during excitement and also when at rest associated with dyspnea is an early sign, in the more advanced cases there occur signs of cardiac decompensation and various arrhythmias, particularly auricular fibrillation

(5) *Gastrointestinal Symptoms* The appetite is usually good, but notwithstanding that there is a persistent loss of weight Nausea, vomiting and diarrhea are usually present at a crisis

(6) *Cutaneous Manifestations* Flushing of the face and neck and moisture of the skin with profuse sweating on emotion or mild exertion are nearly always present The skin is generally soft pliable and smooth, often there are brownish pigmented areas papules, pustules and itching are frequently present The patient usually feels warm

(7) *Tremors* There is a decided fine tremor noticed in the outstretched hand and a general muscle tremor is perceptible over the entire body

(8) *The Genital System* Menstrual disturbances such as dysmenorrhea, oligomenorrhea, amenorrhea, metro- and menorrhagia may occasionally occur.

Libido is poor and sterility is common. In men there often occurs lack of libido or potentiality.

(9) *Basal Metabolic Rate* This is most often increased from plus 30 to 90 or over. In rare cases, the basal metabolic rate is not markedly elevated. A rough guess of the BMR may be had by employing the *Read formula*. The pulse rate is added to the pulse pressure, and from the sum 111 is subtracted. Thus, for pulse rate 90, pulse pressure 60—90 plus 60, minus 111, equals plus 39.

(10) *Blood* Secondary anemia and a tendency to lymphocytosis are usually present.

(11) *Blood Pressure* The systolic pressure is usually elevated and the diastolic is lowered so that there is an increased pulse pressure. The systolic pressure rises sharply and all toxic symptoms become intensified by the administration of epinephrine.

(12) The *Goetsch Test* is positive. In well marked cases this test should not be used. This test is carried out as follows: Five to seven and a half minims of 1:1000 epinephrine solution is given hypodermically. Every five minutes during the next hour it will be noted that the systolic pressure has risen from 10 to 50 points, the pulse rate is increased from 10 to 20 beats per minute. There is also an increase of nervousness, tremors, sweating and flushing, though at times there may be pallor of the face. The pupils remain dilated for from one half to one hour.

Other laboratory examinations will usually show a decrease in the blood cholesterol, an increase in the blood iodine content, at times as high as 30 gamma per cent, and a slight hyperglycemia and low blood calcium.

(13) *The Urine* Increased frequency by day and night, frequent glycosuria, moderate albuminuria, and increased excretion of iodine, and of nitrogenous products are present in the majority of cases.

(14) *Drug Tolerance* There is an increased tolerance to quinine (Bram), physostigmine and ergot, and a decreased tolerance to epinephrine and other sympathomimetic drugs.

*Atypical Forms of Exophthalmic Goiter.* While the symptoms just enumerated are found in typical cases of exophthalmic goiter of moderate severity, there are cases in which some of the cardinal signs are wanting. Occasionally there may be an absence of exophthalmus, in some cases the thyroid may not be palpably enlarged, and in other cases the BMR may not be elevated above the usual normal values. In children, in the senile and in the obese, many of the signs may be absent though the majority are present.

*Masked Hyperthyroidism* This condition is so called because there may be an absence of exophthalmus and of visible nervousness. This condition is usually found in elderly people. They are apathetic, are easily fatigued, have a slight staring of the eyes, have a sense of warmth, an increased basal metabolic rate, and frequently they have diarrhea. Tachycardia may be present or absent but the heart rate is easily accelerated by moderate exertion.

*Hypothyroidism or Thyroid Insufficiency*  
(*Myxedema, Cachexia Strumipriva, Cull's and Ord's Disease, Childhood Myxedema, or Cretinism*)

Hypothyroidism is a condition brought about by thyroid insufficiency, that is

the lack of thyroid secretion. This is characterized in the young by the retardation of physical and mental development and the diminution of metabolic activity and in the adult by slowing of all metabolic activities and by mental and physical retardation. The amount of retardation depends upon the age at which the thyroid becomes hypoactive or inactive and on the degree of its hypoactivity or inactivity. When thyroid inactivity occurs at birth or soon thereafter it results in cretinism when the thyroid becomes inactive or hypoactive in older children or in adults then the condition is variously known as myxedema, cachexia strumipriva, Gull's disease or Ordi's disease. Milder types of hypothyroidism bear no specific name. Hypothyroidism may be primary or secondary. Primary hypothyroidism may be caused by a diseased thyroid or by insufficient thyroid tissue which causes either a deficiency or lack of thyroid hormone. It is also quite possible that an insufficient amount of thyroid hormone may be due to deficient thyroid stimulation by the anterior pituitary thyrotropic hormone.

Secondary hypothyroidism may be due to disease of the gonads, wasting diseases, starvation or other diseases that either limit the secretion of thyroid hormone or interfere with the absorption of the thyroid hormone by the tissues. Another probability is that there may be an overproduction of thyroid antihormone.

**Adult Myxedema Symptomatology and Diagnosis.** Hypothyroidism, myxedema and cachexia strumipriva are adult types of diminished or absent thyroid activity. The commonest phenomena in a well marked case are as follows: (1) Pallor (2) subcutaneous

swelling (3) rough lusterless dry and cool skin imparting to the touch the sensation of dead rubber (4) coarse dry and scanty growth of hair (5) general listlessness (6) supraclavicular fat pads (7) associated nephritis (8) bradycardia (9) subnormal temperature (10) dull listless and stupid facial expression the features being almost



Fig 14—Myxedema

immobile (11) puffy lower eyelids (12) thickened lips tongue and nose (13) dull coarse and monotonous voice (14) slow body movements (15) staggering gait (16) nervous symptoms such as headache slow perceptive powers alterations of temper and perverted taste and smell (17) aches and pains in the extremities (18) the blood shows a definite anemia and because of the associated skin pallor may resemble pernicious anemia (19) the blood cholesterol is high (300 to 700 mg) (20)

the blood iodine is low, (21) the basal metabolic rate is abnormally low and may vary from minus 20 to minus 40 and (22) there may be a hypochlorhydria or an achylia gastrica

Mild cases of hypothyroidism are often found near or past the menopausal age in both women and men. It is manifested by fatigability, various aches and pains, digestive disturbances, thinning of the eyebrows, secondary anemia, a decreased basal metabolic rate, a low gastric acidity, and an increased blood cholesterol

**Cretinism** Cretinism may be defined as a state of continuous and abnormal infancy due to arrested physical and mental development which began before or soon after birth as a result of congenital thyroid insufficiency. Immediately after birth there are as a rule few or no signs of athyroidism. The newborn infant in most instances, appears normal possibly because *in utero*, the fetus being nourished by the mother's blood, does not suffer from his own thyroid insufficiency. Also as long as he is breast fed by a mother whose thyroid gland is normal the infant will show no signs of thyroid deficiency. After weaning, or in an artificially fed child the lack of thyroid secretion manifests itself as soon as the child reaches a stage where he has to depend upon his own hormones for physical and mental development

There are two types of cretinism: sporadic and endemic

**Sporadic cretinism** This may occur in an individual not descended from cretins as isolated cases in localities where cretinism does not prevail

**Endemic Cretinism** This is often familial and is indigenous to certain localities, as in the so called goiter belts of

this country and abroad. The endemic cretin differs from the sporadic in that the endemic cretin is generally not quite as helpless as the sporadic, his growth is not as stunted, his mentality is not quite as blank, and his genitals are not as hypoplastic as are those of the spo-



Fig 15—Cretin Age 34 years Complete athyroid cretin.

radic cretin. The endemic cretin often has a large colloid goiter or a useless thyroid such as may be found in his mother or father. The sporadic cretin is usually in a state of continuous infancy, is helpless, stupid and ungainly

**Characteristics of Severe Cretinism** The head is large and rounded,

the facies are coarse and puffy, the complexion is sallow or pasty, the eyelids are puffy, the nose is thick and its bridge is depressed, the lips are thick and dry, and saliva often drools from the mouth, the tongue is thick, large and broad. The teeth are poorly developed, the neck is short, the trunk is rounded and longer than the extremities, there are fat pads over the shoulders. The abdomen is large and protruding, often showing an umbilical hernia. The extremities are poorly developed, usually cold and cyanosed, the long bones show retarded development. The hands are round and puffy and the fingers are broad and square at the tips. The hair

is coarse and straggly. The mentality is greatly retarded, deaf mutism is common, and the reaction to stimuli is exceedingly slow. Most frequently there is imbecility.

Cretinism appearing during early childhood is practically childhood myxedema, showing in addition to the general signs of myxedema, retardation of the ossification centers, particularly in the carpal bones. Sporadic cretinism and myxedema respond to thyroid medication, while response to the same treatment in endemic cretinism is poor. Endemic cretinism may be prevented or its severity ameliorated by the early administration of iodine.

## **The Pineal Gland**

### **Anatomy and Physiology of the Pineal Gland**

The pineal gland is a small cone shaped body in contact with the third ventricle of the brain. It is composed of characteristic pineal cells, neuroglia and connective tissue. It is richly supplied with blood vessels and nerves and often harbors brain sand and occasionally small cysts. From the appearance of granules in the protoplasm of its cells and because of its rich blood supply, it is assumed that the pineal body is an active endocrine gland. No pineal hormone has as yet been isolated. Experimental studies have so far proven that the gland is not a vital organ.

**The Function of the Pineal Body**  
Extirpation and feeding experiment upon animals are inconclusive. Clinical observation suggests that the pineal body is intimately connected with sexual maturity. One group of observers believes that the pineal body acts as a check rein to the gonads, retarding their de-

velopment until bodily maturity has taken place. Another group believes that the pineal body stimulates sex maturation. There is no definite knowledge at present with regard to pineal function, though the consensus is in favor of the theory that the pineal body acts as a checkrein to the gonads, inhibiting their premature development.

### **Diseases of Pineal Origin**

Tumors of the pineal body may cause in addition to neighborhood pressure symptoms precocious puberty.

### **Macrogenitosomia Precox**

This syndrome in boys is often associated with pineal tumor. It is characterized by rapid growth of the skeleton up to the sixth year, then growth slows or stops because of premature epiphyseal union. During the period of rapid growth there is also precocious genital development (premature adulthood), the genitalia become large, hair develops upon

the mons, under the arms and on the face. The mentality matures, the voice becomes low pitched and physical development with obesity becomes marked.

In the presence of a pineal tumor, intracranial pressure symptoms such as headache, blindness, paralysis and hydrocephalus develop sooner or later.



Fig 16—Pineal tumor with hydrocephalus age 5 years. Note general development, large head and pubic hair. (Philadelphia General Hospital.)

### **The Thymus Gland**

#### **Anatomy and Physiology of the Thymus Gland**

The thymus gland is composed of lymphoid tissue. It contains two lobes, each of which is made up of lobules bound together by connective tissue. The cortex consists of closely packed lymphocytes and the medulla contains a reticulum of large branched cells, few lympho-

cytes and the concentric corpuscles of Hassall. The thymus gland is situated in the mediastinum, is bordered on either side by the lungs and is in close relation to the pneumogastric, phrenic and recurrent laryngeal nerves and the large blood vessels. The gland is largest during infancy and early childhood, attains its full size at or about the second year and



according to Hammar, becomes involute at puberty (11th to 15th year)

**Hormone** No hormone has as yet been isolated from the thymus. However an extract made of thymus tissue produces excessive growth in immature animals.

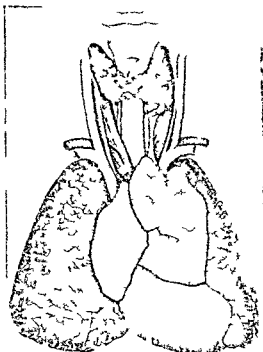


Fig. 17—Thymus gland of full term fetus (Engelbach's Endocrine Medicine Charles C. Thomas Springfield Ill.)

**Pathology** The thymus gland may be the seat of tumor or cyst or it may fail to involute at the proper time (*persistent thymus*). Enlargement of the thymus may occur because of disease elsewhere such as exophthalmic goiter, Cushing's syndrome, hypogonadism, castration, Hodgkin's disease, leukemia, septicopyemia or myasthenia gravis. The thymus gland may also be affected by syphilis, tuberculosis or it may become infested by parasites. Atrophy of the thymus is seen in marasmus, in profuse hemorrhage and in inanition.

**Physiology** The thymus like the pineal is a gland of childhood, both involute at or about puberty and neither gland has so far yielded a specific hormone. It is believed that the thymus is concerned with the growth and development of the body, the gonads and the osseous structures. The administration of thymus extracts to immature rats either directly as by Asher or through successive generations as by Rowen and his co-workers enhanced their growth while ablation of the gland retarded their growth. The exact role the thymus plays in the physiology of the organism is not known; its retrogression at the age of puberty when the sex glands are fully developed and its persistence in hypogonadism are significant of a gonad-thymus relationship probably mediated through the anterior pituitary, the thyroid and the suprarenals.

### Diseases of Thymus Origin

Though the functions of the thymus gland are not definitely known, there are a number of constitutional anomalies characterized by definite stigmata that occur sufficiently often to indicate that they may be of thymus origin or that the thymus plays an important role in their production.

### *Hyperthymism*

**Status Thymicolymphaticus** (*status hypoplasticus lymphaticus*) *Status thymicolymphaticus* is a constitutional anomaly characterized by definite stigmata. It is generally congenital but may be acquired during childhood. The clinical picture of this condition varies with the age of the individual and the degree of involvement.

*In children* the following is characteristic. The child is delicately molded, is slender and graceful. The skin in some is soft, delicate, of velvety texture, and faintly cream colored, in others, it may be dead white, lusterless or pasty in appearance, or it may be unusually shiny. The surface of the body remains covered with lanugo beyond the usual age. The hair upon the head is soft and often curly. The face presents the "angelic appearance", the eyes are round, light blue or brown, the lashes are long and curl upward. The nose is small, the mouth usually pouts, the cheeks are rounded and flush or pale readily. There is general lymphatic hyperplasia in the neck, axillae and groin. The tonsils and adenoids are enlarged and the spleen is often palpable. The genitals are hypoplastic. The child is generally timid, irritable, has a high pitched voice and has a greater susceptibility to upper respiratory infections and various skin rashes, is sensitive to protein inoculations and is allergic to a vast variety of substances.

*Among adolescents and adults*, three types of lymphatism may be considered: (a) The obese or hypothyroid type, (b) the thin or hyperthyroid type, and (c) the well nourished or classical type. This division is purely arbitrary and is based upon the corpulence of the individual and his general behavior.

(a) *The obese or hypothyroid type* is soft, flabby and bloated, has coarse features, and is mentally and physically sluggish.

(b) *The thin or hyperthyroid type* is very thin, often emaciated and has small features, a long neck, a cylindrical body, and long lower extremities. The genitalia are well formed but their func-

tion is below normal. This type is usually alert and restless.

(c) *The well-nourished or classical type* is usually somewhat below normal in height and has a youthful appearance. The palate is high arched

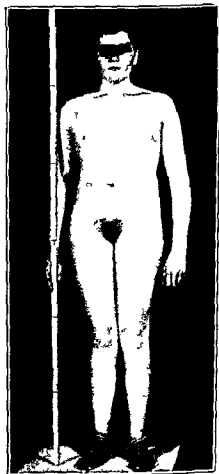


Fig. 18—The well nourished or classical type of hyperthyroidism with extreme hypogonadism showing infantile-shaped body, long slender extremities and rudimentary genitals (Ihla Gen Hosp.)

(torus palatinus). The teeth are bluish white in color and irregular. The central incisors may be large and lateral incisors may be rudimentary while the canines are usually small and may resemble the incisors. The neck is short,

isolated lymph glands of the anterior and posterior chains are palpable as are also some in the supraclavicular fossa.

The thorax is slender and rounded resembling in shape and conformity that of the child. The upper and lower extremities are rounded and well shaped the fingers are long appear sensitive and are extremely flexible so that they can easily be bent backwards suggesting a double jointedness. Most of the joints of the body are lax and may be easily dislocated or contracted.

The hair upon the mons is triangular in shape resembling the female type of distribution i.e. the base line upward and the apex pointing downward. The hair in the axillae and on the extremities is sparse or entirely absent. The genitalia are often poorly developed hypospadia and unilateral or bilateral cryptorchism are not uncommon.

The female of this type is also characterized by the appearance of plumpness softness of the skin irregular dentition enlarged lymph glands loose jointedness and sparse distribution of hair. The genitalia are hypoplastic the clitoris is often enlarged menstrual disturbances such as amenorrhea hypomenorrhea and dysmenorrhea are common and occasionally there may be excessive bleeding at irregular intervals.

This type is usually associated with a marked degree of genital disturbance and with anterior pituitary and adrenal medullary hypofunction.

**Characteristics Common to All Types of Status Thymicolymphaticus** While the three types mentioned namely the obese the thin and the well nourished exhibit certain individual characteristics yet there are a number of clinical manifestations common to all of them which justifies their grouping

into a general classification. The common characteristics of all types of status thymicolymphaticus are (1) An enlarged thymus gland which is not always demonstrable during life (2) hyperplasia of the lymphatic structures (3) a youthful appearance, (4) sparse hair distribution (5) hypogenitalism, (6) hypoplasia of the cardiovascular system (7) anomalies of the gastrointestinal tract (8) vascular hypotension (9) low basal metabolic rate, (10) easy fatigability (11) a relative lymphocytosis (12) low carbon dioxide tension (13) a tendency to asthma hay fever and other protein sensitivity, (14) a tendency to sudden unexplainable death or death due to adrenal or intracranial hemorrhage or to coronary disease (15) greater susceptibility to infection and greater death rate from acute infection (16) evidence of vagus disturbances and (17) psychic disturbances. Their mentality may be normal but their behavior is often much like a spoiled only child. They are selfish obstinate and negativistic. Some may possess ungovernable tempers and may be unreasonable. Another of their characteristics is an inability to apply themselves to certain situations to sustained effort or to creative work. Their accomplishments are usually the result of imitation rather than of original effort. Notwithstanding the innate handicap of these unfortunates whose disability is not of their own choice or making many of them with proper training and wise supervision may be developed into normal individuals and useful members of society.

### **Other Possible Hyperthymic Conditions**

Other conditions attributed to hyperthymism are

(1) **Mors Thymica** This is where death occurs in a child suddenly and without any apparent provocation. The existence of such a specific type is questioned.

(2) **Thymic Stridor** This is difficult or stridulous breathing occurring at certain times, particularly after excitement or crying (rare).

(3) **Thymic Asthma** The occurrence of bronchial asthma is at times attributed to an enlarged thymus, but it is doubtful whether the thymus enlargement is responsible for these conditions.

(4) **Myasthenia Gravis** This is thought to be due to thymus involve-

ment. It is characterized by nasal speech, ptosis, exhaustion and fatigability of the striated muscles (SEE p 881).

### **Hypothyism**

Timme described a syndrome due to premature involution of the thymus. The individuals are stockily built, have a compact frame and short stature. Epiphyseal ossification and maturation occur prematurely. The secondary sex characteristics may appear during childhood. The permanent teeth appear early but are irregular and the blood pressure is generally high. The mentality is a combination of childhood stubbornness and adult resourcefulness, they are mean, cruel and easily angered.

## **The Parathyroid Glands**

### **Anatomy and Physiology of the Parathyroid Glands**

The parathyroids are four in number, situated behind and intimately connected with the thyroid gland. Accessory parathyroids are fairly common and may be found in positions close to the regular parathyroids, as in the thyroid gland, the thymus and in other structures of the neck or upper chest. They measure approximately  $6 \times 3 \times 2$  mm. The parathyroids are made up of two types of cells: (a) The chief cells which are polygonal in shape and are most numerous, and (b) the oxyphil cells which are larger and contain deeply staining nuclei.

**Hormone** The parathyroids elaborate a hormone which influences the metabolism of calcium and phosphorus. Parathyroid activity is believed to be under the influence of the parathyrotropic hormone of the anterior pituitary lobe. Calcium metabolism is also influenced by vitamin D and by the actinic sun rays which act synergistically with the para-

thyroids. The parathyroid hormone (parathormone) was isolated and made available for clinical use by J. B. Collip.

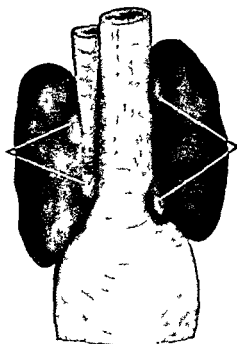


Fig. 19—Human thyroid and parathyroid. Anterior view. (From Zuckerkandl.)

A unit of parathormone is considered to be  $\frac{1}{100}$  of the amount required to raise the blood calcium about 5 mg to the 100 cc of blood in a dog weighing 20 kilograms within 15 hours after injection. The international dog unit is one fifth the strength of the Collip dog unit. The normal blood serum calcium is between 9 and 11 mg to 100 cc of blood the normal serum phosphorus between 3.5 and 4 mg to 100 cc of blood.

### Diseases of Parathyroid Origin

Disease of the parathyroids may cause either hyper- or hypoparathyroidism. In hyperparathyroidism there occur conditions that are associated with hypercalcemia and in hypoparathyroidism conditions occur in which hypocalcemia is the dominant factor.

#### *Hyperparathyroidism*

Hyperparathyroidism is recognized by an increase of serum calcium often ranging from 12 to 20 mg to 100 cc of blood and a decrease of serum organic phosphorus to 1.5 to 3 mg to 100 cc of blood. The nervous system becomes much depressed, the heart slows and there occurs hypotonicity of the muscular system with pain in the limbs so that walking or muscular exertion is difficult. The kidneys become affected, the urine contains large amounts of calcium and phosphorus, renal stones are common. Gastrointestinal symptoms such as anorexia, nausea, vomiting and constipation are prominent. The osseous system shows characteristic changes. All the bones of the body are decalcified (osteoporosis) and many undergo fibrous bony tumors and cysts may occur in the long bones or in any of the other bones of the body. Spontaneous fractures may occur in the long bones in the pelvic

bones and at times in other bones causing deformities and shortening of the stature. The bones of the jaw and spinal column may likewise become affected. Because of the fibrous cystic degeneration of the bones, this condition is known as *osteitis fibrosa cystica* or Von Recklinghausen's disease of the bones. Minor degrees of hyperparathyroidism exist in which the symptoms are less pronounced. Renal calculi or otosclerosis may occur in hyperparathyroidism without showing severe bone decalcification.

#### *Hypoparathyroidism*

Hypoparathyroidism causes a diminution of calcium in the blood and since calcium is a nerve sedative a deficiency of blood calcium will cause neuromuscular hypersensitivity. This is recognized by hyperexcitability of the entire nervous system which produces sensory, motor and autonomic nervous system phenomena causing among other manifestations tonic spasms of the skeletal muscles with generalized convulsions. The spasms of the extremities are usually bilateral and may simultaneously affect all four extremities or as occasionally happens only a single extremity or isolated group of muscles may become affected. Gastrointestinal symptoms such as anorexia, vomiting and diarrhea are common. Nervous irritability, insomnia, perversion of temper and other signs of instability of the nervous system are early manifestations. Other signs of hypocalcemia are defects in the enamel of the teeth, brittle and grooved nails, juvenile cataracts, alopecia, retarded growth, hypotension and a tendency to asthma.

*Hypoparathyroidism may occur because of injury or disease of the parathyroids or because of their extirpation*

during a thyroidectomy or other operation in that region. The most familiar syndrome resulting from parathyroid insufficiency is tetany.

### *Tetany*

This is described as a symptom complex characterized by neuromuscular

convulsions. Tetany is a symptom in hypoparathyroidism when the blood shows a decided diminution in its calcium content. In these conditions, the serum calcium may fall to as low a level as 7, 6, or less mg. to the 100 cc. of blood. Tetany may also occur in hypocalcemia not of parathyroid origin, be-

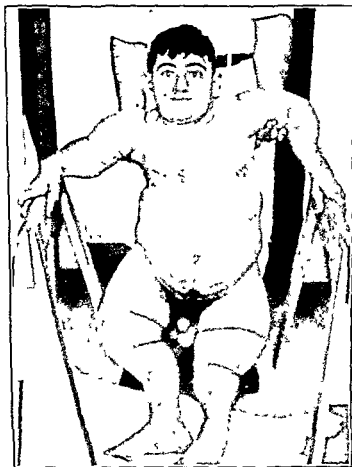


FIG. 20—Osteitis fibrosa cystica. Two of his parathyroids were removed in an effort to stop the further progress of the disease (Courtesy, Dr. Elhason and Dr. Hudson, Philadelphia General Hospital) (Also see Figs. 8 and 9, pp. 729 and 730)

hyperexcitability, which is manifested by excitement, irritability, poor muscle control, twitchings, tonic spasms of the muscles of the extremities that produce characteristic deformities, such as the obstetric hand and other attitudes and general

cause a low blood calcium is found in conditions other than frank parathyroid disease, *i. e.*, the lack of vitamin D and of actinic sun rays. Finally, tetany may be produced by a number of conditions in which both the parathyroids and blood

calcium are normal. Such is seen in alkalosis which may result from the ingestion of excessive quantities of alkalis, from the lack of HCl in the stomach caused by vomiting, or by other conditions, also, from the loss of  $\text{CO}_2$  by crying, or



Fig 21—Tetany—Hypoparathyroidism. Note the carpopedal spasm and rotation of head.

by other conditions causing hyperventilation of the lungs.

**Etiology:** The etiology of tetany is varied, it may be due to parathyropriva, to hypocalcemia, to alkalosis, to pregnancy, lactation and menstruation, to vitamin D and sunshine deficiency, to hyperventilation of the lungs and to gastrointestinal diseases. It is also found in the newborn, in infants, in rickets, in infections and in certain poisonings. Tetany may also be idiopathic and may

occur in certain localities, in certain occupations and also in epidemics. It is more prevalent during the cold winter months, possibly because of the lack of actinic sun rays and of dietary essentials.

Irrespective of its etiology, the clinical manifestations of tetany are identical, and are in aid to its diagnosis; certain signs are described which will help to identify the condition by demonstrating the hyperexcitability of the nervous system.

Tetany may occur as active or latent. Active tetany presents all or many of the signs of neuromuscular hyperactivity. Latent tetany has the neuromuscular excitability under control or it is masked, and may be brought forth by some provocation, such as anger, excitement, sickness or by mechanical, electrical or chemical irritation.

**Diagnosis.** The special diagnostic signs of tetany are as follows:

1 *Erb's Phenomenon* Increased reaction of the motor nerves to the galvanic current (constantly present).

2 *Hoffman's Phenomenon* Increased excitability of the sensory nerves to electrical stimulation.

3 *Trousseau's Phenomenon* The ulnar nerve is usually used. Contracture of the fingers is produced (obstetrical hand) in latent tetany, by the application of a tight ligature around the upper arms (Of great diagnostic value.)

4 *Chvostek's Sign* This consists of three related groups of contractures depending upon the degree of tetany. In severe tetany, light percussion in the region of the external auditory meatus (*pes anserinus*) causes contractions of the muscles of the whole side of the face closing the eyelid, contracting the ala nasi and the corner of the mouth on the

side percussed. These signs may at times be brought out by stroking of the skin near the auditory meatus. In moderate tetany, tapping over the zygoma produces contraction of the ala nasi and the muscles of the corner of the mouth. In mild tetany, percussion over the zygoma or masseter muscle will cause only slight twitching of the angles of the mouth.

5 *Schultze's Tongue Dimpling Sign*  
A dimple is formed upon the protruded tongue when it is sharply struck with a pointed instrument or finger tip.

6 *Schlesinger's Leg Phenomenon*  
Flexing the hip joint when the leg is extended at the knee causes painful spasms of the leg.

7 *The Arm Phenomenon of Pool*  
Sudden forcible abduction of the arm causes contractures of the muscles of the arm.

8 *Kashida's Phenomenon*  
Hyperexcitability of a nerve is induced by the application of a hot or cold irritant.

9 *Injection of a Foreign Protein*  
This may initiate an attack of tetany.

10 *Hypersensitivity to Adrenalin or Pilocarpine*  
Adrenalin when injected will cause a sharp rise of blood pressure, tachycardia and blanching due to constriction of the superficial vessels. The injection of pilocarpine will cause excessive sweating, "goose skin" in creased salivation, lacrimation, flashes of heat and a congested feeling in the head.

## The Adrenal Glands

### (The Suprarenal Glands)

The adrenal glands, two in number, are situated each above its respective kidney retroperitoneally. They are extremely vascular and are well supplied with lymphatics. The two component parts, i.e., the cortex and the medulla arise from different layers of the blastoderm. The cortex springs from the mesoderm and the medulla is of neuroblastic origin (ectoderm).

### The Adrenal Cortex

#### Functions of the Adrenal Cortex

(1) The cortex is essential to life, destruction of all cortical tissue causes death speedily, while the administration of cortical extract in a decorticated subject maintains life over a long period.

(2) It maintains vital influence upon body function and metabolism.

(3) It maintains a normal level of sodium and prevents the accumulation of high level of potassium in the blood.

(4) It assists the liver in storing glycogen and in converting protein into dextrose.

(5) It assists in maintaining muscle tone and endurance.

(6) It influences gonad development and function. The activities of the adrenal cortex are carried out by its hormone the production of which is stimulated by the adrenaltropic hormone of the anterior pituitary body.

**Hormone, etc.:** The cortical hormone is variously known as interrenalin, cortin, adrenocortical hormone, eschatin (commercial name) and interrenin. It is the vital hormone of the cortex. It therefore maintains life and vigor or when it is administered to individuals suffering from adrenal cortex hypofunction it restores vigor and normal metabolic processes. The administration of the cortical hormone to healthy individuals does not produce symptoms of hypercortical activity.



Substances other than the cortical hormone found in the adrenal cortex are Cartilactin suspected of being a galactagogue, ascorbic acid known also as cevitamic acid or hexuronic acid which is identical with vitamin C and cardiasin a circulatory stimulant of indefinite origin. The adrenal cortical hormone is also produced synthetically in the laboratory as Desoxycorticosterone Acetate

*Pubertas precox* is found in childhood affections (tumors) of the suprarenal cortex. The disease is characterized by premature bodily and sexual development. The individual may be either stout or thin, is quite hairy and matures early.

*Virilism* occurs in the adolescent or adult females. The individual loses her feminine appearance and assumes masculine

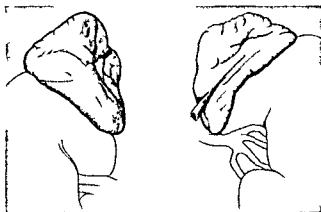


Fig. 22—Right and left adrenals  
(Engelbach's Endocrine Medicine, Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, Ill.)

and dispensed commercially under various trade names.

### Diseases of the Adrenal Cortex

Diseases of the adrenal cortex may cause hyperactivity as seen in cases of certain cortex tumors, hyperemia and hypertrophy, and hypoactivity as seen in cases of partial destruction of the cortex by syphilis, tuberculosis, or other destructive lesions.

**Cortical Hyperfunction.** The clinical syndrome produced by hyperfunction of the adrenal cortex depends upon the period of life in which the cortex becomes affected.

*Pseudohermaphroditism* is often due to congenital tumors of the adrenal cortex.

culine mannerisms and characteristics. She may become excessively stout or thin. Hair appears upon the face and body; the pubic hairs assume the masculine distribution; the voice becomes low pitched; the gait develops a masculine stride and swing; the shoulders appear broad and the pelvis seems narrow. Menstruation either ceases or menorrhagia, metrorrhagia, or oligomenorrhea develops.

*Cortical Hyperactivity in the adult male* is characterized by hyperemia, some adiposity, hypertension, and gonad hypofunction.

**Cortical Hypofunction.** This will produce weakness, pigmentation, hypotension, gastrointestinal disturbance, hy-

poglycemia and disturbed renal function leading to severe intoxication

**Addison's Disease:** This is the specific entity caused by partial destruction of the adrenal cortex. The severity of the symptoms and the course of the disease depend upon the amount of cortical tissue involved and the rapidity

around the arms. The blood pressure is very low, the systolic pressure may be between 60 and 90. Blood chemistry will show a low sodium and low sugar, a high potassium and a high urea and nonprotein nitrogen. The blood count shows secondary anemia, with a relative lymphocytosis. Anorexia, nausea, occa-



FIG. 23—Adrenal cortical tumor with pituitary basophilic adenoma in a woman. Age 36 years. (Philadelphia General Hospital)

with which it is destroyed. The disease is characterized by adynamia or severe asthenia on least exertion and pigmentation of the skin and the mucous membrane. The entire skin may become darker; dark areas are noted particularly on the hard palate, on the side of the tongue and on parts of the body exposed to the sun and to irritation, such as the face, back, scapular waistline and

axonal vomiting and other signs of gastrointestinal disturbance are prominent symptoms. There is either a hypochlorhydria or achlorhydria. Loss of weight and various nervous symptoms are common. The sexual function is greatly diminished, the heart is weak and the B.M.R. is somewhat below normal.

**Tumors of the Adrenal Cortex**  
Adrenal cortex tumors may be congeni-

tal or acquired. Congenital tumors may be benign adenoma (rare) which may undergo malignant change and primary malignant tumors such as sarcoma. Congenital cortical tumors may be responsible for pseudohermaphroditism. Acquired tumors may originate during childhood, adolescence or adulthood; they may be benign, primary malignant or metastatic. Childhood tumors may cause puberty precox. Adolescent or adulthood tumors may cause virilism, heterosexual changes, hypertrichosis or other signs of hyperadrenia. If the tumor destroys the adrenal cortex, signs of hypoadrenia may become manifest.

**Hypernephroma** (Grawitz tumor). This is a tumor of the kidney which is believed by some to develop from adrenal cortical rests; others doubt this origin. It is a malignant neoplasm which may invade the adrenal and give rise to symptoms of hyperadrenalism: i.e. hypertrichosis, macrosomia and virilism. It usually metastasizes to the lungs, liver and other organs and causes weakness, emaciation, pulmonary and gastric symptoms and occasionally hematuria.

### The Adrenal Medulla

The adrenal medulla appears to be the less important of the two suprarenal structures. The results obtained from animal experimentation show that the medulla is not essential to life. Animals whose entire medullary tissues of both adrenals were ablated continued to live for a long period and showed no ill effects. Whether this is due to compensatory work done by the other chromophil tissues in the absence of the adrenal medulla or whether the medulla is unessential is not definitely known.

#### Function of the Adrenal Medulla

The actual function of the adrenal

medulla is not definitely understood. It is believed by some that the medulla is a reserve organ functioning only when called upon by unusual emotional circumstances such as fright, anger and impending physical injury or death. Under such circumstances the medullary hormone is secreted in sufficient quantities to stimulate the circulation, tone up the nervous system and mobilize sufficient muscle glycogen so that the individual is ready for offensive or defensive action.

**Hormone.** The hormone elaborated by the adrenal medulla is known as epinephrine, adrenalin, suprarenal, adrenaline, adren and probably by several other names. It has a definite formula and is produced synthetically. Its physiologic action is stimulation of the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system. It will therefore cause increased heart rate, elevation of blood pressure, constriction of the superficial blood vessels, dilatation of the pupils and often hyperhidrosis. The medullary hormone has a beneficial effect upon bronchial asthma, upon allergic states such as urticaria, hay fever and upon certain protein reaction phenomena. It is also employed as a local anesthetic or is used in conjunction with a local anesthetic so as to enhance the action and control bleeding during the operation. It has a tendency to mobilize sugar in the blood and may therefore be used in states of acute hypoglycemia. For systemic effect, adrenalin is active only when given hypodermically, intravenously, intraperitoneally and intracardiac. It also has a mild systemic effect when applied to mucous and serous surfaces: i.e. the nose, the conjunctivae, under the tongue, in the rectum and in the vagina.

Ephedrine and synephrin are drugs that possess an adrenalinlike action and are as active by mouth as they are parenterally. These are also active when applied to mucous and serous surfaces.

### **Diseases of the Adrenal Medulla**

**Hyperfunction** of the adrenal medulla, as is found in certain tumors, hypertrophy and hyperemia of that gland, may cause vascular hypertension with or without sclerosis, arteriosclerosis, and hyperactivity of the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system and may possibly also cause hyperglycemia.

**Hypofunction** of the adrenal medulla may probably in part be responsible for asthenia, hypotension, muscular insufficiency and hypoglycemia.

**Adrenal Tumors:** Tumors of the adrenal medulla are of three types.

(1) **Neuroblastoma:** These are found in infants and young children. The tumor is not large, it usually affects the right adrenal and metastasizes to the liver, which becomes enormously enlarged and to the mesenteric lymph nodes. Another variety of this type metastasizes to the orbit, to other parts of the skull and to the ribs, sternum, long bones, and occasionally to the internal organs.

(2) **Ganglioneuroma:** These are found in children and young adults. They may be comparatively benign and may cause hypertension, hyperglycemia and symptoms attributable to hyperstimulation of the sympathetic nervous system.

(3) **Pheochromocytoma** (Chromaffin Cell Tumors, Paraganglioma):

These are usually encapsulated benign tumors; they are found in old people and may not cause any symptoms. Occasionally a paraganglioma, like a malignant blastoma, may cause periodic intermittent attacks of hypertension, malaise, tachycardia, profuse sweating, headache and nervousness.

**Neurocirculatory Asthenia** (Autonomic Ataxia). This condition presents varied manifestations of instability of the autonomic nervous system. Crile attributes this syndrome to hyperfunction of the adrenal medulla and describes it as "excessive stimulation of the adrenal sympathetic nervous system."

### **Other Adrenal Lesions**

Various lesions may affect one or both glands as a whole, or either or both cortices or medullae. These lesions may be various types of primary or secondary tumors, or abscesses, or they may be caused by tuberculosis, miliary or caseous, by syphilis of various types and stages, and also by hemorrhage, inflammations, hypertrophy, atrophy, and degenerations.

The symptoms of these lesions depend upon whether they are stimulating or destructive and whether they affect one or both glands, or the cortex or the medulla of either gland, as well as upon the amount of damage done by them. Cysts, if large, may destroy the adrenals and cause renal pressure symptoms. Hemorrhage, when large, will cause sudden death. Syphilis and tuberculosis may cause Addison's disease or hypocortical asthenia.

## The Pancreas (Islands of Langerhans)

The endocrine portion of the pancreas resides in the islands of Langerhans

### Anatomy and Physiology of the Islands of Langerhans

**Anatomy** The islands of Langerhans are found between the alveoli of the pancreatic structures and are more than twice as numerous in the tail as in the head of the pancreas. They are composed of small groups of polyhedral cells forming a network in which many capillaries ramify. The islands of Langerhans are made up of three types of cells which have different staining qualities. The beta cells which are the most numerous secrete the hormone insulin.

**Hormone** Several principles said to possess a blood pressure lowering action have been extracted from pancreatic tissue devoid of the islands. These are questionable hormones. The actual hormone secreted by the islands of Langerhans is insulin.

**Physiologic Action of Insulin** Insulin controls carbohydrate metabolism by enabling the tissues to burn sugar by increasing the ability of the liver and muscles to store sugar in the form of glycogen and by inhibiting the formation of sugar, amino acids and perhaps fat in the liver. It thus regulates the amount of glucose in the circulating blood and the amount of glycogen stored in the liver and the muscles as a ready source of energy. The islands of Langerhans are said to be influenced by the pancreatropic and contra-insulin principles of the anterior pituitary body

### Diseases of Islands of Langerhans Origin

Hyperactivity of the islands of Langerhans causes an increased secretion

of insulin and therefore hypoglycemia.

Hypoactivity of the islands of Langerhans causes a scarcity of insulin therefore hyperglycemia.

### Hypoglycemia or Glycopenia

The normal blood sugar after a 12 hour fast is between 90 and 120 mg per 100 cc of blood. Values less than 70 mg are considered as hypoglycemia. Hypoglycemia or an abnormally low sugar content of the blood may be caused by an overdose of insulin, by adenoma or other tumor in the pancreas which stimulates the islands of Langerhans to greater activity, by hypertrophy or hyperplasia of the islands and by hypoactivity of the pituitary, adrenals and thyroid. Hypoglycemia also occurs in diseases of the liver in which there is diminished storage or increased release of glycogen after severe muscular exertion and in conditions in which sugar is rapidly lost from the body. Hypoglycemia with excessive storage of glycogen in the liver and infantilism is known as Von Gierke's disease.

**Symptoms of Hypoglycemia** These depend upon the degree of blood sugar impoverishment. In moderate hypoglycemia there is gnawing hunger, marked weakness and fatigue, sweating, anxiety, irritability, restlessness and nervous trembling. These symptoms may come on suddenly or may be more or less constant. They are relieved by taking sugar or by frequent feeding. Marked hypoglycemia may come on suddenly with severe sweats, cold clammy skin, stupor, amnesia or coma; there may also be muscular twitchings, local or general convulsions and absent or weak deep reflexes. The timely administra-

tion of glucose will usually produce spontaneous recovery

### *Hyperglycemia*

An increase in the sugar content of the blood above the normal is usually caused by a hypoactivity of the islands of Langerhans in which an insufficient amount of insulin is produced, or in conditions where the tissues are incapable of utilizing sugar at the normal rate. Hyperglycemia occurs in diabetes mellitus, in bronzed diabetes (hemachromatosis), and it may also occur in certain brain diseases or tumors, skull injuries, meningitis, hyperthyroidism, hyperadrenalism, hyperpituitarism, and in increased hydrogen ion concentration of the blood.

**Diabetes Mellitus** This is characterized by hyperglycemia, glycosuria, polyuria, increased appetite and thirst, and loss of weight. Other symptoms such as pruritis, skin lesions, neuritic pain and visual disturbances are frequently encountered. Complications such as carbuncles, furuncles, ulceration and, at times, gangrene of an extremity and arteriosclerosis, coronary disease, ketosis, and diabetic coma may occur in untreated cases. Diabetes mellitus is often a familial disease and occurs more frequently among the obese than in the nonobese. It may occur during childhood or during adulthood. The disease is of insidious onset and may not be suspected by the patient until severe symptoms develop. The diagnosis of diabetes mellitus is based on the presence of glucose in the urine, an abnormal amount of sugar in the fasting blood and the glucose tolerance test. The glucose tolerance test will show a high curve which indicates a low sugar tolerance. (For

the significance of glycosuria, hyperglycemia and sugar tolerance, see p. 1012)

**Treatment:** In the treatment of diabetes mellitus it is important to adjust the patient's diet to his capacity to utilize a sufficient amount of carbohydrates without causing a hyperglycemia, the amount of fats without causing acidosis, and the proper amount of protein required for the individual's need. Should the patient be unable to utilize the minimum requirement of carbohydrates without causing hyperglycemia then a sufficient number of units of insulin is to be injected subcutaneously about one half hour before each meal. The injected insulin will thus substitute for the insulin scarcity caused by the hypoactivity of the islands of Langerhans.

In order to determine the amount of carbohydrates, fats and proteins required by the individual the number of Calories necessary for his basal maintenance must first be calculated. Each kilogram of body weight requires about 30 Calories. A patient weighing 60 kilograms would require 1800 Calories in 24 hours, which under certain circumstances may be divided as follows—carbohydrates 360 Calories, proteins 240 Calories, and fats 1200 Calories. One gram of carbohydrates yields 4 Calories; therefore 90 grams of carbohydrates. 1 gram of proteins yields 4 Calories; therefore 60 grams of proteins. 1 gram of fats yields 9 Calories; therefore 133.3 grams of fats.

These rates may have to be readjusted under various circumstances. In addition to the Caloric requirements there must be added to the diet salts, vitamins and fluids. When insulin is necessary it is well to bear in mind that 1 unit of insulin will take care of about 2.5 Gm. of glucose. The varieties of insulin used for

medicinal purposes are plain insulin, protamine zinc insulin and crystalline insulin

*Ketosis or diabetic coma* may occur in diabetics and should be differentiated from insulin shock or hypoglycemia

### Differential Table of Coma in Hypoglycemia and Hyperglycemia

#### *Hypoglycemia or Hyperinsulinism or Insulin Shock Coma*

- 1 Prodromal Symptoms
  - (a) Sudden onset with rapid manifestation of prodromal symptoms
  - (b) Coma may be preceded by sudden weakness hunger pain sweating double vision great anxiety, nervous trembling delirium convulsions and coma
- 2 During the State of Coma
  - (a) Breathing is rapid and shallow
  - (b) Appears as if asleep
  - (c) No characteristic odor on the breath
  - (d) Unconsciousness, though plantar reflexes are elicitable and convulsions often occur
  - (e) Eyeballs not soft
  - (f) Profuse sweating (a constant and characteristic sign)
  - (g) Low blood pressure
  - (h) Subnormal temperature

#### *Laboratory Findings*

- (i) Hypoglycemia marked
- (j) Absence of glycosuria
- (k) No leukocytosis
- (l) Carbon dioxide alveolar air content within normal limits
- (m) If due to an overdose of insulin it is seldom fatal when properly and promptly treated. If due to a tumor or other lesion of the pancreas repeated attacks may eventually prove fatal

#### *Hyperglycemia or Hypoinsulinism or Diabetic Coma (Ketosis)*

- 1 Prodromal Symptoms
  - (a) Gradual onset prodromal symptoms of varying types
  - (b) Coma may be preceded by a cyanotic dyspnea nausea and vomiting anorexia thirst abdominal cramps and constipation. There also occur marked headache with weakness malaise muscular flaccidity and general irritability restlessness progressive sleepiness followed by stupor and coma.
- 2 During the State of Coma
  - (a) Breathing is slow deep and sighing (Kussmaul's type of air hunger respiration)
  - (b) Patient appears ill
  - (c) Fruity odor on the breath cherry red lips and flushed cheeks
  - (d) Complete unconsciousness with absence of reflexes and only occasionally convulsions
  - (e) Soft eyeballs (Riesman's sign)
  - (f) Marked dehydration no sweating
  - (g) Low blood pressure though at times it may be high
  - (h) Hyperpyrexia common

#### *Laboratory Findings*

- (i) Hyperglycemia usually marked
- (j) Glycosuria and acetoneuria are usually present
- (k) Leukocytosis with normal differential count
- (l) Alveolar air carbon dioxide content greatly reduced
- (m) Slow response to medication at times fatal

## The Gonads (Male and Female)

The gonads or sex glands are the organs which primarily determine the sex of the individual and make reproduction possible. The reproductive function of the gonads is under the control of the gonadotropic hormone of the anterior pituitary body. Prolan A is believed to stimulate spermatogenesis in the male and follicle ripening in the female. Prolan B is said to stimulate the production of the male hormone secreted by the interstitial cells and the lutein hormone secreted by the corpus luteum.

### The Male Gonads

From the endocrinologic viewpoint the testes are the most important structure of the male gonads. They have both an external and internal secretion.

**Anatomy** The adult testes vary somewhat in size in different individuals; they measure approximately 4 by 2.5 by 3 cm., each weighing from 10 to 14 Gm. They are suspended in the scrotum; the left usually hangs a little lower than the right. Each testicle is covered by three coats, *viz.* the tunica vaginalis, testes, the tunica albuginea, and the tunica vasculosa. Structurally the testis is divided into numerous lobules by offshoots from the tunica albuginea. The lobules contain the convoluted seminiferous tubules. Between the seminiferous tubules there is a stroma of connective tissue which harbors the *interstitial cells of Leydig*. The seminiferous tubules are lined by the spermatogonia cells from which, by a complicated process, the spermatozoa are developed. The spermatozoa and the fluid element of the semen are an external secretion and not a hormone. It is, however, believed that the spermatogenic cells also pro-

duce a hormone though as yet not identified. Spermatogenesis begins at puberty and continues to old age.

**Hormone** The testicular hormone *testosterone* (male hormone) is secreted by the interstitial cells of Leydig. A similar hormone with slight modification of its formula is recoverable from male urine and is known as *androsterone*. Testosterone is now being manufactured synthetically and is obtainable as testosterone propionate or by various trade names such as Oreton, Perandren, Androstene B, etc.

The other testicular substance is believed to be derived from the germinal epithelium, probably from the cells of Sertoli, and is named *inhibin*. It is supposed to inhibit the anterior pituitary gonadotropic hormone, therefore causing testicular atrophy.

**Function of Testosterone** Testosterone assists in the maturation of the skeleton; it accelerates epiphyseal ossification and helps the development of the skeletal muscles and the larynx. It is responsible for the male type of hair and fat distribution and is concerned with the development of the male sex organs, sex function, and to some extent spermatogenesis. Testosterone propionate reduces benign hypertrophy of the prostate and may stimulate libido.

**Pathology** The testicles may become injured by disease or trauma or they may be invaded by various types of tumors which may alter their function and cause hyper- or hypogonadism. Endocrinopathies of testicular origin may be congenital or acquired and may be primary or secondary, the latter being the result of disease of other endocrine glands such



as the pituitary, thyroid suprarenal bodies and probably pineal and thymus

### **Endocrine Diseases of Male** **Gonad Origin**

**Cryptorchism** Cryptorchism (retained or undescended testicles) may be unilateral or bilateral

**Unilateral Cryptorchism** This may not be attended with pronounced hormonal disturbance since the one normally situated testicle may perform the required functions. These individuals as a rule show some sparsity of facial hair and are somewhat hypogonad

**Bilateral Cryptorchism** This is always attended with aspermatogenesis because the intraabdominal temperature destroys the spermatogenic function. Other manifestations vary. Some of the adults may have normal male secondary sex characteristics be of good stature and have fairly normal male hair distribution others may be markedly lacking in secondary male sex characteristics. The external genitalia are poorly developed the hair distribution is of the female type and the breast development may resemble the female type

**Hypogonadism (Eunuchoidism)** Hypogonadism may be of various types

**Primary Hypogonadism** This presents the following characteristics. The trunk is short the upper and lower extremities are disproportionately long the face is small and beardless the genitalia are small or rudimentary and the voice is high pitched

**Pituitary Hypogonadism** This is characterized by a comparatively long trunk and proportionately shorter lower extremities. The face is rounded the skin is pale and facial hair is scarce. There is the usual hypopituitary fat dis-

tribution with large pads of fat over the trochanteric region the breasts may be prominent the genitalia are poorly developed and the prostate is small. Aspermatogenesis is the rule

**Thymus Type of Hypogonadism** In this condition the body length is some-

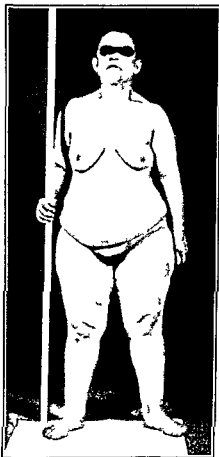


Fig. 24—Pseudohermaphroditism. Age 42 years with bilateral cryptorchism. Note the well developed breasts female hair distribution on the mons no hair upon the face and female shaped pelvis

what shorter than the lower extremities. The upper and lower extremities are cylindrical and well molded the skin is of soft texture the upper lateral incisors are rudimentary the beard is sparse the pubic hair is of the female type the genitalia may be rudimentary

or of nearly normal size, libido and potentiality are subnormal, sterility occurs in a large proportion of cases, and homosexualism is fairly common

**Hypothyroid Type:** This type shows evidence of cretinism or of myxedema, the body is thick, hair distribution is scanty, the skin is lustreless and ine-

**Eunuchism or agonadism** is acquired after castration. The characteristics depend upon the age at which the individual was castrated. Castration during early childhood prevents the development of sexual maturity and function and of secondary sex characteristics. Castration after puberty causes retrogression

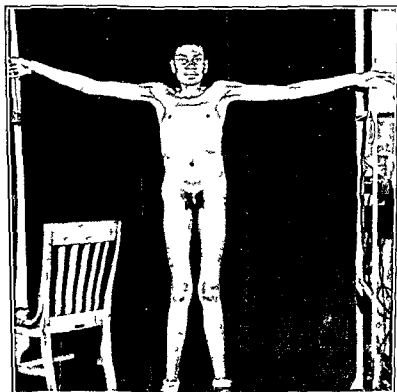


Fig 25—Congenital eunuchoidism. Age 24 years. Note the length of extremities in proportion to the trunk (Philadelphia General Hospital)

lastic, the stature is undersized, and the genitalia are subnormal in development and function

**Eunuchoidism:** This is congenital hypogonadism of a severe degree and may show characteristics of any one of the other types or of all the types combined. These individuals are always sterile and devoid of both libido and potentiality

of secondary sex characteristics though the penis remains normal size. Eunuchs are sterile but are not entirely devoid of libido and potentiality. In body development the eunuch may be fat or thin.

**Pseudohermaphroditism:** Pseudohermaphroditism is characterized by the presence of characteristics of both sexes. The predominately male individual may have breasts and deformity of his gonads

somewhat resembling the female genitalia and the general appearance and mannerisms may be feminine

**Hypergonadism** Hypergonadism may occur during childhood or during adulthood *Childhood hypergonadism* or *macrogenitosomia precox* may occur at an early age and is often caused by an adenoma of the pineal body the pituitary gland or the adrenals The child so affected develops premature masculinity

*Adult hypergonadism* is characterized chiefly by increased function of the sex glands (SEE ALSO p 707)

### The Female Gonads

The ovaries possess two internal and one external secretions The internal secretions are (a) The follicular hormone and (b) the luteal hormone and the external secretion is the production of the ova Both of these secretions are under the control of the gonadotropic hormones of the anterior pituitary body

**Anatomy of the Ovaries** The ovaries are two nodular grayish pink bodies situated one on either side of the uterus attached to its broad ligament behind and below the Fallopian tubes Each ovary measures approximately 4 by 2 by 1 cm and weighs from 2 to 3.5 Gm and is divided into a cortex and medulla The entire gland is enveloped by a layer of germinal epithelium the germinal epithelium of Waldeyer which is the source of the ova and follicles The cortex is composed of interstitial connective tissue in which are embedded the follicles which later harbor the ova The medulla is made up of connective tissue smooth muscle and elastic fibers blood vessels and lymphatics At birth each ovary contains its allotted number of primordial follicles no new ones are added throughout life From birth to

puberty, before menstruation is established many of the primordial follicles reach the stage of ripening and then retrogress and undergo atresia These atretic follicles elaborate the follicular hormone which in the prepuberty stage influences the characteristic somatic development of the girl (secondary female sex characteristics)

Beginning at puberty and continuing to the menopause the ovum is extruded from the ovary once a month as each follicle ripens and finds its way into the uterus The corpus luteum originates at the point in the ovary through which the ovum has ruptured and begins its development If the ovum remains unfertilized the corpus luteum continues to develop until after menstruation has taken place when it retrogresses and becomes absorbed Should the ovum become fertilized then the corpus luteum continues to grow and elaborates its hormone which prepares the endometrium for the reception of the ovum and aids in the maintenance of pregnancy The corpus luteum continues to grow within the ovary reaching its maximum at the 13th week of pregnancy when the placenta is formed and it remains at that size until the end of pregnancy when it becomes absorbed

The placenta when fully formed elaborates the follicular and the pituitary like hormone such as is found in the blood and urine of pregnancy namely Antuitrin S A P L Follutin etc

**The Ovarian Hormones** The follicular hormone which is variously known as Estrin Estradiol Theelin Theelol Folluculin Progynon Amnotin etc is produced in the graafian follicle and in the placenta A small quantity of this hormone is found in the blood and urine of normal adult women from puberty to

the menopause. The quantity is appreciably increased after menstruation. A great abundance of this hormone is found during pregnancy and in the presence of certain ovarian tumors.

**Function of the Follicular Hormone:** It causes development of the secondary sex characteristics of the female, development of menstruation, growth of the myometrium, development of the endometrium, and of the adult type of vaginal mucosa. It is also responsible for the development of the mammary ducts, and for rhythmic uterine contractions.

**Function of the Luteal Hormone:** This hormone is known as progesterone. It helps to prepare the endometrium for the reception of the ovum and inhibits ovulation, menstruation, and uterine contractions; it maintains pregnancy, and causes the development of acinar tissue in the breasts.

**Menstruation:** This is a characteristic monthly function of normal nonpregnant adult women which begins at puberty and stops at the menopause. The normal cycle is initiated at puberty by the follicle maturing and the luteinizing hormones of the anterior pituitary body acting upon the follicular and luteal hormones of the ovary. About 12 or 15 days after the ovum is released from the ovary, if not fertilized, it is cast off from the uterus, together with endometrium tissue, mucus, degenerated epithelium and blood from the ruptured premenstrual endometrial blood vessels. This constitutes the menstrual flow, which generally occurs every 28 days and lasts from four to six days.

**Pathology:** Ovarian function may be disturbed by disease of the ovaries and by pathologic lesions in the anterior pituitary body, the adrenal cortex, the

thyroid, and, possibly, by the pineal body and the thymus.

### **Endocrine Diseases of Ovarian Origin**

**Cysts and Tumors:** Lesions, such as cysts and tumors, either congenital or acquired, may affect the internal secretion of the ovary and produce hyperfunction, hypofunction or afuction of these glands.



Fig. 26—Pubertas precox. Age seven years. Due to a granulosa tumor of the ovary.

**Granulosa Cell Tumors and Theca Cell Tumors:** These stimulate the production of large amounts of the estrogenic hormone, therefore in the young they may produce premature matronism (premature puberty) with early menstruation and precocious premature secondary sex characteristics. In older women they may produce metrorrhagia and in those past the menopause there

may be reinstituted periodic menstrual bleeding without ovulation

**Arrhenoblastomata** This may cause masculine characteristics and such changes as amenorrhea mammary atrophy hypertrophy of the clitoris and hypertrichosis upon the face and body. Removal of such a tumor causes the disappearance of the male characteristics and the return of femininity

**Hypoovarianism** Hypoovarianism may cause amenorrhea hypomenorrhea dysmenorrhea and sterility as well as somatic changes the severity of which depend upon the degree of hypofunction and the age at which it started

**Preadolescent Hypoovarianism** is characterized by failure in the development of the breasts and genitals and failure also in the initiation of menstruation at puberty. The individual is usually tall the lower extremities are proportionately longer than the trunk and there is a tendency to obesity

**Adolescent Hypogonadism** is characterized by incomplete development of secondary sex characteristics. Menstruation is delayed and when it does appear is scanty irregular and may be painful. The somatic development is of two types. The one is the thin type slender and tall with long extremities and long slender fingers and toes and narrow chest with immature breasts the other is the obese pudgy type with large breasts and trochanteric pads of fat. Both types are usually sterile

**Adult Hypogonadism** or late castrates present amenorrhea vasomotor phenomena such as hot flushes chills sweats and parasthesia with functional

nervous phenomena. The individuals may become fat or stay thin and a growth of long coarse hairs upon the chin and around the corners of the mouth appears

Hypogonadism in both sexes may occur in association with infantilism and is due to hypofunction of the anterior pituitary body. The hypogonadism associated with cretinism is due to hypothyroidism

**Hyperovarianism Pubertas Precoxa** In the preadolescent stage hyperovarianism or pubertas precox is characterized by signs of early maturity: i. e. early appearance of pubic hair marked enlargement of the breasts precocious development of the external genitalia and early initiation of menstruation. There is also a rapid skeletal growth during the first decade but growth stops early in the second decade because of premature epiphyseal ossification

**Adult Hyperovarianism** This may present various manifestations such as increased libido nymphomania unusual fertility and in some cases metrorrhagia uterine hypertrophy and other signs of hyperfemininity

**Virilism** This term is generally applied to women who present masculine characteristics in mannerism hair distribution and muscle development. At an early stage they show evidence of hypersexuality and later there occurs sexual reversion. Examples of this type are seen in pituitary basophilism adrenal cortex tumors and ovarian arrhenoblastoma

For nonendocrine diseases of the female genitalia see p 695

## SECTION 13

# The Nervous System

## CHAPTER XXVII

### Anatomy, Physiology and Examination of the Nervous System

The nervous system is composed of specialized cells and their projecting fibers (the neuron) whose function it is to guide the destinies of the individual in relation to his own vital processes and to his surroundings. It may be considered the ordinance department of the body which, by virtue of its elaborate telegraph and decoding system, perceives, transmits and decodes all types of sensory impulses from the various tissues and organs of the body and finally delivers suitable motor, secretory or other responses to these impulses to their proper destinations.

The neurons are held together and supported by neuroglia which are a special type of cells also of ectodermal origin but which do not participate in conduction or transmission of impulses.

The nervous system is divided into three parts: (1) The central or cerebrospinal nervous system, (2) the peripheral nervous system and (3) the autonomic or vegetative nervous system.

(1) **The Central, Somatic or Cerebrospinal Nervous System.** This system includes the brain which is encased in the cranium, and the spinal cord, a continuation of the brain, which is contained within the spinal column.

(2) **The Peripheral Nervous System.** This is made up of a series of nerves through which both the brain and the spinal cord exert their influence upon the various structures and functions of the body. The nerves contain sensory and motor fibers. The cerebrospinal, central or somatic nervous system controls the voluntary movements of the body and the general and the special senses.

(3) **The Autonomic or Involuntary Nervous System.** The autonomic nervous system presides over the functions of the body not under voluntary control, i. e., the heart, lungs, abdominal viscera, the blood vessels, the secretory and excretory glands, etc. The autonomic system is divided into the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions. The parasympathetic or craniosacral autonomic system contains fibers from the brain and the spinal cord which approach the peripheral ganglia through the 3rd, 7th, 9th, 10th and 11th cranial nerves and through the pelvic nerve from the 2nd, 3rd and 4th sacral nerves.

The sympathetic fibers consist of a paired trunk of nerve fibers and ganglia extending from the superior cervical ganglion to the ganglion impar anterior to the 5th sacral vertebra (SEE p 825).

### Anatomy and Physiology of the Nervous System

#### The Central or Cerebrospinal Nervous System

##### The Neuron

The unit of the entire nervous system is the nerve cell or neuron. The nerve cell or neuron consists of a mass of

protoplasm in the center of which resides a nucleus and from its periphery spring two types of elongated processes or fibers known as dendrites and axons. The dendrites are short fibers, irregular in shape, having many branches and

terminating a short distance from their cell body. Each neuron usually possesses several dendrites, though in some neurons they are absent. The axon or axis cylinder is usually single of small diameter, smooth and of relatively great length, terminating in numerous fine branches at some distance from its cell origin. The dendrites and axons form the nerve fibers. A large number of nerve fibers (from a large number of cells) bound together in a universal sheath forms a nerve trunk. Impulses arising in a cell are transmitted by its axon to another cell.

The entire nervous system is thus composed of individual neurons (nerve cells and their tentacles) grouped in special types of bundles. One type conducts impulses from the periphery to the central nervous system (centripetal), they form the sensory or afferent paths. Another type conducts impulses from the central nervous system to the peripheral organs and muscles (centrifugal) and form motor or efferent paths.

Two other types run between the motor and sensory paths. These are the important connecting links which form the intracentral tracts and are known as the association conduction and reflex conduction.

The junction by which the impulse is transmitted from one cell to another is known as a synapse.

A ganglion is a collection or a mass of cells of similar function which serves as an energizing center for their nerve fibers. There are many ganglia distributed throughout the nervous system. Some are large containing countless cells, others are small being made up of a few cells. They may possess sensory motor or special function.

### The Nerve Fibers

The nerve fibers, both the myelinated and the unmyelinated, are the axis cylinders of the nerve cells. They are the chief components of the white substance of the nervous system and also, to some extent, help to form the gray matter. Through the nerve fibers relations are established between cells that may be either in close proximity or a great distance. The nerve fibers receive their nutrition and specific functions from their individual nerve cells, when detached from their cells they lose their ability to conduct impulses.

Normally the nerve impulse is conducted along the entire length of the nerve with undiminished intensity. When poisoned with a narcotic, the impulse is either diminished in intensity or abolished in the poisoned area.

**Degeneration and Regeneration**  
When an axon is severed the peripheral portion degenerates completely, while the central stump and the cell body show transitory changes.

Wallerian degeneration is that process when the distal (peripheral) portion of a cut nerve undergoes a chemical change with eventual complete disappearance of that portion of the fiber. The neurilemma becomes a chain of sheath cells.

Retrograde degeneration is that process where the central stump degenerates back to a node of Ranvier. The cell body shows the morphologic characteristic of the so-called axonal chromatolysis. The closer to the cell body the degenerative change the more severe is this process.

Regeneration takes place only in the peripheral nervous system. The chain of sheath cells forms a pathway along which the new axon grows as a bud from the



central stump The neurilemma is later re formed from the sheath cell chain Central neurones have no sheath cells and do not regenerate.

### *Nerve Trunks*

The nerves are trunks containing many nerve fibers which are encased in a common sheath The thickness of the nerve depends upon the number of nerve fibers it contains As the nerve runs along its course from its point of origin to its destination it gives off many branches and individual fibers which innervate the various structures of the body Some of the nerves carry only sensory fibers others carry only motor fibers and still others carry both sensory and motor fibers These last are known as mixed nerves There are also nerves which carry special impulses to specialized organs such as sight, hearing, pain, touch, smell, secretion and other functions The large nerves originate from or are attached to the brain the spinal cord and some of the large ganglia The brain has 12 pairs of nerves spoken of as the Cranial Nerves and the spinal cord has 31 pairs of nerves spoken of as the Spinal Nerves These nerves run in pairs so that each lateral half of the body is supplied by an identical nerve

### *The Plexuses*

A nerve plexus is a tangle of nerves made up of communicating branches of neighboring nerves or of the primary branches of nerve trunks The nerves emanating from a plexus usually carry funiculi and primary fibers of several nerve trunks Both the central and the automatic nervous systems possess many large and small plexuses

### *The Cerebrospinal Fluid<sup>1</sup>*

The cerebrospinal fluid is a specialized clear tissue fluid normally containing about 0.02 per cent of protein 0.08 per cent of glucose 0.73 to 0.75 per cent of chlorides and a few lymphocytes The spinal fluid pressure within the spinal canal is about 10 mm of mercury or 20 mm of water In disease of the brain and meninges and in various infections the spinal fluid will show changes in its composition and quantity (pressure) and may harbor various bacteria and yield specific reactions The spinal fluid occupies the subarachnoid space the various cisternae the sheaths of the spinal and cranial nerves particularly of the optic and auditory nerves the ventricles of the brain and the spinal canal

**Function of the Cerebrospinal Fluid** It serves as a medium for nutrient exchanges in the nervous system; acts as a fluid buffer and helps to regulate intracranial pressure by increasing in quantity when the brain shrinks and decreasing in quantity when the brain expands

Pathologically when the intracranial pressure becomes excessive as in brain tumor there may result venous compression papilloptic meningitis anemia due to cerebellar wedging into the foramen magnum and hydrocephalus

### *The Encephalon (The Brain)*

The brain encased in the cranium is composed of several parts that vary in structure and in function It is composed of two identical lateral halves bridged together by an isthmus (corpus callosum) in which many fibers cross from one side of the brain to the other The brain as a whole receives and transmits

mits impulses by way of the spinal cord and cranial nerves and presides over most of the individual's functions

### External Appearance of the Brain

The shape of the brain usually conforms to the contour of the cranial cavity. Its upper surface is arched and its lower one flattened. The gray matter is distributed over the periphery of the brain giving it that grayish appearance, the white matter is situated internally. This is just the reverse of what is found in the spinal cord where the white matter is external and the gray matter internal. The brain as a whole is surrounded by the three layers of meninges namely the pia, the arachnoid and the dura. It is well supplied with blood vessels and with spaces for the housing of the cerebrospinal fluid. The weight of the brain varies with sex, age and size of the individual. Its average weight in young adult men of medium stature is 1360 Gm. It is less in women and in persons of small stature or advanced age.

**The Component Parts of the Brain** The brain may be divided horizontally into two planes, a higher and a lower plane.

**The Higher Plane** This is represented by the cerebral hemispheres each being divided into the frontal, parietal, temporal and occipital lobes. The cerebral hemispheres are ovoid in shape. They are separated from each other by the longitudinal fissure. The corpus callosum is a broad commissural band joining the two hemispheres at their under surface. The cerebral cortex is concerned with intellectual, motor, sensory and special sense activities.

**The Lower Plane** The base of the brain lies between the cerebral hemispheres and the spinal cord. It presents the medulla oblongata, the pons, the

cerebellum, the cerebral peduncles, the optic tract, the optic chiasm and the optic nerves, the substantia perforata posterior, the mammillary bodies, the tuber cinereum, the pituitary body and the anterior perforated substance.

The brain may also be divided longitudinally into three parts: (1) The prosencephalon or forebrain, (2) the mesencephalon or midbrain, (3) the metencephalon or rhombencephalon, the hindbrain or brain stem. Each of the three parts possesses varied structures that are important centers.

**The Brain Ventricles** There are four brain ventricles which intercommunicate. They are situated one in each lateral hemisphere. The third lies between the two lateral halves of the diencephalon and the fourth in the rhombencephalon. The central canal of the spinal cord which is continuous in the medulla opens into the fourth ventricle which is continuous with the cerebral aqueduct and which in turn opens into the third ventricle. Near the anterior border of the third ventricle is situated a small opening one in each lateral wall, this is known as the foramen of Monro or the interventricular foramen. It leads into the ventricle of each lateral hemisphere. The two lateral ventricles.

**The Motor Pathways of the Brain and Cerebral Localization** The motor impulses from the cerebral cortex which exercise voluntary control over the skeletal muscles are conducted by way of the pyramidal tracts. This motor pathway originates in the cerebral cortex and descending through the spinal cord receives impulses from several sources i.e. from the corpora quadrigemina through the tectospinal tract from the vestibular nucleus by way of the vestibulospinal tract from the large

motor cells of the reticular formation through the reticulospinal path from the cerebellum from the corpus striatum and possibly also from the thalamus or subthalamus by way of the thalamospinal tract. It is believed that motor impulses

nerve or to the anterior gray columns of the spinal cord, and *lower motor neurons* or primary motor neurons which relay these impulses from there to the muscles. A third and much shorter conduction chain may be interposed be

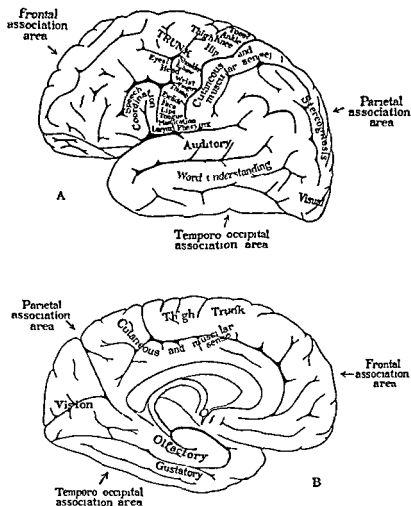


Fig 1—Side view of cerebrum showing specialized areas of cortex and their function.  
(From Morris Anatomy P Blakiston's Son & Co)

may also be transmitted by way of the extra pyramidal motor tract

The pyramidal system consists of two motor unit chains. *Upper motor neurons* which conduct motor impulses from the cortex to the motor nuclei of the cranial

tween the upper and lower motor units

**The Sensory Pathways** The sensory impulses that arise through the body are transmitted either to the cerebral cortex by various paths by way of the thalamus or are taken care of by

reflex action in the spinal cord the medulla or structures of the brain other than the cerebral cortex

Gnostic sensations reach the cerebral cortex by way of the peripheral nerves through the dorsal roots of the spinal nerves they ascend the posterior white columns of the cord and ascend uncrossed to the nuclei gracilis and cuneatus in the medulla. The fibers leaving these nuclei cross in the medial fillet (lemniscus) and ascend to the thalamus and from it by way of the posterior limb of the internal capsule and the corona radiata to the somesthetic area of the cerebral cortex in the posterior central gyrus

Thus a fairly large portion of the cerebral cortex is concerned with perceiving general body sensations. This sensory portion lies in the greater part of the surface of the parietal lobes, occupying the postcentral gyrus, the superior parietal lobule and the part of the supramarginal and angular gyri

The gross sensations of pain temperature and general movements are perceived in the thalamic region but the ability to discriminate between degrees and types of these sensations is the function of the cerebral cortex. The cerebral cortex has the ability to identify and discriminate as follows

(a) The degrees of heat : e warm hot burning cool cold or freezing

(b) Touch : e degree of smoothness or roughness

(c) Identify each of the two sharp points placed closed together upon the surface

(d) The direction of small joints whether displaced upwards downwards or laterally

(e) The size shape texture and weight of objects (stereognostic sense)

(f) The relations of a stimulus in one two or three dimensional space

The special senses such as hearing sight smell and taste are conveyed to the brain by special cranial nerves stretching from the special sense organs to definite centers in the brain

### The Cerebellum

The cerebellum like the cerebrum has its gray matter externally and its white matter internally. It is made up of two hemispheres the cerebellar hemispheres and a connecting bridge the vermis. The cerebellum contains several motor and sensory tracts that are on their way from the spinal cord to the cerebrum and is also the seat of a number of important functions. It is connected to the brain stem by the inferior middle and superior peduncles

Each cerebellar hemisphere receives homolateral impulses from muscles tendons ligaments and other deep structures and contralateral impulses through the vestibule. Each cerebellar hemisphere influences the postural activity and muscle movements of its own side of the body. Stimulation of the cerebellum produces flexor attitudes. Suppression of cerebellar activity will produce ipsilaterally hypotonus weakness or asthenia of the affected muscles ataxia incoordination or asynergy of movement. Disease of the cerebellum or its pathways will produce jerky and misdirected movements such as are seen in chorea intention tremors nystagmus past pointing and pendular patellar reflexes tremors and postural defects

Equilibrium and Orientation Pathways. The centripetal pathways to the cerebellum are Gowers tract and the direct cerebellar tracts, the pathway from the labyrinth the inferior olive and

The pathway from the labyrinth transmits to the cerebellum the excitations that are produced in the semicircular canals by the pressure of the endolymph on the peripheral terminations of the vestibular nerve. The vestibular nerve leads to Deiters's nucleus and from this a pathway goes to the cerebellum.

The cerebrum influences cerebellar activity through corticopontocerebellar fibers.

**Centrifugal Pathways.** 1 The rubrospinal pathway consisting of three neuron systems. The cerebelloolivary, the olivorubric, and the rubrospinal. The tract is direct in consequence of the double decussation, at first of the olivorubric system in Wernick's decussation, and then of the rubrospinal neuron in Forel's decussation.

2 The vestibulospinal pathway.

3 Ways of communication between Deiters's nucleus and the nuclei of the eye muscles. Of these, the known paths are those from the third nerve nucleus of the opposite side and the sixth nerve nucleus of the same side.

For Disturbances of Equilibrium and Orientation see p 849.

### ***The Pons (Pons Varioli)***

The pons is continuous with the medulla oblongata. The peripheral neurons of the sixth and seventh as well as the motor division of the fifth cranial nerves originate in its gray matter. It also contains the sensory nucleus of the fifth nerve and motor and sensory tracts which pass from the cord to the cerebellum and the cerebral cortex.

### ***The Medulla Oblongata (Spinal Bulb)***

The medulla oblongata extends from the spinal cord at the level of the upper border of the atlas to the lower margin

of the pons. The external surface of the medulla somewhat resembles the spinal cord except that it is considerably thicker. The internal appearance and the distribution of gray and white matter differ from both the cord and the brain. The pattern is irregular and characteristic of the medulla. All of the spinal tracts pass through the medulla and the cranial nerves from the eighth to the twelfth except a portion of the eleventh, originate in this structure.

It also contains the various reflex and autonomic centers which control circulation, respiration, the various secretions and the visual movements. The superior and inferior olivary bodies are connected with the cord, the basal ganglia, and the cerebellum. These are concerned with coordination and equilibrium. The pyramidal tracts decussate in the medulla. Disease of the medulla may affect the tracts and nerves passing through it and may cause the various types of bulbar palsy.

### ***The Cranial Nerves***

The cranial nerves occur in 12 pairs, they carry sensory, motor or both sensory and motor impulses to various structures and organs each on its own side of the body. Some nerves cross one another and supply opposite sides of the body.

The cranial nerves are

The first pair, or the olfactory nerves are concerned with the sense of smell. Their fibers run from the olfactory mucous membrane of the nose to the olfactory bulbs in the brain.

The second pair, or the optic nerves, are concerned with sight. They run from the ganglion cells of the retina through the optic chiasm. Some fibers of the optic nerves cross in the optic chiasm so that

the fibers of each nasal half of the retina originate in the opposite optic nerve

The third pair or the oculomotor nerves are the great motor nerves of the eyes each supplies all the muscles of the eyeball except the external rectus and superior oblique.

The fourth pair or the trochlear or patheticus nerves supply the upper oblique muscle of each eye (motor)

The fifth pair or the trigeminus or trifacial nerves are the great sensory nerves of the head and face Each divides into three main branches (1) The ophthalmic division (2) the superior maxillary division these two are sensory and (3) the inferior maxillary division which is mixed that is both sensory and motor and a lingual branch which is concerned with the special sense of taste

The sixth pair or the abducens nerves supply the external recti of the eyes (motor)

The seventh pair or the facial nerves are the great motor nerves of the face Some sensory fibers from the trigeminus run with the facials giving them some sensory function

The eighth pair or the auditory nerves are concerned with hearing and with vestibular function

The ninth pair or the glossopharyngeal nerves contain special fibers for taste sensation and for motor activity

The tenth pair or the pneumogastric or vagus nerves are mixed sensory and motor They supply the pharynx and larynx and have numerous connections with the autonomic nervous system and also with the ninth eleventh and twelfth cranial nerves and with the first two cervical nerves They send fibers to the thoracic and abdominal viscera (heart lungs kidneys liver stomach intestines

etc) and also contain vasomotor and secretory fibers

The eleventh pair or the spinal accessory nerves are chiefly motor nerves though they may contain sensory fibers They join the vagi supplying it with motor and cardioinhibitory fibers and also send fibers to the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid muscles

The twelfth pair or the hypoglossal nerves are the motor nerves of the tongue and also supply fibers to the vagi Inguals upper three cervical nerves and the sympathetics

### ***The Spinal Cord (Medulla Spinalis)***

The spinal cord is a cylindrical structure composed of nervous tissue and is enveloped by three coats An inner highly vascular delicate coat the pia mater a middle coat the arachnoid and a fibrous external coat the dura mater which extends to the level of the second sacral vertebra ending in a *cul de sac* The spinal cord occupies the vertebral column and measures from 40 to 45 cm in length extending from the foramen magnum where it is continuous with the medulla oblongata to the level of the first or second lumbar vertebra where it terminates into the conus medullaris A thin filament extends beyond the conus medullaris the *filum terminale* The spinal cord is perforated in the center throughout its length by a central canal

The cerebrospinal fluid occupies the space between the pia and the arachnoid (the subarachnoid space) and the *cul de sac* formed by the dura at its terminal end The site chosen for a spinal puncture is below the fourth or at times below the third lumbar vertebra which is one to two intervertebral spaces below the termination of the spinal cord and within the *cul de sac*



The external appearance of the spinal cord is whitish in color, and somewhat flattened, on its anterior surface it has a deep median groove and on its posterior surface a shallow median sulcus which runs the entire length of the cord. The cauda equina is made up of the last four lumbar, the five sacral and the coccygeal nerves. Because the spinal cord terminates at the first or second lumbar vertebra the lower spinal nerves in order to reach their respective intervertebral foramina have to descend vertically in the canal around the conus medullaris and the filum terminale, thus forming the cauda equina.

The spinal cord is divided into two lateral halves united to form a more or less cylindrical mass. It has two enlargements the cervical enlargement extending from the third cervical to the second dorsal vertebra and the lumbar enlargement extending from the ninth thoracic vertebra to the first lumbar.

**Spinal Segments** The spinal cord is arbitrarily divided into 31 segments, each segment corresponds to an imaginary line passing through the highest nerve root filaments of each successive spinal nerve.

The spinal cord is also divided according to its relation to the spinal vertebrae. Therefore the cervical portion of the cord has 8 segments the thoracic 12 the lumbar 5 the sacral 5 and the coccygeal 1.

**The White Substance** This consists of medullated and some unmedullated nerve fibers imbedded in a spongelike network or neuroglia surrounded by the glial sheath which dips into the cord along with pial septa that carry the cord's blood vessels. The admixture of gray and white matter varies at the different levels of the cord. The gray substance predominates in the cervical and lumbar regions while the white matter is most abundant in the thoracic region. While some of the nerve fibers in the white matter run in a more or less transverse direction such as those crossing from one side of the cord to the other by way of the anterior white commissure the majority of the fibers run a longitudinal course and are arranged in bundles or tracts and divided into three columns (funiculi). These are (1) The anterior column lying between the anterior median fissure and the anterior lateral sulcus (2) the lateral column lying between the anterior and posterior lateral sulci and (3) the posterior column lying between the posterior median fissure and the posterior lateral sulcus. In the cervical and thoracic regions the posterior column is divided by the posterior intermediate sulcus into two parts a medial one the fasciculus gracilis or Column of Goll and a lateral one the fasciculus cuneatus or Column of Burdach (See Fig 2 p 817).

The gray substance is made up chiefly of nerve cells dendrites and unmyelinated as well as some myelinated fibers. It also contains blood vessels and neuroglia. The gray matter is arranged in two comma shaped masses one for each lateral half of the cord both commas are united by a transverse gray bar. The thick ends of the commas are blunt and are in the anterior or ventral part of the



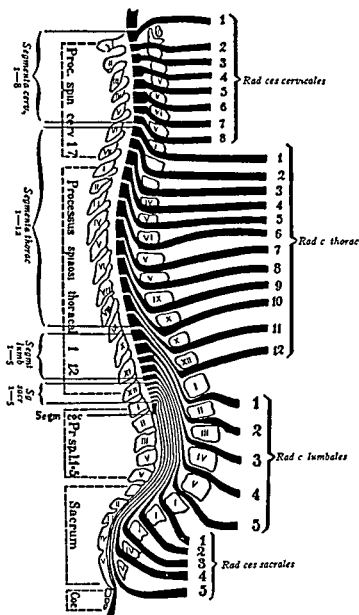


Fig 3—Topographical relations of spinal cord segments to vertebral bodies, spinous processes and points of exit of spinal roots. (Reproduced from *Manual of Physical and Clinical Diagnosis* by Otto Seibert and Frederick M. Eller translated by E. Cowles Andrus M.D. J. B. Lippincott Co. Philadelphia.)

cord and are known as the anterior or ventral horns. The thin ends of the commas are elongated and are in the posterior part of the cord; they are known as the posterior or dorsal horns. The connecting bar is known as the gray commissure; it unites both lat-

eral halves of the cord. The entire H structure and its surrounding white matter run along the entire length of the spinal cord.

**The Sensory Tracts of the Spinal Cord.** Sensory or afferent impulses such as touch, pain, and thermal to

gether with the sensory impulses from the skin, muscles, viscera and joints arise in the peripheral sense organs. They are carried by nerves to the spinal cord and enter it by way of the posterior root, thence to be carried along the spinal sensory pathways either to the brain or to a synapse station in the cord. The dorsal or posterior root, as it enters the spinal cord, breaks up into many fibers, some are medial, others are lateral. Each fiber divides into two branches, a longer ascending and a shorter descending branch.

The ascending medial branches, which are myelinated fibers, run in the posterior funiculus, some of them reach the medulla and others terminate at various levels in the gray matter of the spinal cord.

The descending medial branches, which are also myelinated, are relatively short, some enter the gray matter of the posterior column at once, others descend in the fasciculus interfascialis or the comma tract of Schultz, still others reach the posterior median septum and are mingled with descending fibers from cells within the gray matter of the spinal cord.

**Collaterals** Fine collateral filaments are given off from the ascending and descending branches, some end in the anterior gray column and others in the posterior gray column, still others run through the posterior commissure to the opposite side of the cord, ending in the posterior column.

The fibers of the lateral division are unmyelinated, they form the lateral root and enter the tract of Lissauer (dorso-lateral fasciculus).

The various sensory pathways in the spinal cord are as follows:

**The Dorsal Spinocerebellar Tract** (direct cerebellar tract of Flechsig) The

fibers arise from the cells of the posterior nucleus (Clarke's column) and run in the lateral funiculus of the same side and finally reach the cerebellum by way of the inferior peduncle.

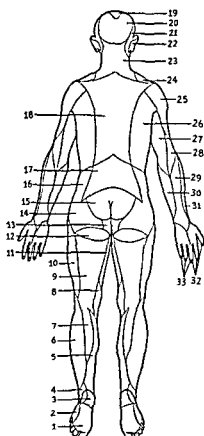
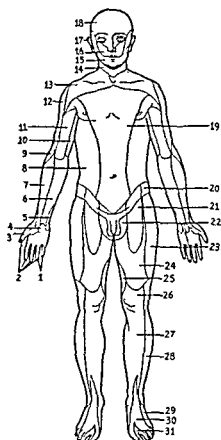
**Ventral Spinocerebellar Tract** (Gower's tract) The fibers arise from the posterior gray column and the intermediate gray matter of the same and opposite side, ascend to the cerebellum by way of the anterior spinocerebellar tracts, and through the superior cerebellar peduncle. 'The path from the periphery to the cerebellum consists of two neurons with a synaptic interruption in the gray matter' (Ranson).

**The Lateral Spinothalamic Tract** This consists of fibers originating from cells in the posterior column on the opposite side, they cross the median line in the anterior white commissure and ascend in the anterior funiculus ending in the thalamus. From there the fibers are relayed to the cerebral cortex. They are believed to be the conductors of pain and temperature impulses.

**The Spino-olivary Tract** This arises from the posterior gray column, crosses to the opposite side of the cord, ascends in the ventral funiculus and ends in the inferior olivary nucleus of the medulla.

**The Spinotectal Tract** The fibers arise from cells in the gray column of the cord, cross to the opposite side, ascend in the lateral funiculus with the fibers of the lateral spinothalamic tract and end in the corpora quadrigemina.

**The Column of Goll** (fasciculus gracilis) This consists of fibers that originate from the posterior nerve roots in the lower cord segments, it lies near the posterior median septum, and increases in size as it ascends the cord. It terminates in the nucleus gracilis of the medulla oblongata. It carries upward



sensory impulses from the lower extremities and the lower half of the body

**The Column of Burdach** (fasciculus cuneatus) The fibers constituting this tract also originate from the posterior nerve root fibers but at a higher level that is from the thoracic and cervical regions Some of the fibers ascend but a short distance and end in the gray matter others ascend to the medulla oblongata and terminate in the cuneate and gracile nuclei It carries sensory impulses upward from the upper half of the body and upper extremities Fibers from both the gracile and cuneate nuclei decussate in the medial lemniscus and proceed to the thalamus and thence to the cerebral cortex

**Motor Efferent or Descending Tracts of the Spinal Cord** The motor pathways have their origin in various parts of the brain and the fibers from the motor neurons descend into the spinal cord forming the motor tracts The impulses thus originating in the various parts of the brain are transmitted downward to the spinal cord and are further carried to their destination by way of the anterior roots of the spinal nerves by the peripheral nerves

**The Pyramidal Tracts** The principal motor pathways are the pyramidal tracts the crossed and the direct pyramidal tracts The fibers of these tracts arise from the large pyramidal cells (Betz cells) of the motor regions of the cerebral cortex (precentral gyrus) they pass down as direct fibers one on each side through the subjacent levels of the brain As they reach the lower level of the medulla (the decussation of the pyramids) some of the fibers cross (decussate) from one side to the other so that when they reach the spinal cord the fibers from the

left side of the brain are in the right side of the cord and those from the right side of the brain are in the left side of the cord The crossed fibers form the

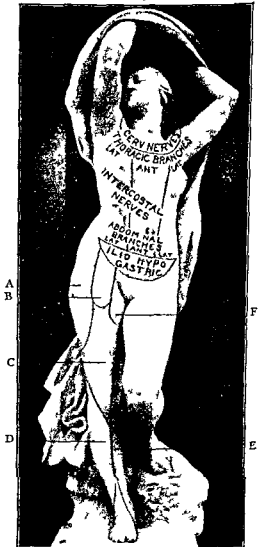


Fig 6—Showing the distribution of the sensory nerves of the skin anterior aspect of trunk and leg A External cutaneous B Gen to-crural C Anter or crural D External popliteal E Long saphenous F Ilio-inguinal (From Butler)

*crossed pyramidal or the lateral cortico spinal tract*

Other fibers originating from the pyramidal cells in the motor area de

scend from the brain through the medulla and reach the spinal cord uncrossed so that the fibers in the brain and spinal cord are homolateral or ipsilateral. This tract is known as the *direct pyramidal* or the *ventral corticospinal tract*. It is a comparatively small tract, the fibers descend into the spinal cord as direct fibers to a certain level and then most of them cross in the anterior white commissure so that at their termination they also are crossed fibers. Others terminate on the side of their origin.

In addition to the two pyramidal tracts we recognize as more or less important the following motor pathways which constitute the accessory motor or extrapyramidal system.

**The rubrospinal tract** (v. Monakow) arises in the red nucleus, crosses in the decussation of Forel and descends in the cord near the crossed pyramidal tract.

**The tectospinal tract** originates in the superior corpus quadrigeminum, crosses the median line in the decussation of Meynert and descends finally in the anterior column of the cord.

**The vestibulospinal tract** originates in Deiters's nucleus in the bulb and descends uncrossed in the spinal cord.

It is probable that the axis cylinders of most of these tracts end around the anterior horn cells.

### **The Spinal Nerves**

There are 31 pairs of spinal nerves; each pair leaves the spinal cord through its respective intervertebral foramen on either side of the spine so that each lateral half of the body is supplied by identical nerves.

The spinal nerves are: Cervical 8, thoracic 12, lumbar 5, sacral 5 and coccygeal 1. The lumbar, sacral and coccygeal nerves form the cauda equina.

**Nerve Roots** Each nerve is attached to the spinal cord by two roots: a *posterior* or *dorsal* root, which is *sensory*, and an *anterior* or *ventral* root, which is *motor*.

**The posterior root** is the larger of the two. It is attached to the posterolateral furrow of the cord, unites to form two bundles and contains a spinal ganglion. All sensory impulses from the periphery reach the spinal cord by way of the posterior roots through their ganglia.

**The anterior root** transmits motor impulses from the cord to the periphery; it leaves the spinal cord by way of its anterior surface in a number of filaments which unite to form two bundles near the intervertebral foramen.

Each of the cerebral and spinal nerves is made up of lesser nerves which supply the various structures of the body with sensory and motor sensitivity. The largest spinal nerves and nerve roots are attached to the cervical and lumbar portions of the spinal cord; these supply the upper and lower extremities respectively.

### **Spinal and Peripheral Localisation**

Every muscle of the extremities is innervated by fibers emanating from two or more spinal roots.

Every area of sensory cutaneous distribution is supplied by three spinal roots, one root being principal and predominating.

Peripheral nerve distribution is different from segmental nerve distribution. Hysterical anesthesia does not correspond to either of these distributions and in addition often tends to assume a stockinglike or glove-like form when it involves the extremities.

The following rule formulated by Ziehen is useful in the determination of

the levels of origin of the cervical and thoracic nerve roots from the spinal cord. For the cervical nerves subtract one from the number of the nerves, and

**Differentiation Between a Spinal Nerve Lesion and a Spinal Cord Lesion: Spinal Nerve Lesion:** Because a spinal nerve contains all types

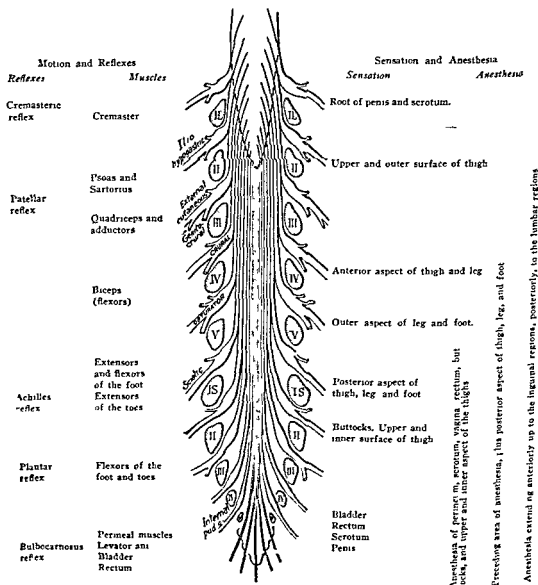


Fig 7—Spinal localization

the remainder will indicate the corresponding spinous process, for the first to the fifth thoracic nerves subtract two; for the sixth to the twelfth thoracic nerves subtract three.

of sensory fibers through which are transmitted sensations of heat, cold, touch, pain, pressure as well as muscle, joint and tendon sensibility, a destructive lesion in a spinal nerve will cause

loss of all these sensations in the area supplied by the affected nerve

**Spinal Cord Lesion:** The various sensory impulses that reach the spinal cord travel in special or individual pathways. Thus touch and pressure travel upward by many paths within the spinal cord, painful impulses travel upward by another path, the spinothalamic tract, and impulses from muscles, joints and tendons travel upward by still another path, the posterior columns. Therefore, a localized spinal lesion may affect only some of the sensations in the area supplied by the cord segment. It, however, shows great selectivity of involvement with motor disturbances and frequently also cerebellar symptoms.

## **Vegetative or Involuntary Nervous System**

### ***Sympathetic and Parasympathetic***

The vegetative nervous system is composed of two divisions, the sympathetic and parasympathetic. In their origin, to some extent in their anatomic structure and in their functions, they appear to be in opposition to each other.

The sympathetic division of the vegetative nervous system causes dilatation of the pupil, dryness of the skin, rapid heart action, dilatation of the sphincters, dilatation of the renal vessels, slowing of peristalsis, and low gastric acidity.

The parasympathetic division causes contraction of the pupil, sweating, slowing of the heart, contraction of the vessels of the pia, contraction of the sphincters, hyperperistalsis and gastric hyperacidity. They also differ in their reaction to certain drugs and hormones.

**The sympathetic division of the vegetative nervous system** (the dorso-

lumbal autonomic system) consists in part of the lateral chains of sympathetic ganglia and their connecting fibers. The ganglia are connected with the spinal nerves by the white and the gray rami communicantes. In addition, the sympathetic system includes the three cervical sympathetic ganglia, and the lumbar and sacral ganglia, together with the peripheral plexuses formed by the fibers proceeding peripherally from these ganglia. The fibers pass as preganglionic fibers to the cells of the lateral ganglia, where they are interrupted, lose their myelin sheath, and pass as postganglionic fibers to the periphery.

### ***The Parasympathetic or Autonomic Division of the Nervous System*** (the cranio sacral autonomic system)

This consists of midbrain, bulbar and sacral nerve fibers which supply the same organs and tissues as does the sympathetic system, but whose action is opposite to that of the sympathetic system.

The parasympathetic system is divided into three parts. The mesencephalic, the bulbar and the sacral.

**The mesencephalic** corresponds to the oculomotor nerve and nuclei. Fibers from its center and from cervical sympathetic end in the ciliary ganglion.

**Bulbar fibers** run to some degree with the facial (fibers to the submaxillary gland) and glossopharyngeal nerves (fibers to the parotid gland), and to a greater degree with the *vagus nerves* which supply nearly all of the thoracic and most of the abdominal viscera.

**Sacral fibers** run in the internal pudendal nerve and to the organs supplied by it, i.e., the lower part of the intestine, the bladder and the genitals.

**Sympathetic Influence on Voluntary Muscles.** Recent views regard the

voluntary muscles in general as having sympathetic as well as ordinary spinal and cranial nerve innervation

Sensory fibers from the viscera run through the sympathetic ganglia to the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, where they enter posterior root cells, the

with the sympathetic system. The white ramus communicans is interrupted in a spinal ganglion, the fibers lose their myelin sheath and the new unmyelinated fibers reënter the spinal nerve through the gray ramus communicans to supply the arterial system

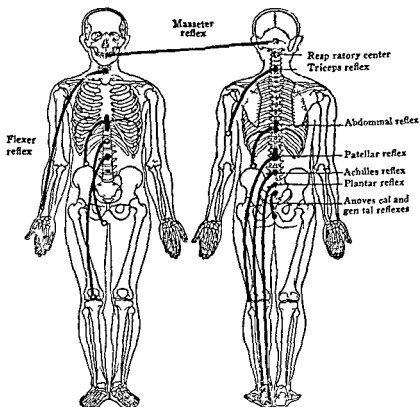


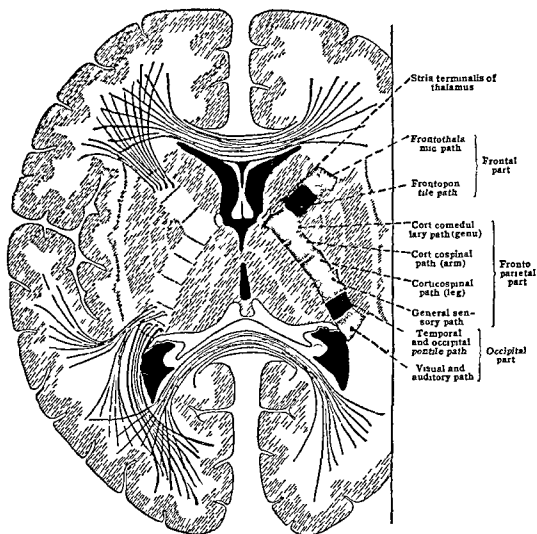
Fig 8—Reflex centers

central processes of which enter the spinal cord. They come into association in the ganglia with cells whose peripheral processes supply skin areas which are often distinctive for the lesion of the viscus in question. Pain due to disturbance of this viscus is often referred to the periphery, the skin area thus becoming the apparent seat of the pain.

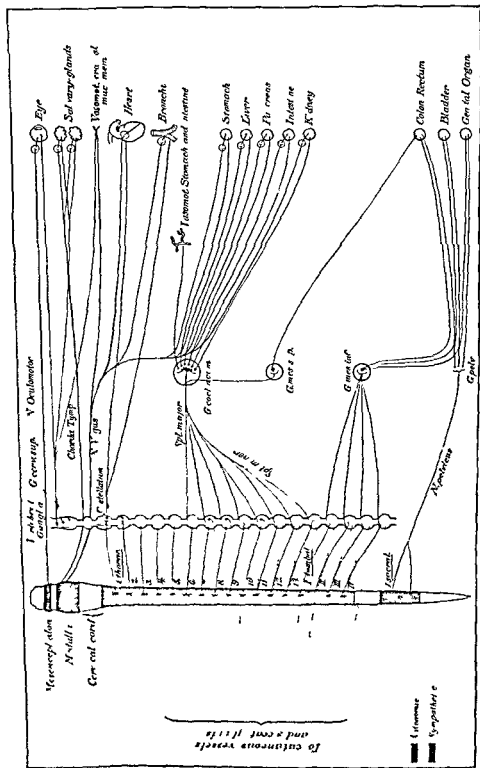
The vasomotor centers, especially the vasoconstrictor centers, are associated

**Nomenclature.** Langley, who has contributed largely to the subject of the autonomic nervous system, adopted a terminology somewhat different from that used here (Gray's anatomy), and still different from that used by Meyer and Gottlieb. This has led to considerable confusion, as shown by the arrangement of the terms in the following columns. Gaskell has used the term *Involuntary Nervous System*.





CROSS SECTION OF CEREBRUM SHOWING INTERNAL CAPSULE  
(From Morris)



# **SCHEME OF THE VEGETATIVE NERVOUS SYSTEM**

(I prepared from Falt's Endocrine Diseases edited by Myers after Myers and Contes "De experimentelle Pharmacologie etc. The autonomous innervation is colored like the sympathetic")

## Involuntary Nervous System

GRAY <sup>1</sup>	LANGLEY	MEYER and GOTTLIEB
Sympathetic nervous system	Autonomic nervous system	Vegetative nervous system
Craniosacral sympathetics	Parasympathetics	Autonomic.
Oculomotor sympathetics	Tectal autonomies	Cranial autonomies
Facial sympathetics	Bulbar autonomies	
Glossopharyngeal sympathetics		
Vagal sympathetics		
Sacral sympathetics	Sacral autonomies	Sacral autonomies
Thoracolumbar sympathetics	Sympathetic thoracic autonomic.	Sympathetic.
Enteric.	Enteric	Enteric.

Eppinger and Hess, applying the physiological facts of Langley to clinical medicine, have elaborated upon the theory of autonomic ataxia advocated by Solomon Solis Cohen in 1892, namely, that the vegetative system is divided into two parts (1) The autonomic, corresponding with the parasympathetic or the cranial and sacroautonomic of Langley's classification, and (2) the sympathetic or the thoracolumbar portion of Langley's autonomic system. Eppinger and Hess believe that the parasympathetic and sympathetic systems are controlled by the endocrine glands and that normally a balance exists between the parasympathetic and the sympathetic systems and that this balance may be disturbed so that one or the other of the systems predominates. This would give rise to two opposing conditions (1) Vagotonia and (2) Sympathicotonia.

1 *Vagotonia* is characterized by nervousness, pale greasy skin, often spotted

with red blotches, sweating occurs easily, hypersalivation, the pupils are small, sinus irregularity and slow pulse rate are often present. The bowels are usually constipated, indigestion, hypersecretion and pyloric spasm may occur. Adults may suffer from asthma and eosinophilia. Children may suffer from enuresis and laryngismus stridulus, and from hypertrophy of the vessels and the lymphoid tissue.

2 *Sympathicotonia* presents a picture the reverse of the above, the pupils are dilated, the pulse is rapid, the cutaneous vessels are contracted, the erector pili muscles and sweat glands are hypersensitive. The general response to pain is greatly lessened. The sympathicotonic is usually made worse by the injection of epinephrine, while the vagotonic is often relieved by the injection of epinephrine and made worse by the administration of pilocarpine and physostigmine.

**Action of Some Drugs in the Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Systems.** *Epinephrine* acts as a stimulant on the sympathetic system (except on the

<sup>1</sup> Gray's Anatomy 1930 p. 966 22nd Edition edited by Lea & Febiger Philadelphia and New York

sweat glands) and on organs on which the sympathetic has a stimulant action. It does not act on the organs on which the sympathetic system has an inhibitory action, nor does it act on the autonomic system.

*Ergotoxin* has an effect on the sympathetic system generally the opposite of that of epinephrine.

*Atropine* has a paralyzing effect on the nerve terminations of the parasympathetic system.

*Acetylcholine* stimulates the parasympathetic system.

*Pilocarpine* has a stimulating effect on the nerve terminations of the parasympathetic system. It also stimulates the secretion of the sweat glands.

## Neurologic Examination

### History

It is as important to obtain a comprehensive history from the sufferer of nervous derangements as it is from patients suffering from other ailments. The history may be elicited directly from the patient or at times, since misleading statements may be made by the nervous patient because of lack of comprehension, willful misrepresentation or spiteful taciturnity, it is preferable to obtain the information from a relative or attendant in the absence of the patient.

It is important when examining young patients to investigate the *previous history* as to manner of birth, instrumental or otherwise, as to lactation, dentition, previous diseases, habits and inclinations as to playfulness, moroseness, precocity, hobbies, fears, anxieties, behavior toward his playmates, sexual impulses, as well as to his schooling, progress at school, studiousness, etc.

*Family history* as to consanguinity, the mental and physical state of near relatives, etc., should be obtained.

The *present complaint* as to onset and general cause are best recorded in the patient's own words, and all symptoms described by him are to be examined in detail. Inquiry is also to be made as to headache, digestion, vomiting, convul-

sions, sleep, dreams, disorders of sensation and of special senses.

### Physical Examination

Having elicited a thorough history, the physical examination is then carefully made. The physical examination consists of general examination, local examination, and various special examinations.

#### The General Examination

This commences just as soon as the patient enters the examiner's presence. In ambulatory patients, the general appearance, build, nutrition, color, behavior, manner of dress, gait, posture and the general intelligence should be noted. In bed patients, posture, restlessness, mentality and general behavior are important observations.

#### The Local Examination

**Head:** This includes examination of the *skull* as to size, shape and evidence of deformity or of injury. The *head* is examined for the amount of hair, its color and texture, abnormal pulsations, tumors, depressions and rashes. The *face* is examined for expression, mobility, scars and edema, the *eyes* for the size of the palpebral fissures (wide, narrow, equal) for ptosis, tremor of the eyelids, and lagging during ocular movement. The

*eyeballs* are examined to determine whether they are prominent protruding or sunken and for the presence of strabismus mobility, static nystagmus difference in the colors of the irides the dimensions and form of the pupils pupillary inequality, also for the reaction of the pupils to light accommodation and convergence Notice is to be taken of the symmetry of the frontal wrinkles and of the nasolabial folds the thickness of the lips tremor and retraction of the lips immobility of the facial muscles in repose and of fibrillary contractions or spasms

*The Mouth* The following should be observed Pharynx dentition size of tongue, its position in the mouth and manner of protrusion position of the uvula movements of the velum on phonation and on irritation

*Neck* The position of the head the presence of rigidity of the neck the presence of enlarged glands scars or lesions and the presence of any ties or spasms should be noted

Examination of the thyroid gland is important

*Shoulder Girdle Chest and Upper Extremities* The *shoulder girdle* the *upper extremities* and the *chest* are examined for size shape and symmetry and the condition of the muscles the *hands* are examined for their size shape sensitivity strength musculature reflexes and for the presence of contractures

*Pelvic Girdle and Lower Extremities* The *pelvic girdle* and *lower extremities* are examined as to the position of the limbs in the dorsal position of the patient length of the limbs contractures condition of the muscles size of the feet and their form and the presence of any deformities or contractures

Notice is to be taken of the position of the lower limbs when the patient stands erect the static position of the pelvis the increase or diminution of the lumbar lordosis and the symmetry of the folds of the buttocks

*Trunk* The *trunk* is examined for size shape posture and nutrition and for kyphosis scoliosis and lordosis of the spine

*Skin* The following should be noted Subcutaneous tissue nails color of the skin its thickness temperature moisture venous network pigmentation edema ulceration general or local increase of the fat tissue tumors exanthemata acrocyanosis and the presence of malformations of the nails

### **Special Examination**

*Reflexes* Percussion of the tendons and of the bones is carried on for the provocation of the tendon and periosteal reflexes Tickling is employed to provoke the mucous membrane reflexes and light stroking to elicit the skin reflexes which however are readily exhausted (SEE p 831)

The reaction of the pupillary reflexes to light (homolateral and contralateral reflexes) to convergence to accommodation and to pain is to be tested

*Sensibility* The eyes of the patient should be closed The sensibility is examined by the use of Weber's compasses the examiner's finger and by tests for the localization of touch

*Sensibility to Pressure* This is examined either roughly by judging the amount of pressure applied or by the use of a barethesiometer Can the patient detect light touches such as cotton?

*Thermic Sensibility* This is tested by the use of large test tubes containing hot and cold water or by a hot and

a cold spoon or by any other hot and cold object

**Pain Sensibility** When the point or the head of a pin is applied to various parts of the body the patient is asked to distinguish between the point and the head. An algometer may be substituted for a pin.

**Skin Sensibility to Electricity** The faradic current is used tingling being the normal sensation to light currents. As the strength of the current is increased a painful sensation appears. A large electrode is used for the back and a small electrode for the part to be tested.

**Muscle joint Sense** Various muscles and joints are moved passively by the examiner.

**Bone Sense** A tuning fork of 128 vibrations a second is applied to the bone surface and the sense of vibration noted by the patient.

**Stereognostic Sense** Is the object in the hand recognized by name? If not can its attributes to touch be described? The stereognostic sense is not simple inherited and primary but complex acquired and secondary.

**Palpation and Percussion of the Nerve Trunks and of the Muscles** The nerves should be palpated for pain in their entirety and at their point of exit from muscles and bony canals (points of Valleix). It should be noted too whether the nerve trunks are painless where compression ought to cause a certain degree of pain as for example in tabes.

Muscles should be palpated to determine their size consistency and whether they are tender.

Nerve trunks should be tapped with the percussion hammer to ascertain whether there is any response. In tetany

there is hyperexcitability of the nerve trunks to mechanical stimuli.

Muscles respond to tapping in two ways (a) With contraction *en masse* dependent upon the integrity of the nerves supplying the muscle (b) With local contraction at the point of percussion (forming momentarily a ridge—idiomuscular contraction) dependent on the excitability of the muscle fibers themselves and independent of the control of the nerves. The mechanical excitability of the muscle is increased in tetany in certain neuritides and in chronic wasting diseases such as tuberculosis. It is decreased in muscular dystrophy.

**Examination of Motility Active Motion Face** The closing and opening of the eyelids movements of the eye balls (lateral movements up and down movements circumduction convergence) wrinkling of the forehead various movements of the facial muscles (if possible with and without emotional expression) are to be observed.

**Mouth Pharynx Larynx** The opening and closing of the mouth movements of the jaw testing of the force of the muscles of mastication protrusion of the tongue movements of the tongue movements of the palate during phonation movements of the pharyngeal wall during phonation deglutition of fluids and of solids should each be noted. Laryngoscopy is valuable.

**Movements of the Head and Upper Extremities** The movements of the head the shoulder girdle and the upper extremities should each be executed separately.

**Movements of the Trunk** The respiratory and abdominal movements the method of rising from a supine to a seated posture the pelvic girdle and the

movement of the lower extremities should be observed

**Gait** The posture of the trunk during walking the method of planting the feet the direction of walking when an attempt is made to walk along a straight line and the kind of reversal of direction at command that the patient can make are to be noted (SRF pp 120 and 851)

**Passive Motion** Passive movements of parts should be carried out when the patient relaxes his muscles and hypertonia contracture and hypotonia noted

**Examination of Coordination**  
**Dynamic Coordination** The execution of movements that require precision at first with the eyes open then with the eyes closed are to be compared

**Static Coordination** The erect station on both feet close together then on one foot with the eyes open and then with them closed is to be observed The patient is to be asked to raise his lower extremities while he lies supine and to raise his upper extremities to form a right angle with the trunk The examiner should note how long the patient can maintain these positions The time is decreased in cerebellar lesions

**Examination of Orientation and Equilibrium** These require *paraphe-  
nalia* A rough test is the ordinary one of past pointing the patient endeavors to touch with one finger when his eyes are closed his nose the corresponding finger of the other hand or the extended finger of the examiner

**Electrical Examination** In examining the electrical reaction of the nerves and muscles one needs an induction apparatus and a galvanic battery capable of yielding a current strength of at least 30 milliamperes some means of interrupting the current preferably by a break contrivance attached to one of

the electrodes a pair of cords a large round flat electrode (60 sq cm.) which is applied to the sternum or the back and a small electrode for application to the point to be tested (SEE *Electrical Tests* p 886)

**Examination of the Genitourinary System** The functions of the sphincters of the bladder and of the rectum should be investigated and tests made of these perhaps by specialists The sexual life of the individual should be tactfully probed at least as much as is necessary to explain the symptoms The question of psychoanalysis is a mooted one and need not be entered into here (SEE *Symptoms of Mental Diseases* p 885)

**Miscellaneous Examinations** Many organic diseases are associated with mental symptoms and the practitioner should have at least an elementary knowledge of psychiatry in order that he may be able to detect some of them and to recognize their importance if not their significance

Laboratory methods such as examination of the cerebrospinal fluid are valuable aids to neurologic diagnosis

Of late ventriculography encephalography and electroencephalography have become important aids in the localization of the brain and spinal cord lesions *Queckenstedt's sign* or the absence of an increase in cerebrospinal fluid pressure upon compression of the cervical vessels or the abdominal aorta usually signifies a spinal block and may be indicative of a tumor of the cord

## *Reflexes*

A peripheral stimulation that results in a muscular contraction or in glandular activity is known as a *reflex* Reflexes may be divided into the tendon the osteoperiosteal the cutaneous and the

mucous The first two of these are produced by percussion of a tendon or of a bone the last two by stimulation of a cutaneous region or of a mucous membrane Certain other reflexes are spoken of as visceral

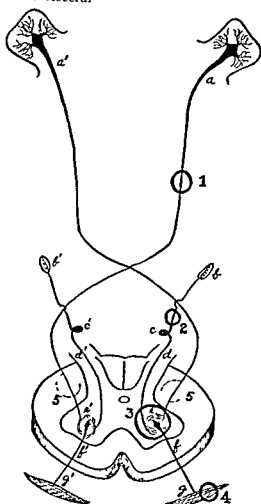


Fig 9—Spinal reflex arc *a a'* Motor projection fibers from the brain cortex, *b b'* sensory end plate from muscle *c, c'* intervertebral ganglia *d d'* sensory root fibers entering the posterior horns one part of the reflex arc *e e'* ganglion cells of the anterior horns second part of the reflex arc *f f'* anterior motor roots third part of the reflex arc *g g'* muscles A lesion at 1 results in spastic paralysis at 2 loss of reflex action, at 3 loss of reflex action flaccid paralysis and atrophy of muscle with reaction of degeneration at 4 loss of muscle response to all stimuli and flaccid pty at 5 same as at 1

A simple reflex arc consists of a peripheral end organ and its afferent fiber and cell, an efferent fiber from this cell, an intermediary cell with its efferent fiber and the muscle (with the muscle end plate) The spinal cord is the seat of this simpler reflex fiber activity In a sense all nervous activity that involves the transmission of an impulse from one neuron to another is reflex. In other reflexes lower cerebral centers are involved *The spinal centers are subject to the inhibitory action from the cerebral and cerebellar centers, especially when the impulses are conveyed by the pyramidal tract*

After a transverse section of the spinal cord, reflex activity is abolished for a time (period of shock), recovery takes place, and is followed by a period of increased reflex activity below the level of section

The destruction of a portion of a reflex arc is followed by complete loss of the tendon and skin reflexes This occurs (*a*) In peripheral neuritis (*b*) in tabes dorsalis, (*c*) in anterior poliomyelitis and all the acute and chronic destructive processes involving the anterior horn cells, (*d*) in cases involving destruction of the posterior horn cells (syringomyelia, hematomyelia)

Irritation of a portion of the reflex arc produces increased reflexes This occurs in certain forms of neuritis and of radiculitis, in strychnine poisoning and in tetanus

Total transverse section of the spinal cord at various levels produces abolition of reflexes presided over by that section of the cord

Alterations in the pyramidal tract produce increase of the tendon reflexes This is seen in



(a) Meningoencephalitis, cerebral tumors cerebral compression, and in cerebral thrombosis, embolism, and hemorrhage, in the latter three usually after the initial period of shock, although spastic phenomena may occur early

(b) Spinal compression where a condition resembling that of spinal section may be obtained

(c) Degenerative diseases of the cord primary (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, primary lateral sclerosis), or secondary (myelitis, meningomyelitis spinal arteriosclerosis)

(d) Disseminated sclerosis

In affections of the central neuron there is an antagonism between the tendon and the cutaneous reflexes. While the tendon reflexes are increased the skin reflexes are often diminished or abolished

**Pfueger's Law** 1 The reflex occurs upon the same side of the body to which the irritant is applied, and in muscles the motor nerves of which rise from the same segment of the cord

2 If the reflex occurs on the opposite side only the corresponding muscles contract

3 If the reflexes are unequal on the two sides, the stronger reflexes are on the side to which the irritant has been applied

4 When the reflexes extend to the other segments, the direction of the extension is toward the medulla

5 All the muscles of the body may yield reflexes

The reflex arc may be broken in any one of the following ways (a) When the sensory nerve does not conduct the impulse toward the center, (b) when the sensory cell is impaired so that it cannot receive the impulse, (c) when the motor cell is impaired so that it cannot receive the impulse, (d) when the

motor nerve is impaired so that it cannot transmit the motor impulse

In most, if not all reflexes intermediary neurons are also involved. A reflex may become exaggerated when the motor cells from which fibers supplying the parts in question are irritated

Reflex acts are *inhibited* and *modified* by *inhibitory impulses* passing down from the brain along the inhibitory nerve fibers of the pyramidal tract, and are *increased* or *exaggerated* or *quickened* when this inhibitory action is removed or reduced by destructive disease that involves the pyramidal tracts

The spinal centers for the reflexes (variously stated by authors) are as follows

Biceps Fifth and sixth cervical segments

Radial Fifth and sixth cervical segments

Triceps Sixth and seventh cervical segments

Ulnar Seventh and eighth cervical segments

Knee Second, third and fourth lumbar segments

Achilles Fifth lumbar, first sacral segments

Adductor Second third and fourth lumbar segments

Semitendinosus and semimembranosus Fourth and fifth lumbar, first sacral segments

Cremasteric First and second lumbar segments

Scapular Fifth cervical to first dorsal segments

Cuboid Fourth and fifth lumbar, first sacral segments

Epigastric Seventh eighth and ninth dorsal segments

Mesogastric Ninth and tenth dorsal segments

Hypogastric Twelfth dorsal segment  
 Plantar First and second sacral segments

Gluteal Fourth and fifth lumbar, first sacral segments

Anal Fifth sacral segment

**Classification of Reflexes** We usually speak clinically of three groups of reflexes (I) Cutaneous or superficial reflexes (II) tendon or deep reflexes (III) visceral reflexes. Occasionally the visomotor and osteoperiosteal reflexes are classified separately as are also the cranial reflexes.

**Cutaneous (and Mucous) or Superficial Reflexes** *Palatal* When the mucous membrane of the palate or when the fauces is touched the palate draws up. This reflex is lost in *bulbar paralysis postdiphtheritic paralysis* and *tumors of the cerebellopontine angle*. When the patient is requested to say *AH*, the palate remains motionless either unilaterally or bilaterally.

*Scapular* When the interscapular region is irritated the scapular muscles contract. This reflex depends upon the integrity of the fifth cervical to first thoracic segments.

*Epigastric* When the skin of one side of the chest below the nipple is gently stroked the epigastrium upon that side will retract. This reflex depends upon the arcs of the seventh to the ninth dorsal segments.

*Abdominal* When the costal margins are stroked downward in the midclavicular line the abdominal muscles on the same side contract. This depends upon the arcs from the ninth to the twelfth dorsal segments. They are typically lost in pyramidal tract affections and in multiple sclerosis.

*Cremasteric* The testicle on the same side draws upward. This depends

upon the first and second lumbar segments.

*Gluteal* When the skin of the buttock is stroked, a contraction of the gluteal muscles on the same side follows. It is controlled by the fourth and fifth lumbar and first sacral segments.

*Plantar* When the sole of the foot is irritated or tickled the toes bend plantar.



Fig. 10—Technic for eliciting Babinski's reflex.

arly. This reflex depends upon the integrity of the lower end of the cord (*conus medullaris*). It may be absent normally or after taking of sedative drugs such as the bromides.

*Brissaud's Reflex* (or reflex of the tensor of the fascia lata). This is associated with the plantar reflex and is shown by a contraction of the fibers of the fascia lata in the external regions of the thigh when the sole is stroked.

*Pupillary Skin Reflexes* When the chin or neck is stroked dilation of the pupils follows.

*Babinski's* When the sole of the foot is stroked upward and inward from

the outer margin extension of the great toe and a tendency to fanning and spreading out of the other toes are noted. This is due to disease of the pyramidal tract seen in hemiplegia and spastic paraplegia due to any cause and occa-



Fig 11—Technic for eliciting the Gordon reflex

sionally in fracture of the skull uremia and general paresis. It is a pathologic reflex except in infants.

**Gordon's** When deep pressure is made through the calf muscle on the deep flexor muscles dorsal flexion of the great toe occurs. Like the Babinski reflex and Oppenheim's it denotes pathology. It cannot be considered a skin reflex but is mentioned here for convenience.

**Oppenheim's** When the portion of the tibia just behind the posterointernal

border is stroked from above downward dorsal flexion of the toes occurs. It should hardly be classed with the skin reflexes. It is seen in lesions of the pyramidal tract.

These last three reflexes are abnormal; the most reliable one is the Babinski. Its presence indicates disease of the central motor neurons. This reflex, however, is often noted in normal infants.

**Sign of Adduction of the Foot** (Marie and Meige). Irritation of the internal part of the sole produces contraction of the tibialis anticus muscle and adduction of the foot. This is sometimes found in cortical conditions associated with exaggeration of the tendon reflexes.

**Anal** When the anus is irritated with a pin contraction of the sphincter results.

**Umbilical** When the side of the abdomen is irritated the umbilicus moves toward that side. This is really a unilateral abdominal reflex.

**Corneal or Conjunctival** When the cornea or conjunctiva is irritated closing of the eyelids results.

**Nasal** When the mucous membrane of the nose is irritated sneezing will result.

**Pharyngeal** When the pharynx is irritated retching or gagging will result.

**Paralytic Hyperemic Reflex** (dermographia). When a hard object is drawn over the skin it will cause congestion followed by ischemia (local anemia). This is really a vasomotor reflex.

**Pilomotor Reflex** Erection of the hair follicles takes place when the skin is stroked or exposed to cold (chill).

**Defense Reflexes** See under *Tendon Reflexes*.

See also under *Vasomotor Reflexes* below. The strict vasomotor reflexes are

not concerned with activity of voluntary muscles as are most of the clinical skin reflexes

**Tendon or Deep Reflexes** *Knee jerk* A sudden extension of the knee will occur when the ligamentum patel-



Fig 12—Knee jerk with ulnar surface of hand

lae is sharply struck while the leg is crossed over its fellow

The knee jerk reflex is *increased* in (a) Organic disease of the brain (b) incomplete transverse lesion of the cord above the lumbar enlargement (c) disseminated cerebrospinal sclerosis lateral sclerosis sclerosis that is predominantly lateral earlier stages of combined sclerosis (d) also in mania hysteria strychnine poisoning tetanus meningitis and in persons who are high strung or fatigued

The knee jerk is *diminished* or *absent* in (a) Degeneration of the muscle (b) pseudomuscular hypertrophy (c) neuritis which cuts off the impulse from the cord (d) locomotor ataxia or any other lesion of the posterior column of the cord (e) poliomyelitis (f) advanced myelitis (g) lesions of the cauda equina or of the lumbar enlargement (h) muscular dystrophy involving the crureus muscle (i) Friedrich's ataxia and combined sclerosis (except in the early stages when it is increased) (j) poisoning from certain drugs *etc*



Fig 13—Technic for eliciting the patellar reflex with rubber-tipped hammer

antimony chloral or opium (k) pernicious anemia and (l) occasionally it occurs idiopathically

**Ankle Clonus** Oscillation of the foot takes place when it is suddenly flexed

This reflex is elicited in the following manner. The patient is seated, the examiner supporting with one hand the tendo Achillis while with the other hand he strongly flexes the foot upward exerting pressure upon the front part of the sole. This reflex is often



Fig 14—Technic for eliciting the Achilles reflex

found in lateral sclerosis or spastic paraplegia in lesions of the pyramidal tract, and in reflex hyperactivity. The reflex center is in the fifth lumbar and first sacral segments. It may be absent even when Babinski plantar reflex is present.

**Tendo Achillis Reflex** (normal reaction). Sudden plantar flexion of the foot occurs when the tendo Achillis is sharply struck. This reaction is increased in lesions of the central motor neurons which cut off the inhibitory action of the brain, also in lesions of the pyramidal tract. Its center is the fifth lumbar and first sacral segments. Its absence is an important early sign of tabes dorsalis. It is absent in pelvic tumors, multiple neuritis (diabetes, gout, alcohol, metal

lic poisoning), diabetic pseudotabes and tabes dorsalis.

**Kernig's Sign**. This is resistance to sudden extension of the knee. This reflex is best obtained in the following way.

The patient lies on his back, the leg flexed upon the thigh and the thigh flexed upon the abdomen. The leg is then grasped by the examiner at the tendo Achillis and an attempt made to raise it. When the leg is brought at right angles to the thigh or thereabouts resistance will be encountered. The presence of this reflex usually indicates meningitis. Contraction of the hamstring muscles may also be due to sciatica and hip or knee joint diseases.

**Dorsal Foot Reflex** (Mendel Bechterew reflex). Sudden extension of the toes when the dorsum of the foot is



Fig 15—Technic for eliciting Kernig's sign

struck over the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones is usually due to a lesion of the pyramidal tract. Its reflex arc is in the fifth lumbar and first sacral segments.

**Biceps Reflex**. A contraction of the arm is obtained by striking the biceps tendon at the elbow. The patient's fore

arm rests upon the examiner's arm palm upward, the elbow joint is supported by the examiner's hand so that the thumb rests in the cubital fossa. With a pleximeter hammer in the free hand, the examiner taps his own thumb smartly. The reflex arc is in the fifth and sixth cervical segments.



Fig. 16—Technic for eliciting the biceps reflex

**Triceps Reflex** This is the extension of the arm when the triceps tendon is struck above the olecranon. The elbow is supported by the examiner so that it rests easily with the olecranon upward, while the triceps tendon is struck directly with the pleximeter hammer. The reflex arc passes through the sixth and seventh cervical center.

**Maxillary Reflex** This is the sudden closure of the jaw when it is sharply struck downward. The reflex arc is in the fifth cranial nucleus. It tests the masticatory nucleus of the fifth pair of cranial nerves.

**Masseter Reflex:** Closure of the jaw occurs when the insertion of the masseter muscle near the zygomaticus is struck. It tests the masticatory nucleus of the fifth cranial nerves. It is exaggerated in tetany (Skr. Chvostek's Sign p. 791).

### *Paradoxical Reflex (Westphal)*

This consists of contraction of the tibialis instead of the calf muscles when the test for ankle clonus is being made, and also a contraction of the flexors instead of the extensors of the thigh upon an attempt to elicit the knee jerk with the patient in the dorsal position, when the patient sits up the normal reflex is elicited. It is found in various spinal cord diseases in multiple sclerosis, and in paralysis agitans.

**Defense Reflexes and Reflexes of Spinal Automatism.** These result in special movements of retraction of the lower extremity which succeed excitation of the skin of the foot or forced flexion



Fig. 17—Technic for eliciting the triceps reflex

of the toes. The foot then flexes on the leg, the leg on the thigh, the thigh on the pelvis. The mechanism is unexplained. They may occur in pyramidal tract affections, also in cases of flaccid paraplegia with areflexia, whether the sensibility is intact or not. They may

be observed at a relatively early stage of complete spinal section when the other reflexes are wanting. They may also be produced by stimulation of the skin of the leg, the thigh and the trunk, although it is less easy to produce them thus than by stimulation of the distal part of the limb. Babinski proposed their use in determining the inferior limits of spinal tumors.

Closely associated with the tendon reflexes are the osteoperiosteal reflexes (SEE p. 840).

**Visceral Reflexes.** Reflexes control the activity of the various viscera among those reflexes are the bladder (or vesical) and rectal reflexes. These are concerned in the retention and in the evacuation of the contents of the bladder and of the rectum.

*Retention of urine or the inability to retain it* when not caused by nervousness or mechanical obstruction usually indicates disease of the spinal cord. Spincter paralysis with empty bladder and constant dribbling of urine is found in lesions of the lumbar enlargement.

*Detrusor paralysis* with distended bladder, and often with dribbling of urine is found in lesions above the lumbar enlargement.

Urination and defecation are reflex acts under the control of the higher centers. The removal of inhibitory influence of these centers will cause a loss of spincter control with involuntary urination and defecation as a consequence.

The rectal and visceral centers are in the lower lumbar and upper sacral segments.

*Loss of spincter control* is seen in lesions of the pyramidal tract, transverse and diffuse myelitis, tabes dorsalis, dementia paralytica, deep coma

due to any cause, and various forms of dementia.

**Nerve Mechanism of Bladder, Rectum and Penis.** The vesicospinal center is in the conus medullaris. To it run fibers of the hypogastric plexus. From it (efferent) run the branches from the lumbar roots which pass through the lumbar sympathetic and the vesical plexus to the sphincter of the bladder, and also the nervi erigentes from the second and third sacral nerves which enter into the formation of the hypogastric plexus and supply the bladder walls. The center from which the nerves to the sphincter emerge is under the control of the brain which both inhibits and reinforces it. The center from which the nerves to the walls emerge is not connected with the higher centers.

In cerebral lesions where inhibition is lost the bladder empties spontaneously when a certain degree of distention has been reached.

In spinal lesions that affect the vesical centers there is true incontinence, i.e. filling of the bladder and an involuntary flow of urine through the relaxed sphincter.

In transverse spinal lesions above the spinal vesical centers there is loss of the sense of fullness of the bladder. Here the sphincter remains closed and the urine is lost in drops (paradoxical incontinence). In certain favorable cases of paradoxical incontinence a state of reflex micturition under the influence of reflex stimulation from the lower extremities and the trunk is established independently of the will.

The *anorectal mechanism* is analogous to the vesical. The centers are situated in the third and fourth sacral segments. The analogy is modified to some extent by the fact that under

ordinary conditions the feces are solid. In transverse lesions above the third sacral segment the tone of the sphincter may be maintained but in spite of this in consequence of the interruption of centripetal paths the need for defecation is not felt. In certain patients with disturbances of the anorectal mechanism there is retention of feces; in others especially those with soft or liquid stools diarrhea occurs. The subject is somewhat more complex than is that of retention and incontinence of urine.

The center for *erection of the penis* is situated in the second and third sacral segments. The centers for erection and ejaculation seem to be more or less independent.

Alterations of the *conus medullaris* and of the *cauda equina* may cause absence of erection and of ejaculation.

A state of priapism may occur in young individuals with lesions of the cord above the lumbar region or there may be a state of turgescence of the corpora cavernosa without erection.

**Vasomotor Reflexes.** The stroking of an area of skin gives rise to a primary pallor (vasoconstriction) which is followed by a redness (paralytic vasodilation). Persistence of the redness is known as dermatographism (red). If the whiteness continues (say as a line due to stroking) the persistence of the reflex is known as *Sargent's white line* supposed by Sargent to indicate an insufficiency of suprarenal gland secretion. It is also found in other diseases.

**Sweat Secretion.** Sweat secretion is under the control of the nervous system especially of the sympathetic system by means of true secretory fibers that supply the sweat glands.

**Normal Osteoperiosteal Reflexes**

**Radial Reflex.** This consists in con-

traction of the supinator longus biceps brachialis anticus muscles when the styloid process of the radius is percussed.

**Ulnar Reflex.** Contraction of the pronator teres with a movement of pronation of the hand takes place when the styloid process of the ulna is percussed when the elbow is semiflexed and the hand is in slight supination (ulnoprone reflex of Marie and Barre).

**Periosteal Reflexes of the Adductors.** Contraction of the corresponding adductor muscles of the thigh occurs when the internal condyle of the femur is percussed. This is often associated with the knee jerk on account of the proximity of the spinal centers that govern these two reflexes.

**Semitendinosus and Semimembranosus Periosteal Reflex.** This is elicited by percussion of the external tuberosity of the tibia. Contraction of the semitendinosus muscles and semimembranosus muscles follows.

**Inversion of the Reflexes.** In destructive lesions of the segments governing these various reflexes inversion of these may be seen; i. e. there may be flexion instead of extension or *vice versa*.

**Reflexes Involving Some Cranial Nerves.**  
**Corneal Reflex.** This traverses the trigemino-facial reflex arc (nucleus of the seventh cranial nerve). It may be absent in hysteria, corneal anesthesia, very deep general anesthesia and in profound coma. It consists of closure of the lids when the cornea is touched.

**Pharyngeal Reflex.** This traverses the ninth and tenth cranial nerves (nucleus ambiguus). It consists of movements of deglutition when the pharynx is touched.



**Masseter Reflex** This has already been mentioned. It involves the motor nucleus of the fifth nerve (SFE p 838).

**Oculocardiac Reflex** Compression of the eyeballs for more than five or ten seconds may produce modifications of the frequency of the cardiac rhythm and sometimes of the blood pressure. In the normal subject there may be a retardation of five or six beats a minute. In pathologic cases the slowing may be more marked and there is also an appreciable lowering of blood pressure. In some cases there may be an increase rather than a decrease in pulse rate. It is a trigeminovagasympathetic reflex and is supposed to be a test for vagotonia or for sympathicotonia depending upon whether the vagus or the sympathetic nerve is the more irritable (decrease or increase in pulse rate respectively).

**Carotid Sinus Reflex** Pressure upon the carotid sinus will elicit the carotid sinus syndrome which is characterized by attacks of syncope, vertigo, weakness and convulsions, either general or epileptiform. The pulse is generally slow.

**Various Other Reflexes and Signs**  
**Digital Reflex or Hoffmann's Sign**

A sudden nipping of the nail of the middle or ring fingers produces flexion of the terminal phalanx of the thumb and index finger and of the second and third phalanx of other fingers. This is seen in pyramidal tract diseases affecting the upper extremities.

**Magnus and de Kleijn Tonic Neck Reflex** This consists of extension of both ipsilateral limbs or one or part of a limb and increase of tonus on the side to which the chin is turned when the head is rotated to the side and flexion with loss of tonus on the side to which the occiput points (Wechsler<sup>1</sup>).

This sign is found in decerebrate rigidity and in many severe cases of tuberculous meningitis of infants and young children.

**Brudzinski's Signs**  
**Contralateral Reflex** In meningitis when one lower extremity is flexed at the knee there is flexion of the other lower extremity at the knee.

**Neck Sign** In meningitis when the neck of the patient is bent forward flexion movements of the ankle, knee, hip and sometimes of the elbows are produced. This is what is usually meant when the Brudzinski sign is referred to.

**Symphysis Sign** In meningitis pressure on the symphysis by the physician's finger causes contraction of the lower extremities.

**Cheek Sign** In meningitis pressure on both cheeks just below the malar bone causes raising of both arms with flexion of the elbow joints.

**Babinski's Ear Reflex** When a galvanic electrode is placed near the ear of a patient suffering with disease of the middle or internal ears the head will be inclined to the diseased side when the galvanic current is closed and not as in normal subjects always toward the positive pole. This is also known as *vertigo voltaïque pathologique* or, at least represents this condition. Usually what is called in America the Babinski sign is the reflex extension of the toes especially of the great toe when the sole of the foot is irritated in pyramidal tract affections.

**Paradoxic Pupillary Reflex** Dilation of the pupil may occur on exposure to light as is sometimes seen in tabes and in general paralysis.

**Chaddock's Reflex** Stimulation below the external malleolus produces ex-

<sup>1</sup> Wechsler, I. S. Textbook of Clinical Neurology 4th Ed. W. B. Saunders Co. 1940.

tension of the great toe. It occurs in lesions of the pyramidal tract and hence is to be classed with the Babinski, Gordon and Oppenheim toe reflexes.

**Conditioned Reflex** By this is meant a reflex that continues to be excited by kinds or nature of stimuli different from those of the original stimuli but which occurred originally in association with the original stimuli; thus salivary juice may be secreted in a dog on the ringing of a bell alone if the bell had been rung when the dog actually took or saw food a certain number of times.

**Croft's Reflex** Stroking with a blunt point upward over the dorsal surface of the ankle the leg being horizontal and the muscles relaxed causes dorsal extension of the great toe in cases of organic disease of the pyramidal tract.

**Gordon's Finger Reflex** Pressure on the radial side of the pisiform bone causes dorsal flexion and spreading of the fingers; this is seen in hemiplegia.

**Mass Reflex** (SEE Defense Reflexes and Reflexes of Spinal Automatism p 835) A reflex may be exhibited by the entire area controlled by the portion of the spinal cord which has been injured. For example if the spinal cord be transected after the reflexes have been regained they will be found to have lost their specific character and afferent stimuli occasion diffuse and widespread motor reactions.

**Upper Motor Neuron (Central) Reflex** Destruction of the pyramidal tract by a lesion in the internal capsule by progressive primary destruction of the lateral columns or by section of the spinal cord will cause the upper motor neuron reflex. This consists of hyperactive deep tendon reflexes, spasticity and incoordination of the muscles with increased

tonus but with normal electrical reaction and abnormal reflexes such as positive clonus and Babinski reflexes. This is explainable by the fact that the motor ganglion cells of the anterior horn and their motor nerves remain unimpaired but are cut off from the inhibiting and regulating influence of the cerebral centers by the lesion in the pyramidal tract.

**Lower Motor Neuron (Peripheral) Reflex** Destruction of a lower motor neuron causes flaccidity, loss of motor function (complete paralysis), atrophy and electrical reaction of degeneration in the affected muscles. The skin and tendon reflexes are lost due to destruction of the motor limb of the reflex. At times the meningeal type of reflexes may be elicited *viz* Kernig's and Brudzinski's signs.

**Westphal's Pupillary Reflex** Contraction of the pupil may be associated with closure or attempted closure of the eye.

For other signs see pupillary reflexes (p 182). Signs in tetany (p 791) and signs in exophthalmic goiter see p 778.

### **Examination of Disturbances of the Speech Centers**

Alterations of language consist in inability of expression due either to paralysis of the muscles concerned in articulate speech which may occur in subcortical or nuclear lesions (dysarthria) or in aphasia.

**Aphasia** This implies the inability to express oneself by articulate speech by signs or by writing as well as the inability to comprehend spoken or written language by one who has no defects of the peripheral organs and is not unfamiliar with the language spoken or written by the examiner. *Motor aphasia*

includes *aphasia proper* and *agraphia* or the inability to express ideas in writing. *Sensory aphasia* consists of word blindness and of word deafness.

According to the classical scheme *motor aphasia* is due to a lesion of Broca's area at the foot of the third left frontal convolution or of the fibers leading from it or of fibers connecting it with the other speech centers.

*Agraphia* is due to lesions of the second frontal convolution just superior to Broca's area or the fibers leading from it.

*Word blindness* is due to lesions of the angular gyrus. Word blindness should not be confused with cortical blindness in which objects as well as words are involved or the cortical lesions affecting the region around the calcarine fissure in which (if they are unilateral) hemianopsia is present.

*Word deafness* is due to lesions of the first temporal convolution. Word deafness may be present as a part of general bilateral auditory nerve deafness and of cortical deafness in which no sounds at all are heard.

In aphasia the lesion is in the left hemisphere in right handed people.

**Types of Aphasia** A few of the characteristics distinguishing the various forms of aphasia are as follows.

*Subcortical* or *pure motor aphasia* is distinguished from the motor aphasia of Broca (due to lesions of Broca's convolution) in that in the latter inner speech is gravely affected. Spoken and written language are understood in both varieties. Writing may be more or less affected in Broca's form.

In *total sensory aphasia* there are combined affections of the auditory and the visual centers for speech.

In *pure verbal deafness* (subcortical lesion) internal language is conserved so that the patient speaks, reads and writes without paraphasia, paralexia or paragraphia.

In *pure verbal blindness* (subcortical lesion) internal language is conserved. The patient may speak without paraphasia and may write spontaneously without paragraphia. It is sometimes associated with musical blindness and with right homonymous hemianopsia.

**Optic Aphasia** (Freund) Here the use of an object is recognized by sight but its name is not recalled unless sound, taste and touch come to the aid. Even then the name is not always recalled. This is really a variety of *agnosia* which has been defined by Wilson as inability to recognize objects with conservation of primary sense perception.

**Transcortical Motor Aphasia** Spontaneous speech is lost. Here words can be repeated, print can be read aloud and letters can be written from copy or dictation.

**Transcortical Sensory Aphasia** Here the power of comprehending written and spoken language is lost. There is spontaneous speech (sometimes with paragraphia). The patient can repeat words without comprehending their meaning and can write to dictation or from copy without understanding what he writes. Some authors regard this as psychic blindness or psychic deafness. Other authors apply these terms to agnosic disturbances. These agnosic disturbances are however transcortical (Wilson).

**Marie's View of Aphasia** Marie recognized three different syndromes in aphasia: 1. Sensory aphasia, 2. Anarthria corresponding to pure motor aphasia (see below) and 3. Aphasia of

Broca which consists of components both of sensory aphasia and of anarthria in which case the patient can neither speak read nor write and can comprehend spoken language with difficulty. Marie's theory regards certain of the defects in aphasia as due to intellectual deficiencies. Marie traces the seat of anarthria to lesions of the left lenticular nucleus and that of Broca's aphasia to combined lesions of the sensory area of Wernicke (auditory centers—posterior parts of the first and second temporal convolution) and of the lenticular nucleus.

#### *Mingazzini's View of Aphasia*

Mingazzini reconciles the classic view and the view of Marie by pointing out that the anterolateral region of the putamen receives neurons from Broca's area and that this region is in contact with fibers that pass to Broca's area from Wernicke's zone by way of the island of Reil. A lesion of this part would produce a combination of sensory aphasia and of anarthria according to Marie. It is possible that some of the speech difficulty in vascular conditions involving the left internal capsule and the adjacent regions is of this nature. Head points out that in aphasia there is really no anarthria and has classified aphasia in accordance with his own views which are dealt with below.

**Head's View of Aphasia** Aphasia and kindred disorders of speech are manifestations of the mental processes thinking or speaking. This nomenclature involves dynamic and physiologic expression rather than static and automatic. The disorders of language cannot be classified according to Head as sensory and motor but are really disorders of symbolic formulation and expres-

sion' which involve the following defects

(a) *Verbal* in which there is a defective power of forming words whether for external or internal use

(b) *Syntactical* where there is essentially a lack of the perfect balance and rhythm necessary to make the sounds uttered by the speaker comprehensible to the hearer

(c) *Nominal* loss of power to employ names with the want of comprehension of the nominal value of words and other symbols

(d) *Semantic* characterized by the want of recognition of the significance and intention of words and phrases apart from their direct meaning

The more definitely the injury destroys the lower portions of the precentral and postcentral convolutions and the parts which lie beneath them the more likely Head believes are the defects of speech to assume a verbal form. A lesion in the neighborhood of the upper convolutions of the temporal lobe tends to produce syntactical disorder. Destruction round about the region of the supra-marginal gyrus causes defects in the use of language that are semantic while a lesion somewhat more posterior produces nominal defects.

#### **Examination of the Language Function Tests** 1 Spontaneous speech

2 Repeated words

3 Comprehension of speech Have the patient execute a certain number of commands

4 Recognition of written speech (mentally) Have the patient execute a written order

5 Recognition of written speech by reading aloud Have the patient read

aloud How well does he read? Does he comprehend what he reads?

6 Spontaneous writing

7 Writing from dictation

8 Writing from copy

In 6 7 and 8 does there exist syllabic or verbal paraphasia (mixing of syllables or words) or are there superfluous words or syllables?

In 6 are the phrasing and grammar good?

In 7 does the patient understand what he has written?

In 8 can the patient transcribe printed matter into writing or does he merely print it or copy written matter servilely?

In carrying out these tests the patient's education and general intelligence should be taken into account

### Disturbances of Motility

**Paralysis** In considering paralysis due to cortical lesions one must remember that there is a bilateral cortical supply to the muscles furnished by the superior branches of the facial nerve the muscles of mastication of deglutition of the larynx the sternocleidomastoids the upper part of the trapezi the greater part of the ocular muscles and the muscles of the trunk

The cells governing the peripheral motor neurons exercise a trophic influence on the muscles supplied by these neurons The central neuron has a weaker influence on the trophic state of the muscle than the peripheral neuron

In lesions of the peripheral motor neuron there is reaction of degeneration as shown by the electrical tests

**Pathologic Contractions** *Contractures* A true contracture is a persistent tonic contraction of a muscle It is found in lesions of the central motor neuron especially and is intimately as-

sociated with increase of muscular tonus (hypertonia)

In spastic spinal lesions Babinski distinguishes between spastic paraplegia with contracture in extension and a spastic paraplegia with contracture in flexion In the former voluntary motion may not be much affected but the plantar Babinski reflex is present and the tendon reflexes are increased In the latter there is more disturbance of voluntary motion the tendon reflexes are not exaggerated the defense and automatic spinal reflexes are marked and a plantar Babinski reflex may be wanting This latter form may occur in diffuse spinal sclerosis and in spinal tumors and occurs without marked degeneration of the pyramidal tract

True contracture in disease of the peripheral neuron may occur in syringomyelia due to irritation of the cells of this neuron Contracture may occur reflexly in articular lesions and lesions of the peripheral nerves

*False contracture* is an involuntary and persistent retraction of the muscular tissue the latter becoming profoundly altered It does not disappear under anesthesia as does true contracture Such a condition may appear in peripheral neuritis and in anterior poliomyelitis

**Synkinesia** This is an associated movement i e an involuntary movement produced in association with an other (voluntary) movement

**Spasmodic Synkinesias** These occur on the hemiplegic side of the body when the muscles of the opposite side are moved voluntarily with some degree of force and as a rule tend to exaggerate the natural contracture of the paralyzed side They are probably due to overflows along the direct pyramidal tract

**Imitative Synkinesias** These occur on the sound side when a movement is executed or tends to be executed on a paralyzed side. According to S. A. K. Wilson these may occur typically in Parkinson's disease.

**Synkinesias of Coordination** In these it is possible to execute synergically a given movement which voluntarily and when isolated cannot be executed by the patient and it is impossible to inhibit this movement when the synergists act. An example of such a movement is the *tibialis phenomenon of Strumpell*. Here the foot cannot voluntarily be flexed dorsally on the leg in hemiplegia and in monoplegia of the lower extremity nevertheless the foot draws up in spite of efforts on the part of the patient to prevent its extension if the patient flexes his thigh on his pelvis and his leg on his thigh. According to Marie this type of synkinesia is the expression of the automatism of lower centers.

**Adiadokokinesis** This is the inability to arrest one motor impulse and substitute for it one that is diametrically opposite.

**Athetosis** These are slow vermicular bizarre movements of the extremities especially of their distal portions. Their existence has been ascribed to lesions of various of the basal ganglia. This view is opposed by Wilson who regards them as due to cortical factors.

**Choreic Movements** These movements are described by S. A. K. Wilson as subjectively purposeful but objectively purposeless. Each fresh movement appears to be directed to an end which is never attained. They are brief and unsustained. According to Wilson both chorea and athetosis are involuntary movements of the new motor or

cortical system rather than of the old or extrapyramidal system.

**Spasm** This is due to an irritative condition. It consists of more or less prolonged involuntary muscular contractions. When the spasm is prolonged it is known as *tonic*, when it is intermittent consisting of a series of muscular jerks it is known as *clonic*. Spasm is associated with convulsions with epilepsy and with tetany and tetanus. It may persist during sleep.

**Tremors** These are involuntary more or less rapid oscillatory movements. They may be classified as (a) Static tremors seen in a state of repose which diminish or cease on voluntary movement of the part (paralysis agitans parkinsonian form of encephalitis lethargica) (b) dynamic or kinetic tremors the intention tremors of disseminated sclerosis (c) tremors seen in repose and on attempted movements hereditary tremors hysteric tremor.

All pathologic tremors are independent of the will. They can however be produced or simulated voluntarily. Emotions tend to exaggerate them. They usually but not always cease during sleep. They vary much in rapidity in amplitude and in location. They occur in toxic conditions (abuse of alcohol and of other drugs) in general paralysis and in old age. As is well known tremors are characteristic of hyperthyroidism and Graves disease. They occur in neurasthenia and in the functional neuroses generally. They may follow apoplexy be associated with degeneration of certain parts of the cerebellum *dysnergia cerebellaris progressiva* of Hunt and with pseudosclerosis lenticular degeneration multiple sclerosis cerebrospinal syphilis the centers and tracts governing muscular tonus are here involved.

Wilson regards tremor as due to disease of the old or extrapyramidal motor system

**Myoclonus** This is experienced in clonic contractions not epileptiform which affect the muscles of the limbs and of the trunk especially. The movements are rapid fulminating often preceded accompanied or succeeded by fibrillary contractions. They cease during sleep and are usually bilateral. They occur chiefly in encephalitis and in paramyoclonus multiplex.

**Tics** These are tonic or clonic more or less easily imitated coordinated gross movements associated with poor power of the patient to cooperate and sometimes with the repetition of words or phrases. The tics may be symptomatic or regarded as a disease *sui generis*.

**Nystagmus** This consists of rapid associated conjugate movements of the eyeballs and may be either static or dynamic. There are two components of a nystagmus: a slow movement in one direction followed by a rapid movement in another direction and toward the right or toward the left. There may also be vertical and rotary nystagmus. In nystagmus the associated movements of the eye are involved. It may occur in humans in albinos or congenitally in cerebellar affections in vestibular affections in Friedreich's ataxia and in multiple sclerosis. Nystagmus usually points to cerebellar or labyrinthine disease. According to Bing nystagmoid movements backward and forward may occur.

**Apraxia** This is the inability to execute purposeful movements.

**Types of Apraxia** (1) Motor apraxia when the patient is unable to execute movements or commands.

(2) Idiomotor apraxia when the pa-

tient is unable to imitate movements performed in his presence.

(3) Parapraxia, when the patient executes movements other than those commanded him.

(4) Intentional perseveration of Liepmann when the patient executes one movement correctly as ordered but when told to perform another kind of movement continues repeating the first.

(5) Clonic perseveration of Liepmann when the patient continues to perform an action or a motion for some time after being told to stop.

Left sided apraxia is sometimes produced by lesions of the corpus callosum. It has also been noted according to Potts in lesions of the left frontal lobe and of the left parietal lobe.

**Muscle Tone (muscle tone)** Muscle tone is defined as a state of reflex contraction which is concerned with maintaining position and posture. This is regulated by impulses that proceed from the anterior horn cells. These cells are themselves subjected to tone regulating impulses which travel along the descending tracts from the brain. The motor tracts accessory to the pyramidal tracts are important factors in this tone regulating property. It is probable that the cerebellum also exercises a regulatory function on tone.

**Reflex tone** depends mainly on afferent impulses coming from the sense organs in the muscles themselves and to a less extent on impulses from the vestibular apparatus and the eyes. Wright<sup>1</sup> states that there is no essential difference between the contraction which maintains tone and that which executes movements. Muscle tone is probably due to a slow asynchronous discharge from

<sup>1</sup> Wright S. *Applied Physiology* 6th Ed page 63 Oxford University Press

anterior horn cells producing a partial tetanus which is economical and can be maintained. Movement is due to a more rapid synchronous discharge which gives rise to a more powerful tetanus but of relatively short duration.

**Reaction of Degeneration.** When a faradic or galvanic current is applied to a normal nerve or muscle, a sharp contraction will occur while the current is passing. A diseased muscle will not readily respond to a faradic current but will respond to the positive pole of the galvanic current. A diseased nerve will not respond to either pole of any current.

When the cathode (negative pole) is placed over a certain point of a normal muscle (motor point) and the other pole over the spine a strong contraction occurs when the circuit is closed or broken. When the anode (positive pole) is placed over the point the contraction is much less. In neither case is there any contraction when the current is passing. The reaction of degeneration consists in the reversal of these phenomena, at least the so-called "aerial change" as expressing degeneration does. Complete reactions of degeneration include modal changes and loss of reactions to the faradic current.

The following formulae express the electrical reactions.

#### NORMAL MUSCLE

AnCIC is less than CaCIC

(Anodal [positive] closing contraction is less than cathodal [negative] closing contraction.)

AnOC is greater than CaOC

(Anodal opening contraction is greater than cathodal opening contraction.)

#### MUSCLES IN THE FIRST STAGE OF DEGENERATION

AnCIC equals CaCIC

(Anodal closing contraction equals cathodal closing contraction.)

AnOC equals CaOC

(Anodal opening contraction equals cathodal opening contraction.)

#### MUSCLES IN ADVANCED STAGE OF DEGENERATION

AnCIC is greater than CaCIC

(Anodal closing contraction is greater than cathodal closing contraction.)

AnOC is less than CaOC

(Anodal opening contraction is less than cathodal opening contraction.)

*Reaction of degeneration* is observed in advanced acute and chronic polio myelitis, acute central myelitis progressive muscular atrophy, and in severe peripheral neuritis after compression of a nerve. This reaction indicates that the trophic cells in the anterior gray horns of the cord have been destroyed or that the efferent fibers from these cells have degenerated or that there has been extensive atrophy of the muscle.

*Vermicular responses* of the muscles to electrical stimulation are considered signs of degeneration (the so-called modal change).

The *myotonic reaction* is involuntary persistence of the contraction after faradic stimulation of the muscle. It is seen in myotonia congenita and myotonic dystrophy.

The *myasthenic reaction* (of Jolly) is the rapid exhaustion of the responses to faradic stimulation of the muscle and nerves. It is seen typically in myasthenia gravis although it may not occur here and has been reported as having been found sporadically in other conditions.

**Reactions of Sensibility.** The following forms of sensibility are to be tested: Tactile pressure, thermic, pain musculoarticular, osseous (use of a tuning fork on the bones) and stereognostic.



**Dissociation of various forms of sensibility** are as follows

**Syngomyelic** Tactile and deep sensibility are retained thermic and pain sensibility are abolished (over a portion of the body)

**Tabetic** Relative conservation of the thermic and pain sensibility exist together with abolition (at least in part) of the tactile sense and of the deep sensibility

**Cutaneous Deep** Abolition or diminution of the pressure osseous and musculoarticular sensibility occurs with conservation of tactile thermic and pain sensibility

**Anesthesia Dolorosa** Painfulness of a part is seen as of a limb or of a half of the body associated with anesthesia of that part Seen in thalamic lesions

**Hyperesthesia** This symptom is seen in a variety of conditions

**Dysthesia** (a) *Retardation of sensation* (b) *fusion of the sensations* due to successive stimuli (in a prolonged sensation) (c) *addition of sensations* perception of sensation only after repeated excitations (d) *errors of localization* (e) *perceptions of the first only* of a series of excitations (f) *disappearance of the sensation* during a prolonged stimulation (g) *polyesthesia* several sensations felt when the stimulus is single (h) *syналgia* painful sensation far from the point excited (i) *allochiria* perception of the sensation at a symmetrical point of the body (j) *metamorphosis of sensations* false interpretation of a given stimulus

**Subjective Sensations** Pain is found especially in neuralgia neuritis and radiculitis and in diseases of the central nervous system in which the sensory tracts are involved

**Causalgia** A spontaneous pain especially when it is burning in character associated with anesthesia or hypesthesia in the sensory distribution of a given nerve is termed causalgia It seems to be bound up with lesions of the nervi nervorum

**Paresthesia** Sensations of formication tingling and the like are found in central and in peripheral lesions

**Pseudomyelia Paresthetica** (Bechterew) A false sensation of movement in a paralyzed limb sometimes is seen The converse of this may occur i.e. a sensation of lack of movement when the limb is really moving (Mingazzini quoted by Mattiolo)

### **Disturbances of Equilibrium and Orientation**

The principal organs of coordination of equilibrium and of orientation are the cerebellum and the cerebrum

**Ataxia** (loss of coordination) **Static Ataxia** Slow and wide oscillations in a limb when an attempt is made to keep it at rest in the trunk when the patient is seated in the body when the patient is on his feet reveal static ataxia

**Dynamic Ataxia** Incoordination in the execution of a movement suggests dynamic ataxia

**Tabetic Ataxia** This occurs when there are lesions of the first order of sensory neurons (neuritis or tabes dorsalis) in lesions of the second order of sensory neurons (bulbar and pontine ataxia) in lesions of the third order of sensory neurons cerebral ataxia

**Cerebellar Ataxia** This is found in lesions of the cerebellum lesions of the afferent and efferent fibers of the cerebellar system central or peripheral lesions of the vestibular apparatus

The mixed tabocerebellar type of ataxia is found in lesions of the cerebellum and of the spinocerebellar tracts associated with those of the primary sensory neurons (Friedreich's ataxia).

Tabetic ataxia is both static and dynamic. When the lower limbs are affected, there is the characteristic goose step or tabetic gait. During walking, when the trunk is affected, there are oscillatory movements of the body. The dynamic ataxia of the upper extremities is manifested in all their movements, especially in the finer movements. Inordinate and excessive movements of the face may be observed when the patient talks, laughs, or weeps. Static ataxia may be demonstrated by asking the patient to raise his arms or his legs while his trunk remains supine, or the ataxia of the trunk may be demonstrated by the sway of the body when the patient closes his eyes, his feet being together, standing posture (*Romberg's sign*).

Cerebellar ataxia may be demonstrated by lateral and anteroposterior movements of the body while attempting to maintain equilibrium, and by staggering or zigzag movements more to one side than to the other. Difficulty is found in the grasping of objects. Closure of the eyes has little or no effect on the unsteady station. This is seen in lesions of the cerebellum and its pathways and in lesions of the vestibular apparatus.

The tabetocerebellar type partakes of the characteristics of both the tabetic and the cerebellar forms of ataxia.

**Asynergia.** This is characterized by a want of harmony between muscle groups in the execution of a movement, thus in walking a lower extremity may be advanced while the trunk is unprepared for the movement, this is decomposition of movements that ordinarily

occur simultaneously, *i.e.*, the individual movements occur in serial order instead of together. This is present in affections of the cerebellum.

**Adiadokokinesis:** This occurs in cerebellar affections. Rapid antagonistic movements, for instance, those of pronation and supination of the hands, cannot be carried out repeatedly with accuracy.

**Dysmetria:** This also occurs in cerebellar affections. The movements are rapid and brusque, as if the degree of force necessary to execute them were misjudged.

**Past Pointing.** This is the failure of the index finger of the patient to touch an object when he attempts to touch it, the finger passing the object with more or less latitude. The patient is asked to touch the tip of his nose with his index finger after having his arm at full extension or to touch the tips of the index finger of both hands after the hands have been far apart. It is best carried out as a test when the patient's eyes are closed. Past pointing may occur spontaneously in conditions associated with ataxia, especially in cerebellar and vestibular nerve conditions, or may vary from normal past pointing reactions when the Barany tests are carried out in a study of these conditions.

**Vertigo** (sensation of loss of equilibrium). Vertigo is a sensation in which objects and the body of the patient himself seem to be in space while they are really at rest. This may occur in a given direction (systematic). Sometimes the body and the objects seem to be turning in the same direction, according to Stewart and Holmes, this is found in cerebellar affections proper. Sometimes the body seems to turn in an opposite direction to that of the objects, according to Stewart and Holmes, this is found

in extracerebellar affections that involve the function of the cerebellum (SEE p 814)

**Cerebellar Vertigo** This is typical rotary systematic vertigo which is present in the erect and recumbent postures. It is accompanied by vomiting sweating and syncope and seems to vary with the intracranial pressure. It is found also in lesions of the pathways that unite the vestibular nerve with the cerebellum in which case the systematic vertigo would tend toward the extracerebellar type.

**Labyrinthine Vertigo** (Meniere) This occurs in lesions of the vestibular apparatus including Dieter's nucleus. It is essentially paroxysmal. It is also systematic that is the rotation of the organism or of surrounding objects is always in a given direction.

Vertigo also occurs in circulatory diseases of the brain and in cerebral tumors (nonsystematic) in lesions of the bulb and the pons (perhaps systematic) in paralysis and contractions of the eye muscles with strabismus and diplopia (nonsystematic) in inhalations of fumes following painful impressions of the nasal and laryngeal mucous membranes in diseases of the gastrointestinal tract and liver and in various toxic states.

**Lateropulsion and Lateral Deviation of the Body** This is observed in

cerebellar lesions (lesion on the same side as the lateropulsion and lateral deviation). They occur toward the same side also in lesions of the inferior cerebellar peduncles and toward the opposite side in lesions of the superior cerebellar peduncles.

**Gaits** Abnormal gaits are associated with disturbances of equilibrium. The *tabetic gait* is characterized by wide spread legs goose step and concave knee. Lateropulsion has already been mentioned. In the gait in *paralysis agitans* the patient tends to run after his center of gravity. The form of *encephalitis lethargica* that simulates paralysis agitans may be associated with a slow awkward gait in some of these the gait is difficult to distinguish from that of true paralysis agitans. In *multiple neuritis* affecting both legs the gait resembles that of a high stepping horse hence the term *steppage gait*.

The gait of *hemiplegia* may be readily recognized as well as the so called *crossed leg* progression of *infantile palsy*. The gait of *dysbasia lordotica progressiva* (torsion spasm) is peculiar and has been called the *dromedary gait*. The gait of *Huntington's chorea* is also peculiar consisting of a few normal paces then a long slow pace and then one or two hops (SEE p 120).

## CHAPTER XXVIII

### Diseases of the Nervous System

Diseases of the nervous system are of two types organic and functional. Organic nervous diseases occur as the result of definite lesions in some part of the nervous system which interfere with either perception conduction or innervation of muscles glands or other structures of the body and affect their specific functions. These lesions are identifiable by tracing the primary defects to the physiologic nerve center. Such lesions may be due to infections degenerations inflammation tumors hemorrhage or other destructive processes.

Functional nervous diseases occur in the absence of any discoverable organic lesion. The principal defects are associated with disturbance of the orderly mental processes and are termed neuroses psychoses and psychoneuroses.

#### Organic Diseases of the Nervous System

Organic diseases of the nervous system are studied by means of physical examination by examination of the spinal fluid and the blood by x rays and by special tests.

#### Lesions of the Peripheral Nerves

##### Paralysis of the Phrenic Nerves

**Bilateral.** The auxiliary muscles of inspiration come into play. The patient is dyspneic. Both inspiration and expiration are difficult.

**Unilateral.** In unilateral paralysis Litten's diaphragmatic phenomenon is wanting on the paralyzed side.

**Total Radicular Paralysis of the Brachial Plexus.** This causes (a)

Flaccid paralysis of all the muscles of the upper extremity and of the shoulder girdle.

(b) Complete anesthesia of this extremity with the exception of the inner surface of the arm.

(c) Sympathetic oculosupillary paralysis by reason of the anastomosis of the plexus with the communicating branch of the first dorsal nerve.

**Superior Radicular Paralysis** (5th and 6th cervical roots). *Erl's palsy* is manifested by (a) Paralysis of the deltoid biceps brachialis anticus and long supinator muscles. At times also the levator anguli scapulae the rhomboids infraspinatus supraspinatus and serratus magnus may become paralyzed.

(b) Anesthesia of the external and radial side of the forearm.

(c) Triceps reflex preserved radial periosteal reflex abolished.

**Medial Radicular Paralysis** (7th cervical root). This causes (a) Paralysis of the extensor communis digitorum long and short extensors of the thumb extensor proprius of the index finger and extensor proprius of the little finger long abductor of the thumb the two extensors (carpi radialis the extensor carpi ulnaris) partial reaction of degeneration in the paralyzed muscles.

(b) Hypesthesia in a longitudinal zone on the posterior surface of the forearm.

**Inferior Radicular Paralysis** (8th cervical and 1st dorsal roots). *Klumpke's palsy* results in (a) Paralysis of the flexors of the fingers flexor carpi ulnaris small muscles of the thenar and

hypothenar eminences interossei and lumbricals

(b) Anesthesia of the ulnar side of the forearm but not of the part of the (upper) arm that is innervated by the second dorsal root

(c) Sympathetic oculopupillary paralysis

**Lesions of the Brachial Plexus**  
Partial Lesions

**1 Syndrome of the Outer Cord**  
Paralysis of the muscles innervated by the musculocutaneous nerve and by the external head of the median nerve : *c* biceps coracobrachialis brachialis anticus palmaris longus pronator teres and the flexors and the opponent of the thumb

**2 Syndrome of the Inner Cord**  
Paralysis of the muscles innervated by the ulnar and by a part of those innervated by the median (internal head) These latter are the flexors of the fingers

**3 Syndrome of the Posterior Cord**  
Paralysis of the muscles innervated by the circumflex nerve and by the musculospiral nerve

The alterations in sensibility in lesions of the brachial plexus are neither radicular nor do they follow the anesthesias of wounds of the peripheral nerves

Lesions or injury to the nerve supplying the chest muscles such as the rhomboids the serratus magnus muscle the suprascapular muscle the great pectoralis muscle the latissimus dorsi muscle will cause them to be paralyzed

**Lesions of the Circumflex Nerve**  
These result in paralysis of the teres minor and the deltoid muscles and anesthesia over the insertion of the deltoid muscle

**Lesion of the Musculospiral Nerve**  
**Wrist Drop** The following movements are lost (a) Extension of the forearm on the arm (paralysis of the triceps muscle), (b) supination of the forearm (supinators) (c) extension of the hand at the wrist (radial and posterior ulnar muscles), (d) extension of the first phalanges on their metacarpal bones (extensors of the fingers)

Anesthesia occurs along the cutaneous course of the nerve

**Lesions of the Median Nerve**  
Lesions of this nerve produce the following paralysis of movement (a) Flexion of the hand on the forearm (b) pronation of the forearm (c) flexion of the thumb index finger and middle finger (d) apposition of the thumb

The characteristic is anesthesia of the thumb the two adjoining fingers and the half of the next on their palmar surface the corresponding part of the palm to the wrist and on the back of the hand of the two end phalanges of the two and a half fingers next to the thumb

**Lesions of the Ulnar Nerve**  
The following paralysis is produced (a) Extension of the last two phalanges of the ring and the little finger (b) adduction of the thumb in part compensated by the action of the opponents (c) spreading and approximating of the fingers (d) adduction and apposition of the little finger (e) flexion of the first phalanx of the four fingers

Anesthesia occurs in the ulnar nerve distribution

**Lesions of the Musculocutaneous Nerve**  
These result in loss of flexion of the forearm on the arm anesthesia in the arm of cutaneous distribution of the nerve

**Lesions of the Trunks of the Lumbar Plexus** *Lesions of the first and second lumbar trunks* produce weakness of the psoas, quadratus lumborum transverse abdominal and quadriceps femoris muscles, with anesthesia over the upper anterior part of the thigh and the external surface of the buttocks

*Lesions of the third and fourth lumbar trunks* produce paralysis of the muscles supplied by the anterior crural nerve and the obturator nerve, and weakness of the glutei tensor fascia lata semi tendinosus, and other muscles supplied by the fourth lumbar trunk. In the leg the anterior tibial muscle is paralyzed or weakened. The anesthesia covers the lower external surface of the thigh and the internal surface of the leg and the foot

*Lesions of the external cutaneous nerve* determine the condition known as meralgia paresthetica

*Lesions of the anterior crural nerve* produce paralysis of flexion of the thigh of extension of the leg and of rotation of the leg outward. There is anesthesia in the cutaneous distribution

*Lesions of the obturator nerve* produce paralysis of adduction of the lower extremity of approximation and crossing of the thighs with anesthesia in the cutaneous distribution of the nerve

**Lesions of the Sacral Plexus** These are sometimes produced by union of the fifth lumbar vertebra with the sacrum. Various neuralgias and neuritis are produced which are associated with the bone and joint changes and which have been called Bertolotti's syndrome

*Lesions of the first and second sacral trunks* produce, generally paralysis of the muscles of the leg except the tibialis anticus, and also, generally, paral-

ysis of the muscle of the thigh supplied by these trunks, and of the foot. There is anesthesia in the cutaneous distribution of these trunks

*Lesions of the third and fourth sacral trunks*, if bilateral, produce a syndrome similar to that produced by lesions of the conus medullaris

**Lesions of the Cauda Equina** *Pain* in the perineum, and down the back and front of the thighs and legs or in the small of the back usually precedes the physical signs. Later there develops weakness in the limb which progresses to *flaccid paralysis*. There is *impairment of all forms of sensation* in the affected roots and of *deep reflexes* both ankle and knee jerks are lost. There may be radicular distribution of anesthesia in the perineum on the buttocks and in the lower extremities, sometimes there may be associated motor paralysis (depending on the lesion) of the glutei and other nearby muscles, with atrophy and vesicle, rectal and sexual disturbances. Paralysis of the bladder and rectum occur only when the lesion is in the sacral region. Often this is absent or it may occur as a late symptom. The symptoms are often asymmetrical or unilateral. Recovery may occur

**Lesions of the Conus Medullaris** These always cause *bilateral symptoms*. Bladder and rectal disturbances occur early and are severe. Pain is not a prominent symptom, if present it affects only the perineum and buttocks. Saddle anesthesia occurs early and there may be dissociation of sensation that is loss of pain and temperature alone. Knee jerk reflex remains intact but ankle jerk is lost. Recovery does not occur. Occasionally there may be simultaneous involvement of both the cauda equina and the conus medullaris

**Lesions of the Small Sciatic Nerve**

These produce a flaccidity of the buttock on the affected side with some difficulty in extension of the thigh, as in ascending stairs. Unilateral paralysis of the gluteus muscle gives rise to Trendelenburg's symptom, which consists in an inclination of the pelvis toward the sound side when the patient stands on the affected leg. There is anesthesia in the cutaneous distribution.

**Lesions of the Great Sciatic Nerve**

Total paralysis causes paralysis and atrophy of the flexor muscles of the leg and the thigh, and paralysis and atrophy of all the muscles of the leg and foot. Drop foot and steppage gait are present, on the affected side. There is anesthesia in the cutaneous distribution.

**Lesions of the Internal Popliteal Nerve**

These produce paralysis of flexion and of adduction of the toes of adduction and abduction of the toes of rotation inward and adduction of the foot of plantar flexion and of lowering of the ball of the foot. There is anesthesia in the cutaneous distribution.

**Lesions of the External Popliteal Nerve**

These produce paralysis of dorsal flexion and adduction of the foot of rotation of the ball of the foot outward and of raising of the external border of the foot of extension of the toes. There is anesthesia in the cutaneous distribution.

**Neuritis.** *Alcoholic neuritis* may affect all extremities but has a predilection for the external popliteal nerve. In *Korsakoff's psychosis* usually alcoholic there are in addition to neuritides amnesia for recent events and memory gaps with a tendency to confabulation, intellectual weakness, delirium, hallucinations and illusions. *Lead palsy* is largely confined to the upper extremities; is often of

the lower arm type (wrist drop) with relative immunity of the nerve to the supinator longus muscle. There may be the concomitant signs of lead poisoning. *Arsenical neuritis* is usually confined to the distal parts of the extremities and is apt to be associated with skin lesions. *Diabetic polyneuritis* prefers the domain of the anterior crural obturator and the peroneal nerves. *Diphtheritic paralysis* largely affects the palate, the pharynx perhaps in certain cases the heart and sometimes the eye muscles through their nerves. *Beriberi* and *leprosy* should be kept in mind as causes of polyneuritis.

**Neuralgia.** The cause of the so-called '*neuralgia*' apart from an accompanying neuritis is pressure on nerve trunks or changes in the root ganglia, change in the nutrition of the nerve such as may be brought about by its nerve supply or changes due to toxins. Thus sciatic neuritis or neuralgia may be associated with sacral radiculitis. There are many cases of pain in the hip or posterior aspect of the thigh that resemble sciatica. In true sciatica Lasegue's sign is positive. Lasegue's sign is the inability to raise the extended lower extremity on the pelvis without producing pain in the popliteal space. There is also absence or lessening of the Achilles reflex.

*Pain in the abdominal wall* unassociated with deep seated tenderness but aggravated by superficial palpation or by pinching may be due to intercostal neuralgia.

**Lesions of the Cranial Nerves****Lesions of the First Cranial Nerve**

These lesions include *anosmia* (loss of sense of smell), *hyposmia* (impaired sense of smell) and *hyperosmia* (acute

or exaggerated sense of smell) *Parosmia* is a perverted or false sense of smell

These disturbances may occur in lesions of the olfactory centers of the hippocampal region of the horn of Ammon and of the olfactory bulb and tract also in syphilitic alterations in basilar meningitis, tumors of the orbital lobe and in hydrocephalus with compression of the olfactory tract. Anosmia may occur in *tabes dorsalis* (Klippel and Jullian). Alterations of the sense of smell may occur also in peripheral lesions of the olfactory paths and in *ozena*, also after the inhalation of irritant gases and in hysteria and toxic psychosis. In testing the sense of smell nonirritating substances such as some of the essential oils (cloves cinnamon) should be used.

**Lesions of the Second Cranial Nerve.** The pupil reacts physiologically to light to convergence, to accommodation, and to pain. It reacts to emotions. The idea of a distant or dark object provokes a dilatation (Haaß's reflex). The *Argyll Robertson* pupil is one in which the pupil does not react to light but does to accommodation (seen in *tabes* and perhaps in other varieties of syphilis of the nervous system). The tabetic pupil is also a contracted pupil.

The consensual reaction of the pupils to light should always be tested; i. e. the pupil of a screened but observed eye should dilate and contract together with the pupil of the other eye.

In cases where the pupil does not react to light (*tabes*, oculomotor neuritis), contraction may be brought about by ordering the patient to close his eye while the physician exerts force with his fingers to keep the eye open (Westphal-Galassi's phenomenon).

The examination of all cases of nervous disease should include an examination of the eye grounds and the fields of vision.

Destruction of the optic nerve anywhere from the retina to the chiasm produces loss of vision in the corresponding eye. The reflex of the pupil to light is abolished, although the pupil reacts when the sound eye is illuminated. Partial destruction causes scotomata and gaps in the visual field.

The matter of optic neuritis and choked discs is discussed on p. 870.

Lesions of the chiasm at the middle and lesions of the pituitary gland because of pressure will produce bitemporal hemianopsia.

A lesion of the chiasm at the side produces nasal hemianopsia. Bilateral lesions (at the sides) produce binasal hemianopsia.

A lesion of the optic tract anterior to the primary optic centers produces homonymous hemianopsia of the field of vision opposite to the side of the lesion. Illumination of the blind halves of the retina does not produce the reaction to light (hemopic pupillary phenomenon). This is also true when the primary optic center is involved.

Lesions of the optic radiations produce homonymous hemianopsia with reaction to light when the blind halves are illuminated.

Lesions of the superior lip of the calcarine fissures produce quadrant anopsia or anopsia in the inferior fields of vision opposite to the side of the lesion.

Lesions of the inferior lip of the calcarine fissure produce quadrant anopsia in the superior fields of vision opposite to the side of the lesion.

**Lesions of the Third Fourth and Sixth Nerves.** Total paralysis of the



third pair produces ptosis deviation of the bulbs externally, of paralysis of the internal recti of the superior recti of inferior oblique and of the inferior recti paralytic mydriasis loss of the reactions to light and to accommodation and crossed diplopia

Supranuclear lesions of the third nerve are associated with those of the sixth pair, and there is conjugate deviation of the eyes with paralysis of one external rectus and one internal rectus muscle

Nuclear lesions usually cause complete external and incomplete internal paralysis, ordinarily the pupillary reactions are preserved

Peripheral lesions are due to trauma meningitis tumors infections or toxic causes

In paralysis of the fourth nerve the deviation is upward and inward the false image occurs downward and outward

In paralysis of the sixth nerve the deviation is inward the false image outward Peripheral involvement of the sixth nerve when associated with otitis media and with temporoparietal pain is known as the *syndrome of Gradenigo*

**Associated Actions of the Eye Muscles Lateral Movements** Conjugate deviation of the eyes and the head The lateral movements of the eyes are governed by a center at the foot of the second frontal convolution This sends pathways to the internal rectus muscle of the same side and to the external rectus muscle of the opposite side There are paths joining the ocular nuclei The principal connecting pathway is the posterior longitudinal bundle which sends branches also to other cranial nerve nuclei The fibers from the cerebrum pass down through the knee of the internal capsule

In paralytic cortical lesions the eyes and the head are turned towards the side of the lesions In spastic or convulsive deviation due to cortical lesions the eye and the head are turned away from the side of the lesion When the lesions are in the pons rather than in the cortex the deviation in paralytic lesions is away from the side of the lesion and in irritative lesions toward the side of the lesion

In paralysis of the *associated movements of elevation* the eyes cannot be elevated This may occur especially in tumors of the superior quadrigemina which also may occasion paralysis of depression of the eyes

Paralysis of convergence is often seen in Graves disease (Moebius sign)

Associated paralysis of the internal muscle of one side and the external muscle of the opposite side without deviation is due to a lesion of the posterior longitudinal bundle on the side of the paralysis

The subject of nystagmus has already been dealt with (SEE p 847)

**Lesions of the Fifth Cranial Nerve** Destructive lesions of the motor part produce paralysis of the muscles of mastication

*Lesions of the sensory part* vary as to their symptomology according to the site of the trouble Lesions of the gasserian ganglion give rise to anesthesia like bands similar to those found in spinal lesions This may occur in high syringomyelia and in syringobulbia The lesions may be the dissociated type Degeneration of the descending root may occur in tabes symptoms are produced similar to those just mentioned

*Neuralgia and hyperesthesia* may affect each of the branches of the fifth nerve or have their seat in the gas

serian ganglion Tumors of the pons inflammatory and traumatic basilar lesions may produce this result

Among the *trophic symptoms* produced by diseases of the fifth nerve are neuroparalytic keratitis, herpes zoster, facial hemiatrophy, and vasomotor symptoms *Secretory symptoms* include dryness of the nasal mucous membrane diminution of saliva and alterations of taste and dryness of the conjunctiva (both peripheral phenomena) Lesions of the gasserian ganglion are said to give rise to Horner's syndrome though this is disputed by Stewart, Oppenheim and Villiger, Horner's syndrome is unilateral myosis ptosis enophthalmus and anhidrosis of the face caused by paralysis of the cervical sympathetic because of lesions of sympathetic fibers that pass through the ganglion to the iris

#### Lesions of the Seventh Nerve

*Total palsy* is characterized by unilateral facial paralysis which is recognized on the paralyzed side by drooping of the corner of the mouth flattening of the nasolabial fold and the frontal folds widening of the palpebral fissure inability of showing the teeth of whistling of inflating the cheek or wrinkling the forehead and of closing the eye completely (Bell's palsy)

*Supranuclear palsy* (contralateral) is characterized by the relative noninvolvement of the muscles supplied by the upper facial distributions Occasionally these muscles may move only emotionally The corneal reflex is preserved

In nuclear and peripheral lesions the eye on the paralyzed side may appear higher than on the sound side when the eyes look upward

When the nerve is paralyzed (a) below the stylomastoid foramen there is no paralysis of paralysis

(b) Between the origin of the chorda tympani and the branch to the stapedius there is complete motor paralysis, ageusia in the anterior two-thirds of the tongue on the paralyzed side and diminution of submaxillary secretion of saliva

(c) Lesions between the nerve to the stapedius and the geniculate ganglion result in complete motor paralysis ageusia diminution of the salivary secretion and hyperacusis

(d) Lesions between the geniculate ganglion and the internal auditory meatus cause complete motor paralysis no disturbance of taste diminution of saliva and of the secretion of tears

(e) In lesions at the base of the brain there is frequently added an eighth nerve lesion

Contractures of one half of the face frequently follow seventh nerve lesions

*Facial spasm* may accompany irritative central and peripheral lesions of the seventh nerve and lesions of the fifth nerve It may be of all degrees Peripheral lesions are usually accompanied by a simultaneous spasm of all the muscles involved

Bilateral peripheral seventh nerve lesions occur in basilar meningitis especially syphilitic in aneurysm of the vertebral artery and in bilateral middle ear disease

In testing the sense of taste salt vinegar, sugar and quinine are used The patient protrudes his tongue a minimum quantity of the substance to be identified is placed on the tongue and the patient points toward one of several slips that bear the terms salty sour sweet and bitter according as he experiences the respective taste sensation

**Lesions of the Eighth Nerve**  
There may be loss of all the cochlear or vestibular branches

**Lesions of the Cochlear Nerve**

These are usually accompanied by deafness or hypacusis. Tumors of the brain stem of the cerebellum especially of the cerebellopontine angle may cause these lesions. Tumors of the cerebellopontine angle also cause lesions of the fifth sixth seventh and vestibular nerves and *sometimes of other cranial nerves*. Cochlear nerve deafness is seen in cerebral syphilis. Irritative phenomena on the cochlear nerve include tinnitus various ear noises and hyperacusis.

**Lesions of the Vestibular Nerve**

These are elicited by the *Barany tests* which are performed by rotating the patient about a vertical axis with his head in various positions (Barany chair method—the different semicircular canals are tested when various positions are assumed by the patient). By nystagmus produced by syringing the ears with hot and with cold water by vertigo and nystagmus (or the lack of these) produced by the passage of a galvanic current of from two to four milliamperes with the electrodes on the mastoid processes during the passage (normally the head turns toward the positive pole) and by past pointing tests before and after these procedures.

The vestibular syndrome as ascertained by the help of these tests consists of syndromes of deficiency and syndromes of irritation. The syndromes of deficiency are characterized by want of some of the normal reactions. The syndromes of irritation are found in the attacks of paroxysmal vertigo characteristic of Meniere's disease.

**Lesions of the Ninth Nerve** This nerve is rarely paralyzed alone its characteristic is the palsy of the superior constrictor muscles of the pharynx which interferes with the swallowing of

solid food. Sometimes taste is affected in the posterior third of the tongue.

**Lesions of the Tenth Nerve**

Supranuclear lesions if unilateral usually give rise to little or no trouble because of the bilateral cortical innervation of the parts supplied. In nuclear lesions the soft palate and the vocal cord on the side of the lesion are paralyzed. Peripheral lesions resemble nuclear lesions but may not be so generalized.

**Lesions of the Eleventh Nerve**

Here the sternomastoid and the upper part of the trapezius muscles are paralyzed. Supranuclear lesions if unilateral do not give rise to nuclear trouble on account of bilateral innervation. Nuclear lesions are associated with the condition of the palate and the larynx paralysis described under lesions of the tenth nerve. Peripheral lesions are not apt to be so generalized as nuclear lesions and may be seen in Pott's disease and in aneurysms of the vertebral artery.

Spasm of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles is part of the symptomatology of the condition known as spasmodic wryneck. In this condition the centers affected are probably cortical.

**Lesions of the Twelfth Nerve**

Supranuclear lesions are followed by contralateral paralysis and without atrophy of the tongue and without reactions of degeneration. In nuclear and infranuclear lesions the tongue shows wasting appears wrinkled and fibrillary tremors are present. The sense of taste is not interfered with. In pseudobulbar palsy the whole tongue is paralyzed as well as the muscles of the lips and pharynx and possibly those of phonation involving also other cortical or supranuclear centers or tracts. Unilat

DIFFERENTIAL TABLE OF SIGNS OBTAINED BY THE BÁRÁNY TESTS

	Cerebellum	Cerebellopontine Angle Auditory Nerve	Pons	Labyrinth
Nystagmus before stimulation of vestibular nerve	Spontaneous nystagmus may or may not be present. It usually is present.	May or may not be present. Usually spontaneous if present.	May or may not be present. Often only present when eye balls are moved.	In acute cases of inflammation spontaneous nystagmus which gradually diminishes in severity is present. In chronic cases it is usually absent.
Nystagmus after douching or turning	Increased	Not increased	May be absent or weak	Not increased
Past pointing	Absent or points to wrong side	Absent	Is present if the horizontal canal is stimulated by turning with head at 30° forward or by cold douching with head 90° backward or douching with head 30° forward	Is absent or to wrong side or the patient does not point as far past the point as he should
Hearing	Good	Diminished or absent	Good	Diminished or absent
Vertigo	Not marked. Subjective rotation of self from side of lesion.	Paroxysmal attacks subjective rotation of self to the side of tumor. Tinnitus aurium.	Usually absent may be slight	Paroxysmal attacks. Tinnitus aurium.
Symptoms of asymmetry	Present and well marked	Usually present but not so well marked as in intracerebellar tumors	May be slight or absent	Absent

eral nuclear lesions are seen in bulbar hemorrhage and softening and in bulbar palsy. Here there are reactions of degeneration. Peripheral lesions are seen in suboccipital Pott's disease, meningitis, tumors, fractures, bone cysts and in injuries to the base of the skull.

The ninth, tenth and eleventh cranial nerves are often affected together. This may occur unilaterally in the so-called syndrome of the posterior lacerated foramen or the *syndrome of Veret*. The

tenth, eleventh and twelfth nerves may be paralyzed together, in the so-called *syndrome of Jackson* (Hughlings Jackson), or the tenth and twelfth nerves in the so-called *syndrome of Tapia* (a glossolaryngeal paralysis unilateral sometimes due to a lesion of the trunk of the tenth and the twelfth nerves where they cross in the pharyngomaxillary triangle). Tapia's and Jackson's syndromes may be caused by central lesions as well as by peripheral lesions.

### **Lesions of the Spinal Cord**

The symptoms commonly encountered in diseases of the spinal cord depend upon the nature of the lesion, i. e., syphilis, tumor, irritation, compression, hemorrhage, degeneration, etc., and upon its position and extent, i. e., whether the entire cord, part of it or various segments are involved. In general, the manifestations are usually below the level of the lesion, they are bilateral though at times asymmetrical, and show segmental distribution of either sensory or motor defects. There may be sensory and motor disturbances such as paraplegia, disturbance of gait, disturbance of reflexes and of sphincteric control.

**Syphilis of the Spinal Cord.** Syphilis has the unique distinction of being able to cause disease of any part of the nervous system. Therefore, the symptoms produced by neurosyphilis are many and varied and may simulate any organic or functional disease of the nervous system. The lesions most commonly encountered are cerebral syphilis, cerebral gumma, cerebrospinal syphilis, spinal syphilis, syphilitic meningitis, and peripheral nerve affections. These may cause sensory or motor disturbances or both. Syphilis may also cause mental symptoms such as are found in general paresis and may cause psychosis and hallucinations. The various lesions may be caused by either acquired or congenital syphilis.

**Tumors of the Spinal Cord:** The tumors may be of three types. Intradural (within the membranes), intramedullary (within the spinal cord), and extramedullary (outside the spinal cord). There are also extradural tumors which involve the vertebrae. These tumors are usually metastatic. The intramedullary tumors are more often glioma.

Symptoms presented may be due to irritation or to compression.

**The Irritative Symptoms.** The irritative symptoms may be sensory or motor. Pressure on the posterior roots causes either unilateral or bilateral pain at the level of the distribution of the nerves involved. There may also be hyperesthesia giving rise to the sensation of burning or to searing pain. If the irritation occurs in the cervical region, it will also affect the sympathetic fibers. Pressure on the anterior roots and the anterolateral columns will cause spontaneous muscle spasm of the arms or legs. The spasm may be involuntary, occurring suddenly. In the lower extremities, the thighs may be flexed upon the abdomen and the legs on the thighs. If flexion of the foot occurs, the ankles and the big toe become flexed. This may or may not be accompanied by pain. Occasionally this reflex may be brought out by irritating the skin.

**Compression Symptoms.** Compression of the spinal cord may be caused by tumors, arachnoiditis, myelitis (acute or chronic), fractures and dislocations of the spinal vertebrae, tuberculosis, aneurysm, Hodgkin's disease, and parasites within the spinal canal. The symptoms depend upon the site of the compression, its extent, the accompanying spinal root involvement and the amount of interference with its vascular supply.

**Complete Transverse Lesion.** This will cause total flaccid paralysis of the muscles below the level of the lesion (spastic paralysis indicates that the lesion is incomplete), rapid wasting of the paralyzed muscles with loss of normal electrical reactions, and loss of sensibility from below upward to the level of the lesion including loss of bladder and rec-

but generally show extensive degeneration of the posterior columns, chiefly in the midthoracic region, the degenerative process often extends to the direct cerebellar and the direct and indirect pyramidal tracts of the cord, and may also involve the peripheral nerves.

**Symptoms** There is at the beginning a sensation of "pins and needles," with numbness symmetrically involving the fingers of both hands and the toes of both feet, later this sensation also involves the forearms and legs. Ataxia, unsteady gait particularly at night, and astereognosis with manual clumsiness develop as the disease progresses. At first there is increased knee jerk and ankle clonus with muscle spasticity. Late in the disease there is present bilateral Babinski reflex and Romberg sign. Sensory phenomena are also late manifestations. They are loss of tactile, pain and thermic senses. As the disease progresses there may develop prostration and mental symptoms. Accompaniments of this disease are anemia and achlorhydria. The etiology is not certain, the disease may follow chronic infections, cancer, malaria etc., and is often found in pernicious anemia and leukemia.

**Diseases Affecting the Anterior Horns (motor tracts)** *Acute Anterior Poliomyelitis* (infantile paralysis) This disease is acute in onset, usually affects children and is caused by a filterable virus which gains entrance by way of the respiratory tract. The lesion is an acute inflammation affecting the anterior horn cells of the cord and may spread to the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves and to some extent to the meninges.

**Symptoms** The onset is acute with some fever and is soon followed by motor weakness, spasticity and flaccid paralysis

of muscles innervated by the affected segment or part of the segment of the anterior horn. The paralysis may occur in a muscle, part of a muscle, an upper or lower extremity or it may occur in any two extremities, in the muscles of the back, the abdomen or in the diaphragm. The disease may also affect the meninges, the bulb or the cerebellum. During the acute stage the spinal fluid is found to be under moderate pressure, it is clear and may contain from ten to several hundred cells. At the beginning polymorphonuclear leukocytes predominate but within a few days the predominating cells are lymphocytes. After the acute stage has passed, the affected limb shows atrophy, and flaccid paralysis. Future growth of the affected limb is inhibited and the circulation is poor.

**Progressive Spinal Muscular Atrophy** (chronic anterior poliomyelitis) This is a chronic progressive degenerative disease affecting the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord.

**Symptoms** The onset is gradual and may first affect the small muscles of the hand, causing atrophy and clawlike deformity. It then spreads to the forearm, arm and shoulder. The affected limb is atrophic, hands are limp and the scapula is very prominent. The impairment may spread to other muscles of the body, causing atrophy, flaccid paralysis and fibrillary twitchings. Tendon reflexes are absent or diminished. The pyramidal tract is not affected, sensation remains intact and pain is absent. This disease manifests itself during early adulthood and is more prevalent in the male.

**Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis:** In this disease both the upper and motor neurons are affected. The lesions attack the anterior horns, the motor nuclei of the bulb and later the pyramidal tracts,

so that the manifestations are those of flaccid lower neuron paralysis associated with spastic pyramidal tract disease (Wechsler)

**Symptoms** Symptomatically, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is divided into three groups (1) The slowly progressive form affecting the small muscles of the hands and later the arms rarely the legs (2) the more rapidly progressive form which begins in the shoulders and neck (3) the bulbar form which affects the lips tongue palate and pharynx. Types 2 and 3 progress rapidly toward a fatal issue and type 1 may easily merge into the other types. Symptoms in all three forms are flaccid paralysis in the affected muscles associated with atrophy fibrillary twitching of the affected muscles and hyperactive tendon reflexes of the affected parts indicating pyramidal tract participation. The abdominal reflex is retained and the Babinski reflex is absent. The lower extremities are weak and show hypertonicity or spasticity. There is no pain or other sensory disturbance. Reaction of degeneration becomes manifested as the disease progresses. Speech becomes nasal and later there may be paralysis of the vocal cords. Swallowing is difficult so that there is *drooling of saliva*. Mental symptoms are usually absent though there may be spontaneous or forced laughing or crying.

**Miscellaneous Diseases of the Cord** **Syringomyelia** This is a slowly progressive disease probably due to a congenital neural defect. It is characterized by the formation of cavities in or around the central canal and is often associated with a gliosis. The affection usually develops in the cervical region of the spinal cord and may affect other regions or the entire cord and it may reach the

medulla. The tracts affected are the anterior horns of the spinal cord (motor) and the lateral columns (sympathetic and trophic), it may also affect the posterior columns (sensory) the pyramidal tracts or some of the cranial nerve nuclei.

**Symptoms** Since the pathology is that of a combination of segmental nuclear, or anterior horn disease generally associated with segmental dissociated sensory disturbances the symptoms are as follows. There is an early bilateral loss of pain and temperature sensation in the fingers and hands so that heat cannot be differentiated from cold though tactile sense usually remains unimpaired. There may be a sensation of coldness numbness and tingling of the affected part rarely a burning pain. When the anterior columns are destroyed there will be a Brown Sequard sensory disturbance in half of the body opposite the side of the lesion associated with segmental sensory loss. When the posterior columns are destroyed there will be loss of position and vibration sense. There is also atrophy of the interosseous muscles of the hands and of other muscles. The tendon reflexes of the upper extremities are abolished the skin appears cyanotic and is cold and there may be trophic changes in the skin and hair. Horner's syndrome kyphosis scoliosis various arthropathies and signs of pyramidal tract involvement may occur. Occasionally cervical rib may be associated with this disease.

**Multiple Sclerosis** (disseminated sclerosis) This is a chronic progressive disease of the central nervous system characterized by numerous and wide spread patches of sclerosis of various sizes and ages throughout the white matter of the nervous system usually sparing the peripheral nerves.

**Symptoms** The disease is chronic and progressive and is characterized by many remissions and exacerbations. The onset is slow and insidious and occurs in adolescents and young adults. The earliest manifestations may be weakness of one or both feet, some disturbance of sensation, temporary diplopia, nystagmus, or transient dimness of vision or central scotoma, and urinary disturbances such as frequency, incontinence or retention. As the disease progresses there may develop motor signs such as weakness and stiffness of the legs with spastic paraplegia. The tendon reflexes are exaggerated, Babinski reflex becomes positive (pyramidal tract involvement) and the abdominal and cremasteric reflexes disappear. The gait becomes spastic or ataxic and there is rigidity of the lower extremities. The upper extremities are not as severely affected. However, intention tremors in the upper extremities may be quite severe. There are also tremors of the body generally and of the head. Speech disturbances are characteristic; they may be slowing, halting, scanning or explosive. Sensory disturbances such as loss of pain, touch and temperature may become manifested when the posterior columns are affected. Loss of sphincter control is a late manifestation. Mental changes such as defective memory, lack of control and emotional disturbances occur late in the disease.

**Landry's Paralysis** (acute ascending paralysis) This is an acute fatal disease characterized by an ascending flaccid paralysis beginning in the legs and spreading upwards. It occurs chiefly in young adult males and may be due to a virus infection. The disease is of acute onset with weakness of the legs which in a few hours develops into flaccid paral-

ysis. The paralysis spreads rapidly so that within a few days the muscles of the trunk, chest, shoulders, arms and neck become involved and finally bulbar paralysis sets in so that respiration, deglutition and articulation are involved. All deep reflexes are lost, the sphincters



Fig 2—Progressive neuromuscular atrophy of familial type (Charcot Marie Tooth Hoffman type)

are uninvolved and sensation is but rarely disturbed. Adenopathy and splenomegaly may be present.

**Familial Spastic Spinal Paralysis** This is a chronic progressive disease of childhood characterized by progressive weakness, stiffness and rigidity of the lower extremities. The gait is dragging (scissors gait) and foot drop (pes equinus) usually develops. The deep reflexes are exaggerated and there develops a positive Babinski sign and



ankle clonus. Sensation and sphincter control are unaffected.

**Progressive Muscular Dystrophy** (pseudohypertrophic paralysis). This condition is classified among the myopathies. Several types have been described. (1) *Pseudomuscular hypertrophy of Duchenne* which occurs during childhood and is characterized by weakness of the legs, clumsiness and a tendency to fall and a waddling gait. The leg muscles and later the other muscles of the lower limbs and trunk hypertrophy and subsequently atrophy.

(2) *Landouzy Dejerine type or infantile progressive muscular atrophy of Duchenne* which first involves the facial muscles and then spreads downward. The lips protrude causing the tapir mouth.

(3) *The Erb juvenile type* of adolescence in which the dystrophy is first noted in the shoulder girdle and then spreads to the back muscles and lastly to the thigh and arm muscles.

### Lesions of the Brain

Brain lesions causing pressure symptoms or causing localizing signs may be tumor, hemorrhage, abscess, aneurysm, fluid degeneration and irritation.

**Lesions of the Medulla.** The manifestations noted in lesions of the medulla are varied. When both pyramidal tracts are involved, symptoms in the structures below the level of the lesion will be manifested. Occlusion of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery will cause softening in the dorso-lateral portion of the medulla with involvement of the descending root of the fifth nerve and spinothalamic tract. This causes a gross sensory paralysis so that the face is involved on the side of the lesion and the extremities and trunk on the opposite side. This

type of lesion will also show signs of involvement of the ninth and tenth cranial nerves.

**Lesions of the Pons.** Lesions of the pons cause paralysis on the same side along the fifth, sixth and seventh nerves and crossed paralysis in the extremities. Disturbance of lateral associated movements of the eyeballs occurs often enough to be of diagnostic importance.

**Lesions of the Brain Stem.** Symptoms found in brain stem involvement are motor or sensory and usually follow the regions supplied by the cranial nerves whose origin is in the affected part of the brain stem. Sensory and motor disturbances in the extremities and trunk are on the opposite side of the lesion while those of the face are on the same side. Stasis is usually affected and there is intention tremor, nystagmus and occasionally a Horner's syndrome. This is found particularly in anterior poliomyelitis, progressive bulbar palsy, tumors, multiple sclerosis and other lesions affecting the brain stem.

**Lesions of the Midbrain.** This region includes the cerebral peduncles and the corpora quadrigemina (the colliculi). Lesions in the anterior part of the peduncles will cause fixed dilated pupils, ptosis and external strabismus (third nerve paralysis) on the side of the lesion and hemiplegia on the other side (Weber's syndrome). If the lesion involves the dorsal part of the peduncle it will cause homolateral ocular palsy and contralateral hemitremor and ataxia (Penedikt's syndrome). A lesion about the peduncle involving the infundibulum or the floor of the third ventricle may give pituitary signs or diabetes insipidus. A lesion in the hypothalamic region in the upper part of the third ventricle blocking the

foramen of Monro, may cause flushing of the face, head and neck, lacrimation, salivation, hiccough and attacks of unconsciousness (autonomic epilepsy of Penfield)

**Lesions of the Cerebellum** Lesions affecting the cerebellum are characterized by ataxia, incoordination when the eyes are open or shut, and weakness. There is intention tremor, nystagmus, diminished muscle tonus. These signs are usually on the homolateral side. There is no impairment of sensation. Tumors of the cerebellum may, in addition to these symptoms, cause signs of intracranial pressure such as headache, nausea, and choked disk.

The cerebellar syndrome consists of Pendular knee jerks, asynergy major, asynergy minor as shown in the past pointing test, finger to finger and finger-to nose tests and five Babinski tests, incoordination of station, adiadokokinesis, rebound phenomena of Holmes, tremor of involuntary movement, irregular persistent nystagmus, cephalogyric asynergy, asynergic speech disturbance resulting in scanning, explosive and slurring articulation.

**Cerebellopontine Angle** This region may be affected by neoplasm, inflammation and syphilis. When a tumor involves the path of the eighth nerve it causes tinnitus and vestibular signs and produces a Meniere's syndrome, which is dizziness, deafness, tinnitus occurring in paroxysms and vomiting. Other cranial nerves such as the fifth and seventh may also be implicated. Involvement of the fifth nerve may cause trigeminal neuralgia with loss of sensation on the affected side. When the seventh nerve is affected it may produce facial hemispasm, or twitching simulating jacksonian epilepsy.

Lesions in the cerebellum generally will cause pressure symptoms.

General symptoms of cerebellopontine angle tumors are Tinnitus, nerve deafness, constant headache, vertigo, projectile vomiting, choked disks, spontaneous nystagmus toward the contralateral side which is intensified by head movements.



Fig 3—Left hemiplegia  
(Courtesy M K Meyers)

ataxia and swaying toward the side of the tumor, and general weakness, hypotonia and diminished reflexes.

**Lesions of the Cerebrum** Lesions of the cerebrum will cause headache, drowsiness, confusion, disorientation, impairment of memory, personality changes, stupor, hemianopsia, aphasia and occasionally convulsions and coma. The lesions may be tumor, abscess, hemorrhage, thrombosis or any condition that will simulate a space taking lesion or cause degeneration of the brain tissue.

**Lesions of the Cortex** Usually monoplegias or partial hemiplegias occur, perhaps diplegia when both leg centers are involved. In cortical lesions usually only the inferior facial distribution is affected. There may or may not be anesthesia which when present is usually incomplete. If convulsions occur they are apt to be of the cortical (jacksonian) type from irritation. It must not be forgotten that jacksonian convulsions may occur in so called idiopathic epilepsy in uremia in alcoholism and in lead poisoning. Conjugate deviation of the head and the eye toward the side opposite the lesion occurs in cortical irritation localized in the foot of the second frontal convolution. Sensory irritation may give rise to peripheral pains. Sometimes there are paresthesias or *anesthesia dolorosa*. This last is more often due to optic thalamus lesions. Contractures, hypertonia and synkinesias are apt to occur.

**Lesions of the Corticospinal Tract** Lesions of the corticospinal tract usually cause hemiparesis or hemiplegia on the contralateral side. There is little impairment of gross tactile sense, pain, temperature and vibratory sensations unless the lesion is extensive.

**Lesions in the Thalamus** When the thalamic region is affected the thalamic syndrome of Dejerine Roussy becomes evident. This consists of contralateral hemianesthesia which is complete or almost complete for all forms of sensibility. There are exaggerated reactions to painful and thermic stimuli out of proportion to the intensity of the stimulation upon the hemianesthetic area, also contralateral astereognosis with some degree of contralateral hemiparesis, hemitremor, hemichorea and hemiballismus and severe spontaneous contralateral lancinating pain. There is also marked

emotional disturbances as may be evidenced by unprovoked outbursts of weeping or laughing.

### *Cerebral Localization*

**Lesions of the Frontal Lobe** Lesions of the frontal lobe usually cause change in the intellectual capacity of the individual, irritability, loss of memory, disorientation for space and position and undue jocosity. There may also be weakness of the contralateral side of the face such as smoothing out of wrinkles and slight lagging of an eyelid.

**Lesions of the Base of the Frontal Lobe** The symptoms of basal frontal lobe lesions depend upon the area affected so that there may be loss of sense of smell, primary optic atrophy on the homolateral side and choked disk on the contralateral side.

**Lesions in the Lower Part of the Left Frontal Convolution** This will cause in right handed persons motor aphasia. There may also be a lack of sustained attention.

**Lesions of the Corpus Callosum** Lesions of the corpus callosum are characterized by pronounced mental symptoms because of interference with the association tracts. Apraxia, difficulty in speech and defects of memory are common. Mental symptoms often resemble senile dementia and paresis.

**Lesions of the Motor Cortex** Lesions of the upper two thirds of the motor cortex will interfere with the movements of the opposite side of the body or will cause hemiplegia. Lesions in the lowest third of the left motor cortex in close relation to Broca's area may cause monoplegia affecting the arm, neck and face from above downward on the opposite side of the body.

and will also give symptoms of pyramidal tract involvement. Such lesions may be caused by thrombosis, embolism, hemorrhage or a tumor.

Irritative lesions of the motor cortex will cause *jacl somian* or focal epilepsy. Loss of sensation does not occur in lesions of the pre Rolandic area.

**Lesions of the Temporal Lobe**  
Lesions of the temporal lobe may only be recognized when neighboring structures are involved. Deep lesions in this lobe may involve the optic radiation and cause defects in the visual fields of the opposite side, frequently of sector type. When the uncinate region is affected there may occur a peculiar epileptiform seizure characterized by an aura in which the taste and smell are involved.

**Lesions of the Posterior Part of the First and Second Temporal Convolution**  
Lesions on the right side in a right handed person will produce word deafness and jargon or sensory aphasia.

**Lesions of the Parietal Lobe**  
When the central gyrus of the parietal lobe is affected there is loss of sense of position, point discrimination and localization and loss of stereognostic perception while sensations of heat, cold, touch and pain are seldom if ever affected.

**Lesions of the Left Supramarginal Gyrus**  
These may produce apraxia and lesions in the left angular gyrus may cause alexia (word and letter blindness).

**Lesions of the Occipital Lobe**  
Lesions in this lobe will cause homonymous hemianopsia in the contralateral fields. Irritation of the visual cortex of the optic radiations may cause visual hallucinations. Lesions of the optic thalamus are described on page 870.

**Lesions in the Corpus Striatum**  
Lesions in the corpus striatum will pro-

duce various involuntary movements and rigidity. If the internal capsule is not involved by the lesion of the optic thalamus and corpus striatum pyramidal tract signs will not be present on the opposite side.

**Lesions in the Capsule**  
There is usually a period of flaccid hemiplegia or near hemiplegia which is succeeded by spastic hemiplegia with contractures. If the lesion involves the posterior part of the posterior limb of the capsule, sensation is affected. Vasomotor, secretory and trophic disturbances may occur, as well as some degree of muscular atrophy. Synkinesis may appear. Hemichorea and hemiballismus are apt to be seen in infantile hemiplegia. Hemitremor may be seen when the lenticular nucleus is involved. Probably lesions of the accessory motor tracts are at the root of some of these disturbances of motion. Hemiataxia increased on closure of the eyes due to sensory disturbance may be present.

Signs indicating the paralyzed side during the stage of coma in cerebral hemorrhage:

(a) Absence of the corneal reflex on the paralyzed side.

(b) Spreading out of the thigh on the paralyzed side (*orentes beim*).

(c) *Rainistes' Sign*. When the fore arm and hand the patient lying supine are placed at right angles to the arm the hands fall in flexion. On the sound side the hand remains vertical.

(d) Conjugate deviation of the head and the eyes takes place to the side opposite to the paralysis.

Signs indicating the presence of a slight late hemiplegia:

(a) *Reynolds' Sign*. The closure of the eye on the paralyzed side is less

energetic and the eye cannot be closed alone

(b) *Platysma Sign* (Babinski) There is a failure of contraction of the platysma muscle on the paralyzed side when force is opposed to the opening of the mouth or to the downward movement of the chin

(c) *Movement of Passive Supination* (Neri) If when the hand is pronated on the forearm (patient supine) the forearm is flexed by the physician the hand tends to supinate

(d) *Mendel Bechterew's reflex*

(e) *Strumpell's sign*

(f) The usual signs of pyramidal tract involvement which however may not be marked

Uremia may assume a hemiplegic phase which cannot be well distinguished from cerebral hemorrhage it is however transitory. A cerebral tumor is accompanied by other signs of tumor an endocarditis or a pulmonary abscess points to cerebral embolism. A full slow pulse speaks for increased intracranial pressure as in hemorrhage rather than in embolism or thrombosis

**Lesions of the Anterior Part of the Internal Capsule** These produce hemiplegia on the opposite side

**Lesions in the Posterior Part of the Internal Capsule** These produce hemianopsia and loss of sensation on the opposite side

**Localization of Brain Tumors**

**Brain Cysts and Brain Abscesses**

The general symptoms of these conditions are those due to increased intracranial pressure (i.e. optic neuritis (not always present) headache vomiting with or without nausea and sometimes projectile in type vertigo perhaps Jacksonian attacks slow pulse and mental symptoms such as apathy and a tend-

ency to sleep during the day. The skull may be tender to percussion especially in brain abscess. In the localization of the intracranial condition a knowledge of what has been set forth under *Syndromes* is of advantage. Tumor in the *left temporal lobe* should produce sensory aphasia and perhaps visual field limitations of the hemianopic or quadrantan hemianopic type perhaps affecting chiefly the color fields. Growths in the *occipital region* give rise to hemianopsia of the fields of vision of the opposite side when the *inferior lip of the calcarine fissure* is involved there is *quadrantan hemianopsia for the opposite superior fields* when the *superior lip* is involved the quadrant hemianopsia affects the *opposite inferior fields*. Incomplete defects in the fields of vision especially of the upper interior part suggest a tumor or abscess in the substance of the temporal lobe. *Parietal lobe tumors* are characterized by the aphasias with perhaps astereognosis. There may be loss of deep sensibility and some ataxia. It has been asserted that in *frontal lobe tumors* mental symptoms may predominate more than in brain tumors of other parts of the brain but this has been doubted. Pressure on the optic nerve in cases of frontal lobe tumors may occasion optic neuritis. According to Marie and Behague there may occur in cases of frontal lobe tumor a syndrome of disorientation in space such as inability of the patient to distinguish in the dark whether he is turning to the right or to the left. Abscess or tumor in the posterior fossa will cause choked disks and involve the eye muscles supplied by the third fourth and sixth cranial nerves. There will be diplopia nystagmus and inability of external rotation of the eye

Tumors or abscesses in the other parts of the brain may be localized by a consideration of focal symptoms set forth in Lesions of the Brain p 866

Abscesses of the brain may occur after traumatism to the skull after infections in congenital heart disease (septal de

by an initial slowing of the pulse and respiration followed by a rise of these and a marked rise of temperature) The pulse rate and respiration are affected and blood pressure may rise There may be paralysis of the extremities or of the cranial nerves impairment of sensation

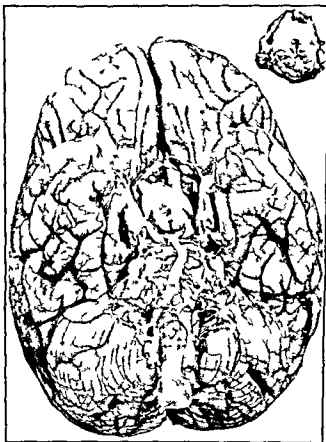


Fig 4—Pituitary tumor

fects causing paradoxical emboli and abscess) and after ear or sinus disease

Encephalography and ventriculography are valuable aids to definite localization

**Signs of Intracranial Pressure After Brain Trauma** These include unconsciousness headache nausea and vomiting local signs of head injury shock medullary edema (characterized

restlessness jacksonian seizures abnormalities of the reflexes pupillary findings with perhaps inequality the pupil on the side of the lesion becoming dilated when there is a cortical paralytic lesion The increased intracranial pressure may be shown also by manometer readings of cerebrospinal fluid pressure and eye ground changes as seen by examination with the ophthalmoscope

**Caution** In the presence of choked disks spinal puncture should be done with caution if at all. For diagnostic purposes only a few drops may be withdrawn.

### Vascular Lesions

**Meningeal Hemorrhage:** Hemorrhages in the meninges are classified according to their origin. These are epidural hemorrhage, subdural hemorrhage, subarachnoid hemorrhage and intraventricular hemorrhage.

**Epidural hemorrhage** usually results from traumatism. The blood collects between the bone and the dura and causes the following symptoms: Headache, somnolence, and certain intracranial pressure symptoms. These may come on several hours after the injury.

**Subdural hemorrhage** may occur in the young or the old though generally in people past middle life. It may be caused by an injury by rupture of an aneurysm or by rupture of a blood vessel. The symptoms are those of intracranial pressure which may gradually become aggravated giving rise first to headache, visual disturbance and coma. When the bleeding is localized and forms a hematoma, it will cause pressure symptoms in keeping with the part of the brain compressed.

**Subarachnoid hemorrhage** usually results from rupture of an aneurysm or blood vessel, the blood escaping into the subarachnoid space may trickle down around the cord. When the hemorrhage is not large the following symptoms may be present: Severe headache, retraction of the neck or nuchal rigidity, and unequal pupils. Large hemorrhage may cause rapid death.

**Intracerebral hemorrhage** when large will cause coma from which the

patient cannot be aroused. The face may be flushed, cyanotic and edematous, the pupils may be dilated or of normal size but do not react to light. In *pontine hemorrhage*, the pupils are contracted. Superficial and deep reflexes are abolished and there is flaccid paralysis. The pulse is slow and breathing is stertorous. In very large hemorrhages death may occur within a short time. In moderate hemorrhage, coma may last for days.

**Cerebral Embolism** Cerebral embolism may occur in valvular heart disease or a portion may become detached from a thrombus. The symptoms are sudden onset of apoplexy without any prodromal symptoms. Local symptoms depend upon the site of the lesion. Consciousness may be lost at once when the middle cerebral artery is occluded. In small emboli there may be local motor manifestations with few signs of sensory disturbance.

**Cerebral Thrombosis** Cerebral thrombosis usually occurs in older people. The symptoms are generally slow in onset and may affect a certain portion of the brain which would give rise to localizing symptoms. Hemiplegia is a symptom in all types of cerebral vascular disease in hemorrhage, embolism or thrombosis. The extent and site of the lesion determine the severity of the manifestations.

**Occlusion of Some Specific Brain Arteries** **Occlusion of the Vertebral Artery** Here there is no picture decidedly different from that of occlusion of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery.

**Occlusion of the Basilar Artery** This involves centers nearer the median line than does occlusion of the vertebral artery. The disturbances in speech and deglutition are almost or quite complete without atrophy or retraction of tongue.

eration the disease is rapidly and distinctly progressive within a few days of the onset

**Occlusion of an Anterior Spinal Artery** It is supposed that a unilateral occlusion might lead to homolateral upper and lower extremity paralysis with sensory changes that may be on either side or may be bilateral with failure of the tendon reflexes. Cases of this condition are rare

**Sinus Thrombosis** *Lateral Sinus Thrombosis* This is usually seen in association with middle ear disease. There is a sudden elevation of temperature with sudden remissions to normal or nearly normal pronounced chills prostration and sweats high leukocyte count with preponderance of polymorphonuclear cells headache and mental symptoms such as delirium or dullness. Keeler<sup>1</sup> mentions a peculiar mental alertness. In many of the cases the symptoms are obscure. An extensive lateral sinus thrombosis may extend to the jugular vein in which case the thrombus becomes palpable.

**Cavernous Sinus Thrombosis** The edema and venous stasis about the eye and in the eye are clues to the seat of the lesion. The structures in the sinus are involved wholly or in part.

**Aneurysm of the Cerebral Arteries** These may affect the middle cerebral branches the basilar the internal carotid the anterior cerebral the posterior communicating the anterior communicating the vertebral the posterior cerebellar the inferior cerebellar and any of the branches forming the circle of Willis. The size of the aneurysm may vary from that of a lentil to that of a walnut or larger. These may be due to

Congenital defects endarteritis (simple or syphilitic) embolism and periarteritis nodosum

The symptoms depend upon the size of the aneurysm and its location when large it will cause localizing pressure symptoms. Aneurysm of the internal carotid may compress the optic nerve or the commissure causing optic neuritis paralysis of the third nerve and hemianopia. Aneurysm of the vertebral or basilar arteries may involve the nerves from the fifth to the twelfth. Aneurysm of the circle of Willis may cause hypothalamic or pituitary symptoms such as diabetes insipidus. Rupture of an aneurysm may cause rapid death from subarachnoid or intracerebral hemorrhage.

### **Other Organic Diseases of the Brain and Meninges**

**Cerebral Edema** This is not a clinical entity. It may be associated with serous meningitis and is often found in uremia alcoholic intoxication and occasionally after trauma. It may also occur in tumor or abscess of the brain and in arteriosclerosis.

**Symptoms** These are convulsions coma localized paralysis or other signs of brain compression or irritation and those of the underlying condition responsible for the edema.

**Acute Hydrocephalus** This may resemble meningitis. It must be remembered that Brudzinski's and Kernig's signs may be found when meningeal irritation is present. In hydrocephalus there are dilatation of the subcutaneous veins of the head prominence of the small fontanel which at first pulsates and then ceases to pulsate progressive enlargement of the volume of the head and spreading of the sutures. It may be

<sup>1</sup> Keeler. Atlantic Monthly Journal Feb. 1926



symptomatic of brain tumor (SEE Fig 2 p 159)

**Encephalitis (cerebritis)** *Definition* Encephalitis is an inflammation of the brain tissue and may be acute or chronic. It may occur as a primary disease, as a complication of local or general infections, or as a result of trauma. The brain substance alone may be affected or there may be accompanying involvement of the meninges.

*Symptoms* The symptoms found in all forms of encephalitis are both general and local. The general symptoms are headache, irritability, convulsions, vomiting, somnolence, delirium and coma. When the encephalitis is accompanied by a space-taking lesion there will be signs of intracranial pressure i.e. papilledema and slow pulse. Not all of the signs may be present at the onset. The local symptoms are those of irritation and paralysis depending upon the part of the brain affected; these may be sensory, motor or both (SEE cerebral localization p 868). If meningeal inflammation coexists there will be associated meningeal symptoms i.e. nuchal rigidity, Kernig's sign, etc. The types of encephalitis usually encountered may be lethargic (epidemic) encephalitis, traumatic encephalitis, suppurative encephalitis (local or general abscess formation), acute and chronic poliomyelitis and syphilitic encephalitis.

**Epidemic Encephalitis (encephalitis lethargica)** This is an acute widespread and disseminated inflammation of the brain that may affect both sexes and all ages, though it is commoner among the young. The disease is thought to be due to a filterable virus (it has yet definitely proven). It appears to be infectious and generally occurs in epidemics. The lesion in the brain is usually that of a

toxic infection which has a predilection for the basal ganglia, the midbrain (especially the substantia nigra and the oculomotor nuclei), and also for the pons and medulla though any part of the central and peripheral nervous system may be involved. The meninges are also affected.



Fig. 5—Encephalitis lethargica (Courtesy M. K. Meyers)

but show only a moderate inflammatory reaction.

*Symptoms* The symptoms of encephalitis lethargica (epidemic) are variable, depending largely upon two factors, namely the severity of the infection and the parts affected.

The symptoms usually encountered are (1) Acute onset (2) fever  $100^{\circ}$  to  $102^{\circ}$  F., (3) diplopia which may precede the fever or may occur with the

temperature rise, is usually transient and may be followed by impairment of accommodation and, at times, of light reaction; (4) headache, (5) signs of meningeal irritation, such as mild nuchal rigidity, suggestive Kernig's sign, etc., (6) drowsiness, apathy, lethargy and stupor and, at times, coma from which the patient may be momentarily aroused to carry out commands or to answer questions, (7) evidence of cranial nerve involvement (palsies), (8) abnormal involuntary movements, (9) tendon reflexes are seldom affected, (10) abdominal reflex may be hyperactive, (11) catatonic attitudes, (12) masklike immobile facies and saliva drooling from the mouth, (13) other signs and symptoms occasionally encountered are insomnia, delirium, various mental symptoms, myoclonic movements of various groups of muscles, radicular pain, peripheral neuritis, incontinence of urine, and, at times, retention of urine. In the bulbar type, there is respiratory difficulty irregular pulse inability to swallow and high fever.

The spinal fluid is under some increased pressure, it is clear and may contain from 10 to 50 or more lymphocytes. The globulin and sugar content are increased.

**Classification** Wechsler<sup>1</sup> lists eight types based on "anatomical localization" (1) The lethargic mesencephalic group, characterized in the main by stupor, pupillary abnormalities and ocular palsies, (2) the hyperkinetic and basal ganglion group with abnormal movements such as tics, myoclonias choreic athetoid and dystonic movements, (3) the psychotic group with cerebral symptoms, such as delirium or mania, and catatonia

in addition to stupor, (4) the large basal ganglion or substantia nigra group with parkinsonian rigidity and tremor, the so-called amyostatic variety, (5) the meningitis group, closely simulating tuberculous meningitis, (6) the bulbar group, often fatal, with paralysis of deglutition, respiratory and cardiac failure, (7) the neuritic group, (8) the myelitic and myeloradiculitic.

**Prognosis** The bulbar type has an overwhelming mortality. Death usually occurs within several days after the onset of severe bulbar symptoms. The mortality of other types is less than 20 per cent. The greatest majority of those surviving develop definite residual manifestations. Parkinson's syndrome (paralysis agitans. SEE p 882) is the commonest sequel. It may be mild or severe. Other sequelae may be various types of psychoses, neuroses, hysteria, narcolepsy, catalepsy, personality changes and myotonic manifestations.

**Traumatic Encephalitis** This may develop soon after a head injury or sometime later as the result of a vascular injury or abscess formation. The symptoms depend upon the site of infection and the amount of brain involvement, they are usually not intense, though they may present many of the usual signs of encephalitis in a more chronic form.

**Alcoholism** This may show signs of encephalitis but the signs are usually more localized.

**Botulism** This often closely resembles encephalitis. The attack is acute usually afebrile, the pupils are dilated and fixed, bulbar symptoms are marked, there is great prostration and weakness, and meningeal symptoms if any, are few. There is usually a history of having eaten spoiled ripe olives or other spoiled foods (canned meats, beans, etc.)

<sup>1</sup> Wechsler I S. Clinical Neurology. 4th Ed. p 424. W B Saunders Co. 1940.

# Differential Table of the Various Types of Encephalitis and Allied Conditions

Most of the acute encephalopathies have many common gross clinical manifestations. There exist however individual differences that are pathognomonic of specific types. Acute encephalitis may be due to cerebral infection, a local lesion or it may be postinfectious as after vaccination, measles, chickenpox, mumps, bacterial meningitis and many other acute infections.

Disease	Onset	Duration	Temperature	Pulse Rate	Respiratory Rate	Age	Season	Clinical Manifestations	Infection Organism	Blood Findings	Spinal Fluid
Etharctic Encephalitis (Epidemic)	Gradual onset	Hours to weeks or years. 25 per cent to 40 per cent fatal	Irregular. May be high or low	Follows temperature	May follow temperature. Often slow	Third to fourth decade	Winter and spring	Depend upon type and stage of disease. Somnolence, opisthotonos, upper motor neuron reflexes, tremors.	Virus (suspected)	Leukocytes moderate to specific antibodies formed	Pressure slight increase. Leukocytes 20 to 200. Globulin +. Glucose +.
St Louis Type Encephalitis	Abrupt onset to five days	About one week. 20 per cent fatal	If ch.	Follows temperature	May follow temperature or slow	Any age chiefly past 40	Summer	Vertigo, nausea, vomiting, difficulty of speech, mental confusion, lethargy not always present. Reflexes upper motor neuron.	Virus.	Leukocytes moderate. Neutralizing antibodies in those recovered	Clear pressure moderate 50 to 1000 lymphocytes. Globulin +. Glucose ±.
Eastern Equine Encephalitis	Abrupt	Two to ten days. 70 per cent fatal.	103° to 103.5°	Variable	Rapid	Children	Summer or early autumn	Convulsions, coma, nuchal rigidity, stiffness of back muscles. Kern's sign positive. Some edema of face and lower extremities.	Virus spread by ticks or by Aedes mosquito	Leukocytes specific antibodies seven to ten days of onset	Clear increased pressure 200 to 2000. Leukocytes chiefly polys. Globulin ++++. Sugar not increased
Australian X Disease	Abrupt	About one week. 70 per cent fatal	High	Follows temperature	Follows temperature	Most young children	Summer	Drowsiness, nuchal rigidity, myoclonic movements, twitching, increased upper neuron reflexes.	Virus	Neutralization of virus with specific antibodies.	Clear about 100 lymphocytes. Pressure ±. Globulin +. Glucose —.
Japanese Type B Encephalitis	Abrupt	One to two weeks	High	Follows temperature	Follows temperature	Older people	Summer	Drowsiness, nuchal rigidity, irritability, disorientation, at times anisocoria, increased upper motor neuron reflexes.	Virus.	Leukocytes. Neutralization of virus with specific antibodies.	Clear about 100 lymphocytes. Pressure ±. Globulin +. Glucose —.
Totoplasmic Encephalitis	Gradual	One to four weeks	Moderate to high	Follows temperature	Follows temperature	More often in children	Any season	Depends upon severity of infection. Headache, irritability, nuchal rigidity, convulsions, enlarged spleen and lymph nodes, jerky clonic spasms.	Toxoplasma (a protozoan)	Moderate leukocytes. High eosinophilic count. Neutralizing specific antibodies.	Clear 30 to 200 leukocytes. Globulin normal. Glucose —. Toxoplasma can be isolated from guinea pigs inoculated with spinal fluid or tissue.
Torula Meningo-encephalitis	Variable	Two to four weeks or longer	Moderate	Follows temperature	Follows temperature	Any	Any	Headache, anorexia, jaundice, nuchal rigidity, sluggish tendon reflexes. Kern's sign ±. General lethargy.	Torula (fungus)	Nothing characteristic.	Clear pressure 20 to 60 lymphocytes. Protein and sugar normal. Torula bacilli may be isolated from spinal fluid in culture on yeast.

This condition is caused by the *Bacillus botulinus*

**Syphilitic Encephalitis** This may occur with paresis or other syphilitic encephalopathies. It is generally chronic and may show various general and focal signs of brain disturbance. The blood and spinal fluid will usually give a positive syphilitic reaction. Fever is generally absent and antisyphilitic treatment almost always causes a rapid regression of symptoms.

**Meningitis** (disease of the meninges) The meninges enveloping the brain and spinal cord are subjected to inflammatory changes which may be acute or chronic. When the inflammation affects the dura mater, it is known as *fachymeningitis* and when the pia and arachnoid membranes are affected it is termed *leptomeningitis*. The entire brain covering or only a portion thereof may be affected. Occasionally the coverings of both the brain and spinal cord may be involved. This is known as *meningomyelitis*. Inflammation of both the meninges and the brain substance is known as *meningoencephalitis*.

**Etiology** The causes of meningitis may be trauma, tumor, hemorrhage, syphilis or infections. The infection may be secondary to infections elsewhere in the body or it may be due to primary invasion of the meninges and cerebrospinal fluid by specific organisms, each causing a specific type of meningitis.

**Signs and Symptoms common to all types of meningitis irrespective of its etiology** The four constant or cardinal signs of meningitis are

(1) *Headache* This is the commonest and earliest symptom. It is generally diffuse but may at times be localized in the frontal or occipital region and may extend to the nape of the neck. The pain

is increased on motion and often by noise or by light.

(2) *Nuchal Rigidity* This may be slight at first but increases as the disease progresses, later causing retraction of the head.

(3) *Fever* This may be high at the onset or it may rise gradually.

(4) *Kernig's sign* (SEE p. 837) is an early sign.

*Brudzinkski's sign* (SEE p. 841) is common in meningococcic and tuberculous meningitis.

**Other signs common in meningitis** are Dizziness, vomiting, convulsions, mental or psychic manifestations such as restlessness, irritability, apathy, drowsiness and at times insomnia or stupor, coma and delirium are late signs. There may also be hyperesthesia of the skin, sensitivity to light and sound, sluggish pupillary reaction, ptosis, strabismus with diplopia and signs of aphasia or palsy. The spinal fluid is under increased pressure. The presence of the four cardinal signs indicates meningitis; the type is diagnosed by the examination of the spinal fluid secured by lumbar puncture.

**Purulent Meningitis** This is due to infection of the meninges by pyogenic microorganisms. It is a cerebrospinal leptomeningitis resulting from trauma to the skull, otitis media, caries of the tip of the temporal bone, sinus thrombosis, sinusitis, lung abscess, infection upon the face and neck, i.e. carbuncle, pyemic infections, erysipelas, etc. The signs and symptoms are those of meningitis. The spinal fluid is under pressure and may be clear during the very early stages but soon becomes turbid or purulent. The cell count is high and the predominating cells are polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The protein content is increased and the

protein is increased and the sugar and chlorides may be slightly increased

**Abscess of the Brain** This may simulate meningitis and often terminates in general meningitis. The period between the infection and the onset of symptoms may be several weeks. The temperature is low or may be normal or subnormal, the pulse is slow. Choked disks are common and focal signs referring to various regions of the brain are usually present. The spinal fluid may be under pressure, is usually clear, has an increased cell count but no organisms. The meningeal signs are not marked.

**Meningismus** The symptoms of meningismus closely simulate meningitis of a milder form. It may occur in the course of acute infectious diseases such as influenza, pneumonia, typhoid fever, typhus fever, or other infectious fevers. At times an acute infectious disease may be ushered in with meningismus and may be mistaken for meningitis. The spinal fluid, however, shows no abnormal findings. The normal spinal fluid together with the characteristic findings of the underlying disease is of value in differentiating meningismus from meningitis.

**Acute Spinal Leptomeningitis** This rarely occurs without involvement of the meninges of the brain. It may, however, result from trauma such as a fractured spine; it may follow spinal operation, lumbar or dorsal spinal puncture, injections of spinal nerve roots, and rarely it may result from tuberculosis of the spinal vertebra or aneurysm of a spinal artery.

The *symptoms* are severe pain in the back, pain, hyperesthesia, and muscular spasm along the distribution of the affected spinal nerves. The deep and superficial reflexes are at first exaggerated

and later are abolished, and there may develop paralysis with anesthesia of the extremity.

**Chronic Meningitis** Chronic meningitis is seldom general. Local inflammation of the meninges may be caused by syphilis, tuberculosis, tumors, embolisms, abscess, and trauma. The diagnosis of underlying disease will help to determine the cause of the meningitis.

**Tuberculous Meningitis** This type of meningitis usually runs a subacute, somewhat chronic course. Occasionally in children the course of the disease may be fairly rapid. The onset is slow and may not show characteristic signs of the disease for a week or more after the onset. The temperature rises gradually, rigidity of the neck becomes progressive, headache is an early symptom. In children the disease may be ushered in with vomiting and convulsions. Generally during the early stages there is listlessness with a gradual rising temperature. As the disease progresses the signs of meningitis become increasingly more prominent. The cerebrospinal fluid is under considerable pressure. At first it is clear; later in the disease when the fluid is allowed to stand it will form a cloud at the top of the test tube; still later it becomes flaky and turbid. The albumin content is increased. The chloride content is decreased, often below 650 mg., and the sugar is also decreased. The cell count may range from 20 to 200, the lymphocytes preponderate. The cornea may show in large tubercles. The Magnus and deKleijn reflexes may be positive. The finding of tubercle bacilli in the spinal fluid or the positive response of a guinea pig inoculation makes the diagnosis positive.

**Syphilitic Meningitis** Syphilitic meningitis is caused by the spirocheta pal

lida The disease is usually chronic but may at times show acute symptoms It may be diffuse involving the pachy or leptomeninges at the base or at the convex surfaces of the brain or it may be localized and may affect the vessels and the nerves (particularly the optic and oculomotor) and other structures of the brain and spinal cord Syphilitic meningitis usually appears within the first four years of the infection though it may appear at any period or it may also occur in congenital syphilis The lesion may be a gumma or it may be an infiltration of the meninges with lymphocytes and plasma cells spreading from the perivascular lymphatics and causing thickening of the membranes with consequent obliteration of the subarachnoid space and strangling of the blood vessels and nerves

The *symptoms* may resemble tuberculous meningitis or there may be present various vascular and cerebral symptoms depending upon the location of the most damaging lesions In addition to these there are headache dizziness and there may be vomiting numbness attacks of unconsciousness or epileptic seizures and cranial nerve palsies The cerebrospinal fluid is under increased pressure it is clear and contains many lymphocytes The Wassermann Kahn and other tests for syphilis are usually positive

Congenital syphilitic meningitis runs a chronic course The signs may appear within a few months after birth The infant slowly develops signs of general nervous deterioration becomes listless at times rigid and develops meningeal and cephalic signs of increasing severity The serologic tests for syphilis are usually positive

**Chorea** Chorea may occur as an acute disease known as Sydenham's

chorea or St Vitus dance or as a chronic disease known as Huntington's or degenerative chorea

Symptoms of chorea or rather choreiform movements may develop in the course of vascular or degenerative and especially of inflammatory disease of the brain (encephalitis)

**Sydenham's Chorea** (St Vitus dance) This is an acute disease occurring oftenest among children between the ages of 10 and 13 though it may occur during early adulthood It is commoner among females than males and occasionally occurs in primipara during pregnancy and puerperium The *etiology* of chorea is not well known Some believe that it has an endocrine origin (gonadal) since most cases develop around puberty and some during pregnancy Others believe it to be of infectious origin since it may occur in epidemics and is more prevalent during the spring and summer Nearly everyone agrees that Sydenham's chorea belongs to the rheumatic group of affections since it is often associated with or is preceded by or succeeded by tonsillitis articular rheumatism and endocarditis

**Symptoms** The disease begins slowly with signs of irritability restlessness and fatigue one arm an arm and a leg both arms both legs but rarely all four extremities may become affected The head the muscles of the face the eyes and tongue may develop the choreic movements Speech is also affected it becomes dysarthric and explosive The choreic movements are characterized by lack of control when a movement such as taking a spoon to the mouth is started the arm describes a wide circuit of jerky movements and will overreach its destination When standing with the hands hanging at the sides station cannot be

maintained without jerky movement of both hands and feet. When the lower extremities are affected the gait is awkward the legs being flung with an exaggerated swing. The facial muscles may twitch or grimace the tongue is aimlessly rolled and cannot be held still when protruded. The general muscular movements when the patient is at rest are described as spontaneously objectively purposeless. There is no sequence in the movements. The individual is restless even during sleep. The disease may last from two to six months or longer. Recurrences are not uncommon.

**Huntington's Chorea** This is chronic progressive hereditary chorea often terminating in dementia. The disease usually begins in the fourth decade and is transmitted in direct line through several generations. The pathologic process is most marked in the cortex of the cerebrum and the basal ganglia though practically the whole brain is affected. The cause of this condition is unknown.

**Symptoms** The most characteristic symptoms are choreiform movements that start in one or two extremities and spread over the whole body. Facial grimaces are nearly constant the gait is described as being bizarre dancing jerking and theatrical the speech is impured and dysarthric there is smacking of the tongue and lips and anomalies of breathing. The course is progressive and there may or may not be mental deterioration. It is not related to the rheumatic diseases.

**Epilepsy** This may be defined as an episode of acute unconsciousness. It may be momentary (petit mal) or it may be prolonged for several minutes and is accompanied by tonic and clonic convulsions (grand mal). A local convul-

sive action of one group of muscles or of one extremity is known as jacksonian epilepsy.

Epilepsy may be caused by Brain lesions: *e* tumor syphilis traumatism cerebral sclerosis etc. toxic states: *e* lead poisoning alcohol uremia diabetes it may occur in various psychoses and often no cause is found (in which instance it is termed idiopathic).

**Idiopathic Epilepsy** This is ascribed to disordered functioning of the rate regulating mechanism of the brain a paroxysmal cerebral dysrhythmia. It occurs in paroxysms at irregular intervals. A paroxysm is preceded by an aura the individual if not in bed falls is totally unconscious and has tonic and clonic convulsions froths at the mouth often bites his tongue and loses sphincteric control he usually sleeps following the seizure and is confused on awakening. Idiopathic epilepsy usually first manifests itself during childhood. A positive diagnosis of idiopathic epilepsy may be made by an electroencephalographic tracing which shows a characteristic wave tracing.

**Personality changes** in epileptics who are not psychotic. While the mentality is normal there may be the following traits: Egotism conceit emotional instability hypochondriasis cruelty laziness violent impulses inadaptability to environments impulsiveness religious fanaticism irascibility criminalism and perversions or excesses.

For *psychotic changes* see Epileptic Insanity p 890.

**Myasthenia Gravis** Myasthenia gravis is considered by some as a disease of nervous origin belonging to the myopathies and by others as being due to thymus and probably thyroid dysfunction. The manifestations are extreme

fatigue with ptosis of one or both eyelids, nasal speech, low blood pressure and often a secondary anemia. The fatigue becomes accentuated on motion, so that exertion cannot be continued for any length of time. The muscles that are innervated by the bulb are among the first to become affected so that mastication and swallowing may become difficult. In severe cases paralysis of these muscles may develop. Occasionally in association with the anemia, which is of the hypochromatic type, there may be a Plummer-Vinson syndrome. Myasthenia gravis occurs more often in those having a thymus constitution and it has been found in association with tumor or hyperplasia of the thymus gland (SEE: p 788)

**Pseudobulbar Palsy:** This is distinguished from true bulbar palsy (SEE: p 875) by the following characteristics: Presence of the signs of arteriosclerosis; the appearance of the disease after repeated strokes (at least two); association with spastic hemiparesis or spastic paraparesis; absence of atrophy and reactions of degeneration in the paralyzed muscles, and the presence of psychic symptoms

**Parkinson's Disease** (paralysis agitans) This may be classified into two groups (1) That occurring in advanced age which is attributed solely to senescence, and may be accompanied by arteriosclerotic changes in the globus pallidus, and (2) that occurring at any age following encephalitis lethargica (post-encephalitis parkinsonism), in which the lesions in the midbrain and other parts of the brain are inflammatory. Parkinson's syndrome may also result from hemorrhage into the basal ganglia, or from syphilis or neoplasms affecting the basal ganglia

**Symptoms:** Parkinson's disease is easily recognized by the patient's immobile facial expression, tremors of the limbs, or of any one limb or member thereof. The tremors are moderate or fine rhythmic movements which may stop momentarily on attempted motion and during sleep. The rotary movements of the



Fig 6—Torsion spasm  
(Courtesy, M. K. Meyers.)  
Same patient as Fig 7.)

hands are described as pill-rolling tremors. There may also be tremor of the jaw. The arms do not swing rhythmically when walking; they are extended and adducted; the forearms are somewhat flexed at the elbow and the hands at the wrists; the fingers are adducted and the distal phalanges are extended. The gait is slowed, though at times it may be festinating; the steps are short. The head is extended and the body is bent forward. All movements are slowed. A



symptom that is often associated with parkinsonism is palilalia or the repetition of short phrases in talking. Micrographia or smallness of handwriting is also seen in paralysis agitans and parkinsonism but as Wilson points out may be found also in cerebral arteriosclerosis and cerebral syphilis.



Fig 7—Torsion spasm.  
(Courtesy M. K. Meyers)

**Torsion Spasm** (*dysbasia lordotica progressiva* or *dystonia musculorum deformans*) This is a disease that begins in childhood. It may be confused with Wilson's disease and with bilateral athetosis. It is characterized by twisting movements of the extremities, lordosis and spine twisting, clownish contortions. Its pathology is uncertain.

### Diseases of the Vegetative Nervous System

The division of the vegetative nervous system into two opposing forces for the control of the circulation, digestion and other bodily functions where one system alone might function indicates the necessity of a very precise control of these as well as of other functions of the body.

The division of the body into various systems is a recent classification by physicians to enable them to study more specifically the structures and functions of isolated parts. Actually the body as a whole is the sum of all its component parts and one portion of the body both influences all other parts and is equally influenced by them.

The type of disturbance depends upon whether the sympathetic division, the parasympathetic division or both divisions of the autonomic nervous system are affected. When the entire sympathetic division is chiefly affected it may cause the syndrome known as *sympathicotonia*; if the entire parasympathetic division is chiefly affected it may cause the syndrome known as *vagotonia*; and if the entire vegetative nervous system is affected it may cause *autonomic ataxia*, a condition in which there is evidence of dysfunction of both the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions of the vegetative nervous system (SFE p. 825).

### Angioneurosis (Trophic and Isomotor Neurosis)

There is a group of allied diseases which seem to have a common etiologic factor and show evidence of some vascular and trophic disturbances. The etiology is not definitely known. It seems that the immediate cause is attributable to functional disturbance of the vegetative nervous system. Some of these diseases show evidence of parasympathetic disturbance, others show disturbance of the sympathetic and still others show evidence of disturbance of both divisions. The remote cause may be endocrine disturbance, allergy, poisons, toxins, heredity or developmental inadequacy (neuropathic disposition). The conditions generally classified as being an angioneuro-

sis are acroparesthesia vasoconstrictor neurosis vasomotor ataxia vasodilation Raynaud's disease scleroderma progressive facial hemiatrophy angioneurotic edema erythromelalgia sympathicotonia vasotonia and other less defined conditions

**Acroparesthesia** This is characterized by angiospasm of the fingers and other acral parts. The patient complains of coldness numbness of the finger tips with tingling or a crawling sensation of other parts of the body. The condition becomes aggravated during excitement or stress and during the night. Exposure to cold causes blanching of the fingers tips of the nose and chin. This condition occurs oftener in women of the menopause age though it may occur in young women and occasionally in men. Trophic phenomena are absent.

**Vasoconstrictor Neurosis** This condition of which acroparesthesia may be an expression may produce a condition of pseudoangina. It is apt to be associated with sex difficulties.

**Vasomotor Ataxia** This includes secretory and trophic phenomena in addition to vasoconstriction.

**Vasodilation** This may occur as a vasomotor neurosis.

**Raynaud's Disease** This is a severe paroxysmal symmetrical distal angiospasm which during the early stages comes on in paroxysms of numbness pallor and coldness of the fingers toes ear lobes and nose. It is followed by venous stasis that passes typically through three stages that of local syncope that of asphyxia and that of gangrene. Fingers and toes are the parts usually affected. It is commonest among women. It must be distinguished from benign

vasomotor neurosis and from Buerger's disease—thromboangitis obliterans. Mild forms without gangrene constitute at times the acrocyanosis chronica anasthetica of Cassirer (SEE p 537).

**Scleroderma** This is a trophic disease of the skin and soft parts which may occur in the partial diffuse macular and symmetrical forms. In the severe forms there are hard edema induration and atrophy with changes in the finger nails.

**Morphea** is a benign form of circumscribed scleroderma.

**Facial Hemiatrophy** This is a rare condition that may be acquired or congenital. It usually occurs in young children or adolescents though it may be acquired at any age. It is seen oftener in females and on the left side. Facial hemiatrophy may be due to a lesion in the cervical sympathetic tumors of the gasserian ganglion in pochoencephalitis involving the nucleus of the facial nerve and it is found in tabes and syringobulbia. In many cases an ascribable lesion is not demonstrable. The onset is gradual with mild sensory symptoms such as pain and dysaesthesia. Atrophy begins at the orbit cheek jaw and finally spreads entirely over one side of the face and may involve the same side of the neck and arm. The other half remains perfectly normal. On the affected side the skin becomes thin and atrophic the subcutaneous fat disappears the muscles show signs of atrophy and the bones frequently atrophy. The ear tongue palate and larynx show atrophic change. The hair on the affected side either falls out or becomes white. Horner's syndrome when present accentuates this unilateral facial atrophy. The general health is usually unaffected.

Congenital hemiatrophy has been found in several members of a family or clan. No cause has been found.

**Angioneurotic Edema** This is a circumscribed edema of the skin or viscera or joints or parts such as the larynx or glottis apparently idiopathic or for want of an ascertained cause regarded as functionally nervous in origin. It may be associated with urticaria and with endocrine disorders. A special variety is intermittent hydrops of the joints. Rarely the functional influence may be purely hysterical. Similar edemas may occur in organic nervous diseases. In certain cases edema that seems to be of angioneurotic nature may be chronic (SEE p 927).

**Erythromelalgia** (Weir Mitchell's disease) This is a symmetrical vasomotor neurosis of the lower extremities and feet rarely of the upper extremities associated with slight fever pain in the affected parts circumscribed redness beading of the arteries and dilatation of the veins. It may occur in attacks or as a subacute or chronic affection. The affected skin sweats but trophic changes are rare.

From the standpoint of the differential diagnosis of erythromelalgia the following must be excluded. All acute and chronic inflammations e.g. erysipelas phlegmon gout erythema nodosum erythema multiforme also the condition of erythrocyanosis symmetrica a common and harmless vasomotor neurosis which affects symmetrically and superficially the lower half of the legs the forearms and also in rare cases affects the upper arms and breasts of young girls who are otherwise chlorotic and lymphatic (SEE p 738).

**Vagotonia and Sympathicotonia** (SEE p 827)

### "Functional" Diseases of the Nervous System

Many of the diseases of the nervous system formerly regarded as functional are now because of a better understanding of the physiology and pathology of the nervous system included under the caption organic. Paralysis agitans is a classical example of this tendency. Perhaps most of the epilepsies and migraines are conditioned organically and in the vertiges for instance it is necessary to study the individual case so that all possible organic causes for the feeling of giddiness may be eliminated. In the absence of any organic cause it may be well to look upon vertigo or tic or headache or migraine as functional *a mode of response of the nervous system* (usually of a habitual nature) to certain deleterious influences whether of environmental or of physical physiological or psychological nature. Most epilepsies present organic changes of the nervous system while others may be regarded as functional reactions to stimuli that seem to be endogenous and associated with changes in the chemicophysical make up of the body fluids. It is customary to draw sharp lines of demarcation between epilepsy and hysteria or other forms of functional reaction. Epilepsy and hysteria may occur in the same individual. Epilepsy may occur as cortical or Jacksonian convulsions associated as a rule with retention of consciousness and more or less localization of the movements as ordinary general epilepsy (grand mal) or as petit mal in which there is momentary loss of consciousness with little or no movement. It is distinguished from hysteria as a rule by loss of consciousness the aura the less showy and noisy character of the convulsions the biting of the tongue and other bodily

injuries In epilepsy, urine or feces may be passed during the attack (this may also occur in the hysterical convulsions) After the attack, a transient plantar Babinski's sign, and somnolence, and sometimes automatism may be present

Functional reactions are hysteric, neurasthenic, psychasthenic, and anxiety neurotic, which reactions have been variously defined by various authorities on neurology and psychiatry

**Hysteria.** Physically hysteria is characterized by the expressivity of the individual affected and his ready response to suggestion It may mimic almost any of the forms of nervous and even of mental disease, and is distinguished from these by the presence of certain associated symptoms and the absence of other symptoms that are more or less characteristic Mentally, hysteria is characterized by a tendency to avoid conflict, and a tendency to create interest and sympathy Hysterical psychotic states may exist in the form of "twilight states," that may last for weeks or months, seeming to reflect the fantastic excitement of dreamlike expressions and situations (Ganser's syndrome), or episodic attacks of delirium or stupor Amnesia fugues (actual flights from home) double personality, and even hallucinations have been noted in hysteria

**Neurasthenia** Fatigue is present on slight exertion and may be curiously selective in that it is chiefly manifested when the patient's interest is at a low ebb Mentally there is inability to concentrate uncertain memory (apparent rather than real) fear of insanity awkwardness and self-consciousness feelings of inferiority irritability, phobias and anxieties Neurasthenia does not produce typical bodily symptoms and the victim of it reacts inwardly, dealing with

sensations, and working them over mentally

**Psychasthenia** This is marked by phobias, obsessions, marked doubts, feelings of insufficiency, nervous tension and anxiety Tics are often present Marked depression and anxiety prevail

**Anxiety Neurosis.** Marked anxiety or fear is the most prominent feature. With anxious expectations or dread are associated general nervous irritability and physical symptoms that may be regarded as the bodily accompaniments of fear The intensity of the symptoms may vary Acute exacerbations constitute the "anxiety attacks"

## Mental Disease

### Nomenclature and Symptomatology

In studying a patient from the standpoint of psychiatry in order to determine as far as possible the contents of that patient's *consciousness* the behavior and the expressions in speech (also a form of behavior) should be observed

In spite of the fact that it is difficult or impossible to define consciousness Head makes the following attempt "Consciousness is a form of integrative vital reaction, which enables the organism to adapt themselves more perfectly to certain situations conditioned by its internal state and the impressions produced upon it by external forces"

Consciousness varies from time to time The unvarying nucleus of its content is known as *self consciousness*

**Personality** is a term applied to an individual's unique and practically habitual way of reacting to situations as determined by heredity and previous experience and education According to Hunt it is the "energy of cortical activity accumulated during the life of the individual"

ual It would be better to regard it as an aspect or tendency or way of action of energy rather than as energy itself In certain diseases personality tends to split or dissociate the individual acting with a part of his personality at one time and with another at another time This splitting may be associated with amnesia for the other personality Such splitting occurs in schizophrenia (dementia precox) epilepsy and hysteria

Limitations of consciousness may occur as in epilepsy where there may be a retraction or dimming like that of marked drowsiness or of dream states

A *percept* is the identification of an object as an object brought about by the coexistence of sensations or ideas associated with the presence of the object Mistakes as to the identity of objects are *illusions* *Hallucinations* are fallacies as to the actual objective existence and presence of objects when no objects that might reasonably be mistaken for them are present

*Memory* is the recollection of past events The loss of recollection of events is due to a lack of registration of the events rather than to loss of memory Loss of memory is a well marked symptom of advancing years it is seen in senile and presenile psychoses Korsakoff's psychosis and general paralysis of the insane It may be associated with *falsification of memory and fabrications*

The association of ideas may in the psychoses deviate from the normal sound or Klang associations thus taking the place of the ordinary logical associations The direction of the flow of ideas toward a logical conclusion may be seriously interfered with

*Complexes* are groups of ideas that are associated with marked affective or emotional phenomena expressed or primar-

ily unexpressed (repressed or suppressed) In another sense the term complex may be applied to groups or constellations of ideas irrespective of their associations with affective phenomena In certain mental diseases the power of abstraction and the power of forming a logical conclusion from given premises are interfered with

*Delusions* are faulty beliefs from which the mentally afflicted suffer Perversion of the power of conclusion and abstraction may be at the basis of some of the delusions Other factors in the formation of delusions are hallucinations emotional states and defects of normal voluntary response

*Emotional states* may be defective quantitatively or qualitatively and may be associated with excess or deficiency of psychomotor or ordinary motor activity

The *intelligence* suffers in dementia and feeble mindedness For its determination especially in these conditions Binet and Simon devised certain tests applicable to them Each group of tests is responded to normally by children of definite ages Mentally defective children respond only to tests of lower grade Various modifications of these tests including the Terman and the Stanford modifications of the Binet-Simon tests the Kuhlmann and other tests are used in the United States

### *Classification of Mental Diseases*

The following modified classification is in part from Kraepelin and in part from Strecker and Ebaugh

**Psychoses Due to External Factors**  
**I Head Injury** (a) *Traumatic delirium* disorientation loss of memory for a period of time preceding the accident falsification of memory delirious

perceptions irritability, unrest (b) *Traumatic epilepsy*, general or local convulsions May be associated with mental enfeebling (c) *Traumatic mental enfeeblement* (d) *Traumatic Constitution* The so-called "head syndrome" in which there is headache, disinclination to work, and emotional instability

**II Intoxication** (a) *Metabolic* Uremic eclamptic, cancerous, cardiac, effects of thirst, heat stroke, diabetic, gouty, poisoning by phosphorus

(b) *External Poisons* Atropine hyoscine, scopolamine, carbon monoxide, illuminating gas, morphine, cocaine, alcohol etc

*Morphinism* This is associated with subjective ease of mental operation, with pleasurable sensation and lack of determination Withdrawal is followed by characteristic withdrawal symptoms (i.e. unrest anxiety heart palpitations yawning shivering trembling muscle spasms sweats diarrheas vomiting)

*Cocainism* This is characterized by activity with hallucinations of the senses including that of the presence of insects in or under the skin and ideas of persecution, twitchings palpitation, sweats, insomnia

*Alcoholism* This may be acute, subacute or chronic, the toxic manifestations may be slight or severe and may present the following

(a) *Delirium Tremens* A delirium with tremor toxic symptoms and a prominent hallucinatory content especially that concerned with more or less terrifying animals

(b) *Acute Hallucinoses* Hallucinoses initially and usually predominantly auditory with a clear sensorium, marked fears and more or less systematized persecutory trends

(c) *Korsakoff's Psychosis* There are delirious and nondelirious types The former are not unlike delirium tremens although the symptoms are usually less severe and the course is longer In the latter types, there are retention defects disorientation, fabrication and memory falsification, suggestibility, and a tendency to misidentification of persons There may or may not be polyneuritis Korsakoff pictures may occur in malaria and other diseases

(d) *Other types* that are not definitely classifiable, showing various stages and symptoms of intoxication, may be acute or chronic.

**III Infections** (a) *Meningitis* encephalitis (SEE pp 874 and 877)

(b) *Febrile and Infectious Deliria* Malaise irritability, unrest, insomnia with anxiety dreams In severe forms there may be dreamlike states with hallucinations anxiety, or gaiety In severe states amnesia with confusion and excitement In the severest states stupidity, lethargy, weakness and insecurity of the movements picking at the bedclothes deep insensibility Postfebrile deliria are not different in kind from the febrile There may be depression irritability and suspiciousness

(c) *Exhaustion delirium* is practically the same as (b) in manifestations and occurs after hemorrhage severe over exertion prolonged insomnia (b) and (c) may take the form of (d) and (e)

(d) *Acute Confusion* This may occur also in other types of mental diseases such as dementia precox or manic depressive psychosis

(e) *Infectious Mental Enfeebling* This may occur after the infectious fevers heart failure or after chronic infections

**IV Brain Syphilis** (a) Syphilitic neurasthenia, (b) syphilitic pseudo paresis (c) apoplectic brain syphilis (d) syphilitic epilepsy, (e) paranoid conditions (luetic) (f) psychoses in tabes these may represent a general parietic element (g) the mental derangements of congenital syphilis

Of these (b) may be scarcely distinguishable from genuine paresis except by laboratory tests and the absence of the classic course During it Korsakoff's psychosis attacks may occur and may be recognized as a special variety of brain syphilis

(h) *General Paralysis of the Insane* This may occur in demented depressive expansive agitated galloping juvenile and atypical forms and forms that are associated with tabes Early in the disease there occur changes in disposition and character defects in judgment unreliability moral laxity extravagance forgetfulness Usually at the height of the disease and invariably in the final stages deep dementia develops The neurological signs (Argyll Robertson pupils or unequal or irregular pupils exaggerated or absent knee jerks tremors speech and writing defects convulsions) tend to make the diagnosis Kraepelin distinguishes a syphilitic pseudoparesis The characteristic colloidal gold curve in true paresis would be diagnostic although this may have been modified by treatment A classic course may indicate true paresis

**Psychoses Due to Internal Factors** I *Endocrine gland psychoses* are due directly to hyperfunction hypofunction or other pathologic conditions of the various endocrine glands seen in myxedema exophthalmic goiter meno-

pausal changes hypoglycemic states certain types of virilism etc

II *Psychoses due to endogenous brain disease* include brain tumor lobular sclerosis

III *Psychoses due to developmental defects of the nervous system* are Huntington's chorea amaurotic family idiocy tuberous sclerosis Wilson's disease pseudosclerosis

IV *Arteriosclerotic psychoses* including apoplectic dementia are often difficult to differentiate from senile psychoses The diagnosis is justified when mental deterioration exists with evidence of general brain damage (headache dizziness fainting attacks) and more particularly evidence of focal brain damage

V *Presenile psychoses* exist as pernicious late catatonic and paranoid forms Alzheimer's disease an early senile deterioration usually with rapidly oncoming dementia and with definite pathology is classed in this group by American authors

VI *Senile psychoses* include simple demented delirious and confused depressed and agitated and paranoid types

In the *presbyophrenic types* there are marked memory and retention defects with complete disorientation The patient is mentally alert attentive and able to grasp immediate impressions Forgetfulness leads to absurd contradictions and repetitions Suggestibility and fabrication are prominent

VII *Schizophrenia or Dementia Praecox* This presents four types (a) *Simple form* Interest at a low ebb apathy and strange behavior delusions and hallucinations either abortive or entirely absent are characteristic (b) *Hebephrenic form* Silken unexplained smiling laughter grimacing manner

isms, peculiar and changeable ideas which have an absurd and grotesque content are in evidence. Ideas of grandeur or of persecution may occur (c) *Catatonic form*. Negativism and conduct peculiarities with phases of stupor or excitement marked by impulsive queer stereotyped behavior, and hallucinations are found (d) *Paranoid form*. Hallucinations delusions particularly of persecution or of grandeur often fairly well systematized, occur.

Dementia precox is characterized by discrepancies between thought, behavior and emotional reaction, by emotional blunting and indifference, by seclusive make up, silliness, defects of judgment hypochondriacal notions suspiciousness and ideas of reference, odd negativistic conduct and dreamlike ideas autistic thinking (castles in the air) and the like. The manifestations of the various types of dementia precox are often combined in the same individual.

Kretschmer separates from dementia precox a group which he calls *paraphrenia*. The individuals in this group preserve their personality intact until the end but there are active hallucinations and delusions without the silly behavior of the precox cases. The disease is progressive. It is sometimes grouped under paranoid states.

**VIII Epileptic Insanity** The psychic reactions in epilepsy are listed by Strecker and Flaugh as (a) Periodical all humor (b) epileptic dreams or twilight states in which there is considerable confusion (c) delirious confusion with hallucinations and ecstatic delusions or anxiety (d) a 'conscious delirium' in which the confusion is slight.

Strecker, E. A. and Flaugh, J. G. *Practical Clinical Psychiatry*. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Co. 1934. 454 pp.

*Epileptic furor*, when it follows a seizure is extremely dangerous. The patient is maniacal homicidal and destructive. He may commit horrible crimes even killing or maiming those who are near him or dear to him.

There may also be transitory states of depression and excitement, or there may be paranoid states or dementia precox.

#### VIII *Involuntional Melancholia*

This is described by Strecker as probably being a mixed form of manic-depressive psychosis in which the motor retardation is often replaced by restlessness and agitation, occurring at the climacteric in a person who had previously not shown any manic depressive episodes. This condition is commoner among women usually occurring between the ages of 40 and 45. In men it may occur between the ages of 50 and 65.

**Symptomatology** The general behavior is variable among different patients and often from time to time in the same patient. The mood is depressed and apprehensive and there may be frenzied agitated excitement or just restlessness. There may be massive delusional formation apprehensive and self deprecatory concerning self, family and friends. The consciousness is usually clear and orientation may be good but the sensorium may be clouded. The patient may realize that her symptoms are abnormal or that other patients have delusions. Suicidal attempts are common. Some patients may have catatonic phenomena such as fixed attitudes cataplexy negativism stereotypy grimacing mannerisms autonomic movements food refusal impulsive violence restlessness destructiveness episodes of violent scolding unapproachability mutism, and retention of urine and feces. There is often repetitive speech delusions self accusation accusa-



tions of others and self depreciation. This may be accompanied by precocious senility, insomnia, disturbed nutrition and renal constipation and other digestive disturbances. There may also be circulatory and pelvic symptoms. The disease runs a protracted course. Shock treatment is beneficial as is also the administration of gonadal hormones.

**IX Senile Psychosis** One type usually develops slowly. At first there may be irritability of temper, insomnia, malaise, muscle weakness, anorexia and a tendency to seclusiveness. Later there is impairment of memory, especially for recent events. The emotions are deteriorated and there may be lack of sympathy, obstinacy, stubbornness, selfishness, self-centering of interest, out-break of temper, moral laxity and troublesome behavior.

**Constitutional Psychoses** I. **Manic depressive Psychosis** This may be of four types: (a) *Mania* predominantly excited; (b) *melancholia* predominantly depressed; (c) *mixed* forms; (d) *cyclothymic* basic forms. Here the habitual emotional level of the individual is either raised or depressed. Fluctuations may occur on this habitual or average level.

II **Paranoia and Paranoid States** True paranoia is rare. Here there is a slowly developing and logical system of persecutory and sometimes grandiose delusions, accompanied by adequate emotional response and clear and coherent thought without hallucinations.

III **Hysterical Insanity** For hysterical convulsions see p. 100; for hysteria see p. 886.

IV **The various impulsive insanities** (kleptomania, pyromania, etc.)

V **The various mental aberrations** associated with sexual delinquencies.

VI **The mental defects** associated with congenital psychopathy.

VII **The mental states of the congenitally feeble minded** These states are mentioned but should not be regarded as genuine insanities. A congenitally feeble minded individual, however, is not protected against the development of a true insanity.

**Forms of Feeble mindedness** The various forms of feeble mindedness may be classified as follows:

(a) Forms due to meningitis, encephalitis, softenings of the brain due to vascular diseases, tuberous sclerosis, Wilson's disease, pseudosclerosis, cysts, hydrocephalus.

(b) **Amniotic family idiocy** A child who is born apparently normal a few months after birth develops inability to hold up the head, has poor vision and often has a cherry red spot on the macula.

(c) **Cretinism**

(d) **Infantilism**

(e) **Mongolism** This may be recognized by the characteristic eyes, thickened lips and tongue, drooling of saliva and low mentality.

Microcephalic and macrocephalic forms of feeble mindedness are recognized by some authors as idiocy.

**Forms of Dementia** Dementias are associated with the following conditions:

(a) The dementias of dementia praecox (Schizophrenia)

(b) Epileptic dementia

(c) Dementia of the other forms of brain lesions

(d) Dementias of general paresis

(e) Arteriosclerotic dementia

(f) Senile and presenile dementia

(g) The dementia of Huntington's disease

(h) Dementia following head injuries

**Forms of Stupor** Stupor other than those forms seen in visceral and infectious diseases and in poisonings is seen in melancholia catatonica paresis epilepsy and hysteria

The history of the case and the associated symptoms will usually make clear the diagnosis of doubtful cases

**Some Special Symptoms of Mental Diseases** *Attention* is hard to command in twilight conditions delirium idiocy paresis Alzheimer's disease arteriosclerosis confusion dementia precox

*Sense impressions do not register well* in imbecility senility epilepsy, arteriosclerosis paresis Korsakoff's psychosis

*Illusions and hallucinations* occur in delirium cocaineism psychosis twilight states hysteria dementia precox occasionally in manic depressive insanity, alcoholic hallucinations brain lues paresis tubercle psychosis

*Consciousness is clouded* in manic depressive states paresis delirium epilepsy hysteria (at times)

*Retention of memory* is disturbed in Korsakoff's and senile psychoses. It is affected in the states that are associated with clouding of consciousness and in paresis arteriosclerosis alcoholic hallucinosis and Alzheimer's disease. Immediate memory is tested by asking for the repetition of certain words or numerals after an interval of one to two minutes. Loss of memory of long past events is seen in senile dementia paresis arteriosclerosis epilepsy less in dementia precox. It is tested by asking about school knowledge and events in the patient's life.

*Memory scotoma (gaps)* are associated with clouding of consciousness. They may however include a period before the onset of the disturbance (retrograde amnesia) as in head injuries

and attempts at hanging. In some cases of Korsakoff's psychosis and hysteria events of a considerable period of the past may be forgotten.

*Falsifications of memory and confabulations* are seen in Korsakoff's psychosis senile states paranoia paraphrenia arteriosclerosis prison psychosis querulous states in some of these associated with delusions.

*Orientation is disturbed* when the consciousness is clouded and in the dementias. In manic depressive insanity and in dementia precox there may be a faulty orientation due to delusions.

*Flow of Ideas* Thinking is difficult in cloudings of consciousness such as delirium and twilight states and is retarded in depressive states of manic depressive psychosis and in dementia. Flight of ideas occur in mania paresis delirium alcoholic intoxication cocaineism occasionally in alcoholic hallucinosis and in epilepsy. Repetition of the same idea (verbigeration) in speech or in writing occurs frequently in dementia precox in which also occurs the typical *Zerfahrenheit* or loss of the normal association of thoughts. Confusion of thoughts is associated with ordinary flight of ideas. Characteristic disturbances of the flow of thought is seen in the compulsion ideas.

*Lack of formation of general ideas* is seen in feeble mindedness and demented states.

*Judgment is impaired* in paresis senile and presenile dementia arteriosclerosis brain syphilis dementia precox Korsakoff's psychosis and feeble mindedness. With defects in judgment are associated delusions and delusional ideas. These are of a transitory character in

the deliria in epilepsy, hysteria and Korsakoff's psychosis. They tend to be transitory in mania but are usually more fixed in melancholia and dementia precox. They are fixed and systematized in paranoia.

*Blunting of the sensibilities is seen* especially in dementia precox, paresis, senile dementia, arteriosclerosis, Korsakoff's psychosis, alcoholism, feeble-mindedness and cretinism.

*Deviations of the instincts* are seen in many conditions. Among the deviations may be mentioned the *repugnance to ingestion of food* seen in manic depressive psychosis, paresis, dementia precox, deliria and the *voraciousness* of idiocy and the demented states. The *instinct of self preservation* may be deviated in attempts at suicide while in the self mutilation that occurs in dementia precox and in hysteria this instinct is also involved at least on superficial analysis of the situation. *Deviations of the sexual instinct* are many and need not be entered into here.

*Aboulia and dysboulia* (pathologic weakness and perversion of will) are seen typically in the dementias. They are found also in the psychopathics and in hysteria. They may take the form of a poverty of movement as in dementia precox, paraphrenia, arterio-

sclerosis, senile dementia and Alzheimer's disease. They may take the form of waxy flexibility or of negativistic stupor. In epilepsy stuporous conditions may be associated with inner tension. *Increase of voluntary activity* is noted in alcoholic intoxication, cocaineism, mania, paresis, epilepsy and hysteria and also in deliria. Disturbances of will are seen also in focal brain lesions. Here they may be associated with apraxia.

In maniacal and delirious conditions the will is readily deviable.

*Anxious excitement* is seen in manic depressive psychosis, in paresis, in dementia precox and in presenile insanities.

*Negativism*, marked mannerisms and stereotypy are seen typically in dementia precox.

Various forms of *defects in expression* are seen in mental disease. Among them may be mentioned *Vorbeireden* in which the patient understands a question but responds nonsensically. In Ganser's twilight state seen in hysteria the answers may be incorrect though relevant.

*Aphasias and defects of speech and of handwriting* are found in many forms of mental disease as well as in nervous diseases.

## SECTION 14

### Miscellaneous

## CHAPTER XXIX

### The Vitamins and Vitamin Deficiency Diseases (Avitaminosis)

The vitamins are nutritional substances essential for the maintenance of proper nutrition. They are contained in fruits, vegetables and other foods in varying quantities. For the maintenance of nutritional balance at least a minimum quantity of each of the various vitamins is necessary. A lack of any one of these in the body will cause a definite pathologic state characteristic of deficiency of that particular vitamin.

**Nomenclature:** The vitamins are named alphabetically, *i e.*, vitamin A, B, C, etc. Some of the letters also have subdivisions such as B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>2</sub>, etc., and many in addition also carry surnames, such as B<sub>1</sub>, thiamin, C, ascorbic or cevitamic acid, etc. The chemical formulae of several of the vitamins have been definitely established and some of them are now obtainable as synthetic products and may be used parenterally.

#### Natural Sources and Physiologic Action of Some of the Vitamins and Diseases Caused by Their Deficiency

##### *Vitamin A*

Vitamin A occurs in two forms (1) As a carotenoid substance found in the vegetable kingdom from which vitamin A is formed in the body, and (2) as fully formed vitamin A found in the animal kingdom.

(1) **Carotene Substances** (the precursors of vitamin A) These are found abundantly in green leafy plants and in some tubers, fruits, berries and seeds. The more intense the color of the fruit

of a species the greater is its "previtamin A" content. Bleached leaves or stalks contain less carotene than do the unbleached.

Vegetable foods particularly rich in vitamin A are

(a) Leafy vegetables as lettuce, spinach, cabbage, beet tops, carrot tops, unbleached celery, scallions, asparagus, broccoli, and other green, yellow or red edible leafy vegetables.

(b) Fleshy vegetables, *i e.*, green peppers, carrots, sweet potatoes, red tomatoes.

(c) Fruits such as apricots, bananas and yellow peaches.

(d) Other vegetables as green peas, snap beans and yellow corn.

(2) **Vitamin A in Animal Foods** Herbivorous animals derive their vitamin A from the carotenoid substances in their food which is assimilated and converted into vitamin A. This is stored in the liver and other tissues and much of it is excreted and secreted by the various glands. Carnivorous animals get their vitamin A directly from the fleshy foods. Fish get theirs from the marine plants and other foods. Humans and other mixed feeders get their vitamin A from both animal and vegetable foods.

Animal foods rich in vitamin A are eggs, whole milk, cream, butter, cheese, beef fat, and fish liver oil, especially cod and halibut. Liver is particularly rich in vitamin A. It is absent in vegetable fats and in olive oil, linseed oil, coconut oil and mineral oils.

### Daily Requirements of Vitamin A

It is estimated that the minimum daily adult requirement of vitamin A is approximately from 10 to 15 U S P units per pound of body weight. The average intake should be about 3000 to 8000 U S P units daily. The ordinary balanced diet usually contains at least that much. Pregnant women require about 6000 to 10 000 U S P units daily. Growing children require between 6000 and 10 000 U S P units of vitamin A daily.

The daily requirement of all vitamins is increased during (a) Increased metabolic activity, (b) increased Caloric intake of food, (c) increased carbohydrate intake, (d) fevers, (e) pregnancy, (f) hyperthyroidism and (g) growth.

The average vitamin A content of the commoner foods expressed in U S P or international units is as follows: Milk 2000 units per pint, butter 2000 units per ounce, one egg yolk 600 units, cod liver oil 2000 to 1300 units per teaspoonful (drachm), halibut liver oil 600 to 7200 units per large drop. The pre-vitamin A (carotene) content of foods is, for example: Carrots  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb fresh or boiled 2000 units, cabbage  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb fresh or boiled, 1000 units. Some of the green leafy vegetables contain from 1000 to 10 000 units per ounce.

**The Unit.** The U S P or international unit of vitamin A is equivalent to 0.6 microgram of carotene and to 0.3 microgram of vitamin A\*. The Sherman unit is expressed in 'rat growth units'. It represents the daily amount of vitamin A necessary to add to a standard diet (free of vitamin A) in order to have a test rat gain an average of three grams per week over a period of from four to eight weeks. From 8 to

12 rats are tested so as to determine the average gain in weight. The U S P unit and the international unit are identical and are more accurate than the Sherman unit. One or two Sherman units roughly approximate a U S P unit.

### Physiologic Action of Vitamin A

Vitamin A acts upon epithelial and other structures of the eye, upon the epithelial structures of the skin and it together with other factors influences growth and increases body resistance to infection. A deficiency of vitamin A will cause degenerative changes in the various structures. An increase of vitamin A above the normal is not associated with any disease.

A deficiency of vitamin A in the body may be due to a diminished intake or to the inability of the body to utilize or to store the vitamin or the previtamin factor (carotene). This may result from disease of the liver, from coating of the intestinal mucosa by oils or by excessive mucus, and may also occur in diabetes mellitus.

**Pathology.** Hypovitaminosis of A affects the eyes, the teeth, the respiratory system, the skin, the digestive tract, the genitourinary tract, and the nervous system.

**The Eyes.** Among the early symptoms of vitamin A deficiency is night blindness or delayed adaptability to light changes caused by a deficiency of the visual purple. This fact is utilized as a test for determining the deficiency of vitamin A in the body. Various types of apparatus are now in use for determining the degree of night blindness and the rapidity with which the eyes become adapted to darkness after having been exposed to light. Two types of apparatus generally used are the Birch-Hirschfeld photometer and the Hecht and Feldman adap-

\* Barker, L. F. "The Vitamins." A. M. A. p. 118, 1933.

tometers Severe grades of vitamin A deficiency will cause metaplasia of the conjunctival and corneal epithelium and xerophthalmia resulting in complete blindness

**Teeth** These may become soft due to scarcity of enamel Tooth deformities in the young and pyorrhea in adults have been attributed to vitamin A deficiency It is quite likely that such defects may be due to general malnutrition rather than to any specific deficiency

**Respiratory Tract** Keratinization of the epithelium of the respiratory mucosa is likely to lead to bronchitis peribronchial inflammation bronchiectasis and severe types of pneumonia

**Skin** This becomes dry and rough and may develop a papular eruption the sweat glands may atrophy

**Gastrointestinal Tract** This may show evidence of hyperkeratosis especially of the esophageal mucosa

**The Liver** Disease of the liver fails to convert provitamins and to store vitamin A Therefore in the various types of cirrhosis in other severe liver diseases and in catarrhal jaundice avitaminosis A often develops

**The Blood** It was pointed out by Abbott and Ahman that in vitamin A deficiency there is a decrease of polymorphonuclear neutrophils a relative increase in large lymphocytes and the presence of degenerate cells

**Genitourinary Tract** There have been reports of cases of complete obstruction of the ureters and renal pelvis due to accumulation of keratinized cells The formation of renal calculi was attributed to vitamin A deficiency This requires further study

**Nervous System** The formation of various lesions in the nervous system was noted by many observers when they

fed experimental animals on a diet lacking in vitamin A

**Growth and general development** may be retarded when vitamin A is withheld from the diet over a prolonged period Vitamin A seems to be an antagonist to thyroxin and should be beneficial in hyperthyroidism It also is said to be beneficial in senile vaginitis

**Resume** Vitamin A is necessary for maintaining the epithelial tissue in a proper state of nutrition thus preventing degenerative changes in the eyes the nervous system and the various epithelial structures and for limiting the susceptibility to infection (For availability and therapeutic use see pp 914-916)

### **Vitamin B (Vitamin B Complex)**

Vitamin B is a complex vitamin made up of an apparently heterogeneous group of specific substances each having its own chemical and physiological properties There is however sufficient homogeneity in these substances to merit their inclusion into one complex group One of their common properties is that they are all water soluble and before they were individually identified they were classified as a single water soluble vitamin in contradistinction to vitamin A which was known as a fat soluble vitamin

**Source** The vitamin B group (vitamin B complex) is found in most of the natural foods in sufficient quantities for the normal individual's needs The germ and the bran of cereals as in wheat oats etc and not the kernel contain this vitamin complex Brewers yeast is particularly rich in vitamin B complex

**The Specific Factors of the Vitamin B Group** Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is synthesized as thiamin chloride an antineuritic or antiberiberi factor

Vitamin B<sub>2</sub> or G is known as riboflavin which prevents or cures cheilitis and certain ocular changes

Nicotinic acid (the P P factor), which may be another factor of B<sub>2</sub> or is closely allied to it, is the pellagra preventative or pellagra curative factor

Vitamin B<sub>3</sub> is a growth factor in pigeons

Vitamin B<sub>4</sub> is an antiparalytic factor in rats and chicks

Vitamin B is a weight maintaining factor for pigeons

Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> is an antidermatitis factor for rats and appears to have similar properties to vitamin H and factors I and Y. B<sub>6</sub> seems to be of benefit in the treatment of certain types of neuromuscular dystrophies

Factor W is a growth essential for rats

Pantothenic acid or filtrate factor is a nutritional dermatosis preventative in chicks

The specific factors of the vitamin B group that have thus far proven to be of clinical importance to man are vitamin B<sub>1</sub> or thiamin chloride, riboflavin, nicotinic acid (P P factors) and vitamin B<sub>2</sub>

**Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> (thiamin hydrochloride)**  
Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is derived from food and is also synthesized as thiamin hydrochloride. For clinical use the natural product is derived from yeast and other substances. It is dispensed in various preparations and combinations and under a host of trade names. The synthetic product has a definite formula and is marketed as thiamin hydrochloride or in combination with other substances.

**Food Sources:** The quantity of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in any one type of food is not great, in order to get an adequate amount of this vitamin a variety of food is necessary. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is not stored in large quantities in the tissues. It is

therefore necessary to obtain a daily supply of it from vegetables, such as potatoes, the legumens (raw or canned) from fruits, nuts, whole grains, and cereals (not refined flours or refined cereals), from animal foods as milk, eggs, muscle meats and organs (spleen, pancreas, kidneys, lung, liver, etc.). Chicken and pork are said to contain a greater quantity of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> than do other meats, or milk. Prolonged boiling or the addition of an alkali while boiling destroys the vitamin. In cooking vegetables more of the vitamins remain in the water than in the vegetables. Yeast is the richest source for all the B vitamins.

**The Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> Unit** The unit of Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is based on the minimum quantity required to prevent beriberi in test animals. The two kinds of unit generally employed are the international or USP and the Sherman unit.

The international or USP unit adopted at the International Vitamin Conference and recommended to the Vitamin Advisory Committee of U S Pharmacopeia in 1938 is: The potency of three micrograms of thiamin chloride equals one unit of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. That is, one international unit of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> equals three micrograms or three one thousandths of a milligram of thiamin chloride. One milligram (1 mg.) of thiamin chloride represents 333 USP units.

The Sherman Chace unit. Approximately two Sherman Chace units equal one international unit.

**Human Daily Requirements for Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>** The daily requirement of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> seems to depend upon the caloric intake of food, particularly of carbohydrates, the weight of the individual, the condition of the kidneys and of the bowel, excretions, the age of the individual, the metabolic rate, and whether



pregnant or lactating. Many of the authors who have studied this problem fail to agree as to the exact number of units required daily. The disagreement is chiefly due to the different requirements of the various races because of differences in food habits, differences in stature of the individuals and the unequal standardization of the unit.

Cowgill<sup>1</sup> states that a man weighing about 99 pounds or 45 kilograms requires about 135 international units of the vitamin, one weighing 154 pounds or 70 kilograms needs approximately 280 international units, and still heavier persons weighing about 198 pounds or 90 kilograms require about 550 international units. The number of units therefore depends largely upon the number of Calories required for maintenance of the individual. Rose<sup>2</sup> estimated that the daily intake is approximately 15 international units or 30 Sherman Chase units per 100 Calories of food ingested.

During pregnancy and lactation there is greater demand for vitamin B<sub>1</sub> and the intake therefore should be about 50 per cent more than under other circumstances.

During childhood, because of growth and development, the unit intake should be proportionately greater than in the adult.

In increased metabolic activity, as in fevers and in hyperthyroidism, the vitamin B<sub>1</sub> requirement is increased.

Since vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is easily excreted by the kidneys and the gastrointestinal tract, it is obvious that when there is polyuria or diarrhea or severe vomiting, the unit intake of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> should be increased.

in proportion to the excessive amount lost from the body through these channels. Cowgill, Rosenberg and Rogoff<sup>1</sup> have shown by experiments on dogs that vigorous diuresis has resulted in the appearance of anorexia and of other signs of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency, chiefly because of the great loss of this vitamin through the kidneys.

**Test for Detection of Vitamin B in the Body.** Accurate tests have as yet not been devised, but an approximate idea as to the amount of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in the body may be obtained by the examination of urine. It has been found that normal adults excrete an average of about 12 international units daily, and that excretion of less than three units is found in cases of beriberi or other types of polyneuritis. It has been suggested as a test that when 350 units of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> are administered to a normal adult, there should be an excretion in the urine of about 30 units of thiamin chloride.

Another test utilized is the determination of the bisulfite binding power of the blood. The bisulfite binding power of the blood is expressed by milligrams of pyruvic acid. This normally ranges from 3.5 milligrams to 6 milligrams per 100 cc of blood. Elevated values indicate vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency.

**Physiology of Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>.** Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> has definitely proven to be an antiberiberi vitamin. Deficiency of this substance causes beriberi, certain types of neuritis, and other signs of avitaminosis B<sub>1</sub>, though not as marked as is beriberi. Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> also exerts a definite influence upon various metabolic processes, particularly upon carbohydrate metabolism. A lack of this vita-

<sup>1</sup> Cowgill G. R., Rosenberg H. A. and Rogoff J. *Am. J. Physiol.* 95: 537, Dec. 1930.

<sup>2</sup> Cowgill G. R., Ph. D. Human requirements for B<sub>1</sub>—The Vitamins A. M. A. 1939, p. 236.

<sup>2</sup> Rose M. S. The Foundations of Nutrition. 1933. Macmillan, N. Y.

min in the system produces a deficiency of oxygen in the heart muscle, kidneys and brain. This results from an insufficient uptake of oxygen in the presence of dextrose and an increase in pyruvic acid in the presence of lactic acid. Both of these conditions are correctible by the administration of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> (thiamin hydrochloride) because it brings about oxidation of pyruvic acid (Cantor and Trumper).

Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency may arise from an insufficient intake, a too rapid excretion by bowel or kidneys, or by decreased absorption. Since vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is lost through the kidneys and the feces, it is obvious that under certain circumstances such as diarrhea and polyuria, an excessive amount of the substance may filter through the intestinal canal and the kidneys, thereby causing a deficiency. In diseases of the mucous membrane of the intestinal canal, hypovitaminosis B<sub>1</sub> results from the deficient absorptive power of the bowel because of insufficient permeability of the mucosa.

**Pathology.** Hypovitaminosis of B<sub>1</sub> affects various organs and causes a number of diseases.

**The Heart.** The well known cardiac symptoms in beriberi demonstrate that the cardiac muscle can be greatly injured by vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency. Cowgill states: "Pure vitamin B<sub>1</sub> has no decided influence on the normal heart, only in the B<sub>1</sub> deficient organism does administration of the vitamin result in demonstrable effect." The effect of vitamin deficiency on the heart is manifested by tachycardia, aggravated by the least exertion, dyspnea, edema, right and left ventricular enlargement, and often apical or basal systolic murmurs. In cases of myocardial weakness associated with

dilatation and signs of congestive heart failure, the addition of adequate doses of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> to the other cardiac therapeutic agents helps to correct the cardiac output and imparts a sense of well being to the individual by removing the great fatigue they usually experience.

**The Nervous System.** The central nervous system, the autonomic system and the peripheral nerves show decided evidence of impaired function in vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency. This is particularly true of the peripheral nerves as is evidenced in polyneuritis and beriberi.

**The Digestive System.** Anorexia, digestive disorders such as flatulency, constipation, diarrhea, or both, coated tongue or glossitis and various signs of malnutrition are fairly common in hypovitaminosis B<sub>1</sub>. While the gastrointestinal manifestations are not specific for this deficiency, they are nevertheless prominent findings.

**Diseases Caused by Vitamin B<sub>1</sub> Deficiency.** The most important of the diseases caused by vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency is beriberi. Other diseases such as neuritis and polyneuritis found during pregnancy and cases of diabetes mellitus, sprue, pernicious anemia, colitis and alcoholism may be associated with vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency or may be ameliorated by the proper use of this vitamin.

Beriberi is described as a deficiency disease due to the lack of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in the diet. It is characterized by multiple neuritis, edema and cardiac weakness. Those who subsist exclusively or nearly exclusively on a diet of polished rice are subject to attacks of beriberi because vitamin B<sub>1</sub> is contained in the external layers of the rice which is completely removed by overmilling or polishing. Beriberi occurs in three forms: (1) Dry beriberi in which the symp-

toms are referable chiefly to the nervous system (2) wet beriberi in which the outstanding symptoms are generalized edema or anasarca and (3) the acute or pernicious type in which there occur serious heart symptoms that may cause sudden death. The onset of the disease is insidious with general malaise, weakness, mild gastrointestinal disturbances, diminished exercise tolerance, heaviness in the legs and cardiac palpitation. Paresthesias, soreness of the muscles and extreme sensitiveness of the nerve trunks soon follow the prodromal symptoms; this is followed by loss of superficial and deep reflexes. With the occurrence of the diminished reflexes there develop edema of the legs and symptoms of cardiac decompensation. The edema may vary from mild pretibial pitting to very severe swelling. At this time effusions may appear in the pericardium, the pleura and occasionally in the peritoneum. The symptoms referable to the nervous system are progressive as is evidenced by the development of the steppage gait or marked ataxia, loss of tendon reflexes and electrical reactions of degeneration. There may develop at this time wrist drop and foot or toe drop associated with considerable pain. Occasionally aphonia due to vocal cord paralysis may develop. There are also mental symptoms such as confusion and occasionally Korsakoff's syndrome.

**Polyneuritis.** Polyneuritis may occur from conditions other than vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency. Whether polyneuritis is due to vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency or to other causes it is benefited by the administration of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. When polyneuritis is due to vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency the onset is usually insidious though it may be rapid with heaviness in the legs and tenderness of the calf muscles when

squeezed. Walking becomes difficult particularly because of weakness in the legs and if walking is persisted in after the feeling of weakness has come on there may be sudden collapse because of the failure of the lower extremities to uphold. In milder cases there may only be burning of the soles of the feet with numbness of the dorsum and lower part of the ankle. The weakness in the extremities eventually spreads to all parts so that it affects both the extensor and flexor muscles and foot drop results. The hyperesthesia is almost bandlike and is followed by anesthesia with atrophy of the muscles and of the skin over the affected part. The upper extremities usually become involved quite late in the disease although occasionally the symptoms in the upper extremities may precede those in the lower. The symptoms in the upper extremities are weakness in the hands, hyperesthesia and anesthesia with loss of tendon reflexes and often wrist drop. The sphincter reflexes are usually maintained until quite late in the disease. Mental symptoms may be those of euphoria or depression. The rapidity with which the symptoms spread and the length of time they may continue depend entirely upon the amount of deficiency and the ability of the individual to respond to adequate dosages of vitamin B<sub>1</sub>. (For availability and therapeutic use see p. 915).

**Vitamin B<sub>2</sub> and G. Riboflavin.** Riboflavin, lactoflavin, vitamin G or vitamin B<sub>2</sub> is a yellowish green fluorescent water soluble pigment found in fairly large quantities in milk, liver, kidneys, muscle, yeast, egg white and egg yolk, barley, malt, dandelion blossoms, grasses and other plants. It seems to be formed primarily in the green leaves of actively growing plants where it is found

in greater concentration than in any other part of the plant. In broccoli the leaves contain twice as much riboflavin as the flower buds or the twigs. It is excreted in fairly large amounts in the urine. Riboflavin has been synthesized and has a distinct chemical formula.

**Physiology** Goldberger and Lilly,<sup>1</sup> in studying pellagra found that some of the animals on a deficiency diet developed a dermatitis in any one of the following parts. The ears, the front of the neck, the upper part of the chest, forearms, back of forepaws, shins or the back of the hindpaws. Sebrell and Butler induced riboflavin deficiency in humans. This was manifested by the development of macerated areas at the angles of the mouth (cheilitis) which developed into transverse fissures. The mucosa of the lips became shiny, almost red and had a denuded appearance. There were also greasy, seborrheic accumulations at the alae nasae around the eyes and in some instances on the ears. These lesions disappeared after the patients were treated with riboflavin. Nicotinic acid had no effect. It is therefore assumed that riboflavin is just one of the constituents of vitamin  $P_2$ , the absence of which may be partly responsible for some of the manifestations of pellagra but not for the entire syndrome and that riboflavin is concerned with the development of lesions around the mouth and in the gastrointestinal tract in humans and may produce nutritional dermatitis in chicks and cataracts in rats. It is now believed that nicotinic acid and not riboflavin is the pellagra preventive vitamin.

#### Daily Requirement of Riboflavin

According to Rose the daily require-

ment of Borquin Sherman units of riboflavin to prevent deficiency manifestations are. In children up to ten years of age about 400 units or 20 units per 100 Calories if more than 2000 Calories per day are consumed, in adults also 20 units per 100 Calories. Steigerling recommends 450 units for boys under six and girls under seven years of age, 540 units for boys from seven to ten and girls from eight to 13 years of age, 600 units for older children and adults, or approximately 570 units per capita population. In riboflavin deficiency, one to three milligrams of crystalline riboflavin given daily would correct the deficiency.

**Unit** The unit of riboflavin (Borquin Sherman unit of vitamin G) represents three to five micrograms of the substance. Others give it a higher value, eight to ten micrograms per unit or the amount required for a rat to gain 40 Gm weight in 30 days. One mg (1000 micrograms) of riboflavin is equivalent to 400 (Borquin Sherman) units of vitamin B<sub>2</sub> (G).

**Source of Vitamin B** Liver stomach concentrate is one of the most satisfactory sources of vitamin B<sub>2</sub>. Riboflavin is synthesized from several substances (For availability and therapeutic use see pp. 915, 916).

**Nicotinic Acid or Nicotinic Acid Amide (The PP Factor)** Nicotinic acid (amide) is identical with the PP factor and is one of the constituents of vitamin B<sub>2</sub>. It is known chemically as pyridin 3-carboxylic acid. The deficiencies produced by an inadequate amount in the system are pellagra, alimentary disorders such as proctitis (diarrhea), dermatitis, pigmentation and thickening of the skin, glossitis, stomatitis, urethritis, vaginitis and nervous and mental

<sup>1</sup>Goldberger J and Lilly R. D. *Exp. Med.* 31: 41-5, May, 1920.

disturbances. Nicotinic acid is a proven remedy for the successful treatment of pellagra but has no effect upon the polyneuritis which may occur in pellagra. This phase is improved with the use of thiamin chloride. Nicotinic acid cures black tongue in dogs.

**Pellagra** is classified as a deficiency disease due to avitaminosis of one of the B complex group and possibly to a lack of other substances vital to proper metabolism. Pellagra is found among those who are on a deficient diet or have gastrointestinal disorders that interfere with the absorption of the material necessary for its prevention. In this country pellagra is found among some of the southerners who subsist largely on corn pone and molasses and among the population of the entire country who are inveterate drinkers and keep themselves drunk for months at a time. During their debauches their diet is restricted and during those intervals the gastrointestinal tract is so disturbed that it is incapable of absorbing the vitamins unless they are administered in concentrated form. Persons on a strict, poorly chosen or fadist diet and the insane may also develop pellagra because of dietary insufficiency.

**Symptoms.** The disease is slow in onset; the prodromal period may be two or three months. During this stage there are vague digestive disturbances, loss of appetite, slight diarrhea, mental depression, headache, vertigo and insomnia. Later there develop the characteristic skin lesions on the back of the hands, neck and face, chiefly over areas exposed to the sun. The lesions are generally symmetrical in location on the body and are sharply defined. They start as an erythema and then darken; the skin may become hardened, vesicles, bullae or fissures may develop, and secondary

infection may set in. The digestive symptoms are anorexia, stomatitis, glossitis, diarrhea and achylia gastrica. The nervous symptoms vary from functional neurosis to severe dementia and cord changes (SEE Fig 3 p 134).

**Treatment.** Patients who were given riboflavin alone did not show complete recovery, while when nicotinic acid was added or when nicotinic acid alone was administered, many of the pellagra patients were apparently cured.

Nicotinic acid alone or in conjunction with vitamin B complex appears to be an ideal method of preventing and curing pellagra and other deficiency diseases of that type. An adequate amount of brewer's yeast with a diet rich in green vegetables, fruits, milk and liver will, because of the vitamin content, improve or cure this disease (SEE pp 916-918).

**Dosage.** For prophylaxis, when on an insufficient diet or in a nonabsorptive state, 20 to 60 mg can be given daily. For treatment where the disease has already developed, 100 to 1000 mg may be given in divided doses daily; it may be administered orally or parenterally.

**Other Vitamin B Factors.** Vitamins B<sub>3</sub>, B<sub>4</sub>, B<sub>5</sub> and the W factor are still in the preclinical stage of study. From the studies upon laboratory experimental animals, only this much may be said: that B<sub>3</sub> is a growth factor for pigeons; that B<sub>4</sub> is an antiparalytic factor as applied to chicks and rats; that B<sub>5</sub> is a weight maintenance factor for pigeons; and that factor W is a growth essential for rats. Future studies of these factors may prove their values as nutritional substances in man.

**Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> (Pyridoxine).** **The Rat Antidermatitis Factor.** Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> is found in fairly large quantities in maize (Indian corn) and it has also been pre-

pared synthetically in crystalline form. The administration of vitamin B<sub>6</sub> has failed to cure pellagra or black tongue, and likewise failed to prevent the occurrence of pellagra when given in conjunction with a pellagra forming diet. However Spies *et al*<sup>1</sup> report that they used pyridoxine for the treatment of several cases of pellagra and beriberi who suffered from nervousness, insomnia, irritability, abdominal pain, weakness and difficulty in walking. He administered 50 mg of pyridoxine in normal salt solution intravenously and within 24 hours the patients were free of symptoms. Pyridoxine is said to cure the acrodynia like dermatitis of rats. It is considered as a distinct entity belonging to the vitamin B complex group and appears to be of nutritional value in man but its exact role has as yet been definitely proven.

Recently reports have appeared in the literature citing the beneficial results obtained from the use of vitamin B<sub>6</sub> in pseudo muscular dystrophy,<sup>2</sup> the nonencephalitis type of parkinsonism,<sup>3,4</sup> chorea<sup>5</sup> and in arsenical polyneuritis when given in conjunction with vitamin B<sub>1</sub>.<sup>6</sup> (For availability and therapeutic use see pp. 916-918).

ent it is administered in conjunction with other vitamins in defective nutritional states. It has been estimated by Jukes<sup>12</sup> that the pantothenic acid requirement for the chick is something like 1.4 mg per 100 grams of diet. Intensive studies are now being conducted to determine the role played by pantothenic acid in human nutrition. (For availability and therapeutic use see pp. 916-918).

AVITAMINOSIS B may be caused by a deficiency of one or more of the B complex group due either to insufficient intake or deficient absorption and utilization of one, of several, or of the entire B complex group.

### *Vitamin C (Cervitamic Acid)*

Vitamin C is the antiscorbutic vitamin (cervitamic acid). In human beings it is found in fairly large quantities in the adrenals and in the circulating blood. Szent Gyorgyi isolated hexuronic acid (cervitamic acid) from the adrenal claiming that 1/2 to 1 mg daily of this substance will protect against scurvy.

In food vitamin C is found in abundance in citrous fruits and green vegetables. It is also synthesized and is

known under the following names Ascorbic acid hexuronic acid or cevitamic acid

The normal vitamin C content of the blood ranges from 0.8 to 1.8 mg in 100 cc. Values of 0.3 mg to the 100 cc of blood are found in scurvy. The mean vitamin C blood concentration is about 1 mg to the 100 cc. The normal output of ascorbic acid in the urine is about 13 mg daily.

**Sources** Among the foods rich in vitamin C are oranges, limes, lemons (raw and canned), tangerines, tomatoes (raw or canned), fresh strawberries, black currants, green peppers, raw cabbage, properly prepared leafy green vegetables such as spinach, brussels sprouts, kale, broccoli, parsley, and dandelion leaves. Other important sources are onions, kohlrabi, cauliflower, turnips, and beets. Lettuce, endive, and escarole have a lower vitamin C content. Fruits other than citrus type such as apples, bananas, pineapples contain a lesser quantity of vitamin C, and dry cereals and the legumes are devoid of vitamin C. However, almost any seed soaked in water for 24 hours and kept moist for a few days until it sprouts develops an effective antiscorbutic substance and retains it even when cooked.<sup>1</sup>

Among the animal products, liver is a fairly good source of vitamin C. Cooked meat muscle contains very little. Butter, eggs, and cheese contain no vitamin C, and pasteurized milk very little.

**Physiology** Vitamin C has an effect upon the intercellular colloids and on the cells as a whole. It influences favorably the red corpuscles, platelets, and other blood elements, also the bone and the denture.

Defective intake or scarcity of vitamin C in the system will affect the *ends of the long bones*, causing rarefaction of the cortex and various osseous changes. The costochondral junctions become enlarged. The periosteum shows weakening of its attachment; the periosteal lesions are prone to be complicated by hemorrhages. The *teeth* become weakened and defects develop in the enamel and the dentine. The *gums* become swollen, ulcerated, and may become gangrenous, often causing hemorrhage. The *eyes* show ecchymosis, and occasionally there may be other signs of eye trouble. The *skin* develops the characteristic scurvy lesions: follicular or petechial hemorrhages. These hemorrhages are commonly noted in the lower extremities. The *viscera* also suffer from this deficiency, showing hemorrhages and, occasionally, necrosis and ulceration. The adrenals usually atrophy.

**The Unit** One mg of ascorbic acid equals 20 U.S.P. units. Orange juice freshly prepared from fresh fruit contains 13.8 U.S.P. units per cc.

**Daily Requirements** It is estimated that infants require from 8 to 50 mg daily, children from 22 to 100 mg or more daily, adults from 30 to 100 mg or more daily. During pregnancy and lactation the quantity of vitamin C required is larger than at any other time.

The individual requirement of vitamin C can be fairly accurately determined by one of three tests:

1. The resistance or fragility of the blood capillaries.
2. The excretion of ascorbic acid in the urine.
3. The ascorbic acid content in the fasting blood.

**Pathology** A deficiency of vitamin C causes a number of diseased conditions:

<sup>1</sup> Bessey, Otto A. Ph.D. The Vitamins. A. M. A. 1939.

*Scurvy* may be induced experimentally by withholding vitamin C from the diet, and is curable only with vitamin C therefore scurvy is definitely a vitamin C deficiency disease. Scurvy may occur in various degrees of severity. Mild cases or latent scurvy often fail of detection. Spongy gums, tender shins, a tendency to subcutaneous hemorrhages and the low vitamin C content of the blood are the diagnostic criteria (Fig. 5 p. 135).

In the *anemias and hemorrhagic diseases*, a low vitamin C blood level is often encountered, while in leukemia the vitamin C content of the blood often shows a high value. *Pigmentation* of the skin such as is found in Addison's disease has been lessened by the use of vitamin C and it has been suggested that this vitamin may be a specific in *lupus erythematosus*.

In *gastrointestinal diseases* because of poor absorption and notwithstanding an adequate intake there may occur a deficiency of vitamin C in the blood.

In *infectious diseases and fevers*, vitamin C is poorly absorbed, therefore abundant quantities of orange juice or lemonade should be given, and if the administration of concentrated vitamin C becomes necessary, ascorbic acid should be given parenterally.

Vitamin C has been used by Burkland<sup>1</sup> in the treatment of *essential hematuria* where no gross evidence of vitamin C deficiency or of scurvy existed. Its use has also been effective in the treatment of *chronic lead poisoning*. Four hundred such cases were treated by Holms, Campbell and Amberg,<sup>2</sup> who

found that 100 mg. of ascorbic acid given daily produce better results than the treatment with calcium. (For availability and therapeutic use see pp. 917-918).

### Vitamin D

Vitamin D has a definite effect upon calcium and phosphorus metabolism. It is the antirachitic vitamin and chemically belongs to the sterol group. Calcium and phosphorus metabolism is influenced by a number of factors such as activity of the parathyroids, sunlight, and artificial ultraviolet radiation. While both hyperactivity of the parathyroids and excessive use of vitamin D cause hypercalcemia, their mode of action is entirely different. The parathyroids abstract calcium from the bony skeleton and deposit it in the blood stream, thus causing rarefaction of bone. Vitamin D, on the other hand, causes not only an increase of calcium in the blood but also excessive deposits of it in some portion of the bones. The action of sunlight is similar to that of vitamin D.

Studies by Bills<sup>1</sup> have shown that there are at least 10 different sterol derivatives that exhibit properties of vitamin D. Five of these are recognizable chemically and the others are distinguished by fragmentary chemical and physiologic differences. However, the action of most of them are similar irrespective of their source. Zelson<sup>2</sup> and Harnapp<sup>3</sup> report the intramuscular use of a single large dose of crystalline vitamins D<sub>2</sub> and D<sub>3</sub> as a preventative and cure of rickets.



**Sources of Vitamin D Foods** This vitamin is obtained from the livers of cod and halibut. The liver, intestines and the flesh of other fishes, particularly of salmon, sardines, shark and herring, are rich sources of vitamin D. Eggs, milk, fat, meat and liver other than that of fishes contain a moderate amount, and plants and vegetables contain hardly any. Irradiation of substances containing vitamin D greatly increases their yield. Bechtel and Hoppert<sup>1</sup> have shown that cow's milk during the winter contains only 5 units of vitamin D, while summer milk contains about 40 units per quart. The increase is attributed to the exposure of the cows to the sun's rays, not to pasture feeding but to pasture living.

**Ergosterol** Ergosterol is a rich source of vitamin D; it is a sterol derived from fungi and is obtainable from mushrooms, ergot and yeast molds. For medicinal purposes it is now prepared from yeast molds and is subjected to irradiation which enormously enhances its vitamin D content.

**Cholesterol** Cholesterol is the chief sterol in animal fats; it is found in the skin, fur and feathers of animals. When cholesterol is exposed to the sun or to other sources of ultraviolet rays it becomes a rich source of vitamin D.

**Pharmaceutical Preparations of Vitamin D** (1) *Cod liver Oil* This should contain not less than 85 U.S.P. units per gram. One teaspoonful should contain 340 units. Most of the cod liver oils on the market contain more than the required number of units. Cod liver oil also contains vitamin A.

(2) *Vioosterol in Oil* This is irradiated or otherwise activated ergos-

terol dissolved in corn oil or other bland oil. One gram of vioosterol should contain not less than 10,000 U.S.P. units. One drop is equal to 222 units. It does not contain vitamin A.

(3) *Calciferol* This is said to be pure vitamin D prepared from irradiated ergosterol and dissolved in propylene glycol. It does not contain any vitamin A. It is soluble in water or milk. Its potency is the same as vioosterol.

(4) *Halibut liver Oil* This is somewhat richer in vitamin D than is cod liver oil but is very rich in vitamin A. Most preparations of halibut liver oil on the market are fortified with vioosterol so that the vitamin D content equals the vitamin A content. Its prepared potency is like that of vioosterol in oil.

These preparations are obtainable in liquid, soft capsule, pearl or tablet form. Vitamin D is also obtainable in milk specially irradiated or prepared and in bread fortified with vioosterol.

**The Vitamin D Unit** The U.S.P. unit equals the international unit. The U.S.P. unit is defined as equal in antirachitic potency for the rat to one international unit of vitamin D as defined and adopted by the Conference of Vitamin Standards of the Permanent Commission on Biological Standardization of the League of Nations in June 1931.

The international unit potency is expressed as follows: The vitamin D activity of 1 mg. of the international standard solution of irradiated ergosterol found equal to 0.025 micrograms of crystalline vitamin D.

**Daily Vitamin D Requirements For Men** It is estimated that adult males require a minimum of 0.45 Gm. daily. This is usually obtained from a

<sup>1</sup> Bechtel, H. E. and Hoppert, C. A. *J. Nutrition* 11: 537, June 1936.

normal balanced diet. When on a "reducing diet," vitamin D should be added.

**For Women.** Women require 0.55 Gm. or more since extra calcium is lost during menstruation. During pregnancy and lactation women require extra amounts of calcium, this may be supplied by giving vitamin D and about three times the usual quantity of calcium. This may be obtained from 7000 units of vitamin D or 1.5 Gm. of calcium.

**Infants.** Breast fed babies require less vitamin D than do artificially fed infants.

**Growing Children.** Those children who are not on a rich calcium diet, or who are unable to metabolize calcium and phosphorus because of diarrhea or other defects, should receive from 300 to 400 units of vitamin D. In rickets, the amount of vitamin D required may be from 100,000 to 500,000 units or more daily.

It is to be borne in mind that vitamin D is not a substitute for calcium, it only facilitates the proper utilization of calcium and phosphorus that are in the body.

**Physiology and Pathology of Vitamin D.** Vitamin D is considered the antirachitic vitamin, it both prevents and ameliorates rickets and cures it if treatment is begun before permanent changes have occurred. It has a definite effect upon rachitic bone structure, calcium and phosphorus metabolism and also upon phosphatase and other metabolic processes. Vitamin D facilitates the absorption of calcium and phosphorus and probably diminishes its excretion from the bowel. It bears some relation to the parathyroids since it influences calcium and phosphorus metabolism. However, their actions differ in many respects. Vitamin D produces healing

of the metaphyseal lesions of rickets while the parathyroid hormone may retard it. Both, however, will relieve tetany.

**Hypervitaminosis D.** The administration of excessive doses of vitamin D will cause hypercalcemia, increased density of the epiphyseal ends of the bones with rarefaction of the shafts. The calcium phosphorus balance becomes negative. Calcific deposits occur in the tubules of the kidneys, blood vessels, heart, stomach and other organs. Diarrhea, vomiting and other gastrointestinal defects, as well as certain nervous manifestations may become evident.

**Hypovitaminosis D.** In severe cases there will develop rickets, extreme nervousness, twitches, convulsions and tetany. Milder manifestations of vitamin D deficiency are hypocalcemia of various degrees associated with hyperphosphatemia.

The need of calcium may be determined by examination of the ends of bone, by x-ray study of the bones and by chemical determination of the calcium phosphorus content of the blood.

**The Use of Vitamin D in Diseases Other Than Rickets.** Vitamin D has been used in the treatment of tetany, nervous irritability, atrophic arthritis, psoriasis, urticaria, mucous and ulcerative colitis, tuberculosis, osteomalacia and a host of other conditions, but its efficacy has not as yet been proven.

It is well to bear in mind that a properly balanced diet during health will supply the necessary requirement of vitamin D and that sunshine is nature's method of supplementing any deficiency that may exist in the diet.

A deficiency of vitamin D may be due to improper diet, insufficient sunshine or to some intrinsic metabolic de-

test which prevents the utilization of calcium and phosphorus

### *Vitamin E*

Vitamin E is now recognized as the reproductive vitamin it is derived from wheat germ oil as *tocopherol* and has been synthesized. It prevents or delays autooxidation of fats and the resulting rancidity. It is also found in other vegetable oils such as lettuce and in tomato and is produced synthetically as tocopherol and ephynal.

It was found that when pregnant rats were kept on a diet poor or a diet deficient in vitamin E the embryos died and were resorbed.

Vogt Moller<sup>1</sup> reported that he injected 20 cc of sterilized wheat germ oil in otherwise normal cows who had failed to become pregnant. Following the injection pregnancy occurred in 33 out of 50 instances. Other experiments have shown that the administration of large doses of wheat germ oil has increased the size of rabbit litters, reduced the mortality of suckling pigs and when wheat germ oil was added to the hen's food it increased the hatchability of eggs. It was reported by Wagenen that cellular changes take place in the anterior lobe of the pituitary body of vitamin E deficient male animals. Hypoplasia of the thyroid was found in vitamin E deficient adult rats and cretinism in vitamin E deficient young rats.

In the human female it was found that a deficiency in vitamin E will diminish the blood supply and the nutrition of the embryo and in the male it will cause liquefaction of the chromatin material in the spermatozoa and spermatozooids and prevent spermatogenesis. Cur-

rie<sup>2</sup> reported that by administering 3 minims of wheat germ oil daily from the beginning of pregnancy in women who had the abortive habit he secured 23 normal births out of 24 cases. Threatened abortion and premature separation of the placenta were prevented by the use of wheat germ oil.

Wechsler<sup>2</sup> reported encouraging results obtained in early cases of amyotrophic lateral sclerosis treated with synthetic vitamin E (Ephynal, Roche).

Cases are reported where carcinoma developed after the prolonged administration of an impure wheat germ oil. Vitamin E appears to have a beneficial effect upon the reproductive organs. However, more intensive study is necessary before it can be intelligently included among the useful vitamins.

**Vitamin E Unit.** The vitamin E unit is as yet not definitely established. Each gram of wheat germ oil (Lilly) contains approximately two Evans-Burr units of vitamin E. (For availability and therapeutic use see pp. 917-919).

### *Vitamin K*

Vitamin K is known as the anti-hemorrhagic or coagulation vitamin. The numerous reports in the literature concerning vitamin K testify to its efficacy in preventing and in stopping certain types of hemorrhage caused by a prothrombin deficiency.

**Sources.** Vitamin K is probably formed in the body and not taken in with the usual food as are the other vitamins. It is believed that vitamin K is synthesized by the action of putrefaction bacteria in the intestinal canal from which

<sup>1</sup> Vogt Moller, P. Acta path. et microbiol. Scandinav. 12: 115, 1935.

<sup>2</sup> Currie, D. W. Brit. Med. J. 1: 752, Apr. 1, 1936.

<sup>2</sup> Wechsler, I. S. J. A. M. A. 114: 948, 1940.

it is absorbed and stored somewhere in the body possibly in the liver. Several substances that possess antihemorrhagic properties have been isolated from various sources and chemically identified. These are known as  $K_1$ ,  $K_2$ , phthiocol and several others.

The early work of Dam and Schönder and of Almquist and Stokstad has shown that chicks fed on a certain diet developed hemorrhagic disease which was not cured by any of the then known vitamins:  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , A, B, C, D and E, but the addition of alfalfa cured or prevented the hemorrhagic disease.

Vitamin K is at present considered as a fat soluble substance found in fairly large quantities in alfalfa, in decomposed fish meal and also in hemp seed, the fats of hog's liver, chicken liver and human feces. It is obtained for clinical use in a watery and oily solution from alfalfa and fish meal.

**Physiology and Pathology of Vitamin K.** Vitamin K stops or prevents hemorrhage by raising the prothrombin in the blood. Hemorrhages not due to a low prothrombin level are not influenced by the administration of vitamin K. A. J. Quick<sup>1</sup> has shown that the sweet clover disease of young cattle and the bleeding of other animals fed on a vitamin K poor diet were caused by a low prothrombin level in the blood. This is cured by feeding alfalfa. By this observation and the observations of others it seems fairly certain that vitamin K is essential for the synthesis of prothrombin in man, dog, rat, chickens and other animals.

**The Role Played by Prothrombin in Blood Coagulation.** According to

the theory of Schmidt, Feld and Morawitz, prothrombin in the presence of calcium is transformed by the enzyme thromboplastin (thrombokinase) liberated from injured tissue or thrombocytes (platelets) to thrombin. Thrombin reacts with fibrinogen to form fibrin, thus causing clotting. A low prothrombin level in the blood interferes with blood coagulation, causing prolonged clotting time. Excessive doses of vitamin K do not decrease the clotting time in the normal. Heparin, a substance which delays clotting, acts on the thromboplastin (thrombokinase) while vitamin K speeds clotting by increasing the prothrombin. The two substances are not antagonists since each acts upon a different factor of the coagulation mechanism.

Since the only type of hemorrhage controlled by vitamin K is a low prothrombin level, it is necessary to determine the prothrombin level in the blood before vitamin K is given, unless the case be one of jaundice or of injury to the liver or bile ducts.

**The Owen and Hoffman method for determining the approximate prothrombin blood level** is as follows: 10 cc. of venous blood is placed in a test tube with an excess of thrombokinase and the exact clotting time is noted. This is compared with the blood prothrombin solution of a known normal subject. The ratio between the two is known as the clotting activity. Variations below 100 per cent indicate a bleeding tendency. When the clotting activity is less than 50 per cent, hemorrhages may occur.

Vitamin K increases clotting (stops hemorrhage) only in the presence of bile salts. When vitamin K is given either by mouth or parenterally, an adequate

<sup>1</sup>Quick, A. J. *Am. J. Physiol.* 118: 260 (Feb.) 1937.

amount of bile or bile salts must be given simultaneously

**Indication for Vitamin K Therapy** Vitamin K is indicated in the hemorrhagic diseases of the newborn in the bleeding of the various types of jaundice providing the prothrombin level is below normal. It is therefore useful in hemolytic icterus, certain types of hepato-cellular disease in biliary fistula when bleeding occurs following biliary tract operations and also as a preoperative prophylaxis in cases of liver and gall bladder disease.

Clark, Dixon, Butt and Snell<sup>1</sup> list the following conditions in which vitamin K is useful:

The fat soluble vitamin K is useful in the treatment of prothrombin deficiencies which occur in other conditions besides jaundice.

The proper absorption and utilization of the antihemorrhagic food factor depends on the following conditions: (1) The diet must contain the antihemorrhagic factor. (2) bile of normal composition must be present in the intestinal tract. (3) proper digestion of fat is necessary. (4) a sufficient amount of normal intestinal mucosa for the absorption of the substance is required and (5) a normal liver is essential.

Hemorrhage sometimes occurs in cases of postoperative intestinal obstruction in which transduodenal aspiration is carried out for a long time, thus removing most of the bile from the intestines. Such hemorrhages can be prevented by the administration of vitamin K and bile salts.

In cases of both external and internal fistula there may be lack of an adequate mucosal surface for absorption of vitamin K and a prothrombin deficiency produced.

Chronic ulcerative colitis may cause prothrombin deficiency due to rapid transit of food through a canal in which the absorptive mucosal area has been decreased by disease.

A decrease in prothrombin may also occur in patients with faulty digestion of fats in nontropical sprue.

The authors recommend vitamin K therapy in cases of intestinal obstruction, intestinal fistula, gastric retention and in continuous duodenal aspiration.

Vitamin K is of no benefit in hemophilia, purpura (thrombocytopenia), aplastic anemia, acute leukemia, the hemorrhage from telangiectasis, gastric or duodenal ulcer, pulmonary tuberculosis and ruptured blood vessels because in these conditions the prothrombin levels are normal.

**Vitamin K Unit** A definite unit has as yet not been determined. The dose of vitamin K is variable. There does not seem to be any fear of inducing a hypervitaminosis K (See pp 917-920).

**Dosage** Snell<sup>1</sup> suggests (1) Patients having normal prothrombin levels and requiring only prophylactic measures should be given alfalfa concentrates with bile capsule orally.

(2) Patients with definitely prolonged clotting time may be started on oral therapy. If the response is inadequate they should be given liquid extracts with bile salts by way of the duodenal tube.

(3) Patients actually bleeding should receive blood transfusions in addition to

<sup>1</sup>Snell A M et al. Proc Staff Meet Mayo Clinic 13: 753 (Nov 30) 1938

<sup>1</sup>Clark R L, Dixon C F, Butt H R, and Snell A M. Proc Staff Meeting Mayo Clinic (June 28 1939). Review of Gastroenterology 6: 451 (Oct) 1939.

vitamin A and D concentrate of cod liver oil is available for intramuscular use in 1 cc ampoules each containing 13 200 units of vitamin A and 1884 units of vitamin D

**Carotene** (the provitamin A substance) is available in tablets and in capsules (as carotene in oil) also as carotene with vitamin D concentrate in oil and as cod liver oil with carotene and vitamin D concentrate

**Vitamin B** This is a complex vitamin containing several factors each having its distinctive chemical formula and therapeutic action though they complement one another. Vitamin B complex occurs in abundance in brewer's yeast which is the most potent method of administration of the entire B group. Brewer's yeast is obtainable in solution. One or two teaspoonfuls is to be given once or twice daily or oftener when necessary. Brewer's yeast is also available as a dry powder and as tablets plain or coated and in capsules. The vitamin content of each of the constituents is marked on the package.

**Vitamin B<sub>1</sub>** This is the antineuritic vitamin. It has been synthesized as thiamin and is dispensed as thiamin chloride or more properly as thiamin hydrochloride.

**Chemical Formula**  $C_{12}H_{17}N_4OClS$   
HCl

**Food Sources** Yeast, whole grain cereals and breads, liver, chicken, pork and nuts, etc.

**Therapeutic Use** Thiamin chloride is employed in the treatment of beriberi, the neuritides (especially of alcohol), pellagra and anorexia. It is also used as an addition to diets poor in vitamin B<sub>1</sub> content and in those on high carbohydrate diets and as an aid in stimulating the appetite and optimum growth

in infants and children. It is claimed to have beneficial effects in myocarditis, in exophthalmic goiter during pregnancy, in general debility, in multiple sclerosis, in polyneuritis and in herpes zoster. It is of definite benefit in irradiation sickness when given in doses of about 10 mg intravenously daily or every other day until improvement is noted. Thiamin chloride should be administered intravenously in doses from 1000 to 10 000 USP units for the acutely ill or in severe cases where rapid response is desired. In the more chronic or in the milder cases when the digestive tract is capable of absorption, vitamin B<sub>1</sub> may be administered orally alone or in combination with other required vitamins.

**The Unit** One milligram is the equivalent of 333 USP units.

**Daily Requirement** The average daily requirement of USP units for adults is 200 to 300; for infants 50 to 75.

**Availability** Thiamin chloride is available in powder, tablet and liquid form for oral use and in ampoules and vials in an aqueous solution for intramuscular and intravenous use. It is also available in various combinations with other vitamins and with various substances as tablets, pearls, pills, capsules, syrups and elixirs. Each of the preparations lists the vitamin content.

**Vitamin B<sub>2</sub> or G** This is known as riboflavin, lactoflavin, ovoidflavin or flavin and is considered as the anticcheilosis vitamin. It is prepared synthetically.

**Chemical Formula**  $C_{17}H_{20}N_4O_6$

**Food Sources** Yeast, liver and milk.

**Therapeutic Use** Riboflavin is indicated in cheilosis, glossitis, lesions on the sclera and cornea, in general malnutrition and in conjunction with vitamin B<sub>1</sub> in beriberi, pellagra and multiple sclerosis. The dose is 1 to 5 mg daily.

	PROPERTIES AND NOTES	METHOD OF STANDARDIZATION	DEFINITION OF UNIT	DEFICIENCY MANIFESTATIONS		ESTIMATED DAILY REQUIREMENT
				LABORATORY TESTS	CLINICAL SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	
<b>A</b>	Essentially colorless fat soluble crystals destroyed by oxidation Certain fish liver oils but not green leafy plants	Measurement of growth response in vitamin A deficient rats by USP method Physical measurement with a spectrophotometer based upon light absorption at 3280 Angstrom units	USP (also International) unit is the growth promoting activity of 0.6 microgram of pure beta carotene	Biophotometer test for subnormal dark adaptation Analysis for blood carotene and vitamin A	Night blindness xerophthalmia keratinization of skin and mucous membranes with increased susceptibility to infections entering by way of epithelial structures retardation of growth in children	Children 6000-8000 U S P units Adults 3000-6000 U S P units Pregnant and lactating women 6000-8000 U S P units
<b>B<sub>1</sub></b> Thiamin Hydrochloride	Water soluble white crystals unstable at high temperatures and in alkaline media Stable in acid media Yeast rice polished grains cereals Produced synthetically	The USP method is concerned with the cure of polyneuritis in rats Colometric chemical tests and microbiological methods have also been devised	USP (also International) unit is equal to three micrograms of crystalline vitamin B <sub>1</sub>	Determination of thiamin excretion in urine Assay of blood for biologic binding substances which are usually increased	Anorexia neurasthenia calf muscle tenderness constipation peripheral neuritis edema tachycardia on slight exertion flattening of T wave in electrocardiogram	Children 100-600 U S P units Adults 300-600 U S P units
<b>B<sub>2</sub></b> Riboflavin	Water soluble yellow crystals heat stable destroyed by light Milk yeast Produced synthetically	The determination of the growth response of vitamin B <sub>2</sub> deficient rats to riboflavin Microbiological method employing <i>Lactobacillus</i> strains also used	No USP or International unit Expressed as the equivalent weight (in micrograms) of riboflavin One Sherman-Borquin unit is equal to 2.5 micrograms	Determination of urinary excretion of riboflavin	Cholosis seborrhea involving the nasolabial folds ears and face malignant colored glossitis vascularizing keratitis impaired growth lack of vigor	Daily requirement is uncertain but may be 1 to 4 milligrams for growing children and adults requirements of pregnant and lactating women are probably approximately 50 per cent higher
<b>Nicotinic Acid</b>	Water soluble white crystals Liver bean meats milk eggs peanuts beans peas tomatoes Produced synthetically	Biological tests on dogs with black tongue Assays with microorganism and chemical methods	No USP or International unit Expressed as the weight (in milligrams) of nicotinic acid or nicotinic amide per gram or cubic centimeter	Determination of nicotinic acid and coenzymes I and II in blood and urine, which are usually decreased in clinical pellagra	Fierly red tongue stomatitis diarrhea and abdominal distention pyramidal disturbance erythema desquamation and pigmentation of exposed parts of body and about the genitals	Daily requirement is uncertain but probably ranges between 15 and 25 milligrams for adults and older children, 5 to 10 milligrams daily for infants and young children (under 10)
<b>Pantothenic Acid</b>	Water-soluble white crystals stable to heat and to oxidizing or reducing agents Liver brewer's yeast yeast acid Produced synthetically as the salt	Biological growth methods using either rat or chicks and a microbiological method which utilizes the growth of <i>Lactobacillus</i>	No USP or International unit Expressed as the weight of pantothenic acid (in milligrams) per gram or cubic centimeter	Assay of blood and urine for pantothenic acid	None known at present but it seems likely that further clinical studies will indicate that certain manifestations of B complex deficiency as encountered in pellagra and anriboflavinos will be shown to be caused by pantothenic acid deficiency	Daily requirement unknown but pantothenic acid is essential to normal health
<b>B<sub>6</sub></b> Pyridoxine Hydrochloride	Water soluble white crystals stable to heat acids and alkalies Yeast liver Produced synthetically	The determination of the growth response of depleted rats to pyridoxine Colorimetric chemical test	No USP or International unit Expressed as the weight of pyridoxine (in micrograms) per gram or cubic centimeter	Colorimetric tests of urine Excretion studies following intravenous injection of a test dose of pyridoxine hydrochloride	Certain symptoms of pellagra that are unresponsive to the nicotinic acid and riboflavin have been reported to improve following treatment with vitamin B <sub>6</sub> Used experimentally in management of Paresthesia and the neuromuscular dystrophies	Daily requirement unknown but pyridoxine is apparently required for normal health

	PROPERTIES AND SOURCES	METHOD OF STANDARDIZATION	DEFINITION OF UNIT	DEFICIENCY MANIFESTATIONS		ESTIMATED DAILY REQUIREMENT
				CLINICAL-LABORATORY TESTS	CLINICAL SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS	
<b>C</b> Ascorbic Acid	Water soluble white crystals stable to acid destroyed by alkalis Citrus fruits, beet greens, broccoli, etc. Produced synthetically	Chemical titration using 2,6-dichlorophenol-indophenol or iodine Biological (propyl viatic tests with guinea pigs)	U.S.P. (also International) unit is equal to 50 micrograms of L ascorbic acid	Assay of blood and urine for vitamin C which is decreased Scurvy (bleeding, anemia, gingivitis, etc.) Rickets (swelling of the bones, evidence of subperiosteal hemorrhages)	Subclinical deficiency characterized by weakness, increased irritability, anemia, pyorrhea, poor wound healing, and peritendinitis Scurvy (bleeding of the gums, swelling and loss of teeth, pain and swelling of the extremities)	Children 400-1000 U.S.P. units Adults 1000-3000 U.S.P. units
<b>D</b>	Fat soluble Pro-vitamin D for D <sub>2</sub> is ergosterol and for D <sub>3</sub> 7-dehydrocholesterol Certain fish liver oils, eggs, beef, and pig liver contain natural vitamin D <sub>3</sub>	The U.S.P. method is concerned with the cure of rickets in rats	U.S.P. (also International) unit is the antirachitic activity of one milligram of a standard solution of purified irradiated ergosterol in oil equal to 0.025 microgram of crystalline vitamin D (calciferol)	Röntgenologic examination for abnormal calcification of bones Determination of serum phosphorus and calcium	Delayed bone growth, defective tooth structure and rickets in infants and children Tertiary in infants osteoporosis in adults	Children 400 to 1000 U.S.P. units Adults not known but 300-400 U.S.P. units is probably an adequate daily intake
<b>E</b> Alpha-Tocopherol	Fat soluble Exists naturally as a yellow crystalline solid Stables and cereals Produced synthetically	The amount of material necessary to bring about normal coagulation time in Edelman rats Also chemical and colorimetric methods of testing for tocopherols	There is no recognized unit Potency is expressed in amount (as equivalent) of alpha-tocopherol present per gram or cubic centimeter	None	Vitamin E therapy apparently offers some promise in the treatment of thrombocytopenia and in prevention of sterility in women Its use in functional sterility has been disappointing	Daily requirement uncertain but vitamin E appears to be essential at least for certain phases of the reproductive process with respect to sperm and reproduction
<b>K<sub>1</sub></b>	Vitamins K <sub>1</sub> and K <sub>2</sub> occur in nature and are fat soluble Certain synthetic vitamin K compounds are water soluble Produced synthetically Alfalfa sprouts, bacter	Determination of the amount of vitamin necessary to restore normal coagulation time in the blood of vitamin K-depleted chicks	No U.S.P. or International unit A click curative unit is equal to 0.5 microgram of 2-methyl-1,4-naphthoquinone	Determination of plasma prothrombin clotting time which is abnormally prolonged	Tendency to abnormal bleeding due to hypoprothrombinemia	Daily requirement is uncertain

Therapeutic Notes —Parke Davis & Company Sept. 1941 Detroit Mich



**The Unit** The U S P unit is 1 microgram (0001 mg) The Sherman Bourquin unit is approximately 25 micrograms One mg (1000 micrograms) is the equivalent of 400 Sherman Bourquin units

**Daily Requirements** The average daily requirement is from 400 to 750 Sherman Bourquin units depending upon age

**Availability** Riboflavin is obtainable in one or more milligram capsules and in combination with other vitamins in capsules or tablet form for oral use

**Nicotinic Acid** This is known as the pellagra preventative (P P) vitamin It is prepared synthetically as pyridine-3 carboxylic acid (amide)

**Chemical Formulae** Nicotinic acid  $C_6H_5O_2N$  nicotinic acid amide  $C_6H_6ON$

**Food Sources** Liver wheat germ, yeast etc

**Therapeutic Use** Nicotinic acid nicotinic acid amide and sodium nicotinate are all effective or are specific in the treatment of pellagra Nicotinic acid has also been used with apparent success in alcoholic psychosis of the Korsakoff type in the initial syndrome of pellagra characterized by hyperesthesia and increased psychomotor and emotional drives in xerostomia in Meniere's disease and in sulfonamide cyanosis The dose for pellagra is 500 or more milligrams in divided doses of 50 mg daily The intravenous dose is 10 to 15 mg four to five times daily Larger doses may cause peripheral vasodilation Nicotinic acid amide is less likely to cause the unpleasant sensations experienced from the use of nicotinic acid

**The Unit** Expressed in milligrams

**Daily Requirement** Approximately 20 to 60 mg

**Availability** Nicotinic acid is obtainable in powder and in tablets for oral use 25 50 or 100 mg per tablet and in solution for intravenous use

**Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> Pyridoxine (Acrodynia Factor)** This has been synthetically prepared as pyridoxine hydrochloride

**Chemical Formula**  $C_8H_{11}O_3NHCl$

**Food Sources** Maize whole cereals liver cane molasses and yeast

**Therapeutic Uses** Pyridoxine in conjunction with other vitamins appears to be of value in subnutritional states It has been used with apparent success in Parkinsonism (not the postencephalitic type) in the pseudomuscular dystrophies in arsenical polyneuritis (in conjunction with vitamin E) in cheilosis and in the macrocytic type of anemia

**The Unit** Expressed in micrograms

**Daily Requirements** Not definitely determined

**Availability** Pyridoxine hydrochloride is available in 1 and 25 mg tablets for oral use and in 2 cc ampoules containing 50 mg in isotonic solution

**Pantothenic Acid (Filtrate Factor of B Complex Antidermatitis Factor)** Pantothenic acid and calcium pantothenate in doses of 3 mg three times daily (orally) is being used with some measure of success for premature gray hair especially of young individuals

**Vitamin C** Known as cevitamic acid or hexuronic acid It is the antiscorbutic vitamin It has been prepared synthetically

**Chemical Formula**  $C_6H_8O_6$

**Food Sources** Oranges lemons limes grapefruit tomatoes cabbage water cress fresh strawberries and other leafy vegetables and berries

**Therapeutic Use** Cevitamic acid is employed in the treatment of scurvy

dental caries pyorrhea and certain gum infections also in anorexia nervosa and nutrition due to vitamin C deficiency and in various infections and postoperatively. It has also been used with apparent success in rheumatic fever arthritis lead poisoning osteomyelitis whooping cough hemorrhagic diseases delayed wound healing drug sensitivity and ulcers. It should not be dispensed in alkaline solutions or in combination with alkalis. The average oral dose for mild or moderate cases is 50 to 150 mg daily. In severe cases it may be given 0.5 to 1 Gm intravenously.

*The Unit* 1 mg represents 20 U S P units

*Daily Requirement* The average daily requirement of U S P units is 500 to 2000 units depending upon weight; i.e. 8 to 32 units per kilogram (2.2 lbs) of body weight.

*Availability* When possible it may be adequately administered as fresh orange juice. One ounce (30 cc) of orange juice contains about 17 mg of ascorbic acid. Ascorbic acid or ascorbic acid is obtainable in powder form and in 25, 50 and 100 mg tablets for oral use. It is also obtainable in vials for intravenous use.

*Vitamin D* Antirachitic factor

*Chemical Formulae* Vitamin D<sub>2</sub> (calciferol) C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>44</sub>O

Vitamin D<sub>3</sub> (7-dehydrocholesterol) C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>44</sub>O

*Food Sources* The usual foods except those mentioned do not contain appreciable amounts of vitamin D. It is found in abundance in the livers of cod, halibut, shark and to a lesser extent in other fishes; i.e. salmon, sardines and herring. Milk, eggs and meat products contain calcium and also traces of vitamin D. Vitamin D milk is a fortified milk.

*Therapeutic Use* Vitamin D is employed for the prevention and treatment of rickets of spasmophilia and of osteomalacia and for influencing a favorable calcium and phosphorus balance whenever necessary. It is often used as a routine during infancy, childhood, pregnancy and lactation. It has been used with apparent favorable results in tuberculosis, scrofula, inanition, eclamptic disease, arthritis, psoriasis, dental caries and locally in various skin lesions and ulcers.

*The Unit* The U S P Unit. This is essentially the same as the International Unit. It is the activity of one milligram of an international standard solution of irradiated ergosterol (viosterol). The minimum standard for cod liver oil is at least 85 U S P units of vitamin D per gram. Viosterol should contain up to 10,000 U S P units of vitamin D per gram.

*Daily Requirements* Not definitely determined; varies with age, sex, etc.

*Availability* Cod liver oil, halibut liver oil and in combination with vitamin A in viosterol, procurable in bulk in capsules, pearls and tablets, also in irradiated milk.

*Note* The precursors of vitamin D are ergosterol, 7-dehydrocholesterol and other sterols.

*Vitamin E* α-Tocopherol, also β and γ-Tocopherols (Antisterility Vitamin)

*Chemical Formula* Formula of synthetic alphanatocopherol C<sub>55</sub>H<sub>100</sub>O

*Food Sources* Whole grain, lettuce, wheat germ oil, cottonseed oil, palm oil, rice oil, etc.

*Therapeutic Use* While the use of vitamin E is still experimental, it is being used in threatened abortion, sterility, defective spermatogenesis, muscular dystrophy, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.

and certain other cord lesions Dose 2 to 4 cc or more daily

*The Unit* USP unit not standardized

*Daily Requirements* Not definitely determined

*Availability* As wheat germ oil in bulk and pearls Trade names Zygon (Squibb) Ephynal Acetate (Roche) Tocopherex (Squibb) etc

*Vitamin K* Coagulation or prothrombinogenic factor This has been synthesized

*Chemical Formulae* Vitamin  $K_1$  (2 methyl 3 phtyl 1 4 naphthoquinone)  $C_{31}H_{46}O_2$

*Vitamin  $K_2$*   $C_{41}H_{56}O_2$

*Vitamin K Analogs* (2 methyl 1 4 naphthoquinone)  $C_{11}H_8O_2$

*Food Sources* Alfalfa leaf and meal hog liver hempseed cabbage spinach tomatoes etc

*Therapeutic Use* Vitamin  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  active substances are employed to prevent and stop hemorrhage due to prothrombin deficiency Employed in hemorrhagic diseases of the newborn in the bleeding of jaundice and preoperatively to prevent hemorrhage and postoperatively to stop hemorrhage in patients with jaundice and liver derangements also in intestinal conditions where the absorption of vitamin K from the intestines is defective and in various liver diseases associated with impaired utilization of vitamin K Vitamin  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  active substances are valueless in the treatment of purpura hemorrhagica hemophilia and other hemorrhage not due to prothrombin deficiency

*The Unit* Not yet standardized

*Daily Requirements* Not definitely determined

*Availability* Vitamin  $K_1$  is obtained as natural vitamin  $K_1$  or as one of the

synthetic products which are very effective Both are dispensed in capsules tablets or in vegetable oil solution for oral and intramuscular or subcutaneous use An aqueous solution is prepared for intravenous use The dose depends upon the conditions and may vary from 1 to 15 mg or more daily The oral use is preferred wherever possible Vitamin  $K_1$ , whether natural or synthetic to be effective must always be administered in conjunction with bile or bile salts

*Trade Names* Vitamin K Concentrate Klotogen Proklot Naphthoquinone Thyloquinone Quino Thrombin Hydro quinone etc

*Vitamin P (Citrin Eriodictyol)* is found in citrous fruits in close association with vitamin C It is believed to be a factor in capillary fragility A lack of vitamin P in the system will cause fatigue pain in the legs and shoulders accompanied by petechial hemorrhages The hemorrhages caused by vitamin P deficiency differ from those caused by vitamin C deficiency In the former there are small petechiae in the skin while in the latter the hemorrhages are large and occur in the subcutaneous tissue and muscle

*Calcium eriodictate* 100 to 150 mg was given orally daily by Rappaport and Klein<sup>1</sup> to 12 children with capillary fragility They were cured in six months

*Para Aminobenzoic Acid* This is now considered to be a vitamin belonging to the B complex group It is believed to be a growth factor in chicks and also appears to be an achromotrichia factor Rats who became gray on a deficient diet when given para aminobenzoic acid returned to black Its use for humans is still in the experimental state

<sup>1</sup> Rappaport C H and Klein S J Pediat 18 3 1 1941

## CHAPTER XXX

### Allergy, Its Clinical Manifestations and Diagnosis

The subject of allergy has awakened new interest in medicine particularly since the clinical manifestations of the various allergens have become better known and the reactions of sensitive individuals have been more carefully studied. Allergic reactions are specific in that certain substances will affect certain individuals in a definite way.

An *allergic reaction* may be defined as the sensitized host's method of protesting against the invasion of an unwelcome guest. The entrance of the offending guest may have been effected through the skin, the mucous membrane, the respiratory system, the gastrointestinal system or directly through the blood. The allergic manifestations are many and varied depending upon the host's sensitivity. These may be enumerated as headache, migraine, rhinitis, conjunctivitis, bronchitis, asthma, nausea, vomiting, cramps, diarrhea, cardiac palpitation, urticaria, eczema, and other skin rashes, arthralgia, etc.

The *allergens* (substances causing allergic reactions) are likewise many and varied. All types of food, plants, trees, grasses, pollens, animal emanations, dander, feathers, wool, dust, bacteria, fungi, and practically everything with which we ordinarily come in contact may give some persons an allergic reaction which may be manifested in some part of the body.

**Anaphylaxis and Allergy.** Anaphylaxis in animals closely resembles allergy in man. Indeed, some of the protein sensitization phenomena produced in man by the injection of sera or other substances closely resembles the anaphy-

laxis in animals. There is, however, sufficient difference between anaphylaxis and allergy to warrant a description of each.

*Anaphylaxis* is a term applied to induced hypersensitization in animals. It is defined as an exaggerated reaction of an animal to the second dose of the protein by which it was previously sensitized. For example, if 0.1 cc of horse serum is injected into an animal and 10 to 14 days later a larger amount, say 1.0 cc, is again injected in the same animal, severe shock or death will occur within a comparatively short time as the result of the second injection.

*Allergy* or *allergic reactions* is a term applied to somewhat similar reactions in human beings. Dorland defines allergy as a condition of unusual or exaggerated specific susceptibility to a substance which is harmless in similar amounts for the majority of members of the same species. Allergic sensitivity appears to be an hereditary tendency manifesting itself spontaneously on exposure to specific substances. While chemically and physiologically there seem to be a number of differentiating points between anaphylactic reactions in animals and severe allergic reactions in men, clinically the difference is not very obvious. We have seen severe shock and an occasional death induced in humans after the injection of antitoxic horse, cattle, or rabbit serum. At present, before serum is injected into a patient, his sensitivity to that type of serum is tested by intradermal injection or conjunctival instillation of a minute dose of that

specific serum. If the patient shows specific sensitivity, he is desensitized by slowly injecting a small portion of the serum subcutaneously over a period of hours to which may be added fractional doses of adrenalin chloride. If the patient is acutely sensitive to serum, such treatment should, if possible, be withheld.

**Desensitizations:** This term denotes a method of treatment by which the individual's tolerance is raised to a substance to which he is allergic, hypersensitive or intolerant.

For example, if a person is sensitive or allergic to a specific food, minute quantities of that food are given at infrequent intervals, as the tolerance increases, ascending quantities of the food are given at more frequent intervals until tolerance is established. Similar procedures are carried out with other allergens. In hay fever, the patient receives subcutaneously, ascending doses of the pollen to which he is allergic in advance of the 'season' so that when pollinization takes place, the patient's tolerance has been sufficiently raised so that his allergic reactions are either less severe or, rarely, are nonexistent.

**Etiology** Allergic reactions may become manifested during infancy, childhood, or during adulthood. In many instances, sensitivity to certain foods, pollens and other substances is traceable as a familial peculiarity; in others no family taint is discernible. Just why an adult who has lived in the same surroundings, has eaten the same type of food all his life and has in no way changed his habits, occupation and mode of living should suddenly become hypersensitive to objects with which he came in intimate contact throughout his entire existence is not easily explainable

on the theory of previous sensitivity. The fault may lie in some change in the chemistry of the individual, and not in the substances with which he comes in contact. If it were due to contact substances, then all persons coming in contact with these substances would develop similar symptoms. It is not beyond the realm of possibility that allergy may be the expression of a deficiency disease, or that it occurs because of disease or disturbance of some 'center' in the body whose function it is to stabilize the vasomotor mechanism of the body. Amelioration of symptoms by the process of desensitization does not strike at the underlying cause, it only relieves or smooths over symptomatic manifestations. Desensitization is not unlike the application of an icebag in a febrile disease.

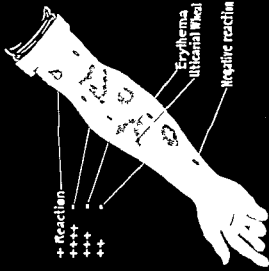
### **Clinical Manifestations of Allergy**

The commonest symptoms of allergy are found in the eyes, nose, respiratory system, digestive system, skin, nervous system, cardiovascular system and in the blood.

#### **Allergic Manifestations of the Eyes**

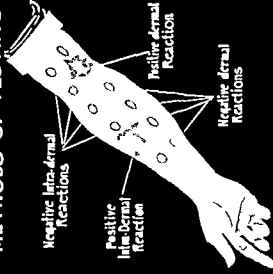
**Conjunctivitis** This is the commonest of the eye disturbances seen in allergy. It occurs in hay fever, and often is the only sign of pollen sensitivity. The symptoms are redness in injected vessels, tearing, itching and, at times, photophobia. Other substances such as food, drugs, exposure to sera, bacterial products, dust, to strong sunlight and to heat may, in sensitive individuals, be the cause of conjunctivitis. It is often important to differentiate allergic conjunctivitis from catarrhal conjunctivitis caused by foreign bodies by infections, by irritating vapors and

# METHODS OF TESTING



# DERMAL TESTS

# METHODS OF TESTING



# Illustrating dermal and intra-dermal tests

DERMAL TESTS

ILLUSTRATING DERMAL AND INTRADERMAL TESTS

(Balgates Allergic Diseases F A Davis Co Philadelphia Pa)

by eyestrain. Occasionally it becomes difficult to determine whether a certain substance, such as mascara, causes conjunctivitis because of allergic sensitivity or because of its irritating quality. A good rule to remember is that in allergic conjunctivitis there are other signs of allergy such as rhinitis, headache and eosinophilia accompanying the reaction and that minutely ascending doses of the irritant applied to the eyes has a tendency to decrease the severity of the conjunctivitis. Also, when the 'irritant' is applied to one eye and both become inflamed, it is most likely an allergic reaction. Infections and irritants usually produce an inflammation in the exposed eye alone.

*Vernal conjunctivitis* because of its seasonal appearance, is believed by some to be an allergic manifestation, others believe that it is just a local reaction of the eyes to heat.

**Cataract** Particularly in the young, this has been ascribed in some instances to allergic sensitivity. Such patients will show hypersensitivity to lens proteins or to other proteins.

**Exposure to Light** This will, during the spring and summer, cause allergic phenomena which are characterized chiefly by sneezing. We have noted quite a number of people who, when they get out into the sunlight in the morning get a paroxysm of sneezing usually four to ten times, when this is over they do not sneeze any more until the next morning. The sneezing attacks may be prevented when the eyes are shaded with dark glasses for the first hour during exposure to the sun.

### *Allergic Manifestations of the Nose*

**Allergic Rhinitis** This may be caused by the same provocative agents

that cause allergic conjunctivitis. The symptoms may be local and confined to the nose, or general in which the rhinitis is only one of a number of manifestations, as in hay fever.

**Symptomology** Allergic rhinitis is a distinct entity. Its symptoms are similar to other forms of rhinitis, though the etiology may be varied. During the attack the patient breathes through the mouth, speech is nasal or has that peculiar quality found in those who suffer nasal obstruction. In addition to this there will be noted in many cases a *profuse thin watery discharge trickling uncontrollably through the nares*. In some cases the discharge indicates added infection. Sneezing may come on spontaneously, after physical effort, after meals on change of posture or when the mucous membrane of the nose is irritated. Inspection of the nasal chambers will reveal a bluish gray, glistening somewhat pale mucous membrane covered with a thin or mucoid secretion. The turbinates are swollen, appear engorged or edematous and polypoid growths frequently add to the discomfort of the patient. Examination of the nasal secretion by staining a "smear" in the same manner as a differential blood smear, will show a large number of *eosinophils*.

**Etiology** Allergic rhinitis may occur seasonally resulting from the inhalation of pollens during spring (tree or rose fever) or during autumn (hay fever). It may also occur perennially or at infrequent intervals caused by certain foods, drugs, bacterial agents, animal emanations and all the other agents that may cause local or general allergic phenomena in sensitized individuals.

**Differential Diagnosis** Allergic rhinitis or coryza is to be differentiated

from acute rhinitis or coryza due to infection. In bacterial infection the onset is slower than in allergic rhinitis, the nasal secretion is thicker and often ex-coriates the nares, the nasolabial fold or the upper lip. There may be an associated rise in temperature, headache and other manifestations of an "acute cold." The coryza preceding an infectious disease such as measles, typhus fever, etc., is easily diagnosed with the appearance of symptoms of that disease. In acute coryza the mucous membrane of the nose is red and inflamed and the turbinates may be swollen, in the subacute or chronic condition there may be associated sinus infection. Examination of the nasal discharge will show a high neutrophil count in inflammatory rhinitis, and a high eosinophil count in allergic rhinitis. It is to be borne in mind, however, that an individual who has or has had chronic rhinitis may develop an allergic rhinitis, or one with allergic rhinitis may develop an inflammatory rhinitis, making the differential diagnosis difficult.

### *Allergic Manifestations of the Respiratory System*

The allergic phenomena referable to the respiratory system were known long before other allergic manifestations were recognized. The most prominent of these phenomena is bronchial asthma.

**Bronchial Asthma:** This may be defined as a syndrome characterized by attacks of expiratory dyspnea. During the attack there are short inspiratory efforts followed by prolonged pauses which are followed by prolonged and difficult expirations. As the attack continues, the inspirations also become labored because of the attempt to force air into the lungs which are overfilled with air

that should have been expelled by the preceding expiratory effort. During these attacks the accessory muscles of respiration are brought into play. Many sibilant rales of varying pitch are heard during respiration, most numerous during expiration. These are caused by the air being forced through the partially constricted lumina of the smaller bronchi and bronchioles.

Asthma may result from a number of causes such as allergic manifestations, cardiac disease, bronchiectasis, tuberculosis and other inflammatory or space taking lesions in the lungs or bronchi. The mechanical cause of asthma is a constriction of the air passages which prevents an adequate interchange of air in the lungs. In allergic asthma the offending pathology is a spastic contraction of the smaller bronchi and bronchioles. Whether this contraction is caused by the direct action of the allergen on the bronchial musculature and mucosa or directly upon the vagus which causes the bronchial phenomena is not definitely known. Asthma may occur at all ages. The first attack may be initiated during infancy, childhood, adolescence, adulthood and even in old age.

**Etiology:** There is no question that asthma is a familial disease, occasionally however it is not traceable to any kin, though other members of the family or clan may show allergic manifestations other than asthma such as urticaria, eczema, hay fever, etc.

The exciting factors of allergic asthma are those that may excite allergic manifestations elsewhere, though the sensitivity of the respiratory tract is greater than of any other part of the body. Pollen, dusts, vapors, foods, drugs, bacteria and their products, animal emanations, dander, feathers, temperature



changes wearing apparel overexposure to sun rays x rays and also physical allergy such as exhaustion and nervous excitability may initiate an attack of asthma. An attack may be of short duration or it may last for weeks at a time with periods of remissions and exacerbations. The attacks may come on during the day or night depending upon the causative factors.

**Symptomatology** The general symptomatology of asthma depends upon the length of time the individual has had it. During the early stages the condition can only be diagnosed during an attack or from the patient's descriptions. The symptoms are severe paroxysmal dyspnea of the expiratory type accompanied by wheezing (sibilant rales) and frequent short dry coughs. Chronic cases or those who have had frequent attacks of asthma for years will show definite constitutional changes. These are emphysematous chest signs of chronic emphysema enlarged heart distended vessels and signs of chronic bronchitis. During attacks the dyspnea may be more severe and is accompanied by general cyanosis distention of the superficial veins severe cough with some expectoration and intermingled with the attacks of dyspnea or orthopnea there are periods of suffocation or strangulation due to the patient's inability to get air into the lungs. In very chronic cases there may be associated sinusitis peribronchial fibrosis bronchiectasis and clubbing of the fingertips.

The expectoration may be profuse and thick or it may be scant it may contain various microorganisms as secondary invaders. Other microscopic findings in sputum are Charcot Leyden crystals Curschmann's spirals and eosinophils.

**Differential Diagnosis** Allergic asthma is to be differentiated from other types of asthma. Asthma due to lung encroachment such as pneumoconiosis tumor abscess tuberculosis bronchiectasis and chronic bronchitis may be diagnosed by the physical findings in the lungs the constancy of the dyspnea and the excessive cough with expectoration. In these conditions physical exertion will cause first cough and expectoration and then dyspnea physical exertion will increase the dyspnea and the cough is in the nature of an explosive expiration so as to free the lungs from as much air as possible. Cardiac asthma is really not asthma but orthopnea due to left ventricular failure. These attacks come as a rule during the night the dyspnea is more of the inspiratory type the rales are both of the dry and of the moist varieties there is considerable cyanosis and definite signs of myocardial failure.

**Hay Fever** The name hay fever is a misnomer since generally in this disease there is no fever and it is not caused by hay. Usage of the term hay fever has however identified it with a definite syndrome. Therefore hay fever may be defined as a seasonal allergic reaction characterized by

(1) Acute conjunctivitis such as burning redness with itching and tearing of the eyes

(2) Acute coryza manifested by itching and running of a thin discharge from the nose with frequent and paroxysmal sneezing spells

(3) Dry irritating cough

(4) In severe cases asthmatic attacks

Hay fever is a seasonal allergic symptom complex depending upon the specific sensitivity of the individual to

certain types of pollens. When not exposed to the specific pollen, even though it be the 'hay fever season,' no hay fever symptoms will occur. On the other hand, when exposed to the specific pollen, though out of season, allergic phenomena will become manifested.

The pollens responsible for hay fever are not the same for every hay fever sufferer. Some are sensitive to timothy or June grass etc. (spring type), others to rag weed, sage brush etc. The flora differ in various countries and in various sections of one country. The United States has been roughly divided into six regions, each being characterized by the abundance of certain types of pollinizing plants which grow sparsely or not at all in the other regions.

### *Allergic Manifestations in the Digestive System*

Since a great variety of foods and drugs have been proven to cause general allergic manifestations such as rhinitis, asthma, urticaria, etc., it is expected that these articles should also cause local gastrointestinal manifestations in sensitive individuals. Yet the number of proven cases of purely local gastrointestinal allergic manifestations compared to manifestations elsewhere is rather small. It appears that many of the allergic manifestations caused by food depend upon the integrity of the digestive system. It is not always the kind of food that the person ingests that is responsible for the reactions; it is the products produced during digestion that may cause allergic symptoms. Thus it is found that certain articles of food may cause allergic reactions at one time and not at another. Also, when an individual is skin tested for various foods it is often found that

certain foods may give a severe skin reaction while there may be no reaction when they are ingested, even in large quantities. *Per contra* other foods may give negative skin reactions but will at times cause severe constitutional reactions when ingested.

**Symptoms** The gastrointestinal allergic manifestations may be divided into local and general symptoms.

In the *mouth* these may consist of large or small, single or multiple ulcerations of the mucous membrane of the lips, cheeks, tongue or pharynx which may be accompanied by mild paresthesia or partial anesthesia of these parts. The lesions are usually temporary.

In the *esophagus* there may develop local swellings which may cause difficulty in swallowing and substernal oppression. It is quite possible that the Vinson Plummer's syndrome may be an allergic manifestation.

In the *stomach* the manifestations may consist of pylorospasm and occasionally of hypochlorhydria. Tuft<sup>1</sup> cites several cases of gastric ulcer whose etiology is attributed to allergic manifestations.

*Colon* Attacks of various types of nonspecific colitis such as mucous colitis, spastic colitis and possibly also ulcerative colitis have occasionally been recognized as being the result of allergic manifestations.

*Rectum* Pruritus and multiple anal fissures, and tenesmus are not infrequently traceable to an allergic reaction to some food or to underwear that comes in intimate contact with the anus. Among the *gastrointestinal* symptoms caused by allergy are pain and burning of the mouth and tongue, nausea, vomiting in

<sup>1</sup> Tuft, Louis. "Clinical Allergy." W. B. Saunders Co. p. 413, 1937.

testinal cramps diarrhea constipation and occasionally hemorrhage

**Caution** Before a definite diagnosis of allergy of the gastrointestinal tract is made a thorough gastrointestinal study should be done by a physical examination of the abdomen and the rectum a chemical and microscopic examination of the stomach and bowel contents and x ray examination of the entire gastrointestinal tract including the gallbladder is important A person may show a definite allergic sensitivity to food and at the same time may have an organic lesion or a parasitic infection somewhere in the digestive system which may be overlooked by taking allergy for granted It should also be borne in mind that most of the systemic diseases and infections cause gastrointestinal disturbances

### *Allergic Manifestations in the Skin*

The allergic manifestations of the skin are many and varied these may appear in conjunction with other signs of sensitivity or they may appear alone The various skin manifestations may be caused by the ingestion of certain foods or by contact with certain substances

The allergic skin phenomena (allergic dermatoses) are urticaria angioneurotic edema erythema multiforme erythema nodosum atopic dermatitis (eczema) and contact dermatitis of allergic type

**Urticaria (Hives)** Urticaria occurs as superficial swellings that are red and have a pale central area These lesions are evanescent and may spread to various parts of the body and cause intense itching The lesions may be small and confluent causing welts or they may be large and isolated

**Etiology** Heredity plays a part The exciting causes are albuminous foods such as eggs milk shellfish meats and

occasionally other foods fruits and berries Autointoxication gastroenteritis constipation and other conditions in which there is an excessive production of histamin may usher in an attack Other substances that may cause urticaria are sera antitoxins drugs inhalants (pollens) bacterial and parasitic infestations external irritants and at times it may be due to nervous or psychic influences

**Giant urticaria** is a variant of urticaria It involves both the superficial and deeper structures of the skin there is usually marked itching and burning The lesions are larger and appear isolated though large areas of the skin surface may be occupied by them

**Angioneurotic Edema** This is a type of urticaria that involves the subcutaneous tissue and causes tumorlike masses upon the skin and mucous membrane of the face or other parts of the body When the larynx or pharynx become involved it may cause suffocation

**Erythema Multiforme** This consists of polymorphous exudative bright red or dark red macular papulae or urticarial bulbous or hemorrhagic lesions distributed upon the face the neck the forearms legs and dorsal surface of the hands and feet and occasionally upon the mucous surfaces

**Etiology** It is believed that the condition is caused by sensitization of the small cutaneous blood vessels by a variety of toxic or allergic substances to which some individuals are sensitive

**Prurigo** This is a chronic itching papular affection which occupies chiefly the lower abdomen buttocks and the extensor surfaces of the limbs It is believed to be an allergic manifestation

**Eczema** Eczema during childhood has been proven in many instances to

be due to some allergy. The lesions first appear upon the face as an erythema in which subsequently develop small epidermal vesicles, these rupture and produce moist and crusted areas. In the *adult*, allergic eczema may occupy the antecubital and popliteal fossae, the front and sides of the neck, the forehead and the areas about the eyes. Occasionally it may occupy other parts of the body.

**Etiology:** Food, clothing or other substances are often found to be the allergic factor in sensitive individuals.

**Purpura.** Cases of Henoch's purpura have been traced to individuals who exhibited other allergic phenomena. *Peliosis rheumatica* also belongs to the allergic group. In both conditions the etiology is attributed to allergic reactions of the skin to the bacteria causing these conditions.

**Contact Dermatitis.** This is the name applied to a group of skin eruptions caused by direct contact with the offending substances such as metals, dyes, drugs, foods, plants, various materials handled in occupations, etc.

### *Allergic Manifestations of the Nervous System*

**Migraine.** This heads the list among the neurologic symptoms caused by allergy. While in quite a number of patients no definite proof of allergic sensitivity can be discovered there are nevertheless a large number of patients suffering from migraine who show distinct sensitivity to a variety of allergens, chiefly foods. It is at times difficult to trace the offending food substance since the reaction may be delayed for several days. It is believed that when food has undergone an atypical reduction in the gastroin-

testinal tract certain substances are there formed which cause the allergic reaction.

**Simple Headache.** This may also occur as an allergic manifestation.

**Ménière's Disease and Idiopathic Epilepsy:** Occasionally these respond to desensitization in persons who have shown strong allergic reactions when skin tested for certain substances. In such individuals it is believed that if allergens are not the primary cause of the disease, allergy is a strong contributing factor.

### *Allergic Manifestations in the Cardiovascular System*

Thromboangitis obliterans, coronary disease, angina pectoris, paroxysmal tachycardia, sinus tachycardia, extrasystoles and periarthritis nodosa have been found to be associated with other allergic phenomena, or have often been found in persons who are generally classified as allergic individuals. Whether or not allergy plays a prominent part in the causation of these affections awaits further study.

### *General Diagnosis of Allergy*

While an individual may show clinical allergic manifestations, the specific allergen responsible for the phenomena cannot be diagnosed clinically. In order to identify the specific substance responsible for a reaction, various "skin tests" are required. A positive reaction is identified by a large erythematous areola in the center of which is a fairly large bleb showing pseudopodia.

The differential diagnosis between such manifestations as may be due to allergic reactions and those caused by organic disease should be made by eliciting a careful and complete history, by making a thorough and systematic physi-

cal examination and by performing such laboratory tests as the conditions indicate might be helpful in the diagnosis. In other words irrespective of the complaints every patient should have a thorough examination.

### Test for Protein Sensitization

The diagnosis and treatment of certain dermatological and respiratory conditions has been improved by the application of the theory of protein sensitization and as the tests to determine these conditions are very simple and their application so useful in general practice it seems advisable to include something concerning them.

**Technic.** The examiner makes a slight scarification upon the flexor surface of the patient's left arm or other convenient location and rubs into it a small quantity of the suspected protein or 0.1 cc. of a properly prepared protein is injected intradermally so that it causes an elevation of the skin. It is advisable to make a second scarification or intradermal injection some little distance from the first (the other arm is a suitable location) into which no protein is injected this serving as a control and gauge of the degree to which the skin reacts to scarification alone.

If the patient is sensitive to the protein employed in from 15 to 20 minutes a marled wheal will appear at the place of scarification or of injection the size of the wheal and the length of time it persists being indicative of the degree to which the patient is sensitized to the test protein. Frequently the same patient will prove to be sensitive to several different proteins. It is of course necessary to make a separate scarification or injection for each separate protein which often cannot be done at one

sitting especially in nervous patients or young children.

### Tests in Hay Fever and Asthma

The chief use of the protein sensitization tests up to the year 1920 was in establishing the proper therapy of hay fever and asthma. A great deal of this work was done by William Scheppegegrell of New Orleans who has given especial study to the geographical distribution of the pollen bearing plants which are the principal causal agents of these respiratory affections. An important feature is the fact that hay fever is due to atmospheric pollens and that only these are needed for testing and immunizing purposes. Goldenrod is often mistakenly blamed for hay fever. It is however to be borne in mind that the most brilliant bloom of the goldenrod *solidago canadensis* is in October when practically all of the hay fever attacks have subsided by the end of September (Scheppegegrell).

In making the diagnostic tests for hay fever we are guided in the selection of the pollen extract by the location. It is therefore necessary to know the hay fever plants to which the patient is exposed the representative biological group being sufficient in most cases. East of the one hundredth meridian we must test for the grasses, ragweeds and chenopods. West of this meridian the tests should in addition include the artemisias. The ragweed test should also be made in the Rocky Mountains and Pacific States since although the ragweeds are uncommon there are other members of the ragweed or Ambrosiaceae group such as gaertneries, marsh elders, Iva and cockle burrs which respond to the same test and similar immunizing methods.

## CHAPTER XXXI

### Geriatrics—Senescence and Diseases of Old Age

Aging is a natural phenomenon. The number of aged is proportionately increased when the death rate during infancy and youth is reduced. The great increase in the life expectancy from birth to death during the past 35 years does not bear a definite relation to actual longevity. If the mortality rate before 1911 had been as low as it is now, there would have been many more old people living then than there are today, because the birth rate was very much greater. At present the definitely declining birth rate is partially compensated by the decline in the death rate among infants and young people so that there are comparatively more people of the older group.

#### General and Individual Longevity

According to statistical studies published by the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company in 1940, (Table I, 1901-38) the average length of life or expectation of life at birth for white males is 62.12 years, and for white females 66.20 years, and for total persons (white and colored) 62.78 years. In 1901 the life expectancy for white males was 48.23, and of white females 51.08 years, indicating an increase of almost 14 years for males and 15 years for females during the past 38 years. Of this increase a greater amount has taken place in the ten years from 1928 to 1938 than in any similar previous period, namely, an increase of 6.65 years.

The life expectancy at various ages from birth to 80 is given in Table II.

An even more striking evidence of the improvement in longevity since the beginning of the century is shown in Table III.

**TABLE I**  
EXPECTATION OF LIFE AT BIRTH AMONG TOTAL PERSONS (WHITE AND COLORED) AND AMONG WHITE PERSONS BY SEX, UNITED STATES, FROM 1901 TO 1938

Year	Expectation of Life at Birth Years		
	Total Persons	White Males	White Females
1938*	62.78	62.12	66.20
1937*	61.48	60.75	65.08
1936*	60.81	60.18	64.36
1935*	61.37	60.72	64.72
1934*	60.79	60.24	64.18
1933*	61.26	60.86	64.40
1932†	61.07	60.69	64.38
1931†	60.26	59.88	63.56
1929-1931‡	59.50	59.31	62.83
1919-1920†		55.33	57.52
1910†	51.49	50.23	53.62
1901†	49.24	48.23	51.08

\* Statistical Bulletin Metropolitan Life Insurance Co. 21, 5, 1940.

\* Total United States.

† United States excluding Texas.

‡ Original Death Registration States.

§ United States excluding Texas and South Dakota.

¶ Aggregate of 27 States not computed for total persons.

beginning of the century than that provided by the expectation of life at birth is found in the proportions of the babies born who survive to later years of age. In 1901 less than nine out of every ten white male babies born alive survived to reach their first birthday. At present health conditions have improved to such an extent that at least nine out of every ten newly born attain age 24. Among white girl babies too, less than nine out of every ten born in 1901 survived their first year of life, now nine out of every ten babies will reach age 32. According

TABLE III

EXPECTATION OF LIFE AT SPECIFIED AGES FOR  
TOTAL PERSONS (WHITE AND COLORED) AND  
FOR WHITE PERSONS BY SEX,  
UNITED STATES, 1938

Age	Expectation of Life Years		
	Total Persons	White Males	White Females
0	62.78	62.12	66.20
1	64.86	64.31	67.84
2	64.30	63.72	67.23
3	63.52	62.93	66.43
4	62.66	62.08	65.56
5	61.77	61.19	64.66
10	57.13	56.57	59.98
15	52.44	51.89	55.22
20	47.91	47.33	50.57
25	43.50	42.86	46.02
30	39.14	38.40	41.51
35	34.81	34.01	37.04
40	30.61	29.75	32.64
45	26.54	25.66	28.34
50	22.64	21.78	24.17
55	18.98	18.16	20.19
60	15.49	14.79	16.42
65	12.34	11.78	13.01
70	9.64	9.20	10.04
75	7.31	6.99	7.47
80	5.43	5.26	5.43

<sup>1</sup> Statistical Bulletin Metropolitan Life Insurance Co., 21 5 1940

to the situation prevailing in 1901, almost half of the white male babies would have died before attaining age 57, while the halfway mark on the basis of health conditions at present is at about 67 years. For white females the corresponding ages were 61 years in 1901 and about 72 years at present.

Comparison of mortality rates in 1919, 1929 and 1939 show that in ages 1 to 4 the 1939 death rate showed a decrease of 61.7 per cent since 1929 and 84.2 per cent since 1911, in ages 25 to 34 the decrease was 44.1 per cent since 1929 and 67.2 per cent since 1911, in ages 55 to 64 19.6 per cent since 1929 and 31.6 per cent since 1911. In those over 75 there has been very little change in the mor-

talidity rate a decline of only 2.8 per cent since 1911 (Table III). These statistics suggest the question: Do the older people individually attain a greater age, i.e. do more people survive to 80 or 90 years or older? It is evident that the increase in the life expectancy has increased the total number of older individuals, but we are as yet unable to tell whether the span of the individual's life will be further increased among those born since 1901, i.e. since Preventive Medicine became more generalized.

Notwithstanding the authentic statistical studies that there are more old people living at present than there were a generation or two ago, one often hears the remark made by persons between the ages of 40 and 60 that they recall having seen many more old people during their childhood than they see now. The reason for such statement is obvious. When one is 10 or 12 years old every person above the age of 40 appears to be senile. Moreover two generations ago a person at the age of 50 or even younger not only appeared older than does one of that age now but he really was more senile.

At present, when eyesight begins to fail it is corrected by glasses, when the teeth decay or fall out, they are replaced by artificial denture, and even hearing is improved by special appliances. The progress of Medicine has made the detection and eradication of gastric ulcer, gallstones and other gastrointestinal diseases comparatively easy. The anemias, syphilis and other chronic diseases are better controlled now than they were two generations ago. Among the other factors that tend to make people appear younger are the increase in leisure due to shorter hours of work and labor saving devices in shop and home etc.,

TABLE III<sup>1</sup>DEATH RATES PER 100 000 FOR ALL CAUSES OF DEATH TOTAL PERSONS, BY AGE PERIODS  
1911, 1929, AND 1939\*

Ages	1939*	1929	1911	Percent Decline 1939 Since	
				1929	1911
One and Over	751 0	891 9	1 253 0	15 8	40 1
1-4	233 5	609 5	1 479 1	61 7	84 2
5-9	102 7	221 8	416 2	53 7	75 3
10-14	91 2	166 6	268 0	45 3	66 0
15-19	152 1	315 7	467 8	51 8	67 5
20-24	212 3	445 1	732 5	52 3	71 0
25-34	311 2	556 9	947 7	44 1	67 2
35-44	559 1	866 8	1,367 8	35 5	59 1
45-54	1,152 1	1 555 7	1 978 3	25 9	41 8
55-64	2 461 4	3 061 5	3 596 0	19 6	31 6
65-74	5 575 6	6 505 0	7 455 0	14 3	25 2
75 and Over	13 536 7	14 283 4	13 926 9	5 2	2 8

\* All 1939 death rates are subject to slight correction since they are based on provisional estimates of lives exposed to risk

<sup>1</sup> Statistical Bulletin Metropolitan Life Insurance Co 21 1, 1940 (Figures taken from Industrial Department)

better hygiene and health habits, the increased popularity of outdoor recreation athletics, vacations, etc. The dress maker, clothier and beautician have also added to the youthful appearance of older people. Today a person at the age of 50 or even older sees well, hears fairly well, has better digestion, is more interested in his surroundings and looks better than did his grandparents' generation at the same age. Because of these, the person at 50 or 60 now not only looks but is a very much younger individual than was the person of equal age half century or more ago.

**Onset of Old Age.** There is always a question as to when old age begins. Many medical authorities and poets alike consider old age as the Autumn of life and place its beginning at 60 years. There are obviously many exceptions. Moreover there are as many Spring and Summer days during Autumn as there are cold wintery days. So in the human

many may show advanced deterioration years before they have reached their fiftieth year, and others may fail to show such changes for years past their sixtieth birthday.

**Process of Aging.** Aging is not always a uniform process. There are some individuals who show the effect of age in their somatic structures while the mentality remains clear and comparatively young. Such individuals are among the unhappiest because they can not understand why their bodies can no longer perform the duties which their minds dictate. Others show mental deterioration while their bodies are comparatively young. These individuals are quite happy since they are not conscious of their limitations. The happiest seniles are those whose somatic and mental processes age simultaneously since their minds and bodies docilely accept their infirmities.



TABLE IV

CRUDE DEATH RATES PER 100 000 FOR  
PRINCIPAL CAUSES<sup>1</sup> ALL AGES  
1911, 1929, 1934 AND 1939

Causes of Death	1939*	1934	1929	1911†
All Causes of Death	760.9	854.1	934.2	1253.0
Typhoid fever	7	1.5	2.4	22.8
Communicable diseases of childhood	4.2	11.1	20.2	58.9
Measles	7	2.7	3.0	11.4
Scarlet fever	7	2.6	2.7	13.1
Whooping cough	1.6	3.7	5.7	7.1
Diphtheria	1.3	2.1	8.8	27.3
Influenza and pneu- monia	52.7	76.4	130.5	131.1
Influenza	9.8	11.4	41.9	15.9
Pneumonia—all forms	42.9	65.0	88.6	115.2
Tuberculosis—all forms	44.9	59.4	86.9	224.6
Tuberculosis of res- piratory system	40.4	52.2	76.7	203.0
Syphilis locomotor ataxia and general paralysis of the in- sane	11.1	12.3	12.6	11.0
Cancer—all forms	101.1	96.1	77.6	68.0
Diabetes mellitus	27.5	24.4	18.3	13.3
Alcoholism	1.2	2.3	3.4	4.0
Cerebral hemorrhage apoplexy‡	59.7	63.2	58.0	64.2
Diseases of heart§ Diseases of the coro- nary arteries	160.5	162.9	146.8	141.8
Angina pectoris	40.2	18.8	**	**
Diarrhea and enteritis (under 2 years)	6.3	10.0	9.1	3.9
Appendicitis	5.4	11.1	20.8	27.9
Chronic nephritis (Bright's disease)	3.7	8.1	16.2	13.0
Puerperal state—total	10.2	13.1	14.0	10.9
Total external causes	51.4	64.9	69.4	95.0
Suicides	5.4	8.8	13.6	19.8
Homicides	8.6	9.5	8.5	13.3
Accidents—total	4.4	5.9	6.6	7.2
Accidental burns	46.3	57.8	65.2	72.4
Accidental drown- ing	2.4	3.6	5.0	8.8
Accidental trauma tum by fall	4.2	5.3	6.4	10.2
Accidental trauma tum by machines	9.6	11.1	9.0	13.2
Railroad accidents	8	8	1.6	1.8
Automobile acci- dents	2.2	2.6	3.9	9.5
All other accidents	17.1	21.1	21.0	2.3
Other diseases and conditions	9.9	13.3	18.3	31.6
	119.1	144.6	170.3	257.9

<sup>1</sup> Statistical Bulletin Metropolitan Life Insurance Co. 21:1 1940 (Figures taken from Industrial Department)

**Incidence of Morbidity:** As to the question of morbidity among the older group, we may definitely state that, while the mortality rate has decreased, the morbidity rate has increased. There are two main reasons for the present increase in the morbidity of the aged group. First, before the advent of Preventive Medicine, it was largely a matter of the "survival of the fittest." Only those who were endowed with unusual powers of resistance and were physically fit survived the ravages of infantile and youth diseases, therefore during old age they were constitutionally sound and did not as readily develop the degenerative diseases to which the less hardy are subject. Secondly, those who survived the various infectious diseases and epidemics during their youth developed an immunity which protected them against these infections and their sequelae in after years.

At present, since many weaker individuals by means of Preventive Medicine and better general medical care have been kept alive to reach old age the incidence of morbidity in the senile group is naturally greater. Both because of the increased number of old people and the fact that many of them are constitutionally inferior, the rate of mortality from degenerative diseases (cardiovascular, cerebrospinal and renal diseases, diabetes, etc.) is greater than it was be-

\* All 1939 death rates are subject to slight correction since they are based on provisional estimates of lives exposed to risk.

† Ages 1 and over only.

‡ Rates for 1930 to 1939 are not strictly comparable with those for earlier years due to changes in classification procedure.

§ Excluding pericarditis, acute endocarditis, acute myocarditis, coronary artery diseases and angina pectoris.

\*\* Included in all other diseases and conditions prior to 1930.

†† Not comparable with the rates for 1929 to 1939.

fore the era of Preventive Medicine (see Table IV) .

### **Physiologic Manifestations of Aging**

Certain physiologic changes are noticeable in those past 60 years even in the absence of definite degenerative phenomena. Those most frequently noted and which become more apparent as age progresses are

(1) **Sleep** It takes longer to fall asleep and there are frequent awakenings between shorter hours of sleep. On awakening one is not thoroughly refreshed.

(2) **Mentality** The mental processes undergo various changes such as

(a) Restless state of mind evidenced by undue apprehension, worry, dissatisfaction with one's own work and with the work of others, intolerance of others' opinions and actions, etc.

(b) Difficulty in applying oneself to work, new situations and emergencies.

(3) **Memory Defects** There is increasing forgetfulness, especially for recent events, also for names, dates and episodes.

(4) **Restless Energy or Restless Activity** There is an attempt to have many interests and activities, doing many things superficially, showing lack of patience to do one thing thoroughly, particularly if it requires attention to detail.

(5) **Hearing Defects** These are variable, deafness usually starts between 60 and 70 and is progressive.

(6) **Sight** Nearsightedness (myopia) usually begins to develop during the later forties and becomes progressive. In very old age farsightedness (presbyopia) may displace myopia or normal vision.

(7) **Gastrointestinal Changes** The taste may be dulled, various types of indigestion and constipation usually develop.

(8) **The Urogenital System** Libido and potentiality decrease, the climacterium usually begins between 45 and 50 in women and between 50 and 60 in men. Urination may become increasingly difficult in men because of prostatic hypertrophy and lack of bladder control is noticeable in women because of weakened sphincteric control.

(9) **The Cardiovascular System** Cardiac capacity becomes diminished, there is greater cardiac strain on effort manifested by cardiac palpitation, chest pain, dyspnea and some cyanosis. Arteriosclerosis and deficiency in the peripheral circulation appear in various degrees and are progressive. The pulse rate usually slows and may show extrasystoles.

(10) **The Respiratory System** This shows evidence of lack of elasticity as is noted by various degrees of dyspnea, cough, cyanosis, emphysema, etc.

(11) **The Endocrine System** This undergoes many changes as the individual advances in age from infancy on wards. The pineal and thymus glands become inactive at or about puberty. The gonads become hypoactive or inactive after the climacterium. The pituitary gland develops the so-called castration cells, the basophils and eosinophils are said to become inactive. The thyroid gland loses much of its activity. Changes occur in all the other glands of the endocrine system.

(12) **The Bones and Joints** The bones become brittle and the joints less mobile, and various degrees of calcific changes occur in both the joints and the bones. The intervertebral disks become

thin and the spinal curvatures more accentuated so that the individual becomes shorter in stature and is bent

(13) **Locomotive System** The gait becomes less elastic, is often shuffling mincing and uncertain. This may be due to muscle weakness to changes in the angle of the lower extremities the arches the spine or to changes in the blood supply or innervation

(14) **Musculature** There is diminished coordination and muscle tone so that one may develop tremors and difficulty in performing activities that require strength and muscle balance. This may be due to fatty degeneration or to atrophy to diminished circulation or to faulty innervation

(15) **The Nervous System** Both the autonomic and the cerebrospinal systems become less active as age progresses. This may be due to cellular changes or to circulatory insufficiency

(16) **The Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue** The skin becomes atrophic and at times may be interspersed with small hypertrophic areas. It may be lusterless and dry or it may be glistening. When the skin is pinched between the forefinger and thumb the resulting ridge disappears slowly. Various pigmented areas appear upon the hands arms and legs and the veins stand out prominently. The nails become grooved and brittle. The subcutaneous fat gradually disappears from the face and neck while the body fat may increase. The hair becomes dry and sparse. Pruritus may develop over limited areas or over the entire body. This may be due to atrophy of the skin irritation of the sebaceous glands or irritation of the peripheral nerve endings in the skin

**Causes for Physiologic Changes in the Aged** The reasons for these so

called physiologic changes in age are not definitely known. They may be due to diminished circulation resulting from cardiovascular insufficiency to cellular changes or they may be the result of various diseases during youth and early adulthood which leave their mark upon the individual. Heredity no doubt also plays its part in determining whether the individual should age at an early or a late period in life

### Pathologic Changes of Old Age

The diseases encountered among the aged are with the exception of infections due to degenerative changes which may be classified into three categories as the result of

(1) Early infections accidents occupations metabolic diseases exposure hygienic transgressions neglect worry and excesses of any kind

(2) Heredity and constitutional peculiarities

(3) A process of aging due to tissue or metabolic changes not easily explainable

Degenerative diseases may affect individual systems or the entire organism

**The Cardiovascular System** *The Arteries* Arteriosclerosis is a physiologic process of age. The time of life the arteries become so sclerotic as to cause definite pathology or death depends upon several factors

(a) *Heredity* In some families arteriosclerosis develops early and may affect the vessels of the brain the coronaries the kidneys or it may be generalized. In these individuals death occurs at a comparatively early age from cerebral apoplexia coronary occlusion malignant hypertension or cardiovascular insufficiency. In others severe scler

rotic changes may not appear until very late in life

(b) *Intoxicants* These may be due to disease, lead, arsenic, dietary indiscretions alcohol (?), and other toxic substances

(c) *Stress and strain* Insufficient rest and overwork may be factors in intensifying the physiologic sclerosis of the aged to a pathologic degree

(d) *Renal Disease* Infections and syphilis may hasten or cause arteriosclerotic changes

In senile arteriosclerosis the *larger arteries* are dilated and tortuous, they are hard, pipestemlike or may be beaded. The *aorta* may develop rough calcareous plaques in the intima, or there may be subendothelial softening with the formation of atheromatous ulcers. In the *smaller vessels* the media may undergo calcification and degeneration, the so called Monckeberg type. Senile arteriosclerosis, by limiting the blood supply of the various organs and tissues, interferes with their functions. It may cause intermittent claudication and other circulatory disturbance. When occlusion of the peripheral vessels occurs, gangrene or trophic ulcers result.

**The Heart.** Myocarditis with cardiac enlargement may be the result of arteriosclerosis or it may be due to primary affections of the myocardium. Heart disease in the aged may also be the result of rheumatic diseases, emphysema, asthma, renal failure, disease of the liver, hypertension or hypotension, strain and overexertion. The heart is usually enlarged, the rate may be between 60 and 70 per minute, the blood pressure is generally low, occasionally it is high. A loud systolic murmur is usually heard over the entire precordium, this is generally due to sclerosis of the aortic valve

and occasionally to sclerosis of the mitral valve. When the heart is dilated and the valve orifices are also dilated, a diastolic aortic murmur may be heard. A double aortic or double mitral murmur may be due to sclerosis or to rheumatism. Syphilis is a potent factor.

**The Respiratory System.** Chronic bronchitis, bronchiectasis, emphysema and pulmonary fibrosis are fairly common infirmities of old age. These may be the result of sinus infections, bronchitis or other bronchopulmonary infections at an earlier age, or they may develop gradually as the tissues lose their elasticity and the blood supply diminishes. Bronchopneumonia and lobar pneumonia are more serious in the aged than in the young, and are often terminal diseases.

**The Urogenital System.** Among the *kidney affections* of old age are the so called senile kidney, renal sclerosis or interstitial nephritis. The disease runs a chronic course and is usually associated with diffuse arteriosclerosis. It may terminate in uremia or with some vascular accident.

The *prostate* is a most troublesome gland in the majority of old men. It may undergo malignant change or there may develop benign hypertrophy. Enlargement of the prostate, of whatever cause, produces urinary difficulty and cystitis. Prostatectomy is an operation of the aged (SEE p 716). Carcinoma of the *uterus* usually occurs between the ages of 45 and 60, though it may occur at any age (SEE p 702).

**Gastrointestinal System.** Carcinoma of the stomach and colon is usually a disease of those between 50 and 65 though it may occur earlier or later. Gastric and duodenal ulcers may cause serious trouble when they occur in the

aged, they may occur in association with cardiac renal hepatic and prostatic disease

Paralytic ileus intestinal obstruction and strangulated hernia are serious accidents in the aged

Cholelithiasis often becomes manifested past the age of 50, at times gall stones may be silent Cirrhosis of the liver in the aged may be the result of infection or irritation by toxic substances suffered at an earlier age

Symptoms of indigestion are common among the aged and may not necessarily be due to organic disease Indigestion in the senile may be due to faulty diet improper mastication anemia diminished gastric and intestinal secretions diminished tonicity of the gastrointestinal tract viceroptosis passive congestion or circulatory failure

**The Nervous System** Moore<sup>1</sup> classifies the neurologic conditions encountered after the age of 50 as follows

I *Vascular disorders* such as cerebral thrombosis cerebral hemorrhage (localized spreading and disruptive and intraventricular hemorrhage) cerebral embolism hypertensive encephalopathies and cerebral arteriosclerosis (focal and diffuse manifestations)

II *Intracranial space taking lesions* such as primary brain tumors (glioma meningioma and other forms) metastatic malignancy abscess subdural hematoma tuberculoma gumma

III *Degenerative diseases* such as senile psychosis Alzheimer's disease Pick's disease Schilder's disease multiple sclerosis combined sclerosis (pernicious anemia) Parkinson's disease (idiopathic and postencephalitic)

IV *Inflammatory disease* such as syphilis (meningovascular, paresis tabes dorsalis and other forms) meningitis (epidemic acute purulent tuberculous) encephalitis

V *Miscellaneous conditions* such as pellagra migraine intoxications (alcohol lead and other metals and drugs) and spinal cord lesions

**Bones and Joints Affections** Rheumatoid arthritis arthritis deformans and other joint affections multiple myelitis Paget's disease and various bone degenerations and deformities are not uncommon

**Syphilis in the Aged** This may be the result of infection during youth and may cause a large variety of conditions It may affect the nervous system (brain spinal cord and peripheral nerves) the cardiovascular system (causing myocarditis aortic insufficiency aortitis aneurysm and peripheral circulatory disturbance) the gastrointestinal tract (causing gumma of the stomach liver and various other diseases of the liver) It may also affect the bones and joints and practically every tissue of the body

### *Premature Senility*

Certain pathologic states generally encountered in those past the age of 60 not infrequently occur in younger individuals as the result of disease which causes them to develop senile changes so that at 30 or 40 such individuals are pathologically old

**Progeria (senilism)** This is a primary or congenital premature senility of childhood associated with infantilism It is characterized by infantilism baldness emaciation arteriosclerosis and general decrepitude Death may occur at an early age from angina pectoris or other senile diseases

<sup>1</sup> Moore M T The Penna Med Jour 44 195 1940

## The Place of Geriatrics in Medicine

To prevent the occurrence of many of the diseases of old age or minimize their deleterious effects, it is necessary to prevent or thoroughly cure the preventable or curable diseases of youth, and to teach the young the principles of hygiene and sanitation.

It is also very important for the medical profession to study Geriatrics more intensively. It is a comparatively new field in which too little time has been devoted to comprehensive study. Now that the number of old people is increasing, study should be devoted towards keeping the aged well and to further increase their usefulness during their lengthened span of life.

The neglect of the study of Geriatrics or Senescence may probably be attributed to innate human peculiarities. The young man is too busy with active life and old age is to him an unimportant subject, and with the old man it is too personal a subject, or he may lack the initiative to start a study in a new field.

The importance of studying the infirmities of the aged with a view of minimizing their helplessness and of increasing their self respect and their economic usefulness may be gleaned from the fact that the census of 1930 showed that per-

sons aged 65 or over constituted 5.4 per cent of our population. Of this group J. K. Folsom<sup>1</sup> says, "47 per cent are supported in part by relatives, 30 per cent by public assistance, or private charities, and only 33 per cent are self supporting." The preliminary report of the U. S. Census of 1940<sup>2</sup> shows that persons 65 years of age and over numbered 8,956,000, an increase of 35 per cent over the number in this age group in 1930. In other words, this group which constituted 5.4 per cent of the population in 1930 increased to about 7 per cent in 1940. It is estimated that the future population of the aged will constitute about 15 per cent of our population. In the words of L. K. Frank<sup>3</sup> "We are in process of changing from a large dependent child population to a large dependent aged population" and Christian<sup>4</sup> states "The changes in quality and proportion of population in various age groups are increasing the importance of Geriatrics at the expense of Pediatrics."

<sup>1</sup> Folsom J. K. *Am. Jour. of Orthopsychiatry* 10: 30 1940.

<sup>2</sup> Dept. of Commerce Bureau of Census Washington D. C. p. 5 No. 1 1941.

<sup>3</sup> Frank L. K. *Am. Jour. of Orthopsychiatry* 10: 39 1940.

<sup>4</sup> Christian H. A. *Am. Int. Med.* 12: 1499 1939.

## CHAPTER XXXII

### Special Examinations—Industrial, Life Insurance, Malingering and Periodic Health Examinations

#### Industrial Medicine and the Examination of Industrial Workers

Industrial Medicine may be defined as that branch of medical practice which is concerned with the supervision of the general health and the specific problems of preventing disabilities among industrial workers. It differs from the general practice of medicine only in that the worker is selected according to his physical fitness for special jobs and that hazards peculiar to certain industries are to be prevented or minimized. Among the 50 000 000 or more workers in the hundreds of industries in this country there arise numerous problems of how to prevent various industrial diseases and accidents and of how to prevent contagion to other workers and the spreading of infection generally. The industrial physician is charged with the selection of the physically and at times the mentally fit individual for certain jobs with the maintenance of health of the workers and with the treatment of accidental and other injuries so that the efficiency of the worker is not lowered and the industry in which he is employed is not hampered.

It is just as important for the industrial managers to choose a properly qualified physician as it is for the industrial physician to choose suitable workers.

**The Industrial Physician** The Conference Board of Physicians in Industry defined the industrial physician as one who applies the principles of modern Medicine and Surgery to the

industrial worker sick or well supplementing the remedial agencies of medicine with the sound application of hygiene sanitation and accident prevention. The efficient industrial physician should not only be an alert and competent practitioner of Medicine and Surgery but should acquire special knowledge of the hazards of the particular industry in which he serves and the methods of removing them or reducing their danger to a minimum.

Industrial physicians are of two types. The part time worker and the full time worker.

**Function of the Part Time Physician** The part time physician is called upon to examine workers when those in charge think it necessary and to treat accidents when they occur. His function is that of any practicing physician who is called upon to examine or to treat a patient. An added duty of his is to return the sick or injured to his job as soon as possible.

**Function of The Full time Industrial Physician** His function is three fold.

I. The examination of persons applying for positions. Such examination is required for two reasons.

(a) To determine the physical and mental fitness of the applicant to perform the required duties.

(b) To weed out those who are physically unfit for the job but attempt to secure it so that they may claim workmen's compensation.

II The examination of persons already in industry for determining their continued fitness in their occupations and to detect incipient disease or infection

III The supervision of the sanitary conditions and the prevention of avoidable hazards in the place of employment so as to guard against disease and injury

### **I. The Examination of a Person Applying for a Position in Industry**

In order to be able to judge properly the fitness of a candidate for a certain position the examiner should be familiar with the type and the various processes of the work that will be required of the applicant, so that, after an examination he may judge not only the mental and physical fitness of the candidate for such work, but also the length of time (barring accidents) the worker would be fully efficient

Persons who are required to do laborious work must of necessity have good muscular development, a strong heart, normal lungs and normally functioning kidneys. Certain types of laborious work require of the worker, in addition to a strong general physique, sound limbs, normal development of the special senses, and a certain amount of skill and judgment. Occupations such as letter carriers, stevedores, soldiers (infantry men) and others who have to walk a great deal must necessarily possess sturdy lower extremities and good feet. Those working in chemical industries, gas works and certain metal trades must have at least a normal sense of smell so as to detect early the accidental escape of noxious gases. Workers at hazards such as with moving parts of any type of machine, loom, locomotive crane, buzz

saw, lathe etc., should have quick perceptive powers and mental and physical ability to act in emergencies to avert catastrophes

Not all industries require an equal amount of physical fitness, as an instance cigarmakers, tailors (hand sewers), embroidery workers, bookkeepers etc., need not necessarily possess perfectly normal hearts in order to carry on their occupations successfully. Broommakers may be blind, shoemakers may be lame, bakers may be deaf, etc., and still be good and useful mechanics. The requirements of greatest importance to all types of industry are that each person employed must be free from contagious and communicable disease, and be mentally and physically fit to do his particular kind of work and at the same time not be a disturbing factor to his co-workers

Though in this country the law does not require that every individual (except food handlers) before being employed should undergo a preliminary physical examination it is becoming quite common for employers to make a practice of having new "hands" certified by a competent physician as to their fitness to undertake the work proposed

The following outline is sufficiently detailed and practical for industrial examinations

- 1 History of patient on regular blank  
Personal and family history
- 2 Temperature pulse weight and height
- 3 General inspection—color nutrition any deformities or congenital malformations gait etc
- 4 Inspection of mouth teeth throat
- 5 Inspection of eyes—Snellen test for acuteness of vision
- 6 Inspection and palpation of neck
- 7 Thorough examination of bare chest
  - (a) Lungs
  - (b) Heart



- 8 Examination of abdomen genitalia extremities and prostate in men
  - (a) Hernias
  - (b) Venereal and skin diseases
  - (c) Varicosities or flat foot

Where the history of the case indicates some abdominal or pelvic trouble in the female employe a further and more thorough examination in the presence of a nurse or the mother should be made. If refused the person should be sent to the family physician and a report asked for.

- 9 A routine urinalysis in all cases—albumin sugar and microscopic
- 10 Blood pressure and blood examination in all cases where history and physical examination show they are indicated
- 11 Inspection of the teeth of employes by a dentist who recommends treatment when needed is a valuable adjunct
- 12 Wassermann Kahn or other serologic tests should be made in food handlers heavy occupations or when syphilis is suspected

### Health Defects as Determining Occupation

The defects disclosed should determine whether the person presented should be rejected or accepted as 'qualified as to conditions'. The aim of such an examination should be

- 1 Avoidance of injury to the health of the individual inspected
- 2 Protection of other workers
- 3 Maintenance of legality this directly protects the employer

**Heart Lesions** The heart is examined with the chest bared and should not be confined to those cases where the physical appearance or a history of previous illness such as rheumatic fever or syphilis emphasizes the necessity of such examination. When a cardiac lesion is found the physician must of course try to avoid confusion between *functional* and *organic* heart disease and endeavor to control the data of auscultation by

other methods such as percussion, exercise tests blood pressure reading, and examination of the lungs, liver and extremities for signs of heart failure. In doubtful cases an electrocardiographic study should be made.

Dearden<sup>1</sup> an English industrial surgeon says that the main points to be reviewed by the certifying surgeon in considering the bearing of a definite heart lesion on particular employment are

- 1 The already existing demand for a steady increase in nutritive effort to meet the needs of bodily growth and development

- 2 The capability of the organ to answer the call for further increased activity to keep pace with additional tissue change associated with active labor

- 3 The power of the organ to resist strain

- 4 The liability to increased strenuousness of occupation at a later stage

- 5 The liability to further attacks of acute rheumatism

- 6 The nature and extent of the lesion and amount of compensation

As regards the first three headings certain occupations are of such a strenuous nature from the outset that an imperfect heart could not meet their demands and at the same time supply the ordinary bodily needs. Examples of such types of labor will readily occur to the examiner. The fourth heading has to do with occupations where the young person on starting is not put to very hard work but where in the course of time the labor will become more and more arduous. The fifth heading has

<sup>1</sup> Dearden. The Medical Examination of the Worker. The Industrial Clinic edited by E. I. Colls Wm. Wood & Co.

especial reference to work in hot and humid atmosphere, wet processes and where there is exposure to weather. The sixth has relation to the condition of the heart itself, and is entirely a matter for the technical judgment of the examiner. Where there is evidence of dilatation, particularly when associated with a history of a recent attack of rheumatism, tonsillitis, chorea, etc., or of other acutely serious conditions, the young person is unfitted for any work. Arduous labor should not be permitted when there is any definite heart lesion, irrespective of degree. Though in many cases the definite signs of valvular incompetency disappear as the muscular wall regains its proper control over the heart function, with a growing youth the imposition of additional strain will tend to nullify any such tendency. Where there is good compensation, employment of a suitable nature is not barred. There are many light duties which such a young person can perform, even in what, at first thought, appears to be very arduous occupations, and this author concludes by saying that "it is often possible to find work for moderately severe cases, as in an instance of my own where a youth, after several rejections, gravitated to a cork factory and was 'certified' for sorting bottle corks." If active chorea exists all work about machinery should be prohibited and if any work is permitted it is a good rule to make an additional point of barring lifting and carrying heavy weights of any kind.

**Anemia.** Anemia, especially in female employes, should be carefully estimated if found to be present and its possible effect upon the girl's working capacity considered. If there is a history of vertigo and syncope work about machinery of any kind should not be per-

mitted, and even if the anemia is of a mild degree, proper treatment should be at once instituted, the condition of undertaking or continuing the work under consideration, being conditional upon reasonably prompt response to therapy.

**Respiratory Diseases.** Tuberculosis is, of course, the disease which is of greatest concern to the ordinary industrial physician. No worker demonstrated to be infected with tubercle bacilli should be permitted to continue at indoor employment, both for his own welfare and that of his fellows. The detection and establishment of a diagnosis of tuberculosis have already been dealt with (See p. 370) so it remains only to offer a word of caution in regard to other respiratory affections which are frequently encountered among industrial workers. Where chronic bronchitis is present, the individual should not be permitted to engage in any occupation which will subject him to the constant inhalation of dust or compel him to remain the greater part of his time in dark or damp working places. If the employee complains of asthma or hay fever, the proper cutaneous test should be applied, and advice given according to the results obtained. Discharges from the nose, and "catarrh" are most likely to be connected with hypertrophied tonsils and adenoids. Such conditions are very common, and while they should not be classed as respiratory diseases, their consideration must usually be taken up at the same time.

Respiratory diseases may develop among coal miners, stone cutters and blasters, silica workers, asbestos workers, wool sorters, weavers, bakers, grain and flour workers and bird handlers, also among glass blowers, grinders and gas workers. In these industries it is most important that the examiner should

exclude all candidates whose lungs bronchi and accessory sinuses are not in a perfectly normal condition (See p 360)

**Skin Affections** Though industrial workers like other members of the community are likely to be subject to almost any skin disease according to the hygienic conditions under which they live and other causes beyond the control of the employer certain occupations tend to produce special dermatologic lesions. Among young applicants for work it is usual to find impetigo and discrete pustular eruptions and such parasitic infections as scabies and ringworm and occasionally pediculosis. All such conditions are easily detected and with the co-operation of the person under examination readily cured. Serious skin lesions usually demand the attention of a specialist.

Certain skin lesions may develop upon the hands and face of those working with certain chemicals dyes and other substances to which a particular individual may be sensitive or allergic. Skin lesions upon the hands may develop among match workers hatters x-ray and radium workers and bakers. It is of particular importance to exclude from food handling such persons as have skin lesions contagious diseases or filthy habits.

**Deformities** The skeletal deformities most often encountered by the industrial physician are spinal curvatures tuberculous knee hip joint disease of long standing the effects of rickets and less frequently infantile paralysis. It requires rather keen judgment to decide just how extensive such deformities must be in order to disqualify an individual from engaging in more or less arduous labor. Shortness of stature will naturally prevent entrance to a good many occupations and the general physical examination will have to be relied upon to

give information as to how well equipped physically a lame or hunchbacked applicant may be to do the work which he is desirous of undertaking. Not infrequently the affections of childhood have been outgrown sufficiently to permit such an individual to work as efficiently as those who have no skeletal deformities.

**Eye Diseases and Visual Acuity** Good eyesight according to Dearden ranks next in importance to a sound heart for occupational purposes. Defective vision may be due to injury disease or errors of refraction or traumatism may cause cataract or other forms of injury which may mean more or less complete blindness of that particular eye, in other cases one eye may have been removed because of injury or disease. Defective vision is however more often due to errors of refraction than to any other cause the most common defects of this sort being hypermetropia mostly unequal and accompanied by marked convergent squint. Though many of these patients will be wearing glasses there has frequently been failure to properly educate the weaker eye so that it may be wholly useless. In making his decision as to the influence a given visual defect will have upon the ability of the worker to carry on his selected occupation the examiner should take into consideration the following points:

- 1 The possibility of removing the defect by appropriate glasses
- 2 The possibility of injury to the good eye
- 3 The extra liability to accident from restricted visual field
- 4 The liability to eye strain
- 5 The possibility or otherwise of becoming efficient at the work sought

The most common eye affections encountered in industrial practice are

blepharitis acute and chronic conjunctivitis corneal ulceration opacities traumatic cataract and color blindness

In speaking of the reclamation of the disabled Collis<sup>1</sup> remarks that a man's occupation must be considered when determining the degree of disablement. As a rule the trades requiring the highest visual acuity bring the highest wages. If a man earning high wages suffers from diminution of vision from an accident he receives compensation; he is still able to work at a trade not requiring such good vision. If however his vision be diminished by disease he receives no compensation but he may still be able to earn a living provided he can find suitable work. The questions of the original cause of defective vision and the liability of an employer to make compensation are among those which will often be placed before the industrial examiner and the practice of subjecting every new employee to a complete physical examination will give the physician some data on which to base his conclusions. If there is a record in existence showing that when a certain individual entered the employ of a given concern he was suffering from some ophthalmic defect which was of such a character that the eye had already undergone injury it will be possible to decide how far his present occupation has been responsible for aggravating the condition or whether it has affected it at all and on the employee's side a record of good eyesight on beginning work will demonstrate the injurious nature of an occupation which has produced eye defects during the period of employment.

**Color Blindness** The determination of the acuity of color perception is most

important for those who seek employment as railroad engineers brakemen signalmen or in other occupations where the recognition of light signals are imperative. It is also of importance for employees in dye works weaving or such occupations where colors have to be matched or sorted. All applicants for such occupations should be thoroughly tested for color perception with one of the efficient tests for color blindness.

**Hearing Tests** These should be carried out for those whose occupations demand good hearing so as to detect warning signals thereby preventing injury to themselves or to others who may depend upon their ability to give proper warning in case of danger. It is also important to determine the hearing ability of persons who seek employment in boiler factories or other industries that have a tendency to cause deafness so that any claim by the worker for compensation because of deafness may be properly determined. The preemployment record should show whether the worker had a hearing defect prior to his employment or developed it during his employment.

**Laboratory Tests** It is important especially among food handlers to have throat and nose cultures made to have the feces and urine examined and to have various serologic tests performed so as to detect not only those actively diseased but also those who are carriers.

## II The Examination of Persons Already in Industry

All persons working at hazardous occupations particularly if the lives of other workers depend upon their efficiency should be examined periodically. Also those working directly with food

<sup>1</sup> Collis The Health of the Industrial Worker  
P. Blackiston & Son & Co.

stuffs especially foods that are ready to eat, i. e. butter, milk, bread, candy, etc. should be examined at frequent intervals for contagious diseases. In general, when a worker shows a diminished amount of efficiency, or repeatedly makes the same kind of mistake either because of omission or commission, he should be examined in order to determine a possible physical or mental cause for his deficiencies.

Regular periodic physical examination of employees is rapidly coming to be regarded as an economic necessity in many lines of industry, better health among the workers meaning greater output and steadier production, with consequent increase in profits and satisfaction. Mock's remarks<sup>1</sup> on this subject many years ago are sufficiently pertinent to merit quotation. 'The systematic medical examination of employees is the method par excellence in this fight for better health among our working people, and one that extends beyond the confines of the work room to the entire community. By this means the doctor comes into personal contact with each employee giving instructions when necessary and above all discovering a great many diseases in their incipency while still curable with the least expenditure of time and money thus directly benefiting both the employee and the employer whereas otherwise the employee would continue at his work with an inestimable gradual loss of efficiency, until his disease had become incurable or at best could only be controlled. Again by this system of physical examinations a great many communicable diseases such as tuberculosis, are diagnosed and eliminated

from the working force, thus protecting the healthy employees from an imminent source of infection, their diseased fellow worker."

In a number of states the law requires the periodic examination of workers who are subjected to conditions liable to produce 'occupational diseases,' and in the efforts to control tuberculosis and venereal disease the importance of the general physical examination of the apparently healthy as well as those who give evidence of disease, is being constantly more widely appreciated.

### III. Supervision of the Sanitary Conditions and Prevention of Avoidable Hazards

While practically every State and each community has sanitary laws and constituted authorities who periodically inspect places of employment nevertheless, the industrial physician should be familiar with sanitation and the particular requirements of the industry with which he is connected.

It should be his duty to see to it that there is proper heating ventilation and adequate lighting that the drinking water is not contaminated and that toilet facilities are adequate and sanitary, also that the various safety laws are adhered to by both the employer and employee that fire hazards are prevented and fire escapes of sufficient number are provided. The plant physician should establish an adequate first aid station for minor injuries and have proper facilities for caring for those more seriously injured either at the place of employment or have instant adequate facilities to transport the injured to the nearest well equipped hospital. A daily routine inspection of the plant should also be one of his duties.

<sup>1</sup> Mock. An Efficient System of Medical Examination of Employees. Trans. Nat. Assn. Study and Prevent Tuberculosis 10:39 1914.

## Medical Examination for Life Insurance

When a physician accepts an appointment as a medical examiner for an insurance company he becomes in fact an employee of that company, and his acceptance of the appointment implies his willingness to serve the best interests of that company and to be worthy of the confidence which it has imposed in him. If he feels that this is an "unprofessional" attitude, and that he cannot put the interests of a corporation before those of the individual patient in any transaction, then he will do well to leave insurance examination to someone else. As a general rule the demands of insurance examinations do not in any way conflict with the most scrupulous requirements of medical ethics. The best interests of the insurance company are always served by an observance of the strict adherence to exact statements, and painstaking thoroughness in examination and diagnosis. To be a successful medical examiner one should have a most thorough training and experience in physical examination, but though nothing can take the place of practice in this, as in most other branches of medicine, a few suggestions may be helpful to those who are undertaking life insurance examination for the first time.

The suggestions which Henry Wireman Cook of Minnesota set forth some years ago are so pertinent and well expressed that the liberty is here taken of borrowing rather freely from his remarks.<sup>1</sup>

Beginning with little more than inspection of an applicant by the examiner, companies have gradually come to expect a fairly complete clinical history, and a thorough physical examination, supplemented by the recommendation that the applicant shall or shall not secure the policy for which he has applied. This requirement demands a knowledge of history taking the ability and practice necessary for a thorough physical examination, and in addition, sufficient general knowledge of insurance data to correlate the history of the case and the physical examination with the habits, occupations, social status, financial standing and insurable interest, so that an intelligent prognostic opinion may be given.

Most of the questions to be asked by the examiner of the applicant are explicit and need no elaboration. The need for the examiner to furnish all explanations in regard to every illness or impairment cannot be too strongly emphasized, as it is the most frequent cause of unnecessary correspondence and annoying delays. If a man says he was treated by Dr. X for "biliousness" or "indigestion" six months ago a full explanation is absolutely necessary, with a statement, if obtainable, from the attending physician. It is well known that laymen speak vaguely of "indigestion," "cold," "biliousness," etc. and offer them as a satisfactory description for any number of conditions, varying from trivial constipation or colic to gall stones, advanced phthisis, or even carcinoma. It is obviously impossible to accept an applicant's diagnosis without inquiry as to the symptoms and

<sup>1</sup> Cook. Suggestions to Medical Examiners for Life Insurance. *Journal Lancet* 32: 281, 1912.

the course of the disease or without a statement from the attending physician. The necessity for these details is stated in every examination blank.

### Form of Questionnaire

Each company has its own forms in which the information obtained is to be set down by the medical examiner but whatever the form the general trend of the questionnaire will be found to be the same in practically all cases. It will always be necessary to obtain the following information:

- I Objective Examination of Applicant
  - (a) Identification
  - (b) Age
  - (c) Occupation
  - (d) Race
  - (e) Sex
  - (f) Marital state
- II General External Examination
  - (a) General appearance
  - (b) Detailed appearance of head, trunk and limbs
  - (c) Posture and gait
  - (d) Physical defects and deformities
  - (e) Stigmata of degeneracy
- III History
  - (a) Family history
  - (b) Personal history
  - (c) Habits
  - (d) Associations and amusements (those bearing on health)
- IV Physical Examination
  - (a) Chest—lungs
  - (b) Heart and blood vessels
  - (c) Abdomen
  - (d) Urinalysis with other laboratory tests as required by the company or deemed needful by the examiner

### I Objective Examination

**Identification** It is essential that the medical examiner should be certain that the individual he is examining is the same person for whom application for life insurance has been made.

Though insurance frauds are not now as fashionable as they were a few years ago the attempt to induce the medical examiner to send in a favorable report may even extend to the substitution of a better risk than the one actually applying for protection so in any case where the physician is not personally acquainted with the applicant before he becomes the subject of examination the physician must make sure that there has been no mistake in the identity. If a personal introduction from the agent is not possible he can for instance question the applicant on the part of the application that was completed by the agent and the answers should correspond to the recorded data as to the time and place of birth name and residence of beneficiary and other insurance carried if any. Preliminary to the examination the examiner may also ask for the applicant's signature and compare it with the signature secured by the agent on the face of the application or he may secure from the agent an accurate description of the person to be examined so that he can not possibly make an error in examining any other than the proper person. As it sometimes becomes necessary to identify the holders of insurance policies after death it is desirable to note carefully the location, size or other characteristics of any moles, scars, nevi or other marks and deformities which might aid in the identification. The condition of the teeth, the presence of artificial dentures and fillings may also be of help in post mortem identification; it is therefore wise to be prepared for this emergency by obtaining identification data at the very outset.

**Age** As it is upon the basis of age that all life insurance premiums are de-

terminated and all companies have definite age limits within which they accept risks the exact age of each applicant must be determined beyond question. If there appears to be any reason no matter how trivial to lead the examiner to believe that the applicant has made a false statement in regard to this point he must make it clear that the possibility of obtaining the desired policy rests wholly upon the establishment of this fact.

If the applicant looks older than the stated age the physical examination may quickly disclose the reason for the apparent discrepancy indeed the personal history is very apt to give the clue even before the examination is begun. In the words of Ramsey 'It may be due to over work or strain dissipation some external agency business worry a deep seated disease or the culmination of a process beginning in youth and finding expression in middle age. The family history and the environment of his progenitors have much to do with apparent age, if a man's parents have tuberculosis in any of its forms or have through poverty or unfortunate business associations been compelled to undergo hardships it necessarily has its effect upon the offspring. The same effects are seen in the offspring of neurotic parents their resistance is lessened to diseases of childhood of which the marks are left their vitality is lowered the results being the expenditure of more energy in coping with business propositions and inability to endure prolonged physical exertion thus causing them to become prematurely old.'

Though the calculation of the expectation of life in any given case does not come under the points which the

medical examiner must cover in the issue of a policy it is well for him to be able to compute it for his own satisfaction. The rule for determining it by the Actuaries or Combined Experience Table is as follows. If the applicant is 40 years of age or older subtract the actual age from 80 and divide the result by two thirds the result will give the expectancy of life. If the applicant is between 20 and 40 years of age add one year to the result obtained as above.

**Occupation** Extra hazardous occupations are usually designated by each company in their directions to their medical examiners. Most states now have some laws regulating those trades and vocations which are rated as injurious to health and tending to risk or shorten life. The necessity of obtaining details as to the applicant's occupation and correlating it to the history and examination findings is very obvious. There is also what is known as the moral hazard which occurs in occupations which tend to expose those who follow them to dissipation and excesses of various kinds. Thus other things being equal a clergyman is regarded a better risk than an actor and a milkman than a bartender of like age and physique. The influence of occupation on longevity has been carefully computed as applying to general principles but the examiner must judge in individual cases from what has been elicited by the examination whether the applicant's vocation is compatible with long life i. e. whether his physical powers and ancestral history are sufficient good to neutralize any prejudicial influence occupation may have on life. According to most authorities on life insurance examination 'flavors of wind instruments are likely to be sub-



ject to emphysema varicose veins are found in shop-clerks motormen police men and those who are required to assume the standing or semi erect posture for long periods of time lead and other poisoning are apt to be prevalent among printers gilders and those engaged in the manufacture of articles used in these and allied trades compelling them to come in contact with poisons bronchitis and phthisis occurs rather frequently in grinders and polishers of metals marble cutters and printers Those vocations requiring exposure to the inhalation of irritating vapors toxic substances and all kinds of effluvia predispose to laryngeal troubles and may invite lung infection

**Race Sex and Marital State** The susceptibility of particular races to certain diseases is common knowledge in medical practice Lister<sup>1</sup> an English man giving advice to his medical compatriots on the practice of life insurance examination remarks that as every race in the world is insured by English offices every racial peculiarity is therefore a matter of importance to the insurance examiner and in the United States the melting pot of all nations this is even more true It is often said that because many Germans are obese an obese German is not to be regarded necessarily as bad a life insurance risk as an obese Englishman A large abdomen is also common among Belgians French the Dutch Italians and Spaniards To English examiners the question of change of residence from the mother country to the tropics or *vice versa* is a more urgent one than with us but nearly every insurance examiner will occasionally find

cases where such circumstances must be considered A history of previous residence in a tropical climate should put one on his guard for diseases which may be latent in the applicant's system and may recur such as chronic dysentery tropical sprue or malaria

Formerly it was an exceptional thing for any company to insure the lives of women but the practice is now common Outside the child bearing period the cold unsentimental evidence of statistics shows that female lives are better risks than male lives No company intentionally issues a policy on the life of a woman known to be immoral and those with an antecedent history of gonorrhea or syphilis can seldom secure life insurance The medical examiner will usually find his company slow to accept his recommendation of the mother of an illegitimate child though from the physical standpoint she may be an excellent risk The question of insuring the lives of women who have undergone pelvic operations has been much discussed by physicians interested in insurance examination and there appears to be a wide diversity of opinion about it A woman past the menopause is generally conceded to be a better risk than a man of the same age

Generally speaking married people are better risks than single ones Their habits of life are apt to be more settled and regular and proper exercise of the sexual functions tends to prolong life Single women over thirty are better risks than single men of the same age and for each year thereafter the woman becomes a better risk and the man a poorer one Marriage late in life tends greatly to increase the risk especially if there is great disparity in the ages of the parties

<sup>1</sup> Lister Medical Examination for Life Insurance London E Arnold 1921

## II. General External Examination

General external examination is conducted along the same lines as in any branch of medical practice. As the time allotted to make these examinations is usually quite limited the examiner will be obliged to depend more on the general impression made upon him by the applicant's outward appearance than is usually the case in private practice. Bearing in mind the conditions which are most likely to render an applicant uninsurable, the examiner should look for indications of their presence as soon as the applicant appears. The expression and color of the face may suggest the possibility of anemia, nephritis, or tuberculosis, or of addictions such as alcohol and narcotics, and the posture and general 'build' may be indicative of the general condition. A 'good risk' will usually stand erect and have an air of strength and buoyancy, while disturbances in the nervous system and the physical characteristics of degeneracy can often be correctly surmised even when the gait and position are but slightly abnormal.

## III History

The elicitation of the *personal and family history* must follow the lines laid down in the examination sheet, but frequently the medical examiner will be called upon to use his judgment in interpreting the findings. One point frequently overlooked is a change in the habits and manner of living at or near middle age. It is a very common thing for men who have risen from poverty to the possession of a competence or affluence to apply for a policy when 'things are easier for them.' It is sometimes a difficult question to de-

cide just what effect these changes will have upon an individual's longevity. In a study of gall stone disease one writer remarks that a change 'from walking to a buggy which one drives himself is one thing, and a change from walking to motor car and hired chauffeur quite another.' The 'moral hazard' here must also be carefully considered with both men and women.

The examination blank always devotes considerable space to the family history, and every examiner knows how difficult it is to fill in these questions satisfactorily. Frequently, the applicant will have surprisingly little knowledge of the medical history of even his nearest relatives. Many are unable to tell the age at death of their grand parents, or even of their parents. The cause of deaths which have occurred even within their immediate knowledge will be practically unknown to them or will be attributed to 'stomach trouble,' 'heart disease' or something else equally vague. All the examiner can do when such knowledge is vague is to question as minutely as possible regarding symptoms, duration of the illness or other circumstances likely to give evidence as to exact cause of death or the ailments which preceded death. Lister points out that 'death from pneumonia, bronchitis or pleurisy often covers tuberculosis.' A mother's or sister's death is often ascribed to 'childbirth' or a 'confinement,' when actually 'a confinement given as a cause of death may be only a phase in which the family has been instructed and one which is used to cover phthisis. The death may have occurred some months after the child was born and the death certificate will shed a different light on the matter."

Heredity in all its phases has a very important bearing on the issuance of life insurance. 'Old age' is often given as a cause of death but even where the parents have attained great ages it is wise to obtain exact data, so far as possible. As a contrast to old age in the parents there is what Lister terms the 'early breakdown age'. The examiner will often be told that the applicant's parents and perhaps several brothers have died before fifty or sixty of various diseases such as bronchopneumonia (so-called), pernicious anemia, cancer, typhoid fever and Bright's disease and if these deaths all occurred between forty five and sixty, even if the applicant is in apparent good health such a family history strongly suggests deficient vitality.

General paralysis of the insane in a parent is often given as simply *paralysis*. If the applicant states that paralysis was the cause of a relative's death the exact kind of paralysis should be ascertained. If the death of a parent were due to dementia paralytica it is important to find out the age of the applicant at the time the parent died and also to keep watch for the stigmata of syphilis in making the physical examination. Insanity and epilepsy are always serious factors in a family history. Even a history of 'accidents' may turn out not to be so 'accidental' after all. Lister suggests that such histories may also conceal suicide as a hereditary tendency a point to be remembered.

Concerning *habits, associations* and *amusements* something has already been said under previous headings. The danger of contracting pulmonary tuberculosis for instance from infected fellow employees or housemates is just as great as when this disease is actively

present in a member of the applicant's immediate family. Similarly a man who spends his hours of leisure in pool rooms and crowded shows is not likely to prove as good a risk as he who finds his recreation in golf or tramping or even in quietly reading at home. Taken by themselves such points are of trifling value but considered in conjunction with the physical findings the purpose for which life insurance protection is desired and other matters with which the medical examiner has to do they are often of profound significance.

#### IV. Physical Examination

The *physical examination* proper may be divided into four essential parts. While for the meagre fee given by most insurance companies and the short time usually allotted to making the examination even an acute diagnostician could not always be expected to exclude such conditions as leukemia, carcinoma of the rectum, tuberculosis, enteritis and many other of the less common diseases it is not unreasonable to expect that an applicant who has been unreservedly recommended by the physician who examined him should have the general appearance of average good health, that his lungs should show no evidence of active disease, that the cardiovascular system should be approximately normal in structure and function and that the kidneys are not excreting albumin and sugar. These are practically the only requirements of the insurance examination except on some blanks. *Temperature and reflexes* are also questioned yet the number of applicants with pulmonary tuberculosis, cardiovascular disease and nephritis who annually get by the average medical examiner will

be evident to anyone who examines the "paid claims" of any company, and notes how many who have but recently taken out policies have succumbed to those diseases

**General Appearance:** An unhealthy or under-standard general appearance is frequently neglected by an examiner. He is intent upon the discovery of definite signs of disease and his negative physical findings are apt to offset unduly the general impression which he may have formed at first sight; or he may have entirely overlooked the pallor of an anemia, the slight cyanosis of faulty circulation, the sallowness of interstitial nephritis, the wrinkles from recent loss of weight, etc. An applicant who looks sick or frail should not be recommended as a first-class risk merely because the examination fails to reveal any definite signs of disease.

**Pulmonary Examination.** The examination of the lungs is perhaps the most unsatisfactory portion of the average examiner's report. The cause of this is twofold. First, evidence of pulmonary disease is often vague, and sometimes even in advanced stages entirely lacking to all but the lung specialist. Secondly, the interpretation of the pulmonary findings demands more skill and experience than is required by any other physical signs. When one realizes that arrested cases of even advanced phthisis may reveal no adventitious sounds nor any change in percussion resonance when the lungs in a recent case of hemoptysis may appear normal and when a suspected case of incipient phthisis may undergo repeated clinical examination before any abnormality is positively identified it is evident that there is an excellent excuse for the recommendation of a certain

proportion of tuberculosis applicants. But with all due latitude for the difficulties of the latent and incipient cases the large proportion of tuberculous applicants accepted each year can be accounted for only by carelessness or inexperience on the part of the examiner. Failure to bare the chest of all clothing, a step so essential in every physical examination, is accountable for some of the cases overlooked. A quiet room and a proper light are also necessary. Often proper inspection guides our attention to the diseased areas.

In the pulmonary examination there should be percussion over at least seven different areas on each side comparing the two sides step by step above and below the clavicle and at the second intercostal space in front, in the axilla and in three areas in the back. One of the best guides to involvement of the apices is to have the applicant breathe deeply during inspection and palpation, and to note if the apices become resonant on percussion above the clavicle, thus noting whether the lung moves freely, or appears restricted by pleural adhesions. Delayed expansion over a restricted area or over one side of the chest may be detected by inspection, but is best determined by palpation. Localized diminished expansion should put the examiner on his guard that area should be examined with the greatest of care. Mensuration for determining chest expansion is a valuable aid. The tape measure should encircle the chest in the region of the third rib. The circumference of the chest is noted during quiet breathing then during the deepest expiration and again during full inspiration. The distance between deep expiration and full inspiration is considered the chest expansion.

sion. An expansion of less than two inches is pathologic. The evidences of inflammatory changes at an apex should be sought for in every case. Careful auscultation over the same areas, at least through one whole phase of respiration, should follow percussion and particular attention should be paid to the detection of râles after coughing or the prolongation of expiration. This procedure should not take over five minutes, and is certainly a reasonable requirement before an examiner should be willing to pronounce the lungs negative. A suggestive personal or family history, an elevation of temperature, a respiration rate above 20, should lead to a more minute detailed examination.

**Cardiac Examination:** The cardiovascular examination is second in importance only to the urinalysis, as a single guide to insurability. It is far easier in its essentials than a pulmonary examination and far more definite in its indications. A thickened artery, a heart murmur, a displaced apex and increased area of cardiac dullness and an abnormal blood pressure are some of the most definite clinical signs and should be positively excluded in every insurance examination.

Estimation of the pulse rate should begin the examination, 60 to 90 are the usually accepted normal limits. A pulse rate below 60 suggests increased resistance, high blood pressure and cardiac hypertrophy, above 90, after nervousness is eliminated as far as possible, one would look for evidence of hyperthyroidism or some cardiovascular weakness. After counting the rate, the examiner should gauge the vascular tension using two fingers on the radial and estimating the thickness and hardness of the artery after obliteration of

the blood stream. The tactile impression of pulse tension obtained in this way, should be confirmed by the use of the sphygmomanometer. It should be remembered that a thickening and sclerosis of the radial is apt to reflect a similar degenerative change in the cerebral vessels, aorta, heart, and kidneys.

In the cardiac examination, the physician should face the applicant who, in turn, faces a bright light. He should look for any abnormal pulsation, any bulging especially over the precordium, and any dilated veins. The apex beat should be definitely located, displacement to the left being particularly important. The visible or palpable apex should be confirmed by auscultation, and murmurs attentively listened for at the apex, second right costal cartilage, and down the left border of the sternum. Cardio respiratory and functional heart murmurs should be differentiated from organic murmurs. It is interesting to note in this connection that the experience of one company has been as unfavorable to "functional" heart murmurs as to "organic." There are undoubtedly "functional" murmurs which might be negligible in an insurance examination but the above experience shows that the tendency is to give the applicant the benefit of the doubt in a doubtful case. As attending physicians we are too apt to associate organic heart murmurs with some sign or symptom of incompetence, and as examiners, we are too prone to call "functional" a soft murmur at the apex, without appreciable hypertrophy, in a robust active young individual. If a murmur of any kind is found, it should be fully noted, and the notation supplemented by the opinion of the ex-

may reveal the low specific gravity of diabetes insipidus and interstitial nephritis, the bloody urine of pernicious malaria renal and vesical calculus tuberculosis and carcinoma of the genito-urinary tract the decomposed urine of hypertrophied prostate and cystitis, the pus of an inflammatory condition of the tract, and lastly and most important the albuminuria of febrile conditions of chronic pus absorption of arteriosclerosis or any serious toxemia etc chronic tuberculosis alcoholism etc In fact there are few serious diseases not associated with the excretion of at least a trace of albumin and the effect of any of these agents in producing albumin is increased with advancing years as the structural changes of age take place On the other hand the examiner should properly evaluate the presence of albuminuria and bear in mind that a trace of albumin minus casts in an otherwise normal urine may be of no pathologic significance The inability to find albumin because a white ring does not promptly appear when the ex-

aminer pours some urine over nitric acid or if no white cloud shows in the boiled urine after adding dilute acetic acid may be due to faulty methods of observation as he may look for the cloud from where he stands beside the table or sink at the back of the room without properly shading the test tube thereby failing to see a faint ring or cloud Unless albumin is present in large amounts such methods will not reveal its presence

**Resume** To put it tersely it must be stated that the value of a physical examination for life insurance is in direct proportion to the thoroughness and completeness of the examination The excuse for incomplete and hurried examination is usually inadequate compensation if that be true then life insurance companies get only what they pay for or very much less a circumstance to be deplored because it is unsatisfactory to all concerned Often a bad risk gets by while a very good risk because of a minor ailment is being excluded

## Malingering

Malingering is usually defined as the simulation of injury or disease where no pathologic condition is present Generally speaking there are two groups of malingers (1) In which a well person attempts to simulate illness and (2) In which an ill or defective individual tries to hide his illness or defect and attempts to pass himself off as a healthy person

(1) The malingers of group one are persons who simulate illness for a selfish motive usually for personal gain such as claiming or exaggerating injury because of an accident so as to

recover damages feigning sickness in order to collect sick benefits as excuse for not appearing in court or as an attempt to evade military service or other duties Illness or injury may often be feigned by children and adults who are desirous of eliciting sympathy In this connection it should be borne in mind that the neurotic individual who has a multiplicity of complaints about which he hollers loud and long without any apparent cause is not necessarily a malingerer and that he may have a definite basis for his complaints only that the loudness and length of his hollering

is out of proportion to the severity of the injury. This fact is quite often overlooked and the complaining person is styled a neuro or a malingerer. On the other hand hysterical or neurasthenic persons may because of being in contact with certain sick people or because of the perversity of their nervous systems attempt to exaggerate their symptoms or mimic disease consciously or unconsciously.

(2) Malingers of the second group are persons who simulate good health in order to pass life insurance examinations industrial examinations or any examination which would bar persons not in perfect health. Such malingering may be found among persons who attempt to show bravery or are ashamed to admit any deficiency or disease that they may possess. However the largest number of malingerers of group two in attempting to deny illness or injury are persons who seek life insurance sick benefit insurance industrial positions or admission to the federal or other services which pay their sick and injured (if in line of duty) a certain weekly or monthly allowance.

It is therefore of equal importance for the examiner to be able to detect the sick person who plays off as well and the well one who plays off sick.

It is often a difficult matter to separate hysteria from malingering often except for the skilled psychiatrist it is impossible. Therefore the examiner should familiarize himself with those symptoms of hysteria which cannot be simulated such as anomalies of secretion unilateral hyperidrosis salivation oliguria or, very rarely anuria without uremic symptoms in order not to be led astray by the malingerer.

The demeanor and behavior of the hysterical subject according to Jones and Llewellyn<sup>1</sup> usually give indications of his abnormal mentality. The excitability and restlessness the hurried extravagant speech the odd gesticulations the rapid muscular tremors the widely opened eyes as if frightened all combine to give a somewhat characteristic expression.

While the hysteric is usually unconscious of the unreality of his symptom the malingerer though his outward appearance may belie him is often sullen obviously suspicious and ill at ease. Though he may protest his good faith most volubly he is careful to choose his words and avoid conversational pitfalls while the hysterical subject is so anxious to make a histrionic effect and impress the examiner with the gravity and intensity of his sufferings that he takes no thought of consistency. The hysterical person revels in examination it cannot be too long or too minute the more spectators the better he is pleased he has no rooted objection to being hospitalized and for medicine and treatment he is a glutton.

The malingerer on the other hand loathes examination and if he can put off the evil day he will. During its progress he is often unconsciously wilful or sulky and if he can fasten on to something harsh in the methods or tests employed he is quick to take umbrage. He often shrinks from treatment or shirks it wholly and the certificate once gained cannot see the doctor too seldom and to hospital he will not go if he can help it.

It must be remembered that most individuals suffering from hysteria d

<sup>1</sup> Jones and Llewellyn. *Malingering*. Wm. H. Freeman, London.

play bodily stigmata which a careful physical examination with tests of sensation and reflexes will reveal and their presence supplies data on which a diagnosis may be based, while the absence of any such signs is strongly in favor of malingering.

The chief complaints of the malingerer are subjective signs only occasionally when conditions demand it or when instructed by an unscrupulous person will the malingeringer attempt to manifest objective signs. The most common subjective signs complained of are pain vertigo insomnia disturbing night dreams disturbed vision deafness anorexia indigestion fatigue (mental and physical) and various phases of sympathetic nervous disturbances.

The objective signs most frequently complained of are difficulty or inability to walk bend or perform any movements. Certain objective signs may even be brought out by the use of drugs or other agents. Among these may be noted large doses of strychnia and belladonna to cause cardiac palpitation and exaggerated reflexes various rubefacients to cause local redness so as to simulate inflammation. Irritants in the eyes may simulate iritis or corneal disease. Rupturing the ear drums with an instrument in order to simulate spontaneous rupture. Soapsuds exuding from the mouth during a feigned convulsion may simulate epilepsy. Often pre-existing conditions may be attributed to an injury as for instance hernia uterine prolapse abortion pulmonary tuberculosis pleurisy cardiac disease visceroptosis spinal cord disease bone or joint diseases etc. The examiner must therefore be on guard not only to differentiate between conditions

that may have resulted from the injury and conditions that existed prior to the injury but he should be able to determine to what degree a pre-existing condition became aggravated because of the injury.

A complete history skillfully elicited and a most careful examination may reveal to the experienced examiner the presence or absence of objective signs and thus he may be able to detect the malingeringer the exaggerator and the honest person. It must be borne in mind that not all persons claiming sick benefits or compensation for injuries are malingerers as a matter of fact the majority of claims are just a small proportion of claimants are absolutely fakers and a goodly number are exaggerators.

The confirmation of subjective signs is often difficult or impossible because the examiner cannot disprove the statement made by a patient as to headache vertigo buzzing in the ears disturbed vision etc. A headache can be felt only by the sufferer its very existence or severity is entirely a personal matter for which we have only the patient's assurance of its existence. The examiner cannot disprove the existence of a headache nor its severity. The same holds true of vertigo and of many other subjective symptoms. However a careful history taken possibly on two or three occasions close observation of the patient at various times together with a complete physical and whenever necessary certain laboratory examinations may often help to establish a correct diagnosis.

### Simulated Pains and Disabilities

Pain in the back or in the legs alleged to be due to some traumatic acci-



is out of proportion to the severity of the injury. This fact is quite often overlooked and the complaining person is styled a "neuro" or a malingerer. On the other hand, hysterical or neurasthenic persons may, because of being in contact with certain sick people, or because of the perversity of their nervous systems, attempt to exaggerate their symptoms or mimic disease consciously or unconsciously.

(2) Malingerers of the second group are persons who simulate good health in order to pass life insurance examinations, industrial examinations, or any examination which would bar persons not in perfect health. Such malingerers may be found among persons who attempt to show bravery, or are ashamed to admit any deficiency or disease that they may possess. However, the largest number of malingerers of group two in attempting to deny illness or injury are persons who seek life insurance, sick benefit insurance, industrial positions or admission to the federal or other services which pay their sick and injured (if in line of duty) a certain weekly or monthly allowance.

It is therefore of equal importance for the examiner to be able to detect the sick person who plays off as well and the well one who plays off sick.

It is often a difficult matter to separate hysteria from malingering, often except for the skilled psychiatrist, it is impossible. Therefore the examiner should familiarize himself with those symptoms of hysteria which cannot be simulated, such as anomalies of secretion, unilateral hyperidrosis, salivation, oliguria or, very rarely, anuria without uremic symptoms, in order not to be led astray by the malingerer.

The demeanor and behavior of the hysterical subject, according to Jones and Llewellyn<sup>1</sup> usually give indications of his abnormal mentality. "The excitability and restlessness, the hurried extravagant speech, the odd gesticulations, the rapid muscular tremors, the widely opened eyes, as if frightened, all combine to give a somewhat characteristic expression."

While the hysteric is usually unconscious of the unreality of his symptoms, the malingerer, though his outward appearance may belie him, is often sullen, obviously suspicious, and ill at ease. Though he may protest his good faith most volubly, he is careful to choose his words and avoid conversational pitfalls, while the hysterical subject is so anxious to make a histrionic effect and impress the examiner with the gravity and intensity of his sufferings that he takes no thought of consistency. "The hysterical person revels in examination; it cannot be too long or too minute, the more spectators, the better he is pleased, he has no rooted objection to being hospitalized, and for medicine and treatment he is a glutton."

The malingerer, on the other hand, "loathes examination and if he can put off the evil day, he will. During its progress he is often unconsciously wilful or sulky, and if he can fasten on to something harsh in the methods or tests employed, he is quick to take umbrage. He often shrinks from treatment, or shirks it wholly, and the certificate once gained cannot see the doctor too seldom, and to hospital he will not go if he can help it."

It must be remembered that most individuals suffering from hysteria dis-

<sup>1</sup> Jones and Llewellyn. *Malingering*. Wm. Heinemann, London.

play bodily stigmata which a careful physical examination with tests of sensation and reflexes will reveal and their presence supplies data on which a diagnosis may be based while the absence of any such signs is strongly in favor of malingering.

The chief complaints of the malingerer are subjective signs only occasionally when conditions demand it or when instructed by an unscrupulous person will the malingerer attempt to manifest objective signs. The most common subjective signs complained of are pain vertigo insomnia disturbing night dreams disturbed vision deafness anorexia indigestion fatigue (mental and physical) and various phases of sympathetic nervous disturbances.

The objective signs most frequently complained of are difficulty or inability to walk bend or perform any movements. Certain objective signs may even be brought out by the use of drugs or other agents. Among these may be noted large doses of strychnia and belladonna to cause cardiac palpitation and exaggerated reflexes various rubefacients to cause local redness so as to simulate inflammation. Irritants in the eyes may simulate iritis or corneal disease. Rupturing the ear drums with an instrument in order to simulate spontaneous rupture. Soapsuds exuding from the mouth during a feigned convulsion may simulate epilepsy. Often pre-existing conditions may be attributed to an injury as for instance hernia uterine prolapse abortion pulmonary tuberculosis pleurisy cardiac disease visceroptosis spinal cord disease bone or joint diseases etc. The examiner must, therefore be on guard not only to differentiate between conditions

that may have resulted from the injury and conditions that existed prior to the injury but he should be able to determine to what degree a pre-existing condition became aggravated because of the injury.

A complete history skillfully elicited and a most careful examination may reveal to the experienced examiner the presence or absence of objective signs and thus he may be able to detect the malingerer the exaggerator and the honest person. It must be borne in mind that not all persons claiming sick benefits or compensation for injuries are malingerers as a matter of fact the majority of claims are just a small proportion of claimants are absolutely fakers and a goodly number are exaggerators.

The confirmation of subjective signs is often difficult or impossible because the examiner cannot disprove the statement made by a patient as to headache vertigo buzzing in the ears disturbed vision etc. A headache can be felt only by the sufferer its very existence or severity is entirely a personal matter for which we have only the patient's assurance of its existence. The examiner cannot disprove the existence of a headache nor its severity. The same holds true of vertigo and of many other subjective symptoms. However a careful history taken possibly on two or three occasions close observation of the patient at various times together with a complete physical and whenever necessary certain laboratory examinations may often help to establish a correct diagnosis.

### **Simulated Pains and Disabilities**

Pain in the back or in the legs alluded to be due to some traumatic acci-

dent is a form of malingering frequently encountered in compensation claim work

**Back Injury** In genuine cases of back injury the lumbar column and pelvis are held motionless as far as possible as the patient endeavors to keep them in the posture which gives him the least discomfort. The following points to be noted are suggested by Jones and Llewellyn

1 Is there an absence of the unconscious normal swaying of the trunk for balance viz *rigidity*?

2 Does he bend forward with a list to one or other side?

3 Is the work cautious and groping?

4 Does he sit down gingerly and when rising place his hands on his thighs finding support at successively higher levels until he stands upright?

All these or similar automatic defensive adaptations point to fraud or at least to exaggeration. When asked to strip the examiner should have a sharp eye for any wincing when movements calculated to evoke pain are performed. Sometimes if his trousers slip to the floor and the examiner turns away and then asks the man to approach nearer he may, before starting stoop swiftly to ruse them to keep his feet from becoming entangled. Or when seated upright in a chair he may when asked to straighten his knees do so without wincing although this involves strain on the dorsal muscles and fascia.

The past history both of anything in the medical record which might suggest constitutional causes and also of the accident to which the pain is attributed should be carefully studied. In genuine traumatic cases the onset of the pain is immediate its intensity straight way excruciating. If the onset of the

pain was gradual and there is reason to believe that other causes for example foci of infection elsewhere in the body were present before the accident occurred its real cause can frequently be demonstrated. Any possibility of the ailment being of mechanical origin should necessarily be excluded. A man suffering from flat feet works under a mechanical strain and frequently his latent disability manifests itself in the form of secondary lumbar strain. As the casual static flaw is often overlooked the would be claimant is only too likely to be stigmatized offhand as a pure malingerer which is obviously unfair.

In making the physical examination the following points should be considered

1 Local swelling ecchymosis and in cases of long standing tissue induration trophic and vasomotor changes

2 Tenderness to pressure at the site of pain

3 Local muscular spasm and rigidity

4 Aggravation of the pain by active contraction or passive extension of the affected muscles

5 Impotence absolute or relative of the affected muscles

6 Correlated phenomena altered facial expression pupillary dilatation accelerated pulse rate and raised blood pressure.

A patient exhibiting these phenomena is certainly not a malingerer though he may still be exaggerating his pain and disability. Pain in the back of traumatic origin is intensified by certain movements and not by others and inconsistencies may slip out. The following ruse is sometimes of value. With the patient sitting the examiner places his hand on the thigh of the side al

leged to be affected and asks that the knee be raised against resistance. The subject on attempting to do this may say that it causes pain. The examiner should then place his hand *beneath* the thigh and tell him to depress the knee against resistance. If he now says that it causes him no pain, he is probably malingering, because in the second movement the lumbar muscles do participate in the movement so that if the case were genuine the pain would be present or even aggravated while in the first movement there would be no pain occasioned because the movement involves no strain on the lumbar muscles.

Again the malingerer being unaware of the fact that often different movements are subserved by the same muscle may be betrayed into contradictions. Thus suppose that the circumstances of the casualty and the results of the examination suggest that the lesion is in the latissimus dorsi muscle. The malingerer now, though he protests that owing to the pain he is unable to stand erect nevertheless when asked to depress and at the same time carry his raised arm backward does so without any complaint, unaware of the fact that in both these procedures the latissimus dorsi is concerned. Similarly he may plead pain on rising from a stooping posture though conscious of no disability in standing or walking. If a malingerer is told to bend forward and try to touch his toes, he may feign complete rigidity of the trunk and leaning from the ankle joints take the pose of a man preparing to dive, hoping that by suppressing the natural automatic adjustment of the body to the forward bending position he may convince the examiner of the impossibility of execut-

ing the movements of trunk flexion. Yet even if the lumbar column be stiff flexion at the level of the hip joints is still possible. The examiner should now place the subject upon his back and ascertain if his hip joints can be passively flexed. If not it is evident that the subject is at least exaggerating his disability for even if the lumbar spine be actually stiff the fixation of the hip joints is voluntary and intentional.

To ascertain the mobility of the individual lumbar segments the fingers of both the examiner's hands should be inserted between the spinous processes of the different lumbar vertebrae and the patient asked to stoop and then raise himself slowly to the erect position. In the normal column the projecting spines will be found to separate on forward flexion while they approximate to each other during extension and if this can be executed freely and painlessly there is probably nothing in the nature of structural damage at the site indicated as being painful and tender.

**Leg Injury** When the leg is the site of pain alleged to be due to trauma a careful examination of the entire extremity must be made to rule out all genuine pathologic conditions. Special sources of fallacy which lead to unfair accusations of malingering are affections of the sciatic nerve, osteoarthritis of the hip, sacro iliac strain, subgluteal bursitis, intermittent claudication, varicose veins, and the local or referred pain of flat foot, already mentioned in considering lumbar pain. Jones and Llewellyn consider the most valid evidences of the reality of pain in the leg to be based on the pupillary, sphymographic and sphymomanometric reactions obtained after the directions of

**G Bosch**<sup>1</sup> The affected limb is grasped and Lasègue's method of extension performed, the angle formed with the plane of the bed when pain is produced, being approximately noted. The performance is then repeated on the healthy limb, and during its movement the pulse is counted, the pupils noted and the cuff of the sphygmomanometer adjusted until the radial pulse is obliterated. The affected limb is now tested a second time, and the patient watched so that he cannot produce pain by other methods, such as biting the tongue. If the extension produces pain, the pupil will undergo a sharp transitory, but marked dilatation (3 to 5 centimeters). Nervous apprehension may contribute to this dilatation but if it is more marked when the affected member is extended than when the test is used on the healthy limb it is strong confirmation of the genuineness of the disability alleged. The pulse may give further confirmation so if possible, the radial pulse should be felt by an assistant in the arm upon which the sphygmomanometer cuff has been placed for if genuine pain is experienced the resulting increase in arterial pressure will cause the pulse to reappear. Care must be taken to prevent the subject from straining with a closed glottis which would cause a rise in blood pressure. Normally an increase of eight or ten beats will occur during pain and even more if the subject be neurotic. The healthy limb may be used as a control.

**Injury to the Special Senses** Malingering in regard to the special senses sight and hearing in particular if not so crudely done as to be possible of detection by the tests of ordinary examin-

ation, can usually be demonstrated only by specialists in the handling of these particular branches of medicine.

**Injury to the Head** Vertigo is an important symptom following head injuries such as fractured skull and concussion of the brain. These patients often complain of severe major symptoms lasting for a long period namely vertigo and instability, headaches weakness deafness, nervousness and a great many minor troubles. Unless these patients are found to have definite evidence of an organic neurologic condition they are placed in a class of functional disorders, namely, traumatic neurosis. Yet quite a number of these cases which are otherwise neurologically negative, show very definite evidence of organic disturbance along the vestibular pathways. The neurologic examination therefore should not be considered complete without a thorough neurotologic examination. If the examination shows definite evidence of disturbance along the vestibular pathways these findings may be of the greatest help to the neurologist in differentiating between the functional and the organic cases.<sup>1</sup>

When making a neurologic examination in these cases it is well to bear in mind the following facts: (1) Careful technic must be employed and any abnormal responses must be checked. (2) All the findings in the general examination must be correlated in the interpretation of the diagnosis not permitting the otologist to go too far in his interpretation.<sup>2</sup> (3) There is a

<sup>1</sup> Fletcher H. A. Determination of Disability as to Loss of Hearing and the Importance of Vertigo. *Trans Amer Med Assoc Sect Laryngol Otol and Rhinol* p 155 1922.

<sup>2</sup> Weisenburg T. H. Traumatic Neurosis in War and Peace. *Jour Amer Med Assoc* 73:596 Aug 23 1919.

marked neurotic element in many of these cases, even where there is no intention of malingering. Sewell<sup>1</sup> reported a case of hysteria simulating brain tumor. Even in a true traumatic neurosis "lump sum compensation will often clear up a great many of the symptoms."

**Injury Simulated by Drugs:** Particular diseases are sometimes simulated by the use of drugs. Smallpox, for example, may be simulated by the application of croton oil to the surface of the body.

Attempts to produce the effect of jaundice are sometimes made by taking large internal doses of picric acid, this may be detected by the yellow pigmentation which usually appears on the skin in patches instead of the generalized coloration of true jaundice, also the urine and stool will be stained yellow and contain picric acid.

**Alleged General Debility** When general debility is alleged the examiner may have to make a very thorough scrutiny of all the circumstances of the case before declaring that the allegation is a fraud. The pitfalls that, in the presence of such allegations, beset a hasty diagnosis of simulation, are tuberculosis, latent pleurisy, diabetes, Bright's disease, cerebral tumor, neurasthenia and ambulatory typhoid. Early tuberculosis for its exclusion needs not only careful clinical examination, but the use of x-rays, bacteriology, and if necessary, sero diagnosis. One of the very best methods of "checking up" a patient, is to weigh him at stated frequent intervals. Latent pleurisy can only be ascertained by leisureed and thorough examination. Bright's disease and dia-

betes can be readily detected by urinalysis, but if this were omitted could be easily overlooked. Without ophthalmoscopic examination, the existence of cerebral tumor may easily pass without recognition. To estimate the reality of neurasthenia, a disorder subject to fluctuations, Chavigny lays stress on "the disorders of nutrition, as evidenced by digestive and urinary derangements, periodic loss of hair, and the presence of unusual furrows as the neurasthenic is usually absorbed in his subjective symptoms and pays little attention to these objective phenomena."

### Simulated Good Health

It is often more difficult to detect the existence of disease in a person who presents himself for examination and denies ever having had any, declaring emphatically that he is perfectly well, than to expose one who is healthy and claims to be ill.

In order to pass a physical examination for life insurance or the army, a person may refuse to give a true history or will evade certain questions. An experienced examiner, however, can usually detect a degree of reticence and by skillful cross examination may elicit a fairly correct history. (SEE Industrial Examinations p 939, and Life Insurance Examination, p 946.)

Careful physical examination and laboratory tests will aid in a diagnosis, but, however skillful an examiner may be, if the applicant wishes to withhold certain information it is easy to overlook conditions such as epilepsy, gastric ulcer, cholecystitis, various gastrointestinal diseases, malaria (between paroxysms) and a host of other conditions which can be accurately diagnosed only with the cooperation of the one examined.

<sup>1</sup> Sewell. Trans Western Sect Amer Laryngol Rhinol and Otol Soc. Feb 23 1922.

G Boschi<sup>1</sup> The affected limb is grasped and Lasegue's method of extension performed the angle formed with the plane of the bed when pain is produced being approximately noted The performance is then repeated on the healthy limb, and during its movement the pulse is counted, the pupils noted and the cuff of the sphygmomanometer adjusted until the radial pulse is obliterated The affected limb is now tested a second time, and the patient watched so that he cannot produce pain by other methods, such as biting the tongue If the extension produces pain the pupil will undergo a sharp transitory, but marked dilatation (3 to 5 centimeters) Nervous apprehension may contribute to this dilatation, but if it is more marked when the affected member is extended than when the test is used on the healthy limb it is strong confirmation of the genuineness of the disability alleged The pulse may give further confirmation so if possible, the radial pulse should be felt by an assistant in the arm upon which the sphygmomanometer cuff has been placed for if genuine pain is experienced the resulting increase in arterial pressure will cause the pulse to reappear Care must be taken to prevent the subject from straining with a closed glottis, which would cause a rise in blood pressure Normally, an increase of eight or ten beats will occur during pain and even more if the subject be neurotic The healthy limb may be used as a control

**Injury to the Special Senses** Malingering in regard to the special senses sight and hearing in particular, if not so crudely done as to be possible of detection by the tests of ordinary examin-

ation, can usually be demonstrated only by specialists in the handling of these particular branches of medicine

**Injury to the Head** Vertigo is an important symptom following head injuries, such as fractured skull and concussion of the brain These patients often complain of severe major symptoms lasting for a long period namely, vertigo and instability, headaches weakness, deafness nervousness and a great many minor troubles Unless these patients are found to have definite evidence of an organic neurologic condition they are placed in a class of functional disorders, namely, traumatic neurosis Yet quite a number of these cases which are otherwise neurologically negative, show very definite evidence of organic disturbance along the vestibular pathways The neurologic examination therefore should not be considered complete without a thorough neuro otologic examination If the examination shows definite evidence of disturbance along the vestibular pathways these findings may be of the greatest help to the neurologist in differentiating between the functional and the organic cases<sup>1</sup>

When making a neurologic examination in these cases it is well to bear in mind the following facts (1) Careful technic must be employed and any abnormal responses must be checked (2) All the findings in the general examination must be correlated in the interpretation of the diagnosis not permitting the otologist to go too far in his interpretation<sup>2</sup> (3) There is<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Fletcher H A Determination of Disability as to Loss of Hearing and the Importance of Vertigo Trans Amer Med Assoc Sect Laryngol Otol and Rhinol p 155 1922  
<sup>2</sup>Weisenburg T H Traumatic Neurosis in War and Peace Jour Amer Med Assoc 73 596 Aug 23 1919

marked neurotic element in many of these cases, even where there is no intention of malingering. Sewell<sup>1</sup> reported a case of hysteria simulating brain tumor. Even in a true traumatic neurosis "lump sum compensation will often clear up a great many of the symptoms."

**Injury Simulated by Drugs** Particular diseases are sometimes simulated by the use of drugs. Smallpox for example may be simulated by the application of croton oil to the surface of the body.

Attempts to produce the effect of jaundice are sometimes made by taking large internal doses of picric acid, this may be detected by the yellow pigmentation which usually appears on the skin in patches instead of the generalized coloration of true jaundice also the urine and stool will be stained yellow and contain picric acid.

**Alleged General Debility** When general debility is alleged the examiner may have to make a very thorough scrutiny of all the circumstances of the case before declaring that the allegation is a fraud. The pitfalls that, in the presence of such allegations beset a hasty diagnosis of simulation are tuberculosis, latent pleurisy, diabetes, Bright's disease, cerebral tumor, neurasthenia and ambulatory typhoid. Early tuberculosis for its exclusion needs not only careful clinical examination but the use of x-rays, bacteriology, and if necessary, sero diagnosis. One of the very best methods of checking up a patient is to weigh him at stated frequent intervals. Latent pleurisy can only be ascertained by leisureed and thorough examination. Bright's disease and dia-

betes can be readily detected by urinalysis but if this were omitted could be easily overlooked. Without ophthalmoscopic examination the existence of cerebral tumor may easily pass without recognition. To estimate the reality of neurasthenia a disorder subject to fluctuations. Chavigny lays stress on the disorders of nutrition, as evidenced by digestive and urinary derangements, periodic loss of hair and the presence of unusual furrows as the neurasthenic is usually absorbed in his subjective symptoms and pays little attention to these objective phenomena.

### Simulated Good Health

It is often more difficult to detect the existence of disease in a person who presents himself for examination and denies ever having had any, declaring emphatically that he is perfectly well than to expose one who is healthy and claims to be ill.

In order to pass a physical examination for life insurance or the army, a person may refuse to give a true history or will evade certain questions. An experienced examiner, however, can usually detect a degree of reticence and by skillful cross examination may elicit a fairly correct history. (See Industrial Examinations p. 939 and Life Insurance Examination p. 946.)

Careful physical examination and laboratory tests will aid in a diagnosis, but however skillful an examiner may be if the applicant wishes to withhold certain information it is easy to overlook conditions such as epilepsy, gastric ulcer, cholecystitis, various gastrointestinal diseases, malaria (between paroxysms) and a host of other conditions which can be accurately diagnosed only with the cooperation of the one examined.

<sup>1</sup> Sewell. Trans. Western Sect. Amer. Laryngol. Rhinol. and Otol. Soc. Feb. 23, 1922.



The special applications of physical examination might be indefinitely extended, but enough has been said to suggest to the average practitioner some of the points which need to be covered with especial thoroughness in certain lines of

work, and the best methods of examination when the possibility of fraud arises. The actual procedure is the same for all classes of cases, and the need for accuracy, thoroughness and patience is ever apparent.

### Periodic Health Examinations

"There is nothing new under the sun" is a saying attributed to the wise King Solomon of Biblical times. Frequently, scientists may not subscribe to that dictum and point out the many recent discoveries, such as bacteria, certain rivers, continents, various planets, metals, radium gases, etc., but we must remember that all these and many more have always been in existence. They were unknown to us and the fault for not knowing was our own. Periodic health examinations, though a supposedly new form of examination, no doubt existed in earlier civilizations. To keep a person well in order to obviate the necessity of restoring him to health after illness is not a new idea. As an example of this, it may be observed that in some portions of China, they have had and still have, the very admirable custom of paying the doctor when in good health and when sick, payment stops. This of necessity should induce the physician to "check up" his patients frequently as to their health, manner of living, playing and working. If any defect is noted, while still in the incipient stage, an attempt is made to correct it. Likewise, a modification of the habits may be brought about so as to minimize strain. In modern times in order to preserve health and maintain efficiency, periodic health examinations are being advocated.

A periodic health examination may be defined as a complete physical and men-

tal examination including routine laboratory examinations given at definite intervals to persons irrespective of their state of health. In addition to this routine such special examinations and laboratory tests as may be indicated by the general examination should be performed. This type of examination is used in order to discover abnormalities in their incipency even before the patient is conscious of any symptoms and is primarily intended for the person in good health as it is assumed that the sick individual is already under the care of a physician. However, not infrequently, it is found that persons suffering from chronic ailments who are well aware of the fact, will continue at their occupations without medical care or attention until they are completely broken down.

The benefits derived from periodic health examinations depend upon two factors: (1) The thoroughness of the examination and the examiner's ability to evaluate properly the various facts obtained in the history, physical and laboratory examination, and (2) the thoroughness with which the examinee carries out the advice received.

In various clinics, both private and public, periodic health examinations are conducted by one of two general methods, either by a group of physicians, each a specialist in a particular phase of the examination or by only one physician who makes the complete exam-

ination By the former method the patient is examined successively by the various specialists the findings of these specialists are then correlated by the internist who reviews the case and advises the examinee as to the findings and also as to what measures should be instituted for the maintenance of health and efficiency or what defects should be corrected in order to regain perfect health or at least minimize the effects of the damage done and check its further progress For several reasons this method of examination is not always satisfactory The patient has to meet a number of strangers who may be either too unsympathetic or too solicitous and therefore he will not as a rule be in perfect co operation with each of the examiners also when a number of physicians examine the same patient each examiner holds himself responsible only for so much of the body as comprises his specialty and because it is often difficult to draw sharp lines of demarcation between the ending of one specialty and the beginning of another much may be overlooked

The other and better plan for periodic health examination is to have either the family physician or some other competent physician do the entire examination and if any special defect is noted requiring special study the examiner should then direct the examinee as to what to do and where to go This method is advantageous because the patient is apt to be more at ease and will therefore co operate with the examiner the examiner will maintain a greater personal interest and therefore be of greater service also there is less likelihood of major defects being overlooked Moreover the patient's mental attitude when no special mental examination is indicated can be

studied much better by one man than by a group

In order to examine the patient completely and systematically and to minimize the possibility of omission the examiner should have a special chart which he may follow when doing general health examinations

The method pursued in performing a periodic health examination does not differ from a routine careful medical examination for any other reason A complete and careful history is important then a general observation which is followed by a detailed examination of the eyes ears nose throat teeth and tongue The neck is examined for enlarged glands and pulsations the chest for expansion the breasts should be examined for masses and the lungs are examined in the usual way If there the findings are suspicious of pathology an x ray examination should be made The heart is examined for size rate type of sounds and its response to exercise The blood pressure is to be taken with a sphygmomanometer If the heart examination indicates an abnormal change an electrocardiogram should be taken The abdomen and its viscera are examined for size and position In the presence of pain or distention accompanied by prolonged digestive disturbances the gastrointestinal tract and the gallbladder should be examined by x ray and the contents of the stomach gallbladder and also the feces should be examined by laboratory means Examination of the genitalia rectum and the peripheral vascular system should be part of every examination

In other words when some abnormality in any part of the body is detected no matter how trivial it may

appear at first sight, it should be carefully studied with all the aids at our command. The examiner should not hesitate, when necessary, to have the examinee return within several days or weeks for a recheck.

The examiner should keep a comprehensive record, preferably on a record form, of all the findings at each examination so that the findings of successive examinations can be compared with those made at an earlier date.

## SECTION 15

# Laboratory Procedure

## CHAPTER XXXIII

### Urinalysis

#### The Rôle of Laboratory Examinations in Diagnosis

No matter how thorough a physical examination may be, it does not always suffice to establish a definite diagnosis, as greatly divergent conditions often present similar physical signs. In order to assist in differentiating such conditions and to aid in establishing or confirming a positive diagnosis, various laboratory methods should also be employed. For example, by physical examination alone it is difficult to determine whether a pleural, pericardial or peritoneal effusion consists of serum, blood or pus. Again in the presence of cerebrospinal disease, laboratory aid is necessary to determine the character of the spinal fluid. The condition of the urine, the blood, gastric contents, sputum, feces and other excretions and secretions often have to be carefully investigated to aid in proving or disproving a tentative diagnosis. The clinical thermometer, the x rays, the sphygmomanometer, the electrocardiograph, the polygraph, the microscope, the trocar and cannula, the exploratory needle and many other clinical appliances are adjuncts in obtaining the required data.

It is not within the scope of this book to set forth the various and intricate methods used in the examination of the bodily secretions and excretions. These methods are standardized and their technique can be found in any book on laboratory examination. Only the least complicated tests, those that can be performed by the average physician and

do not require special training in this field of medicine, will be described here. The significance of abnormal laboratory findings in various diseases will, however, be stressed, inasmuch as it is the physician's duty to interpret such findings when they are reported to him from the laboratory.

#### Method for Collecting and Examining the Urine

For accurate urinalysis a 24 hour specimen should be obtained. The results from the examination of a single specimen, while valuable, are not conclusive. A "night and morning" specimen is preferable to a single specimen, though the 24 hour specimen is the most valuable. The author gives the following instructions to his patients, when a specimen of urine is required.

**Single Specimen** The urine may be passed in a clean receptacle in the physician's office for immediate examination, or it may be passed elsewhere and collected in a perfectly clean vessel and four ounces promptly sent to the laboratory. Wide mouthed four-ounce bottles especially adapted for this purpose can be obtained at a drug store, and when possible the urine should be passed directly into the bottle.

**Night and Morning Specimen** (1) The evening specimen is to be obtained in the following manner. Empty the bladder immediately before the evening meal and discard this urine. From the urine first passed after the evening meal,  
(967)

take four ounces and note the hour when voided

2 The second specimen is obtained from the urine first passed upon arising in the morning. Note the hour when the urine was passed.

**To Obtain the Total Quantity of Urine Passed in 24 Hours** The day on which the observation is begun at a definite hour in the morning the bladder should be emptied and this urine discarded. All the urine passed afterwards is to be collected in a suitable clean dustproof receptacle and kept in a cool place and preferably toluene or chloroform added as a preservative. The following day at the same hour when the bladder was first emptied and the urine discarded the bladder is again emptied. This urine should be added to complete the total amount for 24 hours which should be expressed in ounces or cc. After the total 24 hour quantity of urine has been collected and thoroughly mixed four ounces of the mixture should be sent for examination. A label on which is written the patient's name and address, date and the time when the urine was passed should be pasted on the bottle.

**Example**—Observation begun on January 1st, at 8 A. M. The bladder is emptied at 8 A. M. this urine is discarded. The urine passed during the day and night are saved. The next morning January 2d at 8 A. M. the bladder is again emptied and this urine is added to complete the total quantity for 24 hours.

**Procedure in Urinalysis** A urinalysis is an important procedure during the course of a patient's general examination. It may be brief and consist first only of four steps:

I Determination of specific gravity and reaction

II Determination of the presence of albumin

III Determination of the presence of glucose

IV Microscopic examination of a drop of urine so as to note the presence of cells, casts and crystals

If an entirely negative result is obtained it can then be assumed that the kidneys are functioning sufficiently well. If the specimen of urine shows some abnormality in either one, two or all the tests performed then a minute chemical and microscopic examination should be undertaken in a well equipped laboratory.

### Characteristics of Normal Urine

I *Frequency of urination* in the normal individual depends upon habit and the quantity of urine present, usually it is about four or five times in 24 hours.

II *Quantity in 24 hours* is about 1500 cc or 48 ounces or approximately 65 cc or 2 ounces per hour.

III *Color* varies from light yellow to dark amber.

IV *Odor* Fresh urine is characteristically aromatic; old urine ammoniacal. Certain foods impart characteristic odors to the urine.

V *Reaction* is slightly acid ( $\text{pH} 6$ ).

VI *Albumin* is not found by the usual laboratory examination.

VII *Glucose* is not found by the usual laboratory examination.

VIII *Iodine* 25 to 75  $\mu\text{g}$  (micrograms) in 24 hours.

IX *Specific gravity* is 1.016 to 1.024 taken with any standard urinometer.

X *A slight sediment* of calcium oxalates, phosphates, etc. may be present.

## Approximate Amounts of Protein, Cells, and Cellular Structures Found in the Urinary Sediments of Normal Men

### 'THE ADDIS COUNT'

	Range	Average per 12 Hours
Red corpuscles	0-425 000	65 750
Cells	0-4 700	1 040
Leukocytes and epithelial cells	32 400-1 000 000	322,550
Protein	10-30 mg	

### TECHNIC FOR OBTAINING AN ADDIS COUNT

- 1 Liquids are restricted for 24 hours
- 2 The 12 hour night specimen is collected in a vessel containing tricresol as a preservative. The quantity of urine passed is measured and mixed
- 3 Ten cc of the urine is placed in a graduated centrifuge tube and centrifugated for about eight to ten minutes at 1500 revolutions per minute
- 4 The sediment is resuspended in a measured quantity of normal saline and a drop is placed on a hemocytometer and the number of formed elements are counted and computed according to a definite formula

The amount of the increase in the number of formed elements above the normal indicates the extent of the inflammatory process in the kidneys. It differs from the kidney function tests in that while the former determines the extent of the inflammatory process the latter indicates the amount of kidney tissue that has stopped functioning because of the inflammation.

The most abundant constituents of the urine are water, urea, and sodium chloride. The acids and bases above mentioned are combined in the urine to form salts, urates, chlorides, sulfates, phosphates, etc.

### Characteristics of Pathologic Urine

Pathologically, urination may be increased or decreased in frequency, it

## APPROXIMATE AMOUNT EXCRETED IN 24 HOURS BY A HEALTHY MALE ADULT (Hawk and Bergeim)<sup>1</sup> (Total Volume in 24 Hours 1500 cc)

Constituents	Absolute Weight	Approximate Percentage
Water	1440	96.0
Solids	60.0	4.0
Urea	35.0	2.33
Uric acid	0.75	0.05
Hippuric acid	0.7	0.05
Oxalic acid	0.015	0.001
Aromatic oxyacids	0.06	0.004
Creatinine	1.0	0.07
Thiocyanic acid (as KSCN)	0.15	0.01
Indican	0.01	0.001
Ammonia	0.65	0.04
Sodium chloride	16.5	1.1
Phosphoric acid	2.5	0.15
Total sulfuric acid	2.5	0.15
Silicic acid	0.45	0.03
Potassium (K <sub>2</sub> O)	2.5	0.15
Sodium (Na <sub>2</sub> O)	5.0	0.3
Calcium (CaO)	0.25	0.015
Magnesium (MgO)	0.30	0.02
Iron	0.005	0.0004

may contain a greater or lesser amount of all solids excreted or of any one or more of these constituents, or it may contain substances that are found only in abnormal states, e.g., albumin, glucose, various salts, etc.

**I. Frequency of Urination.** This may depend upon the quantity of urine passed; the greater the quantity the more frequent is micturition. This, however, is not always the case, often but a few drops of urine will be passed at a time, perhaps every one-half hour or even more often, depending upon the state of irritability of the bladder and urethra.

*Urination is increased in frequency in polyuria of any cause, nervous excite*

<sup>1</sup> Hawk and Bergeim, *Practical Physiology of Chemistry*, 9th Ed., P. Blakiston's Son and Co. Philadelphia.

ment disease of the spinal cord, irritation of the bladder (by inflammation, foreign body, stone, tumor, parasites), irritation of the urethra or the urinary meatus, enlarged prostate in the male, pregnancy in the female. In children it may occur reflexly because of adenoids, intestinal worms, irritable sphincter and phimosis.

*Decreased frequency of urination* is seen after profuse sweating, diarrhea, and bleeding, in oliguria or anuria, in uremia, in parenchymatous nephritis, in brain diseases, in deep coma, and it may be caused by drug poisoning, *e g*, mercuric chloride, oxalic acid, etc.

**II Quantity.** The quantity of urine passed in 24 hours varies within fairly wide limits, in health usually between 1000 to 1500 cc or two to three pints (32 to 48 ounces), *i e*,  $1\frac{1}{4}$  to 2 ounces for every hour in the 24. In disease it may be increased, diminished or absent for a number of days depending upon the condition of the secreting parenchyma of the kidney and the rapidity of the renal circulation.

*Polyuria* means increase in the quantity of urine, both the liquid and solid constituents are proportionately increased.

*Hydruria* is an increase in the watery constituents of the urine, the solids being proportionately very much diminished.

*Oliguria* is a diminution in the total quantity of urine excreted.

*Anuria* means complete suppression of urine.

*Polyuria* is found after the ingestion of large quantities of fluid (*hydruria*), as in the following diseases: Diabetes mellitus, chronic interstitial nephritis, and in disease of the kidney, diabetes insipidus (*hydruria*), in conditions attended with high blood pressure, in

hysteria and often in exophthalmic goiter, and when large exudates or transudates are being absorbed (ascites or anasarca).

Oliguria is noted in acute nephritis, in heart disease during the stage of decompensation, in low arterial tension in cirrhosis of the liver, in the presence of pyrexia and in persistent diarrhea, sweating and hemorrhage.

Anuria may occur either as a result of suspended activity of the kidneys as in mercuric chloride poisoning and uremia, or because of paralysis of the bladder such as may occur with a spinal lesion. In the latter instances the urine excreted by the kidneys accumulates in the bladder but is not expelled. This condition is easily recognized by palpating the bladder above the symphysis pubis, and is confirmed by catheterization.

**III Color.** The light or dark straw color of normal urine is due to the presence of urochrome and urobilin substances derived from biliary pigment. Acid urine is usually darker than alkaline (when fresh). In oliguria as a rule because of greater concentration the urine is darker than in polyuria. A change in the color of the urine may be the result of certain diseases, the ingestion of various foods or dyes and particularly of drugs or of various metabolic changes.

*Pale urine* is usually associated with polyuria and is often seen in cases of diabetes mellitus, diabetes insipidus and chronic interstitial nephritis, also in certain nervous affections *e g*, hysteria, epilepsy, nervous strain, and after ingestion of large quantities of liquid.

*Dark urine* is usually the result of greater concentration of solids. In febrile diseases the dark urine is caused by a



substance known as uroerythrin. It is also seen in cholera and typhus.

*Dark green or greenish yellow urine* may be caused by the presence of bile (as in obstructive jaundice) or by the ingestion of certain drugs such as phenol, santonin, salol, guaiacol, resorcin, etc.

*Pale urine with high specific gravity* is often due to the presence of glucose.

*Reddish or orange brown urine* may be caused by the presence of blood or bile or the ingestion of rhubarb, senna, tannic acid, chrysarobin, picric acid, etc.

*A yellowish tint in the urine* may be due to the presence of bile, pus, or some fatty substance; the latter two usually cause a milky appearance.

*Blood red or pink urine* is usually due to the presence of fresh blood. Pseudo-membranous or chromogenic bacteria may impart a blood red color to the urine, but the absence of red blood corpuscles in an acid urine will differentiate the second condition from the first.

*Smoky brown urine* usually results from ingestion of phenol or the various products of which phenol is a constituent. The presence of blood or its derivatives may cause the urine to assume a smoky color.

*Black urine* may be found in melanotic sarcoma, in phenol poisoning, and in alkaptonuria.

*White or opalescent urine* is due to the presence of pus, chyle, phosphates, fat globules, and ammonium urates.

*Bluish urine* is usually the result of ingesting methylene blue; a bluish colored urine has also been observed in typhoid fever.

Phosphaturia in the presence of hyp acidity will cause the urine to become *turbid when cooling* and will also pro-

duce a *white precipitate on boiling* which disappears by the addition of acetic acid.

Urine which becomes *dark on standing* usually contains resorcin, an end product of phenol ingestion. The presence of alkapton and melinogen will also cause the urine to become dark or *smoky on standing*.

**IV Odor.** The normal urinary odor of a freshly voided specimen may undergo various changes when exposed for some time to the air. Fresh urine not so exposed may possess an abnormal odor because of disease or the ingestion of certain foods. On standing the urine develops an ammoniacal odor due to the presence of free ammonia as a result of urea bacterial decomposition.

**Fresh Specimens.** Ammoniacal odor is perceptible in cystitis due to the decomposition of the urine in the bladder. *Putrid odor* results from putrefactive changes in the bladder due to pus or other albuminous substances. *Stale egg or hydrogen sulfide odor* may result from the decomposition of cystine in the urine, which is present in small amount in normal urine and is the principal sulfurized amino acid. *Sweetish or acetone odor* is often found in diabetic urine, starvation, and in acidosis. *Violet odor* may result from the ingestion of turpentine, sandalwood oil, and copaiba, asparagus, and various other articles of food impart a characteristic odor to the urine.

**V Reaction.** The reaction of a 24-hour specimen of normal urine properly preserved from bacterial decomposition is usually acid, so that *blue* litmus paper immersed into it turns red. The hydrogen ion concentration usually varies from pH 5.5 to 8.0. pH 6 may be taken as the mean acidity. Sometimes the reaction is neutral or amphoteric—turning

red litmus paper blue and blue litmus paper red. Rarely it is alkaline—turning red litmus paper blue.

The reaction of freshly voided urine depends largely upon the stage of digestion and the kind of food ingested, and also upon the condition of the urinary tract. The acid reaction of normal urine is due to acid salts, chiefly acid sodium phosphate and not to free acids, because the phosphoric, uric and hippuric acids are combined respectively as phosphates, urates and hippurates. During digestion, the urine is alkaline except in pernicious anemia and other diseases in which achlorhydria is present. As a general rule gastric hyperacidity produces alkaline urine and gastric hypoacidity—as after fasting or because of organic disease—will produce acid urine.

The urine of herbivorous animals and vegetarians whose food has an excess of alkaline salts and organic acids like tartaric, citric, malic, etc., will be rendered alkaline by the oxidation into carbonates of the acid salts. Carnivorous animals and those indulging in much meat or proteins will secrete a highly acid urine.

*Increased acidity of urine* may be caused by the following: (a) The ingestion of acids (those which are not oxidized to carbonic acid, *e.g.*, the mineral and aromatic acids), (b) fevers, (c) inflammations of the liver, (d) acute articular rheumatism, (e) lithemia, (f) diabetes, (g) uric acid diathesis, (h) after violent exercise.

*Alkaline urine* may be caused by (a) Bacterial decomposition, (b) alkaline fermentation of urine in the urinary tract, (c) retention of urine in the bladder, (d) the constant presence of residual urine in the bladder, (e) chlorosis, (f) general debility, (g) when rapid

absorption of exudates or transudates is taking place (the alkaline salts are excreted in the urine), (h) the admixture of alkaline secretions, *i.e.*, blood or pus from the urinary tract with the urine, (i) the presence of cystitis or urethritis, (j) abnormal condition of gastric digestion, (k) ingestion of acid fruits.

If the alkalinity of the urine is due to free ammonia (indicating decomposition) and not to alkaline salts, a strip of red litmus paper when held near the surface of the urine will turn blue without being immersed, or a glass rod dipped in hydrochloric acid and held over the surface of the urine will produce white fumes of ammonium chloride.

**VI Specific Gravity.** The specific gravity of a normal 24 hour urine usually ranges between 1.016 and 1.024. It indicates the quantity of solids held in suspension. Single specimens of normal urine may vary from 1.008 to 1.030 or over, depending upon the quality and quantity of food and water ingested and upon the amount of liquids consumed. After copious sweating or severe diarrhea the urine is more concentrated and exhibits a higher specific gravity. In polyuria, because of low concentration the specific gravity is low, often only 1.005. Polyuria and high specific gravity may indicate glucose or an excess of urea.

*Significance of Specific Gravity.* Low specific gravity may occur in (a) Diabetes insipidus, (b) chronic interstitial nephritis, (c) cachexia (because of poor metabolism), (d) preuremic states (concentration of solids in the blood because of failure of kidney function), (e) amyloid disease of the kidney, (f) during convalescence from acute nephritis and from acute fevers, (g) after ether anesthesia, (h) after hyster-

cal seizures, (1) after excessive drinking of malt and spirituous liquors

*High specific gravity* may occur in (a) Diabetes mellitus (associated with polyuria), (b) excess of urea or sodium chloride, (c) acute nephritis, (d) chronic parenchymatous nephritis, (e) during the crisis of acute fevers (f) after severe sweating diarrhea and vomiting, (g) after ingesting rich foods

**Methods of Determination** In order to get fairly accurate data of the specific gravity of the urine a sufficient quantity to fill a urinometer cylinder is obtained. The cylinder containing the urine is placed upon a level shelf or table and a urinometer (hydrometer) is floated in the cylinder. The level to which the stem of the urinometer sinks (reading from below upward) is the approximate specific gravity. If a freshly voided specimen is to be examined and the quantity is insufficient to float the urinometer the urine may be diluted with a known proportion of distilled water and the specific gravity thus obtained is then calculated so that the specific gravity of the specimen is ascertained.

**The Method of Estimating Total Solids Vierordt's Factor** The solids excreted in one liter of urine may be approximated in grams by multiplying the last two figures of the specific gravity by 2.2337 grams.

**Long's Coefficient** Multiply the last two figures of the specific gravity of the urine by 2.6. The result will represent the number of grams of solids in 1000 cc of urine.

**Trapp's Formula** The last two figures of the specific gravity are multiplied by 2; the results represent the proportion of solids in one liter of urine. *Example* If the specific gravity is 1.022 22 times

2 equals 44. Hence there are 44 parts of solids per 1000 cc of urine.

**Bird's Formula** The last two figures of the specific gravity represents about the number of grains of solids in a fluid ounce of urine. *Example* A specific gravity of 1.022 would contain about 22 grains of solids to the ounce of urine.

**VII Sediments and Their Significance in the Urine** Urine when allowed to remain in a vessel undisturbed for some time will usually throw down a precipitate. For laboratory examination the urinary sediments are obtained by centrifugating the specimen. The sediment may contain the normal organic and inorganic constituents and pathologic substances: i.e. shreds epithelial cells blood corpuscles bacteria casts albumin etc.

A 'brick dust' sediment in the urine which disappears on heating is usually due to free urates and uric acid.

A white flocculent precipitate not dissolved by heat but soluble on the addition of dilute acetic acid is due to calcium and magnesium phosphates (basic phosphates).

A slight deposit not soluble in dilute acetic acid heat or ammonia but soluble in hydrochloric acid when heated may be due to oxalates (readily confirmed by microscope).

## Constituents of the Urine and Their Clinical Significance

**Urea** This is the principal end product of protein metabolism. It is the most abundant constituent of the organic solids excreted by the kidneys. The normal daily excretion for an adult averages from 30 to 35 grams depending primarily on the quantity of protein in the diet. Thus in an average diet containing 120 grams of protein a day the urea excretion would be about 30 grams.

On a low protein diet of 50 grams per day the urea excretion may be 8 to 10 grams Denis and Borgstrom in 1924 completed a three year study in New Orleans, and found that 233 male medical students showed a daily urea excretion of about 20 grams

*Increased urea in the urine* is seen in (a) Increased protein intake, (b) fevers especially on loss of weight, (c) after pregnancy, (d) during parturition, (e) after drinking large quantities of beer or water

*Decreased urea* seen in (a) Low protein intake, (b) reduced elimination, (c) pregnancy, (d) convalescence (gain in weight), (e) disease of the liver

In recent years the practical information available for diagnostic purposes from chemical analyses of the blood is supplanting the quantitative determination of some of these constituents in the urine This subject is considered in detail under the heading of Blood Chemistry (SEE p 1007)

**Uric Acid** This name is a misnomer because it is not a typical acid, that is it does not ionize to any extent and is almost completely insoluble in water Its salts are, however, soluble in water

*Increased elimination* of uric acid may occur (a) After the ingestion of large quantities of nitrogenous food (liver, kidneys brain), (b) in gout, (c) in acute articular rheumatism, (d) in leukemia and (e) after exercise

*Decreased elimination* is seen in (a) Those living on a vegetable diet, (b) in nephritis, (c) in lead poisoning, and (d) in chlorosis

**Chlorides** Sodium chloride is the most abundant of all the *inorganic constituents* excreted by the kidneys and is second in quantity only to urea The quantity passed in the urine in 24 hours

varies from 10 to 16 grams, or approximately one per cent The chlorides in the urine are derived from two sources (1) Principally from the food and (2) a small quantity from the process of catabolism of the tissues

*Increased chlorides in the urine* occur (a) As a result of ingestion of sodium and potassium chloride, (b) during the absorption of exudates, (c) in diabetes insipidus, (d) during the stage of convalescing from fevers, (e) after the crisis in lobar pneumonia, (f) after epileptic seizures, (g) in the afebrile stage of intermittent fever, (h) after chloroform anesthesia, and (i) after drinking large quantities of water

*Decreased chlorides in the urine* usually occur After strenuous exercise and in the presence of nephritis with edema in febrile diseases, in starvation, in cachexia, in diarrhea, during the formation of exudates and transudates, in nephrosis, in anasarca and in acute atrophy of the liver

An increase in the output of chlorides in the urine during the course of a febrile disease indicates an improvement A diminished output of chlorides in non febrile disorders points to a serious condition (Sahli) The value of chloride determinations in the urine is limited In central pneumonia where physical signs are lacking or doubtful a great decrease in the chlorides affords corroborative evidence of some value The qualitative test usually suffices for this purpose, a known normal urine being used as a control

**Phosphates** From 2 to 3 grams of phosphoric acid in the forms of sodium calcium and magnesium phosphate are excreted in 24 hours the greater part coming from the ingested food

*Increased Output of Phosphates in the Urine occurs* (a) During convalescence from acute fevers, (b) in diabetes mellitus, (c) in diabetes insipidus (d) in leukemia (e) in phosphatic diabetes (Anders and Boston), (f) in bone disease, and (g) after the administration of such drugs as alcohol chloral or chloroform vegetable acids and the bromides and (h) recently it has been shown that in violent exercise, mental strain anxiety and after hot baths the phosphate parallels the increase in acid excreted

*Decreased excretion of phosphates* is principally observed in nephritic acidosis and must be confirmed by determining the phosphorus and  $\text{CO}_2$  content of the blood plasma or serum Any marked and persistent phosphate retention is a bad prognostic sign

**Sulfates** The normal 24 hour specimen of urine should contain from 2 to 3 grams (30 to 45 grains) of sulfate combined in two groups (1) The mineral inorganic or preformed sulfates occurring as sodium and potassium sulfate and (2) the organic conjugate or ethereal sulfates occurring as phenol potassium sulfate skatoxyl potassium sulfate and indoxyl potassium sulfate (indican) In a 24 hour specimen the amount of inorganic sulfates is to the organic as 10 to 1 The quantity of sulfates in the urine is influenced to a large extent by the amount of protein food ingested and by the extent of tissue destruction that is taking place

*Increase of sulfates in the urine* may occur in those who indulge in too rich a protein diet and also in the following conditions (a) Acute febrile disease (b) meningitis (c) acute myelitis (d) progressive muscular atrophy (e) diabetes mellitus (f) diabetes insipidus

(g) eczema (h) myeloid leukemia (i) in wasting diseases such as carcinoma of the esophagus (j) The ingestion of drugs such as salicylates bromides the coal tar products and morphine also have a tendency to increase the phosphates in the urine Anders and Boston point out a feature of clinical importance Namely whenever the percentage of hydrochloric acid is lessened in the stomach the ethereal sulfates are increased in the urine consequently an increase is present in gastric fermentation

*Decreased sulfates in the urine* occur in those who exist largely on a vegetable diet The condition is also seen after diarrhea in depleting conditions and when the gastric juice is found to contain an excess of lactic and butyric acid The sulfate excretion is always decreased in the slowing up of metabolic activity

**Sulfur** Loosely combined sulfur in the urine is found in bone disease (myelomata) with associated albuminuria

**Indican** (Indoxyl potassium sulfate) In normal urine this substance occurs only as a trace 4 to 20 mg in 24 hours A high meat diet causes an increase and a carbohydrate diet a decrease An excess of indican in the urine (*indicanuria*) occurs (a) As a result of intestinal putrefaction (b) in carcinoma of the stomach or other diseases of the stomach associated with an absence of hydrochloric acid (c) in peritonitis (d) chronic and acute obstruction of the bowels or any condition that slows or stops intestinal peristalsis (e) acute infectious disease (f) pulmonary gangrene (g) gangrene of the extremities (h) emphysema (i) puerperal sepsis (j) typhoid fever (k) ob

structive jaundice, (l) intestinal parasites (*Diphyllobothrium latum*), and (m) in oxaluria

**Oxalates** The daily normal quantity excreted in the urine is about 15 to 20 mg. Because of its insolubility (one part of calcium oxalate requires 500 000 parts of water), a deposit of oxalate crystals in the urine on standing does not always indicate oxaluria. Such a deposit may be due to the ingestion of certain vegetables and fruits, *e g*, cabbage, carrots, spinach, tomatoes, string beans, onions, celery, asparagus, rhubarb, apples and grapes. The imperfect oxidation of carbohydrates will cause an increase in the excretion of oxalic acid. Increased oxalates in the urine when not caused by the food ingested, may be due to an oxaluric diathesis, dyspepsia, debility, gout, lithemia, so-called neurasthenia, chronic skin diseases, constipation and may occur in the extremes of life (children and aged) and in hemophilia. Gormandizing and lack of exercise are two very important factors in the production of oxaluria.

**Creatinine** This is a normal constituent of urine, averaging from 1 to 1.5 grams in 24 hours, the exact amount depending upon the food intake and, in the opinion of Shafer, also on the muscular metabolism.

The creatinine content of urine is said to be increased in typhoid fever, typhus, tetanus and pneumonia and decreased in anemia, chlorosis, paralysis, muscular atrophy and in advanced degeneration of the kidneys.

**Creatine** A small amount of this substance may be found in normal adult urine. It is increased in normal children, and in malnutrition, exophthalmic goiter, Addison's disease, and pregnancy. It is decreased in hypothyroidism. The nor-

mal ratio between creatine and creatinine is 1:10. In hypothyroidism it is 1:8 or 1:5. In hyperthyroidism it is 1:1.5 or 1:20.

**Hippuric Acid.** This is possibly formed by the liver from glycine and benzoic acid and is excreted by the kidneys. The average quantity eliminated in 24 hours is from 0.7 to 1.0 gram (10 to 15 grains). This amount may be increased by a vegetable diet particularly rich in benzoic acid (prunes, cranberries, bilberries, green gages). The ingestion of benzoic acid markedly increases the output of hippuric acid. It is decreased in certain nephropathies and particularly in certain liver diseases. (See Liver Function Tests p. 1040).

**Cystine.** A trace of this substance is found in normal urine. It is increased in phosphorus poisoning and acute yellow atrophy of the liver. Chronic cystinuria may be a congenital anomaly of metabolism. There are instances recorded where several members of the same family have been thus affected. Cystinuria is due to the inability of the body to catabolize sulfurized amino acids to sulfates and neutral sulfur.

### **Albumin and Tests for Albuminuria**

Albuminuria may be renal or extrarenal (accidental).

**Renal albuminuria** occurs as a result of some changes in the epithelial cells of the kidneys which render them abnormally pervious to the proteins of the blood. **Accidental or extrarenal albuminuria** is caused by contamination of normal urine with pus, blood or chyle. Renal albuminuria is usually associated with tube casts and is found in all forms of nephritis.

Albuminuria is a sign which should never be allowed to pass unnoticed be-

cause the presence of albumin in the urine in quantities sufficient to be detected by the usual clinical laboratory methods generally indicates disease of the kidneys. The significance of albuminuria in kidney conditions depends upon the quantity of albumin and other urinary findings *e g* specific gravity quantity in 24 hours casts blood etc. The patient's history and the data obtained by physical examination and chemical analysis of the blood are also to be taken into consideration when the significance of albuminuria is to be determined.

Albumin in the urine as has just been mentioned may occur as a result of increased permeability of the renal epithelium of both the glomeruli and tubules permitting the blood proteins to pass into the urine or because of disease of the renal epithelium which not only permits greater permeability but also causes a certain amount of inflammation or degeneration of the kidney substance.

Albuminuria is found in the various kidney lesions in certain diseases of the blood in cardiac decompensation in fevers in toxemias and in poisoning by certain drugs in local inflammations of the genitourinary tract and at times in apparently healthy individuals.

**Functional or Transient Albuminuria** This is a term applied to a condition in which the occasional finding of albuminuria is the only symptom the person is apparently healthy and is feeling well and on careful examination does not present any evidence of pathology. It seems hardly believable that a perfectly normal kidney should manifest abnormal permeability particularly so when one realizes that kidney function may be reduced to at least 50 per cent

without showing clinical evidence of disturbed function. This is often noted when one kidney is removed the remaining kidney if well carries on normal function. However transient albuminuria does exist and it is found frequently during the period of puberty or adolescence particularly in weak and anemic children. In apparently healthy adults albuminuria may be found after exercise after cold baths and during digestion also on change of posture from the recumbent to the erect and is usually manifested on arising in the morning. Spinal curvature especially lordosis also has a tendency to cause albuminuria.

The diagnosis of transient albuminuria is based upon the occasional presence of albuminuria the urine in all other respects being normal and the patient presenting no other abnormality.

The *albuminuria of fatigue* which occurs intermittently and is slight in amount appears only after prolonged fatiguing exercise such as hiking running horseback riding etc and generally disappears with rest. This may be associated with casts.

The *digestive albuminurias* are those which arise or become accentuated during the process of digestion whether the subjects be dyspeptic enteritic or apparently normal. The relationship of cause to effect can be established only by repeated fractional analysis of gastric juice withdrawn at various stages of digestion every precaution being taken to eliminate orthostatic albuminuria.

The *cyclic albuminurias* are those appearing in a cyclic manner at certain periods of the day generally between 1 and 3 P M. According to Teissier and Pavy they seem to be dependent upon

some degree of insufficiency (or debility) of the liver and kidneys

In *orthostatic albuminuria* the standing posture is the sole necessary and sufficient factor of the albuminuria which passes off when the subject reclines. It is especially frequent in childhood.

The *intermittent and minimal type of albuminuria* well described by its name is a slight (0.1 to 0.2) and intermittent albuminuria which appears and disappears without any sort of periodicity independent of all fatigue, digestive process or body posture; this constitutes according to Sajous the most cryptogenic of all the forms of albuminuria.

Malingers may mix normal urine with egg white or other albuminous substances in order to claim albuminuria or they may inject albuminous substance per urethra into the bladder. When malingering is suspected several specimens of urine are to be examined at various times. In the presence of normal blood chemistry and in the absence of tube casts or of blood or pus albuminuria may be disregarded.

**Toxic Albuminuria.** This is a condition in which the renal epithelium is disturbed either (1) by a toxic substance produced within the body or (2) by a poison introduced into the body from an outside source.

1 *Toxic substances originating in the body* may cause mild or severe kidney disturbance depending upon the type of toxin, the quantity and the length of time the toxin has been in operation.

Albuminuria of pregnancy is an example of toxic albuminuria; care must be taken to differentiate a true albuminuria of pregnancy from a preexisting nephritis or pyelitis. The history of normal urine, normal blood pressures

and the absence of edema before pregnancy and the gradual oncoming of these symptoms with increasing severity as pregnancy advances is of diagnostic importance. A study of the other urinary findings such as pus, casts and blood in the urine and the determination of kidney function as well as a study of the blood chemistry are of both prognostic and diagnostic value.

Diabetes, chronic constipation, acute and chronic inflammations and suppurations, acute febrile diseases and many chronic diseases may during their course present albuminuria. The severity of the albuminuria is necessarily dependent upon the amount of toxemia produced and its action upon the kidneys. In all forms of toxic albuminuria, irrespective of their severity, the albuminuria will disappear when the underlying cause is removed, providing no permanent damage was done to the kidney structures.

2 *The ingestion of poisons* either by mouth, hypodermically, absorption through the skin or by inhalation may cause a temporary strain upon the kidneys with the resultant albuminuria. If no permanent kidney damage is effected the albuminuria will disappear when the toxic substances are eliminated from the system. During the time that the toxins are operative it is often impossible to differentiate between a true nephritis and a toxic nephritis because in severe cases of both varieties there may be urinary retention, large quantities of albumin, many casts of all types and the blood may reveal retention of nitrogenous products. The final diagnosis in such cases can only be made after the disease has run its full course; thus a *post hoc propter hoc* reasoning is adopted. If the kidney symptoms are cleared up on the recovery of the patient



the albuminuria was apparently due to a temporary or functional derangement therefore a toxic nephritis and if on the other hand the kidney symptoms remain after the patient has apparently recovered from the primary disease it is taken as evidence of true nephritis

**Albuminuria in Nephritis** In the various nephritides albuminuria is a prominent symptom. The quantity of albumin varies with the type of kidney lesion a diagnosis of a definite type of nephritis however cannot be made by considering only the quantity of albumin present in the urine. Other urinary findings kidney function tests blood chemistry data and a physical examination of the patient are necessary for the determination of the precise kidney lesion

**Acute Diffuse Nephritis** In this type of kidney lesion the 24 hour output of urine is greatly diminished ranging from 100 to 500 cc. The urine is dark in color and often contains blood. The specific gravity is high *albumin occurs in large amounts* and all types of casts (*i.e.* hyaline granular and bloody) are present in great abundance. The blood chemistry reveals retention of urea nitrogen nonprotein nitrogen creatinin uric acid and chlorides

The patient generally runs a febrile course is very edematous and usually anemic

**Chronic Nephritis** Two main groups of chronic nephritis are to be considered from the standpoint of urinary findings particularly of albumin

1 *Chronic parenchymatous or chronic tubular nephritis or chronic nephritis with edema and salt retention* In this type of nephritis the quantity of urine excreted in 24 hours is scanty the specific gravity is high. Albumin is pres-

ent in large quantities as are also all varieties of tube casts. The blood chemistry reveals retention of chlorides and as a rule no nitrogen retention unless the condition is a diffuse nephritis when evidence of retention of nitrogenous products may be found

2 *Chronic interstitial or chronic glomerular nephritis or chronic nephritis with hypertension and nitrogen retention and without edema or salt retention*

In this type of nephritis the quantity of urine passed in 24 hours is large the urine is light in color of low fixed specific gravity and contains but a *trace of albumin* and only a few hyaline and granular casts. The blood chemistry reveals retention of uric acid urea nitrogen nonprotein nitrogen creatinin and no salt retention. The patient is as a rule not edematous the blood pressure is high and there is a tendency toward uremia

**Albuminuria of Passive Congestion** *Passive congestion* of the kidneys secondary to cardiac decompensation will usually present a fairly large quantity of high colored urine of high specific gravity containing a large amount of albumin and many casts of all types. On physical examination it will be found that the patient is essentially a cardiac sufferer and that the albuminuria is probably secondary to disease of the cardiovascular system. It is however often difficult to differentiate definitely between cardiac decompensation *per se* and cardiorenal vascular disease

**Albuminuria of Nephrosis (Epstein)** Nephrosis when uncomplicated by nephritis usually presents a very pale and very much edematous young person with hypotension and low basal metabolism whose excretion of urine is scanty and of moderately high specific

gravity, containing an abundance of albumin and globulin, the latter being nearly twice as great in quantity as the albumin. Casts are usually present in large numbers but only of the hyaline and granular varieties, and blood casts are conspicuous by their absence. In the early stages of this affection, the blood chemistry reveals chloride and cholesterol retention and practically normal nitrogenous end product values.

*Albuminuria* is also found in local inflammation or injury to the kidney substance, the ureter, the bladder or the urethra. The presence of blood in the urine as a result of injury anywhere along the genitourinary tract or contamination during menstruation will give a positive albumin reaction. The nature of the albuminous substance may be determined by tests for hematuria.

**Tests to Detect Albumin in the Urine.** Minute quantities of albumin are probably present in normal urine since urine always contains a variable number of cellular elements derived from the urinary tract. Occasionally a specimen of urine containing such a slight trace of albumin is to escape detection may show a number of casts. It is therefore unsafe to depend only upon chemical examination. The quantity of albumin present in normal urine is so minute that it requires a most delicate test to show its presence. The usual clinical tests for albuminuria fail to detect these minute quantities but are nevertheless sufficiently accurate to determine albumin for clinical purposes. Of these tests two are most important and also the simplest to perform: (a) Heat and acetic acid test and (b) cold nitric acid test or its modifications. When in doubt as to their accuracy, the more delicate tests may be employed.

(a) **Heat and Acetic Acid Test.** Fill an ordinary clean test tube (preferably pyrex) two thirds full of urine, heat the upper part of the test tube on a slow flame (hold the tube by the lower end) to boiling. If a white precipitate forms in the boiling urine, add 5 or 6 drops of 3 per cent acetic acid solution. If the white precipitate persists or becomes more dense it indicates albumin and if the precipitate disappears on the addition of dilute acetic acid it indicates calcium phosphate or carbonate. Copal, turpentine, benzoin etc. may on boiling cause a cloud which is readily dissolved in alcohol.

(b) **Cold Nitric Acid or Roberts' Solution Test.** (Roberts' solution consists of nitric acid, one part, saturated solution of magnesium sulfate nine parts). Pour a small quantity of nitric acid or Roberts' solution in a test tube and allow some urine to flow slowly down along the inner side of a test tube so that it forms a layer above the acid. If at the point of contact between the acid and urine a white ring is formed it is indicative of albumin.

*Boston's modification* simplifies this procedure. About one inch of urine is drawn up in a clear pipet. The upper end of the pipet is closed with the index finger to prevent the urine from spilling. It is then inserted in a bottle containing nitric acid or Roberts' solution. When the acid has reached above the level of the urine the finger is removed so that the acid enters the tube. The index finger is again applied to the upper end of the pipet and it is thus withdrawn from the bottle. In the presence of albumin a white ring is visible at the point of contact between the urine and nitric acid.

**Fallacies to be Avoided.** (1) *Refractometer.* If the patient is taking copal or similar

drugs enough of the resin may be excreted in the urine to form a diffuse white cloud above the nitric acid. Therefore the nitric acid test should be checked up by the heat test in all cases of suspected albuminuria.

(2) *Albumosus* These generally occur in association with albumin; should they occur alone the ring formed at the junction of the urine and nitric acid will disappear with warming to reappear on cooling and there will be no cloud with the heat test.

(3) *Bence Jones' Albumose* This occurs without albumin in cases of multiple myeloma and gives a white ring with nitric acid that disappears on warming to reappear on cooling; with the heat test a dense cloud appears when the urine is heated to about 60° C and disappears on further heating to the boiling point.

(4) *Nuclcoalbumin* The ring formed by the nitric acid test is not in contact with the nitric acid but is higher up and diffuse; there may be real difficulty in differentiating it from albumin because both are precipitated by acetic acid and may therefore give a haze with the boiling test (SEE p 980 Boston's Modification).

(5) *Urates* These may form a cloud when in contact with nitric acid; if the urine is very concentrated the cloud will disappear on gentle warming and reappear on cooling so that it may also be mistaken for albumose; this mistake may be avoided by diluting the urine with plain water before the nitric acid test is employed.

(6) *Urea Nitrate* If the urine contains a large percentage of urea a crystalline deposit of urea nitrate may form at the nitric acid urine junction; as a rule the crystalline nature of the ring is

obvious on inspection but in case of doubt the urine should be diluted and the test repeated.

It does not matter which one of the tests is most relied upon for the detection of albumin when the result is negative but before a positive deduction that a specimen of urine contains albumin is drawn both the boiling and acetic acid and the cold nitric acid test should be positive.

### *Glycosuria (Sugar in the Urine) and Tests for Glycosuria*

Reducing sugars may be found in quantities up to 0.2 per cent in urines of perfectly normal individuals and even up to 0.3 per cent in concentrated urines (sp gr 1.025 or above) therefore when glycosuria is demonstrated qualitatively a quantitative test should be made in order to determine the exact amount present. Also a blood sugar test and occasionally a glucose tolerance test should be done so as to determine whether the glycosuria is the result of hyperglycemia or due only to a lowered kidney threshold for glucose.

Glycosuria is a prominent sign in diabetes mellitus. When glycosuria is constant on a mixed diet diabetes mellitus may be inferred but it should be confirmed by determining the blood sugar concentration or by a sugar tolerance test. In diabetes glycosuria may be accompanied by polyuria, urine of high specific gravity, hyperglycemia, excessive appetite and thirst, emaciation and weakness.

*Transient glycosuria* may occur in the obese and in individuals undergoing prolonged mental stress as is evidenced by the frequency of these findings in students at examination time.

*Alimentary glycosuria* may follow the consumption of large quantities of sugars and starches

*Temporary glycosuria* is observed during convalescence from acute febrile diseases such as typhoid fever influenza scarlet fever measles and pneumonia or diseases of the meninges brain and spinal cord

*Renal glycosuria* shows persistently the presence of glucose in the urine and is not accompanied by hyperglycemia The determination of the respiratory quotient and a sugar tolerance test are essential in differentiating this condition from diabetes mellitus

*Cerebral Glycosuria* In the presence of certain types of cerebral tumors in cerebral hemorrhage in acromegaly in some of the encephalopathies and in some types of meningitis glycosuria may be a constant finding Glycosuria may also occur in thyrotoxicosis adenoma of the adrenals pancreatic tumors and during pregnancy

**Tests for Sugar** The tests most generally employed to determine the presence of sugar in the urine are Fehling's and Benedict's tests the fermentation test and the Galatest

**Benedict's Test** Place 5 cc of Benedict's solution in a test tube with eight to ten drops of urine Boil thoroughly and allow to cool spontaneously If glucose be present the entire body of the solution will show a precipitate ranging from green to red in color according to the sugar content of the urine In the absence of sugar the solution remains quite clear or shows only a faint bluish turbidity

**Fehling's Test** Fehling's solution is ordinarily readily purchasable

To about 5 cc of hot Fehling's solution add a few drops of urine heat and

continue adding urine a few drops at a time until there are equal quantities of urine and Fehling's solution The presence of sugar will be indicated by a red or yellow precipitate If in doubt allow the tube to stand and any sugar present will precipitate to the bottom of the tube

**Fermentation Test** If the result of either of the foregoing tests is doubtful it should be confirmed by a *fermentation test* Special fermentation tubes or ordinary test tubes may be used Mix the urine to be examined with a sixteenth of a cake of fresh compressed yeast and place in one tube Fill a second tube control with normal urine or water mixed with a like amount of yeast The two tubes are placed in an incubator or kept at room temperature If glucose be present gas will form in the upright of the fermentation tube this manifestation being valuable however only when no gas forms in the normal urine If ordinary test tubes are used the openings must be immersed in a beaker of the same urine which each contains the opening being downward

**Galatest** This method is a fairly reliable convenient and rapid method for qualitative determination of sugar in the urine A small quantity of Galatest powder is placed upon a piece of white paper and one drop of urine is dropped onto the powder A positive reaction constitutes an instantaneous change of color from white to gray or black

The greater the concentration of sugar in the urine the darker is the color reaction the range being from 0.2 per cent to 1 per cent or more

**Caution** The powder is extremely caustic it is a bismuth compound in an alkaline medium (caustic soda)

**Lactosuria** This is frequently found during pregnancy and lactation and

more readily identified by its osazone crystals.

**Pentosuria:** This may accompany glycosuria; opium habitués frequently show pentosuria. Pentose does not ferment, and forms typical osazone crystals.

**Osazone Crystals:** These are obtainable when urine containing sugar is heated in the presence of phenylhydrazine and acetic acid.

For Sugar Tolerance Tests see p. 1012

### *Acetone and Diacetic Acid*

Acetone and diacetic acid when occurring together in abundance in a diabetic person are a danger signal requiring active treatment. Acetone or diacetic acid may be present in minute amounts in the normal 24-hour urine but is increased in carbohydrate starvation. Its presence in larger quantities indicates some metabolic disturbance. However, it must be remembered that in diabetes complicated with impermeable kidneys, acetone must be tested for in the blood. Generally, the strong acetone odor on the breath is unmistakable.

"A differential diagnosis is sometimes necessary between uremic and diabetic coma, as ketosis may occur for some incidental reason in a nephritic patient. Tests for betaoxybutyric acid are scarcely practicable, therefore qualitative reactions for acetone and acetoacetic (diacetic) acid are used. Quantitative determinations of acetone bodies are not needed for practical purposes even in diabetes" (F. M. Allen).

**Gerhardt's Test for Acetoacetic Acid:** The simplest way of performing this test is to layer a few cubic centimeters of ferric chloride solution (about 10 per cent strength), under a somewhat larger quantity of urine in a test tube.

The pale precipitate of phosphates does not hinder the recognition of the true reaction which is a color ring of Burgundy red, ranging from a faint tint to almost black. Some crude idea of the degree of the ketonuria is thus obtained but all attempts at even approximate quantitative calculations are fallacious.

The administration of drugs, especially salicylates, antipyrin and other coal-tar products, will give false reactions. The color given by the drugs is often atypical, but the distinction is best made by boiling the urine a few minutes and repeating the test after cooling. The false reaction remains present but the true acetoacetic acid is quickly changed into acetone by heat, so that the test after boiling is negative.

**Rothera Test:** Pour a small quantity of urine in a test tube and add a large excess of ammonium sulfate crystals; a few drops of fresh five per cent sodium nitroprusside solution, and finally a few drops of ammonia water. Through all these steps the tube should be shaken to maintain a full saturation with ammonium sulfate, and some crystals should still remain at the bottom at the end of the process. A positive reaction consists in a permanganate color, ranging from the palest perceptible tint to almost black. It is necessary to wait almost five minutes to make sure that the maximum intensity of color is developed. Quantitative judgment is based upon the quickness with which the color develops as well as its intensity. For economy, when numerous tests are performed it is satisfactory to use only two or three drops of nitroprusside solution with a few drops of urine in a very small test tube and one or two drops of ammonia. A fresh nitroprusside solution means one possessing its original red color, which

If the pus flows intermittently it is more likely to be caused by suppurative or surgical kidney, with abscesses of considerable size. A coexisting cystitis causes the urine to assume the cystitic type, and also suggests the possibility of an ascending renal infection. Ureteral catheterization may determine beyond doubt the presence or absence of pyelitis.

#### (e) Outside Sources of Pyuria

Certain suppurative foci may rupture into the urinary tract (almost invariably into the bladder), usually due to salpingitis, simple or tuberculous, but also arising from an abscess of the ovary or extrauterine pregnancy, suppurating ovarian or dermoid cyst, and psoas or acetabular abscess connected with dis-ease of the vertebrae, or hip joint. A vesicointestinal fistula, or malignant disease involving the bladder by contiguity, may also be classed under this head.

A bacteriological examination of the pus or a culture of the urine may afford valuable evidence by revealing the gonococcus, the tubercle bacillus, colon bacillus, or the bacillus of typhoid fever, as well as the ordinary pyogenic organisms.

### Bile

Bile pigments and bile acids in the urine are found in obstructive and toxic jaundice but not in hemolytic or acholuric jaundice. When the bile concentration in the blood exceeds four parts per 200,000 of serum bile appears in the urine. The greater the concentration of bile in the blood the greater is its quantity in the urine.

**Test for Bile in the Urine.** Shaking of bile containing urine will form a yellowish foam. When a white piece of filter paper is immersed in bile containing urine it will be stained yellowish

Bile containing urine is acid in reaction and may give a positive albumin reaction.

### Urobilin and Urobilinogen

Urobilinogen is found in small amounts (1 to 4 mg. in 24 hours) in normal urine. Urobilin does not appear in fresh normal urine. In stale urine its presence is due to converted urobilinogen. Large amounts of urobilin in the urine signify the excessive formation of bilirubin. This is found in obstructive and hepatocellular jaundice, in hepatic cirrhosis, in congestion in gallstones and in pernicious anemia due to liver insufficiency or to hemolysis. In liver insufficiency the liver cells are incapable of transforming urobilin into bilirubin and when excessive hemolysis takes place because of blood dyscrasias the liver, though normal, is unable to store the large amounts of urobilin thus formed. The excess of urobilin and urobilinogen is eliminated by the urine. Urobilinuria is therefore an indication of liver damage or of hemolysis.

**Test for Urobilinogen.** A few drops of Ehrlich's aldehyde reagent added to the urine will give a red color in the presence of urobilinogen.

A total absence of urobilinogen from the urine indicates complete obstruction of the bile ducts.

### Hormones in the Urine

**Estrin:** The estrin content of female urine varies in relation to menstruation. During the first few days following menstruation the estrin content of the urine is very low, several days preceding the flow the estrin content is fairly high. During pregnancy and in certain tumors of the ovary, uterus, adrenals and pituitary the estrin con-

tent of the urine is very high. The estrin content of nonpregnant urine is between 50 and 100 international units per liter. During the premenstrual period the urine may contain from 150 to 300 units per liter. In amenorrhea, dysmenorrhea and functional sterility the estrin content of the urine is low.

**Prolan B.** The anterior pituitary like hormone is found in large quantities in the urine of pregnancy (from 25,000 to 100,000 international units to the liter) and in the presence of certain ovarian tumors.

Male urine also contains some estrin and in certain testicular tumors there may appear large quantities of estrin or of prolan.

**Androsterone.** The male hormone appears in various quantities in the urine of males during their fertile stage.

### *Hematoporphyrin*

Hematoporphyrin is an iron free reduction of hematin occurring in small quantities in the blood and is eliminated by the feces and in minute quantities by the urine. Large quantities of hematomorphyrin renders the skin sensitive to ultraviolet light and increases cutaneous pigmentation.

**Hematoporphyrinuria.** An increased amount of porphyrin in the urine imparts to it a Bordeaux red, dark red or port wine color. Hematomorphyrinuria is found in conditions causing an increase of hematomorphyrin in the blood: bones, teeth and serous effusions. It is also found in lead poisoning, hematochromatosis, cirrhosis of the liver, degenerative lesions of the liver, tuberculosis, rheumatic fever, pneumonia and other infectious diseases. Congenital hematomorphyrinuria is found

among those who have other congenital metabolic disturbances.

### *Diazo Reaction*

Urochromogen appears only in abnormal urine and will give a positive reaction with permanganate. The urochromogen reaction is usually positive in such urines as yield a positive diazo reaction.

A positive diazo reaction constitutes the production of a red color in the urine when treated with Ehrlich's diazo reagent.

The diazo reaction was formerly considered an important diagnostic procedure in the diagnosis of typhoid fever. A positive diazo reaction in the urine is obtainable in the following conditions: Typhoid fever from the middle of the first to the third week; its reappearance after the third week indicates relapse; in measles during the early stages; and in tuberculosis. It may also occur in typhus fever, scarlet fever, erysipelas, rheumatic fever and pneumonia and less frequently in diphtheria, leukemia, heart failure, carcinoma of the stomach and cirrhosis of the liver. A positive diazo reaction of the urine may at times be obtained after the administration of large doses of quinine, cinchophen, quinidine, salicylates, phenol, creosote, naphthalene, morphine and other opiates and menthol.

### *Microscopic Examination of the Urine*

After having made a physical and chemical study of the urine, a microscopic study completes the examination. Preferably a centrifuged specimen is examined which may reveal the presence of the following:

### Epithelial Cells

Cells from the *tubules of the kidney* are round and about one third larger than pus cells

Those from the *pelvis of the kidney* are twice the size of a pus cell and cuboidal or pear shaped

Those from the *ureter* are round and slightly smaller than those from the *pelvis*

Cells from the *bladder* are flat and square, these are the largest cells encountered with the exception of those from the *vagina*

Cells from the *urethra* are smaller than those from the *bladder*, they may be cuboidal or columnar All epithelial cells are granular and contain a relatively small nucleus

### Red Blood Cells

These are due to hemorrhage somewhere in the genitourinary tract

### Casts or Urinary Cylinders<sup>1</sup>

Tube casts are masses of material deriving their cylindrical shape from the urinary tubules in which they are molded They are present in the urine in most nephropathies being most numerous in the acute nephropathies and in the chronic nephropathies with renal edema less numerous in those associated with contraction of the kidneys They are also present in the urine in chronic passive congestion (stasis kidney) in febrile albuminuria and in jaundice (stained yellow) In acidosis with threatened diabetic coma showers of short granular casts (coma casts) may appear Showers of hyaline and sometimes of granular casts occur in exacerbations of renal disease

Several varieties of casts occur (1) Cylindroids (2) hyaline, (3) granular (4) epithelial, (5) blood, (6) pus (7) waxy, (8) fatty casts etc

(1) **Cylindroids** Mucous threads often twisted and curled resemble hyaline casts but are not true casts They often occur in mild renal disturbance due to passive congestions

(2) **Hyaline Casts** Pale transparent homogeneous casts with delicate contours and rounded ends (often hard to make out) The commonest form of cast, indicating the existence of a nephropathy but throwing no light on the variety of nephropathy Some of the so-called cylindroids are probably hyaline casts with pointed ends while others are false casts composed of mucus

(3) **Granular Casts** Similar to (2) but the substance is finely granular, usually rather short and plump often yellowish The granules may be coarse or fine, they are soluble in acetic acid One sees various transitions to epithelial casts Granular casts are met with chiefly in the inflammatory and degenerative nephropathies

(4) **Epithelial Casts** Aggregations of renal epithelium sometimes preserving their original arrangement in the tubules (epithelial tubes) The cells are often filled with granules or fat droplets or there may be a homogeneous necrosis We distinguish these casts consisting of epithelium from the hyaline and granular casts that have a few epithelial cells upon their surface

(5) **Blood Cell Casts** Red cell masses molded by the renal tubules The blood comes from the glomerulus (hemorrhagic glomerulonephritis)

(6) **Pus Casts** (leukocyte casts) Cellular casts the single cells are seen to have polymorphous nuclei on ad-

<sup>1</sup>Barker Monographic Medicine 1916 D Appleton & Co



acetic acid They are commonest in pyelonephritis

(7) **Waxy Casts** Yellow highly refractive casts with clean cut contours and often exhibiting irregular curves notches and fractures rare except in severer forms of chronic renal disease

(8) **Fatty Casts** Made up of masses of fat droplets often arranged in groups

**Spermatozoa** These are present in normal urine after coitus or onanism They may also be present in the different forms of spermatorrhea Their form is characteristic so that they are easily identified

**Animal Parasites** In temperate climates it is rare to find animal parasites in the urine but they are much

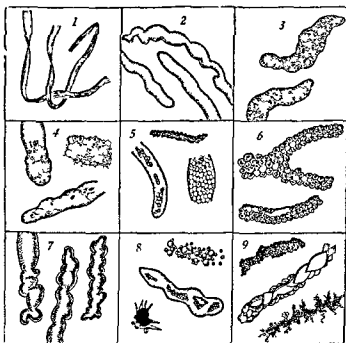


Fig 1—Principal varieties of urinary tubecasts 1 Cylindrical casts 2 hyaline casts 3 granular casts 4 epithelial casts 5 blood casts 6 pus casts 7 waxy casts 8 fatty casts 9 pseudo-casts (after Grimbert)

corresponding to renal epithelial cells They are probably remains of true epithelial casts

### Miscellaneous Constituents of Urine

**Tissue Fragments** Bits of mucous membrane may be desquamated and passed with the urine (acute cystitis) Fragments of a papilloma or of a carcinoma may be found and studied histologically

more common in the tropics Among them may be mentioned (a) Amebae (b) echinococcus (hooks membranes) (c) filarial larvae (tropical hematuria and chyluria) (d) eggs of the human blood fluke *Schistosoma haematobium* (bilharziasis or Egyptian hematuria) (e) oxyuris or pinworm occasionally (in young girls) wanders through the urethra into the bladder (f) *Trichomonas vaginalis* (of no import)

**Vegetable Parasites and Bacteria:**

These are of no importance when seen in urine, unless they are found in a specimen obtained by aseptic catheterization

In *bacteriuria*, the urine is usually turbid, especially if the bacteria are motile. It may be impossible to make such urines clear by centrifugalization. The bacteria may be studied by microscopic examination (fresh drop, smear), by cultural methods, or by animal inoculation.

Among the nonpathogenic bacteria that may be present are (a) *Micrococcus urae*, (b) *bacterium urae*, (c) urinary sarcina, (d) several nonpathogenic streptococci, (e) *bacillus cystiformis* (Clado), (f) *bacillus proteus*.

**Pathogenic Bacteria:** The finding of the *tubercle bacillus* in the urine is of the greatest clinical significance. It occurs both in cases of generalized tuberculosis (as a result of bacillemia), and more particularly in cases of tuberculosis of the genitourinary organs. In this last condition it is usually associated with a pyuria and frequently with a hematuria.

In searching for tubercle bacilli in the urine it is of especial importance to obtain an uncontaminated specimen since the smegma bacillus may readily lead to confusion. The sediment from about 50 cc of thoroughly centrifugalized urine should be used. If much pus is present antiformin treatment of the sediment may be advisable. In all doubtful cases resort should be had to guinea pig inoculation.

*Gonococcus* is of great diagnostic importance. This is an intracellular, biscuit shaped diplococcus best seen in smears stained with methylene blue. It decolorizes by the Gram method.

*Bacillus coli* is of considerable diagnostic importance (cystitis, pyelitis).

*Bacillus typhosus* is of importance for prophylaxis (bacillus carrier), and also for diagnosis in the rare cases of pyonephrosis due to the typhoid bacillus. Throughout the course of typhoid fever, after the first week, typhoid bacilli are often demonstrable in the urine.

*Pyogenic cocci* are rare as a cause of cystitis and pyelitis. Streptococci are not uncommon in acute nephritis. Staphylococci are seen occasionally in general sepsis (adolescence).

**Artifacts** Urinary sediments may be accidentally contaminated by foreign bodies of various sorts, *i.e.*, starch granules, cotton fibers, linen fibers, silk fibers, wool, fat globules, etc.

**Fat:** Fat in the urine appears as globules. Normally, fat may appear in the urine (*lipuria*) following the administration of large quantities of oil or a high fat diet. Pathologically, fat in the urine may be due to diabetes mellitus, lipoid nephrosis, fracture of bone with injury to the bone marrow. It may also follow maceration or injury to the superficial fat. Lipuria may also occur in alcohol and phosphorus poisoning and in pyelitis, pyonephrosis and nephrosis.

**Crystalline Deposits (After Faught)<sup>1</sup>**

**Acid Group Uric Acid** These crystals are yellow, reddish brown or brown in color. The most characteristic forms are rhombic prisms or lozenge-shaped crystals. These may occur singly but more often they are united in irregular masses.

**Urates** The urates, chiefly the urate of sodium and potassium, if they do not

<sup>1</sup> Faught. Essentials of Laboratory Diagnosis. 1921. F. A. Davis Co.

appear as an amorphous deposit, show as crystals in the forms of needles or dumbbells, of reddish brown color, and also in globular masses which are dark brown and almost opaque, with or without projecting spines

**Oxalates** The usual form of calcium oxalate in the urine is a perfect octahedron without color More rarely they appear in the conventional hourglass form This form is somewhat similar to the urate, from which it may be distinguished by the total absence of color in the oxalates

**Carbonates** These are rare, but if present evolve bubbles of gas when treated with hydrochloric acid under the microscope

**Sulfates** This is a rare form of deposit which, when present, appears as fine feathery crystals Frequently a number of crystals radiate from a common center

**Alkaline Group Phosphates** These may occur as a semiopaque amor-

phous deposit without color More commonly they appear as the characteristic coffin lid crystals A less common form of crystalline phosphatic deposit appears as fine, branching, feathery crystals, which have been likened to the needles and branches of the pine tree

**Ammonium Urate** These are characteristic of the uric acid and urate group in that they are yellow or brownish in color In alkaline urine the urates appear as fine feathery spheres of varying size, somewhat resembling chestnut burrs

**Cholesterine** This is a rare form of deposit which appears as irregular flat platelets whose sides follow the characteristic lines of a parallelogram, the angles of which are often irregular Not infrequently the platelets are seen in overlapping groups

**Cystine** This is a rare deposit When present it appears as irregular transparent plates of varying size often in overlapping groups

### Vegetable Parasites and Bacteria

These are of no importance when seen in urine, unless they are found in a specimen obtained by aseptic catheterization

In *bacteriuria* the urine is usually turbid especially if the bacteria are motile. It may be impossible to make such urines clear by centrifugalization. The bacteria may be studied by microscopic examination (fresh drop smear), by cultural methods or by animal inoculation.

Among the nonpathogenic bacteria that may be present are (a) *Micrococcus urae*, (b) *bacterium urae*, (c) urinary *sarcina*, (d) several nonpathogenic *streptococci*, (e) *bacillus cystiformis* (Clado), (f) *bacillus proteus*.

**Pathogenic Bacteria** The finding of the *tubercle bacillus* in the urine is of the greatest clinical significance. It occurs both in cases of generalized tuberculosis (as a result of bacillema), and more particularly in cases of tuberculosis of the genitourinary organs. In this last condition it is usually associated with a pyuria and frequently with a hematuria.

In searching for tubercle bacilli in the urine it is of especial importance to obtain an uncontaminated specimen since the *smegma bacillus* may readily lead to confusion. The sediment from about 50 cc of thoroughly centrifugalized urine should be used. If much pus is present antiformin treatment of the sediment may be advisable. In all doubtful cases resort should be had to guinea pig inoculation.

*Gonococcus* is of great diagnostic importance. This is an intracellular, biscuit shaped diplococcus best seen in smears stained with methylene blue. It decolorizes by the Gram method.

*Bacillus coli* is of considerable diagnostic importance (cystitis, pyelitis).

*Bacillus typhosus* is of importance for prophylaxis (bacillus carrier) and also for diagnosis in the rare cases of pyonephrosis due to the typhoid bacillus. Throughout the course of typhoid fever, after the first week, typhoid bacilli are often demonstrable in the urine.

*Pyogenic cocci* are rare as a cause of cystitis and pyelitis. *Streptococci* are not uncommon in acute nephritis. *Staphylococci* are seen occasionally in general sepsis (adolescence).

**Artifacts** Urinary sediments may be accidentally contaminated by foreign bodies of various sorts: e. starch granules cotton fibers linen fibers silk fibers wool fat globules etc.

**Fat** Fat in the urine appears as globules. Normally, fat may appear in the urine (*lipuria*) following the administration of large quantities of oil or a high fat diet. Pathologically fat in the urine may be due to diabetes mellitus, lipoid nephrosis, fracture of bone with injury to the bone marrow. It may also follow maceration or injury to the superficial fat. *Lipuria* may also occur in alcohol and phosphorus poisoning and in pyelitis, pyonephrosis and nephrosis.

### Crystalline Deposits (After Faught)<sup>1</sup>

**Acid Group** *Uric Acid* These crystals are yellow reddish brown or brown in color. The most characteristic forms are rhombic prisms or lozenge shaped crystals. These may occur singly but more often they are united in irregular masses.

**Urates** The urates chiefly the urate of sodium and potassium if they do not

<sup>1</sup> Faught, Essentials of Laboratory Diagnosis, 1911, F. A. Davis Co.

appear as an amorphous deposit, show as crystals in the forms of needles or dumbbells, of reddish brown color, and also in globular masses which are dark brown and almost opaque, with or without projecting spines.

**Oxalates:** The usual form of calcium oxalate in the urine is a perfect octahedron without color. More rarely they appear in the conventional hourglass form. This form is somewhat similar to the urate, from which it may be distinguished by the total absence of color in the oxalates.

**Carbonates:** These are rare, but if present evolve bubbles of gas when treated with hydrochloric acid under the microscope.

**Sulfates:** This is a rare form of deposit which, when present, appears as fine feathery crystals. Frequently a number of crystals radiate from a common center.

**Alkaline Group: Phosphates:** These may occur as a semioptic amorphous

deposit without color. More commonly they appear as the characteristic coffin-lid crystals. A less common form of crystalline phosphatic deposit appears as fine, branching, feathery crystals, which have been likened to the needles and branches of the pine tree.

**Ammonium Urate:** These are characteristic of the uric acid and urate group in that they are yellow or brownish in color. In alkaline urine the urates appear as fine feathery spheres of varying size, somewhat resembling chestnut burrs.

**Cholesterine:** This is a rare form of deposit which appears as irregular flat platelets whose sides follow the characteristic lines of a parallelogram, the angles of which are often irregular. Not infrequently the platelets are seen in overlapping groups.

**Cystine:** This is a rare deposit. When present it appears as irregular transparent plates of varying size often in overlapping groups.

# CHAPTER XXXIV

## Blood Examination

### Normal Blood Findings

(PHYSICALLY, CHEMICALLY AND BIOLOGICALLY NORMAL)

- 1 *Quantitative Relation* 40 60 to 45 55
- 2 *Color* Bright red for arterial and dark red for venous blood.
- 3 *Hemoglobin* 90 to 100 per cent in men and 85 to 90 per cent in women—16 to 17 Gm. per 100 cc. in men and 15 to 16 Gm. in women
- 4 *Reaction* pH 7.35 to 7.39 (See Graph by Trumper p 1012)
- 5 *Specific Gravity* 1.045 to 1.075
- 6 *Bleeding Time* One to three minutes
- 7 *Coagulation Time* Four to five and a half minutes—should not exceed ten minutes
- 8 *Retraction of Clot* One to two hours, and is complete in from 18 to 24 hours
- 9 *Sedimentation Rate* 9 mm. for men and 12 mm. for women when blood column is 50 mm. high.
- 10 *Red Blood Cells* 4 500 000 to 5 500 000 per cm. for men and slightly less for women
- 11 *Saturation Index* 0.87 to 1.23
- 12 *Color Index* 0.85 to 1.15
- 13 *Volume Index* 0.99 to 1.02
- 14 *Leukocytes (white blood cells) per cm* 5000 to 10 000
- 15 *Myelocytes* Occasional
- 16 *Juveniles* 8 to 16 per cent
- 17 *Neutrophils* 60 to 75 per cent.
- 18 *Eosinophils* 1 to 4 per cent
- 19 *Basophils* Occasional
- 20 *Monocytes* 2 to 6 per cent.
- 21 *Large Lymphocytes* 2 to 4 per cent
- 22 *Small Lymphocytes* 15 to 35 per cent.
- 23 *Thrombocytes (Platelets)* 250 000 to 350 000
- 24 *Reticulocytes* 1 per cent
- 25 *Abnormal Cells* Occasional
- 26 *Total Solids* 19 to 23 mg. per 100 cc
- 27 *Total Ictone B dies* 1.3 to 2.6
- 28 *Serum Amylase* 70 to 200 units
- 29 *Prothrombin Time* 10 to 20 seconds
- 30 *Creatine* 3 to 7 mg. to 100 cc. of blood (592)
- 31 *Total Nonprotein Nitrogen* 25 to 35 mg. to 100 cc. of blood
- 32 *Urea Nitrogen* 12 to 15 mg. to 100 cc. of blood
- 33 *Creatinine* 1 to 2 mg. to 100 cc. of blood.
- 34 *Uric Acid* 2 to 3.5 mg. to 100 cc. of blood
- 35 *Glucose* 80 to 120 mg. to 100 cc. of blood
- 36 *Calcium* 9 to 11 mg. to 100 cc. of blood
- 37 *Chlorides* 400 to 500 mg. to 100 cc. of whole blood, 570 to 620 mg. to 100 cc. of plasma
- 38 *Total Proteins* 6.5 to 8.2 per cent
- 39 *Albumin* 4.6 to 6.7 per cent
- 40 *Globulin* 1.5 to 2.5 per cent
- 41 *Iodine* 8 to 16 gamma of microgramm (or 0.008 to 0.016 mg.) per 100 cc. of blood
- 42 *Cholesterol* 140 to 200 mg. per 100 cc. of blood serum
- 43 *Cholesterol Esters* 60 to 80 per cent of the total cholesterol
- 44 *Free Cholesterol* 20 to 40 per cent of total cholesterol
- 45 *Phosphorus (Inorganic)* 3.5 to 4 mg. per 100 cc. of blood in adults 5 to 6 mg. per 100 cc. of blood in children Phosphorus (Lipid) 2.5 to 14.5 mg. per 100 cc. of blood serum
- 46 *Phosphatase* Two to four Bodansky units (0.10 to 0.21 Kay units) Plasma phosphatase is 0.15 mg. per 100 cc. of blood, higher values in growing children The figure 0.15 has reference to inorganic phosphates converted from sodium glycerophosphate in 48 hours at 38° C and pH 7.6 by the action of 1 cc. of plasma
- 47 *Bile* One part of pigment to 500 000 of serum (0.1 to 0.8 as bilirubin)
- 48 *Icterus Index* (color of serum compared with a 1 to 10 000 solution of potassium dichromate representing an icterus index of one) Four to six per cent.
- 49 *Van den Bergh Reaction* 0.2 to 0.8 per cent.
- 50 *Red Cell Fragility* Hemolysis begins with 0.45 NaCl and is completed with 0.35 NaCl solution
- 51 *Alkali Reserve* 77 to 53 volume per cent ten per cent lower in children

52. *Blood Volume* Five to six liters or about 75 cc per kilogram of body weight, or approximately  $\frac{1}{11}$  of the body weight. Somewhat lower in children
53. *Fat, Total* 400 to 1400 mg, neutral 0 to 370 mg., fatty acids 290 to 450 mg
54. *Potassium* 16 to 22 mg per 100 cc of blood serum
55. *Sodium* 315 to 340 mg per 100 cc of blood serum
56. *CO<sub>2</sub> Capacity* 55 to 80 volume per cent, CO<sub>2</sub> content of arterial blood, 45 to 55 volume per cent, CO<sub>2</sub> content of venous blood, 50 to 60 volume per cent
57. *Fibrinogen* 0.2 to 0.4 mg per 100 cc of blood serum
58. *Magnesium* 1.8 to 3.6 mg per 100 cc. of blood serum
59. *Cervitamic Acid* 0.6 to 2.5 mg per 100 cc of blood serum (vitamin C)
60. *Total Base* (milliequivalents per liter) 155
61. *Iron* 52 mg per 100 cc. of blood
62. *Lactic Acid* 6 to 20 mg per 100 cc of blood
63. *Serum Volume* 49 to 59 per kilogram of body weight

### Definition of Terms Employed in Hematology

**Anemia.** The red cells and hemoglobin are chiefly affected (Diminished in number and quantity)

**Leukemia.** Changes in the leukocytes are chiefly observed (Increased in number)

**Plethora.** An abnormal increase in the total quantity of blood

**Anhydremia.** A diminution in the normal quantity of fluids in the blood

**Oligochromemia:** An abnormal diminution in the amount of hemoglobin

**Oligocythemia.** A diminution in the number of red blood cells

**Polycythemia.** An increase in the number of red blood cells (erythrocytosis)

**Leukocytosis.** An abnormal increase in the number of white cells

**Leukopenia.** An abnormal decrease in the number of white cells

**Microblasts:** Small nucleated red blood cells

**Normoblasts, Erythroblasts:** Nucleated red blood cells (of normal size)

**Megaloblasts:** Large nucleated red blood cells

**Macrocytes.** Large red blood cells (nonnucleated)

**Microcytes:** Small nonnucleated red blood cells

**Megalocytes.** Same as macrocytes or giantocytes

**Reticulocytes.** Immature erythrocytes containing a threadlike reticulum, stainable with vital stains

**Erythrocytes.** Red blood cells of normal size (nonnucleated)

**Poikilocytes:** Irregularly shaped red blood cells

**Anisocytosis.** Excessive variation in the size of the red corpuscles

**Polychromatophilic Degeneration (Ehrlich)** An atypical staining reaction of the erythrocytes

**Basophilic Granulation (stippling)** A peculiar granular degeneration of the red blood cells (characteristic in lead poisoning, malaria, and in severe anemia)

**Howell-Jolly bodies** are granules found in red cells, they are stainable with basic stains

**Cabot's bodies** are probably nuclear remains appearing as intra and extracellular rings which stain with acid dyes

### Hemanalyses (Blood Examinations)

Blood examinations comprise

**Blood Count** Hemoglobin determination number and kind of red cells, white cells and platelets

**Blood chemistry** for glucose and other constituents of the plasma

**Serologic Tests.** Blood cultures, complement fixation tests, etc

## Blood Counts

By a blood count is meant a blood examination which determines the number of red and white cells and the relative amount of hemoglobin, and usually the study of blood smears under the microscope is included. If the white cell count is found to be 10,000 or over, a stained specimen should be made for a differential count.

Blood for examination may be obtained from adults by a puncture of the lobe of the ear or of a finger tip, in young children, it is better to make the puncture in the great toe or the heel. The skin, in either case, should be previously wiped with alcohol and allowed to dry, and a sterilized instrument should be employed for pricking the skin. In expressing the blood after the puncture is made, only the least force possible should be exercised.

### Hemoglobin Findings

A 100 per cent is accepted as an arbitrary standard of hemoglobin for normal male adults, and 90 to 95 per cent for adult females. This corresponds to 16.92 grams in the male and 15.53 grams in the female. During the first two months of life, the percentage is much higher. In childhood, in the sixth year, the hemoglobin usually reaches 70 to 85 per cent of the normal adult standard and gradually increases until the twentieth year, when it has attained the adult standard.

The Color Index is an expression of the hemoglobin content of the red blood cells as compared with the normal. It is determined by dividing the percentage of hemoglobin by the percentage of erythrocytes and may be graphically represented by the fraction

$$\frac{\% \text{ Hb}}{\% \text{ RBC}}$$

The normal color index is represented by 1. In computing percentages, 5,000,000 is taken as the normal red count and 100 as the normal hemoglobin percentage.

A simpler method for determining the color index is described by A. Piney<sup>1</sup> as follows:

$$\frac{\text{Hemoglobin as found by the hemoglobinometer}}{\text{Number of corpuscles expressed in millions} \times 2 \times 10}$$

For example, if there be 2,000,000 corpuscles and 40 per cent of hemoglobin

$$\frac{40}{2 \times 2 \times 10} = 1 = \text{color index}$$

**Blood Volume Index.** By blood volume index is meant the average size of the red blood cells or the mean volume of a red cell in relation to the normal. The normal volume index is between 0.95 and 1.05—average 1.00. In pernicious anemia it may be as high as 1.60. In microcytic anemia (secondary anemia) it may be as low as 0.65. This index is obtained as follows:

(a) Oxalated blood is centrifuged in a graduated tube or hematocrit until the corpuscles settle to the bottom of the tube. (In normal blood these *packed corpuscles* constitute about 45 per cent of the blood. In the hyperchromic macrocytic anemias it may be higher while in the hypochromic microcytic anemias it is usually much less than 45 per cent.)

(b) A specimen of blood is obtained in the usual way for determining the number of red corpuscles and the red corpuscles are counted in a hemocytometer.

(c) The volume index is obtained by dividing the percentage of the volume

<sup>1</sup> Piney, *Diseases of the Blood* 1928 P. Blakiston & Sons & Co. Philadelphia



of red corpuscles as found in the graduated tube or hematocrit by the percentage of red blood corpuscles as obtained in the hemocytometer

$$\text{Volume Index} = \frac{\% \text{ of normal red corpuscles in the hematocrit reading}}{\% \text{ of normal red corpuscles in the hemocytometer reading}}$$

The volume index usually corresponds to the color index though it may be determined with greater accuracy

**Saturation Index** By this is meant the amount of hemoglobin concentration in each corpuscle. The saturation index is obtained by dividing the color index by the volume index. That is the hemoglobin in per cent of normal is divided by the number of packed cells in per cent of normal. The normal saturation index is about 1.00 but it varies from 0.87 to 1.23. A saturation index below 0.85 is generally found in anemia caused by chronic hemorrhage<sup>1</sup> (Pepper and Farley)

### The Differential Count

When an ordinary blood count is made only the red corpuscles and the leukocytes are enumerated per cubic millimeter. When it becomes necessary to examine the blood corpuscles more carefully in order to ascertain the characteristics of the red cells and the variety of the whites a film of blood on a slide stained with Wright's stain is examined. The examination of the blood by stained specimen is usually known as the *differential count*. It is extremely important in many instances to have a differential count made because various blood diseases and inflammatory conditions may be recognized by this

means. In the normal blood the differential count shows as follows

**Red Corpuscles** (erythrocytes) about 4 500 000 to 5 500 000 to 1 cmm of blood

**White Blood Cells** (leukocytes) 5000 to 10 000 in 1 cmm of blood

**Polymorphonuclears** 65 to 70 per cent

**Small Mononuclears** 20 to 30 per cent

**Large Mononuclears** Four to eight per cent

**Transitionals** One to three per cent

**Eosinophils** One to four per cent

**Basophils** (mast cells) One quarter to one half per cent (occur only occasionally)

**Platelets** Approximately 300 000 per cmm

**Hemokonia** (blood dust)

**Reticulocytes** One half to one per cent.

### Significance of Abnormal Blood Counts

#### Hemoglobin

The amount of hemoglobin whether calculated on a percentage basis or in grams is important only in relation to the number of red corpuscles which is considered as the color index. Normally the color index is 1 or somewhat lower.

*An increased color index* is found in pernicious anemia during crisis of hemolytic jaundice in sprue and occasionally in carcinoma of the intestine, pellagra and other conditions that cause a *hyperchromic macrocytic anemia*.

*A decreased color index* is found in chlorosis and in many of the secondary anemias particularly of the hypochromic microcytic type also in polycythemia vera.

<sup>1</sup> Pepper and Farley. Practical Hematology. Diagnoses. 1933. W. B. Saunders & Co. Philadelphia.

An *actual increase* in the amount of hemoglobin and not an increase in relation to the number of erythrocytes is found in polycythemia vera in cyanosis due to congenital heart disease, and in chronic pulmonary disease, such as asphyxia, and anhydremia. An *actual decrease* in the amount of hemoglobin is found in all types of anemia.

### Red Cells

An increase in the number of erythrocytes is found in polycythemia vera Ayerza's disease, hemoconcentration shock, dehydration and in high altitudes.

A decrease in the number of red cells is found in all types of anemia whether primary or secondary. A very low red corpuscle count is found in pernicious anemia in aplastic anemia after severe hemorrhage and in hemolytic jaundice.

**Differential Red Cell Count** *Normoblasts* are found in severe types of anemia such as pernicious anemia, chlorosis and in the advanced stages of most of the anemias. Their presence in the blood stream indicates increased marrow activity and nature's attempt to replenish the circulation with red cells that are being rapidly destroyed. *Normoblasts* are not found in aplastic anemia.

*Megaloblasts* are found in pernicious anemia in other hyperchromic types of anemia and in myelocytic leukemia. These cells because of their nuclei may resemble monocytes.

*Microcytes* are found in the iron deficiency anemias such as chlorosis and in various types of secondary anemia presenting a low color index. These cells are often extremely irregular in shape.

*Microcytes* are found in pernicious anemia and in the various anemias associated with a high color index. Macro-

cytes often appear as large oval shaped cells.

*Sickle shaped red cells* are found in sickle cell anemia.

*Oval or elliptoid red cells* (ovalocytes) occur as a familial peculiarity and may not be associated with disease.

*Poikilocytes* are irregularly distorted cells. They occur in most of the severe anemias usually in association with *anisocytes* (irregularly sized cells).

*Reticulocytes* (reticulated immature red blood cells). Erythrocytogenic hyperactivity of the bone marrow is marked by the appearance of an increased number of reticulocytes in the peripheral blood stream. These cells are found in large numbers in the blood of normal newborn babies also in some of the anemias where there is increased bone marrow activity (hyperplasia), and in hemolytic jaundice. An increase in the reticulocyte count in a patient with pernicious or other types of anemia when under treatment indicates a favorable response. When the bone marrow is aplastic the reticulocytes are absent from the blood stream and fail to appear under treatment.

*Polychromatophila* (varied colored red cells) are found in severe anemias and leukemia, their presence in the blood stream indicates an increased regeneration of red cells. These cells are in the embryonic state and do not stain readily with acid stains and but poorly with basic stains. Wright's stain colors them light blue or a dirty blue red.

*Granular basophilic degeneration* (stippling) of red cells indicates abnormal regeneration of erythrocytes. These cells are recognized by the appearance of blue granules on a dirty blue or brownish background when stained with Wright's stain. Stippling is found in lead poison.

ing pernicious anemia leukemia and in severe secondary anemia particularly of toxic origin

*Achromia* are colorless red cells or rather red cells that show a large central pale depression surrounded by a narrow pink margin are an indication of a low hemoglobin content

*Howell Jolly bodies* are found in the red cells of pernicious anemia hemolytic icterioanemia leukemia in severe types of secondary anemia and after splenectomy

*Cabot's ring bodies* are found in severe anemias and in lead poisoning

*Fragility of Erythrocytes* (Resistance of erythrocytes to hemolysis) Normal fragility is 0.45 to 0.34 per cent

The fragility is increased (resistance decreased) in hemolytic jaundice hemolytic icterioanemia and sickle cell anemia. It is decreased (resistance increased) in obstructive jaundice aplastic anemia pernicious anemia lead poisoning and after splenectomy

### ***Sedimentation of Red Cells and the Blood Sedimentation Test***

In health the erythrocytes in a citrated specimen of blood settle towards the bottom of a vessel within a fairly definite period. In certain diseases and under certain circumstances the settling down or the sedimentation rate of the red cells are delayed. The rapidity of the sedimentation also depends upon the plasma stability and the number and size of the red cells.

The blood sedimentation test depends upon the length of time it requires for the red corpuscles in a given quantity of citrated blood to settle downwards in its serum. The sedimentation test consists of the measuring of the speed with which the red corpuscles separate from

the plasma of noncoagulating blood. It has been observed that the erythrocytes settle perceptibly slower in health than in disease and that the graver the disease the more rapidly will the red corpuscles settle in the blood serum. It may therefore be stated that the sedimentation time is longer in health than in disease and that it is comparatively short in grave illness. In normal adult men the sedimentation time is longer than in women and is also longer in the newborn and the aged.

There are various methods and modifications in use for determining this test. The three most important methods are

1 **The Distance Method of Fahraeus** (modified by Westergreen). This consists in measuring the distance the red corpuscles in a definite quantity of citrated blood (in a standard tube) have settled at the end of one hour, two hours and 24 hours.

**Technic.** One part of 3.8 per cent of sodium citrate solution is mixed with four parts of blood and gently agitated. This mixture is poured up to the 200 mark into a graded glass pipette tube measuring 300 mm in height and 2.5 mm in diameter. The tube is stood upright so that the erythrocytes may settle after one hour, two hours and 24 hours. The height of the column of supernatant fluid is measured so as to determine the level attained by the red corpuscles during 24 hours. In healthy men the supernatant fluid column after one hour measures 3 mm and in healthy women it measures 5 to 10 mm. By the end of 24 hours the entire quantity of red blood cells should be settled toward the bottom of the tube.

2 **The Time Method of Linzenmeier.** This consists in determining

the length of time required for the red corpuscles to settle to a definite level in a standardized glass tube

**Technic** Citrated blood (of the same dilution as used in Method 1) is poured into a glass tube measuring 65 cm in height and 5 mm in diameter, and is marked at two levels—the upper level at 1 cc and the lower level 18 mm below the first mark. The quantity of blood should be sufficient to reach the level of the 1 cc mark. The tube is then allowed to stand upright and the length of time required for the corpuscles to settle from the 1 cc mark to the 18 mm mark (the sedimentation time) is noted. The normal sedimentation time for healthy men is from 20 to 23 hours and for healthy women—from 13 to 16 hours. During menstruation it may be as low as 10 hours. Sedimentation time of less than three and one half hours is considered as pathologic.

### 3 The Graphic Method of Cutler<sup>1</sup>

This blood sedimentation test is practically a combination of the Distance and Time Methods and is superior to either method alone because the velocity with which the erythrocytes settle varies at certain times and this variation can be recorded by the graphic method.

**Technic** A special test tube adequately marked is necessary. The tube devised by Cutler is of 5 cc capacity graduated into tenths of 1 cc each 1 mm in height and marked in mm.

Four and a half cc of fresh blood is mixed with 1 half cc of a 3 per cent citrate solution and poured into the test tube. The mixture is gently agitated and the tube is stoppered and the reading is done every five minutes for an hour

by noting boundary zone between the erythrocytes and the plasma. The observations are recorded on the sedimentation charts on which the horizontal lines represent the divisions on the sedimentation tube and the vertical lines the intervals of time. In this way, a graph is traced which shows the position of the sedimenting column of red blood cells at any period of time during the first hour.

The sedimentation value is determined according to the path traversed by the red blood cells during the first hour and depends upon the nature of the graph, the sedimentation index and the sedimentation time. Together they furnish all the information that is likely to be obtained from the sedimentation test. The graph serves as a rough estimation of the presence or absence of pathologic activity. The sedimentation index and sedimentation time help to determine the degree.

**Sedimentation Index** The normal sedimentation time for men is from 2 to 9 mm per hour, and for women 2 to 12 mm.

**Increased sedimentation rate** occurs normally during menstruation and pregnancy. Pathologically, it occurs in most of the infectious diseases during their active stage, in malignant neoplasms, after operations, in wounds and fractures, in diabetes mellitus, in obstructive jaundice, in salpingitis, in late appendicitis, in tuberculosis, in rheumatic fever, in pregnancy, also after intravenous injections of foreign proteins and of arsphenamine and after irradiation.

**Decreased sedimentation rate** occurs in dehydration, hyperprotonemia, polycythemia, rickets, cardiac failure and diseases of the liver associated with jaundice.

<sup>1</sup>Cutler Jacob J A M A 18: 6 (1914) June 1914

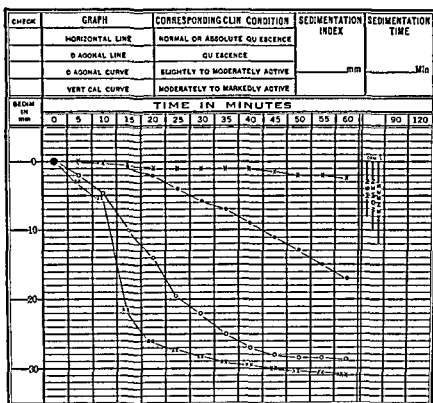
CUTLER'S BLOOD SEDIMENTATION TEST CHART.<sup>1</sup>

Fig 1

The graphs are actual reproductions of the sedimentation phenomenon

- X ——— X ——— Horizontal line (clinically healthy individual)  
 ——— ● ——— ● ——— Diagonal line (clinically quiescent tuberculosis)  
 ——— ○ ——— ○ ——— Diagonal curve (clinically slightly active tuberculosis)  
 ——— XX ——— XX ——— Vertical curve (clinically markedly active tuberculosis)

**Explanatory Notes** **Sedimentation Index** Represents the total sedimentation of red blood cells at the end of 60 minutes expressed in millimeters. Normal index for men varies from 2 to 8 millimeters with an average of 3 to 4, for healthy women from 2 to 10 with an average of 5 to 6.

**Sedimentation Time** Represents the time required for the complete settling of the red blood cells. Normal time is always a question of hours. Of clinical value when reduced to 60 minutes or less.

**Horizontal Line** A straight line with a sedimentation index falling within normal limits. It also represents normal. The other graphs are always abnormal findings.

**Diagonal Line** A straight line with a sedimentation index beyond normal limits.

**Diagonal Curve** A curve of gradual descent with a sedimentation index beyond normal limits and a sedimentation time of 35 to 60 minutes.

**Vertical Curve** A curve of sharp descent with a sedimentation index beyond normal limits and a sedimentation time of 30 minutes or less.

<sup>1</sup> Cutler J. The Graphic Presentation of the Blood Sedimentation Test. Am J Med Sc 171 882 June 1926

The sedimentation time remains normal in nervous and mental diseases asthma hay fever benign growths peptic ulcer catarrhal appendicitis essential hypertension chronic valvular disease (in the absence of rheumatic fever) and in diseased tonsils or sinuses

In healthy individuals the volume of red blood cells after complete sedimentation is about 50 per cent of the total volume of blood. In anemia the volume of red blood cells is naturally reduced. This is reflected in the sedimentation index. When the sedimentation index is unusually high regardless of the character of the graph it indicates among other things a small volume of the red blood cells and should always suggest anemia. In this respect the sedimentation index serves the purpose of the hematocrit

### *The Leukocytes*

**The Diagnostic Value of the Leukocyte Count** The number of leukocytes per cubic millimeter of blood in healthy individuals has a normal range from 5000 to 10 000. Under certain conditions in normal subjects the leukocyte count may be somewhat lower than the low figure or somewhat higher than the high figure. In pathologic conditions there may be a marked reduction in the number of leukocytes (leukopenia) or a great increase in the number of leukocytes (leukocytosis). It is important to determine not only the total number of leukocytes per mm of blood but also the number or percentage that is the relative proportion of the various types of leukocytes. Thus in the presence of a moderate leukocytosis or a moderate leukopenia if the neutrophils monocytes eosinophils lymphocytes and other white cells bear a normal proportion to each other the increase or

decrease in the total number of leukocytes bear no specific significance other than a general leukocytic disturbance.

**Leukocytosis** A white cell count above 10 000 is generally considered as leukocytosis. In severe leukocytosis the count may be above 50 000. It should be emphasized that leukocytosis differs from leukemia. The former is only a symptom while the latter is a distinct pathologic entity.

Leukocytosis may be physiologic or pathologic.

**Physiologic Leukocytosis** The number of leukocytes are seldom high and the differential count is usually normal. Physiologic leukocytosis occurs in the newborn during menstruation during pregnancy during labor after physical and mental exertion after a cold bath after massage and after taking certain drugs and foods.

**Pathologic Leukocytosis** Leukocytosis occurs in most infections infectious diseases and inflammations (the exceptions to this rule are noted under leukopenia) after paroxysms of tachycardia in coronary thrombosis in uremia during hemorrhage particularly when bleeding occurs in one of the serous sacs such as the pleura pericardium peritoneum in the joints subdural and subarachnoid spaces. Severe leukocytosis is also found in periarthritis nodosum in neoplasms with metastasis to the bone marrow in severe cachexias in infectious mononucleosis in the leukemias and in many other diseases.

In mild infections the leukocytosis is but slightly increased above the normal. In moderate infections the leukocyte count is moderately high. In overwhelming infections the leukocyte count is either very high or very low; the latter

pustular stage), strangulated hernia, tachycardia (paroxysmal), typhoid fever with complications, typhus fever, and in nearly all acute inflammatory infections. It is also found after strenuous exercise and during the active stage of digestion.

*A decrease in the number of neutrophils* is found in agranulocytic angina, aplastic anemia, arsenic poisoning, benzol poisoning, infectious mononucleosis, hypochromic anemia, kala azar, lymphatic leukemia, intense radiation, leishmaniasis, malaria, pernicious anemia, paratyphoid, typhoid fever, purpura, whooping cough, and undulant fever.

**Eosinophils:** Normally the eosinophils form between one and four per cent of the total white count (100 to 400 cells per cmm of blood). *A decrease in the number of eosinophils* occurs in septic and in some infectious conditions, also in aplastic anemia. In infectious disease when the neutrophils are greatly increased in number, the eosinophils may disappear, their return in the peripheral blood is considered by Simon as an indication of recovery.

*An increase in the number of eosinophils* is found in. Normally, in infants, and in adults as a familial characteristic and during menstruation. Pathologically, in allergic conditions such as bronchial asthma, hay fever, migraine, angioneurotic edema and urticaria (when not due to serum disease), in parasitic infestations by *uncinaria trichinae*, *echinococcus*, *filaria*, *billarzia*, and occasionally by *amebae*, *tenia* and *tapeworms*, in various diseases such as scarlet fever, Hodgkin's disease (not constant), Addison's disease, periarthritis nodosa (not constant), chorea, gonorrhea (not constant), measles, rheumatic fever, malaria, active tuberculosis, and during convalescence

from pneumonia, in certain bone diseases and tumor, as in osteomyelitis, osteomalacia, rickets, osteitis deformans, osteitis fibrosa cystica, sarcoma and metastatic carcinoma and in other tumors, after ingestion of various foods and drugs such as raw liver, camphor, pilocarpine, phosphorus and copper, in various skin diseases, such as eczema, pemphigus, dermatitis herpetiformis, herpes zoster, scabies and psoriasis, also in some of the blood dyscrasias, as in myelocytic leukemia, eosinophilic leukemia, sickle cell anemia, and after splenectomy.

**Basophils, Myelocytes and Myeloblasts** These are immature white cells belonging to the granular or myelogenic group. They are normally found in the bone marrow and only appear in the blood stream in fairly large numbers in myelogenous leukemia, neoplastic metastasis of the bone marrow and in some of the infections where the Schilling index indicates a shift to the left.

### The Lymphocytes

The lymphocytes are cells that arise from the lymphoid tissue. In adults they form from 20 to 30 per cent of the total white cell count, and in children they may form 50 per cent of the white cells.

*Increased number of lymphocytes* (lymphocytosis) is found in lymphatic leukemia, infectious mononucleosis (glandular fever), whooping cough, Malta fever, influenza, agranulocytic angina, lymphoma, lymphosarcoma, aleukemic lymphadenosis, syphilis, mumps, pernicious anemia, exophthalmic goiter. A relative lymphocytosis is found in typhoid fever, tuberculosis, rickets, psoriasis, and in conditions where the polymorphonuclear leukocytes are decreased. The lymphocytes are decreased in such infections as show a great increase in

the polymorphonuclear leukocytes, *i. e.*, lobar pneumonia, acute appendicitis and similar acute infections

**Monocytes:** These cells possess phagocytic action, they form from two to six per cent of the total white cell count. An increase in the number of monocytes in the blood is found in infectious mononucleosis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, malaria, undulant fever, dengue, trypanosomiasis, monocytic leukemia, and often in syphilis, typhoid fever, Hodgkin's disease, also in rapidly advancing tuberculosis, in some forms of septicemia, and in tetra chloromethane poisoning

### *Arneth Index*

By this is meant the division of leukocytes into classes according to their nuclear arrangements. It is assumed that very young leukocytes have a single oval, round or bent nucleus and as the leukocytes become older their nuclei undergo a change in shape, so that instead of a single, simple nucleus in the very young cell, the older cells present nuclei with two, three, four, five or more lobes. The older the cell, the more complex is the shape of its nucleus.

In health the white corpuscles may be divided into five classes, according to the arrangement of their nuclei.

Class I (with no nuclear lobes, but with simple round or bent nucleus) forms five per cent of the neutrophilic leukocytes.

Class II (with two lobes) forms 35 per cent.

Class III (with three lobes) forms 41 per cent.

Class IV (with four lobes) forms 17 per cent, and

Class V (with five or more lobes) forms two per cent.

An overabundance of simple nucleated white corpuscles in the circulating blood is assumed by Arneth to indicate an increased leukopoietic activity.

When an increase in the number of simple nucleated white cells exists, it is termed a *shift to the left*, and when white cells containing complex nuclei are preponderant, it is termed a *shift to the right*.

### *The Schilling Index*

The Schilling differential count is a simplified modification of the Arneth index whereby the neutrophils are classified as immature or nonsegmented, and mature or segmented forms.

The nonsegmented or immature forms are Myelocytes, juveniles and stabs. (a) The myelocyte has a round or oval shaped, relatively large, vesicular, coarsely granular nucleus, and usually also a nucleolus. Myelocytes are normally found in the bone marrow and are absent from the normal circulating blood.

(b) Juvenile cells or young metamyelocytes are somewhat older than the myelocytes, each contains a nearly circular or kidney shaped nucleus, the concave part of which is directed towards the larger amount of cytoplasm. These cells are normally found in the bone marrow and rarely in the peripheral blood.

(c) Stab cells are older than the juveniles. The nucleus is usually a rod band or ribbonlike structure often twisted into bizarre shapes resembling the letters U, V, S, T. Normally they are found, from two to five per cent, in the peripheral blood.

The mature neutrophils are adult polymorphonuclear leukocytes. Each cell contains a nucleus that is divided into



two, three, four or five unequal segments or lobes, each connected by a narrow filament. The normal blood contains from 65 to 75 per cent of neutrophils of which two to five per cent are stab forms or immature neutrophils.

The Schilling theory is based on two shifts. (1) A regenerative shift of the neutrophils in which there occur juvenile cells and myelocytes. This is found in septic diseases. (2) A degenerative shift in which there occur large numbers of stab nuclears, due to defective neutrophilic leukopoiesis. This is found in severe infections. Often there occurs a mixture of the two shifts.

The normal hemogram is made up of erythrocytes, granulocytes, blood platelets, lymphocytes and monocytes, indicating a physiologic regeneration of the bone marrow, reticuloendothelial and lymphoid systems, with a physiologic destruction of the cells in the various organs and tissues. In disease there may be evidence of increased production of cells (increase in juvenile forms) or evidence of accelerated destruction, that is, degenerative changes.

The part played by the neutrophils in various infections is described thusly by Schilling: "Slight irritations from toxemia cause functional changes only in the leukocytic picture, medium irritations act through the leukopoietic organs, severe irritations act also upon the development of the individual cells, while very severe irritations restrain through paralysis of the central, and destruction of the central and peripheral cells." In most infections the response of the white cells is as follows: First the neutrophils, second the monocytes, and last the lymphocytes. These three phases may temporarily shift or the rarer types

of cells may appear depending upon the type of infection.

In acute infection with a favorable course, Schilling notes three phases:

(1) "The neutrophilic battle phase" which is characterized by leukocytosis, left nuclear shift, some degenerative nuclear shift, disappearance of eosinophils and eventual reduction of the number of lymphocytes and monocytes.

(2) "The monocytic defense or subjection," in which there occurs a lessening in the number of leukocytes with decreased left shift, and an increase in the number of lymphocytes and monocytes with the reappearance of eosinophils.

(3) "The lymphocytic cure," featuring the occurrence of lymphocytosis and eosinophilia and the subsidence of the nuclear shift.

In acute infections with an unfavorable course there occurs only one phase, the second and third phases do not appear because regeneration does not take place. The findings will probably be as follows: Increase in the number of immature neutrophils with increasing degenerative changes in the nuclei and cytoplasm, a decrease in the number of lymphocytes and monocytes with an absence or a decided decrease in the number of eosinophils.

In arranging a hemogram for determining the Schilling index, the most immature cells when present are listed first and the maturer types follow, so that the arrangement is from left to right—thus myelocytes, juveniles, stabs, neutrophils. A greater than normal percentage of immature cells constitutes a shift to the left.

**Interpretation of the Schilling Nuclear Index.** The total number of immature cells ( $1 \times$  myelocytes plus ju

veniles, plus stabs) is divided by the total number of granular cells (i.e., myelocytes plus juveniles plus stabs, plus segmenters). Basophils and eosinophils are excluded.

**Example:** If differential count shows 70 per cent neutrophils of which five per cent are immature, Schilling index would show  $70.5 \div 0.07 = 7$  per cent.

A degenerative shift, or a shift to the left, consists of a high increase of stabs and juveniles. It indicates a defective neutrophilic leukopoiesis such as is found in severe infections.

A shift up to 15 per cent is normal, from 15 to 30 per cent denotes mild infection, a shift of 30 to 45 per cent indicates moderately severe infection, 45 to 60 per cent shift is to be found in severe infections and above 60 per cent shift to the left is an extremely grave prognostic omen.

In a Schilling hemogram the following is to be noted:

- (1) The total white cell count
- (2) The percentage of neutrophils
- (3) The morphology of the nucleus of the neutrophils
- (4) The percentage of basophils
- (5) The percentage of eosinophils
- (6) The presence of unusual cells
- (7) Evidence of signs of degeneration in any of the cells

The number of erythrocytes and the presence or absence of degenerative changes or of abnormal cells give additional information of the severity of the infection.

A Schilling hemogram is arranged as follows:

Count	B	E	M	J	St	S	L	Mon
20 000	0	0	4	26	30	20		

80.60 = 0.75 shift to left

## ***The Thrombocytes (Blood Platelets)***

The blood platelets are said to be fragments of bone marrow cells (megakaryocytes) and are necessary constituents of the blood. Their average size is from two to four microns, some are larger. They are well stained with Wright's or Giemsa's stains. The platelet count in normal blood ranges from 150,000 to 500,000 to the cmm, the average is about 300,000 to the cmm.

**Function of the Blood Platelets** The platelets and their products are concerned with blood coagulation. A great diminution in their number will cause lengthening of bleeding and clot retraction time.

The blood platelets are diminished in number (*thrombocytopenia*) in Purpura, uremia, jaundice, anaphylactic shock, aplastic anemia, Addison's disease, measles, influenza, epidemic meningitis, kala azar and in malaria preceding the chill. Thrombocytopenia may occur as the result of the injections of calcium, benzol, tissue extract, corpus luteum hormone, tuberculin, gelatin, peptone, bacterial toxins or heparin.

An increase in the number of platelets occurs in Hodgkin's disease, chronic advanced tuberculosis, polycythemia, and occasionally in Banti's disease. The platelets usually increase in number after splenectomy, blood transfusion, subcutaneous injections of blood, of foreign protein or of some of the vitamins and after strenuous exercise.

## **Blood Grouping and Blood Typing**

Human blood is grouped into four different types according to the capacity

B—basophils	St—stabs
E—eosinophils	S—segmenters
M—myelocytes	L—lymphocytes
J—juveniles	Mon—monocytes

of their agglutinins to clump red corpuscles. The four types are variously named by Moss, Jansky and Landsteiner.

Systems of Nomenclature

Moss	Jansky	Landsteiner
IV	I	O
II	II	A
III	III	B
I	IV	AB

Since Moss' type IV corresponds to Jansky's type I, and Moss' type I corresponds to Jansky's type IV, therefore when patient and donor have been typed by different serologists, it is important to know whether the nomenclature employed by the two typers is the same.

Landsteiner's classification O corresponds to Moss' IV, and Jansky's I because this type contains no agglutinin A corresponds to both Moss' and Jansky's II because this type contains agglutinin A. B corresponds to Moss' and Jansky's type III and contains agglutinin B. AB corresponds to Moss' I and Jansky's IV and contains agglutinin A and B.

There are several sub groups of the main four groups and some bloods are Rh positive, others Rh negative. When these are mixed they hemolyze. It is therefore desirable to match donor's and recipient's blood just before transfusion even though both belong to the same recognized blood groups.

### *Technic for Blood Matching*

**First Step:** One cc of blood is obtained from a vein of the donor and of the recipient, one to three drops of blood of each specimen is placed in a separate test tube each containing one cc of two per cent sodium citrate solution. The rest of the blood from each

specimen is placed in individual dry test tubes which are allowed to stand or are centrifuged so as to obtain the serum.

**Second Step:** A loopful of corpuscles from the patient's citrated blood is placed on a cover glass to which is added several loopfuls of the donor's serum from the noncitrated tube, and a loopful of the donor's corpuscles from the citrated tube is placed on another cover glass to which is added several loopfuls of the patient's serum from the noncitrated tube.

**Third Step.** Each specimen is then examined under the microscope with a low power lens preferably as a hanging drop. If the two specimens of blood belong to the same group and match, no agglutination of red corpuscles will be noted in either specimen at the end of ten minutes.

### *Technic for Blood Grouping (Moss Classification)*

The blood group to which an individual belongs is determined by testing his corpuscles and serum against the serum and corpuscles of an individual known to belong to blood group II or III. One to three drops of blood from the individual of the unknown group is placed in 1 cc of two per cent sodium citrate in normal salt solution, and 1 cc of blood is placed in a dry test tube where the serum is separated from the corpuscles. The same procedure is carried out with the blood from a known group II individual.

A loopful of cells from the unknown group is placed on a slide and several loopfuls of serum from the group II is added, and a loopful of cells from the known group II is placed on another slide and a few loopfuls of serum from the unknown is added. Each slide prop

erly covered is examined under a microscope with the low powered lens, and the agglutinations of the red cells are observed

(1) If group II serum agglutinates the unknown corpuscles, and the unknown serum agglutinates the known group II corpuscles, then the unknown belongs to group III

(2) If group II serum agglutinates the unknown corpuscles, and the unknown serum does not agglutinate the known group II corpuscles, then the unknown blood belongs to group I

(3) If group II serum does not agglutinate the unknown corpuscles, and the unknown serum does agglutinate the known group II corpuscles then the unknown belongs to group IV

(4) If no agglutination occurs between either corpuscles or sera, then the unknown blood belongs to the same group as the known, namely type II

### ***Behavior of Cells and Serum of Various Groups (Moss Classification)***

Corpuscles of

Group IV are not agglutinated by any serum

Group II are agglutinated by serum of groups IV and III, but not by II and I

Group III agglutinated by serum of groups IV and II, but not by III and I

Group I are agglutinated by serum of groups IV, II and III but not by group I

Serum of

Group IV agglutinates corpuscles of groups II, III, and I, but not group IV

Group II agglutinates corpuscles of groups III and I, but not of groups IV and II

Group III agglutinates corpuscles of groups II and I, but not IV and III

Group I does not agglutinate any corpuscles

Therefore type IV Moss, type I Jansky and type O Landsteiner, is the universal donor and type I Moss, type IV Jansky and type AB Landsteiner, is the universal recipient

Bloods of the same group and the same Rh that match are not agglutinable and are therefore chosen for transfusion. When the blood groups of the donor and recipient are not known, direct matching of the two bloods should be carried out

## **Blood Chemistry**

Blood chemistry is employed for metabolic investigation, for diagnosis, differential diagnosis, prognosis and treatment of disease. Many of these tests can be carried out by technicians provided they are supervised by a physician with the requisite laboratory training or by a practical biochemist preferably with hospital or clinical experience

**Time for Collecting Blood** Every physician is familiar with the details of collecting blood. There is one point to be emphasized namely the necessity of using a very sharp needle. The ma-

jority of new needles are quite blunt and it is advantageous to sharpen them. The necessity for thorough surgical asepsis and the locating of a suitable vein are too well known to merit description here

The best time for collecting blood is in the morning before breakfast. A few crystals of potassium oxalate<sup>1</sup> will prevent coagulation and a pinch of potassium

<sup>1</sup> Obviously potassium oxalate cannot be used if the calcium or potassium of the blood is to be determined (oxalate precipitates the calcium in the blood which is necessary for coagulation). In such cases sodium citrate is used

fluoride may be added as a preservative to the five or ten cubic centimeters of blood

### **Physical Examination of the Blood**

Valuable information can be obtained by the inspection of freshly drawn samples of blood, as for instance, its viscosity, and the rapidity of erythrocyte sedimentation (See Blood Sedimentation Test on page 997) The relative volume of blood plasma should be observed in anemias especially before making a diagnosis of polycythemia In leukemias the total white count can be roughly estimated by the thickness of the sedimented film of white corpuscles It is important to look for abnormal pigmentation of the plasma such as bile pigments Most essential is the observation of the color of the venous blood itself as follows herewith

In all cases of uncomplicated acidosis and in any condition where the bases in the blood are insufficient to carry the normal amount of carbon dioxide the venous blood becomes arterialized in color The extreme arterial color of venous blood can be visualized in the terminal picture of pure diabetic acidosis It is well known that blood becomes darker in color as the oxygen is replaced by carbon dioxide and venous blood resembling arterial ought not to be overlooked as a possibility of hypooxidation In short, there is such a thing as physical examination of blood which should not be neglected

With the above mentioned advantages of making gross observation of blood and plasma in mind, blood chemistry may now be considered See Table of Blood Chemistry Values in Health and Certain Diseases p 992

An inspection of the table on p 1009 shows the range of values in chronic

nephritis, uremia, early and severe diabetes, moderate and severe acidosis, gout, lipemia, cholelithiasis and arthritis

In addition blood chemistry studies should be obtained in all preoperative bladder and prostate conditions The diagnosis as well as the prognosis of toxemias of pregnancy can be better followed by determining the blood chemistry at midterm In pneumonia cyanosis is now correlated with venous and arterial unsaturation In major fractures when union does take place there is a rise in the inorganic phosphorus content of the blood, but in nonunion there is no rise in blood phosphorus

The use of blood sugar estimations to control the insulin dosage is well known, and likewise, the determination of plasma chlorides as a guide to the diagnosis and treatment of hypertension

### **Pathologic Changes in the Blood Chemistry**

Under normal conditions the various chemical substances found in the blood occur in the proportions given in the table The nitrogenous bodies, such as urea, nonprotein nitrogen and uric acid are usually found in increased amounts when the kidneys fail to excrete them, and therefore their increase in the blood indicates the degree of kidney dysfunction Both in acute and chronic interstitial nephritis these products are in variably retained

**Nonprotein Nitrogen** This includes the nitrogen present in urea, uric acid, creatinin ammonia and, in fact, all nitrogen in a nonprotein form Normal, whole blood contains 25 to 35 mg of non protein nitrogen to the 100 cc An increase over this amount is an indication of kidney inefficiency A gradual increase of this substance in the blood on a low

**Composition of Normal Blood and of the Blood in Certain Pathological Conditions<sup>1</sup>**  
(After Hawk)

	Normal	Chronic Nephritis	Uremia	Early Diabetes	Severe Diabetes	Moderate Acidosis	Severe Acidosis	Gout	Hyperemia	Cholelithiasis	Arthritis
Total solids per cent	20.0	13-19	12-18		17-20			19-21			
Total N per cent	3.0	2.5-3.0	1.7-2.7		1.8-2.9			25-35			60-100
Nonprotein N	25.30 or 35	30-90	90-400								
Urea N	12-15	16-70	70-300					4-10			2-8
Uric acid	2-3.5	3-10	4-25								
Creatinine	1-2	2-4	4-35								
-Creatine	3-7		7-30								
Amino acid N	6-8		8-30								
Ammonia N	0.1-0.2	0.1-0.2	0.2-1.0								
Sugar per cent	0.08-0.12		0.1-0.2	0.14-0.30	0.3-1.2						
Acetone plus acetoacetic acid	0-1.0		2-25	1.5-12	10-40						
B hydroxybutyric acid	0-3.0		5-25	5-15	10-100						
Alkali reserve (c.c. CO <sub>2</sub> in 100 cc plasma)	77-53					40-30	Below 30		500-3600	280-950	
Cholesterol	140-180	170-350	170-350		150-300						
-Chlorides as NaCl per cent	0.65	0.55-0.75	0.45-0.65		0.60						
Acid soluble phosphorus	2.6	3.7	7-21								
Lipoid phosphorus	6-12	8-13	8-30		3-18				3-29		
Fat per cent	0.1-0.7 <sup>2</sup>										
Calcium (plasma)	10		3-9								

<sup>1</sup> Results are expressed as milligrams per 100 cc of blood unless otherwise indicated. Some of the figures given are based upon but few analyses and may not be entirely characteristic.

<sup>2</sup> A short time after a meal rich in fat the blood may contain considerably more fat.

nitrogenous diet indicates a progression of the lesion, especially if the creatinine also increases. The graver the lesion the greater is the retention of this substance in the blood. In uremia 400 mg of non-protein nitrogen, or more, may be found in the blood.

**Blood Urea Nitrogen** Urea is the chief end product of protein metabolism, it is freely excreted by the kidneys. The total urine urea depends upon the amount of protein ingested, the higher the protein intake the greater is the quantity of urea eliminated in the urine. On an average diet, about 30 Gm of urea is eliminated in 24 hours which is 50 per cent of the total urinary solids. Normal blood contains 12 to 15 mg of urea nitrogen to 100 cc. A quantity above 15 mg in 100 cc of blood indicates retention. In glomerular nephritis, the urea may mount up to 30 or 60 mg or more. In uremia it may be as high as 175 or 300 mg to 100 cc. of blood. In normal blood 50 per cent of nonprotein nitrogen is in the form of urea. In uremia the percentage is increased, and the other bodies, such as uric acid and creatinine, are also increased but not proportionately.

An *increase* of urea nitrogen in the blood is found in severe kidney damage in urinary retention due to disease of one or both kidneys, prostatic obstruction, or other condition that will interfere with urinary excretion. It is also increased in acute intestinal obstruction, excessive vomiting, severe dehydration and hemoconcentration and in severe liver damage, in advanced stages of osteitis fibrosa cystica, and occasionally in diabetic coma.

A *decrease* of urea nitrogen in the blood may be found during the sixth, seventh, and eighth months of normal pregnancy, also in nephrosis, acute he-

patic insufficiency due to chloroform, phosphorus or arsphenamine poisoning, and in acute yellow atrophy.

**Uric Acid** This substance is poorly soluble, therefore an increase in the blood above the normal may occur in early nephritis, before NPN urea and creatinine are retained. Normal blood contains from 2 to 3.5 mg of uric acid to 100 cc. In nephritis the quantity may be increased to 10, 20 or 30 mg to 100 cc of blood. Gout, and some forms of arthritis, even in the absence of a kidney lesion, may show from 5 to 10 mg of uric acid to the 100 cc of blood. Other conditions in which there is an increase of uric acid in the blood are leukemia, multiple myeloma, lead poisoning, intestinal obstruction, impaired hepatic function, osteoarthritis, cardiac decompensation, and pregnancy.

**Creatinine** Creatinine is an anhydrid of creatine which is normally found in muscle. It is a product of endogenous protein metabolism and its quantity in the blood is little affected by diet. This substance is more freely excreted by the kidneys than any other form of nitrogen, therefore, a retention of creatinine in the blood is an indication of grave kidney insufficiency. Normal blood contains 1 to 2 mg of creatinine to 100 cc of blood. Above 4 mg of creatinine to the 100 cc of blood indicates kidney impairment. In uremia creatinine concentration may be increased to 10, 18 or more mg.

**Plasma Proteins** The normal plasma protein is from 6.5 to 8.5 Gm per 100 cc. This is made up chiefly of albumin 4.6 to 6.7 and globulin 1.5 to 2.5. The albumin globulin ratio is maintained in health. In disease the plasma protein as a whole may be increased, or diminished or there may be an increase, a

diminution of either the albumin or the globulin, or an entire reversal of the albumin globulin ratio

**Hyperproteinemia:** An increase of albumin alone in the blood plasma occurs in but few conditions. The general increase of protein is due to an increase of the globulin fraction. In some of the acute and chronic infections and suppurations, the total blood protein is increased, the globulin often being two or three times as high as the albumin, this is noted in pneumococcic pneumonia, rheumatic fever, rheumatoid arthritis, subacute bacterial endocarditis, leprosy, kala azar, Boeck's sarcoid, multiple myelomata, myelogenous leukemia, osteomyelitis, lung abscess, lymphogranuloma, in various chronic suppurative diseases, in filariasis, trypanosomiasis, Schistosomiasis, and at times in malaria, tuberculosis and syphilis. Hyperproteinemia occurs also in acute dehydration, and may be found in severe vomiting, severe diarrhea, cholera, extensive burns, Addison's disease, intestinal fistula. According to H. A. Reimann, prolonged high globulin content of the blood plasma associated with chronic suppurative processes is often responsible for amyloid disease.

**Hypoproteinemia** The decrease of plasma protein occurs chiefly in the albumin fraction, this may be accompanied by a relative increase of the globulin fraction as a compensatory measure for the primary deficiency.

A decrease of serum protein is a constant and significant finding in all types of edema. This, according to Trumper and Cantarow, is the result of a diminished plasma colloid osmotic pressure within the blood vessels which decreases the ability of the plasma to hold water and causes an extravasation of water into the tissues. Depletion of plasma

proteins from any cause results in edema. The degree of edema and the time of its appearance depends more upon the concentration of the albumin fraction than upon that of the globulin fraction.

Diminution of total plasma protein with a decrease of the plasma albumin and a compensatory increase of globulin that is a reversal of the albumin globulin ratio and a decrease in the fibrinogen occurs in the following conditions. Chronic nephritis with marked albuminuria, portal cirrhosis, hepatocellular diseases, inanition, and lipoid nephrosis. It also occurs in toxemia of pregnancy, in primary disturbance of protein metabolism and where regeneration of serum albumin is interfered with.

**Prothrombin** SEE p 912

**Fibrinogen** The normal fibrinogen content of plasma is 0.2 to 0.4 mg to 100 cc.

The fibrinogen content of the plasma is increased in nephrosis in most of the acute fevers (except typhoid), i.e., lobar pneumonia, septicemia, bacteremia, in infections, such as sinusitis, tonsillitis, acute appendicitis, cholecystitis, in multiple myeloma, lymphogranuloma inguinale and in certain diseases of the liver. It is also increased during pregnancy and menstruation, and following x ray treatments.

**Decreased plasma fibrinogen** occurs in typhoid fever, acute hepatic insufficiency, such as caused by chloroform, arsenic, phosphorus and tetrachloride poisoning and in acute yellow atrophy of the liver. It is also decreased temporarily after severe hemorrhage and occasionally in malignancy.

**Chlorides** Normal whole blood contains 400 to 500 mg of chlorides to the 100 cc. The normal blood plasma contains 570 to 620 mg to the 100 cc.



The chlorides in the blood may be especially *increased* in nephritis with edema diabetes anemia certain fevers and at times in lobar pneumonia and in a large per cent of cases of hypertension. The chlorides are *diminished* in severe vomiting, pyloric obstruction achlorhydria uremia nephritic acidosis, edema emphysema, adrenal cortical insufficiency as in Addison's disease, following operative procedures particularly upon the gastrointestinal tract, and in those subjected to high temperatures who sweat profusely and drink large quantities of salt free water.

**Potassium** Normal blood contains 150 to 250 mg to 100 cc of whole blood and 16 to 22 mg to 100 cc of plasma. The potassium is *increased* in uremia in eclampsia and in Addison's disease at the expense of the chlorides. Potassium depresses the function of the myocardium, dilates the coronaries, stimulates the vagus and may cause tetany by producing alkalosis.

**Glucose.** Normal blood contains from 80 to 100 mg of glucose to 100 cc of blood. An increase of sugar in the blood (hyperglycemia) is found in diabetes mellitus, in mild cases 140 to 300 mg, in severe cases as high as 400 to 600 mg to 100 cc of blood. Mild hyperglycemia may be found in Addison's disease hyperthyroidism, pancreatic disease and in disease of the other endocrine glands. Normally, sugar begins to appear in the urine when the blood sugar concentration reaches 150 to 180 mg to 100 cc which concentration is considered as the normal renal threshold.

**Sugar Tolerance Test:** After a fast of at least 12 hours, about 5 cc of blood is drawn from a vein and its glucose content is determined (This is best done in the morning after an all night's fast).

Then the patient is given a solution of dextrose containing 0.8 Gm per pound of body weight. The glucose should be dissolved in 500 cc. of water flavored with lemon.

At the end of one hour another specimen (second specimen) of blood is drawn and examined, and an hour after that a third specimen is taken.

**Interpretation** Normally, the fasting blood sugar is 112 mg or less. One hour after the ingestion of the proper amount of glucose, the blood sugar reaches a height of 150 to 160 mg per 100 cc but at the end of the second hour it returns to the fasting level.

In *diabetes mellitus*, the fasting blood sugar may be within normal limits or above, depending upon the severity of the case, but at the end of the first hour after the glucose ingestion it reaches a height much above the kidney threshold for sugar (170), and its return to the fasting level is slow, so that, at the end of the second or even the third hour the blood sugar is still of a high enough concentration to cause glycosuria.

In *hyperfunction of the adrenals pituitary or thyroid*, the fasting blood sugar is normal or slightly elevated and after the glucose ingestion, it rises only slightly above the kidney sugar threshold and drops considerably within the first hour, but does not return to the fasting level until three or four hours later.

In *hypofunction* of the above mentioned glands, the fasting blood sugar is normal, rises only slightly above the highest normal level (120 mg per 100 cc of blood) and returns to the fasting level within the second hour after the glucose ingestion.

In *renal glycosuria* the blood sugar is always within normal limits or below, in spite of a constant mild glycosuria.

Very often, *preceding diabetic coma*, a marked hyperglycemia exists, which in itself is not so serious. But if there is also acidosis, that is, a marked increase in acetone bodies from incomplete fat

the blood plasma, the hydrogen ion concentration or pH of the blood plasma or, if the patient is able to cooperate, the carbon dioxide content or tension of the alveolar air may be ascertained

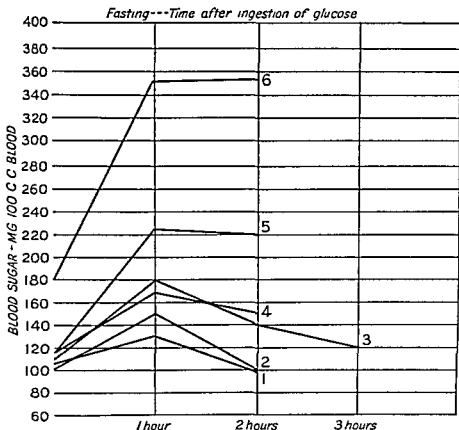


Fig 2—Glucose tolerance chart

#### Interpretation of Table

- 1 High sugar tolerance curve indicative of hypofunction of adrenals pituitary and thyroid
- 2 Normal curve
- 3 Curve found in hyperthyroidism
- 4 Potential diabetes
- 5 Mild diabetes
- 6 Low sugar tolerance indicative of advanced diabetes

metabolism (with dyspnea and without cyanosis) resulting from the excessive withdrawal of bases from the blood, it indicates grave danger. This diagnosis is best confirmed by an estimation of either the carbon-dioxide combining power of

#### Acidosis and Ketosis

**Ketone Bodies** (acetone bodies) An excessive accumulation of these bodies in the blood will cause acidosis or ketosis. By acidosis is meant a condition brought about by the excessive withdrawal of al

kalies through the formation of fixed acids which can only be eliminated by the kidneys, or by the retention of acids within the body. Recognition of acidosis plays an important part in such diseases as diabetes mellitus, severe nephritis, food intoxication and diarrhea with vomiting and in hyperemesis gravidarum.

Normally, the body is in a state of compensated acidosis and is protected against acidosis in various ways according to the following summarization by Dr. Campbell of Toronto:

- 1 By the proper balance of available carbohydrate in the food against the protein and fat (Antiketogenic *vs* ketogenic)

- 2 Selecting foodstuffs not too high in protein because the proteins when burned, yield phosphoric and sulfuric acids

- 3 Selecting foods containing an excess of inorganic bases over inorganic and organic acids

- 4 By an adequate supply of fluids (ketonic acids may be excreted in dilute form)

- 5 By production of ammonia which neutralizes acids and conserves sodium the essential base to carry  $\text{CO}_2$

- 6 By the combination of the calcium and magnesium of bone with acids (neutralization)

- 7 Excretion of buffer salts, bicarbonates and phosphates

8. Abnormally rapid excretion of carbon dioxide from the lungs

- 9 By the use of proteins in the blood or tissues as acids or as bases for combination to avoid change in reaction

If one of the above mechanisms is not used during the course of a disease, the others may rectify ensuing errors in metabolism, but in severe diabetes a

number of these mechanisms are ineffective

As long as the acid base equilibrium or pH is normal there is compensated acidosis. Van Slyke restricts the use of the term acidosis to describe the condition caused by acid retention sufficient to lower either the bicarbonate or the pH of the blood below normal limits. The subject of acidosis is too recondite to be thoroughly presented here, but a few basic clinical observations will be mentioned. It is well to remember Yandell Henderson's simple test. A normal person can hold the breath from 30 to 40 seconds without an especially deep inspiration but this period diminishes in proportion to the reduction of the bases in the blood. In acidosis, the blood tests are more dependable than the alkali tolerance or the alveolar carbon dioxide tension tests because in the latter it is not possible to obtain the cooperation of the semi- or completely comatose patient. It is well to remember that in profound diabetic coma, the high renal threshold which is often present (the higher this threshold, the more serious is the prognosis), prevents little if any sugar spilling over into the urine, even in instances where the blood sugar concentration is around 300 milligrams whereas in uremic coma it is common to find a trace of sugar in the urine. This makes it difficult to differentiate between diabetic coma and uremic coma unless blood tests are made.

**Test for Diagnosis of Acidosis**  
Ordinarily, the diagnosis of acidosis can be made or confirmed by any one of the following tests (if the patient is verging on coma, it is necessary to make one of the blood tests that does not require this cooperation)

I Hydrogen ion concentration of the blood plasma II Alkali reserve of the blood plasma (Van Slyke) III Alkali tolerance of the patient IV Carbon-dioxide tension of the alveolar air

**I Hydrogen-ion Concentration:** In making H-ion determinations, electrometric and colorimetric methods are available. Since the electrometric method requires elaborate equipment and an operator with considerable training, the discussion will be confined to the colorimetric method, which is commonly used clinically.

Each indicator that is used has its own definite pH range. For example, bromthymol blue covers the range pH 6.0 to 7.6. If the pH value of a solution to which bromthymol blue is added is 6.0 or below, the indicator will be yellow. If the pH of the solution is 7.6 or above, the indicator will be deep blue. Between these two points the color will range from yellow to blue, depending on the pH of the solution.

**Buffers** If acid or alkali be added to a solution of a strong base or acid, it will be found that usually the pH is markedly affected. Certain substances, however, when present in the solution, act to modify this usual effect in such manner that the changes in pH may be practically inappreciable. Such substances are known as *buffers* and they are quite common in biological fluids. These properties of buffered solutions are made use of in the colorimetric method for determining hydrogen ion concentration. By mixing certain solutions in definite proportions, mixtures are prepared of definite pH values. A suitable indicator is then chosen and added to these mixtures and to the unknown. A rough estimate of the pH of the unknown can be obtained by systematically testing it with

different indicators, for by this it is shown exactly at what pH the maximum acid or alkaline color may be expected. The exact proportions in which these buffer salts must be mixed to obtain desired pH values can be found in all standard manuals.

The *colorimetric method* of Cullen is widely used clinically with some modifications. The *electrometric method* of determining the hydrogen ion concentration is primarily used for investigation and seldom for clinical purposes unless as a check against the colorimetric method.

*The pH of the Blood is Remarkably Constant* For example, an arterial blood of which the pH = 7.35 (average normal) may change as it becomes venous blood to pH = 7.34 or possibly = 7.32. The lowest pH yet reported in man with recovery from acidosis was a pH of 6.98 and 7.02. In a case of nephritic acidosis with a pH = 6.7 with strenuous alkali therapy for 36 hours, the acid balance returned to a pH of 7.25 and the patient lived 48 hours. The range compatible with life probably lies between pH of 7.0 and 7.8.

The average value for normal urine is pH 6, while for gastric juice, which is the most acid secretion in the body, the pH is 1.7.

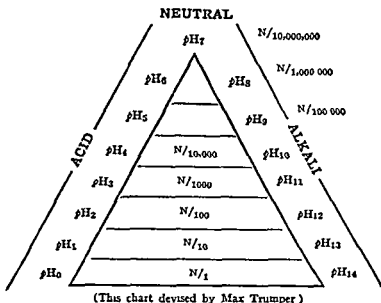
**II Alkali Reserve of the Blood.** The alkali reserve of the blood bears a definite relation to that of the entire body. The average value for man is 65 volume per cent of carbon dioxide. According to Hawk and Bergeim<sup>1</sup> the normal adult's reserve of bicarbonate is 80 to 53 volume per cent, in mild acidosis, with no previous symptoms, 53 to 40 per cent, in moderate to severe acidosis,

<sup>1</sup> Hawk and Bergeim. *Physiological Chemistry*, 8th Edit.

when mild symptoms may be apparent, 40 to 30 per cent and in severe acidosis, which gives rise to symptoms of intoxication below 30 per cent

III *Alkali Tolerance of Patient* Sellards<sup>1</sup> states that the alkali tolerance method is reliable for proving the absence of acidosis, but may not be entirely dependable for demonstrating its pres-

required for this change is noted, normally the administration of from 5 to 10 grams of bicarbonate of soda by mouth is sufficient to produce an alkali reaction in the urine. Patients suffering from acidosis require a greater amount of bicarbonate of soda to neutralize their urine. The generally accepted method is to give half a gram of bicarbonate of



Practically all the body fluids are represented by large unwieldy figures near the apex of this graph and so a short way of writing them is to use the negative power of ten to express the denominator. The abbreviation pH stands for the power (logarithm) of the number expressing the concentration of hydrogen ions. For example the hydrogen ion concentration of normal blood is about 0.00000004N which in its abbreviated form is pH 7.39.

ence or the degree of acidosis when present. This is probably due to the fact that conditions that produce acidosis so influence the kidneys that the excretion of alkalies is markedly impaired. This test is simple and is carried out in the following way.

Sodium bicarbonate is administered in small amounts either by mouth or intravenously until the reaction of urine changes from acid to alkali. The amount

soda per kilogram of body weight that should produce an alkali reaction of the urine in a normal person. The amount of bicarbonate of soda necessary to neutralize the urine in excess of a half a gram per kilogram of body weight may indicate the degree of acidosis. Van Slyke's advice is to be careful not to use an excess of sodium bicarbonate to avert the danger of tetany.

IV *Carbon Dioxide Tension of the Alveolar Air* The method of determining the carbon dioxide tension is

<sup>1</sup> Sellards, Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin, 25, 8, 1912.

based upon the absorption, by means of potassium hydroxide, of the carbon dioxide from a known amount of alveolar air. The average normal value for men is 55 to 65 volumes per cent. In women and children the normal value is lower. In the presence of acidosis the amount of carbon dioxide falls, and may be as low as 20 per cent or lower. In cases of diabetic coma, below 20 per cent is a danger signal of the oncoming of acidosis. The details of this test can be found in all laboratory manuals.

*Ketosis* is a form of acidosis due to overproduction of acids of the *ketone group*, e. g., betaoxybutyric and acetoacetic acids. The ketone acids in the body are the end product of fat metabolism requiring one molecule of sugar to two molecules of these acids to be finally broken up into carbon dioxide and water.

The most striking clinical sign of acidosis is hyperpnea (very deep regular and continuous breathing).

### *Alkalosis*

By alkalosis is meant a condition in which there is an increase in the alkalinity of the blood. This condition may be brought about by either an excessive accumulation of alkalis in the blood or an excessive withdrawal of acids or chlorides from the blood. The ion concentration or the reaction of the blood depends upon the ratio of  $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ — $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , therefore an increase in the bicarbonates will lead to alkalosis and an increase in carbonic acid to acidosis. Alkalosis may develop as a result of (1) Hyperventilation of the lungs caused by forced breathing whereby an excessive amount of carbonic acid is removed by the lungs. Forced breathing may be self induced; it is also seen in hysteria, in certain lesions of the brain and often

in young infants by excessive crying (2) Excessive vomiting whereby large quantities of hydrochloric acid and sodium chloride are lost (3) The excessive administration of bicarbonate of soda or other alkalis, which may overbalance the hydrogen ion concentration of the blood, causing an increase in the hydroxyl ion, that is, an increase in the alkalinity of the blood.

The clinical signs of alkalosis are Slow, shallow, often irregular breathing (an increase in depth and frequency of the respiration may often remedy the alkalosis), cyanosis, and at times tetany or muscle cramp tingling in the fingers slight numbness of the extremities, some mental disturbance and, in severe cases, carpopedal spasm and general convulsions with the presence of various signs of tetany (SEE Tetany, p. 790).

### *Sulfanilamide, Sulfapyridine, Sulfadiazine and Sulfathiazole Concentration in the Blood*

Sulfanilamide and its allied compounds have become common and frequently used remedies in a host of conditions. Because of their toxicity it is important to determine the concentration levels of these remedies in the blood after they have been administered for longer than 24 hours. Some patients will show a high concentration with comparatively moderate doses, while others will show a low blood concentration level with large doses. Since these drugs are toxic to sensitive persons, and may cause serious blood changes and kidney complications, it is important that the blood levels be checked frequently.

In mild or moderate infections a blood level of five to ten mg. per cent is considered desirable. In severe infections,

levels up to 16 mg per cent may at times be necessary. If the patient exhibits toxic symptoms, the blood concentration must be kept at a lower than the required level or the drug must be discontinued. In the presence of polyuria, or diarrhea, the blood concentra-

tion does not attain as high a level with the same dosage of the drug as it does in oliguria or in constipation. Among the toxic symptoms produced by these drugs are nausea, vomiting, headache, diarrhea, renal symptoms, skin rashes, fever, and nervous symptoms.

### Serologic Tests (Serology)

The principles upon which serodiagnostic tests are based are the immunologic reactions in the blood. The body's defense mechanism against pathogenic microorganism is such that when these organisms enter the body in sufficient numbers to cause disease, there develop within the body certain substances which attempt to neutralize and to destroy both the organisms and the toxins they produce. These substances are known as antibodies or immune bodies. They are found in the body tissues and fluids during the active stages of the disease and for varying periods after recovery.

Antibodies or immune bodies are species specific, that is, when they are formed because of a specific organism they are capable of protection only against that type of organism or the toxins produced by them. In other words, when a person has had a certain infectious disease, he becomes immune only to that disease, or to a very similar one, as in vaccinia and smallpox. But, having had smallpox, a person would not be protected against typhoid fever, syphilis, etc. The immunity may be temporary or lasting, and may be produced either by having had the disease, or by having been artificially immunized against the disease as by the administration of small doses of bacterial toxins, of killed or attenuated organisms, or by introducing into the body specific anti-

toxins. Immunity against disease is in part carried out by the various specific actions of the immune bodies developed in the blood as the result of specific diseases. Because of their specific reactions, the immune bodies are divided into three groups, namely: Immune bodies of the first order, immune bodies of the second order, and immune bodies of the third order.

**The Immune Bodies of the First Order.** These are antitoxins. They have the ability to neutralize toxins that are produced during a diseased process and also have the ability to protect or to immunize an individual against the propagation of specific types of organisms or to neutralize their toxins. To this classification belong the various antitoxins like diphtheria, tetanus, etc. They are employed in treatment and prophylaxis but are not utilized for diagnosis. While the antitoxins may be employed to determine the degree of natural or acquired immunity, an individual possesses, they are not employable as a diagnostic test of the disease. As an example, The Schick test will indicate whether a person is or is not relatively immune to diphtheria, but it is of no value as a test to determine the presence of diphtheria.

**Immune Bodies of the Second Order.** The specific action of this group depends upon the presence of a sym-

phore which has a ferment-like action and the presence of (a) *agglutinins*, (b) *precipitins*, and (c) *opsonins*. These are utilized for specific diagnostic tests.

(a) **The Agglutinins:** These have the property of agglutinating the type of microorganisms that are responsible for the development of the immunity toward the disease caused by them. The Widal reaction depends upon the agglutination or clumping of the typhoid and paratyphoid bacilli when they are brought in contact with the serum of an individual having typhoid or paratyphoid fever or one who recently had one of these diseases or was recently immunized against them. Agglutination tests are therefore based upon the ability of the blood serum containing specific agglutinins to react against the particular organism causing the disease (SEE p 1062).

Agglutination tests are of two types (1) For the diagnosis of disease, where an unknown serum, that is, the serum of the patient whose diagnosis is sought, is brought into contact with a known organism as in the Widal reaction and (2) for the identification of bacteria where the serum known to contain specific agglutinins for one organism is brought into contact with a suspension of unknown bacilli. The clumping of the organism in high dilutions of the serum in a specified time identifies the disease in the one instance and the bacteria in the other (Dilutions of not less than 1:80 in two hours or less). The agglutination test is employed clinically for the diagnosis of typhoid and paratyphoid fever, tularemia, undulant fever, epidemic meningitis, Asiatic cholera, bacillary dysentery, the plague, and occasionally for the various types of pneumococci, the Rickettsia diseases, and others. The serum of patients suffering from some Rickettsia dis-

eases, such as typhus fever, trench fever, and Rocky Mountain spotted fever agglutinate the bacillus *Proteus* X19, an apparently nonpathogenic organism found in the urine of those suffering from these diseases (Weil-Felix reaction).

(b) **The Precipitins:** These are employed for the biologic identification of unknown proteins, such as for the differentiation of human from animal blood in Forensic Medicine and for differentiating horse flesh from beef. In Clinical Medicine, it is employed for the diagnosis of echinococcus disease and for determining the types of the pneumococcus taken from the peritoneal washings of a mouse when there is contamination by other organisms.

The test for echinococcus disease is performed by mixing in a test tube, equal parts of the fluid from the hydatid cyst with the blood serum of the patient. This is permitted to stand for one-half hour. The appearance of a flocculent precipitate indicates a positive reaction.

(c) **The Opsonins:** These are substances found in the blood that have the property of preparing the bacteria in the blood for ingestion by the leukocytes. That is, they stimulate phagocytosis and are somewhat specific. A specific opsonin seems to stimulate phagocytic action for each species of bacteria. There are also opsonins for other formed elements in the blood, i. e., red corpuscles, dyes and other foreign bodies.

The opsonic index is obtained by the following method. The patient's blood serum, a suspension of the specific microorganisms and a suspension of washed leukocytes are mixed in equal parts in a test tube. Another test tube is similarly prepared, but using a normal person's blood serum instead of the patient's. Both tubes are incubated. Then smears



are prepared from each, are stained and examined under an oil immersion lens. The number of leukocytes are counted in each specimen and also the number of bacteria in each of the leukocytes. The average number of bacteria per leukocyte is calculated, this determines the phago-

*Application of the Principles of Bacteriolysis and Hemolysis.*<sup>1</sup> "It is necessary to bear constantly in mind the three substances or 'bodies' which are concerned in bacteriolysis and in hemolysis and the part which each plays. This may be outlined as follows

#### BACTERIOLYTIC SYSTEM

Antigen (invading bacterium)	+	Bacteriolytic amboceptor (in serum of infected person)	+	Complement (in serum of any normal animal)	=	Bacteriolysis
------------------------------------	---	--	---	---	---	---------------

#### HEMOLYTIC SYSTEM

Antigen (red blood corpuscles)	+	Hemolytic amboceptor (in serum of animal injected with red corpuscles)	+	Complement (same as in bacteriolytic system)	=	Hemolysis
--------------------------------------	---	---	---	---	---	-----------

or bound to the antigen by this specific amboceptor, and no complement will be left in a free state

"(b) If the patient's serum does not contain the specific antibody to serve as a connecting link, the complement will remain unbound or free in the fluid

"In either case there will be no visible change to show what has taken place, and it is necessary to add an indicator which will show whether the complement still remains free. This is found in the two specific elements of the hemolytic system, red blood corpuscles and hemolytic amboceptor. If free complement be present the hemolytic system is completed and the corpuscles will be hemolyzed. If, on the other hand, all available complement has been bound to the antigen by the antibody, then hemolysis cannot occur."

#### Complement Fixation Test for Syphilis (Wassermann)

In the Wassermann test for syphilis, the *antigen* is usually a cholesterinized and lecithinized alcoholic extract of heart muscle. (This is more sensitive than syphilitic material or the spirochete.)

The *amboceptor* is the clear serum of the patient's blood devoid of corpuscles and heated to 56° C., or 133° F.

The *complement* is the blood serum of a guinea pig. To the proper proportions of the antigen, amboceptor and complement is added a definite amount of indicator which consists of sheep's red blood cells and their respective antibodies or amboceptor obtained from the blood of a rabbit that had previously been injected with sheep's corpuscles. If the patient's blood is syphilitic the reagent in the blood will unite with the antigen and bind the complement so that no hemolysis of the sheep's corpuscles takes place, the reagent

in the syphilitic blood having in this case bound the syphilis antigen with the complement. If, on the other hand, the blood of the patient is not syphilitic, there is no reagent in the blood to bind the complement with the syphilitic antigen, therefore, the complement is free to hemolyze the sheep's corpuscles. This reaction is characterized by the formation of hemolysis and indicates a negative reaction.

A positive Wassermann reaction is indicated by the complete absence of hemolysis of the sheep's corpuscle resulting in a clear fluid. This is designated as "positive plus four." Plus three, two or one reactions are graded according to the degree of hemolysis that takes place. In other words, a nonhemolytic reaction (a clear fluid) is positive for syphilis and a very marked hemolytic reaction (a very turbid fluid) constitutes a negative Wassermann.

A 'four plus' or a strongly positive reaction indicates syphilis, 'three plus' or moderately positive of Kolmer may be accepted as positive, particularly in the presence of a positive history or clinical manifestations. 'Plus two' and 'plus one' reactions are doubtful, requiring repetition of the tests. During the course of treatment for syphilis, a 'plus one' or 'plus two' indicates that the disease is still active. A negative reaction does not necessarily exclude syphilis as it only means that the Wassermann reaction is negative. In the presence of clinical manifestations or a positive history, a negative Wassermann should not be construed as the absence of syphilis. Several successive negative reports in persons who have not had antisyphilitic treatment would indicate the absence of syphilis.

Syphilis may be considered cured when the Wassermann reaction or Kol-

mer's modification thereof and the Kahn test remain negative for several years after treatment is stopped

### **Complement Fixation Test for Gonorrhea**

This test is of greatest importance in cases of gonorrheal arthritis, as positive results may be obtained in about 80 per cent of cases. In acute gonorrhea, only 35 per cent are positive. In doubtful cases of arthritis, a complement fixation test for gonorrhea should be made and if found positive a diagnosis of gonorrheal arthritis may be made. A negative report does not entirely exclude the specific origin of the disease. The test becomes negative in from two to four weeks after a cure is effected.

### **Complement Fixation Test for Tuberculosis**

The technic of this test is similar to that of syphilis or gonorrhea. The value of this test in tuberculosis is questionable. While a great number of tuberculous patients may give a positive reaction there are many nontuberculous individuals who also give a positive re-

action and many cases of far advanced tuberculosis who react negatively.

### **Flocculation Test or the Precipitation Reaction for Syphilis**

This is based upon the appearance of a white precipitate when an alcoholic extract of normal heart muscle is added to the blood serum of a syphilitic individual. This reaction differs from the Wassermann reaction where a positive is indicated by a clear fluid and a negative by hemolysis. The Kahn test is the most widely employed of this group, and is used as a control on the complement-fixation test. At times the Kahn test may be positive when the Wassermann reaction is negative, or the reverse may also occur.

Other tests for syphilis are the Kline test, the Eagle test, the Hinton test, the Meinicke test, the Sachs George test.

These tests are also positive in jaws and in some of the other spirochetal infections.

Occasionally a positive Wassermann reaction may be found during the early stages of lymphogranuloma inguinale, and during some of the acute infections.

## CHAPTER XXXV

### Exudates, Transudates and Body Fluids

#### The Cerebrospinal Fluid

In the presence of symptoms referable to the cerebrospinal system, a spinal puncture should be performed, for diagnostic purposes, and the spinal fluid should be examined macroscopically, microscopically and chemically. Spinal puncture is also employed as a therapeutic measure to relieve intracranial pressure and for the administration of sera and spinal anesthetics.

**Technic for Spinal Puncture** If the patient is not too ill to sit up, the operation may be performed in the sitting posture leaning well forward. A sick patient should lie on one side, the thighs well drawn up upon the abdomen, the legs flexed, and the body bent as far forward as possible. To maintain this flexed position of the spine, in the absence of adequate assistants, a large towel or a sheet may be passed over one shoulder and under the knees and securely held in place so that extension of the spine is impossible.

The site of puncture is, as a rule the fourth lumbar interspace, a line drawn posteriorly from one anterior superior spine of the ilium to the other will cross this interspace. After the skin has been thoroughly prepared, the examiner chooses a spinal needle which is not too brittle, which measures 5 to 10 cm in length and 1 to 2 mm in diameter, and is provided with a stylet. In hypersensitive patients it is best to employ local anesthesia so as to minimize the discomfort. The needle is grasped near its point, and is inserted with steady pressure be-

tween the spines of the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae. When the sense of resistance suddenly ceases, the stylet is removed, and the fluid is permitted to flow through the needle. It is important to note the rapidity with which the fluid flows because in the absence of a spinal manometer this is an indication of the



Fig 1—Technic for spinal puncture

degree of intraspinal pressure. Normally, the fluid flows at the rate of approximately one drop a second. When the drops come rapidly, it indicates increased pressure, when the stream is continuous, it is an indication of very high pressure. The pressure can be accurately gauged only by an apparatus designed for the purpose. The normal pressure is usually considered to be between 100 and 200 millimeters of distilled water or 7 to 10 millimeters of mercury, and is physiologically increased by crying, coughing or muscular resistance during the operation.

**Queckenstedt's Sign** A failure to cause increased spinal fluid pressure when the vessels of the neck or the abdominal aorta are compressed usually indicates spinal block and is a valuable sign in the diagnosis of tumor of the spinal cord

**Froin's Syndrome** This consists of a clear yellow discoloration of the spinal fluid, xanthochromia, an increase in its protein content above 0.5 per cent, its ready coagulability and an absence of blood cells. It occurs in spinal canal obstruction due to tumor of the cord or meninges, spinal caries and epidural abscess. It also occurs in chronic meningitis, polyneuritis and Landry's palsy.

### **Characteristics of the Cerebrospinal Fluid**

(See Table p 1026)

#### **Normal Spinal Fluid**

Quantity About 120 cc

Color Colorless

Transparency Clear

Reaction Alkaline

Specific Gravity 1.003 to 1.007

Pressure In horizontal postures 100 to 200 mm of water or 7 to 10 mm of mercury

White Blood Cells 5 to 10 lymphocytes per cmm

Proteins 15 to 45 mg per 100 cc

Glucose 50 to 75 mg per 100 cc

NaCl 700 to 750 mg per 100 cc

Nonprotein N 12 to 18 mg per 100 cc

Globulin 0 to a trace.

Colloidal Gold Precipitating Proteins 0

**Queckenstedt's Phenomenon** (rise in spinal fluid pressure when pressure is applied on the vessels of the neck or the abdominal aorta) Positive

### **Abnormal Spinal Fluid Findings and Their Significance**

**Constituents** *Bloody spinal fluid* may be caused by injury to a blood vessel during the puncture or to hemorrhage into the subarachnoid space from the blood vessels of the meninges, the brain, the cerebral ventricles or the spinal cord. *Bloody fluid* due to faulty technic is bright red, the color diminishing in depth as the spinal fluid continues to flow. On standing, it coagulates. In pathologic conditions, the color is dull red or brown unless the bleeding is extensive and recent.

*Yellow fluid* (xanthochromia) denotes stagnation of fluid due to interruption of the flow of the spinal fluid, as in tumors of the spinal cord or vertebrae.

*Cloudy or turbid fluid* indicates a marked increase in the cellular elements. It occurs in all kinds of acute and syphilitic meningitis, certain types of encephalitis and abscess, unless there is blockage interfering with its flow.

*Increase in spinal fluid proteins*, as well as in *globulin*, occurs in acute purulent, tuberculous and syphilitic meningitis, meningovascular and progressive parenchymatous syphilis and to a lesser degree in brain abscess, acute anterior poliomyelitis and encephalitis lethargica.

*A slight increase of glucose* suggests acute anterior poliomyelitis and encephalitis lethargica.

*A decided decrease in glucose* speaks for acute purulent, tuberculous or syphilitic meningitis.

*A decided lowering of the NaCl content* points to tuberculous meningitis. In acute purulent meningitis, the fall of NaCl is less marked.

**Spinal Fluid Pressure** It is increased in intracranial tumors, hydro-

cephalus, cerebral hemorrhage, subarachnoid hemorrhage, meningitis, acute alcoholism, uremia, edema of the brain, and in other conditions causing intracranial or intraspinal crowding

**Lowering** of the spinal fluid pressure is found in dehydration and in partial obstruction to the outflow of spinal fluid above the site of puncture

**Cell Count** (cytological examination) An increase in the number of leukocytes indicates an acute inflammatory process. In tuberculous meningitis a high *lymphocyte count* is the rule. Lymphocytes also predominate in paresis, tabes, cerebrospinal syphilis, syringomyelitis, cerebral tumors, pressure myelitis, cerebrospinal meningitis, and encephalitis lethargica, and often also in epilepsy.

In acute meningitis purulent fluid may contain from 4000 to 5000 *white cells* per cubic millimeter. In tuberculous meningitis, in the early stages when the fluid is still clear, the cell count may range from 100 to 200 per cubic millimeter. In the late stages when the fluid becomes somewhat turbid, the cell count may rise to 300 or 400 per cubic millimeter. In epidemic encephalitis the clear fluid may contain from 10 to 100 cells per cubic millimeter. It should be borne in mind that an increase in the normal cell count is found after repeated lumbar punctures, even in the absence of any cerebrospinal lesion.

**Differential Count** When the cell count is not above ten to the cubic millimeter a differential count is unnecessary. Normally, lymphocytes are the only cells in the cerebrospinal fluid. A *polymorphonuclear leukocytosis* is an indication of an acute process while a

*mononuclear leukocytosis* usually indicates chronic inflammation.

A distinctly positive *Wassermann* or *Kahn* reaction of the cerebrospinal fluid indicates the presence of syphilis. Often the blood may fail to yield a positive reaction, when the cerebrospinal fluid will do so. In doubtful, but suspected, cases when the blood yields a negative *Wassermann* reaction, the cerebrospinal fluid should also be subjected to the *Wassermann-Kahn*, or colloidal gold test.

**Bacteriological studies** of the spinal fluid are often essential in diagnosis. Tubercle bacilli, meningococci, pneumococci, staphylococci and streptococci, the colon bacillus, the influenza bacillus, bacillus mallei (of glanders), the trypanosome (of African sleeping sickness), and the pyogenes bacillus have been demonstrated in the cerebrospinal fluid. Occasionally the *Spirocheta pallida* may be discovered in cases of cerebrospinal syphilis (SEE INDEX).

**Globulin** A trace is present in normal cerebrospinal fluid. It is increased in acute inflammations in tuberculous meningitis in cerebrospinal syphilis in paresis and in other syphilitic affections.

**The Colloidal Gold Reaction (Lange)** This test depends upon the ability of the proteins of the cerebrospinal fluid to precipitate colloidal gold in solution. In certain diseases the precipitating power of cerebrospinal fluid is greatly increased.

There are three types of response which are expressed as follows:

Paretic curve	55554331000
Luetic curve	00243110000
Meningitic curve	00001344000

Blood added to normal spinal fluid will give a meningitic curve, but will not interfere with the syphilitic curves.

Disease	Pressure	Type	Coag	Cells	Qual Glob	Qual Alb	Quant I rot	Quant Sugar	Chlor	Bact	Wass	Gold
Normal	100-200	Clear and colorless	0	0-10 lymph	0	0	15 to 40	15 to 60	720 to 750	0	Neg	Neg
Serous Meningitis	Increased	Normal	0	Normal	0	0	Normal or sl incr	Norm	Norm	0	Neg	Neg
Anterior Poliomyelitis	Increased	Normal or opalesc	Fibrin web	0 to 2000 early, poly later lymph	+	++	40 to 500	40 to 120	Norm	0	Neg	Meningitic or Zone II
Irulent Meningitis	Marked increase	Cloudy	Coag	100 to 5000 poly	++++	++++	Incr	0 to 60	Norm or decr	+	Neg	Meningitic curve
Chronic bas Meningitis	Normal or increased	Normal or opalesc	Coag	10 to 1000 poly	++++	++++	100 to 1000	20 to 60	Norm	0 or men ingococci	Neg	Meningitic curve
Tuberculous Meningitis	Increased	Clear to Turbid	Fibrin web	80 to 1000 lymph	++++	++++	100 to 1000	0 to 40	500 to 700	tb	Neg	Meningitic curve
Epidemic Encephalitis	Normal or increased	Normal	Fibrin occ	10 to 200 lymph	± to +	++	30 to 200	40 to 120	Norm	0	Neg	Neg or Zone II
Brain Inflammatory and Ineural Tumor	Variable	Normal	0	10 to 80 lymph	± to +	++	20 to 200	40 to 100	Norm	0	Neg	Neg
Intraspinal Tumor	Variable	Normal	Coag	Normal to 50 lymph	+++ to +	+++ to +	60 to 1000	Norm	Norm	0	Neg	Neg
Syphilis (1st and 2nd stages)	Normal	Normal	0	8 to 98 lymph	± to +	++	20 to 60	Norm	Norm	0	Var	Neg or Zone II
Syphilis (Menin govascular)	Normal or sl incr	Normal	0	2 to 1000 60% lymph h	++ to +	+++ to +	30 to 150	Norm or less	Norm	0	Pos	Luetic Zone II
Syphilis (tabes dorsalis)	Normal	Normal	0	10 to 75 lymph	± to +	++	30 to 60	Norm or less	Norm	0	Pos 70%	Leutic Zone II
Syphilis (larynx)	Normal or sl incr	Normal	Coag	30 to 200 lymph	++ to +	+++ to +	50 to 100	Norm or less	Norm	0	Pos	Paritic Zone I
Multiple Sclerosis	Normal or sl incr	Normal	0	0 to 40 lymph	++ to +	++ to +	20 to 80	Norm	Norm	0	Neg	50% neg Zone I or II may occur

### Thoracentesis

Tapping of the chest may be performed for one of four reasons *First*—Actually to determine the presence of fluid in the pleura (*exploratory puncture*); *second*—to determine the character of the fluid, *third*—to withdraw the



Fig 2—Technic for entering pleural cavity for withdrawing of fluid or performing artificial pneumothorax.

fluid from the serous sac, and *fourth*—for the introduction of air into the pleural sac (artificial pneumothorax)

**Technic** The skin is scrubbed with soap and water, dried, and painted with tincture of iodine, which is then removed with alcohol. A few drops of a one or two per cent solution of cocaine, novocain, or any other local anesthetic are injected into the skin at the site of the operation, and the hypodermic needle then pushed through the skin, so that the track is also anesthetized. An exploratory needle attached to a 5 or 10 cc syringe is inserted in the interspace previously anesthetized.

The exploratory needle should hug the upper surface of the rib, thus avoiding injury to the subcostal vessel. When the fluid is removed, the macroscopic appearance will indicate whether it is clear, turbid or bloody. If the fluid is clear, it may be either an exudate or a transudate. A *transudate* is characterized by low specific gravity, traces of albumin and very few cells, while an *exudate* is an inflammatory product and therefore contains many cells, large quantities of albumin and is of high specific gravity. When a large quantity of fluid is to be removed, the needle is attached to a "vacuum bottle," which draws off the fluid.

### Pericardial Puncture

The site for tapping the pericardium is usually the fourth intercostal space, close to the left edge of the sternum. When the dullness extends a distance to the right of the sternum, and the apex beat is not displaced beyond the mid-clavicular line, a puncture may be performed in the fourth or fifth intercostal space, to the right of the sternum. The pericardial fluid may be clear (*transudate*), or somewhat turbid and of high specific gravity (*exudate*), and may contain pus.

**Significance of Aspirated Fluid:** A *transudate* (clear fluid) may be found in the pleural cavities as the result of heart failure, of compression of the lungs or of a vein in the chest by tumors, aneurysm, etc., it is also found in nephritis, particularly in the type with water retention, and in grave anemia. Transudates into the pericardium may be found in severe myocarditis and in general anasarca.

*Exudates* are usually found as a result of inflammatory processes such as pleurisy and pneumonia, and may also be found in acute and chronic pericarditis.



coincides with the period in which the greatest amount of gastric juice is thrown out. This period in turn depends upon the kind of food ingested, thus, after a light test breakfast consisting of a roll, or a slice of bread weighing two or three ounces, and a cup of weak tea, the height of digestion will be reached within about one hour. A *test meal* consisting of a tablespoonful of barley gruel will reach its height of digestion within about two hours, while a test dinner consisting of meat, vegetables and soup will not reach its height of digestion for three or four hours. When the gastric contents are withdrawn from the stomach in *one procedure*, the withdrawal is performed at the end of one, two or four hours, depending upon the particular kind of test meal ingested. When the *fractional analysis* is made a portion of the stomach contents is withdrawn in the fasting state—that is, just before the test meal is given. With the tube still in the stomach the test meal is eaten, 15 minutes later the second specimen is withdrawn. This is continued every 15 minutes until the stomach is empty. The stomach contents thus obtained are examined, the result indicating the quantity and quality of the gastric juice secreted during the various stages of digestion. When the gastric contents are studied one must bear in mind the kind of a test meal employed.

**Quantity of Gastric Juice (test breakfast of Ewald)** The quantity of filtrate obtained one hour after this test meal should vary from 30 to 50 cc. An increase in quantity may be due to acute or chronic hypersecretion (gastro-succorricha) or to gastric retention, the result of pyloric obstruction, gastrectasis, etc. Gastric juice is also increased in gastric neurosis. A *diminished* quantity may be caused by sudden fright, chronic

gastritis, atrophy of the mucous membrane, hypertonicity of the stomach, or by an excessive amount of mucus in the stomach. Absence of free HCl in the gastric juice is found in achylia gastrica, in carcinoma of the stomach, pernicious anemia, grave secondary anemia, chronic gastritis, and is often a result of atrophy of the gastric mucous membrane.

**Total Acidity** One hour after the test meal is swallowed, the total acidity varies from 50 to 60. By total acidity is meant the amount of free and combined hydrochloric acid. When the total acidity rises from 60 to 100, it may be caused by increased ingestion of acid, if over 100, the condition is considered *gastro-succorricha* (hyperchlorhydria), if under 30 it is considered *hypochlorhydria*. Absence of acidity, particularly when associated with the absence of ferments, is known as *achylia gastrica*.

**Free Hydrochloric Acid** The normal quantity is about half of the total acidity. Free hydrochloric acid appears in the gastric contents after the basic affinities have been satisfied. During the early stages of digestion, the hydrochloric acid secreted combines with the albumoid and basic substances of the gastric contents to form soluble albuminous substances. The quantity secreted above that required for this purpose is known as free hydrochloric acid.

An increase in the free and combined hydrochloric acid is usually found in nervous gastritis, irritation of the stomach, gastric and duodenal ulcer, pyloric stenosis, secondary irritation and congestion due to a gallbladder disease, spastic colon and chronic appendicitis, also in vagotonia.

*Diminished or absent* free hydrochloric acid may be due to the too early evacuation of the stomach contents as

during the course of certain fevers, or in mucous gastritis, carcinoma of the stomach and pernicious anemia. Reliance cannot be put upon the evidence obtained from gastric analysis alone; it only aids in establishing a diagnosis when combined with other methods of clinical, physical and radiological examinations.

The absence of free hydrochloric acid after the histamine test points strongly to carcinoma of the stomach or pernicious anemia.

**Blood:** Blood in the stomach contents, either microscopic or macroscopic, may result from trauma to the esophagus or gastric mucosa by the swallowing of the stomach tube, or may find its way into the stomach from lesions in other organs. When extragastric causes and direct injury can be eliminated, the commonest causes for blood in the gastric contents are *ulcer* and *carcinoma* of the stomach (SEE pp 641 and 643).

The presence of Boas Oppler bacilli is an indication of malignancy.

**Mucus:** A moderate quantity of mucus is constantly found in the stomach and acts as a protection to its mucosa against hot and irritating substances. An absence of mucus is often found in hyperchlorhydria and gastric ulcer, while an increased amount of mucus in the gastric contents indicates *catarrhal gastritis*, this may also occur in carcinoma.

**Fatty Acids** Fatty acids, lactic and butyric, are abnormal constituents of the gastric contents. When neither of these acids has been ingested, their presence in the gastric contents often indicates malignant disease of the stomach.

**Bile** Bile may be found in the stomach contents if regurgitation through the pylorus has occurred, this is often found in gallbladder disease, duodenitis, and in conditions causing a patulous pylorus.

## The Feces

### Characteristics of Normal and Abnormal Stools


In many diseases it is important to make a macroscopic and microscopic examination of the feces. Occasionally a disease can be diagnosed only by a microscopic examination of the feces, for instance, in the search for the cause of a chronic diarrhea the presence of *Endamoeba histolytica* definitely establishes the diagnosis. In certain obscure anemias the finding of ova and parasites will often greatly aid in making a proper diagnosis. In a macroscopic examination of the stool the odor, color and consistency, the presence of blood and parasites should be especially observed. In the microscopic examination, bacteria, fungi, parasites, ova, blood and pus cells, and the variety of food remnants should be noted.


The *normal stool* is semisolid, usually formed, has a characteristic odor and is of yellowish brown color. *Pathologically*, the stool may be altered in shape, consistency and color.

**Pathological Alterations.** (a) *Shape*• Ribbon shaped stools are found in conditions that cause constrictions of the anus, cancer or stricture of the rectum, ischiorectal abscess, enlarged prostate, large hemorrhoids, and spasmodic contraction of the rectum. At times uterine tumors or a large prolapsed uterus may cause ribbon shaped stools.

(b) *Consistency*• Semifluid or fluid fecal matter is found in all cases of diarrhea, whether due to acute gastrointestinal disturbance or to the administration of purgatives, particularly the salines. It is also found in tuberculosis, typhoid fever, bacillary dysentery, amebic dysen-

# SEMEIOLOGY OF THE SPUTUM (continued)

MACROSCOPIC APPEARANCE	MICROSCOPIC FEATURES	CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE	ASSOCIATED CLINICAL SIGNS
<b>PUTRID FETID GANGRENOUS</b> —Appearance I etid odor of gangrene when set aside separates into 3 layers (a) Upper mucous turbid (b) middle fluid flocculent (c) lower greenish brown	 1 Unrecognizable polymorphous elements 2 Mixture of bacteria	(a) 1st degree Temporarily turbid sputum Temporary fetid bronchitis aimentary complication of bronchiectasis (b) 2nd degree Constantly putrid sputum Gangrene of the bronchi Curable gangrene of the lungs (bronchiectasis cavities etc) (c) 3d degree Gangrenous sputum (putractive necrotic or fecal odor) Gangrene of the lung	(a) and (b) Physical signs of chronic bronchitis with bronchiectasis Effect of posture on the cough and expectoration (c) Physical signs of softening of a lung focus or gangrenous emphysema General health markedly impaired

<b>RUSTY, FIBRINO HEMATIC</b> —Appearance Mucolirinous and viscid adhering to the receptacle apricot jelly exceptionally prune juice or licorice juice	 1 Polymorphous elements 2 Red cells 3 Fibrin and mucus 4 Encapsulated pneumococci	(a) Acute lobar pneumonia, in cases out of 10 (b) Rare causes (1) Cancer of the lung (2) Pulmonary infarction (embolism in heart cases) (3) Bloody sputum without infarction in heart cases or in alveolar necrosis (4) Acute pleuropulmonary congestion due to influenza etc (pseudopneumonia)	(a) The usual evidences of pneumonia Pain in side auscultatory signs and temperature indications (b) The signs of the causative disorder The sputum seldom presents a definitely rusty appearance exhibiting features intermediate between rusty sputum and licorice
--	---	--	--

**BLOODY**—Appearance Blood distinctly predominant is iron ore or less pure in greater or less amount and with or without admixture of fibrin or mucopus

(Hemoptysis *q*)



- Red cells with or without admixture of
- 1 Mucin and fibrin
  - 2 Pus corpuscles
  - 3 Various bacteria (Tubercle bacillus, tuberculosis)



- (a) Disorders of the lung,
- (1) Pulmonary tuberculosis
    - 1 Incipient Intestinal symptoms
    - 2 Established Recrudescence
    - 3 Cavities } Rupture of vessels  
                  } Ulcerations
  - (2) Cancer gangrene or cyst
- (b) Disorders of the circulation
- (1) Mitral stenosis
  - (2) Aortic aneurysm
  - (3) Heart failure

- (a) The usual stethoscopic signs
- Constitutional manifestations
- Fever injured nutrition and rexia asthma sweats etc
- Fluoroscopic evidences
- Tubercle bacilli in the sputum
- (b) The usual signs of heart disease

**PSEUDOMEMBRANOUS**—Appearance False membrane a bronchial cast of natural size






- (a) Branching and tubular false membranes
- (1) Diphtheritic or non-diphtheritic
  - (2) Chronic pseudomembranous bronchitis (rare)
- (b) Whole or fragmented hydatid vesicles (hydatid cyst)

**PNEUMONOKONIOSES**—Appearance Mucopurulent sputum requires separate mention because of its pigment content—

- (a) Black streaks Anthracosis of coal workers (b) Red or iron gray Siderosis of workers in iron (c) Colorless but sandy Chalcosis of stonecutters



Alveolar cells containing pigment or dust particles

MACROSCOPIC APPEARANCE	MICROSCOPIC FEATURES	CLINICAL SIGNIFICANCE	ASSOCIATED CLINICAL SIGNS
<b>MUCOUS</b> — Appearance Clear viscous often air laden fluid — (a) Special variety Opalescent and highly cohesive to the point of forming small ovoid or wormlike masses	 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Spiral strands (Curschmann's spirals) almost constantly present</li> <li>2 Charcot-Leyden crystals</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) First stage of acute bronchitis</li> <li>(b) At the close of an asthmatic seizure (Lacnec)</li> <li>(c) Fibroglummatous syphilis (softening)</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Rhonchi and sibilant rales</li> <li>(b) Attacks of asthma (see Asthma)</li> <li>(c) History Sluggish course of the disease Efficacy of antisyphilitic treatment</li> </ol>
<b>MUCOPURULENT</b> — Appearance Yellow or greenish yellow mixture of mucus and pus or purulent masses in frothy fluid	 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Mucin</li> <li>2 A few epithelial cells</li> <li>3 A few polymorphonuclear cells (Tubercle bacilli in tuberculous)</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Acute bronchitis (second stage)</li> <li>(b) Chronic and subacute bronchitis</li> <li>(c) Acute tuberculosis (caseous pneumonia)</li> <li>(d) Chronic pulmonary tuberculosis (softening and cavities) (nummular sputum)</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) and (b) Rhonchi and sibilant rales</li> <li>(c) Signs of apical pneumonia</li> <li>(d) Usual signs of apical consolidation softening and cavities</li> </ol>
<b>PURULENT</b> — Appearance Pus sometimes blood streaked like pus from an abscess	 <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Many polymorphonuclear cells some showing karyolysis</li> <li>2 Mucin</li> <li>3 Streptococci diplococci cocci or rods (Tubercle bacilli in tuberculous)</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Cavities (general) (1) Pleural empyema (general) (2) Pulmonary Lu g abscess sup purating hydatid cyst (3) Bronchial emphysema (4) Subapical abscess Heptic pyonephritis etc</li> <li>(b) Pneumonia in the stage of gray hepatization</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The signs of the causative disorder plus 1 Sharp pain in the side Cough Dyspnea 2 More or less copious vomiting of pus 3 Immediate relief from systolic pressure present</li> <li>(b) The usual signs of pneumonia</li> </ol>

watery mucus and serum, while the third layer is entirely confluent and contains decomposed pus. Such sputum is often found in chronic bronchitis, emphysema, pulmonary tuberculosis, and oftenest in bronchiectasis.

*Purulent expectoration* consists of almost pure pus, it may be seen in cases of gangrene of the lungs, rupture of a pulmonary abscess, rupture of an empyema or may represent the contents of pulmonary tuberculous cavities.

*Serous expectoration* consists of very thin fluid mixed with a small proportion of mucus and a small quantity of blood serum. It is found in cases of edema of the lungs.

*Frothy expectoration* is an admixture of air bubbles with serous fluid. It is found in edema of the lungs, after a spontaneous pneumothorax and, at times, in pulmonary emphysema.

*Dittrich's plugs*, yellowish white masses the size of a mustard seed, may be observed with the naked eye. Their presence indicates putrid bronchitis, pulmonary gangrene, or any other condition of the lungs that causes disintegration of pulmonary tissue.

*Fibrinous Bronchial Casts*. At times a perfect cast of the inner lining of several bronchial ramifications may be found in the sputum, because of fibrinous bronchitis.

*Curschmann's spirals* are often found in the sputum of asthma and chronic bronchitis. These spirals are usually entangled with Charcot-Leyden crystals and numerous eosinophils.

*Elastic fibers* are found in the sputum in any condition that causes lung destruction, their presence even in the absence of tubercle bacilli strongly suggests tuberculosis. Often foreign bodies such as hematoidin crystals, are found

in the sputum of old pulmonary abscesses or perforated empyema. Crystals of *calcium phosphate* in the sputum usually indicate retention and stagnation. *Yellowish* or *grayish green* granules are often found in the sputum of pulmonary actinomycosis. *Various parasites*, such as *Trichomonas*, *Bilharzia*, *Amoeba coli*, *taenia*, *Echinococcus*, *Ascarides*, *Actinomyces*, and other parasites and fungi are often found in the sputum of sufferers from the conditions caused by them.

**Bacteria in Sputum: Tubercle Bacilli**. These are pathognomonic of tuberculosis of the lungs. When tubercle bacilli are persistently found in the sputum in large numbers, it is an indication of an active infection. When few in number, they indicate a not very active infection. The temporary absence of tubercle bacilli from the sputum of a person having signs of pulmonary tuberculosis should not be taken as proof positive against tuberculous infection of the lungs in that particular person, because the finding of tubercle bacilli in the sputum simply means that an open lesion exists, while the absence of tubercle bacilli from the sputum over a brief period may merely indicate that they are not being expectorated.

**Pneumococci**. Pure, or nearly pure, cultures of pneumococci are found in lobar pneumonia. To make a proper diagnosis, it is not sufficient merely to find pneumococci in the sputum. The type to which that case belongs should also be determined. The 30 or more types of pneumococci may be distinguished by the Neufeld method of typing the sputum (SEE p 1054).

**Other Bacilli**. *Influenza bacilli* may be found either in pure culture or in association with staphylococci streptococci

or pneumococci *Diphtheria bacilli* are often found during the course of this disease or in those who are diphtheria 'carriers' Sputum containing *staphylococci streptococci*, and *pneumococci Friedlander's bacilli* and various microorganisms is observed in bronchopneumonia and in other acute or chronic respiratory diseases

### Chief Characteristics of Sputum in Various Conditions

**Acute Bronchitis** During the early stages the sputum is scanty more or less transparent, but not viscid As the disease progresses the sputum becomes more copious is mucoid and may contain pyogenic microorganisms

**Chronic Bronchitis** The expectoration is profuse greenish yellow in color mucopurulent and contains a profusion of bacteria

**Bronchopneumonia** During the early stages the sputum is scanty, often frothy, mucoid or mucopurulent As the disease progresses the sputum becomes distinctly mucopurulent, is copious in amount and often contains blood giving it a prune-juice appearance, it may also contain a variety of bacteria

**Lobar Pneumonia** During the early stages the expectoration is scanty and viscid yellowish in color, somewhat mucopurulent and contains various types of pneumococci Even in the later stages, particularly near or soon after the crisis the sputum is viscid tenacious and blood tinged often being rusty in color

**Bronchial Asthma** At first the sputum is scanty, later it becomes purulent and grayish in color It is as a rule frothy and contains Curschmann's spirals Charcot-Leyden crystals and eosinophils

**Pulmonary Abscess** The quantity of sputum depends upon the amount of pus brought up from the abscess and the conditions of the lung tissue surrounding it The sputum is usually purulent, has a fetid odor and contains many pus cells hematoidin crystals and portions of lung tissue.

**Gangrene of the Lung and Putrid Bronchitis** The sputum is purulent has a most obnoxious odor, and on standing, separates into three layers It contains pus cells, leukocytes and hematoidin crystals

**Pulmonary Tuberculosis** In the early stages before active consolidation has occurred the sputum is scanty, grayish yellow or whitish in color It is frothy and is brought up in small quantities, often only as a spray during the act of coughing In the presence of consolidation when not excessively large the sputum becomes more copious is yellowish gray in color, and somewhat tenacious In the late stages the sputum is mucopurulent grayish yellow or yellow, has a musty and, at times a fetid odor, contains fibers and tubercle bacilli and not infrequently it may be blood stained, blood tinged or intimately mixed with blood The expectoration of pure blood constitutes a hemoptysis (hemorrhage from the lungs)

**Bronchiectasis** The sputum is mucopurulent and when expectoration is infrequent the odor is foul The mode of expectoration is more or less characteristic, usually a patient suffering from bronchiectasis will bring up a very large quantity of mucoid expectoration at infrequent periods of the day often merely as a result of change of posture. At times a patient may not cough all day or night except on first arising in the morning when a large quantity (accumulation

sufficient to fill the cavity) is brought up because of this change of posture.

**Perforated Empyema** The sputum very much resembles that of pulmonary abscess

**Pneumonoconiosis** The sputum in this condition depends upon the kind and amount of dust inhaled. Thus in *anthracosis* (coal dust) the sputum is black at least it contains black particles of coal

**Siderosis** The sputum resembles that of chronic bronchitis and contains alve-

olar cells and dark particles of iron and other metals

**Silicosis** In this condition the sputum contains particles of silica or other stone dust

**Calcosis** In this condition the sputum contains particles of lime and of plaster of Paris or other chalky deposits

**Chemical Reaction of Sputum** Freshly expectorated material is usually of alkaline reaction but turns acid on standing



at this time. Breakfast is then taken. One hour after the beginning of the test period, urine is voided, the specimen is measured and saved, and at this time also 10 cc. of blood is taken from a vein and its urea content is noted. One hour later or two hours after the beginning of the test period, the bladder is again emptied completely, the two specimens of urine passed during the test period are measured and their urea content is noted. Comparison is then made between the urea concentration of the blood and of the urine.

Low urea clearance indicates impaired kidney function.

**Mosenthal Test** This test depends upon the individual's capacity to concentrate his urine, as is determined by the quantity of urine excreted during the day and night. The specific gravity and quantity of urine passed every two hours during the day—8 A. M. to 8 P. M. is compared with the specific gravity and quantity passed during the night—8 P. M. to 8 A. M. Under normal circumstances there should be a variation of at least nine points in the specific gravities of the two-hour specimens, and the total night urine should be less than 750 cc. (usually less than 450), and in the proportion of about one half or one third of the amount of day urine. The excretion of salt and of nitrogen should be at least one per cent. If the specific gravities vary less than nine points and if the night urine is large in amount and of low specific gravity, and the excretion of nitrogen or salt is insufficient, or if all or any one of these occur, it is taken as evidence that kidney efficiency is below par. This test is most useful as an aid to the early diagnosis of chronic nephritis, especially the type in which hypertension and nitrogen retention oc-

cur, that is, the type spoken of as chronic interstitial nephritis.

**Fluid Concentration Capacity** When the kidneys are normal, the concentration of the urine under ordinary circumstances depends largely upon the quantity of water ingested. When small quantities of water are taken a concentrated urine of high specific gravity is voided, and when large quantities of water are taken, the urine passed is diluted and of low specific gravity. In advanced nephritis, presenting urine of a low specific gravity, the concentration power of the kidney will be found to be very low. No matter how concentrated and dry the diet may be, the specific gravity of the urine will remain low. Also when large quantities of fluids are taken, they will have no effect upon further lowering the specific gravity of the urine.

In commenting upon renal tests in general, it is necessary to state that no one test is ideal, and that often all methods must be employed, as the kidneys react differently to the various bodies which are brought to them from the blood for excretion, and must, therefore, be judged separately in regard to their ability to excrete each one. Like other laboratory tests they do not in themselves make a diagnosis but are useful when added to the first hand clinical knowledge of the patient.

### Liver Function Tests

The liver possesses a number of functions which play an important part in digestion and metabolism. Disease of the liver may be manifested by an interruption or perversion of one or several of its functions. By laboratory tests several of the functions may be checked up. The functions of the liver so far known, are:

1 Bile secreting function, 2 Glycogenic function, 3 Urea forming function (or destroying uric acid), 4 Detoxifying function, 5 Bactericidal function 6 Lipogenic function, 7 Iron metabolism function, 8 Erythrocytic function

Of all the known liver functions and possibly of many unknown functions that the liver possesses, only a few may be investigated by laboratory methods: *i.e.*, the bile secreting function, the glycogenic function, and possibly one of its digestive functions

### **Bile Secreting Function**

The quantity of bile absorbed in the circulation, either because of obstruction to the outflow of bile into the intestines or because of hemolysis, may be investigated by the following tests

**Icterus Index (Bernheim)** This is a method by which the quantitative amount of bile pigment in the blood serum is estimated colorimetrically. The normal icterus index is between 2 and 5, in clinical jaundice, the index may reach from 15 upwards. Bile pigment in the blood in excess of the normal quantity may not be visibly recognized when its index is below 15 (the zone of latent jaundice range). Bilirubin is found normally in blood serum in proportions of 1 part to 500,000. When the bilirubin content of the blood reaches to 1 part in 50,000, jaundice becomes visible. An icterus index from 10 to 20 may be seen in cholangitis, cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, hepatic cirrhosis, carcinoma and gumma of the liver, various inflammatory conditions of the liver and in adhesions of the gallbladder. The icterus index may also be high in hemolytic jaundice, cardiac decompensation, internal hemorrhages and in fevers such as malaria, typhoid and pneumonia. This

test is the most desirable for the quantitative estimation of bilirubinemia because of its simplicity, accuracy, definite clinical value and its safety. The icterus index only measures the quantity of bilirubin in the blood stream. Its clinical interpretation, however, depends upon the factors that produce this condition. The icterus index test, to be of value, should be made at regular intervals in order to determine whether the jaundice is increasing, diminishing, or is stationary (SEE p 601)

**The Van den Bergh Test.** In this test the serum is treated with Ehrlich's diazo reagent which causes a red coloration when the bilirubin is present. The depth of color and the rate of its appearance is taken as an index of type and extent of bilirubinemia. Two types of reaction occur: *one, direct*, which may be (a) prompt reaction, (b) delayed or negative reaction, or (c) biphasic reaction, and *two, indirect* (SEE p 602)

**Direct Reactions.** The three types of *direct Van den Bergh reaction* are said to be caused by chemical or physiochemical differences in the bilirubin and are attributed to the path by which the pigment enters the blood serum. *Prompt direct reaction* is seen in cases of frank obstructive jaundice, *delayed direct reaction* is seen in cases of hemolytic jaundice, *biphasic reaction* (two reactions are obtained, one prompt reaction and the other delayed reaction which is probably caused by the presence of two kinds of bilirubin in the serum) indicates that both obstruction and hemolysis are present in the same case. This reaction often occurs in destruction of liver cells as in toxic or infective jaundice.

Serum yielding a direct Van den Bergh reaction indicates that the bili-

rubin contained in the serum has passed through the liver cells. This is found in biliary obstruction and in hepatocellular disease.

**Indirect Reaction:** The bilirubin content of the normal blood has been found to be 1 in 1,800,000 to 1 in 500,000. Van den Bergh takes 1 in 200,000 as a unit. The limits are 0.1 to 0.5 units. The renal threshold value of bilirubin is approximately four units, because bile does not appear in the urine until four units are present in the blood. In hemolytic jaundice, this relation does not hold, as it is possible to have between 5 and 18 units in the blood with no bile in the urine. This is possible because the bile may be excreted in the form of urobilin. Latent icterus is a condition in which there is sufficient bile to produce slight jaundice but no bile appears in the urine.

Blood which fails to yield a positive direct reaction may on the addition of 95 per cent alcohol yield a violet color, that indicates an indirect reaction. Serum yielding only an indirect reaction indicates that its bilirubin content has not passed through the liver cells. This reaction is found in hemolytic jaundice, pernicious anemia, erythroblastosis, sickle cell anemia, in absorption of blood from the peritoneal cavity, and in newborn babies.

**Bile Test** Liver function is also studied by chemical and microscopic examination of the bile. The bile may be obtained direct from the duodenum by Lyons' method of biliary drainage, and is studied microscopically for various bacteria, crystals, inorganic salts, bile pigments and liver cells. The amount and quantity of bile secreted by the liver can also be determined by duodenal

drainage. The rate at which the bile flows through the tube is often an indication of the rapidity of bile secretion, a very slow flow of bile may indicate partial obstruction of the gallbladder or bile ducts.

The bile obtained by drainage is classified by Meltzer and Lyons as follows: "A" bile—The contents of the duodenum and common duct are a yellowish green alkaline fluid, the first to appear through the drainage tube. "B" bile—The contents of the gallbladder are viscid, concentrated and darker, the second portion of bile. "C" bile—The contents of the hepatic ducts are watery and lemon yellow or greenish in color, the third portion of bile.

If "A," "B," "C" bile is secured through the tube, it may be assumed that the gallbladder is functioning properly. If "A" and "B" bile are found to contain clumps of cholesterol crystals, gallstones in the common duct and gallbladder may be suspected. If the "B" bile alone contains clumps of cholesterol crystals, cholelithiasis may be suspected. The absence of cholesterol crystals and the presence of bile stained epithelial debris and bacteria indicate cholecystitis.

**Serum Phosphatase** The normal serum phosphatase in adults is 1.5 to 4 Bodansky units (0.10 to 0.21 Kay units), and in growing children 5 to 14 Bodansky units.

The serum phosphatase is increased in obstructive jaundice, hepatocellular jaundice, portal cirrhosis, carcinoma of the liver, biliary fistula and in osteitis fibrosa cystica, osteogenic sarcoma and other destructive bone diseases.

Normal values are obtained in hemolytic jaundice and congenital atresia of the bile ducts.

### **Hippuric Acid Test**

This test is based on the ability of the liver to synthesize glycine with benzoic acid and form hippuric acid which is eliminated in the urine.

**Procedure:** Six grams of sodium benzoate is administered, and the urine is collected during the following four hours. In the normal, approximately three grams of benzoic acid in the form of hippuric acid is excreted in the urine during the four hours after the administration of the sodium benzoate.

*Diminished excretion* of hippuric acid is found in hepatitis, portal and biliary cirrhosis, carcinoma, and syphilis of the liver and in hepatic necrosis, also in catarrhal jaundice and in chronic hepatocellular degeneration.

*Normal finding* occurs in jaundice due to uncomplicated obstruction of the common bile duct and in gallstones. This test is therefore of value in differentiating between jaundice due to uncomplicated biliary obstruction and hepatocellular disease.

### **Takata-Ara Reaction**

A positive Takata-Ara reaction is obtained in the presence of a high globulin content of the serum, especially when the albumin fraction is decreased. This test is also positive in a large proportion of cases of portal cirrhosis. It is, however, recognized that a positive reaction is the result of a high globulin content of the serum and is not a specific test for liver damage.

### **Cholesterol Content of the Blood**

In certain diseases of the liver, the cholesterol content of the blood may be increased or diminished. When the chol-

esterol esters (combined with fatty acids) fall below 50 per cent of the total cholesterol content of the blood in hepatic disease and particularly in common duct obstruction, it is an indication of liver damage and is of serious prognostic significance. *Hypercholesterolemia* is also found in myxedema and milder forms of hypothyroidism. *Hypocholesteremia* is found in hyperthyroidism and exophthalmic goiter.

### **The Dye Tests**

**Dye in the Blood Serum Brom-sulfalein Test** (phenoltetrabromphthalein sodium sulfonate Rosenthal and White) This test, as an indicator of hepatic function, depends upon the rapidity with which the dye is removed from the serum. Normally, the intravenous injection of two milligrams of the dye per kilogram of body weight is completely removed from the blood in 30 minutes; in liver disease, the dye may be retained in the blood in various concentrations up to 100 per cent of the amount injected. The percentage of the dye present in the serum half an hour after injection indicates the degree of liver function impairment.

**Dye in Bile Phenoltetrachlorphthalein Test** (Aaron, Beck, Schneider, Piersol and Bockus) The dye is injected intravenously in order to determine the ability of the liver to excrete it. When the liver is normal, the dye, after intravenous injection, can be detected in the bile obtained by the duodenal tube in from 12 to 17 minutes. In various liver diseases, the appearance of the dye in the bile is very much delayed.

Rowntree employed this dye intravenously and estimated liver function by the amount of dye eliminated in the stools.

produced by etched lines in the camera lens. In order to appreciate the normal and abnormal waves depicted upon an electrocardiogram, it is necessary for the paper to revolve at a given velocity during the recording process. There are also

seen on the electrocardiogram as a small rounded elevation; normally, it is always directed upward. It has a deflection (amplitude) of from two to four milliwatts (millivolts), its duration is 0.1 second, and is closely followed by the

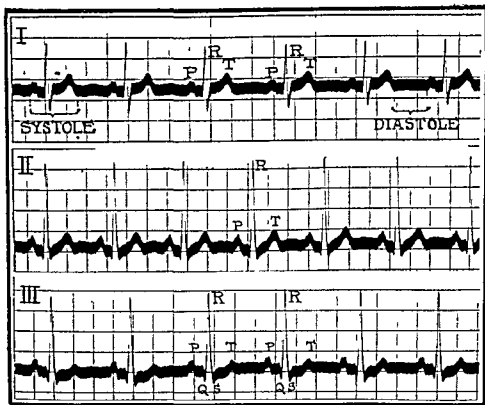


Fig 2—Normal electrocardiogram. A complete clinical electrocardiogram consists of three records, called *Leads*. The first is taken across the base of the heart, the second along the right border, and the third along the heart's left border. Normally, the same principal waves are present in all three records, varying in size but never varying in the order in which they follow one another. The waves are produced only when the heart is excited to contraction. When the heart is at rest, the line of record is free from waves and is flat. The first sound of the heart occurs as the tall *R* spike approaches its zenith. The second sound occurs at the end of the *T* wave (S Calvin Smith, F A Davis Company)

arbitrary divisions by which the height and length of certain waves may be measured. These divisions are formed into squares by delicate cross lines, each large square being 0.2 of a second wide and five millimeters high.

Three primary waves represent the contraction of the heart; the *P* wave is

*Q-R-S* complex. The *P-R wave interval*, the distance from the beginning of the *P* wave to the beginning of the *R* wave, normally occupies 0.14 to 0.20 of a second; this represents the contraction of the auricle. The *A-V* node is reached at about the summit of the *P* wave. The *P-R* interval is shorter in rapid heart

action and prolonged in slow heart action. Abnormally prolonged P R interval occurs in A V bundle block.

It is followed by a narrow, tall steep-like spike called the *R wave* which represents the beginning of the ventricular contraction. (The height of the R wave corresponds to the first sound of the heart.) This in turn is followed by a third wave, the *T wave*, which is higher than the P wave, but only one third as high as the R wave, it represents the final activity of the ventricles.

Two other waves known as the Q S waves are sometimes found at the base of the R wave. The Q wave is found at the right extremity, and the S wave is found at the left extremity. The distance between the Q and S waves is significant. The deflections of the Q and S waves are represented by rather short, abrupt peaks directed downward, they blend with the ascending and descending limbs of the R wave.

Normally, the sequence P R T waves will occur for as long a period as one may choose to have the electrocardiograph in operation. The extent of the electrocardiogram represents multiplications of the original P R T Q S waves and the same should be observed in all three Leads. Deviation from the normal P R T waves indicates a pathological condition. The letters P R T Q S, etc. have no particular significance except that they have been adopted to represent these waves by the early workers with the electrocardiograph who employed these letters instead of the over-used first letters of the alphabet.

The normal electrocardiogram consists of a series of waves or deflections which have been arbitrarily termed P Q R S T and U. The deflections are grouped ac-

cording to their occurrence in the cardiac cycle, thus P is known as the auricular complex, and Q R-S and T as the ventricular complexes. The deflections Q S are important in the diagnosis of myocardial defects due to coronary occlusion and to other defects.

The amplitude of the R wave varies between 10 and 15 milliwatts. The width of this wave normally does not exceed 0.10 of a second. Because of the extremely rapid deflection of the galvanometer the R wave appears on the electrocardiogram as a delicate line.

The Q R S complex lasts from 0.08 to 0.1 of a second.

The amplitude of the T wave is from three to seven milliwatts and has a duration of about 0.27 of a second. The S T interval is the distance between the S wave or the termination of the descending limb of the R wave when the former is absent and the end of the T wave, it has been shown by Mekens not to exceed 0.28 of a second (Willius). The Q R S T complex represents the systole of the ventricles. Its duration from the beginning of the Q or the base of the left limb of the R to the end of the T varies with the rate of the heart; it is usually between 0.32 and 0.42 of a second.

**Limitations of Electrocardiography** Electrocardiography can supply information only concerning the conduction system of the heart. It cannot give any information on diseased conditions of the heart valves, of the pericardium or the endocardium or of the aorta, or of the blood supply of the heart unless—because of disease of these structures—the heart muscle becomes secondarily affected thus interfering with the conduction path of the heart's impulse. It is inadvisable to base a diagnosis on the

data obtained by a cardiographic examination alone, because an instrument so fine as the electrocardiograph may occasionally produce erroneous data, and because the condition of the patient's heart action as reproduced on the electrocardiogram represents only what is going on during the brief time required for the examination. The electrocardiograph is still a comparatively new addition to the clinical armamentarium. Electrocardiography has a definite place in medicine, but it should by no means be permitted to displace a thorough physical examination. For *Electrocardiographic Interpretation of Heart Action*, SEE p 435

#### *Definitions of Terms Used in Electrocardiography*

**Wave** is an elevation produced by the contraction of the auricles or ventricles, for instance *P R T waves*, etc.

**Leads** are records obtained from a single source. We speak of four leads. I The arm lead, II The right arm and the left leg lead, III The left arm and left leg lead, IV The left chest and left leg lead. The four leads are records which form a complete clinical electrocardiogram.

Waves are divided into the ascending limb, the upstroke of the wave, the summit or plateau the uppermost portion of the wave, and the descending limb downward stroke of the wave.

**Positive** refers to a wave when directed upward. **Negative** refers to a wave when directed downward.

**Amplitude** and **voltage** are terms used to express the excursions of the waves. The term **low amplitude** is applied to a lowering or flattening of a single wave as in a flat T indicating

pathology in that part of the heart which is responsible for the production of the wave. **Low voltage** designates low amplitude in all waves and in all leads. It indicates either a diminished production of electricity within the heart or interference of the heart's current in reaching the extremities.

**Isoelectric** refers to a flat wave, diphasic, when the wave starts in one direction, then sharply slants in another.

**Slurred** is used when either the ascending or the descending limb of a wave is heavier than the rest of the stroke.

**Notching** is a sharp depression or a notch in part of the wave.

**Splintering** signifies multiple notches in a wave.

**Tremors** are fine elevations as a result of vibration of the base line obtained from graphic records of nervous, emotional people who are under muscular tension. Tremors may be of somatic origin, when due to vibration of skeletal muscles, visceral tremors are caused by visceral muscles.

**Emming (M ing) or double wing (W ing)** signifies the splintering of a wave to resemble the letters M or W. This is found chiefly in the ascending or descending limbs of the R wave.

#### *Analysis of Records*

In the interpretation of heart records all four or more leads should be considered. It is advisable for the beginner in this kind of work to keep a normal tracing before him with which to compare the abnormal curves he desires to interpret.

The information to be sought from the study of an electrocardiogram is as follows:

1 The auricular and ventricular rates are compared by counting the P waves and the R waves which occur in 20 squares of the record (four seconds) and multiply by 15 to get the number of beats per minute

2 The origin of the heart rhythm is to be determined, *i. e.*, whether it originates in the sinoauricular node, as in the normal, or at some abnormal point

3 The conduction time from auricle to ventricle is estimated from the beginning of the P wave to the beginning of the R wave. When the P-R interval is greater than 0.2 of a second, it indicates delayed conduction, such a delay is noted in heart block

4 Departures from the normal waves in any leads should be noted, as it is thus possible to tell in which chamber of the heart the abnormality is located

### The Polygraph

The polygraph is an instrument devised to take the tracings simultaneously of an artery (arteriogram) of a vein (phlebogram), and of the cardiac apex beat (cardiogram)

The ink polygraph of McKenzie is the instrument now most commonly in use. It consists of a recording apparatus which has two or three airtight rubber tubes attached to it. The ends of the tubes are fitted with cups, one adjusted to the jugular bulb or liver, the other to the radial artery, and a third may have a device to fit over the area of the apex beat. The other ends of the tubes are so connected to the recording apparatus that the pulsations perceived by the cup are transmitted along the tube cause an inked pen to oscillate. These oscillations are recorded upon a strip of paper which is being revolved by a clock mechanism,

the speed of which can be regulated. The tracings upon that paper constitute a *polygram*. The polygraph is particularly useful in recognizing pulsus alternans. Usually each polygram has a fourth line which is termed the *time marker*, and which records spaces of 0.2 of a second. A fifth line which seems essential to every polygraphic record is the *ordinate line*. The ordinates are perpendicular lines which are described on the polygraph tracings at stated intervals of six to eight inches. They are produced by a stopping mechanism.

**Phlebograms** A *phlebogram* may be recorded either from the jugular bulb or from a pulsating liver. When this is compared with the tracings of an arteriogram (sphygmogram) it enables one to estimate the conduction time from auricle to ventricle.

The three principal waves of phlebogram are the A C-V waves. The A wave is thought to be due to auricular systole, and represents auricular contraction. The C wave represents ventricular contraction. The interval from where the A wave begins to where the C wave commences in the jugular tracing is said to represent the conduction time from auricle to ventricle and is known as the A C conduction time interval. The V wave is caused by an increased pressure in the veins which is probably due to regurgitation of blood in the veins, and the rise of pressure in the auricles because of ventricular systole. The A C and V waves are positive waves. There are also three negative waves, the X Y-W waves, these are caused by the negative phases in the circulation, when pressure is suddenly removed from the veins.

Heart block can be recognized by a multiplicity of A waves, and auricular



fibrillation by the absence of recurring A waves. The source of premature contractions may be identified by noting a premature A or C wave.

**Arteriograms (Sphygmogram and Cardiogram):** An *arteriogram* is obtained from any superficial pulse or from the cardiac impulse. Usually the radial artery is chosen for this purpose. The sharp upward wave of an arteriogram is termed a *percussion wave*. This is fol-

lows. To be of value, a phlebogram should be compared with an arteriogram taken at the same time. The arteriogram alone, however, may disclose sinus arrhythmia, pulsus alternans, premature contraction, heart block, and auricular fibrillation, but never auricular flutter. However, when polygraphic studies are made, it is best to compare the phlebogram with the arteriogram and cardiogram.

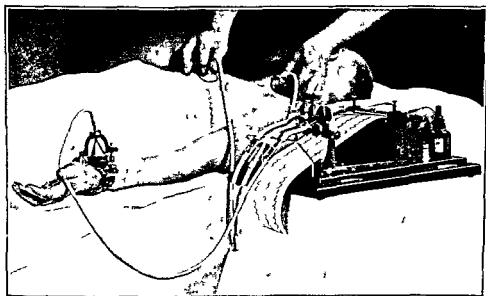


Fig 3—The polygraph applied. The position of the patient, receiving cups, and cushion tambour are shown above. (S Calvin Smith, F A Davis Company)

lowed by a second wave named the *tidal wave*, which terminates in a third wave known as the *diastolic notch*. The latter indicates the closure of the aortic valves and marks the termination of the pulse of the sphygmic period.

The *cardiographic tracing* is obtained by applying the receiving cup to the apex beat, and shows graphically the strength of the ventricular systole, and the length of time in which the heart remains in contact with the anterior chest wall, and the period when relaxation of the heart

S Calvin Smith gives the following suggestions for analyzing polygrams (for more detailed information, the reader is referred to S Calvin Smith's book on *Heart Records*)

"(a) The A wave is absent in any weak auricular action—as in auricular flutter or auricular standstill

"(b) Expect to find a split-A in a heart block.

"(c) Sometimes an A wave may be seen in the radial tracing of heart block.

it is due to the impact of a dilated auricle on the aorta

'(d) A heart block is called complete when the a-c interval varies disproportionately in length—as 0.2 then 0.3 then 0.25 of a second etc

'(e) Any wave that persistently goes below the base line of the radial tracing

tracing, think of auricular flutter, but confirm the thought by electrocardiography'

### The Sphygmograph

The *sphygmograph* is an instrument for registering the movements, form and force of the arterial pulse. The general principle of the instrument is as follows

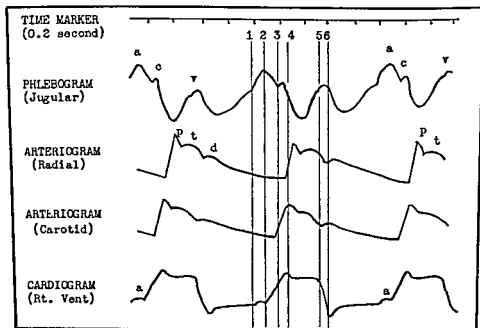


Fig 4—The time of events in waves of the polygram. The perpendicular lines represent the following events: (1) Auricular systole begins (2) ventricular systole begins (3) the pulse appears in the carotid (4) the pulse appears in the radial (5) the semilunar valves close (6) the tricuspid valve opens (adapted from Hay) (*S. Calvin Smith*, F. A. Davis Company)

is a deep dicrotic notch and the following wave is a part of the preceding contraction despite its deceptive height

(f) Bigeminy is most often due to premature ventricular contractions

'(g) To differentiate bigeminy and alternation. Alternation is always late or evenly spaced—never premature, bigeminy however is premature.

(h) When a run of regular beats occur in a grossly irregular polygraphic

A steel spring is laid upon the radial artery at the wrist so that it partially compresses the artery, and is moved up and down by the arterial impulse. Attached directly to the spring are a series of small levers which magnify the movement of the spring. The free extremity of the lever presses lightly against a strip of paper that has been blackened with the smoke of burned camphor or turpentine. This strip of paper by a

clock arrangement moves at a uniform speed. When the tracing of the pulse is completed, the paper is preserved by submerging it in compound tincture of benzoin which covers it with a glaze (sphygmogram). When dried, it may

be preserved as a permanent record.

**Cardiac Function Tests** SEE p 442

**Peripheral Circulation Function Test** SEE p 543

**Sugar Tolerance Tests** SEE p 1012

## CHAPTER XXXVII

### Other Diagnostic Tests

#### Bacterial Identification

The various microorganisms are identifiable by (1) their manner of growth upon specific media (2) their general morphology when properly stained, and (3) by their ability to reproduce the disease when inoculated in a nonimmune subject Guinea pigs, rats, mice, or other laboratory animals are employed as culture media when growths of organisms are otherwise not obtainable

Cultures may be taken from infected foci, wounds, mucous membranes, secretions excretions and from the blood

**Staining Affinities** A large number of microorganisms are stainable with methylene blue, their shape, size and characteristic formations are thus revealed under the microscope (oil immersion lens) Other organisms require special stains, counterstains and special staining methods, thus the tubercle bacilli the diphtheria bacilli, treponema pallidum, the spirochetes, etc

There are also a number of organisms that easily resemble one another and may be identified only by their ability to change color when counterstained by the Gram's stain These organisms are spoken of as either Gram positive or Gram negative, few are also spoken of as Gram ambophile.

**Gram's Method** Organisms are stained with glycerin crystal violet, or gentian violet for three minutes and then with Gram's iodine solution for one or two minutes, and washed in water and decolorized with 95 per cent alcohol, and again washed with water and coun-

terstained with Bismark brown or safranin, or fuchsin Gram positive organisms are violet in color (They retain their violet color and do not take the counterstain)

Gram negative organisms are decolorized with the alcohol and therefore assume the color of the counterstain

Gram ambophile organisms may be gram positive or gram negative

Gram positive organisms (those that retain their original stain) are the following cocci Pneumococci, staphylococci (aureus and albus), streptococci, micrococci tetrageni, and the following bacilli, *i e*, the tubercle bacilli and other acid fast bacilli, the diphtheria bacilli, bacilli subtilis anthrax bacilli, tetanus bacilli, botulini, Welch's bacilli and other spore bearing anerobes

Gram negative organisms (those that take counterstain) are the following cocci Meningococci, gonococci, micrococci catarrhalis, and the following bacilli Typhoid, paratyphoid dysentery, influenza, pertussis, Friedlander's proteus malleomyces mallei, pyocyaneus, tularensis, pestis, pusiformis, brucellae melitensis and others

Gram ambophile are yeasts and mold, protozoa and older forms of gram positive organisms

#### *The Neufeld Method for Typing Pneumococci*

Thirty or more different strains of pneumococci have been isolated, each strain gives a specific reaction (swelling of its capsule) when brought in contact with its hemologous type serum

**Technic.** Several drops of typing serum faintly colored with alkaline methylene blue are placed on a slide to which is added a loopful of suspected sputum or a culture containing pneumococci. This is covered with a cover slip and examined, preferably as a hanging drop, under an oil immersion lens with light partially dimmed. When the testing serum and pneumococci in the sputum are of the same strain, it will be noted that the capsules surrounding the pneumococci become greatly swollen in from 5 to 30 minutes. In order to isolate the proper type, the 30 known types of sera are to be tested against the sputum until the type is identified. When the number of pneumococci in the sputum are scarce, a droplet of sputum may then be injected intraperitoneally into a mouse. Within 24 hours, the mouse may be killed and if found to have grown the pneumococci, these are then tested by the Neufeld method for proper identification.

### Pregnancy Tests and Their Clinical Values

It often becomes necessary to determine the presence of pregnancy long before it is recognizable by physical examination. Frequently neoplasms, pseudocyesis, or certain toxemias may simulate pregnancy, or a pyosalpinx may resemble tubal pregnancy. To differentiate these conditions from pregnancy, certain biologic tests may be performed which will, in most cases, disclose the presence of pregnancy. The majority of pregnancy tests are based upon the great increase of estrus producing hormone and of the anterior pituitary gonadotropic hormone in the blood and the urine of pregnant women, so that when a small amount of blood or of urine is

injected into an immature or a virgin animal, definite estrus or maturation of ovarian follicles is produced.

**The Aschheim-Zondek Test.** The Aschheim-Zondek test as modified by S. Aschheim is as follows. Five infantile mice are used for each test. The animals are weighed at the beginning of the experiment, they should weigh from 6 Gm. to 8 Gm. unless they belong to smaller or larger types. It is important that they be three to four weeks old and show no spontaneous sexual maturation. The first urine passed in the morning is injected into the animals subcutaneously, in six doses. Six doses of 0.5 cc. are injected into each of five animals, three doses on the first day and three on the second day. (Many urines are quite toxic. Some of these toxic urines, but not all of them, may be detoxicated by shaking them up with ether in accordance with the method proposed by Zondek.) On the fourth and fifth days, vaginal smears are made, 96 hours after the beginning of the test the animals are killed and the ovaries examined for corpora lutea and blutpunkte. These may usually be seen with the naked eye but more readily with a lens. Microscopic examination of the ovaries is seldom necessary. Such examinations are made only to establish the occurrence of reaction. If in case a positive Allen Doisy test shows a definite hormone effect but the corpora lutea and hemorrhagic spots are not apparent. In such an event the urine is subjected to a second examination.

Positive results sometimes may be obtained as early as 60 hours after the first injection. In this case it is advisable to use several more animals and to kill only half of them at 60 hours. If a positive diagnosis is not made at this time, the result is checked with the remaining

animals at 96 hours. In emergency cases the Friedman method, which employs mature rabbits, may be used, with this method diagnoses may be made in 24 hours.

**The Friedman Modification of the Aschheim-Zondek Test:** The Friedman modification is now used more extensively because (1) rabbits are easier to obtain, (2) the diagnosis can be made 36 hours after the test instead of waiting 96 hours, (3) no microscopical examinations are necessary—the "reaction" is ascertained from the gross appearance of the gonads. This test depends upon an excess of the maturation hormone in the urine during pregnancy, and also upon the fact that female rabbits ovulate normally only after mating, but after intravenous injections of urine containing an excess of the maturation hormone, the ovaries of the rabbit respond in 24 to 48 hours by the formation of corpora hemorrhagica and lutea.

Friedman uses rabbits because, although the ova in the rabbit ripen continuously, ovulation does not occur until after copulation. He was therefore able to study the effect of the urine of a pregnant woman (due to the presence of a pituitary like hormone in the urine) on the ovaries of such rabbits free from corpora hemorrhagica and corpora lutea.

**Procedure:** Ten cc of clear urine is injected slowly into an ear vein of a female rabbit about four months old and weighing about four pounds. The rabbit must have been in isolation for a month or her ovaries examined by laparotomy prior to the experiment. Twelve hours later another injection of 10 cc. of clear urine is made. Twenty-four hours after the second injection the rabbit is killed and autopsied immediately. A positive reaction is indicated by subserous hem-

orrhagic areas and, sometimes, corpora lutea.

#### *Significance of the Test*

- 1 Living fetus or placenta
- 2 Hydatidiform mole
- 3 Chorionepithelioma
- 4 Malignant tumor of testes (seminoma)

**The Mazer-Hoffman Test (Estrin Test)** This test is based upon the changes produced in the vaginal mucous membrane of a castrated adult female mouse after the injection of 15 cc of whole urine in six divided doses over a period of two days. The reaction is considered as positive when after the third day, there appears in the vaginal smear 'a preponderance of nonnucleated epithelial cells and the absence of leukocytes and mucus.' From the first to the eighth week of pregnancy, one liter of urine is supposed to contain from 300 to 600 mouse units of estrin, that is, four mouse units to 15 cc of urine.

**The Gilfillen and Gregg Antuitrin-S Skin Reaction Test** Two minims of antuitrin S are injected intradermally. The skin of the forearm is the location of choice. In a pregnant woman or in one who has aborted, but still retained some live decidual tissue, no reaction is noted. In a nonpregnant woman or in one who has no retained decidual tissue an erythematous area measuring from 7 to 35 mm will appear around the site of injection within a few minutes.

**The Kantar, Bauer and Klawans Test** This test is based upon the observation that the female Japanese bitterling fish responds to an excess of estrogenic substance (female sex hormone) by elongation of the ovipositor from 2 mm (normal size) to 15 to 25 mm within 36 to 72 hours.

A previously standardized fish is put into a two quart bowl containing one quart of water. Four cc. of the urine to be tested is added, and the fish is observed at 24 hour intervals. A positive reaction is indicated by an elongation of the oviduct from its normal size of 2 mm to 15 or 25 mm. After a positive reaction, the fish is put into a tank for recovery and left there for 2 or 3 weeks, the time required for regression to be completed.

#### **Chemical Diagnosis of Pregnancy by Detection of Estrin in the Urine**

This test, according to Schmulovitz and Wylie, consists in the extraction of the estrin (female sex hormone) from the urine with ether, and its detection by coupling with diazotized parantiroaniline to form a deep colored azo dye. The depth of color is then matched against a 33 per cent ferric chloride solution, the reading of which is recorded as the 'ferric chloride number (FN)'. A FN below 15 is considered negative, and above 25, positive.

**Histidine Test for Pregnancy** This test is based on the exhibition of a positive histidine reaction with pregnant urine. Two reagents are used: (1) A bromine reagent consisting of 1 cc of bromine, 100 cc of glacial acetic acid and 300 cc of distilled water, (2) an alkaline reagent, consisting of 10 Gm of ammonium carbonate dissolved in 90 cc of distilled water to which is added 200 cc of ammonia, 2 to 5 cc of the bromine reagent is added to 5 cc of filtered urine, then 3 cc of the alkaline reagent is added and the mixture is thoroughly shaken and placed in a steaming bath for three minutes. The appearance of a mauve color changing gradually to reddish purple, indicates a positive reaction. This test is not very reliable.

#### **Tests for Viability of the Ovum**

The viability of pregnancy may be determined by the hormone test when it is too early to determine it by other means.

In cases where any one of the accepted pregnancy tests was first positive and then became negative, there is an indication that the fetus is no longer viable.

When pregnancy tests were previously not made and pregnancy is suspected, the viability of the embryo or fetus may be determined, according to Spielman, Goldberger and Frank, by the female sex hormone blood determination. During pregnancy the female sex hormone is found to be definitely increased. The finding of no increase of this hormone in the blood above the normal indicates that pregnancy does not exist or that the product of conception is dead.

#### **Indication for Pregnancy Tests**

Uterine pregnancy may, according to Goodale, be diagnosed by the Aschheim Zondek test or the Friedman modification, one week after the first missed period. The Friedman method has given correct results in 98 per cent of the author's series of cases.

Diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy by this test is not quite satisfactory. It is positive in only about 50 per cent of the cases. When the test is positive in a case of supposed ectopic pregnancy it is significant. When the test is negative it does not rule out ectopic pregnancy.

The pregnancy test is markedly positive in cases of hydatidiform mole and chorionepithelioma. If the test remains positive following surgery or radiation it indicates that there is a metastasis. If it becomes negative and remains negative, it indicates that the treatment has been successful and that there are no metastases. In the presence of hydatidiform mole and chorionepithelioma, blood

cholesterol is increased, and sedimentation rate is moderately increased

**Directions for Collecting Urine for Pregnancy Tests** Omit fluids after 8 o'clock the night before collecting the urine

Use the first specimen passed in the morning

Secure a catheterized specimen if the patient is bleeding from the vagina

Put specimen in a sterile bottle. Bottles which have previously contained a chemical or perfume may spoil the hormone

If specimen is to be mailed, put in a pinch of boric acid or a crystal of thymol

### Urine Test for Testicle Tumors

According to Goodale, the Aschheim Zondek pregnancy test may be positive in embryonal adenocarcinoma, seminoma, teratoma, and chorionepithelioma of the testicle. The test remains positive if there are metastases following excision or radiation of the primary tumor. It becomes negative if the treatment has removed all of the tumor.

Ferguson has reported on the quantitative Prolan A excretion in 117 cases of teratoma testis. He found that a patient with this type of tumor will excrete from 50 to 20,000 units of Prolan A per liter of urine. Irradiation of the primary tumor and its metastases causes a decrease in the excretion of Prolan A. Local recurrence is accompanied by an increase in Prolan A. Serial examinations of the urine for this hormone, therefore, give important prognostic information.

### Miscellaneous Tests

#### Test for Amebiasis

**Craig's Complement Fixation Test** The antigen is an alcoholic extract of

cultures of *Endamoeba histolytica*. This test is also positive for carriers and may be used in suspected cases where the amebae are not discovered in the stool.

### Test for Bacillary Dysentery

**Agglutination Test** Positive agglutinations are often found in dilutions of 1:1000 or higher for the various types of dysentery bacilli. A negative finding does not necessarily exclude the infection (SEE pp 1019 and 1062)

### Test for Diphtheria

**The Schick Test** This test is to determine the comparative immunity of the individual to diphtheria. It consists of injecting intradermally, in an area upon the upper anterior surface of the forearm, 0.1 cc. of a diluted mixture of diphtheria toxin. The appearance of an area of redness measuring from one to two centimeters in diameter at the point of injection, in from 24 to 48 hours, constitutes a positive reaction. This indicates that the individual is not immune to diphtheria.

### Tests for Glanders

**Complement Fixation Test** The antigen is prepared from several strains of *Bacillus mallei* (SEE p 1020)

**Konew's Test** A culture of *Bacillus mallei* is placed in a test tube to the depth of 3 or 4 cm. and blood serum from the patient is introduced below the culture by means of a pipette. A positive reaction constitutes a cloudy ring at the junction of the two liquids.

**Strauss's Reaction** The inoculation into the peritoneal cavity of a male guinea pig of material containing virulent *Bacillus mallei* causes the development of scrotal lesions.



### ***Test for Lymphogranuloma Inguinale***

**The Frei Test** The Frei test for lymphogranuloma inguinale consists of the intradermal injection of 0.1 cc of sterile (prepared by heating) pus obtained from a lesion of lymphogranuloma gland. A positive reaction is indicated by the appearance of a red and indurated papule surrounded by a dull red areola.

### ***Test for Infectious Mononucleosis (Glandular Fever)***

**The Heterophile Antibody Test** This depends upon the agglutination of sheep's corpuscles by high dilutions of the serum of the patient (SEE p 1064).

### ***Test for Jaundice, Spirochetal (Weil's Disease)***

#### ***(Leptospira Icterohemorrhagiae)***

The most reliable test is the intraperitoneal injection of a guinea pig with 5 cc of the patient's blood or urinary sediment. Autopsy of the guinea pig shows jaundice of the skin and widespread small hemorrhages into the tissues and organs.

### ***Tests for Hodgkin's Disease***

**Gordon's Biological Test** It is claimed that when lymphadenomatous tissue is injected intracerebrally into rabbits it causes the development of characteristic lesions in the rabbit's nervous tissue. This is accompanied by ataxia, spasms and paralysis. A negative reaction does not exclude the disease.

**Dorothy Reed cells** (giant cells) are found in the lymph nodes.

### ***Tests for Hyperthyroidism***

**The Goetsch Test** The Goetsch test is performed to ascertain thyroid hyperactivity. It depends upon the fact that the administration of adrenalin chloride

stimulates the sympathetic nervous system. The test is carried out as follows.

One half cc of 1:1000 solution of adrenalin chloride is injected subcutaneously. Observations on blood pressure, pulse rate, respiratory rate, nervousness, tremor, sweating, size of pupils and condition of the skin as to flushing and paling are noted every five minutes over a period of one hour. In a patient suffering from exophthalmic goiter it will be noted that all symptoms are greatly exaggerated and may last for the entire period of observation. In normal individuals a slight increase in pulse and respiratory rate is noted but this lasts for only five to ten minutes.

**The Iodine Tolerance Test** The technic employed by Watson for performing the iodine tolerance test is briefly as follows. With the patient in the fasting state in the morning an amount of Lugol's solution containing 250γ (gamma) of iodine per kilogram of body weight, after being diluted with 15 cc of 0.85 per cent NaCl solution is injected intravenously. Samples of venous blood of about 12 cc each are obtained immediately before the injection and five minutes, two, four and six hours afterwards. These samples are received in tubes containing a small amount of potassium oxalate which serves as an anticoagulant. Food is withheld from the patient during the test period.

The concentration of iodine in each sample of whole blood is estimated by means of a method described by Perkin. In this procedure 10 cc of blood are placed in a nickel crucible together with 2 Gm of potassium carbonate and combusted on a hot plate and in a muffle furnace for 4½ hours. The charred mass is extracted with alcohol, filtered and

the filtrate is evaporated to dryness. The residue which remains is dissolved in water and when the solution is made slightly acid with  $H_2SO_4$  and a drop of freshly prepared bromine solution is added, the iodine is oxidized to iodate. The addition of potassium iodide frees the iodine which is estimated by titration with 0.001 N sodium thiosulfate solution with starch serving as an indicator.

"The iodine content of the blood specimen secured five minutes after the injection of the Lugol's solution minus that of the preliminary control sample, is regarded as representing the maximum increment caused by the injected iodine and is consequently recorded as 100 per cent. With this value as a basis, the findings for the other samples are expressed accordingly. While the results so obtained represent the relative rather than the absolute iodine concentrations, they do provide an indication of the rate of disappearance from the circulating blood of the injected iodine in a specific time."

Watson found that in the normal 9 to 23 per cent of the injected iodine remained in the blood stream six hours after its injection. In thyrotoxicosis and hyperthyroidism, all of the injected iodine was removed within six hours. In hypothyroidism the average quantity of iodine in the blood six hours after its injection was greater than normal.

#### **Test for Pancreatitis and Hyperthyroidism**

**Loewi's Test.** This depends upon an increase in the irritability of the sympathetic nervous system due to hyposecretion of insulin, and is performed as follows:

Two drops of 1:1000 atropin are instilled into the eye and the pupil is

examined 15 minutes later. Dilatation of the pupil is indicative of a lesion in the pancreas affecting the islands of Langerhans, particularly if hyperthyroidism can be excluded. If the pupil remains undilated at the end of 15 minutes, two more drops should be instilled and observation made 15 minutes later.

In hyperthyroidism, the administration of two to three drops in the eye causes prompt mydriasis which lasts from ten minutes to one hour or longer (SEE ALSO p. 1063).

#### **Test for Psittacosis**

**Complement Fixation Test.** The patient's blood is used as the antigen (SEE p. 1020).

#### **Test for Rabies**

The brain tissue of the rabid animal is examined for the *Negri bodies*. These are round, oval or somewhat irregular structures varying in size from 0.5 to 18  $\mu$  (microns) and are usually found in the multipolar cells of Ammon's horn (hippocampus major). Their presence is positive proof that the animal had rabies.

#### **Tests for Scarlet Fever**

**The Dick Test.** This is utilized for determining the presence of immunity. The test consists of injecting intradermally 0.1 cc. of a culture of a specially prepared scarlet fever streptococcus solution. The reactions are observed at the end of 24 hours. An areola of from one to three centimeters in diameter is considered positive. A larger area which is markedly red and swollen indicates strong susceptibility to scarlet fever. A negative reaction indicates immunity.

**Umber's Test.** This is for the diagnosis of scarlet fever. Add two drops of a 30 per cent concentrated hydrochloric acid, 2 cm. of paradimethylamidobenzal

dehyde dissolved in 70 cc. of water to a small quantity of urine. The appearance of a red color is said to be positive for scarlet fever.

**The Schultz-Charlton Test:** When scarlet fever antitoxin or convalescent serum is injected into the skin of a suspected scarlet fever patient, and blanching of the skin occurs at the site of injection, it indicates a positive reaction. The injection of scarlet fever serum in the same patient's skin will not cause blanching.

### Tests for Trichinosis

**The Bachman Test:** If the intradermal injection of a one per cent solution of powdered *trichina larvae* causes a well defined area of edema to develop within a week, the test is considered positive for trichinosis.

**Muscle Biopsy:** This may disclose the presence of the *Trichinella Spiralis*.

### Tests for Tuberculosis

**The Mantoux Intracutaneous Test (Mendel's Test):** This consists of the intradermal injection of either 0.1 cc. of a 0.005 per cent or  $\frac{1}{100}$  mg. of a solution of old tuberculin or a 0.0002 mg. of PPD (purified protein derivative) new tuberculin. 0.1 cc. of a control solution consisting of 0.5 per cent phenol is injected a few inches above or below the test area. A positive reaction consists of an area of swelling at the site of the tuberculin injection, 5 mm. or more in diameter, within 24 or 48 hours.

**The Von Pirquet Test** The skin is slightly scarified over a small area, a small drop of old tuberculin is placed on and rubbed into this spot. A control with glycerin sterile bouillon is made in a similar manner several inches distant from the test field. The excess of tuber-

culin is wiped off within five minutes. A positive reaction consists of the appearance, in 24 to 48 hours, of a red areola over the tuberculin treated area and none over the control.

When the reaction subsides, a brownish pigmented area may develop and last for several weeks.

**Moro Test:** This consists of rubbing into an area of the skin, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches square, upon the anterior aspect of the chest or the inner side of the arm, about 0.5 Gm. of an ointment containing equal parts of tuberculin and sterile anhydrous lanolin. A positive reaction is indicated by the appearance of small papules over the treated areas in from 24 to 48 hours. The rash fades slowly.

**Calmette's Eye Test** One or two drops of a 0.5 per cent purified old tuberculin solution is instilled into one eye. The development of conjunctivitis in the treated eye, in from 12 to 24 hours, constitutes a positive diagnosis. This test is now seldom used. In the presence of ocular disease the Calmette test is dangerous.

**The Patch Test** A small piece of linen impregnated with PPD (purified protein derivative of tuberculin) is applied to the arm or forearm and permitted to remain *in situ* for 24 hours. On removal of the patch, the presence of an erythematous area denotes a positive reaction.

**Hypodermic Injection Test (The Tuberculin Test)** This is probably among the earliest tests performed for the diagnosis of tuberculosis and is at present displaced by the Mantoux, Von Pirquet and Patch tests. This test consists of the hypodermic injections of 0.01, 0.1, 1, 2, 5 and 10 mg. of old tuberculin successively three or four days apart,

after the patient's temperature has been determined. A rise of  $1^{\circ}\text{F}$  within 8 to 12 hours after an injection constitutes a positive reaction. If the temperature rise is noted after any one of these injections, further injections are not necessary. If no rise in temperature occurs after the largest dose, the test is considered negative.

### **Tests for Cerebrospinal Tuberculosis**

**The Levinson Test** This is based upon the finding that the ratio between the alkaloidal precipitate formed by sulphosalicylic acid and the metallic precipitate formed by mercuric chloride is altered. A positive reaction is indicated when the mercuric chloride precipitate is three times as great as that formed with sulphosalicylic acid. In the normal, the mercuric chloride precipitate forms slowly and is feathery, while the sulphosalicylic acid precipitate starts forming rapidly and is heavy and compact.

**Tryptophan Test (Lichtenberg)** When the cerebrospinal fluid in a test tube is slowly brought in contact with the reagent and a violet ring is formed at the junction the reaction is considered positive. The reagent in this test consists of concentrated hydrochloric acid (15 to 18 cc), two or three drops of a two per cent formaldehyde solution and 1 to 2 cc of 0.06 per cent sodium nitrite solution. In the absence of tuberculous meningitis there is either no ring at the point of contact or a brown ring is formed.

### **Tests for Undulant Fever**

This gives a positive agglutination in high dilutions. (See Agglutinations Tests, p. 1019 and next column.)

**Burnet Intradermal Test** A small quantity of a filtrate of a 20 day bouillon

culture of *micrococcus melitensis* is injected intradermally. If positive, there will appear within six hours after the injection, an area of redness and swelling at the point of inoculation, and at times also a rise in temperature and headache.

### **Agglutination Tests**

Agglutination tests may be performed by two methods: the macroscopic and the microscopic.

**The Macroscopic Method** In this method the blood serum is placed in each of seven test tubes, the first tube is undiluted and each of the following tubes is progressively diluted so that they contain 1:10, 1:20, 1:40, 1:80, 1:160 and 1:320. To each tube is now added 0.5 cc of the suspension of killed bacteria for which the test is performed. This doubles the dilution of the serum in each of the tubes, each having the following dilutions: 1:20, 1:40, 1:80, 1:160, 1:320 and 1:640. These tubes are thoroughly shaken and then placed in an incubator for 8 to 12 hours. Positive reactions consist of the formation of a sediment made up of agglutinated bacteria at the bottom of the tube, the rest of the tube contents remain clear. The tubes in which the agglutinations occur indicate the degree of concentration. Thus concentrations may be positive in 1:40, 1:60, 1:320 etc., the higher the concentration, the more positive is the reaction.

**The Microscopic Method** A series of dilutions of the serum is arranged as in the macroscopic test. A droplet of each diluted serum is placed upon a slide and to each droplet of diluted serum is added a loopful of a 24 hour-old bouillon culture of the organisms to be tested. Each is examined according to the harg

ing drop method after a 2 hour incubation Under the oil immersion lens the positive slides will show clumped motionless masses of bacilli

The agglutination tests are employed for the detection of typhoid fever, paratyphoid fever, tularemia, undulant fever, etc In these cases the known bacteria are brought in contact with a suspected or unknown serum The agglutination or clumping of the bacteria by the serum in high dilutions identifies the disease

#### **Test for Pancreatic Disease (Other Than for Diabetes)**

**Serum Amylase** The normal values of serum amylase are between 70 and 200 units In acute inflammation or obstruction of the pancreas the amylase values may reach 3000 units An increase in the serum amylase is occasionally found also in those suffering from affections of the gastrointestinal tract adjacent to the pancreas: *e*, cholecystitis, peptic ulcer gastritis and some liver affections Moderately increased amylase values are at times also found in mumps typhoid fever and other infections

**Test (Somogyi's Method)** To 1 cc of blood serum or plasma is added a mixture of 5 cc of 1.5 per cent cornstarch solution and 2 cc of 1 per cent sodium chloride solution and this is incubated for 30 minutes at 104° F (40° C) Then to this are added 1 cc of 5 per cent solution of copper sulfate and 1 cc of 7 per cent solution of sodium tungstate This mixture after shaking is filtered and is analyzed for sugar Correction is made for the presence of glucose in the serum and substrate The result is expressed in milligrams of glucose liberated per 100 cc of serum Two hundred units of amylase is represented by 200 mg of glucose liberated per 100 cc of serum

**Urine Amylase** The normal values of urine amylase is 3 to 32 units In pancreatic disease the urine may contain 200 or more units This test depends upon the quantity of urine capable of neutralizing 5 cc of a 1 per cent starch solution

**Serum Lipase** Normally the blood serum contains very little if any, lipase. In *pancreatic disease* the lipase values may be as high as 10 units or more per cc of serum The technic of this test is involved and requires considerable technical skill and laboratory facilities An increase in the serum lipase is at times also found in liver disease and carcinoma of the ampulla of Vater

#### **Tests for Kala Azar**

A positive diagnosis of kala azar by laboratory methods can only be made when the *Leishmania donovani* are found in blood smears or in smears of material obtained by puncture of the liver, spleen, sternum or infected glands A measure of corroboration in the diagnosis of kala azar and schistosomiasis in the presence of suggestive clinical signs may be had by one of the following three simple tests

**I The Water Test** To 0.6 cc of freshly distilled water in a small test tube add 0.02 cc of freshly drawn blood and shake gently Allow this mixture to stand for five minutes If it becomes cloudy or if at the end of 15 minutes there occurs a definite sediment the test is considered positive

**II The Formalin Test** To 1 cc of clear serum add one drop of 30 per cent formalin solution and shake until well mixed Allow this to stand for 15 minutes The test is considered positive when the mixture solidifies to the consistency of the white of a hard boiled egg This reaction is usually seen in old cases of kala azar

**III The Antimony Test** In positive cases a heavy precipitate is formed when two drops of the patient's serum is added to 1 cc of 0.5 per cent solution of urea stibamine or other pentavalent antimony compound

These tests may also be positive in bacterial endocarditis or in other conditions associated with a marked increase in serum globulin

### *The Congo Red Test for Amyloidosis*

This test is based on the affinity of congo red for amyloid

**Test** 0.25 cc of 1.5 per cent aqueous solution of congo red per kg of body weight is injected intravenously. The maximum amount is not to exceed 18 cc. About 10 cc of blood is withdrawn (from one of the veins not previously used) after four minutes and after one hour. These specimens are centrifuged and the separated plasmas are compared with each other in a colorimeter. The four minute specimen serves as a standard and is considered as containing 100 per cent of the dye.

The one hour specimen is the indicator as to the amount of dye absorbed by the tissues and therefore cleared from the blood. Normally the rate of absorption from the blood is slow and the one hour specimen may have cleared only from 10 to 30 per cent of the dye. In amyloidosis the blood is cleared rapidly so that the one hour specimen may contain no dye or only a small amount. A clearance of over 60 per cent is suspicious of amyloidosis.

### *The Heterophile Antibody Test*

This test depends upon the agglutinins and hemolysins in the blood having an affinity for other antigens or antibodies besides the one for which they are specific.

Paul and Brunel in 1932 reported that about 90 per cent of patients suffering from infectious lymphocytosis (glandular fever, infectious mononucleosis) possess in their blood serum heterophile antibodies in the form of agglutinins for sheep red corpuscles in a titer of 1 to 32 or higher.

Normal persons may show a positive seroreaction in a titer of 1 to 8 and individuals to whom horse serum was administered may show a positive reaction in dilutions of 1 to 64 or higher.

In infectious mononucleosis during the first week or 10 days agglutination reactions may be present in low titer. After the second week the titer may be 1 to 256 or higher, usually remaining high up to the fifth week when it falls off rapidly. In a small number of cases the heterophile antibody test is negative. This is more likely to be found among very young children.

A temporary positive Wassermann reaction may be elicited in a small percentage of cases during the height of the disease, that is during the period in which the agglutinins are present in high titer.

The technique of the heterophile antibody test is that of the agglutination test (SIF p 1062) except that 0.5 cc of a 2 per cent suspension of washed packed sheep corpuscles is used instead of 0.5 cc of a suspension of killed specific bacteria.

To make the heterophile antibody test more specific for glandular fever (infectious mononucleosis) and exclude normal agglutinins and agglutinins due to horse serum administration, Bailey and Raffel and Davidson introduced differential absorption tests with guinea pig kidney and ox cells.

## **SECTION 16**

# **Parasitology**

## CHAPTER XXXVIII

### Parasites and Parasitic Infections

While a fairly large number of parasites causing specific diseases are found in the blood and in other tissues of man, the greatest majority of parasites have their habitat within the gastrointestinal canal and may cause local or systemic diseases

Animal parasites affecting man are classified according to their structures into three divisions. Some of these classes are further subdivided into behavior and structural groups, each of which is responsible for a specific type of disease. The three main divisions are Spirochetes, Protozoa, and Metazoa. The last group includes Trematodes or Flukes, Cestodes or tapeworms and flatworms, Nematodes or roundworms, Insects and other Arthropods

#### Spirochetes (Spirochaetales)

The spirochetes really belong to the order of Schizomycetes, an intermediate between bacteria and protozoa. They infest the solid tissues, blood, spinal fluid and occasionally the urine. The subgroups of this division are (a) The *Treponema pallidum*, causing syphilis (SEE p 56), (b) the *Treponema pertenue* causing yaws (SEE pp 56 and 143), (c) the *Spirillum minus* causing ratbite fever (SEE p 56), (d) the *Spirochete borrelia* causing relapsing and tick fevers (SEE p 56), and (e) the *Leptospira icterohaemorrhagiae* causing Weil's disease (SEE p 56)

#### The Protozoa

The protozoa belong to the lowest animal kingdom and are unicellular organ-

isms. They are subdivided into four groups

(a) The Sarcodinia Possessing Pseudopodia. To this group belongs the *Endamoeba histolytica* (*Entamoeba histolytica*) which causes amebiasis or amebic dysentery (SEE p 57), and the non-pathogenic group of amebae, i. e., *ameba coli*, *endolimax nana*, *iodamoeba butschlii* and *dientamoeba fragilis*. The habitat of the ameba group is the colon. They enter the body with infected food or drink containing the organisms or their cysts

(b) The Sporozoa. To this group belong the four species of plasmodia responsible for malaria (SEE p 57 and 1089). These are the *plasmodium vivax*, causing the benign tertian type of malaria, the *plasmodium malariae*, causing the two quartan types, the *plasmodium falciparum*, causing the estivo autumnal, tropical quotidian malignant tertian and subtertian types, and the *plasmodium ovale*, which resembles the *vivax* species. The plasmodia are transmitted to man by an Anopheline mosquito (SEE p 1087) and may also be transmitted by injecting blood from a malarial patient into the circulation of a normal individual

Others of the sporozoa group are the *coccidia* and the *sarcosporidia* which are prevalent in herbivorous animals. The *sarcocystis lindermanni* causes *sarcosporidiosis* in man. These organisms are found in the striated muscle fibers of the tongue, larynx and myocardium. Among the sporozoa group may also be mentioned several species of *toxoplasma* (1067)



which cause the rare disease of childhood Toxoplasmosis The organisms are usually found in the brain spinal cord choroids heart and in the skeletal muscles thus causing toxoplasmic encephalitis and systemic infection

**Toxoplasmic Encephalitis** Sabin<sup>1</sup> reported two cases of toxoplasmic encephalitis in children One a boy age 6 years died within one month after onset The outstanding symptoms were headache convulsions and vomiting The temperature ranged between 99.6° and 101° F during the first 20 days and subsequently rose to a higher level and reached 108.4° F just before death

The other case was a boy age 8 years who developed atypical encephalitis and recovered in nine days Both cases had toxoplasma in the spinal fluid and toxoplasma were isolated from guinea pigs inoculated with the patients spinal fluid

**Systemic Toxoplasmic Infection in Adults** Pinkerton and Henderson<sup>2</sup> reported two such fatal cases In each case there was a history of the patient having picked some ticks from off his body The clinical manifestations were fever adenopathy a maculopapular eruption involving the entire body but sparing the palms of the hands, soles of the feet and scalp Both cases showed signs of lung involvement and general toxemia The toxoplasma were recovered from the lungs and were isolated from guinea pigs injected with the patients blood

(c) **The Parasitic Infusoria Group (ciliated protozoa)** To this group belong *Balantidium coli* which cause Balantidiasis The organisms are found in

the colon of man and may cause chronic diarrhea with more or less blood in the stool The parasites are prevalent in the intestines of the pig and wild rat The *Balantidium minutum* and the *Nyctotherus faba* are infusoria which rarely invade the human intestinal mucosa

(d) **The Mastigophera or Flagellates** This group includes *trypanosoma gambiense* and *trypanosoma rhodesiense* which cause trypanosomiasis or sleeping sickness the *trypanosomiasis cruzi* which cause Chagas disease the *Leishmania donovani* which cause Kala Azar the *Leishmania tropica* which cause Cutaneous Leishmaniasis and Mucocutaneous Leishmaniasis (American Leishmaniasis) These invade the blood stream the glands and other structures of the body In addition there is a group of flagellates that invades the intestines and may cause diarrhea or other minor symptoms

**Trypanosomiasis (Sleeping Sickness)** There are two types of sleeping sickness found in Africa The mild type found in the Belgian Congo Uganda and Tanganyika Territory is an infection by the *trypanosoma gambiense* carried by two species of Tsetse fly *Glossina palpalis* and *Glossina tachinoides* The disease runs a relatively mild course exhibiting a moderate intermittent fever some erythematous skin areas palpable lymph glands localized edema moderately enlarged spleen and drowsiness.

The severe type is found chiefly in Nyasaland and Rhodesia and is caused by *Trypanosoma Rhodesiense* which is transmitted by the bite of the Tsetse flies *Glossina morsitans* and *Glossina Swynnertonii* This type runs a shorter but severer course The clinical manifestations may be divided into two stages The first stage is marked by a slowly

<sup>1</sup> Sabin, Albert B. Jr. A. M. A. 116 801 1941

<sup>2</sup> Pinkerton B. and Henderson R. G. Ibid 116 807 1941

developing irregular intermittent fever, the periods of remission are variable. There are headache and progressive weakness. The skin shows a patchy erythema, localized edema and hyperparesthesia. The lymph glands enlarge and are tender, the spleen and liver gradually enlarge and anaemia develops. The second or cerebral stage may develop within several months or a year or more. The outstanding symptoms are increased weakness, mental dullness and disinclination for exertion. The face is puffy and carries a vacant expression. The gait is slow and shuffling. There develop tremors, headaches and somnolence from which the patient may be aroused with difficulty. Paralysis of the lips, nuchal rigidity and maniacal symptoms are terminal manifestations. The blood may contain the organism but in small numbers, animal inoculation may aid in the diagnosis.

**Chagas Disease (South American Trypanosomiasis)** This is a form of sleeping sickness found chiefly among infants and young children in South America. It is caused by the *Trypanosoma cruzi* which is transmitted by a reduviid bug of the genus *Triatoma*.

The clinical manifestations are divided into two stages, acute and chronic. During the acute stage the organisms are found in the blood. The symptoms are fever, myxedematous swellings, listlessness alternating with irritability, enlargement of the lymph glands, spleen, liver and thyroid. The thyroid gland becomes especially large and hard. During the chronic stage the organisms are found in the tissues, the symptoms are severe and depend upon the structures involved. These may be cerebral, cardiac, adrenal (Addisonian) manifestations, etc. The

thyroid gland is large and stony hard causing various degrees of myxedema.

**Kala Azar (Visceral Leishmaniasis, Dumdum Fever, Black Fever)** This is an infectious disease running a protracted course. It is characterized by huge enlargement of the spleen, moderately enlarged liver, irregular fever and anaemia with leukopenia. The disease is prevalent in Eastern India, Northern China and is also met with in the Sudan, West Africa, Iraq, the countries bordering the Mediterranean and in South America.

Kala Azar is caused by the protozoon *Leishmania donovani* which may be carried by a bedbug (*Cimex hemipterus rotundatus*) and possibly also by a species of sand fly (*Phlebotomus argentipes* or other species).

The *Leishmania donovani* on entering the body, are taken up by the cells of the reticuloendothelial system where they develop, causing the cells to burst and to discharge the parasites into the blood stream. The entire reticuloendothelial system proliferates and infected plasma cells are found in the spleen, bone marrow, liver (Kupffer cells) and throughout the body where reticuloendothelial tissue is normally found. While the parasites are most numerous in the reticuloendothelial system, many are also found in various other organs.

**Symptoms** The onset is insidious with fever which may be continuous or remittent and it may have a double or triple rise in 24 hours. Chills may accompany each rise of temperature. The splenic enlargement becomes palpable after the first month, by the end of the sixth the spleen is huge. The liver also becomes enlarged. There are progressive weakness, emaciation and anaemia. The leukocytes may fall from 4000 to 1000 per cmm. The blood platelets are low.

and bleeding and coagulation time are prolonged. The serum globulin is increased and the albumin is decreased. The abdominal veins enlarge and there may be edema of the legs. Blood culture and spleen and liver puncture will reveal the flagellated protozoon. (For presumptive tests see p. 1063.)

**Cutaneous Leishmaniasis** (Oriental Sore, Aleppo Boil, Delhi Boil). This disease is found in India, Persia, Palae-

turing the lesion. The insect vector is a phlebotomus sand fly.

**American Leishmaniasis** (Mucocutaneous, Nasopharyngeal or Brazilian Leishmaniasis, or Espundia or Forest jaws). This type usually affects the mucous membranes of the nose and throat, though the lesion may appear on any exposed part of the body. When the lesion invades the mucous surfaces it produces a fungating ulcer which in

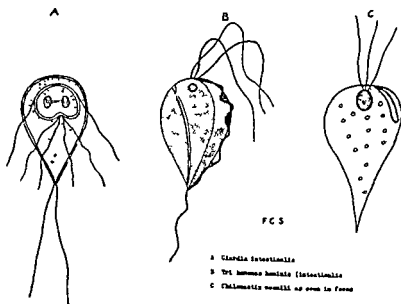


Fig. 1

The subvarieties of trichomonae are *Trichomonas fecalis*, *Pentatrichomonas ardin delteilii* and *Chilomastix mesnili* (*Macrostoma mesnili*, *chilomastix devainae*, *tetramitus mesnili*) Their natural habitat is in the colon and they may be recovered from the stool Other and less commonly found flagellates in the intestines are The *Embadomonas intestinalis* (*Washkia intestinalis*), a very small flagellate; the *Entromonas hominis*, *Fonseca*, and *Craigia hominis* Intestinal flagellates may cause diarrhea, cramps, digestive disorders, occasionally anemia, and often their presence is unsuspected

### The Metazoa

**Trematodes or Flukes.** The flukes occurring in man are small nonsegmented flat, usually tongue or leaf shaped, organisms well supplied with suckers Most of the flukes are hermaphroditic, a few of the species, those infecting the blood, are unisexual Flukes may be classified according to their habitat in man as those infesting the intestines, those infesting the liver, those infesting the lungs, and those found in the circulating blood

(a) *Intestinal Distomiasis* The *Fasciolopsis buski*, commonest of the flukes, resides in the small intestine, and occasionally in the stomach of both man and pig The life cycle of this as of other flukes, according to Barlow and to Nakagawa, is as follows The eggs discharged with the feces in water are hatched as miracidiae in three or more weeks They then penetrate various species of snails and produce generations of rediae, these develop into cercariae and as such leave the snail and become encysted on aquatic plants When these plants are eaten raw, the encysted cer-

cariae find their way into the small intestine where they mature into adult flukes

*Symptoms* Intestinal distomiasis is divisible into three stages

(1) The period of latency in which there are no characteristic symptoms except perhaps some unaccountable weakness

(2) The period of diarrhea in which there is abdominal pain more or less diarrhea and a peculiar transparency and puffiness of the skin due to subcutaneous edema

(3) The period of edema in which there develop ascites and edema of the genitalia, and of the lower extremities This later spreads to the face and lungs Cardiac insufficiency becomes marked The skin is dry, harsh and ictteroid, and the tongue is dry The temperature is usually subnormal The disease is widespread in southern and western Asia, and the nearby Pacific Islands Other of the intestinal flukes smaller than the *Fasciolopsis buski*, which cause enteritis and other manifestations of intestinal distomiasis, are indigenous to Africa, Asia and to some of the Pacific Islands These are the *Watsonius watsoni* of Northern Nigeria, the *Heterophyes heterophyes* of Egypt, the *Gastroduiscoides hominis* of India and Assam, the *Heterophyes nocens* of Japan, the *Metagommuus Yokagawai* of Formosa, Japan and China, the *Echinostoma ilocanum* of the Philippines, and the *E. Malayanum* of the Malay States

(b) *Hepatic Distomiasis:* Liver flukes usually invade the bile ducts and may also travel to the pancreatic ducts The commonest of this group is the *Clonorchis sinensis* This parasite is prevalent in the Eastern Asiatic countries and affects man and fish eating animals Massive infection with this

trematode will cause jaundice, anemia, ascites, edema, cachexia, bloody diarrhea and epistaxis. Other flukes, commoner in animals than in man, are the *Fasciola hepatica*, found in sheep, *Dicrocoelium lanceatum* found in herbivorous and omnivorous animals, *Opisthorchis felinus* found in the gallbladder and bile ducts of cats, dogs, pigs, foxes and at times, in man, and *Opisthorchis caninus* found in wild dogs.

**Life Cycle of the Liver Flukes.** The eggs are taken up by a snail (the *Parafossarulus striatulus*, or the *Bithynia fuchsiana*), which is the intermediate host. After hatching, the cercariae escape from the snail and enter the bodies of certain fresh water fish and become encysted beneath the scales or in the deeper tissues where they may survive for many years. The adult worm develops in man, dog, cat or other animal which has eaten the infected fish.

**(c) Pulmonary Distomiasis:** The best known of the group of flukes causing pulmonary distomiasis are the *Paragonimus westermani*. They are found chiefly in Eastern Asia and the Pacific islands. The worms are for the most part encysted and are lodged not only in the lungs but occasionally also in the intestines, pancreas, liver, spleen, bladder, epididymis, prostate and choroid plexus of the brain (Tyzzer and Smilie). Fever, cough, and bloody expectoration are common symptoms when the lungs are invaded. Involvement of other organs will cause systemic and local reaction referable to those organs.

**Life Cycle of the Lung Flukes.** The eggs develop in water as ciliated embryos. As such they are taken up by a certain species of snail which acts as the first intermediate host. The second

intermediate hosts are many species of fresh-water crabs and crawfish which, when eaten by man or animal, transmit the embryos to them. On entering the stomach of their final host the embryos are liberated from their cysts, penetrate the intestinal mucosa and work their way through the peritoneal cavity, diaphragm, pleurae and lodge chiefly in the lungs and occasionally in other organs as adult worms. The adult worms become encysted and lay their eggs which are discharged with the feces or sputum and which may also be recovered by aspiration.

**(d) Hemic Distomiasis, Schistosomiasis, Bilharziasis.** The three species of blood flukes responsible for this condition are *Schistosoma hematobium*, the *Schistosoma mansoni*, and the *Schistosoma japonicum*. These worms, unlike the other flukes are of separate sexes.

The *Schistosoma hematobium* invade the portal system, the mesenteric vein, the hemorrhoidal veins and plexuses but lodge chiefly in the veins of the urinary bladder and the bladder wall. Hematuria, renal calculi, ureteral obstruction and infection are among the common symptoms. There are also eosinophilia and occasionally dysentery with tenesmus. This infection is prevalent in North Africa and the Near East.

The *Schistosoma mansoni* infection occurs in Africa, the West Indies and certain parts of South America. This worm invades chiefly the mesenteric veins and causes chronic dysentery, colic and emaciation.

The *Schistosoma japonicum* causing Katayama disease, invades chiefly the walls of the intestines and less frequently the liver, spleen, lungs and brain, causing severe diarrhea, dysentery, painful

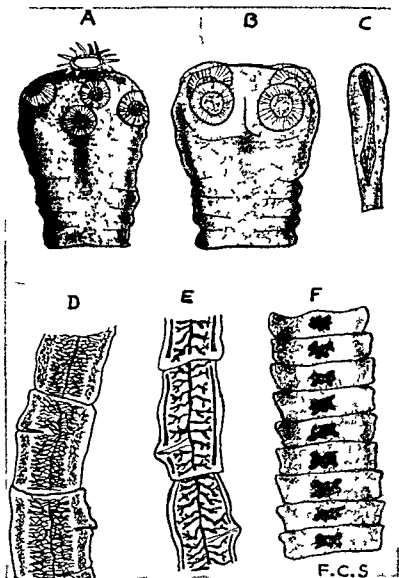


Fig 2—A Head of *Taenia solium* B head of *Taenia saginata* C head of *Diphyllobothrium latum* D segments of *Taenia saginata* E segments of *Taenia solium* F segments of *Diphyllobothrium latum*

enlargement of the liver and spleen dropsy and anemia and cerebral symptoms

#### *The Life Cycle of the Blood Fluke*

The eggs are hatched in water and are taken up by certain snails. The cercariae that develop in the snails escape in the water as free swimming larvae and may enter the bodies of man or animal by

either the alimentary canal or the skin. Within the body of their final host they develop into adult worms.

**The Cestodes (Tenia or Tape worms)** Tapeworms also infect men through an intermediate host and they occur in two forms. One form resides in the small intestines of man in the adult state causing Intestinal Teniasis

the parasites having entered the intestines as embryo with the flesh of a specific host. The other form is found in the muscles or other tissues of man in a developmental stage causing somatic teniasis.

**Intestinal Teniasis.** The adult tape worms residing in the human intestines are

**The *Diphyllobothrium Latum* (Dipyllocephalus Latus Fish Tapeworm or Broad Tapeworm)** This is the longest and broadest of the tapeworms. It may attain from 3 to 13 meters (10 to 40 feet) or more in length and from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch in breadth at its broadest end. It gradually tapers down towards its long thin neck reaching its narrowest part at the almond shaped head. The segments are broad and short each segment contains a centrally situated tortuous ovarian rosette where is also found its sexual orifice. The worm is hermaphroditic. The *diphyllobothrium latum* is commonly found in the Baltic Sea region in Japan in Turkestan Poland Switzerland Rumania and less frequently in the United States and Canada. Before reaching the adult stage in man it passes through two intermediate hosts. When immature eggs from human stool enter a fresh water stream they undergo some development and when ingested by a cyclops or other crustacean further develop into procercoid larvae. These larvae when swallowed by the pike or other fresh water fish develop into the plerocercoid stage and invade their tissues. When the uncooked or insufficiently cooked flesh of the infested fish is eaten by man or by certain animals the larvae finally develop into adult worms and inhabit the intestines of their hosts. Infection with this tapeworm may cause no symptoms

occasionally however it may cause a severe type of hyperchromic macrocytic anemia resembling primary pernicious anemia. Segments of various lengths and ova may be found in the stool.

***Tenia Saginata* (Beef Tapeworm)** This worm does not attain the length or breadth of the fish tapeworm. It may measure from 2 to 10 meters (6 to 30 feet) in length and about  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch in breadth. The segments are longer and thinner than those of the fish tapeworm. The genital pores alternate and are not centrally placed. The head possesses four suckers but no hooklets. This tapeworm may be found in human intestines wherever beef is eaten. The *cysticercus bovis* (encysted larva) is found in muscles of infected cattle particularly in the pteryoid muscles. When raw or rare infected beef is eaten by man the larva on reaching the human intestines develops into an adult worm. Individual segments or proglottids of the worm are frequently found in the stool or may lodge in the rectum. These often exhibit a crawling motion thus resembling individual worms. The symptoms produced by this worm are vague. There may be some abdominal pain indigestion excessive appetite or anorexia and vomiting. In most instances the presence of the parasite is first manifested when found in the stool.

***Tenia Solium* (Pork Tapeworm)** This worm is smaller than the other two preceding types. It may measure from 2 to 3 meters (6 to 10 feet) in length. The head is globular and possesses four suckers, a rostellum and a double row of hooks. The proglottids are bisexual. The adult worm resides in the intestines of man. The larvae (*cysticercus cellulosae*) are found in the striated muscles of the pig wild boar brown bear stag

dog, cat, monkey, and, at times, also in man (SLF p 1077) This tapeworm is transmitted to man in two ways The common mode of infection in which the adult worm eventually lodges in the intestines is acquired by eating insufficiently cooked "measly pork," or pork sausage made of pork infected with cysticerci Pickling and smoking do not kill the cysticerci The other and less frequent source of human infection where cysticerci lodge in the tissues and remain there as embryos (Somatic Temasis) is caused by autoinfection This may be brought about in two ways (1) By the regurgitation of segments of the adult worm from the intestine into the stomach during vomiting, and (2) by the transmission of oncospheres through food which came in contact with hands or clothing contaminated with infected human feces For the worm to reach its adult stage in man, the embryo must undergo further development in the hog or other intermediate host Infection with this tapeworm is found most frequently where uncooked pork products are consumed and where sanitary regulations are lax

*Hymenolepis Nana* (Dwarf Tape worm) This tapeworm is common in Southern United States, in Sicily, Italy and other parts of Southern Europe and in India It measures from 2.5 to 4 cm (1 to 1½ inches) in length It inhabits the small intestines of man and, according to Grassi, does not require an intermediate host for its development The eggs hatch out in the intestines and there develop into embryos The embryos penetrate the mucosa of the intestines and further develop into cercocysts, as such they attach themselves to the villi of the intestines

where they develop into mature worms The symptoms produced by infestation with this worm are similar to those produced by other tapeworms, i e, vague digestive disturbance, irritability, weakness, etc Examination of the stool may identify the worm, its eggs or its cercocysts A similar tapeworm, *Hymenolepis fraterna*, is found in rats Larval forms of this worm may also develop in insects that ingest the eggs

**Somatic Teniasis** The tapeworms residing in their developmental stage in the tissues of man are

*Diphyllobothrium Mansoni* (Dog or Cat Tapeworm) In its plerocercoid stage it is known as *Sparganum man-*

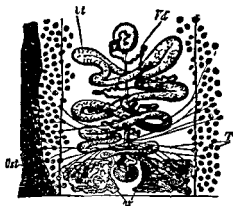


Fig 3—Dorsal or male aspect of a proglottid of *Diphyllobothrium latum*. T, Testes Vd Vas deferens

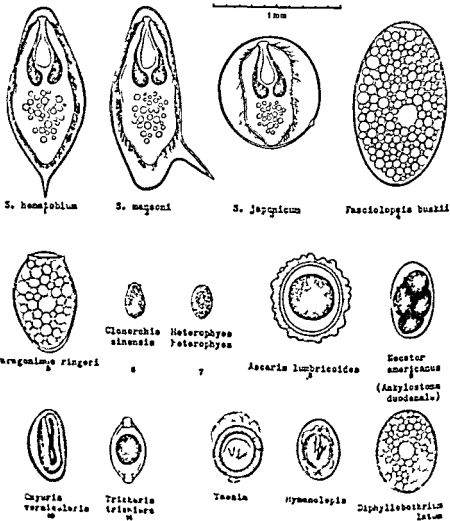
*soni* Its life cycle is similar to that of the *diphyllobothrium latum* except that it does not occur in man in its adult form Its life cycle is as follows The adult worm is found in the intestine of dogs or cats, the eggs in the feces of an infected animal are ingested by small crustaceans or by cyclops leuckarti, the first intermediate hosts in whom they develop into proceroid larvae This host may in turn be swallowed by the second intermediate host which may be man or other mammal bird snake or frog



In the second host the larvae are liberated, penetrate the stomach and find their way under the peritoneum and thence migrate to the somatic muscles, the pleurae, the eyes, the genital tract

toms are pain, local swelling and edema.

*Sparganum Proliferum*: This is prevalent in Japan. The cerci cause superficial nodules and may affect various tissues. Elephantiasis may result



The symptoms produced by this worm are more severe when the larvae invade the tissues forming *cysticerci cellulosa* than when the adult worm resides in the intestines. The *cysticerci cellulosa* may occupy any organ or tissue of the body. These cysts have been found in the brain the eye the heart the lungs the liver the abdomen the striated muscles and in the subcutaneous tissue. They may occur in large numbers. The clinical manifestations depend upon the site of the invasion. Irregular fever muscle pain headache anemia and transient eosinophilia are general findings. When the brain is involved there may be local or general convulsions and other signs suggesting encephalopathy. Involvement of the subcutaneous tissue is characterized by the formation of palpable cysts varying in size from a pea to that of a hazel nut. These may be found all over the body but chiefly in the upper half. Massive infection particularly in vital organs may cause death.

***Tenia Multiceps* (Coenurus Cerebralis)** The cysts of this canine tape worm usually affect the brain of goats and sheep. They may also invade the brain of man causing aphasia and epilepsy.

***Echinococcus Granulosus* (Dog Tapeworm)** In their larval or cystic stage these cause *Echinococcus* or *Hydatid* cysts. The adult tapeworm measures 25 to 6 mm in length. It inhabits the intestines of dogs jackals and wolves. The intermediate hosts are sheep cattle and pigs. The larvae are transmitted to man by the drinking of water or by the eating of raw vegetables contaminated with infected canine feces. In man the embryo penetrates the intestinal mucosa invades the blood stream and may lodge in the liver lungs brain

kidneys bones and muscles causing *Echinococcus* or *Hydatid* disease.

***Echinococcus* or *Hydatid* Disease** is characterized by the formation of cysts which are often large and contain many brood capsules and scolices. The liver is the organ most frequently affected. Occasionally an echinococcus cyst may undergo secondary infection and suppurate. The disease may be acquired during childhood and may remain symptomless for many years.

**Diagnosis** Since echinococcus disease is characterized by the formation of large cysts the clinical findings of a large liver containing a cystic mass or evidence of cyst in the lungs bone or brain accompanied by weakness and other signs of chronic ailment in one who had been in close contact with dogs particularly in rural districts should arouse suspicion of this infection. A positive diagnosis may be made by obtaining a positive complement fixation test and precipitin reaction and a positive skin test made with the fluid obtained from hydatid cysts of cattle. The blood smear will reveal marked eosinophilia.

**Nematodes (Roundworms)** Roundworms are cylindrical shaped worms varying in length thickness and habitat.

***Ascaris Lumbricoides* (Intestinal Roundworm)** This the commonest of all worms affecting man resembles the common earthworm. These worms infest the small intestines especially of children. Occasionally they may migrate to various places e.g. into the stomach and be vomited up or downwards and pass through the rectum and rarely they may enter the gallbladder and bile ducts causing biliary obstruction. They have been known to enter the larynx lungs nose and Eustachian canal. These

## Medical Diagnosis

worms are pinkish or reddish yellow in color, measuring from 15 to 40 cm in length and about 0.5 cm in thickness. The female is larger than the male. The roundworm is indigenous to all coun-

tries, but is more prevalent in warmer climates and in rural districts.

**Symptoms** Their presence may not be suspected until found in the stool. At times they may cause cramps, nerv-

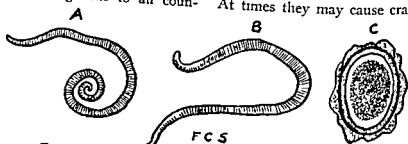
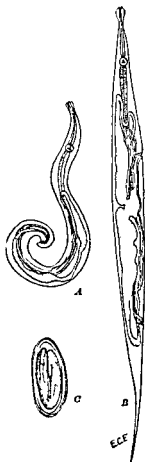


Fig 5—*Ascaris lumbricoides* A, Male, B, female, C, egg



ousness, irritability, and, when the larvae or the adult worms invade unusual sites they may cause local manifestations. The ova passed in human feces develop in night soil. The fertilized eggs, when swallowed with contaminated water or food, develop into larvae, penetrate the bowel wall and migrate with the circulation into the liver, lungs, etc., they pass up the trachea to the larynx, and are swallowed into the stomach and finally reënter the intestines where they develop into adult worms.

A variety of this worm in both the embryonic and adult stages is found in the domestic pig.

***Oxyuris Vermicularis* (*Enterobius Vermicularis*, *Ascaris Vermicularis*)** (Seat-, Pin-, Thread-, or Manworm). These worms inhabit the lower colon and especially the rectum, and are found most frequently among children in whom they occur in large numbers. They may migrate through the anus and invade the vagina. These worms are thread-like, measuring from 3 to 10 mm in length, the female being the longer. The *oxyuris vermicularis* may propagate within their host, their ova requiring no intermediate host for their development.

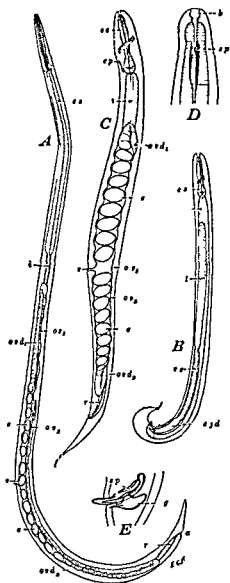


Fig 7—*Strongyloides stercoralis* A Parasitic female  $\times 175$  B free-living male  $\times 160$  C anterior end of parasitic male  $\times 500$  D copulatory spicules and gubernaculum of male greatly enlarged a anus b buccal chamber c eggs in utero ejd ejaculatory duct ep excretory pore es esophagus g gubernaculum i midgut  $ow_1$  and  $ow_2$  anterior and posterior oviducts r rectum sp buccal spines spi copulatory spicules t testis v vulva vs seminal vesicle (Faust's Human Helminthology Lea and Febiger)

**Symptoms** The most constant and distressing symptom is itching of and

around the anus (pruritus ani). There are also tenesmus, burning, restlessness and irritability. The itching is often worse during the night, thus disturbing sleep.

#### *Ascaris Alata* (*Ascaris Mystax*)

This is a species of roundworm found in the intestines of the dog and cat. The worm is seldom found in man. The insect vectors are three different types of coffee flies (*simuli*).

#### *Strongyloides Stercoralis*

This is a minute common tropical worm, the female measuring about 2.2 mm in length. It invades the duodenum and jejunum of man. In massive infection they may invade the bile and the pancreatic ducts, the stomach and the colon. The eggs hatch out rhabditiform larvae which appear in the stool. The outstanding symptoms are diarrhea and digestive disturbances. Occasionally there are no symptoms and the presence of infection may be discovered only by microscopic examination of the stool in which the parasites or their ova are found.

#### *Dracunculus Medinensis* (Guinea or Medina Worm)

This worm causes *dracontiasis*. It is common in India, Persia, Africa and the East Indies. The adult female guinea worm measures from 15 to 80 cm by 0.5 to 1.7 mm, while the length of the male is about 2.5 cm. The developmental stages occur in an intermediate host, the fresh water copepods, e.g., *Cyclops coronatus*. Man becomes infected by swallowing these crustaceans in drinking water. It takes about one year before the adult stage is reached. The adult worms reside in the connective tissue about the mesentery. After copulation, the male worm dies and the gravid female migrates in search of water, invades the interstitial and sub-

cutaneous tissues where it bores to the surface and discharges some secretion forming a bleb which causes superficial ulceration in the center of which the head of the worm may protrude. On moistening the ulcer with water the parasites' uterus prolapses and a milky discharge containing many embryos is liberated from the base of the ulcer. The worm may often be palpated subcutaneously. The ulcers appear most frequently in the lower extremities, they may also be found on the upper extremities, trunk, buttocks, scrotum, eyelids, tongue or other parts of the body. The adult worms usually appear during the summer months.

**Symptoms of Dracontiasis.** The acute symptoms are in the nature of an anaphylaxis which occurs before ulceration takes place. There are fever, prostration, urticarial eruption, vasomotor collapse, diarrhea, dyspnea and a moderate eosinophilia. With the appearance of the worm subcutaneously or the formation of a blister and of ulceration the acute symptoms disappear. An intradermal test is said to have given a positive reaction in 85 per cent of cases.

**Filaria.** There are several species of filaria. They are threadlike minute worms and are carried by an intermediate host to man where they cause *filariasis*.

***Wuchereria Bancrofti* or *Filaria Bancrofti*.** Clinically this is the most important filaria. The adults of this species live in the lymphatics and in the region of the lymph nodes, they may also invade the testes, epididymis, spermatic cord, mammary gland and other parts of the body. The embryos invade the blood stream, they may be found in the lungs and thoracic blood vessels during the day and in the peripheral

blood stream during the night (nocturnal periodicity). The intermediate host is the *Culex fatigans* or other mosquitoes (SEE p 1090) which acquire the infection by biting an infected individual at night. After 10 to 40 days the embryos have matured within the mosquito which may then transfer them to man where they develop into adult worms. The adult worm measures 30 to 100 mm by 0.2 mm, the female being the larger.

**Filariasis.** In mild filarial infections there may be no symptoms. When the filaria occur in large numbers and obstruct the lymphatics there may ensue lymphangitis with high fever, enlargement of the lymph glands, elephantiasis, chyluria and eosinophilia. A definite diagnosis of filariasis can be made only when the larvae (microfilariae) are found in the blood, the urine or the chylous fluid. The disease is common in India, the West Indies, Puerto Rico, Southern China and the Pacific islands. In the Pacific the insect vector is the *Aedes variegatus* which bites during the day. The filaria found there may be a different race or subspecies since it is found in the peripheral blood stream during the day and does not exhibit periodicity (Low and Fairley).

***Onchocerca Volvulus*.** The adults of this type of filaria may be found in the subcutaneous or connective tissue of man. They occur in colonies chiefly in regions where lymphatic vessels converge causing various lesions and tumors beneath the skin and around the elbows, knees, ribs, iliac crests and great trochanters. The tumors harbor the adult worms. The microfilariae are also found in the tumors and in adjacent tissue. These parasites are prevalent on the West Coast of Africa and are transmitted in the larval stage by the buffalo

gnat, *Simulium damonsum* (SEE p 1086)

***Onchocerca Caecutiens*** This filarial parasite is found in Guatemala and Mexico. It produces flat nodules upon the scalp and face associated with erysipelatoid swellings, it may also produce ocular disturbances and blindness. This filaria seldom affects other parts of the body.

swellings through a small incision. The insect vector is a fly belonging to the chrysops group. The parasites are found in West Africa.

***Trichinella Spiralis*** This is a small slender ovoviviparous worm. The male measures 1.4 to 1.6 mm and the female 3 to 4 mm in length. The embryo or muscle trichina is 0.1 to 1 mm long and lies coiled up in a spiral form within

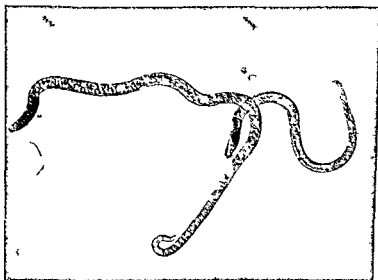


Fig 8—*Trichinella spiralis*. Adult male (right) and female (left) developed in the duodenum (Physician's Bulletin, Eli Lilly & Co.)

***Mansonella (Demarquay; Oswald)*** The adult worms live in the mesentery and the microfilariae in the circulating blood. They occur in the West Indies and Northern South America.

***Loa Loa (Filaria Occuli Filaria Loa)*** This parasite lives underneath the conjunctiva and beneath the skin, particularly in the thoracic muscles. It causes fugitive subcutaneous swellings, often the size of a hen's egg in various parts of the body (calabar swellings). These may last for a few days, then disappear and recur at another site. The adult worm may be extracted from these

an ovoid capsule in the sarcolemma sheath of muscle fiber. Man is infected with this parasite by eating infected uncooked or underdone pork products. Smoking and salting do not destroy the larvae. The larvae are also found in the muscles of pigs, rats, and bears. Rats act as reservoir hosts. Both pigs and rats acquire the parasite by eating infected human excreta, infected dead animals, and swill. When infected pork or bear meat is eaten by man, the cyst wall surrounding the embryos is dissolved by the gastric juice, thus liberating them to mature and breed in the

small intestines. The adult worms live only a few weeks, during which time the females deposit countless numbers of viviparous larvae which reach the muscles by way of the lymphatics or blood stream, or by tissue penetration. After entering the muscle fibers the larvae grow rapidly, coil and become encysted. The encysted larvae may survive for

tremities, particularly the gastrocnemii, and also in the muscles of the tongue, the larynx, the intercostal, the abdominal muscles and the diaphragm. This may cause difficulty of speech, of swallowing, and of respiration. During this stage there may be remittent fever ( $102^{\circ}$  to  $104^{\circ}$  F), edema especially of the face, urticaria, also pronounced leu



Fig 9—Larvae of *Trichinella spiralis* in process of capsulation in striated skeletal muscle ("Physician's Bulletin, Eli Lilly & Co")

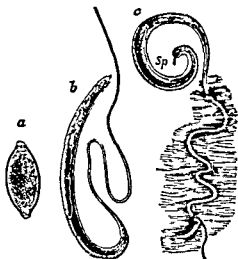


Fig 10—*Trichocephalus trichiura* a Egg, b, female, c, male attached to the intestine showing the slender and long cephalic end buried in the submucosa, Sp, spicule (DeRivas Clinical Parasitology and Tropical Medicine," Lea and Febiger)

measures from 40 to 50 cm in length. Infection in man occurs from swallowing the fertilized eggs in food or water. The larvae, on reaching the cecum, are liberated and attach themselves to its wall. They may occur in large numbers in the colon, in the terminal ileum, and may occasionally invade the appendix.

**Symptoms** Their presence in the intestinal tract may not cause any symptoms, occasionally they may cause acute appendicitis by lodging within the appendix. They may also cause severe intestinal inflammation and peritonitis when they invade the cecum, colon, or terminal ileum in large numbers. Occasionally, they may cause urticaria and eosinophilia. In children, they may cause reflex nervous phenomena.

**Ancylostomidae (Hookworms)** There are five species of this nematoid. *Ancylostoma duodenale* is found chiefly in the Mediterranean area, parts of India, China, and in mines, *Necator americanus* is found in Africa and North and

South America. Both of these affect man. *Ancylostoma caninum* may cause the so-called creeping eruption in man. *Ancylostoma malayanum* and *Ancylostoma braziliense* are not common human invaders.

The *Necator Americanus* is smaller and apparently the less virulent than the *Ancylostoma duodenale*. It measures 7 to 8 mm by 0.3 to 1 mm. The female hookworm lays between 6000 and 15,000 eggs a day. When these are deposited with the feces on moist soil, rhabditiform larvae hatch out in 48 hours. After moulting twice, they develop into filiform larvae, which remain viable for three or four months. Human infection occurs on contact with the larvae, *e g*, by walking barefoot upon or exposing any surface of the body to the infected soil. The larvae pierce the skin and bore their way into the blood vessels, thus reaching the right heart and lungs, they then travel up the trachea, larynx, and pharynx, and, after being swallowed into the stomach, are transported to their natural habitat the small intestines, where they attach themselves to the villi and develop into adult egg-laying, blood-sucking parasites. The *Ancylostoma duodenale* undergoes the same life cycle as the *Necator Americanus*.

**Hookworm Disease** (Ancylostomiasis, Uncinariasis, Tropical Chlorosis, Miners' Anemia) is caused by the *Ancylostoma duodenale* and the *Necator Americanus*.

**Symptoms** The earliest manifestation of infection is a maculopapulo-vesicular eruption with weeping and erythema, causing intense itching of the parts in contact with the larvae. This is usually the feet, especially between the toes, it may also appear on the arms, legs, or



buttocks. This is followed by severe hypochromic microcytic anemia with marked eosinophilia. There is great physical and mental weakness and when the infection is acquired during childhood there is stunted somatic, psychic and sexual development. Mild cases may show moderate anemia, pale yellowish dry skin, some abdominal discomforts.

Both parasites are found chiefly in dogs and cats. Human infection is confined to the skin. When these larvae penetrate the human skin they do not enter the blood vessels but burrow their way along the surface producing tortuous linear or serpiginous lesions which cause intense itching. This condition is known as *Creeping Eruption*. *Creeping*

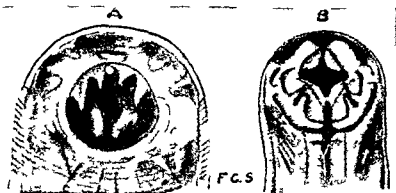


Fig 11— A Dorsal view of *Ankylostoma duodenale* B *Necator Americanus*  
Both greatly magnified

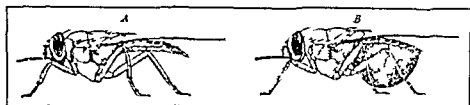


Fig 12—*Glossina morsitans* A Before and B after feeding Lateral view (From Doflein after Austin) (MacNeal) (Stitt's Diagnosis Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases by Richard P Strong Copyright The Blakiston Company Publishers)

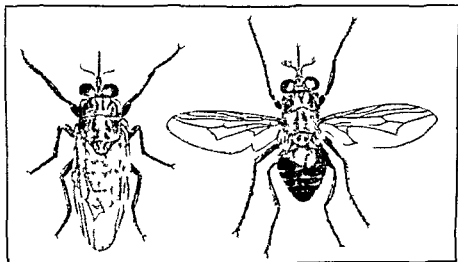


Fig 13—*Glossina palpalis* in natural resting position and with wings outstretched (MacNeal after Doflein) (Stitt's Diagnosis Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases by Richard P Strong Copyright The Blakiston Company Publishers)

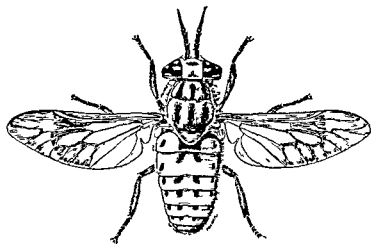


Fig 14—*Chrysops discalis* showing the characteristic nonpigmented discal cell whence is derived its name (Stitt's Diagnosis Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases by Richard P Strong Copyright The Blakiston Company Publishers)

era, and bacillary dysentery organisms as well as the ova of *tenia solium*, *ascaris lumbricoides* and *oxyuris vermicularis*. It is also believed that the house fly may in part help to spread *giardia*, *entameba histolytica*, leprosy and trachoma. It may also cause discomfort by depositing its eggs in wounds from which maggots develop and cause myiasis. The favorable breeding place for this fly is human excrement, scraps of food manure and filth of any kind that has some moisture. The ova, wherever they are deposited, are hatched out in from one to five days into footless cream-colored maggots. These larvae burrow into the ground, develop into pupa and emerge in from three to five days as adult flies.

*The Lesser House Fly (Fannia Canicularis)* usually breeds in human feces, old vegetables and vegetable refuse. The live larvae are sometimes swallowed with the vegetables they infest and may cause intestinal myiasis.

*The Tsetse Fly (Glossina)* transmits Trypanosomiasis (Sleeping Sickness) (SEE p 1069). There are about 20 species of *Glossina*; the most important are the *G. palpalis*, *G. morsitans*, *G. tachinoides*, *G. brevipalpis* and *G. swynnertonii*. They are indigenous to Africa and Arabia. Some of the species live on the banks of rivers or lakes overhung with trees or bushes; others live in wooded country. They are generally attracted by moving objects and will alight on pedestrians, running animals, automobiles, cyclists, etc.

*The Stable Fly (Stomoxys Calcitrans)* usually attacks animals and transmits systemic anthrax and malignant pustules. It may also transmit other pathogenic organisms by contact and is suspected of carrying the virus of poliomyelitis.

*The Sand Flies or Gnats* are of two different species, the *simuliidae* and the *midges*. The *simulium damnosum* transmits the *onchocerca volvulus*, which is the filarial worm responsible for filariasis. An allied worm, *onchocerca coecutiens* is said to be transmitted by the *Simulium avidum*, *S. mooseri* and *S. ochraceum*. These flies are prevalent during the spring and summer in many parts of the tropics and in Europe. The *Simuliidae* are also known as buffalo gnats. The female lays its eggs on water weeds and stones in running streams.

Among the *midges* the most important is the *Phlebotomus* or *Pappataci* sand fly. It transmits phlebotomus fever, Oriental sore and probably Kala Azar. Oroya fever is spread by *Phlebotomus noyuchui*, a very small hairy fly that moves about in short flights much like a flea.

The midge fly breeds in dark damp places, such as cellars, caves, dugouts under damp stones, damp stone walls and in cracks and fissures in damp soil. The eggs hatch into minute caterpillar-like larvae which live in organic matter.

*The Deer Fly (Chrysops discalis)* is suspected as being one of the transmitters of tularemia. The other and more common vectors are ticks.

*Carcase (Carcass) Flies* include the Blow fly, the Blue Bottle fly, the Green Bottle fly and the Gray colored hairy fly and the American Screw fly. They are usually found in decomposing flesh and other decomposing matter where they deposit their ova; these may hatch in the intestines and cause intestinal myiasis. Some of these flies may also deposit their ova on wounds and upon any pus discharging surface. Their maggots, if not infected by pyogenic organisms, are at times beneficial in cleaning up certain wounds and stimulating healing. How-

ever, some maggots may enter the external auditory canal in cases of otorrhea or the nares in cases of ozena and find their way into the brain or sinuses and cause meningitis. These flies as well as other winged pests may spread disease by disseminating infectious organisms from various sources thus acting as mechanical carriers.

*The Tumbu Fly (Cordilobia anthropophaga)* deposits its ova upon the clothing and skin of the unwashed. The ova hatch out as maggots (*Ver du Cayer* or *African skin maggots*) and penetrate the skin, causing subcutaneous boil like lesions.

*The Congo Floor Maggot Fly (Auchmeromyia luteola)* is a fly resembling the tumbu fly. Its maggots are known as the *Congo Floor Maggots*; they are the only dipterous larvae known to suck human blood. These maggots are found in large numbers on the ground floors of huts where people sleep on the ground. They are prevalent in the Belgian Congo and in tropical and subropical East Africa. No definite disease is identified with this fly or its larvae but the blood sucking proclivity of the maggots may cause severe anemia.

**Myiasis** This is a disease caused by the presence of fly maggots in some parts of the body. *Cutaneous myiasis* is usually caused by larvae that invade wounds or sores; very few pierce the skin. They may be found upon the surface of the infected skin, the nasal folds, ears, eyes, corners of the mouth and the genital orifices and may occasionally gain entrance into the body through these orifices. *Intestinal myiasis* may be caused by accidentally swallowing ova or maggots with food or drink or by direct infection by ova which can only develop

in living tissue. The common cause of this type of myiasis is the larvae of the Tumbu fly (*Cordylobia anthropophaga*). The diagnosis of cutaneous myiasis is self evident. Intestinal myiasis may cause severe diarrhea, dysentery, general weakness and emaciation.

**Mosquitoes** The two important groups of mosquitoes are the *Anophelini* which are responsible for the various types of malaria and the *Culicini* which are responsible for the transmission of yellow fever, dengue and the filariasis due to *Wuchereria bancrofti*; each of these main groups has numerous species which are indigenous to many parts of the world and transmit various diseases. The females only of these species suck blood and therefore are the carriers of the infection.

**Differential Points Between Male and Female and Between the Two Groups**  
The females of both the *Anophelini*

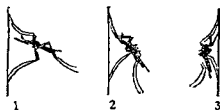
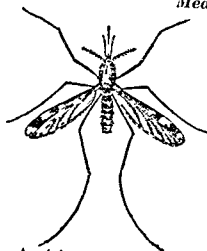
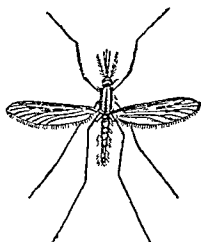
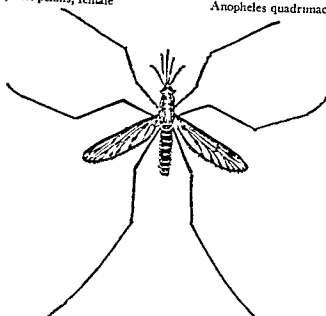


Fig. 15—Resting posture of mosquitoes. 1 and 2 *Anopheles*, 3 *Culex pipiens*. (After Sambon.) From P. H. Reports (Statistics, Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases) by Richard P. Strong. Copyright The Blackiston Company Publishers.)

and *Culicini* have sparsely haired antennae while the male antennae are densely haired and plumelike. The female *Anophelini* have palpi as long or nearly as long as the proboscis while the proboscis of the *Culicini* are very much shorter. The resting positions of the two types also differ. The *Anophelini* usually stand with their heads down

*Medical Diagnosis**Anopheles punctipennis*, female*Anopheles quadrimaculatus* female

and their bodies pointing upwards at an angle of 45 degrees while the Culicini rest nearly parallel to the surface their rear end and head being somewhat depressed. The Anopheline mosquitoes are very much less scaly than the other group

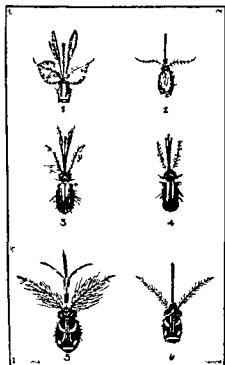


Fig 17—Heads of mosquitoes 1 and 2 male and female *Cutex quinquefasciatus* 3 and 4 male and female *Anopheles* 5 and 6 male and female *Aedes aegypti* (After Stitt.) From P H Reports (Stitt's Diagnosis Prevent on and Treatment of Tropical Diseases by Richard P Strong Copyright The Blakiston Company Publishers)

All types of mosquitoes lay their eggs in quiet water. After a few days the eggs hatch into the so called wrigglers in the water which undergo further stages of development to emerge finally in several weeks as adult mosquitoes (depending upon the temperature of the water and the food supply)

**The Anopheline Mosquitoes** (Malaria carriers) There are about 50 or

more species of the Anopheline group some are constant carriers wherever found others are carriers only in some localities and not in others, while a third variety although susceptible to infection is apparently of little epidemiological importance. The variability of their infectiveness probably depends upon variability of their habits and habitat. The four species of malarial parasites namely the *Plasmodium vivax* and *P. ovale* responsible for benign tertian malaria the *P. malaria* causing quartan type malaria and the *P. falciparum* which produces a malignant subtertian or estivo autumnal fever are transmitted by infected Anopheline mosquitoes. In order to become infective the mosquito must first bite a person that has both male and female malarial parasites in the circulating blood. These fertilize in the mosquito's stomach and the fertilized forms find their way between the stomach cells form cysts on its outer wall and mature in about eight days. The cysts rupture in the body cavity of the mosquito liberating the sporozoites these travel to the salivary glands and are injected through the proboscis into the blood stream of the bitten person in whom ten days later the parasites are found in the erythrocytes and malaria becomes manifest.

**The Culicini Mosquitoes** There are 20 or more species of mosquitoes belonging to the Culicini group. The *Aedes aegypti* (*Stegomyia fasciata*) is the common transmitter of the filtrable virus causing yellow fever in man. In order to transmit yellow fever the mosquito must bite a yellow fever sufferer during the first three days of his illness. Then after nine to twelve days and until its death the mosquito is capable of transmitting the disease by its bite. In Africa

and in locations where Jungle Yellow Fever is prevalent and where the *Aedes aegypti* does not exist, the yellow fever virus is transmitted by other species of the *Aedes* type. Those who have recovered from yellow fever, even in mild form, possess a lifelong immunity to the disease.

*Cus brevipalpis*, transmits 'Rift Valley Fever,' a fatal epizootic disease occurring in certain parts of East Africa (Kenya) and affecting ewes and lambs. It may be transmitted to man in whom it is not fatal.

The Eastern and Western strains of encephalomyelitis virus may be trans-

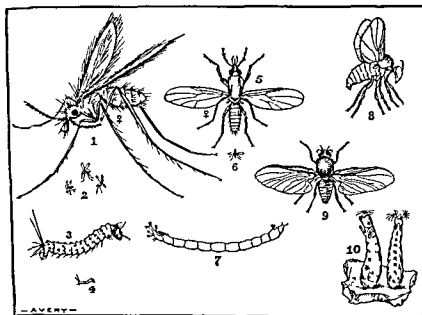


Fig 18—Mosquitolike insects belonging to families Chironomidae, Simuliidae and Psychodidae. 1 *Phlebotomus papatasi*, 2 *P. papatasi* (natural size), 3 *P. papatasi* (larva), 4 *P. papatasi* larva (natural size), 5 *Ceratopogon pulicaris*, 6 *C. pulicaris* (natural size), 7 *Chironomus* larva, 8, attitude of a *Simulium*, 9, *Simulium reptans*, 10, larvae of *Simulium* (Stitt's 'Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases' by Richard P. Strong. Copyright The Blakiston Company, Publishers.)

*Icides aegypti* and probably also *Aedes albopictus* and *Armigeres obturbans* are the transmitters of the filtrable virus responsible for Dengue. An infected mosquito is capable of transmitting the disease throughout its life. *Aedes aegypti* and *Culex fatigans* and occasionally several others of the Culicini and Anopheleini are transmitters of *Wuchereria bancrofti* causing filariasis and various symptoms of lymphatic obstruction. Another Culicini mosquito, the *Toxorhynch-*

mitted experimentally by various species of the *Aedes* mosquito.

**Mites or Chiggers and Gnats**  
These usually produce only temporary skin irritation. Occasionally, particularly the Japanese mite may become infected with Rickettsialike organisms while feeding on field mice and transmit 'Flood fever,' or 'Tsutsugamushi.' A small gnat, the *Hippelates pallipes*, is suspected of being the mechanical vector of the yaws.

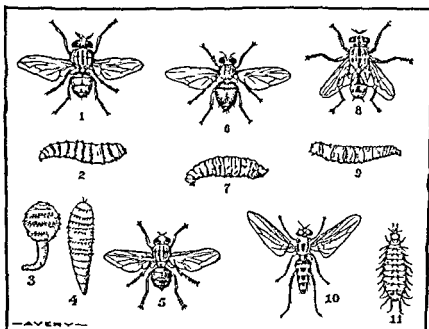


Fig 19—Insects in which the larvae stage is important 1, *Chrysomya macellaria*, 2, *C* larva, 3, *Dermatobia hominis* larva, early stage (ver macaque), 4, *D hominis* larva, later stage (torcel or berne), 5, *D hominis*, 6, *Auchmeromyia luteola*, 7, *A luteola* larva, 8, *Sarcophaga magnifica*, 9, *S magnifica* larva, 10, *Anthomyia pluvialis*, 11 *A pluvialis* larva (Stutt's 'Diagnosis, Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases' by Richard P Strong Copyright The Blakiston Company, Publishers )

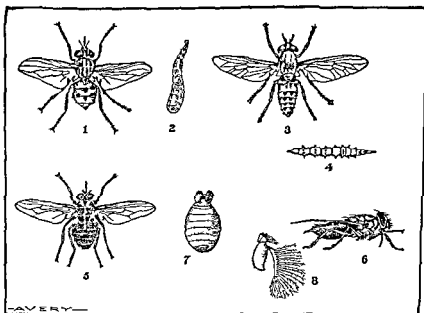


Fig 20—Insects in which the adult stage is important 1, *Stomoxys calcitrans*, 2, *S calcitrans* larva, 3, *Tobanus bovinus*, 4, *Tobanus* larva, 5, *Glossina palpalis*, 6, *G palpalis*, side view, 7, *G palpalis* pupa, 8, *Glossina* palps and arista (Stutt's 'Diagnosis Prevention and Treatment of Tropical Diseases' by Richard P Strong Copyright The Blakiston Company, Publishers )



**Bedbugs** (*Cimex lectularius* and *C. hemiptera*) Among the bugs that attack man the bedbug is the commonest. There are several species that are suspected of transmitting disease. *Cimex hemipterus rotundatus* an Indian species, is suspected of harboring *Leishmania donovani*, causing Kala Azar. The *Triatoma* group belonging to the reduviid bug family transmits trypanosomiasis and probably Chagas disease.

Bedbugs are also suspected of carrying plague, anthrax, relapsing fever and typhoid fever. They are employed as experimental hosts for *Trypanosoma cruzi* and *Leptospira icterohemorrhagiae*.

Both males and females suck blood, they are nocturnal pests. During the day they usually hide in cracks in the walls, floor, furniture beds and bedding, or in any sheltered place. Bedbugs may travel long distances from house to house, or tent to tent and may remain for nine months or longer without food. They seem to be more numerous in cold than in hot climates. The adult bug may survive freezing temperature for some time.

**Ticks** (*Arachnids*) These are of two general types: hard ticks (*Exodidae*) and soft ticks (*Argasidae* or *Argantidae*). Some ticks require three intermediate hosts for their development; some two and others one intermediate host. They are also classified according to their structures and habitat. Ticks may be carriers of *Rickettsia*, *Spirillae*, bacteria and other pathogenic organisms.

They usually infest the skin of dogs, rabbits and other furry animals from whom some may fall off and become adherent to stalks of grass, plants or weeds.

The *Dermacentor Andersoni* (*D. Venustus*) is a hard tick and is a carrier of the *Rickettsia* responsible for Rocky

Mountain Spotted Fever (*Dermacentor variabilis* *rickettsii*). The dog tick (*Rhipicephalus sanguineus*) may spread Peste des Petits Ruminants (Marseilles Fever), a form of acute ascending paralysis especially of children. Another hard tick (*Ixodes ricinus*) is responsible for Louping Ill, a form of encephalomyelitis of sheep. Human infection may occur in contacts.

The *Dermacentor Andersoni* and the *Dermacentor variabilis* have also been found to carry the bacterium *tularensis*.

The *Ornithodoros moubata* transmits the spirillum responsible for relapsing fever. They are blind ticks whose feeding habits resemble those of the bedbug. They are indigenous to Africa and are also found in Central Asia, India, Arabia, Persia, Southern Spain, and in the tropical regions of the Americas. These ticks live in native huts and rest houses. During the day, they hide in crannies of walls, floors, roofs and other dark places, and at night they migrate in quest of food, which is human or animal blood.

**Lice** (*Pediculi*) Lice affecting man are of three types: *Pediculus capitis* (head louse), *pediculus corporis* (body louse), and *phthirus pubis* (the crab louse). Lice are responsible for several serious epidemic diseases. They transmit typhus fever, trench fever and relapsing fever and cause local skin irritations. It is of great importance to prevent the occurrence of lice or to exterminate them in camps, institutions and in places where numbers of people live in close proximity.

**Fleas** (*Siphonaptera*) There are various species of fleas, each having a predilection for a definite host. The rat flea (*Xenopsylla cheopis*) transmits *Bubonic plague* and *Brill's disease* (epidemic typhus). The human flea (*Pulex*

*irritans*) is the only flea of which man is the usual host, though any type of flea may occasionally affect man. Of the various types of fleas that affect rats mice dogs cats squirrels etc. the *xenopsylla cheopis* is the most important from the standpoint of infection. Bacot<sup>1</sup> showed that the larval stage may last from 12 to 84 days and the cocoon stage from 7 to 182 days.

Flea eggs after being laid fall to the ground they are usually found in sleeping places of animals. The eggs hatch into footless sparsely covered hairy larvae which live in the dust of floors and feed on organic matter. After about two weeks the larva spins a cocoon in which it pupates and after another two weeks it emerges as an adult flea. The length of the various stages of development depends chiefly upon the temperature being faster during the summer and slower in the winter.

Other winged or wingless nonvenomous insects are not identified with the transmission of any specific disease though bees hornets moths butterflies dragonflies spiders ants roaches and itch mites may act as mechanical vectors that is spreading disease to man and animal by infecting food or drink with pathogenic organisms that may adhere to their bodies. Venomous arthropods such as various types of spiders scorpions tarantulas certain caterpillars wasps bees and certain ants may by their sting cause painful local lesions systemic infection and at times death.

**The Crustacea** The cyclops coronatus copepods and various species of crabs and crawfish serve as secondary intermediate hosts of certain intestinal

nematodes cestodes and flukes. Oysters and clams may harbor the typhoid bacilli and transmit typhoid fever.

### Fungi and Monilia— Mycotic and Monilia Infections

Fungi and monilia may cause systemic disease when they affect internal structures or they may produce various skin affections when they remain upon the surface. Diseases caused by fungi are classified as the mycoses or mycotic infections and those caused by monilia as moniliasis or monilia infection.

### The Mycoses

**Actinomycosis** (Ray fungus disease Lunger's Jaw) This is an infection caused by a ray fungus *streptothrix actinomycetes* or *actinomycetes bovis*. The disease is more common in cattle and is transmitted to man by cattle or their pelt. It starts as a local infection which later may become generalized causing granulomatous lesions. These are characterized by the formation of multiple small abscesses which communicate and form discharging sinuses or there may be large abscesses with induration and granulation areas. The symptoms depend upon the areas affected. The jaw and the adjacent structures are the more common sites other structures that may become involved are the abdomen and its viscera the lungs and pleura the brain or the skin.

**Aural actinomycosis** is characterized by toothache dysphagia and partial trismus. Later there develop swelling and induration of the tongue (macroglossia) at the angle of the jaw of the thyroid and of adjacent structures which suppurate and discharge pus containing yellow masses.

<sup>1</sup> Cited by W. P. MacArthur. *Medical Diseases in Tropical and Subtropical Areas*. 1942.

In *abdominal actinomycosis* the more common site is the cecum and appendix, causing appendicitis. The infection may spread to the liver, causing enlargement and abscess formation, it may also affect other abdominal viscera and the peritoneum. When the abdominal wall becomes involved, suppurative sinuses may result.

*Pulmonary actinomycosis* causes lesions in the lungs resembling atypical pneumonia, tuberculosis or malignancy. The symptoms usually start with pleural pain, later there develop cough with fetid expectoration and, at times, hemoptysis.

*Cerebral actinomycosis* causes symptoms of space taking lesions and meningeal irritation.

In *skin actinomycosis*, granulomatous lesions occur on the affected site. This may occur in conjunction with lesions in other sites.

The disease usually runs a moderately protracted course.

The diagnosis depends upon the discovery of the "sulfur granules" containing the mycelia in the pus, sputum or in other secretions. The fungi may reside in the normal mouth, in tonsillar crypts, or in carious teeth without causing pathologic lesions.

**Mycetoma** (Madura foot, Pseudo-actinomycosis). This is a chronic granulomatous infection especially of the feet, it rarely affects the hands or other parts of the body. There appear marked swelling and multiple abscesses which connect with deeper sinuses discharging a foul-smelling, oily pus containing various-colored fungoid granules. The disease is common among the natives in the rural districts of Northern Africa, China, the West Indies, South America, and is occasionally seen in the United States.

**Sporotrichosis.** This is a chronic infection by the *sporotrichum schenki* and *S. beurmanni*, affecting the skin and the underlying tissue, usually of the hand or foot and causing gummalike nodules, abscesses and ulcers. The disease spreads by way of the lymphatics. After forming subcutaneous cold abscesses along the infected lymph channels, there may develop indolent fungating ulcers. The lesions are painless and infectious and may be transmitted by infected persons or animals.

**Blastomycosis** (Gilchrist's disease, Chicago disease). This is a chronic granulomatous and suppurative process affecting the skin, the subcutaneous tissue, the lungs or other internal viscera. It is caused by some species of yeast-like blastomycoids. The skin lesions may be papuloulcerative or nodular, there may occur tumorlike granulomata discharging pus, the lesions may resemble tuberculosis or syphilis. The pulmonary lesions cause cough and expectoration of bloody mucopurulent material. Other symptoms depend upon the affected area. The diagnosis is made by recovering the blastomycetes from the pus or from the lesions. The disease was found in fairly large numbers in Chicago, Ill. It is now also found in other portions of the United States, in Canada, and in Puerto Rico.

**Streptothricosis:** This is a fungus infection by the *streptothrix asteroides*, the lesions resembling those of actinomycosis. They are suppurative forming abscesses and granulation tissue. The lungs are the usual site of the infection where it may cause bronchopneumonia abscess, gangrene and empyema. The diagnosis is made by the discovery of the streptothrix in the sputum or pus.

**Histoplasmosis of Darling:** This is a severe, often fatal, disease caused by a fungus, the *Histoplasma capsulatum*, which generally invades the reticulo-endothelial cells, and may also be found in the blood and other tissues. The fungus may appear in two forms, one, yeast-like when recovered from the blood or reticuloendothelial tissue, the other, a mycelial form when cultured outside the body.

**Symptoms** The outstanding manifestations are continued fever, splenomegaly, anemia with leukopenia. It may affect the lungs causing widespread lesions resembling metastatic malignancy. Recently<sup>1</sup> several cases of histoplasmosis were reported in adults and in children. The diagnosis may be made by finding the organisms in stained smears or sections, or by cultures. The disease often occurs in conjunction with some chronic affection such as diabetes, cancer or other chronic diseases. It may, however, occur in apparently otherwise normal persons. Cases were reported from temperate as well as tropical regions.

**Coccidioidal Granuloma** (California disease, coccidioides). This disease is caused by a hypomycetous fungus, the *coccidioides immitis*, it may run an acute, subacute, or chronic course, and resembles blastomycosis. It may affect the skin, causing nodular lesions, abscess and gummatous ulcers containing thick pus. It may also affect the lungs, causing lesions resembling tuberculosis, and occasionally the meninges and the bony structures may develop suppurative lesions. The discovery of the coccidioidiae in the lesions or in the pus or a positive

coccidioidin intradermal test is diagnostic.

**Cryptococcosis and Torulosis.** These are produced by a yeastlike organism termed *saccharomycosis*. The torula infection, according to Low and Fairley, is caused by the *Torula histolytica*. Benham suggests the term *cryptococcus hominis* for organisms of this type. The lesions have a predilection for the central nervous system, but may also affect the subcutaneous tissue, bone and viscera. It is characterized by the formation of gelatinous cystlike lesions, these contain the organisms. In cerebrospinal involvement the organisms resembling lymphocytes are found in the cerebrospinal fluid. Cases of *Torula* meningoencephalitis were reported<sup>1</sup> in which the yeastlike organisms were recovered from the spinal fluid.

**Rhinosporidiosis:** This is a chronic disease characterized by the formation of nasal polypi and papillomatous lesions upon the conjunctivae, lacrymal sacs and cheeks. The causative organism is a vegetable mold belonging to the order of phytomycetes, the *rhinosporidium seebertii*.

### The Moniliases

The monilia fungi are, for the most part, saprophytic, and are widely distributed in nature. To the genus monilia belongs a large number of different species which, because of the similarity of their behavior, may for clinical purposes be grouped as a single species. On glucose containing media they grow upon the surface, eventually forming large creamy plaques with raised edges. The diagnosis of moniliasis is either based

<sup>1</sup> Wright Hachtel Am Int Med 15 309  
1941 Melency H E Am Rev Tuberc 44 240  
1941 Rhodes Conant and Gleason Jr Pediat  
18 235 1941

<sup>1</sup> Stiles W W Jour A M A. 115 601,  
1940 Curtis A N Jour A M A 116 1633  
1941

upon or confirmed by the finding of monilia in the lesions or in the secretions or by culture

The monilia group commonly affect the skin, they may also affect the mucous membrane and the viscera

**Cutaneous Moniliasis.** The growth of monilia is stimulated by warmth and moisture, therefore infection is commonest in the folds of the skin such as underneath the breasts in the axillae, in the crotch and in the perineal folds. It may also be found around the rectum and the vagina. The lesions consist of patchy slightly raised areas of erythema often made up of vesicles and pustules. The edges are slightly raised and the patches have a tendency to become confluent. There is usually burning or intense itching. Perspiring feet and hands may develop vesicular noninflammatory lesions resembling epidermophytosis. Af-

fection of the fingernails may cause paronychia swellings, the nails become lusterless, friable, thickened, ridged and discolored

**Thrush** (parasis stomatitis) Affection of the mucous membrane is best exemplified by thrush. It occurs upon the mucous membranes of the mouth. The mouth is dry and there are scattered small white patches resembling milk curds distributed over the gums, tongue, cheeks and lips. This is associated with considerable burning.

**Pulmonary Moniliasis.** In this the bronchi are chiefly affected though the infection may spread to the vesicular structures. The symptoms are those of bronchitis or of bronchopneumonia. The physical signs may reveal unilateral or bilateral involvement. Culture of the sputum may reveal the cause of the infection.

# INDEX

- Abadie's sign, 170
- Abdomen
  - anatomy and physical examination of, 573
  - enlarged, 584
  - examination of, 123
  - normal, 582
  - pathologic, 582
- Abdominal
  - aneurysm
    - aortic
      - umbilical pain in, 590
    - epigastric pain in, 75
    - general abdominal pain in, 74
    - rupture of, abdominal tenderness in, 589
  - aorta, bifurcation of, landmark at fourth lumbar vertebra, 213
  - arteries, enlarged, superficial, 584
  - disease, hyperpnea in, 254
  - enlargement, 586
  - fluctuation, 590
  - inflammation, neuralgia, and colicky pain, differential diagnosis, 640
  - malignancy, dirty yellow areas of skin in, 130
  - masses, palpable, significance of, 594
  - organs
    - location of, 595
    - size of, 596
    - technic for palpation, 596
  - pain, 74
  - pulsations, 584
  - rashes, 583
  - reflexes, 834
  - respiratory movements, 585
  - tenderness, 588
  - tumors, 591
    - enlargement, 586
    - decreased respiratory movement in, 585
    - diagnosis, 592
    - general pain in, 74
  - veins, enlarged superficial, 584
  - viscera
    - displacement of, 580
    - topographic anatomy, 575
- Abducens nerves, 816
- Aboulia, 893
- Abscess, increase of neutrophils in, 1001
- Absinth poisoning, tremors in, 98
- Acanthosis nigricans, dirty yellow areas of skin in, 130
- Accidental heart murmurs, 460
- Accommodation technic of testing for, 177
- Acetanilide poisoning
  - cyanosis in, 129
  - hypopnea in, 258
  - purpura in, 564
- Acetone bodies in blood, 1013
- Acetonuria, 983
- Acetylcholine, action on parasympathetic system, 828
- Achillodynia, foot pain in, 85
- Aching pains, 67
- Achlorhydria
  - aversion to certain foods in, 90
  - decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012
  - heartburn in, 90
  - nausea in, 90
- Acholic jaundice, 559, 603
- Achondroplasia
  - head in, 161
  - macrocephalus in, 158
  - saddle nose in, 186
- Achromatopsia (color blindness), 64
- Achromia, 132, 997
- Achylia gastrica
  - general abdominal pain in, 74
  - hypermotility of stomach in, 634
- Acid
  - urine, 971
  - vomitus, 637
- Acidosis, 1013
  - abnormally deep and irregular breathing in, 259
  - hyperpnea in, 254, 256
  - Kussmaul's air hunger in, 258, 799
  - nephritic, decreased urinary phosphates in, 975
  - sighing in, 259
  - sweetish odor of urine in, 971
- Acne, 40
  - in fevers, 47
  - rosacea
    - diffuse erythema in, 137
    - red nose in, 186
    - vulgaris pustules in, 141
- Aconite poisoning, hypopnea in, 93, 258
- Acoria, 89, 634
- Acrodynia factor, 918
- Acromegaly, 159, 764
  - asymmetry of head in, 161
  - facies in, 166
  - gradual increase in size of nose in, 186
  - hands in, 742
  - macrocephalus in, 158
  - macroglossia in, 193
  - obesity in, 89
  - weakness in, 96
- Acroparesthesia, 60, 884
  - pain in wrist and hand in, 83
- Actinomycosis, 193, 1093
  - abdominal, 1094

Actinomycosis (*continued*)

- aural, 1093
    - macroglossia in, 1093
  - cerebral, 1094
  - macroglossia in, 193
  - of liver, 611
  - of thyroid, 775
  - pulmonary, 1094
  - skin, 1094
    - swelling of lower jaw in, 169
    - swelling of upper neck and lower jaw in, 203
  - ulcerations in, 149
- Addis count, 969
- Addison Biermer anemia 554
- Addison's disease, 40, 794
  - bronzing of skin in, 130
  - coma in, 104
  - decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012
  - discoloration of abdomen in 583
  - emaciation in, 115
  - eosinophilia in 1002
  - general abdominal pain in, 74
  - hypotension in, 412
  - increased blood potassium in 1012
  - mild hyperglycemia in, 1012
  - nausea in 90
  - pigmented spots in mouth in, 153
  - purple dark brown and black deposits on tongue in 194
  - rapid emaciation in, 89
  - sallowness of face in, 167
  - syncope in, 101
  - tachycardia in, 408
  - thrombocytopenia in, 1005
  - vomiting in, 91 636
  - weakness in 96
- Adduction of foot sign, 835
- Aderitis
  - cervical pain in, 80
  - cervical reflex headache in 70
- Adenocarcinoma
  - of testes, 715
  - of uterus 702
- Adenoids, partial deafness in, 64
- Adenolipomatosis cervical pain in, 80
- Adenoma malignant, of uterus, 702
- Adenomata, of thyroid 775
- Adenomatous goiter, 776
- Adenomyosis (adenomyoma) of uterus 702
- Adenosis of breast, 384
- Adherent pericarditis, 472
- Adhesive pericarditis, 469
- Adriadolokinesis 846 850
- Adiposis dolorosa, 767, 770
  - as cause of androsis 59
- Adolescence, diseases of 40
- Adrenal
  - disease
    - coma in 104
    - pain in left loin in, 77
  - glands, 792

- Adrenal
  - hormones 757
  - inflammation muscular rigidity in, 588
  - medulla, 795
  - obesity, 89, 772
  - tumors 796
    - lumbosacral pain in, 81
    - of ovary, 705
    - pain in right loin in, 77
    - splenic pain and tenderness in, 620
- Adrenalpituitary type of infantilism, 769
- Adrenals, topographic anatomy, 579
- Adrenocortical hormone, 792
- Adrenoovarian tumors, 705
- Adrenotropic hormone of pituitary, 760
- Adynamia, 96
- Aedes aegypti, 1089, 1090
- Aedes variegatus, 1080
- Aeroplane sickness, vertigo in, 97
- African skin maggot, 1087
- Age and sex in reference to disease, 40
- Age weight height tables, 108
- Agglutination tests, 1062
- Agglutinins, 1019
- Aging process, 932
- Agonadism, 802
- Agonizing pain, 67
- Agranulocytic angina (agranulocytosis). *see* Granulocytopenia, 569
  - decreased neutrophils in, 1002
  - lymphocytosis in, 1002
- Agraphia, 843
- Air hunger, 259
- Alar chest, 238
- Albainism 132
  - day blindness in, 61
  - photophobia in 64
- Albuminuria 976
- Albuminuric retinitis, 179
  - choked disks in 180
- Albumoses in urine, 981
- Alcaptonuria 130
- Alcohol as cause of sweating, 50
- Alcoholic narcosis, uremia, and cerebral hemor-  
rage, differential diagnosis, 690
- Alcoholism
  - acute
    - diplopia in, 62
    - hyperpnea in 256
    - hypopnea in 93
    - increased spinal fluid pressure in 1025
    - nephritis in 687
    - vomiting in, 91
  - aortic regurgitation in 487
  - blue vision in 64
  - chronic
    - facies in, 164
    - red nose in 186
    - vomiting in, 92
  - coma in 101, 103 690
  - encephalitis in, 875

- Alcoholism (*continued*)  
   flushing of face in, 168  
   general tremor of tongue in, 196  
   hyperpnea in, 256  
   hypopnea in, 258  
   increase of apical impulse in, 401  
   neuritis in, 85  
   photophobia in, 64  
   psychosis in, 888  
   redness of skin in, 128  
   vertigo in, 87  
   wrist drop in, 742  
 Aleppo boil, 1071  
 Aleukemic leukemia, 567  
 Alexia, 94  
 Alkali  
   reserve of blood, 1015  
   tolerance of patient, 1016  
 Alkaline urine, 972  
 Alkalosis, 1017  
 Alkaptonuria, black urine in, 971  
 Allergic  
   colitis, 667  
   dyspepsia general abdominal pain in, 74  
   manifestations  
     cardiovascular system, 928  
     digestive system, 926  
     eyes, 922  
     nervous system, 928  
     nose, 923  
     respiratory system, 924  
     skin, 927  
   reaction  
     diarrhea in, 92  
     nausea in, 90  
     palpitation in, 96  
     purpuric spots in, 134  
     sneezing in, 94  
     vomiting in, 92  
   shock, as cause of chills, 59  
 Allergy  
   blepharitis in, 172  
   clinical manifestations and diagnosis, 921  
   excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in, 153  
   general diagnosis 928  
   leukopenia in, 1001  
   photophobia in 64  
   pruritus ani in 671  
   vomiting in 636  
   wheals in, 145  
 Allison  
   differential stethoscope, 314  
   hydrophone, 315  
 Allochuria, 849  
 Alopecia, 163  
 Alpha tocopherol, 911, 917, 919  
 Alveolar abscess  
   swelling of lower jaw in, 169  
   swelling of upper jaw in, 169  
 Amaurosis, 61  
 Amaurotic family idiocy  
   blindness in, 61  
   psychosis in, 989  
 Amazia, 382  
 Amblyopia, 61  
   hysterical monocular diplopia in, 62  
   toxic amblyopia  
     color blindness in, 64  
     day blindness in, 61  
 Amboceptor, 1020  
 Amebiasis  
   diarrhea in, 92, 1067  
   differential diagnosis, 57  
   general abdominal pain in, 74  
   test for, 1060  
 Amebic dysentery, stricture of rectum in, 675  
 American leishmaniasis, 1070  
 American screw fly, 1086  
 Ametropia, 182  
 Amidopyrine poisoning, hemolytic anemia in, 560  
 Ammonium urate crystals in urine, 991  
 Animotin, 803  
 Amphoric  
   breath sounds, 330  
   rales, 339  
   tympany, 305  
   voice sound, 336  
 Amyloid  
   disease  
     chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
     enlargement of both liver and spleen in, 627  
     gradual hypertrophy of spleen in, 627  
     splenic enlargement in, 625-  
       test for, 1064  
   kidney, 683  
     low specific gravity of urine in, 972  
     polyuria in, 970  
   liver, 608  
 Amyl nitrite poisoning yellow vision in, 64  
 Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 863  
   increase of tendon reflexes in, 833  
 Anacidity achylia gastrica nervosa, 650  
 Anal  
   fissure, 673  
   reflex, 835  
   ring, inspection of, 656  
   sphincter, dilated, 675  
 Anamnesis (history) evaluation of, 36-  
 Anaphylaxis  
   and allergy, 921  
   edema of face in, 169  
   thrombocytopenia in, 1005  
 Anarthria, 843  
 Anasarca  
   anrosis in, 152  
   decreased urinary chlorides in, 974  
 Anatomic landmarks of abdomen, 573  
 Ancylostoma  
   braziliense, 1084  
   caninum, 1083 1084



*Ancylostoma (continued)*

duodenale, 1083

malayanum, 1083

*Ancylostomiasis (hookworm disease), 1083**Ancylostomidae, 1083**Androsterone, 757, 800*

in urine, 987

*Androtin, 757**Anemia, 40, 553*

actual decrease of hemoglobin in, 996

acute, tinnitus aurium in, 185

aplastic, 558

decreased eosinophils in, 1002

decreased fragility of erythrocytes in, 997

decreased neutrophils in, 1002

leukopenia in, 1001

rectal bleeding in, 672

thrombocytopenia in, 1005

uterine bleeding in, 700

very low red count in, 996

as cause of chronic myocarditis, 475

bluish white discoloration of conjunctiva in, 175

Cabot's ring bodies in severe anemias, 997

chronic gastritis in, 645

constipation in, 92

cyanosis of nails in, 742

decreased urinary creatinine in, 976

delayed dentition in, 191

dilatation of pupil in, 176

dyspnea in, 93

edema of uvula in, 197

epistaxis in, 186

fatty liver in, 609

general edema in, 88

glossitis in, 72

hematemesis in, 637

hydrothorax in, 243

hyperpnea in, 256

hypotension in, 412

increased intensity of both heart sounds in, 431

increased respiratory frequency in, 327

increase of blood chlorides in, 1012

insomnia in, 97

lingual pain in, 197

microglossia in, 193

miller's, 1083

murmurs, 460

normoblasts in, 996

of brain, blindness in, 61

pale conjunctivae in, 175

pale tongue in, 194

pallor in, 127

of gums, in, 189

of retina, 179

petechial rash in, 134

pseudoleukemia infantum, 362

tuffiness of eyelids in, 171

pulsations in episternal notch in, 204

reflex headache in, 70

retinal hemorrhages in, 179

*Anemia (continued)*

sallowiness of face in, 167

secondary

glossitis in, 72

severe

Howell Jelly bodies in, 997

stippling of red cells in, 997

severe

poikilocytes in, 996

polychromatophilia in, 996

scotomata in, 63

syncope in, 101

tachycardia in, 408

tinnitus aurium in, 65

venous

hum in, 542

pulsations in neck in, 204

vomiting in, 92

weakness in, 96

tropical megalocytic, 555

*Anesthesia, 60**Aneurysm, 41, 85, 529*

abdominal

epigastric pain in, 75

general abdominal pain in, 74

anisocoria in, 177

aortic, 530

abdominal, 533

abdominal epigastric pulsation in, 396

abdominal gnawing pain in, 68

agonizing pain in, 67

alternate blanching and flushing of mucous

membranes in, 152

aphonia in, 94

cyanosis in, 128

differential diagnosis, 533

distention of jugular veins in, 541

dyspnea in, 257

epigastric tenderness in, 589

increased cardiac dullness in, 421

local bulging of chest wall in, 248

local sweating in, 50

paroxysmal pain in, 467

precordial pulsation in, 396

pulsations in episternal notch in, 204

restricted bilateral chest expansion in, 250

rigidity of upper abdomen in, 588

unilateral mydriasis in, 176

unilateral thoracic enlargement in, 245

arteriovenous, 533

diagnostic signs, 535

dry cough in, 95

false, 529

mediastinal dyspnea in, 92

of ascending part of aortic arch, 530

of auricles and ventricles, 533

of cerebral arteries, 873

of circle of Willis, cervical pain in, 80

of descending part of aortic arch, 532

of heart, 478

of innominate artery, 533

- Aneurysm** (*continued*)  
 of intracranial vessels, headache in, 69  
 of left ventricle, 478  
 of transverse portion of aortic arch, 531  
 thoracic, acute pain in, 67  
 true, 530
- Aneurysmal varix**, 533
- Angina**  
 agranulocytic, 569  
   differential diagnosis, 58  
 Ludovici, cyanosis in, 128  
 pectoris, 41, 495  
   abdominal pain in, 74  
   agonizing pain in, 67  
   anxiety in, 496  
   electrocardiogram in, 496  
   epigastric pain in, 75, 641  
   exertional pain in, 467  
   onset of attack, 496  
   orthopnea in, 257  
   pain in, 496  
   pain in sternal and epigastric regions in, 73  
   pallor and sweats in, 496  
   pulse in, 496  
   sense of constriction in chest in, 496  
   shoulder pain in, 83  
   vomiting in, 636
- Vincent's**, differential diagnosis, 56
- Angioma**  
 of liver, 612  
 of ovary, 704  
 of penis, 710
- Angiomatosis**, 543
- Angioneurosis**, 883
- Angioneurotic edema**, 885, 927  
 edema of face in, 169  
 increased eosinophils in, 1002  
 of lip, 189  
 of uvula in, 197  
 puffiness of eyelids in, 171  
 vomiting in, 92  
 wheals in, 145
- Angiosclerosis**, 525
- Angiospasm**, pain due to arteritis in, 86
- Angle of Louis**, 209  
 landmark for fourth thoracic vertebra, 213
- Anhydremia**, actual increase of hemoglobin in, 996
- Anhidrosis** (anhidrosis), 59, 152
- Animal parasites**, 1067
- Anuscoria**, 176
- Anisocytes**, 996
- Anisometropia**, 183
- Ankle clonus**, 836  
 in familial spastic spinal paralysis, 866
- Ankyloblepharon**, 173
- Anochromasia**, 551
- Anopheline mosquitoes**, 1089  
 anopheles, 1088  
 crucians, 1088
- Anopheline mosquitoes** (*continued*)  
 punctipennis, 1088  
 quadrimaculatus, 1088
- Anorchism**, 713
- Anorexia**, 89, 633  
 nervosa  
   anorexia in, 90  
   as cause of anidrosis, 59  
   rapid emaciation in, 89  
   weakness in, 96
- Anosmia** (loss of smell), 65, 187, 855
- Anoxemia**, bradycardia in, 515
- Anteroposterior expansion of chest**, palpation of, 261
- Anthracosis**, 360
- Anthrax**  
 differential diagnosis, 51  
 neutrophilia leukocytosis in, 1001  
 swelling of back of neck in, 203  
 ulceration in, 148  
 vesicles in, 140
- Antigen**, 1020
- Antihormones**, 757
- Antimony poisoning**  
 decreased knee jerk in, 836  
 hypopnea in, 93, 258  
 serous stools in, 1032
- Antipyrin poisoning**  
 cyanosis in, 129  
 erythema or purpura in, 135  
 purpura in, 564
- Antirachitic factor**, 910, 919
- Antitoxins**, 1016
- Anuria**, 970
- Anxiety**  
 diarrhea in, 92  
 palpitation in, 96  
 sinus tachycardia in, 438  
 vomiting in, 91, 636
- Anxiety neurosis**, 886
- Aorta**  
 abdominal  
   aneurysm of, 590, 596  
   lumbosacral pain in, 81  
   vomiting in, 91  
   topographic anatomy, 580  
 anatomy, 395  
 congenital anomalies, 526  
 disease of, pain in, 73
- Aortalgia**, precordial pain in, 467
- Aortic and pulmonic valves**, landmark for sixth thoracic vertebra, 213
- Aortic aneurysm**, 530  
 abdominal aorta, 533  
   epigastric pulsation in, 396  
   gnawing pain in, 68  
 agonizing pain in, 67  
 alternate blanching and flushing of mucous membranes in, 152  
 aphonia in, 94

- Aortic aneurysm** (*continued*)  
 ascending part of arch, 530  
 cyanosis in, 128  
 descending portion of arch, 532  
 differential diagnosis, 533  
 distention of jugular veins in, 541  
 dyspnea in, 257  
 epigastric tenderness in, 589  
 increased cardiac dullness in, 421  
 local bulging of chest wall in, 248  
 local sweating in, 50  
 paroxysmal pain in, 467  
 precordial pulsation in, 396  
 pulsations in episternal notch in, 204  
 restricted bilateral chest expansion in, 250  
 rigidity of upper abdomen in, 588  
 thoracic aorta, 532  
 transverse portion of arch, 531  
 unilateral mydriasis in, 176  
 unilateral thoracic enlargement in, 245
- Aortic arch, beginning of, landmark of fourth thoracic vertebra, 213**
- Aortic area, auscultation of, 424**
- Aortic coarctation, 508**
- Aortic disease, 41, 526**  
 paroxysmal pain in, 467
- Aortic hypoplasia, in patent foramen ovale, 505**
- Aortic insufficiency, hypertension in, 412**
- Aortic isthmus, stenosis of 508**
- Aortic regurgitation, 451, 455, 458, 486 to 489**  
 alternate blanching and flushing of mucous membranes in, 152  
 anemia in, 488  
 angina pectoris in, 488  
 aortalgia in, 488  
 area of transmission of murmur, 453  
 arterial pulsation in, 488  
 arterial pulsations in neck in, 204  
 Austin Flint murmur in 489  
 capillary pulse in, 488  
 carotid pulsation in 488  
 Corrigan water hammer pulse in, 488  
 degree of cardiac hypertrophy in, 454  
 diastolic murmur in, 489  
 displacement downward and to left of apex beat in, 488  
 dyspnea in 488  
 Duroziez's sign in, 489  
 epigastric pulsation in, 488  
 influence of decompensation on murmur, 458  
 insomnia in, 488  
 precordial pain and oppression in, 488  
 pulsations in iliac region in, 585  
 pulsation of retinal vessels in 180  
 relative insufficiency, 489  
 rhythmical head nodding in 162  
 time of occurrence of murmur and its mechanism 451  
 venous pulse in 488
- Aortic second sound, 427**  
 accentuation of, 433  
 weakening of, 433
- Aortic stenosis, 490**  
 apical impulse in, 490  
 area of transmission of murmur, 453  
 congenital, 508  
 degree of cardiac hypertrophy in, 454  
 digestive disturbances in, 490  
 displacement of apex in, 490  
 dyspnea on exertion in, 490  
 headache in, 490  
 hypotension in, 413  
 palpitation in, 490  
 precordial pain in, 490  
 syncope in, 101  
 systolic murmur in, 491  
 time of occurrence of murmur and its mechanism, 451  
 ventricular hypertrophy in, 490  
 vertigo in, 490  
 weakened second aortic sound in, 491
- Aortic valve**  
 clinical position, 391  
 functional murmurs, 461
- Aortitis, 526**  
 epigastric pain in, 641  
 epigastric tenderness in, 589  
 pain due to arteritis in, 86  
 pulsations in neck and suprasternal notch in, 526
- Apex beat, 397**  
 extent of impulse, 400  
 pathologic displacement of, 399  
 position of, 398
- Aphasia, 93, 842**
- Aphonia, 93**
- Apical impulse, strength of, 401**
- Apices of lungs**  
 landmarks for first thoracic vertebra, 213  
 palpation of, 262
- Aplastic anemia, see Anemia aplastic, 558**
- Apoplexia, ingravescent, 102**
- Apoplexy, 41**
- Appendicitis, 661**  
 acute, 40  
 decreased lymphocytes in, 1003  
 general abdominal pain in 74  
 increased fibrinogen of plasma in 1011  
 pain in the penis in, 86  
 chest pain in, 74  
 chronic  
 gastritis in, 645  
 lumbosacral pain in, 81  
 cramps in, 68  
 extrauterine pregnancy, and salpingitis, differential diagnosis, 662  
 hematemesis in, 638  
 hip joint pain in, 84  
 increased sedimentation rate in 998  
 muscular rigidity in, 587

- Appendicitis (*continued*)  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
   pain in iliac and inguinal regions in 77  
   pancreatic disease, and renal colic, differential diagnosis, 653  
   suppurative, perirenal abscess, and osteomyelitis, differential diagnosis, 663  
   tenderness over right lower quadrant in 589  
   vomiting in 636  
 Appendix, vermiform, topographic anatomy, 579  
 Appetite  
   change in, 89  
   disturbance of, in gastric disease, 633  
 Apraxia, 847  
 Arachnoiditis, spastic gait in 120  
 Arborization heart block, 517  
 Arcus senilis, 175  
 Areola, 132  
 Argyll Robertson pupil, 177, 856  
   in tabes dorsalis, 862  
 Argynia, 130  
   pigmented spots in mouth in, 153  
 Arms, 738  
 Arneth index, 1003  
 Arrhenoblastoma, 706, 805  
 Arrhythmia, 401, 437, 518  
 Arsenic poisoning  
   abdominal tenderness in, 589  
   acute nephritis in, 687  
   amblyopia in, 61  
   decreased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011  
   decreased neutrophils in, 1002  
   dermatitis medicamentosa in 135  
   garlicky odor of breath in 198  
   general abdominal pain in 74  
   hematemesis in, 638  
   hemoglobinuria in 985  
   hemolytic anemia in, 560  
   nausea in, 90  
   neuritis in, 85  
   pallor in, 127  
   puffiness of eyelids in, 171  
   purpura in 564  
   serous stools in, 1032  
   toxic gastritis in, 645  
   toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
   wrist drop in, 742  
 Arsenurated hydrogen poisoning hemolytic anemia in 560  
 Arseno-melanosia 130  
 Arspenamine poisoning toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
 Arterial  
   disease pain due to, 86  
   pulsation in aortic regurgitation 488  
   venous shunt 501  
 Arteries, 523  
   abdominal enlarged superficial, 584  
   diseases of 525  
   in the aged, 935  
   physical examination, 523  
   Arterio-capillary fibrosis, 525  
   Arteriograms 1051  
   Arteriosclerosis 41, 525  
     aortic stenosis in 490  
     arcus senilis in 175  
     arterial pulsations in neck in, 204  
     as cause of chronic myocarditis, 475  
     bradycardia in, 408 515  
     coldness of extremities in 745  
     color blindness in, 64  
     foot pain in, 84  
     heart block in 515  
     hemorrhagic retinitis in, 179  
     hypertension in, 412  
     insomnia in, 97  
     mitral regurgitation in, 481  
     neuritis 85  
     paresthesia in, 60  
     partial deafness in, 64  
     reflex headache in, 70  
     retinal hemorrhages in 179  
     syncope in 101  
     tinnitus aurium in, 65  
     vertigo in 97  
   Arteriosclerosis obliterans  
     as cause of local anidrosis, 59  
     differential diagnosis, 536  
   Arteriosclerotic  
     heart disease 493  
     psychoses 889  
   Arteriovenous aneurysm, 533  
   Arteritis 86  
     acute, 539  
   Arthropods 1084  
   Arthralgia, 83  
     pain on motion or breathing in 73  
   Arthritic purpura, 563  
   Arthritis, 83, 736  
     acute, acute pain in, 67  
     atrophic 736  
     chronic, intention tremors in, 99  
     deformans 736  
       abnormal fixity of head in, 162  
       hyperpnea in 254  
       sallowiness of face in 167  
     gonorrheal 736  
     increase of blood uric acid in, 1010  
     infections 736  
     knee pain in 84  
     limping gait in, 121  
     lumbosacral pain in 80  
     pain on motion or breathing in, 73  
     syphilitic 737  
     syphilitic, knee pain in, 84  
     tuberculous 737  
   Articular rheumatism  
     acute, 736  
     foot pain in 84  
   Asbestosis, 360  
   Ascaris  
     alata, 1079

Ascaris (*continued*)  
  lumbricoides 1077 1078  
  mystax 1079  
  vermicularis 1079  
Ascending paralysis acute see Landry's paralysis 865  
Aschheim Zondek test for pregnancy 1055  
Ascites  
  abdominal enlargement in 586  
  atrophic cirrhosis in 606  
  Banti's disease in 561 623  
  decreased abdominal respiratory movements in, 585  
  displacement upward of liver in 601  
  fluctuation in 590  
  hyperpnea in 255  
  superior costal breathing in 249  
  upward displacement of apex beat in 399  
  varicose veins in 541  
Ascorbic acid 907 917 918  
Asiatic cholera  
  cramps in 68 99  
  diarrhea in 92  
  general abdominal pain in 74  
Asphyxia  
  actual increase of hemoglobin in 996  
  bradycardia in 515  
  by gas coma in 102 103  
  coma in, 104  
  cyanosis of face in 169  
  cyanosis of mucosa membranes in 152  
  sighing in 259  
Asthemia, 96  
  general tremor of tongue in, 196  
  hypotension in, 413  
  neurocirculatory 796  
  tremors in 98  
Asthenopia 61  
  diplopia in, 62  
Asthma 41 924  
  actual increase of hemoglobin in 976  
  agonizing pain in 67  
  bronchial 354 924  
    cyanosis in 128  
    expiratory dyspnea in 257  
    increased eosinophils in 1002  
    moist cough in 95  
  cyanosis of face in, 169  
  dreams and nightmares in 97  
  expiratory bulging of intercostal spaces in 253  
  increased abdominal respiratory movements in, 585  
  increased length of expiration in, 259  
  increased respiratory frequency in 326  
  inspiratory retraction of infrasternal notch in, 252  
  orthopnea in 257  
  passive hyperemia of retina in 179  
  pulmonary hypertension in, 494  
  sibilant rales in, 342  
  sputum in 1036

Asthma (*continued*)  
  tests in, 929  
  thoracic spinal pain in 80  
  thymic 788  
Asthmatic breathing 330  
Astigmatism 61 182  
  monocular diplopia in 62  
  photophobia in 64  
Asynergia 850  
Ataxia  
  automatic 796  
  hereditary cerebellar amblyopia in 61  
Ataxic  
  gait 120  
  paraplegia 862  
Atelectasis 361  
  absence of fremitus in, 277  
  absence of unilateral expansion of chest wall, 251  
  absent breath sounds in 326  
  dullness in 299  
  extravascular rales in 342  
  hyperpnea in 255  
  unilateral thoracic retraction in, 246  
Atheroma, 525  
  of abdominal aorta, general abdominal pain in 74  
Atherosclerosis 525  
Athetosis 846  
Athlete's foot 750  
Athroidism, 775  
Atrioventricular node 425  
Atriplicism 87  
Atrium of heart, anatomy 389  
Atrophic cirrhosis  
  distention of superficial abdominal veins in, 541  
  hematemesis in 638  
  of liver 606 615  
Atrophic gastritis 647  
Atrophy of heart, 478  
Atropine  
  action on parasympathetic system 828  
  poisoning also see Belladonna poisoning  
    hyperpnea in 256  
    psychosis in 888  
    redness of skin in 128  
Atypical pneumonia 364  
Auchmeromyia tuteola 1087  
Auditory nerves 816  
Auditory nerve disease, deafness in, 185  
Auricles of heart anatomy 389  
Auricular  
  extrasystole 440 550  
  flutter or fibrillation 439 440 514  
    mechanism of 521  
    palpitation in 96  
    prognosis 521  
    shortening of circulation time in, 447  
    venous pulsations in neck in 204

- Auriculoventricular
  - block, 439, 440, 516
  - nodal
    - extrasystole, 440
    - rhythm, 439
  - node, 425
  - septum, 393
- Auscultation, 107
  - of abdomen and viscera, 599
  - of chest, regional, 323
  - of heart, 422
  - of respiratory system, 312
  - technic, 316
- Auscultatory percussion, 293
  - of abdomen, 598
- Austin-Flint murmur, 463, 486
- Australian disease (encephalitis), 876
- Australian pygmies, 769
- Autoinfection with tenia soleum, 1075
- Autonomic ataxia, 796
- Autonomic leprosy of Penfield, 867
- Autonomic nervous system, 809, 825
- Avitaminosis, 72, 897
- A-V node, 425
- Axillary lines of thorax, 215
- Axillary regions, 219
  - auscultation of, 324
  - of chest, 219
- Axon, 810
- Ayerza's disease, 360
  - flushing of face in, 168
  - increased erythrocytes in 996
  - pulmonary hypertension in, 494
- Babinski's
  - ear reflex, 841
  - reflex, 834
    - in ataxic paraplegia, 863
    - in familial spastic spinal paralysis, 865
    - in Friedreich's ataxia, 862
- Bacelli's sign, 336
- Bachman test for trichinosis, 1061
- Bacillary
  - dysentery
    - diarrhea in, 92
    - differential diagnosis, 51
    - general abdominal pain in 74
    - stricture of rectum in, 675
    - test for, 1058
  - infections differential diagnosis 51
- Back
  - examination of, 123
  - injury, 958
- Backache, 79
- Bacterial identification 1054
- Bacteriolytic system, 1020
- Bad taste, 197
- Balanoposthitis, 709
- Baldness, 163
- Bamberger and Ewerts sign, 465
- Banti's
  - disease, 561, 623
    - chronic splenic enlargement in, 623
    - increase of blood platelets in, 1005
    - vomiting in, 91
  - sign of retrosternal dullness, 308
  - syndrome, 612
    - leukopenia in, 1001
    - rectal bleeding in, 672
- Barany tests, differential table of signs obtained by, 860
- Barber's itch, see Tinea sycosis
- Barbiturate poisoning
  - coma in, 103
  - hypopnea in, 93, 258
- Barlow's disease, see Scurvy, 565
- Barrel-shaped chest, 238
- Bartholin's disease, vulvar pain in, 87
- Bartholinitis, 695
- Bartonella bacilliformis infection, 560
- Basal
  - meningitis, hypopnea in, 93
  - metabolic rate, pulse rate, and respiratory rate, relation of, to temperature, 48
  - metabolism 1044
    - pneumonia, left upper quadrant rigidity in, 588
- Basedow's disease, 777
- Basilar artery occlusion, 872
- Basophilic
  - degeneration of erythrocytes, 551
  - leukemia, 568
- Basophilism
  - obesity in, 89
  - pituitary, hypertension in, 412
- Basophils, 1002
- Bazin's disease, 154
- Bedbugs, 1092
  - bites, petechial lesions in, 135
  - species of, 1092
  - transmitters of disease, 1069, 1092
- Bedsore, 150
- Beef tapeworm, 1074
- Beefy tongue, 195
- Belching, 635
- Belladonna poisoning
  - amblyopia in, 61
  - blindness in, 61
  - dermatitis medicamentosa in, 135
  - photophobia in, 64
  - vertigo in, 97
- Bell's palsy, 171
- Bence Jones' albumose in urine, 981
- Bends cramps in, 99
- Benedict's
  - syndrome, 173, 866
  - test for sugar in urine, 982
- Benign tumors of bowel, 668
- Bent hip, 743
- Benzol poisoning
  - decreased neutrophils in, 1002
  - purpura in 564

- Beriberi 902  
   neuritis in, 85  
   wrist drop in, 742  
 Betz cells, 822  
 Bezold's abscess, cervical pain in, 80  
 Biceps reflex, 837, 838  
 Bicuspid valve of heart, 390  
   clinical position, 391  
 Biermer's sign, 307  
 Bile  
   in urine 986  
   test, 1042  
 Biliary  
   colic  
     cramps in, 68  
     differential diagnosis, 619  
     vomiting in, 636  
   hypertrophic cirrhosis (Hanot's), 605  
 Bilharziasis, 1072  
 Binaural stethoscope, 314  
 Binocular vision, 62  
 Biotin 914  
 Biot's breathing, 259, 327  
 Bird's formula in estimating total solids in  
   urine, 973  
 Birth palsies, 40  
 Bismuth poisoning, neuritis in, 85  
 Bispinal line, 574  
 Bithyma fuchsi (snail), 1072  
 Black  
   fever, see Kala Azar, 1069  
   tongue, 195 905  
   vomitus, 637  
 Bladder, 692  
   calculus, 693  
   disease  
     pain in iliac fossa in, 79  
     pain in penis in, 86  
     sacroiliac pain in, 81  
     with urinary retention, pain in hypogastric  
       region in, 79  
   distention, fluctuation in, 590  
   diverticulum, 694  
   nerve mechanism of, 839  
   topographic anatomy, 580  
   tumors, 693  
 Blatidium  
   coli, 1068  
   minutum, 1068  
 Blastomycosis, 1094  
 Blebs 131, 140  
 Bleeder's disease, see Hemophilia, 564  
 Bleeding from rectum, 672  
 Bleeding time, 988  
   prolonged in, 558, 559, 564, 1070  
 Blepharitis, 172  
 Blepharochalasis 173  
 Blepharospasm, 170, 172  
 Blindness, 61  
 Biters, 131, 138  
 Blood  
   cell casts in urine, 988  
   chemistry, 1007  
   coagulation, role played by prothrombin, 914  
   counts, 994  
     definition of terms employed in hematology,  
       993  
     differential count, 995  
     grouping and typing, 1005  
       blood grouping (Moss classification),  
       1006  
       blood matching, technic, 1006  
   hemoglobin findings, 994  
   blood volume index, 994  
   saturation index, 994  
   normal blood findings, 992  
   flukes, 1072  
   life cycle of, 1073  
   serology, 1018  
     complement fixation test for  
       gonorrhea, 1022  
       tuberculosis, 1022  
   flocculation test or precipitation reaction  
     for syphilis, 1020  
   immune bodies of first order, 1016  
   immune bodies of second order, 1016  
     agglutinins, 1019  
     opsonins, 1019  
     precipitins, 1019  
   immune bodies of third order, 1020  
   Wassermann reaction, 1021  
   significance of abnormal blood counts, 995  
   Arneth index, 1003  
   hemoglobin, 1003  
   leukocytes 1000  
     diagnostic value of count, 1000  
     differential count, 1001  
     eosinophils 1002  
     leukocytosis, 1000  
     leukopenia, 1001  
     myelocytes, myeloblasts, and basophils,  
       1002  
     neutrophils, 1001  
   lymphocytes, 1002  
   monocytes, 1003  
   Schilling index, 1003  
     interpretation of Schilling nuclear  
       index, 1004  
   sedimentation of red cells and blood sedi-  
     mentation test, 997  
     distance method of Faliraeus, 997  
     graphic method of Cutler, 998  
   sedimentation index, 998  
   thrombocytes (blood platelets) 1005  
     time method of Linzenmeier, 997  
   disease, hyperpnea in, 254  
   dyscrasias, 552  
   examination, 992  
     chemistry, 1007  
     pathologic changes in blood chemistry,  
       1008

- Blood
  - examination
  - chemistry
    - pathologic changes (*continued*)
      - acidosis and ketosis, 1013
      - ketone bodies (acetone bodies), 1013
      - test for diagnosis of acidosis, 1014
    - alkalosis, 1017
    - blood urea nitrogen, 1010
    - chlorides, 1011
    - creatinin, 1010
    - fibrinogen, 1011
    - glucose, 1012
      - sugar tolerance test, 1012
    - hyperproteinemia, 1011
    - hypoproteinemia, 1011
    - nonprotein nitrogen, 1008
    - plasma proteins, 1010
    - potassium, 1012
    - sulfonamide concentration in blood, 1017
    - uric acid, 1010
  - physical examination of blood, 1008
  - time for collecting blood 1007
  - forming organs, diseases of, 551
  - grouping and typing, 1005
  - in urine, 984
  - in vitamin A deficiency, 899
  - matching, technic, 1006
  - pressure, 411
    - technic for taking, 414
  - sedimentation test, 997
  - urea clearance test, 1039
- Blow fly, 1086
- Blue bottle fly, 1086
- Blue vision, 64
- Boat shaped
  - abdomen 586
  - chest, 241
- Body fluids, 1023
- Boeck's sarcoid, 154
  - increase of serum globulin in, 1011
- Bone sense, 830
- Bones
  - and joints
    - examination and diseases of 721
    - in the aged, 934, 937
  - disease of
    - grinding pain in, 68
    - increased urinary phosphates in, 975
    - increase of serum phosphatase in, 1042
  - examination of, 119
  - of lower extremities, 743
  - tuberculosis of, 724
    - nocturnal ostalgia in, 81
  - tumors of, ostalgia in, 82
- Borborygmus 599
- Borquin-Sherman unit of vitamin G, 904
- Boston's modification of Roberts' solution test for albuminuria, 980
- Botulism
  - differentiation from encephalitis, 875
  - dilatation of pupil in, 176
- Bowel
  - atony, constipation in, 671
  - obstruction
    - colicky pain in, 77
    - indicanuria in, 975
  - tumors, 668
- Bowlegs, 744
- Bowles' stethoscope, 315
- Brachial
  - neuritis, shoulder pain in, 83
  - plexus
    - lesions, 853
    - total radicular paralysis of, 852
- Bradycardia, 408, 439
  - sinus, 515
- Bradypnea, 93, 257
- Brain, 811
  - abscess, 879
    - increase of spinal fluid proteins in, 1024
  - diseases dyspnea in, 93
  - lesions 866
  - tumors
    - amblyopia in, 61
    - anosmia in 65
    - choked disks in, 180
    - headache in, 69
    - hyperpnea in, 256
    - organic scotomata in, 63
    - partial deafness in 64
    - scaphoid abdomen in, 586
    - weight of 812
- Brassy cough, 384c
- Brazilian leishmaniasis 107
- Breast cancer
  - neuralgia of, 383
  - shoulder pain in, 83
- Breasts, 211
  - diseases of, 382
  - supernumerary, 383
- Breath
  - holding test 445
  - odor of, 198
  - sounds, 317
- Breezy vesicular murmur, 321
- Brenner tumors of ovary, 704
- Bright's disease, 41, 686
  - acute vomiting in 91
  - petechial rash in, 134
- Brissaud's
  - reflex, 834
  - type of infantilism, 768
- Broadbent's sign, 397, 472
- Broad tapeworm, 1074
- Bromic hormone of pituitary, 761
- Bromide poisoning
  - amblyopia in, 61
  - blindness in, 61
  - dermatitis medicamentosa in, 135



- Cheyne Stokes  
breathing 259 327  
respiration hippus in 178
- Chicago disease 1094
- Chickenpox (see *Varicella*) differential diagnosis 54
- Childhood  
and infancy diseases of 40  
diseases differential diagnosis 54
- Chilomastix  
devanei 1071  
mesnili 1071
- Chills 59  
pallor in 127
- Chloasma 132 137  
uterinum, 168
- Chloral poisoning  
decreased knee jerk in 836  
dermatitis medicamentosa in 135  
hemoglobinuria in 985  
hypopnea in 93 258  
toxic hepatic jaundice in 604  
tremors in, 98
- Chlorides  
in blood, 1011  
in urine 974
- Chloroform  
narcosis hypopnea in 93  
poisoning  
cyanosis of face in 169  
decreased fibrinogen of plasma in 1011  
hypopnea in, 258  
toxic hepatic jaundice in 604
- Chloroma 567  
ostalgia in 82
- Chlorosis (green sickness) 40 556  
alkaline urine in 972  
decreased color index in, 995  
decreased urinary creatinine in, 976  
decrease of uric acid in urine in, 974  
florida or rubra redness of skin in 128  
glossitis in, 72  
macrocytes in 996  
normoblasts in 996  
pallor in, 127  
tropical 1083
- Choked disks, 180
- Cholangitis 618  
acute  
suppurative 614  
icteric in right upper quadrant in 589
- Cholecystitis 617  
chest pain in, 73  
differential diagnosis, 619  
epigastric pain in, 75  
heartburn in, 90  
hematemesis in 638  
increased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011  
left abdominal pain in, 77
- Cholecystitis (*continued*)  
lumbosacral pain in 81  
muscular rigidity in 588  
nausea in 90  
obstructive jaundice in 602  
right hypochondrial pain in 76  
shoulder pain in 83  
vomiting in 91  
yellow discoloration of sclera in 175
- Cholelithiasis 618  
chest pain in 73  
epigastric pain in 75  
left abdominal pain in 77  
lumbosacral pain in 81  
muscular rigidity in 588  
neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001  
obstructive jaundice in 602  
right hypochondrial pain in 76  
vomiting in 91
- Cholemia  
congenital family  
chronic splenic enlargement in 623  
enlargement of spleen in 627 628  
familial 603  
hematemesis in 637  
itching in 87
- Cholera  
abdominal tenderness in 589  
Asiatic  
cramps in 68  
diarrhea in 92  
general abdominal pain in 74  
dark urine in 971  
hyperproteinemia in 1011  
infantum 660  
morbis  
cramps in 68  
diarrhea in 92  
neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001  
retraction of abdomen in 586  
rice water vomitus in 637  
rigidity of entire abdomen in 588  
serous stools in 1032  
vomiting in 636
- Cholesterol crystals in urine 991
- Cholesterol 911  
coefficient of blood 1043
- Chondroma 733  
of ovary 704
- Chorea 40 880  
Huntington's 881  
Sydenham's 880  
eosinophilia in, 1002  
jerking movements of head in 162  
intra regurgitation in, 481  
intra stenosis in, 484
- Choreic  
movements 846  
spasm, 170
- Chorionectasis 8/8

- Chorionepithelioma  
   of uterus, 702  
   of vagina, 699  
 Choroid  
   disease, organic scotomata in, 63  
   tubercles, 180  
 Chromaffin cell tumors, 796  
 Chromatopsia, 63  
 Chronidrosis, 152  
 Chrysomyia macellaria, 1091  
 Chrysops dicalis, 1085  
 Chvostek's sign, 791  
 Chylothorax, 244, 377  
 Ciliated protozoa, 1068  
 Ciliospinal reflex, 177  
 Cimex hemipterus rotundatus, 1069  
 Cinchophen poisoning  
   hemolytic anemia in, 560  
   toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
 Circulation time (rate), 446  
   interpretation of tests, 447  
 Circumference of chest, 234  
 Circumflex nerve lesions, 853  
 Cirrhosis  
   of liver  
     as cause of anidrosis 59  
     diazo reaction in, 987  
     enlargement of both liver and spleen in, 627  
     enlargement of liver in, 605  
     hematoporphyrinuria in, 987  
     nausea in, 90  
     oliguria in, 970  
     rectal bleeding in, 672  
   of lungs, 366  
 Citrin, 920  
 Clarke's column 820  
 Claudication, intermittent  
   muscle cramps in 68  
   pain due to arteritis in 86  
 Clavi (corns and callosities), 749  
 Clavicles, 210  
 Clavicular  
   line of thorax, 214  
   regions of chest, 216  
   percussion of, 295  
 Claw hand, 739  
 Clearness, abnormal, in percussion, 302  
 Cleft palate, nasal regurgitation of, fluid in 186  
 Clonic unilateral spasm 170  
 Clonorchis sinensis, 1071  
 Closed tympany, 306  
 Clubbed fingers, 740  
 Clubfoot, 747  
 Coagulation time 988  
   prolonged in 564, 565 603, 922, 1070  
 Coal miners' asthma, 360  
 Coarctation of aorta, 508  
   cardiac hypertrophy in, 510  
   dilated and pulsating intercostal vessels in, 510  
   systolic murmur in, 510  
 Cobbler's chest, 242, 727  
 Cocaine poisoning  
   psoriasis in 888  
   tremors in, 98  
 Coccal infections, differential diagnosis, 53  
 Coccidioides granuloma 1095  
 Coccidioides immitis, 1095  
 Cochlear nerve lesions, 859  
 Coco see Yaws  
 Cod liver oil 909  
 Coenurus cerebralis, 1077  
 Cogwheel inspiration, 327  
 Coiled posture, 118  
 Coin percussion test, 353  
 Coin test, 307  
 Coitus, sneezing after, 95  
 Collapse dryness of conjunctivae in, 175  
 Collarbones, 210  
 Cold  
   exposure to  
     neuralgia in, 85  
     neuritis in, 85  
   sores, 188  
 Coldness  
   of extremities, 745  
   of feet, 750  
 Colic  
   diminished abdominal respiratory movements  
     in 250  
   intestinal, renal gallstone, and uterine, dif-  
     ferential diagnosis 686  
   vomiting in, 636  
 Colicky pains, 68  
 Colitis, 663  
   abdominal tenderness in, 589  
   cramps in 68  
   general abdominal pain in, 74  
   gravis, 667  
   mucous see Mucous colitis  
   nausea in, 90  
   spastic, see Spastic colitis  
   ulcerative, see Ulcerative colitis  
 Collar of Stokes, 384c  
 Colloid goiter, 775  
 Colloidal gold reaction 1025  
 Collum valgum 744  
 Coloboma of iris and choroid, day blindness in,  
   61  
 Colon  
   allergic manifestations 926  
   carcinoma of, tenderness over right lower  
     quadrant in 589  
   descending carcinoma of, colicky pain in 77  
   redundant 657  
 Colonic  
   carcinoma lumbosacral pain in 81  
   dilatation, 667  
 Color  
   blindness 64  
   index of blood 995  
   of skin, 127  
 Colored vision 63

- Colosis, 665  
 diagnosis, 666  
 physical examination, 666  
 symptoms, 666
- Coma (unconsciousness), 101  
 absence of corneal reflex in, 840  
 Cheyne Stokes breathing in, 259  
 decreased respiratory frequency in 327  
 diabetic, 101  
 dilatation of pupil in, 176  
 incompetence of anal sphincter in, 675  
 in hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia, differential diagnosis, 799  
 in uremia, cerebral hemorrhage and alcoholic narcosis, differential diagnosis, 690  
 loss of sphincter control in, 839  
 uremic, 689
- Combined murmurs, 455
- Compensation, cardiac, 457
- Compensatory emphysema, 358
- Complementary  
 air 230  
 spaces, 297
- Complement fixation tests, 1020
- Complexes 887
- Conditioned reflex, 842
- Condyloma lata  
 of lips, 188  
 of penis, 708  
 of vulva 696
- Congenital  
 anemia of newborn, 562  
 deformities of  
 lower extremities, 751  
 spine, 751  
 heart  
 disease, 500  
 murmurs, 458  
 hydrops fetalis, 562
- Congestion of liver, 606
- Congestive  
 heart failure, vomiting in, 91  
 kidney, 690
- Congo floor maggot fly, 1087
- Congo red test for amyloidosis 1064
- Conjunctiva, examination of, 174
- Conjunctival reflex, 835
- Conjunctivitis  
 acute amblyopia in, 61  
 allergic 922  
 eye pain in, 71  
 follicular, 174  
 membranous, 174  
 photophobia in, 64
- Consciousness, 806
- Consensual (indirect) reaction of pupils, 178
- Constipation, 92, 671  
 chronic  
 general abdominal pain in, 74  
 pain in hypogastric region in, 79  
 diarrhea and hemorrhoids in 97
- Constipation (*continued*)  
 increased urinary oxalates in, 976  
 pruritus ani in, 671  
 vertigo in, 97
- Contact dermatitis, 928
- Continuous temperature, 48
- Contracted kidney, 689
- Contractures, 845
- Contrainsulin hormone of pituitary, 761
- Contralateral reflex, 841
- Conus medullaris, lesions of, 854
- Convalescence  
 bradycardia in, 515  
 weakness in, 96
- Convulsions, 40, 99  
 cyanosis in, 128  
 dryness of conjunctivae in, 175  
 general inability to protrude tongue in, 196  
 incompetence of anal sphincter in 675  
 neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
 passive hyperemia of retina in, 179
- Convulsive tic, 170
- Cooley's anemia, 561
- Coordination  
 examination of, 831  
 synkinesias of, 846
- Copaiba poisoning, purpura in, 564
- Copper poisoning, greenish line on gums in, 190
- Coprolalia, 170
- Cordilobia anthropophaga, 1087
- Cornea, examination of, 175
- Corneal  
 opacities, organic scotomata in, 63  
 reflex, 835, 840  
 ulcer  
 eye pain in, 71  
 photophobia in, 64  
 wounds, green vision in, 63
- Corns, 749
- Coronary  
 arteries, 393  
 disease, pain due to arteritis in, 86  
 infarction, pain in, 467  
 occlusion, 497  
 differential table, 499  
 electrocardiographic changes following 498  
 fall of blood pressure in, 497  
 pain in, 73  
 pericarditis in, 468  
 sudden, severe, precordial pain in, 497
- sclerosis  
 abdominal pain in, 74  
 epigastric tenderness in, 589  
 precordial pain in, 467
- thrombosis  
 agonizing pain in, 67  
 hypotension in, 413  
 leukocytosis in, 1000  
 neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001

- Coronary
  - thrombosis (*continued*)
    - pain in, 86
    - syncope in, 101
    - vomiting in, 91
- Corpus
  - callosum, lesions of, 868
  - luteum, 757
  - striatum, lesions in, 869
- Corrigan's water-hammer pulse, 409
- Cortex, lesions of, 868
- Cortical
  - auditory aphasia, 93
  - hyperfunction, 793
  - hypofunction, 793
  - motor aphasia, 93
  - visual aphasia, 93
- Corticospinal tract, lesions of, 868
- Cortin, 757, 792
- Coryza
  - acute
    - edema of lower eyelids in, 88
    - gustatory agnosia in, 196
    - herpes of lips in, 188
    - nasal obstruction in, 186
    - sneezing in, 94
  - excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in, 153
  - eye pain in, 71
- Costal
  - breathing in women, 233
  - lines of thorax, 214
  - pleura, 224
- Costoabdominal breathing, 233
- Cough, 95, 347
  - due to cardiac disease, 467
- Coxa valga and coxa vara, 743
- Cracked pot sound, 310
- Craigia hominis, 1071
- Craig's complement fixation test for amebiasis, 1058
- Cramps, 68
- Cramps (spasms) of muscle, 99
- Cranial
  - nerve lesions, 855
  - nerves, 815
  - paralysis, diplopia in, 62
- Creatine in urine, 976
- Creatinine in urine, 976
- Creatinine of blood, 1010
- Creeping eruption, 1084
- Cremasteric reflex, 834
- Crepitant râles, 342
- Crepit redux, 340
- Cretinism, 40, 782
  - as cause of androsis, 59
  - coarse, broad nose in, 186
  - curvature of leg bones in, 743
  - deafness in, 64
  - delayed dentition in, 191
  - facies in, 164
- Cretinism (*continued*)
  - low metabolic rate in, 1045
  - sporadic
    - macrocephalus in, 158
    - skull in, 159
- Cricoclavicular line of thorax, 214
- Cricoid cartilage, landmark for sixth cervical vertebra, 212
- Crisis, 48
- Croft's reflex, 842
- Crohn's disease, 661
- Crossed diplopia, 62
- Croup
  - cyanosis of face in, 169
  - membranous, dyspnea in, 257
  - spasmodic
    - cyanosis in, 128
    - orthopnea in, 257
  - stridulous breathing in, 259
- Croupous enteritis, 660
- Croupy cough, 95
- Crunching retrosternal, 348
- Crural neuritis anterior thigh pain in, 84
- Crustaceans 1075
- Crusts, 131, 145
- Cryptococcosis 1095
- Cryptorchism, 713, 801
  - severe pain in lower abdomen in, 78
- Crysops discalis, 1085, 1086
- Crystalline
  - deposits in urine, 990
  - lens
    - degeneration of, night blindness in, 61
    - partial dislocation of, monocular diplopia in, 62
- Cubebs poisoning, dermatitis medicamentosa in, 135
- Curschmann's spirals 1035
- Cushing's syndrome, 765
  - discoloration of abdomen in, 583
  - weakness in, 96
- Culicini mosquitoes, 1086
- Cutaneous
  - lesions 127 153
  - leishmaniasis, 1070
  - moniliasis, 1096
- Cutler's graphic method of blood sedimentation test, 998
- Cyanosis, 128 466
  - of face, 168
- Cyclic albuminuria, 977
- Cyclops leukarti, 1075
- Cylindroids in urine, 998
- Cyrtometer, 236
- Cystic goiter, 200
- Cystic hyperplasia of breast, 384
- Cystine in urine, 976, 991
- Cystitis, 692
  - acute, pain in penis in, 86
  - ammoniacal odor of urine in 971
  - pyuria in 985

- Cystitis (continued)*  
tenderness above symphysis pubis in 589  
vomiting in 636
- Cysticercus*  
bovis 1074  
cellulosae 1074 1076
- Cysts*  
of abdomen 591  
of bone 735 1077  
of brain 1077  
of breast 384  
of cervix 700  
of kidney 682  
of liver 610 1077  
of lung 1077  
of muscle 1077 1082  
of ovaries 705 804  
of spleen 625  
of testes 714  
of uterine cavity 701  
of vagina 698
- Dacryocystitis chronic* 172
- Dactylitis*  
foot pain in 84  
tuberculous pain in wrist and hand in 83
- Dalrymple's sign* 779
- Dandruff* see *Seborrhea sicca*
- Day blindness* 61
- Deaf mutism* 94
- Deafness* 185  
partial 64
- Death*  
rates table 932 933  
rattle, 339
- Debilitated states*  
as cause of sweating 50  
constipation in 92
- Debility*  
alkaline urine in, 972  
alleged general 961  
edema of uvula in, 197  
increased urinary oxalates in 976  
tachycardia in 408
- Deciduous teeth eruption of* 191
- Decline of fever* 48
- Decompensation cardiac* 457 474
- Decubitus ulcers* 150
- Deer fly* 1086
- Defense reflexes* 838
- Deficiency diseases neuritis in* 85 903
- Degeneration reaction of* 848  
and regeneration of nerves 810  
Wallerian 810
- Deglutitory passage foreign bodies in* 40
- Dehydration*  
decreased sedimentation rate in 998  
hyperproteinemia in, 1011  
increase of blood urea nitrogen in 1010  
increased erythrocytes in 996
- Dehydration (continued)*  
lowering of spinal fluid pressure in 1025  
rapid emaciation in 89
- Delhi sore* see *Oriental sore* 149 10/0
- Delirium tremens* 888  
insomnia in 97
- Delusions* 887
- Demarquay's oozard* 1081
- Dementia*  
forms of 891  
loss of sphincter control in 839  
paralytica loss of sphincter control in 839  
precox 40 888  
splitting of personality in, 886  
presenile, 41  
senile, 41
- De Mussy's point*, 589
- Dendrites* 809
- Dengue*  
aching generalized pains in 68  
as cause of sweating 50  
cervical pain in 80  
differential diagnosis 53  
hematemesis in 637  
increased monocytes in 1003  
leukopenia in 1001  
ostalgia in 82
- Dental caries* 192  
throbbing pain in 68
- Dentigerous cysts* 735
- Depressions in chest, palpation of* 265
- Depressive psychosis as cause of anidrosis* 59
- Dercum's disease* see *Adiposa dolorosa* 767 770
- Dermaphytosis of feet*, 750
- Dermatitis*  
contact 928  
herpetiformis  
bullae in, 140  
eosinophilia in 1002  
eruption in 139  
itching in, 87  
linearis in grains 1084  
medicamentosa vesicles in 140  
venenata eruption in, 139
- Dermatolysis palpebrarum*, 173
- Dermatophytosis*  
itching in 87  
pruritus ani in 671
- Dermographia* 778 835
- Dermo d cysts*  
of ovaries 705  
of penis 710  
of testes 714
- Desensitization* 922
- Desoxycorticosterone acetate* 793
- D Espine's sign*, 335
- Dextrocardia* 500
- Diabetes*  
insipidus 767, 771  
anidrosis in 152  
as cause of anidrosis 59

## Diabetes

- insipidus (*continued*)
  - increase of urinary chlorides in 974
  - increased urinary phosphates in 975
  - increased urinary sulfates in 975
  - low specific gravity of urine in 972
  - pale urine in 970
  - polyuria in 970
  - weakness in, 96
- melilitus, 798
  - abnormally deep and irregular breathing in 258
  - as cause of anidrosis, 59
  - as cause of chronic myocarditis, 475
  - blindness in 61
  - bulimia in, 89
  - chronic gastritis in, 645
  - color blindness in 64
  - coma in 101
  - dental caries in, 192
  - emaciation in, 115
  - fissured tongue in 193
  - gangrene of extremities in, 749
  - glycosuria in 931
  - high specific gravity of urine in, 973
  - hyperglycemia in 1012
  - hyperpnea in 256
  - increased acidity of urine in 970
  - increase of blood chlorides in 1012
  - increased sedimentation rate in 998
  - increased urinary phosphates in 975
  - increased urinary sulfates in 975
  - itching in 87
  - neuralgia in 85
  - neuritis in 85
  - pale urine in 970
  - polyuria in, 970
  - pruritus ani in 671
  - rapid emaciation in 89
  - scotomata in 63
  - spongy gums in 190
  - sweetish odor of breath in 199
  - sweetish odor of urine in 971
  - weakness in 96
- Diabetic
  - acidosis nausea in 90
  - coma 103
    - and insulin shock, differential diagnosis 799
    - decreased respiratory frequency in, 327
    - hypopnea in 93 258
    - increase of blood urea nitrogen in 1010
  - gangrene
    - foot pain in, 84
    - pain due to arteritis in, 86
  - liver 612
  - neuritis wrist drop in 742
  - pseudotabes absence of tendo achillis reflex in 837
  - retinitis 179
  - ulcers 147

Diabetogenic hormones of pituitary, 760

Diabetic acid in urine 983

## Diaphragmatic

- abscess, 380
  - displacement downward of liver in 601
- disease
  - dyspnea in 93
  - hyperpnea in 254
  - increased respiratory frequency in, 326
  - muscular rigidity in 588
  - shoulder pain in 83
  - tenderness in right upper quadrant in 589
  - thoracic spinal pain in 80
- hernia
  - agonizing pain in, 67
  - epigastric pain in 75
  - left abdominal pain in, 77
  - left sided upper abdominal tenderness in 589
- movement 231
- paralysis
  - dry cough in 95
  - inability to cough in 96
- pleurisy 380
  - hicoughs in 94
  - left hypochondrial pain in 76
  - left sided upper abdominal tenderness in 589
  - left upper quadrant rigidity in 588
  - pain in 73
- Diaphragm
  - diseases of 379
  - displacement of 382
  - hernia of 380
  - paralysis of 379
  - spasm of 382
  - topographic and regional anatomy 224
- Diaphragmatitis 379
  - acute suppressed cough in 96
  - hyperpnea in 256
  - splenic pain and tenderness in 620
- Diarrhea 92
  - anidrosis in 152
  - blatidium coli as a cause of 1068
  - chronic emaciation in 115
  - decrease of urinary chlorides in 974
  - dryness of mucous membranes in 153
  - emaciation in 89
  - flagellate 1070
  - high specific gravity of urine in 973
  - hypermotility of stomach in 634
  - hyperproteinemia in 1011
  - incompetence of sphincter in 675
  - infantile 659
  - insomnia in 97
  - in suppurative hepatitis 608
  - oliguria in 970
  - profuse as cause of anidrosis 59
  - pruritus ani in 671
  - rectal pain in 79

- Diarrhea (*continued*)  
   tenesmus in, 672  
   vertigo in, 97  
   weakness in, 96  
 Diastole, 426  
 Diastolic  
   blood pressure, 411  
   heart murmurs 449  
 Diazo reaction, 987  
 Dick test for scarlet fever, 1060  
 Dirotic pulse, 409  
 Dietl's crises  
   cramps in, 68  
   epigastric pain in, 640  
   hyperpnea in, 254  
 Dibothriocephalus latus, 1074  
 Dicrocoelium lanceatum, 1072  
 Differential  
   blood count 995  
   count of leukocytes, 1001  
   red blood cell count, 996  
 Diffuse nephritis, acute, 687  
 Digestive disturbances, scotomata in 63  
 Digital reflex, 841  
 Digitalis poisoning  
   bradycardia in 408  
   hypopnea in 258  
   increase of apical impulse in, 401  
   yellow vision in, 64  
 Dilatation  
   of colon, 667  
   of heart, 477  
 Diphtheria  
   acute nephritis in, 687  
   anesthesia of pharynx in, 198  
   diazo reaction in, 987  
   differential diagnosis 54  
   endocarditis in, 479  
   foul odor of breath in, 199  
   laryngeal, 40  
   cyanosis in, 128  
   excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in, 153  
   nasal regurgitation of fluid in, 186  
   offensive discharge from nose in 186  
   localized tenderness of neck in, 206  
   mouth rash in, 153  
   nasal, nasal obstruction in, 186  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
   paralysis of uvula in, 197  
   redness of pharynx in, 198  
   Schick test 1058  
   splenic enlargement in 622  
   swollen neck glands in, 201  
   ulceration of pharynx in, 198  
 Diphtheritic  
   gastritis 645  
   palsy, impediment in power of protrusion of  
     tongue in, 196  
   urethritis, 711  
 Diphtheroid enteritis, 660  
 Diphylobothrium latum, 1074  
   head of, 1073  
   segments of, 1073  
   testes and vas deferens of, 1075  
 Diphylobothrium manson, 1075  
 Diplopia, 62  
 Discoloration of skin, 132  
 Disgust vomiting in 91  
 Displacement of abdominal viscera, 580  
 Dissecting aneurysm, 530  
 Disseminated  
   cerebrospinal sclerosis, increased knee jerk  
     in, 836  
   sclerosis, 864  
     anisocoria in, 177  
     general abdominal pain in, 74  
     hippus in, 178  
     increased tendon reflexes in 833  
     myosis in, 176  
     vomiting in, 636  
 Dissociated icterus, 604  
 Dissociation  
   by interference in myocardial degeneration  
     516  
   of sensibility 849  
 Distomasis 1072  
   hemic, 1071  
   hepatic, 1071  
   intestinal, 1071  
   pulmonary, 1071  
 Distorted fingers, 740  
 Dittrich's plugs, 1035  
 Diverticulitis, 668  
   acute  
     drawing up of left leg in, 78  
     pain in left iliac fossa in 78  
     tenderness over right lower quadrant in, 569  
     colicky pain in 77  
 Diverticulosis constipation in 671  
 Diverticulum of bladder, 694  
 Dizziness, 97  
 Dog tapeworms, 1075, 1077  
 Dorsal  
   foot reflex, 837  
   inertia, 117  
   lines of thorax, 214  
   recumbent position 117  
 Dorsolumbar autonomic system, 825  
 Double  
   pupil monocular diplopia in 62  
   vision, 62  
 Dracontiasis, 1079  
   symptoms of, 1080  
 Dracunculus medinensis, 1079  
 Dreams, 97  
 Dromedary gait, 851  
 Drug  
   addiction, facies in, 164  
   eruptions pustules in 142  
 Drummond's sign, 535

- Dry**  
 cough, 95  
 pericarditis, 469  
 rales, 339
- Duchenne's pseudomuscular hypertrophy**, 866
- Ductus arteriosus**, patent, 459, 503
- Dühring's disease**, see *Dermatitis herpetiformis* 139
- Dull pain**, 68
- Dullness**  
 change of, on change of posture, 308  
 in percussion, 282  
 relative or moderate, 301
- Duodenal**  
 disease, epigastric tenderness in 589  
 ulcer, 641  
   chest pain in, 74  
   epigastric pain in, 74  
   heartburn in, 90  
   lumbosacral pain in, 80
- Duodenum**, displacement of, 658  
 third section, landmark at second lumbar vertebra, 213
- Duodenitis**, 659  
 nausea in, 90
- Dumdum fever**, see *Kala Azar*, 1069
- Dupuytren's contraction**, 740
- Duration**  
 of percussion notes, 284  
 of respiratory sounds, 329
- Duroziez's sign**, 489, 524
- Dwarfism** 768
- Dwarf tapeworm**, 1075
- Dye tests**  
 for amyloidosis, 1064  
 for liver function, 1043  
 of renal function, 1037
- Dynamic**  
 coordination 831  
 murmurs, 460
- Dysbasia lordotica progressiva**, 883  
 gait in, 851
- Dysboulia**, 893
- Dysentery**  
 amebic, also see *Amebiasis*  
   diarrhea in, 92  
   general abdominal pain in, 74  
 bacillary  
   diarrhea in, 92  
   differential diagnosis, 51  
   general abdominal pain in, 74  
 beefy tongue in, 195  
 chronic, fissured tongue in, 193  
 pain during defecation in, 671  
 rapid emaciation in 89  
 rectal bleeding in, 672  
 semifluid feces in 1031  
 tarry stools in 1032
- Dysgerminoma**, 706
- Dysmenorrhea**, cramps in 68
- Dysmetria**, 850
- Dyspepsia**  
 acute, 645  
 allergic, general abdominal pain in, 74  
 chronic 645  
 in gastric carcinoma, 644  
 increased urinary oxalates in, 976  
 nervous, 649
- Dysphagia**, 198
- Dyspnea**, 93, 256, 466  
 facies in, 166
- Dysthesia**, 849
- Dysthyroidism**, 775
- Dystonia muscular deformans**, 883
- Dystrophia adenopogenitalis**, see *Frohlich's syndrome*, 767, 769
- Eagerness**, as cause of sweating, 50
- Ear diseases**, reflex headache in, 70
- Ears**, examination of, 122, 183
- Ebstein's angle**, 418, 471
- Echymosis** 132
- Echinococcus**  
 cysts 602 1077  
 disease, 1077  
   tests for, 1019, 1077  
   granulosus, 1077
- Echinostoma**  
 ilocanum, 1071  
 malayanum, 1071
- Echokinesis**, 170
- Echolalia** 170
- Eclampsia**  
 convulsions in, 100  
 increased blood potassium in, 1012  
 neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
 vomiting in, 636
- Ecthyma pustules** in, 141
- Ectopia cordis**, 500
- Ectopic gestation (pregnancy)**, 704  
 fluctuation in, 590  
 pain in iliac and inguinal regions in, 77  
 ruptured  
   Kussmaul's air hunger in 258  
   pain in iliac and inguinal regions in, 77
- Ectropion**, 173
- Eczema**, 927  
 crusts in 145  
 eosinophilia in, 1002  
 increased urinary sulfates in 975  
 itching in, 87  
 of lips, 188  
 of tongue, 72  
 papulosum eruption in 142  
 pruritus ani in 671  
 pustulosum pustules in 141  
 squamous scales in, 146  
 vesicular eruption in 139
- Edehohl's dorsal position** 117



- Edema, 88, 150, 467  
 angioneurotic, 927  
 vomiting in 92  
 decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012  
 hypoproteinemias in, 1011  
 of chest wall unilateral thoracic enlargement in, 246  
 of extremities, 745  
 of face, 169
- Effort syndrome precordial distress in, 467
- Egophony, 336
- Eighth cranial nerve lesions, 858
- Elation as cause of sweating, 50
- Electrical examination, 831
- Electrocardiography, 1045  
 definition of terms 1049  
 limitations of, 1048
- Electrocardiographic interpretation of heart action, 435
- Elephantiasis (lymphedema), 546, 752  
 edema in, 151  
 in filariasis 1080  
 in sparganium proliferum infection, 1076  
 of hands, 742
- Eleventh cranial nerve lesions, 859
- Emaciation, 89, 115  
 arterial pulsations in neck in, 204  
 atrophy of hair in, 163  
 hyperpnea in 256  
 microglossia in, 193
- Embryomonas intestinalis, 1071
- Embolic  
 occlusions of arteries, 538  
 retinitis, 179
- Embolism 86
- Embolus paradoxical, in patent foramen ovale, 505
- Embryocardia, 430, 434, 475
- Embryonic blood cells 552
- Emesis, see Vomiting, 635
- Emmetropia, 182
- Emotional states  
 insomnia in, 97  
 reflex headache in, 70  
 strain weakness after, 96
- Emphysema, 41  
 actual increase of hemoglobin in, 996  
 apparent weakness of first heart sound in, 432  
 chronic, 358  
 bilateral diminution of chest expansion in, 251  
 diminished vesicular murmur in, 326  
 diminished vocal fremitus in, 275  
 diminished vocal resonance in, 334  
 dyspnea in, 93  
 expiratory dyspnea in, 257  
 increased abdominal respiratory movements in, 585  
 inspiratory bulging above clavicles in 253
- Emphysema (*continued*)  
 compensatory (vicarious), 358  
 bilateral increase of chest expansion in, 250  
 increased vocal fremitus in, 275  
 increased vocal resonance in, 334  
 unilateral enlargement of chest in, 243  
 unilateral thoracic enlargement in, 245
- cyanosis in 128 129  
 of face in 169  
 decrease of blood chlorides in 1012  
 displacement of apex beat in 399  
 downward displacement of spleen in, 622  
 dyspnea in, 257  
 expiratory bulging of intercostal spaces in, 253  
 frothy expectoration in, 1035  
 hyperpnea in 255  
 hypertension in 494  
 increased intensity of first heart sound in, 432  
 increased respiratory frequency in, 326  
 indicanuria in, 975  
 local bulging of chest wall in 248  
 of skin, 151  
 orthopnea in 257  
 physical signs, 358  
 prolonged expiration in, 328  
 sibilant rales in 342  
 subcutaneous unilateral thoracic enlargement in, 246  
 thoracic spinal pain in, 80
- Emphysematous  
 breathing 330  
 chest, 238
- Emprosthotonos, 100 118
- Empyema  
 as cause of chills 59  
 as cause of sweating 50  
 bronchial breathing in, 329  
 precordial pulsations in 397  
 pulsations in lower abdomen in, 584  
 right hypochondrial pain in, 76  
 thoracic spinal pain in 80  
 ulcers of tongue in, 194
- Encephalitis 874 877  
 acute epidemic 40  
 photophobia in, 64  
 retraction of head in 162  
 cloudy spinal fluid in 1024  
 differential table 876  
 lethargica, 874  
 coma in 104  
 differential diagnosis 58  
 diplopia in 62  
 facies in, 165  
 gait in, 851  
 increase of lymphocytes of spinal fluid in, 1025  
 increase of spinal fluid proteins in 1024  
 photophobia in, 64  
 ptosis in, 173  
 tremors in, 98

**Encephalitis (continued)**

## types of

- alcoholic, 875
- Australian X disease, 876
- epidemic (lethargic, economic), 874-876
- equine, 876
- Japanese type B, 876
- St. Louis, 876
- syphilitic, 877
- torula, 876
- toxoplasmic, 876, 1068
- tromatic, 875

**Encephalon (brain), 811****Endarteritis**

## obliterans

- foot pain in, 84
- paresthesia in, 60
- syphilitic, pain due to arteritis in, 86

**Endemic goiter, 776****Endocarditis, 40**

## acute, 478

## ulcerative

- displacement of apex beat in, 479
- harsh mitral or aortic murmur in, 479

## bacterial

- acute splenic enlargement in, 622
- minute hemorrhagic spots in, 135
- petechiae of mouth in, 153
- retinal hemorrhages in, 179

## chronic bacterial

- cardiac thrill in, 480
- enlargement of spleen in, 480
- forcible apex beat in, 480
- Janeway's spots in, 480
- Osler's nodes in, 480
- petechiae in, 480
- subacute and chronic, 479

## neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001

## subacute bacterial

- as cause of chills, 59
- differential diagnosis, 53
- increased monocytes in, 1003
- increase of serum globulin in, 1011

**Endocrine**

## gland psychoses, 889

## system, 755

## in the aged, 934

**Endometritis, 700****Endosteal sarcomata, 733****Enophthalmos, 180****Enteric thrombosis, pain in, 86****Enteritis**

- acute catarrhal, 659
- tuberculous, diarrhea in, 92

**Enterobius vermicularis, 1078****Enterocolitis**

- abdominal tenderness in, 589
- acute, 660
- general abdominal pain in, 74
- chronic, diarrhea in, 92

**Enterocolitis (continued)**

## diarrhea in, 92

## vomiting in, 636

**Enteromonas hominis, 1071****Enteroptosis, 581**

## and gastroptosis, 649

## pain in hypogastric region in, 79

**Enthophthalmus, diplopia in, 62****Entropion, 173****Eosinophilic leukemia, 568****Eosinophils, 1002****Ephynal acetate (Roche), 920****Epicanthus, 173****Epidemic**

## catarrhal jaundice, 612

## encephalitis, 974

## jaundice, differential diagnosis, 56, 612

**Epididymitis, 713**

## pain in testes in, 86

## severe pain in lower abdomen in, 78

**Epidural hemorrhage, 872****Epigastric**

## angle, 211

## landmark for second thoracic vertebra, 213

## pain, 74-639

## pulsation, 396

## reflex, 834

## region, anatomic relationships, 574

## tenderness, in gastric ulcer, 642

**Epiglottic ulcer, dry cough in, 95****Epilepsy, 40, 881**

## color blindness in, 64

## coma in, 102-103

## convulsions in, 99

## cyanosis in, 128

## facial spasms in, 170

## hippus in, 178

## hypopnea in, 258

## inability to protrude tongue in, 196

## increase of lymphocytes of spinal fluid in, 1025

## increase of urinary chlorides in, 974

## nodding of head in, 162

## opisthotonos in, 118

## pale urine in, 970

## parosmia in, 65

## pituitary, 767, 773

## retraction of head in, 162

## splitting of personality in, 886

## temporary aphonia and aphasia in, 94

**Epileptic insanity, 890****Epinephrine, 757**

## action on sympathetic system, 827

**Epiphyseal junctions, 722****Epispadias, 708****Epistaxis (nosebleed), 186****Epithelial casts in urine, 988****Epithelioma**

## of anus, 674

## of eyelid, 172

## of lip, 188

## ulcers in, 148

- Epulis 733
- Equilibrium  
and orientation, disturbances of 849  
examination of 831  
pathways 814
- Equinia see Glanders
- Erb juvenile type of progressive muscular dystrophy 866
- Erb's phenomenon 791
- Ergometer Zuntz 443
- Ergosterol 909
- Ergot poisoning color blindness in 64
- Ergotism gangrene of extremities in 749
- Ergotoxine action on sympathetic system 828
- Eriodictyol see Vitamin p 970
- Eruetation 90
- Eruption of teeth 190
- Erysipelas  
as cause of chills 59  
diazo reaction in 987  
differential diagnosis 53  
diffuse erythema in 137  
edema of eyes in 88  
neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001  
splenic enlargement in 622  
swollen neck glands in 201
- Erythema 131  
arthriticum epidemicum (see Haverhill fever) 154  
induratum (see Bazin's disease) 134  
intertrigo (chafing) 137  
multiforme 132 927  
generalized red macular eruption in 132  
papules in 142  
tubercles in 143  
vesicles in, 140  
nodosum tubercles in 143
- Erythremia see Polycythemia vera 563
- Erythematous cyanosis in, 129
- Erythroblastic anemia, see Cooley's anemia 561
- Erythroblastosis fetalis 561
- Erythrocytes 996
- Erythrocytosis 568
- Erythromelalgia 537 885  
foot pain in 84  
gangrene in 749  
increased heat of lower extremities in, 745  
local redness in, 128  
pain due to arteritis in, 86  
pain in wrist and hand in 84  
red toes in 748
- Erythropoietic hormone of pituitary 761
- Eschatin, 792
- Estrine poisoning, myosis in 176
- Esophageal  
dilataions and diverticula 631  
diverticulum  
dry cough in, 95  
regurgitation in, 91  
stricture laryngeal cough in, 95  
stricture 631
- Esophageal (*continued*)  
stricture (stenosis) 630  
emaciation in 115
- Esophagismus 679  
globus hystericus in 198
- Esophagitis  
acute 630  
regurgitation in 91
- Esophagomalacia 631
- Esophagus physical examination and diseases of 629
- Espundia (American leishmaniasis) 1070
- Essential  
hypertension see Hypertension essential 412  
thrombopenia see Werthof's disease 562  
thrombophilia 537
- Estradiol 757 803
- Estrin 757 803  
in urine 986\*  
test for pregnancy (Mazer Hoffman) 1036
- Estrogen 757
- Ether poisoning toxic hepatic jaundice in 604
- Eunuchism 802
- Eunuchoidism 801
- Eustachian tube  
disease deafness in 185  
obstruction partial deafness in 64  
tinnitus aurium in 65 185
- Fecundation, 381
- Fecundation, 381
- Ewald's test breakfast 1030
- Ewart's (and Bamberger) sign 465
- Excoriations 131
- Exhaustion 96  
duskeness of eyelids in 174  
headache in, 69  
palpitation in 96  
reflex headache in 70
- Exophthalmic goiter 201 777  
and toxic adenoma, differential diagnosis 778  
as cause of sweating 50  
arterial pulsations in neck in 204  
bilateral exophthalmos in 180  
brown spots on face in, 168  
cardiac hypertrophy in, 477  
coma in, 104  
crises  
general abdominal pain in 74  
nausea in 90  
vomiting in 91  
emaciation in 115  
facies in 165  
gastric neurosis in, 641  
general tremor of tongue in 196  
hypocholesterolemia in, 1043  
increased intensity of both heart sounds in, 431  
increase of apical impulse in 401  
itching in, 87  
lagophthalmos in, 172  
lymphocytosis in, 1002  
palpitation in, 96

- Exophthalmic goiter (*continued*)  
 polyuria in, 970  
 pulsations in episternal notch in, 204  
 pulsation of retinal vessels in, 180  
 rapid emaciation in, 89  
 reflex headache in, 70  
 shortening of circulation time in, 447  
 tachycardia in, 407  
 tremors in, 98  
 ulceration of cornea in, 175  
 weakness in, 96
- Exophthalmos, 180
- Exophthalmus, unilateral, diplopia in 62
- Exostosis, 729
- Expectoration, 1033 1037
- Expiration, accessory muscles of, 232
- Expiratory  
 dyspnea, 257  
 movement, 231
- Expression, 164
- Extrasystoles, 439, 518
- Extrauterine pregnancy, salpingitis and appendicitis, differential diagnosis, 662
- Extravascular sales, 342
- Exudates, 1027
- Eyeball, examination of, 180
- Eyelids, examination of, 171
- Eyes  
 allergic manifestations, 922  
 examination of, 122, 171  
 in vitamin A deficiency, 896  
 muscles, associated actions of 857  
 pain in, 71  
 signs, 182
- Eye strain, 61  
 cervical pain in, 80  
 hyperemia of retina in, 179  
 nausea in, 90  
 photophobia in, 64  
 reflex headache in, 70  
 scotomata in, 63  
 vertigo in, 97  
 vomiting in, 92, 636
- Face, 164  
 examination of 122
- Facial  
 coloring, 167  
 hemiatrophy, 884  
   as cause of local sweating, 50  
   asymmetry of head in, 161  
   head in, 160  
   macrocephalus in, 158  
   yellow or white spot on one side of face in, 138  
 hemiplegia, facies in 164  
 injury, edema of eyes in, 88  
 nerves, 816  
 paralysis, 171  
   ectropion in, 173  
   lagophthalmos in 172
- Facial  
 paralysis (*continued*)  
   loss of taste in 65  
   ptosis in 173  
   spasms, 169
- Fahraens' distance method of blood sedimentation test, 997
- Failure of heart, 474
- Fainting attacks (syncope), 101
- Faintness, 96
- 'Falling drop' (metallic tinkling), 346
- Fallopian tubes diseases of 703
- Fallot's tetralogy, 459 507
- Familial  
 hemolytic jaundice with splenomegaly, 559  
 spastic spinal paralysis, 865
- Fannia canicularis, 1086
- Farcy see Glanders
- Far sight, 182
- Fastigium in fevers 48
- Fasciola hepatica, 1072
- Fasciolopsis buski 1072
- Fatigability of heart, 467
- Fatigue 96  
 duskiness of eyelids in, 174
- Fat metabolism hormones of pituitary 761
- Fatty casts in urine 989
- Fatty heart 476
- Fatty liver, 609
- Favus, crusts in, 146
- Fear  
 as cause of chilliness, 59  
 palpitation in, 96
- Febrile diseases  
 differential diagnosis, 51 58  
 jaundice of conjunctivae in, 153  
 rapid emaciation in, 89
- Fecal  
 impaction  
   colicky pain in, 77  
   constant pain in rectum in, 671  
   constipation in 92, 671  
   insomnia in, 97  
   lumbosacral pain in 81  
   pain during defecation in, 671  
   pain in iliac fossa in 78  
   tenderness over right lower quadrant in 589  
   thigh pain in, 84  
   varicose veins in, 541  
 vomiting, 638
- Feces, 1031
- Feeble-mindedness, 891
- Feet  
 congenital deformities, 751  
 deformities, 747
- Fehling's test for sugar in urine, 982
- Female  
 genital organs 694  
 gonads, 803

- Femur, fracture of, knee pain in 84  
 Fermentation test for sugar in urine, 982  
 Fermentative diarrhea, acute, 659  
 Festinating gait, 121  
 Fetid bronchitis, 350  
 Fevers  
   acute, alopecia in, 163  
   anorexia in, 90  
   as cause of anidrosis, 59  
   block, 1069  
   decline, 48  
   decrease of urinary chlorides in, 974  
   diagnosis of, 49  
   dumdum, 1069  
   dyspnea in, 93  
   emaciation in, 115  
   etiology, 49  
   fastigium, 48  
   headache in, 69  
   hyperpnea in, 254  
   increased acidity of urine in, 972  
   increased intensity of both heart sounds in, 431  
   increased urinary sulfates in, 975  
   increased urinary urea in, 974  
   oliguria in, 970  
   palpitation in, 96  
   sinus tachycardia in, 438  
   tachycardia in, 513  
   weakness in, 96  
 Fibrinogen, 1011  
 Fibrinous  
   bronchitis, 351  
   pericarditis, 469  
 Fibroadenoma of ovary, 704  
 Fibroid  
   induration of lungs, 366  
   phthisis  
     absent breath sounds in, 326  
     decreased respiratory frequency in, 327  
     increased vocal fremitus in, 274  
     relative dullness in, 302  
     upward displacement of apex beat in, 399  
 Fibroma of ovary, 704  
 Fibromata, 733  
   of penis, 710  
 Fibroneuromata of abdomen, 591  
 Fifth cranial nerve lesions, 857  
 Filaria, 1080  
   Bancrofti 1080  
   oculi 1081  
   loa 1081  
 Filariasis, 108  
   increase of serum globulin in, 1011  
 Filiform pulse, 409  
 Fingers and hands 739  
 Finger percussion, 285, 286  
 First  
   cranial nerve lesions, 855  
   sound (systole), 426  
   diminished intensity of, 432  
   increased intensity of, 432  
 Fish tapeworm, 1074  
 Fissure in ano, 673  
 Fissures, 131  
   of lungs, 222  
   of tongue, 72, 193  
 Fist percussion, 286  
 Fistula in ano, 673  
 Fitz's rule, 652  
 Flagellates, see *Magistophera*, 1068  
   invading the duodenum and jejunum, 1070  
   types of, 1068, 1070  
 Flagellate diarrhea, 1070  
 Flat  
   chest, 240  
   feet, 748  
     backache in, 79  
     knee pain in, 84  
     lumbosacral pain in, 80  
     pain in feet in, 84  
     pain radiating to ankles and calf muscles in, 83  
   footed gait, 121  
 Flatness in percussion, 282  
 Flavin, 915  
 Flea bites, petechial lesions in, 135  
 Fleas, 1092  
   species of, 1092  
   transmission of diseases by, 1092, 1093  
 Flechsig's direct cerebellar tract, 820  
 Flies, 1084-1087  
   American screwworm, 1086  
   blow, 1086  
   blue bottle, 1086  
   coffee, 1079  
   congo floor maggot, 1087  
   deer (*Chrysops discalis*), 1085, 1086  
   gray colored hairy, 1086  
   green bottle, 1086  
   house, 1084  
   lesser house, 1086  
   stable, 1086  
   sand, 1086  
   tsetse (see *Glossina*), 1085, 1086  
   tumbu, 1086  
 Flipping in percussion, 286  
 Floating  
   kidney, 581, 684  
   liver, 601  
   ribs, 210  
 Fluctuation, abdominal, 590  
 Flukes see Trematodes, 1071  
   blood, 1072  
   intestinal, 1071  
   liver, 1071  
   lung, 1072  
 Flushing, 168  
 Foam cells, 626, 628  
 Focal glomerulonephritis 687  
 Follicular hormone, function of, 804  
 Folliculin, 803  
 Fonseca hominis, 1071

- Food poisoning
  - abdominal tenderness in, 589
  - general abdominal pain in, 74
  - nausea in, 90
- Foot
  - and mouth disease
    - localized swelling of tongue in, 193
    - rash of mouth in, 153
    - vesicles in, 140
  - perforating ulcer of, 150
  - strain, pain in right loin in, 77
- Foramen ovale, patent, 459, 505
- Ford's stethoscope, 315
- Foreign bodies
  - in bronchi, 351
  - in respiratory and deglutitory passages, 40
- Forest jaws, see *Leishmaniasis americana*, 149, 1070
- Fourth venereal disease, 709
- Fowler position, 117
- Fractures
  - increased sedimentation rate in, 998
  - ostalgia in, 82
- Fragilitas ossium, 728
- Fragility of erythrocytes, 997
- Framboesia, see Yaws, 143
- Freckles, 132, 137
- Freezing, coma in, 102, 104
- Frei test for lymphogranuloma inguinale, 1059
- Fremitus
  - regional, variations of, 272
  - vocal, in abnormal chest
    - or tactile, 269
  - technic of palpation for, 271
- Friction
  - fremitus, 277, 403
  - sounds, 345, 448
- Friedlander's bacillus pneumonia, 367
- Friedman modification of Aschheim Zondek test for pregnancy, 1056
- Friedreich's
  - ataxia, 862
    - decreased knee jerk in, 836
    - nystagmus in, 847
  - phenomenon, 307
  - sign, 472
- Fright
  - as cause of chilliness 59
  - as cause of sweating, 50
  - dilatation of pupil in, 176
  - sweating of hands in, 152
  - temporary aphonia and aphasia in 94
  - vomiting in, 91
- Frolich's syndrome, 767, 769
  - obesity in, 89
- From's syndrome, 1024
- Frontal lobe
  - lesions, 868
  - tumor, deafness in, 64
- Frost bites
  - itching in, 87
- Frost bites (*continued*)
  - paresthesia in 60
  - red toes in, 748
- Functional
  - colitis, 664
  - diseases of nervous system, 885
  - murmurs, 460
    - characteristics of, 463
  - neuroses hyperesthesia in, 60
  - neurosis dreams and nightmares in, 97
  - scotomata, 63
  - tests 1038
- Fundus, examination of, 178
- Fungi and monilia, 1093
- Funnel chest, 242
- Funiculitis 715
- Furrows in teeth, 192
- Furunculosis
  - neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001
  - pustules in 142
- Fusiform thorax, 241
- Gait, 120, 831, 851
- Galactin, 760
- Galactoceles, 384
- Galatest for sugar in urine, 982
- Gallbladder 617
  - colic, differential diagnosis from gall duct colic, 618
  - disease, 41
    - agonizing pain in, 67
    - chronic, sallowness of face in, 16/
    - constipation in, 92
    - epigastric pain in, 640
    - gastric neurosis in, 649
    - glossodynia in 72
    - heartburn in 90
    - itching in, 87
    - sighing in, 259
    - tenderness in right upper quadrant in 589
    - thoracic spinal pain in, 80
    - vertigo in, 97
  - topographic anatomy, 577
- Gall duct disease, gastric ulcer, and pyloric spasm, differential diagnosis, 648
- Gallop rhythm, 522
- Gallstones, see Cholelithiasis
- Gallstone colic, as cause of chills, 59
- Ganglion, 810
- Ganglioneuroma of adrenal medulla, 796
- Gangosa, 56, 149
- Gangrene
  - diabetic, see Diabetic gangrene
  - foot pain in, 84
  - indicanuria in, 975
  - of lungs hiccoughs in, 94
  - of toes, 748
- Gas
  - asphyxia
    - coma in, 102, 103
    - cyanosis in, 129

- Gas  
 asphyxia (*continued*)  
   decreased intensity of both heart sounds in, 431  
   poisoning cyanosis of mucous membranes in 152
- Gastralgia 633 641  
 and gastric ulcer differential diagnosis 643  
 epigastric tenderness in 589
- Gastrectasis 647  
 heartburn in 90  
 hypomotility of stomach in 634  
 nausea in 90  
 vomiting in 636
- Gastric  
 and pulmonary hemorrhage differential diagnosis 639  
 carcinoma 643  
   aversion to meat in 90  
   chronic gastritis and gastric ulcer differential diagnosis 646  
   diminished or absent cardiac dullness in 422  
   epigastric pain in 640  
   epigastric tenderness in 589  
   hematemesis in 638  
   hypochromic microcytic anemia in 557  
   lumbosacral pain in 81  
   nausea in 90  
   rigidity of upper midabdomen in 588  
   thoracic spinal pain in 80  
   vomiting in 635
- catarrh  
 acute 645  
 chronic 645  
 contents 1028  
 dilatation 647  
   exaggerated abdominal tympany in 598  
 diseases symptomatology 633  
 liccoughs in 94  
 fermentation epigastric pain in 640  
 hyperesthesia vomiting in 636  
 hypersecretion acid vomitus in 637  
 neuralgia 641  
 neurosis 649  
 ulcer 40 641  
   acid vomitus in 637  
   and gastralgia differential diagnosis 643  
   chest pain in 74  
   chronic gastritis and gastric carcinoma differential diagnosis 646  
   epigastric  
     pain in 74  
     tenderness in 589  
   general abdominal pain in 74  
   heartburn in 90  
   hematemesis in 638  
   hypermotility of stomach in 634  
   hyperpnea in 254  
   lumbosacral pain in 81  
   perforated agonizing pain in 67  
   prone posture in, 118
- Gastric  
 ulcer (*continued*)  
   pyloric spasm and gall duct disease differential diagnosis 648  
   rectal bleeding in 672  
   rigidity of upper midabdomen in 588  
   thoracic spinal pain in 80  
   vomiting in 635
- Gastritis  
 acute 645  
   epigastric pain in 640  
   globus hystericus in 198  
   macular rash in 133  
 chronic 645  
   dryness of mucous membranes in 153  
   gastric ulcer and gastric carcinoma, differential diagnosis 646  
   epigastric pain in 74  
   heartburn in 90  
   nausea in 90  
   thick tenacious mucous vomitus in 637  
   vomiting in 91 635
- Gastrodisco des hominis 1071
- Gastrodynia 639 641
- Gastroenteritis acute  
 diarrhea in 92  
 general abdominal pain in 74  
 vomiting in 91
- Gastrointestinal  
 diseases  
   anorexia in 90  
   aversion to certain foods in 90  
   constipation in 92  
   emaciation in 115  
   fissures of tongue in 72  
   infantile convulsions in 100  
   pallor in 127  
   vertigo in 97  
   weakness in 96  
 system  
   allergic manifestations 926  
   in history taking 38  
   in the aged 934 936  
   in vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency 902  
 tract  
   disease lost or perverted taste in 65  
   in vitamin A deficiency 899
- Gastroparesis and enteroptosis 649
- Gaucher's  
 disease 615 624 678  
   chronic splenic enlargement in 623  
   leukopenia in, 1003  
   splenomegaly enlargement of both liver and spleen in, 677
- Gee's disease 660  
 hypochromic microcytic anemia in 557
- General  
 examination 113  
 symptoms 41
- Genitalia 694

- Genitourinary system  
   examination of, 123  
   in the aged, 934, 936  
   in history taking, 38  
   tract  
     in vitamin A deficiency, 899  
 Genu valgum (knock knee) and genu varum (bowlegs), 744  
 Geographic tongue, 72, 194  
 Gerhardt's  
   area of dullness, 503  
   change of sound, 307  
   test for acetoacetic acid in urine, 983  
 Geriatrics, 930  
   place in medicine, 938  
 German measles  
   generalized red macular eruption in, 133  
   localized tenderness of neck in, 206  
   swollen neck glands in, 201  
 Giardia intestinalis 1070  
   lamblia, 1070  
 Giddiness, 97  
 Gigantism, 763  
   obesity in, 89  
 Gilchrist disease (Blastomycosis), 1094  
 Gilfillen and Gregg antuitrin-S skin reaction  
   test for pregnancy, 1056  
 Gilles de la Tourette's disease, 170  
 Gingivitis  
   necrotic, 190  
   red line on gums in, 190  
   spongy gums in, 190  
 Girdle pain in tabes dorsalis, 862  
 Glands  
   differential diagnosis, 51  
   ozena in, 186  
   puffiness of eyelids and iritis in, 172  
   swollen neck glands in, 201  
   tests for, 1058  
   ulcerations in, 148  
 Glandular fever (see Infectious mononucleosis), 203 569  
   test for, 1064  
 Glasgow's sign, 535  
 Glaucoma  
   acute eye pain in, 71  
   amblyopia in, 61  
   blindness in, 61  
   dilatation of pupil in, 176  
   organic scotomata in, 63  
   passive hyperemia of retina in, 179  
 Glenard's disease 581, 649  
   enlargement of abdomen below umbilicus in, 586  
   lumbosacral pain in, 81  
 Globus hystericus, 198  
 Glomerular nephritis  
   acute, 687  
   chronic, 689  
   Glomerular nephritis (*continued*)  
     general edema in, 88  
     vomiting in, 92  
 Glomus tumors, 543  
 Glossalgia (pain in tongue), 71  
 Glossina (tsetse flies), species of  
   brevipalpis 1083  
   discalis, 1083  
   morsitans, 1068 1083, 1085  
   palpalis 1068 1083, 1085  
   swynertoni 1068  
   tachinoides, 1068  
 Glossitis  
   acute, 72  
   chronic superficial, 72  
   lingual pain in, 197  
   lost or perverted taste in, 65  
 Glossodynia, 72  
 Glossopharyngeal nerves, 816  
 Glossophytia (black tongue), 195  
 Glottis, edema of  
   aphonia in, 94  
   cyanosis in, 128  
 Glucose in blood 1012  
 Gluteal reflex, 834  
 Glycogenic function of liver, test for, 1044  
 Glycopenia, 797  
 Glycosuria, 981  
 Gnats 1086  
 Gnawing pain 68  
 Goetsch test, 780  
   for hyperthyroidism, 1059  
 Goiter 40, 775  
   exophthalmic, see Exophthalmic goiter, 201, 777  
   cyanosis in, 128  
   cyanosis of face in, 169  
   dry cough in, 95  
   intrathoracic, laryngeal cough in, 95  
 Goll, column of 820  
 Gonads 800  
   disturbances reflex headache in, 70  
   hormones, 757  
 Gonadotrophic hormone of pituitary, 760  
 Gonorrhea  
   complement fixation test for, 1022  
   endocarditis in, 479  
   eosinophilia in, 1002  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
   of vulva 695  
 Gonorrheal  
   arthritis 736  
   epididymitis, 713  
   ophthalmia blindness in, 61  
   salpingitis, 703  
   urethritis 711  
 Gordon's  
   biological test for Hodgkin's disease, 1059  
   reflex, 835, 842  
   stethoscope 315



- Gout 41 737  
 as cause of sweating 50  
 aortic regurgitation in 487  
 increased urinary oxalates in 976  
 increase of blood uric acid in 1010  
 increase of uric acid in urine in 974  
 iritis in 176  
 mitral stenosis in 484  
 neuralgia in 85  
 pain in wrist and hand in 84  
 plastic phlebitis in 542  
 toes in 749
- Gower's tract 820
- Gradenigo syndrome of 827
- Graham Steele murmur 463 486 489
- Gram's staining method 1054
- Grand mal 881
- Granular  
 basophilic degeneration of red cells 996  
 casts in urine 988  
 degeneration of erythrocytes 551  
 inspiration 327
- Granulocytes neutrophilic 1001
- Granulocytopenia 569  
 differential diagnosis 58  
 leukopenia in, 1001
- Granuloma inguinale, 696
- Granulosa  
 cell tumors 706 804  
 inguinalis ulcerations in 148
- Gräupner's test, 443
- Graves disease see Hyperthyroidism 41 777
- Gravitz tumor 792
- Gray colored hairy fly 1080
- Gray skin 130
- Greater curvature of stomach topographic anatomy 576
- Green bottle fly 1086
- Green sickness see Chlorosis 40 556  
 vomitus 637
- Grinding pain 68
- Griping pains 68
- Growth hormone 760
- Gutnea worm, 1079
- Gulf's disease 780
- Gull Sutton's disease see Arteriosclerosis 575
- Gums examination of 189
- Gumma of penis 708
- Gurgling rales 339
- Gustatory agnosia 196
- Gutter chest 241 727
- Gynastic resistance test, 445
- Gynecological system in history taking 38
- Haab's reflex 826
- Haabit spasm, 170
- Hair 163  
 distribution of, pituitary origin, 771
- Half vision, 63
- Halbut liver oil, 909
- Hallucinations 827
- Hallux valgus varus equinus or rigidus foot pain in 84 747
- Hands and fingers 739
- Hand Schüller Christian's disease 731 767 771  
 abnormal compressibility of skull in 128  
 ostealgia in 82
- Hanot's cirrhosis 605
- Harassing cough 95
- Harelip 189
- Harrison's sulcus 240
- Haverhill fever 154
- Hayem Widal hemolytic jaundice 603
- Hay fever 354 925  
 abnormal moisture of conjunctivae in 175  
 edema of lower eyelids in 88  
 excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in 153  
 increased eosinophils in 1002  
 itching in 87  
 nasal obstruction in 186  
 sneezing in 94  
 tests in 929  
 watery discharge from nose in 186
- Head  
 auscultation of 325  
 examination of 122 157  
 injury to 960  
 kakosmia in 187  
 law 68  
 nodding breathing 229
- Head's view of aphasia 844
- Headache 68  
 aching pains in, 68  
 cervical pain in 80  
 pituitary 767 773  
 severe photophobia in 64  
 throbbing pain in 68
- Health examinations period of 962
- Hearing 64  
 defects in the aged 934  
 tests 185 944
- Hearthburn (pyrosis) 90
- Heart  
 anatomy of 387  
 blood supply 393  
 nerve supply 394  
 topographic outline 391  
 block, 515  
 complete Stokes Adams syndrome in 516  
 prolongation of circulation time in, 497
- chambers anatomy 389
- disease also see Cardiac diseases 466  
 arteriosclerotic, 493  
 congenital 500  
 congenital flushing of face in 163  
 coronary 497  
 hydrothorax in, 243  
 hypertensive, 493  
 increased respiratory frequency in, 326  
 left ventricular hypertrophy in, 477  
 retinal hemorrhages in, 179  
 rheumatic 491

- Heart**  
 disease (*continued*)  
   syphilitic, 493  
   thyroid, 494  
   valvular, 478  
   vomiting in, 636  
 examination of, 123  
 failure, 458, 474  
   congestive, vomiting in, 91  
   decreased sedimentation rate in, 998  
   dialysis reaction in, 987  
   prolongation of circulation time in, 447  
   right sided, edema of feet and legs in, 88  
   sinus tachycardia in, 438  
 in the aged, 936  
 in vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency, 902  
 landmark for fifth to eighth thoracic vertebrae, 213  
 murmurs, 448  
   congenital, 458  
   pain, conditions simulating, 500  
   physical examination of, 395  
   sounds  
   normal sounds, 424  
   nonpathologic variations, 429  
   pathologic sounds, 430
- Heat**  
 exhaustion  
   cramps in, 99  
   headache in, 70  
   palpitation in, 96  
   syncope in, 101  
   rash, see Miliaria  
 Heberden's nodes, 737, 742  
 Helix, 757  
 Hectic temperature, 48  
 Height and weight  
   at various ages, 108  
   ratio formula, approximate, 112  
   tables, 108  
 Helmholtz ophthalmoscope, 178  
 Helminthiasis (see Parasitic infestations), 40  
   1067  
 Hemangioma of hands, 741, 742  
 Hematemesis, 627  
   in gastric ulcer, 643  
 Hematocele, 713  
 Hemochromatosis, 627  
   hematoporphyrinuria, 987  
 Hematogenous icterus, 604  
 Hematology terms employed, 993  
 Hematomyelia, complete loss of tendon and skin  
   reflexes in, 832  
 Hematoporphyrin in urine, 987  
 Hematuria, 984  
 Hemeralopia, 61  
 Hemianopsia, 63  
 Hematrophia, facial, as cause of local sweating  
   50
- Hemic murmurs, 460  
 Hemiplegic reflex, 177  
   distomasis, 1072  
 Hemiplegia  
   Babinski reflex in, 834  
   gait in, 851  
   Gordon's finger reflex in, 842  
   impediment in power of protrusion of tongue  
   in, 196  
   limping gait in, 121  
   tremors in, 98  
 Hemochromatosis (bronzed diabetes), 614  
   discoloration of abdomen in, 583  
 Hemogenic syndrome, see Werthof's disease, 562  
 Hemoglobin findings, 994  
 Hemoglobinuria, 985  
   paroxysmal, 561  
 Hemolysis, yellowish discoloration of conjunctiva in, 175  
 Hemolytic  
   anemia (icterus), 558  
   jaundice, 603  
   hematemesis in, 637  
   Howell-Jolly bodies in, 997  
   increased color index during crisis, 995  
   increased fragility of erythrocytes in, 997  
   reticulocytes in, 996  
   very low red count in, 996  
   system, 1020  
 Hemophilia, 564  
   epistaxis in, 186  
   hematemesis in, 637  
   increased urinary oxalates in, 976  
   knee pain in, 84  
   petechiae of mouth in, 153  
   rectal bleeding in, 672  
   retinal hemorrhages in, 179  
   tarry stools in, 1032  
 Hemorrhage  
   audrosis in, 152  
   blindness in, 61  
   decreased intensity of both heart sounds after,  
   432  
   hypotension in, 413  
   leukocytosis in, 1000  
   oliguria in, 1000  
   pallor after, 127  
   sinus tachycardia in, 438  
   syncope in, 101  
   tachycardia in, 513  
   vertigo in, 97  
   very low red count after, 996  
   weakness after, 96  
 Hemorrhagic  
   anemias, 557  
   Bright's disease, 687  
   colitis, 667  
   infarct of lung, dullness in, 299  
   infarction of lung, increased vocal fremitus in,  
   274  
   macules, 134

- Hemorrhagic** (*continued*)  
 nephritis 689  
 pancreatitis 652  
 retinitis, 179
- Hemorrhoids**, 672  
 constipation in 92  
 rectal pain in 79
- Hemothorax**, 243, 377
- Henoch's purpura**, 563, 737, 928
- Hepatic**  
 abscess  
   as cause of chills, 59  
   beefy tongue in 195  
   chest pain in 73  
   fluctuation in right hypochondriac region in, 591  
 cirrhosis, as cause of anidrosis 59  
 colic, hyperpnea in, 254  
 congestion 606  
 diseases see also Liver diseases 601  
   chronic fissured tongue in, 193  
   constipation in, 92  
   glossodynia in, 72  
   heartburn in, 90  
 distomiasis, 1071  
 enlargement abdominal enlargement in, 586  
 flexure displacement of, 657  
 necrosis 616  
   diminished secretion of hippuric acid in, 1043
- Hepatitis**  
 acute nonsuppurative, 615  
 diminished secretion of, hippuric acid in, 1043  
 increased acidity of urine in, 972  
 suppurative 608
- Hepatocellular jaundice** 604
- Hepatogenic hormone of pituitary** 761
- Hepatolienal fibrosis** see Banti's disease 561
- Hepatomegaly** (see Enlargement of the liver) 605  
 glycogenosis 614
- Hepatomegaly, lumbosacral pain in** 81
- Hepatosplenic cirrhosis**, see Banti's disease 561
- Hereditary**  
 cerebellar ataxia, amblyopia in, 61  
 hemorrhagic  
   telangiectases, 565  
   thrombosthema, see Werthof's disease, 562  
 pseudohemophilia, 565  
 tremors, 99
- Hernia**  
 enlargement of both inguinal regions in, 586  
 incarcerated tenderness over right lower quadrant in, 589  
 strangulated  
   muscular rigidity in, 587  
   vomiting in, 636
- Herpes**  
 of lips, 188  
 pruritus ani in, 671
- Herpes** (*continued*)  
 zoster  
   abdominal rash in, 583  
   acute pain in, 67  
   anesthesia in, 60  
   causalgia in, 68  
   chest pain in 72  
   eosinophilia in, 1002  
   hyperesthesia in, 60  
   hyperpnea in, 254  
   left upper quadrant rigidity in, 588  
   macular rash in 135  
   mouth rash in, 153  
   of penis, 710  
   restricted bilateral chest expansion in 250  
   right hypochondrial pain in, 76  
   vesicles in, 138
- Hertz's self checking test**, 444
- Heterolateral hemianopsia** 63
- Heteronymous hemianopsia** 63
- Heterophile antibody test for glandular fever**, 1059 1064
- Heterophyes heterophyes**, 1071  
 nocens, 1071
- Hexuronic acid** 906 917, 918
- Hibernation and somnolence pituitary**, 767, 773
- Hiccough** 94
- Hiccup**, 634
- Hilarity palpitation in**, 96
- Hilum of lung** 221
- Hip**  
 congenital dislocation 751  
 disease, tuberculous hip joint pain in 84  
 dislocations congenital waddling gait in 121  
 joint disease  
   knee pain in 84  
   pain in iliac fossa in, 79  
   pain in knee and inner side of leg in 84  
   thigh pain in, 84
- Hip plates pallipes** 1090
- Hippocratic**  
 countenance 166, 167  
 succussion splash, 347
- Hippuric acid**  
 in urine 976  
 test 1043
- Hippus**, 178
- Hirschsprung's disease** 668  
 abdominal tenderness in, 589  
 constipation in, 671  
 general abdominal pain in, 74
- Hirsutism in hyperpituitarism** 762
- His bundle of** 425
- Histamine test** 343
- Histidine test for pregnancy**, 1057
- Histiocytes** 628
- Histioplasmosis of Darling** 1095
- History**  
 evaluation of, 36  
 form, 39  
 taking 37

- Hives, see Urticaria, 927  
itching in, 86  
Hoarse cough, 95  
Hobnailed liver, 606, 615  
Hodgkin's disease, 569  
  bronzing of skin in, 130  
  chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
  differential diagnosis, 58  
  dry cough in, 95  
  edema in, 151  
  enlargement of both liver and spleen in 627  
  enlargement of liver in, 614  
  enlargement of spleen in 627  
  eosinophilia in, 1002  
  Gordon's biological test for, 1059  
  hematemesis in, 637  
  hyperpnea in, 255  
  increased monocytes in, 1003  
  increase of blood platelets in, 1005  
  neck glands in, 201  
Hoffman's  
  phenomenon, 791  
  sign, 841  
Homonomous  
  diplopia, 62  
  hemianopsia, 63  
Hookworm disease, 1083  
Hopping test, 443  
Hordeolum (stye), 172  
Hormones, 755  
  in urine, 986  
Horner's syndrome, 173  
  as cause of local anidrosis, 59  
Housemaid's knee, knee pain in, 84  
Howell Jolly bodies, 993, 997  
Hum 448  
Huntington's chorea, 881  
  gait in, 851  
  psychoses in, 889  
Hutchinson's teeth, 192  
Hyaline casts in urine, 988  
Hydatid  
  cyst, 1077  
  irregular enlargement of, spleen in, 627  
  fluctuation in right hypochondriac region in 591  
  of bone, periosteal pain in, 82  
  of liver, 609  
  disease, 1077  
  infection, enlargement of both liver and spleen in, 627  
Hydatiform mole  
  malignant, 703  
  of vagina, 699  
Hydrarthrosis, intermittent knee pain in 84  
Hydrocele, 713  
Hydrocephalus, 40, 158  
  acute, 873  
  chronic, distention of veins of scalp in 540  
  coma in 104  
  increased spinal fluid pressure in, 1024  
Hydrocephalus (*continued*)  
  macrocephalus in, 158  
  vomiting in, 91  
Hydrocyanic acid poisoning, cyanosis in, 129  
Hydrogen ion concentration of plasma, 1015  
Hydronephrosis 681  
  chest pain in, 73  
  epigastric pain in, 641  
  fluctuation in right hypochondriac region in, 591  
  fluctuation over left hypochondriac region in 591  
  hyperpnea in, 255  
  lumbosacral pain in 81  
  pain in left loin in, 77  
  pain in right loin in, 77  
Hydrophobia, see Rabies  
Hydropneumopericarditis 474  
Hydropneumothorax, 244, 378  
  cyanosis in, 128  
  hepatic succussion splash in, 347  
  metallic tinkling in 346  
Hydrops fetalis, congenital, 562  
Hydro-quinone 920  
Hydrosalpinx 705  
Hydrothorax, 243, 377  
  cyanosis in, 128  
  succussion splash in, 279  
Hydruria 970  
Hymenolepis fraterna, 1075  
  nana (dwarf tapeworm) 1075  
Hyoid bone landmark for fourth cervical vertebra, 212  
Hyoscine poisoning, psychosis in, 888  
Hyperacidty  
  epigastric pain in, 74  
  vomiting in, 636  
Hyperacusis (heightened hearing), 64  
Hyperadrenalism hypertension in, 412  
Hyperchlorhydria, hypermotility of stomach in 634  
Hyperchromic  
  anemia megaloblasts in, 996  
  macrocytic anemia  
  increased color index in 995  
  secondary 555  
Hyperemia 131  
  reflex headache in, 70  
Hyperesthesia 60  
  of stomach, 651  
Hyperglycemia, 798  
Hypergonadism, 803  
Hyperhidrosis (sweats), 50, 152  
Hyperidrosis (hyperhidrosis), 50, 152  
Hyperinsulinism as cause of sweating 50  
Hypermetropia 182  
  photophobia in 64  
Hypermotility of stomach 634  
Hypertrophied 683, 795  
  hematuria in 985

- Hypernephroma (*continued*)  
   hyperpnea in, 255  
   muscular rigidity in, 588  
   of ovary, 705  
   of vagina, 699  
   polycystic kidney, and sarcoma, differential diagnosis, 683  
   splenic pain and tenderness in, 620  
 Hyperopia, 60, 182  
   myosis in, 176  
 Hyperosmia (heightened sense of smell), 65, 187, 855  
 Hyperostosis crani see Leontiasis ossea 159, 728  
 Hyperovarianism 805  
 Hyperparathyroidism 729, 789  
   abnormal compressibility of skull in 158  
   ostealgia in 81  
 Hyperpietia, 412  
 Hyperpietis, 412  
 Hyperpituitarism, 762  
   hypertension in, 412  
   obesity in, 89  
 Hyperplastic anemia see Hemolytic anemia, 558  
 Hyperpnea, 254  
 Hyperproteinemia, 1011  
   decreased sedimentation rate in 998  
 Hyperresonance 282, 303  
 Hypertension, 411  
   epistaxis in, 186  
   hemorrhagic retinitis in, 179  
   increase of blood chlorides in, 1012  
   polyuria in 970  
   reflex headache in, 70  
   tinnitus aurium in, 185  
 Hypertension essential, 412  
   cardiovascular manifestations in, 412  
   cerebral manifestations in, 412  
   malignant 413  
   renal manifestations in, 413  
 Hypertensive heart disease, 493  
 Hyperthyroidism 785  
 Hyperthyroidism 494, 774  
   acid vomitus in, 637  
   emaciation in 115  
   Goetsch test 1059  
   hyperkinesis in, 152  
   hyperpnea in, 256  
   hypertension in, 412  
   hypcholesterolemia in, 1043  
   increased metabolic rate in, 1044  
   insomnia in, 97  
   iodine tolerance test 1059  
   Lecithin test for, 1060  
   mild hyperglycemia in, 1012  
   tremor in, 846  
 Hypertic primary 412  
 Hypertrophia, 103, 795  
 Hypertrophic  
   artery atherosclerosis, 605  
   emphysema, 358  
   pulmonary osteoarthropathy, 738, 740  
 Hypertrophy of heart, 476  
 Hyperpyrexia, 47  
 Hypervitaminosis D, 910  
 Hypoacidity, gastric, 650  
 Hypoadrenia weakness in, 96  
 Hypochondriac region  
   of chest, 217  
   left, anatomic landmarks, 575  
   right, anatomic relationships, 574  
 Hypochondriasis, 41  
 Hypochromasia, 551  
 Hypochromic microcytic anemia, 555  
   decreased neutrophils in, 1002  
   idiopathic, 556  
   in hookworm disease 1084  
 Hypogastric region anatomic landmarks, 575  
 Hypogenesis of phalanges, 739  
 Hypoglossal nerves, 816  
   disease of, atrophy of tongue in, 193  
 Hypoglycemia, 797  
   as cause of sweating 50  
   coma in, 101  
   convulsions in, 100  
   syncope in, 101  
   weakness in, 96  
 Hypogonadism, 801, 805  
 Hypogonad obesity, 89, 772  
 Hypomotility of stomach, 634  
 Hypoovarianism, 805  
 Hypoparathyroidism, 789  
 Hypophyseal dystrophy, see Frohlich's syndrome  
 Hypopituitarism, 765  
   bulimia in, 89  
   hypotension in, 413  
   low metabolic rate in, 1044  
   weakness in, 96  
 Hypopnea, 93, 257  
 Hypoproteinemia, 1011  
 Hyposmia 655  
 Hypospadias, 708  
 Hypotension 411, 413  
   insomnia in 97  
   oliguria in 970  
   reflex headache in, 70  
   vertigo in, 97  
   weakness in, 96  
 Hypothyroidism, 788  
 Hypothyroidism, 495, 774, 780  
   hypercholesterolemia in, 1043  
   hypotension in, 413  
   low metabolic rate in, 1044  
   prolongation of circulation time in, 447  
   shortening of circulation time in, 447  
   weakness in, 96  
 Hypothyroid  
   obesity, 89, 772  
   type of hypogonadism, 802  
 Hypovitaminosis D, 910

- Hysteria** 41 886  
 absence of corneal reflex in 840  
 acid vomitus in 637  
 amblyopia in 61  
 anosmia in 187  
 apnea in, 93  
 blindness in, 61  
 bradycardia in 408  
 color blindness in, 64  
 coma in 102 104  
 constipation in, 671  
 cramps in, 99  
 decreased respiratory frequency in 327  
 dilatation of pupil in, 176  
 facies in, 166  
 facial spasms in 170  
 globus hystericus in 198  
 hemianopsia in 63  
 hiccoughs in 94  
 hippus in 178  
 hyperosmia in, 65  
 hyperpnea in 254 256  
 hypopnea in 93 258  
 inability to protrude tongue in 196  
 increased knee jerk in 836  
 increased respiratory frequency in 327  
 nausea in 90 639  
 opisthotonos in 118  
 pain along spine in 81  
 pale urine in 970  
 perversion of taste sensations in 197  
 polyuria in 970  
 ptosis in 172  
 reflex headache in 70  
 retraction of head in 162  
 rolling up of eyeball in 172  
 spasm of pharynx in 198  
 splitting of personality in, 886  
 subjective pain in 67  
 sweating of hands in 152  
 temporary aphonia and aphasia in 94  
 tremors of eyelids in 99  
 umbilical pain in 590  
 vertigo in 97  
 vomiting in 91, 636
- Hysterical**  
 amblyopia monocular diplopia in 62  
 convulsions 100
- Ichthyosis**  
 as cause of anidrosis 59  
 anidrosis in 152  
 scales in 147
- Icterus** see also Jaundice 601  
 index 1041  
 gravis neonatorum 561  
 neonatorum 604
- Idiocy**  
 amaurotic family blindness in 61  
 macrocephalus in 158
- Idiocy (continued)**  
 Mongolian see Mongolian idiocy  
 skull in, 159
- Idiopathic**  
 organic colitis 667  
 thrombocytopenia purpura 563
- Ileitis**  
 diarrhea in 92  
 regional 661  
 colicky pain in 78  
 general abdominal pain in 74  
 glossodynia in 72  
 tenderness over right lower quadrant in 589
- Ileocolitis** diarrhea in 92
- Ileum** 757
- Ileum**  
 displacement of 658  
 inflammation of 659
- Ileus** 609  
 vomiting in 636
- Iliac**  
 crest highest part of landmark of fourth lumbar vertebra 213  
 regions anatomic landmarks 575
- Iliocecal tuberculosis** pain in right iliac fossa in 78
- Iliopsoas bursitis** hip joint pain in 84
- Illuminating gas poisoning** psychosis in 888
- Illusions** 887
- Immediate**  
 auscultation 312  
 disadvantages 313  
 of heart 422  
 percussion 285  
 of heart 416
- Immobile pupil** 177
- Impacted cerumen** partial deafness in 64
- Impetigo**  
 contagiosa  
 eruption in 139  
 macular rash in 135  
 crusts in 146  
 simple pustules in 141
- Incarcerated hernia** vomiting in 91
- Indeterminate rales** 345 348
- Indican**  
 in urine 975  
 reaction for liver function 1044
- Indigestion** in gastric ulcer 642
- Indirect percussion** 286
- Industrial medicine** 939  
 and examination of industrial workers 939  
 examination of person applying for position 940  
 examination of persons already in industry 944  
 health defects as determining occupation 941  
 anemia 942  
 eye diseases and visual acuity 943  
 color blindness 944  
 hearing tests 944

## Industrial medicine

health defects (*continued*)

respiratory diseases, 942

skin affections, 943

industrial physician, 939

function of

full time physician 939

part time physician 939

supervision of sanitary conditions and prevention of avoidable hazards, 945

## Infancy and childhood diseases of 40

## Infantile

convulsions, 100

diarrhea, 659

paralysis see Poliomyelitis, acute anterior 40

limping gait in, 121

progressive, muscular atrophy, 866

## Infantulism, 768

## Infections

chronic, rapid emaciation in, 89

headache in, 70

monilia 1093

mycotic, 1093

neuralgia in, 85

neuritis in, 85

purpura in, 564

## Infectious mononucleosis, 203, 569

differential diagnosis, 58

test for, 1064

## Inferior cervical ganglion, landmark for seventh cervical vertebra, 213

## Influenza

abnormal moisture of conjunctiva in, 175

aching generalized pains in, 68

as cause of chills 59

as cause of sweating, 50

cervical pain in 80

diarrhea in, 92

differential diagnosis, 51

endocarditis in, 479

eye pain in, 71

hematemesis in, 637

leukopenia in, 1001

lymphocytosis in, 1002

mouth rash in 153

ostalgia in, 81

plastic phlebitis in, 542

redness of pharynx in 198

toxic hepatic jaundice in 604

thrombocytopenia in, 1005

## Infraaxillary regions

of chest 219

percussion of 297

## Infradavicular regions

auscultation of, 324

of chest, 216

palpation of 263

percussion of, 295

## Inframammary regions

auscultation of, 324

Inframammary regions (*continued*)

of chest, 217

percussion of, 296

## Infrascapular

line of thorax, 214

regions

auscultation of, 325

of chest, 220

palpation of, 263

percussion of, 297

## Ingravescent apoplexia, 102

## Inguinal

hernia

incarcerated

left, drawing up of left leg in, 118

right, drawing up of right leg in, 118

pain in testes in, 87

strangulated, severe pain in inguinal and iliac regions in, 78

regions

anatomic landmarks, 575

examination of, 707

## Inhibin, 800

## Injury

stimulated by drugs, 961

to sensory nerve, anesthesia in, 60

## Innominate artery

and veins, anatomy, 395

aneurysm of, 533

## Inositol 914

## Insanity

aversion to certain foods in, 90

hyperosmia in, 65

parosmia in, 65

vomiting in, 91

## Insect bites

itching in 87

wheals in, 145

## Insects and other arthropods, 1084

in which the adult stage is important 1091

in which the larvae are important 1091

## Insomnia 96

emaciation in, 115

## Inspection, 107

of abdomen and its viscera, 581

of respiratory system, 226

## Inspiration, accessory, muscles of, 232

## Inspiratory

movement, 231

retraction, 252

## Insufficiency of cardiac valve leaflets caused by dilatation of the valve orifice, 460

## Insular sclerosis, facies in, 164

## Insulin 757

physiologic action 797

shock

and diabetic coma, differential diagnosis, 799

coma in, 103

headache in, 70

## Insurance, life, examination, see Life insurance examination 946

- Intensity of sounds in percussion, 283
- Intention tremor, 98
- Intercostal neuralgia, 72
- diminished vesicular murmur in, 326
  - epigastric pain in, 640
  - hyperpnea in, 254
  - pain in gallbladder in, 619
  - restricted bilateral chest, expansion in 250
  - suppressed cough in, 96
  - voluntary suppression of expansion of chest wall in, 250
- Intermedin, 761
- Intermittent
- albuminuria, 978
  - claudication
    - muscle cramps in, 68
    - pain due to arteritis in, 86
  - hydrarthrosis, knee pain in 84
  - pulse, 410
  - temperature, 48
- Interpolated extrasystole, 520
- Interrenalin, 757, 792
- Interrenin, 792
- Interscapular regions
- auscultation of, 325
  - of chest, 220
  - percussion of, 297
- Interstitial
- emphysema 358
  - keratitis
    - amblyopia in, 61
    - photophobia in, 64
    - nephritis, chronic, 689
- Interventricular septal opening (Roger's disease), 459
- Interventricular septum of heart, 393
- Intestinal
- catarrh, chronic, beefy tongue in, 195
  - colic, coiled posture in, 118
  - diseases
    - amblyopia in, 61
    - hicoughs in, 94
    - vomiting in 91
  - distomiasis, 1071
  - parasites in, 1071
  - symptoms in, 1071
  - neurosis general abdominal pain in, 74
  - obstruction 669
    - acute
      - abdominal tenderness in, 589
      - and acute generalized peritonitis, differential diagnosis, 670
      - and pancreatitis, differential diagnosis 655
      - epigastric pain in, 640
      - fecal vomiting in, 638
      - increase of blood urea nitrogen in 1010
      - vomiting in, 91
    - agonizing pain in, 67
    - chest pain in 74
- Intestinal
- obstruction (*continued*)
    - chronic, lumbosacral pain in, 81
    - constipation in, 92
    - cramps in, 68
    - exaggerated abdominal tympany in, 598
    - general abdominal pain in, 74
    - increase of blood uric acid in, 1010
    - neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001
    - thoracic spinal disease in, 80
  - parasites 1071 1074
  - emaciation in 115
  - teniasis 1074
  - toxemia, hypertension in, 412
  - tumors, 668
    - general abdominal pain in 74
  - ulceration 660
  - worms
    - general abdominal pain in 74
    - infantile convulsions in, 100
    - nausea in 90
- Intestines 656
- topographic anatomy 579
- Intraauricular septal opening, 459
- Intracranial
- pressure signs of, after brain trauma 871
  - tumors tremors in, 98
- Intradermal saline test 544
- Intrathoracic stethoscope of S Solis Cohen, 315
- Intraventricular
- heart block 516
  - advanced 517
  - hemorrhage, 872
- Intravascular rales 342
- Intussusception 40, 669
- rigidity of entire abdomen in 588
  - vomiting in, 636
- Invasion (onset) in fevers, 47
- Inverse type of temperature 48
- Inversion of reflexes 840
- Involuntary nervous system 825
- Involuntary melancholia, 41, 890
- Iodide poisoning purpura in 564
- Iodine tolerance test for hyperthyroidism, 1059
- Ipecac
- as cause of nausea, 90
  - as cause of sweating 50
- Iridochoiritis
- suppurative
    - blindness in 61
    - eye pain in 71
- Iridocyclitis, blindness in, 61
- Iridoplegia, accommodation, with preserved light reflex 177
- Iris examination of 175
- Iritis
- eye pain in 71
  - photophobia in, 64
- Irritable
- bladder, 694
  - colon, 664



- Isch irectal abscess  
   rectal pain in 79  
   sacroiliac pain in 81  
 Islands of Langerhans 797  
   hormone of 757  
 Itching 87  
   atropicism in 87  
   hookworm disease in 1083  
   of anus 671  
 Ivory exostosis 732  
 Ivy poisoning itching in 87  
  
 Jackson's (Chevalier) sign 352  
 Jackson syndrome of 860  
 Janeway's spots 480  
 Japanese river fever differential diagnosis 55  
   type B encephalitis 876  
 Jaundice 129 601  
   acholuric 559  
   bradycardia in 515  
   catarrhal diminished secretion of hippuric  
     acid in 1043  
   chromidrosis in 152  
   discoloration of abdomen in 582  
   epidemic differential diagnosis 56  
   itching in 87  
   obstructive  
     clay colored stools in 1032  
     dark green urine in 971  
     decreased fragility of erythrocytes in 997  
     increased sedimentation rate in 998  
     increase of serum phosphatase in 1042  
     and canuria in 976  
   pruritus ani in 671  
   thrombocytopenia in 1005  
   yellowish discoloration of conjunctiva in 175  
   yellow discoloration of sclera in 175  
   yellow vision in 63  
 Jejunum  
   displacement of 658  
   inflammation of 659  
 Jerky inspiration 327  
 Joffroy's sign 779  
 Joints  
   and bones in the aged 934 937  
   examination of 119  
   physical examination and diseases of 735  
 Jugular veins  
   distention of 540  
   engorgement of 205  
  
 Kakosmia 187  
 Kala azar 1069  
   chronic splenic enlargement in 623  
   decreased neutrophils in 1002  
   differential diagnosis 57  
   increase of serum globulin in 1011  
   leukopenia in 1001  
   prolonged bleeding time in 1070  
   splenic enlargement in 627  
  
 Kala azar (*continued*)  
   tests for  
     antimony 1064  
     formalin 1063  
     water, 1063  
   thrombocytopenia in 1005  
 Kangaroo type of obesity 770  
 Kantar Bauer and Klawans test for pregn. ncv  
   1056  
 Katzenstein's test 444  
 Keloid 144  
 Kerasin 628  
 Keratitis 175  
   eye pain in 71  
   interstitial  
     amblyopia in 61  
     photophobia in 64  
 Kernig's sign 837  
   in meningococcal meningitis 877  
 Ketone bodies in blood 1013  
 Ketosis 1013  
 Kidney 679  
   congestive 690  
   cysts 682  
   disease 679 692  
     cardiac hypertrophy in 477  
     hiccoughs in 94  
     hyperpnea in 254  
     increased respiratory frequency in 327  
     pain in left loin in 77  
   inflammation  
     muscular rigidity in 588  
     tenderness in left upper quadrant in 589  
   lesions neuralgia and myalgia differential  
     diagnosis 680  
   lower border of landmark at third lumbar  
     vertebra 213  
   pelvis of landmark of first lumbar vertebra  
     213  
   polycystic pain in right loin in 77  
   technic for palpating 596  
   topographic anatomy 579  
   toxemic 691  
   tuberculous pain in right loin in 77  
   tumors displacement upward of liver in 601  
   upper border of landmark of twelfth thoracic  
     vertebra 213  
 Klotogen 920  
 Klumpke's palsy 852  
 Knee  
   chest position 117  
   jerk 836  
 Knock knee 744  
 Kowew's test for glanders 1058  
 Koplik's spots 153 197  
 Korsakoff's psychosis 888  
   loss of memory in 887  
 Kraurosis of vulva 697  
   vulvar pain in 87  
 Kron's isthmus 294

- Krukenberg tumor of ovary, 706  
 Kummell's disease, thoracic spinal pain in 80  
 Kupffer cells in liver, 624, 628, 1029  
 Kussmaul's  
   air hunger, 258  
   paradoxical pulse, 410  
   pulse, 473  
   type of breathing, 258  
 Kyphoscoliosis  
   dyspnea in, 257  
   unilateral thoracic retraction in 247  
 Kyphosis  
   hyperpnea in, 256  
   unilateral thoracic retraction in, 247  
 Laboratory examinations  
   evaluation of, 42  
   role of, in diagnosis, 971  
 Labyrinthine vertigo, 851  
 Labyrinthitis  
   partial deafness in, 64  
   vertigo in, 98  
 Lactoflavin, 903, 915  
 Lactogenic hormone of pituitary, 760  
 Lactosuria, 982  
 Laennec's cirrhosis, 606  
 Lagophthalmos, 172  
*Leishmania intestinalis*, 1070  
 Landouzy Dejerine type of progressive muscular atrophy, 866  
 Landry's paralysis, 865  
   paralysis of pharynx in, 193  
 Language function, examination of, 844  
 Languor, 96  
 Larva migrans, 1084  
 Laryngeal  
   cough, 95  
   diphtheria, 40  
   obstruction  
     bilateral diminution of chest expansion in, 250  
     inspiratory retraction of suprasternal notch in 252  
     retraction of head in, 162  
   stenosis  
     diminished vocal resonance in 334  
     exophthalmos in 180  
 Laryngismus stridulous, 40  
   inspiratory retraction of suprasternal notch in 252  
 Laryngitis  
   aphonia in 94  
   cough in, 95  
   diseases of  
     aphonia in 94  
     cyanosis in 128  
     effect of fremitus, 270  
 Larynx, examination of, 122  
 Lassitude, 96  
 Lateral  
   aspects of chest 219  
   chest expansion, palpating for, 262  
   sclerosis  
     increased knee jerk in 836  
     primary increased tendon reflexes in, 833  
   sinus thrombosis 873  
     distention of veins of scalp in, 540  
 Lateropulsion and lateral deviation of body, 851  
 Lawrence Biedl syndrome, 767, 770  
 night blindness in, 61  
 supernumerary fingers and toes in, 739  
 Laydan's persistent vomiting, 636  
 Lead  
   colic  
     rigidity of entire abdomen in, 588  
     scaphoid abdomen in, 586  
   poisoning  
     chronic  
       abdominal tenderness in, 589  
       pallor in, 127  
       bloody stools in 1032  
       bluish line on gums in, 190  
       Cabot's ring bodies in, 997  
       color blindness in, 64  
       constipation in, 92  
       decreased fragility of erythrocytes in, 997  
       decrease of uric acid in urine in 974  
       epigastric pain in 641  
       general abdominal pain in, 74  
       hematoporphyrimuria in 987  
       hemolytic anemia in, 560  
       increase of blood uric acid in, 1010  
       nausea in 90  
       neuritis in 85  
       sallowiness of face in, 167  
       scotomata in, 63  
       stippling of red cells in, 996  
       tremors in 98  
       wrist drop in 742  
 Lederer's anemia 559  
 Left ventricular shunt, 459  
 Leg injury, 959  
*Leishmania donovani*, 1068  
   tropica 1068, 1070  
 Leishmaniasis  
   American 1070  
   Americana ulcers in, 149  
   Brazilian, 1070  
   cutaneous, 1070  
     Aleppo boil 1070  
     Delhi boil 1070  
     Oriental sore 1070  
   decreased neutrophils in, 1002  
   espundia 1070  
   leukopenia in, 1001  
   mucocutaneous 149, 1070  
   nasopharyngeal 1070  
   visceral (see kala azar), 1069  
 Lenticular degeneration, progressive, tremors in 98

- Lentiginos (lentigo freckles) 132 137  
 Leontiasis  
   ossea  
     amblyopia in, 61  
     macrocephalus in, 158  
     skull in 159  
   ossium, 729  
 Leprosy  
   anesthesia in, 60  
   asymmetry of head in, 161  
   gangrene of extremities in, 748  
   increase of serum globulin in, 1011  
   leonine face in, 160  
   leukopenia in 1001  
   macrocephalus in 158  
   skin lesions in 137  
   tubercles in, 145  
 Leptomeningitis, acute spinal 879  
 Leptospiro icterohemorrhagiae, 56, 1067  
 Lesser curvature of stomach, topographic anat  
   omy, 576  
 Leukemia 567  
 Leukemia (leukosis), 41, 566  
   acute  
     hyperemia of buccal mucosa in, 153  
     mouth rash in 153  
     petechiae of mouth in 153  
     uterine bleeding in, 700  
   chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
   *diazo reaction* in 987  
   enlargement of both liver and spleen in 627  
   enlargement of liver in, 609  
   epistaxis in 186  
   hematemesis in 637  
   Howell Jolly bodies in 997  
   increased metabolic rate in 1045  
   increased urinary phosphates in 975  
   increase of blood uric acid in 1010  
   increase of uric acid in urine in 974  
   leukopenia in aleukemia stage, 1001  
   lymphatic  
     decreased neutrophils in 1002  
     lymphocytosis in 1002  
     neck glands in, 201  
   monocytic increased monocytes in 1003  
   myelogenous increase of serum globulin in,  
     1011  
   pallor in 127  
   petechial rash in 134  
   polychromatophilia in 996  
   purpura in, 564  
   splenic enlargement in, 626  
   spongy gums in 190  
   stippling of red cells in, 997  
   tarry stools in 1032  
   urinating in, 92  
 Leukemic retinitis, 179  
 Leukemoid reaction, 568  
 Leukocytes 1000  
 Leukoerythroblastic anemia, 561  
 Leukopenia, 1001  
 Leukoplakia, 194  
   fissures of tongue in, 193  
   of vulva, 697  
 Leukoplakia, white areas of mouth in, 153  
 Leukosarcoma, 568  
 Leukosis see Leukemia, 41, 566  
 Levinson test for cerebrospinal tuberculosis,  
   1062  
 Levulose test of glycogenic function of liver  
   1044  
 Lice 1092  
 Lichen  
   itching in, 87  
   planus  
     papules in, 143  
     of penis, 710  
     white areas of mouth in, 153  
 Life expectation at specified ages, 930, 931  
 Life insurance examination 946  
   form of questionnaire 947  
   general examination, 950  
   history 950  
   objective examination, 947  
     age, 947  
     identification 947  
     occupation, 948  
     race, sex marital state 949  
   physical examination, 951  
     abdomen and lower extremity 954  
     cardiac examination, 953  
     general appearance, 952  
     neurologic investigation 954  
     pulmonary examination, 952  
     urinalysis, 954  
 Lightning stroke, blindness in 61  
 Lilliputian 769  
 Limping gait, 121  
 Linca  
   albicantes 583  
   nigra, 583  
 Lingula, 220  
 Lingual  
   pain, 197  
   tumors, 193  
 Linzenmeier's time method of blood sedimenta  
   tion test, 997  
 Lipodystrophia progressiva, 767, 770  
 Lipodystrophy, obesity in, 89  
 Lipoid histiocytosis 626  
   nephrosis, 691  
 Lipomata  
   of abdomen 591  
   of bone, 733  
   of penis, 710  
 Lips examination of, 187  
 Lissauer's tract of spinal cord, 820  
 Lithemia  
   increased acidity of urine in, 972  
   increased urinary oxalates in 976  
 Litten's diaphragmatic, phenomenon sign 253

## Liver

- abscess, 608
    - as cause of chills, 59
    - chest pain in, 73
  - and appendages, disease of, differential diagnosis, 613
  - atrophy, acute, decreased urinary chlorides in 974
  - diseases, of, 601
    - cardiac hypertrophy in, 477
    - causing diminution in size, 615
    - constipation in, 92
    - decreased sedimentation rate in, when associated with jaundice, 998
    - decreased urinary urea in 974
    - decrease of urinary hippuric acid in, 976
    - heartburn in, 90
    - hiccoughs in, 94
    - muscular rigidity in, 588
    - purpura in, 564
    - right hypochondrial pain in, 76
    - tenderness in right upper quadrant in 589
    - vomiting in, 91
  - enlarged, hyperpnea in, 255
  - enlargement of, 605, 1069
  - function tests, 1040
  - in vitamin A deficiency, 899
  - physical examination, 600
  - spots, 130
  - technic, for palpating, 596
  - topographic anatomy, 577
  - tumors, distention of superficial abdominal veins in, 541
- Loa loa, 1081
- Lobar pneumonia, 362
  - as cause of rigors, 59
  - bronchial breathing in, 329
  - bronchophony in, 334
  - bronchovesicular breathing in 330
  - decreased lymphocytes in, 1003
  - differential diagnosis, 53
  - dilatation of alae nasi in, 186
  - facies in, 167
  - herpes facialis in, 138
  - increased abdominal respiration (in infants) in, 250
  - increase of blood chlorides in 1012
  - increase of fibrinogen of plasma in 1011
  - insomnia in, 97
  - jaundice of conjunctiva in, 153
  - moist cough in 95
  - neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001
  - one sided redness of face in 128
  - pain in right iliac fossa in, 78
  - rusty sputum in 1034
  - shortened inspiration ending in expiratory grunt in 259
  - sputum in 1036
  - subcrepitant rales in 340
  - tympany in, 305, 309

Lobar pneumonia (*continued*)

- unilateral enlargement of chest in, 243
  - unilateral posture in, 118
  - unilateral thoracic enlargement in 245
  - wavy expansion in, 252
- Lobes of lungs, 221
- Lobstein's cancer, 669
- Lobular pneumonia, 40
- Local examination, 121
- Localization of brain tumors, cysts and abscesses, 870
- Locomotive system in the aged 935
- Locomotor ataxia, see Tabes dorsalis
- Lockjaw, see Tetanus
- Loewenberg's signs in bronchiectasis, 309
- functional aortic regurgitation 489
- Loewi's test for pancreatitis and hyperthyroidism 1060
- Loewy's sign, 779
- Longevity general and individual 930
- Long's coefficient in estimating total solids in urine, 973
- Lorain Levy type of infantilism 768
- Lordosis
  - hyperpnea in 256
  - unilateral thoracic retraction in 247
- Loudness of sounds in percussion, 283
- Louis' angle, 209
- Louping ill, 1090
- Lower extremities, 743
  - motor neuron (peripheral), 842
- Lowry's sign, 654
- Ludwig's angina, macroglossia in, 193
- Lumbago, 80
  - aching pains in, 68
- Lumbar
  - plexus, lesions of trunks of 854
  - regions, anatomic landmarks 575
  - vertebra 213
- Lumbosacral pain, 80
  - pain in right loin in, 77
- Lumpy jaw (see Actinomycosis), 1093
- Lung
  - apex of, diseases of, aphonia in 93
  - collapse of, absence of fremitus in 277
  - consolidation
    - bronchophony in, 534
    - dullness in, 299
    - increased cardiac dullness in, 421
    - increased intensity of both heart sounds in, 431
    - increased vocal fremitus in, 274
    - increased vocal resonance in, 334
  - diseases, see Pulmonary disease, 355
  - examination of 122
  - fissure, great, 212
  - infiltration of, increased vocal fremitus in, 274
  - posterior lower limit of landmark of tenth thoracic vertebra, 213
  - reflex, 311

- Lung** (*continued*)  
 root of landmark of fifth thoracic vertebra 213  
 topographic and regional anatomy 220  
 tumors 368  
 vital capacity of 445
- Lupus**  
 disseminatus 153  
 erythematosus  
 red nose in 186  
 scales in 147  
 vulgaris  
 tubercles in 144  
 ulcers in 148
- Luteal hormone** function of 804
- Luteoma** 705
- Lymph**  
 glands affections of 40  
 node disease 546
- Lymphadenitis** 546
- Lymphadenoma** see Hodgkin's disease 569
- Lymphangiectasis** 545
- Lymphangioma of ovary** 704
- Lymphangitis** 545
- Lymphatic**  
 leukemia 566  
 system 545
- Lymphatism** 785
- Lymphedema** 752
- Lymphoblastoma** see Hodgkin's disease 569
- Lymphocele**, 713
- Lymphocytes** 1002
- Lymphocytic meningitis** acute 878
- Lymphogranuloma inguinale** 696 709  
 Frei test 1059  
 increased fibrinogen of plasma in 1011  
 increase of serum globulin in 1011  
 stricture of rectum in 675
- Lymphoma** malignant see Hodgkin's disease 569
- Lymphopathia venereum** 696 699
- Lymphosarcoma** 546 569
- Lysis** 43
- Machinery** murmur 459
- MacLean and deWesselow's** urea concentration test 1039
- Macrocephalus** 158
- Macrocytes** 552 996
- Macrocytic hyperchromic anemia** 553  
 glossitis in, 72
- Macrogenitosoma precoc** 89 783 803
- Macroglossa** 193 1093
- Macular retinitis** 179
- Macules** 131 1083
- Madura foot**, ulcerations in 149 1094
- Maggot** 1086 1087
- Magnus and de Kleijn** tonic neck reflex 841
- Malade d Roger** 505
- Malaise** 96
- Malaria** 57  
 acute enlargement of spleen in 622  
 as cause of chills 59  
 as cause of chronic myocarditis 475  
 as cause of sweating 50  
 chronic  
 hyperpnea in 256  
 pallor in 127  
 decreased neutrophils in 1002  
 enlargement of liver in 615  
 eosinophilia in 1002  
 eye pain in 71  
 fatty liver in 609  
 hematemesis in 637  
 hemolytic anemia in 560  
 herpes of lips in 188  
 increased monocytes in 1003  
 increase of serum globulin in 1011  
 leukopenia in 1001  
 sallowness of face in 167  
 thrombocytopenia preceding chills 1005  
 vectors of 1087 1089
- Malarial**  
 cachexia enlargement of both liver and spleen in 627  
 fever hyperidrosis in 152  
 parasites 57 1067 1089
- Male genital organs** 706
- Malignancy**  
 of bone 733  
 of bony thorax pain on motion in 73  
 of lungs 369  
 of penis 710  
 of prostate 717  
 of testes 715
- Malignant**  
 adenoma of uterus 702  
 hydatidiform mole 703  
 lymphoma see Hodgkin's disease 569  
 neutropenia, 569  
 pustule see Anthrax  
 tumors  
 of bowel 669  
 of ovary 705
- Malinger** 955  
 blindness in 61
- Malleus** see Glands
- Malnutrition**  
 emaciation in 115  
 weakness in, 96
- Malta fever** lymphocytosis in 1002
- Mammæ** symptoms and physical signs of diseases of 382
- Mammary**  
 glands 211  
 regions  
 auscultation of 324  
 percussion of 296  
 of chest 216  
 palpation of 263
- Mamillary line of thorax** 214

- Mania**  
   bradycardia in, 408  
   happus in, 178  
   increased knee jerk in, 836  
**Mansonilla**, 1081  
**Manic-depressive psychosis**, 891  
**Mantoux intracutaneous test for tuberculosis**  
   1061  
**Manubrium**, lower level of, landmark of ninth  
   thoracic vertebra, 213  
**Mappy tongue**, 194  
**Marasmus**  
   emaciation in, 115  
   enophthalmos in, 180  
   gangrene of extremities in, 749  
   rapid emaciation in, 89  
**Marble-bone disease**, 732  
**Marie's view of aphasia**, 843  
**Masculinoblastoma**, 705  
**Masseter reflex**, 838  
**Mass reflex**, 842  
**Mastigophora**, 1068  
**Mastitis** 383  
**Mastoiditis**  
   acute, displacement of auricle in, 183  
   edema behind ear in, 184  
**Maxillary reflex**, 838  
**Mazer-Hoffman (estrin) test for pregnancy**  
   1056  
**Mazoplasia**, 384  
**McBurney's point**, 579  
**Measles**, 40  
   abnormal moisture of conjunctivae in, 175  
   blepharitis in, 172  
   differential diagnosis, 55  
   eosinophilia in, 1002  
   eye pain in, 71  
   generalized red macular eruption in, 133  
   itching in, 87  
   leukopenia in, 1001  
   malignant, hemorrhagic eruption in, 135  
   mouth rash in, 153  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
   papules in, 143  
   photophobia in, 64  
   purpura in, 564  
   rash on palate in, 197  
   redness of pharynx in, 198  
   thrombocytopenia in, 1005  
   ulcers of tongue in, 194  
   watery discharge from nose in, 186  
**Meatus of ear**, 184  
**Meckel's diverticulum** 668  
**Median**  
   bar, 716  
   nerve lesions, 853  
**Mediastinal**  
   abscess, as cause of local sweating, 50  
   adenitis, 384a  
   aneurysm, dyspnea in, 92, 384c  
   diseases of, 384  
   Mediastinal (*continued*)  
   emphysema, 384d  
   hemorrhage, 384d  
   syndrome, 384b  
     lower, 384c  
     superior 384c  
   tumors, 384b  
     aphonia in, 94  
     collar of Stokes in, 384c  
     cyanosis in, 128, 129, 384b  
     displacement of apex beat in, 399  
     distention of jugular veins in, 541  
     dry cough in, 95  
     dyspnea in, 92  
     edema of face in, 169  
     edema of face and neck in, 88  
     engorgement of jugular veins in, 205  
     hyperpnea in, 255  
     laryngeal cough in, 95  
     local bulging of chest wall in, 248  
     pain in, 73, 467  
     paroxysmal cough in, 95  
     precordial pulsation in, 396  
     restricted bilateral chest expansion in, 250  
     shoulder pain in, 83  
     thoracic spinal pain in, 80  
**Mediastinitis**  
   acute simple 384  
   suppurative, 384a  
   agonizing pain in, 67  
   chronic abscess, 384a  
   indurative 384a  
   suppurative, 384a  
   epigastric tenderness in, 589  
   Pick's disease in, 384a  
**Mediastinum**  
   anatomy, 388  
   superior, lowest limit of, landmark for th rd  
     thoracic vertebra 213  
**Mediate**  
   auscultation, 313, 422  
   percussion, 286, 287  
     of heart, 416  
**Medina worm** 1078  
**Medinal poisoning, hypopnea in**, 258  
**Mediterranean fever**, 561  
**Medulla oblongata** 815  
   lesions of, 866  
**Megacolon**, 667  
   constipation in, 671  
**Megaloblasts** 552, 996  
**Megalocytic anemia, tropical** 555  
**Megalonychosis** 743  
**Meige's disease**, 546  
**Melancholia**  
   bradycardia in, 408  
   involuntal, 41, 890  
   spasm of tongue in, 196  
**Melanoma of vagina**, 699  
**Melanophoric hormone of pituitary**, 761  
**Melanotic sarcoma, black urine in**, 971

- Membranous gastritis, 645  
 Memory, 887  
   defects, in the aged, 934  
   Klang associations, 887  
 Mendel Bechterew  
   reflex, 837  
 Mendelsohn's test, 444  
 Mendel's test for tuberculosis, 1061  
 Meniere's disease, 928  
   nausea in, 90  
   partial deafness in 64  
   reflex headache in, 70  
   tinnitus aurium in, 65, 185  
   vertigo in, 98  
   vomiting in, 92, 636  
 Meningeal  
   breathing, 259  
   hemorrhage, 872  
   hypopnea in, 258  
 Meninges diseases of hiccoughs in, 94  
 Meningismus 879  
   retraction of head in 162  
 Meningitides differential diagnosis, 57  
   classification of 57 877-880  
 Meningitis 40 57 877 880  
   abdominal tenderness in, 589  
   acute retraction of head in, 162  
   basal  
     anosmia in, 187  
     hypopnea in 93  
     paralysis of pharynx in 198  
     paralysis of uvula in, 197  
   Biot's respiration in 327  
   bradycardia in, 408, 515  
   cerebral, myosis in, 176  
   cerebrospinal  
     as cause of chills, 59  
     diplopia in, 62  
     hyperesthesia in 60  
   cervical pain in, 80  
   chronic, 879  
   cloudy spinal fluid in 1024  
   coma in 102  
   convulsions in 877  
   delirium in 877  
   distention of veins of scalp in, 540  
   epidemic, thrombocytopenia in, 1005  
   facial spasm in, 170  
   headache in, 69  
   herpes labialis in, 153  
   hippus in, 178  
   hyperpnea in, 256  
   hypopnea in, 258  
   increased knee jerk in, 836  
   increased spinal fluid, pressure in, 1025  
   increased urinary sulfates in, 975  
   insomnia in, 97  
   myosis in, 176  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
   opisthotonos in, 118  
   orthotonos in, 119  
   Meningitis (*continued*)  
     photophobia in, 64  
     psychic manifestations in, 877  
     rigid dorsal posture in, 118  
     rigidity of entire abdomen in, 588  
     rigidity of neck in, 200 877  
     scaphoid abdomen in, 586  
     signs and symptoms in, 877  
     spinal, pain along spine in, 81  
     types of, 879  
     vomiting in, 877  
   Meningococcic meningitis, 878  
   Meningoencephalitis, increased tendon reflexes  
     in, 833  
   Meningomyelitis, 877  
     increased tendon reflexes in, 833  
   Menopause  
     alternate redness and pallor of face in 168  
     itching in, 87  
     pruritus ani in, 671  
     vulvar pain and itching in, 87  
   Menstruation, 804  
   Mensuration 112  
     of normal thorax, 233  
   Mental disease, 886  
     classification of, 887  
     constipation in, 92  
     special symptoms, 892  
   Mentality, in the aged, 934  
   Mercury  
     bichloride poisoning  
       anuria in 970  
       cystitis in, 693  
       hematemesis in, 638  
       toxic gastritis in, 645  
     poisoning  
       abdominal tenderness in, 589  
       acute nephritis in, 687  
       amblyopia in, 61  
       bloody stools in, 1032  
       chronic, pallor in 127  
       erythema or purpura in 135  
       general abdominal pain in 74  
       hemoglobinuria in, 985  
       nausea in, 90  
       spongy gums in, 190  
       toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
       tremors in, 98  
     stomatitis  
       bluish red tint of gums in, 190  
       dental caries in, 192  
   Merklen test, 445  
   Meroparesthesia, 60  
   Meropia, 61  
   Mesenteric  
     embolism, 668  
     thrombosis, 668  
       abdominal tenderness in 589  
       chest pain in, 74  
       diarrhea in, 92

- Mesenteric  
   thrombosis (*continued*)  
     general abdominal pain in 74  
     hematemesis in, 638  
     lumbosacral pain in, 81  
 Mesenterium commune, 580  
 Mesospinal line of thorax, 215  
 Mesosternal (midsternal) line of thorax 214  
 Metagonimus yokogawai, 107  
 Metallic  
   cough, 95  
   tinkling, 346  
 Metamorphosed breathing 331  
 Metatarsalgia, knee pain in, 84  
 Metazoa, 1065, 1071  
 Methylchloride poisoning, hemolytic anemia in 560  
 Microblasts, 552  
 Microcephalus, 161  
 Microcytes, 552, 996  
 Microcytic hypochromic anemia, 555  
   glossitis in, 72  
 Microfilaria, 1080  
 Microglia, 628  
 Microglossia, 193  
 Micromazia, 382  
 Midaxillary (mesoaxillary) line of thorax, 215  
 Midclavicular line of thorax, 214  
 Middle  
   age, diseases of, 41  
   cervical ganglion, landmark of fifth cervical vertebra, 212  
   ear disease  
     deafness in 185  
     nausea in 90  
     tinnitus aurium in, 65, 185  
 Midges, 1086  
 Migraine, 70, 928  
   acid vomitus in, 637  
   as cause of local sweating, 50  
   eye pain in, 71  
   hemianopsia in, 63  
   hyperesthesia in, 60  
   hyperhidrosis in, 152  
   increased eosinophils in, 1002  
   nausea in, 90  
   ophthalmoplegic, diplopia in, 62  
   photophobia in, 64  
   scotomata in, 63  
   temporary aphonia and aphasia in, 94  
   vomiting in, 91, 636  
 Mikulicz's disease, 546  
   ptosis in 173  
   swelling of salivary glands in 203  
 Miliaria eruption in, 139  
 Miliary  
   fever, as cause of sweating, 50  
   tuberculosis  
     acute, 374  
     choroid tubercles in, 180  
     splenic enlargement in, 623  
   Milroy's disease 546, 752  
   Mimic spasm of face, 170  
   Miners anemia, 1083  
   Mingazzini's view of aphasia, 844  
   Mites 1090  
 Mitral  
   area, auscultation of, 423  
   disease, 41  
   orifice landmark for seventh thoracic vertebra, 213  
   regurgitation, 481  
     anasarca in, 482  
     area of transmission of murmur, 453  
     cyanosis in, 482  
     degree of cardiac hypertrophy in 454  
     displacement of apex beat in, 482  
     dyspnea on exertion in, 482  
     epigastric pulsation in, 482  
     influence of decompensation on murmur, 457  
     myosis in, 176  
     orthopnea in, 482  
     pulsation at root of neck in, 482  
     systolic thrill in 482  
     time of occurrence of murmur and its mechanism, 450  
     violent venous pulsation in, 482  
   stenosis, 483  
     anasarca in, 485  
     area of transmission of murmur, 453  
     auricular fibrillation in, 485  
     cardiac hypertrophy in, 477  
     congestion and enlargement of liver in, 485  
     cyanosis in, 485  
     degree of cardiac hypertrophy in 454  
     differential diagnosis 486  
     dyspnea in 485  
     hematemesis in 638  
     hoarseness in 485  
     hypotension in 413  
     increased intensity of first sound in 432  
     influence of decompensation on murmur, 457  
     nausea in, 90  
     palpitation on exertion in, 485  
     paroxysmal pain in, 467  
     paroxysmal tachycardia in, 514  
     pulmonary hemorrhage in, 485  
     pulmonary hypertension in 494  
     presystolic murmur in 486  
     presystolic thrill in, 485  
     time of occurrence of murmur and its mechanism, 451  
     uterine bleeding in, 700  
     vomiting in, 91  
   valve, 390  
     clinical position, 391  
     functional, murmurs, 460  
 Mixed leukemia 567  
 Modal change, 848  
 Moebius' sign 182, 778, 857  
 Moeller's glossitis 72



- Moist  
   cough, 95  
   rales, 339  
 Moisture  
   excessive of mucous membranes 153  
   of skin 152  
 Moles, 137  
 Mollities ossium, see Osteomalacia 735  
 Monaural stethoscope, 314  
 Monckeberg's sclerosis, 525  
 Mongolian idiocy  
   facies in 166  
 Monobiasis 1095  
   cutaneous 1096  
   pulmonary, 1096  
 Monocular diplopia 62  
 Monocytes 1001  
 Monocytic leukemia 568  
 Mononucleosis infectious, 203 569, 1059  
   decreased neutrophils in 1002  
   differential diagnosis 58  
   heterophile antibody test, 1059, 1064  
   increased monocytes in, 1001  
   lymphocytosis in, 1002  
   severe leukocytosis in, 1000  
 Monoplagia limping gait in, 121  
 Morbidity in the aged 933  
 Morbilli see Measles 40  
 Morbus maculosis werlhofii, see Purpura hem  
   orrhagic, 563  
 Morbus maculosus  
   neonatorum, 562  
   of Werhof, 563  
 Moro test for tuberculosis, 1061  
 Morphea 884  
   as cause of local anidrosis 59  
   skin lesions in 138  
 Morphine poisoning  
   tremors in 98  
   vertigo in 97  
 Morphism  
   as cause of sweating, 50  
   general abdominal pain in, 74  
   psychosis in 888  
 Mors thymica, 788  
 Mortality and morbidity tables, 930 933  
 Mosenthal test of kidney function, 1040  
 Mosquitoes 1087 1090  
   anopheline 1087  
   culicini, 1087  
   differential diagnoses between male and fe-  
   male and between the two types, 1087-  
   1090  
 Mosquitolike insects and their larvae, 1090  
 Moss classification for blood grouping 1006  
 Motility  
   disturbances of, 845  
   examination of 830  
 Motor  
   aphasia, 94  
   cortex, lesions of, 868  
   neurosis of stomach, 650  
   pathways of brain, 812  
 Mountain sickness, tinnitus aurium in, 65, 185  
 Mouth  
   breathing  
     fissures of tongue in, 72  
     stupid expression in, 164  
   examination of, 122, 187  
 Mucocoele of eyelids, 172  
 Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis, 1070  
 Mucous  
   click, 340  
   colitis  
     colicky pain in, 77  
     constipation in, 92  
     diagnosis, 666  
     diarrhea in, 92  
     general abdominal pain in, 74  
     glossodynia in, 72  
     physical examination, 666  
     symptoms, 666  
   gastritis, 647  
   membranes examination of, 113 152  
   patches of penis 708  
   rales, 339  
 Mulberry tongue, 195  
 Multiple  
   myeloma, see Myeloma, multiple, 734  
   myoma, see Myoma, multiple  
   neuritis  
     anesthesia in, 60  
     as cause of local sweating, 50  
     gait in, 851  
   sclerosis, 41 864  
     anesthesia in, 60  
     color blindness in, 64  
     diplopia in, 62  
     loss of abdominal reflex in, 834  
     nystagmus in 847  
     pain along spine in, 81  
     spasm of tongue in, 196  
     tremors in, 98, 846  
     vertigo in, 97  
 Mumps, 40  
   leukopenia in 1001  
   lymphocytosis in, 1002  
   neck swelling in, 202  
   pain in testes in, 86  
   swelling of submaxillary glands in 202  
 Murrurs, congenital heart, 458  
   nonorganic (functional), 460  
   organic acquired, 448-458  
 Musca domestica, 1084  
 Muscae volitantes, 63  
 Muscle  
   cramps (spasms), 99  
   joint sense, 830  
   sounds in chest in auscultation, 348  
   tonus, 847

- Muscles of lower extremities, 743
- Muscular
- atrophy, 40
  - decreased urinary creatinine in, 976
  - development, 114
  - dystrophy, 40
  - progressive, cyanosis in, 128
  - rigidity of abdomen, 587
- Musculature in the aged, 935
- Musculocutaneous nerve lesions, 853
- Musculospiral
- nerve lesion, 853
  - paralysis, wrist drop in, 742
- Musical murmurs, 464
- Myalgia
- aching pains in 68
  - hyperpnea in, 254
  - neuralgia, and kidney lesions, differential diagnosis, 680
  - of scalp, reflex headache in, 70
- Myasthenia gravis, 788, 881
- cyanosis in, 128
  - diplopia in, 62
  - ptosis in, 173
  - weakness in, 96
- Myasthenic
- facies, 165
  - reaction, of Jolly, 848
- Mycetoma ulcerations in, 149, 1094
- Mycosis, 1093
- itching in, 87
- Mycotic and Monilia infections, 1093
- Mycotic gastritis, 645
- Mydriasis, 176, 177
- Myelalgia, occipitocervical abnormal fixity of head in, 162
- Myelitis
- acute
    - hyperesthesia in, 60
    - increased urinary sulfates in 975
    - vomiting in, 636  - chronic, paralytic gait in, 120
  - gangrene of extremities in 749
  - increased tendon reflexes in 833
  - loss of sphincter control in 839
  - pain along spine in, 81
  - priapism in, 710
  - reaction of degeneration in 848
  - transverse
    - anesthesia in 60
    - hypogastric pain in, 79
    - purpura in 564
- Myeloblasts, 1002
- Myeloblastic leukemia, acute 566
- Myelocytes 1002
- Myelocytic
- anemia megaloblasts in, 996
  - (myeloid) leukemia (splenomedullary), 566
- Myeloid
- leukemia, increased urinary sulfates in, 975
  - sarcomata, 734
- Myeloma, multiple 734
- increase of blood uric acid in 1010
  - increased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011
  - increase of serum globulin in, 1011
  - ostalgia in, 81
  - shoulder pain in 83
- Myeloplasmic anemia, 561
- Myiasis 1086
- Myocardial degeneration
- absence of visible apex beat in, 401
  - dissociation by interference in, 516
  - hyperpnea in 255
  - vomiting in, 636
- Myocardial failure, tachycardia in, 513
- Myocarditis, 41
- acute 474
    - cardiac palpitation with irregularity in, 474
    - palpitation in, 96
    - primary acute 474
    - rheumatic 474
    - secondary acute 474
    - septic 474  - as cause of sweating, 50
  - bradycardia in, 515
  - chronic, 475
    - accentuation of second aortic sound in, 476
    - arrhythmia in 475
    - displacement of apex beat in, 475
    - feeble first sound in 476
    - syncope in 101
    - vomiting in 91  - dyspnea in 93 466
  - embryocardia in, 475
  - epigastric tenderness in 589
  - sinus tachycardia in, 438
- Myoclonus 847
- Myoma
- multiple abnormal compressibility of skull in 158
  - of uterus 701
- Myomata of abdomen, 591
- Myometritis, 701
- Myopathic face 165
- Myopia 61 182
- Myosis 176, 177
- Myositis ossificans, cyanosis in, 128
- Myotonia cramps in 99
- Myotonic reaction, 848
- Myxedema, 780
- as cause of anidrosis 59
  - alopecia in 163
  - anidrosis in 152
  - atrophy of hair in 163
  - bradycardia in, 408
  - Chagas' disease in, 1069
  - coma in 104
  - coarse broad nose in, 186
  - edema in, 151
  - facies in, 164
  - hypercholesterolemia in, 1043
  - macroglossia in, 193

Myxedema (*continued*)

- macrocephalus in, 158
- pallor in, 127
- prolongation of circulation time in, 447
- skull in, 159
- vomiting in, 91

## Nails abnormalities of, 743

## Naphthoquinone 920

## Nasal

- catarrh watery discharge from nose in, 186
- disease, anemia in 65
- obstruction 186
  - excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in, 153
  - itching in, 87
  - lost or perverted taste in, 65
  - tinnitus aurium in, 185

## polyps

- dry cough in, 95
- sneezing in, 94

## reflex, 835

## Nasopharyngeal catarrh redness of pharynx in, 198

## leishmaniasis 1070

## Nausea 90 639

## Nearsight, 182

## Necatur americanus, 1083

## Neck

- examination of 122 199
- pulsations of 204
- rashes on, 206
- rigidity of, 200
- sign of Brudzinski, 841
- tenderness of, 205
- tumors, distention of veins of scalp in, 540

## Nematodes, 1077

## Neoplasms of lung, 368

## Nephritis

- acute, 686
  - high specific gravity of urine in, 973
  - nausea in, 90
  - oliguria in, 970
  - vomiting in 636
- albuminuria in, 979
- as cause of chronic myocarditis, 475
- bluish white discoloration of conjunctiva in, 175
- chronic, 687
  - arcus senilis in 175
  - gastritis in, 645
  - glomerular vomiting in, 92
  - hematemesis in 637
  - interstitial
    - as cause of anidrosis, 59
    - low specific gravity of urine in 972
    - pale urine in 970
    - polyuria in 970
    - vertigo in, 97
  - mitral stenosis in 484
  - parenchymatous, and chronic interstitial, differential diagnosis 688

## Nephritis

chronic (*continued*)

- parenchymatous, high specific gravity of urine in, 973
- pericarditis in, 468
- purpura in, 564
- decrease of uric acid of urine in, 974
- edema of lower eyelids in, 88
- edema of uvula in, 197
- glomerular, general edema in, 88
- hemorrhagic retinitis in, 179
- hypertension in, 412
- increase of blood chlorides in edema, 1012
- increase of blood uric acid in, 1010
- itching in 87
- lumbosacral pain in, 81
- pain in right loin in, 77
- pallor in, 127
- partial deafness in, 64
- pruritus ani in, 671
- rectal bleeding in, 672
- weakness in, 96
- with edema, decrease of urinary chlorides in, 974

## Nephrolithiasis

- chest pain in, 73
- epigastric pain in, 75
- pain in penis in, 87
- pain in right loin in, 77
- pain in testes in, 87
- thigh pain in, 84
- vomiting in, 91, 92

## Nephrosis, 687, 691

- albuminuria in, 979
- chronic, vomiting in 92
- decreased urinary chlorides in 974
- decrease of blood urea nitrogen in, 1010
- edema in, 88
- general edema in, 88
- hydrothorax in, 243
- lipoid, 691
  - hypotension in 412
- low metabolic rate in 1045
- pallor in, 127
- toxic, 691

## Nerve

- fibers 810
- injuries, local as cause of local anidrosis, 59
- injury, hyperesthesia in, 60
- pain and tenderness 85
- spinal 823
- trunk, 811

## Nervous

- affections, parosmia in, 65
- diseases
  - constipation in, 92
  - dyspnea in 93
- dyspepsia 649
- system 809
- allergic manifestations, 928

- Nervous**  
 system (*continued*)  
 anatomy, physiology, and examination of 809  
 diseases of, 852  
 examination of, 123  
 in history taking, 38  
 in the aged, 935, 937  
 in vitamin A deficiency, 899  
 in vitamin B<sub>1</sub> deficiency, 902
- Nervousness, diarrhea in, 92**
- Neufeld method for typing pneumococci 1054**
- Neuralgia, 85, 855**  
 abdominal, abdominal tenderness in, 589  
 acute pain in, 67  
 causalgia in, 68  
 intercostal, 72  
   suppressed cough in, 96  
 myalgia, and kidney lesions, differential diagnosis, 680  
 of breast, 383  
 of chest wall, chest pain in, 72  
 of testicles, 715  
 purpura in, 564  
 reflex headache in, 70  
 trigeminal  
   glossodynia in, 72  
   hyperesthesia in, 60  
   photophobia in, 64  
   unilateral sweating in, 152
- Neurasthenia, 886**  
 anosmia in, 187  
 dreams and nightmares in, 97  
 hyperpnea in, 256  
 increased urinary oxalates in, 976  
 nausea in, 90, 639  
 pain along spine in, 81  
 reflex headache in 70  
 sweating of hands in, 152  
 temporary aphonia and aphasia in, 94  
 tremors in, 846  
 vertigo in, 97  
 vomiting in 91
- Neuritis, 85, 855**  
 acute pain in, 67  
 alcoholic, cramps in, 99  
 anesthesia of pharynx in 198  
 anterior crural, thigh pain in 84  
 brachial, shoulder pain in, 83  
 hyperesthesia in 60  
 increased reflexes in, 832  
 multiple  
   absence of tendo achilles reflex in, 837  
   anesthesia in, 60  
   as cause of local sweating 50  
 of chest wall, chest pain in 72  
 paralysis of pharynx in 198  
 paralysis of uvula in, 197  
 retrobulbar  
   blindness in, 61
- Neuritis**  
 retrobulbar (*continued*)  
 color blindness in, 64  
 eye pain in, 71
- Neuroblastoma of adrenal medulla, 796**
- Neurocirculatory asthenia, 796**  
 functional murmurs in, 461  
 palpitation in, 96  
 precordial distress in 467  
 sinus tachycardia in 438  
 tremors in 99  
 vertigo in 97  
 weakness in, 96
- Neurodermatitis, pruritus ani in, 671**
- Neurofibromatosis tubercles in, 144**
- Neurologic examination, 828**
- Neuron 809**  
 lower motor (peripheral), 813 842  
 upper motor (central), 813, 842
- Neuroses (see also Functional diseases of the nervous system), 885**  
 angio, 883  
 anorexia in, 90  
 as cause of sweating, 50  
 aversion to certain foods in, 90  
 cervical pain in, 80  
 dry cough in, 95  
 functional tremors in, 846  
 glossodynia in, 72  
 heartburn in, 90  
 hip joint pain in, 84  
 hyperosmia in, 65  
 insomnia in, 97  
 intestinal, general abdominal pain in 74  
 itching in, 87  
 occupational, see Occupational neuroses  
 palpitation in, 96  
 paresthesia in, 60  
 photophobia in 64  
 regurgitation in, 91  
 scotomata in, 63  
 sneezing in, 94  
 subjective pain in, 67  
 temporary aphonia and aphasia in, 94  
 tinnitus aurium in, 65, 185  
 traumatic, pain along spine in, 81  
 tremors of eyelids in, 99  
 tropho 883  
 vasoconstrictor, 884  
 vasomotor, 883  
 vertigo in 97  
 vomiting in, 91  
 vulvar pain in 87  
 weakness in, 96
- Neutropenia malignant 569**
- Neutrophils 1001**
- Nevi**  
 pigmentosi, 132  
 spili, 132  
 vasculosi, 131
- Nevus pigmentosa 137**

- Nicotinic acid, 904, 916, 918  
 Niemann Pick's disease, 626  
   chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
   enlargement of both liver and spleen in, 627  
 Night  
   blindness, 61  
   sweats, 50  
 Nightmares, 97  
 Ninth cranial nerve lesions, 859  
 Nipple, 211  
   Paget's disease of, 384  
 Nipples, supernumerary, 383  
 Nitrate poisoning, hemolytic anemia in, 560  
 Nitrobenzol poisoning, cyanosis in, 129  
 Nitrogen  
   blood urea, 1010  
   metabolism hormone of pituitary, 761  
   nonprotein of blood, 1008  
 Nitrogenous end products, determination, 1038  
 Nodal extrasystole, 520  
 Nodes  
   Osler's, 480  
   Parrot's, 725  
   periosteal, 726  
 Nodules, 131  
 Nonorganic murmurs, 460  
 Nonproductive cough, 95  
 Normal chest, 328  
 Normoblasts, 552, 996  
 Nose  
   allergic manifestations, 923  
   examination of, 122, 186  
 Nosbleed, 186  
 Nuclealbumin in urine, 981  
 Nucleus pulposus inflammatory  
   pain in right loin in, 77  
   thoracic spinal pain in, 80  
 Nyctalopia, 61  
 Nyctotherus falsa, 1068  
 Nystagmus, 847  
   in Friedreich's ataxia, 862  
 Oclurater hernia  
   hijart pain in, 84  
   thigh pain in, 84  
 Obesity, 88, 115, 767, 772  
   hypertension in, 412  
   low metabolic rate in, 1045  
 Objective pain, 67  
 Obstetrical, nausea in, 90  
 Obstruction of bowel  
   acute, 669  
   chronic, 671  
 Obstructive jaundice, 602  
   enlargement of liver in, 615  
 Occipital lobe lesions, 869  
 Occupational  
   deficiency of hands, 742  
   neuritis  
     cramp in, 97  
   Occupational (*continued*)  
     pain in wrist and hand in, 83  
     tremors, 99  
 Ochronosis, dark brown pigmentation in, 130  
 Oculocardiac reflex, 841  
 Oculomotor  
   nerves, 816  
   paralysis, vertigo in, 97  
 Old age diseases of, 41, 930  
 Olfactory  
   nerves, 815  
   nerve disease, parosmia in, 65  
 Oligemia, 551  
 Oligochromemia, 551  
 Oligocythemia, 551  
 Oligopnea, 93, 257  
 Oliguria, 970  
 Olinier's sign, 535  
 Omental hernia, epigastric pain in, 75  
 Onchocerca coecutiens, 1081  
   volvulus, 1080  
 Onset (invasion) in fevers, 47  
 Open tympany, 306  
 Ophthalmia  
   gonorrheal, blindness in, 61  
   neonatorum, 174  
   sympathetic  
     amblyopia in, 61  
     blindness in, 61  
     photophobia in, 64  
 Ophthalmoplegic migraine, diplopia in, 62  
 Opisthorchis caninus, 1072  
   felinus, 1072  
 Opisthotonos, 100, 118  
 Opium poisoning  
   amblyopia in, 61  
   bradycardia in, 408  
   coma in, 103  
   constipation in, 92  
   cyanosis in, 129  
   decreased knee jerk in, 836  
   decreased respiratory frequency in, 327  
   hypopnea in, 93, 258  
   myosis in, 176  
   nausea in, 90  
 Oppenheim's reflex, 835  
 Opsoric index, method of obtaining, 1019  
 Opsonins, 1019  
 Optic  
   aplasia, 843  
   atrophy  
     amblyopia in, 61  
     color blindness in, 64  
     dilatation of pupil in, 176  
     night blindness in, 61  
   chiasm tumors, herniation in, 63  
   nerve  
     disease, organic scotomata in, 63  
     tumors  
       blindness in, 61  
       herniation in, 63

- Optic (*continued*)  
 nerves 815  
   cranial 815  
   spinal 823  
 neuritis  
   amblyopia in 61  
   color blindness in 64  
   tract tumors hemianopia in 63  
 Orbit examination of 180  
 Orbital  
   cellulitis diplopia in 62  
   tumors  
     diplopia in 62  
     edema of eyes in 88  
 Orchitis 713  
   chest pain in 74  
   cramps in 68  
   general abdominal pain in 74  
   pain  
     in inguinal regions in 79  
     in penis in 86  
     in right loin in 77  
     in testes in 87  
   tenderness in left lower quadrant in 589  
 Ord's disease 780  
 Organic  
   heart murmurs 448  
   scotomata 63  
 Oriel sore ulceration in 149 1070  
 Orientation  
   and equilibrium disturbances of 849  
   examination of 831  
   pathways 814  
 Oroya fever 560 1086  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001  
 Orthopercussion 416  
 Orthoptea 257 466  
 Orthopneic breathing 92  
 Orthostatic albuminuria 978  
 Orthotonos 100 119  
 Osazone crystals in urine 983  
 Oscillometric reading 544  
 Osler's nodes 480  
 Ossification centers 721  
 Ostalgia 81  
 Osteitis  
   deformans (Paget's disease) 159 727 728  
     cervical pain in 79  
     curvature of leg bones in 743  
     eosinophilia in 1002  
     macrocephalus in 158  
     of nipple 384  
     ostalgia in 82  
     thoracic spinal pain in 80  
   fibrosis cystica (hyperparathyroidism) 729  
     735 789  
     eosinophilia in 1002  
     hip joint pain in 84  
     increase of serum phosphatase in 1042  
     knee pain in 84  
     ostalgia in 81  
 Osteoarthritis 737  
   foot pain in 84  
   increase of blood uric acid in 1010  
   lumbosacral pain in, 80  
   of spine thoracic spinal pain in 80  
 Osteoarthropathy hypertrophic pulmonary 738  
   740  
 Osteomalacia 735  
   curvature of leg bones in 743  
   eosinophilia in 1002  
   generalized pain in bone in 81  
 Osteoma 732  
   of ovary 704  
 Osteomyelitis 82 724  
   acute as cause of chills 59  
   eosinophilia in 1002  
   increase of serum globulin in 1011  
   of bony thorax pain on motion in 73  
   ostalgia in 82  
   perirenal abscess and suppurative appendicitis differential diagnosis, 663  
 Osteoperiosteal reflexes 840  
 Osteopetrosis 729  
 Osteoporosis 735  
   senile 730  
 Osteosclerotic anemia 561  
 Otitis media 40  
   discharge from ear in 184  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001  
   partial deafness in 64  
 Otosclerosis  
   partial deafness in 64  
   perception deafness in, 185  
   tinnitus aurium in 65 185  
 Ovalocytes 996  
 Ova of the commoner human parasites 1076  
 Ovarian  
   cyst  
     displacement upward of liver in 601  
     fluctuation in 591  
     torsion of  
       general abdominal pain in 74  
       pain in inguinal fossa and lower abdomen in 78  
   disease  
     lumbosacral pain in 81  
     nausea in 90  
     hormones 757 803  
     torsion cramps in 68  
   tumor  
     exaggerated bilateral superior costal breathing in 249  
     hyperpnea in 255  
 Ovaries  
   anatomy of 803  
   diseases of 704  
 Ovary inflamed muscular rigidity in 587  
 Overeating  
   hiccoughs in 94  
   nausea in 90

- Overeating (*continued*)  
 palpitation in 96  
 sneezing after 95
- Overwork  
 insomnia in 97  
 rapid emaciation in 89  
 reflex headache in 70
- Ovoflayin 915
- Ovum test for viability of 1057
- Owen and Hoffman method for determining  
 approximate prothrombin blood level  
 912
- Oxalate crystals in urine 991
- Oxalate in urine 976
- Oxalic acid poisoning  
 cystitis in 693  
 toxic gastritis in 645
- Oxaluria indicanturia in 976
- Oxyuris vermicularis 1078
- Ozena excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in  
 153
- Pacemaker of heart, 424
- Pachymeningitis  
 photophobia in 64  
 vomiting in 91
- Paget's disease see Osteitis deformans 159 727
- Pain  
 due to  
 arterial disease 85  
 disease of veins 85  
 interference with blood supply of a part, 86  
 hyperpnea in 254  
 in  
 abdomen 74  
 back 79  
 bones 82  
 cardiovascular disease 467  
 chest, 72  
 elbow 84  
 feet and toes 84  
 gastric carcinoma 644  
 gastric diseases 633  
 genital organs 86  
 hip joint, 84  
 infection 82  
 joints 83  
 knee 84  
 lower extremities 84  
 nerve lesions 85  
 osteomalacia 82  
 ovarian pelitis 82  
 penis, 86  
 rectum, 79 671  
 sacrotail and coccygeal regions 81  
 shoulder 83  
 spine or back 81  
 strain, 80  
 testes 87  
 thigh, 84  
 thoracic spine 80
- Pain  
 in (*continued*)  
 upper extremities 83  
 vulva, 87  
 wrist and hand 84  
 insomnia in 97  
 location of 68  
 lumbosacral pain 80  
 miscellaneous causes of 85  
 nature of 66  
 perception of 814  
 physical signs of 67  
 sensibility 830  
 severe, as cause of sweating 50  
 type of 67
- Palatal reflex 834
- Palate  
 examination of 197  
 hard landmark for first cervical vertebra 212
- Pallor of skin 127
- Palmer percussion 285
- Palpation 107 467 513  
 in examination of heart 402  
 of abdomen and viscera 586  
 of respiratory system 261
- Palpatory percussion 294
- Palpitation cardiac 96
- Pancreas 651 797  
 landmark of first lumbar vertebra, 213  
 topographic anatomy 578
- Pancreatic  
 calculi 655  
 carcinoma diarrhea in 92  
 cysts 654  
 disease  
 epigastric pain in 640  
 fatty stools in 1033  
 hiccoughs in, 94  
 itching in 87  
 left abdominal pain in 77  
 lumbosacral pain in 81  
 mild hyperglycemia in 1012  
 renal colic and appendicitis differential  
 diagnosis 653  
 rigidity of upper midabdomen in 588  
 thoracic spinal disease in 80  
 vomiting in 91 636  
 tumors 654
- Pancreatitis 651  
 acute  
 epigastric tenderness in 589  
 hematemesis in 638  
 hemorrhagic  
 epigastric pain in, 75  
 general abdominal pain in, 74  
 vomiting in, 91  
 nausea in 90  
 agonizing pain in, 67  
 and in intestinal obstruction differential diag  
 nosis 655  
 chest pain in, 73

- Pancreatitis (*continued*)  
   chronic 654  
   epigastric pain 75  
   cramps in 68  
   tests for  
     amylase 1063  
     lipase, 1063  
     Loewis 1060  
 Panniculitis 752  
 Pannus 174  
 Paragphthalmus  
   blindness in 61  
   eye pain in 71  
 Pantograph 236  
 Pantothenic acid 906 916 918  
 Papillary muscles uneven tension of 461  
 Papilloma  
   of bladder 693  
   of ovary 704  
 Pappataci disease, 1086  
   leukopenia in, 1001  
 Pappataci sand fly 1086  
 Papules 131 142  
 Paraaminobenzoic acid 920  
 Paracentesis abdominis 1028  
 Paradoxical  
   pulse of Kussmaul 410  
   pupillary reflex 178 841  
   reflex 838  
 Parafossarulus striatulus (snail) 1072  
 Paraganglioma 796  
 Paragensia 197  
 Paragonimus westermani 1072  
 Paralysis 845  
   agitans 41 98 882  
     facies in 165  
     festinating gait in 121  
     gait in 851  
     rhythmical head nodding in 162  
     tremors in 98  
   decreased urinary creatinine in 9/6  
   postdiphtheritic diplopia in 62  
 Paralytic  
   chest 238  
   gait 120  
   hyperemic reflex 835  
   ileus constipation in 92  
 Paramyoclonus multiplex retraction of head in 162  
 Parang see Yaws 51 143 1070 1090  
 Paranoia and paranoid states 891  
 Paraphimosis 708  
 Paraplegia  
   limping gait in 121  
   spastic see Spastic paraplegia  
 Apraxia 847  
 Parasites  
   animal 1067  
   as cause of pruritus ani and vulvae 86  
   Parasitic  
     gastritis 645  
     infections 1067  
       eosinophilia in 1002  
       rapid emaciation in 89  
     infusoria 1068  
   Parasitology 1065  
   Parasternal lines of thorax 215  
   Parasympathetic nervous system 825  
   Parathormone 788  
   Parathyroid  
     glands 788  
     hormones 757  
       of pituitary 761  
   Paratyphoid fever  
     decreased neutrophils in 1002  
     differential diagnosis 51  
     leukopenia in 1001  
     splenic enlargement in 623  
   Paravertebral triangle of dullness (Grocco's sign) 301  
   Parenchymatous  
     goiter 201 775  
     nephritis chronic 687  
   Paresis 889  
     Argyll Robertson pupil in 177  
     general diplopia in 62  
     impediment in power of protrusion of tongue in 196  
     increase of globulin of spinal fluid in 1025  
     increase of lymphocytes of spinal fluid in 1025  
     juvenile 41  
     loss of memory in 887  
     myosis in 176  
     spasm of tongue in 196  
     tremors in 98  
     unequal contraction of pupils in 177  
     unilateral myosis in 176  
     vertigo in 97  
     vomiting in 636  
   Paresthesia 41 60 849  
   Paretic dementia anisocoria in 177  
   Parietal  
     layer of pleura 224  
     lobe lesions 869  
   Parkinson's  
     disease 882  
     syndrome see Paralysis agitans 41 98 882  
   Paradoxical embolus in patent foramen ovale 505  
   Parorexia 633  
   Parosmia (perversion of sense of smell) 65 18/ 856  
   Parotitis epidemic see Mumps 40  
   Parotitis swelling of upper jaw in 169  
   Paroxysmal  
     cough 95  
     hemoglobinuria 561  
     tachycardia 438 514  
   Parrot's nodes 725  
   Parturition increased urinary urea in 974  
   Past pointing 850



- Patch test for tuberculosis, 1061
- Patent
- ductus arteriosus, 459, 503
  - foramen ovale, 459, 505
  - hypoplasia of aorta in, 505
  - paradoxical foramen ovale in, 505
- Patheticus nerves, 816
- Pathognomic symptoms, 41
- Patysma sign, 870
- Pauses between heart sounds, 429
- Pectoriloquy, 335
- Pediculosis
- capitis, swelling of posterior cervical glands in, 202
  - corporis, generalized red macular eruption in, 133
  - itching in, 86
  - pruritus ani in, 671
- Peliosis, 134, 136, 563
- purpuric spots in, 134
  - rheumatica, 563, 928
- Pellagra, 905
- diarrhea in, 92
  - generalized red macular eruption in, 133
  - glossodynia in, 72
  - increased color index in, 995
  - leukopenia in, 1001
  - lingual pain in, 197
  - local bronzing of skin in, 130
  - mouth rash in, 153
  - nausea in, 90
  - neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1011
  - rapid emaciation in, 89
- Pelvic
- cellulitis, pain in hypogastric region in, 79
  - disease, sacroiliac pain in, 81
  - tumors, abdominal enlargement in, 586
- Pemphigus
- bullae in, 140
  - eosinophilia in, 1002
- Penis 706
- nerve mechanism of, 839
- Penfield's autonomic leprosy, 867
- Pentatrichomonas adini delteilii, 1071
- Pentosuria, 983
- Peptic ulcer, 641
- Percept, 887
- Percussion, 107
- cardiac, 415
  - methods of, 285
  - of abdomen and viscera 597
  - of respiratory system 280
  - stroke, 291
- Perforated gastric ulcer, agonizing pain in, 67
- Periarthritis nodosa, 538
- abdominal tenderness in, 589
  - differential diagnosis, 58
  - eosinophilia in, 1002
  - epigastric pain in, 76
  - general abdominal pain in, 74
  - nausea in, 90
- Periarthritis nodosa (*continued*)
- neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001
  - pain due to arthritis in, 86
  - rigidity of upper midabdomen in, 588
  - severe leukocytosis in, 1000
  - severe pain in extremities and over ribs in, 82
- Peribronchial consolidations, tympany in, 310
- Pericardial
- effusion, 470
  - absence of visible apex beat in, 401
  - apparent weakness of first heart sound in, 432
  - bronchial breathing in, 329
  - cyanosis in, 128
  - displacement of apex beat in, 399
  - dry cough in, 95
  - dullness in, 471
  - dyspnea in, 257, 470
  - engorgement of jugular veins in, 205
  - epigastric pain in, 641
  - increased cardiac dullness in, 421
  - obliteration of Epstein's triangle in, 471
  - palpitation in, 96
  - paroxysmal cough in, 95
  - precordial fullness in, 470
  - restricted bilateral chest expansion in, 250
  - signs in, 465
  - superior costal breathing in, 249
  - unilateral posture in, 118
  - unilateral thoracic enlargement in, 245
- friction sounds, 464
- puncture, 1027
- splashing sound, 465
- Pericarditis, 468
- acute pain in, 67
  - adherent
  - Broadbent's sign in, 472
  - displacement of apex beat to left in, 472
  - Friedreich's sign in, 472
  - Kussmaul's pulse in, 473
- adhesive
- chronic, engorgement of jugular veins in, 205
  - epigastric pain in, 641
  - localized tenderness of neck in, 206
  - pain in, 73
  - paroxysmal pain in, 467
  - plastic
  - referred pain in, 469
  - to-and fro friction sounds in, 470
- vomiting in, 636
- Pericardium, 388
- Perihepatitis, 611, 613
- Perineal
- abscess, as cause of chills 59
  - inflammation pain in penis in, 86
- Perinephritic abscess, 682
- fluctuation in right hypochondriac region in, 591
  - fluctuation over left hypochondriac region in, 591

- Perinephritic abscess (*continued*)  
   lumbosacral pain in, 81  
   splenic pain and tenderness in, 620  
 Periodic health examination, 962  
 Periosteal  
   abscesses, 726  
   lesions as cause of ostealgia, 81  
   nodes, 726  
   reflexes of adductors, 840  
 Peristitis, 725  
   hyperpnea in, 254  
   of ileum, suppurative, severe aching pain in 78  
   syphilitic, 725  
   tuberculous, 724  
 Peripheral  
   circulation function tests, 543  
   nerve distribution, 823  
   nerve lesions, 852  
   neuritis  
     complete loss of tendon and skin reflexes in, 832  
     gangrene in, 749  
     reaction of degeneration in, 848  
   vascular disease, 535  
 Perirenal abscess, osteomycitis, and suppurative appendicitis, differential diagnosis, 663  
 Peristalsis, 585  
 Peritonitis  
   abdominal  
     enlargement in, 586  
     pain in, 74  
     tenderness in, 589  
   acute  
     as cause of chills, 59  
     diffuse, facies in, 166  
     diminished abdominal respiratory movement in, 250  
     generalized and acute intestinal obstruction, differential diagnosis, 670  
     pain in, 67  
     superior costal breathing in, 249  
     vomiting in, 91  
   chest pain in, 73  
   cyanosis in, 128, 129  
   decreased abdominal respiratory movements in, 585  
   differential diagnosis, 619  
   diminished vesicular murmur in, 326  
   displacement upward of liver in, 601  
   exaggerated abdominal tympany in, 598  
   fecal vomiting in, 639  
   hiccoughs in 94  
   hyperpnea, 254  
   indicanuria in, 975  
   rigid dorsal posture in, 117  
   rigidity of entire abdomen in 588  
   suppressed cough in, 96  
   tuberculous general abdominal pain in 74  
   vomiting in 636  
 Peritonsillar abscess  
   localized tenderness of neck in, 206  
   nasal regurgitation of fluid in, 186  
   neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001  
 Permanent teeth, eruption of, 191  
 Pernicious anemia, 41  
   chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
   decreased fragility of erythrocytes in, 997  
   decreased knee jerk in, 836  
   decreased neutrophils in, 1002  
   discoloration of abdomen in, 583  
   glossitis in 72  
   gradual hypertrophy of spleen in, 627  
   Howell-Jolly bodies in, 997  
   increased color index in, 995  
   increased metabolic rate in, 1045  
   leukopenia in, 1001  
   lymphocytosis in, 1002  
   lingual pain in, 197  
   macrocytes in, 996  
   megaloblasts in, 996  
   normoblasts in, 996  
   pallor in, 127  
   paresthesia in, 60  
   petechiae of mouth in 153  
   primary, 554  
   purpura in, 564  
   small pale, smooth tongue in, 196  
   splenic enlargement in, 625  
   stippling of red cells in, 997  
   very low red count in, 996  
 Peroneal fistulae, scarotiac pain in, 81  
 Personality, 886  
 Pertussis, 354  
   abnormal moisture of conjunctivae in, 175  
   cyanosis in, 128  
   cyanosis of face in, 169  
   decreased neutrophils in, 1002  
   lymphocytosis in, 1002  
   moist cough in, 95  
   paroxysmal cough in, 95  
   sky blue discoloration of, conjunctiva in, 175  
   stridulous breathing in, 259  
   vomiting in, 92, 636  
 Peruvian wart, 560  
 Perverted vision, 62  
 Pes  
   calcaneus 747  
   cavus, 748  
   equinus, 747  
   planus, 748  
   valgus, 748  
   varus, 747  
 Petechiae, 132, 134  
 Petit mal 881  
 Pflueger's law, 833  
 Phalanges, 739  
 Pharyngeal  
   abscess, dry cough in 95  
   reflex, 835, 840

- Pharyngitis  
 acute redness of pharynx in 198  
 chronic aphonia in 94  
 cough in 95
- Pharynx examination of 122 198
- Phenol poisoning  
 black urine in 973  
 cystitis in 693  
 hemoglobinuria in 985
- Phenoltetrachlorophthalein test for liver function 1043
- Phenylhydrazine poisoning hemolytic anemia in 560
- Pheochromocytoma of adrenal medulla 796
- Phimosi 708
- Phlebitis 542  
 as cause of chills 59  
 pain in 86
- Phlebograms 1050
- Phleboscclerosis 525
- Phlebotomus argentipes 1069  
 noguchi 1086  
 sand fly 1086
- Phlegaphonia 337
- Phlegmasia alba dolens 542
- Phlegmonous enteritis 660
- Phlegmonous inflammation and suppuration  
 throbbing pain in 68
- Phonendoscope 315
- Phonometry 294
- Phosphatase of serum 1042
- Phosphate  
 crystals in urine 991  
 in urine 974
- Phosphorus poisoning 616  
 decreased fibrinogen of plasma in 1011  
 dental caries in 192  
 erythema or purpura in 135  
 fatty liver in 609  
 hematemesis in 638  
 hemoglobinuria in 983  
 nausea in 90  
 psychosis in 888  
 purpura in 564  
 strongy gums in 190  
 toxic gastritis in 645  
 toxic hepatic jaundice in 604
- Photophobia 64
- Phrenic nerve paralysis 852
- Physical chest 239
- Physiologic chest 238
- Pneumonia 370  
 acute pneumonia 376  
 fibriloid see Fibriloid phthisis
- Physical  
 examination  
 method of 107  
 of chest general resume of 349  
 signs evaluation of 42
- Pian, see Yaws 143
- Pica 89
- Pick's disease, 384 473  
 pulsus paradoxus in 473
- Picric acid poisoning  
 yellow vision in 63
- Piebald irides 175
- Pigeon breast 240 727  
 hyperpnea in 256
- Pigmentations 131
- Piles 672
- Pilocarpine  
 action on parasympathetic system 828  
 as cause of sweating 50  
 poisoning myosis in 176
- Pilomotor reflex 267 835
- Pilonidal cyst sacroiliac pain in 81
- Pimples 131
- Pinworms 1078
- Pineal 756  
 gland 783  
 obesity 89 772  
 tumors hemianopsia in 63
- Pink eye 174
- Pitch  
 in percussion 284  
 of respiratory murmur alteration of 328  
 of voice effect on fremitus 270
- Pitocin 761
- Pitressin 761
- Pitted teeth 192
- Pituitary  
 basophilism (Cushing's syndrome) 765  
 cachexia 767 771  
 rapid emaciation in 89 115  
 vomiting in 91  
 weakness in 96  
 epilepsy 767 773  
 gland  
 anatomy and physiology 758  
 diseases of 762  
 headache 767 773  
 hormones 756 760  
 hypogonadism 881  
 obesity 89 772  
 somnolence and hibernation 767 773  
 tumors  
 coma in 104  
 hemianopsia in 63  
 organic scotomata in 63
- Pityriasis rosae  
 abdominal rash in, 583  
 generalized red macular eruption in 133  
 scales in 147
- Placental rests and polyps 703
- Plague differential diagnosis 52
- Plantar  
 ischemic test 544  
 reflex 834
- Plasma  
 cells 1079  
 cell leukemia, 567  
 proteins, 1010

- Plasmodium**  
   *falciparum*, 1067  
   *malaria*, 1067  
   *ovale*, 1067  
   *vivax*  
**Plastic**  
   pericarditis, 469  
   phlebitis, 542  
   pleurisy, 376  
**Platelets, blood (thrombocytes)**, 1005  
**Plessor**, 286  
**Pleura**  
   lowest part of, landmark of twelfth thoracic vertebra, 213  
   topographic and regional anatomy, 223  
**Pleural**  
   adhesions, increased vocal resonance in, 334  
   disease, unilateral diminution of chest wall in, 247  
   effusion, 377  
     absence of fremitus in, 277  
     absence of unilateral expansion of chest wall in, 251  
     absence of visible apex beat in, 401  
     absence of vocal resonance in, 334  
     absent breath sounds in, 326  
     apparent weakness of first heart sound in, 432  
     bronchial breathing in, 329  
     diminished vesicular murmur in, 326  
     diminished vocal resonance in, 334  
     displacement of apex beat in, 399  
     displacement downward of liver in, 601  
     dyspnea in, 92  
     egophony in, 336  
     epigastric pain in, 641  
     flatness in, 300  
     increased abnormal respiratory movements in, 585  
     local bulging of chest wall in, 248  
     paroxysmal cough in, 95  
     superior costal breathing in, 249  
   fremitus, 277  
     technic of eliciting, 278  
**Pleurisy**, 376  
   abdominal pain in, 74  
   acute  
     pain in, 67  
     plastic, interrupted inspirations in, 327  
     restricted bilateral chest expansion in, 250  
     suppressed cough in, 96  
   chronic, adhesive, unilateral diminution of chest wall in, 251  
   cyanosis in, 129  
   diaphragmatic  
     hiccoughs in, 94  
     left hypochondrial pain in, 76  
     localized tenderness of neck in, 206  
     pain in, 73  
   hyperpnea in, 254  
**Pleurisy (continued)**  
   increased abdominal respiration (in infants) in, 250  
   pain in, 73  
   plastic, hyperpnea in, 255  
   right hypochondrial pain in, 76  
   spasmodic and jerky respiration in, 259  
   splenic disorders, and pneumonia, differential diagnosis, 622  
   splenic pain and tenderness in, 620  
   subdiaphragmatic, right hypochondrial pain in, 76  
   unilateral posture in, 118  
**Pleuritic friction sounds**, 346  
**Pleurodynia**  
   cyanosis in, 129  
   diminished vesicular murmur in, 326  
   hyperpnea in, 254  
   interrupted inspirations in, 327  
   spasmodic and jerky respiration in, 259  
   suppressed cough in, 96  
   unilateral diminution of chest wall in, 251  
   voluntary suppression of expansion of chest wall in, 250  
**Pleuropericardial friction**  
   fremitus, 404  
   sound, 346  
**Pleurothotonos**, 100, 119  
**Pleximeter**, 286  
**Plexor**, 286  
   finger, 290  
**Plexuses**, 811  
**Plummer-Vinson's syndrome**, 556, 631  
**Pneumatosis**, 634  
**Pneumococci**  
   arthritis, 736  
   Neufeld, method of typing, 1054  
   pneumonia, increase of serum globulin in, 1011  
**Pneumococcus pneumoniae neutrophilic leukocytosis** in, 1001  
**Pneumogastric nerves**, 816  
**Pneumonia**, 41, 362  
   abdominal pain in, 74  
   absence of vocal resonance in, 334  
   acute enlargement of spleen in, 622  
   aortic regurgitation in, 487  
   as cause of chills, 59  
   as cause of sweating, 50  
   atypical, 365  
   broncho, 365  
   chronic interstitial, 366  
     unilateral thoracic retraction in, 247  
   cough in, 95  
   diazo reaction in, 991  
   dyspnea in, 257  
   enlargement of liver in, 615  
   eosinophilia during convalescence, 1002  
   extravascular rales in, 342  
   Friedländer bacillus, 367  
   hemothorax in, 244  
   hematoporphyria in, 987

- Pneumonia (continued)**  
 herpes labialis in 153  
 herpes of lips in 188  
 hydrothorax in 243  
 hyperpnea in 255  
 increased length of expiration in 259  
 increased respiratory frequency in 326  
 increased urinary creatinine in 976  
 lobar see Lobar pneumonia 362  
 lobular 40 365  
 membranous gastritis in 645  
 orthopnea in 257  
 partial deafness in 64  
 pericarditis in 468  
 pleurisy and splenic disorders differential diagnosis 622  
 pneumococci 362  
   differential diagnosis 53  
   right hypochondrial pain in 76  
 sordes in 193  
 splenic pain and tenderness in 620  
 toxic hepatic jaundice in 604  
 viruses as a cause of atypical 366
- Pneumonoconiosis** 360  
 bilateral diminution of chest expansion in 250  
 bronchovesicular breathing in 330  
 increased respiratory frequency in 326  
 moist cough in 95  
 sputum in 1037
- Pneumopericarditis** 473  
 bulging of precordial area in 473  
 dyspnea in 473  
 emphysematous crepitation in 473  
 precordial distress in 473  
 precordial tympany in 473
- Pneumopericardium** diminished or absent cardiac dullness in 422
- Pneumoperitoneum**  
 artificial exaggerated abdominal tympany in 598  
 right hypochondrial pain in 76
- Pneumothorax** 244 377  
 absence of unilateral expansion of chest wall in 251  
 absent breath sounds in 326  
 amphoric voice sounds in 336  
 bronchial breathing in 329  
 cyanosis in 128  
 diminished or absent cardiac dullness in 422  
 displacement downward of liver in 601  
 dry cough in 95  
 dyspnea in 257  
 edema of face in 169  
 left hypochondrial pain in 76  
 metallic tympany in 310  
 paroxysmal cough in 95  
 right hypochondrial pain in 76  
 tympany in 305
- Poliomyelitis** 512, 996
- Poliomyelitis**  
 acute anterior 40 863  
   increase of spinal fluid proteins in 1024  
 anterior complete loss of tendon and skin reflexes in 832  
 chronic anterior 863  
 decreased knee jerk in 836  
 pain along spine in 81  
 reaction of degeneration in 848
- Polychromatophilia** 551 996
- Polycystic kidney** 682  
 sarcoma and hypernephroma differential diagnosis 683
- Polycythemia**  
 cyanosis of face in 169  
 decreased sedimentation rate in 998  
 erythematous cyanosis in 129  
 increase of blood platelets in 1005  
 prolongation of circulation time in 447  
 redness of skin in 128  
 tinnitus aurium in 65  
 vera 563  
   actual increase of hemoglobin in 996  
   decreased color index in 995  
   flushing of face in 168  
   hypertension in 412  
   increased erythrocytes in 996
- Polydactylism** 751
- Polyesthesia** 849
- Polygraph** 1050
- Polymazia** 383
- Polyneuritis** 905  
 as cause of sweating 50  
 wrist drop in 742
- Polyorchidism** 713
- Polyphagia**, 89 634
- Polypi of cervix** 699
- Polyps endometrial** 701
- Polythelin** 383
- Polyuria** 970  
 anidrosis in 152
- Pompholy** 131 145
- Pons varolii** 815  
 hemorrhage into 102  
 lesions of 866
- Pontine hemorrhage** 872  
 hypopnea in 258
- Pool's arm phenomenon** 792
- Popliteal**  
 aneurysm knee pain in, 84  
 nerve lesions 855
- Pork tapeworm** 1074 1076
- Portal cirrhosis** 606  
 diminished secretion of hippuric acid in, 1043  
 increase of serum phosphatase in, 1042  
 positive Takata Ara reaction in, 1043  
 thrombosis, bloody stools in 1032
- Portal obstruction**  
 distention of superficial abdominal veins in, 541  
 hematemesis in, 638

- Postdiphtheritic paralysis  
   amblyopia in 61  
   diplopia in 62  
   loss of palatal reflex in 834  
   nasal regurgitation of fluid in 186  
 Posterior region of chest palpation of 263  
 Postexpiratory rales 344  
 Postpartum hemorrhage Kussmaul's air hunger in 258  
 Postpharyngeal abscess abnormal fixity of head in 162  
 Posture and position 117  
 Posture of head 162  
 Posttussive succussion splash 347  
 Potassium  
   chlorate poisoning  
     hemoglobinuria in 985  
     hemolytic anemia in 560  
     toxic hepatic jaundice in 604  
   in blood 1012  
 Potts disease  
   hyperpnea in 256  
   increased abdominal respiration (in infants) in 250  
   localized tenderness of neck in 206  
   thoracic spinal pain in 80  
 P P factor 904  
 Precipitin reaction for echinococcus disease 1019 1077  
 Precipitins 1019  
 Precordial pulsations 396  
 Precordium  
   anatomy 388  
   contour and appearance 396  
 Pregnancy 41  
   abdominal enlargement in 586  
   albuminuria in 978  
   blindness in 61  
   decrease of blood urea nitrogen in late months 1010  
   decreased urinary urea in 974  
   discoloration of eyelids in 174  
   displacement upward of liver in 601  
   exaggerated bilateral superior costal breathing in 249  
   fluctuation in 591  
   heartburn in 90  
   increased fibrinogen of plasma in 1011  
   increased sedimentation rate in 998  
   increase of blood uric acid in 1010  
   lactosuria in 982  
   nausea in 90  
   tests and the clinical values 1054  
     directions for collecting urine 1058  
     and cations for, 1057  
   toxemia hypertension in 412  
   upward displacement of apex beat in 399  
   varicose veins in 541  
   vomiting in 92 636  
 Premature  
   beat 439  
   contraction 439  
   senility 937  
 Presbyophrenic types of senile psychoses 889  
 Presbyopia 61 183  
 Presenile psychoses 889  
 Pressing pain 67  
 Pressure  
   sensations 813  
   sensitivity 829  
 Presystolic heart murmurs 449  
 Priapism 710  
 Prickly heat see Miliaria 139  
 Primary arterial hypertension 412  
 Proctitis 659 672  
 Prodromal stage of fever 47  
 Productive cough 95  
 Progeria (senilism) 937  
 Progesterin 757  
 Progressive muscular  
   atrophy 40  
     chest of 241  
     impediment in power of protrusion of tongue in 196  
     increased urinary sulfates in 974  
     reaction of degeneration in 848  
   dystrophy 866  
 Progressive spinal muscular atrophy 863  
 Progynon 803  
 Proklot 920  
 Prolactin 760  
 Prolan  
   A and B 760  
   B in urine 987  
 Prolapse of rectum 675  
 Prolonged expiration 328  
 Prone posture 118  
 Prostate  
   diseases of 41 716  
   examination of 707  
 Prostatic  
   abscess constant pain in rectum in 671  
   disease 41 716  
     lumbosacral pain in 81  
     pain in hypogastric region in 79  
     pain in iliac fossa in 79  
     pain in penis in 86  
     pain in testes in 87  
     sacroiliac pain in 81  
   hypertrophy hypertension in 412  
 Prostatitis vomiting in 92  
 Prostration 66  
   extreme inability to cough in 96  
 Protein  
   inadequate intake general edema in 88  
   sensitization test for 929  
   specific dynamic action of 1045  
 Protrombin role played by in blood coagulation 912

- Protozoa  
 protozoal infections, 1067-1071  
 differential diagnosis, 57
- Prurigo, 927  
 erythema, nodular, pruritus ani in, 671  
 itching in, 87  
 papules in, 143
- Pruritus, 87  
 ani, 671
- Pseudobulbar palsy, 882
- Pseudocrisis, 48
- Pseudohermaphroditism, 793, 802
- Pseudohypertrophic  
 emphysema, 358  
 muscular paralysis, waddling gait in, 121  
 paralysis, 40
- Pseudo leukema, 41, 568  
 infantum, see von Jaksch's anemia, 562
- Pseudomyelia paresthetica, 849
- Pseudosclerosis, psychosis in, 889
- Psilosis, 660
- Psittacosis  
 complement fixation test, 1060  
 differential diagnosis, 54  
 moist cough in, 95
- Psoas abscess  
 drawing up of left leg in, 118  
 drawing up of right leg in, 118  
 muscular rigidity in, 587  
 tenderness over right lower quadrant in, 589  
 thigh pain in, 84
- Psoriasis  
 abdominal rash in, 583  
 eosinophilia in, 1002  
 linguae see Leukoplakia, 194  
 relative lymphocytosis in, 1002  
 scales in, 146
- Psychasthenia, 886  
 nausea in, 90  
 reflex headache in, 70  
 temporary aphonia and aphasia in, 94  
 vertigo in, 97  
 vomiting in, 91
- Psychic  
 disturbances as cause of chilliness, 59  
 shock vomiting in, 91
- Psychoses, 887  
 color blindness in, 64  
 insomnia in, 97  
 kakosmia in, 187  
 reflex headache in, 70
- Psychosis depressive, as cause of anidrosis, 59
- Pterygia of chest, 238
- Ptosis, 172  
 adiposa, 173
- Pubertas precocia, 793
- Puerile  
 renascence, 303  
 respiration, 321
- Puerperal sepsis  
 as cause of chills, 59  
 indicanuria in, 975
- Pulmonary  
 abscess, 356  
 bronchial breathing in, 329  
 increase of serum globulin in, 1011  
 sputum in, 1036  
 actinomycosis, 1094  
 and aortic valves, landmark for sixth thoracic vertebra, 213  
 and gastric hemorrhage, differential diagnosis, 639  
 apex, diseases of, aphonia in, 94  
 apoplexy, 359  
 arteriosclerosis, 359  
 artery, anatomy, 395  
 bifurcation of, landmark of fourth thoracic vertebra, 213  
 atelectasis, 361  
 congestion, 355  
 diminished vesicular murmur in, 326  
 increased respiratory frequency in, 326  
 myosis in, 176  
 subcrepitant rales in, 340  
 consolidation, increased abdominal respiratory movements in, 585  
 disease  
 dyspnea in, 92  
 moist cough in, 95  
 pain in, 73  
 paroxysmal cough in, 95  
 weakness in, 96  
 distomiasis, 1072  
 edema, 356  
 absence of vocal resonance in, 334  
 bubbling rales in, 339  
 cyanosis in, 128  
 diminished fremitus in, 276  
 diminished vesicular murmur in, 326  
 diminished vocal resonance in, 334  
 extravascular rales in, 342  
 frothy expectoration in, 1035  
 increased abdominal respiratory movements in, 585  
 increased respiratory frequency in, 326  
 orthopnea in, 257  
 relative dullness in, 302  
 serous expectoration in, 1035  
 short coughs with serous frothy blood-stained sputum in, 95  
 tympany in, 305, 310  
 emphysema thoracic spinal pain in, 80  
 fibrosis, 368  
 gangrene, 357  
 anclivity saucer sputum in, 1034  
 bronchial breathing in, 329  
 Dittreich's plugs in, 1035  
 dullness in, 299  
 foul odor of breath in, 199  
 hydropneumothorax in, 244

## Pulmonary

gangrene (*continued*)

purulent expectoration in, 1035

sputum in, 1036

hypertension, 494

anasarca in, 494

cardiac dilatation in, 494

cyanosis in, 494

dyspnea in, 494

enlarged and pulsating liver in, 494

pulmonary edema in, 494

throbbing of neck veins in, 494

infarction, 359

infarcts

cough in, 95

hemorrhagic bronchial breathing in, 329

unilateral diminution of chest wall in, 251

malignancy, left sided upper abdominal tenderness in, 589

moniliasis, 1096

neoplasm, pulmonary hypertension in, 494

osteochondropathy, hypertrophic, 738, 740

relaxation, high pitched tympany in, 309

stenosis, 501

actual increase of hemoglobin in, 996

congenital, 459

cyanosis of face in, 169

syphilis, 370

tuberculosis, 370

abnormally shallow breathing in, 259

as cause of sweating, 50

bilateral diminution of chest expansion in, 250

bluish white discoloration of conjunctiva in, 175

bronchial breathing in, 329

bronchovesicular breathing in, 329

cyanosis of face in, 169

delayed expansion at one or both apices in, 252

depression of chest wall in, 248

dullness in, 299

dry cough in, 95

endocarditis in, 479

enophthalmos in, 180

facies in, 166

flushing of face in, 168

hippus in, 178

hydro-pneumothorax in, 244

hyperidrosis (night sweats) in, 152

hyperpnea in, 255

hypotension in, 413

increased metabolic rate in, 1045

increased respiratory frequency in, 326

nausea in, 90

shoulder pain in, 83

sputum in, 1036

subcrepitant rales in, 340

tachycardia in, 407

unilateral mydriasis in, 176

## Pulmonary

tuberculosis (*continued*)

vomiting in, 636

tumor displacement downward of liver in, 601

## Pulmonic

area, auscultation of, 423

murmurs

area of transmission, 454

degree of cardiac hypertrophy in, 454

time of occurrence and mechanism, 452

sound, 427

second accentuation of, 433

weakening of, 433

valve of heart, 390

clinical position, 391

## Pulsations

abdominal, 584

method of differentiating arterial from venous, 204

of chest, technic of palpation, 265

## Pulse, 404

condition of artery wall, 407

degree of tension, 407

duration, 406

equality of corresponding arteries on both sides, 407

force, 406

pathologic changes in, 407

condition of arterial wall, 410

force or quality, and size, 408

rate or frequency, 407

rhythm or regularity, 409

tension, 410

pressure, 413

rate, 406

respiratory rate, and basal metabolic rate  
relation of to temperature, 48

rhythm, 406

size or volume, 406

## Pulsus

alternans, 410 440 522

bigeminus, 409, 518

deficiens, 410

intercicens, 410

magnus, 408

myurus, 410

paradoxus, 410

parvus, 409

plenus, 408

tremulus, 409

trigeminus, 410

vacuus, 409

## Pupil

double monocular diplopia in, 62

examination of, 176

## Pupillary

reflexes, 177

response to light, testing for, 177

skin reflexes, 834

Purkinje fibers, 425



- Purpura** 132, 563  
 decreased neutrophils in, 1002  
 hematemesis in, 637  
 hemoglobinuria in, 985  
 hemorrhagica, 563  
   bloody extravasation of uvula in, 197  
   epistaxis in, 186  
   general abdominal pain in, 74  
   knee pain in, 84  
   petechiae of mouth in, 153  
   purpuric spots in, 134  
   tarry stools in, 1032
- Henoch's**, 928  
 rectal bleeding in, 672  
 retinal hemorrhages in, 179  
 rheumatica, see *Peliosis*, 134, 136, 563  
 thrombocytopenia in, 1005  
   homogenia, see *Werlhof's disease*, 562  
 uterine bleeding in, 700  
 vomiting in, 92
- Purpuric spots**, 134
- Purulent pericarditis**, 471
- Pus**  
 casts in urine, 983  
 tubes, 703
- Pustules**, 131, 141
- P wave of electrocardiograph**, 436
- Pylitis**, 40, 691  
 acute pain in iliac fossa in, 78  
 as cause of chills, 59  
 lumbosacral pain in, 81  
 neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001  
 pain in left loin in, 77  
 pain in right loin in, 77  
 pyuria in, 985  
 splenic pain and tenderness in, 620  
 vomiting in, 636
- Pyelography**, 685
- Pyelonephritis**, 690  
 as cause of chills, 59  
 lumbosacral pain in, 81  
 pyuria in, 985
- Pyemia**  
 as cause of sweating, 50  
 hemoglobinuria in, 985  
 hyperpnea in, 256  
 membranous gastritis in, 645  
 retinal hemorrhages in, 179  
 toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Pyæmia**, Australian, 769
- Pyloric**  
 obstruction  
   as genital, hypermotility of stomach in, 634  
   decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012  
   emaciation in, 115  
   heartburn in, 90  
   nausea in, 90  
 orifice of stomach, topographic anatomy, 576  
 spasm, gall duct disease, and gastric ulcer,  
   differential diagnosis, 648  
 stenosis, hypertrophic, 42, 649
- Pylorospasm**  
 epigastric pain in, 75  
 hypomotility of stomach in, 634
- Pylorus**, landmark of twelfth thoracic vertebra, 213
- Pyonephritis**, fluctuation over left hypochondriac region in, 591
- Pyonephrosis**, 681  
 as cause of sweating, 50  
 hyperpnea in, 255  
 pain in left loin in, 77  
 pain in right loin in, 77
- Pyopneumothorax**, 244, 378  
 cyanosis, 128  
 Hippocratic succussion splash in, 347
- Pyorrhea**  
 alveolaris, 72  
 dental caries in, 192  
 red line on gums in, 190
- Pyosalpinx**, 703
- Pyothorax**, 244, 377  
 foul odor of breath in, 199  
 succussion splash in, 279
- Pyramidal**  
 system, 813  
 tracts, 822
- Pyrexia (fever)**, 47
- Pyridine poisoning**, hemolytic anemia in, 560
- Pyridoxine**, 905, 916, 918
- Pyrosis (heartburn)**, 90, 634
- Pyuria**, 985
- Q-R-S complex**, 437
- Quadrilateral space of lungs**, 221
- Quality**  
 in percussion, 280  
 of breath sounds, alteration in, 329  
 of heart murmurs, 454
- Queckenstedt's sign**, 831, 1024
- Quincke's**  
 capillary pulsation, 743  
 pulse, 539  
 pulse, 488
- Quinine poisoning**  
 blindness in, 61  
 color blindness in, 64  
 dermatitis medicamentosa in, 135  
 partial deafness in, 64  
 photophobia in, 64  
 tinnitus aurium in, 65  
 vertigo in, 97  
 yellow vision in, 64
- Quino-Thrombin**, 920
- Quinsy**, see *Peritonsillar abscess*, 41
- Rabies**  
 convulsions in, 100  
 differential diagnosis, 54  
 epistomatosis in, 118  
 orthotonos in, 119  
 retraction of head in, 162

- Rabies (continued)**  
 spasm of pharynx in, 198  
 test for, 1060
- Rachitic**  
 chest, 239  
   hyperpnea in, 256  
 rosary, 240
- Radial reflex, 840**
- Radicular paralysis, 852**
- Radiculitis**  
 increased reflexes in, 832  
 restricted bilateral chest expansion in, 250
- Railway spine, pain along spine in, 81**
- Ramistes' sign, 869**
- Râle redux, 340**
- Rales, 338**  
 quality of, 343  
 significance of, 345  
 stage of respiration in which they are heard, 344
- Rashes, 131, 153**  
 abdominal, 583  
 of feet and toes, 750
- Rat**  
 antidermatitis factor, 905  
 bite fever  
   differential diagnosis, 56  
   macular rash in, 135
- Ray fungus disease see Actinomycosis, 1093**
- Raynaud's disease, 537, 884**  
 amblyopia in, 61  
 coldness of extremities in, 745  
 foot pain in, 84  
 gangrene in, 749  
 pain due to arteritis in, 86  
 pain in wrist and hand in, 85  
 paresthesia in, 60  
 red toes in, 748  
 syncope in, 101  
 vomiting in, 91
- Reaction of degeneration, 848**
- Receptaculum chyli, landmark at second lumbar vertebra, 213**
- Rectal**  
 bleeding, 672  
 carcinoma, diarrhea in, 92  
 discharges, 672  
 disease  
   pain in iliac fossa in, 79  
   pain in penis in, 86  
   sacroiliac pain in, 81  
 pain, 79  
 polyp (adenomata), 673  
 prolapse, 675  
 strictures, 675  
 tumors, pain in hypogastric region in, 79  
 ulcers, 673
- Rectum**  
 allergic manifestations, 926  
 end of first section of landmark at third sacral vertebra, 213
- Rectum (continued)**  
 nerve mechanism of, 839  
 physical examination, 656
- Recurring fever, 48**
- Red**  
 blood cells, 996  
 macular eruption generalized, 132  
 tongue, 195  
 vomitus, 637
- Redness of skin, 128**
- Redundant colon, 657**
- Reduplication of heart sounds, 429, 434**
- Referred pain, 68, 73**
- Reflexes, 831**  
 increase of, 832
- Reflex headache, 70**  
 Refractive errors, scotomata in, 63
- Refraction, 182**
- Regeneration of nerve**
- Regional**  
 ileitis, 661  
   colicky pain in, 78  
   general abdominal pain in, 74  
   glossodynia in, 72  
 pain, 68
- Regurgitant heart murmurs, 449**
- Regurgitation, 90, 634**
- Relapsing febrile nodular panniculitis, 752**
- Relapsing fever, 48**  
 acute enlargement of spleen in, 622  
 as cause of chills, 59  
 differential diagnosis, 56  
 hematemeses in, 637  
 hyperidrosis in, 152  
 toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Remittent fever, 48**
- Renal**  
 artery aneurysm, pain in right loin in, 77  
 calculus, 685  
   pain in left loin in, 77  
 colic  
   coiled posture in, 118  
   cramps in, 68  
   hyperpnea in, 254  
   pancreatic disease, and appendicitis, differential diagnosis, 653  
   vomiting in, 636  
 cysts, 682  
 diseases, see Kidney diseases, 94, 679-692  
   facies in, 167  
   puffiness of eyelids in, 171  
   reflex headache in, 70  
 embolism or calculi, as cause of chills, 59  
 function tests, 1040  
 infarcts, lumbosacral pain in, 81  
 tuberculosis, lumbosacral pain in, 81  
 tumors, lumbosacral pain in, 81
- Reserve air, 230**
- Residual air, 230**
- Resistance of chest wall, 268**

- Resonance 281  
 exaggerated vesicular, 303  
 impaired, 302
- Respiration 230  
 accessory muscles of 232  
 types of normal, 233
- Respiratory  
 abdominal movements, 585  
 arrhythmia 518  
 disease, hyperpnea in, 254  
 expansion, degree of, 234  
 mobility, 297  
 movements, 231, 249  
 passage, foreign bodies in, 40  
 percussion, 293  
 rate, 254  
   normal, 230  
   pulse rate, and basal metabolic rate, relation  
     of, to temperature, 48  
 rhythm, 233, 259  
 system  
   allergic manifestations, 924  
   in history taking, 38  
   in the aged, 934, 936  
   inspection and mensuration 226  
   symptoms and physical signs of diseases of,  
     350  
   tract, in vitamin A deficiency, 899
- Reticulocytes, 552-996
- Reticuloendothelial proliferation, 1069
- Reticuloendotheliosis, 628  
 of spleen 628
- Reticuloendothelium system, 628  
 cells of 628  
 diseases of 628
- Reticulum cell sarcoma, 628
- Retina examination of, 178
- Retinal  
 disease, organic scotomata in, 63  
 hemorrhage, red vision in, 63  
 sclerosis 179  
 tumors, 180
- Retinitis, 179  
 color blindness in, 64  
 day blindness in, 61  
 photophobia in 64  
 pigmentosa night blindness in, 61  
 proliferans 180
- Retrobulbar neuritis  
 acute eye pain in, 71  
 anisocoria in, 61  
 blindness in, 61  
 color blindness in, 64
- Retrograde degeneration of nerves, 810
- Retroperitoneal  
 gland malignancy, 669  
 malignancy  
   abdominal tenderness in, 589  
   chest pain in, 73  
   epigastric pain in, 75  
   general abdominal pain in, 74
- Retroperitoneal  
 malignancy (*continued*)  
   rigidity of upper midabdomen in, 588  
   sarcoma, muscular rigidity in 588
- Retropharyngeal abscess  
 cervical pain in, 80  
 cyanosis in, 128  
 engorgement of jugular veins in 205  
 inspiratory retraction of suprasternal notch  
   in, 252  
 nasal regurgitation of fluid in, 186  
 swollen neck glands in, 201
- Retrosternal  
 crunching, 348  
 dullness (Banti's sign), 308
- Revlilod's sign, 869
- Rh in blood typing, 1006
- Rhabditiform larvae, 1079
- Rheumatic  
 affections, reflex headache in, 70  
 disease, cervical pain in, 79  
 fevers, 41  
   aching generalized pain in, 68  
   aortic regurgitation in, 487  
   as cause of chronic myocarditis, 475  
   as cause of sweating, 50  
   cardiac hypertrophy in, 477  
   dialysis reaction in, 987  
   differential diagnosis, 58  
   eosinophilia in, 1002  
   heart block in, 515  
   hematoporphyria in, 987  
   hip joint pain in, 84  
   hyperhidrosis in, 152  
   increased sedimentation rate in, 998  
   increase of neutrophils in, 1001  
   increase of serum globulin in 1011  
   pain in wrist and hand in 84  
   pericarditis in, 463  
   heart disease, 491  
     faint, systolic, apical murmur in 492  
     invasion of heart muscle with Aschoff's  
       bodies in 492  
   myocarditis  
     Aschoff's bodies in, 474  
     myocardial hypertrophy in, 474
- Rheumatism  
 acute articular, 736  
   foot pain in, 85  
   increased acidity of urine in, 972  
   increase of uric acid in urine in 974  
   mitral regurgitation in, 481  
 iritis in, 176  
 mitral stenosis in, 484  
 neuralgia in, 85  
 neuritis in, 85
- Rheumatoid arthritis, 736  
 hands in, 742  
 increase of serum globulin in, 1011  
 tachycardia in, 407

- Rhinitis**  
 acute, sneezing in, 94  
 allergic, 923  
 anosmia in, 65  
 hyperemia of nasal mucosa in, 153  
 hypertrophic, nasal obstruction in, 186  
 ozena in, 186  
 vasomotor, water discharge from nose in, 186
- Rhinopneumonitis**, 1095
- Rhinospiridium seeberi**, 1095
- Rhynchal fremitus**, 278
- Rhynch**, 338
- Rhythm**  
 cardiac, 434  
 irregularities of heart rhythm, 518  
 of heart, disturbances of, 510
- Rib**  
 counting, 209  
 fractured  
   dry cough in, 95  
   pain in right loin in, 77
- Riboflavin**, 903, 915, 916
- Rice water' vomitus**, 637
- Rickets**, 727  
 as cause of local sweating, 50  
 abnormal compressibility of skull in, 158  
 asymmetry of head in, 161  
 chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
 curvature of leg bones in, 743  
 decreased sedimentation rate in, 998  
 delayed dentition in, 191  
 dental caries in, 192  
 enlargement of liver in, 615  
 enlargement of spleen in, 627  
 eosinophilia in, 1002  
 gradual hypertrophy of spleen in, 627  
 infantile convulsions in, 100  
 local bulging of chest wall in, 248  
 macrocephalus in, 158  
 relative lymphocytosis in, 1002  
 skull in, 159  
 vitamin D in, 912
- Rickettsia infections**, differential diagnosis, 55
- Riedel's lobe of liver**, 605
- Riesman's sign**, 779
- Right ventricular shunt**, 459
- Rigid dorsal posture**, 117
- Rigidity of abdomen**, 587
- Rigors (chills)**, 59
- Ring**  
 cough, 95  
 in the ears, 185
- Ringworm**, see *Tinea circinata*
- Risus sardonicus**, 100
- Roberts' solution test for albuminuria**, 980
- Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever**, differential diagnosis, 55
- Roger's disease**, 459
- Romberg's sign**, 850  
 in ataxic paraplegia, 863  
 in tabes dorsalis, 862
- Roseola**, 131
- Rotch's sign**, 421, 471
- Rotheln** see German measles
- Rothera test for acetoacetic acid in urine**, 983
- Roundworms (nematodes)**, 1077  
 ancylostoma  
   braziliense, 1084  
   caninum, 1084  
   duodenalis (hookworm), 1083, 1084  
 ascaris lata, 1079  
   lumbricoides, 1070  
 dracunculus medinensis, 1079  
 enterobius (oxyuris) vermicularis, 1078  
 filaria (Wuchereria) bancrofti, 1080  
   loa (occuli), 1081  
 mansonella, 1081  
 necator americanus (hookworm), 1083, 1084  
 onchocerca caecutens, 1081  
   volvulus, 1080  
 strongyloides stercoralis, 1079  
 trichinella spiralis, 1081  
 trichuris trichiura (trichocephalus dispar, whipworm), 1082
- Rubella** see German measles  
 leukopenia in, 1003
- Rubella** see Measles, 40
- Rubrospinal tract**, 823
- Rumination**, 634
- R wave of electrocardiograph**, 437
- S A node**, 425
- Sacral vertebra**, 213
- Sacroiliac disease**, pain in penis in, 87
- Salicylate poisoning**  
 color blindness in, 64  
 partial deafness in, 64  
 purpura in, 564  
 tinnitus aurium in, 65  
 vertigo in, 97
- Salicylic acid poisoning**, dermatitis medicamentosa in, 135
- Sallowiness of face**, 167
- Salpingitis**, 703  
 acute  
   constant pain in rectum in, 671  
   pain in iliac and inguinal regions in, 77  
   extrauterine pregnancy, and appendicitis, differential diagnosis, 662  
   increase of neutrophils in, 1001  
   increased sedimentation rate in, 998  
   tenderness over right lower quadrant in, 589
- Salt retention**, general edema in, 88
- Sansom's sign**, 535
- Santonin poisoning**  
 psychosis in, 887  
 violet light vision in, 64  
 yellow vision in, 63
- Sarcocystis lindermani**, 1067
- Sarcodinia**, 1067



- Scurvy (continued)*  
 retinal hemorrhages in, 179  
 spongy gums in, 190  
 tender shins in, 82  
 thigh pain in, 84  
 Sea gull murmur (heart), 465  
*Seasickness*  
 nausea in, 90  
 vertigo in, 97  
 vomiting in, 91  
*Seatworms*, 1078  
*Seborrhea*  
 crusts in, 145  
 itching in, 87  
 sicca, scales in, 146  
*Second*  
 cranial nerve lesions, 856  
 sound (diastole), 426  
   accentuation of, 432  
   weakening of, 433  
*Secretory neurosis of stomach*, 650  
*Sedimentation*  
 index, 998  
 of red cells, 997  
*Sediments in urine and their significance*, 973  
*Selig's staircase test* 442  
*Semilunar valves of heart*, 390  
*Seminal vesicles, diseases of* 716  
*Seminal vesiculitis, constant pain in rectum in*, 671  
*Seminoma* 715  
*Semireclining posture*, 118  
*Semitendinosus and semimembranosus periosteal reflex* 840  
*Senescence*, 930  
*Senile*  
 dementia, 41  
 osteoporosis 730  
 psychosis 889, 891  
 respiration, 326  
*Senilism* 937  
*Senility*  
 myosis in, 176  
 neuritis in, 85  
 premature, 937  
 purpura in, 564  
 rhythmical head nodding in, 162  
 tremors in, 98  
*Sensibility*, 829  
 reactions, 848  
*Sensory neurosis of stomach* 651  
 pathways, 813  
*Sepsis puerperal, as cause of chills*, 59  
*Septal defects, ventricular*, 505  
*Septic*  
 fevers hyperidrosis in 152  
 retinitis 179  
 temperature, 48  
*Septic arthritis* 736  
*Septicemia*  
 acute nephritis in, 687  
 as cause of sweating, 50  
 differential diagnosis 53  
 embolic retinitis in, 179  
 increase of fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011  
 increase of neutrophils in 1001  
 retinal hemorrhages in, 179  
 splenic enlargement in 622  
*Septicopyemia, splenic enlargement in*, 623  
*Sergeant's line*, 267  
*Serofibrinous pleurisy* 376  
*Serology*, 1018  
*Serous meningitis acute* 878  
*Serum globulin increase* see *Hyperproteinemia*, 1011  
*Serum phosphatase*, 1042  
*Serum sickness*  
 increase of neutrophils in 1001  
 purpuric spots in, 134  
*Seventh cranial nerve lesions* 858  
*Sex*  
 and age in reference to disease, 40  
 hormone of pituitary, 760  
 "Shell shock" tremors in 99  
*Sherman Chase unit* 900  
*Shift to right or left of leukocytes*, 1003  
*Shock*  
 as cause of sweating, 50  
 decreased respiratory frequency in, 327  
 hypopnea in 258  
 hypotension in 413  
 increased erythrocytes in 996  
 increased respiratory frequency in 327  
 pallor in, 127  
 palpitation in, 96  
 sinus tachycardia in, 438  
 tachycardia in, 513  
 vertigo in, 97  
*Shortened inspiration*, 328  
*Shoulder blades*, 212  
*Sibilant rales* 342  
*Sickle*  
 cell anemia 560  
 eosinophilia in 1002  
 increased fragility of erythrocytes in 997  
 vomiting in, 92  
 shaped red cells, 996  
*Siderosis*, 360  
 sputum in 1037  
*Sighing* 259  
*Sight* 60  
 in the aged 934  
*Sigmoid displacement of*, 658  
*Sigmoidal*  
 disease left lower quadrant rigidity in 588  
 malignancy tenderness in left lower quadrant in, 589  
*Signs*  
 Abadie's sign 170  
 Baccelli's sign 336

Signs (*continued*)

- Bamberger and Ewart's 465
- Banti's sign of retrosternal dullness 308
- Bermer's sign 307
- Broadbent's sign 397 472
- Brudzinski's signs 841
- check 841
  - contralateral reflex 841
  - neck 841
  - symplysis 841
- coin percussion test, 353
- coin test, 307
- Dalrymple's sign 779
- Desjardins' sign 335
- Drummond's sign 535
- Duroziez's sign 489 524
- elicited only by palpation of chest 266
- Friedrich's
  - phenomenon, 307
  - sign 472
- Gerhardt's change of sound 307
- Glasgow's sign 535
- Gröcco's sign 301
- Hoffmann's sign 841
- Jackson's (Chevalier) sign 352
- Joffroy's sign 779
- Kernig's sign 837
- Litten's diaphragmatic phenomenon sign 253
- Loewenberg's (Samuel A.) sign 309 353 489
- Loewy's sign 719
- Lowry's sign 654 779
- Moebius sign 182 718 857
- Oliver's sign 535
- platysma sign 870
- Queckenstedt's sign, 831
- Raimistes' sign 869
- reduced vital capacity of lungs (sign of early myocardial inadequacy) 445
- Reviolod's sign 869
- Riesman's sign 779
- Rogoff's sign 279
- Romberg's sign, 850
- Rotch's sign 471
- Saunders' sign 535
- Schultze's tongue dimpling sign 192
- Stellwag's sign 182 719
- von Graefe's sign 182 778
- Williams' tracheal tone, 307
- Wintrich's change of sound, 306

## Silex 360

- aputum in 1037

- Simmonds' disease see Pituitary cachexia 771

- Sinoposition 117

## Simulated

- good health, 961
- paris and d'abailles 957

- Sinulidae, 1086

- Singultus 94

- Sinoatrial node 424

- Sinoauricular
  - bradycardia 439

Sinoauricular (*continued*)

- heart block 516

- node 424

## Sinus

- arrhythmia 439 518
- bradycardia 515
- disease anosmia in 65 187
- tachycardia 438 510
- thrombosis 873
  - exophthalmos in 180
  - puffiness of forehead in 169
  - retraction of head in 162
  - vomiting in 91

## Sinusitis

- headache in, 70
- increased fibrinogen of plasma in 1011
- sphenoidal eye pain in 71

## Situs inversus

- abdominalis partialis inferior 580
- inversus viscerum 580

## Skin

- allergic manifestations 927
- diseases
  - itching in 87
  - local as cause of local anidrosis 59
- examination of 113 127
- in vitamin A deficiency 898
- sensibility to electricity 830
- tests
  - allergens 975
  - Bachman for trichinosis 1061
  - Burnet for undulant fever 1062
  - Dick for scarlet fever 1060
  - echinococcus disease 1069
  - Fei for lymphogranuloma inguinale 1059
  - Gilfillan and Gregg for pregnancy 1056
  - Mantoux for tuberculosis 1061
  - Moro for tuberculosis 1061
  - patch for tuberculosis 1061
  - protein sensitization 929
  - Schick for diphtheria 1058
  - tuberculin for tuberculosis 1061
  - Von Pirquet, for tuberculosis 1061

## Skodaic resonance 303

## Skull

- examination of 157
- fracture
  - coma in 102
  - vomiting in 91

## Sleep

- in the aged 934 935
- loss duskiness of eyelids in 174

## Sleeping sickness 1068

## Sleeplessness 96

## Smallpox, 40

- aching generalized pains in 68
- acute splenic enlargement in 622
- as cause of chills 59
- differential diagnosis 54
- diffuse erythema in, 136
- eruption in 140

- Smallpox (*continued*)  
 eye pain in 71  
 hematemesis in 637  
 increase of neutrophils during pustular state 1001  
 leukopenia in early stage 1001  
 malignant hemorrhagic eruption in 135  
 membranous gastritis in 645  
 mouth rash in 153  
 papules in 143  
 photophobia in 64  
 purpura in 564  
 pustules in, 141  
 ulcers of tongue in 194
- Smell 65  
 sense of 187
- Smoking fissures of tongue in 72
- Snake  
 bites erythema or purpura in 135  
 venom poisoning toxic hepatic jaundice in 604
- Sneezing 94
- Snow blindness, 61  
 red vision in, 63
- Snuffles 186
- Sodium chloride estimation test 445
- Soft vesicular murmur 321
- Solis Cohen's intrathoracic stethoscope 315
- Somatic tetanus 1075
- Somnolence and hibernation pituitary 767 773
- Sonorous rales 341
- Sordes 193
- Sore throat streptococcus differential diagnosis 53
- South American trypanosomiasis see Chagas disease
- Spadelike hand 739
- Span normal in relation to height 111
- Spargum mansonii 1075  
 proliferum 1076
- Spasm 846
- Spasmophilia infantile convulsions in 100
- Spastic  
 colitis 664  
 general abdominal pain in 74  
 heartburn in 90  
 lumbosacral pain in 81
- colon  
 colicky pain in 77  
 tenderness in left lower quadrant in 589  
 tenderness over right lower quadrant in, 589
- gait 120
- paraplegia  
 Babinski reflex in 834  
 cramps in 99  
 spastic gait in 120
- Special  
 examinations evaluation of 42  
 lenses alterations of 60  
 senses injury to 960
- Specific  
 gravity of urine 972  
 symptoms 42
- Speech centers examination of disturbances of 842
- Spermatic cord 706  
 diseases of 715  
 pain in testes in 87  
 inflamed right, drawing up of right leg in 118  
 torsion of pain in inguinal regions in 79
- Spermatocoeles 714
- Spermatocystoma 715
- Spermatorrhea 711
- Sphenoidal sinusitis eye pain in 71
- Sphincter ani dilated 675
- Sphygmobolometry 446
- Sphygmograph 1052
- Sphygmomanometer 446
- Spina bifida 751  
 sacroiliac pain in 81  
 ventosa 724
- Spinal  
 accessory nerves 816  
 and peripheral localization 823  
 artery occlusion 873  
 automatism reflexes of 838  
 column 212  
 auscultation over 375  
 pain 79  
 cord 816  
 disease  
 myosis in 176  
 wrist drop in 742  
 hemorrhage pain along spine in 81  
 lesions 825 861  
 motor tracts 822  
 sensory tracts 819  
 trauma anesthesia in 60  
 tumor  
 acute pain in 67  
 anesthesia in 60  
 pain along spine in 81  
 pain in right loin in 77  
 spastic gait in 120  
 thigh pain in 84  
 deformities congenital 751  
 disease  
 chest pain in 74  
 general abdominal pain in 74  
 hypogastric pain in 79  
 pain in iliac fossa in 79  
 right hypochondrial pain in 76  
 thoracic spinal pain in 80  
 fluid findings and their significance 1024  
 meningitis, pain along spine in 81  
 nerves 823  
 lesions 824  
 puncture  
 reflex headache in 70  
 technic 1023



- Spinal (*continued*)  
 segments 818 819  
 tuberculosis lumbosacral pain in 80  
 Spindle shaped chest 241  
 Spirillum minus 56 1067  
 Spirochaetales 1067  
 Spirochetal infections 56  
 Spirochete boralis 56 1067  
 Spirochetosis  
 bronchial 352  
 differential diagnosis 56  
 Spinoolivary tract 820  
 Sp notectal tract 820  
 Spinothalamic tract lateral 820  
 Splanchnoptosis 581  
 Splashing sound pericardial 465  
 Spleen  
 anomalies and diseases 621  
 enlarged hyperpnea in 255  
 lower border of landmark of eleventh thoracic vertebra 213  
 physical examination 620  
 technic for palpating 596  
 topographic anatomy 578  
 upper limit of landmark of ninth thoracic vertebra 213  
 Splenic  
 abscess 623  
 fluctuation over left hypochondriac region in 591  
 anemia 624  
 chronic splenic enlargement in 623  
 petechiae of mouth in 153  
 capsulitis gradual hypertrophy of spleen in 627  
 disease rigidity of left upper quadrant in 588  
 disorders pleurisy and pneumonia differential diagnosis 622  
 enlargement 622 1069  
 abdominal enlargement in 586  
 flexure carcinoma of colicky pain in 77  
 displacement of 658  
 hypertrophy (congestion) 623  
 infarcts  
 chest pain in 73  
 gradual hypertrophy of spleen in 627  
 pain in 86  
 sudden violent pain in 77  
 inflammation tenderness in left upper quadrant in 589  
 malignancy 623  
 rupture acute pain in 77  
 tumor with polycythemia and cyanosis 623  
 Splenomedullary leukemia 566  
 Splenomegaly Neumann Pick's disease in 626  
 lumbosacral pain in 81  
 with eosinophilia 626  
 chronic splenic enlargement in 623  
 Spl t heart sounds 430  
 Spondylitis lumbosacral pain in 80  
 Spondylitis  
 cervical cervical pain in 79  
 spongy gums in 190  
 thoracic spinal pain in 80  
 Sporotrichosis 1094  
 Sporozoa 1067  
 Spots before the eyes 63  
 Spotted fever differential diagnosis 55  
 Sprue 660  
 diarrhea in 92  
 differential diagnosis 58  
 glossodynia in 72  
 increased color index in 995  
 lingual pain in 197  
 nontropical hypochromic microcytic anemia in 557  
 stricture of rectum in 675  
 Sputum 1033 1037  
 semeiology of (16 colored plates) opposite 1034  
 Squamous cell carcinoma of uterus 702  
 Squint 181  
 Starvation  
 decrease of urinary chlorides in 974  
 enophthalmos in 180  
 general edema in 88  
 low metabolic rate in 1045  
 rapid emaciation in 89  
 sweetish odor of urine in 971  
 Static coordination 831  
 Status  
 hypoplasticus 785  
 lymphaticus 547  
 thymicolymphaticus 785  
 chronic splenic enlargement in 623  
 enlargement of spleen in 628  
 Steatorrhea chronic  
 diarrhea in 92  
 glossodynia in 72  
 idiopathic general abdominal pain 74  
 stegomyia fasciata 1089  
 Stellwag's sign 779 182  
 Stenotic heart murmurs 449  
 Steppage gait 120 851  
 Stercoraceous vomiting 638  
 Stereognosis 60  
 Stereognostic sense 814 830  
 Sternal  
 lines of thorax 214  
 regions 218  
 auscultation of 324  
 Sternomastoid breathing 259  
 Sternovertebral diameter of chest 237  
 Sternoxiphoid articulation 211  
 Sternum 211  
 Sternum 94  
 Stethoscope 313  
 Stippling  
 of erythrocytes 551  
 of red cells 996

- Stokes Adams syndrome, 408  
 coma in, 102, 104  
 syncope in, 101  
 venous pulsations in neck in, 204  
 vomiting in, 91
- Stomach*, 632  
 cardiac orifice of, landmark of tenth thoracic vertebra, 213  
 diseases of, 641  
 hiccoughs in, 94  
 vomiting in, 91  
 hyperdistention of left abdominal pain in, 77  
 topographic anatomy, 575
- Stomatitis*, 190  
 excessive moisture of mouth in, 153  
 hyperemia of buccal mucosa in, 153  
 lost or perverted taste in, 65  
 rash of mouth in, 153  
 swelling of submaxillary glands in, 202  
 ulcerated tongue in, 193
- Stomaxys calcitrans*, 1086
- Stone*  
 in bladder, 693  
 in kidney, 685
- Stokes's collar, 384c
- Strabismus*, 181
- Strangulated hernia, constipation in, 92
- Strangulation of bowel*, 669
- Strauss's reaction for glanders, 1058
- Strawberry tongue, 195
- Streptococcus* sore throat, differential diagnosis, 53
- Streptothricosis*, 1094
- Streptothrix actinomyces*, 1093
- Strictures of rectum, 675
- Stridulous breathing, 259
- Strongyloides stercoralis*, 1079
- Strychnine* poisoning  
 cramps in, 99  
 cyanosis in, 128  
 emprosthotonos in, 118  
 hyperpnea in, 256  
 inability to protrude tongue in, 196  
 increased knee jerk in, 836  
 increased reflexes in, 832  
 increase of apical impulse in, 401  
 muscle cramps in, 68  
 neck rigidity in, 200  
 opisthotonos in, 118, 119  
 orthotonos in, 119  
 retraction of head in, 162  
 spasm of pharynx in, 198
- Strumpriva*, 780
- Stupor, forms of, 892
- St. Vitus' dance, 880
- Stye*, 172
- Subarachnoid hemorrhage, 872  
 coma in, 103  
 increased spinal fluid pressure in, 1025
- Subclavian artery  
 aneurysm, 524  
 left, anatomy, 395
- Subcortical auditory aphasia, 93
- Subcostal line, 574
- Subcrepitant râles, 340
- Subdiaphragmatic abscess  
 chest pain in, 73  
 hyperpnea in, 256  
 left upper quadrant rigidity in, 588  
 local bulging of chest wall in, 248  
 hernia, left hypochondrial pain in, 76  
 pleurisy, right hypochondrial pain in, 76
- Subdural hemorrhage, 872
- Subjective pain, 67
- Submucous râles, 339
- Subnormal temperature, 48
- Subphrenic abscess, 380  
 epigastric tenderness in, 589  
 right hypochondrial pain in, 76  
 friction, 465
- Subscapular regions of chest, 220
- Succussion  
 fremitus, 278  
 splash, 279  
 hippocratic, 347
- Sudamina, 138
- Suffocation, retinal hemorrhages in, 179
- Sugar  
 in urine, 981  
 tolerance test, 1012
- Sulfanilamide  
 concentration in blood, 1017  
 poisoning  
 hemolytic anemia in, 560  
 toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Sulfapyridine  
 concentration in blood, 1017  
 poisoning  
 hemolytic anemia in, 560  
 toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Sulfate  
 crystals in urine, 991  
 in urine, 975
- Sulfathiazole concentration in blood, 1017
- Sulfonal poisoning, hypopnea in, 258
- Sulfur in urine, 975
- Summer complaint, 660
- Sunburn, itching in, 87
- Sunstroke  
 coma in, 102, 103  
 headache in, 70  
 myosis in, 176
- Superior cervical ganglion of sympathetic land mark for second and third cervical vertebrae, 212
- Supernumerary breasts, 383

Supernumerary (*continued*)

- fingers 739
  - nipples 383
  - toes 751 752
- Supplemental air 230
- Suppressed cough 9a
- Suppurative pancreatitis 6a2
- Supraaxillary regions percussion of 296
- Supraclavicular regions 215
- auscultation of 323
- Supramarginal gums lesions of 869
- Supranuclear palsy 8a8
- Suprarenal

- capsules landmark of eleventh thoracic vertebra 213

- tumors chest pain in 73

- Suprascapular region, 219

- auscultation of 325

- Supraspinous fossa

- auscultation of 325

- percussion of 297

- Suprasternal

- notch 211

- region of chest 217

- Surface temperature test, 544

- Sweats 50

- secretion 840

- Sycosis vulgaris pustules in, 141

- Sydenham's chorea 880

- Symblepharon 173

- diplopia in 62

- Symmetry of chest 242

- Sympathetic

- nervous system, 82a

- ophthalmia

- anblyopia in 61

- blindness in 61

- photophobia in 64

- Sympatheticotonia

- as cause of sweating 50

- hypertension in 412

- Symphysis of Brudzinskis 841

- Symptom

- definition 41

- evaluation of 41

- syndrome medial 384b

- Synalgia 841

- Synapse 810

- Syncope 111

- palor in 127

- Synlactism 741 742

- Synechia posterior unequal contraction of pupils in, 177

- Synkresia 845

- Synstethesistax panchnism or treatment in 73

- Systole

- a normal process of skull 15a

- aortic valve, 163

- aortic valve, 163

Syphilis (*continued*)

- as cause of chronic myocarditis 47a
- bullae in 140
- chronic splenic enlargement in 623
- congenital 40

  - facies in 165
  - Hutchinson's teeth in 192
  - macrocephalus in 158
  - skull in 160

- crusts in 146
- delayed dentition in 191
- differential diagnosis 56
- fatty liver in 609
- fissures of tongue in 72 193
- flocculation test or precipitation reaction 1022
- generalized red macular eruption in 132
- headache in 70
- heart block in 515
- hemolytic anemia in 560
- hemorrhagica

  - neonatorum 562
  - retinitis in 179

- hyperpnea in 2a6
- increased monocytes in, 1003
- increased serum globulin in 1011
- intestinal ulceration in 660
- in the aged 937
- iritis in 176
- jaundice of conjunctivae in 153
- keratitis in 175
- lymphocytosis in 1002
- mental stenosis in 484
- mucous patches on palate in, 197
- neck glands in, 201
- nocturnal ostealgia in, 81
- of bone 72a
- of larynx psychosis in, 8a9
- of eyelid 172
- of gallbladder 620
- of liver 610

  - diminished secretion of hippuric acid in 1043

- of lung 370
- of prostate 717
- of rectum 674
- of spinal cord 861
- of spleen, 62a
- of thyroid, 775
- of tongue 72
- of vulva 696
- czema in 186
- pallor in 127
- papules in, 142
- perforation of nasal septum in 186
- plastic phlebitis in, 542
- puercosis of eyelids and iritis in 172
- rustiness in 141
- rash of mouth in, 153
- salivary nose in 186
- salivaryness of face in 167
- scalp in 147

*Syphilis (continued)*

- secondary, copper-colored spots on abdomen in, 583
- splenic enlargement in, 622
- small liver in, 617
- swelling of posterior cervical glands in, 202
- swelling of submaxillary glands in, 202
- tubercles in, 144
- ulceration of pharynx in, 198
- ulcer of nose in, 186
- ulcers in, 148
- ulcers of tongue in, 193, 194
- Wassermann reaction, 1021

*Syphilitic*

- arthritis, 737
  - knee pain in, 84
- chorioretinitis, 179
- encephalitis, 877
- endarteritis, pain due to arteritis in, 86
- heart disease, 493
- meningitis, 879
- orchitis and epididymitis, 714
- urethritis, 711

*Syngomyelia, 737, 864*

- anesthesia in, 60
- as cause of local sweating, 50
- complete loss of tendon and skin reflexes in, 832
- eruption in, 140
- gangrene of extremities in, 749
- pain along spine in, 81

*Systole, 426**Systolic*

- blood pressure, 411
- heart murmurs, 449
- retraction, 397

*Tabes dorsalis, 862*

- abdominal tenderness in, 589
- absence of tendo achillis reflex in, 837
- acid vomitus in, 637
- acute pain in, 67
- anesthesia in, 60
- anisocoria in, 177
- anosmia in, 187, 856
- Argyll-Robertson pupil in, 177
- as cause of local sweating, 50
- atony of anal sphincter in, 675
- complete loss of tendon and skin reflexes in, 832
- decreased knee jerk in, 836
- diplopia in, 62
- epigastric pain in, 75
- facies in, 166
- general abdominal pain in, 74
- glossodynia in, 72
- green vision in, 63
- hyperesthesia in, 60
- increase of lymphocytes of spinal fluid in, 1025
- loss of sphincter control in, 839
- neuritis in, 85

*Tabes dorsalis (continued)*

- pain along spine in, 81
- pain in rectum in, 671
- ptosis in, 173
- purpura in, 564
- unequal contraction of pupils in, 177
- unilateral myosis in, 176
- vomiting in, 91, 636

*Tabetic gait, 851**Tachycardia, 407, 438, 510*

- leukocytosis after, 1000
- paroxysmal
  - increase of neutrophils in, 1002
  - shortening of circulation time in, 447

*Tactile fremitus, 269**Takata Ara reaction, 1043**Talipes, 747**Tallness, excessive, 763**Tanning of skin, 127**Tapeworm infestation, pallor in, 127**Tapeworms (cestodes, tenia), 1073*

- beef, 1074
- broad (fish), 1074
- dog, 1075, 1077
- dwarf, 1075
- pork, 1075, 1077

*Tapia syndrome of, 800**Taste, 65, 196*

- disturbance of in gastric disease, 634
- sensations, technique for testing, 196

*Tawara node, 425**Tectospinal tract, 822**Teeth*

- examination of, 122, 191
- in vitamin A deficiency, 899
- upper, landmark for second cervical vertebra, 212

*Telangiectasis, 131, 543**Epistaxis in, 186**hereditary*

- hemorrhagic, 565
- petechiae of mouth in, 153

*Telegrapher's cramps, 68**Temperature*

- normal, 47
- of skin, 150
- perception of, 814
- relation to pulse rate, respiratory rate, and basal metabolic rate, 48

*Temporal convulsions, lesions of, 869**Tenderness, 66*

- abdominal, 588
- thoracic (table), 279, also see 72, 73

*Tendo achillis reflex, 837**Tendon reflexes, increase of, 833**Tenesmus, 672**Tenia (Taenia)*

- multiplex, 1077
- multiceps, 1077
- saginata, 1074
- head and segments of, 1073

## Tema (Taenia) (continued)

soleum, 1074

head and segments of 1073

## Teniasis

intestinal, 1074

somatic 1075

## Tenth cranial nerve lesions, 859

## Teratoma

of testes, 715

of vagina, 699

## Terror, palpitation in, 96

## Testes, diseases of, 713

## Testicle incarcerated

muscular rigidity in 587

## Testicles, 706

## Testicular

hormones, 757

tumors urine test for, 1058

## Testosterone, 757

function of, 800

## Tests

acidosis 1014

agglutination tests 1019, 1062

alkali

reserve of blood, 1015

tolerance of patient 1016

amebiasis 1058

amylase 1063

bacillary dysentery, 1058

bacterial identification 1054

basal metabolism, 1044

Benedict's test for sugar in urine 982

bile 1042

blood sedimentation test 997

urea 1039

capillary resistance test, 544

carbon dioxide tension of alveolar air, 1016

cardiac (function) capacity and reserve 442-447

cerebrospinal tuberculosis, 1062

complement fixation tests 1021, 1022

congo red test for amyloidosis 1064

Dick 1060

dye, 1043

electrocardiographic, 1045

Fehling's test for sugar in urine, 982

fermentation test for sugar in urine, 982

Fret test for lymphogranuloma inguinale, 1059

functional 1033

Galatest for sugar in urine, 982

gastric contents 1030

Gerhardt's test for acetoacetic acid in urine, 983

Glanders 1058

complement fixation, 1058

Knew's, 1058

Strauss's, 1058

Goetsch test, 780

Gordon's biological test for Hodgkin's disease, 1059

Graupner's test, 443

## Tests (continued)

Hertz's self-checking test, 444

heterophile antibody test for glandular fever, 1059, 1064

histamine test, 543

hopping test, 443

hydrogen ion concentration of plasma 1015

hyperthyroidism, 1059

intradermal saline test 544

iodine tolerance, 1059

Kala azar, 1063

Katzenstein's test, 444

Levinsohn test, 1062

liver function tests, 1040

Loew's test for pancreatitis and hyperthyroidism, 1060

Mendelsohn's test, 444

Neufeld, for pneumococci, 1054

oscillometric reading 544

pancreatic disease 1063

peripheral circulation, 543

plantar ischemic test 544

pregnancy tests, 1055

directions for collecting urine, 1060

indications for, 1057

protein sensitization, 929

psittacosis, 1060

rabies 1060

renal function tests, 1038

Roberts' solution test for albuminuria 980

Rothera test for acetoacetic acid in urine 983

scarlet fever, 1060

Schick test for diphtheria, 1060

Selig's staircase test, 442

Shultz Charlton test 1061

specific dynamic for protein 1045

sugar tolerance test, 1012

surface temperature test, 544

trichinosis, 1061

tryptophan test, 1062

tuberculosis 1061

Calmette's eye test, 1061

hypodermic injection, 1061

Mantoux, 1061

Moro, 1061

patch 1061

Von Pirquet, 1061

undulant fever, 1062

urine test for testicular tumors, 1060

Van den Bergh test 602, 1041

vanillin test for acetone in urine, 984

venous pressure, 447

viability of ovum 1057

Wassermann reaction, 1021

Weil's disease, 1059

Widal hemoclastic crisis, 1044

## Tetanus

as cause of sweating, 50

cervical pain in, 80

convulsions in, 100

differential diagnosis, 52

- Tetanus** (*continued*)  
 emprosthotonos in, 118  
 facial spasms in, 170  
 inability to protrude tongue in, 196  
 increased knee jerk in, 836  
 increased reflexes in, 832  
 increased urinary creatinine in, 976  
 opisthotonos in, 118  
 orthotonos in, 118, 119  
 muscle cramps in, 68  
 neck rigidity in, 200  
 photophobia in, 64  
 ptosis in, 172  
 retraction of head in, 162  
 spasm of pharynx in, 198
- Tetany**, 790  
 cramps in, 99  
 cervical pain in, 80  
 coma in, 104  
 convulsions in, 100  
 cyanosis in, 128  
 muscle cramps in, 68
- Tetrachlorethane poisoning**, toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Tetrachloride poisoning**, decreased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011
- Tetrachlormethane poisoning**, increased monocytes in, 1003
- Tetralogy of Fallot**, 459, 507
- Tetramitus menseli**, 1071
- Thalamospinal tract**, 820
- Thalamus**, lesions in, 868
- Theca cell tumors**, 706, 804
- Theelin**, 803
- Theelol**, 803
- Thermic sensibility**, 829
- Thiamin chloride (hydrochloride)**, 900, 915, 916
- Third, fourth, and sixth cranial nerves**, lesions of, 856
- Third heart sound**, 428
- Thirst**, disturbances of, in gastric disease, 634
- Thomsen's disease**, cramps in, 99
- Thoracentesis**, 1027
- Thoracic**  
 aneurysm  
   acute pain in, 67  
   thoracic spinal pain in, 80  
 duct diseases, 545  
 spine, pain in, 80  
 tenderness table, 279  
 unilateral retraction, 246  
 vertebra, 213
- Thoracometry**, 234
- Thorax**  
 diameters of, 236  
 examination of, 122  
 pain and tenderness of, 268  
 pathologic, 237  
 topographic and regional anatomy of, 209
- Thready pulse**, 409
- Threadworm**, 1078
- Thrills**, 279, 403
- Throbbing pain**, 68
- Thromboangitis obliterans**, 536  
 as cause of local anidrosis, 59  
 cramps in, 99  
 foot pain in, 84  
 pain due to arteritis in, 86  
 pain in wrist and hand in, 84  
 plastic phlebitis in, 542
- Thrombocytes** (blood platelets), 1005
- Thrombocytolytic purpura**, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrombocytopenic purpura**, idiopathic, 563
- Thrombolytic purpura**, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrombopenia**, essential, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrombophilia**, essential, 537
- Thrombophlebitis migrans**, 542
- Thrombosthenia**, hereditary, hemorrhagic, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrush**, 1069  
 grayish or white coating of tongue in, 196
- Thyloquinone**, 920
- Thymic**  
 asthma, 788  
 disease, obesity in, 89  
 pituitary type of infantilism, 769  
 stridor, 783
- Thymus**, 757  
 disease, infantile convulsions in, 100  
 enlarged, cyanosis in, 128  
 gland, 784  
 type of hypogonadism, 801
- Thyroid**  
 enlargement, 775  
 gland, 200  
   anatomy and physiology, 773  
   methods of palpating, 199  
 heart disease, 494  
 hormones, 756  
 insufficiency, 780  
 toxicosis, 777  
 tumors, 775
- Thyroiditis**, 775  
 aphonia in, 94  
 suppurative, cervical pain in, 80
- Thyrotoxicosis**, 494  
 auricular fibrillation in, 494  
 cyanosis in, 494  
 dyspnea in, 494  
 general weakness in, 494  
 high pulse pressure in, 495  
 rapid, wiry pulse in, 495  
 sinus tachycardia in, 438  
 sweats and tremors in, 494  
 systolic, apical murmur in, 494  
 tachycardia in, 494
- Thyrotropic hormone of pituitary**, 760
- Tibia**, chronic painful, hard swelling of, 744

- Tenia (Taenia) (continued)**  
 soleum 1074  
 head and segments of, 1073
- Temiasis**  
 intestinal 1074  
 somatic 1075
- Tenth cranial nerve lesions, 859**
- Teratoma**  
 of testes, 715  
 of vagina, 699
- Terror, palpitation in, 96**
- Testes diseases of, 713**
- Testicle, incarcerated**  
 muscular rigidity in, 587
- Testicles, 706**
- Testicular**  
 hormones, 757  
 tumors, urine test for, 1058
- Testosterone 757**  
 function of 800
- Tests**  
 acidosis, 1014  
 agglutination tests 1019, 1062  
 alkali  
   reserve of blood, 1015  
   tolerance of patient 1016  
 amebiasis 1058  
 amylase 1063  
 bacillary dysentery, 1058  
 bacterial identification, 1054  
 basal metabolism, 1044  
 Benedict's test for sugar in urine 982  
 bile 1042  
 blood sedimentation test, 997  
   urea 1039  
 capillary resistance test, 544  
 carbon dioxide tension of alveolar air, 1016  
 cardiac (function) capacity and reserve, 442  
 447  
 cerebrospinal tuberculosis, 1062  
 complement fixation tests 1021, 1022  
 congo red test for amyloidosis 1064  
 Dick, 1060  
 dye 1043  
 electrocardiographic, 1045  
 Fehling's test for sugar in urine 982  
 fermentation test for sugar in urine, 982  
 Frei test for lymphogranuloma inguinale 1059  
 functional, 1038  
 Galatest for sugar in urine, 982  
 gastric contents, 1030  
 Gerhardt's test for acetoacetic acid in urine, 983  
 Glanders 1058  
   complement fixation, 1058  
   Knew's, 1058  
   Strauss's, 1058  
 Goetsch test, 780  
 Gordon's biological test for Hodgkin's disease, 1059  
 Graupner's test, 443
- Tests (continued)**  
 Hertz's self-checking test, 444  
 heterophile antibody test for glandular fever, 1059, 1064  
 histamine test, 543  
 hopping test, 443  
 hydrogen ion concentration of plasma, 1015  
 hyperthyroidism 1059  
 intradermal saline test, 544  
 iodine tolerance, 1059  
 Kala azar, 1063  
 Katzenstein's test, 444  
 Levinsohn test, 1062  
 liver function tests, 1040  
 Loew's test for pancreatitis and hyperthyroidism, 1060  
 Mendelsohn's test, 444  
 Neufeld, for pneumococci, 1054  
 oscillometric reading 544  
 pancreatic disease, 1063  
 peripheral circulation, 543  
 plantar ischemic test 544  
 pregnancy tests, 1055  
   directions for collecting urine, 1060  
   indications for, 1057  
 protein sensitization, 929  
 psittacosis, 1060  
 rabies, 1060  
 renal function tests, 1038  
 Roberts' solution test for albuminuria 980  
 Rothera test for acetoacetic acid in urine, 983  
 scarlet fever, 1060  
 Schick test for diphtheria, 1060  
 Selig's staircase test, 442  
 Shultz Charlton test 1061  
 specific dynamic for protein, 1045  
 sugar tolerance test, 1012  
 surface temperature test, 544  
 trichinosis, 1061  
 tryptophan test, 1062  
 tuberculosis 1061  
   Calmette's eye test, 1061  
   hypodermic injection, 1061  
   Mantoux, 1061  
   Moro 1061  
   patch 1061  
   Von Pirquet, 1061  
 undulant fever, 1062  
 urine test for testicular tumors, 1060  
 Van den Bergh test, 602, 1041  
 vanillin test for acetone in urine, 984  
 venous pressure, 447  
 viability of ovum 1057  
 Wassermann reaction, 1021  
 Weil's disease, 1059  
 Widal hemoclastic crisis, 1044
- Tetanus**  
 as cause of sweating, 50  
 cervical pain in, 80  
 convulsions in, 100  
 differential diagnosis 52

- Tetanus** (*continued*)  
 emprosthotonos in, 118  
 facial spasms in, 170  
 inability to protrude tongue in, 196  
 increased knee jerk in, 836  
 increased reflexes in, 832  
 increased urinary creatinine in, 976  
 opisthotonos in, 118  
 orthotonos in, 118, 119  
 muscle cramps in, 68  
 neck rigidity in, 200  
 photophobia in, 64  
 ptosis in, 172  
 retraction of head in, 162  
 spasm of pharynx in, 198
- Tetany**, 790  
 cramps in, 99  
 cervical pain in, 80  
 coma in, 104  
 convulsions in, 100  
 cyanosis in, 128  
 muscle cramps in, 68
- Tetrachlorethane poisoning**, toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Tetrachloride poisoning** decreased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011
- Tetrachlormethane poisoning**, increased monocytes in, 1003
- Tetralogy of Fallot**, 459, 507
- Tetramitus menseli**, 1071
- Thalamospinal tract**, 820
- Thalamus**, lesions in, 868
- Theca cell tumors**, 706, 804
- Theelin**, 803
- Theelol**, 803
- Thermic sensibility**, 829
- Thiamin chloride (hydrochloride)**, 900, 915, 916
- Third, fourth and sixth cranial nerves**, lesions of, 856
- Third heart sound**, 428
- Thirst**, disturbances of, in gastric disease, 634
- Thomsen's disease**, cramps in, 99
- Thoracentesis**, 1027
- Thoracic**  
 aneurysm  
 acute pain in, 67  
 thoracic spinal pain in, 80  
 duct diseases, 545  
 spine, pain in, 80  
 tenderness table, 279  
 unilateral retraction, 246  
 vertebra, 213
- Thoracometry**, 234
- Thorax**  
 diameters of, 236  
 examination of, 122  
 pain and tenderness of, 268  
 pathologic, 237  
 topographic and regional anatomy of, 209
- Thready pulse**, 409
- Threadworm**, 1078
- Thrills**, 279, 403
- Throbbing pain**, 68
- Thromboangitis obliterans**, 536  
 as cause of local anidrosis, 59  
 cramps in, 99  
 foot pain in, 84  
 pain due to arteritis in, 86  
 pain in wrist and hand in, 84  
 plastic phlebitis in, 542
- Thrombocytes** (blood platelets), 1005
- Thrombocytolytic purpura**, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrombocytopenic purpura**, idiopathic, 563
- Thrombolytic purpura**, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrombopenia** essential, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrombophilia**, essential, 537
- Thrombophlebitis migrans**, 542
- Thrombosthenia**, hereditary hemorrhagic, see Werthof's disease, 562
- Thrush**, 1069  
 grayish or white coating of tongue in, 196
- Thyloquinone**, 920
- Thymic**  
 asthma, 788  
 disease obesity in, 89  
 pituitary type of infantilism, 769  
 stridor, 788
- Thymus**, 757  
 disease infantile convulsions in, 100  
 enlarged, cyanosis in, 128  
 gland, 784  
 type of hypogonadism, 801
- Thyroid**  
 enlargement, 775  
 gland, 200  
 anatomy and physiology, 773  
 methods of palpating, 199  
 heart disease, 494  
 hormones, 756  
 insufficiency, 780  
 toxicosis, 777  
 tumors, 775
- Thyroiditis**, 775  
 aphonia in, 94  
 suppurative, cervical pain in, 80
- Thyrototoxicosis**, 494  
 auricular fibrillation in, 494  
 cyanosis in, 494  
 dyspnea in, 494  
 general weakness in, 494  
 high pulse pressure in, 495  
 rapid, wiry pulse in, 495  
 sinus tachycardia in, 438  
 sweats and tremors in, 494  
 systolic, apical murmur in, 494  
 tachycardia in, 494
- Thyrotropic hormone of pituitary**, 760
- Tibia**, chronic, painful hard swelling of, 744



- Tic**  
 douloureux  
   facial spasms in 170  
   photophobia in 64  
   fever differential diagnosis 56
- Ticks** 52 55 56 1092
- Tics** 847
- Tidal air**, 230
- Timbre in percussion** 280
- Tinea**  
 circinata  
   eruption in 140  
   macular rash in 135  
   pruritus ani in 671  
 sycosis tubercles in 144  
 tonsurata  
   crusts in 146  
   scales in 147  
 versicolor 137  
   abdominal rash in 583  
   yellowish brown macules in 130
- Tinkling metallic** 346
- Tinnitus aurium** (ringing in the ears) 65 185
- Tiredness** 96
- Tobacco**  
 poisoning  
   amblyopia in 61  
   increase of apical impulse in 401  
   scotomata colored vision in 63
- Tocopherol** 920
- Toenails** 749
- Toes** 748  
 congenital deformities 751
- Tongue**  
 examination of 122 193  
 lesions 71 193
- Tonic innervation and preservation** 99
- Tonsils** examination of 197
- Tonsillitis** 41  
 acute localized tenderness of neck in 206  
 foul odor of breath in 199  
 increased fibrinogen of plasma in 1011  
 macular rash in 133  
 mitral regurgitation in 481  
 mitral stenosis in 484  
 redness of pharynx in 198  
 swelling of submaxillary glands in 202  
 swollen neck glands in 201
- Topographic percussion** 298
- Torsion of bowel** 670
- Torsion spasm** 883
- Tort collis**  
 cervical pain in, 80  
 congenital spasmodic, abnormal fixity of head in 162  
 spasmodic retraction of head in 162
- Torulus** 1095
- Torus palatinus** in lymphatism 786
- Touch**  
 alterations of 60  
 sensations 814
- Toxemia**  
 alopecia in 163  
 headache in 70  
 neuralgia in 85  
 neuritis in 85
- Toxic kidney** 691
- Toxic**  
 adenoma 777  
   and exophthalmic goiter differential diagnosis 778  
 albuminuria 978  
 amblyopia  
   color blindness in 64  
   day blindness in 61  
 gastritis 645  
 hepatic jaundice 604  
 nephrosis 691
- Toxoplasma** 1067
- Toxoplasmic encephalitis** 1068  
 systemic infection 1068
- Trachea** 224  
 bifurcation of landmark of fourth thoracic vertebra 213  
 technic for determining position 268
- Tracheal tugging** 200
- Tracheitis** dry cough in 95
- Tracheobronchitis** agonizing pain in 67
- Trachoma** 174  
 ptosis in 173
- Tracts of spinal cord** 819 823
- Trachoma** 1069
- Transudates** 1027
- Transverse**  
 colon displacement of 658  
 myelitis  
   anesthesia in 60  
   hypogastric pain in 79
- Transversely constricted chest** 240
- Trapp's formula** in estimating total solids in urine 973
- Traube's semilunar space** 576
- Traumatic neurosis** pain along spine in 81
- Trematodes (flukes)** 1071  
 clonorchis sinensis 1072  
 dicercocaulum lanceatum 1072  
 echinostoma ilocanum 1071  
   malayanum 1071  
 fasciola hepatica 1072  
 fasciolopsis buski 1071  
 gastrodiscoides hominis 1071  
 heterophyes heterophyes 1071  
   nocens 1071  
 metagonimus yokagawai 1071  
 opisthorchis caninus 1072  
   felinus 1072  
 paragonimus westermani 1072  
 schistosoma hematobium 1072  
 japonicum 1072  
   mansoni 1072
- Watsonius watsoni** 1071
- Trembling pulse** 409

- Tremors, 98, 846
- Trench fever  
     differential diagnosis, 55  
     macular rash in, 135  
     mouth, 190
- Trendelenburg position, 117
- Treponema pallidum 1067  
     petenue, 1067
- Triangle of dullness, paravertebral (Grocco's sign), 301
- Triceps reflex, 838
- Trichinella spiralis, 1081
- Trichinosis, 1082  
     cyanosis in, 128  
     differential diagnosis, 58  
     general edema in, 88  
     tests for, 1061  
     thigh pain in, 84
- Trichocephalus dispar, 1082, 1083
- Trichomonas confusa 1070  
     focalis 1071  
     hominis (intestinales), 1070
- Trichuris trichiura, 1082
- Tricuspid  
     area, auscultation of, 424  
     murmurs  
         area of transmission, 454  
         time of occurrence and mechanism 452  
     orifice, landmark for eighth thoracic vertebra 213  
     regurgitation  
         degree of cardiac hypertrophy in 454  
         distention of jugular veins in, 541  
         pulsations in lower abdomen in, 584  
         right ventricular hypertrophy in, 477  
         venous  
             hum in, 542  
             pulsations in neck in, 204  
     stenosis right auricular hypertrophy in 477  
     valve of heart, 390  
         clinical position, 391  
         functional murmurs 461
- Trifacial  
     nerves 816  
     neuralgia  
         abnormal moisture of conjunctivae in 175  
         glossodynia in 72  
         headache in 70  
         hyperesthesia in 60  
         photophobia in, 64
- Trigeminal paralysis loss of taste in, 65
- Trigeminal nerves 816
- Trigonitis, pain in penis in 87
- Trinitrotoluene poisoning toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Trional poisoning, hypopnea in, 258
- Trip hammer pulse, 409
- Trismus, 100
- Trochlear nerves 816
- Trophoneurosis, 883
- Tropical  
     chlorosis, 1083  
     megalocytic anemia, 555  
     phagedena, see Tropical ulcers  
     ulcers, 149
- Trousseau's phenomenon, 791
- Trube's semilunar space, 219
- Trypanosoma gambiense, 1068  
     rhodesiense, 1068
- Trypanosomiasis  
     cruzi, 1068  
     increase of serum globulin in, 1011  
     increased monocytes in, 1003  
     South American, 1069
- Tryptophan test for cerebrospinal tuberculosis, 1062
- Tsetse fly (see Glossina), 1086
- Tsutsugamushi disease, 1090  
     differential diagnosis, 55  
     leukopenia in 1001
- Tubal pregnancy, 704  
     ruptured cramps in, 68
- Tubercles, 131, 143
- Tuberculosis, 41  
     atrophy of hair in, 163  
     chronic gastritis in, 645  
     complement fixation test for, 1022  
     cyanosis in, 192  
     differential diagnosis, 52  
     dyspnea in 257  
     emaciation in, 115  
     eosinophilia in 1002  
     fatty liver in, 609  
     hematoporphyrinuria in 987  
     hydrothorax in, 243  
     ileocecal pain in right iliac fossa in 78  
     increased sedimentation rate in 998  
     increased serum globulin in 1011  
     intestinal ulceration in, 660  
     keratitis in, 175  
     miliary, leukopenia in, 1001  
     mouth rash in, 153  
     neck glands in 201  
     of bladder 694  
     of bone, 724  
         nocturnal ostealgia in, 81  
     of bony thorax pain on motion in 73  
     of cecum, pain in iliac fossa in 78  
     of cervix, 700  
     of endometrium 701  
     of joints, 737  
     of kidney, 684  
         hematuria in, 985  
         lumbosacral pain in 81  
     of liver, 611  
     of lymph glands 40  
     of penis, 710  
     of prostate, 717  
     of rectum 674  
     of spine, lumbosacral pain in, 80  
     of spine prone posture in, 118

Tuberculosis (*continued*)

- of spleen, 626
- of thyroid, 775
- of tongue, 72
- of vulva, 697
- pallor in, 127
- pericarditis in, 468
- pulmonary, see Pulmonary tuberculosis
- rapid emaciation in, 89
- relative lymphocytosis in, 1002
- spongy gums in, 190
- tests for, 1061
- ulcerated tongue in, 193
- ulceration of pharynx in, 198
- unilateral diminution of, chest wall, 251

## Tuberculous

- bone disease, 724
- dactylitis, pain in wrist and hand in, 84
- enteritis, diarrhea in, 92
- hip disease, hip joint pain in, 84
- kidney
  - pain in right loin in, 77
  - splenic pain and tenderness in, 620
- meningitis, 879
- choroid tubercles in, 180
- differential diagnosis, 57
- diplopia in, 62
- increase of globulin of spinal fluid in, 1025
- leukopenia in, 1001
- ptosis in, 173
- osteomyelitis, 724
- orchitis and epididymitis, 714
- peritonitis
  - fluctuation in, 590
  - general abdominal pain in, 74
- salpingitis, 704
- sclerosis psychosis in, 889
- ulcers, 147
  - of lip, 189
  - of tongue, 194

## Tuboovarian disease

- chest pain in, 74
- vomiting in, 92

## Tubular nephritis, acute, 687

## Tularemia, 149

- as cause of chills, 59
- differential diagnosis, 52
- macular rash in, 135

## Tumbu fly, 1087

## Tumors

- of abdomen, 591
  - diagnosis, 592
- of adrenal cortex, 794
- of adrenal medulla, 796
- of bladder, 693
- of bone, 732
- of breast, 383
- of chest wall, chest pain in, 72
- of fallopian tubes, 704
- of intestines, 668
- of lung, 368

Tumors (*continued*)

- of ovaries, 704, 804
- of seminal vesicles, 716
- of spermatic cord, 715
- of spinal cord, 861
- of testicles, 714
- of thyroid, 775
- of uterus, 701
- of vagina, 698
- of vulva, 697

## Tunnel sickness, tinnitus aurium in, 185

## Tussive fremitus, 279

## Twelfth cranial nerve lesions, 859

## Tympanic membrane, 184

## Tympanites, hyperpnea in, 256

## Tympanitic resonance, 304

## Tympanum, pressure on sneezing in, 94

## Tympy, 282, 304

## Typhoid

- fever 41
  - abdominal pain in, 78
  - acute, enlargement of spleen in, 622
  - alternate redness and pallor of face in, 168
  - bluish urine in, 971
  - bradycardia in, 408, 515
  - convalescence, microglossia in, 193
  - decreased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011
  - decreased neutrophils in, 1002
  - diarrhea in, 92
  - dialo reaction in, 987
  - differential diagnosis, 52
  - dorsal inertia in, 117
  - endocarditis in, 479
  - enlargement of liver in, 615
  - enophthalmos in, 180
  - eye pain in, 71
  - exaggerated abdominal tympany in, 598
  - facies in, 167
  - hematemesis in, 637
  - hemolytic anemia in, 560
  - herpes labialis in, 153, 188
  - increased metabolic rate in, 1045
  - increased monocytes in, 1001
  - increased urinary creatinine in, 976
  - indicanuria in, 976
  - intestinal ulceration in, 660
  - leukopenia in, 1001
  - maculopetechial rash in, 135
  - membranous gastritis in, 645
  - nocturnal ostalgia in, 81
  - partial deafness in, 64
  - relative lymphocytosis in, 1002
  - rose-colored spots on abdomen in, 583
  - semifluid feces in, 1031
  - sordes in, 193
  - toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
  - tremor of protruded tongue in, 99
  - ulceration of pharynx in, 198
- state
  - dryness of conjunctivae in, 175
  - sordes in, 193

- Typhus fever**  
 acute enlargement of spleen in 622  
 as cause of chills 59  
 as cause of sweating, 50  
 dark urine in, 971  
 diazo reaction in, 987  
 differential diagnosis, 55  
 eye pain in, 71  
 hemoglobinuria in 985  
 hemolytic anemia in, 560  
 increase of neutrophils in, 1002  
 increased urinary creatinine in, 976  
 myosis in, 176  
 photophobia in, 64  
 purpura in, 564  
 purpuric eruption in, 134
- T wave of electrocardiograph, 437**
- Ulcers, 131, 147**  
 of rectum, 673  
 of tongue, 193
- Ulcerations of tongue, 71**
- Ulcerative colitis**  
 diarrhea in, 92  
 general abdominal pain in, 74  
 heartburn in, 90  
 idiopathic, 667  
 lumbosacral pain in 81  
 pain in iliac fossa in, 78  
 rectal bleeding in, 672  
 stricture of rectum in, 675
- Ulnar**  
 nerve lesions, 853  
 percussion, 286  
 reflex, 840
- Umber's test for scarlet fever, 1060**
- Umbilical**  
 reflex 835  
 region anatomic landmarks 575  
 tenderness 590
- Umbilicus condition of, 585**
- Uncinariasis 1083**  
 pallor in 127
- Unconsciousness 101**
- Undulant fever**  
 as cause of sweating 50  
 decreased neutrophils in 1002  
 differential diagnosis, 52  
 increased monocytes in, 1003  
 leukopenia in 1001  
 tests for 1062
- Unilateral**  
 anhidrosis, 59  
 enlargement of chest, 242  
 posture, 118
- Unilobular cirrhosis 606**
- Upper extremities, 738**  
 motor neuron (central), 842
- Urate crystals in urine, 990**
- Urea**  
 concentration tests, 1039  
 in urine, 973
- Uremia**  
 anuria in, 970  
 blindness in, 61  
 cerebral hemorrhage, and alcoholic narcosis,  
 coma in, differential diagnosis, 690  
 color blindness in, 64  
 coma in 101, 103  
 convulsions in, 100  
 decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012  
 decreased respiratory frequency in, 327  
 hiccoughs in, 94  
 hypopnea in, 93, 258  
 incompetence of anal sphincter in 675  
 increased blood potassium in, 1012  
 increased spinal fluid pressure in, 1025  
 increase of creatinin concentration in, 1010  
 leukocytosis in 1000  
 nausea in, 90  
 reflex headache in, 70  
 scotomata in, 63  
 thrombocytopenia in, 1005  
 uridrosis in, 152  
 urinous odor of breath in, 199  
 vomiting in, 91, 636
- Uremic coma, 689**
- Ureteral**  
 obstruction, pain in left loin in, 77  
 torsion  
 lumbosacral pain in 81  
 pain in right loin in 77
- Ureteritis pyuria in, 985**
- Urethral disease, pain in penis in 86**
- Urethritis 711**  
 acute pain in penis in 86  
 pyuria in 986
- Uric acid 974**  
 crystals in urine, 990  
 of blood 1010
- Uridrosis 152**
- Urinalysis 967**  
 characteristics of  
 normal urine, 968  
 pathologic urine, 969  
 color, 970  
 frequency, 969  
 odor, 971  
 quantity, 970  
 reaction, 971  
 sediments and their significance, 973  
 specific gravity, 972
- constituents of urine and their clinical significance, 973**  
 acetone and diacetic acid, 984  
 albumin, 976  
 functional or transient, 977  
 in nephritis, 979  
 of nephrosis, 979  
 of passive congestion, 979

## Urinalysis

constituents of urine (*continued*)

- tests 980
- toxic, 978
- bile, 986
- chlorides, 974
- creatinine, 976
- creatinine, 976
- cystine, 976
- dialysis reaction, 987
- glycosuria, 981
- hematoporphyrin, 987
- hematuria, 984
- hemoglobinuria 985
- hippuric acid 976
- hormones 986
  - androsterone 987
  - estrin 987
  - prolan B, 987
- indican, 975
- lactosuria, 982
- osazone crystals, 983
- oxalates 976
- pentosuria, 983
- phosphates 974
- pyuria 985
- sulfates 975
- sulfur 975
- urea, 973
- uric acid 974
- urobilin and urobilinogen 986
- method for collecting and examining urine 967
- obtaining total quantity of urine passed in 24 hours, 968
- microscopic examination, 967
  - casts, 984
    - blood cell casts 988
    - cylindroids 988
    - epithelial casts, 988
    - fatty casts, 989
    - granular casts, 988
    - hyaline casts 988
    - pus casts 988
    - waxy casts, 989
  - crystalline deposits, 990
    - acid group
      - carbonates 991
      - oxalates, 991
      - sulfates 991
      - urates, 990
      - uric acid 990
    - alkaline group
      - ammonium urate 991
      - cholesterine, 991
      - cystine, 991
      - phosphates, 991
    - epithelial cells, 988
    - miscellaneous constituents, 989
    - red blood cells, 988
  - role of laboratory examinations in diagnosis, 967

## Urinary

- meatus, 706
- system in history taking, 38
- Urobilin and urobilinogen, 986
- Urochromogen, 989
- Uroerythrin, 971
- Urogenital system, examination and diseases of, 679

## Urticaria 927

- abdominal rash in, 583
- edema of face in, 169
- increased eosinophils in, 1002
- itching in, 87
- wheals in, 145

## Uterine

- bleeding, nonmalignant causes, 700
- disease
  - lumbosacral pain in, 81
  - pain in hypogastric region in, 79
  - pain in iliac fossa in, 79
- tumors, 701

## Uterus, displacement of, 699

## Uvula

- elongated, dry cough in 95
- swelling of, 197

## Vagina diseases of 698

## Vaginal

- cysts, 698
- tumors, 698

## Vaginitis, 698

## Vagotonia

- as cause of sweating 50
- heartburn in 90
- hypotension in, 412
- sweating of hands in, 152

## Vagus nerves, 816

## Valve

- leaflets, inelasticity of 462
- shock, 404

## Valves of heart, 390

- clinical position, 391

## Valvular

- disease, cyanosis in, 129
- heart disease, 41
- hyperpnea in 255
- passive hyperemia of retina in 179

## Valvulitis chronic, 481

## Van den Bergh test, 602, 1041

## Vamlin test for acetone in urine 984

## Vaquez Digne test, 445

## Vaquez Osler disease see Polycythemia vera 563

## Varicella

- differential diagnosis, 54
- eruption in, 140
- mouth rash in, 153
- neutrophilic leukocytosis in, 1001
- pustules in, 141
- ulcers of tongue in 194

## Varicocele, 715

- Varicose**  
   aneurysm, 533  
   veins, 745  
**Variola**, see *Smallpox*, 40  
**Vascular**  
   disease, local, as cause of local anidrosis, 59  
   dullness, area of, 419  
   goiter, 775  
   lesions of brain, 872  
   system examination and diseases of, 523  
**Vasitis**, 715  
**Vasoconstrictor neurosis**, 884  
**Vasomotor**  
   ataxia, 884  
   excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in, 153  
   neurosis, 883  
   reflexes, 840  
**Vegetative nervous system**, 825  
   diseases of, 883  
**Veiled puff**, 347  
**Veins**  
   diseases of, 540  
   examination of, 539  
   of abdomen enlarged, superficial, 584  
**Vena cava, superior**  
   anatomy 395  
   commencement of, landmark at fifth lumbar  
     vertebra, 213  
**Venereal warts**, of penis, 710  
**Venery, excessive**, pain in testes in, 87  
**Venous**  
   arterial shunt 501  
   distention 540  
   hum 542  
   pressure test 445, 447  
   pulsation 541  
   stasis cyanosis of nails in 743  
   thrombosis, 543  
     pain in, 85  
**Ventricles of heart**, anatomy, 389  
**Ventricular**  
   dilatation, absence of visible apex beat in, 401  
   extrasystole 440 519  
   fibrillation 522  
   premature contraction, 519  
   septal defects 505  
     tetralogy of Fallot in, 507  
   shunt right and left, 459  
**Ver du cayor**, 1087  
**Vermicular responses of muscles to electrical**  
   stimulation 848  
**Vernet, syndrome of**, 860  
**Veronal poisoning**, hypopnea in, 258  
**Vertebrae**, lumbar disease of pain in right loin  
   in, 77  
**Vertebral**  
   artery, occlusion, 872  
   caries, paralysis of uvula in 197  
   disease  
     pain in testes in 87  
     rigidity of upper midabdomen in 588  
   **Vertebral (continued)**  
     erosion, epigastric tenderness in, 589  
     necrosis epigastric pain in, 640  
**Vertigo**, 97, 850  
   tinnitus aurium in, 65  
**Vesical calculus**, 693  
**Vesicles**, 131, 138  
**Vesicular**  
   breathing, 317  
   murmur, pathologic variations of, 325  
   resonance, 282  
**Vesiculotympany**, 282, 303  
**Vestibular nerve lesions** 859  
**Vestibulospinal tract**, 823  
**Vibices**, 132  
**Vicarious menstruation**, hematemesis in, 638  
**Vierordt's factor** in estimating total solids in  
   urine, 973  
**Vincent's angina**, 190  
   differential diagnosis, 56  
   mouth rash in 153  
   redness of pharynx in, 198  
   spongy gums in, 190  
**Violet light vision**, 64  
**Violin player's cramps**, 68  
**Viosterol in oil**, 909  
**Virilism**, 793 805  
**Virus infections**  
   differential diagnosis, 53  
   in atypical pneumonia, 366  
**Visceral**  
   leishmaniasis (see *Kala azar*) 1069  
   purpura 563  
   reflexes, 839  
**Visceroptosis**  
   constipation in 92  
   descent of liver in, 601  
   downward displacement of spleen in 622  
   lumbosacral pain in, 81  
   retraction of abdomen in, 586  
**Vision (sight)**, 60  
**Visual**  
   acuity testing for, 183  
   aphasia, 94  
**Vital capacity of lungs**, 230 445  
**Vitamins and vitamin deficiency diseases**, 897  
   vitamin A, 897, 914 916  
     vitamin A deficiency night blindness in, 61,  
       898  
   vitamin B (B complex), 915 999  
     B<sub>1</sub> 900, 915 916  
     B<sub>2</sub> G, riboflavin 903, 915 916  
     B<sub>6</sub> (pyridoxine), 905, 916 918  
     nicotinic acid, 904, 916 918  
     other vitamin B factors 905  
     pantothenic acid 906, 916, 918  
     vitamin B and D deficiencies, diarrhea in, 92  
   vitamin B deficiency 899  
     fissures of tongue in 193  
     lingual pain in 197

- Vitamins and vitamin deficiency diseases  
   vitamin B (B complex) (continued)  
     vitamin B<sub>2</sub> deficiency, 619  
       black tongue in, 195  
       fissures at angle of mouth in, 187  
   vitamin C (ascorbic acid), 906, 917, 918  
   vitamin D  
     vitamin deficiency  
       blepharitis in, 172  
       glossitis in, 72  
       neuralgia in, 85  
       vomiting in, 92  
       weakness in, 96  
   vitamin E, 911, 917, 919  
   vitamin H (biotin), 914  
   vitamin K, 911, 917, 920  
     vitamin K deficiency, 565, 911  
   vitamin P, 920  
     calcium erioctictate, 920  
     citric, 920  
     erioctictol, 920  
   vitamin tables, 916, 917  
 Vitiligo, 132  
   white patches in, 137  
 Vitreous  
   hemorrhage, red vision in, 63  
   opacities, organic scotomata in, 63  
 Vocal  
   cords, diseases of aphonia in, 94  
   fremitus, 269  
     in abnormal chest, 274  
     technic of palpation for, 271  
   resonance, 331  
     production of, 332  
     technic for obtaining, 332  
     transmission of, 332  
 Voice, pitch of, effect on fremitus, 270  
 Volvulus, 670  
   vomiting in, 636  
 Vomiting  
   alkalosis in, 1017  
   anidrosis in, 152  
   as cause of anidrosis, 59  
   characteristics of vomitus, 637  
   decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012  
   emaciation in, 89  
   gastric origin, 635  
   hyperproteinemia in, 1011  
   increase of blood urea nitrogen in, 1010  
   in gastric carcinoma, 644  
   in gastric ulcer, 643  
   irritation of vomiting center, 636  
   nervous origin, 636  
   reflex origin, 636  
   symptoms preceding, 639  
   systemic origin, 636  
   weakness in, 96  
 Von Gierke's disease, 614, 797  
 von Graefe's sign, 182, 778  
 von Jaksch's anemia, 562  
   chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
   enlargement of spleen in, 627  
   leukopenia in, 1001  
 Von Pirquet test for tuberculosis, 1061  
 Von Recklinghausen's disease, see Neurofibromatosis  
   of bones, 769  
 Vulva, diseases of, 695  
 Vulvar pain and itching in the menopause, 87  
  
 Waddling gait, 121  
 Walcher position, 117  
 Wallerian degeneration  
   War psychosis (shell shock), tremors in, 99  
 Washburn's intestinalis, 1071  
 Wasp waist, 241  
 Wassermann reaction, 1021  
 Water  
   brash, 90  
   hammer pulse, 479  
     Corrigan's, 409  
   whistle sound, 347  
 Watson's watsoni, 1071  
 Waves of electrocardiograph, pathologic variations, 436  
 Waxy expansion of chest, 252  
 Waxy casts in urine, 989  
 Weakness, 96  
 Web finger, 740  
 Weber-Christian's disease, 752  
 Weber's syndrome, 173, 866  
 Weight, 114  
   and height tables, 108  
   loss in gastric carcinoma, 644  
 Weights and heights at various ages, 108  
 Weil's disease, 612  
   differential diagnosis, 56  
   hematemesis in, 638  
   test for, 1059  
   toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
 Weir Mitchell's disease, 885  
   local redness in, 128  
 Welsh's gas bacillus infection, hemolytic anemia in, 560  
 Werthof's disease, 562  
 Wernicke's law, 63  
 Westphal  
   Galassi's phenomenon, 856  
   pupil, 177  
   pupillary reflex, 842  
 Wheals, 131, 145  
   'Whiffing' sound over subclavian artery, 524  
 Whipworm, 1082  
 Whispered voice, 335  
 White  
   blood cells, 1000  
   macules, 137  
   tongue, 195  
 Whooping cough, see Pertussis, 354

- Vidal hemoclastic crisis test, 1044  
 Williams' tracheal tone, 307  
 Willis, circle of, aneurysm of, cervical pain in, 80  
 Wilson's disease, 98  
   psychosis in, 889  
 Winged and wingless nonvenomous insects, 1093  
 Winking spasm, 170  
 Wintrich's change of sound, 306  
 Wiry pulse, 409  
 Wood alcohol poisoning  
   amblyopia in, 61  
   blindness in, 61  
 Wooden tympany, 305  
 Word blindness and word deafness, 843  
 Worms  
   hook, 1083  
   round (nematodes), 1077  
   tape (cestodes, tema), 1073  
   trematodes (flukes), 1071  
 Wrist drop, 742, 853  
 Writer's cramps, 68  
 Wry neck, 200  
 Wuchereria bancrofti, 1080  
  
 Xanthoma tuberosum, 732  
 Xanthomatosis, 771  
 Xanthochromia, 1024  
 Xiphoid cartilage, level of tip of, landmark of tenth thoracic vertebra, 213  
 X ray burn, itching in, 87  
  
 Yaws, 143, 1070, 1090  
   differential diagnosis, 56  
   ulcers in, 149  
 Yellow  
   atrophy  
     acute, 616  
       bloody stools in, 1034  
       decrease of blood urea nitrogen in, 1010  
       decreased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011  
       hematemesis in, 638  
       petechial eruption in, 135  
       retraction of abdomen in, 586  
       toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
       vomiting in, 91, 636  
   fever  
     bloody stools in, 1032  
     differential diagnosis, 54  
     enlargement of liver in, 615  
     hematemesis (black vomit) in, 637  
     leukopenia in, 1001  
     toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
     vomiting in, 91  
   macules, pale, 137  
   tongue, 195  
 Yellowish vomitus, 637  
  
 Ziehen's rule for determination of levels of origin of cervical and thoracic nerve roots from spinal cord, 823  
 Zuntz ergometer, 443  
 Zygion (Squirbb), 920



# Index

- and vitamin deficiency diseases
- vitamin B (B complex) (*continued*)
- vitamin B<sub>2</sub> deficiency, 619
- black tongue in, 195
- fissures at angle of mouth in, 187
- vitamin C (ascorbic acid), 906, 917, 918
- vitamin D
- vitamin deficiency
- blepharitis in, 172
- glossitis in, 72
- neuralgia in, 85
- vomiting in, 92
- weakness in, 96
- vitamin E, 911, 917, 919
- vitamin H (biotin), 914
- vitamin K, 911, 917, 920
- vitamin K deficiency, 565, 911
- vitamin P, 920
- calcium erioctate, 920
- citrus, 920
- eriodictol, 920
- vitamin tables, 916, 917
- Vitiligo, 132
- white patches in, 137
- Vitreous
- hemorrhage, red vision in, 63
- opacities, organic scotomata in, 63
- Vocal
- cords, diseases of, aphonia in, 94
- fremitus, 269
- in abnormal chest, 274
- technic of palpation for, 271
- resonance, 331
- production of, 332
- technic for obtaining, 332
- transmission of, 332
- Voice, pitch of effect on fremitus, 270
- Volvulus, 670
- vomiting in, 636
- Vomiting
- alkalosis in, 1017
- anidrosis in, 152
- as cause of anidrosis, 59
- characteristics of vomitus, 637
- decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012
- emaciation in, 89
- gastric origin, 635
- hyperproteinemia in, 1011
- increase of blood urea nitrogen in, 1010
- in gastric carcinoma, 644
- in gastric ulcer, 643
- irritation of vomiting center, 636
- nervous origin, 636
- reflex origin, 636
- symptoms preceding, 639
- systemic origin, 636
- weakness in, 96
- Von Gierke's disease 614 797
- von Graefe's sign 182 778
- von Jaksch's anemia, 562
- chronic splenic enlargement in, 623
- enlargement of spleen in, 627
- leukopenia in, 1001
- Von Pirquet test for tuberculosis, 1061
- Von Recklinghausen's disease, *see* Neurofibromatosis
- of bones, 789
- Vulva, diseases of, 695
- Vulvar pain and itching in the menopause, 87
- Waddling gait, 121
- Walcher position, 117
- Wallerian degeneration
- War psychosis (shell shock), tremors in, 99
- Washburn intestinalis 1071
- Wasp waist, 241
- Wassermann reaction, 1021
- Water
- brash, 90
- hammer pulse 479
- Corrigan's, 409
- whistle sound, 347
- Watsonius watsoni, 1071
- Waves of electrocardiograph, pathologic variations, 436
- Waxy expansion of chest, 252
- Waxy casts in urine, 989
- Weakness, 96
- Web finger, 740
- Weber-Christian's disease, 752
- Weber's syndrome, 173, 866
- Weight, 114
- and height tables, 108
- loss, in gastric carcinoma, 644
- Weights and heights at various ages, 108
- Weil's disease, 612
- differential diagnosis 56
- hematemesis in, 638
- test for, 1059
- toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Weir Mitchell's disease, 885
- local redness in, 128
- Welsh's gas bacillus infection, hemolytic anemia in, 560
- Werthof's disease, 562
- Wernick's law, 63
- Westphal
- Galassi's phenomenon, 856
- pupil, 177
- pupillary reflex, 842
- Wheals, 131, 145
- "Whiffing" sound over subclavian artery, 524
- Whipworm, 1082
- Whispered voice, 335
- White
- blood cells, 1000
- macules, 137
- tongue, 195
- Whooping cough *see* Pertussis 354

## Index

- Widal hemoclastic crisis test, 1044  
Williams' tracheal tone, 307  
Willis, circle of, aneurysm of, cervical pain in, 80  
Wilson's disease, 98  
  psychosis in, 889  
Winged and wingless nonvenomous insects, 1093  
Winking spasm, 170  
Wintrich's change of sound, 306  
Wiry pulse, 409  
Wood alcohol poisoning  
  amblyopia in, 61  
  blindness in, 61  
Wooden tympany, 305  
Word blindness and word deafness, 843  
Worms  
  hook, 1083  
  round (nematodes), 1077  
  tape (cestodes, *tenia*), 1073  
  *trematodes* (*flukes*), 1071  
Wrist drop, 742, 853  
Writer's cramps, 68  
Wry neck, 200  
Wuchereria bancrofti, 1080  
  
Xanthoma tuberosum, 732  
Xanthomatosis, 771  
Xanthochromia, 1024  
Xiphoid cartilage, level of tip of, landmark of tenth thoracic vertebra, 213  
X ray burn, itching in, 87  
  
Yaws, 143 1070 1090  
  differential diagnosis, 56  
  ulcers in, 149  
Yellow  
  atrophy  
    acute, 616  
    bloody stools in, 1034  
    decrease of blood urea nitrogen in, 1010  
    decreased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011  
    hematemesis in, 638  
    petechial eruption in, 135  
    retraction of abdomen in, 586  
    toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
    vomiting in, 91, 636  
  fever  
    bloody stools in, 1032  
    differential diagnosis, 54  
    enlargement of liver in, 615  
    hematemesis (black vomit) in, 637  
    leukopema in, 1001  
    toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
    vomiting in, 91  
  macules, pale, 137  
  tongue, 195  
Yellowish vomitus, 637  
  
Ziehen's rule for determination of levels of origin of cervical and thoracic nerve roots from spinal cord, 823  
Zuntz ergometer, 443  
Zygon (*Squibb*), 920

# Index

- analysis
  - constituents of urine (*continued*)
    - tests 980
    - toxic, 978
  - bile 986
  - chlorides 974
  - creatinine 976
  - creatinine 976
  - cystine 976
  - dialysis reaction 987
  - glycosuria 981
  - hematoporphyrin 987
  - hematuria 984
  - hemoglobinuria 985
  - hippuric acid 976
  - hormones 986
    - androsterone 987
    - estrin 987
    - prolan B 987
  - indican 975
  - lactosuria 982
  - osazone crystals 983
  - oxalates 976
  - pentosuria 983
  - phosphates 974
  - pyuria 985
  - sulfates 975
  - sulfur 975
  - urea 973
  - uric acid 974
  - urobilin and urobilinogen 986
- method for collecting and examining urine 967
- obtaining total quantity of urine passed in 24 hours 968
- microscopic examination 967
- casts 984
  - blood cell casts 988
  - cylindroids 988
  - epithelial casts 988
  - fatty casts 989
  - granular casts 988
  - hyaline casts 988
  - pus casts 988
  - waxy casts 989
- crystalline deposits 990
- acid group
  - carbonates 991
  - oxalates 991
  - sulfates 991
  - urates 990
  - uric acid 990
- alkaline group
  - ammonium urate 991
  - cholesterine 991
  - cystine 991
  - phosphates 991
- epithelial cells 983
- in cellaneous constituents 983
- red blood cells 988
- role of laboratory examinations in diagnosis, 967
- Urinary
  - meatus 706
  - system in history taking 38
- Urobilin and urobilinogen 986
- Urochromogen 989
- Uroerythrin 971
- Urogenital system examination and diseases of 679
- Urticaria 927
  - abdominal rash in 583
  - edema of face in 169
  - increased eosinophils in 1002
  - itching in 87
  - wheals in 145
- Uterine
  - bleeding nonmalignant causes 700
  - disease
    - lumbosacral pain in 81
    - pain in hypogastric region in 79
    - pain in iliac fossa in 79
  - tumors 701
- Uterus displacement of 699
- Uvula
  - elongated dry cough in 95
  - swelling of 197
- Vagina diseases of 698
- Vaginal
  - cysts 698
  - tumors 698
- Vaginitis 698
- Vagotonia
  - as cause of sweating 50
  - heartburn in 90
  - hypotension in 412
  - sweating of hands in 152
- Vagus nerves 816
- Valve
  - leaflets inelasticity of 462
  - shock 404
- Valves of heart 390
- clinical position 391
- Valvular
  - disease cyanosis in 129
  - heart disease 41
  - hyperpnea in 255
  - passive hyperemia of retina in 179
- Valvulitis chronic, 481
- Van den Bergh test 602 1041
- Vanillin test for acetone in urine 984
- Vaquez Digne test 445
- Vaquez Osler disease see Polycythemia vera, 563
- Varicella
  - differential diagnosis 54
  - eruption in 140
  - mouth rash in 153
  - neutrophilic leukocytosis in 1001
  - pustules in, 141
  - ulcers of tongue in 194
- Varicocele 715

## Index

- Varicose**  
aneurysm, 533  
veins, 745
- Variola**, see *Smallpox*, 40
- Vascular**  
disease, local, as cause of local anidrosis, 59  
dullness area of, 419  
goiter, 775  
lesions of brain, 872  
system, examination and diseases of, 523
- Vasitis**, 715
- Vasoconstrictor neurosis**, 884
- Vasomotor**  
ataxia 884  
excessive moisture of nasal mucosa in, 153  
neurosis, 883  
reflexes, 840
- Vegetative nervous system**, 825  
diseases of, 883
- Veiled puff**, 347
- Veins**  
diseases of, 540  
examination of, 539  
of abdomen, enlarged, superficial, 584
- Vena cava, superior**  
anatomy, 395  
commencement of, landmark at fifth lumbar vertebra, 213
- Venereal warts**, of penis 710
- Venery**, excessive, pain in testes in, 87
- Venous**  
arterial shunt, 501  
distention, 540  
hum, 542  
pressure test, 445, 447  
pulsation, 541  
stasis, cyanosis of nails in, 743  
thrombosis, 543  
pain in, 85
- Ventricles of heart**, anatomy, 389
- Ventricular**  
dilatation, absence of visible apex beat in, 401  
extrasystole 440, 519  
fibrillation, 522  
premature contraction, 519  
septal defects, 505  
tetralogy of Fallot in 507  
shunt, right and left, 459
- Ver du cayor**, 1087
- Vermicular responses of muscles to electrical stimulation**, 848
- Vernet**, syndrome of, 860
- Veronal poisoning**, hypopnea in, 258
- Vertebrae**, lumbar disease of, pain in right loin in, 77
- Vertebral**  
artery, occlusion, 872  
caries, paralysis of uvula in, 197  
disease  
pain in testes in, 87  
rigidity of upper midabdomen in, 588
- Vertebral (continued)**  
erosion, epigastric tenderness in, 589  
necrosis, epigastric pain in, 640
- Vertigo**, 97, 850  
tinnitus aurium in, 65
- Vesical calculus**, 693
- Vesicles**, 131, 138
- Vesicular**  
breathing, 317  
murmur, pathologic variations of, 325  
resonance, 282
- Vesiculotympany**, 282, 303
- Vestibular nerve lesions**, 859
- Vestibulospinal tract**, 823
- Vibices**, 132
- Vicarious menstruation**, hematemeses in, 638
- Vierordt's factor** in estimating total solids in urine, 973
- Vincent's angina**, 190  
differential diagnosis, 56  
mouth rash in, 153  
redness of pharynx in, 198  
spongy gums in, 190
- Violet light vision**, 64
- Violin player's cramps**, 68
- Vioosterol in oil**, 909
- Virilism**, 793, 805
- Virus infections**  
differential diagnosis, 53  
in atypical pneumonia, 366
- Visceral**  
leishmaniasis (see *Kala azar*), 1069  
purpura, 563  
reflexes, 839
- Visceroptosis**  
constipation in, 92  
descent of liver in, 601  
downward displacement of spleen in, 622  
lumbosacral pain in, 81  
retraction of abdomen in, 586
- Vision (sight)**, 60
- Visual**  
acuity, testing for, 183  
aphasia, 94
- Vital capacity of lungs**, 230, 445
- Vitamins and vitamin deficiency diseases**, 897  
vitamin A, 897, 914, 916  
vitamin A deficiency, night blindness in, 61, 898  
vitamin B (B complex), 915, 999  
B<sub>1</sub>, 900, 915, 916  
B<sub>2</sub>, G, riboflavin, 903, 915, 916  
B<sub>6</sub> (pyridoxine), 905, 916, 918  
nicotinic acid, 904, 916, 918  
other vitamin B factors, 905  
pantothenic acid 906, 916, 918  
vitamin B and D deficiencies, diarrhea in, 92  
vitamin B deficiency, 899  
fissures of tongue in, 193  
lingual pain in, 197

- Vitamins and vitamin deficiency diseases  
 vitamin B (B complex) (*continued*)  
   vitamin B<sub>2</sub> deficiency, 619  
     black tongue in, 195  
     fissures at angle of mouth in, 187  
 vitamin C (cevitamic acid), 906, 917, 918  
 vitamin D  
 vitamin deficiency  
   blepharitis in, 172  
   glossitis in, 72  
   neuralgia in, 85  
   vomiting in, 92  
   weakness in, 96  
 vitamin E, 913, 917, 919  
 vitamin H (biotin), 914  
 vitamin K, 911, 917, 920  
   vitamin K deficiency, 565, 911  
 vitamin P, 920  
   calcium erioctate, 920  
   citric, 920  
   eriodictyol, 920  
 vitamin tables 916, 917
- Vitiligo, 132  
 white patches in, 137
- Vitreous  
 hemorrhage red vision in, 63  
 opacities, organic scotomata in, 63
- Vocal  
 cords diseases of aphonia in, 94  
 fremitus, 269  
   in abnormal chest, 274  
   technic of palpation for, 271  
 resonance, 331  
   production of, 332  
   technic for obtaining, 332  
   transmission of, 332
- Voice pitch of effect on fremitus, 270
- Volvulus 670  
 vomiting in 636
- Vomiting  
 alkalosis in, 1017  
 anidrosis in, 152  
 as cause of anidrosis 59  
 characteristics of vomitus 637  
 decrease of blood chlorides in, 1012  
 emaciation in, 89  
 gastric origin, 635  
 hyperproteinemia in, 1011  
 increase of blood urea nitrogen in, 1010  
 in gastric carcinoma 644  
 in gastric ulcer, 643  
 irritation of vomiting center, 636  
 nervous origin, 636  
 reflex origin, 636  
 symptoms preceding, 639  
 systemic origin, 636  
 weakness in, 96
- Von Gierke's disease, 614 797
- von Graefe's sign 182 778
- von Jaksch's anemia, 562  
 chronic splenic enlargement in, 623  
 enlargement of spleen in, 627  
 leukopenia in, 1001
- Von Pirquet test for tuberculosis, 1061
- Von Recklinghausen's disease, see Neurofibromatosis  
 of bones, 789
- Vulva, diseases of, 695
- Vulvar pain and itching in the menopause, 87
- Waddling gait, 121
- Walcher position, 117
- Wallerian degeneration
- War psychosis (shell shock), tremors in, 99
- Washkia intestinalis, 1071
- Wasp waist, 241
- Wassermann reaction, 1021
- Water  
 brash, 90  
 hammer pulse, 479  
   Corrigan's, 409  
 whistle sound, 347
- Watsonius watsoni, 1071
- Waves of electrocardiograph, pathologic variations, 436
- Wavy expansion of chest, 252
- Waxy casts in urine, 989
- Weakness, 96
- Web finger, 740
- Weber-Christian's disease, 752
- Weber's syndrome, 173, 866
- Weight, 114  
 and height tables, 108  
 loss, in gastric carcinoma, 644
- Weights and heights at various ages, 108
- Weil's disease, 612  
 differential diagnosis, 56  
 hematemesis in, 638  
 test for, 1059  
 toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604
- Weir Mitchell's disease, 885  
 local redness in 128
- Welsh's gas bacillus infection hemolytic anemia in, 560
- Werhof's disease 562
- Wernick's law, 63
- Westphal  
 -Galassi's phenomenon, 856  
 pupil, 177  
 pupillary reflex, 842
- Wheals, 131, 145  
 Whiffing" sound over subclavian artery, 524
- Whipworm, 1082
- Whispered voice, 335
- White  
 blood cells, 1000  
 macules, 137  
 tongue, 195
- Whooping cough see Pertussis, 354

- Vidal hemoclastic crisis test, 1044  
 Williams' tracheal tone, 307  
 Willis, circle of, aneurysm of, cervical pain in, 80  
 Wilson's disease, 98  
   psychosis in, 889  
 Winged and wingless nonvenomous insects, 1093  
 Winking spasm, 170  
 Wintrich's change of sound, 306  
 Wiry pulse, 409  
 Wood alcohol poisoning  
   amblyopia in, 61  
   blindness in, 61  
 Wooden tympany, 305  
 Word blindness and word deafness, 843  
 Worms  
   hook, 1083  
   round (nematodes), 1077  
   tape (cestodes, tenia), 1073  
   trematodes (flukes), 1071  
 Wrist drop, 742, 853  
 Writer's cramps, 68  
 Wry neck, 200  
 Wuchereria bancrofti, 1080  
 Xanthoma tuberosum, 732  
 Xanthomatosis, 771  
 Xantochromia, 1024  
 Xiphoid cartilage, level of tip of landmark of tenth thoracic vertebra, 213  
 X ray burn, itching in, 87  
 Yaws, 143, 1070, 1090  
   differential diagnosis, 56  
   ulcers in, 149  
 Yellow  
   atrophy  
     acute, 616  
       bloody stools in, 1034  
       decrease of blood urea nitrogen in, 1010  
       decreased fibrinogen of plasma in, 1011  
       hematemesis in, 638  
       petechial eruption in, 135  
       retraction of abdomen in, 586  
       toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
       vomiting in, 91, 636  
   fever  
     bloody stools in, 1032  
     differential diagnosis, 54  
     enlargement of liver in, 615  
     hematemesis (black vomit) in, 637  
     leukopenia in, 1001  
     toxic hepatic jaundice in, 604  
     vomiting in, 91  
   macules, pale, 137  
   tongue, 195  
 Yellowish vomitus, 637  
 Ziehen's rule for determination of levels of origin of cervical and thoracic nerve roots from spinal cord, 823  
 Zuntz ergometer, 443  
 Zygion (Squibb), 920

## CHAPTER VIII

# Examination and Diseases of the Head, Face, Eyes, Ears, Nose, Mouth and Neck

### The Head

In order to be able to diagnose satisfactorily a pathological skull condition, thorough familiarity with the topography of the normal skull is necessary. It should be borne in mind that in health the volume of the brain and the size of the skull bear a constant relation to each other, and as it is possible for a variation to exist in the size of the brain of normal individuals, it naturally follows that normal skulls may also vary within certain limits. The male skull is normally larger than that of the female, and in both men and women of certain races there are noticeable differences in size. Indeed, the dimensions of the skull form one of the most marked characteristics by which one race may be differentiated from another. What is usually termed family likeness is due mainly to the shape of the skull.

The examiner should not lose sight of the importance of race characteristics. Occasionally the variations in the contour of the head due to peculiarities of race may be so pronounced as to cause one to judge them artificial deformities or pathologic changes. It is well known also that the resistance of the Ethiopian skull is so much greater than that of the Caucasian, that a force sufficient to crush the bones of a white man will do no more than traumatize the superficial tissues of a negro.

Just as the normal development of the skull is dependent upon a number of factors so may pathologic conditions of

the skull arise from a variety of causes. Abnormalities of the skull content—that is the brain and its coverings—may influence skull contour, and on the other hand disturbances of the bony covering may lead to abnormalities of the brain.

### Examination of the Head

The head is examined by inspection, palpation, percussion and auscultation, occasionally also by mensuration x ray encephalography, ventriculography and spinal puncture.

The head is examined for size, shape, signs of injury, mobility, rashes condition of the hair and the general appearance of the face.

**Inspection** The skull is inspected for size and shape as well as for the contour of the face. By inspection one may also note the existence of any pulsating areas and changes in the color of the soft tissue covering the skull. The location of a fracture may be suspected by the presence of a suffusion. A greenish tumor if not caused by an injury, may indicate a chloroma. Blue markings caused by distended veins are evidence of a general disturbance of the circulation, a condition not infrequently observed in tumors of the scalp or of the vault, and in increased intracranial pressure.

**Palpation** This may reveal changes in the structure of the bone, the sense of touch detecting inequalities in the outer surface. However, palpation is not always of great value in the diagnosis of

skull lesions or changes though often it is of service in determining whether an indentation is due to a definite skull defect or to a recently acquired lesion. Abnormal compressibility of the skull may be found in cases where the skull changes are due to insufficient ossification as seen in old people in hyperparathyroidism in Hans Schuller Chris



Fig 1—Macrocephalus (Taking size  $8\frac{3}{4}$  hat)

tian's disease in multiple myelomata in syphilitics after comminuted fractures in scale formation over hematomata and in halisteresis of rickets. Tenderness may be elicited in brain tumors or brain abscesses inflammation of the soft parts and neuralgia.

**Percussion** Percussion does not furnish definite information as to the condition of the skull contents although testing bone conductivity is often a satisfactory method of discovering pathologic changes in the skull. Tenderness elicited

by percussion over the sinus regions indicates acute inflammation.

**Auscultation** This is of little value in the examination of the head. Pulsation sounds are evidence of the presence of intracranial aneurysms or narrowing of the lumen of a large intracranial blood vessel.

It is evident that physical examination of the skull is not always a fruitful measure. Radiographic diagnosis is often of greater value. X-ray examination of the skull will reveal the size of the bones and cavities of the skull, the presence of blood vessel formations and the presence of certain types of tumors. The diagnosis of certain brain abnormalities may be aided by encephalography, ventriculography and by spinal puncture.

### Size and Shape of Head

The size and shape of the head and face may be influenced by bone deformity, soft tissue changes or both. At birth the normal circumference of the head is about 14 inches (35 cm) and at one year it is about 18 inches (45 cm).

**I Macrocephalus** (marked enlargement of the cranium). This is found in (a) hydrocephalus (b) acromegaly (c) rickets (d) osteitis deformans (Paget's disease) (e) leontiasis ossea (f) myxedema (g) sporadic cretinism (h) idiocy (i) facial hemiatrophy (j) leprosy (k) congenital syphilis and (l) achondroplasia.

(a) **Hydrocephalus** The head is usually globular and sometimes pyramidal in shape, the face being disproportionately small. The eyes are directed upward and hidden within prominent sockets, the sutures are widely separated, the fontanelles bulging and fluctuating while the cranial bones are very thin.



(b) **Acromegaly:** The head is somewhat enlarged but the greatest increase in size is noted in the facial features. The malar bones and mandible become prominent, the orbital ridges protrude, while the nose and other soft parts of

ated with deformity of other bones of the body (SEE: Fig. 7, p. 728).

(c) **Leontiasis Ossea (hyperostosis cranii):** This shows enlarged and globular cranium, with prominent malar bones and massive orbital rims.

(f) **Myxedema:** This produces a round "full moon" face, with coarse features, thick nostrils, large mouth and thick lips, causing the head to appear enlarged.

(g) **Sporadic Cretinism:** This is characterized by a large, flat-topped head, with a broad, flat face, a low forehead, widely separated eyes, a flat nose, and the tongue protruding from the mouth which is usually kept partly open



Fig. 2—Hydrocephalus.

the face greatly increase in size; the teeth become widely separated (SEE: Figs. 3 and 4, pp. 764 and 765).

(c) **Rickets:** In the *rachitic head* the forehead is prominent, the head as a whole is elongated, square and is flattened abnormally at the vertex; the fontanels remain open long after the usual time for closure, sometimes up to the third or fourth year of life. The presence of craniotabes is a significant finding in rickets (SEE: pp. 727 and 908).

(d) **Osteitis Deformans (Paget's disease):** The face is triangular in shape with the base of the triangle upward; the head is lowered and is carried forward, so that the chin rests below the episternal notch; this is usually associ-



Fig. 3—Cretinism (sporadic).

(h) **Idiocy:** This may often be recognized, not so much by the enlargement of the face as by the peculiar expression found around the eyes, together with open mouth and protruding tongue. The head is usually enlarged, either because of associated rickets or hydrocephalus,



Fig 4—Hydrocephalus with hypopituitarism  
(Courtesy of Dr J C Yaskin)



Fig 5—Leprosy

although it may be very small as seen in microcephalic idiots

(t) **Facial Hemiatrophy** The face appears as though divided by a longitudinal line each half having the appearance of belonging to a different countenance one side of the face is usually smaller than the other



Fig 6—Head and face of an endocrinopathic dwarf

(j) **Leprosy** The ulcerations and cicatrizations resulting from the tuberculous growths of leprosy may slowly change the shape and contour of the face so that in time it will assume a leonine aspect

(k) **Congenital Syphilis** The features are depressed and surrounded with

protuberances most noticeable in the frontal region often giving it a centrally constricted appearance.

(1) *Achondroplasia* The head seems large in proportion to the body. The

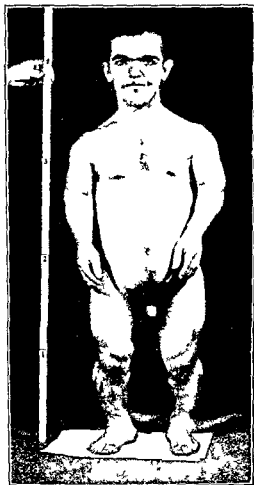


Fig 7—Achondroplastic dwarf age 24 years. Note Normal size head and trunk. Depressed root of the nose massive muscles very short upper and lower extremities and normal size genitalia.

vault is large the bridge of the nose is depressed and the chin is prognathous.

**II Microcephalus** (abnormally small head) This is generally characteristic of idiocy and usually associated with a small brain content. The condition is congenital the sutures close early. A

small head in proportion to the body is also seen in congenital craniocleidism.

**III Asymmetry of the head** This may occur as a result of systemic disease or because of the presence of local tumors. Acromegaly rickets facial hemiatrophy and leprosy may be cited as examples of asymmetry due to systemic disease. Local asymmetry of the head is most commonly due to tumors such as sebaceous cyst sarcoma of the periosteum syphilitic nodules ivory exostosis, secondary malignant disease sarcoma (rare) and hematoma.



Fig 8—Microcephalic idiot (Philadelphia General Hospital)

### Scars and Signs of Injury

Scars upon the head are the result of healed wounds following injury or surgical intervention or may be caused by

certain skin diseases and syphilitic periostitis

*Nodes* may be formed upon the skull as a sequel to some injury during early childhood, or as a result of syphilitic periostitis

### *Rashes*

Many of the rashes that affect the skin in general also invade the hairy scalp, several rashes, however, have a predilection for the scalp: *e.* seborrhea sicca, favus, tinea tonsurans, various forms of eczema, chickenpox, some of the syphiloderma, etc (for a fuller discussion on Rashes (SEE p 131)

### *Posture of the Head*

**Abnormal Fixity of the Head** In certain pathologic conditions the head may be fixed in an abnormal posture. It is *retracted* in acute meningitis, either suppurative or tuberculous, in meningismus, in cerebral abscess or tumor, in thrombosis of the superior longitudinal sinus, in acute encephalitis, in laryngeal obstruction especially in children suffering from laryngeal diphtheria, in tetanus, hydrophobia and epilepsy, in spasmodic torticollis, in strychnia poisoning, in paramyoclonus multiplex, and in hysteria. Rachitic children show a tendency to keep their heads somewhat retracted and it has also been noted that normal infants of nervous temperament may assume this position during a violent fit of crying or because of pain.

*The head may be flexed* in painful lesions at the back of the neck, in lack of muscle support, especially in children, and in fracture of the atlas.

*Inability to move the head* may be due to caries of the cervical vertebrae, resulting from tuberculosis, traumatism, or any other cause. Disease of the articulation between the atlas and the occiput

causes painful deglutition and immobility of the head.

*Abnormal fixity of the head*, whatever the position, may be due to a postpharyngeal abscess or occipitocervical myelalgia to arthritis deformans, swollen and painful cervical glands, sprains of the cervical muscles, general traumatism of the neck, or rheumatism. It may also be due to caries of a molar tooth and consequent painful focus of infection to congenital spasmodic torticollis, to the contraction caused by the cicatrices of burns or faulty union of muscles or tendons in the neck.

### **Abnormal Movements of the Head**

These may occur as regular noddings or spasms, or they may be present only at irregular intervals being manifested by a variety of motions. *Habit spasms* consist of nodding or twitching of the head most marked when the patient's attention is called to the abnormality and disappearing when he is not self-conscious or is asleep. Such head nodding is common in epileptic children. *Rhythmical head nodding* is seen in aortic regurgitation, paralysis agitans and senility.

*Spasmodic torticollis* consists of spasmodic jerkings of the head occurring every few minutes. The head is usually brought toward one shoulder, the face being turned in the opposite direction and the chin raised while the shoulder is simultaneously jerked upward to meet the head.

*Tonic torticollis* is permanent, it is often due to Pott's disease or it may be congenital.

*Chorea* produces movements of the head which are always irregular and may be of a jerking character or display a variety of motions. The muscles of both the face and arms are likely to be similarly affected.

### The Hair

The color, texture and amount of hair varies greatly in different individuals. Abundant hair, of good quality and texture, is usually found in robust persons, while dry, coarse, brittle hair is likely to be an indication of general asthenia, or of some local pathological condition of the scalp.

About the fortieth year the hair usually begins to turn gray, especially about the temples, and becomes progressively grayer as age advances. Premature graying of the hair may be hereditary, in certain families some of the members become gray at 20 or even younger. Early graying of the hair is often also associated with premature senility and other degenerative changes. Whitening of the hair has been observed in those who have been subjected to a sudden fright and prolonged terror, anxiety and intense nervousness have been known to produce premature grayness. Discoloration of the hair may at times be caused by the handling of certain dyes, and has been seen in those who work with copper, cobalt and indigo.

**Hypertrichosis**—Abnormal growth of hair may be either congenital or acquired. The cause is often obscure. It is found in association with certain endocrinopathies, as in hyper- and, at times, in hypopituitarism, in hypergonadism and in hyperadrenalism. A luxurious growth of hair upon the head has frequently been seen in persons who have been confined to their beds for a year or two suffering from pulmonary tuberculosis, although previous to the onset of the disease their hair had been of an indifferent quality.

**Atrophy of the Hair:** This may be due to local scalp conditions, to systemic affections, such as cachexia, myxedema,

extreme emaciation, or sometimes, tuberculosis; and may follow a prolonged illness. This condition has also been observed as a sequel to focal infections, i. e., in tonsils, teeth or some other part of the body.

**Alopecia (baldness)** This may be general or circumscribed. *General baldness* in middle life frequently has its

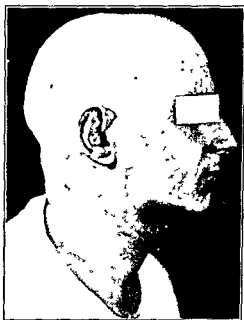


Fig 9.—Congenital alopecia (Courtesy of Dr N H Winkelman)

origin in eczema, seborrhea or favus of the scalp during childhood. Often there is no discoverable cause for the condition. *Congenital alopecia* may have an endocrine basis, possibly of pituitary origin. Acute fevers, toxemia, syphilis, myxedema, also certain cutaneous diseases of the scalp, and anemia may produce either general or local baldness. *Local baldness* (alopecia circumscripta or alopecia areata) has been noted as a result of tinea tonsurans, syphilis, scars, or other local scalp infection. The baldness on the back of the head so often

noted in rachitic children is due no doubt to the constant rolling of the head back and forth upon the pillow. The alopecia after fevers like typhoid is usually temporary.

### The Face

The face should be studied as to its size, color and condition of the skin and the general expression, whether of intelligence, pain, surprise, worry, fright or any other visible emotion. Certain diseases leave an indelible impression upon the countenance, and in a certain few the expression is so characteristic as to be almost diagnostic.

### Expression

**Mouth Breathing** This usually causes the individual to develop a stupid expression with the mouth partly open, the nose apparently stopped up and the eyes somewhat protruding and unintelligent in expression.

**Chronic Alcoholism** This presents an absent, vacant facial expression, tremors about the corners of the mouth with enlarged superficial capillaries around the nose and cheeks, giving the typical red nose of the alcoholic.

**Drug Addiction** This usually produces pinched features, shifty eyes, and tremors of the lips and facial muscles.

**Abdominal Diseases** The patient bears an anxious look, the features are pinched, the general expression being one of anxiety and apprehension.

**Facial Hemiplegia** This causes a drooping of one corner of the mouth and a smooth, nonwrinkled appearance of the affected half of the face. The mouth is drawn toward the sound side. The lips cannot be puckered and an attempt to whisper labial sounds causes bulging of the cheek.

**Insular Sclerosis** This gives a facial appearance of fatuousness and flaccidity with a vacant stare, the patient appearing to take no interest whatever in his surroundings.

**Cretinism** The cretinoid face is broad, the nose is broad and flat. The lips are thick and the ears coarse while the

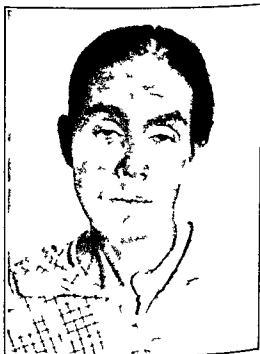


Fig 10—Myxedema (B. M. R. minus 32) resembling Myasthenia Gravis (Philadelphia General Hospital.)

mouth is generally held open, the tongue usually protruding. There is a small and undeveloped chin, brittle, scanty hair and coarse skin which is dry and of a brownish yellow tint.

**Myxedema** The general expression of the myxedema face is one of apathy and stupor. The skin is coarse, thick, dry and sallow. The cheeks are occasionally cyanotic, the eyelids puffy while the nose is broad and the ears are thick. The lips especially are exceedingly large and turn up so that they expose a part of the

mucous membrane of the mouth. The hair is scanty and the eyebrows are poorly marked.

**Congenital Syphilis** This presents a typical face. The forehead appears overhanging, the nasal bridge is depressed, scars or deep fissures often radiate from



Fig 11—Exophthalmos goiter

the corners of the lips, the complexion is sallow, the eyes are often diseased and the teeth have the characteristic Hutchinson's notches and narrow edges and are widely interspaced.

**Exophthalmic Goiter** (Graves disease) The general appearance of the face is that of one having been thoroughly frightened, the eyes stare and protrude somewhat (SEE p 777).

**Myopathic Face** This is due to atrophy of the facial muscles. The characteristics of this face are usually found around the mouth and are noted in the loose pout of the lips and the twisted character of the smile. The deformity

of the face usually depends upon the particular group of muscles atrophied, resulting in ptosis of the upper eyelids or an inability to whistle or to blow out the cheeks.

**Myasthenic Faces** These are of two types. In one the patient when asked to smile will have a normal smile on one side of the face and a sneer on the other. In the second type the upper eyelids are apparently closed, the mouth is partly open and the patient continually has the appearance of being exhausted with fatigue.

**Paralysis Agitans** (Parkinson's syndrome) The features are set and the general expression has the appearance



Fig 12—Parkinson's syndrome  
postencephalitis lethargica

of a mask. The eyes however appear extremely mobile, often unusually intelligent, seemingly trying to compensate for the immobility of the rest of the face.

**Encephalitis Lethargica** The patient is somnolent, stuporous and thoroughly relaxed (wax-like flexibility). In

some instances muscular hypertonia or rigidity coarse tremors and choreo athetoid movements replace the extreme flexibility. The eyes are closed and the face bears a tired annoyed sleepy expression. Among the sequelae of this disease is a postencephalitic syndrome which resembles Parkinson's syndrome (paralysis agitans) i. e. a mask like expression of the face with very alert eyes

There is scanty mouse-colored hair and a florid or mottled complexion.

**Acute Diffuse Peritonitis** This is characterized by an expression of extreme anxiety the teeth being uncovered by the raised upper lip. The Hippocratic countenance (facies of impending death) is well marked.

**Dyspnea** This produces an anxious facial expression the face is cyanotic

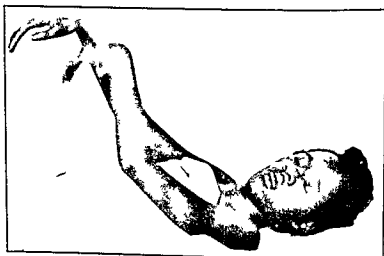


Fig. 13—Lethargic encephalitis with cataplectic phenomena

**Locomotor Ataxia** This causes the face to assume the following characteristics. Apparent ptosis of the upper eyelids wrinkling of the forehead inequality of the pupils sallow complexion and at times drooping of the angles of the mouth.

**Acromegaly** This produces large supraorbital ridges and prominent malar bones the nose especially is very large the lower jaw heavy the lips thick and the teeth widely separated.

**Mongolian Idiocy** The head is usually brachycephalic the nose broad and flat the eyelids often inflamed the ears large and the lips fissured. The mouth is kept open with the tongue protruding as if it were too large for the mouth.

the mouth is open the lips and tongue are dry and the nostrils dilate widely with each inspiration.

**Hysteria** This displays its characteristic facies in the expression of extreme pleasure and the amiable smile which are in evidence when humored but at once changes to a frown of displeasure when antagonized. In hysterical coma the face is immobile but the color remains natural. When an attempt is made to raise the upper eyelid there is great resistance and quivering.

**Pulmonary Tuberculosis** (late stage) The face is emaciated and presents a red flush upon the malar bones the remainder of the face being very pale, the eyes are widely open and



bright, often with an appealing expression, denoting an unusual degree of intelligence. The alae nasi play during respiration

**Lobar Pneumonia** This causes a deep flush to spread over the entire face which is often noticeably deeper on the



Fig 14—Parotid tumor

side of the affected lung. The hurried respirations cause continuous playing of the alae nasi.

**Renal Disease** (acute and chronic parenchymatous) The face is pale almost ghastly, with general puffiness and marked swelling under the eyes.

**Typhoid Fever** During the acme stage the patient presents a dull and apathetic appearance; the tongue is dry; the teeth are often covered by sordes; the mouth is kept slightly open, and the lips are dry and fissured (typhoid state).

**Hippocratic Facies** A common designation of the face before impending dissolution is marked by the hollow appearance of the eyes, the extreme sharpness of the nose, the collapse of the temples and the contraction of the ears, so

that the lobes turn outward. The skin of the face assumes a dark brown, leaden or livid hue.

### **Facial Coloring**

The color of the face may be the same as that of the body, or it may assume a sallowness, flush or any other discoloration.

**Sallowiness** This is a peculiar combination of pallor with a brownish yellow tint. It may be normal to brunettes or to the natives of hot climates. In others the appearance of sallowness should arouse suspicion of some pathologic condition. Sallowiness is observed in cachexia, syphilis, malaria, chronic gall bladder disease, lead poisoning, cancer.



Fig 15—Sarcoma of parotid

certain anemias (particularly in brunettes), Addison's disease and in arthritis deformans. It is also likely to be observed in those who are habitually constipated and in those suffering from gastric disorders due to hepatic, pancreatic or enteric diseases.

**Brown or Brownish Yellow Spots** (liver spots) These are often noted in pregnancy (chloasma uterinum), in malignant affections of the uterus or liver, and in exophthalmic goiter. Certain irritants like mustard tincture, etc. and



Fig 16—Tumor of parotid (sarcoma)

the use of cosmetics may cause discoloration of the face. Sunburn and exposure to the weather often cause irregular yellowish brown spots (freckles) upon the skin.

**Flushing (hyperemia)** This may be either evanescent or persistent. *Evanescent flushing* may be due to such emotions as joy, shame or fear. *Persistent flushing* may be caused by various febrile disease, by pulmonary tuberculosis as already noted, by convulsions (during the seizure), by alcoholism, by the presence of large abdominal tumors, by a large tumor or a goiter partially interfering with the circulation and by wearing tight

collars. Plethoric individuals and those having hypertrophied hearts often present flushed faces. Flushing is also noted in polycythemia vera, Ayer's disease, chronic pulmonary fibrosis and in certain types of congenital heart disease.

*Alternate redness and palor* of the face is frequently seen in cerebrospinal meningitis, typhoid fever, in certain



Fig 17—Adenoma of parathyroid

vasomotor conditions and during the menopause.

**Cyanosis** This may be congenital or acquired. *Congenital cyanosis* may be

caused by malformations of the heart i.e. pulmonary stenosis patent inter ventricular septum patent foramen ovale and congenital constriction of the larynx trachea or large bronchus *Acquired* cyanosis may be the result of asthma, whooping cough pulmonary tuberculosis advanced emphysema dilated right heart croup obstruction of the trachea from without or from within aneurysm tumor foreign body goiter polycythemia asphyxia and drug poisoning (coal tar chloroform etc.)

### **Edema**

Edema or swelling of the face is often noted in renal cardiac and blood diseases which cause general anasarca. Certain chest diseases particularly pneumonia, emphysema, mediastinal tumors and aneurysm will often cause puffiness of the face on account of their interference with the return circulation.

**Localized Edema** Lanescent edema may be caused by urticaria anaphylaxis or angioneurotic edema. Swelling and puffiness of the forehead may occur in glanders and in thrombosis of the superior longitudinal sinus.

**Swelling of the Upper Jaw** This may be due to alveolar abscess parotitis or parotid tumor necrosis of the bone or disease of the antrum carcinoma and sarcoma.

**Swelling of the Lower Jaw** This is usually caused by alveolar abscess actinomycosis occasionally by obstruction of a salivary duct or the presence of a cyst sarcoma or gumma.

*Swelling in front of or behind the ear* (when not due to mastoid disease) when it extends downward to the angle of the jaw either unilateral or bilateral is due to *mumps*. The cheeks may also become swollen on account of inflamma-

tion of the gums as is seen in curv gangrenous stomatitis and anthrax.

### **Facial Spasms**

Spasms of the facial muscles may be continuous or intermittent unilateral or

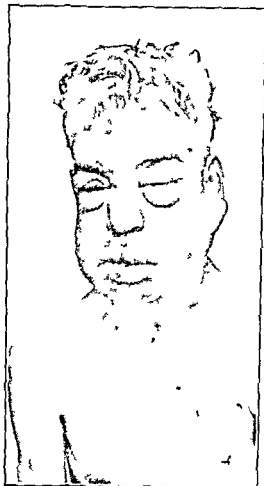


Fig 18—Edema of the face.

bilateral affecting one or a number of muscles at the same time. Spasms of the facial muscles may be caused by disease of the teeth skin eyes nose or by some constitutional or nervous disorders.

When facial spasm is observed the following possible types should be considered:

**Mimic Spasm** This condition usually occurs in adults and is more or less constant. It may be either bilateral or unilateral and is accompanied by the partial closing of the eye on the affected side.

**Habit Spasm** This condition is common in young girls from 7 to 14 years of age. The spasm usually consists of sudden winking of the eye, rapid one-sided contraction of the mouth, sudden drawing down of the upper lip between the teeth with continuous protrusion of the tongue so as to touch the upper lip and sniffing followed by the drawing down of the upper lip on one side. The condition is intensified by emotion.

**Convulsive Tic** (Gilles de la Tourette's disease) This presents three distinct phases: (a) *Coprolalia* irregular movements of the face or arm accompanied by associated explosive profane or obscene utterances; (b) *echolalia* muscle twitching accompanied by involuntary repetition of words as they are spoken by others; (c) *echokinesis*, constant mimicking of an action performed by another.

**Choreic Spasm** Convulsive irregular involuntary jerking movements of the facial and other muscles.

**Winking Spasm** Constant and regular clonic contractions of the orbicularis palpebrarum.

**Blepharospasm** Persistent closure of the eyes due to spasm of the orbicular muscles may result from disease of the eyes, photophobia or disease of the orbicularis palpebrarum or from any affection of the nerves supplying those muscles.

**Clonic Unilateral Spasm** This type of spasm of one or more facial muscles is caused by pressure upon or irritation of the facial nerve.

**Miscellaneous Facial Spasms** Facial spasms are also noted in

**Exophthalmic Goiter** (Abadie's sign) This often presents constant successive and rapid raising of the upper eyelids.

**Epilepsy** (petit mal) Tonic spasms are followed by clonic spasms of the facial muscles.



Fig. 19—Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis with bulbar palsy

**Meningitis** Spasm of the eyelid, upper lip, chin or the muscles of either cheek is often observed in the early stages of this disease.

**Tetanus** Tonic spasms of the different facial muscles are sometimes observed in this disease (lockjaw).

**Spasm Following Paralysis** When the paralyzed muscles begin to recuperate tonic and, sometimes clonic spasms may occur in the face.

**Tic Douloureux** This often gives rise to spasmodic movements of the face during which severe pain is experienced.

**Hysteria** Facial spasms in this condition may be tonic or clonic. They may

also be either unilateral or bilateral, and affect either one muscle, or a whole group of facial muscles

### Facial Paralysis

Paralysis of the face is usually unilateral, rarely, bilateral. In order to determine whether or not facial paralysis exists, the following is to be noted



Fig 20—Bell's palsy

When the forehead is wrinkled, the affected side of the forehead remains smooth, when the eyes are shut, the one on the affected side will remain partially open, when attempting to whistle, there will be no puckering on the affected side of the mouth

When the patient blows through the mouth, most of the air will come out of the paralyzed side, and in eating, the food frequently escapes through the same side

Paralysis of the face may be of *peripheral* or *central origin*. If it involves the facial nerves only, not constituting part of a more general hemiplegia, it will present the following characteristics. The

eye cannot be completely closed, the forehead cannot be wrinkled, the tongue does not deviate from the middle line (*Bell's palsy*)

If the paralysis is of central origin, the facial nerve is but slightly affected, and the eye on the affected side can readily be closed, the forehead can be wrinkled and the tongue, when protruded, will be found to deviate toward the paralyzed side

*Bilateral facial paralysis* is an extremely rare condition. When present, it may be the result of a tumor or gumma at the base of the brain, of disease of the pons or the basilar artery, or it may result from diphtheria, multiple neuritis, double mastoid disease, or bilateral and symmetric cortical lesions

### The Eyes

When examining the eyes, the following should be noted. The condition of the eyelids, of the conjunctiva, the sclera and the cornea, the reaction of the pupils and their relation to each other, the state or tension of the eyeballs, and, when possible, an ophthalmoscopic examination of the retina should be made

### The Eyelids

The patient should be placed in a good light and the surfaces of the lids examined for swollen superficial veins and edema, and the edges for inflammation, parasites, misplaced cilia or foreign bodies

**Puffiness or Swelling:** This condition, particularly of the lower lid, is noted in renal diseases, cardiac diseases after failure of compensation, the various anemias, angioneurotic edema, arsenical poisoning, cerebral thrombosis, and ecchymosis due either to external traumatism or to strain (often seen in per-

tussis, severe vomiting, etc.) Puffiness of the eyelids associated with iritis is noted in syphilis in glanders and in severe conjunctivitis due to any cause.

#### **Inflammation *Hordeolum (stye)***

This is a painful abscess at the edge of the eyelid usually due to an infection of a hair follicle. Its presence may be an indication of eyestrain or of external infection; it may also occur as a result of some systemic condition.

#### **Mucocele (chronic dacryocystitis)**

This is a chronic catarrhal inflammation of the lacrimal sac causing it to protrude. This cystic swelling usually appears at the inner canthus of the eye; it is due to stricture of the nasal duct with consequent accumulation and decomposition of tears.

**Blepharitis** This is an inflammation at the edge of the eyelids causing them to become red, thickened and encrusted with dried secretions. This condition is found in conjunctivitis, measles, in certain catarrhal affections of the eye and also as a result of vitamin deficiency and as an allergic phenomenon.

**Ulceration *Verrucae* or *carts*** on the eyelids, if occurring in elderly subjects, should arouse suspicion of epithelioma. **Ulcers** may be due to two causes which are of especial importance.

1 **Epithelioma** of the eyelid is an affection of the middle aged and elderly; it is often of slow development remaining stationary for years. As a rule it will be found on the nasal side of the lower lid as a shallow ulcer covered by a scab which reveals a raw surface when removed and soon reforms without any attempt at healing.

2 **Syphilis** A chancre at times appears upon the eyelid in the shape of a small moist, slightly ulcerated area with considerable induration and swelling. A

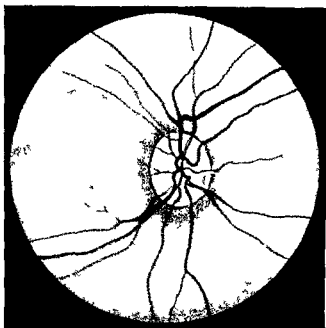
positive diagnosis of this condition can only be made by dark field study and blood tests. *Tertiary syphilitic lesion* of the eyelid is rare; when it does occur the surface will present an inflamed, indurated and punched out appearance.

**Other Lesions** Xanthomata, which may be flattened or raised, are often found near the canthi. Cysts, fibromata and other lesions may affect the upper or the lower lids or the tissues adjacent to the eyes.

**Movements *Blepharospasm*** This is an involuntary contraction or twitching of the whole or part of the eyelid which may be due to eyestrain, habit, spasm or nervous irritability.

**Lagophthalmos** This is a condition in which it is impossible to close the eye completely. This may be caused by the contraction of a scar of the eyelid and by atony of the orbicularis palpebrarum, facial paralysis, tumor or abscess of the orbit, orbital hemorrhage, fracture of the base of the skull, exophthalmic goiter or by other conditions causing exophthalmus. Incomplete closure of the eye during sleep is often noted in healthy children and in adults who are greatly exhausted. Rolling up of the eyeball and incomplete closing of the lids is frequently seen in hysteria.

**Ptosis** (drooping of the upper eyelid) This is due to paralysis of the levator palpebrarum and depends upon some interference with the function of the third nerve, either central or peripheral. It is also noted in hysteria, in tetanus, in paralyzing lesion of the sympathetic nerve or in direct traumatism. **Congenital ptosis** which occurs from paralysis or from defective development of the levator palpebrae superioris is usually bilateral, while the acquired form is unilateral. If **acquired ptosis** is due to



#### NORMAL FUNDUS

The disk is vertically oval with well defined margins and clearly outlined scleral and pigment rings. The color is distinctly brighter in the temporal than in the nasal side. There is a shallow excavation in the center recognized by the light color at the point of emergence of the vessels. These are clearly distinguished from each other: the arteries are narrow and brighter and they have a distinct light streak; the veins are larger, darker and without light streak. The pigment epithelium is so laden with pigment that it entirely conceals the choroidal vessels. (Uniform or retinal fundus.) A circle of darker pigment is concentrated around the disk. The macula is seen with the direct method and appears darker in color than the rest of the fundus with a light reddish area in the center. There are no macular or foveal reflexes. In other eyes a central brilliant foveal reflex can be clearly detected (Adams) (Troncoso).

Internal Diseases of the Eye and Atlas of Ophthalmoscopy. T. A. Davis Co. Philadelphia, Pa.)

paralysis of the sympathetic nerve, the pupil will be contracted and vasomotor paralysis be manifest on the affected side of the face. Ptosis due to paralysis of the oculomotor nerve usually causes dilatation of the pupil. Ptosis single or double may occur in *tabes dorsalis* facial paralysis tuberculous meningitis en-



Fig 21—Horner's syndrome.

cephalitis lethargica myasthenia gravis Mikulicz's disease and cerebral tumors particularly of the corpora quadrigemina and of the pineal body. Ptosis may also result from local eye conditions such as trachoma or disease of the eyeball.

**Benedict's Syndrome.** Ptosis on the side of the lesion associated with a slow rhythmic tremor of the extremities on the opposite side. This is found in tumors of the tegmental region of the crus or pons when the red nucleus is involved.

**Weber's Syndrome.** Ptosis on the side of the lesion and hemiplegia on the opposite side. This is significant of a tumor of the ventral region of the crus cerebri.

**Horner's Syndrome.** Unilateral ptosis with contraction of the pupil recession of the eyeball and dryness heat redness or edema on the same side of the face. This is due to paralysis of the cervical sympathetic caused by pressure of a tumor abscess enlarged substernal thyroid subclavian aneurysm enlarged cervical glands or by direct injury to the cervical sympathetics.

**Ptosis Adiposa** (false ptosis) and **Blepharochalasis** (relaxation of the eyelid known also as *dermatolysis palpebrarum*). These are congenital anomalies due primarily to defective attachment of the integumenta to the upper margin of the tarsus and the tendon of the levator, the skin cannot be raised with the lid and hangs down like a pouch over the palpebrae producing a marked deformity. **Lipomatosis** (lipoma of the eyelid) is allied to these conditions and is sometimes termed ptosis adiposa.

**Ectropion** (eversion of the lid margin). This may be caused by relaxation of the skin and tarsus as is often seen in the aged or it may take place because of a cicatrix following trauma or infection as in trachoma. Palsy of the facial nerve may also be a cause of eversion of the lower eyelid.

**Entropion** (inward curling of the eyelid). This is often seen in the lower lid because of some spastic contraction of the muscular fibers or of a cicatrix.

**Adhesions Symblepharon.** This is an adhesion between the eyelid and the eyeball. It may develop as a result of scars from burns or ulcerations.

**Ankyloblepharon.** This means adhesion between the free edges of the lids.

**Epicanthus.** This is a crescentic fold of skin which surrounds and par-



tially covers the internal canthus. This condition is normal in the Mongolian race and in many newborn infants of the Caucasian race. Among whites it gradually disappears as the bridge of the nose becomes more fully developed.

**Discoloration of the Eyelids.** This may be observed in brunettes particularly at the menstrual period and in early pregnancy. Such dusky skin is also observable after fatigue, mental excitement, loss of sleep, severe exhaustion and strain.

### *The Conjunctiva*

The conjunctivae are examined by inspection. In order to inspect the conjunctiva thoroughly both the palpebral and ocular portions should be exposed. In inspecting the lower lid the examiner's index finger is placed over the lower margin, drawing the lid downward while the patient is instructed to look up. The conjunctiva of the upper lid is inspected by everting the lid according to a procedure which consists in having the patient turn the eye downward while the examiner gently seizes the central eyelashes of the upper lid between the index finger and thumb of the left hand; the lid is then being drawn downward away from the ball of the eye. The point of the index finger or thumb of the right hand is placed above the tarsal cartilage of the lid which is to be everted; the remaining fingers being steadied on the patient's brow and by a quick movement the edge of the lid is turned over the point of the thumb or index finger while this is simultaneously depressed.

The upper lid may also be everted by substituting a probe, toothpick or matchstick (if nothing better is at hand) for the thumb or index finger of the

right hand. The beginner may find this procedure less difficult though the technique first described is the more practical.

The conjunctivae are examined for color, degree of moisture and for the presence of foreign bodies, and for petechial hemorrhages often seen in bacterial endocarditis and in septicæmia. *Inflammation of the conjunctiva* is characterized by injection of the conjunctival vessels, lacrimation and photophobia.

**Pathologic Conditions.** *Infectious or Catarrhal Ophthalmia* (pink eye). The conjunctiva becomes reddened; the vessels are engorged and photophobia is a prominent symptom.

*Ophthalmia Neonatorum.* This is a gonorrheal conjunctivitis in the newborn; it is infrequently seen in adults and occurs as purulent blennorrhœa.

*Follicular Conjunctivitis.* This is a condition in which the conjunctiva of the lower lid is studded with small transparent lymphoid follicles.

*Trachoma.* The conjunctivae are studded with enlarged follicles situated on the undersurface of the upper lid, and in the upper conjunctival fornix. Thickening and edema of the upper lid with partial ptosis are the usual symptoms. The lower lid may also be affected.

*Pannus.* This is a vascular opacity of a part of the cornea. In this condition round raised masses, yellowish in tint, appear at the corneosclerotic margin surrounded by localized areas of vascular conjunctivitis.

*Membranous Conjunctivitis.* This may be due to infection by diptheria bacilli or staphylococci. The lids are swollen, inflamed and membranous.

**Discoloration:** A yellowish discoloration of the conjunctiva is seen in obstructive jaundice, hemolysis and certain fevers. It may also be caused by fatty deposits. A bluish white or pearly discoloration is observed in anemia, frequently in nephritis and phthisis. Sky-blue discoloration is often noted in whooping cough and pale conjunctivae in the anemias.

**Dryness and Moisture Dryness** In some forms of convulsions in collapse, and in the typhoid state the eye may become abnormally dry. Excessive dryness of the eyes is also noted in those conditions which are associated with lagophthalmos. In infants and young children during the course of a severe illness the conjunctiva is dry, when moisture or tears appear it is an indication of beginning recovery.

**Abnormal Moisture** This may occur as a result of inadequate drainage such as is produced by blocking of the lacrimal ducts, it is also frequently found in any irritation or inflammation of the conjunctiva which may be caused by the presence of foreign bodies, or by such diseases as measles, influenza, whooping cough, hay fever and trifacial neuralgia.

### **The Cornea**

The cornea is a transparent coat occupying the anterior fifth of the eyeball. In health it presents a pearly white appearance. Pathologically the following conditions may occur:

**Arcus Senilis** This is an ill defined grayish ring circumscribing the cornea, a condition usually found in the aged or in those suffering from arteriosclerosis or chronic nephritis.

**False Arcus Senilis** This is a sharply delineated ring of a clear yellow or yellowish white color caused by a

deposit of fat, as a rule it is of no diagnostic significance.

**Keratitis** (inflammation of the cornea) In *interstitial keratitis* the cornea assumes the appearance of ground glass, here and there showing small clear areas, through which the pupil may be indistinctly seen. The condition is commonly caused by syphilis or tuberculosis.

**Ulcer of the Cornea** This is a break in the continuity of its surface and is often associated with pain, inflammation and *photophobia*. It may be caused by trauma, or by the absorption of certain toxic substances and is frequently found in exophthalmic goiter and may also be found in various other constitutional diseases.

### **The Sclera**

The sclera is normally of a bluish white color. Deep yellow discoloration occurs in obstructive jaundice, faintly yellow icteroid tinge in cholecystitis without obstruction and in certain febrile conditions.

### **The Iris**

The color of the irides may vary from light blue to gray, or they may be brown, yellowish or greenish. In the newborn the irides are of a light blue grayish tint.

**Chromatic Asymmetry** Difference in the color of the two irides in the same individual occasionally occurs. One iris may be blue or gray, while the other may be brown. This condition is consistent with good health though it is frequently observed in persons who have a neuropathic tendency. Several members of the same family may show this anomaly. Pathologically, chromatic asymmetry may occur in early iritis or cyclitis.

**Piebald Irises** Irregularly shaped areas of dark discoloration in one or

both eyes should not be mistaken for foreign bodies in an inflamed eye nor, conversely should foreign bodies be mistaken for a piebald iris.

**Iritis** (inflammation of the iris) This is recognized by discoloration. A blue or gray iris may become greenish or of a muddy hue with the pupil contracted and responding sluggishly to light while a narrow zone of hyperemia encircles the cornea. An iris normally brown does not change color when inflamed. Iritis is likely to occur in rheumatism, gout and secondary syphilis.

### *The Pupil*

In health the size of the pupil varies with the extent of its exposure to light and the degree of accommodation and convergence. When the eye is exposed to a strong light the pupil contracts, in the dark the pupil dilates. When the eye is first focused on a near object the pupil contracts when the focus is on a distant object it dilates. The average diameter of the pupil is 4 to 5 mm. normally both pupils are equal.

**Mydriasis** (dilatation of the pupil) Both pupils may become dilated as a result of the nonconductivity of light. Dilatation of the pupils also occurs in fright or other sudden emotion, in anemia, nervous depression and in the first and third stages of anesthesia, and it may be due to the administration of such drugs as belladonna, hyocyamin, cocaine, etc. It is also observable in coma, hysteria, botulism and irritation of the cervical sympathetic nerve. In high myopia (nearsightedness) the pupils are dilated.

One or both pupils may be dilated under the influence of a local mydriatic, and the same phenomenon occurs in the presence of glaucoma, cataract, optic

atrophy, orbital disease, brain and spinal cord lesions and paralysis of the third nerve. Slight unilateral mydriasis is often seen in pulmonary tuberculosis, in aneurysm of the aorta or the innominate artery or in tumor of the neck causing irritation of the cervical sympathetic nerve. Scratching or tickling the side of the neck often causes one or both pupils to dilate.

**Myosis** (contraction of the pupil) This may be caused by irritation of the oculomotor system or by paralysis of the dilators. Myosis occurs in congestion of the iris in certain fevers in the early stages of meningitis in typhus because of the local application of a myotic and in poisoning by such drugs as opium, eserine, pilocarpine, etc. Contraction of the pupil may be seen in mitral regurgitation after failure of compensation in venous obstruction and in pulmonary congestion. It is characteristic of bilateral disease of the spinal cord disseminated sclerosis, general paresis, hemorrhage into the pons and such irritating lesions of the brain as cerebral meningitis, cerebral or subdural hemorrhage and sunstroke. It also occurs in the aged and in hyperopia.

**Unilateral Myosis** When not congenital this may be caused by the application of a myotic or by one of the following diseased states. A very large aneurysm exercising sufficient pressure upon the sympathetic fibers of the thorax to cause paralysis, locomotor ataxia, general paresis of the insane, or other unilateral lesion affecting the cord. The same conditions may be due to unilateral cerebral lesions irritating the oculomotor nerve center.

**Anisocoria** (inequality in the diameter of the pupils when the eyes are at rest) This may be a congenital or a

## LESIONS AND SYMPTOMS OF THE PUPILLARY REFLEX ARCS

1 Lesions and symptoms of left optic nerve Pupils are equal, direct light reflex abolished on the side of the lesion and the consensual on the opposite side, illumination of the right retina produces contraction of the left pupil as well as of the right

2 Lesions and symptoms of the chiasm Pupils equal, consensual light reflex retained bitemporal hemianopia hemiopic pupillary light reflex ( )

3 Lesions and symptoms of left optic tract. Homonymous hemianopia with nasal blindness of the left side, hemiopic pupillary light reflex (?)

4 Lesions and symptoms of left pupillary fibers of the geniculate ganglion. Hemiopic pupillary light reflex without hemianopia (?), bilateral lesion, Argyll Robertson pupils

5 Lesions and symptoms of left oculomotor nerve behind the ciliary ganglion, loss of reaction to accommodation on the left side with slight dilatation of that pupil, direct and consensual light reflex in the left pupil abolished.

6 Lesions and symptoms of left ciliary ganglion, same symptoms as at 5

7 Lesions and symptoms of optic radiations behind the left geniculate ganglion, homonymous hemianopia with nasal field blindness on the left side, Wernicke's hemianopic light reflex, *vis* light reflex present in both pupils. In bilateral lesions, total blindness with retention of pupillary light reflex on both sides

8 Lesions of the inhibitory fibers of the medulla, a bilateral section produces a very rapid light reflex, because inhibition is suppressed, should the lesion be irritative, there will be myosis and rigidity to light.

9 Mesial pontine irritative lesion, diminution or suppression of light reflex, destructive lesion, here, as well as at 11, prompt pupillary light reflex reappears and a normal contour of the pupils, as in 8.

10 Bulbar hemisection, suppresses inhibition of the contralateral pupil, an irritative lesion produces rigidity to light with myosis in the contralateral pupil

11 Suppression of the sympathetic reaction, myosis

12 Section of the medulla at this level produces transient dilatation of the pupils, the light reflex is not modified.

13 Lesions and symptoms of communicating ramus of the sympathetic of the first dorsal segment, myosis of the monolateral pupil and no response to cutaneous stimulation of the sympathetic (no dilatation)

14 Section of the cervical sympathetic, same as in 13, the light reflex is not interfered with

*(According to Bösch and Meyer, modified Encyclopedie Ophthalmologique)*

Skin





physiologically normal finding or it may be found in the presence of an aneurysm in disease of the nervous system head trauma disseminated sclerosis focal brain lesion or parietic dementia some times it is seen in locomotor ataxia The pupils are often unequal in cases of widely dissimilar refraction and in unilateral blindness A phenomenon often seen in the early stages of insanity is a varying inequality of the pupils each pupil independently alternating in dilatation and contraction In the normal eyes inequality of the pupils will be noted when one eye is exposed to a strong light and the other is in shade

**Technic for Testing Pupillary Response to Light** The patient is to face a bright light The examiner shades the patient's both eyes with his hands or a card and directs the patient to keep his eyes open The shade is suddenly withdrawn so that the light instantly strikes the unshaded eye and the effect of the light upon the pupil is observed The same procedure is carried out for the other eye An artificial light such as a pocket flashlight or any other light may be used as a substitute for sunlight Normally the pupils contract when exposed to light and dilate when in the dark

**Technic for Testing for Accommodation** The patient is asked to fix his gaze upon the examiner's finger pencil or any other object the object upon which the patient gazes is gradually removed to some distance in his line of vision and then it is gradually approached to within a few inches of his eye The reaction of the pupils should be observed when the object is near the eyes and when it is at a distance Normally the pupils contract when focused

upon near objects and dilate when focused on distant objects

**Pupillary Reflexes** *Mydriasis* This is extreme dilatation of the pupil *Myosis* This is contraction of the pupil The pupil usually contracts when a light is thrown on the retina and dilates when the light is withdrawn The pupil contracts when any object is brought close to the eye and dilates as the object is removed to a distance

*Argyll Robertson Pupil* This does not react to light but does react to convergence and accommodation This phenomenon occurs in locomotor ataxia and is also observed in cerebrospinal syphilis and paresis of the insane.

*Accommodation Iridoplegia with Preserved Light Reflex* This is the opposite of Argyll Robertson pupil The pupil reacts to light but not to accommodation This condition may occur as a result of a lesion in the oculomotor nucleus as of postdiphtheritic cycloplegia (paralysis of the ciliary muscle) Unequal contraction or irregularly contracted pupil is often seen in iritis tabes paresis posterior synechia and adhesions of the lens

*Immobile Pupil* This is one which does not react to light nor to accommodation

*Hemiplegic Reflex* In this the pupil contracts when light is thrown on the healthy side of the retina. It does not contract when light is thrown on the paralyzed half

*Cilio-spinal Reflex* This is a dilatation of the pupil when the neck on the same side is irritated This reflex is absent in glaucoma general paresis atrophied iris and posterior synechia

*Westphal Pupil* This is a turning of the eyeball upward and contraction

of the pupil when the eyelids attempt to shut against resistance

**Paradoxical Pupillary Reflex** In this the pupils dilate instead of contracting upon exposure to light or accommodation

### **Consensual or Indirect Reaction**

This is a condition in which the pupil on the diseased side does not react to direct light but does react when the light is thrown into the sound eye. This phenomenon is seen in diseases of the optic nerve or tract, in which neither the oculomotor nerve of the diseased side nor its nucleus and nuclear connection with the corpora quadrigemina (and through the latter with the opposite optic tract) are involved

**Hippus** This is an alternate contraction and dilatation of the pupil which occurs under sudden exposure to light. It is often seen in normal individuals but it occurs more frequently in hysteria, epileptic subjects, the early stages of meningitis, disseminated sclerosis, advanced paralysis and in mania. Phthisical patients occasionally display hippus, particularly at a stage when the thoracic glands are greatly enlarged so that they cause irritation of the thoracic ganglion. Alternate contraction and dilatation of the pupils is often noticed in Cheyne-Stokes respiration, the pupils dilating during the dyspneic period and contracting during apnea.

### **The Retina (The Fundus)**

The retina cannot be examined with the unaided eye. At times when the pupil is dilated a red glare can be seen, but no details of the nerves or vessels are visible. The retina is examined by means of the ophthalmoscope—an instrument devised by Helmholtz—the main principle of which is a concave mirror

with a central aperture. The light is thrown by the mirror through the pupils upon the retina while the examiner looks through the central aperture into the interior of the eye.

In *direct examination* looking through the Helmholtz ophthalmoscope, or one of its modifications, or any electric ophthalmoscope, the examiner gradually approaches his own eye to the eye to be examined until the red glare of the retina is visible; he then brings his own eye in close contact with that of the patient in order to make a detailed examination. The examiner's eye and that of the patient must be of similar refractive power; if a discrepancy exists the examiner's eye must be neutralized by one of the lenses with which the ophthalmoscope is supplied. The image thus obtained is designated as a 'direct image'.

When the *indirect method* of examination is used, the eye is illuminated from a distance of 25 to 30 cm. and a convex lens is held about 5 cm. from the eye. This lens magnifies the interior of the eye thus presenting an inverted image.

The interior of the eye is examined in order to determine the condition of the media, the crystalline lens and, most particularly, the retina, or the fundus as to its color, size, condition of the blood vessels, optic cup and state of the optic nerve.

Pathological conditions of the retina are usually due to systemic disease. In order to diagnose accurately retinal findings special training in the use of the ophthalmoscope is required.

**Color of the Retina** The color of the retina is usually a purplish red tint though it varies with the complexion of the individual, being lighter in the light complexioned and darker in the brunette. The *optic disk* (optic nerve entrance) is

seen as a whitish elliptical depression situated somewhat to the nasal side of the posterior pole of the orbit. The *blood vessels of the eye* (the main artery and vein) arise in the optic disk and branch out in the fundus.

Pathologically, the retina may become *colorless* in severe anemia or in ischemia and markedly *reddened* in active or passive hyperemia. Active hyperemia may be due to eyestrain or irritation. Passive hyperemia is usually due to obstruction of the retinal circulation as a result of valvular heart disease during the stage of decompensation, glaucoma, convulsions, asthma, etc.

**Retinitis** (inflammation of the retina). This may be due to a variety of factors, some of which cause definite pathological entities.

Retinitis may be classified as

**I Simple or Serous Retinitis.** This includes (a) syphilitic retinitis, (b) sympathetic retinitis, (c) retinitis from concussion. They are characterized by inflammation and engorgement of the retinal vessels often associated with edema.

**II Parenchymatous Retinitis.** This includes (a) albuminuric retinitis, (b) diabetic retinitis, (c) leukemic retinitis, (d) syphilitic chorioretinitis, (e) hemorrhagic retinitis, (f) macular retinitis. These are characterized by hyperemia, engorgement of the vessels, edema, hyperplasia with involvement of the deeper structures.

(a) *Albuminuric retinitis* is recognized by (1) The appearance of variously sized white or yellowish white plaques in the vicinity of the macula from which they radiate often occupying the major portion of the retina, (2) retinal hemorrhages which are flame shaped, linear, dotted or sheetlike, extending along the arteries, and (3) signs

of neuritis or papillitis, such as indistinct outline or swelling of the optic nerve which is often streaked with diverging vessels.

(b) *Diabetic retinitis* closely resembles albuminuric retinitis, differing only in that the hemorrhages are smaller and there is an absence of the white radiating plaques or spots around the macula.

(c) *Leukemic retinitis* is characterized by the appearance of the arteries and veins. The arteries are small, pink and at times yellowish in color, the veins are large, broad and rose red in color. Opaque deposits composed of lymphocytes extend from the macula to the equator.

(d) *Syphilitic chorioretinitis* is first noted in the uvea, later extending to the retina or the retina and choroid may be simultaneously affected. Both eyes may show different stages of the affection.

(e) *Hemorrhagic retinitis* may occur in syphilis, nephritis, cardiac disease, hypertension and arteriosclerosis. This condition is recognized by the appearance of hemorrhages in the retina and retinitis.

*Hemorrhages into the retina without retinitis* may occur in arteriosclerosis, anemia, septicemia, pyemia, bacterial endocarditis, purpura, hemophilia, scurvy, heart disease, strain, suffocation and trauma.

(f) *Macular Retinitis*. This is an inflammatory condition occurring in the macula lutea.

**III Embolic or septic retinitis** is usually found in association with inflammation of the choroid and occurs in cerebrospinal meningitis, septicemia, trauma and infections.

**IV Retinal sclerosis** includes (a) *retinitis pigmentosa*, the diagnostic features of which are night blindness, di-



minution of the central vision, contraction of the visual field occasional color blindness and a deposit of pigment along the vessels (b) *retinitis proliferans* which is characterized by a proliferation of Muller's fibers with the formation of connective tissue around the optic nerve thereby causing grave impairment of vision

#### Pulsation of the Retinal Vessels

This is seen in aortic regurgitation exophthalmic goiter and in any condition that causes throbbing of the arteries

**Tubercles in the Choroid** These are found in tuberculous meningitis and miliary tuberculosis

**Choked Disks** These are found in albuminuric retinitis and tumor of the brain

**Tumors of the Retina** These may also be recognized by ophthalmoscopic examination, they include melanotic sarcoma carcinoma, glioma etc

#### The Eyeball

The eyeball is examined in order to determine its tension and its position in relation to the orbit

**Exophthalmos** (protrusion of the eyeball) Bilateral exophthalmos is seen in exophthalmic goiter The eyes may appear to protrude—or perhaps do actually protrude slightly—as a result of sudden fright, or during an attack of spasmodic croup or of asthma Exophthalmos is also noted in thrombosis of the superior longitudinal sinus in cardiac hypertrophy, particularly if due to aortic regurgitation in laryngeal stenosis and in paralysis of the associated ocular movements One or both eyeballs may protrude because of hemorrhage in the orbit aneurysm exostosis or tumor of the orbit and also because of enlarged lacrimal glands

**Prominence of the Eyeballs** This occurs in near sightedness and at times as a familial peculiarity

**Enophthalmos** (recession of the eyeballs) This may be either bilateral or unilateral

*Bilateral enophthalmos* may be due to absorption of fat in the orbital cavity, a



Fig. 22—Paralysis of associated ocular movements

condition noted in all wasting diseases such as marasmus, pulmonary tuberculosis or the cachexia of cancer, also in long continued febrile states such as typhoid fever and in starvation

*Unilateral enophthalmos* is usually due to a lesion of the cervical sympathetic or the cranial nerves, which interferes with nutrition, causing atrophy of the orbital connective tissue, or paralysis of Muller's orbital muscles

#### The Orbit

The orbit may become the seat of disease or, because of pressure or direct

extension, may produce distinct eye symptoms

**Abscess** This may be acute or chronic, it usually follows an injury. This condition may be recognized by constant pain, with redness swelling of



Fig 23—Carcinoma of eye.

the eyelids conjunctivitis, exophthalmos and fluctuation

**Fracture** This usually results from violent direct injury. It may give rise to meningeal symptoms also to inflammation and suppuration of the orbital tissue

**Foreign Bodies** These may be found following injury by an explosive, such as shrapnel, or any similar accident. Usually the eye itself will suffer injury at the same time although there are cases in which the eye has entirely escaped damage. The symptoms depend upon the size of the foreign body and the extent of the injury inflicted

**Periostitis** This is a painful condition which may be recognized by the

presence of a tender point over one of the orbital bones

**Benign Tumors** These may give rise to pressure symptoms

**Carcinoma** This is usually secondary though it may occur as a primary growth. Glioma may be primary or secondary

**Sarcoma** This usually can be recognized by its rapid growth and the occurrence of sarcomata in other situations

**Aneurysm** This occurs as a result of sudden strain, particularly in a syphilitic individual. The patient can, as a rule, indicate the time when the aneurysm was formed because of the sensation of a sudden snap followed by severe pain



Fig 24—Strabismus (Ebaugh)

### *Strabismus (Squint)*

This is caused by overaction or paralysis of one or more of the eye muscles or by disease of the cranial nerves. Strabismus is classified, according to its direction, into convergent (when both eyes

seem to meet—internal squint) divergent (when both eyes seem to look in different directions—external squint) and altitudinal directed either upward or downward Divergent and convergent squint may also be either upward or downward

### Eye Signs

**von Graefe's Sign** This was described both by von Graefe in Germany (1864) and Demarres in France (1856) working independently It can be readily recognized even in relatively mild cases, but its absence does not warrant a negative diagnosis in any given individual In directing the eye downward the lower margin of the upper eyelid does not follow the line of vision normally, but lags behind or follows in an irregular spastic manner

**Stellwag's Sign** This is closely related to von Graefe's sign and was first described by Stellwag in 1869 In patients suffering from marked exophthalmos there is a retraction of the upper eyelid and at the same time the lid remains much more stationary than it does under normal conditions There is also a marked decrease in the frequency of winking

**Moebius' Sign** In 1895\* Moebius pointed out the fact that in many cases of exophthalmic goiter there is an insufficiency of convergence If the patient is directed to look at the ceiling and then suddenly at his own nose it will be found that only one eye will be directed toward the nose and the other may take any direction although it usually maintains its axis fairly parallel with the eye that is directed toward the nose This symptom may also be elicited by having the patient fix an object with his eyes at

a distance of several yards then by gradual approach of the face a point will be reached at which one eye only will continue to fix the object the other eye ceasing to see it There is no definite distance from the eyes at which convergence ceases and the distance is not even constant for the same patient at different examinations This test is not positive in all cases of exophthalmic goiter but can be elicited in most of these cases Several other eye signs have been described in exophthalmic goiter For additional eye signs see *Exophthalmic Goiter* p 779

### Refraction

By refraction is clinically meant the measuring of visual accuracy Certain visual defects are correctable by glasses

**Emmetropia** (normal range of vision) This is a condition midway between hypermetropia and myopia External objects produce an image which is focused accurately upon the retina

**Ametropia** is a condition where the principal focus does not lie on the retina There are three kinds of ametropia Hypermetropia myopia and astigmatism

**Hypermetropia** (hyperopia far sight) In this condition the refractive power is too weak or the axis of the eye too short, causing the principal focus to form beyond the retina

**Myopia** (nearsight) This is the condition where the refractive power is too strong or the axis of the eye too long causing the principal focus to form in front of the retina

**Astigmatism** This is a combination of emmetropia hypermetropia and myopia in the same eye This condition is due to asymmetry of the meridians of the eye When a luminous dot is exhib

ited to an astigmatic eye, it will be seen as a line, an oval, or a circle, according to the situation of the retina, but never as a dot. Horizontal, oblique, and perpendicular lines of the same breadth, arranged in one figure will appear to the astigmatic eye as lines of different dimensions. Astigmatism may be simple, compound, myopic or hypermetropic, mixed or irregular.

**Anisometropia** This is a condition in which one eye is more hypermetropic or myopic than its fellow.

**Presbyopia** ("long sight" of old age) This is a condition in which an object is partially or completely invisible at close range, but is clearly visible at a distance. In general, with advancing age, the power of accommodation decreases.

**Testing Visual Acuity** A standard card, usually the Snellen card is employed in testing visual acuity. The eyes are tested one at a time, the eye not in use being covered during the examination. The card is placed about 20 feet distant under good illumination, and the patient is asked to read all the letters or figures which he can see distinctly. The first line where the letters appear indistinct to him is considered his limit of distance, has visible acuity expressed by a fraction, in which the numerator indicates the greatest distance at which the person examined is able to read the smallest letter on the card, and the denominator the greatest distance at which a normal eye can recognize the same letter.

The patient who sees at 20 feet distance the letters normally visible at that distance, has visual acuity expressed as 20/20 (normal). If he can see at 20 feet only such letters that are normally visible at 40 feet, then his visual acuity is only 20/40.

## The Ears

**The External Ears.** They should be examined for change in color, displacements, growths, edema and pain.

**Color:** They may be cyanosed, pale or excessively red.

**Auricular Displacement:** It is well to note if the two auricles are identical in the angles which they form with the sides of the head. While slight differences in this respect may be due to ordinary anatomical variations, marked differences, on the other hand, are most likely due to the presence of an inflammatory condition in the ear or temporal bone of the bulging side. Marked displacement of one auricle points usually to an inflammatory process either in the mastoid cells (acute mastoiditis) or in the wall of the fibrocartilaginous meatus (furunculosis). In acute mastoiditis the auricle is pushed outward, forward and downward. The post auricular sulcus linear depression between the auricle and side of the head is usually obliterated in suppurative inflammation, involving the tympanic cavity and mastoid cells with or without a subperiosteal abscess. When the displacement of the auricle is outward, forward and upward it usually indicates furunculosis of the external auditory meatus, a condition much less serious although more painful.

**Growths.** Cysts are sometimes found about the auricular region. These are small tumors filled with clear colorless fluid and show no inflammation. Sebaceous cysts are often observed in the lobule or in the skin behind it. They are commonly caused by the accumulation of secretion when the sebaceous glands have been blocked for any reason. In patients subject to gout, tophi, de-

posits of sodium biurate crystals, sometimes called *chall stones*, frequently appear in the pinna margin

**Edema** A large amount of edema behind the ear may be present in both mastoiditis and furunculosis. In mastoiditis firm pressure behind the auricular attachment directed against the bone will elicit deep seated tenderness. In furunculosis, such pressure against the bone will be painless, whereas move-

**The Meatus** This should be inspected to ascertain the presence or absence of any purulent discharges or any obstructing foreign matter. The *tympanic membrane* can be inspected through a speculum illuminated either by reflected light or by a small electric bulb within the speculum itself. The points to note about the drumhead are its color, consistency, the presence or absence of injection or bulging, scars or perforations.

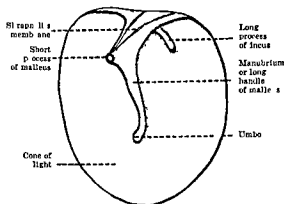


Fig 25—Ear drum membrana tympani and structures visible.

ment of the auricle from side to side or pressure from behind the ear directed forward against the auricle causes marked pain.

**Pain** When the patient complains of pain in the ear, it is well before making any instrumental examination of the drumhead to look for possible swelling and inflammation of the external canal. Except in infants and very young children in whom the anatomical relation between the drum membrane and external meatus is exceedingly close manipulation of the auricle or tragus causes absolutely no pain when the inflammation is confined to the middle ear. On the other hand very slight movements of the auricle or tragus are extremely painful even in the initial stages of a furuncle in the meatus.

**The Canal** This is examined for impactions, foreign bodies, local inflammation, furunculosis or other lesions. The presence of fine hairs in the meatus sometimes obstructs the view of the deeper parts. In such an event the examiner after the insertion of the speculum will apply a little vaseline to the hairy area by means of a cotton tipped probe, but this means the hairs are made to adhere closely to the walls of the canal.

**Discharges** Discharges from the ear are of diagnostic importance. With a history of injury the appearance of blood from the external auditory meatus if not caused by bleeding granulation tissue, indicates a fracture of the skull at the base, the blood is often mixed with cerebrospinal fluid. Blood is sometimes discharged from the ear in otitis

media usually mixed with pus. If the discharge is largely pus with a slight admixture of blood it indicates the presence of a purulent otitis media or an abscess or it may be due to bone necrosis (cholesteatoma) or fungus infection. In fracture at the base of the skull the presence of spinal fluid pre-



Fig 26—Testing for hearing

vents the bloody discharge from coagulating a point sometimes of value in making a differential diagnosis.

**Deafness** The presence of deafness should be determined by any one of the hearing tests. Deafness may be due to faulty perception. Conduction deafness may be caused by blockage of the auditory canal by cerumen, foreign bodies, inflammation, tumors, abscess or furunculosis, also by acute or chronic disease of the middle ear or the eustachian tube.

Perception deafness is found in otosclerosis in disease of the auditory nerve or the cochlea. It may also occur in acute infectious diseases and in tumor of the skull or the cerebellopontine angle or the auditory nerve. It may result from fracture of the skull, from exposure to constant noise for an extended period, and from the use of certain drugs such as quinine or salicylates.

**Hearing Tests** These may be roughly carried out in three ways: (1) A ticking watch is held close to the external ear while the examiner's hand shields the patient's eye upon the same side. The watch is then gradually removed from the ear until it reaches a point where the patient claims he can no longer hear it; the watch is then held at varying distances from the ear until it can be ascertained exactly at what distance hearing ceases. (2) The patient is directed to turn his face toward the wall; the examiner, standing from 6 to 8 feet away from him, whispers certain words or numbers which the patient is asked to repeat. This procedure may be repeated with the examiner standing at different distances or raising his voice. An attempt should be made to test each ear separately. This can only be done by total temporary exclusion of the other ear. The closure of one ear with a pledget of cotton held by the finger is not sufficient to exclude that ear from all hearing. This is especially true when testing by means of spoken or whispered words. There it is necessary to employ special instruments devised for that purpose. (3) By means of the audiometer, a special instrument devised for testing the acuity of hearing.

**Tinnitus Aurium** (ringing in the ears). This may be unilateral or bilateral; it may be functional as seen in the neuroses or it may be due to a lesion in the auditory apparatus associated with partial or complete deafness. Tinnitus is a common complaint in middle ear disease, otosclerosis, impacted cerumen, Meniere's disease, eustachian tube obstruction, nasal obstruction, hypertension, mountain sickness, tunnel sickness, acute anemia, and drug effects, as from quinine and salicylates.

### The Nose

The nose is examined as to its color, size the condition of the nares the presence of discharges or of obstruction to respiration

**Color** Chronic red nose due to dilated capillaries is found in chronic alcoholism, acne rosacea, lupus erythematosus and persistent digestive disorders and in such local skin conditions as pustules or boils Superficial ulceration of the nose may be caused by tuberculous ulcer or by epithelioma, a circular punched out ulcer may be due to syphilis

**Size and Shape** A coarse broad nose is found in cretinism and myxedema acromegaly causes a gradual increase in the size of the nose A depressed sunken (saddle) nose is found in syphilis in achondroplasia or may be the result of an injury A nose which appears pinched with small nares, is indicative of the presence of hypertrophied adenoid tissue or other chronic obstruction which causes mouth breathing Various tumors may affect the nose *i. e.* angioma carcinoma and syphilis

**Flapping or Dilatation of the Alae Nasi** Occurring during respiration this is often noticed in lobar pneumonia and other pulmonary affections and cardiac disease associated with dyspnea and fever It also occurs in neurotic individuals when under excitement

**Perforation of the Septum** The nasal septum may become perforated because of syphilis, cocaine sniffing injury and as a result of unsuccessful septum operation

**Regurgitation of Fluid through the Nares** This occurs in laryngeal diphtheria postdiphtheritic paralysis hypertrophied tonsils and in peritonsillar abscess (quinsy) Bulbar paralysis and cleft palate may also cause nasal regurgitation

**Discharges** Inoffensive catarrhal discharges from the nose are noted in all cases of nasal catarrh, in the early stage of measles, in hay fever, in vasomotor rhinitis, and in acute irritation of the schneiderian membrane and the mucous lining of the nose Pus may be discharged from the nares either as a result of local infection, or from drainage of the antra or the upper sinuses *Offensive discharges* may be caused by an impacted foreign body, nasopharyngeal diphtheria, or by lupus which affects the nasal chambers *Ozena* may be due to caries rhinitis, or syphilitic infection, it is also found in glanders *Epistaxis* (nosebleed) may be caused by the rupture of a blood vessel trauma ulceration from the presence of a foreign body or the presence of polypi or neoplastic growths Other causes of epistaxis are purpura hemorrhagica scurvy, leukemia hemophilia aplastic and other types of severe anemia vicarious menstruation telangiectasis and excessive high blood pressure.

**Nasal Obstruction** This may be due to polypi a deviated septum hypertrophied turbinates hypertrophic rhinitis acute coryza hay fever nasal diphtheria or foreign bodies in the nose. Snuffles is a pathognomonic sign of hereditary syphilis

The nasal cavities and their contents are examined with the aid of a nasal speculum by reflected or direct light A complete examination of the nose and sinuses requires the use of special apparatus and training beyond the attainment of the ordinary practitioner All pathologic nasal conditions should be

ceive attention from a properly qualified specialist

**Sense of Smell** (SEE p 65) In various diseases the sense of smell may be lost (anosmia) it may become increased (hyperosmia), or it may be perverted (parosmia)

**I Anosmia** The loss of the sense of smell may be a purely local condition due to excessive dryness of the nasal mucous membrane acute and chronic rhinitis nasal polypi mouth breathing pollens or extremely offensive odors. The loss of the sense of smell may also result from disease of the nasal accessory sinuses disease or injury of the olfactory tract bone disease in the vicinity of the olfactory bulb basal meningitis and tumors or gumma affecting the olfactory nerve. Anosmia is a frequent complaint in neurasthenia and hysteria and is at times found in locomotor ataxia. Unilateral anosmia may be due to local disease of one of the nasal chambers or disease of one hemisphere of the brain

**II Hyperosmia** Increased sensitivity to odors is usually found among those who possess a hypersensitive nervous system or among people who are susceptible to certain odors

**III Parosmia** A perverted sense of smell to the extent that the usually accepted agreeable odors are shunned as offensive and disagreeable odors are accepted as pleasant is found in certain functional nervous derangements and in some forms of nasal catarrh. *Kakosmia* is the perception of bad odors when they are nonexistent. This is sometimes found as hallucinations in certain psychoses head injuries and rarely in tumors of the hippocampus

## The Mouth

In studying the mouth the condition of the lips the gums the teeth the buccal mucosa the tongue the pharynx and the larynx as well as the odor on the breath should be considered



Fig 27—Technic for inspection of teeth, gums and lips

## The Lips

An examination of the lips is not complete unless they are everted so as to expose their buccal surfaces

In anemia and wasting diseases the lips are usually pale in color also after hemorrhage and in prolonged fevers. They may be very dry in conditions of exhaustion and extreme thirst. The lips are fissured in certain forms of indigestion or after exposure to cold. Fissures at the angle of the mouth (cheilitis) are found in the toothless in vitamin B<sub>2</sub> deficiency and in those who for any reason have a continual dribbling of saliva. Lip fissures in infants and young children should arouse suspicion of congenital syphilis and of some nutritional defect



**Herpes (vesicles)** Commonly known as cold sores these often appear in malaria pneumonia typhoid fever acute coryza and many other febrile diseases

**Eczema** This usually occurs on both lips They are dry fissured bleed easily and are often covered with crusts



Fig 28—Harelip and cleft palate  
A congenital malformation

**Chancre** The initial lesion of syphilis not infrequently makes its appearance upon the lip It is characterized by an indurated base and gives off a thin secretion and is usually accompanied by enlargement of the submaxillary glands In considering the nature of a sore upon the lip which suggests chancre the history should be minutely scrutinized numerous instances are on record of innocent extragenital syphilitic infection which has taken place upon the lip A classic example is that cited by Schamberg<sup>1</sup> where a number of young girls were thus infected by playing kissing games at a social gathering where one

of the male guests was in the active infective stage of syphilis

**Condyloma Latum** The mucous patch characteristic of syphilis commonly appears on the lips in the form of a flattened, strictly delimited area coated with gray exudate and is usually found at the angle of the mouth

**Epithelioma** This is one of the most malignant forms of skin cancer Its early identification is of the utmost importance In the initial stages there is a possibility of confusing it with chancre Trauma especially long-continued trauma as from constantly holding a pipestem at a certain spot between the lips or continual irritation by a jagged tooth or badly fitted artificial denture plays an important part in the etiology of epithelioma of the lip In the differential diagnosis the history is of equal importance Chancre is commoner in



Fig 29—Chancre of lip

young subjects while epithelioma in any location seldom appears before the age of 40 though a sufficient number of exceptions to this rule have occurred to render the diagnosis still more difficult The appearance of early lip epithelioma is

<sup>1</sup> Schamberg J F *An Epidemic of Chancre of the Lip from Kissing* Jour Amer Med Assoc. lvi 783 Sept. 21 1911

similar to the common cold sore a painless crack fissure or other break in the continuity of the mucous membrane of the lower lip (less than 5 per cent of all cases occurring upon the upper lip). The lesion is covered by a crust or scab.



Fig 30—Condyloma latum (mucous patch)

which leaves a raw surface when removed and immediately reforms without any tendency to healing. The ulcer gradually becomes indurated at the edges and increases in size slowly, seldom giving the patient pain or inconvenience until it is well advanced. Later involvement of the cervical and submaxillary glands will take place. Any lip lesion which does not heal promptly, especially in a patient of middle age or over or where no luetic history is obtained, should be carefully watched and vigorous measures instituted as soon as the need for them becomes apparent, as practically all hope of cure lies in early recognition.

**Carcinoma** This is usually secondary to carcinoma in its immediate vicinity. In rare instances primary carcinoma of the lip may be manifested.

**Tuberculous Ulcer** This is not uncommonly seen among the chronically tuberculous. The ulcer is usually situated at the inner portion of the lip close to the angle of the mouth. The diagnosis may be verified by pathological examination.

**Angioneurotic Edema** This may occur upon either lip as a sudden painless disfiguring swelling resembling a bee sting or mosquito sting. The swelling may disappear in a comparatively short time on the administration of epinephrine.

**Harelip** This is a congenital deformity of the upper lip. It may be unilateral and affect a small portion of the lip, the entire lip, or extend to the hard palate, or it may be bilateral.



Fig 31—Epithelioma of the lower lip.

### *The Gums*

**Color** The color of the gums has important diagnostic significance. In all forms of anemia the gums show marked pallor. If they display a bluish line at

the teeth edges it is indicative of lead poisoning, a greenish line in the same location may indicate copper poisoning, in scurvy the gums are of a purplish color, a bluish red tint is indicative of mercurial stomatitis. A red line on the gums of a young adult



Fig 32—Carcinoma of lip

probably indicates gingivitis, though it may be due to one of several possible affections of the teeth, *i e*, to pyorrhea, or lack of proper hygiene of the mouth. In a child it is often an early sign of scurvy. As temporary hyperemia may confuse the examiner in determining the presence of a definite line of color upon the gums, it is well to insert a toothpick or a piece of white paper between the gum margins, thus raising them slightly, if the discoloration remains after the gum margin has been raised it indicates a true discoloration, rather than a temporary hyperemia.

**Spongy Gums** This and ulceration upon the gums are often found in gingivitis, particularly when the teeth have been ill kept, also when there are large deposits of tartar upon the teeth, or in the presence of gangrenous stomatitis, scurvy, poisoning by phosphorus, by

mercurial or by radioactive substances and in some constitutional diseases like diabetes, leukemia, tuberculosis and certain digestive disturbances, and in Vincent's angina.

**Stomatitis** This is an inflammation of the buccal mucous membrane. It may affect the entire mouth or only the gums, the cheeks, the tongue or any local portion of the mouth. The lesions may be erythematous, macular, papular, pustular, or ulcerative. It may occur as the result of local or general infection or of trauma.

**Vincent's Angina** (trench mouth, necrotic gingivitis) The gums are ulcerated and necrotic, a white line of



Fig 33—Vincent's angina affecting the gums

necrotic tissue covers the tooth margins and extends downwards, often spreading to the lips, cheeks, tongue and pharynx. The teeth are covered by the necrotic exudate, and the mouth odor is extremely fetid.

### **The Teeth**

**Eruption of the Teeth** It is important for every practitioner of medicine to be familiar with the approximate time when both the deciduous and permanent teeth should appear

It is exceedingly necessary to know when a deciduous tooth either should be or may be extracted

**Deciduous Teeth:** The commonest order of eruption is

Two central incisors in the lower jaw, at six to nine months

The four upper incisors appearing in pairs from 8 to 12 months, those in the center coming in before the lateral pair

Two lower lateral incisors 12 to 14 months

Four anterior molars from 12 to 15 months

Four canines from 18 months to 2 years

Four posterior molars between the second and third years

A child one year old should, therefore, have six teeth, at a year and a half old it should have 12 teeth, at two years 16 teeth, and between two and a half and three years 20 teeth

When the deciduous teeth have remained in position some years their apices begin to be absorbed to make room for the subjacent development of the permanent teeth. Such absorption begins from two and a half to three years before the permanent teeth erupt, and continues until the whole of the root has been absorbed, when the tooth is or should be, shed. When the permanent teeth erupt their roots are not fully formed, and the apical foramina are large and patent, absorption of toxins, bacteria and dangerous drugs is very likely to occur, if they gain access to, or are applied to, the pulp during

the stage of open apices, either in deciduous or permanent teeth. The ages at which the apices are "closed" are from two and a half years to three years after the eruption (except the canine teeth which are nearly complete at eruption)

**Permanent Teeth.** The permanent teeth come in as follows

First molars at six years of age

Incisors at seven to eight years

Bicuspsids at nine to ten years

Canines at 12 to 14 years

Second molars at 12 to 15 years

Third molars ("wisdom teeth"), 17 to 25 years

Rickets, cretinism, severe anemia and hereditary syphilis usually *delay dentition*

**Irregular Dentition** The upper teeth may erupt before the lower in cretinism, rickets and malnutrition

**Inspection of the Teeth** It is imperative that every general physical examination should include a careful inspection of the teeth. It is now universally recognized that a host of ailments, formerly attributed to a wide variety of causes, owe their origin to some focal infection in the mouth, most commonly an alveolar or periapical abscess

This writer sounds a note of warning against the present tendency to over-emphasize the importance of oral sepsis to the exclusion of everything else. The general examination should include a careful survey of the condition of the teeth, their general appearance as to health and cleanliness, whether they are decayed or loose, and if they present any noticeable abnormalities. It is also important to observe whether the patient is wearing any kind of artificial denture

Complete examination of the teeth cannot be made without resorting to

radiography and this aid should always be called in if the examiner has any reason to suspect the presence of infective foci

#### Decay and Malformation Caries

Decay and loosening of the teeth is usually found in badly nourished and

early life while *pitted teeth* may be the result of severe stomatitis during childhood Both conditions result from hypoplasia of the enamel

**Hutchinson's Teeth** This is a designation applied to the notched and narrow edged permanent incisors often



Fig 34—Hutchinson's teeth

feeble children and in adults who do not carry out proper hygiene of the mouth likewise in the presence of diabetes rickets scurvy pyorrhea alveolaris chronic phosphorus poisoning and mercurial stomatitis

**Furrows** In an adult these may usually be attributed to severe illness in

characteristic of congenital syphilis the tooth is short and narrow smaller at the cutting edge than at the root there is usually a single narrow and discolored notch at the cutting edge. The teeth are as a rule irregular and set wide apart While Hutchinson's teeth are regarded as indicative of congenital

syphils, they are not invariably of such origin

**Sordes (filth)** This is the collection of dark brown foul matter upon the teeth which is sometimes seen in conditions of prostration, or in pneumonia, typhoid fever, and whenever the typhoid state is present. It consists of a mixture of food, epithelial matter and micro organisms

### The Tongue

The tongue is to be studied not only for local disease, but also for signs of systemic affections

**Size: Macroglossia** (large tongue) This is usually congenital, though it may occur later in life as a result of inflammation of the lymphatics, glossitis, Ludwig's angina, actinomycosis, acromegaly, or myxedema. Localized swelling of the tongue may be caused by such tumors as gumma or carcinoma by cysts, fibroma, by foot and mouth disease, and by local trauma

**Microglossia** (small tongue) This may occur because the tongue has become somewhat atrophied as a result of severe hemorrhage. It is seen also in an advanced state of emaciation, in anemia, or in convalescence from typhoid fever. Disease of the hypoglossal nerve, bulbar palsy and cerebral syphilis may cause a slight atrophy of the tongue. Local diminution in size may result from a gumma or the extensive scar formation following a deep ulcer or other injury

**Tongue Lesions Scars.** These have a diagnostic significance because they may occur as a result of injury, such as accidental biting of the tongue, or biting during an epileptic seizure, restless sleep, careless mastication, or from a blow upon the chin while the tongue was protruded

Bulbar palsy sometimes causes ulceration of the tongue which results in the formation of scars

**Fissures** These are at times found in perfectly healthy individuals, the cause of this phenomenon is obscure, and occasionally it may be due to vitamin B deficiency, it does not in any way interfere with function. Very deep and inflamed fissures may be due to



Fig. 35—Simple ulcer of the tongue

dissecting glossitis, a frequent result of syphilitic infection, and to leukoplakia. A fissured tongue may be caused by a broken tooth, and it may result from chronic dysentery, diabetes mellitus and chronic hepatic disease

**Tumors.** These may be benign or malignant (SEE Fig 37, p 195)

**Benign tumors** are fibroma, neurofibroma, lipoma, fibrolipoma, keloid, cysts, lingual thyroid, angiomas and papilloma. These are usually free from pain, do not cause metastasis and do not ulcerate. The lymphatics at the angles of jaw and of the neck are not affected

**Malignant tumors** are carcinoma and sarcoma. They usually ulcerate, cause severe pain and give rise to metastasis and enlargement of the nearby lymph glands

**Ulcers:** These may result from syphilis, tuberculosis, or stomatitis, the last

by purple, dark brown, and black deposits

*Strauberry* or *mulberry tongue* is pathognomonic of scarlet fever, being so called because of the peculiar redness of the tongue and its raised papillae

*Glossophytia*, *black tongue* is a condition in which the tongue has a black coat upon the dorsum which is due to



Fig 37—Tumor of the tongue

the presence of microphytes. It may also be due to vitamin B<sub>2</sub> deficiency. *Black tongue* in the dog is analogous to *pellagra* in the human. The tongue may be stained brown by the use of chocolate, licorice, tobacco, laudanum or rhubarb, while iron, bismuth and charcoal cause a black stain upon it.

Staining and superficial necrosis of the tongue may be due to the ingestion of corrosive substances, hydrochloric, sulphuric and nitric acids will stain it yellow, it will be turned white by the action of ammonia, corrosive sublimate, carbolic, and oxalic acids, caustic alkalies, fruits and wine will cause it to turn red.

There are a number of conditions in which the tongue assumes a shape, discoloration, and dryness sufficiently defi-

nite to have diagnostic importance. Among such are the thin white furring of the tongue (often noted in perfect health especially in smokers and mouth breathers) characteristic of nasopharyngeal catarrh, caries of the teeth, mild gastric catarrh, and mild febrile conditions. A flabby, swollen, indented tongue, uniformly covered with a yellow pasty 'fur,' particularly on arising in the morning, is often seen in those who smoke much, or use alcohol freely. It is also found in patients suffering from gastritis and nephritis, and in long continued fevers in which the temperature does not rise very high. A tongue that appears narrow, the center covered with a thick rough fur, the median fissure deepened and the tip and edges red and denuded, is characteristic of the typhoid state and is usually seen in typhoid fever. A dry, brown fissured tongue which is protruded slowly and tremulously, and not withdrawn until the patient is told to do so, is often met with in those who are critically ill, a desquamating tongue, protruded and withdrawn in the same manner, indicates a similar condition. A dry red ('beefy') tongue is seen in low fevers associated with severe toxemia, dysentery, hepatic abscess and chronic intestinal catarrh, when the tongue becomes moist and the coating gradually disappears it is an indication that the patient is recovering. A tongue which is gray and flabby with red irregular spots so that it has a worm eaten leafy appearance, is often seen in disease of the buccal mucosa occurring in children. Unilateral furring of the tongue is often the result of irritation of the second or third division of the trigeminal nerve, it is also noted in unilateral paralysis of the tongue. Localized small furring may be caused by a roughened tooth, by local

inflammation, or by an inflamed tonsil. A grayish coating of the tongue in adults, or a white coating in children may be due to thrush, in which case other parts of the buccal mucosa will be similarly affected. A small, pale, smooth tongue is characteristic of pernicious anemia.

**Manner of Protrusion.** Very sick patients will protrude the tongue slowly and incompletely, it will be put out with hesitation and not immediately withdrawn unless the patient is told to do so. This is especially noted in advanced cases of typhoid fever, or any condition presenting the typhoid state, and in general toxemia, the tongue will be tremulous in the early stages of typhoid and in meningitis, in chorea, it is thrust out with a sudden peculiar jerk, and immediately withdrawn.

**General tremor** of the tongue is noted in alcoholism, asthenia, Graves' disorder, and in bulbar palsy, in the last mentioned it is accompanied by fibrillary twitchings. Deviation of the tongue toward the paralyzed side may occur in hemiplegia when the face is affected. When the tongue deviates toward the sound side, it indicates a lesion in the medulla.

**Spasm of the tongue** occurs in stuttering, also in multiple sclerosis, general paresis and melancholia.

**Impediment in the power of protrusion** of the tongue frequently occurs in paresis, diphtheritic palsy, progressive muscular atrophy and some forms of hemiplegia. The tongue cannot be protruded by patients who have spasms of the muscles of mastication, general convulsions, tetanus ("lockjaw"), or any painful condition of the muscles which prevents the mouth from being opened, such as trismus neonatorum, strychnine poisoning and at times, hysteria and epi-

lepsy. Inability to protrude the tongue may also be the result of irritating lesions in the region of the fifth nerve, or of chronic spasms of the muscles of the jaw, when the teeth are "chattering" from cold or mental excitement, or during a chill. This condition occasionally occurs also as the result of some irritation of the teeth and jaw.

**Taste.** There are four primary taste sensations perceived by the tongue. Sweet, bitter, sour and salt, a combination of any two or more of these primary taste sensations may be recognized. Complete loss of the sense of taste may result from bilateral disease of the chorda tympani nerve and from disease of the gustatory fibers of the glossopharyngeal nerves. Partial loss of taste may result from disease of the gustatory fibers or of the chorda tympani on one side.

**Technic for Testing Taste Sensations.** Small quantities of quinine solution, vinegar or hydrochloric acid solution, syrup and sodium chloride may be placed in succession upon the protruded tongue, the patient being asked to point to one of four cards with the proper answer, 'sweet, sour, bitter, salt' etc.

**Gustatory Agnosia:** Loss or impairment of the sensation of taste may be due to an unhealthy condition of the lingual mucous membrane, involving the "taste buds," the end organs of the gustatory nerve fibers. Agnosia may be present when the tongue is heavily coated, or when it has been in contact with some irritating substance. Agnosia is often an associated symptom of acute coryza. Aside from the conditions already named, the loss of taste sensation often occurs in basal meningitis, when tumors are present, or when an injury to the head has taken place. The sensation of taste is usually lessened when the tongue is dry.



**Parageusia:** Perversion of the sense of taste may result from the administration of such drugs as potassium iodide, the bromides, or tartar emetic. "Bad taste" is usually one of the complaints in gastro-duodenal catarrh, jaundice, and other conditions which produce a "furred" tongue. Perversion of the taste sensation is present in certain functional nerve derangements, such as hysteria or the hallucinations of the insane.

**Lingual Pain:** This is found in the presence of local lesions of the tongue in glossitis, fissures, malignancy and in pernicious anemia, also in macrocytic and microcytic anemia, in sprue, pellagra and vitamin B deficiency.

### *The Palate*

The palate should be examined to ascertain its color, and the presence or absence of rashes, inflammation or paralysis. A rash is often visible upon the palate in measles, giving an appearance of minute circumscribed vesicles (Koplik spots, also seen on the cheek). Mucous patches are seen as a manifestation of secondary syphilis and vesicles arranged in circles upon the soft palate and the pharyngeal wall which are painful, are an indication of herpes of the throat.

**Swelling of the Uvula:** This is often noticed in inflammatory conditions of the pharynx and tonsil. The uvula may also become edematous in nephritis, in severe anemia, in angioneurotic edema or in grave cases of general debility. Membranous exudate upon the uvula extending to the palate is usually caused by diphtheria and Vincent's angina. Bloody extravasation of the uvula is noted in purpura hemorrhagica and certain other cases of hemorrhagic diathesis.

**Paralysis of the Soft Palate:** This may result from diphtheria, neuritis, bul-

bar paralysis, tumor at the base of the brain, basal meningitis and vertebral caries.

**Anesthesia of Soft or Hard Palate:** This may result from disease which involves the second division of the fifth nerve.

### *The Tonsils*

A careful inspection of the tonsils is an essential part of every physical examination. It should be noted carefully whether they are hypertrophied or inflamed or covered by any exudate. The condition of the crypts should also be scrutinized. Enlarged and inflamed tonsils may be due to an acute inflammation, such as follicular tonsillitis in influenza, pharyngitis, scarlet fever, diphtheria, acute mononucleosis, agranulocytic angina and other infections.

**Hypertrophy of the Tonsils:** This usually becomes chronic in early childhood. The examiner should bear in mind the fact that a focus of infection may be hidden in the tonsil, even when to all appearances upon a superficial examination the tonsil seems healthy. As in the case of the teeth, an infectious focus in this location may be the cause of constitutional disturbances in a remote part of the body, a possibility which must always be considered.

**Exudates:** A whitish gray punctate exudate which occupies the crypts or the surface of the tonsil may be due to follicular tonsillitis, a gray and confluent exudate spreading to the pillars, the fauces, the soft palate and other neighboring structures is probably caused by diphtheritic infection. Such a membrane may be removed, but it will leave a bleeding surface. Deep circular ulcers which present a gray surface while the remaining portions of the ton-

sil appear normal result from *sypilitic infection*. In *tuberculosis of the larynx* or *pharynx* irregular grayish ulcers will often be visible upon the tonsils the exudate frequently having the appearance of frog's spawn. In an elderly person deep spreading ulcers upon an enlarged tonsil which give off an offensive exudate should arouse a suspicion of *malignancy*. A heavy grayish exudate upon the tonsils alone or also upon the gums may be caused by *Vincent's angina*. A healing throat after tonsillectomy causes a thick grayish exudate.

### The Pharynx

The pharynx is examined as to inflammatory conditions exudates and ulcers.

**Redness** This may be caused by acute pharyngitis often seen in nasopharyngeal catarrh influenza tonsillitis scarlet fever Vincent's angina diphtheria and the early stage of measles. It may also be caused by irritations produced by food that is too hot or too cold.

**Ulcerations** These may be caused by syphilis tuberculosis diphtheria cancer and lupus. Small ulcers may also result from chronic pharyngitis and similar ulcers are sometimes found in the terminal stages of typhoid fever. Bulging forward of the posterior pharyngeal wall indicates the existence of a retropharyngeal abscess or an abscess due to caries of the cervical vertebrae.

**Anesthesia** This takes place when conditions exist which affect the glossopharyngeal or pneumogastric nerves. It is also seen in diphtheria bulbar paralysis and neuritis. *Glofus hystericus* imaginary lump in the throat is frequently witnessed in hysteria and is said to be due to a functional disturbance of

the ninth nerve. Acute gastritis and esophagismus will often cause patients to complain of the sensation of a lump in the throat.

**Spasm** This is usually a functional disorder. It may be present in hydrophobia, tetanus or strychnine poisoning. It is also found in neurotic and hysterical individuals.

**Paralysis** This is caused by a lesion which involves the ninth and tenth cranial nerves. It may also be seen in bulbar paralysis Landry's palsy (acute ascending spinal paralysis) basal meningitis cranial tumors or aneurysm and sometimes in neuritis.

**Dysphagia** (pain or difficulty in swallowing). This may be caused by disease of the tongue swelling of the tonsils disease affecting the muscles of the neck and by any inflammatory condition of the mouth tongue pharynx or larynx due to ulcers or other reaction to irritation. Dysphagia may also be caused by ulceration stricture, or by the presence of a tumor of the esophagus which constricts the lumen or by an aneurysm.

### The Breath

The odor of the breath will vary according to the kind of food or drug which may have been ingested. Such odors as those of orange pineapple onions or garlic are familiar examples of foods which impart a distinctive odor to the breath. An odor like that of peach kernels is imparted to the breath by hydrocyanic acid, a garlicky odor by overdoses of arsenic. Opium ether chloroform and alcohol have each their characteristic odor which needs no description. An unpleasant foul odor of the breath is often caused by stomatitis caries of the teeth necrosis of the jaw

tonsillitis, diphtheria, abscess and gangrene of the lung, and by fetid bronchitis, bronchiectasis and pyothorax. Various forms of gastrointestinal disturbances associated with indigestion will impart an unpleasant odor to the breath. A 'strong odor' on the breath may also be due to pharyngolaryngeal catarrh or may be caused by various disturbances in the nose or its communicating sinuses.

A *urinous odor* of the breath is indicative of uremia while a *sweetish odor* similar to that of overripe apples is often found in diabetes mellitus particularly during the comatose stage. An odor like that of the breath of *carnivorous* animals is often noted in those who are critically ill and who are suffering from marked acidosis or alkalosis.

### The Neck

The neck is examined by inspection, palpation and at times also by auscultation.

**Inspection.** The color of the skin, visible glands, visible pulsations and enlargements are thus studied.

**Palpation.** The glands are studied as to their mobility, consistency and size. Pulsations are studied as to their origin, whether arterial or venous.

**Technic for Palpating Glands of the Neck.** For the posterior cervical chain of glands the patient's head is slightly bent forward and the examiner runs the fingers of both hands along the trapezius and occipitofrontalis muscles. The anterior chain of glands are studied in a similar manner preferably with one hand the thumb being on one side of the neck and the index and middle fingers on the other. The patient's chin is tilted upward while the examiner's hand is slid up and down along the

side of the neck. In order to determine the position of the trachea, the thumb is placed between the anterior belly of the sternocleidomastoid muscle immediately above the suprasternal notch. The amount of space on one side of the trachea as palpated with the thumb is compared with the space on the opposite

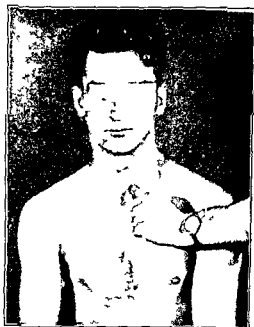


Fig. 38—Palpating trachea to note its position and proximity to the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

side. A narrowing indicates deviation of the trachea toward that side (for technic for the detection of arterial and venous pulsations, SEE p. 524).

**Two Methods of Palpating the Thyroid Gland.** (1) The index finger and thumb of one hand or the index fingers of both hands gently grasp the anterior portion of the neck near the anterior bellies of the sternocleidomastoid muscles immediately above the clavicles, if any mass is felt the patient is asked to swallow. The thyroid gland when enlarged may be felt moving up and down during deglutition.

2 The patient tilts the chin upwards the examiner gently presses the index and middle fingers of his hand against the lateral aspect of the trachea thus pushing it aside and the thumb of the same hand palpates for the thyroid gland during the act of deglutition

A substernal thyroid may be outlined only by percussion and the x rays

**Tracheal Tugging** This may be elicited by having the patient sit up right head somewhat lowered The examiner stands behind the patient and hooks the first phalanx of each index finger above the suprasternal notch thus supporting the cricoid cartilage A steady rhythmical pull or tug synchronous with the heartbeat when felt by the palpating fingers indicates a tracheal tug The sign is often present in aneurysm of the aortic arch

Tracheal tugging may at times be found in simple nonaneurysmal dilatation of the aorta in mediastinal tumors adhering to both the trachea and aortic arch and in other inflammatory conditions of the mediastinum involving the aortic arch

The neck muscles are studied as to rigidity and tenderness Touching or feeling the muscles will usually elicit tenderness when present Rigidity of the neck muscles is determined by grasping the prominent muscles between the thumb and fingers and noting their degree of elasticity Rigidity of the neck as a whole is determined by the examiner slipping his hand under the occiput and an attempt is made to raise the head off the pillow In the presence of rigidity instead of the head flexing the entire body is lifted

**Auscultation** This is employed for the determination of a venous hum or a murmur

The neck is also studied as to its mobility the condition of its glands the presence of existing pulsations in excess of those normally present and for the presence of tender areas and rashes

If the neck is more freely movable than normal it indicates that a fracture of some of the cervical vertebrae has occurred or a complete relaxation of the muscles from loss of nerve control has taken place Any disease of the neck which affects its mobility is apt to take the form of rigidity which may be slight or marked

**Rigidity of the Neck** This may be caused by disease of the cervical vertebrae by spasms of the cervical muscles inflammatory conditions of the throat inflamed cervical glands furuncles or carbuncles meningitis tetanus and strychnine poisoning *Torticollis* wry neck may be congenital or acquired as a result of scars cervical rib disease of the cervical vertebrae adenitis tonsillitis rheumatism retropharyngeal abscess enlarged cervical glands injury to the sternocleidomastoid muscle and cerebellar tumor

### The Glands

Normally the *thyroid gland* is barely visible pathologically it may be enlarged either slightly or to a marked degree Moderate enlargement if not due to Graves disease does not give rise to any symptoms and may often be observed in adolescent girls at the time of puberty sometimes also after childbirth or during the menopause.

*Cystic goiter* is the usual cause of a greatly enlarged thyroid. The gland may be greatly hypertrophied yet give rise to no other symptoms than those of pressure.

*Parenchymatous goiter* causes enlargement with few symptoms

*Exophthalmic goiter* (Graves' disease) is a disease in which the thyroid gland may become enlarged and present a definite group of symptoms (syndrome) including exophthalmos tachy-



Fig 39—Hodgkin's disease.

cardia, tremor and at times mental disturbances. The eye signs are discussed on pp 182 and 779

An abnormal enlargement of the thyroid which pulsates is due to vascular changes (*struma vasculosa*). This at times has to be differentiated from dilated aorta or aortic aneurysm occupying the suprasternal notch (SEE p 531)

*Atrophied thyroid* is recognized by a peculiar depression in the location of the gland, a condition found in myxedema and cretinism

*Glandular hypertrophy* occurs in various suppurative diseases especially in childhood. For diagnostic purposes the glands should be studied as to their position, size and consistency: *i. e.* hard or fluctuating. It should also be noted whether the swelling is of an acute or chronic type

At the angle of the jaw, behind the ramus the glands in the upper part of the neck will often become acutely swollen in diphtheria, tonsillitis, scarlet fever, German measles and other exanthemata, also in erysipelas, glanders or retropharyngeal abscess and occasionally in caries of the teeth

*Chronic enlargement of the cervical glands* may be found in the following diseases. In *tuberculosis* the glands are large, matted and show a tendency to suppuration. In *syphilis* they are bilaterally affected, small and hard and do not suppurate. In *Hodgkin's disease* the glands are large, isolated and nonsuppurating and are associated with glandular hypertrophy in other parts of the



Fig 40—Benign submaxillary tumor

body. In *lymphatic leukemia* the cervical glands may be greatly enlarged; they are soft, freely movable under the skin, not tender to touch and do not suppurate. The overlying skin is not inflamed. In this disease nearly all the superficial

lymph nodes become enlarged. In *lymphosarcoma* the cervical glands grow rapidly and form large masses. They are not freely movable underneath the skin, are often tender to the touch and have a tendency to infiltrate the adjacent structures. In *status lymphaticus*



Fig. 41—Branchial cyst

the cervical and axillary glands are palpable, they seldom become very large. This condition is found in childhood and is accompanied by the general classical appearance of the child, i. e. fat flabby child, large tonsils, enlarged thymus gland and hypoplasia of the heart and blood vessels.

*Mumps* (specific parotitis) presents in acute swelling which appears just in front and immediately behind the ear. The cervical lymph nodes are sometimes enlarged as a result of an inflammatory condition of the pharynx and of the skin of the face.

In *gumma* the swelling is at first hard, the overlying skin becomes red, later the mass softens and breaks down, forming a punched out ulcer.

The *posterior cervical glands*, particularly those lying under the upper extremities of the trapezius and occipitofrontalis muscles, often become enlarged as a result of eczema of the scalp, pediculosis capitis, or of syphilis.

The group of *superficial cervical glands* above the clavicle is often hypertrophied as a result of cutaneous disease upon the face, neck, or external ear.

The *glands of the submaxillary group* may be enlarged because of caries of the teeth, stomatitis, tonsillitis, mumps, syph-



Fig. 42—Actinomycosis.

ilis, and cancer of the tongue or lower lip.

Enlargement of the glands immediately above the left clavicle is often found in malignancy of the abdominal

viscera, above the right clavicle in intrathoracic malignancy.

Among the other causes for glandular enlargement, the following should be borne in mind:

*Carbuncle* usually occupies the back of the neck, causing inflammation and



Fig. 43—Diffuse lipoma of the neck

induration which eventually undergoes necrosis

In *cellulitis* the skin is swollen, red and hardened.

*Ludwig's angina* causes swelling and induration affecting the undersurface of the chin.

*Superficial abscess* is characterized by a fluctuating mass localized to one side or posteriorly.

*Cysts*, thyroglossal and branchial, are hard and painless. They are formed either on the midline or near the left sternocleidomastoid muscle, and contain mucus or dermoid material

*Actinomycosis* usually involves the upper part of neck and lower jaw; often

starts as a lumpy swelling in the region of the parotid and submaxillary glands. The skin involved is red, elevated and covered with small nodules which eventually break down.

*Anthrax* (malignant pustule) occurs upon the back of the neck, face and hands. The pustule breaks early and forms a large, indurated, painful, black or purplish mass with a central depression. The surrounding skin becomes edematous

*Mikulicz's disease* causes a brawny, noninflammatory swelling of the parotid, submaxillary, sublingual and lacrimal glands. It is usually symmetrical

*Submaxillary sialadenitis* may affect one or both submaxillary glands, usu-



Fig. 44—Aneurysm of neck

ally in children; it is moderately tender and painful; as a rule, it results from blocking of the salivary duct.

*Infectious mononucleosis* (glandular fever) has a sudden onset, moderate temperature, some laryngitis; the tonsils or

gums may be inflamed and often there is a mild papular or macular rash on the body. The superficial and often the deep lymph glands of the neck axilla groin or mesentery become enlarged. There is a moderate leukocytosis with a



Fig 45—Compressing a pulsating vessel in the neck in order to note if pulsations above or below point of compression and to observe if vessel fills from above or below.

great increase in the number of lymphocytes and a decrease in the number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes. The heterophile antibody test is positive in high dilutions.

**Lipoma** may be simple or diffuse may affect a portion of the neck or surround it collar fashion, it is painless and not tender to touch.

**Tularemia (Rabbit Fever)** In the oculoglandular type the regional lymph glands of the neck enlarge early.

**Aneurysms** of the innominate or subclavian arteries are recognized by their expansile pulsation thrill and bruit.

### *Pulsations of the Neck*

These may be either arterial or venous. Arterial pulsations are usually found in aortic regurgitation arteriosclerosis, aneurysm of the ascending aorta, exophthalmic goiter and extreme emaciation, they are also often noted after violent exercise.

Venous pulsations may be caused by tricuspid regurgitation, cardiac decompensation, Stokes Adams syndrome, auricular fibrillation, patent foramen ovale with mitral regurgitation and anemia. Pulsations in the episternal notch may be due to aneurysm of the aorta, exophthalmic goiter, anemia and may occur often in the aged when great emaciation has taken place.



Fig 46—Pellagra.

**Method of Differentiating Arterial from Venous Pulsation** A pulsating artery is not as easily compressed as a pulsating vein. When a pulsating vessel in the neck is compressed (with



one finger) midway between the angle of the jaw and the clavicle, and pulsation is noted below the point of compression and none above it, it is an indication of arterial pulsation. But if fullness and pulsation is noted above the point of compression and none below it, it is an indication of venous pulsation, because

superior vena cava by mediastinal tumor, aneurysm, chronic adhesive pericarditis, enlarged bronchial glands, large pericardial effusion and retropharyngeal abscess, one or both jugulars may become distended. In bronchial asthma, in chronic emphysema and in pertussis during a severe paroxysm of coughing, be-



Fig 47—Tuberculosis cutis

the veins fill from above downward while the arteries fill from below upward.

**Engorgement of the Jugular Veins.** The jugular veins are normally more prominent during expiration than during inspiration. Pathologically they may become prominent during cardiac decompensation, presenting a positive venous pulse. In obstruction of the

cause of strain upon the pulmonary circulation, right sided cardiac dilatation and venous engorgement often result.

#### ***Tenderness of the Neck.***

Tenderness of the neck is usually present when the neck muscles are inflamed, either because of muscle injury or reflexly as a result of inflamed glands,

bone injury, cerebral disease or some form of inflammatory skin disease

Localized tenderness of the neck is found in acute tonsillitis, diphtheria and German measles (over the lymph glands and at the angles of the jaw), in peritonsillar abscess and after tonsillectomy (over the lateral muscles of the neck), in Pott's disease dislocation or fracture of a vertebra (over the affected spine), in diaphragmatic pleurisy and at times in pericarditis (along the trapezius muscles), in aneurysm of the aortic arch (over the left sternocleidomastoid muscle) The presence of a cervical rib may at times be demonstrated by eliciting

ing pain on pressure over the inner part of the clavicle, the pain usually radiating down the arm

### *Rashes Upon the Neck*

The neck, like any other portion of the body, may be the seat of such skin eruptions as eczema, psoriasis, acne vulgaris, tinea versicolor, tinea circinata, erythema multiforme the various syphiloderms etc In addition to those mentioned several rashes have a predilection for the skin of the nape of the neck among these are boils carbuncles venereal eloid, scrofuloderma neurodermite and lichenification

## SECTION 6

# The Thorax and Respiratory System



## CHAPTER IX

### Topographic and Regional Anatomy of the Thorax

The thorax or chest is a bony case, covered externally by muscles fat and skin, and lined internally by pleura. The upper boundary is formed by the clavicles, and the lower boundary by the twelfth ribs. The dividing line between the thoracic cavity and the abdomen is the diaphragm, a musculomembranous partition, the insertion of which corresponds to the following levels: *Anteriorly* the sixth rib, *laterally*, the eighth rib, and *posteriorly*, the tenth rib. All the organs within the confines of the ribs, if above the diaphragm, *i. e.*, the lungs, heart, etc., are considered as being *intrathoracic*, while those below the diaphragm, though partially *costal i. e.*, the liver, spleen, kidneys and a portion of the stomach are considered *intraabdominal*.

Devoid of its fleshy covering the thorax is conical in shape. It is customary to describe it as possessing an anterior a posterior and two lateral aspects, an anteroposterior diameter—which gives it its depth—and a transverse diameter—which imparts breadth. The anteroposterior diameter of a normal thorax is usually three fourths of its transverse. The thorax is practically formed by the ribs, these bones being united posteriorly in the median line to the spinal column. The seven upper ribs are reinforced posteriorly by the scapulae, while anteriorly, they are joined by their costal cartilages to the sternum, which permits an up and down movement of the ribs with the extension of the sternum. This upward movement of the ribs and extension of the sternum causes *chest expansion*.

In order to facilitate the study of the thoracic cavity contents, we utilize certain anatomical landmarks situated on the anterior and posterior aspects of the chest wall and lay down arbitrary lines having a fixed anatomic starting point.

#### Anatomic Landmarks and Rib Counting

The important anatomic landmarks of the chest are the ribs, the clavicles, the sternum, the mammary glands and nipples, the scapulae, and the spinal column.

#### The Ribs

The ribs are the most important of the bony landmarks utilized for studying the lungs, heart and other thoracic organs, it is, therefore, very important to be able to localize the various ribs when a physical examination of the chest is made.

**First Ribs** Each first rib is covered by its respective clavicle, the space immediately below is the first intercostal space. *Each intercostal space is, therefore, below its corresponding rib, the second intercostal space below the second rib, the third intercostal space below the third rib, and so on. The first, second, and third intercostal spaces are wider than the rest, all intercostal spaces are wider anteriorly than they are laterally, and are narrowest posteriorly.*

**Second Ribs** The second ribs are the easiest to locate. They correspond anteriorly to a horizontal ridge of bone known as the *angle of Louis* or *Louis' angle*, which is formed by the junction of the manubrium and the gladiolus. It

is also the landmark for the bifurcation of the trachea. The pulmonary artery bifurcates near the left second rib, at its sternal end, the beginning of the aortic arch is near the second rib at its sternal end, the upper border of the scapula corresponds posteriorly to the second rib.

**Third Ribs** Posteriorly, the spines of the scapulae are on a level with the third ribs.

**Fourth Ribs** In lean males or young girls the nipples are on a level with the fourth ribs.

**Fifth Ribs** The fifth ribs correspond to the lower external border of each pectoralis major muscle.

**Sixth Ribs** When the arms are raised in a horizontal line, the sixth ribs correspond to the highest visible digitation of the serratus magnus. A horizontal line drawn through the nipple will be on a plane with the sixth rib or the sixth intercostal space in the mid axillary line.

**Seventh Ribs** Anteriorly, the seventh ribs are on a level with the sternal xiphoid articulation, laterally, they correspond to the second lowest digitation of the serratus magnus muscle. Posteriorly, the lower angles of the scapulae rest on the seventh ribs, when the arms are held in the normal anatomical position, and on the eighth ribs when the arms are held perpendicular to the chest.

**Eighth Ribs** The last visible digitation of the serratus magnus lies over the eighth ribs.

**Ninth Ribs** A line encircling the body on a level with the first lumbar vertebrae will meet the ninth ribs in the midclavicular line.

**Tenth Ribs** The tenth ribs are the last of the fixed ribs and can, as a rule, be felt at the midclavicular line.

**Eleventh and Twelfth Ribs** The eleventh and twelfth ribs are the 'floating ribs' and can be readily palpated in most lean individuals.

Though each rib has a distinct landmark of its own the most accurate way of counting ribs is by locating *Louis angle*, which is formed by the junction of the manubrium and gladiolus and corresponds to the level of the second ribs. From this point the other ribs are easily counted by allowing the index finger to palpate each rib and intercostal space successively. When counting, laterally and posteriorly the general course of the ribs must be borne in mind. Anteriorly, they run in a nearly horizontal course, laterally they slope upward while posteriorly they are almost oblique. This sloping position of the ribs causes them to be much lower at their sternal articulation than they are at the vertebral column. The chondrosternal articulation of the third ribs is on a level with the body of the sixth dorsal vertebra. Below this, to the seventh rib inclusive there is a difference of four ribs between the posterior and anterior articulations. Thus, a horizontal line encircling the body at a level with the fourth ribs anteriorly will fall upon the eighth ribs at their spinal articulation and so on. In other words adding the number four to the number of the rib in front (third to seventh inclusive) will give the number of the rib at the corresponding level near the spine.

### Clavicles

The collarbones, one on each side of the sternum occupy the uppermost position of the chest framework and act as a dividing line between the neck and the thorax. The subclavian artery passes under the clavicle near its sternal

articulation. The center of this bone is utilized as the starting point for the mid-clavicular line.

### Sternum

The sternum or breastbone divides the anterior aspect of the chest into a right and a left half. It articulates on either side with the cartilages of the seven upper ribs.

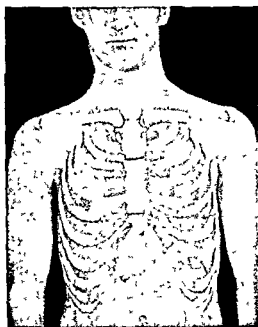


Fig. 1—The normal thorax, anatomical relations of clavicles, ribs, sternum, and nipples.

The *suprasternal notch* is the depression at the top of the sternum between the sternal ends of the clavicle; it is on a plane with the cartilaginous disk between the second and third dorsal vertebrae. At the junction of the manubrium and gladiolus—or about one and one-half inches below the suprasternal notch—a transversely projecting ridge can nearly always be felt which marks *Louis' angle* (*angulus Ludovici*).

*Louis' angle* has already been emphasized as a very important landmark

because it corresponds to the second ribs anteriorly, to the disk of the fourth dorsal vertebra posteriorly, to the bifurcation of the trachea; it also marks the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery and the beginning of the aortic arch; it is the point where the lungs approach the sternum on either side. The extreme upper part of the left auricular appendage of the heart reaches the level of the angle of Louis.

The *epigastric angle* is formed by the converging and coalescing cartilages of the right and left lower ribs, which join the sternum. Normally it approaches a right angle, becoming slightly obtuse during deep inspiration, and somewhat acute during expiration. The apex of the epigastric angle is on a level with the disk between the tenth and eleventh dorsal vertebrae.

The *sternorhoid articulation* forms the apex of the epigastric angle and, as pointed out before, corresponds to the seventh sternochondral articulation and the cartilaginous disk between the ninth and tenth dorsal vertebrae. A nipple-like projection, or a circular depression, or often both, mark this junction.

### Mammary Glands

The mammary glands are situated on either side of the sternum between the third and sixth ribs or intercostal spaces in males and young girls. The position of the breasts in the adult female varies considerably, depending upon the pendulous condition of these organs. The *mammilla* or nipple is located in the center of the mammary gland, and lies approximately over the fourth rib in the nonpendulous breast. A longitudinal line passing through the center of the clavicle often corresponds to the center of the nipples.

### Scapulae or Shoulder Blades

These are situated on either side of the spinal column. The superior border lies over the second rib posteriorly. The spine of the scapula is on a level with the third rib. It corresponds to the dividing line between the upper and lower

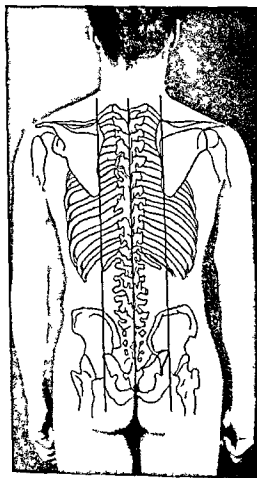


Fig 2—Relation of the scapulae to the ribs

lobes of the lung and marks the upper part of the *great lung fissure*. The inferior angle of this bone lies over the upper part of the seventh rib.

### Spinal Column

The spinal column is centrally situated on the posterior aspect of the chest

and abdomen. The dorsal vertebrae are easily recognized as lying between the seventh cervical and first lumbar vertebrae. The spine of the seventh cervical vertebra corresponds to the extreme apex of the lung. The first rib lies immediately below this spine. The dorsal spinous process may be utilized for rib counting. This is best accomplished by having the patient bend forward the convexity of the spine thus obtained causing the spinous processes to separate and stand out more prominently. These prominences may be still further emphasized by rubbing a towel up and down the spine which will cause a bright red spot to mark the tip of each process thus facilitating the counting which should begin from the vertebral prominence or the seventh cervical spine. Because of their downward projection the spinous processes correspond with the next numbered rib that is the third dorsal spine corresponds with the fourth rib the fourth spine with the fifth rib and so on excepting the first and the two last ribs which correspond with their respectively numbered vertebral spines.

The spinal vertebrae may be further utilized as landmarks for the following structures <sup>1</sup>

#### Cervical

*First* Level of hard palate.

*Second* Level of free edge of upper teeth

*Second and Third* Superior cervical ganglion of sympathetic

*Fourth* Hyoid bone

*Fifth* Middle cervical ganglion

*Sixth* Cricoid cartilage beginning trachea

<sup>1</sup> Modified from Morris.

**Seventh:** Inferior cervical ganglion  
—apex of lungs.

**Thoracic:**

**First:** Apices of lungs.

**Second:** Episternal notch (interarticular cartilage).

**Third:** Lowest limit of superior mediastinum. Origin of greater lung fissure.



Fig. 3—The spinous processes are indicated by dots which may be utilized for rib counting. The second or the heavier upper dot represents the seventh cervical spine. The curved lines indicate the lower angles of the scapulae. The lower horizontal line is a continuation of the iliac line and is utilized as a landmark for spinal puncture. It represents the intervertebral disk between the second and third lumbar vertebrae.

**Fourth:** Angle of Louis, bifurcation of trachea, bifurcation of pulmonary artery, beginning of aortic arch, root of the lungs.

**Fifth:** Termination of third piece of aortic arch; root of lungs.

**Fifth to Eighth:** The heart.

**Sixth:** Pulmonary and aortic valves.

**Seventh:** Mitral orifice.

**Eighth:** Tricuspid orifice.

**Ninth:** Lower level of manubrium; opening in diaphragm for inferior vena cava; upper limit of spleen.

**Tenth:** Opening in diaphragm for esophagus, level of tip of xiphoid cartilage; posterior lower limit of lung; liver comes to the surface posteriorly; cardiac orifice of stomach.

**Eleventh:** Lower border of spleen; suprarenal capsules.

**Twelfth:** Lowest part of pleura; aorta passes through diaphragm (upper border); celiac axis (lower border); pylorus, upper border of kidney.

**Lumbar:**

**First:** Pancreas, pelvis of kidney; renal arteries (ending).

**Second:** Spinal cord ends at junction of first and second; third section of duodenum; receptaculum chyli.

**Third:** Lower border of kidney; umbilicus on level with third interarticular cartilage.

**Fourth:** Bifurcation of abdominal aorta, highest part of iliac crest.

**Fifth:** Commencement of superior vena cava.

**Sacral: First and Second:** No important landmarks.

**Third:** End of first section of rectum; lower limit of spinal membranes; coccyx (tip); end of second section of rectum.

For spinal nerves and their distribution, see page 822.

### **Arbitrary Lines**

A number of horizontal and vertical lines may be drawn upon the surface of the thorax, so as to divide it into various regions or spaces. The object of this is to visualize the thoracic organs in their relation to one another and to facilitate localization and description of the pathologic lesions occurring in them.



### Horizontal Lines. Anterior Aspect:

I The *cricoclavicular line* is drawn from the acromial end of the clavicle upward and inward, following the upper border of the trapezius muscle. It crosses the neck in a horizontal line at the level of the cricoid cartilages, then descends along the border of the opposite trapezius muscle until it reaches the acromial end of the clavicle on that side.

II The *clavicular line* crosses the anterior chest wall at the level of the clavicles.

III The *third costal line* is drawn at the level of the lower border of the third ribs, running from one anterior axillary line to the other.

IV The *sixth costal line* is drawn at the level of the lower border of the sixth ribs and runs from one posterior axillary to the other, thus not only marking the inferior border of the mammary region but also acting as the dividing line between the superior and inferior axillary regions.

### Posterior Aspect

I The *scapular spinal lines* are horizontal lines drawn upon the posterior aspect of the chest at the level of the scapular spines (third dorsal vertebra). Each line has its starting point at the subscapular line, thence running outward.

**Vertical Lines.** On the *anterior aspect* of the chest seven vertical lines may be drawn, three on each side of the sternum, and one through its center.

The *lateral aspect* has three such lines on each side.

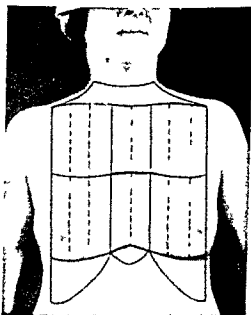


Fig 4—Arbitrary lines on the anterior aspect of the chest.

The *posterior aspect* has three vertical lines, one corresponding to the spine and one on each lateral half of the posterior aspect of the chest, passing through the lower angle of the scapula of that side.

### Anterior Aspect.

I The *mesosternal (midsternal) line* runs through the middle of the sternum.

II The *right and left sternal lines* correspond to the right and left margins of the sternum.

III The *midclavicular or submammary lines* (one on each lateral half of the chest, have for their starting point the center of the clavicle. Thus, one often corresponds to the center of the

apple, and terminates at the level of the sixth rib

IV The *two parasternal lines* each occupies a position midway between the right or left sternal and the midclavicular line on its respective side

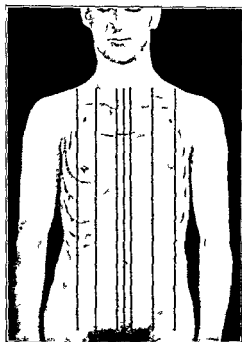


Fig 5—Vertical lines, anterior aspect of the chest.

### *Laterally on Each Side*

I The *anterior axillary line* is a line dropped downward from the point where the pectoralis major leaves the chest when the arm is held in a horizontal position (anterior axillary fold)

II The *midaxillary (mesoaxillary) line* is drawn from the middle of the axillary space or midway between the anterior axillary and the posterior axillary line

III The *posterior axillary line* runs through a point where the latissimus dorsi leaves the chest when the arm is in the horizontal position (posterior axillary fold)

### *Posteriorly*

I The *mesospinal line* runs vertically along the vertebral spine

II *Scapular lines*, each passes vertically through the inferior angle of its respective scapula

## **Regions of the Chest and Their Contents**

### *Interior Aspect*

The *anterior aspect* of the chest is divided into 13 regions: two supraclavicular, two clavicular, two infraclavicular, two mammary, two intermammary, one suprasternal, one superior sternal, and one inferior sternal

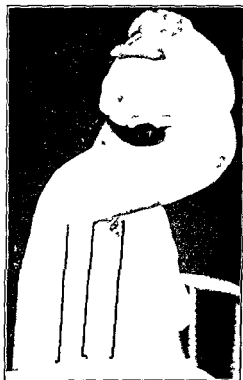


Fig 6—Vertical lines, lateral aspect of the chest.

### **The Supraclavicular Regions**

These are triangular spaces, each situated above its respective clavicle (right and left). Their boundaries are formed

**Anteriorly** By the sternomastoid muscle

**Posterolaterally** By the trapezius muscle (or cricoclavicular line)

**Inferiorly** By the upper edge of the clavicle

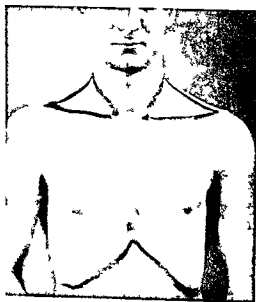


Fig. 7—Supraclavicular spaces and jugo-gastric angle.

The floor is formed by the first rib

**Contents** The same on both sides

- 1 Apex of the lung and its investing pleura
- 2 Subclavian artery
- 3 Carotid artery and vein
- 4 Termination of the external jugular vein
- 5 Lymph nodes

The apex of the left lung usually rises somewhat higher than that of the right

**The Clavicular Regions** These correspond to the width of the inner two-thirds of the clavicle

**Contents** Lung and pleura on both sides, and in addition

#### RIGHT SIDE

- 1 Distal end of the subclavian artery near the sternal articulation
- 2 Subclavian artery a little external to the above

#### LEFT SIDE

- 1 Carotid and subclavian arteries (deep)
- 2 Termination of thoracic duct

#### The Infraclavicular Regions

There is one on either side of the upper portion of the sternum. Their boundaries are formed

**Superiorly** By the undersurface of the clavicle (clavicular line)

**Inferiorly** By the lower border of the third rib (third costal line)

**Externally** By the anterior axillary line.

**Internally** By the right or left edge of sternum respectively (sternal lines)

#### Contents

##### RIGHT SIDE

- 1 Upper lobe of right lung and its pleura.
- 2 Right primary bronchus (behind second articulation)
- 3 Superior vena cava
- 4 Part of the aortic arch. The two latter are close to sternal border
- 5 Right pulmonary artery

##### LEFT SIDE

- 1 Upper lobe of the left lung and its pleura.
- 2 Left primary bronchus (below the second costal cartilage)
- 3 Left pulmonary artery (edge of sternum immediately below the second sternal costal articulation)
- 4 Left auricle (second interpace covered by lung)

**The Mammary Regions** There is one on each side of the sternum. They are bounded

**Superiorly** By the lower border of third rib (third costal line)

**Inferiorly** By the lower border of sixth rib (sixth costal line)

**Externally** By the anterior axillary line on each lateral half

**Internally** By right or left sternal lines respectively

## Contents:

### RIGHT SIDE

- 1 Lung (lower part of upper lobe the middle and a small portion of the lower lobes)
- 2 Pleura
- 3 Greater and lesser fissures of the right lung

- 4 Right auricle and ventricle extreme border of the left ventricle and cardiac apex (fifth intercostal space  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch to the right of midclavicular line) or  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches to the left of the midsternal line Pericardium
- 5 Diaphragm
- 6 Cardiac end of stomach

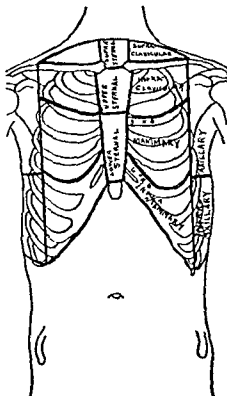


Fig 8—Regions of the anterior and lateral surfaces of the chest.

- 4 Right border of the heart (portions of the right auricle and ventricle covered by lung)
- 5 Diaphragm (during expiration it often rises as high as the fourth rib or intercostal space)
- 6 Dome of the liver (under the diaphragm)

### LEFT SIDE

- 1 Lung (part of upper lobe including the lingula at fourth rib—the quadrilateral space and a small portion of the base of the lower lobe)
- 2 Pleura.
- 3 Great fissure

**The Inframammary or Hypochondriac Regions.** These are conical in shape, with their bases upward and the apex pointing downward

The *superior boundary* is formed by the lower border of the sixth rib (sixth costal line)

*Inferior boundary* is formed by the lower border of the tenth rib

*External boundary* is formed by the anterior axillary line

*Internal boundary* is formed by the edges of the converging and coalescing ribs (costal arch)

## Contents

### RIGHT SIDE

- 1 Lowest portion of the middle and lower lobes of the lung (particularly during inspiration) and pleura (complementary sinus)
- 2 Diaphragm
- 3 Liver

### LEFT SIDE

- 1 Lowest portion of the base of the anterior and posterior lobes of the lung (during deep inspiration)
- 2 Diaphragm
- 3 Complementary sinus (pleura)
- 4 The tip of the left lobe of the liver
- 5 Cardiac end of the stomach
- 6 Spleen (particularly when enlarged)

**The Suprasternal Region** This is situated above the sternum and includes the suprasternal notch, it is bounded on either side by the sternomastoid muscle.

**Contents** Normally it contains chiefly the trachea, pathologically it may be encroached upon by dilatation of the

aorta or an aneurysm of the aortic arch, or by an enlarged thyroid gland

**The Superior Sternal Region** (upper sternal region) This has for its *upper boundary* the top of the sternum

*Lower boundary* is formed by a line corresponding with the lower boundary



Fig 9—Regions and contents of right lateral aspect of chest.

of the infraclavicular region (third rib, or third costal line)

*Lateral boundaries* are the right and left sternal lines

#### Contents

- 1 Bifurcation of the trachea (near upper border of second rib)
- 2 Both primary bronchi
- 3 Inner edges of right and left lungs and their pleura, below second rib.
- 4 Ascending and transverse arch of the aorta—in second intercostal space.
- 5 Innominate artery near second right costal cartilage
- 6 Esophagus.
- 7 Superior vena cava.
- 8 Left innominate vein.

- 9 Pulmonary artery and its valve.
- 10 Appendix of the right auricle.
- 11 Thymus gland (in children)
- 12 Lymph nodes

**The Inferior Sternal Region** (lower sternal region) This corresponds to the remainder of the sternum

#### Contents.

- 1 Inner edges of both lungs
- 2 Small portion of upper and inner cost of left lung (above fourth rib)
- 3 Base of right ventricle
- 4 Part of right auricle
- 5 Part of left ventricle with the origin of the aorta (behind)



Fig 10—Regions and contents of left lateral aspect of chest.

- 6 Lower portion (origin) of the pulmonary artery
- 7 Pulmonary aortic mitral and tricuspid valves
- 8 Inferior vena cava
- 9 Pericardial attachment of the diaphragm
- 10 Left lobe of the liver

### **Lateral Aspect**

The lateral aspect of the chest is formed above by the armpit, below by the margin of the false ribs and on either side by the anterior and posterior axillary lines. This surface is arbitrarily divided into two regions, viz. the axillary and infraaxillary regions.

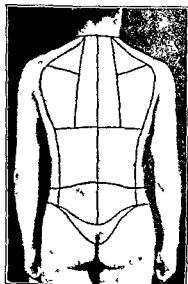


Fig. 11—Arbitrary lines in regions of posterior aspect of chest

**The Axillary Regions** (right and left) These are bounded

**Superiorly:** By the apex of the axilla

**Inferiorly:** By the sixth rib (sixth costal line)

**Laterally:** By the anterior and posterior axillary lines

**Contents:**

#### **RIGHT SIDE**

- 1 Upper, middle and inferior lobes of the right lung and its pleura.
2. Greater and lesser fissures of the lung
- 3 Bronchi and branches (deep)

#### **LEFT SIDE**

- 1 Upper and lower lobes of the left lung and its pleura
2. Primary fissure.
- 3 Bronchi and branches (deep)

**The Infraaxillary Regions** (right and left) These are bounded

**Superiorly:** By the sixth rib (sixth costal line).

**Inferiorly:** By the lower margins of the false ribs

**Laterally:** By the anterior and posterior axillary lines

**Contents:**

#### **RIGHT SIDE**

- 1 Lung and pleura (base at eighth rib)
- 2 Diaphragm (eighth rib)
- 3 Liver (right lobe)

#### **LEFT SIDE**

- 1 Lung and pleura (to eighth rib)
- 2 Diaphragm
- 3 Spleen (ninth to eleventh ribs)
- 4 Stomach (portion of cardiac end at the lower level of this region)

**Trube's Semilunar Space:** This is bounded

**Superiorly:** By the lower border of the left lung

**Inferiorly:** By the spleen

**Internally:** By the left lobe of liver

**Externally:** By the costal margins

**Contents.** Fundus of stomach and splenic flexure (when distended)

### **Posterior Aspect**

The posterior aspect of the chest may be conveniently divided into seven regions. They are a right and left suprascapular, right and left scapular, one interscapular, and a right and left infra-scapular. The spinal column acts as the dividing line between the right and left regions.

**The Suprascapular Regions:** These correspond to the supraspinous fossae and are triangular in shape. The boundaries are

**Superiorly and Externally:** By the trapezius muscle

**Inferiorly:** By the spine of the scapula

**Internally:** By the spinal column

**Contents** Same on both sides

- 1 Apex of the lung and pleura
- 2 The only portion of the upper lobe found posteriorly

**The Scapular Regions:** These correspond to the infraspinous fossae and are bounded

**Superiorly** By the spine of the scapula (third rib) (scapular spinal line)

**Inferiorly** By the inferior angle of the scapula (seventh rib)

**Posteriorly** By the vertebral border of the scapula

**Anteriorly** By the posterior axillary line

**Contents** Similar on both sides. They contain lung tissue and the greater fissure of the lung

**The Interscapular Region.** This is situated between the vertebral borders of the scapulae and the second to seventh ribs (the length of the scapulae)

**Contents**

- 1 Lung tissue hili of lungs
- 2 Trachea (in front of spinal column from sixth cervical to its bifurcation at the fourth dorsal vertebra into the primary bronchi)
- 3 Bronchial glands (clustered near the bifurcation of the trachea)
- 4 Descending aorta (to the left of the vertebral column)
- 5 Thoracic duct (to the left of the vertebral column)
- 6 Esophagus (to the left of the vertebral column)

**The Infra- or Subscapular Regions**

These are bounded

**Superiorly.** By a line uniting the inferior angles of the scapulae

**Inferiorly.** By the edge of the thorax (twelfth dorsal line)

**Internally.** By the midspinal line.

**Externally:** By the posterior axillary line

**Contents:**

#### RIGHT SIDE

- 1 Lung and pleura
- 2 Diaphragm
- 3 Liver
- 4 Kidney and adrenal gland.

#### LEFT SIDE

- 1 Lung and pleura (base at tenth rib)
- 2 Aorta.
- 3 Diaphragm
- 4 Kidney and adrenal gland
- 5 Intestines
- 6 Spleen
- 7 Thoracic duct

### The Lungs

The lungs are covered by the pleurae and are suspended by their respective roots hanging freely in the thoracic cavity. They occupy all of that space except the mediastinum and the quadrilateral free space. The apices rise three quarters to one and one quarter inches above the first rib, the anterior borders of the lungs follow an oblique course downward from the apex to the level of the second rib, where they meet the sternum. From this point they pass perpendicularly downward near the median line in apposition to one another to the level of the fourth rib. From this level the anterior border of each lung varies.

The *right lung* continues downward along the sternum and slightly outward to the sixth rib where it turns sharply to the right and becomes the lower anterior border.

The *left lung* recedes at the fourth rib in a somewhat downward course to a little beyond the parasternal line, then comes slightly forward to the fifth rib forming the 'lingula,' and finally curves

outward and downward to the sixth rib to become the lower border thus forming the *quadrilateral space* or notch which exposes the right ventricle of the heart

**Hilum** Each lung is attached to the inner wall of the thorax at the level of the fourth and fifth dorsal vertebrae

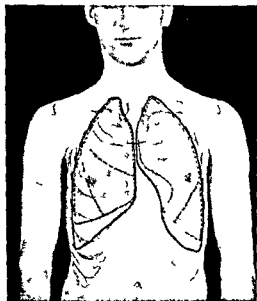


Fig. 12—Anatomic position of the lungs in relation to the ribs, sternum and pleura

This attachment is known as the *root of the lung* or *hilum* and is composed of a main bronchus, pulmonary vessels and lymphatics, held together by connective tissue and enveloped by the pleura. The lower boundaries of the lungs are

*Anteriorly*, the sixth rib (in the mid clavicular line)

*Laterally*, eighth rib (the midaxillary line)

*Posteriorly*, tenth rib (at the scapular line)

The variations of the number of rib or intercostal space of the lower lung limits are not only due to the lungs being lower posteriorly than they are laterally

or anteriorly, but also to the peculiar slant of the ribs. It will be remembered that anteriorly the sixth rib is on a level with the posterior portion of the tenth rib

While the general outline of both lungs is similar, there still exists sufficient dissimilarity in their structure to warrant differentiation

#### RIGHT LUNG

- 1 Apex extends  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an inch above the clavicle.
- 2 Has three lobes
- 3 Has two fissures
- 4 Shorter and thicker than the left
- 5 Weighs about 630 Gm (21 ounces) in the male and 540 Gm. (18 ounces) in the female.

#### LEFT LUNG

- 1 Apex extends 1 to  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches above the clavicle.
- 2 Has two lobes
- 3 Has one fissure
- 4 Longer and thinner than the right.
- 5 Weighs about 570 Gm (19 ounces) in the male and 480 Gm (16 ounces) in the female

The *weight* of the lungs varies with the amount of blood and serous fluid they contain. As a rule larger people have larger lungs. The lungs in the male weigh about  $\frac{1}{2}$  th of the body's weight while in the female they are  $\frac{1}{3}$ rd of body's weight

**The Quadrilateral Space** This is formed by the oblique and downward recession of the anterior edge of the left lung, from the fourth sternochondral articulation to the parasternal line, at the fifth rib it again turns toward the sternum thence slightly inward and downward to the sixth rib to form the lower border

**The Lobes of the Lungs** They may thus be outlined



**Anteriorly****RIGHT LUNG**

- 1 Upper lobe apex to fourth rib
- 2 Middle lobe fourth to sixth rib
- 3 Lower lobe fifth to sixth rib near the anterior axillary line

**LEFT LUNG**

- 1 Upper lobe apex to sixth rib
- 2 Lower lobe fifth to sixth rib near the anterior axillary line

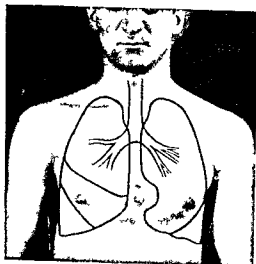


Fig 13—Fissures of the lungs and quadrilateral space

**Laterally (at midaxillary line)****RIGHT LUNG**

- 1 Upper lobe apex to fourth intercostal space
- 2 Middle lobe fourth to fifth intercostal space
- 3 Lower lobe fifth intercostal space to eighth rib

**LEFT LUNG**

- 1 Upper lobe apex to fourth intercostal space
- 2 Lower lobe fourth intercostal space to eighth rib

**Posteriorly****RIGHT LUNG**

- 1 Upper lobe, apex to third rib or fourth dorsal spine near spinal articulation (spine of scapula)
- 2 Lower lobe third to tenth rib

**LEFT LUNG**

- 1 Upper lobe apex to third rib or fourth dorsal spine near spinal articulation.
- 2 Lower lobe third rib to tenth intercostal space

It should be borne in mind that the relative position of lungs and ribs varies greatly with the act of respiration. During inspiration the lungs fill out so that the apex rises higher and the base descends at the same time the ribs become elevated. During expiration the bases of the lungs rise and the ribs descend. Therefore during inspiration—particularly when force is—the bases of the lungs may extend one or two rib levels lower while during forceful expiration the lung level may be one or two rib levels higher than when the lungs are in repose.

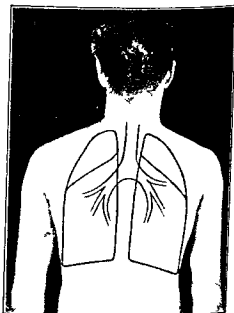


Fig 14—Fissures of the lungs.

**Fissures of the Lungs** The *left lung* is divided into an upper and lower lobe by one fissure called the *greater* or *primary fissure*. It commences at the vertebral border of the lung at the level of the third rib (spine of the scapula)

then passes obliquely downward and forward, reaching the midaxillary line at the seventh intercostal space and terminates with the lower border of the lung, at the sixth rib in the midclavicular line.

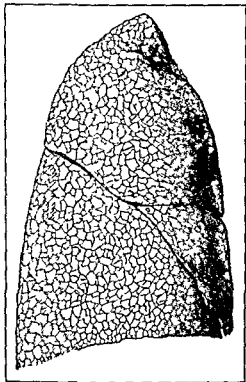


Fig 15—Right lung showing the greater fissure the lesser fissure and the upper middle and lower lobes

The *right lung* is divided into three lobes by two fissures the *greater* and *lesser* fissures. The *greater fissure* of the right lung runs a course similar to that of the left lung commencing and terminating at the same points: the third rib posteriorly, fourth intercostal space laterally and sixth rib anteriorly. It separates the upper and middle lobes from the lower.

The *lesser fissure* branches off from the *greater* at the level of the fourth rib near the outer border of the scapula. It

runs a nearly horizontal course forward terminating anteriorly a little below the fourth rib, thus dividing the anterior lobe of the right lung into an upper and middle lobe.

The lower surfaces of the lungs are concave conforming to the shape of the diaphragm which they cap. The diaphragm reaches to the level of the fourth rib on the right side and to the fifth rib on the left side, though the anterior border of both lungs reaches the sixth rib.

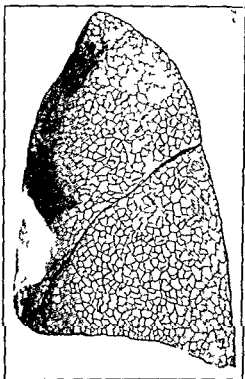


Fig 16—Left lung showing the greater fissure, and upper and lower lobes

### The Pleura

The *pleura* is a serous membrane which forms a sac for each lung and lines the thoracic cavity. The two layers of the pleura are spoken of as the *visceral* and the *parietal* layer. The *visceral pleura* closely invests the lungs

and dips into and lines the interlobar fissures. It fits the lung snugly at the upper part, but is very loose at the base and at the sternal and vertebral borders, to allow for forced lung expansion. The portions of the pleura not occupied by the lung during ordinary respiration are known as complemental sinuses or spaces. We find one such space at the base of each lung and also at the quadrilateral space.

The *parietal layer* or *costal pleura* extends from the roots of the lungs forward, covering the sides of the pericardium to the chest wall in front, and backward to the side of the vertebral column (mediastinal pleura); below, it covers the vault of the diaphragm (diaphragmatic pleura). Normally, the visceral and parietal layers of the pleura are in close apposition to each other, separated only by a small amount of secretion which acts as a lubricant, thus allowing free movement. In disease, the pleural surfaces may be separated by fluid or air, or they may become adherent.

### The Trachea and Bronchi

The *trachea* in its downward passage through the middle of the suprasternal region is deflected a little to the right of the median line by the aortic arch. It terminates at its bifurcation into a *right* and *left* bronchus at the level of the second ribs (angle of Louis) or fourth dorsal vertebra.

**The Bronchi.** The right bronchus differs perceptibly from the left, which to some extent accounts for the variation in the physical signs obtained from the right and left lungs.

#### RIGHT BRONCHUS

- 1 Larger caliber

- 2 Follows the direction of the lower part of the trachea. Enters the lung opposite the fifth dorsal vertebra
- 3 Shorter in length (one inch)
- 4 Lies under the second rib
- 5 Gives off its first branch behind the upper border of the third costal cartilage  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch from its bifurcation and before the primary has entered the lung tissue
- 6 Is in relation with the vena azygos superior vena cava and right pulmonary artery

#### LEFT BRONCHUS

- 1 Smaller caliber
- 2 Takes a nearly horizontal course and leaves trachea with a sharp change of direction. Enters the left lung opposite the sixth dorsal vertebra.
- 3 Longer than the right
- 4 Lies under the second interspace
- 5 Gives off its first branch twice as far from the bifurcation (one inch) and after it has entered the lung tissue. The arch of the aorta encircles the left bronchus at its origin.
- 6 Crosses the esophagus, thoracic duct and descending aorta and is in proximity to the pulmonary artery

*Peribronchial lymph glands* occur in clusters, they vary in size from that of a millet seed to that of a pea. The large ones lie at the bifurcation of the trachea. In glandular tuberculosis, Hodgkin's disease and some lung and bronchial affections these glands may attain a large size. These lymph nodes are situated between the divisions of the bronchi at the root of the lungs and about the bifurcations of the trachea.

### Diaphragm

The diaphragm is a powerful respiratory muscle. It is a dome-shaped musculomembranous sheet which separates the thoracic from the abdominal cavity. At its origin it is on a level with the sixth ribs or intercostal spaces anteriorly, and the eleventh ribs posteriorly.

At its insertion it is on a level with the fourth intercostal space or fifth rib. The right half rises somewhat higher than the left. The upper surface of the diaphragm is in relation to the base of both lungs, the right ventricle and the pericardium. The lower surface is in relation to the liver, the suprarenal bodies, the kidneys, the spleen and the cardiac end of the stomach.

The diaphragm has three large *foramina* which permit the passing of

- 1 The inferior vena cava at the level of the ninth dorsal vertebra
- 2 The esophagus (to the left of the midline) on a level with the body of the tenth dorsal vertebra
- 3 The aorta, vena azygos major and thoracic duct at the level of the twelfth dorsal vertebra



Fig 17—X ray appearance of normal chest  
(Anteroposterior view)

## CHAPTER X

### Physical Examination of the Respiratory System by Inspection and Mensuration

Having proceeded with the general and local examination, until the thorax is reached, special attention is directed to the examination of the chest, because inspection, palpation, percussion and auscultation are of particular value in the examination of the thoracic organs.

Inspection is the act of examining a patient by the sense of sight, comparing the part under examination with one's mental picture of a similar healthy part, and one side of the body with the corresponding part of the opposite side. It is quite natural that inspection should be the first method of procedure in a physical examination of the thorax, because the eye will recognize outward conditions long before the other senses can be brought into activity. It is, therefore, of great importance in examining the thorax to practice inspection thoroughly and systematically.

#### Rules to Be Observed During Inspection

1 The patient must be stripped to the waist, otherwise accurate inspection is impossible. If an overmodest female patient refuses to bare her chest in its entirety, one portion at a time may be uncovered and thoroughly inspected.

2 The patient must assume a perfectly natural and unconstrained position. It is preferable, whenever possible, to have the patient in the erect posture, the arms hanging naturally at the sides. Mental and physical ease are important, and these may often be accomplished by engaging the patient in a general conver-

sation, so as to keep his mind off his own body.

If the standing posture is not possible the next choice is the sitting posture. The patient is to sit erect, arms hanging loosely at the sides, head somewhat elevated, but muscular rigidity should be carefully avoided. When the lateral surface of the chest is inspected the patient's hands should be clasped behind his head, allowing free exposure. In a very sick patient the recumbent posture is the only possible one, the patient lying entirely relaxed. When lateral and posterior views are required of such a patient he should be gently turned from one side to the other, the facial expression being meanwhile noted for any signs of pain or distress. The effect upon respiration should also be observed during this procedure.

3 The chest is examined anteriorly laterally and posteriorly with equal care and attention. The color of the skin, general development, musculature and the size, shape and symmetry of the thorax are to be noted. First the chest is studied as a whole, then the regions of the one side are compared with the corresponding regions on the opposite side.

4 The whole chest should be exposed to a strong steady light, preferably day light, so as to avoid confusing shadows. The surface of the chest under examination should always be turned towards the examiner.

5 During the examination respiration should be uninterrupted, the respi-

respiratory rate and rhythm and the degree of the chest expansion being kept under observation. The movements of one side of the chest should be compared anteriorly, laterally and posteriorly with those of the corresponding part of the other side.

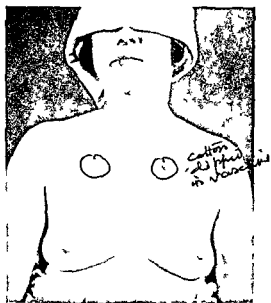


Fig 1—Inspection for symmetrical respiratory chest movements. Two pieces of cotton previously dipped in vaseline are placed upon corresponding points of each lateral half of the chest

In order to bring out more clearly any difference between the expansion of one part of the chest as compared with the corresponding part on the other side, a small piece of cotton previously dipped in vaseline or other sticky substance may be placed upon corresponding points of both sides, or the corresponding points may be marked with a colored pencil, thus facilitating the detection of apparently minor delays or restrictions in respiratory expansion.

When the infraclavicular regions are to be inspected for uneven expansion the patient is placed upon a chair or stool facing the light, with the head

somewhat lowered. A line is drawn with a colored pencil immediately below the inner two-thirds of each clavicle. The examiner stands directly behind the patient looking downward, choosing a position which will enable him to see both lines simultaneously. The lines should not be visible during expiration, but should come into his range of vision during inspiration. The line that is last visible during inspiration denotes delayed expansion on that side.



Fig 2—Inspection of upper portion of chest to note bilateral equality of respiratory expansion. A line is drawn beneath each clavicle. The patient sits upon a chair and the examiner stands behind the patient and looks downward watching the lines as they come into view.

Posteriorly, delayed and diminished expansion is easily noted by watching the play of the scapulae. It is often necessary to have the patient breathe deeply in order to bring out more clearly discrepancies in the respiratory excursion.

6 Irregularities in the contour of the chest bulgings depressions pulsations, distended vessels and enlarged glands should be noted. This is best accomplished in the following manner. The examiner should stand about three to six feet in front and away from the



Fig 3—Inspection of chest and upper abdomen for slight irregularities and pulsations. The patient lies supine and the examiner brings his eyes on a level with the patient's body.

patient with his back to the light except when slight variations in the upper part of the chest are to be investigated and then he should stand behind or at one side of the patient so that he may be able to look downward.

When the patient is in the recumbent position it is often necessary for the examiner to bring his eyes to the level of the patient's chest and upper abdomen, in order to detect more readily slight variations in expansion and feeble pulsations.

### The Normal Chest

The ideal chest such as we are accustomed to attribute to an Apollo or a Venus is rarely, if ever encountered in actual practice. If we examine a

hundred normal chests we shall very likely find that no two have the same measurements yet each one is within the normal limits. The difference in chests is like the difference in facial expressions. A hundred Chinamen will present a hundred different faces whereby each one can be distinguished from the others, still every face will be of the Chinese type. The same is also true concerning chest and body development.

### Characteristics of the Normal Chest

1 The chest is usually symmetrical on both sides though slight asymmetry may occur described under another heading.

2 The clavicles are somewhat prominent

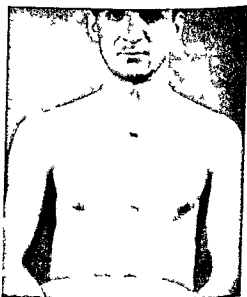


Fig 4—Normal male chest.

3 The supra and infraclavicular fossae are slightly depressed.

4 Louis' angle is visible (second costosternal junction).

5 The sternum is nearly straight.

6 The shoulders are nearly horizontal.

7 The suprasternal depression is small

8 The epigastric angle the space formed by the junction of the coalescing ribs with the sternum is a right angle

9 The anteroposterior diameter sternovertebral equals about three fourths of the transverse diameter



Fig 5—Normal female chest.

10 The ribs as they leave the sternum are horizontal but gradually slope upward being nearly oblique when they reach the spinal articulation

11 The interspaces are wider anteriorly than they are laterally and posteriorly, they are neither prominent nor markedly depressed

12 The spine presents a very slight curvature to the right at the midback, the vertebral spines are not very prominent

13 The scapulae lie nearly flat upon the ribs when the arms are held in the normal anatomical position

14 The thorax excluding the shoulder attachments is conical in shape the smaller end being uppermost gradually

increasing in depth as it descends because of the greater curve and angle of each succeeding rib as it joins the sternum

Irregularities that may occur in a normal chest are

1 Prominent clavicles and Louis angle, thereby causing deep supra and infraclavicular depressions are usually seen in individuals who have very thick bones and high cheek bones

2 Occupational deformities such as funnel chest (Trichterbrust) a sinking in of the lower portion of the sternum are often seen in shoemakers and harnessmakers

3 Shallow upper portion of the chest with a gradual deepening and widening lower portion is often congenital

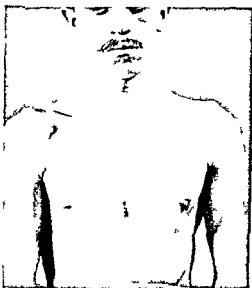


Fig 6—Irrregularities of chest within normal limits. Note supra and infra clavicular depression and deep infrasternal depression

4 Short chest but with an acute epigastric angle is also often congenital

5 Local irregularities due to such causes as a badly united fracture or cicatrices resulting from burns and scalds



### Respiration

Respiration is a process in which atmospheric air is taken into the lungs for the purpose of aerating the blood, and charged or vitiated air is exhaled. The atmospheric air (inspired air) contains approximately 20 to 21 per cent oxygen, 79 per cent nitrogen, and 0.04 per cent carbon dioxide. The expired air contains about 14 per cent oxygen about 80 per cent nitrogen saturated with water vapor and about 5.6 per cent carbon dioxide. The composition of the expired air varies with the amount of activity, the general metabolic process, and the kind and quantity of food taken in. On an average diet during comparative rest about 900 grams of carbon dioxide are expired daily, during exertion it may exceed 1200 grams.

*Tidal air* is the amount of air inspired or expired with each respiration during normal quiet breathing, it is about 350 to 500 cc.

*Complimentary or complementary air* is the volume of air that can be forcibly inspired after a normal inspiration, it is about 1500 cc or slightly over.

*Supplemental or reserve air* is the amount of air that can be forcibly expired after normal expiration, it is about 1500 cc or slightly over.

*Residual air* is the amount of air constantly remaining in the lungs that can not be forced out by the deepest possible expiration, it is about 1000 to 1500 cc.

*Vital capacity* is the greatest volume of air that can be forced out of the lungs after the deepest possible inspiration, it is the sum of the preceding figures and averages in the male 3500 to 5000 cc, in the female 2500 to 3700 cc.

The blood is brought to the lungs by large arteries (the pulmonary arteries)

which divide and subdivide, following the ramifications of the bronchial tree, until at last the smallest capillaries come in contact with the fine air vesicles the blood and air being separated only by a thin membrane which permits osmosis. After an interchange of gases in the capillaries the aerated blood in the lungs is finally carried away by increasingly large veins, until it reaches the left ventricle from which it is distributed throughout the body. The blood is brought to the lungs at a definite velocity depending upon the rate of the heart usually about 72 heartbeats per minute. The air is also brought to the lungs at a definite rate of speed about 18 respirations per minute, taking in approximately 30 cubic inches or from 350 to 500 cc of air during an ordinary inspiration excursion. The ratio between the respiration and the pulse beat is one to four. In other words the air drawn in by one act of respiration takes care of the quantity of blood brought to the lungs by four heartbeats. The respiratory rate and rhythm may be to a large extent controlled by the will. It may be voluntarily deepened or made superficial, accelerated retarded or even arrested for half a minute, a minute, or even longer. Therefore the patient should not be made acquainted with the fact that the examiner is counting the respiratory rate.

### Normal Respiratory Rate

The respiratory act consists of an inspiratory movement and a short pause followed by an expiratory movement. These movements occur regularly and rhythmically and are symmetrical on both sides of the chest. In the male they occur 18 to 20 times a minute. In the female 20 to 22 times a minute. In children, the number of respirations per

minute depends upon their age at birth it is about 40 to 50, at the end of the first year, 30; and at the fifth year it is about 26 per minute. Respirations are less rapid in the recumbent than in the sitting, and most rapid in the erect posture.

The respiratory rate may become accelerated or retarded as a physiologic or pathologic process. Acceleration is more common than retardation. The rate may increase to 30, 40 or even to over 50 per minute, generally, however it rises no higher than 40. Physiologic increase in frequency of the respiratory rate may be brought about by physical or mental exertion, or by both. *Physical exertion*, such as rapid walking, running, mountain climbing, running upstairs, hopping, jumping, "setting-up exercises," heavy lifting, swimming, or any muscular exertion will accelerate the respiratory rate. The trained athlete can endure a much greater strain before any change in the respiratory rate is noted than can the man of sedentary habits. Convalescents from protracted or grave diseases show a marked increase in the respiratory rate from trivial exertion, such as sitting up in bed. The ratio between respiration and heartbeat is usually maintained in these conditions, both being accelerated. *Mental excitement*, such as anger, anticipation of any unusual event, sudden fright, self-consciousness in the presence of strangers, "stage fright," in fact, any condition that will cause a more rapid heart action, will produce rapid respiration.

### Respiratory Movements

During inspiration the lungs take up approximately 350 to 500 cc of tidal air, thus causes each lung vesicle to expand, in consequence of which both lungs balloon out. In order to accommodate them

the chest cavity must necessarily become larger. This is accomplished by (a) The descent of the diaphragm, except at its central tendon and (b) the raising of the ribs, the upward and forward movement of the sternum, and slight expansion of the intercostal spaces.

The inspiratory act causes the ribs to assume a nearly horizontal plane anteriorly and to some extent laterally, but there is very little change in position posteriorly because the costospinal articulations are fixed and act as a fulcrum to elevate the sternum and its attached ribs. Posteriorly, inspiration is noted by the separation and ascent of the scapulae and slight filling of the interspaces. Forced inspiration is accomplished by bringing into play the accessory muscles of respiration, thus lifting the thorax still higher, and causing a greater descent of the diaphragm.

The expiratory act, because of the collapse of the lungs and the ascent of the diaphragm, causes a descent of the ribs, a slight retraction of the intercostal spaces and greater acuteness of the epigastric angle. Posteriorly, expiration is noted by the approach and descent of the scapulae and the lowering of the shoulders.

The inspiratory movement, therefore, consists of *expansion* and *elevation* of the chest, and *lowering* of the diaphragm.

The expiratory movement consists of *retraction* and *recession* of the ribs and interspaces, *elevation* of the diaphragm and recoil of the lung tissue.

*The Diaphragmatic Movement* In repose the diaphragm is arched upward and assumes the shape of an inverted basin and its sides are in close contact with the inner wall of the thoracic cavity, from its attachment to the level of the fifth intercostal space. During in

spiration the diaphragm flattens out and permits the descent of the bases of the lungs in its wake. During expiration, with collapse of the lungs, the diaphragm rises. The deeper the inspiratory act, the lower the descent of the diaphragm and *per contra* the greater the expiratory act the higher does the diaphragm rise. When the individual assumes a lateral posture, the diaphragmatic excursions are greatest on the dependent side.

### Accessory Muscles of Respiration

Normally, the ordinary respiratory muscles—intercostals diaphragm and in the female, the scaleni—carry on respiration. Greater depth of respiration is accomplished by increased action of these muscles, assisted by the accessory muscles thereby producing greater chest expansion. The accessory muscles of respiration are divided into two groups: (I) *Accessory muscles of inspiration*, and (II) *accessory muscles of expiration*.

#### I Accessory Muscles of Inspiration

(a) The muscles of the upper respiratory tract the *levator alae nasi* and the *levator palati molles* enlarge the opening of the upper respiratory tract thus more readily permitting the passage of air into the larynx. The *sternohyoid* *sternothyroid* *thyrohyoid* and *omohyoid* muscles depress the larynx thus facilitating the entrance of air into the lungs. The *cricothyrenoides postici* by their contraction separate the thyrenoid cartilages thereby dilating the *rima glottidis*.

the sternum and clavicles when the head is fixed.

(c) The *pectoralis*, major and minor when the head and shoulders are fixed, elevate the second to the sixth ribs inclusive. The *serrati postici superiores* elevate the upper ribs. The *subclavius* raises the first rib when the clavicle is stationary. The *levatores costarum breves* and *longi* draw the posterior portion of each rib toward the spinal column.

(d) The *levator anguli scapulae* that part of the trapezius which rises from the occiput and is inserted into the clavicle and acromion and probably also the *serrati antici majores*, act as inspiratory muscles inasmuch as they move the lower and middle ribs upward and outward when the shoulder is fixed.

(e) The *elevator* of the head and spinal column aid respiration in cases of croup spasm of the glottis and when asphyxia is threatening.

#### II Accessory Muscles of Expiration

Expiration is usually accomplished by the collapse of the air vesicles in the lungs and the upward movement of the diaphragm. When the elasticity of the alveoli is lost muscular action has to be brought into play in order to compress the thorax. The principal expiratory muscles are those of the abdomen which push the abdominal organs upward toward the diaphragm.

(a) The *transversalis muscle* shortens the transverse diameter of the abdomen and the *recti muscles* shorten the longitudinal diameter.

### Types of Normal Respiration

The preponderance of upper or lower chest expansion during inspiration and its accompanying contraction during expiration mark two distinct types of respiration observed normally in the two sexes (I) *Superior thoracic* or *costal* breathing in women, (II) *costoabdominal* or *inferior thoracic* breathing in men

**I Superior Thoracic or Costal Type of Breathing in Women** The expansion of the thorax occurs largely in the upper part and is chiefly produced by the action of the intercostal and scaleni muscles as the diaphragmatic contractions are slight they produce only a feeble expansion of the lower portion of the thorax and upper abdomen Trained singers and orators by diligent practice bring the diaphragm into forcible play thus increasing their lung capacity and causing their breathing to assume a nearly costoabdominal type at the same time also retaining the supracostal type The supracostal type of breathing in women was formerly attributed to tight lacing but this is probably not true because though the tight lacing has ceased to be fashionable this type of respiration is still present in civilized women and in women of the primitive races who do not and probably never did constrict their waists It is no doubt due to the action of the intercostals and scaleni muscles and the greater flexibility of the female ribs which may be nature's method of allowing sufficient room in the abdomen for childbearing

**II Costoabdominal or Inferior Thoracic Type** In men the diaphragm is the most important muscle of respiration, when relaxed it projects upwards like a dome into the thoracic

cavity, but when contracted during inspiration it becomes flattened and descends pushing the abdominal viscera before it elevating the upper part of the abdominal wall and expanding the lower half of the thorax

These respiratory types are greatly influenced by age occupation habits and pathological conditions In old age when the ribs and cartilages are ossified respiration is almost entirely abdominal even in women In persons following such occupations as singing wind instrument playing or glass blowing both the supra and infracostal types are found to be well developed Sedentary habits which induce shallow breathing will cause but slight contractions of the diaphragm even in men

### Respiratory Rhythm

The ratio between the *inspiratory act* and the *expiratory act* is six to seven

The inspiratory act is slightly shorter than the expiratory act A very short pause follows inspiration, almost as soon as inspiration is completed expiration begins The pause following expiration is longer than the inspiration pause

Be it remembered however that the normal *inspiratory sound* (the sound heard during normal inspiration) is three times longer than the *expiratory sound*

### Mensuration of the Normal Thorax

Mensuration is employed to determine more accurately (I) The circumference of the chest and to note its relation to the general build of the individual (II) the degree of respiratory expansion, (III) the irregularities of the chest and the relative size of either side (IV) the diameters of the thorax in relation to its circumference

### I Circumference of the Chest

This is obtained by encircling the thorax with an ordinary tape measure or a thoracometer at the level of the third rib anteriorly during quiet breathing. This procedure is known as 'thoracometry'. The circumference of the thorax at the level of the nipples in front and the lower angle of the scapulae behind when the arms are raised should correspond to half the length of the body. In old age the lower circumference is greater than the upper. The approximate relation between the size of the chest and the height and weight of the individual is given in the following table.

Relation Between Size of Chest and Weight and Height  
(After H. A. Siders)

HEIGHT	CHEST	WEIGHT
5 feet	33 inches	115 pounds
5 1 inch	34	120
5 2 inches	35	125
5 3	36	130
5 4	36½	135
5 5	37	140
5 6	37½	143
5 7	38½	146
5 8	39	149
5 9	39½	152
5 10	40	155
5 11	40½	158
6	41	161
6 1 inch	41½	164
6 2 inches	42	167
6 3	42½	170
6 4	43	173

As a general rule it may be remembered that a person measuring five feet has a chest circumference of 33 inches and weighs 115 pounds  $5 \times 3 = 15$ .

For the increase of each inch in height add one inch to the circumference and five pounds to the weight until five feet four inches. After that add ½ inch to the circumference and three pounds to the weight for each additional inch in height.

The size of the chest circumference does not necessarily indicate the condition of the lungs. Thus we may have a chest circumference of three or four inches above the normal standard with poorly functioning lungs as in emphysema, and at times a chest circumference of one or two inches below the normal.



Fig 7—Technic for measuring the circumference of the chest and chest expansion

standard may shelter perfectly good lungs. The degree of thoracic expansion rather than its circumference is an indication of lung capacity.

**II—Degree of Respiratory Expansion** This is obtained by encircling the chest with a tape measure at the level of the third rib. The patient is instructed to take a very deep breath during which time the measurement is read. He is then instructed to exhale the tape being drawn in as the chest sinks and the reading is taken at the end of the expiration. The difference between forced inspiration and forced expiration represents the degree of ex-

## Diagrams of Normal and Pathological Chests

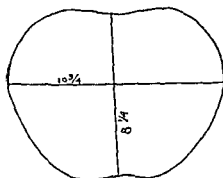


Fig 8—Normal adult chest

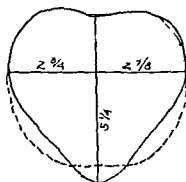


Fig 10—Pigeon chest, child aged 14 months

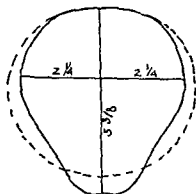


Fig 9—Rickety chest child aged 15 months

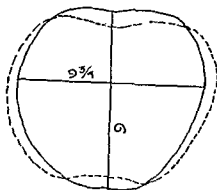


Fig 11—Emphysematous chest

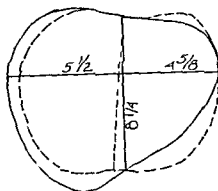


Fig 12—Fibrosis of the left lung, man aged 30 years

Reduced cytometric tracings of the various forms of chest taken at the level of the sternoxiphoid articulation. The figures represent measurements in inches; the dotted lines indicate the normal shape of the same chest. (After Sawyer)

pansion. In men the average expansion is about three inches, in women two and a half inches. Training generally increases the chest expansion. It is not at all unusual to see athletes who have four to five inches of chest expansion. Expansion less than two inches may be considered pathological, unless there are obvious factors to account for it.



Fig 13—Technic for measuring transverse diameter of chest

**III Irregularities of the Chest and the Relative Size of Either Side**  
This may be obtained by the use of the thoracometer, the cyrtometer or the pantograph. The practiced eye will usually detect asymmetries and irregularities without instrumental aid. The instruments of precision are employed for the sake of accuracy.

The cyrtometer is a chain of stiffly moving links, it is first molded around the chest then carefully removed so as to preserve the general outline of the chest at that level. Another instrument, which is less cumbersome and more practical consists of two narrow pliable metallic bands joined by hinges to a padded saddle which fits the spine. The bands

are carefully drawn around the chest until they assume its outline, the anterior junction of the bands is marked the pieces are then carefully separated and removed from the chest to a piece of paper where they are again put in position and a pencil tracing is taken from the inside of the strips. The outline of this level is thus obtained.

The relative size of either side of the chest is easily obtained by the use of an ordinary pelvimeter (thoracometer when employed for chest measurement). With this instrument the diameter of each half of the chest is taken and compared. The anterior posterior and lateral diameters may also be taken with the pelvimeter and each diameter marked on paper in its corresponding position, a line uniting these points will show the shape and size of the circumference of the chest at that level.

The pantograph is an instrument employed by photographers to enlarge pictures. For chest measurements the ends are reversed, the larger end is traced around the chest while the smaller end which is fitted with a pencil transfers this tracing in smaller form though accurately upon a sheet of paper.

**IV The Diameters of the Thorax**  
(a) The long diameter is measured from the clavicle to the base of the chest. This diameter is variable so much so that it is hardly possible to standardize its normal length.

(b) The transverse diameter (the breadth) is represented by a line drawn from a given point on one side of the lateral aspect of the chest to a corresponding point on the opposite side. In adult men this usually measures 25 cm (9.84 inches) in the upper part and about 26 cm (10.23 inches) in the lower part.

of the chest. In women the measurements are approximately 23 to 24 cm (9.05 to 9.44 inches) in the upper and lower parts of the chest, and about 1 cm (0.39 inches) additional when measured a little above the mammae.



Fig 14—Technic for measuring the anteroposterior diameter of chest

(c) Anteroposterior diameter (the depth) is represented by a line passing from any point on the anterior surface to a corresponding point posteriorly. This is usually taken from the sternum to the spinal column, and is, therefore, often called the *sternovertebral diameter*. This diameter usually measures 16 cm (6.29 inches) superiorly and 19 cm (7.48 inches) in the middle and inferiorly. In the aged the inferior diameter is often greater than the superior, due to the flaring out of the ribs. At times other measurements are taken in order to compare one portion of the chest with the corresponding portion on the opposite side, such measurements may be the depth at the apex, from the clavicle to the spine of the scapula,

the distance between the sternum and the nipples or between the nipples and the vertebral column, etc.

### Pathologic Thorax

Having by inspection become acquainted with the (I) size, (II) shape, (III) symmetry and (IV) respiratory movements of the normal thorax, we are now in a position to appreciate its pathological variations. Abnormalities of the thorax in size, shape, or symmetry may be either congenital or acquired.

#### I. Size

The chest may be abnormally increased or diminished in size.

If *increased*, all diameters are larger than normal, the lungs are overstretched



Fig 15—Posterolateral view of emphysematous chest.

emphysematous, and an individual presenting this anomaly is spoken of as being "deep chested." Glass blowing, playing wind instruments, or other occupations requiring pulmonary strain



may eventually cause such enlargements. Mountaineers are usually deep chested.

If diminished, all diameters are symmetrically decreased. This condition is usually congenital, although in some instances the chest may be arrested in its development because of insufficient lung expansion in apparently normal individuals.

The thorax usually accommodates itself to the size of the lungs, if the lungs are abnormally large, the thorax is also large, small lungs naturally require a smaller lodging place consequently a smaller thorax.

## II. Shape

The alterations in the shape of the chest may be classified as ten distinct pathological types.

**I The Barrel shaped or Emphysematous Chest.** This type is striking in its appearance, occurring in emphysematous persons and is often seen in those suffering for a long period of time from continuous attacks of asthma. The emphysematous chest is most frequently observed in persons of, or beyond, middle life. The sufferer has the appearance of a person walking about during a continuous deep inspiration.

### Characteristics

(a) The chest is short (due to the elevation of the ribs).

(b) The chest is full, the greatest fullness occurring in the scapular regions.

(c) The shoulders are elevated and are nearly horizontal, because of the elevation of the ribs.

(d) The neck is short, because of the elevation of the shoulders.

(e) The anteroposterior diameter is as long or longer than the transverse, this is caused by the arching forward of the sternum, and the arching back-

ward of the spine, which give it a barrel-shaped appearance.

(f) The ribs are massive and horizontal.

(g) The interspaces are wider and somewhat bulging.

(h) The epigastric angle is obtuse.



Fig 16—Emphysematous chest, shoulders level, no supra or infraclavicular depressions.

(i) The scapulae lie flat upon the ribs and are thrown upward outward and forward.

**II The Phthisinoid, Alar, Pterygoid or Paralytic Chest.** This type is just the opposite of the emphysematous type, it is, as a rule, congenital. The phthisinoid chested person gives one the impression of being constantly in the act of deep expiration.

### Characteristics

(a) The chest is long.

(b) It is flat or shallow.

(c) The anteroposterior diameter is greatly diminished.

(d) The ribs are thin and sloped, causing an acute epigastric angle, downward sloping of the shoulders and a long neck.

(e) The intercostal spaces are narrower and depressed

(f) Louis' angle is very prominent

(g) The clavicles are prominent

(h) The supra- and infraclavicular fossae are depressed



Fig 17—Phthisicoid chest

(i) The scapulae stand out wing shaped, therefore the name "alar thorax"

One may have a congenital phthisicoid chest, but with proper care may never contract pulmonary tuberculosis. Such a person is perhaps predisposed to this disease, but may not necessarily contract it. However, it is true that the majority of phthisicoid chests are found among the tuberculous. This form should not be confounded with the *phthisical chest*, which is the product of advanced pulmonary tuberculosis.

**III The Phthisical Chest** This type is acquired. A perfectly normal appearing chest in a person who is suffering from active pulmonary tuberculosis may, in time, come to present the characteristics of the phthisical chest. This deformity is no doubt due to

deficient lung expansion, which causes collapse and partial atrophy of the intercostal and other chest muscles.

#### *Characteristics*

(a) The chest is generally emaciated

(b) The anteroposterior diameter is shortened

(c) Flattening of the chest above the third rib is in evidence

(d) Supra- and infraclavicular depressions are deep

**IV The Rachitic Chest:** Rachitic deformities of the chest may be caused by violent muscular action upon the improperly developing chest of the rachitic child and by improper calcification. A



Fig 18—Rachitic chest showing rachitic rosary

though many deformities may exist three distinct varieties are recognized

- 1 The simple rachitic.
- 2 The pigeon breast, or chicken breast
- 3 The transversely constricted chest.

### 1 The Simple Rachitic Chest

This is recognized by the following characteristics

(a) It is shorter and deeper than normal

(b) A shallow depression or groove occurs on either side of the chest and

It is also often compared to the outline of a ship's keel

#### Characteristics

(a) The transverse outline is triangular

(b) The sides of the chest are flattened

(c) The lower portion of the sternum is arched forward

(d) The ribs slope sharply backward from their sternal articulation the angle being straightened at the costochondral junction

3 The Transversely constricted Chest or Harrison's Sulcus In this type a transverse constriction of the anterior lower portion of the chest below



Fig 19—Rachitic chest pigeon breast deformity

runs nearly parallel to the anterior axillary line they correspond to the costochondral junctions the anterior aspect of the chest is pushed forward causing the chest as a whole to assume a nearly quadrilateral shape instead of the circular form normal to children

(c) Rachitic rosary is caused by beading of the sternocostal junction This is due to an excessive deposit of lime salts at each sternocostal articulation causing enlargement of the osteocartilaginous junctional tissues

2 The Pigeon Breast As its name implies the shape of this type of chest resembles that of the breast of a fowl



Fig 20—Broad flat thin chest small anteroposterior diameter

the sternoxiphoid articulation is noted the constriction corresponding to the points of attachment of the diaphragm

V Flat Chest This is characterized by the excessive broadness of the chest the very small anteroposterior

drometer and the absence of the normal forward curve of the ribs. The length of the thorax is not abnormally increased. This type is often seen in pulmonary tuberculosis.

**VI The Scaphoid or Boat shaped Chest.** This variety of chest is at times

downward. Since tight laced corsets have gone out of fashion the clinical incidence of this chest abnormality has greatly decreased.

**VIII Chest of Progressive Muscular Atrophy.** This type is characterized by its peculiar box shaped appearance the walls being nearly perpendicular. The lower ribs are extremely oblique and the intercostal muscles are atrophied. The waist is very slender and constricted (wasp waist).

**IX Gutter Chest.** This type is characterized by a narrow shallow vertical groove corresponding to the mid sternal line. It is due to a forward con-

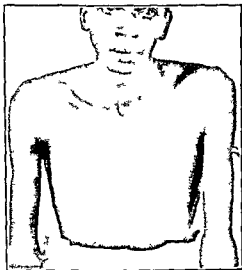


Fig 21—Broad flat chest with a large transverse diameter

found in patients suffering from syringomyelia also in the rachitic and as a result of injury. It is characterized by a median depression of the upper anterior chest wall extending from the top of the sternum to about the fifth or sixth rib. This hollow is formed by the depression of the sternum and its adjoining costal cartilages.

**VII Spindle shaped Chest or Fusiform Thorax.** This deformity may be acquired by tight lacing. It consists of a lengthened or constricted chest which has assumed a spindle shape. The upper part of the thorax is broadened, the waistline is lower and is decreased in circumference, the spinal muscles become atrophied. The thoracic viscera are pushed up higher in the chest while the abdominal viscera are crowded

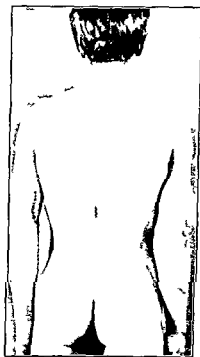


Fig 22—Spindle shaped chest rachitic

downward. Since tight laced corsets have gone out of fashion the clinical incidence of this chest abnormality has greatly decreased.

downward. Since tight laced corsets have gone out of fashion the clinical incidence of this chest abnormality has greatly decreased.

**X Funnel Chest** In this variety a deep depression is often noted at the lower end of the sternum. It is conical in shape, the larger diameter being in front; the apex is deeply situated and corresponds to the sternoxiphoid articulation. This condition is usually hereditary.

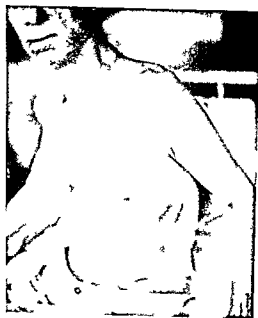


Fig. 23—Gutter chest showing deep central groove from third to seventh ribs due to depressed sternum.

tary though it may occur as a result of rickets.

A lesser and more shallow depression may be of occupational origin occurring in shoemakers, carpenters, or harness makers. The constant pressure of a hard object against the lower portion of the sternum, usually continuous from early youth, is responsible for this occupational deformity.

### III Symmetry

Normally both sides of the chest should be symmetrical or nearly so. Pathologically one side may be larger, smaller, or distorted. This may be caused

either by disease of the underlying viscera or by disease and congenital deformity of the spine and ribs. Local irregularities of a portion of one side, such as bulgings or depressions, may also exist. Whenever an asymmetrical chest is inspected and one side is found to be larger than the other, the question naturally arises which of the two is the normal side. It is therefore necessary to determine whether the apparently larger side is of normal proportions and the smaller side abnormally contracted, or whether the larger side is hypertrophied and the smaller one of normal proportions.

**Unilateral Enlargement** The affected side has all the characteristics of an emphysematous chest:



Fig. 24—Funnel breast.

(a) General fullness and bulging on that side.

(b) Elevation of the shoulder higher than on the normal side.

(c) Ribs more horizontal than on the normal side.

(d) The slight depressions of the intercostal spaces are either obliterated or the intercostal spaces are bulging

(e) The mammary gland is pushed outward away from the median line

(f) The scapula is also pushed away from the median line



Fig 25—Emphysematous chest with right sided pleural effusion

(g) The chest movements may be increased diminished or absent depending upon the underlying cause of the enlargement

(h) The spinal column is bent with its convexity towards the affected side

It should be borne in mind that the spine is always bent with its convexity toward the larger side no matter whether this be the healthy or the diseased side.

Unilateral enlargement of the chest may be caused by (1) A foreign substance occupying the thoracic cavity on the affected side, (2) compensatory or vicarious emphysema due to disease of the opposite side, (3) lobar pneumonia

(4) unilateral edema of the skin, (5) subcutaneous emphysema, (6) congenital malformation of the thorax

**1 Foreign Substances Occupying the Thoracic Cavity on the Affected Side** A large pleural effusion will usually cause elevation of the ribs flattening out of the intercostal spaces and in young individuals the intercostal spaces may bulge somewhat, respiratory motion is limited and at times entirely absent. The effusion may consist of

(a) *Serous Fluid (hydrothorax)*

This is a condition caused by certain forms of malignancy of the lung or



Fig 26—Unilateral enlargement due to pleural effusion (Left sided. The heart pushed to the right as indicated by the cross) (SEE p 377)

pleura by tuberculosis pneumonia heart disease after failure of compensation by acute serofibrinous pleurisy by nephrosis and by severe anemia

(b) *Bloody Fluid (hemothorax)*

This is a condition often due to the

presence of a malignant growth in the lung or pleura, or to pulmonary tuberculosis when a small vessel ruptures and stains an already existing serous effusion it may also be a result of active inflammation of the lung (as in pneumonia) or of the bronchial glands, of



Fig 27—Pericardial effusion  
(SEE p 470)

stab wounds or other injuries to the chest wall of the rupture of a blood vessel or of an aneurysm

(c) *Pus (pyothorax)* This condition may be the result of infection of a serous effusion with pyogenic bacteria it may be a sequel to pneumonia or to an infectious process such as pulmonary tuberculosis or gangrene of the lung

(d) *Lymph (chylothorax)* This may occur as a result of pressure upon or rupture of the thoracic duct

(e) *Air in the Pleural Sac (pneumothorax)* This may occur as a result of rupture of air vesicles in the lungs perforation of a pulmonary cavity erosion of a bronchial tube or esophagus

because of disease or the introduction of a foreign body causing rupture of the lung Stab wounds, or other chest wounds, may cause a pneumothorax either by admitting outside air into the pleural cavity or by rupturing the lung structure and thus permitting the escape of air Pneumothorax is often induced as a therapeutic measure (artificial pneumothorax) in tuberculosis and other conditions that may be benefited by putting the lung at rest

(f) *Serous Fluid and Air in the Pleural Cavity (hydropneumothorax)*  
*Pus and Air in the Pleural Cavity (pyopneumothorax)* The combination of air and fluid is frequently found in cases of pulmonary tuberculosis puncture of a lung abscess pulmonary gan



Fig 28—Unilateral retraction of chest due to paralysis of chest muscles

grene or as a result of stab wounds which have penetrated the pleura

(g) *A Solid Tumor* This may be malignant or benign and may at times attain sufficient size to cause a unilateral thoracic enlargement, in most in

stances however a tumor in this location will be accompanied by effusion. An *aortic aneurysm* may become large enough to cause very decided unilateral thoracic enlargement.

(h) *Pericardial Effusion* Particularly in children this may cause left sided chest enlargement.



Fig. 29—Unilateral retraction due to disease of the chest wall

**2 Compensatory or Vicarious Emphysema** This condition usually arises in one lung as a result of disease in the opposite lung such as pulmonary atelectasis, fibroid phthisis, fibrinous pleurisy, tumors of the lung or pleural effusion.

The unilateral enlargement caused by compensatory emphysema is often more apparent than real. Compensatory emphysema of one half of the chest is usually caused by a retraction of the opposite half. If the diseased side is contracted, the healthy side doing compensatory work enlarges only slightly, but the difference between the two sides

is so great that even a moderate increase in the size of the sound side makes it appear large in comparison with the contracted side. This however is not true of all such cases because compensatory emphysema of one side as a result of pleural effusion on the opposite side may produce a bilateral enlargement. The two sides may be differentiated by noting the respiratory movements. Compensatory emphysema gives rise to greater chest movement while in pleural effusion such movement is conspicuous by its absence. The results obtained by palpation, percussion and auscultation greatly assist in differentiating pleural effusion from compensatory emphysema.



Fig. 30—Unilateral retraction due to resection

**3 Lobar Pneumonia** Affecting the entire lung this may also cause unilateral enlargement of the affected side because the lung is the seat of a croupous inflammation. The pleura being somewhat inflamed causes rigidity of the



intercostal muscles which in turn flat tens out the intercostal spaces and slightly raises the ribs. The rigidity of the intercostal muscles in pneumonia is analogous to the rigidity of the right rectus abdominis muscle in appendicitis

such cases which had the appearance of a unilaterally enlarged thorax. On palpation a peculiar crackling is elicited the skin over the chest is distended to such an extent that the ribs cannot be differentiated from the intercostal spaces. There is however no interference with respiratory expansion.

**Unilateral Diminution in Size or Unilateral Retraction.** This condition causes the affected side to be smaller in all dimensions and to resemble a unilateral phthisinoid chest.

(a) The chest is drawn in and flattened on the affected side.

(b) The intercostal spaces are narrowed depressed and—in extreme cases—the ribs may overlap one another.



Fig 31—Left sided unilateral retraction due to pulmonary atelectasis

—nature's method of protecting the inflamed viscera from external injury.

4 **Unilateral Edema of the Chest Wall.** This is often noted in patients suffering from anasarca who persistently lie on one side. The dependent side becomes much more edematous and often presents the appearance of a unilaterally enlarged thorax. The diagnosis of this condition is easily made as the skin pits on pressure.

5 **Subcutaneous Emphysema.** This may occur on any portion of the body or it may occupy a vertical half of the thorax. The author has seen at the Philadelphia General Hospital several



Fig 32—Left sided unilateral retraction, posterior view pulmonary atelectasis

(c) The shoulder droops

(d) The mammary gland is drawn towards the sternum

(e) The scapula is drawn towards the spine and stands out wing shaped

(f) The spine is bent with its convexity towards the opposite (larger) side.

Unilateral diminution in size, if not congenital, may be caused by (1) Disease of the chest wall, (2) disease of the pleura; (3) disease of the lung, (4) disease of the spine.



Fig 33—Lordosis

1 *Disease of the Chest Wall.* This may be due to paralysis of the muscles of respiration, causing atrophy of that side. Primary arrest of development, e g, infantile hemiplegia causes one side to be smaller but its symmetry is maintained

2 *Disease of the Pleura:* Chronic adhesions of the pleura prevent proper lung expansions, or in cases of long continued pleural effusions where absorption is slow, atrophy of the respiratory muscles and fibrosis of the lung may cause retraction because of disuse

3 *Disease of the Lungs:* Pulmonary atelectasis, chronic interstitial pneu-

monia, plugging of a bronchus, or retraction of the lung from any cause may produce unilateral retraction

4 *Disease of the Spine:* The spinal column may be arched forward, backward or bent to either side. This condition may be caused either by disease of the vertebral structures or by their faulty development. The arching of the spine produces a general distortion of the thorax in the same direction. Such distortions are classified as follows

(a) *Kyphosis*, bending backwards of the spine (hunchback)

(b) *Scoliosis*, lateral spinal curvature. The spine may be bent towards either one side or the other, causing a distinct deformity of the ribs



Fig 34—Kyphoscoliosis with lordosis.

(c) *Lordosis*, a forward bending of the spine with anterior chondral deformity

(d) *Kyphoscoliosis*, a combination of lateral and posterior spinal curvature (spinal curve)

The superficial lines and landmarks are practically valueless in a distorted chest caused by spinal deformities because the viscera do not retain their normal relations to the chest wall.

**Local Irregularities** Local irregularities may consist of bulgings or depressions in any portion of the chest



Fig. 35—Multiple myeloma.

**Local bulgings** are readily recognized by inspection; they may be caused by

(a) Tumors and cysts of the soft tissues covering the chest wall by a bony prominence due to a badly united fracture or by some bone disease or tumor of a bony or cartilaginous structure

(b) Aneurysm of the aorta or other large vessel

(c) Empyema which has burrowed its way to the surface

(d) Mediastinal tumors or greatly enlarged mediastinal glands causing bulging or necrosis of a bone

(e) Local infections (abscess or boil on the chest wall)

(f) Hernia of the chest wall with protrusion of a portion of some viscus (lung)

(g) Localized emphysema

(h) Upward extension of a subdiaphragmatic abscess burrowing its way to the surface of the chest

(i) Greatly enlarged liver or spleen

(j) Rachitic deformities

(l) Pleural effusions (in children)

(l) Hypertrophied heart (particularly in children and young people)

**Local depressions** may be caused by

(a) Wasting of a muscle from any cause

(b) A broken bone

(c) A very prominent clavicle, giving rise to deepening of the supra- and infra-clavicular fossae



Fig. 36—Aneurysm of aortic arch (See p. 531)

(d) Localized pulmonary tuberculosis may cause a depression of the overlying portion of the chest wall; the affected portion of the lung is unable to expand and retract that part of the chest wall and because of disuse and external

atmospheric pressure the wall sinas A large superficial cavity of the lung pulmonary atelectasis or pleural adhesions may also cause local depression for the same reason

(c) Rachitic deformities



Fig 37—Aneurysm of thoracic aorta

#### IV Respiratory Movements

The respiratory movements may be pathologically altered in (I) Type (II) Amount of chest expansion (III) Rate and (IV) Rhythm

**I Type** The two types of normal respiration namely supracostal in women and infracostal—a mixed costo abdominal—in men have already been described (SEE p 233)

**Exaggerated bilateral superior costal breathing** in women if not due to emotion or excitement may be caused by unusual enlargement of the pregnant uterus or by large ovarian tumors as well as by the same conditions which cause superior costal breathing in men

**Superior costal breathing** in men may be due to inflammatory conditions of the diaphragm or paralysis of the diaphragm preventing its descent during inspiration Other causes are ascites Enlarged liver or spleen or an overloaded stomach which mechanically obstructs the descent of the diaphragm acute peritonitis producing rigidity of the abdominal muscles which in turn prevents lower costal expansion Bilateral pleural effusion and large pericardial effusion It will be noted that the superior costal breathing in men or abnormal exaggeration in women is due to greater activity of the



Fig 38—Aneurysm of the thoracic aorta.

upper lobes of the lungs and can be summed up as follows

1 Improper descent of the diaphragm from any cause thus throwing the greatest amount of work upon the upper lobes of the lungs and upon the upper accessory muscles of respiration

2 Compression of the lower lobes thus forcing the upper lobes to do compensatory work

3 Acute peritonitis preventing upper abdominal expansion so that all the respiratory work must be carried on by the upper lobes alone

**Restricted bilateral chest expansion, or increased costoabdominal respiration** is caused by some pathological condition in the upper lobes of the lungs preventing their proper expansion consequently the work of respiration must then be carried on by the lower lobes. Among the causes responsible for this condition may be mentioned

(a) Acute pleurisy in the upper thoracic cavity

(b) Broken ribs (upper four)

(c) Intercostal neuralgia herpes zoster and radiculitis producing involuntary rigidity of the chest thus causing greater abdominal movement

(d) Pericardial effusion

(e) Upper mediastinal tumors

(f) Aneurysm of the aorta (if very large)

(g) Pleural adhesive bands compressing the upper lobes and finally

(h) Disease (consolidation or cavity) of both upper lobes

**Increased abdominal respiration** in infants may be caused by pleurisy or lobar pneumonia or by Potts disease (caries of the vertebrae)

**Diminished abdominal respiratory movements or increased costal movements** may be caused by acute peritonitis or by colic

**II Chest Expansion** Normally both sides of the chest expand equally on inspiration though the right side has a somewhat greater expansion than the left. *Pathologically* the following changes may occur

A Bilateral { Increase } of expansion  
                  { Diminution }

B Unilateral { Absence } of expansion  
                  { Increase }  
                  { Diminution }

C Local { Increase } of expansion  
                  { Diminution }

D Wavy expansion

E Inspiratory retraction

**A Bilateral** 1 **Bilateral increase of chest expansion** during inspiration occurs only as a result of compensatory emphysema. The upper part of the chest may compensate for the lower or *vice versa*. Increased respiratory expansion of the whole thorax is usually a sign of health rather than disease because any disease of the respiratory organs will cause a diminished amount of expansion.

2 **Bilateral diminution of chest expansion** during inspiration may be due to

(a) **Disease of the chest wall** such as paralysis of the chest muscles or excessive ossification of the thoracic joints preventing proper play of the ribs and sternum. Intercostal neuralgia paroxysmal pain in the intercostal muscles, pleurodynia and painful wounds on the surface of the chest will cause voluntary suppression of expansion.

(b) **Disease of the pleura and diaphragm** generalized pleural thickening and pleural adhesions inflammatory conditions or paralysis of the diaphragm.

(c) **Disease of the lungs and bronchi** pulmonary tuberculosis (advanced) fibrinous phthisis pneumoconiosis and carcinoma and thickened pleura foreign body in the bronchi or laryngeal obstruction. Since chest expansion is caused by the rapid interchange of a normal amount of air in the lung any

condition that interferes with either the entrance of air into the lungs or its exit, will of necessity cause diminished expansion

(d) *Chronic emphysema* In this condition the lung vesicles are overstretched and the vesicular walls have lost their elasticity. The chest is larger than the normal, but respiratory expansion is almost nil, because the patient walks about with as much expansion as he can possibly have. He is practically in the act of constantly harboring a deep breath. Inspiration brings only the accessory muscles of respiration into play, producing an up and down movement of the chest instead of expansion. Expiration cannot force the normal quantity of air from the lungs because of the inelasticity of the vesicular walls.

(e) *Chronic fibroid phthisis* In this condition the air vesicles are depressed and often filled with fibrous tissue, which encroaches upon the aerating surface and reduces the air space within the lungs, thereby causing diminished expansion. Partial obstruction or spasmodic contraction of the trachea will cause diminished expansion, because it interferes with the entrance and exit of air to and from the lungs.

**B Unilateral.** 1 *Unilateral increase of chest expansion* is caused by compensatory emphysema due to disease of the opposite lung.

2 *Unilateral diminution of chest expansion* may be caused by

(a) *Pathological conditions of the chest wall* which include pleurodynia, painful condition of the chest wall caused either by a broken rib or an inflammatory focus in the soft structures, or, reflexly, from other parts of the chest wall, the abdomen, or the spinal nerves

(b) *Pathological conditions of the pleura* which may include a thickened pleura, small pleural effusions, localized empyema, or chronic adhesive pleurisy.

(c) *Pathological conditions of the lung substance* such as a small consolidation caused by bronchopneumonia, early tuberculosis, specific disease, malignancy, neoplasms in the lung (i.e., tumors, cyst, aneurysm), pulmonary infarcts and small atelectatic areas.

(d) *Pathologic conditions of the bronchi*, such as a foreign body, constriction, tumor or a plug of mucus.

(e) *Combination of any two or three pathological conditions operative in the same case*, such as an injury due to a broken rib or contusion of the soft parts, or the simultaneous occurrence of developmental peculiarities.

3 *Absence of unilateral expansion* may be caused by a large pleural effusion either of blood or pus or by pneumothorax, massive consolidations, or the plugging of a bronchus with subsequent collapse of the lung, also by pulmonary atelectasis and compression or retraction of the lung.

**C Local.** 1 *Local increase of respiratory expansion* is caused by local compensatory emphysema; i.e., a portion of lung is assuming the work of an adjacent part which has been "put out of commission." This condition may occur in a part of the lung adjacent to a consolidation, above a pleural effusion near an atelectatic area near a lung compressed by a new growth. *Circumscribed expansion* may be due to a large superficial cavity. *Expansion of the intercostal spaces* during expiration is often seen in old cases of severe emphysema or during an asthmatic attack. A lung hernia may at times cause protrusion during deep inspiration.

2 *Local diminution of respiratory expansion* may be caused by local consolidation, solid tumor, aneurysm, or a large gland compressing a portion of lung, encapsulated liquid effusion, deep seated cavity in the lung, and localized pulmonary atelectasis. *Diminished expansion at the apices* usually indicates consolidation or fibrosis of the lung apices. *Delayed expansion at one or both apices* is an early sign of pulmonary tuberculosis.

It is important to note the difference between *diminished expansion* and *delayed expansion*.

(a) *Diminished expansion*. By this is meant that the portion of the chest wall so affected does not attain the same degree of expansion during inspiration as does the corresponding portion on the opposite side. This is often seen over areas of consolidation of the lung, chronic fibrosis of the lung, tumors in the lung, pleuro-pericardial adhesions, in fact, any condition that displaces the normal air with an airless substance will cause diminished expansion.

(b) *Delayed expansion* means that the portion of the chest wall so affected does not expand as rapidly as the corresponding portion of the chest wall on the opposite side, but eventually the affected portion attains the same degree of expansion as does the opposite normal side. This condition is found in mild infiltrations of the lung and slightly thickened pleura, it is usually indicative of incipient manifest pulmonary tuberculosis.

Diminished expansion is likely also to be delayed; that is the affected portion begins its inspiratory expansion somewhat later than the sound portion, it rises less rapidly and does not expand to the same extent as does the healthy portion on the opposite side.

D *Wavy Expansion*. Wavy expansion is at times noted over a limited portion of the thorax during the first and third stages of lobar pneumonia and in the massive bronchopneumonias. In these conditions there are patches of compensatory air vesicles adjacent to consolidated areas which cause sections of the thorax to expand irregularly, thus producing a wavy effect.

E *Inspiratory Retraction*. Normally, during the first half of the inspiratory act, retraction of the intercostal spaces is noted in the lower portions of the axillary and infraaxillary regions, in the second half of the inspiratory act the intercostal spaces flatten out and are on the same plane as the ribs. Pathologically the lower intercostal spaces remain depressed during the entire respiratory act and in severe cases the retraction becomes more marked during forced inspiration. This phenomenon occurs as a result of bronchial obstruction which prevents the lung from becoming fully inflated. The location of the area thus affected often indicates the seat of obstruction.

1 *Inspiratory retraction of the supra-sternal notch* indicates laryngeal obstruction, often seen in membranous or diphtheritic croup (laryngeal diphtheria), laryngismus stridulus, the lodgment of a foreign body in the larynx, compression of the larynx by an aortic aneurysm, enlarged gland, retropharyngeal abscess, enlarged thymus gland, or a spasmodic contraction of the larynx due to any cause.

2 *Inspiratory retraction of the infra-sternal notch* is often seen in attacks of asthma, orthopnea and also in the above named conditions.

3 *Bilateral inspiratory intercostal retraction* of the entire thorax results from

partial obstruction of the trachea above its bifurcation

4 *Unilateral inspiratory intercostal retraction* is caused by the partial obstruction of a primary bronchus

5 *Local inspiratory intercostal retraction* is due to partial obstruction of one of the smaller bronchi. The lesion which brings about bronchial obstruction may either be situated within the lumen of the tube, or it may cause compression from without

6 *Inspiratory bulging* above the clavicles and in the second and third intercostal spaces near the sternum is noted at times in moderately young individuals suffering from chronic emphysema

7 *Expiratory bulging* of the intercostal spaces and the supraclavicular regions is frequently seen in cases of emphysema and asthma because the inflated lung is not readily emptied during costal depression. Large pulmonary cavities with adherent walls will often cause local expiratory bulging when all intercostal spaces excepting those overlying the cavity collapse so that the pressure of the ribs against the lung causes the cavity to bulge; this in turn produces distention of the overlying intercostal spaces. This condition can be brought out more prominently by comparison of the affected area with the normally retracted intercostal spaces. In advanced pulmonary tuberculosis forced inspiration will often cause expiratory bulging of the upper intercostal spaces

Inspiratory retraction and expiratory expansion of the lower intercostal muscles is sometimes noted in long standing cases of pleural effusion. It indicates weakening and relaxation of the intercostal muscles

**Local Pulsations and Enlarged Veins** (See p 396)

**Edema** The chest wall often becomes edematous in cases of general anasarca, most noticeably upon the dependent portions of the thorax. Inflammatory areas and portions of the thorax from which the circulation has been cut off often present local edema. Urticaria and angioneurotic edema may affect the thorax in a manner similar to that of any other portion of the body. This condition may be differentiated by its evanescence, discolorations and the severe itching which accompanies it

**Litten's Diaphragmatic Phenomenon Sign** To elicit this sign the patient is placed supine, his chest bared, his hands clasped above his head and his feet pointing towards a window or any other good illumination, so that the light over his feet strikes obliquely from this single source. The examiner stands at one side and a short distance from the patient with his back to the light. When the patient breathes deeply a vermicular movement of a narrow shadow may be observed in the infraaxillary region from the seventh to the ninth or tenth intercostal spaces, which descends with inspiration and ascends during expiration. This shadow corresponds to the diaphragmatic action, during inspiration the diaphragm in its descent separates itself from the inner surface of the thoracic wall in each successive interspace thus forming a vacuum. This vacuum is soon filled in by the lower portion of the lung which travels in the wake of the diaphragm and rapidly obliterates the intercostal depressions. Expiration causes this shadow to move upward but this movement is not always visible. This phenomenon is always observed in healthy persons who are not too stout, and who can relax themselves so com-



pletely as to take full inspirations when directed to do so

The absence of this sign on both sides may be caused by bilateral pleural effusion chronic emphysema fibroid phthisis and in fact any condition that would interfere with bilateral expansion

Absence of this phenomenon on one side only may be caused by pleural effusion consolidation of the lung and pleural adhesions Extensive tumor for

Pain, (b) febrile disease (c) disease of the respiratory system (d) cardiac disease, (e) disease of the abdominal viscera, (f) irritation of the respiratory center, (g) disease of the diaphragm (h) disease of the blood (i) disease of the kidneys (j) certain constitutional diseases as acidosis (k) poisoning by certain drugs, (l) hysteria and other nervous conditions, (m) chest deformities, and (n) atmospheric conditions



Fig 39—Watch glass for diaphragmatic phenomenon (Litten's sign)

mation below the diaphragm and very large ascitic collections may also be evidenced by the absence of this sign because these conditions may interfere with the descent of the diaphragm

This sign is of importance at times in differentiating a right sided liquid pleural effusion from a subdiaphragmatic abscess or an enlarged liver Its absence may indicate pleural effusion

**III Respiratory Rate** The normal respiratory rate in men is 18 to 20 per minute in women 20 to 22 in the newborn from 40 to 50 and at the fifth year of life about 26 per minute The respiratory rate may be accelerated or retarded as a result of certain pathological conditions

**Hyperpnea** An increased respiratory rate may occur as a result of (a)

(a) Pain in any part of the thorax or abdomen which increases during respiration will cause respiration to be rapid and shallow in order to disturb the affected muscles as little as possible This is often seen in cases of intercostal neuralgia broken ribs painful wounds of chest and upper abdomen herpes zoster pleurodynia pleurisy myalgia perostitis and arthritis affecting the thoracic articulation Acute peritonitis colic either hepatic or renal Dietl's crisis gastric ulcer carcinoma of stomach in the later stages or gumma of the mediastinum or of the sternum may all cause pain which will increase the respiratory rate

(b) Febrile diseases irrespective of etiology because of increased oxidation produce rapid respiration excepting in the early stages of meningitis and in

certain terminal conditions. In most instances, the respiratory rate does however, increase in proportion to the severity of the fever. In extreme pyrexia the respiratory rate may equal 30 to 40 per minute, in children 50 to 60, even in the absence of lung complications.

(c) *In diseases of the respiratory system*, the respiratory rate is increased out of proportion to the temperature and pulse rate. This is usually due to mechanical obstruction to the interchange of gases in the lungs and to toxins formed in the blood which act upon the respiratory center. The pneumonias and pulmonary tuberculosis are examples of a combination of both conditions. Acute and chronic lung diseases, other than those mentioned, bronchial obstruction by tumor or disease of the bronchial tubes, atelectasis, bronchiectasis, pleural effusions of air, pus or other fluid, plastic pleurisy, mediastinal tumor, i.e., aneurysm, Hodgkin's disease, or enlarged mediastinal gland and emphysema cause increased rapidity of respiration.

In chronic pulmonary diseases where no actual obstruction is present the respiratory rate may not be greatly accelerated. Its rapidity often depends upon the nutrition of the patient. Stout persons afflicted with pulmonary tuberculosis usually breathe faster than do emaciated ones who suffer a similar lesion, because the emaciated patient possesses a smaller quantity of blood than does the stout one, so that a smaller quantity of oxygen is required for decarbonization. An acute infection superimposed upon a chronic pulmonary disease, i.e., emphysema, bronchiectasis, etc., always accelerates the respiratory rate.

(d) *Cardiac Diseases*. Next to diseases of the respiratory system, disease of the heart is the most prominent cause

for rapid respiration, the rapidity of the respiratory rate being directly proportionate to the damage suffered by the heart muscle (Valvular heart disease, cardiac arrhythmia, tachycardia, myocardial degeneration, either fatty, syphilitic or arteriosclerotic, and pericardial effusions usually increase the respiratory rate even when the heart muscle is not badly damaged. This is because any one of these defects forces the heart to greater effort in order to bring the required quantity of blood to the lungs within the normal time for oxygenation, therefore, increased cardiac rapidity usually results in an increased respiratory rate, this is particularly true when an extra effort such as hopping, fast walking, running or when any physical or mental strain is undergone by the patient.

When the heart muscle is weak and can no longer compensate for a defective valve or other abnormal condition, overfilling of the pulmonary circulation or pulmonary stasis takes place, and aeration becomes difficult. In order to overcome this stagnation, the lungs attempt to bring as much oxygen in contact with the blood, and to carry away as much carbon dioxide in as short a time as possible, thus causing rapid breathing, and in advanced cases of myocardial weakness, dyspnea and often, orthopnea will result. The rapid breathing in such cases is also due to the accumulation of large amounts of carbon dioxide in the blood stream and this gas has a distinctly stimulating effect upon the respiratory center.

(e) *Diseases of the Abdominal Organs*. Ascites, very large liver and spleen, greatly enlarged kidney, due either to tumor (hypernephroma), hydro- or pyonephrosis, ovarian tumor, large pregnancy, distended bowel, tym

panting or any condition in the abdomen which causes the diaphragm to be pressed upward into the chest cavity and limiting its movements will cause rapid and shallow breathing.

(f) *Irritation of the Respiratory Center* Tumors of the brain, cerebral hemorrhage and meningitis may at times cause rapid breathing. It is then often also irregular as to fullness and frequency.

(g) *Disease of the Diaphragm* Diaphragmatitis, subdiaphragmatic abscess, diaphragmatic hernia and evisceration, partial paralysis of the diaphragm and in fact any condition of the diaphragm that prevents its contraction and relaxation will produce rapid and shallow breathing.

(h) *Diseases of the Blood* All forms of anemia, either primary or secondary, will cause rapid breathing, the greater the anemia, everything being equal, the greater the respiratory rate. In anemia the oxygen-carrying units of the blood are greatly reduced, thus requiring more frequent visits to the source of oxygen; the consequent accelerated circulation induces an increased respiratory rate.

(i) *Diseases of the Kidney* Acute diseases of the kidney cause increased respiratory rate because of toxins retained in the blood. Chronic diseases of the kidney may cause rapid breathing and dyspnea because of the accompanying anuria, retained toxins in the blood, and in some forms of kidney disease because of ascites, pleural effusions and edema. In chronic nephritis there may occur at times a retention of acids such as sodium acid phosphate which leads to acidosis and its accompanying hyperpnea.

(j) *Constitutional Diseases* Such constitutional diseases which cause ca-

chexia, anemia, emaciation, pyrexia or brain disorders will often produce more rapid breathing. Graves disease, chronic malaria, diabetes, syphilis, malignant disease, pyemia, etc. are among the constitutional diseases that may eventually cause hyperpnea or dyspnea.

(k) *Poisoning by Drugs* Strychnine, atropine, alcohol, ether, the coal tar derivatives and most of the respiratory and cardiac stimulants when administered in an overdose will cause hyperpnea.

(l) *Functional Nervous Conditions* Those suffering from hysteria, neurasthenia and other functional nervous conditions are subject to rapid respiration on the least provocation.

(m) *Chest Deformities* Persons with rachitic chest deformity, pigeon breast, scoliosis, kyphosis, lordosis or other disease have a rapid respiratory rate because of lung compression, the chest cavity not being sufficiently large to permit proper lung expansion.

(n) *Atmospheric Conditions* Close, stuffy rooms, bad air, diminished amount of oxygen in the inspired air, poisonous gases, irritating vapors or other respiratory irritants cause hyperpnea. High altitudes and caisson work produce an increased respiratory rate, often of such severity as to cause dyspnea.

**Dyspnea, Rapid and Difficult Breathing** Dyspnea may be *subjective* and *objective*.

*Subjective Dyspnea* The person thus suffering is usually of a nervous type and complains of difficulty in catching his breath and of a sense of weight and constriction over the precordium or epigastrium. In reality the respiratory rate is not increased nor is there any difficulty of inspiration and expiration, only occasionally a deep breath is being taken.

by the patient. This condition is not true dyspnea, it is a type of air hunger.

*Objective or true dyspnea* consists of rapid and difficult breathing which may occur both during inspiration and expiration or during either act. The patient is usually somewhat cyanosed, keeping his mouth open, the lips and tongue are dry, and the nostrils dilate with each respiration, the respirations are short, rapid, and difficult, and the accessory muscles have to be brought into action on the least exertion.

This condition may be caused by heart lesions after failure of compensation. It is also seen in severe emphysema, chronic bronchitis, pneumonia, extensive pleural effusion, large abdominal effusions, in enormous hypertrophy of the liver or spleen, or in any condition that seriously interferes with respiration and circulation.

*Inspiratory dyspnea* or difficulty in getting air into the lungs occurs as a result of obstruction of the trachea by a foreign body, a tumor, or an aneurysm of the ascending aortic arch or subclavian artery, spasmodic contraction of the larynx, membranous croup, paralysis of the posterior cricoarytenoid muscle (dilators of the glottis), diseases of the lungs: *e.*, edema, pneumonia, advanced tuberculosis (particularly in children), sudden collapse of one lung due to pneumothorax, large aneurysm, extensive pericardial effusion and in extreme cases of kyphoscoliosis.

*Expiratory dyspnea* is characterized by a prolonged labored expiration, followed by difficult inspiration, the face is cyanosed, the eyeballs are bulging and the abdominal muscles become rigid in their effort to assist in expiration. This condition may occur as a result of a movable tumor situated below the

glottis and having a valvular action, the outgoing air pushing it against the rima glottidis, thus causing obstruction, while the incoming air pushes it to one side, thus allowing unobstructed inspiration.

Chronic emphysema and bronchial asthma are prominent causes of expiratory dyspnea. The lung vesicles having lost their elasticity cannot recoil properly and therefore require the aid of the accessory muscles of expiration. This condition often results in inspiratory dyspnea, because of the prolonged time required to empty the lungs of their air content, a fresh supply of air is quickly needed, and rapid forcible inspirations result.

*Orthopnea (Inability to Breathe Except in an Upright Position)* The respiratory rate may be rapid or slow. The patient has to brace himself in order to breathe. All the accessory muscles of respiration are forcibly brought into play, the patient being compelled to assume a sitting or standing posture, he is cyanosed, wears an anxious expression and has to struggle for each cubic inch of air he inhales and exhales.

This condition is seen in grave cardiac diseases after failure of compensation, bronchial and cardiac asthma, severe cases of emphysema, pneumonia or edema of the lungs. Any condition that causes dyspnea, if not remedied may eventually lead to orthopnea.

Paroxysmal dyspnea leading to orthopnea is seen during attacks of angina pectoris, bronchial, cardiac and renal asthma or spasmodic croup. It may also be caused by a tumor or an aneurysm pressing upon the trachea or bronchus.

*Hypopnea (Oligopnea, Bradypnea), Retarded Breathing and Slow Breathing* The respiratory rate may become as slow as six, eight or ten per

minute, and respirations may be very shallow or abnormally deep. Hypopnea is usually accompanied by a slow pulse, though in some conditions the pulse rate may be high and the respiratory rate low. Malingering should be excluded before one comes to the conclusion that a patient has hypopnea, because the respiratory rate may to some extent be voluntarily controlled.

#### *Conditions Causing Hypopnea*

(a) *Cerebral compression*, such as a depressed fracture of the skull, cerebral pontine or meningeal hemorrhage, cerebral or cerebellar tumors or abscess, gumma of the meninges, foreign body in the brain due to a gunshot wound or osteomata of the cranium, it also occurs during the early stages of certain forms of meningitis.

(b) *Drug Poisoning*. Poisoning by opium and its derivatives by chloral, aconite, antimony, the coal tar hypnotics, i.e., veronal, sulfonal, trional, medinal, and acetanilid, by the barbiturates, by chloroform, alcohol, and digitalis is manifested by abnormal retardation of breathing.

(c) *Shock and collapse*, whether due to injury, fright, the sudden onset of an acute illness, excessive loss of blood, excessive diarrhea or surgical operation, fainting or other psychic disturbances, are likely to cause hypopnea.

(d) *Constitutional Diseases*. Uremia may at times produce deep and retarded respirations, or very slow and shallow respiration. In some patients suffering from a constitutional disease, the respiratory rate is normal, and in others not infrequently the breathing may be very fast. The difference in the respiratory rate probably depends upon the extent of the toxicity of the blood and its effect upon the respiratory center in

the medulla. Diabetes mellitus, with impending coma, often produces slow and very deep breathing (air hunger), "Kussmaul's type of breathing."

This peculiar type of respiration which precedes the onset of diabetic coma was first described by Kussmaul in 1874 "and to the clinical picture as he portrayed it," says Foster,<sup>1</sup> "little if anything has been added." The respiratory movements are long and deep, involving all the muscles, and suggest in the inspiratory phase the 'long breath that precedes a yawn.' The expiration appears more complete than normal even forced. With this there may be increase in the respiratory rate, which, however, is usually from sixteen to twenty per minute. The German term 'Grosse Atmung' is exactly descriptive.

"Kussmaul's air hunger," a very similar type of breathing is observed in states of extreme acidosis, or in the patients suffering from excessive loss of blood, as in postpartum hemorrhage or ruptured ectopic pregnancy.

(e) *Functional Nervous Diseases*. Hysteria, epilepsy, catalepsy and trance are characterized by partial suspension of animation, with consequent retardation of breathing.

(f) *Painful conditions of the chest* often compel the patient to withhold his respiration as long as possible.

(g) *Chronic obstruction of the larynx and trachea* and chronic emphysema (when the patient is at rest) may cause hypopnea.

(h) *Chronic fibrosis of the lungs* (fibroid phthisis) is often a prenatal cause which will produce hypopnea after birth.

(i) *Calcious bronchial glands* in children may cause a respiratory rate of

<sup>1</sup> Foster N. B. Diabetes Mellitus, J. B. Lippincott Co. 1915.

10 to 12 per minute, the pulse is rapid and the child will usually be found to be undernourished. When the gland is absorbed, or becomes fibrotic, a normal respiratory rate will be established and at times hyperpnea will replace the previously existing hypopnea.

(j) During the early stages of certain forms of meningitis the respiratory rate becomes slow.

**IV Respiratory Rhythm** Normally inspiration bears a definite relation to expiration, the two acts being separated by a pause. The respiratory movements occur regularly and rhythmically.

*Pathologically*, either inspiration, expiration, or both may be altered in length and duration.

**Abnormalities of Rhythm** 1 Sighing (or hunger) a very deep inspiration followed by rapid or broken expiration may result from habit particularly in nervous individuals or from diminished oxidation of the blood, as in partial asphyxia or acidosis. It occurs as forerunner of diabetic and uremic coma, and occasionally in gallbladder disease.

2 Abnormally shallow and at times irregular breathing is seen in collapse and terminal stages of pulmonary tuberculosis and in acute pulmonary disease.

3 Abnormally deep and irregular respiration is seen in late stages of pulmonary tuberculosis, diabetes, cerebral disease and acidosis.

4 Spasmodic and jerky inspiration and expiration is seen in pleurodynia and pleurisy.

5 Increase in length of inspiration is seen in obstruction of the upper air passages.

6 Shortened inspiration ending in an expiratory grunt is seen in lobar pneumonia.

7 Increased length of expiration is seen in asthmatic breathing (and pneumonia).

8 Lengthened respiratory pause is seen in emphysematous breathing and in oligopnea.

9 Stridulous breathing, i.e. high pitched, barking, crowing or lussing sounds heard during inspiration may be caused by obstruction of the glottis (internal or external). It also occurs in spasm of the glottis, i.e. croup, laryngismus stridulus and at the time of a paroxysm in whooping cough.

10 *Cheyne-Stokes breathing* is an arrhythmical type of breathing which follows a fixed cycle: the respiratory movements becoming gradually slower until they finally cease. After a short pause the respiratory movements again commence, at first slowly, gradually increasing in depth and frequency until they become dyspneic. They then gradually become slower and shallower and cease only to start another cycle. In other words they are paroxysms of dyspnea followed and succeeded by periods of apnea. This is seen in cases of central nervous diseases, in coma and in toxic states, also normally in the aged and in infancy.

11 *Sternomastoid Breathing or Head nodding Breathing*. Respirations are irregular and gasping accompanied by a guttural inspiratory sound. The chin is thrown quickly upward during inspiration and falls slowly during expiration. This type of respiration may be seen in cases where death is imminent.

12 *Meningeal breathing* (Biot's) is an irregular arrhythmical type of breathing resembling the Cheyne Stokes type, but unlike the latter it follows no definite cycle. The periods of apnea and

hyperpnea are irregular in duration and time. Two or three respirations may occur in quick succession, followed by a very long pause. During this pause the patient's muscles relax, the lower jaw drops and the patient appears as if dead. Muscle tone rapidly returns with the

next few respirations. This type of breathing is seen in the terminal stage of meningitis, particularly in tuberculous meningitis. In old asthmatic cases with myocardial degeneration, Biot's type of respiration is often observed several hours before death.

## CHAPTER XI

### Physical Examination of the Respiratory System by Palpation

Palpation is the act of examining an underlying organ by feeling with any part of the hand the overlying surface and is usually the second step in a physical examination. It is especially important in the examination of the thorax because it not only confirms or disproves the results of inspection but also reveals certain physical signs that cannot be obtained by any other method.

#### Technic

In order to be of value in a physical examination palpation must be conducted systematically and with a definite object in mind. In other words one must know how to palpate and have a definite reason for so doing.

**General Rules** 1 The examiner must gain the confidence of the patient and make him or her feel entirely at ease. Self consciousness will invariably cause muscular contractions and rigidity thereby making palpation worthless. A few friendly words and not too brusque a manner on the part of the physician will usually suffice to produce the desired relaxation.

2 The patient's chest is to be bared of all clothing.

3 The examiner is to assume at all times a perfectly natural and unconstrained position.

4 The examiner's hands should be warm and dry, a cold clammy hand applied to a warm body will be sure to produce reflex contraction of the muscles and greatly mar the results to be obtained by palpation.

5 By the same token the fingernails should not be long or sharp and the hands should at all times be kept as attractive looking as possible. Rings because they interfere with the tactile sense should not be worn.

6 The hands should be applied lightly but firmly so as to avoid unnecessary tickling of the skin or hurting of the part. Pressure may gradually be increased if the case requires it.

7 The patient is to assume an unconstrained position either standing sitting or lying. The arms must lie in a natural position and no part of the body under examination should be held rigid because undue restraint may cause apparent asymmetries.

8 Corresponding parts on the opposite sides of the body should always be compared.

#### Palpating Respiratory Movements

Slight differences of the respiratory expansion between opposite sides may not be appreciated by the eye but will be detected readily by the trained hand. The examiner should lose no opportunity to cultivate as acute a tactile sense as possible and constantly endeavor to develop it still further.

Palpation should be practiced first during ordinary breathing and later during forced respiration.

**Anteroposterior Expansion** The palmar surface of one hand is applied anteriorly over the upper part of the thorax the other hand being applied over the posterior aspect at the same



plane the fingers separated as far as possible without straining them. The patient standing or sitting with his shoulder pointing towards the front of the examiner is instructed to breathe naturally several times and then to breathe deeply. The degree of chest ex-



Fig 1—Palpating for anteroposterior chest expansion

pansion can thus be judged in this plane.

**Lateral Expansion** The examiner places his hands in the patient's axillae while the patient breathes and the gross expansion of both sides is carefully noted. The expansion of the upper axilla should be compared with that of the lower axillary region on the same side. This is to be followed by simultaneously comparing the expansion of the corresponding regions on both sides. It should be borne in mind that the expansion in the infraaxillary region on the right side particularly from the eighth rib downward is limited because the liver occupies that position. The same holds true but to a lesser extent, of the left lower side which is occupied by the

spleen and fundus of the stomach.

**Apices of the Lungs Anteriorly** (supraclavicular fossae) The examiner lightly fits into each supraclavicular space as many of the finger tips of one hand as he can conveniently place there making use of his hands on either side according to his position.

When the examiner stands in front of the patient the fingers of his right hand are to palpate the patient's left supraclavicular region and the fingers of the left hand are to palpate the patient's right supraclavicular region. When the examiner stands in back of the patient the fingers of his right hand are to palpate the patient's right supraclavicular space and the fingers of the



Fig 2—Palpating for lateral chest expansion and tactile fremitus.

left hand are to palpate the patient's left supraclavicular space.

The examiner may stand either in front of his patient or behind him. The latter position is best adapted for handling patients who are much taller than

the physician To palpate properly in this position the patient should sit upon a convenient chair slightly supported by the back of the chair and his arms hanging loosely or his forearms resting upon his thighs The examiner stands behind him while palpating Care should



Fig 3—Palpating apices of lungs noting expansion and tactile vocal fremitus

be taken that no portion of the examiner's hands rests upon any part of the patient's body except the part under examination

**Posteriorly** The part under examination (apex) faces the examiner the finger tips being lightly placed above the spines of the scapulae

It is of great importance to detect any delayed and diminished expansion anteriorly or posteriorly at one or the other apex Such delay or diminution of the expansion may mean a diseased condition of the pleura or the apex of that lung Pulmonary tuberculosis usually first manifests itself at the apex of the lung

**Infraclavicular and Mammary Regions** The examiner stands in front of the patient his hands are applied nearly

perpendicularly to the ribs both hands being applied simultaneously one to either side When in doubt as to the preponderance of expansion of one side over the other the examiner's hands may be crossed the right hand applied to the right side of the chest and the left hand to the left side the examiner facing the patient

**Infrascapular Regions** The patient's back confronts the examiner The hands are applied so that the flexor surfaces of the wrists nearly meet the fingers pointing horizontally outward resting in the intercostal spaces Palpation in this region which is appreciated more by the palm than by the fingers is a valuable adjunct in detecting pleural effusions and consolidation both condi-



Fig 4—Palpating anterior aspect of chest for chest expansion and tactile fremitus

tions being made conspicuous by the absence of respiratory expansion though they can be differentiated by the absence or presence of vocal fremitus

To determine with a fair degree of accuracy the amount of expansion of

either lower lateral and posterior half of the chest the following technic should be observed

The patient stands or sits with his back toward the examiner, the examiner places his right hand on the patient's right side and his left hand on the left side the hands being so placed that the

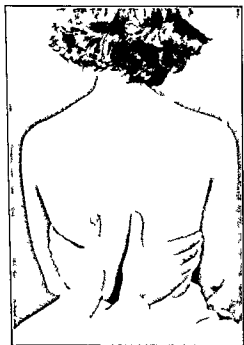


Fig 5—Method of noting expansion of bases of lungs

fingers extend well into the infraaxillary regions where they are held firmly. The palmar surface of the hand rests lightly and the thumb is held at right angle to the index finger and adjacent to the patient's spine. During inspiration the thumb recedes from the spinal column. The greater the expansion the further will be the separation of the thumbs. By comparing the distance of each thumb from the spine during inspiration the difference in the expansion of the two sides will readily be detected. (For the

significance of alteration of chest expansion see p 250)

### Purpose of Palpation

Palpation is employed for a double purpose. *First* to confirm or disprove certain impressions received by inspection and *second* to elicit physical signs that cannot be appreciated in any other way.

#### 1 Signs Confirming Inspection

The diagnostic importance of bulgings, depressions, skin rashes, scars, pulsations and respiratory movements may be emphasized through palpation.

**Bulging.** Inspection may reveal that a certain portion of the surface under examination is higher than its surrounding parts; such an elevation is known as a *bulging*. Bulgings may be caused by several conditions: A broken bone improperly set; an exostosis or congenital deformity of a bone; a tumor of the skin or adjacent parts; an aneurysm or a hernia of the lung; also by a greatly hypertrophied heart or a massive pleural effusion.

**Technic.** In order to determine the character of the bulging so as to arrive at a diagnosis, palpation should be employed in the following manner:

If the bulging is small and appears linear, it should be palpated by feeling the part with thumb, index and middle fingers. The thumb and middle finger are to rest respectively upon the superior and inferior edges of the elevation while the index finger rests upon its center. With the fingers in this position the hand is run several times across the elevation. By this procedure the conformity, consistency and sensitiveness of the part are easily determined. If the bulging is small and circumscribed one

should begin by feeling it with the index fingers of both hands. The mass is at first gently palpated at its extreme edge with each index finger. If it is found to be hard, it should be grasped firmly and a gentle attempt made to dislodge it. This is done in order to ascertain its degree of mobility. A mass which is freely movable with its skin is most likely a superficial tumor or a cyst. If the mass is slightly movable and the skin moves over it a deep seated non-inflammatory tumor may be suspected. If the mass is immobile and very hard, it is probably a bony tumor. A slightly yielding immobile tumor may be due to a deep seated aneurysm or malignant growth. A tumor that can be reduced and reappears after coughing is probably a lung hernia, these tumors are rare are self reducible and usually occur in the upper part of the chest close to the sternum or above the clavicle near its external articulation.

A large bulging should be palpated with the palm of the hand and fingers the latter being placed in the intercostal spaces. The patient is instructed to breathe deeply and then to cough. If the expansion is limited over that area, the bulging is most likely caused by an effusion. If the expansion is of greater extent compensatory emphysema or some condition of the chest other than that of the lung or pleura must be sought. A hypertrophied heart can be detected by its pulsation, etc. (SEE p 396)

**Depressions** Depressions are to be investigated in order to note whether they are actual or only *apparent*, be cause of an adjacent bony prominence. A very prominent clavicle will cause apparent supra and infraclavicular depressions, the same holds true of the

soft parts adjacent to prominent ribs, sternum scapula or spine. A depression should be gently palpated with one or two fingers so as to note the resistance of its floor. Greatly increased or diminished resistance is of pathologic importance, if the resistance of the depressions is equal to that of the adjacent



Fig 6—Position of examiner's fingers for detecting expansile pulsation.

parts of the thorax it is most likely a congenital malformation. The expansion and fremitus of such depressions should be studied further.

**Pulsations** (SEE p 396) The only pulsation palpable upon a normal thorax is the apex beat (fifth intercostal space about 1 cm. to the left of the midclavicular line). If a pulsation is visible in any other part of the chest, it should be palpated so as to determine its extent and character.

**Technic** Place the palm of one hand over the pulsating area and observe which part of the hand is being most forcibly struck, this indicates the

area of greatest intensity. Then place the tips of the first two or three fingers over that area and note the force, rhythm, rapidity and character. Pulsations may occur in the neck, suprasternal notch, above the clavicles, in the second and third interspaces on either side of the sternum, or in any part of



Fig. 7—Determining expansive pulsation

the chest. A linear pulsation is produced by an artery or vein. A circumscribed heaving or wavy impulse may be caused by an exposed auricle or displaced ventricle. An expansive pulsation is caused by an aneurysm; this should be confirmed by other signs which will be pointed out later.

A *concentrated impulse* which gradually shades off into a wavy undulating motion as it leaves the center, much like the wave circles caused by a pebble thrown in the water, is caused by a pulsating empyema or by the heart violently beating against some kind of encapsulated fluid.

Expansile pulsation is best determined by bunching all the finger tips of one hand as if to grasp a small object and placing them thus over the pulsating area. If it be expansive, the finger tips

will be gently but rhythmically forced apart. Expansile pulsation may also be determined by placing the index finger of each hand at the margins of the mass, separation of the fingers by the mass denotes expansive pulsation.

Palpation alone is not a very trustworthy method for determining the actual size, shape and symmetry of the chest. Its greatest value in this direction is to confirm inspection and mensuration, the latter method being practically an instrumental palpation. In the absence of measuring instruments, a general idea of the comparative size of either half of the chest may be obtained by noting how many fingerbreadths each side measures. Local irregularities, whether they be depressions or elevations, should always be palpated in order to determine their actual size and consistency.

## 2 Signs That Can Be Elicited Only by Palpation

The following can be determined only by palpation:

(a) The condition of the skin as to temperature, moisture, edema, and certain skin reflexes. (b) The elicitation of pain and tenderness, precise location, distribution and degree. (c) The position of the trachea. (d) The size, consistency, mobility, and condition of the glands and organs. (e) The presence or absence of resistance. (f) Tactile fremitus, vocal rhonchi, tussive friction and thrills. (g) The pulse. (h) Visible pulsation. (i) Study of the cardiac impulse.

(a) **Condition of the Skin Temperature.** While palpation for temperature is of course inexact and not especially valuable, it is well nevertheless to cultivate the thermic touch, because

the clinical thermometer may be broken or not at hand when it is most needed. The temperature of the body can be approximately estimated, the hands of the examiner being neither too cold nor too warm, by placing the palm of the palpating hand successively upon the forehead, the abdomen and in the axilla of the patient. If the local temperature is required, the part to be examined should be palpated first and then compared with the corresponding part on the opposite side. It is best to employ the same hand for both sides of the body, first one side then the other being palpated alternately.

Undue heat of the entire surface is due to fever, to excessively warm covering, or to contact with or exposure to heat. Local increase of temperature, if not caused by being in contact with some hot object or exposure to heat, may be due to inflammation, new growth or an acute abscess.

General coldness of the entire surface is caused by chills and rigor, cyanosis, poor capillary circulation, exposure to cold, and occurs during convalescence from an acute febrile disease such as pneumonia or typhoid fever, or may be due to shock and dissolution. Local coldness may be caused by thrombosis or emboli, vasomotor spasm, paralysis of a certain part, and exposure to cold.

**Moisture.** Moisture of the skin is readily recognized by the sense of touch, general moisture of the surface if not caused by immersion, may be due to external conditions, overheated room, hot and humid atmosphere, very heavy bedclothing, etc. The crisis of several diseases is ushered in by profuse perspiration. Malaria, septicæmia, and certain stages of pulmonary tuberculosis will cause generalized perspiration. Certain nervous conditions, vasomotor re-

flexes, excitement, fear, laborious exercise, and the use of certain drugs may produce sweating. Local moisture may be caused by some nerve phenomenon. Cold, clammy sweats are noticed in cases of hysteria, neurasthenia, exhaustion, poisoning by certain drugs and before death.

**Edema.** Generalized edema is usually due to cardiac or renal insufficiency, localized edema of the chest is rare, unless it is caused by some adjacent inflammation, or is postural. Angioneurotic edema may occur upon the chest wall as well as upon any other surface of the body. *Localized superficial emphysema* may be mistaken for edema. The former condition occurs as a result of a punctured wound in the lungs, spontaneous pneumothorax, pneumoperitoneum and pneumothorax artificially produced, causing air to escape into the subcutaneous tissue and give rise to localized "doughy" swellings. The skin does not pit on pressure, and on palpation gives the sensation of crackling or that of a rubber bag nearly filled with air. On auscultation, when the stethoscope is pressed firmly against the mass and the patient is instructed to move his muscles, a peculiar crackling sound can be heard.

**Skin Reflexes.** A line drawn across the chest with a thin object will cause a momentary anemia, which is soon followed by hyperemia. This is a normal vasomotor reaction. A white line that persists for two or three minutes before hyperemia sets in, is believed by Sergeant to be an indication of adrenal insufficiency (*Sergeant's line*).

**Pilomotor reflex** (Cohen) is brought out by irritating the skin with a coin or other object.

(b) **Pain and Tenderness.** These may be elicited by gently palpating the overlying surface. All inflamed areas are painful to touch. Pain may also be elicited by palpating over an inflamed nerve or its distribution in a muscle or the skin. Tenderness to palpation may be caused by deep seated inflammatory conditions. Pain and tenderness may indicate an aneurysm, broken rib peritonitis, disease of the soft parts, pleurisy, intercostal neuralgia, herpes zoster, radiculitis, disease of the lung, myocarditis, angina pectoris, sternal tenderness, etc. Referred pain and tenderness in the chest and over the sternum may arise from abdominal inflammatory disease and diaphragmatic inflammation.

(c) **Position of the Trachea.** Normally, the trachea is situated in the center of the neck corresponding to the mid sternal line, it descends into the chest in that position and can be felt in the suprasternal notch midway between the inner edges of both sternocleidomastoid muscles. In chronic tuberculosis and fibroid phthisis the trachea is pulled toward the affected side. The trachea may be pushed toward the normal side by an extensive pleural effusion or a pneumothorax, and it may also be displaced to either side by an aneurysm, mediastinal tumor or by a spinal deformity.

**Technic.** The examiner should stand in front of the patient and gently fit the inner surfaces of both thumbs or index fingers simultaneously between the trachea and its adjacent sternocleidomastoid muscle. The side which exhibits a smaller space between the trachea and its adjacent muscle is recognized as the side to which the trachea is drawn.

(d) **The Glands.** In the normal individual the superficial glands of the

body are so small that they cannot be palpated. There are, however, various diseases that produce glandular enlargement. The disease may be one that affects a group of glands *per se* for example as in lymphatic leukemia, Hodgkin's disease or glandular tuberculosis, or some gland may become enlarged secondary to disease elsewhere in the body as in syphilis, malignancy, tularemia and various other conditions local or general. When the glands are palpable the following points should be noted: Size, consistency, degree of mobility, tenderness and topographic distribution (also see Index, under Glands).

(e) **Resistance.** Normally, the various areas of the chest have a definite degree of resistance. *Increased resistance* of a portion of the chest indicates an altered condition of its underlying structures.

The resistance in the intercostal spaces is increased over a solid tumor, consolidation of the lung, a dense pleural effusion, chronic emphysema and local inflammatory conditions of the skin or muscle, elephantiasis and a very tense edema. In early cases of pulmonary tuberculosis, often even in the incipient stage, a certain amount of resistance (muscle spasm) can be detected in the interspaces overlying the affected parts. It is probably nature's method of protecting the affected part, in analogy to what is seen in the abdomen in acute appendicitis.

*Diminished resistance* is found over slight edema of the chest wall and is recognized by its peculiar 'doughy' feel. In the early stages of emaciation the skin becomes loose and the muscles flabby. Muscular atrophy due either to deep seated disease or paralysis will cause lessened resistance.

A cavity in the lung, if superficial will cause diminished resistance as will also fluctuating tumors lipomata aneurysm, and small round cell sarcoma. If a portion of a rib or muscle has been removed surgically or by an accident the soft parts overlying this will give



Fig 8—The hands are crossed in order to “check up” fremitus perceived by palpating with uncrossed hands

rise to diminished resistance. Fluctuation is elicited in the presence of encapsulated fluid.

(f) **Fremitus** Fremitus is the term applied to vibratory tremors transmitted through the chest wall to the palpating hand. The varieties of fremitus are

- 1 Vocal or tactile fremitus
- 2 Friction fremitus
- 3 Rhonchal or bronchial fremitus
- 4 Succussion or cavernous fremitus
- 5 Tussive fremitus.
- 6 Thrills.

1 **Vocal or Tactile Fremitus** All varieties of fremitus must be felt, hence all are in reality “tactile.” When the

term ‘tactile fremitus’ is employed however, it usually denotes vocal fremitus.

Vocal fremitus is the sensation caused by vibratory tremors transmitted to the palpating hand during talking, crying, screaming and singing. It is produced by the vibrations of the vocal cords which set into motion the entire column of air in the respiratory apparatus. These vibrations are in turn transmitted to the surface of the chest by the pulmonary structures and adjacent tissue. During vocal exercise vocal fremitus is always felt over the entire normal chest where the lungs are superficial but in the same individual its intensity varies in different regions of the chest and it may vary in corresponding areas of different normal persons.

**Vocal Fremitus in the Normal Chest** The intensity of the vocal fremitus



Fig 9—Palpating apices of lungs

itus normally depends upon (a) The pitch of the voice, (b) the thickness and resilience of the chest wall, (c) the diameter of the bronchus and its proximity to the surface, (d) the dis-



tance of the part under examination from the larynx and (e) the amount of air in the respiratory tract

(a) *The Pitch of the Voice* The lower the pitch of the voice the greater is the intensity of the fremitus and *vice versa* because the vibrations of vocal

wall the less distinct is the fremitus for, the vibrations having to traverse a greater distance the acuteness of the fremitus is lost in transit Everything being equal, the greater the resilience of the chest wall the greater the fremitus For this reason the fremitus is fainter over a fat chest than over a muscular one of the same size

(c) *The diameter of the bronchus* and its proximity to the surface The greater the diameter of the bronchus the more distinct is the fremitus because of the presence of a greater volume of air capable of being set into vibration The nearer the bronchus to the surface of the chest the greater the fremitus because there is less tissue to



Fig 10—Palpating the upper posterior aspect of the chest for tactile fremitus

cords producing low pitched tones are much larger and are carried out with greater force than the vibrations of vocal cords producing high pitched tones, just as in string (musical) instruments the vibrations of the lower strings are much more perceptible than those of the upper strings the former being fewer in number in a given time In the same manner in the human voice the difference in tone causes variations in the intensity of the vocal fremitus everything being equal vocal fremitus is very distinct in those having a bass voice and feeble in high sopranos

(b) *The Thickness and Resilience of the Chest Wall* The thicker the chest



Fig 11—Hypothesis palpation for fremitus.

interfere with the transmission of the vibrations

(d) *The Distance of the Part Under Examination from the Larynx* The greater the distance the more feeble the fremitus That accounts for the fremitus

being greater in the upper part of the chest than in the lower

(c) *The Amount of Air in the Respiratory Tract* The greater the volume of tidal air circulating in the respiratory tract the greater the fremitus. Vocal fremitus is more distinct when the pa-



Fig 12—Ulnar palpation to elicit regional tactile fremitus

tient speaks during inspiration than when he speaks during expiration

*Method of Palpation for Vocal Fremitus Technique* The patient's chest must be bared of all clothing and he should be made to feel at ease

The examiner assumes a position in front of the part to be examined. The palm of the hand is applied to the part under examination and the patient is instructed to say "ninety nine ninety nine ninety nine or one two three." Any sound that will produce the desired vibrations will do. The first part of the chest to be examined is the left infra-axillary region; this region acts as a

standard for the individual's normal fremitus. In the normal left lung the infra-clavicular region may also be taken as a standard for tactile fremitus.

Next the examiner places both hands lightly but evenly on the upper anterior part of the chest: the right hand upon the left chest and the left hand upon the right chest while the patient utters in a deep low voice a stock phrase: "ninety nine ninety nine or one two three." In case of doubt the examiner may cross his hands so that his left hand will rest upon the patient's left chest and the right hand upon the right chest. Another method is to use only one hand, the more sensitive of the two while the patient speaks; examiner palpates first on one side then on the other.



Fig 13—Hypotenar palpation for fremitus

The most important step in the technique is to palpate the exact corresponding parts on both sides.

The technique for palpating the supra-clavicular regions for tactile fremitus is similar to that employed for respiratory

movements, i. e. the finger tips resting above the clavicles, the examiner standing in front or behind the patient

*Posteriorly* The patient stoops slightly, his arms are held somewhat in front of him, the elbows just a little to the inside of the anterior axillary line. This position separates the scapulae, but does not put the back muscles on the stretch. The procedure employed for palpating the anterior chest wall is here repeated. Both supra- and infraclavicular regions are thus carefully palpated.

*Ulnar Palpation* Many clinicians prefer the use of the ulnar surfaces of both hands particularly to determine vocal fremitus in the interscapular regions and also to localize fremitus in the various interspaces. For interscapular palpation

both hands are used simultaneously, the ulnar surface of the right hand is placed upon the right interscapular region and that of the left hand on the left interscapular region. To localize intercostal vocal fremitus, the ulnar surface of one hand only is used.

*Variations of Tactile Fremitus in the Normal Chest* Generally speaking and all conditions being equal vocal fremitus is more distinct in thin-chested individuals than in the stout, in the muscular chest rather than in the fat flabby chest, in the male more than in the female or child, in the upper anterior part of the chest rather than in the lower and posterior aspect (the interscapular regions excepted) and on the right side more than on the left.

## REGIONAL VARIATIONS OF VOCAL FREMITUS IN THE NORMAL CHEST

### Supraclavicular Regions (Above Clavicles)

RIGHT  
Somewhat increased

LEFT  
Not quite so pronounced as on the right.

### Infraclavicular Regions (Clavicles to Third Ribs)

RIGHT  
Very strong in second and third interspaces particularly so in its inner half. Influenced no doubt by the size and position of the bronchi and a slight increase in the density and size of the right lung.

LEFT  
Quite strong but somewhat less marked than over the corresponding region on the right side because the left bronchus is smaller and joins the trachea at a more acute angle. The proximity of the esophagus and aorta also tend to diminish the force of transmission. Standard fremitus for the individual.

### Mammary Regions (Third to Sixth Ribs)

RIGHT  
Vocal fremitus weak from third to sixth ribs because of large pectoral muscles and breast also because of its distance from the large bronchus. The underlying liver also acts as a buffer.

LEFT  
Vocal fremitus weak as over the corresponding region on the right side because of pectoral muscles, mammae and heart.

**Inframammary Regions**  
(Sixth Ribs to Base of Chest)

**RIGHT**

No vocal fremitus is felt in this region during ordinary respiration. Faint fremitus may be felt in the sixth intercostal space when the patient speaks during forced inspiration.

**LEFT**

No vocal fremitus is felt in this region excepting when speaking during deep inspiration.

**Superior Axillary**  
(Axilla to Sixth Ribs)

**RIGHT**

Very distinct particularly in its upper part, and somewhat more perceptible than over the corresponding region on the opposite side.

**LEFT**

Distinct uncomplicated vocal fremitus which acts as a standard for the individual.

**Inferior Axillary**  
(Sixth Ribs to Base of Chest)

**RIGHT**

Weak vocal fremitus

**LEFT**

Weak vocal fremitus

**Supraspinous Regions**  
(Above the Spines of Scapulae)

**RIGHT**

Distinct vocal fremitus more distinct on this side than in the corresponding region on the left, fremitus is stronger near the spine.

**LEFT**

Fairly distinct but not as intense as on the right side.

**Scapular Regions**  
(Area Occupied by the Scapula)

**RIGHT**

Very weak vocal fremitus because of the scapula.

**LEFT**

Very weak vocal fremitus because of the scapula.

**Interscapular Regions**  
(Area Lying Between Each Scapula and the Spinal Column)

**RIGHT**

Very intense vocal fremitus because of the hilum of the lung.

**LEFT**

Quite intense vocal fremitus because of the hilum of the lung. Not quite as intense as on the right side because of the esophagus and the aorta.

**Infrascapular Regions**  
(Below the Scapula, Eighth Dorsal Spine to Base)

**RIGHT**

Weak vocal fremitus

**LEFT**

Weak vocal fremitus

**Vocal Fremitus in the Abnormal Chest** Pathologically vocal fremitus may be A Increased B Diminished C Absent

**A Increased Vocal Fremitus** It has been pointed out above that vocal fremitus is caused by setting into vibration the column of air contained within the respiratory tract the perception of this vibration by the hand is modified by the transmitting medium Therefore any condition which compels a greater amount of air to vibrate or produces a more readily transmitting medium will cause *increased* vocal fremitus Increased vocal fremitus is found in (1) Consolidation of the lung (2) fibroid thickening of the lung (fibroid phthisis) (3) infiltration of the lungs (4) hemorrhagic infarction (5) adhesive bands connecting the lung with the costal pleura (6) solid tumors lying between a bronchus and the chest wall (7) large tense walled superficial pulmonary cavities (8) dilated bronchus (bronchiectasis) (9) compensatory emphysema (10) partially compressed lung

**1 Consolidation of the Lung** In this condition the air vesicles of the affected part are plugged with some solid substance (exudate) so that the air contained within the bronchi and bronchioles is not permitted to enter that vesicular substance thus causing increased tension in the bronchi supplying the diseased part of the lung The combination of vibrating air under tension and a solid transmitting medium causes increased vocal fremitus

Thus follows the natural law: vibrations are more readily transmitted through a solid medium than through a liquid or gaseous one. Regardless of whether the consolidation of the lung is due to lobar pneumonia bronchopneu-

monia or to pulmonary tuberculosis fremitus is increased when consolidation is present For obvious reasons large consolidations produce more intense vocal fremitus than do smaller ones

**2 Fibroid Thickening of the Lung** The vocal fremitus is increased in this condition because the lung substance is denser than in a normal lung and having a denser medium the transmission of the vibrations set up by the spoken voice must of necessity be greater

**3 Infiltration of the Lungs** When the air vesicles are partially infiltrated with a foreign substance the normal amount of air entering them causes increased tension of the vesicular walls Some vesicles may be entirely occluded by the infiltrate The vibrating air under tension added to a more densely transmitting medium causes this increase in the vocal fremitus

**4 Hemorrhagic Infarction** Blood coagulating in the vesicles will cause a similar condition to that mentioned under (3) as the condition is practically an infiltration

**5 Adhesive bands connecting the lung with the costal pleura** will act like telephone wires and thus more distinctly transmit the fremitus produced within the lung Unless this fact is borne in mind such an adhesive band occurring in a case of pleural effusion may lead to an erroneous diagnosis

**6 Solid Tumors Lying Between a Bronchus and the Chest Wall** The tumor being a dense medium will transmit vibrations produced within the bronchus thereby causing increased tactile fremitus

**7 Large Superficial Pulmonary Cystics with Tense Walls and Containing Air** In this condition where there is a large amount of air under tension the

vibrations produced must necessarily be great, the fact that the cavity is superficial also causes some atrophy of the overlying chest muscles, hence a shorter distance to travel and increased vibrations which are more superficial, must cause increased tactile fremitus

8 *Dilated Bronchus* (bronchiectasis) If a bronchus of normal caliber produces greater tactile fremitus than does the vesicular substance it follows that a bronchus, everything being equal, with a greater caliber must necessarily produce increased tactile fremitus (when free from secretions and superficially situated)

9 *Compensatory Emphysema* This condition should not be confounded with chronic emphysema. In compensatory emphysema the tactile fremitus is increased because there is more air in that particular part of the lung which compensates for a lack of it in some other portion. More air in the alveoli causes increased tension of their walls and, consequently, when the air is set in motion it will produce greater vibrations, which are readily transmitted by the tense and elastic vesicular walls. The bronchioles also being under tension, thus aid in producing increased tactile fremitus

10 *Partially Compressed Lung* This may be found adjacent to a pleural effusion, a hydropericardium, or a solid tumor. The increase in the tactile fremitus results from the fact that the lung is under greater tension

11 *Resonating Chamber* It has been pointed out by Drs Chas Montgomery and LeRoy Adams that tactile fremitus, because it depends largely upon pitch, is often influenced by a resonating chamber. Such a chamber may be formed in the lung as a result of consolidation

while a relaxed lung may act as a non-resonating chamber

B *Diminished Vocal Fremitus* To determine whether in a given case the vocal fremitus is diminished, one must first form an idea of the normal fremitus for that particular individual, because, as has already been mentioned, a person having a thick fleshy chest wall or a thin high pitched voice will naturally produce weak vocal fremitus

Pathologically, weak vocal fremitus is caused in one of two ways. First, by any condition which will interfere with setting into vibration the air contained in the respiratory tract. Second, by conditions which will so alter the transmitting medium as to prevent the transmission of vibrations produced within the lungs to the external surface of the chest wall

I *Conditions which interfere with the air vibrations in the respiratory tract* and thus cause diminished vocal fremitus are

(a) Partial paralysis of the vocal cords, laryngitis or any other abnormal state of the larynx interfering with the vibrations of the cords

(b) Partial compression of the trachea or a bronchus by an aneurysm, by a solid tumor, by enlarged mediastinal glands, or by an abscess

(c) Generalized bronchitis, by causing an inflammation of the inner lining of the bronchi, thus diminishing their caliber and elasticity

(d) Chronic emphysema. The vocal fremitus is diminished in this condition because the whole respiratory tract is overfilled with air to such an extent as to cause a definite loss of elasticity of the vesicles and smaller bronchioles, and very little air is exchanged in the vesicu

lar structures during normal respiration. Therefore, when the patient is instructed to speak, he does so with an effort. The vibrations thus produced are not very strong and are poorly conducted to the vesicles by the inelastic bronchioles. The vesicular walls also having lost their elasticity act as poor vibration conductors, thus causing very weak vocal fremitus.

(e) Massive pneumonia, when the bronchi are plugged with cheesy material, will cause diminished fremitus because of the insufficient amount of air entering the bronchi.

*II Conditions which will alter the transmitting medium of the vocal fremitus* produced within the lung. In this class of cases, the lung substance responds normally to the vibrations produced by the column of air in the respiratory tract, but is prevented from communicating its fremitus to the external surface of the thorax by some interposing medium between the lung and the palpating hand.

(a) Thickened pleura. This condition gives added thickness to the chest wall. Before they can be perceived by the palpating hand, the vibrations produced by the spoken voice have to travel through an added substance which is of a different density from that of the chest wall. Because of this added thickness, much of the vibration is lost in transit. The same holds true when very small pleural effusions and exudates are present.

(b) Superficial cavity in the lung partially filled with fluid and having flaccid walls produces diminished tactile fremitus because of the inelasticity of the cavity wall and because the fluid within that cavity acts as a buffer absorbing a great deal of resilience.

(c) Pulmonary edema. In this condition the air vesicles contain an unusual amount of secretion, because of which very little air enters the vesicles, consequently the tactile fremitus is very weak.

(d) Tactile fremitus may be decreased over the entire chest in partial compression of the trachea, chronic emphysema, generalized bronchitis, partial paralysis of the vocal cords and pulmonary edema. *Localized*, decreased tactile fremitus may occur over any portion of the chest wall as a result of thickened pleura, small pleural effusions, partial compression of one bronchus, massive pneumonia superficially partially filled cavity, tumors in the lung or upon the chest wall, aneurysm, cyst or any other foreign body displacing a portion of the lung or superimposing upon a portion of the chest wall.

*C Absence of Vocal Fremitus*. Absence of vocal fremitus over the entire thorax may be found in those who have no voice, such as untrained deaf mutes or those suffering from complete paralysis of the vocal cords from any cause or as a result of certain nervous phenomena. From the standpoint of physical diagnosis, absence of vocal fremitus is distinctly a local condition, never at one time affecting the entire thorax. Absence of vocal fremitus is due to pathological conditions which are either pulmonary, pleural or mural.

*1 Pulmonary*. (a) Total occlusion of a bronchus from within or without, for example, from within, by fibrous plugs or foreign bodies obstructing the lumen, and, from without, by solid tumors, aneurysms, abscess or enlarged mediastinal glands compressing a bronchus, thus preventing the entrance of air to the portion of the lung supplied by

it will prevent vibration (*b*) Atelectasis or collapse of the lung from any cause will also produce absence of vocal fremitus

2 *Pleural* The commonest causes of absence of vocal fremitus of pleural origin are Pleural effusions, which may be serous, sanguinous fibrinous pus or air, will cause absence of tactile fremitus over the area of the effusion because in most instances the lung is either floated upward and away from the effusion or is compressed to such a degree that the feeble vibrations there produced cannot penetrate the foreign medium

3 *Mural* Edema of the chest wall and diffuse lipomata are among the mural causes which fail to transmit the vibrations produced by the spoken voice. This is due to the added thickness and loss of resiliency which combine to form a nontransmitting medium of the chest wall

### ***Tactile Vocal Fremitus***

#### ***Resume***

#### **INCREASED TACTILE FREMITUS**

##### ***Normally***

- 1 Male
- 2 Adults
- 3 Heavy voice
- 4 Thin chest
- 5 Right infraclavicular and both interscapular regions

##### ***Pathologically***

- 6 Consolidations
- 7 Bronchiectasis
- 8 Superficial cavities with tense walls
- 9 Compensatory emphysema
- 10 Adhesive bands stretching between lung and parietal pleura.
- 11 Fibroid thickening of the lung
- 12 Infiltration of the lung
- 13 Partially compressed lung overlying a pleural effusion
- 14 Solid tumor lying between a large bronchus and the chest wall

#### **DECREASED TACTILE FREMITUS**

##### ***Normally***

- 1 Females and children
- 2 Thick chest wall
- 3 Thin high pitched voice.
- 4 Over mammae liver and scapula.

##### ***Pathologically***

- 5 Plastic pleurisy
- 6 Thickened pleura.
- 7 Cavity partially filled with fluid
- 8 Chronic emphysema.
- 9 Asthma
- 10 Pulmonary edema
- 11 Tumors partially compressing a bronchus
- 12 Chronic exudative bronchitis.
- 13 Massive pneumonia when a bronchus is partially filled with exudate

#### **ABSENT TACTILE FREMITUS**

- 1 Occlusion of a bronchus
- 2 Atelectasis
- 3 Hydrothorax pyothorax pneumothorax or any other effusion in the pleural sacs
- 4 Edema and tumors of the chest wall
- 5 Paralysis of the vocal cords
- 6 Aphonia.
- 7 Tumor or aneurysm situated between the lung and chest wall (sarcoma carcinoma)
- 8 Diaphragmatic hernia or eversion

### ***2 Friction Fremitus or Pleural***

***Friction*** In health, during respiration the visceral and parietal layers of the pleura constantly glide over each other without producing any sound or friction, because their surfaces are perfectly smooth and lubricated. In morbid states of the pleurae their surfaces become roughened by a sticky inflammatory fibrinous exudate, which causes a grating, creaking sound when the two pleural surfaces glide over each other. This sound is often detected by the palpating hand as a peculiar, vibrating, jerky or grating sensation, it occurs in interrupted jerks. The intensity of the



friction fremitus depends upon the quality and quantity of the exudate. A small viscid exudate will produce a more intense friction rub than will a larger or thinner effusion.

To produce a friction rub it is necessary that the two pleural surfaces should be in close proximity, and touch during at least one phase of respiration. The grating appears to be superficial and it is intensified by light pressure, but may cease on forcible palpation. A friction rub is best felt at the beginning of inspiration and at the end of expiration. Deep breathing intensifies friction fremitus. The fremitus ceases when the exudate is entirely absorbed or undergoes fatty degeneration or when more fluid is thrown out between the pleural surfaces which acts as a lubricant. Friction fremitus is usually accompanied by pain, and because of this the patient is often able to indicate the exact location where fremitus can be felt by the examiner.

**Technic.** To palpate fremitus correctly, the patient should stand or sit upright while the examiner faces him and applies his warm palm to the spot indicated by the patient; the fingers are separated to fit the intercostal spaces. The patient is directed to breathe slowly but deeply. The stitch-like pain which usually accompanies deep breathing will often produce jerky respiration, and cause the patient to lean sharply towards the affected side. Friction fremitus is not influenced by coughing; it usually appears in the lower portion of the axillary region and is diagnostic of acute dry pleurisy previous to the appearance of an exudate.

**3 Bronchial or Rhonchal Fremitus.** Bronchial or rhonchal fremitus is

a peculiar sensation, not unlike that caused by the purring of a cat transmitted to the palpating hand. It occurs in conditions where a bronchus is filled with viscid secretion and its mucosa is inflamed and thickened thus causing a narrowing of the bronchial lumen.

The air attempting to pass through the affected bronchus sets the mucus which it contains into vibration thus causing fremitus. It can usually be felt in children suffering from a disseminated bronchitis because of the thinness of the chest wall, and the child's inability to expectorate the accumulated secretions.

In adults it is usually found in asthma, diffuse catarrhal bronchitis associated with asthemia and advanced pulmonary tuberculosis. Bronchial fremitus is distinguished from pleural fremitus by the following points:

#### *Resume*

##### BRONCHIAL FREMITUS

- 1 Can be felt over a large area.
- 2 Is continuous.
- 3 It is temporarily checked by coughing.
- 4 Appears deep seated.
- 5 Is not influenced by pressure of the hand.
- 6 No pain.

##### FRICTION FREMITUS

- 1 Can be felt over a limited area.
- 2 Is jerky and interrupted.
- 3 Is not influenced by coughing.
- 4 Appears superficial.
- 5 Is influenced by pressure.
- 6 Pain present.

**4 Succussion or Cavernous Fremitus.** Succussion or cavernous fremitus is a peculiar, fine sensation resembling the bursting of numerous very small bubbles or the gentle splashing of calm water against the shore as it is heard on a still night. This condition usually occurs in large superficial cavities which communicate directly with a bronchus.

and contain both air and fluid. It can only be felt when the chest wall is thin and emaciated, and the cavity is situated near the surface in the upper lobe of the lung. It is intensified by deep and rapid breathing, and may disappear after cough and expectoration.

**Succussion Splash** As its name indicates, this is a splashing sensation communicated to the palpating hand and brought out when the patient is shaken or shakes himself, it is found in cases of hydro- and pyopneumothorax.

**5 Tussive Fremitus:** By tussive fremitus is meant the palpable vibrations transmitted during coughing. It is of greatest value when examining deaf mutes, this being the only means of eliciting pectoral fremitus.

**6 Thrills:** These are palpable over superficial aneurysms, certain types of congenital heart disease, mitral and aortic stenosis (SEE p 403).

For (g) Study of the Pulse, (h) Visible Pulsation and (i) The Cardiac Impulse (SEE p 402).

## LOCATIONS OF THORACIC TENDERNESS AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE

<i>Causes</i>	<i>Location</i>
Acute Pericarditis	Over the lower sternum or cardiac apical region
Acute Pleurisy	During dry stage over affected area
Aneurysm of Aortic Arch	Skin tenderness over heart over sternocleidoid muscle or over area overlying the aneurysm
Angina Pectoris	Often over the midsternum and precordium
Carcinoma of Ribs or Sternum	Over the affected area
Contusion of Chest Wall	Over the injured part
Diaphragmatic Pleurisy	Over the insertion of diaphragm (10th rib) often in the neck and shoulder of the affected side
Empyema	Over the seat of the pus
Fractured Rib	Over the seat of the pain and when pressure is exerted simultaneously to the sternum and the back pain denotes the seat of the fracture
Gastric Ulcer	Over the 10th rib at a point near the spine on the affected side.
Herpes Zoster	Before and during the rash along the affected intercostal nerve near the spine in the midaxillary region and near the sternum.
Hydatid Cyst	Over the cyst.
Intercostal Neuralgia	Along the course of the nerve and at points near the spine, the mid axillary region and the sternum
Mediastinal Neoplasm	Over the sternum or ribs
Neuritis	At the exit of the affected nerve from the spinal canal
Neurosis	Anywhere upon the chest or abdomen
Perinephric Abscess or Inflamed Kidney	Over the affected organ
Suprarenal Disease	Over the 11th or 12th rib near the spine on the affected side (Rogoff's sign)

## CHAPTER XII

### Percussion of the Respiratory System

Percussion of the thorax is the act of striking or tapping the surface of the thorax in order to elicit such sounds as are produced by setting the underlying viscera in vibration. The various sounds elicited by percussion depend upon the nature of the tissue struck: i.e. a solid substance when struck produces a dull or muffled sound while an air-containing one gives rise to a clear or resonant sound. The proportion of air and solids in the underlying organs determines the degree of clearness or dullness of the percussion sound.

Percussion as applied to the human body was first described by Auenbrugger who in 1753 learned to distinguish by percussion the healthy from the diseased side in empyema. In 1761 after working on this subject for about seven years he published his '*Inventum novum ex percussione thoracis humani ut signo abstrusos interni pectoris morbos detegendi*'. Very little attention was paid to this work until 1808 shortly before Auenbrugger's death when Corvisart body physician to Napoleon the First published the first French translation of the *Inventum novum*. Corvisart also extended the application of percussion to the diagnosis of cardiac disease and aortic aneurysm. Piorry of France and Skoda of Vienna deserve credit for the most important advances in the study of percussion. Piorry invented the pleximeter in 1826 and was the first to practice percussion of the abdominal men. Skoda traced the qualities of the percussion sound to their physical causes and added an exhaustive study

on tympanitic sounds. Such men as Wintrich, Traube, Biermer, Geigel, Gerhardt, Neil, Welche, Sansom and Flint all did much to advance the art of percussion. The percussion hammer was invented by Wintrich in 1841.

#### Properties of the Percussion Sound

The properties of the percussion sound are based upon the classification of the musical tone. We recognize four attributes in addition to the sense of resistance.

- I. Quality or timbre
- II. Intensity or loudness
- III. Pitch
- IV. Duration
- V. Sense of resistance

#### I. Quality or Timbre

Quality or timbre which depends upon the presence or absence of overtones is that attribute of sound which gives it its own inherent characteristics, and readily distinguishes it from other sounds of like pitch. One can easily distinguish the sounds elicited from a violin from those of a violoncello by the different qualities of their respective tones no matter what their pitch may be. By quality we mean the kind of sound. The two extremes of quality recognized in percussion are (I) Clearness, the quality of air-containing tissue and (II) Flatness, the quality of airless tissue.

Between clearness and flatness there are a number of gradations in the quality of the percussion sound. These gradations depend upon the degree of admixture of airless and air-containing tissue.

They are: Tympany, vesiculoresonance, hyperresonance, exaggerated resonance, resonance; impaired resonance, relative dullness, dullness, and flatness

Clearness is further subdivided into two distinct qualities (a) Resonance, and (b) tympany

(a) Resonance (normal lung resonance) This term is applied to the sound elicited by percussion over normal lung substance, and is best demonstrated in the left axillary and left infraclavicular regions of normal subjects

When normal lung tissue is percussed outside of the body (post mortem), a tympanic note is elicited, while percussion of normal lung through the chest wall elicits a "lung resonance" note. The reason the note differs in the two instances, though a similar lung is percussed, is explainable thus. In the one instance, when the lung is outside of the body, the percussion stroke sets into vibration relaxed lung substance only *i. e.*, small vesicles filled with air, therefore, a tympanic sound is produced. In the other instance, the lung within the chest, the percussion stroke sets into vibration not only the lung substance but also the parietal pleura, ribs, muscle, subcutaneous fat and skin, the latter structures being "airless," will naturally cause a dull sound, but the admixture of tympanic lung resonance with the mural dullness produces "normal lung resonance"

It will be seen, therefore, that lung resonance depends upon several factors, and that a change in character of any one of these contributing factors will produce a distinct alteration in the quality of the normal vesicular resonance

In health, the normal vesicular resonance is not necessarily the same in all

persons, nor in all areas of the chest in the same person. The modifying factors are as follows

1 Thickness of the Chest Wall A thick chest wall means a greater amount of airless tissue, consequently a resonance not quite so clear, and *vice versa*. If the thickness of the chest wall is due to compact muscular tissue, the resonance will not be much altered, but if it be due to inelastic adipose tissue, a muffled sound is quite perceptible. A very thin and emaciated chest, particularly when the skin is stretched tightly over the ribs, gives rise to a clearer sound than normal, because of the resilience due to tenseness and the lack of a normal quantity of airless tissue

2 Resilience of the Chest Wall A chest wall which is very resilient acts as a resonator, and does not contribute as great a detoning factor as does a normal chest wall. Normally the note elicited over the sternum is clear, as the bone acts as a good resonator. Hyperresonance is also elicited over the chests of children because their chest walls are more resilient than those of adults and also because their lungs are in a state of hypertension. In aged persons a peculiar "wooden sound" is elicited, due to the ossification of the chest wall (non-resilience) and also because of a relaxed condition of the lungs

3 Amount of Air in the Respiratory Tract This has a decided influence on vesicular resonance, the resonance being clearer during inspiration than during expiration

4 Presence of Adjacent Organs This quite perceptibly modifies the vesicular resonance. An airless organ like the liver or the heart, adjacent to the portion of the lung percussed, will impart a certain amount of dullness causing a

lesser degree of resonance—known as impaired resonance—because the solid organ acts as a buffer. An air-containing organ like the stomach or colon encroaching upon lung tissue will impart an added degree of clearness to that portion of the lung. Such sound is elicited normally over the base of the left lung anteriorly, and is known as vesiculotympany or skodaic resonance.

(b) Tympany Tympanitic or drum-like sounds are never elicited over the normal chest, their presence in the chest indicates a collection of air in the lung or in the pleural cavity. Tympany is normally elicited over the stomach, colon and inflated bowel; it may also be produced by percussing over the larynx. We speak of two varieties of tympany, namely (1) Open tympany and (2) closed tympany.

1 Open Tympany This is elicited over large collections of air in direct communication with the outside, i.e. large cavities in the lungs communicating through a direct opening with a bronchus. This sound can be produced by percussing over the cheek while the mouth is held open.

2 Closed Tympany This is a fuller sound and is obtainable by percussing over a collection of air not in direct communication with the outside, as over the stomach and over a large lung cavity which has no ready communication. This sound may be elicited by percussing over the cheek, the mouth being inflated and the lips closed.

Flatness and Dullness These non-resonant qualities are obtained by percussing over airless tissue.

(a) Flatness This is recognized as a greater degree of dullness, and is never found in the normal chest. Its type is

obtainable by percussing over the thigh or other skeletal muscles.

(b) Dullness This is normally obtained by percussing over those portions of the liver, heart and spleen which are uncovered by lung tissue, the parts covered by lung give rise to relative dullness. No sound other than vesicular resonance should be obtained over normal lung tissue. The presence of flatness, dullness or a modification thereof indicates a pathologic condition such as large pleural effusion, consolidation of the lung, thickened pleura, or a solid tumor or some other airless medium intervening between the lung and chest wall.

Resume The first attribute of quality deals with two extremes of sound, i.e. clearness and flatness, and their many intermediate variations depending upon the proportion of air and solids in that tissue.

#### I CLEAR SOUNDS (See Fig 1 1 2 3 4 5)

- 1 Tympany The clearest of all sounds (open and closed) obtainable over trachea, pneu. mot. organs, lung cavity, stomach and inflated bowel.
- 2 Vesiculotympany An admixture of vesicular and tympanitic sounds as in Traube's semilunar space and over relaxed lung.
- 3 Hyperresonance Clearer than ordinary vesicular resonance but not as clear as tympany elicited over an emphysematous lung.
- 4 Exaggerated Resonance Not quite as clear as hyperresonance but a little clearer than normal vesicular resonance, and having all the characteristics of the latter obtained over small areas of compensatory emphysema, also the normal note of a child's chest.
- 5 Vesicular Resonance or Normal Lung Note The sound obtained by percussing over lungs in the normal chest.

## II DULL SOUNDS (See Fig 1 6 7 8-9)

6. Impaired Resonance Resonance not so very clear being somewhat muffled by a small degree of dullness found in cases presenting very small consolidations small infiltrations of the lung lung borders adjacent to a solid organ and over slightly thickened pleura
- 7 Relative Dullness An admixture of dullness and resonance the dull sound being intermittent This is met with in cases of small consolidation thick

upon quality The clearer the quality, the greater the intensity, and vice versa Therefore, a clear sound has great intensity and a dull sound little intensity, each intermediate step between clearness and dullness possessing a proportionate degree of intensity

The intensity of the percussion sounds may be influenced by the following conditions

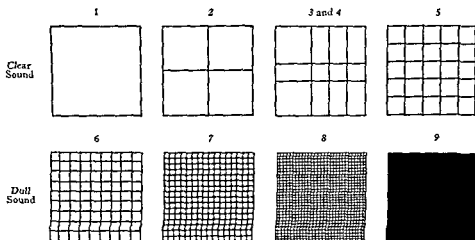


Fig 1—Resume of sound qualities

pleura or over solid organs covered by normal lung tissue

- 8 Dullness Muffled sound nearly devoid of resonance which may be elicited by percussing over solid organs adjacent to air containing tissue as over the liver, heart or spleen and over consolidation of the lung small pleural effusion solid tumor and small emphysema
- 9 Flatness or Dead Sound Absolutely devoid of resonance In the chest it may be obtained when percussing over a very large pleural effusion a collapsed lung a large aneurysm or a very large solid tumor

## II. Intensity or Loudness

The second attribute of sound is intensity or loudness, it depends entirely

1 The Force of the Percussion Stroke The greater the force that is to say the stronger the blow upon the chest wall everything being equal, the greater will be the intensity, since a greater quantity of resonant tissue is made to vibrate therefore a greater amplitude of vibrations follows

2 Thickness of the Chest Wall The thicker the chest wall, the less marked the intensity, because over a thick chest wall a duller sound is elicited than over a thin chest wall, everything else being equal

3 The Proximity of the Part to the Percussion Finger The nearer the lung to the percussing finger, the louder the sound produced by percussion



Fig 9—The flexor finger upward



Fig 10—Position of flexor finger in downward stroke



Fig 11—The percussion stroke

general rule, however, the percussion stroke should be of medium force and delivered in a manner described before, most lesions in the lung can be reached by such a stroke except those occurring at the apex. Because of the small amount

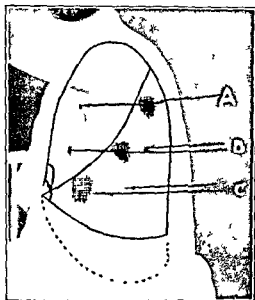


Fig 12—Force of percussion stroke required to reach lung lesions illustrated by A B and C

of lung in this region, the percussion stroke should be light

(c) If the lesion is deep seated and the percussion stroke is very light the vibrations thus produced do not reach the lesion, consequently a clear note is obtained

### Respiratory Percussion

This term, introduced by J M Da Costa is applied to percussion during the act of deep inspiration and forcible expiration percussion in each instance being performed while the patient holds his breath

During inspiration, the note is more resonant the lung apex is somewhat higher, the base of the lung is lower,

and the lateral borders encroach more upon the sternum

### Auscultatory Percussion

This method was first described by Drs Clark and Camman of New York, in 1840 It is especially useful for outlining such organs as the liver, spleen and heart and at times also a distended stomach and colon

**Technic** The examiner places the stethoscope upon the supposed border of the organ farthest removed from the edge to be percussed and holds it there with one hand while with one or two fingers of the other hand he begins tapping the surface a short distance away from the supposed border, when the bor-



Fig 13—Technic for auscultatory percussion

der of that organ is reached, a change in quality is at once perceived

It is well to observe Cabot's caution in regard to outlining an organ accurately, he moves both hands, one holding the stethoscope and the other percussing



always keeping the hands the same distance apart, while approaching the center

The author usually holds the bell of the stethoscope between the index and middle fingers close to the surface, and strikes the first phalanx of the index finger in this way a definite distance is maintained between the stethoscope and pleximeter. When a disk chest piece is used it may be held in position with the palm of the hand while the finger is being struck.

*Phonometry* or wave auscultation described by Bass in 1880 may yield fairly good results. a tuning fork is substituted for the percussing hand. The stethoscope is held over the organ to be examined as in the method already described and an ordinary tuning fork is set into vibration by striking it against some object. the handle of the tuning fork is set base downward upon the chest or abdomen and is rapidly moved toward the supposed organ or cavity. By this method it is at times possible to outline the superficial area of cardiac dullness superficial consolidation of the lung pleural effusion superficial cavity in the

lung or to determine the size of the stomach or other superficial organ. This method may also be modified by placing the vibrating tuning fork upon the surface overlying the organ and gradually approaching it with the stethoscope. Phonometry is of doubtful value as to accuracy.

### Palpatory Percussion

Palpatory percussion may be carried out by both the immediate and mediate methods. In the immediate method the chest wall particularly the intercostal spaces, are struck lightly with a pushing movement by the sensitive portions of the finger tips in order to determine the resistance of the part. In the mediate method numerous light glancing pushing blows are applied to the pleximeter finger, thereby bringing out the resistance of the part. It requires much practice and a delicate sense of perception to master this method. It has its greatest usefulness in mapping out organs for those physicians particularly whose sense of hearing is defective or it may be employed upon individuals who for any reason should not be audibly percussed.

## The Normal Chest

### Regional Percussion

It is essential that one should be thoroughly familiar with the normal sounds elicited in the various regions so as to recognize any deviation therefrom.

**Anterior Aspect** *Supraclavicular Regions* Kronig's isthmus is a strip of resonance extending across the trapezius muscle and corresponding to the apex of the lung. contraction of this area denotes disease of the lung apex.

*Technic for Eliciting Kronig's Isthmus* The examiner stands behind the

patient who sits in a chair. The first phalanx of the pleximeter finger is placed upon the inner edge of the trapezius muscle at a point corresponding to the midclavicular line. it is then gently percussed with the plexor finger. percussion is carried toward the neck and at the point where the note changes from resonance to dullness a pencil mark is made. The percussion is then carried outward toward the acromion process and here again, when the note changes from resonance to dullness another pen

oil mark is made. The distance between the two pencil marks represents the size of the isthmus, usually about the breadth of three fingers (5 cm.)

The supraclavicular regions are triangular in shape and are situated each above its respective clavicle, and contain

**Clavicular Regions:** The clavicles act as sounding boards, increasing the resonance of the entire thoracic cavity, hence the percussion note is generally clear, and is almost tympanitic near the sternum because of its proximity to the trachea.



Fig 14—Technic for percussing Kronig's isthmus

the apex of that lung. These regions are important because manifest pulmonary tuberculosis in an adult usually makes an early appearance there. The percussion note varies somewhat in each region, a light stroke should be employed

RIGHT

Impaired resonance in outer half. Hyper resonance at inner third because of the proximity of the trachea, the right apex does not extend quite so high as and is smaller than the left one, the muscles covering this region are as a rule more developed, the superior vena cava and right subclavian artery lie more anteriorly on the right side also the right lung contains more bronchioles airless tissue. Therefore, the percussion note is not quite so clear as on the opposite side. The pitch is somewhat higher

**Infraclavicular Regions:** These regions being situated on either side of the sternum, occupying the space from the lower margin of the clavicle to the upper edge of the third rib, contain practically pure vesicular lung structure and its

Supraclavicular region LEFT

Impaired resonance in outer half, but clearer than in the right. Resonance in inner third. Because of the greater amount of lung in this region and for the other reasons given, the note is somewhat clearer on this side than on the right. The percussion sound is clearer at the sternal extremities in both of these regions, because of their proximity to the trachea. The resonance diminishes as the acromion angle is approached

enveloping pleura. The percussion note, however, differs slightly on the respective

sides. A medium percussion stroke should be employed.

#### RIGHT

*Infraclavicular region*

Clear vesicular lung resonance, but not quite so clear as on the left side, because of the more numerous bronchioles and also because the right lung is supported by the liver which acts as a buffer.

Typically clear vesicular resonance or normal lung resonance. This region may be used as a standard for clearness for each particular individual. In the second interspace close to the sternum on both sides the percussion sound assumes a muffled tympanic note due to the bifurcation of the trachea.

**Mammary Regions** The situation of these regions (third to sixth ribs) and the heavy, muscular, fatty and glandular

coverings greatly modify the percussion note, which presents marked differences on the two sides of the chest.

#### RIGHT

Vesicular resonance from the third rib to the fourth interspace though somewhat muffled on account of the thickness of the chest wall usually a somewhat heavier percussion stroke is required.

Impaired resonance below the fourth interspace to the upper margin of the sixth rib because of the underlying liver.

Relative dullness close to the sternum from the third to the fifth intercostal spaces where the thin edge of the lung overlies the heart.

#### LEFT

Impaired resonance from the third to fourth rib inside the midclavicular line because the heart is covered by lung. A very heavy percussion stroke in this area will elicit a relatively dull note.

Cardiac dullness from fourth rib to fifth interspace below that a dull note is elicited due to the recession of the left lobe of the lung. It should be remembered that relative dullness and dullness elicited on the left side are normal only when occurring to the right of the left midclavicular line.

**Inframammary Regions** Situated below the sixth rib and occupying the remainder of the chest cavity, they are formed by the converging and coalescing

ribs, their respective contents being in variance with each other, give rise to the following percussion sounds.

#### RIGHT

Dullness (due to liver) from sixth rib downward the lowermost portion of this region may give rise to a mixture of tympany and dullness the former caused by an inflated hepatic flexure.

#### LEFT

Vesiculotympany from the sixth rib to the lower margins of the ribs to the left of the midclavicular line.

This region is known as Frauber's semilunar space. It is bounded above by the heart and lung on the inside by the left lobe of the liver and posteroinferiorly by the spleen. It contains the cardiac end of the stomach. Splenic dullness is elicited over the spleen (ninth to eleventh ribs) on forcible percussion.

**Lateral Aspect Supraaxillary Regions:** These extend from the hollow of the armpit to the sixth rib and contain lung and pleura.

The percussion note elicited throughout these regions on both sides is clear vesicular resonance though it is somewhat clearer on the left side than on the

right, the former often being used as a standard for the normal lung resonance of the individual

#### RIGHT

Clear vesicular resonance from sixth to seventh rib Impaired resonance from seventh to eighth rib Dullness below that due to liver

**Posterior Aspect** The percussion sound over the dorsum of the chest is duller, and the pitch higher, because of the following facts

- 1 The closeness of the ribs
- 2 Their insertions almost directly upon another osseous structure which is not a resonator (the spine)
- 3 The peculiar curvature of the ribs and their heavier dorsal extremity
- 4 The difference in the structure of the soft parts with the addition of the scapulae

**Supraspinous Fossae** (above the spine of the scapulae) The note is muffled vesicular resonance The pitch is a little higher, and the resistance somewhat greater at the right supraspinous fossa than at the left These regions should be percussed with a heavier stroke while the patient is in the erect or in the stooping postures Persistent dullness indicates consolidation of the apex of the lung

**Scapular Regions** On account of the scapulae, the percussion sound here elicited is relatively dull

**Interscapular Regions**, i.e. the area between the scapulae from the third to the eighth dorsal spine on either side of the spinal column Vesicular resonance is not very clear in these regions because of their close proximity to the spine and

**Infraaxillary Regions** (below the sixth rib)

#### LEFT

Clear vesicular resonance from sixth to eighth rib

Vesicular tympany to the right of the median line from eighth rib downward

Relative dullness or dullness is elicited between the posterior axillary and midaxillary lines from the ninth to the eleventh ribs due to the position of the spleen (splenic dullness)

their muscular coverings The vesicular resonance is also slightly modified by the trachea and the bronchi which enter the lung in this region at the level of the fifth dorsal spine

**Infrascapular Regions** (below seventh rib) These regions produce the greatest amount of vesicular resonance posteriorly

Clear vesicular resonance prevails on the right side from the seventh to the ninth rib relative dullness from the ninth rib to the tenth, below the tenth rib liver dullness is elicited Left side, vesicular tympany from seventh rib downward to splenic dullness

#### Respiratory Mobility

The base of each lung descends during inspiration and ascends during expiration Posture to some extent also influences the lung borders according to gravity This is particularly noticeable when the patient turns from the recumbent posture to either side A greater descent of the diaphragm is noted on the dependent side

**Complementary Spaces** The respiratory mobility of the base of the lung is noted in the following manner

**Technic** The patient stands or sits his back toward the examiner

enveloping pleura. The percussion note, however, differs slightly on the respective sides. A medium percussion stroke should be employed.

## RIGHT

*Infraclavicular region*

## LEFT

Clear vesicular lung resonance, but not quite so clear as on the left side because of the more numerous bronchioles and also because the right lung is supported by the liver which acts as a buffer.

Typically clear vesicular resonance or normal lung resonance. This region may be used as a standard for clearness for each particular individual. In the second interspace, close to the sternum on both sides the percussion sound assumes a muffled tympanic note due to the bifurcation of the trachea.

**Mammary Regions** The situation of these regions (third to sixth ribs) and the heavy muscular, fatty and glandular

## RIGHT

Vesicular resonance from the third rib to the fourth interspace though somewhat muffled on account of the thickness of the chest wall usually a somewhat heavier percussion stroke is required.

Impaired resonance below the fourth interspace to the upper margin of the sixth rib because of the underlying liver.

Relative dullness close to the sternum from the third to the fifth intercostal spaces where the thin edge of the lung overlies the heart.

## LEFT

Impaired resonance from the third to fourth rib inside the midclavicular line because the heart is covered by lung. A very heavy percussion stroke in this area will elicit a relatively dull note.

Cardiac dullness from fourth rib to fifth interspace below that a dull note is elicited due to the recession of the left lobe of the lung. It should be remembered that relative dullness and dullness elicited on the left side are normal only when occurring to the right of the left midclavicular line.

**Inframammary Regions** Situated below the sixth rib and occupying the remainder of the chest cavity, they are formed by the converging and coalescing

## RIGHT

Dullness (due to liver) from sixth rib downward the lowermost portion of this region may give rise to a mixture of tympany and dullness the former caused by an inflated hepatic flexure.

## LEFT

ribs, their respective contents being at variance with each other, give rise to the following percussion sounds.

Vesiculotympany from the sixth rib to the lower margin of the ribs to the left of the midclavicular line.

This region is known as Frauber's semilunar space. It is bounded above by the heart and lung on the inside by the left lobe of the liver and posteroinferiorly by the spleen. It contains the cardiac end of the stomach. Splenic dullness is elicited over the spleen (ninth to eleventh ribs) on forcible percussion.

**Lateral Aspect Supraaxillary Regions:** These extend from the hollow of the armpit to the sixth rib and contain lung and pleura.

The percussion note elicited throughout these regions on both sides is clear vesicular resonance though it is somewhat clearer on the left side than on the

right, the former often being used as a standard for the normal lung resonance of the individual

#### RIGHT

Clear vesicular resonance from sixth to seventh rib Injured resonance from seventh to eighth rib Dullness below that due to liver

**Infraaxillary Regions** (below the sixth rib)

#### LEFT

Clear vesicular resonance from sixth to eighth rib

Vesicular tympany to the right of the median line from eighth rib downward

Relative dullness or dullness is elicited between the posterior axillary and midaxillary lines from the ninth to the eleventh ribs due to the position of the spleen (splenic dullness)

**Posterior Aspect** The percussion sound over the dorsum of the chest is duller, and the pitch higher, because of the following facts

- 1 The closeness of the ribs
- 2 Their insertions almost directly upon another osseous structure which is not a resonator (the spine)
- 3 The peculiar curvature of the ribs and their heavier dorsal extremity
- 4 The difference in the structure of the soft parts with the addition of the scapulae

**Supraspinous Fossae** (above the spine of the scapulae) The note is muffled vesicular resonance The pitch is a little higher and the resistance some what greater at the right supraspinous fossa than at the left These regions should be percussed with a heavier stroke while the patient is in the erect or in the stooping postures Persistent dullness indicates consolidation of the apex of the lung

**Scapular Regions** On account of the scapulae the percussion sound here elicited is relatively dull

**Interscapular Regions** i. e. the area between the scapulae from the third to the eighth dorsal spine on either side of the spinal column Vesicular resonance is not very clear in these regions because of their close proximity to the spine and

their muscular coverings The vesicular resonance is also slightly modified by the trachea, and the bronchi which enter the lung in this region at the level of the fifth dorsal spine

**Infrascapular Regions** (below seventh rib) These regions produce the greatest amount of vesicular resonance posteriorly

Clear vesicular resonance prevails on the right side from the seventh to the ninth rib relative dullness from the ninth rib to the tenth below the tenth rib liver dullness is elicited Left side, vesicular tympany from seventh rib downward to splenic dullness

#### Respiratory Mobility

The base of each lung descends during inspiration and ascends during expiration Posture to some extent also influences the lung borders according to gravity This is particularly noticeable when the patient turns from the recumbent posture to either side A greater descent of the diaphragm is noted on the dependent side

**Complementary Spaces** The respiratory mobility of the base of the lung is noted in the following manner

**Technic** The patient stands or sits his back toward the examiner

1 During normal respiration, the examiner maps out by percussion the lower border of the lung and marks it with a pencil

2 The patient is then instructed to take a very deep breath and to hold it while the examiner percusses the level to which the lung has descended and places another pencil mark



Fig 15—Technic for outlining the complementary spaces

3 The patient is then instructed to exhale forcibly and arrest the act after expiration is accomplished. The examiner again percusses to find the level to which the lung has ascended and again places a pencil mark

The space between the upper and lower pencil marks represents the respiratory mobility or complementary space. The same act is repeated on both sides of the spine.

The left lung usually descends a half-inch lower than the right. In disease of the base of the lung and also in pleural and diaphragmatic adhesions, the res-

piratory mobility is diminished. In large pleural effusions, pneumothorax, hydrothorax and pulmonary atelectasis, respiratory mobility is practically nil

### Topographic Percussion

Percussion is the only means at our command for determining by physical examination the sizes of the various organs contained within the thoracic cavity. It is, therefore, necessary for one to be familiar with the normal size of an organ, so that he may judge it in diseased conditions, and note if a particular organ is increased or diminished in size. The anatomical position of the various viscera has been mentioned in a preceding chapter

In order to determine the exact size of the various organs or to differentiate the borders of two organs that lie adjacent, so as to know where one viscus begins and the other ends, they must be of different densities. Thus, we can easily tell where the lung ends and the heart begins, but it is impossible by percussion to differentiate between heart and liver dullness, or between a pleural effusion and the liver border

**Technic** To properly outline an organ, percussion should always be started from a resonant organ so as gradually to approach the nonresonant one. In this way the elevation in pitch can be noted. The pleximeter finger should be placed parallel to the supposed border of that organ

Light percussion should be practiced at the junction of any two organs

It is important to note that the lower border of the lungs and of the heart are one interspace higher in children than they are in adults. Thus, in children, anteriorly, the lower border of the lungs is in the fifth intercostal space, laterally

in the seventh, and posteriorly in the ninth. The apex beat is in the fourth interspace. On the other hand, in very old people the lung borders are an interspace lower than in normal young and middle aged adults, thus the lower anterior border of the lung is in the seventh interspace, laterally in the ninth interspace, and posteriorly in the eleventh interspace. It will be noted that the relation of the base of the lungs to the ribs in the anterior, the lateral and the posterior aspects is the same at the various stages of life.

	ANTERIOR	LATERAL	POSTERIOR
Young children	5th rib	7th rib	9th rib
Adults	6th rib	8th rib	10th rib
Old people	7th rib	9th rib	11th rib

The difference of lung and rib topography at the various ages of life is probably caused by the difference in the angles of the ribs at these ages. In children, the ribs are horizontal, and at right angle with the sternum. In young and middle aged adults, the ribs are somewhat oblique. In old age, the ribs take a decidedly oblique course.

## The Abnormal Chest

### Pathologic Variations of the Percussion Sound

Normally, the only percussion sound elicited over the lungs is vesicular resonance, with slight modifications in its pitch and its intensity, depending upon the thickness of the chest wall and the proximity of other organs.

Pathologically, the percussion note may vary from absolute dullness to tympany, with all their intermediate variations, depending upon the specific morbid condition of the lung, pleura and chest wall.

#### A. Abnormal Dullness

**I Dullness and Flatness** Dullness is elicited only over airless tissue adjacent to air containing structures. If a dull note is obtained by percussing over the lung, it indicates that air containing lung substance has been metamorphosed into an airless tissue. The following conditions produce dullness.

**1 Intrapulmonary.** (a) *Consolidation of the Lungs* (the pneumonias and pulmonary tuberculosis). The air vesicles, being filled with inflammatory exudate to the exclusion of all air, are prac-

tically solid substances and hence they yield a dull percussion note. The larger the consolidation, the more pronounced is the dullness, because in large consolidations the percussion stroke is unable to set the surrounding vesicular structures into vibration. The note thus elicited is, therefore, very dull, because it is not tinged with an adjacent resonance producing substance.

(b) *Pulmonary Atelectasis*. In this condition the lung is collapsed and forms airless tissue, consequently, there will be dullness on percussion.

(c) *New Growths in the Lung Substance*. Carcinoma, sarcoma, gumma, abscess, cyst, enlarged mediastinal or bronchial glands, and aneurysm, because of their solid consistency, and when large, will produce a dull percussion note.

(d) *Large Hemorrhagic Infarcts, or Gangrene of the Lung*. If superficial and before they have undergone complete necrosis and cavitation, these will produce dullness.

**2 Extrapulmonary:** *Displaced solid organs*, like transposed viscera, cause dullness in unexpected regions. Thus



heart dullness may be obtained at the fourth or fifth interspaces on the right side and liver dullness over the lower ribs on the left side

wall is replaced by fluid which is an airless tissue

Fluid in the pleural sacs when not bound down by adhesions is freely mov

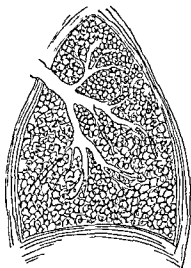


Fig 16—Normal lung over which vesicular resonance is elicited

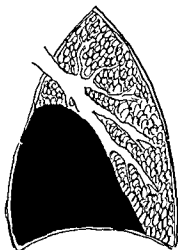


Fig 17—Consolidation of lung yielding a dull note

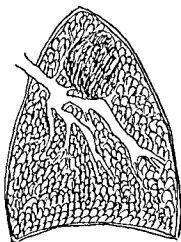


Fig 18—New growths of lung yielding relative dullness

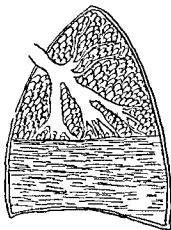


Fig 19—Pleural effusion yielding flatness.

**Pleural Effusions** Hydrothorax pyothorax hemothorax or any other liquid effusion in the pleural cavity will yield absolute dullness or flatness. The reason for this is self evident—the lung structure being pushed away from the chest

able, the fluid always gravitating to the dependent parts. A change of the patient's posture will in such cases cause a change of the upper level of dullness. Under certain circumstances, the upper level of liver dullness may be shifted

and therefore be mistaken for pleural effusion, for instance, in the sitting or standing posture, liver dullness may be one or two intercostal spaces higher than in the recumbent position. When recumbent, the liver gravitates toward the back, allowing room for the base of the lung to descend, in the sitting or stand



Fig. 20—Grocco's paravertebral triangle of dullness

ing position the lung is supported by the liver. The diaphragm usually accommodates itself to the kind of support it receives. Grocco's sign is of value in differentiating pleural effusion from a movable liver.

**Grocco's sign** (paravertebral triangle of dullness). The dullness elicited posteriorly in the presence of a pleural effusion, occurring on one side, is transmitted to a triangular area of dullness on the opposite side of the spine. The apex of the triangle corresponds to the upper level of the effusion on the affected side; the base is formed by the lower level of dullness and the hypotenuse extends from apex to base. It can be elicited

when the patient either stands or sits upright. The triangular area of dullness disappears when the patient lies on the affected side.

**Tumors** either solid or an aneurysm, when situated at the base of the lung, will cause dullness over their respective sides only. Grocco's sign is usually absent. There are, however, occasional exceptions to this rule. A case of aneurysm of the lower portion of the thoracic aorta seen at the Philadelphia General Hospital, gave a typical Grocco's sign. At post mortem a double sac aneurysm was found, one sac on either side of the spinal column.

## II Relative or Moderate Dullness

**Normally**, relative dullness is elicited over those portions of the chest where the lung covers a solid organ, for example, in the third interspace to the left of the sternum where the lung covers the heart and in the fifth interspace on the right side where the lung covers the liver.

**Pathologically**, relative dullness is elicited over such morbid states of the lung and pleura as cause an admixture of a greater proportion of solid than air-containing structure. Relative dullness may be elicited under the following conditions:

- 1 **Intrapulmonary Small Consolidations** (bronchopneumonia, small tuberculous lesions). When percussing over a small consolidation we elicit not only the dull note characteristic of such tissue, but we also set into vibration the vesicular tissue immediately surrounding such a consolidation. These vesicles usually enlarge because they compensate for the neighboring solid vesicles which have been put "out of commission." In consequence, we get an admixture of sounds: dullness from the consolidation, and res

onance from the neighboring structures. This admixture can be best described as *dullness having some resonant quality*, properly named, *relative or moderate dullness*. This note is also elicited over deep seated consolidations, deep seated solid tumors, small infarcts and small areas of atelectasis. Edema of the lungs, fibroid phthisis and interstitial pneumonia likewise yield the same percussion note. The reason for relative dullness in these conditions is as follows:

*Edema of the Lungs*. In this condition we have in the air vesicles and their interstitial tissue an effusion of frothy, serous fluid, and under these conditions the proportion of airless substance (fluid) and air containing tissue is such as to produce relative dullness. *Fibroid phthisis* and *interstitial pneumonia* have practically a similar admixture, *e g*, an overgrowth of fibrous tissue, followed later by shrinkage. The partially shrunk air cells, which are well encased in airless fibrous tissue, so modify the percussion note that it yields relative dullness.

**2 Extrapulmonary Causes.** Relative dullness is also elicited over thickened pleura, and small pleural effusions, mediastinal tumors, aneurysm, greatly hypertrophied heart pericardial effusion, localized empyema and enlarged thymus.

**III Impaired Resonance or Slight Dullness.** Impaired resonance is obtainable over those pathological conditions of the lung and pleura where airless tissue only slightly encroaches upon the air containing element, so that the air-containing tissue predominates.

Such conditions as small tuberculous infiltrations, very small consolidations, small hemorrhagic infarcts, enlarged glands or very small solid growths, small atelectatic areas, or accumulations of exudate within the bronchi, lend a

heightened pitch and slight impairment to an otherwise almost clear normal note. The same is true of a slightly thickened pleura, or a very scant pleural exudate.

### B. Abnormal Clearness

In the normal chest there are areas over which clearness may be elicited. A clearer or more resonant note than normal over such portions is an indication of some abnormal condition, either of the particular area of lung lying directly beneath the point of percussion, *i e*, chronic emphysema, cavity, bronchiectasis or pneumothorax, or because of pathologic conditions existing in an adjacent portion of the lung causing compensatory emphysema. Compensatory emphysema causes enlargement of the lung vesicles, which accommodate more air than do other vesicles not so affected. This enlargement is caused by the extra amount of air they are obliged to hold in order to compensate for the lack of respiratory air in a consolidated or otherwise diseased portion of lung lying adjacent to them. Because these vesicles contain more air, they give rise to a more resonant percussion sound. Just as the degree of dullness depends upon the amount of airless tissue added to the normal lung substance, so the degree of resonance is influenced by the quantity of air added to normal lung substance and the degree of pulmonary tension.

The abnormally clear sound may vary from mere exaggerated resonance to loud tympany. The intermediate steps are arbitrarily divided into

I Exaggerated resonance

II Hyperresonance

III Vesiculotympany, or *skodaic* resonance.

IV. Tympany—open, closed and their modifications, *i.e.*, cavernous, amphoric, Wintrich's change of sound, Gerhard's change of sound, Friedreich's phenomena and Williams' tracheal tone

#### V Cracked pot sound

I **Exaggerated Vesicular Resonance** (puerile resonance) This sound is simply an increase in all the normal qualities of the normal vesicular note. It has the characteristics of vesicular resonance and can be readily recognized as such, differing only in that it is a trifle clearer and of somewhat lower pitch.

This sound is elicited over lung substance which contains a little more than the normal amount of air, all other relations of the lung to the surrounding structures remaining the same. The presence of this note indicates compensatory emphysema of short duration, before the vesicular walls have lost their elasticity. Such conditions will be found in an upper lobe of the lung as a result of moderate consolidation or compression of the lower lobe or *vice versa*, and on one side when moderate consolidation has taken place in the opposite lung. Exaggerated resonance disappears when the morbid condition responsible for this change is remedied. Exaggerated resonance may be slight or moderate, depending upon the degree of temporary distention. In young children, the normal chest note is one of exaggerated vesicular resonance, because the child's chest wall is thin and resilient, and also because of the greater intravesicular tension at that age.

An exaggerated vesicular note is often elicited by percussing over the chest of anemic emaciated persons. In such cases there is a diminished amount of fat and muscle (airless tissue), and the skin is stretched tightly over the ribs.

The combination of a thinner substance to modify the lung resonance, and the increased resiliency of the ribs, are responsible for this note.

II **Hyperresonance** This is heard as an abnormally clear and deep note, both of greater intensity and longer duration. It was described by Biermer as a "bandbox note." This occurs in conditions where the lung vesicles are overdistended with air, and the vesicular walls have lost their elasticity, thus causing decreased pulmonary tension. Hyperresonance is found in chronic bilateral emphysema. In this disease, because the lung vesicles are constantly overfilled, their walls become stretched to such an extent as to cause them to lose their elasticity. As a result of this minute flabby air bladders are produced.

Hyperresonance is also obtained over a small unilateral pneumothorax.

III **Vesiculotympany** (skodaic resonance) This is a combination of vesicular and tympanic resonance. The height of the pitch depends upon the greater predominance of the tympanic quality over the vesicular quality. Vesiculotympany is closely akin to hyperresonance, differing only in pitch, the former having a slightly higher pitch, and a somewhat more tympanic element. Hyperresonance is obtained over conditions of great pulmonary relaxation, while vesiculotympany is elicited over a large accumulation of air in the vesicles, with a lesser degree of relaxation. In the language of Flint, who thus described this note: "The resonance is increased in intensity, the quality, a combination of the vesicular with tympanic, and the pitch high in proportion as the tympanic quality predominates over the vesicular. The sign

onance from the neighboring structures. This admixture can be best described as *dullness having some resonant quality*, properly named *relative or moderate dullness*. This note is also elicited over deep seated consolidations, deep seated solid tumors, small infarcts and small areas of atelectasis. Edema of the lungs, fibroid phthisis and interstitial pneumonia likewise yield the same percussion note. The reason for relative dullness in these conditions is as follows:

*Edema of the Lungs* In this condition we have in the air vesicles and their interstitial tissue an effusion of frothy serous fluid and under these conditions the proportion of airless substance (fluid) and air containing tissue is such as to produce relative dullness. *Fibroid phthisis* and *interstitial pneumonia* have practically a similar admixture, *e g* an over growth of fibrous tissue followed later by shrinkage. The partially shrunken air cells which are well encased in airless fibrous tissue so modify the percussion note that it yields relative dullness.

**2 Extrapulmonary Causes** Relative dullness is also elicited over thickened pleura and small pleural effusions, mediastinal tumors, aneurysm, greatly hypertrophied heart, pericardial effusion, localized empyema and enlarged thymus.

**III Impaired Resonance or Slight Dullness** Impaired resonance is obtainable over those pathological conditions of the lung and pleura where airless tissue only slightly encroaches upon the air-containing element so that the air-containing tissue predominates.

Such conditions as small tuberculous infiltrations, very small consolidations, small hemorrhagic infarcts, enlarged glands or very small solid growths, small atelectatic areas or accumulations of exudate within the bronchi, lend a

heightened pitch and slight impairment to an otherwise almost clear normal note. The same is true of a slightly thickened pleura or a very scant pleural exudate.

### B. Abnormal Clearness

In the normal chest there are areas over which clearness may be elicited. A clearer or more resonant note than normal over such portions is an indication of some abnormal condition either of the particular area of lung lying directly beneath the point of percussion: *e g* chronic emphysema, cavity, bronchiectasis or pneumothorax, or because of pathologic conditions existing in an adjacent portion of the lung causing compensatory emphysema. Compensatory emphysema causes enlargement of the lung vesicles which accommodate more air than do other vesicles not so affected. This enlargement is caused by the extra amount of air they are obliged to hold in order to compensate for the lack of respiratory air in a consolidated or otherwise diseased portion of lung lying adjacent to them. Because these vesicles contain more air they give rise to a more resonant percussion sound. Just as the degree of dullness depends upon the amount of airless tissue added to the normal lung substance so the degree of resonance is influenced by the quantity of air added to normal lung substance and the degree of pulmonary tension.

The abnormally clear sound may vary from mere exaggerated resonance to loud tympany. The intermediate steps are arbitrarily divided into

I Exaggerated resonance

II Hyperresonance

III Vesiculotympany, or skodac resonance.

IV Tympany—open, closed and their modifications, *i e*, cavernous, amphoric, Wintrich's change of sound, Gerhard's change of sound, Friedreich's phenomena and Williams' tracheal tone

V Cracked pot sound

I **Exaggerated Vesicular Resonance** (puerile resonance) This sound is simply an increase in all the normal qualities of the normal vesicular note. It has the characteristics of vesicular resonance and can be readily recognized as such, differing only in that it is a trifle clearer and of somewhat lower pitch.

This sound is elicited over lung substance which contains a little more than the normal amount of air, all other relations of the lung to the surrounding structures remaining the same. The presence of this note indicates compensatory emphysema of short duration before the vesicular walls have lost their elasticity. Such conditions will be found in an upper lobe of the lung as a result of moderate consolidation or compression of the lower lobe or *vice versa*, and on one side when moderate consolidation has taken place in the opposite lung. Exaggerated resonance disappears when the morbid condition responsible for this change is remedied. Exaggerated resonance may be slight or moderate, depending upon the degree of temporary distention. In young children, the normal chest note is one of exaggerated vesicular resonance, because the child's chest wall is thin and resilient, and also because of the greater intravesicular tension at that age.

An exaggerated vesicular note is often elicited by percussing over the chest of anemic emaciated persons. In such cases there is a diminished amount of fat and muscle (airless tissue), and the skin is stretched tightly over the ribs.

The combination of a thinner substance to modify the lung resonance, and the increased resiliency of the ribs, are responsible for this note.

II **Hyperresonance** This is heard as an abnormally clear and deep note, both of greater intensity and longer duration. It was described by Biermer as a "bandbox note." This occurs in conditions where the lung vesicles are overdistended with air, and the vesicular walls have lost their elasticity, thus causing decreased pulmonary tension. Hyperresonance is found in chronic bilateral emphysema. In this disease, because the lung vesicles are constantly overfilled, their walls become stretched to such an extent as to cause them to lose their elasticity. As a result of this, minute flabby air bladders are produced.

Hyperresonance is also obtained over a small unilateral pneumothorax.

III **Vesiculotympany** (skodaic resonance) This is a combination of vesicular and tympanic resonance. The height of the pitch depends upon the greater predominance of the tympanic quality over the vesicular quality. Vesiculotympany is closely akin to hyperresonance, differing only in pitch, the former having a slightly higher pitch, and a somewhat more tympanic element. Hyperresonance is obtained over conditions of great pulmonary relaxation, while vesiculotympany is elicited over a large accumulation of air in the vesicles, with a lesser degree of relaxation. In the language of Flint, who thus described this note: "The resonance is increased in intensity, the quality, a combination of the vesicular with tympanic, and the pitch high in proportion as the tympanic quality predominates over the vesicular. The sign

used and for this reason its employment is rather to be discouraged

In choosing a stethoscope the most essential requirement is *properly fitting earpieces*. It does not matter much what kind of chest piece is selected, provided it is not more than seven eighths of an inch in diameter. In a short time one can accustom himself to any of the mod-



Fig 6—Binaural stethoscope  
Ford's chest piece.

ern chest pieces but auscultation with any instrument the earpieces of which do not fit properly will be found worse than useless. The external auditory meatus is not of the same size in all persons therefore one must select earpieces which fit his individual ears. The earpiece should not be small enough to enter the auditory canal to any depth, but should be sufficiently large to cover the meatus completely.

*Caution* After using a certain size of earpiece for a number of years one often finds it necessary to get a larger size, as the external auditory canal stretches from the prolonged use of the stethoscope.

The metal tubes to which the earpieces are attached should be curved slightly forward and downward to conform to the general direction of the auditory canal.

The spring which holds the metal tubes in position should not be too stiff. A very stiff spring will cause pressure pain to the ears. It should exert just enough pressure to hold the earpieces in position.

The rubber tubing should be fairly thick and of a length of about 12 to 14 inches. The inside diameter need not be very large, but the tube should be elastic in order to facilitate movements of the head in any desired direction.

Any of the popular chest pieces will serve the purpose of the clinician. Each physician becomes accustomed to his own instrument, and cannot hear as well with another's even though it be the best stethoscope made. The chest piece should be of small circumference, should not be applied to the patient's body when cold, and should always be held by as few of the examiner's fingers as will enable him to grasp it firmly.

In speaking of Laennec and the instrument which he placed in the hands of the medical profession, C. T. Williams,<sup>1</sup> a well known English thoracic specialist said: 'No method, however is so simple as that of auscultation and the stethoscope remains an instrument which all medical practitioners ought to know well, for good hearing and patience is all that is required. Some patients have no sputum to test and the shadows of the x rays may be capable of many explanations. Auscultation therefore holds its own, and will continue to do so to the end of time.'

### Technic

In auscultation as in the other methods of examination, the position of the patient and of the physician must be easy and unconstrained. The patient must bare his chest and should be made to feel perfectly at ease.

In each case the standard normal vesicular breath sounds should first be

<sup>1</sup>Williams, C. T. Laennec and the Evolution of the Stethoscope. British Medical Journal July 6 1907, vol. ii pp 6-8.

obtained by listening to the left axillary or infraclavicular region. Systematic auscultation should then be begun at the apices the patient being allowed to breathe naturally. It will prove less embarrassing particularly with women if auscultation is commenced posteriorly in the suprascapular region by the time the posterior aspect of the chest has been thoroughly auscultated any possible embarrassment will have subsided sufficiently to enable the examiner thoroughly and systematically to auscultate the anterior aspect.

Auscultation of the lungs is performed in five successive steps

**1 During Normal or Quiet Breathing** The typical normal breath sounds are found in the left axillary and left infraclavicular regions of a normal person. In the infraclavicular regions the breath sounds are somewhat harsher than in the axillary regions. As in palpation and percussion one region or intercostal space should be carefully compared to the corresponding region or intercostal space of the opposite side. The examiner should listen in one spot to at least four or five respiratory cycles before he attempts auscultation over another area. Each intercostal space should be auscultated in no less than three vertical planes in each region of the chest. After the patient's chest has been thoroughly auscultated during quiet or normal breathing the second step is begun.

**2 During Deep Breathing** (preferably mouth breathing the mouth being slightly open). The patient is instructed to breathe deeply but quietly while the examiner repeats the examination with the same thoroughness as in step one.

**3 During Whisper** The patient is asked to whisper one two three or any one of the stock phrases and the dis-

tinctness of the transmitted whisper should again be noted in the various regions and intercostal spaces.

**4 During Speech** The patient is instructed to repeat in a loud voice such a stock phrase as *one two three or ninety nine*. The intensity of the voice transmission should be noted in each region and compared with the corresponding region on the opposite side.

**5 During Cough** The final step consists in asking the patient to cough slightly after expiration so that the influence of cough upon the respiration in the various regions can be noted. This procedure will often bring out rales previously inaudible while at other times (depending upon the pathologic condition of the lungs and bronchi) coughing may cause rales to disappear or their location to change.

### Breath Sounds

Three varieties of breath sounds are heard over the normal chest. **1 Vesicular breathing or normal lung sounds** normal vesicular murmur—over normal vesicular lung structures this sound being modified in the very young (puerile respiration) and in the very old (senile respiration). **2 Bronchovesicular breathing**—where the smaller bronchi and lung substance meet i.e. second intercostal space near the sternum and the suprascapular fossae close to the spine. **3 Bronchial breathing**—over a tubular structure i.e. the trachea and large bronchi.

These normal lung sounds may be classified as follows

#### 1 VESICULAR BREATHING

Quality	Vesicular or breezy
Intensity	Soft or feeble
Pitch	Low



Duration Inspiration longer than expiration

Rhythm Inspiration and expiration occur regularly and at a given number of times per minute

## 2 BRONCHOVESICULAR BREATHING

Quality Somewhat muffled blowing

Intensity Somewhat harsh

Pitch Higher than vesicular not quite so high as bronchial

Duration Inspiration two thirds as long as expiration

Rhythm Regular

## 3 BRONCHIAL BREATHING

Quality Blowing piping tubular

Intensity Harsh

Pitch High

Duration Inspiration as long as expiration

Rhythm Regular

**Normal Vesicular Breathing** It is evident from what has been said that the quality of the breath sound depends largely upon the structure of the tissue modifying it. Its analogy is found in wind instruments where the variations are often due to the difference in the caliber of the reed. The inspiratory sound begins in the larynx and is modified as it descends to the bronchi, bronchioles and vesicles.

Every respiratory sound consists of two distinct parts *inspiration* and *expiration* which are separated from each other by a pause. It is important to note the quality of the breath sounds and the length of the inspiratory and expiratory sounds, their proportion to each other and the length of the intervening pause.

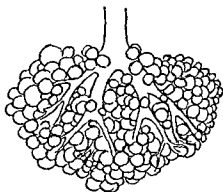
**Inspiration** It should be emphasized at the outset that the length of the inspiratory *act* bears no relation to the length of the inspiratory *sound* as heard over normal vesicular lung structure. The inspiratory *act* is shorter than the expiratory *act* but the inspiratory *sound* as heard over that portion of the chest

overlying normal vesicular lung structure, is longer than the expiratory *sound*; thus, clinically speaking it is stated when referring to vesicular sounds that *inspiration is three times longer than expiration*. The proportionate lengths of the inspiratory and expiratory *acts* can readily be noted by listening with the stethoscope over the mouth and nose of a sleeping person. It will be noted that the proportionate length of inspiration to expiration is reversed when listening over the mouth and nose of a sleeping person to that obtained by listening over the chest.

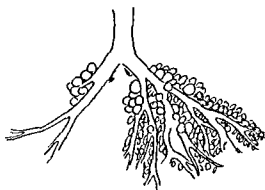
The inspiratory sound of normal vesicular breathing commences as soon as the air begins to enter the vesicular structures and lasts until they are entirely filled. The sound thus produced may be somewhat simulated by holding the lips in the position required to pronounce the sound *F* at the same time taking a long breath. The ratio of the inspiratory sound to the expiratory is about three to one, the former is also a little harsher and louder than the latter.

**Expiration** The expiratory sound of normal vesicular breathing as heard over the chest is the shortest breath sound encountered. Any pathologic variation of the expiratory sound will always be a lengthening because it is impossible for it to be shorter than the normal. This sound may be imitated by holding the lips in position to pronounce the letter *V*, and at the same time exhaling quickly, the sound will be soft and of low pitch, a mere whiff, often scarcely audible. The expiratory sound depends upon the collapse of the vesicular lung structure.

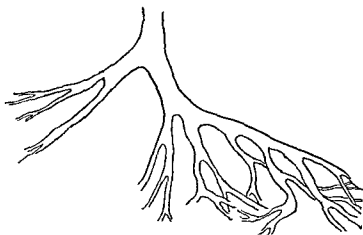
The difference in the length of both sounds may be explained by noting that



1 All lung vesicles are filled during inspiration



2 Many of the lung vesicles remain airless during inspiration

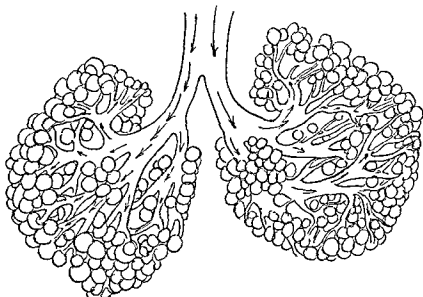


3 None of the vesicles contain air

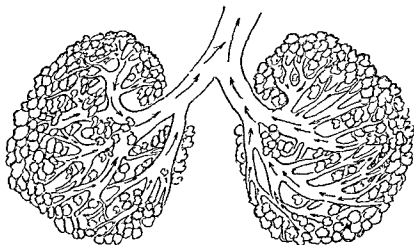
Fig 7—Breathings 1, Vesicular, 2, bronchovesicular, 3 bronchial

It takes longer to fill a vessel through a small opening than it does to empty a similar vessel through a large opening

is only heard at the time the vesicles collapse simultaneously, when the air reaches the larger caliber tubes the



- 1 Inspiration Air is being forced into the lungs against resistance from large tubes to successively smaller tubes until the vesicles are reached.



- 2 Expiration The air is forced out of the lungs by the collapse of the air vesicles it then passes through ever larger nonresisting bronchi

Fig 8-1, Inspiration. 2, Expiration

During inspiration the air has to pass through larynx trachea, bronchi and bronchioles to the air vesicles and always against resistance. The expiratory sound

is lost because of lack of resistance, it oozes out through the larger tubes. However, if, during expiration the stethoscope is held over the nose or

mouth, the expiratory sound will be audible much longer than the inspiratory sound

The normal vesicular murmur (in inspiration and expiration) is spoken of as "soft" and "breezy," resembling the sound produced by a gentle wind rustling the leaves in a tree. The pause between inspiration and expiration is very short, often not at all perceptible. As

tween inspiration and expiration is maintained. Thus we have

#### NORMAL VESICULAR BREATHING

Inspiration 3

Expiration 1

#### PUERILE RESPIRATION

Inspiration 6

Expiration 2

In *senile respiration* the intensity of the vesicular murmur is diminished and

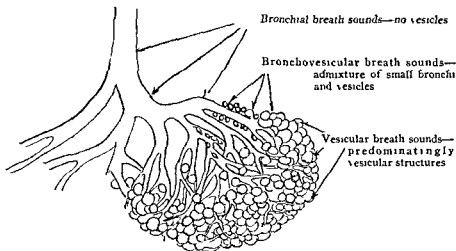


Fig 9—Breath sounds heard over various parts of the normal chest.

soon as inspiration is completed expiration begins. A lengthening of the pause is an indication of some pathological condition.

#### Normal Variations

Normally, the vesicular murmur varies with age and sex, as for example *Puerile respiration* is heard in children under 12 years of age where because of the resiliency of the chest wall and the elasticity of the vesicular structure both inspiration and expiration are much harsher, louder and longer, though still of vesicular quality. The inspiratory and expiratory sounds are also proportionately lengthened. However, the ratio be-

indistinctly transmissible due to the weakened and inelastic condition of the lung. Expiration is somewhat prolonged and the intrarespiratory pause is somewhat lengthened.

Respiration is louder in females than in males, particularly in the upper part of the chest.

Muscular persons with thick chest walls present a feeble respiratory murmur because the added thickness interferes with the transmission of sound, on the other hand, those having thin chest walls transmit the vesicular murmur more clearly.

Persons of sedentary habits and those who do not breathe deeply, present a

weak vesicular murmur because of insufficient development of the lungs. This is most noticeable at the borders of the lungs that is the apices and bases.

**Bronchial Breathing (normal)** Bronchial breathing is a harsh tubular piping sound. Inspiration is as long as expiration, both having the same harsh quality. It may be approximately imitated by sounding the German *ch*. The

little harsher than the normal vesicular inspiratory sound, yet it retains a distinct vesicular quality tinged with a bronchial element. Expiration is a little longer, more intense and of higher pitch than vesicular breathing, having quite a bronchial element. The ratio between inspiration and expiration is as three to two. The interrespiratory pause is somewhat longer than that of vesicular

Inspiration		Expiration
Normal Vesccular 3		1
Broncho Vesccular 3	Inter respiratory pause	2
Bronchial 3		3
Emphysematous 3		3½
Puerile and Compensatory Emphysema 6		2

Fig 10—Inspiratory exp ratory ratio of the various types of breathing

ratio between inspiration and expiration is three to three, and the interrespiratory pause is lengthened. Normally bronchial breathing is heard anteriorly over the trachea and posteriorly over the spine of the seventh cervical vertebra, also over the skull particularly over the temporal regions.

**Bronchovesicular Breathing (normal)** This type of breathing, as its name indicates, is a combination of bronchial and vesicular. To be more exact, it is not as harsh as bronchial but harsher than vesicular. Inspiration is a

breathing but shorter than in the bronchial type.

Bronchovesicular breathing is not as distinct a type as either bronchial or vesicular; there are many variations ranging from very mild to harsh breathing, its distinctive quality, however, is an intermediate position between bronchial and vesicular.

Normally this type of breathing is heard where there is a blending of bronchi and vesicles, as

1 In the right second interspace close to the sternum

2 At the vertebral borders of the interscapular regions, and at the root of the lungs

The harsher respiratory sound heard over the right supra- and infraclavicular

regions can hardly be classed as typically bronchovesicular. It is simply a harsher vesicular murmur due to the anatomic peculiarities of the right bronchus

### Resume

	INSPIRATION		EXPIRATION
Bronchial breathing	{ Harsh	Intensity	Harsh
	{ Long	Duration	Long
	{ Tubular	Quality	Tubular
	Inspiratory expiratory	Ratio 3 3	
Vesicular breathing	{ Soft.	Intensity	A mere puff
	{ Longer	Duration	Very short.
	{ Breezy	Quality	Very soft.
	Inspiratory expiratory	Ratio 3 1	
Bronchovesicular breathing	{ Soft though tempered	Intensity	Fairly harsh.
	{ Fairly long	Duration	Not quite so long
	{ Mixed	Quality	Somewhat harsh
	Inspiratory expiratory	Ratio 3 2	

### Regional Auscultation

The breath sounds vary greatly in the different regions of the healthy chest owing to

1 The variations of the lung structure

2 The peculiar distribution of the bronchi

3 The encroachment of other organs upon the lung

4 The variations in the thickness of the chest wall

It is, therefore necessary for the student to familiarize himself with the breath sounds normally heard in the various regions or intercostal spaces, so that he may readily recognize the occurrence of the abnormal

### Supraclavicular Regions

#### LEFT

The breath sounds are vesicular but somewhat distant because the lung apex has less volume than the other parts of the lung and is further removed from the surface. This region and the corresponding region on the opposite side should be carefully auscultated as it is often the primary seat of manifest pulmonary tuberculosis.

#### RIGHT

The breath sounds are somewhat harsher than on the left side and expiration is prolonged

**Infraclavicular Regions****LEFT**

Auscultation should properly begin at this region because typical normal vesicular breath sounds are here heard and it can be taken as a standard for each individual.

Normal vesicular breathing is heard in the first and second interspaces in the second interspace half an inch from the sternum. Close to the sternum at this level we can hear distinct bronchovesicular breathing because of the entrance of the left bronchus in the lung. At the lowermost portion of the second interspace and over the third rib we get exaggerated or puerile breath sound caused by slight compression of the lung by the base of the heart.

**Mammary Regions****LEFT**

Third interspace in lean persons slightly exaggerated breathing because the lung is somewhat compressed by the heart. Fourth to sixth ribs inside the parasternal line distant breath sounds are heard because of the position of the heart. In that region outside the parasternal line, distant vesicular breathing is heard.

**Inframammary Regions****LEFT**

No breath sounds can be heard during quiet breathing because the lung rarely dips into this region during deep breathing vesicular breath sounds are audible.

**Superior Sternal Regions** The breath sounds in the suprasternal notch and over the uppermost portion of the sternum are bronchial because of the position of the trachea. Below Louis angle and on either margin of the sternum as far as the third rib, the breath sounds are bronchovesicular.

**Inferior Sternal Regions** No breath sounds are audible on the left border of the sternum because of the presence of the heart which lies beneath. Very faint breath sounds are heard at the right border.

**RIGHT**

The breath sounds in this region are vesicular and bronchovesicular. The vesicular breathing is much harsher than on the left side, expiration being prolonged because the right bronchus is more direct shorter and of larger caliber. In the second interspace near the sternum distinct bronchovesicular breathing is heard because at this level the right bronchus enters the lung superficially and also because of slight compression of the lung by the base of the heart, and by a portion of the aortic arch.

**RIGHT**

Third rib to fourth interspace somewhat distant but pure vesicular breath sounds. Fourth to fifth interspace somewhat exaggerated vesicular breathing because the lung is buoyed up by the liver below that level no breath sounds are heard because of the position of the liver.

**RIGHT**

No breath sounds during quiet breathing because this space is occupied by the liver.

**Superior Axillary Regions** (armpit to sixth rib) On the right side the respiratory vesicular murmur is somewhat harsher than on the left side because of the extra lobe and slight compression of the lung by the liver. The breath sounds heard in the left superior axillary region are purely vesicular, and may act as a standard for the normal quality of the individual. The vesicular murmur is however, distinctly audible on both sides.

**Inferior Axillary Regions** (sixth rib downward) Breath sounds are audible only to the eighth rib because lat

erally, the lung does not extend below that level. The vesicular murmur is distant and feeble, though distinctly audible on both sides.

### Supraspinous Fossa or Suprascapular Region\*

#### LEFT

Harsh vesicular breathing near the spine, distant vesicular in the remaining portion.

#### RIGHT

Modified bronchovesicular breathing near the vertebral spine. Harsh vesicular with slightly prolonged expiration in the remaining portion.

**Scapular Regions** The breath sounds are very distant and at times inaudible particularly in quiet breathing or in stout individuals as the breath sounds are lost in passing through the scapulae.

**Interscapular Regions** Bronchovesicular breathing is heard near the vertebral spine on either side. Over a small area the size of a half dollar situated one inch away from the vertebral spine on either side, and on a level with the fourth intercostal space (fifth dorsal spine) there is heard bronchial breathing. This area corresponds to the roots of the lungs. Over the remaining portions of either interscapular region only distant vesicular breath sounds can be heard.

**Infrascapular Regions** (seventh to tenth ribs) In these regions the breath

sounds are distinctly vesicular, though somewhat distant. An examination of the lungs is not complete unless these regions have been thoroughly auscultated, because they are the preferred sites of lobar pneumonia, and — not infrequently — of pulmonary tuberculosis, pleurisy, bronchitis, syphilis and malignancy of the lungs.

**Spinal Column** Over the spine of the seventh cervical vertebra, cavernous breathing is heard, over the second and third dorsal vertebrae, distant bronchial breathing, below that level the breath sounds become more distant.

**Head Auscultation** Over the temporal regions cavernous breathing and over the parietal region, bronchial breathing is heard.

### Pathologic Breath Sounds

The breath sounds which have been described are normal for each region noted, any variations therefrom must therefore, be regarded as pathologic.

#### Pathologic Variations of the Normal Vesicular Murmur (Breath Sounds)

The normal vesicular murmur is spoken of as having five attributes:

I **Intensity** Soft or feeble

II **Rhythm** Inspiration and expiration occur regularly, and at a given number of times per minute. Adult male,

18 to 20, adult female, 20 to 22, children at birth, 44, at five years old 25

III **Pitch** Low

IV **Duration** Inspiration longer than expiration

V **Quality** Vesicular or breezy

The vesicular lung structure may be so distorted by disease as to give rise to the following modifications of the normal vesicular murmur:

I **Alterations in Intensity** Intensity may be (a) increased, (b) diminished, or (c) absent.



**(a) Increased Vesicular Murmur:**

This is a greater degree of loudness of the normal vesicular breath sounds. The ratio of inspiration to expiration is maintained, though both are somewhat prolonged, as found in compensatory emphysema. It is usually an indication of increased functional activity as a result of disease in an adjacent portion of the same lung or of the opposite lung. It may also occur in any portion of the lung as a result of partial compression or slight relaxation.

**(b) Diminished Vesicular Murmur**

(shallow or extreme senile respiration). The vesicular breath sounds are feeble, inspiration is shortened and expiration is often inaudible. It may occur as a result of

1 Defective transmission of breath sounds due to (a) thickened chest wall, *e.*, edema, tumor, hypertrophied muscle or fat, (b) thickened pleura, or (c) a slight amount of pleural effusion.

2 Defective lung expansion resulting from (a) partial obstruction of the trachea or of a bronchus by a tumor or a foreign body or by secretion or edema, (b) paralysis of the diaphragm or thoracic muscles, (c) willfully holding the breath because of pain due to peritonitis, pleurodynia, or intercostal neuralgia, (d) upward enlargement of the spleen, liver or stomach or a tumor which causes upward displacement of the diaphragm, which in turn prevents lung expansion.

3 Diminished elasticity of the lung vesicles as in edema, congestion of the lungs and chronic emphysema in the aged or feeble.

**(c) Absent or Inaudible Breath Sounds:** This may be caused by (a) large pleural effusions of serum, pus or blood, coincidentally pushing the lung

away, and acting as an intervening medium, (b) large diffuse pneumothorax.

(c) greatly thickened pleura, (d) fibrophthisis causing shrinkage of the lung,

(e) atelectasis or collapse of the lung from any cause, accompanied by occlusion of the bronchus, (f) extensive tuberculous deposits affecting the lung and pleura, and plugging of the bronchus and (g) foreign bodies completely plugging a bronchus.

**II Alterations in Rhythm:** Normally, inspiration and expiration occur regularly at a constant rate, pathologically, rhythm may be affected by (a) increase in frequency, (b) decrease in frequency, (c) irregular frequency, (d) interrupted inspiration, (e) shortened inspiration, (f) prolonged expiration, and (g) lengthened interval between inspiration and expiration.

**(a) Increased Respiratory Frequency** This may result from the following causes

I *Physiologic* Running, jumping or other violent physical exertion, and mental or psychical disturbances.

II *Pathologic* 1 *Diseases of the lungs* The pneumonias, pneumoconiosis, bronchiectasis, moderately advanced and advanced pulmonary tuberculosis, consolidation or compression of one lung or of a lobe, pulmonary edema, congestion, asthma, emphysema, partial obstruction to the entrance of air in the lungs, or any condition that will cause a diminished aerating surface. Tumors, aneurysms, diseases of thorax, diaphragmatic abscess, hernia, evisceration, etc. will cause rapid breathing because of mechanical interference.

2 *Diseases of the Heart* Dilatation of one or more of the heart chambers, particularly of the left ventricle, degeneration of the myocardium, or any other

condition that may interfere with the action of the heart and cause cardiac decompensation

3 *Disease of the Kidneys* By causing edema of the lungs and effusions in the pleura, pericardium and peritoneum, and also because of failure to eliminate some of the toxins

4 *Febrile Disease* By causing more rapid oxidation of tissue thus producing toxins and probably, also, by direct action upon the respiratory centers

5 *Disease of the Blood* All forms of anemia because of an insufficiency of erythrocytes to carry on proper oxygenation of the blood and also because of the blood being too poor in quality to nourish properly the respiratory apparatus

6 *Drugs* Excessive doses of strychnine, alcohol, belladonna and its derivatives, etc.

7 *Nervous Origin* Irritation of the respiratory center by tumor, embolism, shock, hysteria and other nervous affections

(b) *Decreased Respiratory Frequency*: This may be caused by poisoning with opium or its derivatives, uremia, diabetic coma, and other types of coma, certain brain affections, shock, hysteria, stenosis of the larynx, chronic fibroid phthisis when the patient is at rest, or approaching dissolution

(c) *Irregularity as to Frequency*: This is noticed in the terminal stage of certain nervous affections and in *Cheyne-Stokes breathing*, a variety of irregularity associated with cerebral renal cardiac, and pulmonary affections, as a rule, occurring shortly before death. It consists of a definite cycle divided into three distinct periods. At first the respirations are deep, regular and slow, then they gradually become faster and shallower

until they are very rapid and superficial, this stage is followed by a third stage, a period of apnea or suspended respiration, after which the cycle commences anew

*Biot's respiration* consists of rapid, short respirations, interrupted by short pauses, lasting a fraction of a minute. This is seen in meningitis and rarely, in healthy subjects, during sleep

(d) *Interrupted Inspiration*: The inspiratory sound, instead of being low pitched, continuous and even, may become higher in pitch, jerky "cog wheeled" or granular

In *jerky inspiration*, each inspiratory sound is interrupted by an irregular number of sudden stops and jerks

*Cogwheel inspiration* is practically a form of jerky inspiration, except that the stops occur regularly, the inspiratory sound being interrupted by two, three or even four, distinct stops

*Granular inspiration* is a subdivision of the previous type, varied only by the occurrence of more stops, sometimes from eight to ten in each inspiration; these inspirations are not very deep and are often difficult to perceive, and the breath sounds convey a sensation similar to that which one experiences when he draws his finger over a sandy board. Interrupted inspirations are met with in

1 The first stages of acute plastic pleurisy

2 Pleurodynia

3 Incipient pulmonary tuberculosis (over the lesion)

4 Imperfect expansion of some portion of the lung (apical and basal)

5 Interrupted inspiration may also be met with in healthy subjects during the first deep inspiratory effort, which may cause full expansion of a hitherto imperfectly expanded portion of the

lung, frequently met with in clerks or others of sedentary occupation. After several deep inspirations, the interruptions disappear.

(e) *Shortened inspiration* This may occur as a result of imperfect lung expansion, bronchial and asthmatic breathing also present this phenomenon.

(f) *Prolonged Expiration* It has been pointed out before that the expiratory sound of normal vesicular breathing is very short because of the sudden collapse of the elastic air vesicles, if the air vesicles lose their elasticity, they are unable to collapse suddenly, and only by slow contractions permit the air to ooze out gradually, thus producing a prolonged expiratory sound. Any condition which will bring about such a state will also cause a fibrosis of the bronchioles, thus transmitting the expiratory sound with greater intensity. A similar prolongation of the expiratory sound occurs as a result of consolidation of the lungs, a condition in which the air vesicles have been put out of service, and respiration is being carried on entirely by the bronchi. The same volume of air entering and leaving the same set of tubes without being split up will naturally consume an equal length of time in its exit as it does in its entrance. Prolonged expiration is among the earliest physical signs in manifest incipient tuberculosis, its presence denotes congestion.

1 *Prolonged Expiration—in Emphysema* Expiration is as long or longer than inspiration, it is of low pitch and feeble vesicular quality, and can be heard over the entire chest.

2 *Large consolidation* is indicated by bronchial breathing, expiration is as long as inspiration and is of high pitch and tubular quality, it is heard over a portion of the chest overlying a consoli-

dated lung, an exposed bronchus, or over the trachea.

3 *Small consolidation* produces bronchovesicular breathing, expiration is two thirds as long as inspiration and is of a modified tubulovesicular quality and moderately high pitch.

4 Prolonged expiratory sounds are heard over a *large cavity*, particularly if the cavity communicates directly with a bronchus through a small opening. The inspiratory sound is also prolonged.

(g) *Lengthened Interval Between Inspiration and Expiration* Normally, the pause between inspiration and expiration is hardly perceptible. A lengthening of this pause may be due to shortened inspiration, causing a greater interval, or to delayed expiration, the expiratory sound being delayed because of inelasticity of the vesicular lung structure. This condition is seen in cases of chronic emphysema.

III *Alteration in Pitch* The pitch of the respiratory murmur depends upon the degree of elasticity in the respiratory tract. Thus the *normal vesicular murmur* is of low pitch, *emphysematous breathing*, because of loss of elasticity in the vesicular structures, produces a still lower pitch. Per contra, *compensatory emphysema*, which causes a greater elasticity of the vesicular structures, produces a much higher pitch than normal vesicular breathing. *Bronchial* and *bronchovesicular breathing*, because of the increased tension in the respiratory tract, have a still higher pitch, the pitch being higher in bronchial than in bronchovesicular breathing.

The pitch is higher in *amphoric* than in *cavernous* breathing, because a cavity with tense walls which causes the amphoric breath sounds is a better resonant

ing chamber than a cavity with flaccid walls which is the cause of cavernous breath sounds. However, both amphoric and cavernous breath sounds are of a lower pitch than either bronchovesicular or bronchial breathing.

**IV Duration:** By *duration* is meant the length of time the sound is heard. Any condition that will cause increased resonance will also lengthen its duration.

**V Alteration in Quality** The *quality* of the breath sounds depends upon their origin. The breath sounds produced by normal vesicular lung structure have a breezy, or vesicular quality. If the air vesicles are under tension they produce sounds of an exaggerated vesicular quality. If the vesicular tension is less than normal, the breath sounds become purely vesicular, emphysematous. If of bronchial origin, they are of a harsh piping quality, and are then termed *bronchial*. When the breath sounds are produced by a combination of bronchial and vesicular structures, they assume an intermediate quality. A cavity causes breath sounds of amphoric or of cavernous quality, depending upon the tension of its walls.

### Bronchial Breathing

This has already been described as high pitched, harsh tubular or piping in quality, and of great intensity. The vesicular quality being entirely absent, expiration is as long as inspiration, and the intrarespiratory pause is lengthened; normally, this is heard over a large bronchus, *pathologically*, it occurs where the air vesicles have been put out of service and respiration in that part is being carried on only by the bronchi. This type of breathing is found in

1 **Consolidation of the Lungs**  
Whether the consolidation is caused by

lobar pneumonia, pulmonary tuberculosis, hemorrhagic infarcts, new growths, pulmonary abscess or gangrene matters very little, so long as a sufficiently large portion of the lung is affected, thereby causing the respiratory air to travel in and out through these same tubes with out being dispersed into the vesicular structures.

The intensity of this sound is enhanced because it is transmitted through consolidated air vesicles, and—since a solid substance transmits sounds more readily than does air—the bronchial breath sounds are thus better transmitted.

2 **Compression of the Lungs:** Portions of the lungs may be compressed to such an extent as to cause utter collapse of the air vesicles, thus leaving only the bronchi to carry on respiration. Compression of the lung may be caused by a large pleural effusion or by pneumothorax, a tumor, an enlarged heart, pericardial effusion or enlarged glands. The effusion occupying the lower portion of the chest must necessarily crowd the lung upward and toward the spine thus causing bronchial breathing to be audible in that location, while no breath sounds can be heard over the effusion itself. In pleural effusion or empyema following pneumonia the breath sounds often remain bronchial and frequently mask the presence of fluid.

3 **Bronchiectasis** may at times cause bronchial breathing.

### Bronchovesicular Breathing

This form of breathing occurs where there is blending of bronchial and vesicular structures. Pathologically, it may be in evidence over

1 **Small Consolidations** (found in pulmonary tuberculosis, bronchopneu-

monia and atypical pneumonia) The air vesicles immediately surrounding a consolidation become distended in order to compensate for the affected vesicles, when listening over a small consolidation, the blending of the sounds caused by both the consolidation and the distended vesicular structures are heard, hence a bronchovesicular quality

**2 Deep-seated Consolidation** Central pneumonia, where a portion of healthy lung overlaps the consolidation

**3 Small areas of pulmonary atelectasis** due to any cause

**4 First and third stages of lobar pneumonia**, before and after the occurrence of complete consolidation or any other condition that causes partial infiltration of the air vesicles

**5 Diffuse carcinomatosis**, enlarged bronchial glands and pneumoconiosis

### **Emphysematous Breathing** (*Asthmatic Breathing*)

This form of breathing is always pathologic, it is never heard over a normal chest. It is of low pitch, wheezing in quality and low intensity. Expiration is a little longer than inspiration and the intrarespiratory pause is lengthened. This form of respiration occurs in chronic emphysema and in asthma, it is heard over the entire chest on both sides and, as a rule, is accompanied by numerous râles.

Emphysematous breathing is the result of chronic overdistention of the air vesicles which causes them to lose their elasticity, and as a result, they are unable to collapse when necessary. The accompanying inflammation brings about an accumulation of small amounts of secretion in the vesicles and bronchioles. The inspiratory air being forced through

the accumulated secretion and narrowed tubules, produces a wheezing sound and numerous râles. The expiratory sound is delayed and very much lengthened because the vesicles collapse slowly on account of their inelasticity, and also because of the plugging of the bronchioles, thus taking a longer time for the air to leave the lung structure. The inflamed and thickened bronchioles also act as good conductors of sound, thereby allowing expiration to be heard for a longer period than in the normal lung. Emphysematous breathing resembles the sounds produced by the old fashioned blacksmith's bellows.

### **Cavernous Breathing**

Cavernous breathing is a low pitched hollow, distinctly 'blowing' sound, resembling that which can be produced by blowing forcibly into the hollow of the cupped hands, the mouth being held wide open. It is heard over a cavity with flaccid walls which communicates directly with a bronchus. Cavernous breathing may at times be audible over a consolidation overlying a very large bronchus or bronchiectasis.

### **Amphoric Breath Sounds**

Amphoric breath sounds are harsh metallic blowing sounds, the pitch of which is much higher than in cavernous breathing. A similar sound may be produced by blowing over the mouth of a china jar, or blowing forcibly into the hollow of the hand with the lips puckered as if to pronounce *oo*. Amphoric breathing can be heard over a very large, smooth tense walled cavity communicating with a large bronchus. It is also audible over a pneumothorax which communicates through a pleural fistula with a bronchus. The height of

the pitch depends upon the size of the resonating chamber

### Metamorphosed Breathing

This phenomenon was described by Seitz. It is a modified bronchial breathing, the first part of the inspiratory sound is harsh and bronchial, suddenly changing to a softened cavernous or amphoric sound and so remaining

### Vocal Resonance

Vocal resonance is the resounding tremor set up by the vibrations of the spoken voice as they are transmitted to the chest wall. It is conducted to the listening ear as an indistinct rumble, the loudness of the rumble depending upon the intensity of the vocal resonance. Vocal resonance is to auscultate

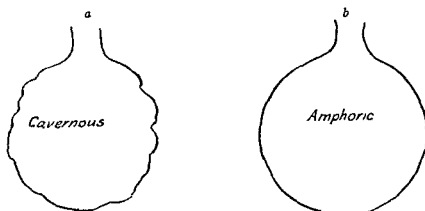


Fig 11—*a*, Cavernous *b* Amphoric breathing

throughout expiration, it is due to the narrowing of a bronchus communicating with a cavity

tion what vocal fremitus is to palpation both being produced by the same factor, namely vibrations set up by the spoken

### Resume

<i>Rhythm</i>	Interrupted rhythm	Slight deposits in the lungs
	Divided rhythm	Want of elasticity of lung
	Prolonged expiration	Want of elasticity in the lung and consolidation
<i>Quality</i>	Vesicular	Uncomplicated lung
	Diminished	Plastic exudations want of elasticity
	Absent breath sounds	Fluid or air in the pleura, large atelectatic area massive pneumonia or plugging of the bronchi
	Emphysematous	Emphysema and asthma
	Exaggerated vesicular	Vicarious respiration.
	Harsh	Moderate thickening of the bronchial mucous membrane.
	Bronchovesicular	Moderate consolidation or compression.
	Bronchial	Large consolidation, compressed lung and bronchiectasis
	Cavernous	Cavity with flaccid walls
	Amphoric	Large cavity with tense walls.

voice' The same rules govern the transmission of sound in both instances

### Production of Vocal Resonance

The vocal cords are set into vibration by the spoken voice, which in turn sets into vibration the entire bronchial tree and the entire bronchopulmonary column of air. The vibrations are more perceptible in the large bronchi than in the smaller ones for three reasons: (a) Their cartilaginous structure, (b) their nearness to the chest wall, and (c) their caliber being large, they contain a greater amount of air.

### Transmission of Vocal Resonance

Vocal resonance is, as an instance, unusually strong over the trachea because of its nearness to the larynx, its large caliber accommodates much air, its cartilaginous structure is a good vibrating medium and resonator, and the small quantity of tissue covering the trachea brings the vibrations closer to the ear.

It is, therefore, evident that vocal resonance depends upon

(a) *The amount of air in the part under examination*

(b) *The tension under which the vibrating air is held*

(c) *The condition of the overlying structures through which the vibratory sound has to pass*

(d) *Its distance from the larynx*

(e) *The condition of the vocal cords*

Vocal cords that do not vibrate will not produce vocal resonance

**Technic for Obtaining Vocal Resonance** Patient and physician place themselves in the proper auscultatory position. The patient's chest is bared and he is asked to *repeat* slowly in a deep loud voice, a consonating stock phrase such as *one one one* or *ninety nine ninety nine, ninety nine* while the examiner listens carefully as he rapidly moves the stethoscope from one point to another and compares corresponding points on both sides of the chest.

Vocal resonance is heard with varying intensity over the different regions of the normal chest. It is more distinctly heard over the chests of persons having thin chest walls and deep low pitched voices. Vocal resonance is generally louder in children than in adults because of greater lung tension and a more resilient chest wall. It is weakest in the aged because of the inelasticity of the lung and the nonresilience of the chest, louder in men than in women and in the lean than in the fat.

It is more distinct over the right side than over the left, and anteriorly than it is posteriorly, excepting in the intra scapular region where it is always very loud.

## Regional Variations of Vocal Resonance

### Suprascapular Region

#### RIGHT

Generally weak near the outer half, somewhat more pronounced than on the left side. Very loud near the sternal end because of the presence of the trachea.

#### LEFT

Weak to the left of the midclavicular line, louder as the sternal end is approached.

### Suprasternal Notch

Very loud.